



**BACTERIAL AND MYCOTIC  
INFECTIONS OF MAN**



## CONTRIBUTORS

Hattie E Alexander  
Gaylord W Anderson  
Paul B Beeson  
Ivan L Bennett Jr  
Alan W Bernheimer  
William L Bradford  
Merrill W Chase  
F S Cheever  
Zanvil Cohn  
Norman F Conant  
John H Dingle  
Rene Dubos  
Geoffrey Edsall  
Sanford S Elberg  
Warfield Garson  
Kenneth Goodner  
James G Hirsch  
Bernard L Horecker  
William S Jordan Jr  
Herbert Ley  
Colin M MacLeod

Maclyn McCarty  
K F Meyer  
Gardner Middlebrook  
Herbert R Morgan  
Harry E Morton  
Stephen I Morse  
Hans J Muller Eberhard  
A M Pappenheimer Jr  
Roger W Reed  
Theodor Rosebury  
Max Sterne  
Chandler A Stetson  
Jack L Strominger  
James D Thayer  
Thomas B Turner  
W E van Heyningen  
Claes Weibull  
David Weinman  
George C Wright  
Norton D Zinder

# BACTERIAL AND MYCOTIC INFECTIONS OF MAN

*Edited by*

RENÉ J DUBOS, Ph D  
Professor The Rockefeller Institute

JAMES G HIRSCH, M D  
Professor The Rockefeller Institute

Fourth Edition



PITMAN MEDICAL PUBLISHING CO., LTD  
LONDON

J B LIPPINCOTT COMPANY  
PHILADELPHIA

## FOURTH EDITION

COPYRIGHT © 1965 BY J B LIPPINCOTT COMPANY

Copyright © 1958 by The National Foundation  
Copyright 1948 1952 by The National Foundation for  
Infantile Paralysis Inc

This book is fully protected by copyright and with the exception of brief excerpts for review no part of it may be reproduced in any form without written permission from the publisher

*By arrangement with*

J B Lippincott Company Philadelphia Pa U S A

*Published in Great Britain by*

PITMAN MEDICAL PUBLISHING CO LIMITED

46 Charlotte Street London W 1

### ASSOCIATED COMPANIES

#### SIR ISAAC PITMAN & SONS LTD

Pitman House Parker Street Kingsway London W C 2

The Pitman Press Bath

Pitman House Bouverie Street Carlton Melbourne

22-25 Becketts Building President Street Johannesburg

#### PITMAN PUBLISHING CORPORATION

20 East 46th Street New York

#### SIR ISAAC PITMAN & SONS (CANADA) LTD

(Incorporating The Commercial Text Book Company)

Pitman House 381-383 Church Street Toronto

Printed in the United States of America

# Contributors

Hattie E. Alexander M.D.  
*Columbia University  
College of Physicians and Surgeons  
New York, New York*

Gaylord W. Anderson M.D. Dr. P.H.  
*University of Minnesota  
School of Public Health  
Minneapolis, Minnesota*

Paul B. Beeson M.D.  
*Yale University School of Medicine  
New Haven, Connecticut*

Ivan L. Bennett Jr. M.D.  
*Johns Hopkins University School of  
Medicine  
Baltimore, Maryland*

Alan W. Bernheimer Ph.D.  
*New York University College of Medicine  
New York, New York*

William L. Bradford M.D.  
*University of Rochester School of Medicine  
and Dentistry  
Rochester, New York*

Merrill W. Chase Ph.D.  
*The Rockefeller Institute  
New York, New York*

F. S. Cheever M.D.  
*School of Medicine  
University of Pittsburgh  
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania*

Zanvil Cohn M.D.  
*The Rockefeller Institute  
New York, New York*

Norman F. Conant Ph.D.  
*Duke University School of Medicine  
Durham, North Carolina*

John H. Dingle M.D.  
*Western Reserve University School of  
Medicine  
Cleveland, Ohio*

Rene Dubos Ph.D.  
*The Rockefeller Institute  
New York, New York*

Geoffrey Edsall M.D.  
*The Department of Public Health  
The Commonwealth of Massachusetts  
Boston, Massachusetts*

Sanford S. Elberg Ph.D.  
*University of California  
Berkeley, California*

Warfield Garson M.D. M.P.H.  
*Allegheny County Health Department  
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania*

Kenneth Goodner Ph.D.  
*The Jefferson Medical College of  
Philadelphia  
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania*

James G. Hirsch M.D.  
*The Rockefeller Institute  
New York, New York*

Bernard L. Horecker M.D.  
*The Albert Einstein College of Medicine  
New York, New York*

William S. Jordan Jr. M.D.  
*University of Virginia School of Medicine  
Charlottesville, Virginia*

## FOURTH EDITION

COPYRIGHT © 1965 BY J B LIPPINCOTT COMPANY

Copyright © 1958 by The National Foundation  
Copyright 1948 1952 by The National Foundation for  
Infantile Paralysis Inc

This book is fully protected by copyright and with the exception of brief excerpts for review no part of it may be reproduced in any form without written permission from the publisher

By arrangement with

J B Lippincott Company Philadelphia Pa U S A

*Published in Great Britain by*

PITMAN MEDICAL PUBLISHING CO LIMITED

46 Charlotte Street London W 1

### ASSOCIATED COMPANIES

#### SIR ISAAC PITMAN & SONS LTD

Pitman House Parker Street Kingsway London WC 2

The Pitman Press Bath

Pitman House Bouverie Street Carlton Melbourne

22-25 Becketts Building President Street Johannesburg

#### PITMAN PUBLISHING CORPORATION

20 East 46th Street New York

#### SIR ISAAC PITMAN & SONS (CANADA) LTD

(Incorporating The Commercial Text Book Company)

Pitman House 381-383 Church Street Toronto

*Printed in the United States of America*

## Preface to the Fourth Edition

The extensive revisions made in this the fourth edition of *Bacterial and Mycotic Infections of Man* go far beyond bringing up to date the factual contents of earlier editions. While the general structure and the purpose of the book remain unchanged much new material has been added to strengthen the theoretical basis of medical microbiology and to enlarge the understanding of its application to disease processes.

The first chapters deal with the historical evolutionary and ecologic aspects of microbiologic sciences. They are followed by a study in some depth of modern microbial morphology genetics and metabolism then of the constituents and the properties of microorganisms more directly relevant to their pathogenicity.

The second part of the book deals with host response to infection. Host resistance mechanisms are first considered with regard to the body as a whole then with special emphasis on phagocytic cells and humoral agencies. Hypersensitivity phenomena and physiologic and pathologic responses to microbial invasion complete the discussion of the general disorders encountered in infectious processes.

Chapters 14 through 37 deal with specific groups of microorganisms. Each of these chapters has been rewritten and brought up to date. One new chapter has been added to cover atypical pneumonia caused by Mycoplasma, an entity which had not been defined at the time the previous edition was published.

The book ends with three new chapters devoted to the general and practical problems of epidemiology prevention and therapy.

In the previous edition an effort had been made to restrict the number of references in order to save space. The experience of those who have used the book makes it clear that this was false economy; therefore we have greatly enlarged the list of pertinent references at the end of each chapter.

The first three editions of *Bacterial and Mycotic Infections of Man* had been published under the sponsorship of the National Foundation. While the present fourth edition is being published independently of it we wish to thank the Foundation for its early encouragement to prepare a book focused on the needs of the student the physician and the investigator interested in the problems of microbial diseases.

RENE DUBOS  
JAMES G. HIRSCH

- Herbert Ley M D , M P H  
*Harvard University School of Public Health*  
*Boston Massachusetts*
- Colin M MacLeod M D  
*New York University College of Medicine*  
*New York New York*
- Maclyn McCarty M D  
*The Rockefeller Institute*  
*New York New York*
- K F Meyer M D  
*The George Williams Hooper Foundation*  
*For Medical Research*  
*University of California*  
*San Francisco California*
- Gardner Middlebrook M D  
*National Jewish Hospital at Denver*  
*University of Colorado School of Medicine*  
*Denver Colorado*
- Herbert R Morgan M D  
*University of Rochester School of Medicine*  
*and Dentistry*
- Harry E Morton Sc D  
*University of Pennsylvania School of Medicine*  
*Philadelphia Pennsylvania*
- Stephen I Morse M D Ph D  
*The Rockefeller Institute*  
*New York New York*
- Hans J Muller Eberhard M D  
*Scripps Clinic and Research Foundation*  
*La Jolla California*
- A M Pappenheimer Jr Ph D  
*Harvard University*  
*Cambridge Massachusetts*
- Roger W Reed M D  
*McGill University*  
*Montreal Canada*
- Theodor Rosebury D D S  
*Washington University School of Dentistry*  
*St Louis Missouri*
- Max Sterne D V Sc  
*The Wellcome Research Laboratories*  
*Beckenham Kent England*
- Chandler A Stetson M D  
*New York University College of Medicine*  
*New York New York*
- Jack L Strominger M D  
*University of Wisconsin Medical School*  
*Madison Wisconsin*
- James D Thayer Ph D  
*Venereal Disease Research Laboratory*  
*Communicable Disease Center*  
*U S Public Health Service*  
*Atlanta Georgia*
- Thomas B Turner, M D  
*Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine*  
*Baltimore Maryland*
- W E van Heyningen Sc D  
*Sir William Dunn School of Pathology*  
*Oxford University*  
*Oxford England*
- Claes Weibull M D  
*Central Bacteriological Laboratory of Stockholm City*  
*Stockholm Sweden*
- David Weinman M D  
*Yale University School of Medicine*  
*New Haven Connecticut*
- George C Wright Ph D  
*U S Army Biological Laboratories*  
*Fort Detrick Frederick Maryland*
- Norton D Zinder Ph D  
*The Rockefeller Institute*  
*New York New York*

## Preface to the First Edition

This volume was designed to convey to the medical student—and we hope also to the practitioner of medicine—some knowledge of the bacteria actinomycetes and molds pathogenic for man as well as of the phenomena which characterize the infectious process. Infections caused by viruses and rickettsiae are treated in a companion volume edited by Dr T M Rivers.

Medical microbiology is the study of host-parasite relationships and not that of microorganisms alone considered as independent living agents. It is concerned with those aspects of the structure and the properties of parasites which play a part in their pathogenic behavior and with the multiple manifestations of the response of the invaded host to their constituents and products. The general chapters of this treatise are therefore devoted to the facts and the problems concerning parasite and host which have a bearing—often immediate but at times only potential and remote—on infectious disease.

A few words may be necessary to justify the order in which the different pathogenic agents are described in subsequent chapters. This order was adopted to illustrate by the extensive treatment of a few selected examples the multiple facets of the problem of infection. Thus the diphtheria bacillus is discussed first to introduce the concept of toxemia and of antitoxic immunity. As a counterpart pneumococcus infections are then selected to emphasize the problems of antibacterial immunity. Streptococci on the other hand lend themselves to the demonstration that a given microbial agent can exhibit multiple pathogenic potentialities and that tissues can respond in many different ways to its presence. Tuberculosis illustrates particularly well the acute (exudative) and chronic (proliferative) pathologic processes accompanying infection and the altered reactivity of the body (allergy) which results from previous exposure to the bacillus. All these aspects of the infectious process appear in more or less modified form in the other microbial diseases and give to each of them its peculiar character.

This treatise is the result of the cooperative effort of many experts and naturally reflects their individual outlooks. I wish to thank them all in particular for their willingness to aim at some measure of uniformity in our common undertaking. The National Foundation for Infantile Paralysis has given generous financial support to the preparation of the book and shares with us the hope that it may contribute something to the understanding of the general problems of infection.

RENE J DUBOS

The Rockefeller Institute  
for Medical Research  
New York





# Contents

1	THE EVOLUTION OF MEDICAL MICROBIOLOGY <i>Rene Dubos</i>	1
2	THE EVOLUTION OF MICROBIAL DISEASES <i>Rene Dubos</i>	20
3	MORPHOLOGY AND CHEMICAL ANATOMY OF BACTERIA <i>Claes Weibull</i>	87
4	BACTERIAL GENETICS <i>Norton Zinder</i>	72
5	BACTERIAL METABOLISM <i>Bernard L. Horecker</i>	87
6	MECHANISMS OF ACTION OF ANTIMICROBIAL AGENTS <i>Jack Strominger</i>	120
7	PATHOGENIC PROPERTIES OF BACTERIA <i>Colin M. MacLeod and Alan W. Bernheimer</i>	146
8	HOST RESISTANCE TO INFECTIOUS DISEASES <i>James G. Hirsch</i>	170
9	THE ROLE OF ANTIBODY COMPLEMENT AND OTHER HUMORAL FACTORS IN HOST RESISTANCE TO INFECTIONS <i>H. J. Muller Eberhard</i>	181
10	PHAGOCYTIC CELLS <i>Zanvil A. Cohn and James G. Hirsch</i>	215
11	THE ALLERGIC STATE <i>Merrill W. Chase</i>	238
12	ENDOTOXINS <i>Chandler Stetson</i>	304
13	GENERAL HOST RESPONSES TO INFECTIONS <i>Ivan L. Bennett</i>	307
14	BACTERIA INDIGENOUS TO MAN <i>Theodor Rosebury</i>	326
15	THE HEMOLYTIC STREPTOCOCCI <i>Maclyn McCarty</i>	356



35	THE PLEUROPNEUMONIA AND PLEUPNEUMONIALIKE ORGANISMS <i>Harry E Morton</i>	786
36	MYCOPLASMA PNEUMONIAE INFECTIONS <i>John H Dingle and William S Jordan</i>	810
37	MEDICAL MYCOLOGY <i>Norman F Conant</i>	825
38	THE PRINCIPLES OF EPIDEMIOLOGY AS APPLIED TO INFECTIOUS DISEASES <i>Gaylord Anderson</i>	886
39	PREVENTION OF INFECTIONS <i>Geoffrey Edsall and Herbert Ley</i>	913
40	TREATMENT OF INFECTIOUS DISEASES <i>Paul Beeson</i>	775
	BIBLIOGRAPHIC INDEX	961
	SUBJECT INDEX	993

16	THE PNEUMOCOCCI	<i>Colin M MacLeod</i>	391
17	STAPHYLOCOCCI AND OTHER MICROCOCCI	<i>Stephen I Morse</i>	412
18	THE MENINGOCOCCI	<i>F S Cheever</i>	440
19	THE GONOCOCCUS	<i>James D Thayer and Warfield Garson</i>	451
20	THE DIPHTHERIA BACILLI	<i>Alwin M Pappenheimer</i>	468
21	THE MYCOBACTERIA	<i>Gardner Middlebrook</i>	490
22	THE ANTHRAX BACILLUS	<i>George C Wright</i>	529
23	THE CLOSTRIDIA	<i>Max Sterne and W E van Heyningen</i>	545
24	THE SPIROCHETES	<i>Thomas B Turner</i>	573
25	THE ENTERIC BACTERIA	<i>Herbert R Morgan</i>	610
26	THE CHOLERA VIBRIOS	<i>Kenneth Goodner</i>	649
27	PASTEURELLA AND FRANCISELLA	<i>K F Meyer</i>	659
28	THE BRUCELLAE	<i>Sanford S Elberg</i>	698
29	THE HEMOPHILUS GROUP	<i>Hattie E Alexander</i>	724
30	THE BORDETELLA GROUP	<i>William L Bradford</i>	742
31	LISTERIA AND ERYSIPELOTHRIX	<i>R W Reed</i>	752
32	STREPTOBACILLUS MONILIFORMIS	<i>Harry E Morton</i>	763
33	BACTEROIDES	<i>Harry E Morton</i>	770
34	THE BARTONELLA GROUP	<i>David Weinman</i>	949

## 1

## The Evolution of Medical Microbiology

THE DISCOVERY OF  
MICROBIAL LIFE

Bacteriology is one of the very few biologic sciences if not the only one which can trace its origin to a single person one well documented observation and an instrument still in existence. On September 17 1683 Antony van Leeuwenhoek (1632-1723) sent from Delft (Holland) where he lived to the Royal Society in London of which he was a correspondent the description of a new kind of animalcule smaller than any thing yet known he reported similar observations in another letter dated September 1692. Both letters were illustrated with drawings which leave no doubt that Leeuwenhoek had really seen bacteria in fact he clearly differentiated the main morphologic types which are still recognized today and he gave an excellent account of bacterial motility.

Contrary to what is often stated Leeuwenhoek did not invent the microscope. Even though the compound microscope was already known in his time he never owned one and made all his observations with a multiplicity of single lens microscopes of his own design and making. He was an expert lens grinder and made numerous small lenses each mounted in a different way to suit particular purposes. His simple instruments could give magnifications ranging from 40 to 275 diameters and he probably used some kind of darkfield illumination. However these statements are conjectural because he was very secretive about his methods of ob-

servation he reported his findings in great details but never described his technique. Fortunately he willed some of his instruments to the Royal Society which has preserved them ever since (Dobell 1932).

Another unique feature of the history of bacteriology is that it gives an unequivocal answer to a question much debated by historians of science. The question is whether science originates from sheer curiosity and the desire to know more about the world or from man's urge to achieve practical ends and master his environment. The answer to this question is very clear in the case of Leeuwenhoek. He earned his living as a draper and as an employee of the city of Delft. Lens grinding and the exploration of the microscopic world were activities from which he could not possibly derive any material reward beyond the satisfaction of curiosity. He worked alone had no sponsor and had no practical application in mind when he chanced to discover bacteria in an infusion of pepper and in material scraped from his teeth. Entertainingly enough it was only a very few years ago—i.e. almost 300 years after his initial observations—that the presence of bacteria on teeth was first shown to be of practical importance as a cause of dental caries.

In fact the science of bacteriology remained a completely disinterested form of knowledge for almost 200 years after Leeuwenhoek's discoveries. During this period much was learned of the shape the structure



## 1

## The Evolution of Medical Microbiology

### THE DISCOVERY OF MICROBIAL LIFE

Bacteriology is one of the very few biologic sciences if not the only one which can trace its origin to a single person one well documented observation and an instrument still in existence On September 17 1683 Antony van Leeuwenhoek (1632-1723) sent from Delft (Holland) where he lived to the Royal Society in London of which he was a correspondent the description of a new kind of animalcule smaller than anything yet known he reported similar observations in another letter dated September 1692 Both letters were illustrated with drawings which leave no doubt that Leeuwenhoek had really seen bacteria in fact he clearly differentiated the main morphologic types which are still recognized today and he gave an excellent account of bacterial motility

Contrary to what is often stated Leeuwenhoek did not invent the microscope Even though the compound microscope was already known in his time he never owned one and made all his observations with a multiplicity of single lens microscopes of his own design and making He was an expert lens grinder and made numerous small lenses each mounted in a different way to suit particular purposes His simple instruments could give magnifications ranging from 40 to 275 diameters and he probably used some kind of darkfield illumination However these statements are conjectural because he was very secretive about his methods of ob-

servation he reported his findings in great details but never described his technique Fortunately he willed some of his instruments to the Royal Society which has preserved them ever since (Dobell 1932)

Another unique feature of the history of bacteriology is that it gives an unequivocal answer to a question much debated by historians of science The question is whether science originates from sheer curiosity and the desire to know more about the world or from man's urge to achieve practical ends and master his environment The answer to this question is very clear in the case of Leeuwenhoek He earned his living as a draper and as an employee of the city of Delft Lens grinding and the exploration of the microscopic world were activities from which he could not possibly derive any material reward beyond the satisfaction of curiosity He worked alone had no sponsor and had no practical application in mind when he chanced to discover bacteria in an infusion of pepper and in material scraped from his teeth Entertainingly enough it was only a very few years ago—almost 300 years after his initial observations—that the presence of bacteria on teeth was first shown to be of practical importance as a cause of dental caries

In fact the science of bacteriology remained a completely disinterested form of knowledge for almost 200 years after Leeuwenhoek's discoveries During this period much was learned of the shape the structure





FIG 1 Antony van Leeuwenhoek  
(1632-1723)

the size and the classification of bacteria as well as of their distribution and abundance in nature. The development reached by such a purely descriptive kind of knowledge is illustrated for example in the textbook and the Atlas published in 1838 by Christian Ehrenberg (1795-1876) and in the short essay *Über die Bacterien die Kleinsten Lebenden Wesen* published in 1872 by Ferdinand Cohn (1828-98). The more speculative aspects of bacteriologic science during the 18th and the 19th centuries revolved chiefly around the doctrines of heterogenesis and spontaneous generation.

### THE BIRTH OF EXPERIMENTAL MICROBIOLOGY

Throughout ancient civilizations and until late in the Renaissance it was taken for granted that plants and animals could be generated *de novo* under certain circumstances. Although learned men eventually ceased to believe in the spontaneous generation of maggots and mice it long remained the general opinion that microbial life came into being through the spontaneous organization of organic substances in putrefying and fermenting materials. Experimentation on this problem began in earnest around 1750.

Some experimenters like the Irish priest

John T. Needham (1713-1781) claimed that they could bring about at will the creation of microscopic organisms in infusions previously sterilized by heat. In contrast another priest, Lazzaro Spallanzani (1729-1799), maintained that living things however small never could be generated spontaneously from dead matter. His contributions deserve special emphasis because they constitute some of the most important landmarks of experimental microbiology.

Spallanzani recognized bacteria and grew them in sterilized media; he observed that microbial life could occur in the absence of air and he discovered germs now called endospores of a greater resistance to heat than were the forms to which they gave rise. Because of his rigid adherence to the experimental conditions required for testing the possibility of spontaneous generation he unfortunately did not inoculate his media on purpose and consequently failed to realize the general significance and technical possibilities of his work. Otherwise he might well have become the founder of experimental microbiology.

We cannot review here all the reasons and facts or rather pseudofacts which kept the doctrine of spontaneous generation alive until the second half of the 19th century nor can we mention the excellent experimental studies relevant to it which were carried out all over Europe during this period. (For a discussion of these topics see Bulloch, 1938, and Dubos, 1950.) However, it may be said that the attitude of reasonable, unprejudiced scientists on the subject was still uncertain in 1850 and that opinion was then evenly divided between the protagonists and the opponents of spontaneous generation. Shortly after that time Louis Pasteur (1822-1895) entered the arena and his work convinced the scientific world that bacteria and molds never generate spontaneously. With extraordinary thoroughness and elegance Pasteur demonstrated that no growth of any sort ever develops in sterilized media when all precautions are taken to keep out the microorganisms present in the surrounding air or on nearby objects. But he showed also that the precautions to be taken were most exacting and that earlier investigators who had thought that they had observed spontaneous generation had not

been aware of the difficulties involved. Among the many types of experiments that Pasteur designed to rule out spontaneous generation one is worth some emphasis because of its very simplicity and decisiveness and also because it finally settled the issue.

A fermentable fluid was put into a flask the long neck of which was then heated and drawn into the form of an S tube (hence the name swan neck flask). When the liquid was boiled the vapor forced the air out through the orifice of the neck. As the fluid became cool again the air slowly returned to the flask but was washed in the moisture that condensed in the curves of the neck after heating was interrupted. Under these conditions any dust or particle carried by the air was trapped in the neck and the fluid in the flask remained clear sterile. However when the neck of the flask was broken and the unwashed air was thus allowed to come into contact with the fluid microscopic life immediately began to develop. Experimental difficulties arose from the fact that certain species of bacteria produce heat resistant spores. In some of the early experiments these spores persisted in the fluid of the swan neck flasks that was presumed to have been sterilized by heating when they germinated they gave rise to bacterial growth even though access to outside air had been prevented. Eventually these difficulties were overcome and Pasteur was able to prepare his flasks in such a manner that the broth remained sterile in them all. Some of these flasks prepared almost 100 years ago are still in existence the fluid is as limpid as the day it was sterilized.

For years the studies on spontaneous generation were carried out in an atmosphere of intense excitement and of passionate controversy because it was erroneously thought that the problem involved religious issues—a view which Pasteur denied strenuously. In a famous lecture that he delivered at the Sorbonne in 1864 he expressed with eloquence his absolute conviction that the failure of bacteria to generate spontaneously was a purely scientific problem. Presenting to his audience the swan neck flasks in which heated infusions had remained sterile in contact with natural air he exclaimed triumphantly

I have taken my drop of water from the immensity of creation and I have taken it full of the elements appropriate to the development of microscopic organisms. And I wait I watch I question it!—begging it to recommence for me the beautiful spectacle of the first creation. But it is dumb dumb since these experiments were begun several years ago it is dumb because I have kept it sheltered from the only thing man does not know how to produce from the germs which float in the air from Life for Life is a germ and a germ is Life. Never will the doctrine of spontaneous generation recover from the mortal blow of this simple experiment!

It is necessary to acknowledge here that present-day discussions on the origin of life seem to reopen once more the possibility of spontaneous generation. As is well known the discovery that many viruses can be readily crystallized has fostered the hope that living processes can soon be identified with well defined chemical structures and processes originating from inanimate matter. Many efforts are being made to imagine types of chemical reactions that would be self reproducing and thus exhibit one of the most distinctive properties of life. Only time will tell to what extent today's discussions on the genesis of self-duplicating molecules of nucleic acids and of proteins really bear on the origin of life—a problem which demands philosophic definition at least as much as scientific description. What is certain in any case is that modern scientific developments do not conflict with the view that all the microorganisms with which we have experience today—including the viruses—originate from structures fundamentally similar to themselves. In fact it can be said that no constructive thinking on the origin of life was possible until the ancient doctrine of spontaneous generation had been discarded.

One of the important by products of the studies on spontaneous generation beginning with Spallanzani's work was to provide the technical basis for experimental microbiology. Exacting procedures had to be devised to destroy the microbes present in the systems under study and also to prevent the introduction of other microbes from the outside. Sterilization and aseptic manipulation thus became the essential basis of microbiologic techniques. The necessity to grow



FIG 2 Louis Pasteur (1822-1895)

microbes in pure culture demanded investigation of their nutritional and physiologic requirements thus began theoretical microbiology which has now opened new vistas for general biology. Incidental to the controversy on spontaneous generation there were discovered many important facts concerning the distribution of microbes in nature and in the various parts of the body. Knowledge of the natural history of microbial life made it possible to develop the technologic and medical aspects of microbiology. It can be said truly that the controversies on spontaneous generation created the environment in which microbiology became aware of its problems and developed its methodology.

The present essay is concerned not with the general history of microbiologic sciences but only with their medical aspects. Nevertheless it seems to be important to empha-

size at the outset that medical microbiology emerged in large part from studies apparently unrelated to problems of health and disease.

### THE GERM THEORY

The evolution of experimental microbiology has been influenced profoundly by the fact that its founder Louis Pasteur received his advanced training not in biology but in theoretical physics and chemistry (Vallery Radot 1911 Dubos 1950). In fact Pasteur's first great achievements dealt with the relation between the morphology of crystals and their ability to rotate the plane of polarized light. One of the unexpected consequences of his chemical work was the discovery in 1848 that a certain mold could utilize the dextrorotatory form of tartaric acid but not its levorotatory isomer. This apparently small fact determined once and for all Pasteur's subsequent scientific life by convincing him that microbes can bring about profound transformations of organic matter and that they are extraordinarily selective and specific in their activities. He soon applied this general concept to the microbial transformation of sugar into lactic acid, alcohol, or other organic derivatives, and of alcohol into acetic acid. A few years later he observed that sugar was converted into butyric acid in the absence of air and thereby he discovered anaerobic life. He demonstrated that each of the chemical transformations he had studied was carried out by one particular kind of microbe having very specific nutritional and environmental requirements. It was in the course of these studies that he was led to rule out the accidental introduction and the *de novo* production of microbial life in fermenting fluids and thus to disprove the theory of spontaneous generation.

The chemical approach to the study of microbial life immediately led Pasteur to apply his newly acquired knowledge to various fermentation industries, in particular to the production of vinegar, wine, and beer. One of the by-products of his technologic activities was the technic of controlled heating for the preservation of beverages, foodstuffs, and other organic materials which are perishable because they are attacked readily by microbial life. This technic now called

pasteurization in his honor proved of course to have large medical applications but the broader and more important relevance of Pasteur's work to medicine came from the fact that he perceived intuitively from the very beginning that the germ theory would be applicable to problems of disease. In fact he expressed this conviction in his very first paper on fermentation namely the *Memoire sur la fermentation appelee lactique* which he published in 1857 when he was 35 years old (Pasteur 1857). This paper can properly be regarded as the manifesto of experimental microbiology therefore it seems justifiable to present here an outline of its contents.

The 1857 *Memoire* was an attempt to demonstrate that the so-called lactic acid ferment is not just an amorphous chemical substance as was then believed but is constituted instead of organized living microscopic bodies which all resemble one another. Furthermore Pasteur emphasized that the degree of acidity or alkalinity of the fermenting solutions has very profound effects on the activity of the various kinds of ferments. Thus yeast produces alcohol most rapidly in an acid solution whereas the lactic acid ferment is most active at neutrality. He even recognized—for the first time—the activity of certain antiseptics. Onion juice he found inhibited the action of yeast but not of the lactic acid ferment.

The association of a specific microbe with each fermentation, the disproportion between the weight of microbe produced and the weight of matter transformed, the competition between two organisms simultaneously invading the same medium resulting in the dominance of the one better adapted to the cultural conditions—all these ideas which were to grow into a large body of science and technology are forcefully set forth in the preliminary 1857 paper. For this reason the *Memoire* can truly be regarded as one of the most important landmarks in the history of biochemical and biologic sciences. Its fundamental spirit can be summarized in Pasteur's words:

The purity of a ferment, its homogeneity, its free unrestrained development from foodstuffs well adapted to its individual nature, these are some of the conditions which are essential for good fermentation.



FIG. 3 Robert Koch (1843-1910)

With extraordinary foresight Pasteur suggested that the same principles might explain the genesis of many forms of disease and that particular kinds of microbes would be found to be responsible for particular kinds of maladies. As he stated elsewhere in prophetic words:

There are similarities between the diseases of animals or man and the diseases of beer and wine. If fermentations were diseases one could speak of epidemics of fermentation.

#### THE DISTANT ORIGINS AND THE SCIENTIFIC BEGINNINGS OF MEDICAL MICROBIOLOGY

It is customary to state that medical microbiology began in 1876 when Robert Koch (1843-1910) and Pasteur demonstrated almost simultaneously and unknown to each other that the disease anthrax can be pro-

duced experimentally by injecting into animals small amounts of culture of a particular microbial species (*Bacillus anthracis*). Before the significance of this laboratory achievement can be discussed adequately it is essential to emphasize that the concept of infection was not new in 1876. It had evolved progressively over many centuries through large numbers of careful observations, shrewd hunches and bold experiments. Only a few of the very many steps in this long historical development can be mentioned here.

It has long been recognized of course that certain diseases are catching and that some confer protection against a second attack but although the idea of contagion passing from one individual to another was evident in diseases such as plague and syphilis it was missed completely in many other conditions. Girolamo Fracastoro (1478-1553) was probably the first to state explicitly in his book *De Contagione* (1546) that infection itself is composed of minute and insensible particles and proceeds from them. He wondered whether all contagion might not be a putrefaction and recognized that the infection is the same for him who has received and who has given the infection.

Of course much caution is required in interpreting the early speculative writings on infectious disease because the words used by ancient authors can but rarely be applied in their modern meaning. However a few concepts emerge clearly from the past. Thus A. Kircher (1602-80) probably the first to make direct microscopic studies of diseased tissue examined putrefying materials and even blood from plague patients. On the basis of his observations he postulated that animated corpuscles scatter the seeds of contagion and that it is difficult to wash them away. Therefore he recommended burning household goods and clothing suspected of carrying contagion. The specificity of contagious diseases was expressed forcefully by Thomas Fuller (1654-1734) who said that one type of disease could not change into another, any more than a Hen can breed a Duck; he emphasized further that consequently one Sort cannot be a preservative against any other Sort.

One of the outstanding experiments of the premicrobial era was carried out by John

Hunter (1728-93) who inoculated himself with syphilis using material from a case which he assumed erroneously to be simple gonorrhea. In addition to the tragic consequences for his own life, Hunter's experiment was responsible for establishing the belief which persisted for many years that gonorrhea and syphilis were the same disease. Of great importance also were the writings by Charles White (1728-1813) in 1773, Oliver Wendell Holmes (1809-94) in 1843 and I. P. Semmelweis (1818-65) in 1846, concerning the role of cleanliness and other practical sanitary methods in the prevention of puerperal sepsis and of blood poisoning from putrid wounds.

Agostino Bassi (1773-1856) demonstrated in 1836 that a fungus was the primary cause of a silkworm disease; he formulated the germ theory of disease in very explicit terms. In 1839 Johann Schönlein showed that the fungus now known as *Achorion schönleini* is always present in favus and in 1844 *Trichophyton tonsurans* was established as the cause of *herpes tonsurans*. The parasitic role of fungi gained wide acceptance through the publication in 1853 of Robin's *Histoire Naturelle des Végétaux Parasites*.

In 1840 the pathologist Jakob Henle (1809-85) drew up a statement of the conditions which would be required to provide proof of a causal relationship between microbes and the diseases of animals and man. These conditions are now known as Koch's postulates although they do not appear in concise form in the writings of Robert Koch who had been Henle's student.

The first convincing experimental observations on a bacterial cause of disease was made by C. J. Davaine (1812-82) who detected as early as 1850 minute rods which he called infusoria in the blood of sheep dying of anthrax. Stimulated by Pasteur, Davaine returned to this discovery and described his results in 1864. He transferred the disease to healthy animals by infecting them with blood containing the characteristic rods. Infection occurred even when the blood was diluted a million times. In 1865 J. A. Villemin (1827-92) showed that tuberculosis also could be transmitted at will by injecting tuberculous matter from tuberculous human beings to animals and from

one tuberculous animal to another. From 1865 to 1869 Pasteur turned his attention to pebrine, a disease of silkworms, and demonstrated its parasitic nature; moreover, he developed practical control techniques based on the detection of the causative protozoon in the tissues of infected worms. These techniques were so effective that they saved the European silkworm industry, which had been threatened with destruction by the protozoon.

The most spectacular contribution to the germ theory of disease before 1876 came from the English surgeon Joseph Lister (1827-1912) (Godlee 1918). Lister was familiar with Pasteur's publications on the ubiquitous presence of microbes in the air and on their chemical activities, and he postulated that this knowledge might help to explain many of the accidents then so commonly encountered in surgical practice. He surmised that the microbes surrounding the patient at the time of operation could fall on open wounds and thus be responsible for putrefaction and sepsis. Acting on this theory, he made it a practice to spray solutions of phenol around his patients during surgery and thus greatly decreased the rate of fatal infections. Lister's achievement opened the way for modern surgery and constitutes unquestionably the first conscious application of the germ theory of disease to an important problem of human medicine.

Thus it is certain that infection and microbial etiology were not new concepts when Koch and Pasteur first published their studies on anthrax. However, these concepts were then ignored or even scornfully rejected by most medical scientists and practicing physicians. Even Lister's achievement, great though it was, did not impress the medical world; physicians failed to recognize its relevance to other disease conditions. Surprising as it may seem to us, the idea that microscopic organisms could cause damage to the body seemed then to be incongruous and contrary to common sense. Furthermore, the skeptics pointed to the fact that many kinds of microbes are always present in large numbers in the body of healthy men and animals and therefore could not be of great significance in the causation of disease.

The great merit of Koch's and Pasteur's experimental studies on anthrax was to prove

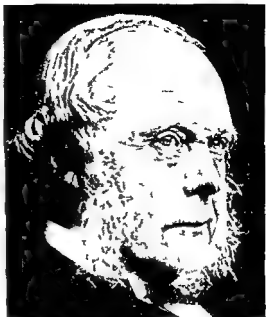


FIG. 4. Baron Joseph Lister (1827-1912) (Godlee, Lord Lister, London Macmillan).

unrefutably that a certain kind of disease always occurred when a few microbes of the proper kind were introduced into the body and only then. Causal relationship was proved by demonstrating that anthrax bacilli, which had been made to multiply outside the body for large numbers of generations—in serum, urine, or broth—retained nevertheless the ability to cause in animals the particular kind of disease with which they had first been found to be associated. The validity of the evidence adduced by Koch and Pasteur rested entirely on the exacting nature of the techniques they used for isolating the bacteria for culturing them in pure cultures and for making sure of their identity.

Robert Koch's greatness came precisely from the immense skill and ingenuity that he displayed in devising new bacteriologic techniques and from the austere discipline with which he applied them to etiologic problems (Bochall, 1954). Suffice it to mention that the plating of cultures on agar surfaces, the photomicrography of bacteria, and the use of aniline dyes for demonstrating them microscopically were all methods developed in his laboratory.

After he had isolated the anthrax bacillus in pure culture and demonstrated its infectivity Koch proceeded to study traumatic infectious diseases and developed methods for the separation of pure cultures from mixed infections (1878-1881). However his most spectacular achievements were the isolation and the cultivation of the tubercle bacillus in 1882 and of the cholera vibrio in 1883. The dramatic character of these diseases and their great prevalence during the 19th century made of Koch a world hero; he was treated as a demigod when he traveled to Japan and a shrine was erected in his name.

The decades that followed the birth of the germ theory saw the isolation and the characterization of most of the bacterial agents of disease. Progress was very rapid because the experimental philosophy and methods developed by Pasteur and Koch were applicable to many types of infections with only minor changes of detail. However more profound modifications became necessary when emphasis shifted from bacterial to rickettsial and viral infections. Rickettsia and viruses being unable to grow in lifeless media their isolation and cultivation required the development of new methods based chiefly on the use of fertilized eggs and tissue cultures (see the companion volume of this series edited by Tamm and Horsfall).

The era opened by Pasteur, Lister and Koch has been properly called the Golden Era of medical microbiology and it probably represents the greatest single contribution so far made to the theory and the practice of medicine. There is no doubt that the stimulus to this phenomenal advance was the establishment of the bacterial cause of disease which provided a scientific basis for etiologic diagnosis, specific therapy and preventive medicine. The profound reformation of medical thought brought about by bacteriologic knowledge was achieved against violent opposition but experimental medicine emerged from the bitter struggle much strengthened and enlarged. Experimental microbiology thus constituted more than a useful helping hand to medicine; it was the guiding finger as well. It wrought such changes in human health that its contributions to human welfare are at least equal to those of any other science. Diseases such as typhoid

fever, diphtheria, tuberculosis and pneumonia have been reduced from scourges with a high mortality to manageable conditions; surgery was lifted out of the despondency of laudable pus into the safety of asepsis. The great epidemics of the past remain a threat only where the required precautions are neglected.

## THE STRUCTURE AND THE PROPERTIES OF MICROORGANISMS

One of the first tasks faced by medical microbiologists was to devise techniques for the cultivation, the differentiation and the identification of the agents of disease. Much of the microbiologic literature published around the turn of the century deals with the development of selective culture media, the definition of physiologic activities (especially the ability to attack various sugars, alcohols and amino acids), the manner of growth in broth or on agar in gelatin, aerobically or anaerobically, etc. From the scientific point of view this literature is rather dull yet it provided the kind of information on which much of microbiologic taxonomy and etiologic diagnosis still depends today. Fortunately a broader kind of knowledge continued to develop along with this prosaic though essential type of information. Progressively the study of microbes as living entities moved into the main channels of biologic thought.

To the biologist of the 19th century bacteria had first appeared to be so primitive as to be at the very threshold of life. Speaking of what he considered the smallest and at the same time the simplest and lowest of all living forms, Ferdinand Cohn (1828-98) asserted in 1872: "They form the boundary line of life; beyond them life does not exist so far at least as our microscopic expedients reach and these are not small. The minute dimensions of bacteria were considered by many to be incompatible with any significant morphologic differentiation; it encouraged the chemist to treat the bacterial cell as a simple colloidal system and as a bag of enzymes. This assumed primitiveness of structure appeared to be confirmed in biochemical terms when Serge Winogradsky (1856-1953) announced in 1887 that cer-

tain microorganisms—those of the autotrophic group—could synthesize their protoplasm from mineral salts and carbon dioxide utilizing for the reduction of the latter the energy released by the oxidation of inorganic substances—ammonia nitrites sulfur hydrogen etc. Could not this most primitive biochemical expression of life the production of organic matter from inorganic substances be considered as the beginning of life on earth?

Cytologic studies were quick to dispel any illusion as to the structural simplicity of bacteria. Differential staining reactions studies of sporulation motility osmotic behavior etc. revealed the existence in bacteria of various kinds of plasma membranes cell walls capsules intracellular bodies organs of locomotion etc. which give to each bacterial type a characteristic complexity. Furthermore the biochemist soon came to recognize in microbial life the same type of chemical reactions biocatalysts metabolic channels and products which occur in the highest organisms. Even the autotrophic bacteria those primitive beings capable of synthesizing life from the atmosphere and the rock are now known to operate through the same elaborate mechanisms found in the most evolved metabolic types.

Many books published during the past 100 years on the structure and the properties of microorganisms make it easy to follow the development of knowledge in this field. However the most striking impression gained from such a survey is not so much the increase in amount of knowledge as the qualitative change in attitude. The change was compelled by the progressive discovery that microbial life and its role in health and disease cannot be understood without consideration of all aspects of biology—the most detailed in terms of chemical or genetic analysis as well as the most complex in terms of cellular and ecologic integration. Chapters 3 and 5 of the present volume illustrate the recent growth of knowledge concerning the metabolic and structural complexities of microorganisms. Chapters 2 and 38 reveal that microorganisms display the widest possible range of interrelationships with other living things from destructive parasitism to complete symbiosis—and that these inter-

relationships have a Darwinian evolutionary basis. The knowledge concerning bacteriophage will serve as one example among many others that could have been selected to illustrate that points of view concerning microscopic life continue to change even in our time.

The discovery of bacteriophage lysis by d'Herelle and Twort appeared at first sight to confront biologists with the most primitive manifestation of life indeed with a phenomenon in which it seemed that biology and chemistry could no longer be differentiated. For a whole generation bacteriophage was considered as a substance to be crystallized and defined by purely chemical methods and the lysis of bacteria that it causes was assumed to be a straightforward enzymatic process. However recent discoveries have shattered these illusions. Electron microscopy shows that bacteriophages are viruses with highly complex organizations made up of several morphologic structures each with a different chemical composition and a different function. Bacterial lysis is the outcome of a complex infectious process during which the viruses multiply at the expense of metabolic processes in the bacterial cells which they parasitize. Bacteriophages can enter into various types of associations with the proper kinds of bacteria destroying them in some cases but also capable of endowing them with new potentialities under other circumstances. Finally bacteriophages can mutate and thus undergo hereditary changes akin to evolutionary adaptation. Such complexity is of course incompatible with the view that bacteria and bacteriophages are at the threshold of life.

Thus two independent trends can be recognized in the development of knowledge concerning microorganisms as living entities. On the one hand microbial structure and metabolism are being defined in more and more precise chemical terms on the other hand evidence is accumulating that even the smallest microorganism is a highly complex structure and that its living processes involve adaptive responses to the total environment as well as integration with other living things. Microbiology has found its way back into general biology. Furthermore the extraordinary plasticity of microorganisms the ra-



After he had isolated the anthrax bacillus in pure culture and demonstrated its infectivity Koch proceeded to study traumatic infectious diseases and developed methods for the separation of pure cultures from mixed infections (1878-1881). However his most spectacular achievements were the isolation and the cultivation of the tubercle bacillus in 1882 and of the cholera vibrio in 1883. The dramatic character of these diseases and their great prevalence during the 19th century made of Koch a world hero; he was treated as a demigod when he traveled to Japan and a shrine was erected in his name.

The decades that followed the birth of the germ theory saw the isolation and the characterization of most of the bacterial agents of disease. Progress was very rapid because the experimental philosophy and methods developed by Pasteur and Koch were applicable to many types of infections with only minor changes of detail. However more profound modifications became necessary when emphasis shifted from bacterial to rickettsial and viral infections. Rickettsia and viruses being unable to grow in lifeless media their isolation and cultivation required the development of new methods based chiefly on the use of fertilized eggs and tissue cultures (see the companion volume of this series edited by Tamm and Horsfall).

The era opened by Pasteur, Lister and Koch has been properly called the Golden Era of medical microbiology and it probably represents the greatest single contribution so far made to the theory and the practice of medicine. There is no doubt that the stimulus to this phenomenal advance was the establishment of the bacterial cause of disease which provided a scientific basis for etiologic diagnosis, specific therapy and preventive medicine. The profound reformation of medical thought brought about by bacteriologic knowledge was achieved against violent opposition but experimental medicine emerged from the bitter struggle much strengthened and enlarged. Experimental microbiology thus constituted more than a useful helping hand to medicine; it was the guiding finger as well. It wrought such changes in human health that its contributions to human welfare are at least equal to those of any other science. Diseases such as typhoid

fever, diphtheria, tuberculosis and pneumonia have been reduced from scourges with a high mortality to manageable conditions; surgery was lifted out of the despondency of laudable pus into the safety of asepsis. The great epidemics of the past remain a threat only where the required precautions are neglected.

## THE STRUCTURE AND THE PROPERTIES OF MICROORGANISMS

One of the first tasks faced by medical microbiologists was to devise techniques for the cultivation, the differentiation and the identification of the agents of disease. Much of the microbiologic literature published around the turn of the century deals with the development of selective culture media, the definition of physiologic activities (especially the ability to attack various sugars, alcohols and amino acids), the manner of growth in broth on agar in gelatin aerobically or anaerobically, etc. From the scientific point of view this literature is rather dull yet it provided the kind of information on which much of microbiologic taxonomy and etiologic diagnosis still depends today. Fortunately a broader kind of knowledge continued to develop along with this prosaic though essential type of information. Progressively the study of microbes as living entities moved into the main channels of biologic thought.

To the biologist of the 19th century bacteria had first appeared to be so primitive as to be at the very threshold of life. Speaking of what he considered the smallest and at the same time the simplest and lowest of all living forms, Ferdinand Cohn (1828-98) asserted in 1872: "They form the boundary line of life; beyond them life does not exist so far at least as our microscopic expedients reach and these are not small." The minute dimensions of bacteria were considered by many to be incompatible with any significant morphologic differentiation; it encouraged the chemist to treat the bacterial cell as a simple colloidal system and as a bag of enzymes. This assumed primitiveness of structure appeared to be confirmed in biochemical terms when Serge Winogradsky (1856-1953) announced in 1887 that cer

history of medical microbiology because it convinced the medical and the lay public that infectious diseases could be controlled by specific vaccines

Analysis of the mechanisms through which the body develops resistance against infection has proceeded along two independent channels. One group of studies was focused on the role played by various kinds of tissue cells in resistance to infection; another group emphasized in contrast the protective activity of blood serum and other humors. For many years a violent polemic raged between the protagonists of the cellular theory led by Elie Metchnikoff (1845-1916) and the protagonists of the humoral theory led by Emil Behring (1854-1917) and Richard Pfeiffer (1858-1945). Progressively, however, the truth emerged that cellular and humoral factors both play a role and indeed often act jointly. The modern position in this regard is presented in Chapter 8. For the sake of convenience it will be helpful to consider separately the development of knowledge concerning the cellular and the humoral mechanisms of defense.

Between 1870 and 1877 several pathologists and microbiologists had reported that bacteria were often seen in the leukocytes of pus; they concluded from such observations that these cells provide a suitable lodgement for microorganisms and help them to become distributed throughout the body. Metchnikoff placed a radically different interpretation on these facts. Observations in invertebrates and vertebrates convinced him that ameboid (mesodermal) cells commonly destroy the microbes that they ingest; for this reason he called them phagocytes (devouring cells) and concluded that they protect the body against infection. Indeed, he came to regard phagocytosis—the scavenging activity of macrophages and microphages—as the most important mechanisms of defense (1883). This view was strengthened through the demonstration by Denys and Leclef in 1845 that immunization greatly enhances phagocytic activity.

The humoral doctrine arose from the discovery of toxins and antitoxins. Pasteur had first recognized the role of bacterial toxins in infection during his work on fowl cholera (1880). Diphtheria toxin was discovered and studied by F. Loeffler, then by



FIG. 6 Elie Metchnikoff (1845-1916)

■ Roux and A. Yersin in 1887-88 and tetanus toxin by Knud Faber in 1890. The same year Behring produced diphtheria antitoxin and then tetanus antitoxin (in association with S. Kitasato). Further work by Behring and E. Wernicke, then by Roux and Martin, soon made it possible to treat diphtheria in man by antitoxin produced in horses. The development by Paul Ehrlich (1854-1915) of methods for the standardization of toxins and antitoxins (1896) provided a quantitative basis for therapy and for the analysis of antitoxic action. During the late 1880s and early 1890s several other findings provided additional support for the humoral doctrine of immunity.

It will be noted from the preceding paragraph that the fundamental discoveries concerning toxins and antitoxins were all made within a very few years. This rapid accumulation of new findings has remained to this day a characteristic of the science of humoral immunity—a consequence of the fact that it is much easier to experiment with serum and other body fluids than with living tissue cells. A number of discoveries with their respective dates will be listed in the following paragraph to illustrate further the rapidity with which the new science developed.

The bactericidal action of serum for anthrax bacilli was discovered by J. Fodor in



FIG. 5 Oswald Theodore Avery (1877-1955)

pidity with which they respond to the environment either by hereditary genetic variations or by reversible phenotypic modifications makes them ideal objects for studying some of the problems which are common to all living things. It is worth noting here for example that the lifelong dedication of Oswald Theodore Avery (1877-1955) to the study of pneumococci has paved the way for two large developments of modern biologic research: namely the immunochemical analysis of cellular structure and the role of deoxyribonucleic acids in the transmission of hereditary characteristics. Microbes truly appear as the most versatile tools of the general biologist.

### THE RESPONSE OF THE BODY TO INFECTION

From the most ancient times and even among extremely primitive people methods

have been developed empirically to increase resistance to noxious influences and infectious agents. In several tropical countries people expose themselves deliberately to various venoms in order to develop resistance to snake bites; the word *mithridization* recalls that King Mithridates had made it a practice to ingest small amounts of several poisons in order to protect himself from poisoning by his enemies. Ancient physicians of the Near East had learned that they could protect young women from the disfiguring effect of Aleppo boils by inoculating them on the thigh early in life with some of the infectious material. Variolation, the deliberate infection with smallpox under controlled favorable circumstances, had been practiced widely in Eastern countries long before the technique was introduced into England in the 18th century. The demonstration by E. Jenner (1749-1823) in 1796 that resistance to smallpox could be induced by injecting into man material from naturally acquired cowpox was the substantiation of a popular belief. The technique came to be called *vaccination* from *vacca*, the cow, and was immediately a triumphant success. Wherever it was applied systematically it reduced smallpox from a universal and often fatal disease to a medical rarity.

Thus immunization had long been practiced without rational basis, but it entered the domain of scientific medicine through Pasteur's studies on experimental infections. In 1879 Pasteur observed accidentally that chickens which had been inoculated with an old culture of chicken cholera and had failed to develop the disease proved to be resistant when reinfected with a young and highly virulent culture of the same microbe. Intuitively he recognized the analogy of this protective effect with that induced by cowpox against smallpox, and he referred to the newly discovered phenomenon as *vaccination* in honor of Jenner. Pasteur established the generality of the doctrine of specific immunization by developing vaccines against anthrax in 1881 and against swine erysipelas in 1882; he demonstrated their effectiveness and practical usefulness in spectacular field experiments. However, it was his work on rabies immunization (1888) that gained him international fame. Rabies immunization occupies a place of immense importance in the

history of medical microbiology because it convinced the medical and the lay public that infectious diseases could be controlled by specific vaccines

Analysis of the mechanisms through which the body develops resistance against infection has proceeded along two independent channels. One group of studies was focused on the role played by various kinds of tissue cells in resistance to infection; another group emphasized in contrast the protective activity of blood serum and other humors. For many years a violent polemic raged between the protagonists of the cellular theory led by Elie Metchnikoff (1845-1916) and the protagonists of the humoral theory led by Emil Behring (1854-1917) and Richard Pfeiffer (1858-1945). Progressively, however, the truth emerged that cellular and humoral factors both play a role and indeed often act jointly. The modern position in this regard is presented in Chapter 8. For the sake of convenience, it will be helpful to consider separately the development of knowledge concerning the cellular and the humoral mechanisms of defense.

Between 1870 and 1877 several pathologists and microbiologists had reported that bacteria were often seen in the leukocytes of pus; they concluded from such observations that these cells provide a suitable lodgement for microorganisms and help them to become distributed throughout the body. Metchnikoff placed a radically different interpretation on these facts. Observations in invertebrates and vertebrates convinced him that ameboid (mesodermal) cells commonly destroy the microbes that they ingest; for this reason he called them phagocytes (devouring cells) and concluded that they protect the body against infection. Indeed he came to regard phagocytosis—the scavenging activity of macrophages and microphages—as the most important mechanisms of defense (1883). This view was strengthened through the demonstration by Denys and Leclef in 1845 that immunization greatly enhances phagocytic activity.

The humoral doctrine arose from the discovery of toxins and antitoxins. Pasteur had first recognized the role of bacterial toxins in infection during his work on fowl cholera (1880). Diphtheria toxin was discovered and studied by F. Loeffler, then by

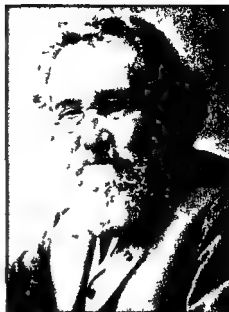


FIG. 1. Elie Metchnikoff (1845-1916)

E. Roux and A. Yersin in 1887-88 and tetanus toxin by Knud Faber in 1890. The same year Behring produced diphtheria antitoxin and then tetanus antitoxin (in association with S. Kitasato). Further work by Behring and E. Wernicke, then by Roux and Martin, soon made it possible to treat diphtheria in man by antitoxin produced in horses. The development by Paul Ehrlich (1854-1915) of methods for the standardization of toxins and antitoxins (1896) provided a quantitative basis for therapy and for the analysis of antitoxic action. During the late 1880s and early 1890s, several other findings provided additional support for the humoral doctrine of immunity.

It will be noted from the preceding paragraph that the fundamental discoveries concerning toxins and antitoxins were all made within a very few years. This rapid accumulation of new findings has remained to this day a characteristic of the science of humoral immunity—a consequence of the fact that it is much easier to experiment with serum and other body fluids than with living tissue cells. A number of discoveries with their respective dates will be listed in the following paragraph to illustrate further the rapidity with which the new science developed.

The bactericidal action of serum for anthrax bacilli was discovered by J. Fodor in

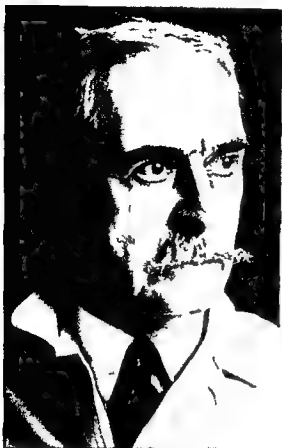


FIG 7 Karl Landsteiner (1868-1943)

1886 complement (alexin) by H Buchner in 1889 the lytic action of immune serum on cholera vibrios by Pfeiffer in 1894

Around the turn of the century an immense number of reports were published describing the acquisition of new activities in the serum of animals immunized with various antigenic materials. Only a very few of the representative contributions which thus gave rise to the derivative science of serology can be listed here. In 1889 Charrin and Roger noticed that the cells of *B. pyocyaneus* growing in immune serum lost their motility and clumped in agglomerated masses. Durham (1896) and M. Gruber (1897) then showed that such clumping by immune serum occurred specifically for each kind of bacterium. Specific agglutination as the phenomenon came to be called soon was applied for diagnostic purposes in particular by F. Widal for typhoid. In 1898 Jules Bordet (1870-1961) showed that injection

of red blood cells into animals also elicited the production of specific agglutinin and this discovery provided Karl Landsteiner (1868-1943) with a technic for the classification of blood groups (1900).

In 1898 Bordet observed that red cells were lysed by antiserum when fresh guinea pig serum (complement) was added to the system. This discovery was followed by the recognition of many other examples of immune lysins. Bordet and Gengou then demonstrated in 1901 that complement was removed or fixed in the course of serologic reactions and they worked out the complement fixation test as the most delicate technic for the detection of antigen-antibody reactions. In 1906 Wassermann, Neisser and Bruck applied this technic to the serodiagnosis of syphilis.

In 1897 Kraus observed that addition of specific antiserum to a clear filtrate of cholera vibrio culture resulted in the rapid production of a fine precipitate which aggregated into flocculi and settled to the bottom of the tube. Similar findings were made with filtrates of cultures of typhoid and plague bacilli and the reaction proved to be highly specific to the kind of bacterium. The serum components responsible for the reactions were called precipitins. Furthermore it was soon found that highly specific precipitins could be produced not only for bacterial filtrates but also for many other organic substances, especially proteins and polysaccharides. The precipitin reaction was applied by Nuttall to the study of phylogenetic relationships between mammalian species (1902-04); it permitted the serologic identification of blood stains and of adulterants in food, needless to say it provided also a valuable tool for the analysis of immune processes.

The first evidence of allergic reactions came from the discovery of tuberculosis by Robert Koch in 1890. Koch's claim that tuberculin was useful in the treatment of tuberculosis proved to be erroneous; nevertheless the tuberculin reaction turned out to be of immense importance as a highly specific diagnostic test of tuberculous infection. In addition it became the prototype of the delayed type of allergy. In rapid steps the field of allergy broadened through the discovery of anaphylaxis (Portier and Richet 1902).

of the Arthus reaction (Arthus and Breton 1903) of serum disease (von Pirquet and Schick 1905) and of the Prausnitz Kustner reaction (1921)

For a while agglutinins precipitins lysins and allergins were regarded as different substances elicited by the antigenic stimulus. As was remarked facetiously every time an immunologist discovered a new phenomenon he attributed it to a new phenom<sup>in</sup>in. In reality however it soon became apparent that all immunologic phenomena had a similar chemical basis and that their specificity is due to some change in the body cells or serum constituents which make them fit the molecular structure of the respective antigen. Paul Ehrlich was the first to formulate a theory accounting for these facts. From his student days he had been obsessed with the belief that the selective staining of tissues by various dyes was an expression of chemical affinity; he carried this line of thought into his analysis of the specific interactions between antigens and antibodies and into his formulation of the side chain theory and finally as we shall see later into his search for chemotherapeutic agents.

The side chain theory was a pictorial as well as picturesque expression of the lock and key relationship which governs the chemical affinity between antigen and antibody. Bordet elaborated on this theory by pointing out that while the specific adsorption of antigen or antibody had a chemical basis the final effects of the reaction were produced by a nonspecific action of electrolytes and a shift of electrical charges. In 1907 S. Arrhenius and T. Madsen postulated that the antigen antibody reaction behaved as a reversible reaction analogous to that between weak acid and weak base and they concluded that free antigen free antibody and antigen antibody complex could coexist in the same mixture.

The precise chemical formulation of immunologic specificity emerged from the monumental studies of Karl Landsteiner (1868-1943) whose classic monograph *The Specificity of Serological Reactions* (1944) gave its modern philosophy to the field. The quantitative analysis of serologic reactions began with Ehrlich's standardization of toxin and antitoxin (1896); it was extended

through the finding by Dean and Webb (1926) that antigen and antibody react in terms of relative proportions more or less independent of absolute concentrations. This quantitative approach reached its now classic form in the studies of Michael Heidelberger who showed that mass action formulae can be developed for many types of serologic reactions.

The complex nature of complement and the mechanism of its action are other aspects of immunologic science which are still in the process of definition (see Chaps. 8 and 9). Finally it should be mentioned that the participation of neurohumoral mechanisms in immune processes has been emphasized by a few Russian workers but constitutes a field which is almost completely neglected at the present time.

Each of the immunologic phenomena which have been mentioned has been used in the study of the constituents and products of the microbial agents of disease; the main results of such antigenic analysis are described in the chapters of this book devoted to the various microbial groups. Except in a few cases the analysis of *in vitro* serologic reactions has failed to provide a complete understanding of the processes which increase the resistance of the body to infection. Antitoxic immunity and the enhancement of phagocytosis of pneumococci by antibodies directed against their capsular polysaccharides constitute clear and well worked-out examples of humoral immunity. In contrast understanding of the mechanisms through which cells destroy the microorganisms that they engulf has not grown much since Metchnikoff's time; indeed there is still much doubt that cellular immunity really exists as an independent entity.

## THE BIRTH OF CHEMOTHERAPY

As in the case of immunization many empirical methods had been developed for disinfecting contaminated materials and even for treating some microbial diseases long before the advent of the germ theory. Thus fire, quick lime and various kinds of fumigations have long been used for the purification of air or objects assumed to be contaminated. Ipecacuanha root (containing

emetine) was considered as a specific in the treatment of dysentery before its effective ness in amebiasis had been proved and especially cinchona bark (containing quinine) has been the standard remedy for malaria (as well as for other fevers) since it was introduced from South America in the 17th century. Between 1750 and 1752 John Pringle presented before the Royal Society of London several papers describing Experiments Upon Septic and Antiseptic Substances thus introducing the term *anti septic* into the scientific literature. However as already mentioned the first conscious application of antiseptics based on the germ theory of disease was the use of phenol sprays by Lister in his surgical practice.

The modern chemical theory of disinfection and chemotherapy has its origin in the experimental studies of Paul Ehrlich between 1905 and 1915. His biochemical approach was an extension of his views on antigen-antibody reaction and can be summarized by two of his most famous aphorisms:

Only such substances can be anchored at any particular part of the organism which fit into

the molecule of the recipient combination as a piece of mosaic fits into a certain pattern.

Antitoxins and antibacterial substances are so to speak charmed bullets which strike only those objects for whose destruction they have been produced.

Ehrlich was obsessed with the belief that there must exist synthetic chemicals which like dyes and antibodies have a selective affinity for and hence a selective action on parasitic cells (*nihil agit nisi fixatur*). This selective chemical approach led him to the development of several drugs useful in the treatment of protozoal and spirochetal diseases. The best known of these is the organic arsenical arsphenamine (salvarsan) which under the name of 606 reigned supreme in the treatment of syphilis until the introduction of penicillin. Ehrlich failed in his attempts to discover the magic bullet which would be so specific for the microbes to be attacked that it would not damage tissue cells nor was he successful in developing drugs active against the true bacterial rickettsial and viral infections. Nevertheless there is no doubt that his work constitutes even today the most visionary and rational approach to chemotherapy.

The first drug to prove to be effective in the treatment of bacterial infections was the dye Protonsil which was first used by Foerster for the treatment of experimental streptococcal infection and was formally introduced by Domagk (1935) of the I G Farben industry in Germany. At the Pasteur Institute in Paris Trefouel soon discovered that the effective agent in Protonsil is not the dye itself (which by the way is completely inactive *in vitro*) but its simple cleavage product sulfanilamide. Thus was opened the chemotherapeutic era and the possibility of synthesizing many derivatives of sulfanilamide clinically superior to the initial product. The discovery by Woods in 1940 that sulfanilamide acts by interfering with the utilization of the essential growth factor para-aminobenzoic acid led to the theory that metabolic competitive inhibition is the basis of drug action. It appeared then and may still be true that the search for antimetabolites constitutes the most rational approach to the discovery of antibacterial drugs. In fact



FIG. 8 Paul Ehrlich (1854-1915)  
(Marquardt: Paul Ehrlich: Deutsche  
Verlags-Anstalt)

however the greatest therapeutic advances have come from another approach less well defined chemically and indeed almost empirical but more effective in practice

In 1877 Pasteur had observed that cultures of anthrax bacilli often died after becoming contaminated with soil bacteria and he suggested that this might have useful implications for the development of therapeutic agents. Many observations have since confirmed that certain microbial products are toxic for various microbial species. One of these was made by Alexander Fleming (1881-1955) who noticed in 1929 that an extract of a certain *Penicillium* had powerful antibacterial properties (see biography by A. Maurois 1959). Fleming named the active material penicillin but he could neither purify it nor obtain it in quantities sufficiently large for therapeutic assays. In 1939 R. Dubos developed a general technique which permitted the systematic search for antimicrobial agents among saprophytic organisms. It led to the isolation from a soil bacterium of an antibacterial agent tyrothricin which was active in the treatment of experimental infections in mice. The active material proved to be a polypeptide (gramicidin) which was crystallized, produced commercially and used in the treatment of infected wounds and of bovine mastitis; however its toxicity precluded its use in systemic infections. In 1940 H. W. Florey and E. Chain succeeded in preparing Fleming's penicillin in a stable form, crystallized it and demonstrated its phenomenal effectiveness *in vivo* as well as its lack of toxicity. Thus began a new era in antibacterial therapy which was marked by the discovery in rapid succession of several highly effective drugs obtained from molds and actinomycetes. Streptomycin discovered by A. Waksman in 1944 deserves a special mention here because it proved to be highly effective in the treatment of tuberculosis.

The enthusiasm created by the discovery of sulfanilamide, penicillin and other antibacterial drugs was so great that many physicians and scientists were led to believe that the conquest of infectious disease had finally been achieved. Soon however it became evident that several fundamental and prob-



FIG. 9 Sir Alexander Fleming (1881-1955) (Vogue 1953, Condé Nast Publications)

ably inescapable difficulties stand in the way of eradication of disease by drugs. Most microbes readily develop mutant forms which are drug resistant and it is proving difficult to discover new drugs fast enough to cope with this situation. Even more important, however, is the fact that many microbial forms persist in a dormant state in the tissues even after successful therapy. The problem of the persisters is as disturbing for the student of chemotherapy as the existence of the carrier state is for the student of epidemiology.

### THE EVOLUTION OF EPIDEMIOLOGIC THOUGHT

All ancient leaders of roaming tribes and conquering armies had to enact sanitary regulations in order to check the spread of





FIG 10 Theobald Smith (1859 1934)

filth diseases. Thus Moses formulated strict regulations for camp life before leading his people across the desert. In the words of the medical historian Garrison, "The ancient Hebrews were the founders of prophylaxis and their high priests were true medical police." The admonitions in Leviticus the various forms of taboos and quarantines found in all civilizations and the segregation of lepers during the Middle Ages are only a few of the many examples proving that practical men have long realized empirically that many diseases are communicable and that the best protection against them is to prevent their spread.

The enormous shifts of people brought about by the Industrial Revolution and the

attendant crowding in the filthy tenements of the mushrooming cities created conditions favorable for the spread of infectious diseases during the 19th century. The prevalence of epidemics stimulated important epidemiologic studies which led to highly effective control practices even before the pathogenic role of microbes had been convincingly established. The few classic examples now to be mentioned should be considered only as illustrations of the many facts which were established during the pre-microbial era.

In 1854 the cholera epidemic in London provided John Snow (1813-58) with the opportunity for a spectacular demonstration that water constitutes the vehicle through which this disease is transmitted. Within 250 yards from the spot in Broad Street where the outbreak began there were 500 deaths from cholera in 10 days. With unerring exactitude Snow traced the outbreak to a particular pump in Broad Street and found evidence that its water was contaminated with organic matter. Even though he knew nothing of cholera vibrios he thus demonstrated that cholera was water borne and he stopped the epidemic so the story goes by removing the handle from the pump. William Budd (1811-80) also provided convincing evidence that typhoid is transmitted by the excreta of the patient again without the benefit of bacteriologic knowledge. In Munich Max von Pettenkofer (1818-1901) went far toward ridding his city of typhoid fever simply by cleaning it up and providing it with pure water brought directly from the mountains. And similarly Florence Nightingale (1820-1910) effected her reforms of hospital sanitation simply through common sense practices and through her belief in pure air, pure water and cleanliness.

Florence Nightingale as well as von Pettenkofer remained to the end indifferent and even hostile to the germ theory of disease therefore it is of particular interest that they were so highly effective in combating infection. Countless similar examples could be quoted to illustrate that shrewd epidemiologic observations and the development of valuable sanitary practices are not entirely dependent on bacteriologic knowledge. The control of malaria and of yellow fever

through environmental changes which eliminated mosquitoes constitutes other examples of medical achievements based on epidemiologic rather than etiologic understanding.

Needless to say epidemiologic analysis became much easier and more precise when it could be based on knowledge of causative agents. One needs only mention as example the demonstration by A. Gartner in 1888 that an outbreak of food poisoning in a human population had been caused by *Salmonella enteritidis* which had contaminated the meat of a sick cow—a finding which provided the pattern for the study of human disease associated with animal infections. The control of water borne typhoid became much easier and more dependable after Theobald Smith (1859-1934) had shown in 1892 that the enumeration of coli forms in water provides a useful index of fecal contamination. Worth mentioning also is the demonstration by Theobald Smith and J. Ravenel that bovine tuberculosis can be transmitted to human beings for example through contaminated milk. A very large chapter could be written on the enormous practical importance of the demonstration that many protozoan, bacterial, rickettsial and viral diseases are transmitted by insects. Plague, rodents and their fleas have played a large part in the history of mankind and their interrelationships became clear only in the early years of the 20th century. Hans Zinsser made typhus the topic of a best seller as well as of a fascinating account of human epidemiology in his famous books *Rats, Lice and History*.

Progressively the knowledge concerning microbes, their vectors of transmission, the factors which affect their spread and the susceptibility of human populations to them became so extensive that epidemiologists found it possible to describe the course of epidemics in mathematical terms. In several cases indeed the shape of the epidemic curves proved to be almost predictable for each type of infection. Epidemiology thus progressed from qualitative and descriptive knowledge to the status of a quantitative science. However it is becoming apparent that the greatest difficulties in the understanding of epidemics and in the prediction of their course come not so much from a quan-

titative as from a qualitative deficiency of knowledge. Some of these deficiencies deserve mention here because they point to areas of ignorance which must be explored before further progress can be made in understanding the determinants of infection and of epidemics.

Direct transmission from patient to patient or indirectly through insect vectors, water, food and fomites accounts for only part of the spread of disease. One of the most obscure and important aspects of epidemiology is the persistence in healthy persons of pathogens which can initiate disease processes under ill defined conditions. The persistence of diphtheria bacilli in patients who had completely recovered was demonstrated as early as 1890 by E. Roux, A. Yersin and F. Loeffler. And ever since the existence of carriers has been recognized in practically every type of infection. Typhoid Mary is only the symbol of a type of latent infection which occurs not only in typhoid fever but also in countless other infectious diseases as well. Furthermore the problem has become still more complicated during recent years by the discovery that persisters commonly resist even the most vigorous forms of chemotherapy. It is now realized that many potential pathogens are widely distributed through the community yet they give rise to overt disease only under special conditions. As a result of this awareness there is developing an increasing preoccupation with the factors which convert infection into disease. In other words, interest in the properties of the microbial agents of disease is being supplemented by a lively concern with the genetic, hormonal, metabolic and nutritional factors of the host which affect his resistance to infection. The essays by Theobald Smith (1934) and N. H. Swellen Grebel (1939) are representative of this change of emphasis.

The significance attached to the expression "crowd diseases" illustrates well the shift of emphasis from the microbe itself to the host response. Until recent years students of infection had only a one-sided view of crowd diseases. They took it for granted that crowding brings about an increase in infectious disease simply because it facilitates the transmission of pathogens from one person to the

other. However observations on animals and man have now revealed that crowding profoundly affects physiologic processes even in the absence of infection for example it increases the activity of certain hormonal systems and disturbs certain metabolic functions. In consequence crowding can increase the prevalence and the severity of infection not only by facilitating the transmission of pathogens but also by decreasing host resistance to them.

### RETROSPECTIVE AND PROSPECTIVE

The history of medical microbiology thus provides a striking support for the view that the development of science occurs according to a dialectic pattern. Until the 19th century the medical scene was dominated by the Hippocratic doctrine infectious disease was regarded primarily as the consequence of some failure in the host. After 1880 it appeared that all infectious processes could be accounted for by purely microbiologic explanations—in terms of types, numbers, properties and structures of the invading pathogens. Today attempts are being made to integrate these two attitudes into an ecologic doctrine which would be the synthesis of the physiologic thesis and the microbial antithesis.

In fact the ecologic doctrine is making it clear that the problem of infectious disease involves more than the interplay between the pathogen and the individual host. Epidemics are phenomena which cannot be understood only from the happenings in individual patients; they must be studied at the population level. The response of a group to infection exhibits characteristics which are less the expression of the individual members of the group than of the interplay between them. In most cases for example the course of tuberculosis can be understood only by regarding the disease as a social phenomenon. The past and present history of the group determines the manner of its response to the tubercle bacillus and tuberculous infection in turn affects the behavior of the group as a whole (Dubos and Dubos 1952).

Man does not and could not live in a

biologic vacuum. Microorganisms are an inevitable part of his environment. His response to them is conditioned by his ways of life and on the other hand the effects of microbes on him are so varied and so great that they affect the structure of his societies. To be fully comprehended medical microbiology must be considered as an ecologic science.

### REFERENCES

- Bochall: R. 1954 Robert Koch 217 pp. Stuttgart: Wissenschaftl. Verlagsges.
- Bulloch W. 1938 The History of Bacteriology 422 pp. London: Oxford.
- Cohn F. 1939 Ueber die Bakterien, die kleinsten lebenden Wesen. *Bull. Hist. Med.* 7: 49.
- Dobell C. 1932 Antony van Leeuwenhoek and his Little Animals 435 pp. New York: Harcourt.
- Dubos R. 1950 Louis Pasteur. *Free Lance of Science* 418 pp. Boston: Little.
- Dubos R. and Dubos J. 1952 The White Plague: Tuberculosis, Man and Society 277 pp. Boston: Little.
- Ehrenberg C. G. 1838 Die Infusionsthierehen als Vollkommene Organismen. Ein Blick in das tiefere organische Leben der Natur 547 pp. Leipzig.
- Ehrlich P. 1908 Experimental Researches on Specific Therapeutics 95 pp. (The Harkness Lecture for 1907) London: Royal Soc. Med.
- 1900 On immunity with special reference to cell life. *Proc. Roy. Soc.* 66: 424.
- Godlee R. J. 1918 Lord Lister ed. 2: 681 pp. London: Macmillan.
- Greenwood M. 1935 Epidemics and Crowd Diseases 409 pp. London: Williams and Norgate.
- Koch R. 1882 Die aetologie der Tuberculose. *Berliner Klin. Wschr.* 19: 221.
- 1876 Die aetologie der Miltzbrandkrankheit begründet auf die Entwicklungsgeschichte des *Bacillus Anthracis*. *Beitr. Biol. Pflanz.* 11: 217.
- Landsteiner K. 1944 The Specificity of Serological Reactions rev. ed. 324 pp. Cambridge: Harvard.
- Marquardt M. 1951 Paul Ehrlich 250 pp. New York: Henry Schuman.
- Mauris A. 1959 The Life of Sir Alexander Fleming (Translated from the French by Gerard Hopkins) 293 pp. New York: Doubleday.

- Metchnikoff E 1901 *L'Immunité dans les Maladies Infectieuses* 600 pp Paris (Binnie F G (trans) 1905 *Immunity in Infective Diseases* 591 pp London Cambridge)
- Metchnikoff O 1921 *Life of Elie Metchnikoff 1845-1916* 297 pp New York Houghton
- Murray E G D 1952 *A synopsis of the history of medical bacteriology* in Dubos R 1952 *Bacterial and Mycotic Infections of Man* ed 2 886 pp Philadelphia Lippincott
- Pasteur L *Mémoire sur la fermentation appelée lactique* *Mémoires de la Société des Sciences de l'Agriculture et des Arts de Lille* Séance du 3 Aout 1857 *Oeuvres de Pasteur* II 3 13
- Smith T 1934 *Parasitism and Disease* 196 pp Princeton Princeton Univ Press
- Swellengrebel N H 1940 *The efficient parasite* (*International Congress for Microbiology 3rd New York 1939 Report of Proc*) pp 119-127 Baltimore Waverly
- Vallery Radot P 1922 *Oeuvres de Pasteur* 7 vols Paris Masson
- Vallery Radot R 1911 *The Life of Pasteur* (Translated by Mrs E L Devonshire) 2 vols London Constable 1911

2

# The Evolution of Microbial Diseases

## THE SO CALLED CONQUEST OF MICROBIAL DISEASES

By the 1950's the most optimistic dreams of the founders of medical microbiology had been essentially fulfilled in several countries of Western civilization. A very large percentage of the microbial agents of disease had been isolated, identified and cultivated in artificial media or in tissue cultures. Bacteriologic purity of the food and water supplies had become possible through technologic advances. Practical procedures had been worked out for the large scale production of killed or attenuated vaccines. Highly effective drugs had become available for the treatment of bacterial and parasitic infections. A variety of pesticides had been synthesized and had proved their usefulness for the control of insect vectors.

In many places economic prosperity and social organization have now made it possible to take full advantage of the extraordinary scientific achievements of the microbiologic era. As a result the mortality rates of infectious diseases have been brought down to a very low level, particularly among children and young adults. As a result the life expectancy at birth has soared to unprecedented high levels.

Therefore most clinicians, public health officers, epidemiologists and microbiologists felt justified in proclaiming during the 1950's that the conquest of infectious diseases had finally been achieved. Surprising enough this euphoria has not yet been dampened by the

increasing awareness that the morbidity rates of infection have not decreased significantly and in some cases have actually increased. Despite so much oratory on the conquest of microbial diseases the paradox is that the percentage of hospital beds occupied by patients suffering from infection is now as high as it was 50 years ago. Today as in the past disorders of the respiratory and the digestive tracts with a microbial etiology constitute the most frequent causes of absenteeism from school, office, factory or from training in the Armed Forces.

There is a widespread tendency to explain away the fact that infection remains a major cause of disease by invoking the emergence of drug resistant forms of bacteria, the appearance of new strains of pathogenic agents and the failure to apply with sufficient vigor the existing knowledge of prophylaxis and therapy. In reality however these explanations deal with only minor aspects of the problems. The more important reason for the stubborn persistence of infection lies in obscure phenomena concerning the interrelationships between man and his biologic environment. As we shall see there are important aspects of the infectious problem which are not controlled by sanitation, vaccines or drugs (Dubos 1965).

The point at issue is that the microbial diseases which account for the greatest morbidity in our communities today are completely different in their origin and manifestations from those which are dealt with so effectively by modern techniques. For this rea-

son they will require programs of study and of control different from those which have been emphasized so far. The real problem is not how to apply more effectively the control procedures that we already possess or how to improve them but rather to search for a qualitatively different kind of knowledge.

The sciences concerned with microbial diseases have developed almost exclusively from the study of acute or semiacute infectious processes caused by virulent microorganisms acquired through exposure to an exogenous source of infection. In contrast the microbial diseases most common in our communities today arise from the activities of microorganisms which are ubiquitous in the environment which persist in the body without causing any obvious harm under ordinary circumstances and exert pathologic effects only when the infected person is under conditions of physiologic stress. In such a type of microbial disease the event of infection is of less importance than the hidden manifestations of the smoldering infectious process and than the physiologic disturbances which convert latent infection into overt symptoms and pathology. This is the reason why the orthodox methods based on the classic doctrines of epidemiology, immunology and chemotherapy are not sufficient to deal with the problem of endogenous diseases. The need is to develop procedures for re-establishing the state of equilibrium between host and parasite.

The problems posed by microbial diseases of endogenous origin cannot be stated properly without some historical considerations of the changes in virulence that infectious agents have undergone in the course of time. From this point of view as we shall see it is not very enlightening to say of a particular microorganism that it has a high or a low virulence. A more meaningful statement is that a given pathogen is generally highly destructive in a given population when the two components of the system first come into contact and that the severity of the infectious process tends to decrease as contact between population and pathogen is continued over several generations. In other words the problem of virulence cannot be stated without historical perspective.

## HISTORICAL CHANGES IN INCIDENCE AND SEVERITY OF VARIOUS MICROBIAL DISEASES

History provides many examples of the fact that social misery and its usual consequence physiologic misery is commonly associated with increase in the prevalence and the severity of microbial diseases. War, famine and pestilence have been known to ride together throughout history.

In many cases of course the infectious diseases associated with crowding or war are directly the result of increased contact with particular types of microbial agents. Armies in the field have been plagued by typhoid and dysentery whenever the breakdown of sanitary practices has permitted massive infection with salmonellae and shigellae. Napoleon's troops contracted typhus when they were heavily exposed to lice and rickettsia in Eastern Europe during the 1812 Russian campaign. Similarly the Western allies suffered much from scrub typhus and malaria in the Asiatic theater during World War II even though the adult native populations with whom they were in contact suffered much less from these diseases to which they had been exposed throughout life.

Of equal importance and greater interest perhaps is the fact that crowding, wars and social upheavals can increase the prevalence of microbial disease through other mechanisms namely by creating conditions which decrease the general resistance of the body.

The tuberculosis epidemic which prevailed throughout the Western World during the 19th century owed part at least of its severity to the long working hours, the poor nutrition and the low living standards prevailing among the labor classes during the Industrial Revolution. As living standards improved tuberculosis mortality immediately began to decrease. The improvement was already noticeable at the end of the century long before any specific measure of prophylaxis or therapy had been introduced. Tuberculosis mortality again exhibited a sharp and sudden rise in parts of Europe during World Wars I and II and once more it resumed its downward course as soon as the hostilities were over.

During the 1920s inflation in Germany

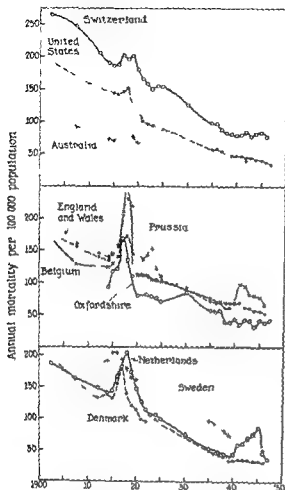


FIG 1 The effect of war on tuberculosis. The figures at the bottom indicate the years; those at the left, the number of deaths per year per 100 000 population (Dubos & Dubos 1952).

provided a spectacular illustration of the bearing of social factors on resistance to disease. Following an abrupt fall at the end of the war, the tuberculosis mortality increased sharply during the years of inflation and fell again as soon as stabilization of the currency allowed a return to more normal living conditions. The rapid and reversible manner in which the social body responds to changes in the social structure by changes in tuberculosis mortality rates cannot be explained in terms of infection rates. The more likely explanation is that large numbers of persons in our communities are in a state of unsteady equilibrium with tubercle bacilli as well as

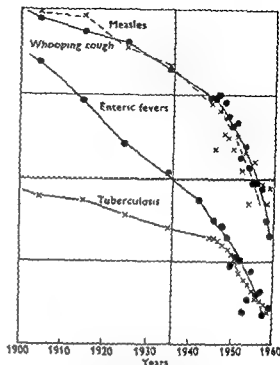


FIG 2 Shows the trend of mortality from some infectious diseases in England and Wales during the 20th century. Relative death rates are shown for measles, whooping cough, enteric fevers and tuberculosis. The absolute scales differ but all are shown logarithmically; the horizontal lines indicating a 10 fold difference. Between 1936 and 1960 there has been almost a 100 fold diminution in the deaths from whooping cough and measles (Burnet F M. *Natural History of Infectious Disease*, ed 3. Cambridge University Press 1962).

with many other pathogens and that this equilibrium is upset whenever disturbances impair the general state of resistance of the body (Dubos and Dubos 1952).

This relationship has been brought out in an analysis of the disease problems in German concentration camps during World War II. Among infectious diseases it was not the exotic, unusual epidemics like typhus, cholera or even bacillary dysentery which proved to be the most troublesome in the camps but rather ordinary skin ailments, colds, bronchopneumonias, staphylococcal infections, pulmonary tuberculosis—in other words, the type of diseases minor or severe

caused by microorganisms *endemic* in the normal European communities (Larsen *et al* 1952) Here again increase in contact infections could hardly account for the aggravation of these endemic diseases Far more important certainly was the loss of natural resistance caused by malnutrition and other forms of physiologic misery It was remarkable indeed that most of the internees overcame their microbial maladies shortly after their return to a normal environment often without the help of specific therapy Even in the case of tuberculosis rapid recovery was the rule though no antimicrobial agent was available for treatment of the disease until the late 1940s

The spectacular decrease in the mortality caused by certain microbial diseases in our communities is due in part to methods of prevention and therapy but in part only Important though it has been the effect of these methods does not explain the changes which have occurred during the past century The spectacular health improvements which have recently occurred in Puerto Rico illustrate well that the evaluation of the role played by control programs is complicated by a number of unresolved epidemiologic puzzles

As late as 1950 diarrhea and enteritis were listed as the leading causes of death in Puerto Rico with a mortality rate of 138 for 100 000 population This rate had fallen to 33 in 1962 The reasons for this startling change are obscure since the fundamental cause of most intestinal disorders is still today a matter for speculation and since neither antimicrobial vaccines nor drugs could have been used for prophylaxis or treatment During the same period the mortality from measles whooping cough and scarlet fever has also been reduced drastically again without the benefit of specific methods of prophylaxis or treatment

These epidemiologic puzzles are not peculiar to Puerto Rico Thus the mortality from tuberculosis from various diseases of the respiratory and the digestive tracts and especially from viral infections began to fall precipitously in Europe and in the USA long before the development let alone the use of specific methods of control (Dubos and Dubos 1952 Burnet 1962) (Figs 1 and 2) Granted that the hereditary levels

of innate resistance and susceptibility may differ from one national group to another the evolution of the microbial diseases of man strongly suggest that these characteristics are not necessarily of racial origin Usually they are rather the consequence of the extent and the duration of the contact that a particular group of people has had with a particular microbial agent The history of disease among the various Indian and Polynesian populations is instructive in this regard

Smallpox is thought to have been introduced into the American continent early during the Spanish Conquest probably by a Negro in Cortez's band The Indians proved to be highly susceptible to the disease which almost wiped out some of their settlements and there is reason to believe that this disaster contributed to their rapid defeat by the Spaniards The conquest of North America a century later provided further dramatic evidence of the susceptibility of the American Indians to smallpox Repeated outbreaks decimated village after village and at times whole tribes Early in the 17th century for example the Massachusetts and the Narragansett Indians were reduced from pre-smallpox populations of 30 000 and 9 000 respectively to less than 1 000 in a few years In the epidemic of 1837 the Mandan population fell from 1 600 to 30 the Assiniboins lost whole villages the Crows one third of their population while the total deaths among the Plains tribes amounted to 10 000 in a few weeks Similar outbreaks occurred as late as 1870-71 among the Blackfeet

Other microbial diseases brought in by the European invaders contributed still further to the rapid decline of the Indian populations during the 19th century There were more than 700 000 Indians in North America before the arrival of the Europeans but only 250 000 in 1850 Tuberculosis played a large part in this holocaust as illustrated by the epidemics which decimated the Plains Indians of Western Canada In the 1890s the death rate from tuberculosis in the Qu Appelle Valley reservation of Saskatchewan reached the fantastic figure of 9 000 per 100 000 population per year More than half the families of this tribe were eliminated in the first 3 generations of the



epidemic. Some 20 per cent of the deaths in the surviving families were caused by tuberculosis<sup>1</sup> (Ferguson 1955).

Microbial diseases among the Polynesians during the past century present a picture similar to that seen among the Amerindians. The South Pacific was explored during the second half of the 18th century. Granted that the charm of the Pacific Islands and the amorous welcome of their women may have warped the judgment of the European visitors, there is no reason to doubt the validity of their unanimous opinion concerning the health and the vigor of the Polynesian people at that time. The Europeans saw throughout the Islands robust and happy men and women obviously well adapted to their physical environment as well as to their local pathogens. Yet microbial diseases became rampant among the South Sea Islanders within a short time after these early explorations and the Polynesian population soon began to fall. From approximately 300 000 at the time of Captain Cook's first visit in 1778, the population of native Hawaiians had fallen to 37 000 in 1860. During the same period the population of the New Hebrides was reduced to one tenth of its original size.

There is no doubt that this catastrophe was brought about largely by venereal diseases, tuberculosis, scarlet fever, measles and other infectious disorders that the Polynesians contracted during their short contacts with the Europeans. When measles was introduced into Hawaii, practically the whole population went down with the disease and many thousands died. Epidemics of measles, pertussis and influenza occurred again in 1848 and every child born that year died. When smallpox struck in 1853, there were over 9 000 cases with 6 000 deaths out of a population of 70 000. During his second and third visits to the South Pacific, Captain Cook himself was much disturbed at the thought that his sailors were responsible for having introduced venereal diseases among the Polynesians in Tahiti. However, he found solace in the belief that the initial guilt was to be placed on Bougainville's French crew who had preceded them.

Many other epidemic outbreaks of disease could be selected to illustrate the de-

structiveness which viruses, bacteria and protozoa often exhibit when first introduced into a population. In Europe, plague caused a fantastic mortality during the Justinian era and again during the Renaissance. The sweating sickness that suddenly struck certain areas of England in Tudor times also proved to be disastrous, as can be judged from Caus's classic treatise *A Booke or Councell Against the Disease Commonly Called the Sweate or Sweatyng Sicknesse*.

The fact that a disease commonly exhibits extreme virulence when newly introduced into a population was once more illustrated in a dramatic manner by the outbreak of measles in 1952 among the Eskimos of the Canadian Arctic. The attack rate in this instance was over 99 per cent, including all ages and the mortality rate reached up to 7 per cent at Ungava Bay. An outbreak of poliomyelitis among a group of Eskimos of the Hudson Bay in 1949 exhibited the same pattern. Fourteen per cent of the population died, and over 40 per cent developed paralytic disease. In this case again all age groups were involved, the lowest clinical attack rate being in the infants.

Still another example made familiar by the writings of Albert Schweitzer is provided by African trypanosomiasis, also known as sleeping sickness. Trypanosomiasis was introduced in the Ogowe region of Equatorial Africa some 40 years ago by carriers that came with the Europeans from Loango, where it apparently has existed from time immemorial. The disease proved to be terribly destructive in its new territory, carrying off one third of the population in the course of a few years. In Uganda it killed 200 000 persons out of 300 000 in 6 years. Of the 2 000 inhabitants in a village of the Upper Ogowe, only 500 survived after 2 years of the epidemic.

The examples cited above—and these are only a few among many others that would tell the same story—leave no doubt that whole populations can be literally decimated by pathogens with which they have had little contact in the past. It is apparent on the other hand that the diseases introduced by the white man among the Indians, the Polynesians and other primitive people during the 18th and the 19th centuries no longer

affect them as acutely and with as rapid a fatal outcome as was uniformly the case in the past. These people have developed or are developing biologic responses to infection which are similar to those seen in the Western world under normal conditions.

The high mortality rates caused by the plague bacillus or by the yellow fever virus among Europeans probably can serve as an analogy for the degree of virulence that the tubercle bacillus or the measles virus had for the Polynesians or the Indians 2 centuries ago. Tuberculosis and measles are still important causes of disease among these people today, but as already mentioned they rarely give rise to catastrophic epidemics in the areas where they have been established for several generations. Similarly it has been observed that after a while African trypanosomiasis loses some of the destructive character that it exhibited when first introduced into new districts of Equatorial Africa. The disease lingers on but it carries off small numbers of victims instead of killing two thirds of the exposed populations as it once did.

Precise observations are available concerning the changes in the clinical manifestations of tuberculosis among some Indian tribes of North America. In the first and the second generations to suffer from the tuberculosis epidemic in the Qu Appelle Valley reservation extensive glandular involvement was the rule in school age children. Meningitis, generalized milary disease, and bone and joint disease were extremely frequent—evidence of inability of the host to localize infection. In 1921 at a time when the generalized epidemic was in the third generation the disease showed a greater tendency to localize in the lung and to exhibit a chronic course; the mortality was falling and glandular involvement had dropped to 7 per cent among school children. This latter manifestation of high susceptibility to tuberculosis has continued to decline steadily and was seen in less than 1 per cent of children in the 4th generation. In other words while tuberculosis among the Amerindians exhibited at first a very acute course different in character from that observed in people who have had contact with the tubercle bacillus for several generations, now it is

undergoing a change which makes it resemble the more chronic type of disease commonly seen among Western people under normal conditions (Ferguson 1955).

## EXOGENOUS VERSUS ENDOGENOUS MICROBIAL DISEASE

Irrespective of the specific nature of their etiologic agents and of their pathologic manifestations, microbial diseases can have two different kinds of origin. They can be either exogenous or endogenous.

Many pathologic processes are of course the direct outcome of exposure to a virulent pathogen. Smallpox, yellow fever, typhus, syphilis, diphtheria, tuberculosis, typhoid fever, malaria, etc. illustrate situations in which the disease can usually be traced to a well-defined exposure to the responsible microbial agent; the pathologic phenomena then usually develop within a fairly predictable period of time after exposure. This truly infectious kind of microbial disease with an exogenous origin is still of immense importance throughout the world, but it has become less of a menace in our own communities thanks to public health practices, vaccination, prompt diagnosis, and antimicrobial therapy.

In contrast, the microbial diseases which are now gaining prominence especially in the prosperous countries of the Western world are often caused by microbes formerly regarded as essentially harmless, for example, the coliform and other gram negative bacilli, the nonhemolytic streptococci, various kinds of yeasts as well as fungi, and probably many viruses still unidentified. Even though their virulence is low, nevertheless these organisms can give rise to serious pathologic states under special physiologic circumstances.

The expression *endogenous* microbial disease refers to any pathologic state caused by microorganisms acquired at some prior time which have persisted in the body as part of its indigenous microbiota (see Chap. 14). However, it is important to emphasize that highly virulent pathogens such as tubercle bacilli can also act as etiologic agents of endogenous disease. The reason is that most types of virulent organisms, if not all, can become established in the body and persist

it without manifesting their presence in the form of overt disease until the general resistance of the host is lowered

Endogenous microbial diseases have in ways been responsible for a very large amount of human misery but two developments have increased their relative importance and made them more obvious during recent years. One is that the exogenous infectious processes are increasingly being brought under control a situation which has made it easier to recognize the microbial diseases of endogenous origin. The other development is that paradoxically enough many therapeutic procedures introduced by modern scientific medicine favor the proliferation of certain components of the indigenous flora and thus allow them to cause disease. For example enteritis caused by staphylococci, yeasts or fungi frequently occurs when the normal intestinal ecology is disturbed by the administration of anti-microbial drugs. Similarly the microorganisms of the indigenous flora often proliferate after treatment with corticosteroids or antileukemic drugs as well as following certain surgical procedures such as subtotal gastrectomy.

Awareness of the fact that most pathogens are widely distributed and yet do not cause clinical disease except in a very small percentage of persons and animals harboring them has come chiefly from the study of latent viral and rickettsial infections. However latent infections with virulent bacteria, fungi and higher parasites are in fact at least as common as are those with viruses and rickettsia. Surveys made in different parts of the world show for example that 30 to 50 per cent of normal persons harbor coagulase positive staphylococci in their nasopharynx.

Until a few years ago practically all human beings in the Western world did become infected with tubercle bacilli and this situation still exists today in most underprivileged countries yet only a small percentage of tuberculin positive persons develop clinical tuberculosis. In the United States *Amoeba histolytica* can be isolated from the stools of a surprisingly large number of persons who have never suffered from amebiasis. Similarly some 30 per cent of the population give a positive skin test for toxoplasmosis

and encysted trichina are often found in muscles in the absence of any clinical sign of trichinosis. Indeed the list of latent infections with all classes of pathogens continues to grow as the search for them is expanded.

A few examples taken from the fields of animal and human pathology will illustrate how endogenous diseases manifest themselves under natural conditions.

Shipping fever, also known as transit fever, is a severe disease which strikes farm animals when they are moved from one area to another under conditions of stress. The disease is caused by a great variety of microbial agents. Calves, for example, commonly develop pneumonia or enteritis during transit and pigs become susceptible to the pathologic effects of *Erysipelothrix* which they carry in a latent state (Francis 1959). Interestingly enough, most of the manifestations of shipping fever can be prevented by treating the animals with tranquilizers at the time of shipment. In some unexplained manner these drugs minimize the physiologic disturbances which activate the indigenous microbial agents involved in shipping fever.

Two surveys recently made in large American hospitals highlight the importance of endogenous microbial diseases in man. At the New York Hospital 54 per cent of the fatal infections observed in 1957-58 occurred while the patients were under care on the medical wards; most of the infections were caused by microbes of low virulence and were brought about by therapeutic procedures directed at other disease conditions (Rogers 1959). At the Mayo Clinic only half of the 294 cases of meningitis studied during the 1950's could be traced to the classic etiologic agents of this condition, namely meningococci, pneumococci or influenza bacilli; the other cases were caused by common organisms such as *E. coli*, *Pseudomonas*, coagulase negative staphylococci, etc., not usually regarded as virulent.

### MICROBIAL PERSISTERS

The fact that most pathogens—viruses, rickettsia, fungi, bacteria, protozoa and even helminths—can persist in the body in a non-active state for prolonged periods of time

and that many types of microbes are always present in the tissues of all normal individuals is at the origin of some of the most important and most perplexing problems of epidemiology and clinical medicine. Furthermore, it has given rise to an extensive and rather confusing terminology. The expressions carrier state, latent, inapparent or dormant infection, masking and unmasking of viruses, etc., have never been clearly defined, and it is often difficult to differentiate the shades of meaning which they are supposed to convey. More recently, the word *persistor* has been introduced to designate the parasites which survive in tissues despite successful and prolonged chemotherapy (McDermott 1958, 1959).

It will suffice to point out here that pathogens and other microbes can persist in the body in a number of different states. At one extreme are those situations in which the pathogen exists in the tissues in a form which can be demonstrated readily by standard technical procedures. The recovery of typhoid bacilli from typhoid carriers or of the virus of herpes simplex from the tissues of normal persons are examples in point. At the other extreme are the situations in which recovery of the pathogen is all but impossible as long as the latent infection has not evolved into an active pathologic process in the infected animal or person. For example, the epidemic strain of typhus (*Rickettsia prowazekii*) can persist in man for many decades and remain undetected until it causes the Brill-Zinsser disease, or again murine corynebacteria can persist in an undetectable form in rodents yet multiply explosively as a result of stress, nutritional deficiencies or treatment with massive doses of cortisone (Fauve *et al.* 1964).

Technical difficulties often account for the failure to isolate the pathogen. Indeed, it is only in specialized cases that the methods in use at present permit detection of a single or a few infective units. Therefore, the report that a pathogen is inapparent or masked must always be judged in terms of the sensitiveness of the procedure used to test for its presence. In many cases, infected tissues contain growth-inhibitory substances which, although not capable of destroying the pathogen which is being looked for

*in vivo*, nevertheless can inhibit its multiplication *in vitro*. For example, neutralizing antibody transferred from infected tissue along with a virus is likely to prevent the latter from becoming established in a recipient animal. Tissue inhibitors other than antibodies can also cause difficulties, as when tissue constituents prevent the growth of tubercle bacilli in otherwise favorable culture media. Elimination of neutralizing antibodies and of other inhibitory agents is therefore a prerequisite for the successful demonstration of the presence of small numbers of infective units in the tissues, but few if any are the cases in which this can be done adequately.

Even more subtle mechanisms may be involved in the failure to recover pathogens from infected tissues. Viruses can persist *in vivo* in the form of naked nucleic acid structures, and bacteria in the form of proto-plasts as long as they are sheltered in the well-balanced environment of their hosts. However, such delicate infective structures are readily destroyed or inactivated when moved from their protective environment and as a result they usually escape detection by the customary laboratory procedures. The role of such naked infective particles in disease has not yet been fully documented, but their very existence illustrates nevertheless that many different mechanisms can account for the well-established fact that microbes often persist in the tissues even when it is impossible to demonstrate their presence by ordinary microscopic or cultural techniques. Finally, microbes can persist in a form which, though readily culturable, is so atypical as to prevent recognition. For example, the agent of murine corynebacterial pseudotuberculosis persists *in vivo* as an avirulent variant which reacquires virulence and multiplies extensively when the rodent is treated with cortisone (Fauve *et al.* 1964).

Oddly enough, the phenomenon of persistence has become more obvious and perhaps of greater practical importance as a result of the widespread use of chemotherapeutic agents. Whereas antimicrobial drugs are often highly successful in arresting the progress of disease, they rarely succeed in eradicating the causative agent from the tissues. For example, even after successful

treatment of scrub fever with tetracycline of gonorrhea with penicillin or of tuberculosis with isoniazid and other antimycobacterial drugs some of the causative rickettsia gonococci or tubercle bacilli persist in the tissues (McDermott 1958 1959 Smadel 1963) And so it is with many other types of infectious agents even following treatment with highly effective drugs

It is important to emphasize that contrary to common belief persisters are not necessarily forms of the organisms which have become genetically resistant to the drug used for therapy More often than not they are still drug susceptible in the genetic sense but either they exist in a physiologically resting form on which the drug is not active or they are located in parts of the body or in tissue cells which provide a protective shelter for them (McDermott 1958, 1959)

The production of persisters is not a phenomenon peculiar to chemotherapy It occurs also in the presence of protective antibodies because immunologic processes are rarely if ever more successful than antimicrobial drugs in fulfilling Paul Ehrlich's ideal of absolute sterilization In other words viruses bacteria and other pathogens can persist in the tissues even when the level of specific immunity is high enough to prevent the infection from progressing

### THE PHENOMENON OF INFECTION IMMUNITY (PREMUNITION)

It has long been recognized that the persistence in the body of a given microbial agent is accompanied by a high level of resistance to superinfection with this same agent Such a state of resistance was early recognized and designated as infection immunity or premunition Although emphasized chiefly for its relevance to malaria tuberculosis syphilis and relapsing fever infection immunity is certainly of very general occurrence but its study has been grossly neglected New observations made during recent years should renew and stimulate scientific interest in this unorthodox yet highly interesting field of theoretical and practical immunology

An illuminating example of infection immunity has been provided recently by the

study of the comparative resistance of several strains of mice to corynebacterial pseudotuberculosis Mice of the C57 Black strain are highly resistant to the causative agent of this disease *Corynebacterium kutscheri* whereas mice of the albino Swiss strain are highly susceptible Cross mating between the 2 mouse strains gives results suggesting that their difference in susceptibility has a genetic basis However when normal C57 Black mice are treated with large doses of cortisone they succumb from spontaneous endogenous infection with *Corynebacterium kutscheri* a fact which proves that they normally harbor this organism In contrast, albino Swiss mice subjected to the same treatment do not develop the endogenous disease and therefore must not be carriers This correlation between carrier state and resistance to superinfection has been established for many other strains of mice In other words resistance to superinfection with the corynebacterium in some manner correlated with the presence of persisters of this bacterial species (Fauve *et al* 1964)

These findings bring to mind the response of experimental animals to certain viral infections For example the virus of lymphocytic choriomeningitis produced a severe disease with fatal outcome when it was first introduced among albino mice but eventually it became established in several mouse colonies Within a few years after its introduction it was found to be present in all animals of these colonies producing in them a latent infection The infection was contracted in utero but did not manifest itself by any detectable sign of disease in adult animals even though their organs continued to harbor active virus throughout life In this case therefore a few years sufficed to change the type of relationship between mice and choriomeningitis virus from that of a virulent epidemic to a state of silent commensalism or symbiosis In many colonies the virus has become an unobtrusive guest the presence of which is barely noticed by the host but its presence renders the carrier mice resistant to superinfection

The response of animals to the polyoma virus provides another striking illustration of the resistance afforded by contact early in life with an infectious agent Injection of

the virus into a variety of species of experimental animals is likely to result in the production of many different kinds of tumors. However it seems that this happens only if the animals used are obtained from a colony free of polyoma. In contrast there is no evidence of tumor production in wild or laboratory populations of animals which normally carry the virus. Therefore as in the case of corynebacteria the acquisition of a viral agent either in utero or very early in life may fail to produce any sign of disease yet profoundly alter the response of the host that harbors it to subsequent infection with this virus (Huebner 1961).

The findings just outlined point to the paradoxical conclusion that animals and probably human beings may behave as if they were genetically resistant to a given agent yet owe this behavior in reality to some modification of their tissue response brought about by the fact that they carry persister forms of this very agent. Such infection immunity or preimmunity may also play some part in the life long immunity to viral infections which follows early exposure to the pathogen or vaccination with attenuated living vaccines.

It is certain that the conditioning of response brought about by infection in utero or very early in life operates through several unrelated processes ranging from immune tolerance through cellular and humoral immunity to nonspecific stimulation of defense processes. However whatever the theoretical basis of their individual mechanisms the various forms of infection immunity have in common certain practical consequences which suggest possible approaches to the control of some problems of infection. It has been observed for example that human beings who carry *Escherichia coli* do not readily become superinfected with other strains of this bacterial species. Furthermore recent clinical studies reveal that the colonization of human infants with virulent staphylococci can be prevented or retarded by early contamination nasal or umbilical with very small inocula of a coagulase positive strain of staphylococcus (selected because of its great susceptibility to penicillin and low virulence). Not only does the attenuated strain become lastingly established in the

artificially contaminated infants it also spreads to other human contacts and the over all effect is to limit the dissemination of more virulent staphylococci (Shinefield *et al* 1963 Dubos 1963).

Thus it is apparent that the ubiquitous presence of a potential pathogen in a community can confer a high level of resistance to this particular agent. Infection immunity probably does not constitute an immunologic entity but through the various mechanisms which permit microbial persistence it may play a very important role in the phenomenon of herd immunity.

## GENETIC DETERMINANTS OF MICROBIAL DISEASE

The changes which have occurred during historical times in the relation between man and the various microbial agents of disease suggest that either the latter undergo fluctuations in their infectivity and pathogenicity or that the resistance of man can fluctuate. It is probable in fact that both mechanisms can operate—in certain cases singly and in others jointly.

Of course viruses, bacteria and other parasitic agents can undergo mutations affecting most of their characteristics including their immunologic specificity and their virulence. While it is legitimate to assume that such mutations occur in nature so far it has not been possible to demonstrate convincingly that they play an important role in modifying the course of human epidemics. However observations made with the virus of rabbit myxomatosis in Australia and Europe have established that genetic changes in virulence can occur under natural epidemic conditions.

The European rabbit was introduced in Australia in 1859. As it had no natural enemies in its new habitat it spread rapidly over much of the continent and multiplied enormously. The rabbit population eventually reached several billions thus creating a grave threat for the agricultural economy of Australia. In 1950 the virus of myxomatosis was introduced in an attempt to control the rabbit population. Myxomatosis occurs naturally in the wild rabbits of Brazil but merely in the form of a benign tumor asso-

ciated with only a mild and transient viremia. The relationship between the Brazilian rabbit and the myxoma virus clearly denotes an ancient association resulting in ecologic equilibrium. In contrast European rabbits which had never had any contact with the virus uniformly develop an acute almost always fatal disease when inoculated even with very small doses.

The initial outbreaks of myxomatosis immediately after introduction of the virus in Australia were characterized by an enormously high case mortality rate—higher than 99 per cent. Within a short time however the case mortality had fallen to 90 per cent in areas where a second spontaneous outbreak had occurred. Interestingly enough it turned out that this lower mortality was due in part to a decrease in the virulence of the virus. Some details concerning this phenomenon are of interest here because the decrease in virulence was unexpected and probably has general significance for epidemiologic theory.

In Australia the virus is transmitted from rabbit to rabbit almost entirely through mosquitoes which act mechanically as flying needles. Because the highly virulent strains of virus kill rabbits within a very few days the chance for their transmission through the mosquito vector is rather limited. However when attenuated mutant strains of the virus appeared spontaneously, they produced a less rapidly fatal disease and the rabbit developed skin lesions of longer duration. Thus the less virulent mutant strains had a better chance of being transmitted through mosquito bites and they progressively displaced the original highly virulent strain in the field. A few years after the introduction of myxomatosis in Australia viral strains recovered from the field caused a mortality of 90 per cent in laboratory rabbits instead of 99 per cent as had been the case with the strain originally introduced (Fenner 1959).

While the evolution of rabbit myxomatosis in Australia can be explained in part by hereditary changes in the virus there is no doubt that it has been influenced also by hereditary changes in the host. As already mentioned the European type of rabbit introduced in Australia is immensely susceptible to myxomatosis, a disease with which it had no racial experience until a few years

ago. Now, however rabbits trapped in areas where the infection has been prevalent for several years exhibit a degree of resistance to the most virulent forms of the virus much higher than that exhibited by rabbits before the beginning of the epizootic or by rabbits carefully and constantly maintained in isolation. This increase in resistance has a genetic basis and therefore must result from the selection of mutant animals which had survived the initial outbreak. Genetic changes in resistance to infection are of course common among animals. In fact it is possible almost at will to select and breed laboratory animals having a high resistance or high susceptibility to one or another type of bacterial or viral infections (Lurie 1941; Webster, 1946).

It seems reasonable to believe but difficult to prove that genetic changes also occur in the resistance of man to his pathogens. Since epidemics with a great killing power among young people tend to eliminate a large percentage of those having a high degree of susceptibility the likely outcome is the selective survival of that segment of the population endowed with a higher than average innate resistance. Thus genetic resistance progressively accumulates in the affected population. The history of family groups strongly suggests that such a selective process resulting in higher herd resistance operated in Europe and America during the 19th century epidemic of tuberculosis as it certainly did when tuberculosis eliminated half the families among the Indians of the Qu Appelle Valley reservation (Ferguson 1955; Puffer 1944; Dubos and Dubos 1952). It is probable indeed that the decrease in the severity of tuberculosis in the countries of Western civilization during the past few decades has been brought about not only by improvements in standards of living and in medical care but also in no small part by genetic changes.

There are indications that a similar genetic selection has taken place in the Orient with regard to leprosy. Among people living today in the Hawaiian Islands, the Chinese, the Japanese and other Oriental people originating from areas where *Mycobacterium leprae* has long been ubiquitous seem to suffer from this disease far less commonly

than do the Polynesians who became exposed to it for the first time during recent centuries

A slight loss of virulence by the parasite and some increase in the genetic resistance of the host provide the right conditions for the development of acquired immunity in a large percentage of infected individuals. Here again rabbit myxomatosis in Australia constitutes an enlightening model. Protective antibodies have been found in the surviving animals trapped in infected areas. Therefore it can be surmised that the transmission of maternal antibodies helps the young to withstand infection during the first days of life and thereby allows them to develop their own active immunity.

The many interrelated aspects of this problem cannot be discussed here but it seems to be worth pointing out that the genetic and immunologic changes favoring resistance to infection which occur during a generalized epidemic are the almost inevitable outcome of prolonged contact between any parasite and any host. For this reason it seems unlikely that living species can ever be completely wiped out by epidemics, however virulent the parasite. The outcome of evolutionary forces is of necessity a *modus vivendi* according to which the parasite and the host reach some sort of equilibrium which permits the survival of both. The concept of successful parasitism so ably formulated by Theobald Smith (1934) and N. H. Swellengrebel (1940) a generation ago is another expression of this evolutionary equilibrium resulting from prolonged racial contact between host and parasite.

Evolutionary adaptation between hosts and their parasites helps to explain why the ability or the failure of a particular microorganism to cause disease cannot be fully explained in terms of the concepts encompassed by the word, virulence. The need to redefine virulence in terms of host-parasite relationships will now be illustrated by consideration of malignant malaria in primitive populations.

*Plasmodium falciparum* possesses attributes which make it highly virulent for most members of the human race. Yet this parasite produces only a rather mild disease in the Bush Negroes who live in the area in-

cluded in former Dutch Guinea. While over 90 per cent of these Negroes become infected with the malignant form of plasmodium shortly after birth, the infection contributes little if anything to infant mortality among them. Most adults if not all harbor the parasite in their blood but the intensity of parasitemia decreases with advancing age.

The extent of splenomegaly constitutes further evidence of the mildness of malaria in Bush Negroes. Among them the spleen rate declines from a high of over 80 per cent in infants to less than 15 per cent in adults. The fact that such a large percentage of adults show parasitemia without splenomegaly illustrates the two complementary determinants of the infectious process. On the one hand the parasite is virulent since it can become established, multiply and persist in the tissues. On the other hand the Bush Negro is resistant to the parasite since he can keep its proliferation under control and since his response to its presence is so mild that the infection usually fails to express itself in overt clinical disease (Swellengrebel 1940).

The probable explanation of these findings is that the Bush Negroes of Dutch Guinea have evolved in constant contact with plasmodia. Widespread infection constitutes a selective force favoring the kind of genetic endowment which makes it possible for human hosts and virulent parasites to coexist in a state of biologic equilibrium. In the case of African Negroes, as is well known, possession of the sickle cell gene constitutes one of the attributes of resistance to malaria. Needless to say, immune responses reinforce the effectiveness of genetic mechanisms when the parasite is ubiquitous in the environment.

Similar phenomena of adaptive host-parasite relationships certainly occur in all other infectious diseases of mankind. On a few occasions during historical times the social and economic circumstances proved to be favorable for the spread of *Pasteurella pestis* among the population of Western Europe and every time the mortality that it caused was enormous. During the Justinian era in the Roman world and again during the Renaissance in Italy, France, England and other parts of Europe, whole areas were decimated by the bubonic and pneumonic



forms of plague *Pasteurella pestis* is still widely distributed today in certain parts of Asia but granted that it constitutes an important cause of disease in these populations it does not behave toward them as the terrible scourge which almost depopulated Europe on two occasions. Similarly cholera can run a fulminating fatal course in people exposed for the first time to its causative vibrio yet the disease is commonly present as a rather mild annoyance in many bazaars of Asia.

Like protozoa and bacteria viruses also tend to approach a state of biologic equilibrium with man. Thus, a great variety of respiratory infections which are now extremely common and rather mild in our communities are caused by viruses which probably were at a time responsible for more severe pathologic processes. Evolutionary adaptation may have taken place even in the case of paralytic poliomyelitis. Until recent times most human beings in our communities became infected with polio viruses but only a very small percentage of the infected persons developed paralytic disease. In general the infection expressed itself in the form of symptoms so mild as to be overlooked. True enough maternal antibodies did account in large part for the failure to develop disease following infection but it is probable that genetic mechanisms of resistance were also involved.

Herpes simplex infection is of special interest in this regard because the virus is potentially capable of causing acute and fatal encephalitis. More generally however large numbers of children and young adults become infected without displaying severe pathologic signs and they continue to carry the virus throughout life. In our communities herpes infection is known chiefly in the form of fever blisters a self limiting disease which occurs only when the carrier of the virus is under some form of physiologic stress. Man has come close to achieving a state of biologic adaptation to the herpes virus as well as to many other viruses which are ubiquitous in his communities.

## THE ACTIVATION OF ENDOGENOUS MICROBIAL DISEASE

In the late stages of evolutionary adaptation between a given parasite and its host

in a given community infection is extremely prevalent but it rarely evolves into overt and fatal disease. Thus, given enough time a state of peaceful coexistence can be established between any host and any parasite. Microbial persistence not accompanied by acute or destructive pathologic processes is therefore not a laboratory freak not a rare phenomenon engendered by tricky manipulations of antimicrobial drugs or immunologic responses. Throughout nature, infection with out disease is the rule rather than the exception.

However latent infections can become activated by many different kinds of changes either in the host or in the environment. For this reason a large and most important aspect of the epidemiology of disease (as contrasted with the epidemiology of infection) has to do with the factors which upset the equilibrium between host and parasite and thereby convert dormant infection into overt disease.

Maintenance of health despite persisting infection means of course that the mechanisms of physiologic resistance and the humoral or cellular processes involved in acquired immunity are capable of inhibiting the multiplication of the parasites but not of eradicating them from the tissues. However this does not imply that acquired immunity necessarily results in freedom from disease for there are many types of physiologic disturbances which allow the parasite to multiply extensively even if the host is specifically immune to it. For example persons who carry the virus of herpes simplex commonly have a high level of neutralizing antibodies for this virus in their serum nevertheless they can experience transient episodes of viral multiplication under the influence of nonspecific stimuli—such as certain types of fever excessive exposure to the sun fatigue menstruation or section of the trigeminal nerve. The result is then the production of herpes blisters even in the presence of humoral immunity to the virus.

On the basis of clinical experience as well as of common observation it is usually considered to be self evident that susceptibility to all sorts of infectious agents is much increased by the various stresses and strains of life. Patients as well as their physicians tend to incriminate poor constitution bad

weather lack of sleep or emotional disturbances in the causation of disease even when it is certain that the signs and symptoms result from the activities of viruses or bacteria. The life situations which have been assumed to be responsible for the activation of endogenous microbial disease range all the way from the physiologic misery and deprivations of internees in concentration camps to the emotional upsets resulting from business failure or an unhappy love affair.

Unfortunately few are the cases in which a convincing correlation has been established between the physiologic state of the host and his susceptibility to infection. Diabetes constitutes probably the best-documented example of this type of relationship since there is no doubt that the poorly controlled diabetic patient is easy prey to staphylococci, tubercle bacilli and many other kinds of bacteria. It is also true on the other hand that his resistance to infection becomes almost normal once the diabetes is controlled by adequate insulin therapy. In this case therefore the response of the host to infection is under the influence of events perhaps biochemical in nature which can be altered reversibly by the physiologic control mediated through insulin. Certain therapeutic procedures also can increase susceptibility to infection. As already mentioned the very use of antibacterial drugs not uncommonly favors the multiplication *in vivo* of microorganisms which are not susceptible to these drugs probably by first eliminating the normal body flora. Extensive surgery and any form of trauma especially if it results in a state of shock is another procedure which can render partially ineffective the defense mechanisms of the body at least for a while.

Therefore it is certain that many nonspecific stresses increase the vulnerability of the host, but there is little if any understanding of the mechanisms through which these effects are exerted. Indeed many of the relationships that are believed to be so obvious as to need no demonstration in reality have proved to be almost impossible to reproduce in the laboratory. For example it is often difficult to increase the susceptibility of animals to infection by nutritional deficiencies, temperature changes or emotional upsets. More surprisingly experiments in human volunteers fail in many cases to provide clear

evidence that exposure to cold and other forms of bad weather increases susceptibility to upper respiratory infections. Because of these difficulties it has not yet been feasible to identify the physiologic and biochemical mechanisms through which environmental stresses alter the body response to microbial agents.

A few forms of activation of endogenous disease have been consistently reproduced and studied in laboratory models. Thus as already mentioned the susceptibility of experimental animals to infections caused by the microbial agents that they normally carry in their tissues can be consistently increased by administration of antibacterial drugs by production of traumatic shock or by extensive body irradiation. Treatment with large doses of cortisone is one of the most popular laboratory techniques of activation a fact of great importance since administration of this hormone has been a frequent cause of grave clinical accidents in man. The infection enhancing effect of cortisone may provide a clue for the analysis of a large and ill understood problem namely the manner in which environmental stimuli including emotional disturbances affect endocrine activity and thereby modify indirectly resistance to disease. ACTH also can enhance infection in certain experimental models and its enhancing effect can be neutralized by the proper dose of somatotrophic hormone. Injection of thyroid hormone into rabbits markedly increases their resistance to experimental tuberculosis but in contrast hypothyroidism seems to be associated with increased susceptibility to other infections.

While it is certain that the course of infectious processes can be altered profoundly by a variety of hormonal influences the mechanisms involved are far from clear. The fact that cortisone interferes with the production of antibodies under certain conditions seems at first sight to provide the clue to the problem but this immunologic inhibition cannot account entirely for the infection enhancing effect of the hormone. In addition to interfering with antibody production cortisone influences many other physiologic processes some of which may affect directly or indirectly the response of the body to infection. Interference with the inflammatory response and with the activity of the reticulo-

forms of plague *Pasteurella pestis* is still widely distributed today in certain parts of Asia but granted that it constitutes an important cause of disease in these populations it does not behave toward them as the terrible scourge which almost depopulated Europe on two occasions. Similarly cholera can run a fulminating fatal course in people exposed for the first time to its causative vibrio yet the disease is commonly present as a rather mild annoyance in many bazaars of Asia.

Like protozoa and bacteria viruses also tend to approach a state of biologic equilibrium with man. Thus a great variety of respiratory infections which are now extremely common and rather mild in our communities are caused by viruses which probably were at a time responsible for more severe pathologic processes. Evolutionary adaptation may have taken place even in the case of paralytic poliomyelitis. Until recent times most human beings in our communities became infected with polio viruses but only a very small percentage of the infected persons developed paralytic disease in general the infection expressed itself in the form of symptoms so mild as to be overlooked. True enough maternal antibodies did account in large part for the failure to develop disease following infection but it is probable that genetic mechanisms of resistance were also involved.

Herpes simplex infection is of special interest in this regard because the virus is potentially capable of causing acute and fatal encephalitis. More generally however large numbers of children and young adults become infected without displaying severe pathologic signs and they continue to carry the virus throughout life. In our communities herpes infection is known chiefly in the form of fever blisters a self limiting disease which occurs only when the carrier of the virus is under some form of physiologic stress. Man has come close to achieving a state of biologic adaptation to the herpes virus as well as to many other viruses which are ubiquitous in his communities.

### THE ACTIVATION OF ENDOGENOUS MICROBIAL DISEASE

In the late stages of evolutionary adaptation between a given parasite and its host

in a given community infection is extremely prevalent but it rarely evolves into overt and fatal disease. Thus given enough time a state of peaceful coexistence can be established between any host and any parasite. Microbial persistence not accompanied by acute or destructive pathologic processes is therefore not a laboratory freak not a rare phenomenon engendered by tricky manipulations of antimicrobial drugs or immunologic responses. Throughout nature infection with out disease is the rule rather than the exception.

However latent infections can become activated by many different kinds of changes either in the host or in the environment. For this reason a large and most important aspect of the epidemiology of disease (as contrasted with the epidemiology of infection) has to do with the factors which upset the equilibrium between host and parasite and thereby convert dormant infection into overt disease.

Maintenance of health despite persisting infection means of course that the mechanisms of physiologic resistance and the humoral or cellular processes involved in acquired immunity are capable of inhibiting the multiplication of the parasites but not of eradicating them from the tissues. However this does not imply that acquired immunity necessarily results in freedom from disease for there are many types of physiologic disturbances which allow the parasite to multiply extensively even if the host is specifically immune to it. For example persons who carry the virus of herpes simplex commonly have a high level of neutralizing antibodies for this virus in their serum nevertheless they can experience transient episodes of viral multiplication under the influence of nonspecific stimuli—such as certain types of fever excessive exposure to the sun fatigue menstruation or section of the trigeminal nerve. The result is then the production of herpes blisters even in the presence of humoral immunity to the virus.

On the basis of clinical experience as well as of common observation it is usually considered to be self evident that susceptibility to all sorts of infectious agents is much increased by the various stresses and strains of life. Patients as well as their physicians tend to incriminate poor constitution bad

of microbial diseases leaves no doubt furthermore that changes can occur in the parasite in the host and in the type of relationship that exists between them. That the changes can occur rapidly has been shown with myxomatosis in rabbits and also with lymphocytic choriomeningitis in mice.

It is clear in conclusion that the type of relationship existing at any given time between hosts and their parasites is the outcome of many different factors including past racial experience evolutionary adaptation through genetic changes and immunologic processes transient disturbances in the internal and the external environments. In the classic infections of exogenous origin the determining etiologic event of the disease is exposure to the infective microorganism. In endogenous microbial disease the immediate cause is the environmental factor which upsets the biologic equilibrium that normally exists between the host and the microbial agents (persisters). This profound difference in etiologic mechanism suggests that the methods used in the control of microbial diseases both prophylactically and therapeutically must differ from place to place and vary from time to time. The methods of sanitation and vaccination that were designed to cope with the great epidemics of the past will not prove to be effective in the control of the disease states caused by microbial agents which are ubiquitous in our communities in the form of dormant infections.

So far the main goal of medical microbiology has been to prevent infection from taking place or if it occurs to treat disease once it has become established. The techniques designed to this end aim at attacking the microbial agents. It might be worth considering now whether useful practices of disease control can be derived from the fact that peaceful coexistence with pathogens often occurs in nature. This approach will require that the determinants of infection be separated conceptually from the determinants of disease; its objective will be to understand and control the processes which are responsible for converting infection into overt disease.

## REFERENCES

- Burnet F 1962 *Natural History of Infectious Disease* ed 3 377 pp New York Cambridge University Press
- Dubos R 1963 *Staphylococci and infection immunity* JAMA 184 104
- 1954 *Biochemical Determinants of Microbial Diseases* 152 pp Cambridge Harvard
- 1965 *Man Adapting* Yale U. Press
- Dubos R and Schaedler R W 1959 *Nutrition and infection* J Pediat 55 1
- Dubos R and Dubos J 1952 *The White Plague Tuberculosis Man and Society* 277 pp Boston Little
- Fauve R Pierce C C and Dubos R 1964 *Corynebacterial pseudotuberculosis in mice II Activation of natural and experimental latent infections* J Exp Med (in press)
- Fenner F 1959 *Myxomatosis in Australian Wild Rabbits—Evolutionary Changes in an Infectious Disease* The Harvey Lectures pp 25 55 New York Acad Press
- Ferguson K 1955 *Studies in Tuberculosis* 124 pp Toronto Toronto University
- Francis J 1959 *Transport of animals by road rail sea and air* Animal Welfare League Topics New South Wales Vol 1 No 2
- Huebner R 1961 *Cancer as an Infectious Disease* The Harvey Lectures pp 45 62 New York Acad Press
- Larsen P Hoffmeyer H Kieler J Thaysen H Thaysen J Thygesen P and Wulff M 1952 *Famine Disease in German Concentration Camps Complications and Sequels With Special Reference to Tuberculosis Mental Disorders and Social Consequences* 460 pp Copenhagen Munksgaard
- Lurie M 1941 *Heredity constitution and tuberculosis an experimental study* Am Rev Tuberc 44 1
- McDermott W 1959 *Inapparent infection* Public Health Rep 74 485
- 1958 *Microbial persistence* Yale J Biol Med 30 257
- Nicolle C 1930 *Naissance Vie et Mort des Maladies Infectieuses* 219 pp Paris Alcan
- Puffer R 1944 *Familial susceptibility to tuberculosis* Harvard University monograph in medicine and public health No 5 Cambridge Harvard
- Rogers D 1959 *The changing pattern of life threatening microbial disease* New Eng J Med 261 677
- Scrimshaw N Taylor C and Gordon J 1959 *Interactions of nutrition and infection* Am J Med Sci 737 367
- Seronde J 1954 *Resistance of rats to inoculation with corynebacterium pathogenic in pantothenate deficiency* Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 85 521

endothelial system disturbance of intermediary metabolism activation of proteolytic enzymes are only a few of the effects of cortisone that might be of importance in this regard

Nutrition is one of the environmental factors for which it is easy to postulate hypothetical mechanisms explaining a role in infectious processes. Once pathogens have become established in the body, there come into play a variety of responses that tend to limit their spread beyond the site of the initial lesion. One of the essential components of the walling off process is the deposition of fibrin of the sulfated polysaccharides of reticulum and finally of collagen. The very nature of this response involving as it does the synthesis of large amounts of special polysaccharides and proteins points to the possibility that it can be interfered with by many metabolic and nutritional disturbances. For example deficiency in vitamin C or in dietary sulfur is known to retard the production of reticulum similarly quantitative or qualitative inadequacies in intake of protein or amino acids can handicap the production of fibrin and collagen. It has been shown in fact that the rate of healing of wounds is influenced markedly by these dietary factors.

There is no doubt that nutritional deficiencies play a decisive role in the prevalence and the severity of microbial diseases among underprivileged people. For example the very high susceptibility of patients suffering from kwashiorkor to all sorts of viral bacterial and parasitic diseases is a direct consequence of protein malnutrition. However in our own communities it is far more difficult to relate microbial diseases to the nutritional state. The problem is further complicated by the fact that paradoxically enough certain nutritional deficiencies seem to increase rather than decrease the resistance to certain viral infections. (Reviewed in Dubos and Schaedler 1959, Scrimshaw *et al* 1959)

#### DETERMINANTS OF MICROBIAL DISEASE

Thus many are the ways in which the total environment can affect the interplay between man and the countless microbial agents which he normally carries or with which he comes into contact. This interplay can result in dis-

ease or be compatible with the maintenance of health, depending on the environmental circumstances under which the encounter between man and microbe takes place. In other words the ecology of microbial disease is under the influence of factors both general and local independent of those which control the frequency of contact with infectious agents. To a large extent endogenous microbial diseases are therefore indirectly the expressions of environmental forces.

The relative importance of the factors which determine the chance that infection will take place and of those responsible for converting latent infection into overt disease is conditioned naturally by the characteristics of each particular microbial agent but also varies from one population and one community to another. When a group of people whatever the race first comes into contact with a pathogen the chance is great that the general mechanisms of resistance will be of little avail and that infection will become manifest in the form of severe disease in a very large percentage of the persons infected. This type of situation developed when small pox measles tuberculosis etc. were first introduced among the Amerindians and other primitive people. It was produced experimentally by introducing the myxoma virus among the rabbits in Australia and Europe. It probably would happen again if yellow fever plague or any type of infection with which Western man has not had wide contact recently were introduced for the purpose of biologic warfare. The possibility that mutants of common pathogens can behave as new agents of disease against which the general mechanisms of resistance is of little avail has been suggested to account for the virulence of widespread epidemics like the influenza of 1918-1919.

At the other extreme are the epidemiologic situations in which a particular microorganism is ubiquitous in a given community and becomes established in a latent form as a persister in most normal individuals. Since the event of infection is not the variable in this type of epidemiologic system the factors that upset the ecologic equilibrium between host and parasite then become the effective determinants of disease. Needless to say there are many intermediate situations between these two extremes and the evolution

of microbial diseases leaves no doubt furthermore that changes can occur in the parasite in the host and in the type of relationship that exists between them. That the changes can occur rapidly has been shown with myxomatosis in rabbits and also with lymphocytic choriomeningitis in mice.

It is clear in conclusion that the type of relationship existing at any given time between hosts and their parasites is the outcome of many different factors including past racial experience, evolutionary adaptation through genetic changes and immunologic processes, transient disturbances in the internal and the external environments. In the classic infections of exogenous origin the determining etiologic event of the disease is exposure to the infective microorganism. In endogenous microbial disease the immediate cause is the environmental factor which upsets the biologic equilibrium that normally exists between the host and the microbial agents (persisters). This profound difference in etiologic mechanism suggests that the methods used in the control of microbial diseases both prophylactically and therapeutically must differ from place to place and vary from time to time. The methods of sanitation and vaccination that were designed to cope with the great epidemics of the past will not prove to be effective in the control of the disease states caused by microbial agents which are ubiquitous in our communities in the form of dormant infections.

So far the main goal of medical microbiology has been to prevent infection from taking place or if it occurs to treat disease once it has become established. The techniques designed to this end aim at attacking the microbial agents. It might be worth considering now whether useful practices of disease control can be derived from the fact that peaceful coexistence with pathogens often occurs in nature. This approach will require that the determinants of infection be separated conceptually from the determinants of disease; its objective will be to understand and control the processes which are responsible for converting infection into overt disease.

## REFERENCES

- Burnet F 1962 *Natural History of Infectious Disease* ed 3 377 pp New York Cambridge University Press
- Dubos R 1963 *Staphylococci and infection immunity* JAMA 184 104
- 1954 *Biochemical Determinants of Microbial Diseases* 152 pp Cambridge Harvard
- 1965 *Man Adapting* Yale U Press
- Dubos R and Schaedler R W 1959 *Nutrition and infection* J Pediat 55 1
- Dubos R and Dubos J 1952 *The White Plague Tuberculosis Man and Society* 277 pp Boston Little
- Fauve R, Pierce C C and Dubos R 1964 *Corynebacterial pseudotuberculosis in mice II Activation of natural and experimental latent infections* J Exp Med (in press)
- Fenner F 1959 *Myxomatosis in Australian Wild Rabbits—Evolutionary Changes in an Infectious Disease* The Harvey Lectures pp 25 55 New York Acad Press
- Ferguson R 1955 *Studies in Tuberculosis* 124 pp Toronto Toronto University
- Francis J 1959 *Transport of animals by road rail sea and air* Animal Welfare League Topics New South Wales Vol 1 No 2
- Huebner R 1961 *Cancer as an Infectious Disease* The Harvey Lectures pp 45 62 New York Acad Press
- Larsen P, Hoffmeyer H, Kieler J, Thaysen E, Thaysen J, Thygesen P and Wulff M 1952 *Famine Disease in German Concentration Camps Complications and Sequels With Special Reference to Tuberculosis Mental Disorders and Social Consequences* 460 pp Copenhagen Munksgaard
- Lurie M 1941 *Heredity constitution and tuberculosis an experimental study* Am Rev Tuberc 44 1
- McDermott W 1959 *Inapparent infection* Public Health Rep 74 485
- 1958 *Microbial persistence* Yale J Biol Med 30 257
- Nicolle C 1930 *Naissance Vie et Mort des Maladies Infectieuses* 219 pp Paris Alcan
- Puffer R 1944 *Familial susceptibility to tuberculosis* Harvard University monograph in medicine and public health No 5 Cambridge Harvard
- Rogers D 1959 *The changing pattern of life threatening microbial disease* New Eng J Med 261 677
- Scrimshaw N, Taylor C and Gordon J 1959 *Interactions of nutrition and infection* Am J Med Sci 737 367
- Seronde J 1954 *Resistance of rats to inoculation with corynebacterium pathogenic in pantothenate deficiency* Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 85 521

- Shinefield H 1963 Bacterial interference its effect on nursery acquired infection with *Staphylococcus aureus* *Am J Dis Child* 105 646
- Simon H J Attenuated Infection Philadelphia J B Lippincott 1960 349 pp
- Smadel J 1963 Intracellular infections *Bull NY Acad Med* 39 158
- Smith T 1934 Parasitism and Disease 196 pp Princeton N J Princeton
- Swellengrebel N H 1940 The Efficient Parasite pp 119 127 (International Congress for Microbiology 3rd New York 1939 Report of proceedings) Baltimore Waverly
- Thomson D 1955 The ebb and flow of infection *Monthly Bull Minist Health* 14 106
- Webster L T 1946 Experimental epidemiology *Medicine* 25 77

# 3

## Morphology and Chemical Anatomy of Bacteria\*

### METHODS

Before 1940 practically all investigations on the morphology and the structure of bacterial cells were performed by ordinary light microscopy using bright or darkfield illumination. During the last 20 years several new methods of microscopy have been developed. Thus the technics for phase contrast, anoptical (Wilska 1954) and fluorescence (Naum 1962) light microscopy and electron microscopy (Kay 1962) have come into use in bacteriological research.

Under the ordinary microscope living unstained bacteria appear without much contrast against the surrounding medium (Fig 1 A). To enhance the contrast the bacteria may be stained (Fig 1 D). It is also possible to stain selectively certain structures within the bacterial cells (Fig 1 E, Fig 2, Fig 28). Before the cells are stained usually they are fixed by heat or chemical agents. Vital stains are seldom used in bacteriology. It is well to remember that fixation and staining procedures may produce artifacts (Murray 1960). Thus structural details appearing in stained preparations should be interpreted with caution.

Under the phase contrast and anoptical mi-

croscope living bacteria appear with considerable contrast against the background and internal structures may become visible (Fig 1 B). The halo seen around bacteria in the phase contrast microscope is not noticeable when the anoptical microscope is used. Dark field illumination especially brightens intracellular inclusions and the outlines of the organisms (Fig 1 C). Structural elements of bacterial cells may also be detected by means of fluorescence microscopy (Fig 1 F).

The resolving power of a light microscope is at best about  $0.2 \mu$  when visible light is used for illumination of the object. Since most bacteria have a width of only  $0.5$  to  $1 \mu$  the light microscope is not well suited for investigations of structural details of bacterial cells. For such studies the electron microscope may be used. The resolving power of the electron microscope extends to approximately  $1 m\mu$ , i.e. more than a 100 fold better than that of the light microscope. However, with the exception of some preliminary experiments (Dupouy, Pernier and Durneu 1960) only fixed specimens have been studied under the electron microscope. Thus artifacts may appear in electron micrographs of bacteria as in stained bacterial specimens designed for light microscopy.

Electron micrographs of whole untreated bacteria reveal little beyond their size and shape (Fig 8). To obtain information on bacterial subcellular structures the specimens must be sectioned (Figs 15 to 19, 24).

\* In taxonomic matters *Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology* ed 7 Baltimore Williams and Wilkins 1957 is followed.

Abbreviations used: DNA = deoxyribonucleic acid; RNA = ribonucleic acid.



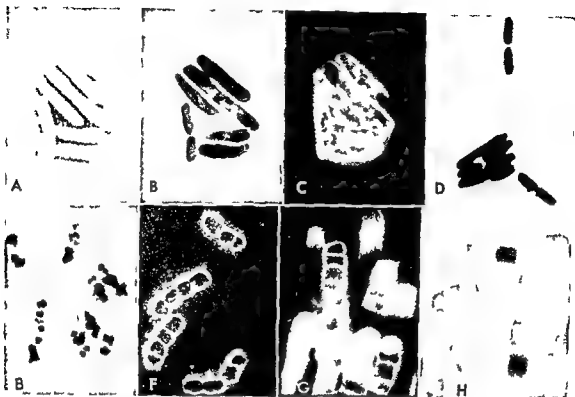


FIG 1 *Bacillus megaterium* ( $\times 3000$ ) (A) Ordinary light microscopy (B) Phase contrast (C) Darkfield (D) Cells stained according to Gram (E) Cells stained with Sudan black to show lipid inclusions (F) Cells treated with a fluorescent derivative of polymyxin which becomes bound to the cytoplasmic membrane ultraviolet illumination (Newton II A J Gen Microbiol 12 226 1955) (G) Cells crushed in India ink (Weibull C Exp Cell Res 9 139 1955) (H) Cells crushed in water phase contrast (A) (B) and (C) represent the same unstained preparation of living cells (A) (E) and (G) were taken with ordinary illumination

Staining methods especially the negative staining technique has also proved to be useful (Fig 26)

Chemical and physicochemical methods have become increasingly important for in

vestigations on the structure of the bacterial cell The term chemical anatomy is an expression for this trend in bacteriologic research The first step of such an investigation often consists of fragmentation of the cells by mechanical or enzymatic means The homogenate thus obtained is subjected to a differential centrifugation to obtain a certain cell component in a purified state (Figs 7 22) The isolated component is studied subsequently by chemical or physicochemical methods

To localize certain chemical compounds in bacterial cells high resolution radioautography may be used (Fig 30) Bacterial enzymes have also been localized by bombarding parts of the cells with low voltage electrons (Preiss and Pollard 1961)

FIG 2 *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* with stained metachromatic granules ( $\times 3000$ )





FIG 3 Various types of bacterial cells ( $\times 3000$  phase contrast) (Top left) Diplococci (Top right) Streptococci (Bottom left) Staphylococci (Bottom right) A spirillum

#### SHAPE SPATIAL ARRANGEMENT AND SIZE OF BACTERIAL CELLS

The discoverer of the bacteria Leeuwenhoek observed that these organisms occur in 3 main forms the spherical the rodlike (cylindrical) and the spiral (helical) Spherical or approximately spherical bacteria (Fig 3 top and bottom left) are named cocci rodlike ones (Fig 1) bacilli and helical ones spirilla (Fig 3 bottom right) or spirochaetes (Fig 4 top) Within these main types several subtypes may be discerned Rodlike bacteria are sometimes very short and then may be called coccobacilli Bacilli tapering at both ends are named fusiform Very long bacteria (Fig 5 left) are often considered as filamentous rather than rodlike Filamentous bacteria may be branched (Fig 4 bottom) Spiral bacteria may form either rigid helices (spirilla) or flexible ones (spirochaetes)

Some bacteria cannot be fitted into any of the main morphologic types mentioned above as for example the stalked bacteria (Houwink 1955 Fig 6) In old bacterial



FIG 4 (Top) A spirochete ( $\times 3600$  nigrosin staining) (Bottom) A branched bacterium (*Nocardia* sp) ( $\times 2000$  phase contrast) (Robinow 1960a)

cultures containing a high percentage of dead or devitalized cells irregularly shaped organisms so called involution forms may be seen (Fig 5 right)

Most bacteria multiply by binary fission If the 2 cells formed by the fission process separate from each other immediately after they are formed a population of single bacterial cells results Often however the bacterial cells remain attached to one another on one or several subsequent divisions Thus the bacteria may occur in pairs (diplococci or diplobacilli Fig 3 top left) or form multicellular aggregates Depending on the mode of division several types of aggregates may result If the multiplication occurs in one plane chains of cells are formed (strepto



FIG 5 A *Mycoplasma* sp ( $\times 2400$  phase contrast) (Left) Twelve hour cells (Right) One hundred hour cells (Weibull and Lundin 1963)

cocci or streptobacilli Fig 3 top right) II cocci multiply in 2 planes at right angles to one another squares of 4 cells may appear (tetrads tetracocci) Cubical packets of cells (sarcinae) may result if the division takes place in 3 planes at right angles to one another Some cocci (staphylococci) divide in several planes at indefinite angles to one another thus forming irregular clusters of cells (Fig 3 bottom left) Septa of bacterial cell wall material may not be visible under the light microscope Thus what appears as a single bacillus may consist in fact of several complete cells (Fig 1 F G and H)

Most bacteria especially those of medical interest have dimensions around  $1\ \mu$  The width (diameter) of bacterial cells ranges from  $0.2$  or  $0.3\ \mu$  (the *Mycoplasmatales*) to  $3\ \mu$  or more (*Caryophanon*) Some spirilla have a length of  $20$  to  $50\ \mu$  and filamentous bacteria and free living spirochaetes may be more than  $100\ \mu$  long

The order of *Eubacteriales* represents the group of bacteria that has been studied most thoroughly from the standpoint of cellular structure However investigations performed on members of other orders e.g. the *Actinomycetales* (Glauert 1962 Imaeda and Convit 1962) the *Mycobacteriales* (Mason and Powelson 1958 Voelz and Dworkin 1962) and the *Mycoplasmatales* (Klueberger-Nobel 1962) suggest that the main features

of cellular anatomy are similar in most sub groups of the class of *Schizomycetes*

## FLAGELLA AND FIMBRIAE

### MORPHOLOGY AND ARRANGEMENT OF THE FLAGELLA

The flagella form filamentous appendages to the bacterial cells They are between  $100$  and  $200\ \text{\AA}$  thick and usually have a helical shape (Figs 7 to 10) Normally the wave length of the helices is relatively constant within a species or strain Sometimes however a phenomenon called biplicity occurs i.e. 2 distinct wavelengths are observed one approximately twice the length of the other (Fig 9) Additional variations in flagellar morphology have been described by Leifson (1960 1961)

On account of their thinness individual flagella on living bacteria cannot be observed in the light microscope with ordinary or phase contrast illumination However the flagella have a strong tendency toward aggregation The bundles thus formed may be seen in the phase contrast microscope and still better with darkfield illumination (Fig 10)

Frequently, staining methods have been used for the study of bacterial flagella (Leifson 1960) The diameter of flagella may be grossly enlarged by such procedures On the other hand the staining may not affect the

wave shape of the flagella to any great degree

Two main types of arrangement of the flagella on bacterial cells may be discerned polar and peritrichous flagellation. In the former case the flagella originate from one or both ends of the cells (Fig 8 top right) in the latter they are distributed at random on the cell surface (Fig 8 top left). Generally the flagellated *Pseudomonadales* belong to the former type the flagellated *Eubacteriales* to the latter. The various types of flagellation have been discussed in detail by Leifson (1960).

It was thought for some time that the spirochaetes possess flagella. However the flagellar structure described by some workers evidently represent detached filaments which are wound tightly around the cell body of living spirochaetes (van Iterson 1956 Weibull 1960 Kawata 1961 Fig 8 bottom).

The cytoplasmic origin of flagella is established by the fact that they remain attached to the bacterial protoplast after the wall has been dissolved by lysozyme (Weibull 1960). Several electron micrographs especially of lysed bacteria (Weibull 1960 Fig 8 top right) suggest that the flagella are attached to basal granules like flagella of higher organisms.

#### STRUCTURE AND CHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF FLAGELLA

Chemical investigations on flagella isolated from *Proteus*, *Bacillus Serratia* and *Salmonella* spp (Ambler and Rees 1959 Kobayashi Rinker and Kofler 1959 Weibull 1960) indicate that these organelles



FIG 6 *Caulobacter* sp. attached to *Bacillus megaterium* ( $\times 3\,500$  orig  $\times 6\,000$ ) Electron micrograph from Houwink (1955)

consist exclusively of proteinaceous material. Only traces of lipids, carbohydrates and nucleic acids were found in carefully purified flagella preparations. The flagellar proteins which have been named flagellins generally seem to lack the amino acids tryptophan and proline.

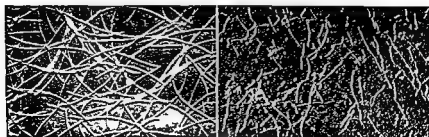


FIG 7 Purified cell components of *Proteus vulgaris* ( $\times 30\,000$ ) (Left) Flagella (Right) Fimbriae. Electron microscopy (Weibull and Hedvall 1953)

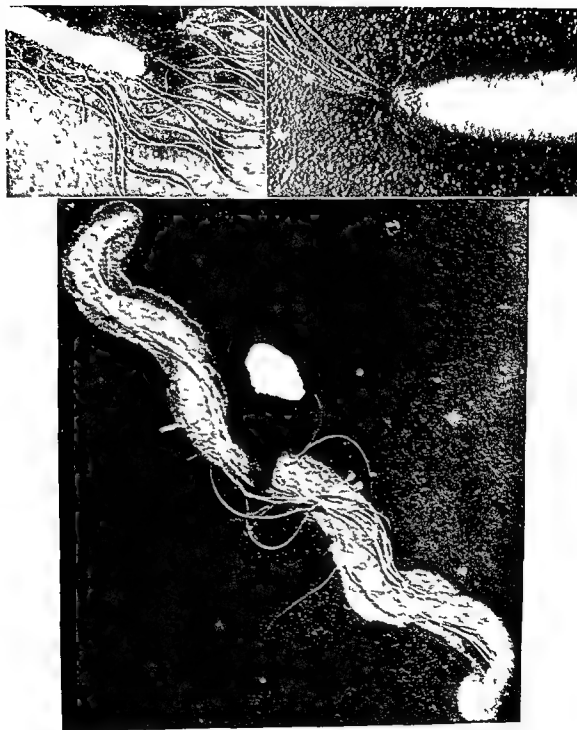


FIG 8 Electron micrographs of unsectioned bacteria (Top left) Peritrichously flagellated *Proteus vulgaris* ( $\times 10\,000$ ) (Weibull C Biochim Biophys Acta 2 351 1948) (Top right) Polarly flagellated *Spirillum lunatum* with basal granules ( $\times 24\,000$  orig  $\times 48\,000$ ) (Williams M A and Chapman G II J Bact 81 195 1961) (Bottom) A spirochete with filaments wound around the cell ( $\times 22\,000$ ) (van Herson 1956)

X ray investigations have revealed that the bacterial flagella belong to the keratin mvosin-epidermin fibrinogen type of fibrous proteins (Beighton Porter and Stocker 1958, Weibull 1960 Burge 1961) Physi cochemical studies have shown that the fla gella consist of subunits having a molecular weight of approximately 20 000 (Erlander kofler and Foster 1960) Electron micro graphs of sectioned flagella (Kerridge Horne and Glauert 1962) indicate that they do not contain the 11 peripheral and the 2 central subfibrils that are characteristic for flagella of higher organisms rather they appear to consist in some cases of spirally wound sub fibrils (Weibull 1960 Marx and Heumann 1962) or of spherical subunits (Kerridge Horne and Glauert 1962)

#### FUNCTION OF THE FLAGELLA

Most students of bacterial motility have been of the opinion that the flagella are motor organs However some workers ad vocate the view that the flagella are merely passive appendages of the bacterial cell (Pijper 1957 1962 Winkler and Tschusch ner 1958) The best support to the former view has been given by Stocker and Camp bell (1959) who showed that nonlethal treat ment which removes the flagella from bac terial cells is associated with loss of motility Motility is resumed when the flagella are resynthesized Hydrodynamic calculations (Weibull 1960 Holwill and Burge 1963) also favor the view that the flagella are motor organs The motility problem has been re viewed in detail by Pijper (1957) and Weibull (1960)

The bacterial H antigens are located in the flagella the proteinaceous nature of the flagella is in keeping with the heat lability of these antigens

#### FIMBRIAE

A second type of filamentous appendages of bacterial cells is represented by organelles named fimbriae (Duguid and Wilkinson 1961) or pili (Brinton 1959) They are thinner than flagella and are not curved in regular spirals or waves (Fig 7 right Fig 11) Fimbriae have been observed in *Aero bacter* *Escherichia* *Klebsiella* *Proteus* *Pseudomonas* *Salmonella* and *Shigella* spp

Fig 9 Cells of *Proteus morganii* stained with flagellar stain Note biphlicity ( $\times 1800$ ) (Leifson 1960)



(Weibull 1960 Duguid and Wilkinson 1961 Marx and Heumann 1962)

Not much is known about the structure and the chemistry of the fimbriae They may contain some proteinaceous material (Brinton 1959) but seem to be resistant to tryp sin pepsin and to acid and alkaline environ ments (Weibull and Hedvall 1953)

The fimbriae do not seem to be related to motility since motile bacteria may be non fimbriate and nonmotile bacteria may pos sess fimbriae On the other hand the fim briae seem to be associated with the ability of bacterial cells to adhere to the surface of other bodies Thus most fimbriate bacteria possess hemagglutinating power whereas nonfimbriate strains are nonhemagglutinat ing (Brinton 1959 Duguid and Wilkinson 1961)

#### THE SURFACE LAYERS OF THE BACTERIAL CELL

The peripheral part of the cell may be divided into 3 layers (1) the capsule or

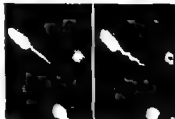


Fig 10 Flagellated cells of *Salmonella typhosa* (left) moving (right) motionless Sunlight darkfield ( $\times 1000$ ) (Pijper A J Roy Micr Soc 81 61 1962)

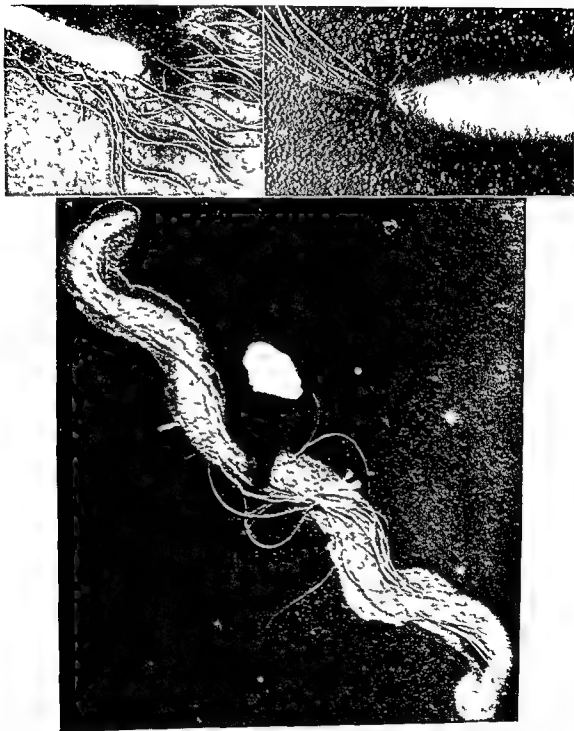


FIG 2 Electron micrographs of unsectioned bacteria (Top left) Peritrichously flagellated *Proteus vulgaris* ( $\times 10\,000$ ) (Weibull C Biochim Biophys Acta 2 351 1948) (Top right) Polarly flagellated *Spirillum lunatum* with basal granules ( $\times 24\,000$  orig  $\times 48\,000$ ) (Williams M A and Chapman G II J Bact 81 195 1961) (Bottom) A spirochete with filaments wound around the cell ( $\times 22\,000$ ) (van Iterson 1956)

X ray investigations have revealed that the bacterial flagella belong to the keratin myosin-epidermin fibrinogen type of fibrous proteins (Beighton Porter and Stocker, 1958 Weibull 1960 Burge 1961) Physicochemical studies have shown that the flagella consist of subunits having a molecular weight of approximately 20 000 (Erlander Koffler and Foster 1960) Electron micrographs of sectioned flagella (Kerridge Horne and Glauert 1962) indicate that they do not contain the 9 peripheral and the 2 central subfibrils that are characteristic for flagella of higher organisms rather they appear to consist in some cases of spirally wound subfibrils (Weibull 1960 Marx and Heumann 1962) or of spherical subunits (Kerridge Horne and Glauert 1962)

#### FUNCTION OF THE FLAGELLA

Most students of bacterial motility have been of the opinion that the flagella are motor organs However some workers advocate the view that the flagella are merely passive appendages of the bacterial cell (Pijper 1957 1962 Winkler and Tschuschner 1958) The best support to the former view has been given by Stocker and Campbell (1959) who showed that nonlethal treatment which removes the flagella from bacterial cells is associated with loss of motility Motility is resumed when the flagella are resynthesized Hydrodynamic calculations (Weibull 1960 Holwill and Burge 1963) also favor the view that the flagella are motor organs The motility problem has been reviewed in detail by Pijper (1957) and Weibull (1960)

The bacterial H antigens are located in the flagella the proteinaceous nature of the flagella is in keeping with the heat lability of these antigens

#### FIMBRIAE

A second type of filamentous appendages of bacterial cells is represented by organelles named fimbriae (Duguid and Wilkinson 1961) or pili (Brinton 1959) They are thinner than flagella and are not curved in regular spirals or waves (Fig 7 right Fig 11) Fimbriae have been observed in *Aerobacter* *Escherichia* *Klebsiella* *Proteus* *Pseudomonas* *Salmonella* and *Shigella* spp

FIG 9 Cells of *Proteus morganii* stained with flagellar stain Note biphlicity ( $\times 1800$ ) (Leifson 1960)



(Weibull 1960 Duguid and Wilkinson 1961 Marx and Heumann 1962)

Not much is known about the structure and the chemistry of the fimbriae They may contain some proteinaceous material (Brinton 1959) but seem to be resistant to trypsin pepsin and to acid and alkaline environments (Weibull and Hedvall 1953)

The fimbriae do not seem to be related to motility since motile bacteria may be nonfimbriate and nonmotile bacteria may possess fimbriae On the other hand the fimbriae seem to be associated with the ability of bacterial cells to adhere to the surface of other bodies Thus most fimbriate bacteria possess hemagglutinating power whereas nonfimbriate strains are nonhemagglutinating (Brinton 1959 Duguid and Wilkinson 1961)

#### THE SURFACE LAYERS OF THE BACTERIAL CELL

The peripheral part of the cell may be divided into 3 layers (1) the capsule or



FIG 10 Flagellated cells of *Salmonella typhosa* (left) moving (right) motionless Sunlight darkfield ( $\times 1000$ ) (Pijper A J Roy Micro Soc 81 61 1962)



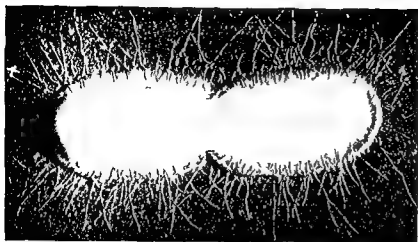


FIG 11 Fimbriate cell of *Shigella flexneri* ( $\times 24\,000$ ) Electron micrograph from Duguid and Wilkinson (1961)

slime layer (2) the cell wall and (3) the cytoplasmic membrane. The capsule which forms the outermost layer of the cell is difficult to define usually capsules are demonstrable by the light microscope and their removal from a bacterium does not cause the death of the organism. The cell wall is commonly defined as the rigid structure which gives a bacterium its characteristic shape. The cytoplasmic membrane is considered as a part of the bacterial cytoplasm. It is flexible and semipermeable serving to regulate the osmotic pressure inside the cells.

Physiologic chemical mechanical or morphologic criteria have been used by various workers to define the surface layers of bacteria. Since results sometimes differ depending on the criterion it is difficult to decide with certainty to which of the surface layers certain structures or chemical compounds should be assigned.

The streptococcal M proteins for example can be removed enzymatically from liv-

ing bacteria without killing them (Salton 1953). On this basis the M proteins could be regarded as capsular substances. However the removal of these compounds does not change the morphology of streptococcal cell walls (Salton 1953 Slade 1957). Using the terminology of Wilkinson (1958) the M proteins might therefore be considered as microcapsular substances. At present no conclusion can be drawn as to the precise location of the M proteins.

Many gram negative bacteria lose their O antigens by nonlethal mutations. Thus the O antigens might be considered as microcapsular substances since bacteria possessing these substances as a rule do not possess capsules demonstrable in the light microscope.

Undoubtedly close connections often exist between capsule and cell wall. Thus immunologically identical polysaccharides were found in the wall and the capsule of *Bacillus megaterium* strain M (Tomcsik 1956).

With regard to the distinction between cell

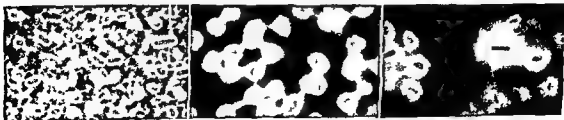


FIG 12 India ink wet mounts of *Aerobacter aerogenes* ( $\times 2\,000$ ) (Left) Cells with small capsules (center) Cells with average sized capsules (right) Cells with large capsules and loose slime (Duguid 1951)

wall and cytoplasmic membrane high resolution electron micrographs of sectioned non capsulated bacteria show 2 main surface layers (Figs 16 17) Generally the entire outer layer is considered to represent the cell wall the entire inner layer the cytoplasmic membrane Electron micrographs of lysed bacteria (Kellenberger and Ryter 1958 Fig 18) lend support to this view especially as the inner membrane appears as folded and consequently lacking in rigidity

Studies on isolated cell components (Salton 1961) indicate a closer association between cell wall and cytoplasmic membrane in gram negative bacteria than in gram positive ones However plasmolysis experiments (Elo 1937 Robinow 1960a) suggest just the opposite

## CAPSULE (SLIME LAYER)

### MORPHOLOGY AND STRUCTURE OF THE CAPSULE

Many procedures for the staining of bacterial capsules have been described These structures can be demonstrated very simply and reliably by suspending living bacteria in India ink (Duguid 1951) The capsules then appear as clear zones around the bacterial bodies (Fig 12) Capsules can also be visualized by adding homologous antiserum to a bacterial suspension producing the so called capsule swelling reaction (Tomcsik 1956)

The size of capsules may vary widely (Fig 12) When the bacteria are surrounded by a diffuse zone of extracellular material (Fig 12 right) the terms slime layer or loose slime often are used instead of the word capsule

Bacteria may lose their capsules through mutations Such loss of capsule is reflected in altered appearance of the colonies encapsulated bacteria form more or less mucoid colonies (M colonies) whereas bacteria without capsules form relatively dry colonies with a smooth or rough surface (S and R colonies) In pneumococci encapsulated bacteria usually are designated as S forms bacteria without capsules as R forms The capsules can also be removed enzymatically (Tomcsik 1956)

Most bacterial capsules seem to consist of accumulations of amorphous material However some capsules possess a definite structure Thus capsules containing banded fibrils may be observed in a strain of *Escherichia coli* (Salton 1960a) The capsule of a strain of *Bacillus megaterium* contains a skeletal structure of transverse striations condensed at the poles (Tomcsik 1956 Fig 13)

There exists a close relationship between the presence of capsule in some pathogenic bacteria and their virulence This is especially evident in the case of *Diplococcus pneumoniae* *Klebsiella pneumoniae* and *Bacillus anthracis* Nonencapsulated strains of these bacteria are avirulent

### CHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF CAPSULES

Most of the substances forming bacterial capsules are polysaccharides However some capsules consist of material of a polypeptide nature and a capsule containing both polysaccharide and polypeptide is found in *Bacillus megaterium* (Tomcsik 1956) The capsule of *Pasteurella pestis* probably also consists of proteinaceous material associated with carbohydrate (Tomcsik 1956)

Table 1 shows the chemical composition of capsules of some bacteria of medical interest It can be seen that strains of the same species may possess capsules of different chemical composition These differences are reflected in the antigenic properties of the capsules (Heidelberger 1956)

## CELL WALL

### METHODS OF STUDY

Bacterial cell walls have a poor affinity for ordinary stains but according to Tomcsik



FIG 13 Capsulated cells of *Bacillus megaterium* Note transverse striations in capsule ( $\times 2500$  phase contrast) (Tomcsik 1956)

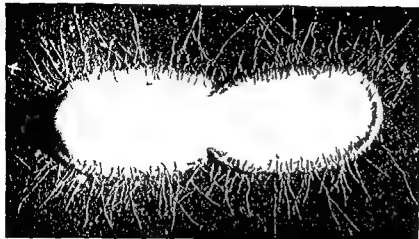


FIG 11 Fimbriate cell of *Shigella flexneri* ( $\times 24\,000$ ) Electron micrograph from Duguid and Wilkinson (1961)

slime layer, (2) the cell wall and (3) the cytoplasmic membrane. The capsule which forms the outermost layer of the cell is difficult to define: usually capsules are demonstrable by the light microscope and their removal from a bacterium does not cause the death of the organism. The cell wall is commonly defined as the rigid structure which gives a bacterium its characteristic shape. The cytoplasmic membrane is considered as a part of the bacterial cytoplasm. It is flexible and semipermeable, serving to regulate the osmotic pressure inside the cells.

Physiologic, chemical, mechanical or morphologic criteria have been used by various workers to define the surface layers of bacteria. Since results sometimes differ depending on the criterion, it is difficult to decide with certainty to which of the surface layers certain structures or chemical compounds should be assigned.

The streptococcal M proteins, for example, can be removed enzymatically from liv-

ing bacteria without killing them (Salton 1953). On this basis the M proteins could be regarded as capsular substances. However, the removal of these compounds does not change the morphology of streptococcal cell walls (Salton 1953; Slade 1957). Using the terminology of Wilkinson (1958), the M proteins might therefore be considered as microcapsular substances. At present no conclusion can be drawn as to the precise location of the M proteins.

Many gram-negative bacteria lose their O antigens by nonlethal mutations. Thus the O antigens might be considered as microcapsular substances, since bacteria possessing these substances as a rule do not possess capsules demonstrable in the light microscope.

Undoubtedly close connections often exist between capsule and cell wall. Thus immunologically identical polysaccharides were found in the wall and the capsule of *Bacillus megaterium* strain M (Tomcsik 1956).

With regard to the distinction between cell



FIG 12 India ink wet mounts of *Aerobacter aerogenes* ( $\times 2\,000$ ). (Left) Cells with small capsules; (center) Cells with average-sized capsules; (right) Cells with large capsules and loose slime (Duguid 1951).

FIG 15 Electron micrograph of *Nocardia calcarata* (thin section) showing "microcapsule" cell wall and cytoplasmic membrane ( $\times 100\,000$ ) (Glauert 1962)



the chemistry of isolated cell walls have been studied extensively. The wall preparations are obtained by mechanical disintegration of the bacteria and isolation of the wall fragments by differential centrifugation of the homogenate (Salton 1960a Fig 22)

#### STRUCTURE AND CHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF THE WALLS

In electron micrographs of unsectioned bacterial specimens the cell wall most often appears without any definite structure. However, regular patterns of approximately spherical subunits have been revealed in the walls of some bacteria (Salton 1960b; Glauert 1962; Murray 1962 Fig 14). A fibrous appearance was found in walls of *Bacillus megaterium* (Salton 1960b).

Electron micrographs of sectioned organisms indicate that many or most bacterial cell walls have a multilayered structure (Figs 15 to 19). The walls of gram positive bacteria vary in thickness from 150 to more than 500 Å (Glauert 1962). They are thicker than those of gram negative bacteria (thickness 100 Å or less). In high resolution micrographs the walls of gram positive organisms appear to consist of 2 thin electron-dense layers separated by a wider layer of slightly less dense material (Fig 16). The walls of gram negative bacteria also appear to consist of 3 layers, but in these bacteria all strata

have about the same thickness (Figs 17, 18) and the density of the middle layer is much lower than that of the surrounding layers.

Notable differences exist between gram positive and gram negative bacteria in the chemical nature of their cell walls. The composition of the walls of the former group is generally considered to be less complex.



FIG 16 Electron micrograph of *Bacillus subtilis* (thin section) showing cell wall, wall septa, cytoplasmic membrane, mesosome, ground cytoplasm and nuclear equivalent ( $\times 95\,000$ ) (Eiseling, F. A. and Romig, W. R. J. Ultrastruct. Res. 6:540 1962)

TABLE 1 CHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF BACTERIAL CAPSULES\*

ORGANISM	CLASS OF SUBSTANCE	CONSTITUENTS IDENTIFIED
<i>Diplococcus pneumoniae</i> type II	Polysaccharide	Glucose glucuronic acid rhamnose
<i>Diplococcus pneumoniae</i> type III	"	Glucose glucuronic acid
<i>Diplococcus pneumoniae</i> type XIV	"	Glucose galactose N acetyl glucosamine
<i>Streptococcus</i> spp. groups A and C	"	Glucuronic acid N acetyl glucosamine
<i>Leuconostoc mesenteroides</i>	Polysaccharide	hyaluronic acid
<i>Bacillus anthracis</i>	Polypeptide	D glutamic acid
<i>Haemophilus influenzae</i>	Polynbophosphate	Ribose phosphate
<i>Klebsiella</i> spp	Polysaccharide	polyuronides Glucose galactose mannose fucose uronic acid

\* Data summarized from Salton (1960a)

and Grace (1955) staining with Alcian blue gives good results. However cell walls can be visualized in the light microscope without staining procedures. Figure 1 G shows cells crushed in India ink. The ink has penetrated into the cells replacing the protoplasm of the living organisms. The cell wall thus appears as a light chambered skeleton against a dark background. Evidently the walls possess a high degree of rigidity. Empty unstained cell walls are also visible in the phase contrast microscope (Fig 1 H). For

the study of structural details however the electron microscope must be used (Figs 14 to 19 22).

The rigidity of the cell wall can also be demonstrated by plasmolysis experiments (Elo 1937 Taubeneck 1955 Robinow 1960a Cota Robles 1963). During plasmolysis the outer shape of the cells remains unchanged whereas the protoplasm partly or occasionally completely retracts from the wall.

During the last 15 years the structure and

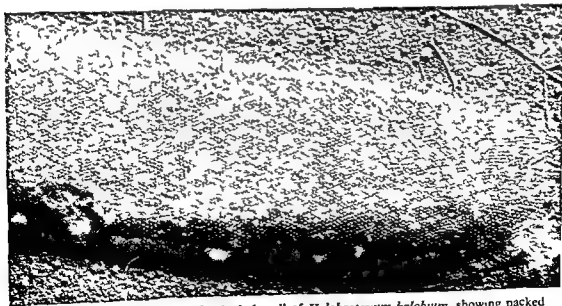


FIG 14 Electron micrograph of whole cell of *Halobacterium halobium* showing packed subunits of cell wall ( $\times 72\,500$ ) (Salton 1960b from Dr A I Houwink Laboratory of Microbiology Technological University Delft)

though both groups have a so-called basal structure (Salton 1960b) in common. This structure could be defined as a mucopeptide or perhaps what is more nearly correct a class of mucopeptides consisting of N acetyl hexosamine N acetyl muramic acid glutamic acid alanine and diaminopimelic acid. The last mentioned compound is replaced by lysine in some bacteria e.g. staphylococci. All of the glutamic acid and approximately half of the alanine occurs in the form of the D isomers. A tentative model for a subunit of a wall mucopeptide (Salton 1962) is shown in Figure 20. The mucopeptide is generally considered to be responsible for the rigidity of the cell wall (Salton 1960b; Martin and Frank 1962; Weidel, Frank and Leutgeb 1963; Takeya, Hisatsune and Inoue 1963; Fig. 22).

Preparative and analytical data indicate that the walls of most gram positive bacteria contain polysaccharides in addition to the basal mucopeptide(s). Thus the group specific carbohydrate of group A streptococci consists primarily of rhamnose and N acetyl glucosamine (Salton 1960a). A polysaccharide consisting of N acetyl glucosamine and glucuronic acid is found in the walls of *Bacillus subtilis* (Perkins 1963). Glucose may be a constituent of the cell wall polysaccharides and is found also in another group of wall substances primarily characteristic for gram positive bacteria: the teichoic acids (Baddiley 1962; Baddiley *et al.* 1962; Sanderson, Strominger and Nathanson 1962). Teichoic acids contain a backbone of ribitol or glycerolphosphate. Glucose or N acetyl glucosamine is joined to this backbone by glucosidic linkages (Fig. 21) and alanine by ester linkages. Teichoic acids do not seem to contribute to the rigidity of the walls but may constitute more than 50 per cent of their dry weight.

Only small amounts of lipids and proteins are found in the walls of gram positive bacteria (the streptococcal M proteins form an exception to this rule). The walls of gram negative organisms on the other hand contain proteinaceous material in addition to polysaccharides and the basal mucopeptide. Moreover they contain substantial amounts of lipids and perhaps occasionally teichoic acids (Clarke and Lilly 1962).

Complexes of proteins, lipids and polysaccharides constituting the bacterial O antigens can be extracted from the walls of gram negative bacteria by diethyleneglycol or some other solvents (Westphal *et al.* 1958; Colobert and Creach 1961; Westphal and Luderitz 1963). The antigenic specificity is determined by the polysaccharide moiety or more specifically the terminal oligosaccharides of the polysaccharide chains. The smooth (S) forms of *Salmonella* spp. contain polysaccharides consisting of glucosamine and galactosamine, glucose, galactose, mannose, ribose, rhamnose, fucose, heptoses and dideoxihexoses, whereas the polysaccharides of rough (R) forms contain only glucosamine, glucose, galactose and heptose (Westphal and Luderitz 1963).

The complexes described in the preceding paragraph also represent the endotoxins of

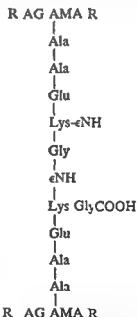


FIG. 20. A tentative model of a mucopeptide subunit in *Micrococcus lysodeikticus* cell walls (Salton 1962). AG = acetyl glucosamine, AMA = acetyl muramic acid, Ala = alanine, Glu = glutamic acid, Lys = lysine, Gly = glycine.

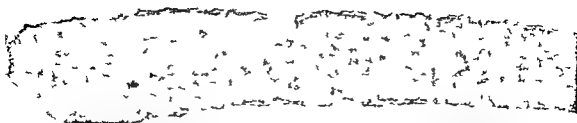


FIG 17 Electron micrograph of *Escherichia coli* (thin section) showing cell wall cytoplasmic membrane ground cytoplasm and nuclear equivalents ( $\times 35\,000$ ) (Glauert 1962)



FIG 18 Electron micrograph of lysed *Escherichia coli* cell (thin section) showing cell wall and cytoplasmic membrane ( $\times 100\,000$ ) (Kellenberger and Rytter 1958)



FIG 19 Electron micrograph of *Lactobacillus acidophilus* showing thick cell wall cytoplasmic membrane with invaginations and mesosomes ( $\times 60\,000$ ) (Glauert 1962)

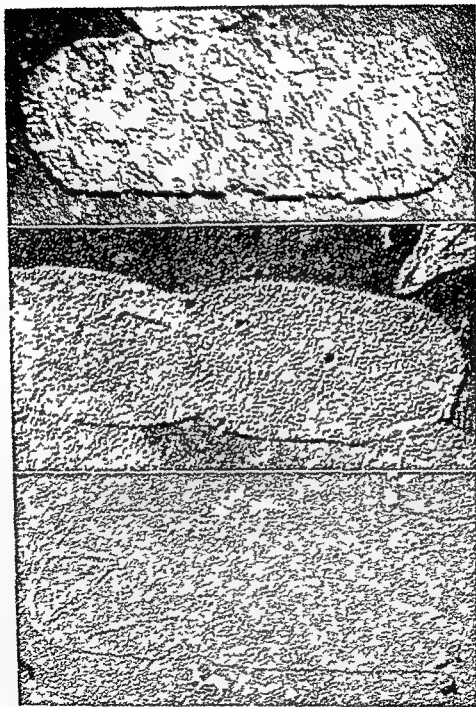


FIG. 22. Components of *Escherichia coli* cell walls: electron microscopy ( $\times 55,000$ ). (Top) Almost undegraded wall. (Middle) Wall after phenol treatment. (Bottom) Wall after subsequent pepsin digestion and removal of undigested small fragments. The residue represents the rigid mucopeptide-containing layer of the wall (Martin and Frank, 1962).



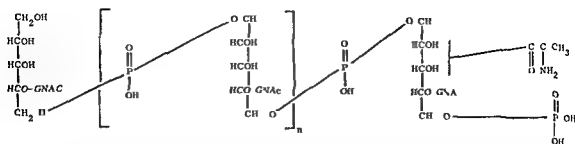


FIG 21 Structure of the teichoic acid of *Staphylococcus aureus* strain Copenhagen. The polymer contains 0.5 alanine residue per ribitol; the distribution of which is unknown.  $n = 10$  to 14. GNAc = acetylglucosamine (Sanderson, Strominger and Natheson 1962).

gram negative bacteria. It remains uncertain which component of the polysaccharide-lipid-protein complex accounts for the toxic properties (Westphal *et al.* 1958; Westphal and Luderitz 1963; Ribi *et al.* 1961).

By combining results from chemical and electron microscopic studies, Martin and Frank (1962) concluded that the cell wall of *Escherichia coli* consists of 3 layers: an outer lipoprotein layer, an intermediate lipopolysaccharide layer, and an inner layer consisting of protein and the rigid mucopeptide (Fig. 22). According to Clarke and Lilly (1962), the surface layers of gram-negative bacteria apparently consist of 2 unit membranes of the kind found in higher organisms (Robertson 1959) and a rigid layer in between. The outer membrane of the cell wall probably consists of polysaccharide-lipid-protein; the protein forming the outermost stratum. This would be in accordance with the findings of Martin and Frank (1962). It would also be consistent with the appearance of sectioned cells in electron micrographs (Murray 1962; Figs. 17, 18).

#### BIOSYNTHESIS AND FUNCTIONS OF THE CELL WALL

Figure 23 shows a tentative but widely accepted scheme for synthesis of cell wall mucopeptide (Work 1961). Penicillin and some other antibiotics interfere with this synthesis. Usually, this process causes the death of the organisms, but under controlled conditions aberrant growth forms, the so-called bacterial L forms (Kandler and Kandler 1960; Timakov and Kagan 1961; Klieneberger-Nobel 1962), appear, replacing the normal cells. Chemical and electron micro-

scopic studies indicate that many of these bacterial L forms contain no or almost no cell wall constituents (Thorsson and Weibull 1958; Freimer, Krause and McCarty 1959; Panos, Barkulis and Hayashi, 1959; Kandler and Kandler, 1960; Morrison and Weibull 1962; Tulasne, Minck and Kim 1962). L form colonies consist of soft elements of a spherical or irregular shape.

The biosynthesis and the structure of the cell wall have been reviewed in detail by Salton (1960a and b, 1961, 1962). Work (1961), Strominger (1962), Rogers (1963), and Perkins (1963).

The cell wall protects the cell very efficiently from mechanical injury and also prevents the bacteria from bursting osmotically in hypotonic media. The cell wall seems metabolically to be relatively inert. As yet, no enzyme has been unequivocally localized in it. Moreover, normal bacterial cells and L forms or protoplasts have roughly the same biochemical capabilities (Kandler and Kandler 1960; McQuillen 1960; Weibull and Beckman 1960; Panos 1962). From one point of view, the cell wall can be said to have an unfavorable effect on the survival capacity of the bacterial cell; it contains the so-called phage receptors (Salton 1960a) onto which bacterial viruses attach themselves at the beginning of their attack on the host organism. The role of the cell wall in sexual conjugation is not clear (Bladen 1963).

#### BACTERIA NORMALLY LACKING A RIGID CELL WALL

Evidence derived from microscopic and chemical studies indicates that the *Mycobacterium*



Fig 25 Cells protoplasts and ghosts of *Bacillus megaterium* ( $\times 3000$  phase contrast) (Top row) Whole cells protoplasts and ghosts of the M strain (Bottom) Protoplasts and ghosts of the KM strain the protoplast on the extreme left lysed between the exposures forming a ghost (The photographs in the top row from Stanier R Y Doudoroff M and Adelberg E A The Microbial World ed 2 Englewood Cliffs Prentice Hall 1963 )

*plasmatales* do not possess a cell wall structure similar to that found in most bacteria (Edwards and Fogh 1960 van Iterson and Ruys 1960 Morrison and Weibull 1962 Fig 24) This is in accordance with the fact that the *Mycoplasmatales* are very easily distorted by mechanical forces (Liebermeister 1960 Klieneberger Nobel 1962 Weibull and Lundin 1963) The *Myxobacterales* seem to possess a cell wall of normal thickness but lacking in rigidity (Voelz and Dworkin 1962)

## CYTOPLASMIC MEMBRANE

### EXISTENCE OF A CYTOPLASMIC MEMBRANE IN BACTERIA

Plasmolysis experiments carried out mainly on gram negative bacteria offered the first evidence suggesting that bacteria possess a semipermeable membrane surrounding the bacterial protoplasm but lo-

cated inside the cell wall (Elo 1937 Robinow 1960) Other permeability studies (Stahelin 1954 Weibull 1955 Mitchell and Moyle 1956a and b 1957 Gilby and Few 1959) electron microscopy and staining experiments (Robinow and Murray 1953) also indicated the presence of a semi-permeable membrane inside the cell wall of gram positive bacteria These bacteria can be plasmolyzed only with difficulty (Knaysi 1951 Robinow 1960a)

In a few gram positive bacteria the cell wall can be completely dissolved by the enzyme lysozyme If this process is conducted in a medium of sufficiently high osmotic pressure the dissolution of the cell wall does not cause the disintegration of the internal structure of the cell and naked protoplasts are thus released (Weibull 1958 McQuillen 1960 Martin 1963) When the osmotic pressure is lowered the protoplasts disintegrate Conversion of an individual protoplast into a ghost of approximately the same

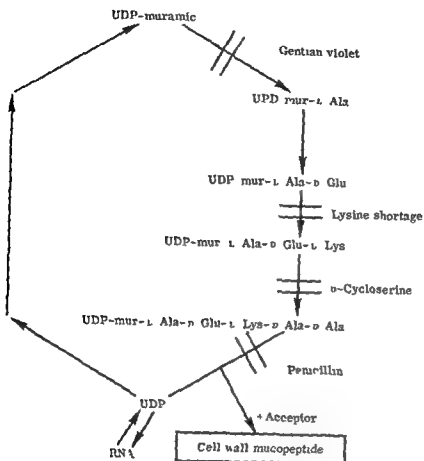


FIG 23 Tentative scheme for the biosynthesis of cell wall mucopeptide in *Staphylococcus aureus* (Work 1961) UDP = uridine diphosphate. For other abbreviations see caption for Figure 20



FIG 24 Electron micrograph of *Mycoplasma fermentans* (thin section) showing cell surface layer consisting of single unit membrane ( $\times 180\,000$ ) (van Isteron and Ruys 1960)

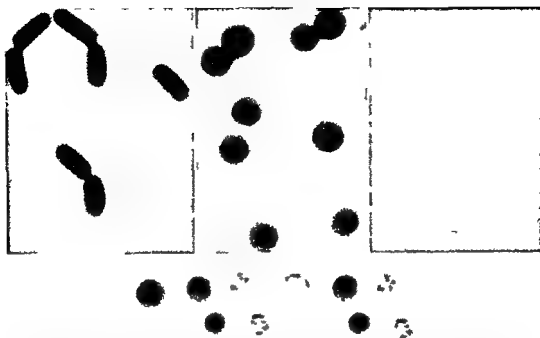


FIG 25 Cells protoplasts and ghosts of *Bacillus megaterium* ( $\times 3\,000$  phase contrast) (Top row) Whole cells protoplasts and ghosts of the M strain (Bottom) Protoplasts and ghosts of the KM strain the protoplast on the extreme left lysed between the exposures forming a ghost (The photographs in the top row from Stanier R Y Doudoroff M and Adelberg E A *The Microbial World* ed 2 Englewood Cliffs Prentice Hall 1963)

*plasmatales* do not possess a cell wall structure similar to that found in most bacteria (Edwards and Fogh 1960 van Iterson and Ruys 1960 Morrison and Weibull 1962 Fig 24) This is in accordance with the fact that the *Mycoplasmatales* are very easily distorted by mechanical forces (Liebermeister 1960 Klieneberger Nobel 1962 Weibull and Lundin 1963) The *Mycobacteriales* seem to possess a cell wall of normal thickness but lacking in rigidity (Voelz and Dworkin 1962)

## CYTOPLASMIC MEMBRANE

### EXISTENCE OF A CYTOPLASMIC MEMBRANE IN BACTERIA

Plasmolysis experiments carried out mainly on gram negative bacteria offered the first evidence suggesting that bacteria possess a semipermeable membrane surrounding the bacterial protoplasm but lo-

cated inside the cell wall (Elo 1937 Robinow 1960) Other permeability studies (Stahelin 1954 Weibull 1955 Mitchell and Moyle 1956a and b 1957 Gilby and Few 1959) electron microscopy and staining experiments (Robinow and Murray 1953) also indicated the presence of a semi permeable membrane inside the cell wall of gram positive bacteria These bacteria can be plasmolyzed only with difficulty (Kaysi 1951 Robinow 1960a)

In a few gram positive bacteria the cell wall can be completely dissolved by the enzyme lysozyme If this process is conducted in a medium of sufficiently high osmotic pressure the dissolution of the cell wall does not cause the disintegration of the internal structure of the cell and naked protoplasts are thus released (Weibull 1958 McQuillen 1960 Martin 1963) When the osmotic pressure is lowered the protoplasts disintegrate Conversion of an individual protoplast into a ghost of approximately the same

diameter can be followed in the light microscope. Essentially, these ghosts represent cytoplasmic membranes containing varying amounts of adherent protoplasmic material (Fig 25).

Modern techniques for electron microscopy make it possible to obtain pictures clearly indicating the presence of cytoplasmic membranes in bacterial cells (Figs 15 to 19).

#### STRUCTURE AND CHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF THE PLASMA MEMBRANE

The cytoplasmic membrane appears in high resolution electron micrographs of sectioned bacteria as a unit membrane (Robertson 1959) consisting of 2 dense strata separated by a less dense layer (Brown, Drummond and North 1962; Glauret 1962; Hughes 1962; Murray, 1962; Fig 16). The thickness of the membrane is approximately 75 Å. Several electron micrographs have been published showing invaginations in the cytoplasmic membrane. These invaginations may become deep and wide giving rise to intracytoplasmic bodies still connected with the cytoplasmic membrane (Figs 16 and 19). These structures have been named peripheral bodies, chondrioids and mesosomes (Glauret 1962; Murray, 1962; Kawata 1963) and they have been compared with the mitochondria of protozoa and higher organisms (Giesbrecht 1960).

The chemical composition of the cytoplasmic membrane of various bacteria, notably *Bacillus megaterium*, *Micrococcus lysodeikticus* and *Streptococcus faecalis*, has been studied in some detail. Most analyses have been carried out on preparations obtained by lysing bacteria with lysozyme and isolating the membranous ghosts by differential centrifugation (Gelman, Zhukova and Oparin 1959; McQuillen 1960; Salton 1961; Hughes 1962; Shockman *et al* 1963). Some information on membrane composition has also been obtained from studies on mechanically or chemically disrupted bacteria (Mitchell and Moyle 1956a; Mathews and Siström 1959; Marr 1960a; Brown, Drummond and North 1962; Robrish and Marr 1962). It is difficult to assess the extent to which the ghosts or cell fractions represent pure cytoplasmic membranes, other cytoplasmic structures, e.g. the meso-

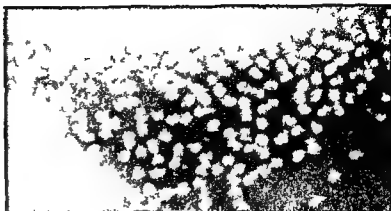
somes mentioned above may be present in the ghosts (Robrish and Marr 1962).

The main constituents of the cytoplasmic membrane seem to be protein (40 to 70% dry weight) and lipid (15 to 40%). Mainly phospholipid containing little, if any, nitrogen has been recovered. In some membranes considerable amounts of carbohydrate have also been found (10 to 20%). Substantial amounts of RNA reported in some membrane preparations could represent protoplasmic contamination.

Cell wall constituents such as diaminopimelic acid and hexosamine were not found in the membranes of *B. megaterium* similarly. D amino acids and rhamnose were absent from the membranes of *S. faecalis*. According to Shockman *et al* (1963) the chemical composition of the membrane of *S. faecalis* varied quantitatively with the cultural conditions. Freimer (1963) has described recently the chemical composition and the serologic properties of membranes isolated from group A streptococci.

Bacterial 'ghosts' and particulate fractions consisting of the combined surface layers of bacteria exhibit enzymatic activity (Sheinin 1959; Marr 1960a and b; Brown 1961; Salton 1961; Abrams and McNamara 1962; Burrous and Wood 1962; Campbell, Hogg and Strasine 1962; Gelman and Lukyanova 1962; Hughes 1962; Ishikawa and Lehninger 1962; Robrish and Marr 1962; Weibull, Greenawalt and Low, 1962). Some of these enzymes, e.g. cytochromes and succinic dehydrogenase, seem to be associated exclusively with the cytoplasmic membranes or with intracytoplasmic bodies (mesosomes) connected with this membrane (Vanderwinkel and Murray 1962). The localization of enzymes in or near the cytoplasmic membrane has also been demonstrated by topical inactivation of enzymes in whole bacteria (Preiss and Pollard 1961) and by microscopic observations on the sites of tetrazolium and tellurite reduction in normal bacterial cells and L-forms (Nermut 1960; Mudd *et al* 1961). On the other hand, some enzymes are found mainly in the protoplasmic fraction and others are apparently present in both the membrane and the protoplasm. On the whole, the cytoplasmic membrane seems to

FIG 26 Electron micrograph of ribosomes from *Escherichia coli* ( $\times 200\,000$  negative staining) Two types of ribosomes are visible monomers (70 S particles) consisting of 2 unequal subunits 2nd dimers (100 S particles) (Huxley and Zubay 1960)



be rich in enzymes and probably plays an important metabolic role as well as being a regulator of the osmotic pressure inside the bacterial cell. These functions of the cytoplasmic membrane have been discussed comprehensively by Mitchell (1961 1962).

### CELL DIVISION

The cell division process has been studied with the light microscope (Knays 1951 Bisset 1954 Clark Webb and Chance 1957 Robinow 1960a) and with the electron microscope (Chapman 1959 1960 Conti and Gettner 1962 Glauret 1962). In most gram positive bacteria a ring of cell wall material forms and grows inward to form a complete cross wall before division occurs (Fig 16). Perhaps the cytoplasmic membrane (Roth Lewis and Williams 1960) or so called peripheral bodies (Glauret 1962) or other intracytoplasmic membrane systems (Imaeda and Ogura 1963) play a role in this process. In gram positive rod shaped organisms the separation of the daughter cells usually does not follow immediately after the completion of the cross wall consequently chains or aggregates of cells are formed (Figs 1 F G and H).

Cell chains are found less frequently in gram negative bacteria. These bacteria usually divide by constriction without the formation of cross walls (Fig 17). However cross wall formation in *Escherichia coli* has been described recently by Conti and Gettner (1962).

### CYTOPLASM

The bacterial protoplast can be divided into 3 parts: the cytoplasmic membrane, the cytoplasm which lacks DNA but is rich in RNA, and the nuclear equivalent which contains all or almost all of the DNA of the cell.

#### GROUND CYTOPLASM

In electron micrographs of sectioned bacteria (Figs 16 and 17) the cytoplasm usually appears to be homogeneous and finely granular. The size and the shape of the cytoplasmic granules, as a rule termed ribosomes, are difficult to ascertain from inspection of sectioned material but in most cases they appear to be roughly spherical with a diameter of 100 to 300 Å (Murray 1960 Glauret 1962 Brieger 1963). The appearance of the sectioned cytoplasm seems to vary depending on the cultural conditions under which the bacteria are grown (Costeron Murray and Robinow 1961 Vanderwinkel and Murray 1962).

Detailed information concerning the nature of bacterial ribosomes has been obtained from electron microscopic, chemical and physicochemical studies on material isolated from disintegrated cells. Thus in extracts of *Escherichia coli* Tissieres *et al* (1959) Hall and Slayter (1959) and Huxley and Zubay (1960) found particles having sedimentation coefficients of 30, 50, 70 and 100 S. The particles contain 80 to 90 per cent of the RNA of the cells. The 100 S particles represent dimers of the 70 S particles and each 70 S particle consists of one 50 S and one

30 S component (Fig 26) The 50 S particles are approximately spherical having a diameter of approximately 150 Å and a molecular weight of 1,800,000 The recovery of the various particle aggregates depends on the concentration of  $Mg^{++}$  ions in the suspending medium According to Bowen *et al* (1961), mainly 50 S and 30 S particles are present in living cells of *E coli* and *Bacillus cereus*

The main components of the *E coli* ribosomes are RNA (Kurland 1960) and protein (Waller and Harris 1961) According to Zubay and Wilkins (1960) the nucleic acid and the protein of the ribosomes have an appreciable degree of structural independence as in nucleohistones

Ten to 20 per cent of the bacterial RNA the so-called soluble RNA has a relatively low molecular weight approximately 25,000 and is not bound to protein (Tissières 1959) This RNA is also termed transfer RNA since it transports amino acids to the sites of protein synthesis the ribosomes in the bacterial cells (Hunter and Godson 1961 Perutz 1963 Zubay 1963) Another kind of RNA messenger RNA carries genetic information from DNA to the ribosomes Messenger RNA is metabolically unstable and has a molecular weight of 250,000 or more (Risebrough Tissières and Watson 1962) It constitutes at the most a few per cent of the total RNA of the cell which in turn represents 10 to 25 per cent of the bacterial dry weight depending on the physiologic age of the organisms and the cultural conditions

The major part of the cytoplasmic proteins which are not associated with nucleic acids or located in the cytoplasmic membrane have sedimentation coefficients between 3 and 6 S (Schachman Pardee and Stamer 1952 Koenig *et al* 1959) Most of the enzymic activities of the ground cytoplasm seem to be located in these proteins However nucleases have been found in the ribosomes of *E coli* and *Azotobacter vinelandii* and in the ribosomes of the former organism a peptidase has also been demonstrated (Marr, 1960b)

A number of low molecular weight substances such as coenzymes vitamins nucleotides, peptides amino acids and sugars are also present in the ground cytoplasm

Bacterial cytoplasm, which contains approximately 80 per cent water seems to represent a sol rather than a gel Thus the ultracentrifugation experiments of King and Beams (1942) showed that the cytoplasmic inclusions of *Spirillum volutans* were displaced to the dependent parts of the cells upon centrifugation at 400,000 G When the cells were removed from the centrifugal field, the inclusions redistributed within 30 to 60 minutes It has also been noted that the lipid granules of *Bacillus megaterium* cells change their intracellular position rapidly (Robinow 1960a)

There are indications that the salts and other low molecular weight compounds of the cytoplasm exist to a large extent in a free solution instead of being bound to the cytoplasmic macromolecules Thus Mitchell and Moyle (1956a) found a good agreement between the values for the intracellular osmotic pressures of *Staphylococcus aureus* and *E coli* obtained from direct measurements and from estimations of the contents in the cell of low molecular weight compounds Similarly Sistrom (1958) reported that galactosides enzymatically transported into *E coli* cells exhibited an intracellular osmotic pressure that could be explained only if the accumulated galactosides existed in free solution

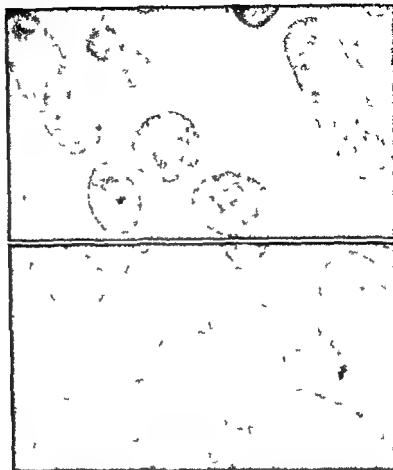
#### CYTOPLASMIC INCLUSIONS

Bacterial cytoplasm does not contain organelles comparable with the endoplasmic reticulum Golgi apparatus or lysosomes seen in mammalian cells

In bacteria of medical interest the following kinds of inclusions are found lipid inclusions (Burdon 1946) granules of glycogen and starch (Murray 1960) and metachromatic granules In some bacteria sulfur granules and protein crystals occur (Murray 1960 Robinow 1960a) The presence in bacteria of vacuoles containing gas or liquids has also been demonstrated (Houwink 1956 Murray 1960 Brieger 1963)

Metachromatic granules (Fig 2) owe their name to the fact that certain dyes e.g. toluidine blue and methylene blue change color when combining with these granules Metachromatic inclusions are also named

Fig 27 Electron micrographs of *Escherichia coli* cells (thin sections) (Top) Cells containing 17.4 per cent and (bottom) 4.5 per cent glycogen ( $\times 30,000$ ) (Holme and Cedergren 1961)



volutin because they occur prominently in cells of *Spirillum volutans*. Histochemical observations and chemical analyses on material extracted from bacteria indicate that the main constituent of the metachromatic granules is polymetaphosphate (Winkler 1956 Sall Mudd and Takagi 1958 Murray 1960). The metachromatic granules have been identified with nuclear equivalents and intracellular reduction sites. However these identifications are evidently not tenable (Glauert and Brieger 1955 Winkler 1956 Mudd Takeya and Henderson 1956).

Lipid granules seem to be the most common type of cytoplasmic inclusion of lipid nature. Chemical analyses indicate that these granules contain poly  $\beta$  hydroxybutyric acid (Hayward Forsyth and Roberts 1959 Doudoroff and Stanier 1959 Wilkinson 1959 Murray 1960 Slepecky and Law

1961 Fig 1 B C and E) and some other lipid in addition. Their sudanophilic character probably should be attributed to the latter component (Wilkinson, 1959).

The accumulation of glycogen granules in *E. coli* cells has been studied in some detail by Holme and Cedergren (1961). A great number of low density areas (holes) are seen in electron micrographs of cells rich in glycogen whereas in cells containing little glycogen only few holes are seen (Fig 27). Cells rich in glycogen show heavy staining with the periodic Schiff reagent.

Cells of *Clostridium* spp. accumulate a starchlike substance named granulose at the time of sporulation (Murray 1960 Robinson 1960a).

The cultural conditions and the physiologic age of the organisms greatly influence the occurrence of cytoplasmic inclusions in





FIG 28 *Bacillus cereus* stained according to Feulgen. Note dark nuclear equivalents ( $\times 3500$ ) (Robinow 1960a)

bacteria. It has been suggested that these inclusions represent waste products or storage material. In the case of poly  $\beta$  hydroxybutyric acid, evidence favoring the latter view was presented by Wilkinson (1959, 1963) and Doudoroff and Stanier (1959). The findings of Holme and Palmstierna (1956) indicate that glycogen represents storage material in *Escherichia coli*. Sali, Mudd and Takagi (1958) found that polymetaphosphate was used up during periods of cell division in synchronized cultures of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*.

## NUCLEAR EQUIVALENT

### EXISTENCE AND METHODS OF STUDY

Clear evidence for the existence of nuclear bodies in bacteria was not presented until comparatively recently, mainly because the importance of selecting appropriate bacterial specimens for the experimental work was not

well understood and because most methods for observing or staining nuclei in higher organisms are unsuitable for bacteria. However, in the late 1930s positive results were obtained by Feulgen staining, a reaction considered to be specific for DNA (Fig 28). In later studies use was made of other dyes which stain nuclear material intensely. For example, the nuclear bodies fluoresce specifically when stained with acridine orange (Robinow 1956, 1962; Hayes 1960; Kellenberger 1960; Brieger 1963).

Usually the nuclear equivalents of living bacteria are seen poorly or not at all in the light microscope. However, when the organisms are suspended in a medium of a high refractive index, often the nuclear bodies can be observed in the phase contrast microscope and their division can be followed (Fig 29).

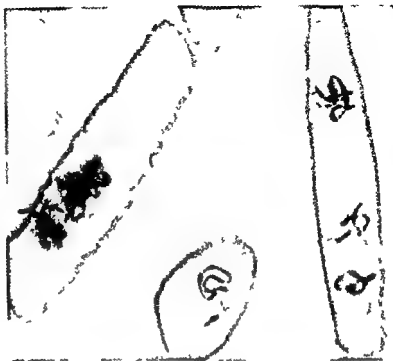
Early electron micrographs did not give very informative pictures of the nuclear equivalents. In electron micrographs of bacteria sectioned, fixed and embedded according to improved methods, a central region filled with delicate fibers can be seen (Figs 16 and 17). Comparisons with autoradiographic and light microscopic material show that this region contains the nuclear material (Burch Andersen 1955; Caro and Tubergen 1962; Fig 30).

Chemical analyses on whole bacteria and isolated nuclear bodies indicate that all or almost all of the bacterial DNA is located in the nuclear region (Hayes 1960).



FIG 29 Division of cells and nuclear equivalents in *Escherichia coli* ( $\times 2000$  phase contrast). Growth medium contained 20 per cent gelatin. Time between exposures 3 to 9 minutes (Dr D. J. Mason, Department of Microbiology, The Upjohn Company, Kalamazoo, Mich.)

FIG 30 Thin sections of *Bacillus subtilis* labeled with ( $H^3$ ) thymidine. The photographic grains seem closely associated with the nuclear regions ( $\times 38\ 000$ ) (Cato and Tubergen 1962)



#### MORPHOLOGY STRUCTURE AND CHEMICAL COMPOSITION

The light microscopic appearance of the nuclear regions of bacteria is extremely variable. Thus they may appear as round bodies, dumbbells, axial filaments or scattered granules connected with fine strands. This variation is often related to cultural conditions or the fixation methods used, but it may also be ascribed to generic or specific differences. In any case, all workers agree that chromosomes of the morphology characteristic for higher organisms do not occur in bacteria, nor is there a mitotic apparatus (Hayes 1960, DeLamater 1962).

The fine structure of nuclear bodies in bacteria has been well studied with the electron microscope. No membrane is seen between the nuclear bodies and the cytoplasm (Figs 16 and 17). This is the main reason, along with the absence of mitosis, for the frequent use of the term 'nuclear equivalent' instead of 'nucleus' when referring to bacteria. Nuclear material in bacteria commonly consists of fibrils 20 to 60 Å thick, which fill the entire nuclear region (Figs 16 and 17). The pictures published by Giesbrecht (1962) suggest that in some bacteria at least the

fibrils are organized in coils similar to those found in the chromosomes of some protozoa. Close associations between the nuclear bodies and mesosomes have also been described (Giesbrecht 1962, Robinow 1962).

A wealth of genetic data (see chapter on bacterial genetics) indicates that the genes of *Escherichia coli* are located on a single chromosome which usually forms a closed loop. A morphologic confirmation of this genetic model has been presented by Cairns (1963) who prepared autoradiographs of isolated nuclear material previously labeled with ( $H^3$ ) thymidine (Fig 31). The length of the chromosome is approximately 1 000  $\mu$ , which is in accordance with genetic data. A chromosome of this length must necessarily be coiled or bent repeatedly when located inside the cell. Hypothetical models explaining the structure of the nuclear bodies have been presented by Kellenberger (1960), Schlote (1961) and Robinow (1962).

The findings of Kleinschmidt *et al* (1961), Cairns (1963) and others indicate that the bacterial DNA, like the DNA of higher organisms, exists in the form of a fiber which on the molecular level has the double helix structure presented by Watson and Crick



FIG 28 *Bacillus cereus* stained according to Feulgen. Note dark nuclear equivalents ( $\times 3,500$ ) (Robinow 1960a)

bacteria. It has been suggested that these inclusions represent waste products or storage material. In the case of poly  $\beta$  hydroxybutyric acid, evidence favoring the latter view was presented by Wilkinson (1959, 1963) and Doudoroff and Stanier (1959). The findings of Holme and Palmstierna (1956) indicate that glycogen represents storage material in *Escherichia coli*. Sill Mudd and Takagi (1958) found that polymetaphosphate was used up during periods of cell division in synchronized cultures of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*.

## NUCLEAR EQUIVALENT

### EXISTENCE AND METHODS OF STUDY

Clear evidence for the existence of nuclear bodies in bacteria was not presented until comparatively recently, mainly because the importance of selecting appropriate bacterial specimens for the experimental work was not

well understood and because most methods for observing or staining nuclei in higher organisms are unsuitable for bacteria. However, in the late 1930s positive results were obtained by Feulgen staining, a reaction considered to be specific for DNA (Fig 28). In later studies use was made of other dyes which stain nuclear material intensely. For example, the nuclear bodies fluoresce specifically when stained with acridine orange (Robinow 1956, 1962; Hayes 1960; Kellenberger 1960; Brieger 1963).

Usually, the nuclear equivalents of living bacteria are seen poorly or not at all in the light microscope. However, when the organisms are suspended in a medium of a high refractive index, often the nuclear bodies can be observed in the phase contrast microscope and their division can be followed (Fig 29).

Early electron micrographs did not give very informative pictures of the nuclear equivalents. In electron micrographs of bacteria sectioned, fixed and embedded according to improved methods, a central region filled with delicate fibers can be seen (Figs 16 and 17). Comparisons with autoradiographic and light microscopic material show that this region contains the nuclear material (Birch Andersen 1955; Caro and Tubergen 1962; Fig 30).

Chemical analyses on whole bacteria and isolated nuclear bodies indicate that all or almost all of the bacterial DNA is located in the nuclear region (Hayes 1960).

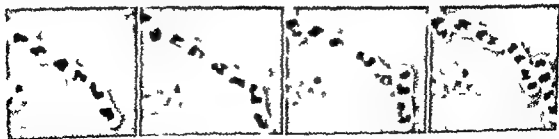


FIG 29 Division of cells and nuclear equivalents in *Escherichia coli* ( $\times 2,000$  phase contrast). Growth medium contained 20 per cent gelatin. Time between exposures 3 to 9 minutes (Dr D J Mason, Department of Microbiology, The Upjohn Company, Kalamazoo, Mich.)

these organelles within the cytoplasm usually one spore is formed in each cell. Several morphologic spore types exist which may be used for taxonomic purposes. Thus there exist spherical, ellipsoidal and cylindrical spores which may be located terminally, subterminally or centrally in the mother cell (the sporangium). Spores may have a diameter greater than that of the vegetative cells causing the spore forming part of the organism to bulge (Fig. 32). The spores have a high refractive index and are thus easily recognized under the light microscope. They stain only after heating but once stained tend to retain the dye to a far greater extent than vegetative cells.

The structure of the endospore varies somewhat from one species to another but generally the central part of the spore, the spore core, appears without much structural detail in electron micrographs (Fig. 33 C). The core is surrounded by a double membrane, the spore wall or spore cytoplasmic membrane (SM). Outside this membrane is a layer named the cortex (CX) which in turn is surrounded by 1 or 2 spore coats (IC and OC). The inner spore coat often is laminated. The spore coats may be covered by a so-called exosporium. The exosporium and the outer spore coat often are separated from each other either completely or at the poles of the spore (Robinow 1960b, Tomcsik 1962).

The chemical composition of bacterial spores differs in many respects qualitatively or quantitatively from that of the corresponding vegetative cells. The most striking difference is represented by the high content (approximately 10%) of dipicolinic acid (pyridine 2,6 dicarboxylic acid) in spores. Vegetative cells are devoid of this compound (Halvorson 1962). The water content of spores as compared with that of vegetative cells has been investigated repeatedly but there is some discrepancy in the results obtained. Measurements of the refractive index of spores indicate that they contain only 10 to 20 per cent of water whereas according to direct estimation of their moisture content and permeability measurements the difference in water content between spores and vegetative cells is not very marked (Black and Gerhardt 1962, Halvorson 1962).

Mucopeptide material similar to that found in walls of vegetative cells is also found in spores. It is probably located in the cortex. The spore coats seem to contain chiefly proteinaceous material (Warth, Ohye and Murrell 1963).

Many enzymes have been found in bacterial spores (Halvorson 1962).

Marked changes occur in the enzyme pattern during formation of spores (sporulation). Thus cytochromes are not found in spores of *Bacillus* spp. whereas vegetative cells are rich in these enzymes.

Serologic investigations (Halvorson 1962, Tomcsik 1962) show that antisera prepared against surface structures of *Bacillus* spores do not react with the corresponding vegetative cells.

The sporulation process has been characterized in considerable detail from the morphologic point of view (Fitz James 1960, Robinow 1960b, Ohye and Murrell 1962, Young and Fitz James 1962). The first rec-

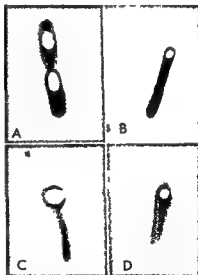


FIG. 32. Spore-forming bacteria ( $\times 3000$ , phase contrast). (A) *Bacillus megaterium* with central and terminal ellipsoidal spores (B) and (C) *Clostridium* spp. with terminal spherical spores (D) An unidentified bacterium with a terminal spherical spore.



FIG 31 Auto-radiograph of dividing *Escherichia coli* chromosome labeled with  $(H^3)$  thymidine for 2 generations. Length of chromosome approximately  $1100\mu$  (length of scale  $100\mu$ ). In part of the chromosome only one DNA strand is labeled in part both strands (see explanatory drawing) (Cairns J. Sympos. Cold Spring Harbor 28 43-46 1963)

(1953) Chemical components other than DNA have not yet been definitely localized in the nuclear equivalents of bacteria. Analyses carried out on isolated nuclear bodies of *Bacillus megaterium* (Spiegelman, Aronson and Fitz James 1958; Ezekiel 1961) indicate that they may also contain RNA and protein. According to Spiegelman, Aronson and Fitz James, the nuclear protein represents a core around which the DNA is layered. On the other hand, Wilkins and Zubay

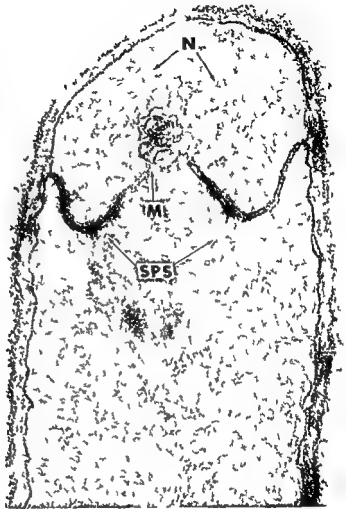
(1959) concluded that the DNA of *E. coli* unlike the DNA of higher organisms probably is not bound to protein.

## BACTERIAL RESTING FORMS

### ENDOSPORES

The formation of endospores is especially characteristic for the genera *Bacillus* and *Clostridium*. The vegetative cells develop

FIG 35 Electron micrograph of *Bacillus coagulans* (thin section) showing a stage in the sporulation process ( $\times 170\,000$ ) SPS = spore septum M = mesosome N = nuclear material (Ohye and Murrell 1962)



ognizable step consists of an invagination of the sporangial cytoplasmic membrane (Fig 34 A). In this way a pocket is formed which contains the nuclear material of the future spore and some cytoplasm (Fig 34 B). The intrusions of the cytoplasmic membrane come into contact with the nuclear material and a mesosome appears in the same region (Fig 34 B Fig 35). When the cytoplasmic septum or spore septum has completely traversed the cell (Fig 34 D) it begins to bulge (Fig 34 E) and 2 or 3 mesosomes appear outside the developing spore (Fig 34 F to H). The later stages of the sporulation process are characterized by deposition of cortical material between the 2 layers of the spore septum. The high refractility of the

spore develops at this stage. The inner layer of the spore septum eventually forms the spore plasma membrane (spore wall). The outer layer develops into the spore coats and the exosporium.

The first step in the germination process which gives rise to a new vegetative cell is a loss of refractility and swelling of the spore. The young vegetative cell then extrudes through the bursting spore coats. The wall of this cell seems to be the former spore wall. Electron micrographs show that in the core of the germinating spore regions appear containing nuclear material of the kind found in vegetative cells. Simultaneously the cytoplasm becomes distinctly granular (Robinow 1960b).

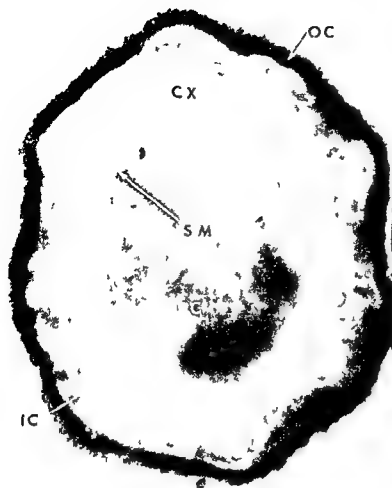


FIG 33 Electron micrograph of a mature spore of *Bacillus coagulans* (thin section). Spore heated for 3 minutes at 110 C ( $\times 90\,000$ ). The micrograph shows the spore core (C), spore cytoplasmic membrane or spore wall (SM), cortex (CX), spore cytoplasmic membrane or spore wall (SM), cortex (CX), inner spore coat (IC) and outer spore coat (OC) (Dr D F Ohye CSIRO Division of Food Preservation Ryde New South Wales Australia)

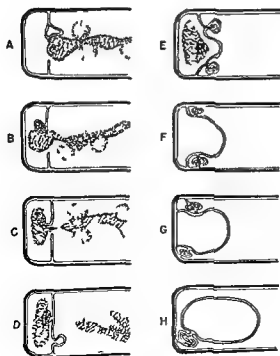


FIG 34 A diagrammatic representation of the early stages in the sporulation process in bacilli (Fitz James 1960). For explanations see text

teria visible in the ordinary light microscope the preparation is treated with a counterstain e.g. neutral red, safranin or Bismarck brown.

Many theories have been advanced to explain the Gram stain reaction. It has often been proposed that the dye-iodine complex is bound to some specific compound in the bacterial cells. A number of substances have been discussed in this connection, especially nucleic acids, lipids and proteins. Some workers have assumed that gram-positive organisms have a lower isoelectric point than the gram-negative ones and consequently a stronger affinity to the primary basic Gram stain.

However, it has become increasingly clear that the Gram stain reaction cannot be explained in simple chemical or physicochemical terms. The structural architecture of the bacterial cell must also be taken into account. The most recent investigations (Salton 1963; Scherrer 1963a and b) point to the permeability of the cell wall as being of decisive importance. Thus the wall of gram-positive organisms becomes largely impermeable to low molecular weight compounds when the organisms are suspended in 70 to 100 per cent alcohol. Thus probably the alcohol-soluble dye-iodine complex is trapped within the wall in gram-positive bacteria with the consequence that the cells remain stained. In gram-negative organisms on the other hand, the complex rapidly leaks out through the wall.

It should be emphasized that there is no strict partition line between gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria; the term 'gram variable' is often encountered. Many gram-positive organisms tend to become gram-negative with increasing physiologic age.

#### THE ACID-FAST STAIN

Certain bacteria, especially *Mycobacterium* spp., are not penetrated readily by ordinary dyes. However, when they are treated with a solution of a phenylmethane dye (usually basic fuchsin) in aqueous phenol, preferably in combination with heating, staining is achieved. Once stained the mycobacteria retain the dye even when treated with dilute mineral acid; hence the term 'acid-fast'.

It has been assumed (Lamanna and Mal-

lette 1959) that phenylmethane dyes in combination with phenol are more soluble in the milieu provided by the cell constituents of mycobacteria than in the decolorizers used. This solubility might be due to certain lipids present in mycobacteria. Mycobacteria with crushed walls lose their acid-fastness; probably the intact wall prevents the extraction of dye from the cells by the decolorizer.

## REFERENCES

### TEXTBOOKS AND REVIEWS

- Baddiley J. 1962 Teichoic acids and related compounds in bacteria. *Roy Inst Chem J* 86: 366-373.
- Bartholomew J. W. and Mittwer T. 1952 The Gram stain. *Bact Rev* 16: 1-29.
- Bisset K. A. 1955 *The Cytology and Life History of Bacteria*, ed. 2. Edinburgh: Livingstone, pp. 85 and 124.
- Brieger E. M. 1963 *Structure and Ultrastructure of Microorganisms*. New York: Acad Press, pp. 75, 140 and 225.
- Colobert L. and Creach O. 1961 La paroi ectoplasmique des bactéries. *Path et Biol* 9: 361-386.
- Conn H. J. 1957 *Manual of Microbiological Methods* by the Society of American Bacteriologists. New York: McGraw-Hill, pp. 10 and 149.
- Cruickshank R. 1960 *Mackie & McCartney's Handbook of Bacteriology*, ed. 10. Edinburgh: Livingstone, p. 107.
- Duguid J. P. and Wilkinson J. F. 1961 Environmentally induced changes in bacterial morphology. *Sympos Soc Gen Microbiol* 11: 69-99.
- Frobisher M. 1962 *Fundamentals of Microbiology*, ed. 7. Philadelphia: Saunders, p. 107.
- Gelman N. S. and Lukoyanova M. A. 1962 Perenoschika elektronov v dykhatelnoi tseli i ikh svyaz so strukturami bacterialnoi kletki. *Mikrobiologiya* 31: 556-569.
- Glauert A. M. 1962 The fine structure of bacteria. *Brit Med Bull* 18: 245-250.
- Halvorson H. 1962 *Physiology of sporulation in *Gunsalus* I. C. and Stanier R. Y. (eds) The Bacteria*, vol. 4. New York: Acad Press, pp. 223-264.
- Hayes W. 1960 The bacterial chromosome. *Sympos Soc Gen Microbiol* 10: 12-38.
- Heidelberger M. 1956 *Lectures in Immunology*. New York: Acad Press, p. 15.



## CYSTS AND CONIDIA

The cysts do not develop within the cytoplasm but arise by a rounding up of the entire mother cell. The cysts of *A. otobacter* spp. are covered by a multi-layered envelope outside the ordinary cell wall (Tchan Birch Andersen and Jensen 1962). Cysts or cyst-like forms have also been described in spirochaetes (DeLamater *et al.* 1951) and spirilla (Williams and Rittenberg 1956).

The formation of conidia or conidiospores i.e. resting forms produced at the end of filamentous cells is especially characteristic for the family of *Streptomyces*. With regard to formation and the structure the conidia resemble bacterial cysts rather than endospores (Glauert 1962).

## INTRACELLULAR GRANULES AND FILTERABLE FORMS

Many workers have described small granular elements found in bacterial cultures either free or inside other bacterial forms (Kieneberger Nobel 1951 1962 Bisset 1955). These granules often pass filters which normally retain bacteria. It has been assumed that they have a reproductive function but this view has been disputed (Kellenberger Liebermeister and Bonifas 1956 Weibull 1963).

## BACTERIAL STAINS

## GENERAL

Most of the staining methods mentioned in the preceding sections specifically stain certain subcellular components of the bacteria e.g. the nuclear equivalents. These methods are used only to a limited extent in diagnostic work. However other staining procedures such as the Gram staining technique are of great value for diagnostic purposes. When these methods are applied either the entire bacterial cell (or rather the protoplast) is stained or it is not stained at all depending on the taxonomic position of the species studied. Certain simple compounds, e.g. methylene blue and basic fuchsin stain almost all kinds of bacteria and are used to detect bacteria in general.

## SIMPLE STAINS

The main protoplasmic constituents of all bacteria are negatively charged except at rather low pH values. Thus stains owing their specific light absorption to colored positive ions are well suited for staining most bacterial cells. The practical performance of these staining procedures and of more complicated staining techniques is described in bacteriologic manuals (Conn 1957 Cruickshank 1960).

## THE GRAM STAIN

The Gram staining procedure (Bartolomew and Mitwer 1952 Scherrer, 1963a) consists of 5 steps.

1 The cells are fixed. Heat fixation is the standard method but the method of fixation is not of decisive importance for the result of the staining.

2 The cells are stained with the so-called primary Gram stain. The standard dye used is crystal violet (hexamethyl triamino triphenylmethane hydrochloride). Homologues of this dye (methyl violets) and some other dyes can also be used but no compound has been found which is superior to crystal violet. The primary stain is fixed to both gram positive and gram negative bacteria. The dye seems to be distributed uniformly in the cytoplasm (Tchan 1963).

3 The bacteria are mordanted with an iodine potassium iodide solution. This causes the formation of a complex which is insoluble in water of primary stain and iodine. The mordanting cannot be carried out before the application of the primary stain.

4 A decolorizing agent is applied to the stained and mordanted preparation. This causes an extraction of the dye iodine complex from the group of bacteria which is called gram negative whereas in the gram positive bacteria the complex is retained.

Usually 70 to 100 per cent alcohol is used as decolorizer. Prolonged treatment with decolorizer also extracts the dye iodine complex from gram positive organisms. Thus the difference between gram positive and gram negative bacteria is of a quantitative rather than qualitative nature.

5 In order to render gram negative bac

- Weibull C 1958 Bacterial protoplasts *Ann Rev Microbiol* 12 1 26
- 1960 Movement in *Gunsalus* I C and Stanier R Y (eds) *The Bacteria* A Treatise on Structure and Function vol 1 New York and London Acad Press pp 153 205
- Westphal O Luderitz O Eichenberger E and Neter E 1958 Mucopolysaccharides of gram negative bacteria newer chemical and biological aspects in Wolstenholme G E W and O'Connor M (eds) *Ciba Foundation Symposium on the Chemistry and Biology of Mucopolysaccharides* London Churchill pp 187 199
- Westphal O and Luderitz O 1963 Die biologische Bedeutung der chemischen Feinstruktur bakterieller Zellgrenzflächen *Naturwissenschaften* 50 413 425
- Wilkinson J F 1958 The extracellular polysaccharides of bacteria *Bact Rev* 22 46-73
- 1959 The problem of energy storage compounds in bacteria *Exp Cell Res Suppl* 7 111 130
- Winkler A 1956 Die Bakterienzelle Stuttgart Gustav Fischer # 54
- Work E 1961 The mucopeptides of bacterial cell walls A review *J Gen Microbiol* 25 167 189
- JOURNAL ARTICLES
- Abrams A and McNamara P 1962 Polynucleotide phosphorylase in isolated bacterial cell membranes *J Biol Chem* 237 170 175
- Ambler R V and Rees M W 1959  $\epsilon$ -N-methyl lysine in bacterial flagellar protein *Nature* (London) 184 56-57
- Baddiley J Buchanan J G Martin R O and Rajbhandary U L 1962 1 Teichoic acid from the walls of *Staphylococcus aureus* II 2 Location of phosphate and alanine residues *Biochem J* 85 49 56
- Beighton E Porter A M and Stocker M A D 1958 X ray and related studies of the flagella of non motile bacteria *Biochim Biophys Acta* 29 8 13
- Birch Andersen A 1955 Reconstruction of the nuclear sites of *Salmonella typhimurium* from electron micrographs of serial sections *J Gen Microbiol* 13 327 329
- Bisset K A 1954 The cytology of *Micrococcus cryophilus* *J Bact* 67 41-44
- Bisset K A and Hale C M 1963 The swimmers of *Bacillus cereus* *J Gen Microbiol* 31 281 284
- Black S H and Gerhardt P 1962 Permeability of bacterial spores IV Water content uptake and distribution *J Bact* 83 960 967
- Bladen H A Jr 1963 Demonstration of an unusual ultrastructure found in *Bacteroides* a conjugatory bridge? *J Bact* 85 250 253
- Bowen T J Dagley E Sykes J and Wild D G 1961 Nature of the ribosomes present in bacteria and yeast a re appraisal *Nature* (London) 189 638 640
- Brinton C 1959 Non flagellar appendages of bacteria *Nature* (Lond) 183 782 786
- Brown J W 1961 Composition of fractions prepared from *Sarcina lutea* protoplasts *Biochim Biophys Acta* 52 368 374
- Brown A D Drummond D G and North R J 1962 The peripheral structures of Gram negative bacteria II Membranes of bacilli and spheroplasts of a marine pseudomonad *Biochim Biophys Acta* 58 514 531
- Burdon K L 1946 Fatty material in bacteria and fungi revealed by staining dried fixed slide preparations *J Bact* 52 665 678
- Burge R E 1961 The structure of bacterial flagella the packing of the polypeptide chain within a flagellum *Proc Roy Soc* (London) A 260 558 573
- Burrows S E and Wood W A 1962 Enzyme distribution in membrane cytoplasm and nuclear fractions from *Pseudomonas fluorescens* *J Bact* 84 364 369
- Cairns J 1963 The bacterial chromosome and its manner of replication as seen by autoradiography *J Molec Biol* 6 208 213
- Campbell I J R Hogg L A and Strasdin G A 1962 Enzyme distribution in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* *J Bact* 83 1155 1160
- Caro L G and van Tubergen R P 1962 High resolution autoradiography I *Methods J Cell Biol* 15 173 188
- Chapman G # 1959 Electron microscope observations on the behavior of the bacterial cytoplasmic membrane during cellular division *J Biophys Biochem Cytol* 6 221 224
- 1960 Electron microscopy of cellular division in *Sarcina lutea* *J Bact* 79 132 136
- Clark J B Webb R H and Chance H L 1957 The cell plate in bacterial cytokinesis *J Bact* 73 72 76
- Clarke P H and Lilly M H 1962 A general structure for cell walls of gram negative bacteria *Nature* (London) 195 516 517
- Conti S F and Gettner M E 1962 Electron microscopy of cellular division in *Escherichia coli* *J Bact* 83 544 550
- Costerton J W F Murray R G E and Robinow C F 1961 Observations on the

- Hughes D E 1962 The bacterial cytoplasmic membrane *J Gen Microbiol* 29 39-46
- Kandler O and Kandler G 1960 Die L Phase der Bakterien *Ergebn Mikrobiol Immunitätsforsch* 33 97-127
- Kay D ed 1961 *Techniques for Electron Microscopy* p 1 Oxford Blackwell
- Kellenberger E 1960 The physical state of the bacterial nucleus *Sympos Soc Gen Microbiol* 10 39-66
- Klienberger Nobel E 1951 Filterable forms of bacteria *Bact Rev* 15 77-103
- 1960 L-forms of bacteria *In* Gunsalus I C and Stanier R Y (eds) *The Bacteria* vol 1 New York Acad Press pp 361-386
- 1962 Pleuropneumonia Like Organisms (PPLO) *Mycoplasmataceae* New York Acad Press pp 23 and 61
- Knaysi G A 1951 *Elements of Bacterial Cytology* ed 2 Ithaca N Y Comstock pp 159 and 168
- Lamanna C and Mallette M F 1959 *Basic Bacteriology Its Biological and Chemical Background* ed 2 Baltimore Williams & Wilkins p 167
- Leifson H 1960 *Atlas of Bacterial Flagellation* New York Acad Press p 1
- Marr A G 1960a Localization of enzymes in bacteria *In* Gunsalus I C and Stanier R Y (eds) *The Bacteria* vol 1 New York Acad Press pp 443-468
- Marr A G 1960b Enzyme localization in bacteria *Ann Rev Microbiol* 14 241-260
- Martin H H 1963 Bacterial protoplasts—a review *J Theoret Biol* 5 134
- McQuillen K 1960 Bacterial protoplasts *In* Gunsalus I C and Stanier R Y (eds) *The Bacteria* vol 1 New York Acad Press pp 249-359
- Mitchell P and Moyle J 1956a Osmotic function and structure in bacteria *Sympos Soc Gen Microbiol* 6 150-180
- Mitchell H 1961 Approaches to the analysis of specific membrane transport *In* Goodwin T W and Lindberg O (eds) *Biological structure and function* vol 2 New York Acad Press pp 581-603
- 1962 Metabolism transport and morphogenesis which drives which? *J Gen Microbiol* 29 25-37
- Murray R G E 1960 The internal structure of the cell *In* Gunsalus I C and Stanier R Y (eds) *The Bacteria* vol 1 New York Acad Press pp 35-96
- 1962 Fine structure and taxonomy of bacteria, *Sympos Soc Gen Microbiol* 12 119-144
- Nairn R C 1962 *Fluorescent Protein Tracing* Edinburgh Livingstone p 56
- Perkins H E 1963 Chemical structure and biosynthesis of bacterial cell walls *Bact Rev* 27 18-55
- Perutz M F 1963 *Proteins and Nucleic Acids* Amsterdam Elsevier p 109
- Pijper A 1957 Bacterial flagella and motility *Ergebn Mikrobiol Immunitätsforsch* 30 37-95
- Ribi E Haskins W T Landy M and Milner K C 1961 I Relationship of chemical composition to biological activity *Bact Rev* 25 427-436
- Robertson J D 1959 The ultrastructure of cell membranes and their derivatives *Sympos Biochem Soc* 16 3-43
- Robinow C F 1956 The chromatin bodies of bacteria *Bact Rev* 20 207-242
- 1960a Outline of the visible organization of bacteria *In* Brachet J and Mirsky A E (eds) *The Cell* vol 4 New York Acad Press pp 45-108
- 1960b Morphology of bacterial spores their development and germination *In* Gunsalus I C and Stanier R Y (eds) *The Bacteria* vol 1 New York Acad Press pp 207-248
- 1962 Morphology of the bacterial nucleus *Brit Med Bull* 18 31-35
- Rogers H J 1963 The surface structures of bacteria *Sympos Biochem Soc* 22 55-104
- Salton M R J 1960a Surface layers of the bacterial cell *In* Gunsalus I C and Stanier R Y (eds) *The Bacteria* vol 1 New York Acad Press pp 97-151
- 1960b *Microbial Cell Walls* CIBA Lectures in Microbial Biochemistry New York Wiley p 1
- 1961 The anatomy of the bacterial surface *Bact Rev* 25 77-99
- 1962 Cell wall structure and biosynthesis *J Gen Microbiol* 29 15-23
- Scherrer R 1963a Die Gramfärbung *Ergebn Mikrobiol Immunitätsforsch* 36 59-96
- Strominger J L 1962 Biosynthesis of bacterial cell walls *In* Gunsalus I C and Stanier R Y (eds) *The Bacteria* vol 3 New York Acad Press pp 413-470
- Timakov V D and Kagan G Y 1961 *Biologiya L Form Bakteri* Moskva Medgiz p 1
- Tomesik J 1956 Bacterial capsules and their relation to the cell wall *Sympos Soc Gen Microbiol* 6 41-67
- 1962 Struktur und Leben der Bakterien Endosporen *Ergebn Mikrobiol Immunitätsforsch* 35 39-99

- phospholipids in the process *Nature* (London) 189 140-141
- Huxley H E and Zubay G 1960 Electron microscope observations on the structure of microsomal particles from *Escherichia coli* *J Molec Biol* 2 10-18
- Imaeda T and Convit J 1962 Electron microscope study of *Mycobacterium leprae* and its environment in a vesicular leprosy lesion *J Bact* 83 43-52
- Imaeda T and Ogura M 1963 Formation of intracytoplasmic membrane system of *Mycobacteria* related to cell division *J Bact* 85 150-163
- Ishikawa S and Lehninger A L 1962 Reconstitution of oxidative phosphorylation in preparations from *Micrococcus lysodeikticus* *J Biol Chem* 237 2401-2408
- van Iterson W 1956 Some thoughts on the possible relationship of bacterial flagella to cilia and flagella in other organisms in Ross R (ed) *Proceedings of the third International Conference on Electron Microscopy* London 1954 London Roy Micr Soc pp 602-607
- van Iterson W and Ruys A C 1960 The fine structure of the Mycoplasmataceae (microorganisms of the pleuropneumonia group = PPLO) I *Mycoplasma hominis* *M fermentans* and *M salivarium* *J Ultrastruct Res* 3 282-301
- Kawata T 1963 Fine structure of intracytoplasmic membrane system in *Listeria monocytogens* *J Gen Appl Microbiol* 9 1-14
- Kellenberger E Liebermeister K and Bonifas V 1956 Studien zur L Form der Bakterien II Dimension und Filterbarkeit der globulären Form *Z Naturforsch* 11 (B) 206-215
- Kellenberger E and Ryter A 1958 Cell wall and cytoplasmic membrane of *Escherichia coli* *J Biophys Biochem Cytol* 4 323-326
- Kerridge D Horne R W and Glauert A M 1962 Structural components of flagella from *Salmonella typhimurium* *J Molec Biol* 4 227-238
- King R L and Beams H W 1942 Ultra-centrifugation and cytology of *Spirillum volutans* *J Bact* 44 597-609
- Kleinschmidt A Lang D Plescher C Hellmann W Haass J Zahn R K and Hagedorn A 1961 Über die intrazelluläre Formation von Bakterien DNS *Z Naturforsch* 16 (B) 730-739
- Kobayashi T Rinker J N and Koffler H 1959 Purification and chemical properties of flagellin *Arch Biochem Biophys* 84 342-362
- Koenig V L Sowinski R Slade H D and Hess E L 1959 Sedimentation behavior of some macromolecular components from *Streptococcus pyogenes* *J Bact* 78 369-373
- Kurland C G 1960 Molecular characterization of ribonucleic acid from *Escherichia coli* ribosomes I Isolation and molecular weights *J Molec Biol* 2 83-91
- Leifson E 1961 The effect of formaldehyde on the shape of bacterial flagella *J Gen Microbiol* 25 131-133
- Liebermeister K 1960 Morphology of the PPLO and L forms of *Proteus* *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 79 326-343
- Martin H H and Frank H 1962 Quantitative Bausteinanalyse der Stützmembran in der Zellwand von *Escherichia coli* III *Z Naturforsch* 17 (B) 190-196
- Marx R and Heumann W 1962 Über Geisseleinstrukturen und Fimbrien bei zwei Pseudomonas-Stämmen *Arch Mikrobiol* 43 245-254
- Mason D J and Powelson D 1958 The cell wall of *Myrococcus xanthus* *Biochim Biophys Acta* 29 1-7
- Mathews M M and Siström W R 1959 Intracellular location of carotenoid pigments and some respiratory enzymes in *Sarcina lutea* *J Bact* 78 778-787
- Mitchell P and Moyle J 1956b Liberation and osmotic properties of the protoplasts of *Micrococcus lysodeikticus* and *Sarcina lutea* *J Gen Microbiol* 15 512-520
- 1957 Autolytic release and osmotic properties of protoplasts from *Staphylococcus aureus* *J Gen Microbiol* 16 184-194
- Morrison T III and Weibull C 1962 The occurrence of cell wall constituents in stable *Proteus* L forms *Acta Path Microbiol Scand* 55 475-482
- Mudd S Takeya K and Henderson H J 1956 Electron scattering granules and reducing sites in mycobacteria *J Bact* 72 767-783
- Mudd S Kawata T Payne I I Sall T and Takagi A 1961 Plasma membranes and mitochondrial equivalents as functionally coordinated structures *Nature* (London) 189 79-80
- Nernst M V 1960 Über die Lage der Teilung Reduktionsorte in Zellen von *Proteus vulgaris* *Zbl Bakt (Orig)* 178 348-356
- Ohye D F and Murrell W G 1962 Formation and structure of the spore of *Bacillus coagulans* *J Cell Biol* 14 111-123

- motility and the structure of *Vitreoscilla* Canad J Microbiol 7 329-339
- Cota Robles E H 1963 Electron microscopy of plasmolysis in *Escherichia coli* J Bact 85 499-503
- DeLamater E D Haanes M Wiggall R H and Pillsbury D M 1951 Studies on the life cycle of spirochetes VIII Summary and comparison of observations on various organisms J Invest Derm 16 231-256
- DeLamater L D 1962 Withdrawal of the concept of the occurrence of classical mitosis in bacteria Nature (London) 195 309-310
- Doudoroff M and Stanier R Y 1959 Role of poly  $\beta$  hydroxybutyric acid in the assimilation of organic carbon by bacteria Nature (London) 183 1440-1442
- Duguid J P 1951 The demonstration of bacterial capsules and slime J Path Bact 63 673-685
- Dupouy G Perrier F and Durrieu L 1960 L'observation de la matière vivante au moyen d'un microscope électronique fonctionnant sous très haute tension C R Acad Sci (Paris) 251 2836-2841
- Edwards G A and Fogh J 1960 Fine structure of pleuropneumonia-like organisms in pure culture and in infected tissue culture cells J Bact 79 267-276
- Elo J H 1937 Vergleichende Permeabilitätsstudien besonders an niederen Pflanzen Ann Bot Soc Zool Botan Fenn Vanamo 8 1
- Erlander S R Koffler H and Foster J F 1960 Physical properties of flagellin from *Proteus vulgaris* a study involving the application of the Archibald sedimentation principle Arch Biochem Biophys 90 139-153
- Ezekiel D H 1961 Increase in ribonucleic acid in the bacterial chromatin body during chloramphenicol treatment J Bact 81 319-326
- Fitz James P C 1960 Participation of the cytoplasmic membrane in the growth and spore formation of bacilli J Biophys Biochem Cytol 8 507-528
- 1962 The initial formation of parasporal inclusions in bacteria in Breese S S Jr (ed) Electron Microscopy [Fifth International Congress for Electron Microscopy Held in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania August 29th to September 5th 1962] vol 2 New York Acad Press p RR 10
- Freimer E H, Krause R M and McCarty, M 1959 Studies of L forms and protoplasts of Group A streptococci I Isolation growth and bacteriologic characteristics J Exp Med 110 853-874
- Freimer E H 1963 Studies of L forms and protoplasts of Group A streptococci II Chemical and immunological properties of the cell membrane J Exp Med 117 377-399
- Gelman N S Zhukova I G and Oparin A I 1959 Deistvie poverkhnostnoaktivnogo veshchestva na fermentnuyu sistemu oksilya yushchuyu yabloonnuyu kislotu v tsitoplazmaticheskikh membranakh *Micrococcus lysodeikticus* Biokhimiya 24 1074-1078
- Giesbrecht P 1960 Über organisierte Mitochondrien und andere Feinstrukturen von *Bacillus megaterium* Zbl Bakt (Orig) 179 538-581
- 1962 Vergleichende Untersuchungen an den Chromosomen des Dinoflagellaten *Amphidinium elegans* und denen der Bakterien Zbl Bakt (Orig) 187 452-497
- Gilby A R and Few A V 1959 Osmotic properties of protoplasts of *Micrococcus lysodeikticus* J Gen Microbiol 20 321-327
- Glauert A M and Brieger C M 1955 The electron dense bodies of *Mycobacterium phlei* J Gen Microbiol 13 310-317
- Hall C E and Slayter H S 1959 Electron microscopy of ribonucleoprotein particles from *E coli* J Molec Biol 1 329-332
- Hayward A C Forsyth W G C and Roberts J B 1959 Synthesis and breakdown of poly  $\beta$  hydroxybutyric acid by bacteria J Gen Microbiol 20 510-518
- Holme T and Palmstierna H 1956 Changes in glycogen and nitrogen containing compounds in *Escherichia coli* B during growth in deficient media I Nitrogen and carbon starvation Acta Chem Scand 10 578-586
- Holme T and Cedergren H 1961 Demonstration of intracellular polysaccharide in *Escherichia coli* by electron microscopy and by cytochemical methods Acta Path Microbiol Scand 51 179-186
- Holwill M E J and Burge R E 1963 A hydrodynamic study of the motility of flagellated bacteria Arch Biochem Biophys 101 249-260
- Houwink A L 1955 *Caulobacter* Its morphogenesis taxonomy and parasitism Antonie Leeuwenhoek 21 49-64
- 1956 Flagella gas vacuoles and cell wall structure in *Halobacterium halobium* an electron microscope study J Gen Microbiol 15 146-150
- Hunter G D and Godson G N 1961 Later stages of protein synthesis and the role of

- phospholipids in the process Nature (London) 189 140-141
- Huxley H E and Zubay G 1960 Electron microscope observations on the structure of microsomal particles from *Escherichia coli* J Molec Biol 2 10 18
- Imaeda T and Convit J 1962 Electron microscope study of *Mycobacterium leprae* and its environment in a vesicular leprosy lesion J Bact 83 43 52
- Imaeda T and Ogura M 1963 Formation of intracytoplasmic membrane system of *Mycobacteria* related to cell division J Bact 85 150 163
- Ishikawa S and Lehninger A I 1962 Reconstitution of oxidative phosphorylation in preparations from *Micrococcus lysodeikticus* J Biol Chem 237 2401 2408
- van Iterson W 1956 Some thoughts on the possible relationship of bacterial flagella to cilia and flagella in other organisms in Ross R (ed) Proceedings of the third International Conference on Electron Microscopy London 1954 London Roy Mic Soc pp 602 607
- van Iterson W and Ruys A C 1960 The fine structure of the Mycoplasmataceae (microorganisms of the pleuropneumonia group = PPLO) I *Mycoplasma hominis* *M. fermentans* and *M. salivarium* J Ultrastruct Res 3 282 301
- Kawata T 1963 Fine structure of intracytoplasmic membrane system in *Listeria monocytogenes* J Gen Appl Microbiol 9 1 14
- Kellenberger E Liebermeister K and Bonifas V 1956 Studien zur L Form der Bakterien II Dimension und Filtrierbarkeit der globulären Form Z Naturforsch 11 (B) 206-215
- Kellenberger E and Ryter A 1958 Cell wall and cytoplasmic membrane of *Escherichia coli* J Biophys Biochem Cytol 4 323 326
- Kerridge D Horne R W and Glauert A M 1962 Structural components of flagella from *Salmonella typhimurium* J Molec Biol 4 227 238
- King R L and Beams H W 1942 Ultracentrifugation and cytology of *Spirillum volutans* J Bact 44 597 609
- Kleinschmidt A Lang H Plescher C Hellmann W Haass J Zahn R K and Hagedorn A 1961 Über die intrazelluläre Formation von Bakterien DNS Z Naturforsch 16 (B) 730 739
- Kobayashi T Rinker J N and Koffler H 1959 Purification and chemical properties of flagellin Arch Biochem Biophys 84 342 362
- Koenig V L Sowinski R Slade H H and Hess E L 1959 Sedimentation behavior of some macromolecular components from *Streptococcus pyogenes* J Bact 78 369 373
- Kurland C G 1960 Molecular characterization of ribonucleic acid from *Escherichia coli* ribosomes I Isolation and molecular weights J Molec Biol 2 83 91
- Leifson E 1961 The effect of formaldehyde on the shape of bacterial flagella J Gen Microbiol 25 131 133
- Liebermeister K 1960 Morphology of the PPLO and L forms of *Proteus* Ann N Y Acad Sci 79 326 343
- Martin II H and Frank H 1962 Quantitative Bausteinanalyse der Stützmembran in der Zellwand von *Escherichia coli* B Z Naturforsch 17 (B) 190 196
- Marx R and Heumann W 1962 Über Geisselfeinstrukturen und Fimbrien bei zwei *Pseudomonas* Stämmen Arch Mikrobiol 43 245 254
- Mason D J and Powelson D 1958 The cell wall of *Myxococcus xanthus* Biochim Biophys Acta 29 1 7
- Mathews M M and Sistrom W R 1959 Intracellular location of carotenoid pigments and some respiratory enzymes in *Sarcina lutea* J Bact 78 778 787
- Mitchell P and Moyle J 1956b Liberation and osmotic properties of the protoplasts of *Micrococcus lysodeikticus* and *Sarcina lutea* J Gen Microbiol 15 512 520
- 1957 Autolytic release and osmotic properties of protoplasts from *Staphylococcus aureus* J Gen Microbiol 16 184 194
- Morrison T H and Weibull C 1962 The occurrence of cell wall constituents in stable *Proteus* L forms Acta Path Microbiol Scand 55 475 482
- Mudd S Takeya K and Henderson H J 1956 Electron scattering granules and reducing sites in mycobacteria J Bact 72 767 783
- Mudd S Kawata T Payne J I Sall T and Takagi A 1961 Plasma membranes and mitochondrial equivalents as functionally co-ordinated structures Nature (London) 180 79 80
- Nermut M V 1960 Über die Lage der Teilung Reduktionsorte in Zellen von *Proteus vulgaris* Zbl Bakt (Orig) 178 348 356
- Ohye D F and Murrell W G 1962 Formation and structure of the spore of *Bacillus coagulans* J Cell Biol 14 111 123

- Panos C 1962 Streptococcal L forms IV Comparison of the metabolic rates of a *Streptococcus* and derived L form J Bact 84 921-928
- Panos C Barkulis S S and Hayashi J A 1959 Streptococcal L forms II Chemical composition J Bact 75 863-867
- Piper A 1962 Flagellum and motility of *Sphaerotilus natans* Zbl Bakt (Orig) 186 205-217
- Preiss J W and Pollard E 1961 Localization of  $\beta$  galactosidase in cells of *Escherichia coli* by low voltage electron bombardment Biophys J 1 429-435
- Ruebrough R W Tissières A and Watson J D 1962 Messenger RNA attachment to active ribosomes Proc Nat Acad Sci USA 48 430-436
- Robinow C F and Murray R G E 1953 The differentiation of cell wall cytoplasmic membrane and cytoplasm of gram positive bacteria by selective staining Exp Cell Res 4 390-407
- Robrish S A and Marr A G 1962 Location of enzymes in *Aerobacter agilis* J Bact 83 158-168
- Roth I L Lewis C W Jr and Williams R P 1960 Electron microscope study of *Bacillus anthracis* in mouse spleen J Bact 80 772-782
- Sall T Mudd S and Takagi A 1958 Polyphosphate accumulation and utilization as related to synchronized cell division of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* J Bact 76 640-645
- Salton M N J 1953 Studies of bacterial cell wall the composition of the cell walls of some gram positive and gram negative bacteria Biochim Biophys Acta 10 512-523
- 1963 The relationship between the nature of the cell wall and the Gram stain J Gen Microbiol 30 223
- Sanderson A R Strominger J L and Nathanson S G 1962 Chemical structure of teichoic acid from *Staphylococcus aureus* strain Copenhagen J Biol Chem 237 3603-3613
- Schachman H K Pardee A B and Stamer H Y 1952 Studies on the macromolecular organization of microbial cells Arch Biochem Biophys 38 245-260
- Scherrer R 1963b Cell structure and quantitative Gram stain of *Bacillus megaterium* J Gen Microbiol 31, 135-145
- Schlöte F W 1961 Über den Feinbau von Chromosomen I Zur Cytologie von *Escherichia coli* A Elektronenoptische Befunde Arch Mikrobiol 40 283-305
- Shennin R 1959 The localization of the cell bound penicillinase of *Bacillus cereus* in protoplasts J Gen Microbiol 21 124-134
- Shockman G D Kolb J J Bakay II Conover M J and Toennies G 1963 Protoplasm membrane of *Streptococcus faecalis* J Bact 85 168-176
- Sistrom W H 1958 On the physical state of the intracellularly accumulated substrates of  $\beta$  galactoside permease in *Escherichia coli* Biochim Biophys Acta 29 579-587
- Slade H D 1957 Studies on *Streptococcus pyogenes* III The effect of trypsin and a cationic detergent on the structure permeability and metabolism of the cell J Gen Physiol 41, 63-76
- Slepecky R A and Law J H 1961 Synthesis and degradation of poly  $\beta$  hydroxybutyric acid in connection with sporulation of *Bacillus megaterium* J Bact 82 37-42
- Spiegelman S Aronson A I and Fitz James P C 1958 Isolation and characterization of nuclear bodies from protoplasts of *Bacillus megaterium* J Bact 75 102-117
- Stocker H A D and Campbell J C 1959 The effect of non lethal deflagellation on bacterial motility and observations on flagellar regeneration J Gen Microbiol 20 670-685
- Stähelin H 1954 Über osmotisches Verhalten und Fusion nackter Protoplasten von *Bacillus anthracis* Schweiz Z Allg Pathol Bakt 17 296-310
- Takeya K Hisatsune K and Inoue Y 1963 Mycobacterial cell walls II Chemical composition of the basal layer J Bact 85 24-30
- Taubeneck U 1955 Über Plasmolyseversuche mit penicillininduzierten Umbildungsformen von *Proteus vulgaris* Zbl Bakt (Orig) 163 477-483
- Tehan Y T 1963 Site of Gram stain in cells of gram positive micro-organisms Nature (London) 198 213-214
- Tehan Y T Birch Andersen A and Jensen H L 1962 The ultrastructure of vegetative cells and cysts of *Azotobacter chroococcum* Arch Mikrobiol 43 50-66
- Thorsson K G and Weibull C 1958 Studies on the structure of bacterial L forms protoplasts and protoplast like bodies J Ultrastruct Res 1 412-427
- Tissières A 1959 Some properties of soluble ribonucleic acid from *Escherichia coli* J Molec Biol 1 365-374
- Tissières A Watson J D Schlessinger D and Hollingworth B H 1959 Ribonucleic protein particles from *Escherichia coli* J Molec Biol 1 221-233

- Tomesik J and Grace J B 1955 Bacterial cell walls as revealed by the specific cell wall reaction and by direct staining with Alcian blue J Gen Microbiol 13 105 110
- Tulasne R Minck R and Kirm A 1962 Etude comparative au microscope électronique d'un *Proteus* et des formes L des types A et B correspondantes Ann Inst Pasteur 102 292 299
- Waller J P and Harris J I 1961 Studies on the composition of the protein from *Escherichia coli* ribosomes Proc Nat Acad Sci USA 47 18 23
- Vanderwinkel E and Murray R G E 1962 Organelles intracytoplasmiques bactériens et site d'activité oxydo-réductrice J Ultrastruct Res 7 185 199
- Warth A D Ohye D F and Murrell W G 1963 Location and composition of spore mucopeptide in *Bacillus* species J Cell Biol 16 593 609
- Watson J D and Crick F H C 1953 A structure for deoxyribose nucleic acid Nature (London) 171 737 738
- Weibull C 1955 Osmotic properties of protoplasts of *Bacillus megaterium* Exp Cell Res 9 294 304
- 1963 Size of minimal reproductive units of bacterial L forms Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 113 32 34
- Weibull C and Hedvall J 1953 Some observations of fractions of disintegrated bacterial cells obtained by differential centrifugations Biochim Biophys Acta 10 35-41
- Weibull C and Beckman H 1960 Growth of bacterial L forms and bacterial protoplasts J Bact 79 638 649
- Weibull C Greenawalt J W and Low H 1962 The hydrolysis of adenosine triphosphate by cell fractions of *Bacillus megaterium* I Localization and general characteristics of the enzymatic activities J Biol Chem 237 847 852
- Weibull C and Lundin H M 1963 Morphology of pleuropneumonia like organisms and bacterial L forms grown in liquid media J Bact 85 440 445
- Weidel W Frank H and Leutgeb W 1963 Autolytic enzymes as a source of error in the preparation and study of gram negative cell walls J Gen Microbiol 30 127 130
- Wilkins M H F and Zubay G 1959 The absence of histone in the bacterium *Escherichia coli* II X ray diffraction of nucleoprotein extract J Biophys Biochem Cytol 5 55 58
- Wilkinson J F 1963 Carbon and energy storage in bacteria J Gen Microbiol 37 171
- Williams M A and Rittenberg S C 1956 Microcyst formation and germination in *Spirillum lunatum* J Gen Microbiol 15 205 209
- Wilska A 1954 Observations with the anoptical microscope Mikroskopie 9 1 80
- Winkler A and Tschuschner I 1958 Zur Struktur der Oberfläche und Geisseln der Spirillen Zbl Bakt (Orig) 172 397-419
- Voeltz H and Dworkin M 1962 Fine Structure of *Myxococcus xanthus* during morphogenesis J Bact 84 943 952
- Young I E and Fritz James P C 1962 Chemical and morphological studies of bacterial spore formation IV The development of spore refractility J Cell Biol 12 115 133
- Zubay G 1963 Molecular model for protein synthesis Science 140 1092 1095
- Zubay G and Wilkins M H F 1960 X ray diffraction studies of the structure of ribosomes from *Escherichia coli* J Molec Biol 2 105 112



## 4

## Bacterial Genetics

Bacteria generally increase their number by the division of the cell body into two. Following a period of growth both daughter cells can divide further. By subsequent growth and divisions this can give rise to an enormous number of organisms in a brief period of time. Barring an occasional genetic accident i.e. a mutation all of the descendants of a single bacterium will be identical with respect to all of the characteristics of the original ancestor. The material components of the individual organisms within a bacterial culture are associated only up to the moment of cell division. Therefore the members of the bacterial community are in complete isolation one from the other with no avenue of communication.

Up until a little over a decade ago the above description would have been sufficient to account for the events of bacterial multiplication. Since that time it has been found that for some bacteria there are channels of communication between the organism through which may pass information of the most useful sort—genetic information. Genes (those factors which specify the properties of an organism) can sometimes travel either in large or small blocs from bacterium to bacterium. The advantage of gene transfer is that two lines may on contact reassemble their features in such a way as to synthesize an organism more highly adapted to a particular environment. In higher forms gene exchange occurs by sexual reproduction. In bacteria, as we shall see, a number of dif-

ferent mechanisms for gene transfer have been found. These different kinds of mechanisms for gene transfer in bacteria may represent evolutionary experiments for the development of gene transfer systems.

The sciences of bacteriology and genetics were born some 100 years ago. They proceeded to develop quite independently of each other until a marriage that was most fruitful for both sciences was made in the middle forties. In a sense it was a marriage of desperation; each science needed the other. The problem of bacterial variation plagued a rational approach to the control of bacteria and the understanding of fundamental bacterial growth processes. In genetics the formal gene had been described, located on the chromosome and carefully mapped. The problems of the chemical nature of genetic material and how it functioned were unapproachable with the then current techniques.

This is not to imply that there were no attempts at a genetics of bacteria for microbiologists pondered on the mechanism of variation but since the organisms seemed to reproduce solely by vegetative growth both the microbiologists and the geneticists saw no rational approach to the problem.

Consideration of any biologic organism and its hereditary mechanism leads to two different points of view. One, analogous to the genetic system that has been described for higher forms, states that an organism has a specific well isolated unit of genetic material which contains the essential in-

formation for the cell syntheses and growth. The second point of view which held sway for some time in microbiology despite the lack of precedent is that each subcellular unit is responsible not only for its own function but also for its own reproduction.

The latter hypothesis is necessarily vague as it is never clear to what level of cellular organization it refers—organelle, substructure, molecule or atom. Also arising from the second point of view is the idea that variation is due to the direct action of the environment on the unit which is responsible for the particular trait in question. Resistance to a drug is due to the direct action of the drug on some subcellular unit. Thus the terms *adaptation* and *training* crept into the bacteriologic literature.

Although the experiment which would have disposed of the second hypothesis was initiated as early as 1928 (bacterial transformation) it was not analyzed completely until 1944 and its significance was not grasped until almost 1950.

## BACTERIAL VARIATION

The experimental approach to the analysis of bacterial variation was hindered by the failure to differentiate carefully between the variation of cultures as a whole and the variation of the individual organisms that made up the culture. The appearance of an enzyme such as betagalactosidase in an *E. coli* culture following the addition of the substrate lactose and the production by certain non-lactose fermenting cultures of a few individuals capable of fermenting lactose are two quite different phenomena. It is a culture of individuals of the latter class that exhibit the former phenomenon. The remarkable success that has come to bacterial genetic analyses has in the main derived from careful separation of these two elements.

The components necessary for a bacterial genetic analysis are cultures of individuals which are obtained by simple procedures from single organisms of the parental culture. Because of the enormous numbers of individuals that can be grown in a short time and the general availability of procedures with a high degree of selectivity it is often possible to find unique and rare individuals.

For instance it is possible in  $10^{10}$  organisms to find the one that is resistant to the drug streptomycin by plating large numbers of bacteria in the presence of the drug.

With this conceptual approach Luria and Delbrück analyzed the mutation of *E. coli* from phage sensitivity to phage resistance. If the mutation was an adaptive response to phage infection then the sampling of one culture should give the same number of mutants as would the sampling of many independent cultures of the same kind. On the other hand if the mutations occurred independently of the selective agent (the bacteriophage) as a random discrete process with a constant probability per bacterial generation then mutation would occur at different times during the growth of different cultures and give rise to a variable number of mutant descendants prior to the sampling. The results of Luria and Delbrück indicated that the mutants occurred prior to and independent of the selective agent and that the only role of the selective agent was precisely what the term implies, i.e. to select the mutant forms.

Another useful procedure leading to the same conclusion employed replica plating and an indirect selection of mutants (Lederberg and Lederberg). Bacteria were placed on a nutrient agar medium and allowed to grow to confluence. If a mutation occurs during the growth of this culture the descendants of this mutant will be located at a fixed site on the agar surface. By application of a piece of velveteen fabric about one third of the growth is removed and this is used to inoculate several other dishes containing a selective medium. From the position of the mutants on the replica plates the position of the mutants on the master plate which never have been exposed to the selective agent can be inferred. This area can be picked and replated and the process repeated. Since only a small area of the master plate is picked relative to the total area of the plate this results in a considerable concentration of the mutant. By repeating the procedure and plating smaller and smaller amounts of the area picked the size of the mutant clone grows larger and larger before exhaustion of the medium stops growth. Ultimately a pure

clone of mutant organisms can be obtained in which neither these microorganisms nor any of their direct ancestors have been exposed to the selective agent

A procedure also is available for recovering mutants that have lost their capacity to synthesize particular substances. The antibiotic penicillin only kills growing bacteria. When a culture which contains mutants that require a particular amino acid for growth is inoculated into a medium which lacks this amino acid and contains penicillin the non-mutant cells grow and are killed.

Other ingenious procedures have been developed to study the nature of mutation and all have led to the same conclusion: mutation is a spontaneous occurrence and independent of the nature of the selective agent. This is not to say that mutation rates are independent of the organism's environment. Quite a number of reagents will increase the mutation rate, but they do so in a more or less nonspecific manner in that they affect many different genes.

## GENETIC TRANSFORMATION

The essential requirements for study of genetic recombination in any type of bacteria are (1) two potential parental lines of the organism which differ by at least one well-defined and readily recognizable property and (2) a means for selecting against at least one of these lines.

The first experiment involving gene transfer in bacteria was probably that reported by Griffith in 1928. Mice are so susceptible to certain encapsulated (smooth or S) pneumococci that intraperitoneal injection of a few organisms will cause a fulminating infection which kills the mouse. In contrast nonencapsulated (rough or R) pneumococci or heat inactivated pneumococci, whether rough or smooth, do not cause disease when injected into mice. Griffith injected intraperitoneally a mixture of heat-killed S pneumococci and viable R pneumococci. The R pneumococci were derived from a different capsular type than the S. The mice infected with this mixture died, and living encapsulated pneumococci of the heat-killed S type were recovered from them. Both of the elements for a gene transfer experiment were

present: the differentially marked strains and the selective agent (in this instance the mouse). Although it was not recognized at this time, gene transfer had occurred. The resolution of the nature of this transforming system came in two stages. In 1944, Avery, McCarty, and MacLeod showed that the material that caused the transformation of unencapsulated forms to encapsulated forms was deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). The strictly genetic interpretation of this result awaited the demonstration that other pneumococcal properties such as drug resistance and M proteins (Hotchkiss) could be similarly transferred. Physiologic functions as diverse as resistance to a drug and production of capsular polysaccharide and M proteins were controlled by a unique nucleic acid.

The extraction of DNA from the culture of donor pneumococci and its application to recipient pneumococci result in the transformation of some of the recipient organisms. The latter acquire a differentiating property of the donor. The number of cells transformed is proportional to the amount of DNA applied to a saturation level of up to 10 per cent of all of the treated cells. Cells which have been transformed for one property such as penicillin resistance are in general not transformed at the same time for another property such as capsulation. Occasional instances of the simultaneous acquisition of two markers are known. These results are interpreted as follows: The genetic material of the pneumococcus is DNA. On extraction it retains its genetic information and, on entering an appropriate host, it displaces the homologous genetic material and functions as it did previously in its original host, reproducing in synchrony with the cell and causing the expression of some new cellular property. Since most of the genes are transformed independently of each other, either they never coexisted in the same DNA structure or they were broken apart during the extraction. The occasional instances of linked transformation are due to the proximate location on a DNA molecule of the genes controlling these properties.

The larger organization of the genetic material in pneumococcus cannot be inferred from transformation. As we shall see later

results obtained with other techniques indicate that bacterial genetic material is organized in a single linear chromosomal-like structure analogous to the organization found in higher forms

In addition to pneumococci transformation has been demonstrated in several other bacterial species. These include members of *Hemophilus*, *Bacillus*, *Neisseria*, *Streptococcus* and *Rhizobium*. Surprisingly except in a very restricted sense transformation has not been demonstrated in *Enterobacteriaceae* probably a limitation in the reaction is the ability of the DNA macromolecule to penetrate bacteria. In all instances of successful transformation there are extremely critical cultural conditions and other factors that are necessary for DNA uptake.

The detailed molecular mechanism by which the transforming DNA is incorporated into the genome of the recipient bacterium is still unknown. The current view is that the added DNA molecule or a part thereof is used directly by the bacterium and is incorporated into its genetic material for the building of its chromosomes.

The work on transformation in bacteria and somewhat similar experiments with bacteriophage focused attention on DNA as genetic material. They stimulated efforts to analyze the chemical composition and structure of this molecule.

DNA is composed of 2 purine bases, adenine and guanine, and 2 pyrimidine bases, thymine and cytosine, the sugar deoxyribose and phosphate. Chemical analysis of DNAs from diverse origin and of differing total compositions shows that the molar amount of adenine equals the molar amount of thymine and similarly the molar amounts of guanine and cytosine are equal. For each mole of base there is one of sugar and phosphate. As prepared by numerous procedures DNA is obviously a large polymer of these basic units.

From x-ray diffraction patterns of DNA fibers Watson and Crick were able to deduce the structure for DNA molecules. This structure is a double helix with 2 intertwined chains of a sugar-phosphate backbone; the purine and the pyrimidine bases are placed between the chains much as the steps in a ladder. The bases in one chain are hydrogen

bonded to the bases in the other chain. To achieve the required spacings it is necessary for the adenine residues to bond with the thymine residues and the guanine residues to bond with the cytosine residues, thus accounting for the molar equivalence of these bases. Such a structure is a complementary one such that the sequence of bases in one chain dictates the sequence in the other chain. This characteristic immediately suggested a mechanism for DNA replication involving the separation of the chains and the addition of the complementary bases to the separated strands, thus maintaining the chemical and therefore the genetic fidelity of the molecule. Much evidence has been obtained which supports this mode of replication.

The model also implies a mechanism for gene action. It is assumed that genes control production of ribonucleic acid (RNA) of a certain type which is then used as a template for the synthesis of protein structures and enzymes. RNA being very similar to DNA might be copied from DNA in a manner analogous to that of DNA replication. Enzymes which use DNA as a template and synthesize DNA or RNA from nucleotide units have been found in many different organisms.

## TRANSDUCTION

Transduction was first demonstrated in *S. typhimurium* by Zinder and Lederberg. Like transformation, this process involves the transfer from bacterium to bacterium of bits of genetic material, but whereas this material is free in transformation it is carried by a bacterial virus in transduction.

There are 2 classes of bacteriophage (bacterial viruses): those that can produce overt infection only (virulent phage) and those that can with varying frequency produce both an overt infection and a latent infection (temperate phage). In the latter instance following infection the phage disappears; the bacteria do not produce progeny phage immediately but they now have as a permanent part of their phenotype the potential for the production of phage. The nucleic acid of the phage which they carry in a prophage state is reproduced in synchrony

with the rest of the bacterial genetic material

Unlike their more virulent brethren, temperate phages do not kill all of the infected cells; therefore alterations of bacterial properties can be seen. Following infection with such temperate phages, a variable proportion of the infected cells will respond either by lysing or by being latently infected (lysogenized). When the salmonella phage P22 is grown through a vegetative cycle on a well marked strain of *S. typhimurium* and is applied to another differentially marked strain, there is found among the lysogenic survivors of the infection an alteration in some cells of some of the differentiating properties. The gross genetic manifestations of transduction are the same as those in transformation. The number of cells transduced for any one property is proportional to the number of phage particles applied. Cells transduced for one property are generally not transduced simultaneously for another. There is a restriction in the amount of genetic material that can be transduced as the volume available in a phage particle amounts to about 1 per cent of the volume of the bacterial genome.

A bacteriophage particle has an outer protein shell and an inner core of the nucleic acid which is its genetic material. Apparently during the course of the growth of the phage, protein coats are filled by pieces of bacterial nucleic acid instead of phage nucleic acid. Such particles occur with fairly low frequency of the order of 1 in 1 million per genetic marker—and probably no more than 1 in 10 000 even if all the bits are summed. These then are released with the rest of the phage progeny and on attachment to host bacteria enter them in the same way that phage nucleic acid does. Instead of initiating the phage-controlled events, this bacterial nucleic acid undergoes the same kind of genetic recombination process with the host genome that the free nucleic acid in transformation does. Again instances of linkage are found. Both transformation and transduction give rise to situations in which one can study to the exclusion of other genes those genes that are most closely linked together. Because transduction was found in salmonella, a wide spectrum of nutritional markers was available for genetic

analysis. The low frequency of transduction was restrictive only in those instances in which the mutation rate of the gene in question was higher than the transduction frequency of about  $10^{-6}$  per infecting phage particle—fortunately a not too frequent occurrence.

The ability to concentrate the analysis on linked genes resulted in the revelation of a totally unsuspected feature of the spatial organization of genetic material in bacteria. It also allowed an approach to the fundamental questions of the fine structure of the gene. It was often found that the genes controlling the enzymes of a single biosynthetic pathway were linked. We may cite as an instance the genes that control tryptophan biosynthesis. There are 4 genes controlling the synthesis of four enzymes which convert anthranilic acid to tryptophan, and these are all linked. In addition in this instance the order of the genes with respect to each other is the same as that of the reaction sequence. Similar findings have been made for other biosynthetic systems. This finding has been utilized by Jacob and Monod in developing the operon hypothesis wherein the time and the rate of synthesis of these enzymes are coordinated by their genetic linkage.

Since independent mutations could be obtained which caused the loss of the same enzymatic function and therefore presumably were in the same gene, it was possible to ask whether these had occurred at the same site in the gene or at different sites. If genetic recombination could take place within a gene even at a low frequency, the enormous resolution provided by the bacterial system could reveal it. Phage was grown on one mutant which lacked the enzyme tryptophan synthetase and applied to another independently isolated mutant lacking the same enzyme, and the number of the transductions to tryptophan independence was determined. If transduction did not occur, either the mutations were at the same site or a gene was not divisible by recombination. If transduction did occur, the mutations were at different sites and recombination within a gene could occur. Transduction did occur and from the frequency of transduction in such one-by-one pairs there could be deduced a linear order of sites within a gene.

which could undergo mutation and recombination. The positioning of genes relative to each other is based on the idea common to all genetic recombinational analysis that the higher the frequency of exchange the farther apart are the genes. The same is assumed to be true for sites within a gene. Considering the linear nature of the DNA structure this is not an unreasonable assumption. Rigid proof of these notions was developed by Benzer in studies of the *r* gene in the bacteriophage T4.

The genetic material that is transduced is not always integrated into the host genome. These so-called abortive transductions occur about 10 times more frequently than do stable transductions. They were discovered during studies on the transduction of motile flagellated bacteria to nonmotile nonflagellated strains. The selection procedure employed a soft agar plate in which nonmotile forms grew but remained fixed at the site of inoculation whereas motile forms swarmed that is to say they migrated through the agar away from the inoculum site. In addition to the swarms (stable transductions) there were trails of colonies in the agar proceeding away from the inoculum point. These are explained as follows. The gene for production of flagella enters a cell and causes the production of flagella. For some unknown reason the gene is neither integrated into the genome of the host nor replicated independently of the genome; thus it is passed to only one of the progeny cells when the bacterium divides. During the period that the cell has flagella it can migrate; on loss of the flagella due to segregation of the gene it ceases to migrate and initiates a colony at this point. The daughter cell which receives the gene repeats the process; hence the row of colonies.

Abortive transductions can be found with other genetic markers also. When the transduction is from nutritional dependence to independence there are many microcolonies in the agar in addition to the large colonies from the stable transductions. These microcolonies are comparable with cells in a trail superimposed one on the other. The non-replicating gene during its passage through a number of cell generations caused the synthesis in each cell of sufficient enzyme to

enable the cell to undergo a few further divisions. The superposition of these cells forms the microcolony.

A number of phages can cause transduction in a number of different bacteria such as *Bacillus*, *Staphylococcus*, *Pseudomonas*, *Proteus* and *E. coli*. There are many phages which even though temperate do not transduce. There is a property of phage growth—probably the way in which it disrupts the bacterial genome—that allows transduction.

Transduction of the kind described in the preceding pages is general transduction in that it encompasses the entire bacterial genome with no preference for one gene over another. Another variety of transduction also exists. This is restricted transduction discovered in *E. coli* and its temperate phage lambda. When lambda grows in a vegetative cycle it does not cause the transduction of any known bacterial markers when applied to the appropriate host. On the other hand when lambda lysogenizes its host and then is caused to undergo a vegetative cycle by induction with ultraviolet irradiation it transduces a few genes affecting the fermentation of galactose and these only. The frequency of transduction is of the same order as that in general transduction about 1 per million. The transduced cells are unstable. Cells transduced from galactose nonfermentation to galactose fermentation continuously segregate galactose nonfermenting cells. The frequency is about 1 per thousand per cell generation. Apparently the transduced fragment is not integrated within the bacterial genome but does replicate almost in perfect synchrony with it. Such cells are called heterogenetic. They carry their original gene (endogenote) and the transduced fragment the exogenote. They are in the older genetic terminology heterozygous but only for a small region of the genome. These cells are also lysogenic and carry lambda. When they in turn are induced with ultraviolet light they produce an extremely small yield of phage but a very high frequency of transducing particles. The detailed analysis of this system has shown that a galactose transducing particle is a phage genome which has exchanged a portion of itself for the bacterium's galactose

with the rest of the bacterial genetic material

Unlike their more virulent brethren temperate phages do not kill all of the infected cells therefore alterations of bacterial properties can be seen. Following infection with such temperate phages a variable proportion of the infected cells will respond either by lysing or by being latently infected (lysogenized). When the salmonella phage P22 is grown through a vegetative cycle on a well marked strain of *S. typhimurium* and is applied to another differentially marked strain there is found among the lysogenic survivors of the infection an alteration in some cells of some of the differentiating properties. The gross genetic manifestations of transduction are the same as those in transformation. The number of cells transduced for any one property is proportional to the number of phage particles applied. Cells transduced for one property are generally not transduced simultaneously for another. There is a restriction in the amount of genetic material that can be transduced in the volume available in a phage particle amounts to about 1 per cent of the volume of the bacterial genome.

A bacteriophage particle has an outer protein shell and an inner core of the nucleic acid which is its genetic material. Apparently during the course of the growth of the phage protein coats are filled by pieces of bacterial nucleic acid instead of phage nucleic acid. Such particles occur with fairly low frequency of the order of 1 in 1 million per genetic marker—and probably no more than 1 in 10 000 even if all the hits are summed. These then are released with the rest of the phage progeny and on attachment to host bacteria enter them in the same way that phage nucleic acid does. Instead of initiating the phage-controlled events this bacterial nucleic acid undergoes the same kind of genetic recombination process with the host genome that the free nucleic acid in transformation does. Again instances of linkage are found. Both transformation and transduction give rise to situations in which one can study to the exclusion of other genes those genes that are most closely linked together. Because transduction was found in salmonella a wide spectrum of nutritional markers was available for genetic

analysis. The low frequency of transduction was restrictive only in those instances in which the mutation rate of the gene in question was higher than the transduction frequency of about  $10^{-6}$  per infecting phage particle—fortunately a not too frequent occurrence.

The ability to concentrate the analysis on linked genes resulted in the revelation of a totally unsuspected feature of the spatial organization of genetic material in bacteria. It also allowed an approach to the fundamental questions of the fine structure of the gene. It was often found that the genes controlling the enzymes of a single biosynthetic pathway were linked. We may cite as an instance the genes that control tryptophan biosynthesis. There are 4 genes controlling the synthesis of four enzymes which convert anthranilic acid to tryptophan and these are all linked. In addition in this instance the order of the genes with respect to each other is the same as that of the reaction sequence. Similar findings have been made for other biosynthetic systems. This finding has been utilized by Jacob and Monod in developing the operon hypothesis wherein the time and the rate of synthesis of these enzymes are coordinated by their genetic linkage.

Since independent mutations could be obtained which caused the loss of the same enzymatic function and therefore presumably were in the same gene it was possible to ask whether these had occurred at the same site in the gene or at different sites. If genetic recombination could take place within a gene even at a low frequency the enormous resolution provided by the bacterial system could reveal it. Phage was grown on one mutant which lacked the enzyme tryptophan synthetase and applied to another independently isolated mutant lacking the same enzyme and the number of the transductions to tryptophan independence was determined. If transduction did not occur either the mutations were at the same site or a gene was not divisible by recombination. If transduction did occur the mutations were at different sites and recombination within a gene could occur. Transduction did occur and from the frequency of transduction in such one by-one pairs there could be deduced a linear order of sites within a gene.

was simply to mix 2 lines of *E. coli* that had acquired by mutation different nutritional requirements and to seek clones which had no nutritional requirements. Thus on an unsupplemented minimal medium only recombinant colonies could grow. The limiting frequency that could be measured was determined by the rate of spontaneous mutation of the parental culture to nutritional independence. In addition to these selective marker mutations the strains differed by a number of other features which had no gross effect on the ability of the bacteria to grow (unselected markers). These features included fermentative ability, drug and phage resistance and nutritional requirements which were supplied in the medium. The analysis showed that recombinants were formed at a frequency of about  $1$  in  $10^6$ , a value well above the frequency of spontaneous mutation in the unmixed parents. When these recombinants were further tested for their unselected markers, these were found to segregate as if there had been almost complete mixing of the 2 genomes. The conclusions from this experiment were (1) bacteria are haploid, i.e. they have only a single representative of each gene; (2) they form a complete diploid heterozygote with a low frequency; and (3) these zygotes undergo an immediate reduction back to the haploid state with a concurrent process of genetic recombination between the 2 genomes.

The selected recombinants represent only one class of the total recombinants formed. However, because of the low frequency, it was necessary to use the selective procedure to find some of them. The phenomenon was not contingent on the nature of the selection. This was demonstrated by using the same well marked parental cultures but with selection of different sets of markers. Depending on the medium employed, a given marker could be either selected or unselected. The segregation of the unselected markers was not completely random; that is, it was not a case in which half of the progeny were similar to one parent and half to the other parent. The precise pattern for any particular unselected marker depended on the markers that were used for selection of the recombinants. This was interpreted as an indication of linkage between the selective and the

nonselective markers. In the diploid higher forms, the genes are located on chromosomes and during the reductive meiotic cycle, when the homologous chromosomes pair prior to separation, they can undergo recombination with the interchange of parts. The amount of interchange between 2 genes is taken as a measure of their physical distance apart on the linear chromosome. The closer to one another the 2 genes are on the same chromosome, the more rarely do they interchange. An analogous mechanism was invoked for bacterial recombination and linkage maps were prepared. If a marker had a great tendency to be derived from one of the parents, it was presumed to be located near the selected marker of that parent.

The original interpretation applied to bacterial mating was that any cell in the bacterial population had an equal probability of mating with any other bacterial cell; there was no sexual differentiation. From the work of Hayes, Cavalli, and the Lederbergs, this picture was modified to give a simple but precise mating type differential. It had been a fortuitous accident that the 2 lines of *K. 12* that had been used in the majority of crosses had the appropriate mating type.

These 2 lines were derived from the original *K. 12* strain, one being a methionine requiring ( $M^-$ ) mutant and the other a triple mutant isolated in sequential steps requiring threonine, leucine, and thiamine ( $T^-L^-B_1^-$ ). All of the mating stocks of *E. coli* have been derived from either of these 2 lines by the addition or the subtraction of genetic markers.

Hayes found that although the treatment of the  $M^-$  line with either streptomycin or ultraviolet light did not prevent recombination, treatment of the  $T^-L^-B_1^-$  with the same reagents did so. Cavalli noted that crosses between stocks derived from the  $TLB_1^-$  line failed, whereas crosses between stocks of the  $M^-$  line still gave recombinants. Thus there was a polarity in the mating and the lines were not equivalent in this regard. Progeny of a cross could mate with either of the 2 lines. In fact, culture of the 2 lines together for brief periods followed by reisolation of the  $TLB_1^-$  line on the basis of some differentiating marker made it possible for this derivative now to mate with



genes. The phages are thus incomplete and are called lambda dg for lambda defective carrying galactose genes. Such phage particles can grow only in the presence of a complete phage genome. A galactose transduced cell contains a complete phage genome and a lambda dg. It is the lambda dg that is lost in the unstable transductions.

As yet only one other example of restricted transduction has been found that being in *E. coli* where the phage  $\phi 80$  carries the region concerned with tryptophan biosynthesis.

In addition to acting as a carrier of genetic material from bacterium to bacterium bacteriophages also produce alterations of genetic properties of the host when they are carried as prophages. The general property which is conferred on lysogenic organisms in addition to the ability to produce phage at a low, fixed frequency is immunity to superinfection by the phage that is carried.

Besides these general alterations of bacterial properties certain bacteriophages produce other changes that are less well understood. Perhaps the most profound of these is the conversion of non toxin producing *C. diphtheriae* to toxin production by lysogenization with certain bacteriophages. The toxin is released during the vegetative growth of the virus either following infection of sensitive cells or during the growth of the lysogenic cells. In the latter instance only a small proportion of the cells in each cell generation produce phage and toxin.

Phages are also responsible for the presence of certain of the well-characterized somatic antigens of salmonella species. Lysogenization by P22 of group B salmonella results in the presence of somatic antigen 1. Those strains that have antigen 1 when isolated from nature can be shown almost invariably to contain P22 or a related phage. This conversion is the result of the addition of a terminal glucose residue to the basic polysaccharide structure of the somatic antigen.

Another well studied instance of conversion is in Group E of salmonella. Strains with antigen 3:10 are modified to antigen 3:15 when they are lysogenized by E 15 phage. When the 3:15 strains are further lysogenized by phage E 34, they become

3:15,34. Lysogenization of 3:10 strains by E 34 is without obvious effect. The presence of 3:15 is required before E 34 can produce an observable effect. Chemical analyses of these antigens reveal the detailed changes underlying these conversions. The antigens 3:10 consist partly of a D galactosyl D mannose D rhamnose unit with an alpha linkage between the galactose and the mannose. With the conversion to 3:15 this linkage is changed from alpha to beta. Phage E 34 causes the addition of a terminal glucose residue to the galactose and apparently the galactose mannose linkage must be beta for this reaction to occur.

Other instances of phage conversion are known to occur in other salmonella and in shigella. Undoubtedly there are many as yet unresolved similar occurrences in bacteria. Lysogenic bacteria are the rule rather than the exception.

At present all attempts to develop a logical explanation for these conversions have failed. A number of possibilities come to mind. The conversions may be accidental in the sense that lysogenization causes an interference with some of the normal metabolic sequences of the cell resulting in these unexpected manifestations. Alternatively either the phage may have evolved or the phage and the bacterium evolved from common gene segments the conversion representing the residual activity of this segment. A corollary of the latter view is that conversion may represent an early evolutionary experiment in gene transfer. Be that as it may it is obviously difficult to decide whether any particular bacterial property is caused by a phage or a bacterial gene. In fact this question may be more semantic than real.

## BACTERIAL CONJUGATION

The mechanisms of genetic exchange that have been described previously are all very restricted in regard to the amount of genetic material that can be transferred at any one time. Thus studies employing these mechanisms cannot yield information about the gross organization of bacterial genetic material. In 1946 Lederberg and Tatum discovered bacterial conjugation in *E. coli* strain K 12 and mutants derived from it. The procedure

furthering the analysis. The prophage lambda segregated in crosses as if it were linked to the galactose region of the *E. coli* chromosome. Recall that lambda was involved in the transduction of the galactose region specifically. When a lysogenic Hfr was mated with nonlysogenic F<sup>-</sup> it was found that the prophage on entering the cytoplasm of a nonlysogenic bacterium underwent a process of induction (production of progeny phage). This then could give a precise measure of the zygotic events for it was not contingent on the integration of genetic material. The entry of prophage into F<sup>-</sup> bacteria detected by subsequent phage production coincided in timing with the entrance of the galactose region.

Garen and Skaar did a somewhat similar set of experiments with another Hfr (HfrC) but instead of blending they killed the Hfr parent with a virulent bacteriophage. Their results also pointed to an orientation of transmission of genetic material but one with a different order than that obtained by Jacob and Wollman for Hfr H. Crosses of lysogenic did not give zygotic induction and there was no transmission of the galactose marker.

The Hfr have one other property which distinguishes them from F<sup>+</sup> cells. Mixture of F<sup>+</sup> cells with F<sup>-</sup> cells rapidly converts the latter to F<sup>+</sup> but mixture of Hfr with F<sup>-</sup> without similar effect. While the progeny of an F<sup>+</sup> by F<sup>-</sup> cross are F<sup>+</sup> the progeny of Hfr by F<sup>-</sup> crosses are primarily F<sup>-</sup> only those few progeny that receive the distal marker of the Hfr become Hfr.

Jacob and Wollman developed the following concept of sexual differentiation in *E. coli*. F<sup>-</sup> cells lack an agent called F. This agent in an F<sup>+</sup> cell replicates in synchrony with but independently of the bacterial chromosome and is perhaps responsible for a change in the surface properties of bacteria such that they will unite with F<sup>-</sup> cells. During such a union the F agent itself is transferred with a high frequency but the chromosome with a low frequency. The transfer of the chromosome occurs following the same attachment of the F agent to the bacterial chromosome at any of a number of points perhaps at random giving rise to Hfr. There can be isolated from F<sup>+</sup> cells

different Hfr. These differ both in the nature of markers which they transmit and in the order of transmission of these markers. Jacob and Wollman postulate that the chromosome in either an F<sup>-</sup> or an F<sup>+</sup> cell is a closed ring structure. The attachment of the F agent may convert this ring to a linear structure which transfers its chromosome in such a way as to have the F agent terminal.

The attachment of the F agent to the bacterial chromosome receives further support from the phenomenon known as F<sup>-</sup>duction. Distal markers and the F agent in an Hfr by F<sup>-</sup> cross are transferred with a low frequency and very late after the mixing of the parental cultures. If samples of mating mixtures are blended early after mixing and selection is made for some late entering marker a few recombinants are found. These cells have the interesting property of transferring the F agent with a fairly high frequency and in addition to it, a few of the terminal markers of the Hfr which had been used in the original cross. The F agent which had been attached terminally to the Hfr chromosome apparently dissociated from the bacterial chromosome carrying with it a bit of bacterial genome. A number of different such agents called F' have been isolated each carrying different bits of bacterial chromosome. The genetic markers that are transferred by these contaminated F agents are rarely integrated into the recipient chromosome. The situation is somewhat analogous to transduction of the galactose region by the lambda dg. Cells carrying such F agents transfer their chromosome with a frequency intermediate between that of an Hfr and an F<sup>+</sup> and the transfer has the same orientation as that of the Hfr from which the F agent has been derived. The contaminated F agent has a preference for a particular site on the chromosome namely that for which it now has partial genetic homology. These F agents are most useful in studying the genetic dominance relationships among bacterial genes as they give rise to persistent heterozygotes for the region involved rather than integrating into the bacterial chromosome.

Several agents such as the F' have been isolated in nature. An *S. typhosa* lac<sup>+</sup> strain

strains with which it was previously incapable of mating. Since genetic recombination occurred at much lower frequencies it was apparent that fertility itself was being transferred.

The definition of mating type is purely operational. Strains incapable of mating with each other are defined as  $F^-$ . Strains that can mate with  $F^-$  strains or with themselves are called  $F^+$ . Fertility is controlled by the presence or the absence of an agent which is itself transferable in a mating interaction. Cell contact is required for  $F$  transfer as no extraction procedure is successful. Thus conjugation can occur between pairs of bacteria differing primarily in mating type. When the segregation patterns for the unselected markers in these crosses were analyzed it was found that the majority of the progeny had the markers of the  $F^-$  parent. Mating type not only influenced the ability to undergo genetic recombination but also had a profound effect on the genetic composition of the progeny.

The interpretation given these results is that in a mating pair there is an unidirectional transfer of genetic material from the  $F^+$  strain to the  $F^-$  strain. The transfer is never complete, thus accounting for the preponderance of markers of the  $F^-$  parent. The sensitivity of the system itself to agents that kill  $F^-$  cells but not to agents that kill  $F^+$  cells is thereby explained for it is in reality from the  $F^-$  cell that the recombinant progeny are derived. The inactivated  $F^+$  cells can still transfer some of their genetic material to the viable  $F^-$  cell. The  $F$  agent allows for this genetic transfer.

The proof of this notion depended on a more detailed analysis of the process of mating. This was provided by the discovery of bacteria with a much higher frequency of mating and gene transfer. Two strains (called Hfr strains) were isolated both derived from the  $M^-$  line which when mated with  $TLB_1^-$  line gave frequencies of recombination of the order of 10 per cent of the parents. The frequency of recombination varied depending on the markers which were used to select the progeny. Apparently there was a gradient with regard to the frequency of transfer of different markers.

Jacob and Wollman studied the kinetics

of mating of an Hfr (Hfr H) and  $F^-$  cells in great detail. They mixed 2 stocks with multiple markers at high bacterial density and then they diluted the mixture at intervals and plated samples in order to determine the recombinant frequency. Other samples were diluted and agitated vigorously in a blender and then plated for recombinants. Dilution and plating without blending prevented further coupling of bacteria but those couples that had already formed could still transfer a considerable portion of their genome. However blending of mated couples separated them at that time and prevented any further transfer of the Hfr genome.

Segregation of the unselected markers was studied in the 2 types of samples. The data were compiled in terms of the per cent of the recombinants that had any particular nonselective marker from the Hfr. For the unblended samples this fraction remained constant and was independent of the time of sampling. If a marker appeared in 50 per cent of the progeny from the early samples it had the same frequency in the later ones. However for the blended samples this fraction increased as a function of the time of sampling and each marker had its own time of appearance characteristic rate of increase and maximum. Since the linkage relationship of the markers which was used was known from previous mating experiments it was possible to analyze the results of the blender experiment in terms of known linkages. This analysis indicated an oriented sequential passage of markers from the Hfr to the  $F^-$  in the same linkage relation that had already been inferred.

The mating system described involves (1) combination of the cells of appropriate mating type by a surface interaction, (2) sequential passage of genetic material from Hfr to  $F^-$  and (3) its integration into the genetic material of the  $F^-$ . The limitation in the analysis described above is that it is contingent on the integration of the genetic material. All of the data are obtained from the selected recombinant class and the mechanism of gene interchange in this system is still incompletely understood and thus might bias the result.

A measurable property of the zygote itself proved to be a most useful tool for

furthering the analysis. The prophage lambda segregated in crosses as if it were linked to the galactose region of the *E. coli* chromosome. Recall that lambda was involved in the transduction of the galactose region specifically. When a lysogenic Hfr was mated with nonlysogenic F<sup>-</sup> it was found that the prophage on entering the cytoplasm of a nonlysogenic bacterium underwent a process of induction (production of progeny phage). This then could give a precise measure of the zygotic events for it was not contingent on the integration of genetic material. The entry of prophage into F<sup>-</sup> bacteria detected by subsequent phage production coincided in timing with the entrance of the galactose region.

Garen and Skar did a somewhat similar set of experiments with another Hfr (HfrC) but instead of blending they killed the Hfr parent with a virulent bacteriophage. Their results also pointed to an orientation of transmission of genetic material but one with a different order than that obtained by Jacob and Wollman for Hfr H. Crosses of lysogenic did not give zygotic induction and there was no transmission of the galactose marker.

The Hfr have one other property which distinguishes them from F<sup>+</sup> cells. Mixture of F<sup>+</sup> cells with F<sup>-</sup> cells rapidly converts the latter to F<sup>+</sup> but mixture of Hfr with F<sup>-</sup> is without similar effect. While the progeny of an F<sup>+</sup> by F<sup>-</sup> cross are F<sup>+</sup> the progeny of Hfr by F<sup>-</sup> crosses are primarily F<sup>-</sup> only those few progeny that receive the distal marker of the Hfr become Hfr.

Jacob and Wollman developed the following concept of sexual differentiation in *E. coli*. F<sup>-</sup> cells lack an agent called F. This agent in an F<sup>+</sup> cell replicates in synchrony with but independently of the bacterial chromosome and is perhaps responsible for a change in the surface properties of bacteria such that they will unite with F<sup>-</sup> cells. During such a union the F agent itself is transferred with a high frequency but the chromosome with a low frequency. The transfer of the chromosome occurs following the same attachment of the F agent to the bacterial chromosome at any of a number of points perhaps at random giving rise to Hfr. There can be isolated from F<sup>+</sup> cells

different Hfr. These differ both in the nature of markers which they transmit and in the order of transmission of these markers. Jacob and Wollman postulate that the chromosome in either an F<sup>-</sup> or a F<sup>+</sup> cell is a closed ring structure. The attachment of the F agent may convert this ring to a linear structure which transfers its chromosome in such a way as to have the F agent terminal.

The attachment of the F agent to the bacterial chromosome receives further support from the phenomenon known as F<sup>-</sup> induction. Distal markers and the F agent in an Hfr by F<sup>-</sup> cross are transferred with a low frequency and very late after the mixing of the parental cultures. If samples of mating mixtures are blended early after mixing and selection is made for some late entering marker a few recombinants are found. These cells have the interesting property of transferring the F agent with a fairly high frequency and in addition to it a few of the terminal markers of the Hfr which had been used in the original cross. The F agent which had been attached terminally to the Hfr chromosome apparently dissociated from the bacterial chromosome carrying with it a bit of bacterial genome. A number of different such agents called F<sup>'</sup> have been isolated each carrying different bits of bacterial chromosome. The genetic markers that are transferred by these contaminated F<sup>'</sup> agents are rarely integrated into the recipient chromosome. The situation is somewhat analogous to transduction of the galactose region by the lambda dg. Cells carrying such F<sup>'</sup> agents transfer their chromosome with a frequency intermediate between that of an Hfr and an F<sup>+</sup> and the transfer has the same orientation as that of the Hfr from which the F agent has been derived. The contaminated F agent has a preference for a particular site on the chromosome namely that for which it now has partial genetic homology. These F<sup>'</sup> agents are most useful in studying the genetic dominance relationships among bacterial genes as they give rise to persistent heterozygotes for the region involved rather than integrating into the bacterial chromosome.

Several agents such as the F<sup>'</sup> have been isolated in nature. An *S. typhosa* lac<sup>+</sup> strain

TABLE 1 MATING TYPES OF *E. coli*

TYPE	TRANSFERS CHROMOSOMAL	TRANSFERS F
Hfr	+	+
F	+	+
F+	+	+
F <sup>-</sup>	—	—

was found to transfer the lac character to many different strains including some species of *Proteus* and *Serratia*.

Jacob and Wollman have given the name episomes to those elements which have genetic function and can exist in both an autonomous and an integrated state. Among these are the temperate phages and the F agents with their varying degrees of conjugation.

The factors which control the production of colicins also behave as episomes. Colicins are antibioticlike agents produced by certain bacterial strains. Unlike the other antibiotics they have a limited host range; usually only a few species or strains of bacteria are susceptible. Fredericq has shown that the capacity to produce colicine can be transferred from strain to strain in a matinglike process. However, when studied in *E. coli*, this agent was sometimes transferred independently from the chromosome and at other times as an integrated entity. Stocker and Ozeki have shown that the presence of certain colicin agents causes gene transfer in addition to the transfer of the colicin property. They mimic the F agent in this respect.

A most remarkable episome was discovered in Japan by Akiba. About 1953 it was noted that many epidemics of shigellosis were being caused by organisms which exhibited multiple drug resistance. The organisms were resistant to streptomycin, tetracycline, chloroamphenicol, and sulfonamides. Some patients excreted both sensitive and multiple resistant strains. This drug resistance could be transferred in mixed culture from strain to strain through the *Enterobacteriaceae* and to *Serratia* and *Vibrio* strains. The agent has been called RTF (resistance transferring factor). Its transfer seems to be quite independent of the F state of the bacteria; in fact, when RTF and F coexist in the same strain, the

F induced properties are usually repressed. Some of the F<sup>-</sup> strains carrying RTF can also transfer their chromosomal markers.

As with the other autonomous factors, the RTF are slowly lost spontaneously during the course of repeated cell culture. Hirota has shown that *E. coli* can be repeatedly cured of the autonomous F factors by growth in the presence of acridine dyes. RTF strains can be similarly cured. The acridines apparently affect only the nonintegrated forms, as F<sup>-</sup> is not lost from Hfr bacteria when they are similarly treated.

The mating types of *E. coli* and some of their properties are shown in Table 1.

## DNA BACTERIAL TAXONOMY AND EVOLUTION

The picture that has emerged of the genetic material of bacteria is a composite based on all of the genetic systems that have been described. There is in a bacterium a chromosomelike structure which is composed primarily of DNA. There is some evidence both genetic and cytologic that the structure is a closed ring in *E. coli*. Along the length of the structure in serial fashion are located the genes that control the synthesis of the components of the bacterium. The amount of DNA in an *E. coli* chromosome is estimated to be  $5 \times 10^9$  daltons (units of molecular weight). However, it is not certain whether the structure represents a single giant molecule of DNA or perhaps smaller units tied together in noncovalent linkages. Thus DNA such as that used in transforming systems either is broken in extraction into random pieces or is separated into the discrete molecules. There is evidence from transformation that the individual markers reside on definitely characterizable molecules; for example, different markers have different denaturing temperatures on heating. There is also some evidence from transduction that the pieces effecting transmission of any particular marker have fixed, not random ends. Both results indicate a prepackaging of DNA in definite bits. Be that as it may, the genes are units of DNA containing on the order of 500 to 1,000 nucleotide pairs. The specific sequence of these nucleotide pairs is assumed to be di-

rectly related to the amino acid sequence of the secondary gene products the protein structures and enzymes. Mutation occurs by the alteration of one or more of the nucleotide pairs within the gene which thereby changes the structure of an enzyme either decreasing or increasing its functional ability. Since the gene is fairly large it is apparent that mutation to loss of function is more likely than that to gain of function. It is also probable that some base changes may be insignificant for although they cause a change in the structure of an enzyme this change might not alter its active center. Such ineffective mutations could accumulate throughout a gene and provide a means for gene evolution.

Analysis of the base ratio of the DNA from different bacteria shows that they differ widely in composition, from GC 30 per cent for clostridia to GC 70 per cent for *Sarcina* (mole % guanine + cytosine/mole % guanine + cytosine + adenine + thymine). From the previous considerations it is apparent that for organisms to be related they should have similar base compositions. For example organisms such as coliform salmonella and shigella strains all have about 50 per cent GC. While different base ratios can be an indicator of nonrelationship similar base ratios do not prove relationship. Many *Neisseria* strains have the same base ratio as organisms of the coliform group. Within groups of organisms with the same base ratio more detailed physicochemical analyses of DNA and its sequence can be used as indicators of homologies and hence relationships. While the methodology of bacterial genetics makes available some new and scientifically more valid approaches to problems of bacterial taxonomy it seems quite unlikely that these will significantly disturb the current system of classification in the near future.

All of the processes of genetic exchange that have been discovered thus far in bacteria involve the partial transfer of genetic material. Thus they leave the recipient bacterium intact except for a small bloc of genes. In haploid organisms such as bacteria one might imagine that there would be such a degree of homeostasis that the introduction of a large bloc of new genes would

produce considerable metabolic unbalance. In diploid forms such effects can be cushioned by the homologous chromosome. Therefore the systems of exchange offer the organisms the choice of accepting small and perhaps useful bits of genetic material without disturbing their essential integrity. There is no doubt that these processes could occur in nature. However there is little evidence that they do occur. It has been shown that with transformable systems nucleic acid often accumulates during bacterial growth. In at least one instance timing of release of nucleic acid by the culture has been demonstrated to coincide with the time of the cells maximum sensitivity to the uptake of nucleic acid. Bacteriophages are numerous and of course always are to be found in the same ecologic niche as their hosts so that transductions and conversions could occur. The most promiscuous of the sexual like processes *F* duction has been shown in the laboratory to cross species lines readily. Since strains isolated from nature harbor such elements *F* duction might be quite prevalent. We may cite as examples the shigella strains isolated from epidemics in Japan in which multiple drug resistance was shown subsequently to be due to a transferable factor.

That genetic exchange plays an important and continuous role in nature cannot be proved or disproved at this time. For evolutionary purposes a few instances of genetic interchange suffice. However it is most obvious that free gene interchange does not occur for if it did we should not expect to encounter the variety of organisms that currently exist. The problem of the genetic isolation of microorganisms is in most senses no more complicated than that of the genetic isolation of higher forms. Often simple separation due to particular favored ecologic niches separate organisms which are quite capable of gene interchange. In time they might evolve in such a way as to prevent interchange even on cohabitation. Each of the mechanisms of gene exchange that has been described has obvious limitations in its range and efficiency. Transformation reactions involve the uptake of a large linear and highly negatively charged macromolecule. For uptake to occur the environmental conditions the strain of bacteria and the stage

of bacterial growth must be critically selected. The very high frequencies of transformation that can be achieved in the laboratory require extreme attention to these details. Transduction processes and others which involve bacteriophages are restricted to the host range of the phage itself. Phages show an exquisite degree of specificity in regard to the organisms to which they can attach. For example, transducing salmonella phage P22 attaches only to organisms which have somatic antigen 12. Similar restrictions exist for other phages and hence restrict their genetic potential. Mating reactions involve the conjugation of 2 bacterial cells and require the presence of particular surface bacterial structures for the building of a fusion bridge. In addition to their ability to promote transfer per se, transfer factors must also alter the surface of their host bacteria in such a way as to make possible such cellular fusions.

Genetic exchange can also be restricted by factors unrelated to the penetration stage. While the molecular mechanism of gene recombination is still obscure, it is nevertheless apparent that if replacement of material is to occur, the exogenote and the endogenote must in some way recognize each other. They must have some degree of molecular homology. By mating analysis, it can be shown that the general order of the genes controlling specific functions is the same in *E. coli* and some salmonella. Hybrids of *E. coli* and salmonella strains have been prepared which have known portions of their genome derived from the salmonella and known portions from the *E. coli*. By appropriate choice of the hybrid strains, can be prepared which will grow the transducing phage P22. Transduction of coli genes by coli genes and transduction of salmonella genes by salmonella genes occurs readily. However, transduction of coli genes with salmonella genes and salmonella genes with coli genes either fails or occurs with a much reduced frequency. In matings in which extensive regions of genetic material are involved, sufficient homology can be found for genetic recombination. In transduction which involves only small regions, there is apparently insufficient homology for the pieces to recognize each other. Similar results have

been obtained with transformation within various strains of *Hemophilus*, *Bacillus* and *Streptococcus*. In the latter instances, the gross structure of the genetic material is as yet unknown.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Adelberg E. A. and Burns S. N. 1960 Genetic variation in the sex factor of *Escherichia coli*. J Bacteriol 79 321-330.
- Alexander H. E. and Leidy G. 1951 Determination of inherited traits of *H. influenzae* by deoxyribonucleic acid fractions isolated from type specific cells. J Exp Med 93 345-359.
- Anderson T. F., Wollman E. L. and Jacob F. 1957 Sur les processus de conjugaison et de recombinaison chez *Escherichia coli*. III. Aspects morphologiques en microscopie électronique. Ann Inst Pasteur 93 450-455.
- Avery O. T., MacLeod C. M. and McCarty M. 1944 Studies on the chemical nature of the substance inducing transformation of pneumococcal types. Induction of transformation by a deoxyribonucleic acid fraction isolated from *Pneumococcus* Type III. J Exp Med 79 137-158.
- Barksdale L. 1959 Lysogenic conversions in bacteria. Bacteriol Rev 23 202-212.
- Baron L. S., Carey W. F. and Spilman W. M. 1959 Genetic recombination between *Escherichia coli* and *Salmonella typhimurium*. Proc Nat Acad Sci US 45 976-984.
- Braun W. 1953 Bacterial Genetics. Saunders Philadelphia.
- Cavalli L. L., Lederberg J. and Lederberg E. M. 1953 An infective factor controlling sex compatibility in *Bacterium coli*. J Gen Microb 8 89-103.
- Demerec M. 1956 A comparative study of certain gene loci in *Salmonella*. Cold Spring Harbor Symp Quant Biol 21 113-120.
- Fox M. E. and Hotchkiss R. D. 1960 Fate of transforming deoxyribonucleate following fixation by transformable bacteria. Nature 187 1002-1006.
- Frederick P. 1957 Colicins. Ann Rev Microbiol 11 7-22.
- Freeman V. J. 1951 Studies on the virulence of bacteriophage infected strains of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*. J Bacteriol 61 675-688.
- Griffith F. 1928 The significance of pneumococcal types. J Hyg 113 113-159.
- Hartman P. E. 1957 Transduction: a comparative review. In *The Chemical Basis of*

- Heredity* The Johns Hopkins Press Baltimore pp 408-467
- Hayes W 1953 The mechanism of genetic recombination in *Escherichia coli* Cold Spring Harbor Symp Quant Biol 18 75-93
- Hershey A D and Chase M 1952 Independent functions of viral protein and nucleic acid in growth of bacteriophage J Gen Physiol 36 39-56
- Hirota Y 1960 The effect of acridine dyes on mating type factors in *Escherichia coli* Proc Nat Acad Sci US 46 57-64
- Hotchkiss R D 1951 Transfer of penicillin resistance in pneumococci by the desoxy ribonucleate derived from resistant cultures Cold Spring Harbor Symp Quant Biol 16 457-460
- 1955 Bacterial transformation J Cell Comp Physiol 45 suppl 2 1-22
- Hotchkiss R D and Ottolenghi E 1963 Genetic transformation as a basis for evolution in bacteria Proc Vth Int Cong of Biochem 3 215
- Hurwitz J Furth J J Anders M Ortiz F J and August J T 1961 The enzymatic incorporation of ribonucleotides into RNA and the role of DNA Cold Spring Harbor Symp Quant Biol 26 91-100
- Jacob F and Monod J 1961 Genetic regulatory mechanisms in the synthesis of proteins J Molec Biol 3 318-356
- Jacob F and Wollman E L 1961 Sexuality and the Genetics of Bacteria Acad Press New York
- Kellenberger E 1960 The physical state of the bacterial nucleus in Tenth Symp Soc Gen Microbiol Cambridge Univ Press London pp 39-66
- Kornberg A 1962 Enzymatic Synthesis of DNA Wiley New York
- Lederberg E M 1951 Lysogenicity in *E. coli* K.12 Genetics 36 560
- Lederberg J 1959 Bacterial reproduction Harvey Lectures (1957-1958) 53 69-82
- Lederberg J and Lederberg E M 1952 Replica plating and indirect selection of bacterial mutants J Bacteriol 63 399-406
- Loeb T 1960 Isolation of a bacteriophage specific for the F+ and Hfr mating types of *Escherichia coli* K.12 Science 131 932-933
- Luria S E and Burrous J W 1957 Hybridization between *Escherichia coli* and *Shigella* J Bacteriol 74 461-476
- Lwoff A 1953 Lysogeny Bacteriol Rev 17 269-337
- Maccacaro G A and Comolli R 1956 Surface properties correlated with sex compatibility in *Escherichia coli* J Gen Microbiol 15 121-132
- Marmur J Schildkraut C L and Doty P 1961 The reversible denaturation of deoxy ribonucleic acid DNA and its use in studies of nucleic acid homologs and the biological relatedness of microorganisms J Chim Phys 58 954-955
- Meselson M and Stahl F W 1958 The replication of DNA in *Escherichia coli* Proc Nat Acad Sci US 44 671-682
- Morse M L Lederberg E M and Lederberg J 1956 Transductional heterogenotes in *Escherichia coli* Genetics 41 758-779
- Ørskov I and Ørskov F 1960 An antigen termed f+ occurring in F+ *E. coli* strains Acta path microbiol scand 48 37-46
- Ozeki H 1959 Chromosome fragments participating in transduction in *Salmonella typhimurium* Genetics 44 457-470
- Ozeki H and Howarth S 1961 Colicine factors as fertility factors in bacteria *Salmonella typhimurium* strain LT2 Nature 190 986-988
- Robbins P W and Uchida T 1961 Identification of glucose as a phage determined component of *Salmonella polysaccharides* Fed Proc 20 86
- Robinow C F 1956 The chromatin bodies of bacteria Bacteriol Rev 20 207-242
- Roger M and Hotchkiss R D 1961 Selective heat inactivation of pneumococcal transforming deoxyribonucleate Proc Nat Acad Sci 47 653-669
- Skaar P D and Garen A 1956 The orientation and extent of gene transfer in *Escherichia coli* Proc Nat Acad Sci US 42 619-624
- Spizizen J 1958 Transformation of biochemically deficient strains of *Bacillus subtilis* by deoxyribonucleate Proc Nat Acad Sci US 44 1072-1078
- Stocker J A D Zinder N D and Lederberg J 1953 Transduction of flagellar characters in *Salmonella* J Gen Microbiol 11 410-433
- Tatum E L and Lederberg J 1947 Gene recombination in the bacterium *Escherichia coli* J Bacteriol 53 673-684
- Uetake H Luria S E and Burrous J W 1958 Conversion of somatic antigens in *Salmonella* by phage infection leading to lysis or lysogeny Virology 5 68-91
- Watanabe T 1963 Infective heredity of multiple drug resistance in bacteria Bacteriol Rev 27 87-115



- Watson J D and Crick F H C 1953 The structure of DNA Cold Spring Harbor Symp Quant Biol 18 123 131
- Wollman E L Jacob F and Hayes W 1956 Conjugation and genetic recombination in *Escherichia coli* K 12 Cold Spring Harbor Symp Quant Biol 21 141 162
- Zinder N D 1960 Hybrids of *Escherichia* and *Salmonella* Science 131 813 815
- Zinder N D and Lederberg J 1952 Genetic exchange in *Salmonella* J Bacteriol 64 679 690

## 5

### Bacterial Metabolism\*

In this brief review of bacterial physiology and metabolism no attempt will be made to cover all of the varied patterns found in bacteria and fungi. Rather the emphasis will be placed on those aspects which are peculiar to these microorganisms and tend to set them apart from other forms. Through such an understanding of differences between microorganisms and their hosts we can hope to develop a more rational approach to chemotherapy and to other means for the control of bacterial infection. However we must also understand the ways in which bacteria differ in their metabolic patterns from each other since these differences frequently provide the means for distinguishing between closely related species. Together with morphologic and immunologic criteria metabolic characteristics provide a basis for the classification of bacteria. Furthermore the presence or the absence of a metabolic trait

frequently may be correlated with the presence or the absence of pathogenicity.

#### GROWTH

##### METHODS OF MEASUREMENT

In any population of cells growth may result either from an increase in the mass of the individual cells or from an increase in the cell number. Under ideal conditions the average cell size or mass is very constant and a determination of one represents a determination of the other. Thus under true physiologic conditions procedures which measure either the total number of cells or the total amount of cell material will provide suitable indices of growth. The total number of cells may be counted directly using a counting chamber particularly with dark field illumination. More frequently the number of viable cells in the population is determined by plating the cells on suitable growth media and counting the colonies which arise from the individual cells. The latter procedure yields the viable count since ■ does not include cells which are dead and fail to give rise to colonies. Growth may also be determined by measuring the bacterial density in one of several ways. The basic reference ■ provided by measurement of the dry weight which can be related to nitrogen content, metabolic activity, packed cell volume or most common of all, turbidity or absorbancy of light (optical density) at a prescribed wave length.

\* Abbreviations used in this chapter include the following:

AMP—adenosine monophosphate  
ATP—adenosine triphosphate  
CDP—cytidine diphosphate  
DNA—deoxyribonucleic acid  
DNP—dinitrophenol  
DPN—diphosphopyridine nucleotide  
DPNH—reduced diphosphopyridine nucleotide  
GTP—guanosine triphosphate  
IDP—inosine diphosphate  
ITP—inosine triphosphate  
RNA—ribonucleic acid  
TPN—triphosphopyridine nucleotide  
TPNH—reduced triphosphopyridine nucleotide  
UDP—uridine diphosphate

The data obtained in any of these procedures may be expressed by plotting the appropriate parameter against time. When cells which have not been growing actively (usually referred to as resting cells) are placed in a medium which can support growth the growth curve passes through several phases shown schematically in Figure 1. In the first phase called the lag phase there is usually very little increase in cell number although there may be some increase in cell mass. This is followed by the logarithmic or exponential phase in which the cells are increasing in mass and dividing at an exponential rate. Ultimately if the cells are not transferred to fresh medium they will pass into the resting or stationary phase during which there is little further increase in mass or cell number. In many cases this is followed by a decrease in the number of cells. They will pass into the death phase or phase of decline in which there may be a breakdown of cells or lysis and a liberation of their contents into the medium.

Since bacteria divide by a process called

binary fission their number ( $B$ ) will increase by powers of two,

$$B = b 2^n$$

where  $b$  is the initial number of cells and  $n$  the number of cell divisions or generations. This equation is an expression of the growth rate during the exponential phase. For the time interval  $t$  to (in hours) this may be expressed as

$$B = b 2^{rt}$$

where  $r$  is the growth rate in divisions per hour, therefore  $n = r(t t_0)$ . This equation can be converted to the logarithmic form

$$\log_e B - \log_e b = r(t t)$$

The generation time  $g$  is the reciprocal of the growth rate  $r$  and is therefore equal to

$$g = \frac{t t}{(\log B - \log b)}$$

Often it may be more convenient to express this in ordinary logarithms

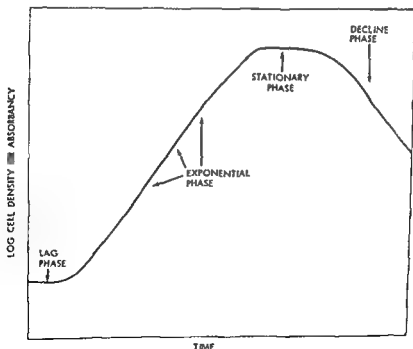


FIG 1 Bacterial density curve showing phases of growth

$$g = \frac{t}{0.301 (\log_{10} B - \log_{10} b)}$$

The generation time can be read from a plot of  $\log B$  versus  $t$ . If the data are plotted in ordinary logarithms (base 10) then the time required for a change of 0.301 represents the generation or doubling time.

#### FACTORS AFFECTING THE GROWTH RATE

During the lag phase the failure of the cells to divide may reflect the time required to fill their metabolic pools and synthesize the appropriate enzymes and coenzymes. During the exponential phase the growth rate may vary according to the composition of the medium, the temperature and the rate of aeration. With aerobic cells vigorous stirring and aeration frequently with pure oxygen may be required for maximum growth rates. The nature of the substrate and the composition of the medium will affect growth. In general cells grown on enriched medium will divide more frequently than cells growing on a minimal medium. Reasons for this will be discussed in a later section.

The effect of temperature on growth rate may be quite complex. In the ordinary tem-

perature range the growth rate usually will increase with temperature much as do physiologic processes in general. At higher temperatures growth may slow down or cease. Optimum temperature for growth is usually a reflection of the normal environment of the organism. Thus pathogenic bacteria usually will grow best at 37°C. Yeasts and fungi for the most part prefer lower temperatures and are usually cultivated at room temperature or 30°C. Bacterial cells vary enormously in their response to elevated temperatures and in general pathogenic species are inhibited in their growth or even killed at temperatures above 45°C. Occasionally mutations are encountered which result in changes in thermostability or thermolability. In nature we find organisms growing at temperatures approaching the boiling point of water. These are generally referred to as thermophiles and will grow at temperatures at which other organisms are unable to grow. The biochemical basis for differences in response to temperature remains obscure.

Cells entering the stationary phase of growth may do so because of changes in the environment such as a fall in pH, exhaustion of some essential component from the

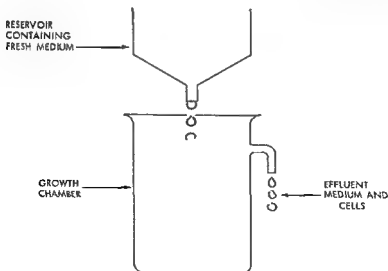


FIG. 2. Diagrammatic representation of chemostat for controlled exponential growth of cells.

medium, or accumulation of a toxic metabolite. Aerobic organisms may cease to grow when they are crowded simply because it is impossible to provide enough oxygen even by vigorous aeration to maintain further growth. However, if such changes in the medium are avoided, the cells may be maintained in the exponential phase indefinitely. An example of this is provided by the use of the chemostat. This is a device in which fresh medium is continually added to the cell suspension at the same rate at which medium and cells are removed from the system. Under these conditions, the number of cells will increase at first until one of the components of the growth medium becomes limiting; then the cells will grow at a rate which is determined by the rate of addition of this component. This apparatus is represented diagrammatically in Figure 2. The chemostat is of value in studies where it is desired to have a predetermined generation time and yet maintain exponential growth conditions. It is also used to determine effects of added metabolites since in the chemostat the limiting metabolite generally exists at very low concentration.

#### SYNCHRONOUS GROWTH

Under appropriate conditions, a population of cells will divide synchronously, yielding discontinuous growth curves based on viable count data. Cells may be brought into synchronous growth by allowing an essential component of the medium to be depleted and then adding this component or by abrupt changes in temperature. Perhaps the most physiologic method for bringing cells into synchronous growth is to use an inoculum of young cells which can be obtained by selective filtration. The smallest cells which pass through appropriate selective filters will be growing cells which have just undergone cell division; for a few generations these will continue to grow and divide synchronously. Such cell populations are useful in the study of control mechanisms which regulate cell growth and division.

#### NUTRITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE GROWTH OF BACTERIA

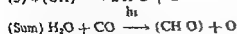
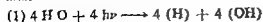
A suitable environment which will support the growth of a microorganism must

contain sources of all of the elements which go to make up the bacterial cell. The principle elements required are carbon, nitrogen, phosphorus, sulfur, oxygen, and hydrogen. In addition, most cells require significant quantities of a number of cations, including potassium, manganese, magnesium, and iron, as well as calcium, zinc, and copper. Trace quantities of a number of other cations are found in bacterial cells, but these are usually introduced as contaminants of other components of the medium, and it is difficult to demonstrate a definitive need for these compounds. The principle anions required for growth are chloride, sulfate, and phosphate. Some cells are unable to utilize sulfate and sulfur, and for these sulfur must be provided in the form of organic or inorganic sulfides. Finally, all cells in order to grow must have available a suitable source of energy. Often this is furnished by the same compound which provides the source of carbon.

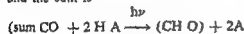
Although bacteria are similar in their basic composition, they differ in synthetic capacity. Many species are able to survive on purely inorganic media and to derive carbon from carbon dioxide. These are designated *lithotrophs*. These organisms must use either light or chemical energy to accomplish the reduction of carbon dioxide by the elements of water. The *photosynthetic lithotrophs* gain their energy from light by the process of photosynthesis; the *chemosynthetic lithotrophs* obtain energy by the oxidation of inorganic substances such as ferrous iron, sulfide, elemental sulfur, or thiosulfate, ammonia, nitrite, or even hydrogen.

Photosynthesis in bacteria is unlike photosynthesis in higher plants in one important respect: it is never accompanied by the production of oxygen. Photosynthetic bacteria generally thrive only in an anaerobic environment which also contains a suitable hydrogen donor or reducing agent. This difference between photosynthetic bacteria and green plants is illustrated best by a consideration of the equations of photosynthesis. In green plants, the process is represented by the following equations, in which  $h\nu$  represents the energy in a quantum of light ( $H$ ) and  $(OH)$  represent reducing and oxidizing products derived from water, and  $(CH_2O)$

represents the ultimate product carbohydrate



In photosynthetic bacteria the reaction represented by equation 3 (the production of oxygen) does not occur this reaction is replaced by



H A represents a hydrogen donor or reducing agent this may be hydrogen sulfide or another inorganic reducing agent or in some species an organic reducing agent such as malic acid. In the photosynthetic sulfur bacteria large quantities of free sulfur accumulate. The nutritional requirements of photosynthetic organisms will be determined by the nature of the reducing agent which they can employ. The situation is very similar for chemosynthetic organisms.

In contrast with the lithotrophs the *organotrophs* (or *heterotrophs*) require as a source of energy an organic nutrient which they can oxidize or ferment. The photosynthetic organisms which require organic reducing compounds are also classified as *organotrophs* more specifically they are called *photo-organotrophs* or *photoheterotrophs*. In addition bacteria may require a variety of organic growth factors including many of the vitamins which are required by man and often in addition certain amino acids, purines, pyrimidines and other substances. Many species may have very complex growth requirements and some pathogens cannot be cultivated on defined media. Microorganisms which require specific growth factors have been widely employed as sensitive microbiologic assay systems since under defined conditions the amount of growth is directly proportional to the quantity of growth factor provided. Before the advent of chromatographic methods microbiologic assays were common for amino acids, purines and pyrimidines. It was with the aid of such

methods that it was established that deoxyribonucleic acids contain equivalent amounts of adenine and thymine and of guanine and cytosine.

In recent years microbiologic assays have been used for the isolation of new growth factors some of which have subsequently been found to be important in the nutrition of higher animals. Often bacteria require more complex forms of the vitamins than are needed in animal nutrition. For example *Hemophilus influenzae* will not grow on nicotinic acid or nicotinamide but requires the intact nicotinamide riboside linkage and will grow best on DPN or TPN. Often these requirements for more complex forms of the vitamins have provided clues in the nature of the coenzyme form. An example of this is the structure of coenzyme A which contains pantothenic acid. The vitamin pantothenic acid was first shown to promote yeast growth and later to be required for many bacterial species. The 2 components of pantothenic acid,  $\beta$  alanine and pantoic acid, will replace pantothenic acid itself in some cases since some species cannot synthesize the  $\beta$  alanine portion while others cannot synthesize pantoic acid. *Lactobacillus bulgaricus* on the other hand requires a conjugated form of pantothenic acid, pantotheine. This substance at one time called the lactobacillus factor can be derived from coenzyme A by the action of phosphatase and its identification was of great importance in the elucidation of the structure of coenzyme A. The arrangement of these components in the coenzyme A molecule is shown in Figure 3.

Bacterial vitamins include many of the vitamin B group such as thiamine, riboflavin, pyridoxal and nicotinic acid. In addition bacteria may also require  $p$  amino benzoic acid, folic acid, hemin and vitamin K. Sterol vitamins are unknown and the presence of sterols in bacteria has not been substantiated although certain yeasts may contain large quantities. Nor has any requirement for ascorbic acid been demonstrated in bacteria. Carotenes participate in bacterial photosynthesis.

#### ORIGIN OF NUTRITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

It is of interest to consider the possible evolution of these growth requirements and

medium or accumulation of a toxic metabolite. Aerobic organisms may cease to grow when they are crowded simply because it is impossible to provide enough oxygen, even by vigorous aeration to maintain further growth. However if such changes in the medium are avoided the cells may be maintained in the exponential phase indefinitely. An example of this is provided by the use of the chemostat. This is a device in which fresh medium is continually added to the cell suspension at the same rate at which medium and cells are removed from the system. Under these conditions the number of cells will increase at first until one of the components of the growth medium becomes limiting; then the cells will grow at a rate which is determined by the rate of addition of this component. This apparatus is represented diagrammatically in Figure 2. The chemostat is of value in studies where it is desired to have a predetermined generation time and yet maintain exponential growth conditions. It is also used to determine effects of added metabolites since in the chemostat the limiting metabolite generally exists at very low concentration.

### SYNCHRONOUS GROWTH

Under appropriate conditions a population of cells will divide synchronously, yielding discontinuous growth curves based on viable count data. Cells may be brought into synchronous growth by allowing an essential component of the medium to be depleted and then adding this component or by abrupt changes in temperature. Perhaps the most physiologic method for bringing cells into synchronous growth is to use an inoculum of young cells which can be obtained by selective filtration. The smallest cells which pass through appropriate selective filters will be growing cells which have just undergone cell division; for a few generations these will continue to grow and divide synchronously. Such cell populations are useful in the study of control mechanisms which regulate cell growth and division.

### NUTRITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE GROWTH OF BACTERIA

A suitable environment which will support the growth of a microorganism must

contain sources of all of the elements which go to make up the bacterial cell. The principle elements required are carbon, nitrogen, phosphorus, sulfur, oxygen and hydrogen. In addition, most cells require significant quantities of a number of cations including potassium, manganese, magnesium and iron as well as calcium, zinc and copper. Trace quantities of a number of other cations are found in bacterial cells but these are usually introduced as contaminants of other components of the medium and it is difficult to demonstrate a definitive need for these compounds. The principle anions required for growth are chloride, sulfate and phosphate. Some cells are unable to utilize sulfate and sulfur and, for these, sulfur must be provided in the form of organic or inorganic sulfides. Finally, all cells in order to grow, must have available a suitable source of energy. Often this is furnished by the same compound which provides the source of carbon.

Although bacteria are similar in their basic composition, they differ in synthetic capacity. Many species are able to survive on purely inorganic media and to derive carbon from carbon dioxide. These are designated *lithotrophs*. These organisms must use either light or chemical energy to accomplish the reduction of carbon dioxide by the elements of water. The *photosynthetic lithotrophs* gain their energy from light by the process of photosynthesis; the *chemosynthetic lithotrophs* obtain energy by the oxidation of inorganic substances such as ferrous iron sulfide, elemental sulfur or thiosulfate, ammonia, nitrite or even hydrogen.

Photosynthesis in bacteria is unlike photosynthesis in higher plants in one important respect: it is never accompanied by the production of oxygen. Photosynthetic bacteria generally thrive only in an anaerobic environment which also contains a suitable hydrogen donor or reducing agent. This difference between photosynthetic bacteria and green plants is illustrated best by a consideration of the equations of photosynthesis. In green plants the process is represented by the following equations in which  $H$  represents the energy in a quantum of light,  $(H)$  and  $(OH)$  represent reducing and oxidizing products derived from water, and  $(CH_2O)$

for energy *Aerobes* depend on respiration and require oxygen these must be grown with shaking or aeration *Facultative anaerobes* can derive energy from fermentation and will grow in the absence of oxygen but will survive and often thrive in the presence of air *Obligate anaerobes* on the other hand can be grown successfully only in the complete absence of oxygen and may be killed if even traces of air are present

#### ELECTRON TRANSPORT IN AEROBIC MICROORGANISMS

Aerobic organisms derive their energy from oxidations which resemble those found in higher animals This process known as *respiration* involves the oxidation of the substrate by molecular oxygen through the intervention of the electron transport mechanism (Fig 4) The bacterial cytochromes which catalyze the terminal steps in the chain of electron transport (Fig 5) resemble those found in mammalian cells and in yeast and studies of absorption spectra of bacteria have disclosed the presence of cytochromes of the  $a$ ,  $a_3$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$  and  $c_1$  types However

bacterial cytochromes frequently differ from mammalian or yeast cytochromes in the precise location of their absorption bands as well as in their catalytic properties In general cytochrome of the  $c$  type isolated from bacteria will not react with reduced pyridine nucleotide in the presence of mammalian cytochrome reductase and the oxidation of the reduced form is not catalyzed by mammalian cytochrome oxidase (cytochromes  $a + a_3$ ) Some species of microorganisms are completely lacking in cytochrome  $c$  yet possess an active electron transport chain Cytochromes of the  $c$  type also function in bacterial photosynthesis and in nitrogen fixation

Cytochromes of the  $b$  type are frequently encountered in bacteria and may act as components of the electron transport mechanism as is shown in Figure 5 In a few cases they have a distinctly different function Lactic dehydrogenase isolated from yeast has been characterized as a cytochrome  $b$  like compound (designated cytochrome  $b$ ) and a cytochrome of this type has also been im

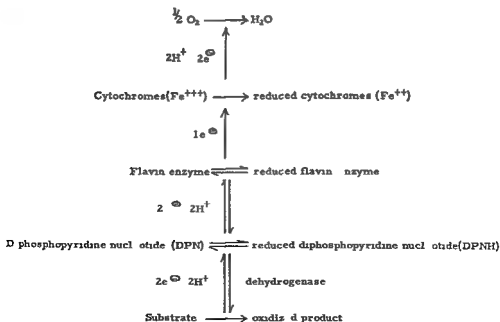


FIG 4 Schematic representation of the path of electrons and protons in respiration



particularly to inquire as to the evolutionary sequence of appearance of lithotrophs and organotrophs. According to an older theory primitive organisms possessed very simple growth or nutritional requirements. According to this view heterotrophic forms developed through a gradual loss of synthetic power by a type of functional degeneration. Thus mutants with specific deletions would be forced to satisfy their requirements from the surrounding medium. This theory was attractive because such changes (loss of synthetic capacity) were commonly observed in spontaneous or induced mutants. Recently however there has been a tendency to favor the opposite point of view namely that the most primitive organisms were organotrophs which arose in primordial seas containing all of the requirements of the cell. These organisms would be expected to possess a very limited synthetic capacity. As essential nutrients were depleted from the environment mutants were selected which had developed the capacity to synthesize the missing precursors. The attractive feature of this second theory is that it avoids the requirement for a sudden appearance of a living cell having a very complex metabolic machinery capable of synthesizing all of the essential components of the cell. This hypothesis is also in accord with current concepts as to the composition of the primordial hydrosphere.

#### CHANGES IN CELL COMPOSITION WITH CHANGES IN GROWTH RATE

It has been mentioned that the growth rate (or reciprocal of the generation time) is a function of the composition of

the medium and that cells generally will grow more rapidly in an enriched medium where they are not required to synthesize all of the amino acids, purines, pyrimidines and other cell components. Such rapidly growing cells also show increases in average cell size and in the number of nuclei per cell. They are relatively rich in their complement of RNA, DNA and protein although these increases are not proportionate. Thus bacteria isolated from enriched medium contain relatively more RNA and protein than DNA as compared with cells growing in minimal medium. This effect is seen most strikingly when cells are transferred from minimal to enriched medium; the quantity of DNA and total mass per cell may increase by approximately 2 fold while the content of RNA and protein may increase as much as 3 fold. These changes follow a particular time sequence. When cells growing exponentially in a minimal salt medium are transferred to nutrient broth several generations may pass without any notable change in the rate of cell division. The first change to be observed is an immediate increase in the rate of synthesis of RNA. This is followed later by a change in the rate of synthesis of protein and finally of DNA. Ultimately after about 60 minutes have elapsed there will also be observed an increase in the rate of cell division. These changes may be related to increases in specific types of RNA and to cellular control mechanisms (see below).

#### ENERGY METABOLISM

Bacteria fall into several groups according to their means of satisfying their requirement

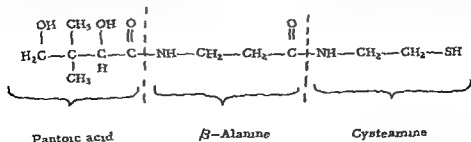
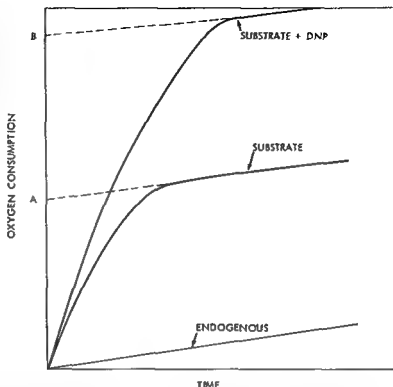


FIG 3 Structure of pantotheine and its components. In Coenzyme A adenosine 3 phosphate is attached to the terminal OH group of pantoic acid by a 5 pyrophosphate bridge

FIG 6 Schematic representation of oxidative assimilation and its uncoupling by dinitrophenol A and B represent the net oxygen uptake due to the substrate in the absence and the presence of dinitrophenol respectively



cultivated in the presence of oxygen if agents are added to maintain a low oxidation reduction potential. Examples of such agents are ascorbic acid and cysteine, both of which will facilitate growth of obligate anaerobes in the presence of oxygen. It is noteworthy that these compounds will reduce oxygen to hydrogen peroxide and therefore tend to increase rather than decrease the concentration of this substance.

A better hypothesis to account for the sensitivity of obligate anaerobes to oxygen is based on the sensitivity to oxidation of the proteins found in anaerobes. Enzyme preparations from clostridia must be protected from oxygen by maintaining anaerobic conditions or by the addition of sulfhydryl compounds such as mercaptoethanol or thioglycolate. The proteins of these organisms are peculiarly sensitive to inactivation by oxidation. This may be a reflection of their primitive evolutionary state. In higher aerobic species, these protein SH—groups are folded into the center of the molecule and thus are protected from oxidation. They are exposed when the protein is denatured.

#### OXIDATIVE ASSIMILATION

Aerobic organisms oxidize only a portion of the substrate which they consume; the remainder is converted to cell material. In the presence of a limiting amount of a carbon (and energy) source, oxygen consumption continues until all of the substrate is depleted from the medium, following which it returns to the low endogenous level characteristic of resting cells (Fig 6). Calculation of the amount of oxygen consumed relative to the amount of substrate added generally will show that about half the substrate is oxidized; the remainder of substrate utilization is not accounted for either by carbon dioxide production or oxygen consumption. As an example, in the case of glucose, the equation for respiration



requires the uptake of 6 moles of  $O$  for each mole of glucose consumed. With most aerobic organisms, the observed value will be closer to 3 than to 6. Oxidative assimilation of substrate is common to a wide

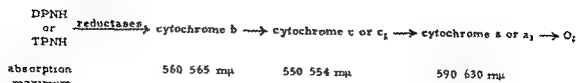


FIG 5 Role of the cytochromes in electron transport and their characteristic absorption maximum

licated in succinate oxidation in *Coryne bacterium diptheriae*

In general very little is known about the precise function of the bacterial cytochromes. Their role in respiration is evident from the fact that in most bacterial species which contain the cytochrome components respiration is inhibited by cyanide, carbon monoxide or azide reagents which are known to block the functioning of the cytochrome system. Bacterial cytochromes also participate in two other important physiologic functions, namely, nitrogen fixation and photosynthesis. *Azotobacter* species which can carry out nitrogen fixation are among the richest sources of cytochromes. Isolation and characterization of these pigments has been hampered by the difficulties in obtaining soluble preparations.

The terminal oxidation system of bacteria resembles that of mammalian cells in its coupling to oxidative phosphorylation. Respiratory particles capable of carrying out coupled oxidative phosphorylation have been isolated from many species of bacteria. The P/O ratio obtained with these systems is usually less than with mammalian preparations, but there is little doubt that this is a major energy yielding mechanism in aerobic microorganisms. Like the mammalian system, bacterial oxidative phosphorylation is uncoupled by dinitrophenol.

The respiratory enzymes of bacteria appear to be associated with the cell membrane. While there is no evidence for structures like the mitochondria of mammalian cells, the chemical composition of the membrane, which is rich in lipoprotein, resembles that of the mammalian mitochondrial particle.

#### THE FLAVIN ENZYMES

Many species of bacteria exhibit respiration which is not sensitive to carbon mon-

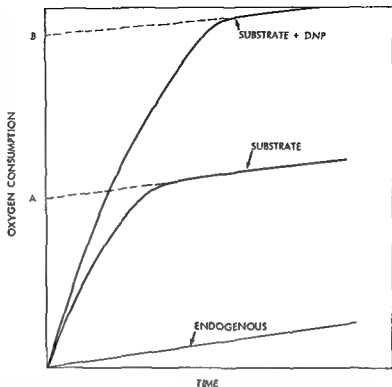
oxide or cyanide. Such species usually can be shown to contain considerable quantities of flavin, and it is likely that their oxygen consumption is due to the action of flavoprotein enzymes. Examples of microorganisms which show this type of respiration include the lactobacilli and the pneumococcus. When these organisms are grown in the presence of air they produce hydrogen peroxide which can be detected either by its action on hemoglobin which it converts to a green pigment or by the benzidine peroxidase test (used for pneumococcus). These organisms are generally classified as facultative anaerobes, and it is questionable whether their aerobic metabolism is of physiologic importance.

Bacteria which lack cytochromes are generally also lacking in catalase and therefore are unable to remove hydrogen peroxide which is produced under aerobic conditions.

#### TERMINAL RESPIRATION SYSTEMS IN OBLIGATE ANAEROBES

Many species of bacteria, including species of clostridia, will when placed under aerobic conditions take up oxygen with the production of hydrogen peroxide but are either killed or inhibited from growth under these conditions. It has been suggested that they are killed by the hydrogen peroxide which they produce since they lack catalase. Two important objections may be raised to this hypothesis. In the first place, many species which lack catalase, such as pneumococcus, will continue to grow in air despite the accumulation of hydrogen peroxide. Furthermore, it has been established that the obligate anaerobes are not killed by oxygen itself nor by a product of oxygen metabolism but rather by the high oxidation reduction potential which results from the presence of oxygen. Even obligate anaerobes can be

FIG. 6 Schematic representation of oxidative assimilation and its uncoupling by dinitro phenol A and B represent the net oxygen uptake due to the substrate in the absence and the presence of dinitro phenol respectively



cultivated in the presence of oxygen if agents are added to maintain a low oxidation reduction potential. Examples of such agents are ascorbic acid and cysteine, both of which will facilitate growth of obligate anaerobes in the presence of oxygen. It is noteworthy that these compounds will reduce oxygen to hydrogen peroxide and therefore tend to increase rather than decrease the concentration of this substance.

A better hypothesis to account for the sensitivity of obligate anaerobes to oxygen is based on the sensitivity to oxidation of the proteins found in anaerobes. Enzyme preparations from clostridia must be protected from oxygen by maintaining anaerobic conditions or by the addition of sulphhydryl compounds such as mercaptoethanol or thioglycolate. The proteins of these organisms are peculiarly sensitive to inactivation by oxidation. This may be a reflection of their primitive evolutionary state. In higher aerobic species, these protein SH— groups are folded into the center of the molecule and thus are protected from oxidation. They are exposed when the protein is denatured.

#### OXIDATIVE ASSIMILATION

Aerobic organisms oxidize only a portion of the substrate which they consume; the remainder is converted to cell material. In the presence of a limiting amount of a carbon (and energy) source, oxygen consumption continues until all of the substrate is depleted from the medium, following which it returns to the low endogenous level characteristic of resting cells (Fig. 6). Calculation of the amount of oxygen consumed relative to the amount of substrate added generally will show that about half the substrate is oxidized; the remainder of substrate utilization is not accounted for either by carbon dioxide production or oxygen consumption. As an example, in the case of glucose, the equation for respiration



requires the uptake of 6 moles of  $O_2$  for each mole of glucose consumed. With most aerobic organisms, the observed value will be closer to 3 than to 6. Oxidative assimilation of substrate is common to a wide

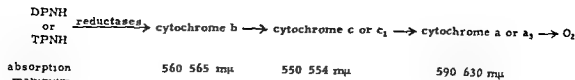


FIG 5 Role of the cytochromes in electron transport and their characteristic absorption maximum

plicated in succinate oxidation in *Coryne bacterium diphtheriae*

In general very little is known about the precise function of the bacterial cytochromes. Their role in respiration is evident from the fact that in most bacterial species which contain the cytochrome components respiration is inhibited by cyanide carbon monoxide or azide reagents which are known to block the functioning of the cytochrome system. Bacterial cytochromes also participate in two other important physiologic functions namely nitrogen fixation and photosynthesis. *Azotobacter* species which can carry out nitrogen fixation are among the richest sources of cytochromes. Isolation and characterization of these pigments has been hampered by the difficulties in obtaining soluble preparations.

The terminal oxidation system of bacteria resembles that of mammalian cells in its coupling to oxidative phosphorylation. Respiratory particles capable of carrying out coupled oxidative phosphorylation have been isolated from many species of bacteria. The P/O ratio obtained with these systems is usually less than with mammalian preparations but there is little doubt that this is a major energy yielding mechanism in aerobic microorganisms. Like the mammalian system bacterial oxidative phosphorylation is uncoupled by dinitrophenol.

The respiratory enzymes of bacteria appear to be associated with the cell membrane. While there is no evidence for structures like the mitochondria of mammalian cells, the chemical composition of the membrane which is rich in lipoprotein resembles that of the mammalian mitochondrial particle.

#### THE FLAVIN ENZYMES

Many species of bacteria exhibit respiration which is not sensitive to carbon mon-

oxide or cyanide. Such species usually can be shown to contain considerable quantities of flavin and it is likely that their oxygen consumption is due to the action of flavoprotein enzymes. Examples of microorganisms which show this type of respiration include the lactobacilli and the pneumococcus. When these organisms are grown in the presence of air they produce hydrogen peroxide which can be detected either by its action on hemoglobin which it converts to a green pigment or by the benzidine peroxidase test (used for pneumococcus). These organisms are generally classified as facultative anaerobes and it is questionable whether their aerobic metabolism is of physiologic importance.

Bacteria which lack cytochromes are generally also lacking in catalase and therefore are unable to remove hydrogen peroxide which is produced under aerobic conditions.

#### TERMINAL RESPIRATION SYSTEMS IN OBLIGATE ANAEROBES

Many species of bacteria including species of clostridia, will when placed under aerobic conditions take up oxygen with the production of hydrogen peroxide but are either killed or inhibited from growth under these conditions. It has been suggested that they are killed by the hydrogen peroxide which they produce since they lack catalase. Two important objections may be raised to this hypothesis. In the first place many species which lack catalase such as pneumococcus will continue to grow in air despite the accumulation of hydrogen peroxide. Furthermore it has been established that the obligate anaerobes are not killed by oxygen itself nor by a product of oxygen metabolism but rather by the high oxidation reduction potential which results from the presence of oxygen. Even obligate anaerobes can be

storage products resembling glycogen. In many microorganisms the storage product is a polymer of  $\beta$  hydroxybutyric acid. These polymers accumulate during the oxidation of glucose in the absence of nitrogen and account quantitatively for the substrate which is not oxidized. When the cells are returned to medium containing nitrogen the storage products are consumed and converted to protein and other cell components.

### PATHWAY OF CARBOHYDRATE METABOLISM

#### THE EMBDEN MEYERHOF PATHWAY AND THE CITRIC ACID CYCLE

Most bacteria oxidize substrates by pathways similar to those found in higher animals.

Glucose is metabolized by the Embden Meyerhof pathway (Fig. 7) and the end product pyruvic acid is oxidized by the citric acid cycle (Fig. 8). In most aerobic bacteria the citric acid cycle serves a dual function: (1) it provides energy through the oxidation of reduced pyridine nucleotides by way of the cytochrome electron transport mechanism, and (2) it provides precursors for the synthesis of amino acids. Thus, as shown in Figure 8, arginine, proline, and lysine are derived from  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate, while aspartic acid, isoleucine, homoserine, threonine, and methionine are derived directly or indirectly from oxalacetate. In bacteria, lysine is derived from oxalacetate via diaminopimelic acid, while in fungi it is produced from glutamate by way of  $\alpha$  amino

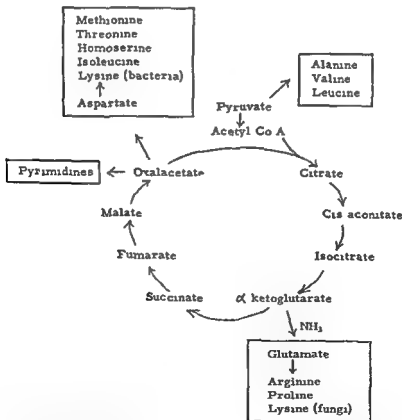


FIG. 8. Origin of the amino acids and pyrimidines from citric acid cycle intermediates. Primary fixation of  $\text{NH}_3$  occurs only in the formation of glutamic acid from  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate; all other amino acids are formed via transamination reactions.

variety of aerobic bacteria and substrates and can be blocked by dinitrophenol (DNP). This agent usually increases the initial rate of oxygen consumption but more striking is the fact that the total oxygen consumed is greater and in general will reach the theoretical value for complete oxidation. This effect of DNP as an uncoupling agent for assimilation is analogous to its uncoupling of oxidative phosphorylation in mammalian cells. The discovery of this effect of DNP in the uncoupling of assimilation in bacteria antedates its introduction as a tool for the study of oxidative phosphorylation in mammalian cells.

Assimilation of substrate by bacteria is a complex process. Under growth conditions the assimilated substrate is converted to normal cell constituents: protein, lipid, and nucleic acid. However, it does not follow that cells prevented from growth are unable to assimilate substrate. Thus, in the absence of a source of nitrogen, glucose and other substrates yield only about 50 per cent of the theoretical oxygen consumption; the remainder of the substrate carbon is assimilated. The most common products of substrate assimilation are polymers such as cellulose or a variety of capsular polysaccharides. Bacteria commonly accumulate internal

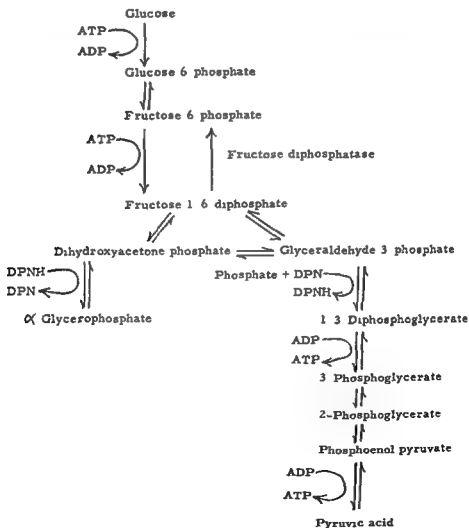


FIG. 7 The Embden Meyerhof or Glycolytic Pathway

which can be assimilated via phosphoenolpyruvate. Cells adapted to growth on acetate also contain a very active fructose 1,6 diphosphatase which permits the synthesis of hexose by a reversal of the glycolytic pathway (Fig 7)

#### ALTERNATE PATHWAYS OF CARBOHYDRATE METABOLISM

Not all microorganisms metabolize carbohydrate via the Embden Meyerhof pathway. Deviations from this common pattern are frequently encountered in anaerobes and also in aerobic species carbohydrate metabolism may involve other pathways. In this section we shall consider some of these alternate aerobic pathways.

The pentose phosphate pathway, or hexose monophosphate shunt, is present in nearly all species of bacteria whether or not they also contain the Embden Meyerhof pathway. This pathway branches off from the Embden Meyerhof pathway at the level of fructose 6 phosphate which thus serves as a site for the action of cellular control mechanisms (Fig 10). Glucose 6 phosphate and fructose 6 phosphate are converted to pentose phosphate by one of two possible mechanisms. In the first glucose 6 phosphate is oxidized directly at the C-1 position to yield

6 phosphogluconate which in turn is oxidized to ribulose 5 phosphate. The coenzyme for this oxidation is usually triphosphopyridine nucleotide (TPN) although in some species of bacteria it is replaced by diphosphopyridine nucleotide (DPN). The primary product ribulose 5 phosphate is in equilibrium with ribose 5 phosphate the precursor of nucleic acid ribose or with xylulose 5 phosphate. Xylulose 5 phosphate and ribose 5 phosphate are converted to sedoheptulose 7 phosphate and triose phosphate which in turn react to yield fructose 6 phosphate and erythrose 4 phosphate. Finally to complete the cycle erythrose 4 phosphate can react with a second molecule of xylulose 5 phosphate to yield fructose 6 phosphate and triose phosphate. In the oxidation of 6 phosphogluconate to ribulose 5 phosphate 1 mole of carbon dioxide is produced thus it is theoretically possible to pass a hexose phosphate molecule around the cycle 6 times and thereby to oxidize it completely to carbon dioxide and water. It is to be noted that this series of reactions produces TPNH which unlike DPNH is not a substrate for the electron transport pathway and does not yield energy through oxidative phosphorylation. None of the reactions of the pentose phosphate pathway will generate ATP and

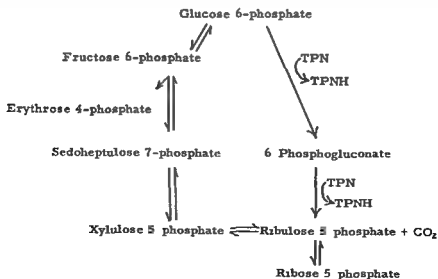
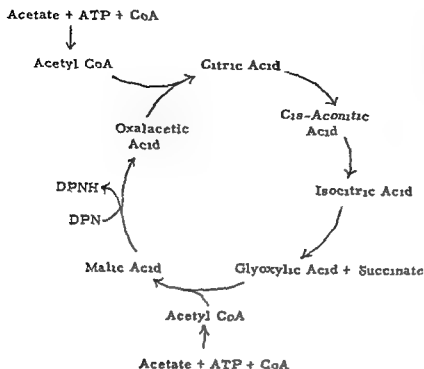
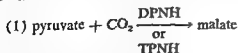


FIG 10 The Pentose Phosphate Pathway





adipic acid. Pyruvate serves as a precursor of alanine, valine and leucine. In the absence of amino acid or pyrimidine synthesis, the citric acid cycle is self-sustaining; with each turn of the cycle, one equivalent of pyruvate is oxidized to yield 3 equivalents of carbon dioxide. Oxalacetate is consumed in the formation of citrate and is regenerated in equivalent quantities. However, the removal of  $\alpha$ -ketoglutarate or oxalacetate for amino acid synthesis changes the character of the cycle, since it can no longer sustain itself. In order to maintain the cycle, dicarboxylic acids must constantly be produced by other reactions. Two such reactions are known:



The first of these reactions, catalyzed by the malic enzyme, has been found in bacteria. Thus far, the second carboxylase has not been detected. Most of the CO produced in the citric acid cycle must be returned for

the regeneration of dicarboxylic acids, and it may be concluded that in bacteria the primary function of the cycle is the biosynthesis of amino acids rather than as a mechanism for the oxidation of pyruvate.

### THE GLYOXYLATE BYPASS

A special case exists in organisms using acetate for growth. Theoretically, acetate can be converted to isocitrate by way of acetyl CoA and the condensation reaction with oxalacetate. However, while it can be oxidized completely by this series of reactions, it is impossible for it to be utilized for assimilation or biosynthesis. Organisms which grow on acetate as a sole carbon source possess a modified citric acid cycle known as the glyoxylate bypass (Fig 9). Acetyl CoA condenses with oxalacetate in the usual way to form citric acid. However, isocitric acid is not oxidized to  $\alpha$ -ketoglutarate as in the citric acid cycle, but is split in an aldolase-type reaction to form glyoxylate and succinate. Glyoxylate condenses with the second molecule of acetyl CoA to form malic acid, which is converted to oxalacetic acid to complete the cycle. This process provides a means for the net synthesis of  $\text{C}_4$  acids.

citric acid cycle. For example citrate will support the growth of *Aerobacter aerogenes* but will not serve as a growth substrate for the closely related organism *Escherichia coli*. The basis for this difference has been shown to be one of permeability. *E. coli* metabolizes internally produced citrate but is unable to take it up from the medium.

In organisms lacking the citric acid cycle other mechanisms largely unknown are responsible for the synthesis of amino acids.

### PARTIAL OXIDATIONS

Many species of microorganisms derive energy by carrying out partial oxidations. A classic example is the microorganism which catalyzes the oxidation of ethanol to acetic acid and was studied by Pasteur in his efforts to determine the cause of spoilage of wine. Later Bertrand discovered the oxidation of polyols to ketoses by acetobacter, a process which has been widely used by synthetic organic chemists for specific syntheses such as the formation of sorbose from sorbitol. This is also the basis for the industrial production of gluconate and 2-ketogluconate. These partial oxidations are accomplished by particulate enzymes which are coupled to energy production by unknown mechanisms. In these organisms only a small fraction of the substrate is assimilated in this respect; the processes resemble fermentation rather than respiration. They probably represent a primitive respiration mechanism.

## FERMENTATION MECHANISMS

### THE PROBLEM OF ENERGY PRODUCTION ATP AND REDUCED PYRIDINE NUCLEOTIDE

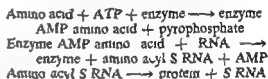
In contrast with aerobic metabolism where as much as 50 per cent of the substrate may be assimilated in fermenting cultures the bulk of the substrate utilized accumulates in the medium as end products of fermentation. In the fermentation of a carbon compound even in growing cells as little as 5 per cent of the carbon may be utilized for the formation of cell constituents with the remainder being broken down (disimulated) to provide energy. This energy is in two main forms: one is ATP, the other is reduced pyridine nucleotide.

Several examples will serve to illustrate the manner in which these sources of energy may be utilized for the synthesis of cellular components.

The hydrolysis of protein to its component amino acids is primarily an exergonic reaction and may be represented as follows:

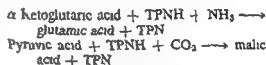


On the other hand, for the synthesis of proteins it is necessary that the amino acid be activated:

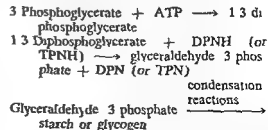


There is some indication that the last step, the conversion of amino acyl S RNA to protein, may also require energy in the form of ATP or GTP.

The following examples illustrate how reduced pyridine nucleotide may be used to drive synthetic reactions which would otherwise be exergonic. We have considered already the cases of amino nitrogen formation and  $\text{CO}_2$  fixation to yield dicarboxylic acids:



Another example is the synthesis of glucose from 3-carbon precursors which involves both pyridine nucleotides and ATP. The essential energy requiring steps may be represented as follows:



This requirement for energy is illustrated best in photosynthesizing organisms in which energy produced by light is utilized for the formation of both TPNH and ATP. Both

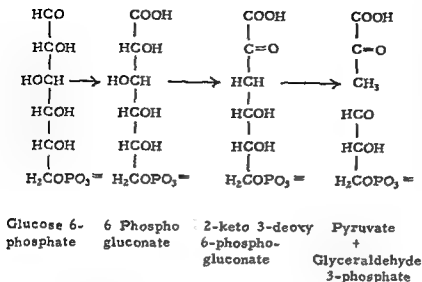
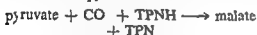
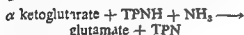


FIG 11 Glucose metabolism by the Entner Doudoroff Pathway Pyruvate and triose phosphate are further metabolized by the Embden Meyerhof pathway and the citric acid cycle

it is unlikely that it operates as a mechanism for the production of this form of cellular energy. However the pathway is important for the production of another form of energy useful to the cells reduced triphosphopyridine nucleotide (TPNH) which is specifically required for a number of important synthetic processes. For example it is the coenzyme utilized in the formation of C<sub>4</sub> acids from pyruvate and CO



It also plays an important role in the formation of amino nitrogen since it can serve in the reaction catalyzed by glutamic dehydrogenase



In addition to these biosynthetic processes TPNH is known to be required for the synthesis of other reduced compounds such as fatty acids and sterols

In addition to the formation of TPNH the oxidative pathway also functions in the production of pentose for the synthesis of nucleic acids and nucleotides. This can arise either by the oxidation reactions by way of 6 phosphogluconate or directly from fructose 6 phosphate by a reversal of the reactions in the left hand part of the scheme (Fig 10). The available evidence suggests that in most microorganisms pentose phos-

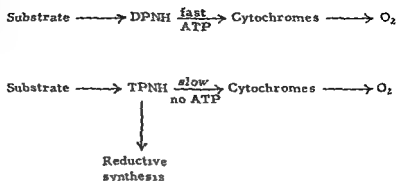
phate is formed by both mechanisms. Therefore the cycle is not operating exclusively in the clockwise direction but rather in the 2 branches of the cycle the flow is in the direction from hexose monophosphate to pentose phosphate.

**The Entner Doudoroff Pathway** This is another important alternative pathway in microorganisms (Fig 11). The first oxidative step is the same as in the pentose phosphate pathway but 6 phosphogluconate is not further oxidized to pentose phosphate but instead is split to form pyruvate and glyceraldehyde 3 phosphate. The pathway was first discovered in *Pseudomonas*. It has also been detected in the *Enterobacteriaceae* and probably will be found to occur as well in other species. It also occurs as a fermentation mechanism.

#### THE DISTRIBUTION OF THE CITRIC ACID CYCLE

The presence of the citric acid cycle in bacteria has been the subject of considerable controversy and definite conclusions may be drawn with respect to only a few microorganisms. It appears to function in the *Enterobacteriaceae* along with the Embden Meyerhof pathway but is absent in aerobic bacteria and related species. It probably does not occur except in greatly modified forms in most anaerobes. Work in this area has been hampered by the fact that many cells are impermeable to intermediates of the

FIG 13 Oxidation of the pyridine nucleotides and production of energy



and fermentation while at the same time it was involved in the oxidation steps of the citric acid cycle and therefore of respiration. On the other hand the most important steps requiring TPN were those of the pentose phosphate pathway already mentioned and isocitric dehydrogenase. It has become increasingly clear that these reactions are important in generating reduced TPN for essential reduction mechanisms. These reduction mechanisms were not required in the primitive atmosphere which itself was reducing and when the seas were filled with reduced cell precursors. Early organisms which depended on fermentation must have possessed only a single coenzyme DPN which functioned in fermentation pathways such as the Embden Meyerhof pathway. With the appearance of oxygen in the atmosphere and the consequent depletion of reducing substances of the hydrosphere the need arose to provide mechanisms for the formation of reduced cytoplasmic components and also for a source of energy less wasteful of the

dwindling supply of organic materials. This led to the appearance of respiratory mechanisms catalyzing the oxidation of DPNH by molecular oxygen. A new coenzyme was needed to preserve the reducing potential now required by the cell. This need was filled by TPNH which is not in catalytic equilibrium with oxygen. In the intact metabolizing cell most of the DPN is present in the oxidized form while TPN is present largely in the reduced form. Thus a cell can exist in equilibrium with oxygen and therefore at a very high oxidation reduction potential and yet maintain some of its components (such as TPNH) at a very low oxidation reduction state. According to this hypothesis anaerobic organisms have no need for the TPN reduction mechanism and indeed it is absent in clostridia.

#### EXAMPLES OF FERMENTATION PATHWAYS

Alcoholic fermentation is common in yeasts where it has been shown to proceed by a modification of the Embden Meyerhof

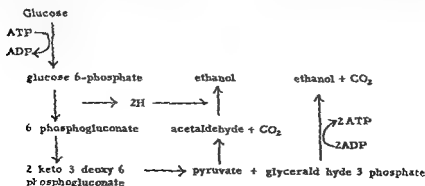


FIG 14 Ethanol fermentation of *Pseudomonas lindneri*

forms of energy are expended in accomplishing the endergonic conversion of phosphoglyceric acid to glyceraldehyde 3 phosphate (Fig 12) Fructose 6 phosphate is partially ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ) converted to starch The remainder ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ) is needed to regenerate the CO acceptor ribulose 1,5 diphosphate This mechanism operates in photosynthetic and chemosynthetic bacteria as well as in higher plants

Therefore in considering fermentation mechanisms it is important to bear in mind the requirement of the organism for these two distinct sources of energy It is also necessary to maintain balanced oxidation reductions Lavoisier first introduced the concept of fermentation when he proposed that substances rich in oxygen might undergo internal oxidations in which one part of the molecule would emerge with less oxygen and another part would become oxygen rich Thus, Lavoisier noted that sugar which contains 53 per cent oxygen could be fermented to a mixture of ethanol containing 35 per cent oxygen, and carbon dioxide containing 70 per cent oxygen Therefore fermentation was nothing more than an internal oxido reduction Lavoisier also proposed that all of the atoms of carbon hydrogen and oxygen must be accounted for thus stating the law of conservation of mass The balancing of fermentation equations is accomplished most conveniently by equating the number of hydrogen atoms produced at various stages of the process to the number consumed

## EVOLUTIONARY RELATION OF FERMENTATION AND RESPIRATION PATHWAYS

It is now generally accepted that the early atmosphere in which life originated was highly reducing in nature and devoid of oxygen and that early forms of life obtained their energy through fermentation mechanisms Thus we may assume that fermentation was an early evolutionary development and that respiration appeared only after the development of plant life and the resultant appearance of oxygen in the atmosphere It is instructive to consider the physiologic role of the 2 pyridine nucleotides DPN and TPN in the light of this concept DPN (cozymase) was first recognized as the coenzyme required for alcoholic fermentation TPN on the other hand was discovered in connection with the oxidation of glucose 6 phosphate to 6 phosphogluconate and first was believed to be the coenzyme of respiration However, with the development of our understanding of the respiratory mechanism it became clear that the substrate for respiration was reduced DPN rather than reduced TPN The oxidation of DPNH in mitochondria was found to be a rapid reaction coupled to the esterification of ATP On the other hand the oxidation of TPNH was relatively sluggish and proceeded without coupled phosphorylation (Fig 13) These discoveries led to a reevaluation of the role of the 2 pyridine nucleotides There remained little doubt about the role of DPN as the specific coenzyme of glycolysis

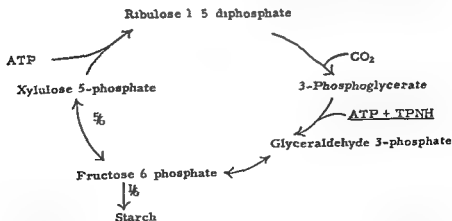


FIG 12 Energy requirement for photosynthesis Note that ATP and TPNH are employed to drive the irreversible steps so that the cycle proceeds in the clockwise direction

in higher organisms and the Embden Meyerhof pathway has been shown to be important in these organisms

**Heterolactic fermentations** are those producing other products in addition to lactic acid. They are often called mixed acid fermentations. The additional products include ethanol, acetic acid, formic acid, succinic acid, carbon dioxide, hydrogen, butyric acid and others. The metabolic origin of these fermentation products is outlined in Figure 15. In general, in these fermentations glucose is converted to pyruvate by the usual steps of the Embden Meyerhof pathway. A large variety of products can be formed from pyruvate. Acetoin is a common product of fermentation, formed from 2 moles of pyruvate in a condensation catalyzed by the carboxylase type enzymes. In some instances this is reduced to yield 2,3-butanediol. Pyruvate can also be converted by carboxylation to oxalacetate, which is the precursor of succinic acid and propionic acid. In the *coli aerogenes* group, a major pathway of pyruvate degradation involves its cleavage to acetyl CoA and formic acid, which is a common fermentation product in these organisms. In the clostridia, pyruvate is broken down by a different reaction which produces acetyl CoA, hydrogen, and carbon dioxide.

In each fermentation, the balance of hydrogen equivalents must be maintained, including the 4 equivalents produced in the conversion of glucose to pyruvate. This is illustrated best by the fermentation of hexose and pentose in lactobacilli. Hexose fermenta-

TABLE 1 PRODUCTS OF GLUCOSE FERMENTATION WITH *Bacillus subtilis*

PRODUCTS	mMOLES/100 mMOLES OF GLUCOSE
2,3-Butanediol	55
Acetoin	1+
Glycerol	57
Ethanol	8
Formic acid	1+
Acetic acid	tr
Lactic acid	11
Succinic acid	1+
Carbon-dioxide	118
Hydrogen	tr

tion may yield equivalent quantities of lactic acid, ethanol, and CO<sub>2</sub>, but in the fermentation of pentose, no CO<sub>2</sub> is formed and acetic acid is produced instead of ethanol. In the fermentation of glucose by *Bacillus subtilis*, the products formed are in approximately the proportions shown in Table 1. For each glucose molecule fermented, we can account for 5.8 atoms of carbon, 13.1 of hydrogen, and 5.8 of oxygen. The missing carbon and oxygen atoms are present in small quantities of acetoin, formic acid, and succinic acid.

**Heterolactic Fermentation: Lactobacillus Type** In many species of lactobacilli, the fermentation balance is represented by the equation



In *Leuconostoc mesenteroides*, an organism closely related to the lactobacilli, this re-

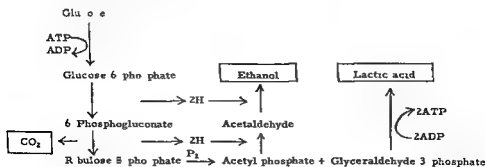


FIG 16 Hexose fermentation in *Leuconostoc mesenteroides*. The fermentation products are outlined in rectangles.

pathway (Fig 7) Pyruvate formed in the last step is decarboxylated to acetaldehyde and  $\text{CO}_2$ . Then acetaldehyde is reduced to lactate. The hydrogen atoms (or electrons) produced as DPNH in the oxidation of 3 phosphoglycerdehyde are utilized for this reduction.

Pure alcoholic fermentation is rare in bacteria. The organism *Pseudomonas lindneri* appears to carry out a classic Embden Meyerhof type of ethanolic fermentation.



but in fact this organism utilizes the Entner Doudoroff pathway (Fig 14). The hydrogen balance is preserved since 2 atoms of hydrogen formed in the oxidation of

glucose 6 phosphate are required for the reduction of one equivalent of acetaldehyde. A similar balance exists in the oxidation of glyceraldehyde 3 phosphate and the reduction of the second molecule of ethanol. ATP is produced in low yield. Two equivalents are produced in the conversion of glyceraldehyde 3 phosphate to ethanol and one of these is required for the initial phosphorylation of glucose.

**Homolactic Fermentation** Fermentation mechanisms which give rise to lactic acid as the sole product are common in microorganisms. They occur in pneumococcus as well as in many species of lactobacilli and streptococci. In general the pathways may be assumed to be identical with those found

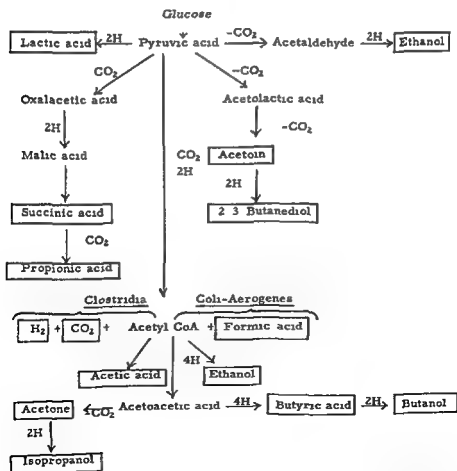


FIG 15 Origin of products in mixed acid fermentations. Final products are indicated in the rectangles (Wood W A in Gunsalus I C and Stanier R Y (eds) *The Bacteria* Vol II p 82 New York Academic Press 1961)

tion reduction reactions appear only at the last steps when two equivalents of pyruvate are converted to one of butyrate and 2 of carbon dioxide. The formation of butyrate by this series of reactions is a common fermentation reaction in clostridia.

In the fermentation of cysteine hydrogen sulfide is a product. Fermentations of this amino acid yield ammonia, carbon dioxide, acetate, formate, hydrogen and butyrate in addition to hydrogen sulfide.

Tryptophan is converted in part to indole and skatole, characteristic products of fermentation of mixtures of amino acids containing this substance.

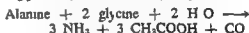
# FERMENTATION OF PAIRS OF AMINO ACIDS

Many species of clostridia are unable to grow on single amino acids but grow well on protein hydrolysates or amino acid mixtures. These organisms derive energy from coupled oxidation-reduction reactions between pairs of amino acids, a type of fermentation known as the Stickland reaction. A typical example

TABLE 2 REDUNDANTS AND OXIDANTS IN THE STICKLAND REACTION

REDUCTANTS	OXIDANTS
Alanine	Glycine
Leucine	Proline
Isoleucine	Hydroxyproline
Valine	Ornithine
Histidine	Arginine
Phenylalanine	Tryptophan

is the fermentation of a mixture of alanine and glycine by *Clostridium sporogenes*:



In this fermentation carbon dioxide is derived from the alanine residue by an oxidative process while glycine is reduced directly to acetic acid and ammonia. A number of amino acids serve specifically as reductants in the Stickland reaction while others seem to act specifically as oxidants (Table 2). Characteristic of the Stickland

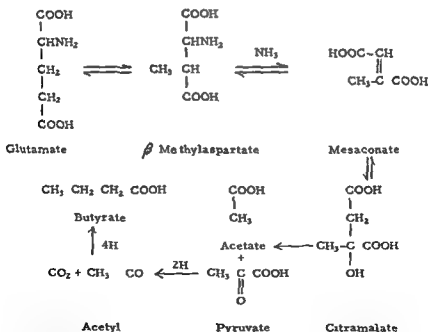
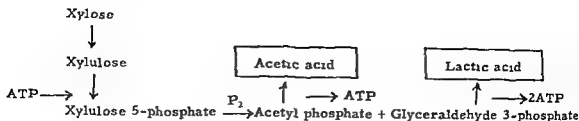
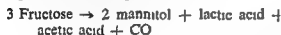


FIG 18 Pathway of glutamate fermentation (H A Barker in Gunsalus I C and Stanier R Y (eds) The Bacteria Vol II p 167 New York Academic Press 1961)



FIG 17 Pentose fermentation in *Lactobacillus plantarum*

sults from a series of reactions which constitute a modification of the hexose monophosphate shunt or pentose phosphate pathway (Fig 16). The 2 pairs of protons produced in the oxidation of glucose 6-phosphate and 6-phosphogluconate are utilized for the 2-step reduction of acetyl phosphate to ethanol. In other species of lactobacilli fermentation proceeds according to the following balance:



Since acetic acid and  $\text{CO}_2$  are the end products rather than ethanol and  $\text{CO}_2$ , 2 pairs of protons must be disposed of in some other process. This is provided by the reduction of 2 additional moles of fructose to mannitol, thereby maintaining the overall fermentation balance.

In the fermentation of pentoses by the same organisms, the overall fermentation can be expressed as:



The fermentation mechanism resembles that shown in *Leuconostoc* (Fig 17). Pentose is cleaved to form acetyl phosphate and triose phosphate, which are the precursors of acetic acid and lactic acid, respectively. This type of fermentation yields 2 net equivalents of ATP per mole of pentose, the same as in the homolactic fermentation of glucose by this organism.

#### FERMENTATION OF NITROGEN-CONTAINING COMPOUNDS

Bacteria can grow on a variety of nitrogen-containing compounds, particularly amino acids, purines, and pyrimidines. These provide not only energy but also carbon and nitrogen. The growth of bacteria on nitrogen-containing compounds generally has been

associated with the production of volatile products which produce characteristic odors; this type of fermentation was called putrefaction. In general, particularly among aerobic microorganisms, amino acids are converted to intermediates of the Embden-Meyerhof pathway or citric acid cycle and fermented and oxidized in the usual way. Thus, alanine and glutamic acid are oxidatively decarboxylated to yield pyruvic acid and  $\alpha$ -ketoglutaric acid, respectively. The fermentation of amino acids may involve novel pathways which are of interest because of the pathogenic nature of some of these microorganisms and because of the information which has been gained from the study of these pathways. Thus, the first evidence for the role of vitamin  $\text{B}_1$  in intermediary metabolism was obtained through a study of the bacterial fermentation of glutamic acid.

Species of bacteria which are capable of fermenting single amino acids fall primarily into 2 groups: the anaerobic spore formers (clostridia) and the anaerobic cocci (micrococcus and diplococcus). A few facultative aerobes, including *Escherichia coli*, are able to ferment some amino acids. The pathway for the fermentation of glutamate in the anaerobic spore-forming organism *Clostridium tetanomorphum* is shown in Figure 18. The major products are butyric acid, acetic acid, and carbon dioxide. The first step, the conversion of glutamate to  $\beta$ -methyl aspartate, is of particular interest because of the roles of the coenzyme form of vitamin  $\text{B}_1$ . This coenzyme differs from the vitamin  $\text{B}_1$  in having an adenosine residue attached to the cobalt molecule in place of the cyanide group. The coenzyme has also been shown to function in the formation of propionic acid from succinic acid (Fig 15).

In this fermentation of glutamate, oxida-

this series of reactions first led to the elucidation of the role of folic acid. The organism *Clostridium cylindrosporum* is remarkable in that it can grow only on the purines xanthine, uric acid or guanine. It is unable to use other compounds including carbohydrates for growth. The fermentation of xanthine proceeds by a series of hydrolytic reactions (Fig 19) leading eventually to formiminoglycine. This reacts with the coenzyme tetrahydrofolic acid to yield glycine and formimino tetrahydrofolic acid. The latter is converted to 10-formyl tetrahydrofolic acid by way of the 5,10-methenyl derivative. In the conversion of 10-formyl tetrahydrofolic acid to the coenzyme tetrahydrofolic acid and formic acid, ATP is produced. This is the first and perhaps the only energy yielding step in the fermentation. It is remarkable that *Clostridium cylindrosporum* is able to fulfill all of its requirements by this series of reactions and from glycine, formic acid and ATP can produce all of the complex components of the cell. The fermentation of xanthine by *Clostridium cylindrosporum* has an interesting parallel in the metabolism of histidine by mammals. This amino acid is ultimately converted to formiminoglutamic acid (Fig 20). The conversion

of formiminoglutamic acid to glutamic acid requires the coenzyme tetrahydrofolic acid and yields the same intermediate formed in the bacterial fermentation. In folic acid deficiency in man, this reaction is blocked and large quantities of formiminoglutamic acid may be excreted. This provides a sensitive and rapid method for detecting folic acid deficiency.

### ENRICHMENT CULTURE

As may be evident from the foregoing discussion of fermentation reactions, bacteria as a group are capable of utilizing any organic compound which is found in nature. This has led to the development of the enrichment culture technique for the isolation of new organisms. In this procedure, organisms are selected which are capable of growing on the compound provided as the sole carbon source. The enrichment culture technique has been used for studies of pathways of breakdown of metabolites and also to develop specific hydrolytic enzymes for the degradation of macromolecules. In general, bacteria will not use complex macromolecules but will first break these down to their monomeric components. For example, proteins will be utilized only after hydrolysis to amino

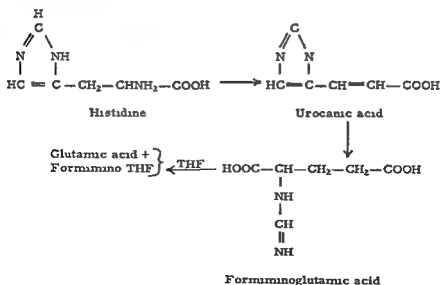


FIG 20 Role of tetrahydrofolic acid in the breakdown of histidine

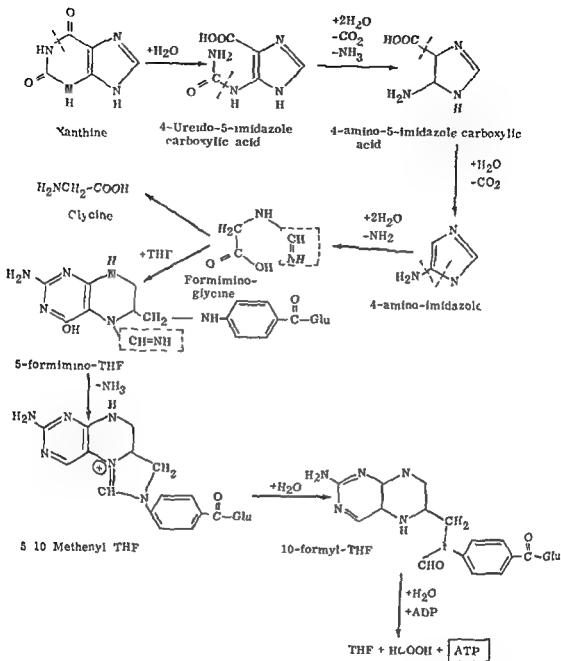


FIG 19 Fermentation of purines in *Cl cylindrosporium* THF represents tetrahydrofolic acid

reaction is the fact that the oxidants are converted directly to reduced products e.g. glycine to acetate, proline to  $\delta$  amino valerate etc. For the most part the reactions leading directly to the formation of energy (ATP) in the Stuckland reaction remain to be elucidated.

#### FERMENTATION OF HETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS

The fermentation of purines by clostridia is of interest because it illustrates the complex mechanisms by which organisms may derive energy from fermentation and because

may be detected by its odor or by the deposition of iron sulfide in suitable media

## SYNTHESIS OF MACROMOLECULES

Bacterial cells contain nucleic acid, protein, carbohydrate and lipid, all of which must be synthesized in more or less definite proportion in order to maintain normal cell growth.

### THE NUCLEIC ACIDS

The synthesis of DNA is the result of the action of the enzyme DNA polymerase which catalyzes the formation of chains of deoxyribose nucleotides from nucleoside triphosphates. This synthesis does not occur in a random fashion but is directed by the DNA present in the cell in such a manner that the new DNA synthesized is a precise copy of that which is originally present. A schematic representation of this synthesis is shown in Figure 21. The enzyme respon-

sible for this reaction, DNA polymerase, has been well characterized but the manner in which it acts inside the cell is little understood. Double-stranded DNA, such as is normally isolated from living cells, is a very poor primer and must be altered by heating or by enzyme action in order to serve effectively as a primer. Once the two strands of DNA are separated, each appears to act independently, catalyzing the formation of a complementary strand. Thus the presence of adenylate acid in the priming strand determines that thymidylic acid is inserted in the newly synthesized strand, and vice versa. Similarly, guanine in DNA primes for the incorporation of cytosine. As a consequence, the overall composition of the newly synthesized DNA is an exact duplicate of that which is provided as primer.

DNA synthesis appears to be the site of action of several antibiotics. For example, the antibiotic mitomycin inhibits completely the synthesis of DNA in intact cells while

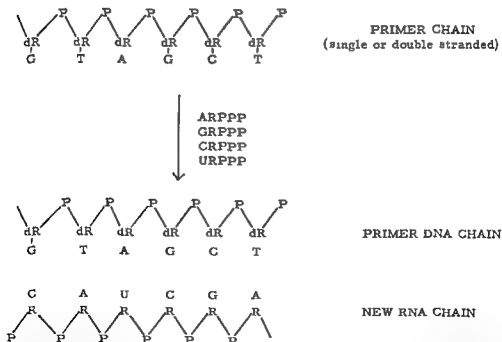


FIG. 22 Schematic representation of DNA-primed RNA synthesis. The symbols R and ARPPP etc. represent ribose and ribose nucleoside triphosphates. As in the case of DNA synthesis, inorganic pyrophosphate is the other product.

acids nucleic acids only after breakdown to nucleosides or purines and pyrimidines polysaccharides only after hydrolysis to the component monosaccharides The hydrolytic enzymes which microorganisms produce for this purpose have provided useful tools for the study of the structure of macromolecules

### USE OF FERMENTATION PATTERNS IN THE CLASSIFICATION OF MICROORGANISMS

The classification of bacteria depends not only on morphologic examination but also to a considerable extent on the biochemical capabilities and behavior For example closely related species may be distinguished from each other by their ability to ferment specific sugars such as mannose galactose or lactose Specific media have been developed for these purposes when the substrate is a carbohydrate the method may depend on the production of acid through fermentation In aerobic organisms it is convenient to measure growth of the organism Among

the staphylococci, the pathogenic species commonly will ferment mannitol while non pathogens are usually lacking in this capacity In the case of the enteric organisms shigella and salmonella species are commonly lactose negative whereas the closely related *Escherichia coli* is lactose positive As mentioned previously *Escherichia coli* can be distinguished from *Aerobacter aerogenes* by the fact the latter is able to ferment citrate

Bacterial classification is also aided by examination of the types of products produced The production of gas may be due to the presence of the enzyme formic hydrogen lyase which catalyzes the formation of hydrogen and CO from formate



The formation of acetoin is the basis for the Voges Proskauer reaction which helps to distinguish *Aerobacter aerogenes* Among the *Enterobacteriaceae* only *Escherichia coli* is capable of producing indole from tryptophan Another product which permits the characterization of many organisms is their capacity to form H<sub>2</sub>S from cysteine This

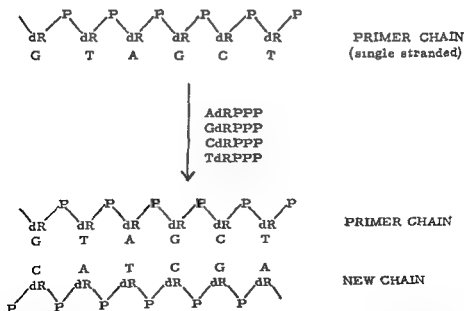


FIG. 21 Schematic representation of DNA synthesis The symbols dR and AdRPPP etc represent deoxyribose and the deoxyribose nucleoside triphosphates The dotted lines connecting the bases represent hydrogen bonds Pyrophosphate is produced in the reaction

Closely related species of microorganisms differ in the location of methyl groups in the RNA and the DNA molecules

### PROTEIN SYNTHESIS

The mechanism of protein synthesis in microorganisms is considerably better understood than this mechanism in animal cells and may be represented by the scheme shown in Figure 23. The first step is the activation of the amino acid in the reaction with ATP to form the intermediate adenylated amino acid. This does not exist in free form but as an enzyme bound intermediate from which is transferred to a specific transfer or S RNA. Specific S RNAs and specific activating enzymes exist for each amino acid; thus tyrosine is converted to tyrosyl S RNA by one enzyme system and leucine to the corresponding leucyl S RNA by a distinct enzyme system and so on for each of the 18 amino acids. In the reaction catalyzed by the amino acid activating enzymes, inorganic pyrophosphate is produced and as in the case of DNA and RNA synthesis it is the hydrolysis of inorganic pyrophosphate that provides the driving force for what otherwise would be a highly reversible process.

Loaded S RNA carries the amino acid to the ribosome where it is incorporated into the protein chain.

Proteins which are synthesized at the ribosome possess amino acid sequences which are dictated by the information stored in the bacterial chromosome. The transfer of this information from the chromosome to the ribosome involves the participation of messenger RNA which receives the genetic code from the DNA and transmits it to the ribosome. The language used in this system consists of 3 letter words spelled out by the bases in the nucleic acid. Thus a sequence of 3 uridine residues in the nucleic acid designated as UUU carries the message for the incorporation of phenylalanine. The sequence AAG codes for the incorporation of glutamic acid (Table 3). In vitro synthesis of RNA by the enzyme DNA RNA polymerase results in the production of 2 strands of RNA each of which is a copy of one of the 2 DNA strands in vivo; however only a single strand of DNA is copied and only a single strand of messenger RNA is pro-

TABLE 3 TRIPLET CODE LETTERS FOR AMINO ACID INCORPORATION GOVERNED BY MESSENGER RNA

(In each case only one of the several code letters has been given.)

AMINO ACID	TRIPLET	AMINO ACID	TRIPLET
Lysine	AAA	Arginine	GAA
Asparagine	CAA	Methionine	UGA
Histidine	ACC	Glycine	GAG
Glutamine	AAC	Cysteine	GUU
Glutamic acid	AAG	Isoleucine	UUA
Tyrosine	AUU	Valine	UUG
Leucine	UAU	Phenylalanine	UUU
Threonine	ACA	Serine	UCC
Proline	CCC	Alanine	CAG

From Jukes BBRC 10 155 (1963)

duced. This messenger RNA interacts with ribosomes forming aggregates known as *polysomes* which appear to be the actual site of protein synthesis. The bacterial system appears to differ from that found in animal tissues in that the messenger RNA in bacteria is extremely unstable and protein synthesis depends on the constant production of new messenger RNA. As a result, the entire system for protein synthesis is under close regulation and control and the synthesis of any protein can be turned on or off almost instantly as conditions require. The breakdown of messenger RNA may be related to the presence of polynucleotide phosphorylase which is found in bacterial cells but has not been positively detected in mammalian cells. Polynucleotide phosphorylase catalyzes the reversible phosphorolysis of RNA to nucleoside triphosphates. It has been employed in the synthesis of polynucleotides for study of the amino acid code.

Recognition of the code for protein synthesis appears to reside in the specific S RNAs which in turn interact with the specific amino acid activating enzymes. The nature of this recognition system remains obscure but the hypothesis has been put forward that there is a triplet of nucleotides in S RNA which is complementary to the code triplet in messenger RNA and that the interaction of these complementary sets of nucleotides is responsible for the attachment of S-RNA at the proper location of the ribosome.

A number of antibiotics interfere with

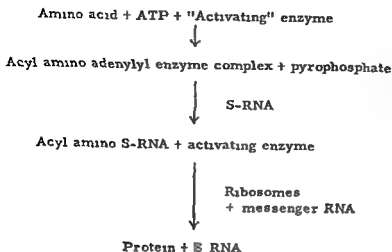


FIG 23 Pathway of amino acids in protein synthesis S RNA represents soluble or transfer RNA The ribosomes are aggregated by messenger RNA into polysomes which are the site of protein synthesis

it leaves the synthesis of RNA and protein relatively unimpaired. In cells infected with bacteriophage the effect of mitomycin on DNA synthesis is specific for host DNA and replication of viral DNA is not blocked. This may be related to an effect of mitomycin in preventing separation of the strands of host DNA. Actinomycin also interferes with DNA replication in intact cells, but this process is not so sensitive as is the synthesis of RNA.

Bacteria contain several forms of RNA including messenger RNA, soluble or transport RNA, and ribosomal RNA. Of these only the synthesis of messenger RNA is well understood. This is formed in a reaction which strongly resembles the formation of DNA and is catalyzed by the enzyme DNA-RNA polymerase (Fig 22). In this reaction again DNA serves as a primer and a chain of ribonucleotides is formed with ribonucleoside triphosphates as the precursors. Each base in the DNA chain directs the incorporation of the complementary base in the RNA chain: adenosine in DNA governs the incorporation of uridylic acid in RNA, and guanine the incorporation of cytidylic acid. RNA formed in this reaction unlike the bulk of the cellular RNA possesses the same base composition as does DNA. It has been established that this type of RNA turns over rapidly in bacterial cells and serves as the messenger which carries information from the gene to the site of protein synthesis (see below). Unlike DNA-

polymerase RNA polymerase can be primed with either double-stranded or single stranded DNA. The activity of this enzyme is extremely sensitive to actinomycin and it would appear that this is the primary site of action of this drug in bacterial cells.

Two other types of RNA are found in bacteria. These are ribosomal RNA associated with nucleoprotein particles and the so-called soluble or transport RNA. The mechanism of formation of these species of RNA is not established but it has been proposed that certain regions of the chromosome specifically code for the formation of transfer and of ribosomal RNA. Since these are very small regions their base composition does not reflect that of the total chromosomal DNA. Transport RNA and to a lesser extent other species of RNA and DNA contain methylated bases such as thymine, methyl adenine, and methyl cytosine. These methyl groups unlike the methyl group of thymine in DNA are derived from methionine rather than from C-1 residues of the formyl folic acid type. In this respect thymine riboside differs from the corresponding deoxyriboside. The methyl groups in RNA are introduced into RNA after it has been polymerized and not during synthesis of the mononucleotides. The function of these unusual bases in DNA and RNA is not understood but they may be related to species specificity since the enzymes responsible for their introduction into pre-formed nucleic acid are highly specific.

Closely related species of microorganisms differ in the location of methyl groups in the RNA and the DNA molecules

### PROTEIN SYNTHESIS

The mechanism of protein synthesis in microorganisms is considerably better understood than this mechanism in animal cells and may be represented by the scheme shown in Figure 23. The first step is the activation of the amino acid in the reaction with ATP to form the intermediate adenylated amino acid. This does not exist in free form but as an enzyme bound intermediate from which it is transferred to a specific transfer or S RNA. Specific S-RNAs and specific activating enzymes exist for each amino acid; thus tyrosine is converted to tyrosyl S RNA by one enzyme system and leucine to the corresponding leucyl S RNA by a distinct enzyme system and so on for each of the 18 amino acids. In the reaction catalyzed by the amino acid activating enzymes, inorganic pyrophosphate is produced and as in the case of DNA and RNA synthesis it is the hydrolysis of inorganic pyrophosphate that provides the driving force for what otherwise would be a highly reversible process.

Loaded S RNA carries the amino acid to the ribosome where it is incorporated into the protein chain.

Proteins which are synthesized at the ribosome possess amino acid sequences which are dictated by the information stored in the bacterial chromosome. The transfer of this information from the chromosome to the ribosome involves the participation of messenger RNA which receives the genetic code from the DNA and transmits it to the ribosome. The language used in this system consists of 3 letter words spelled out by the bases in the nucleic acid. Thus a sequence of 3 uridine residues in the nucleic acid designated as UUU carries the message for the incorporation of phenylalanine. The sequence AAG codes for the incorporation of glutamic acid (Table 3). In vitro synthesis of RNA by the enzyme DNA RNA polymerase results in the production of 2 strands of RNA, each of which is a copy of one of the 2 DNA strands in vivo; however only a single strand of DNA is copied and only a single strand of messenger RNA is pro-

TABLE 3 TRIPLET CODE LETTERS FOR AMINO ACID INCORPORATION GOVERNED BY MESSENGER RNA

(In each case only one of the several code letters has been given.)

AMINO ACID	TRIPLET	AMINO ACID	TRIPLET
Lysine	AAA	Arginine	GAA
Asparagine	CAA	Methionine	UGA
Histidine	ACC	Glycine	GAG
Glutamine	AAC	Cysteine	GUU
Glutamic acid	AAG	Isoleucine	UUA
Tyrosine	AUU	Valine	UUG
Leucine	UAU	Phenylalanine	UUU
Threonine	ACA	Serine	UCC
Proline	CCC	Alanine	CAG

From Jukes BBRC 10 155 (1963)

duced. This messenger RNA interacts with ribosomes forming aggregates known as *polysomes* which appear to be the actual site of protein synthesis. The bacterial system appears to differ from that found in animal tissues in that the messenger RNA in bacteria is extremely unstable and protein synthesis depends on the constant production of new messenger RNA. As a result the entire system for protein synthesis is under close regulation and control and the synthesis of any protein can be turned on or off almost instantly as conditions require. The breakdown of messenger RNA may be related to the presence of polynucleotide phosphorylase which is found in bacterial cells but has not been positively detected in mammalian cells. Polynucleotide phosphorylase catalyzes the reversible phosphorolysis of RNA to nucleoside triphosphates. It has been employed in the synthesis of polynucleotides for study of the amino acid code.

Recognition of the code for protein synthesis appears to reside in the specific S RNAs which in turn interact with the specific amino acid activating enzymes. The nature of this recognition system remains obscure but the hypothesis has been put forward that there is a triplet of nucleotides in S RNA which is complementary to the code triplet in messenger RNA and that the interaction of these complementary sets of nucleotides is responsible for the attachment of S-RNA at the proper location of the ribosome.

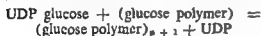
A number of antibiotics interfere with



various steps in protein synthesis. Chloramphenicol and puromycin block the transfer of amino acid from tRNA to the ribosomal protein synthesizing system. Actinomycin as was pointed out previously interferes with the synthesis of messenger RNA and indirectly inhibits protein synthesis. However it is noteworthy that not all protein synthesis is stopped by actinomycin. Streptomycin also interferes with protein synthesis. Streptomycin is known to combine with nucleic acids and it may combine with messenger RNA thus interfering with the association of this material with the ribosomes. Streptomycin can be shown to inhibit the last step in protein synthesis in vitro further more ribosomes from streptomycin resistant strains of bacteria are not inhibited by the low levels of streptomycin which affect ribosomes of sensitive strains.

#### SYNTHESIS OF STRUCTURAL POLYSACCHARIDES

Bacterial cell walls and capsules contain many types of polysaccharides and the generalization can be made that the precursors of these polymers are the so called sugar nucleotides. Some species of bacteria contain a substance closely resembling glycogen which probably is synthesized by the mechanism similar to that responsible for glycogen and starch synthesis in other cells.



In this way large polysaccharides can be built up provided that the proper primers are present. Virulent strains of pneumococcus contain a variety of polysaccharides which provide the basis of group classification. These complex heteropolysaccharides contain one or more of the following sugars: N acetyl glucosamine, galacturonic acid, galactose, glucose, fucose and rhamnose. Type III pneumococcus polysaccharide which appears to be polyglucuronic acid is built up by condensation of UDP glucuronic acid units. Other precursors of pneumococcal polysaccharide are UDP N acetyl glucosamine and UDP galacturonic acid.

Gram negative organisms, particularly those belonging to the *Enterobacteriaceae* also contain complex lipopolysaccharides in

the cell wall. This lipopolysaccharide complex is part of the bacterial endotoxin and O antigen and provides the basis for the Kaufmann White classification scheme for pathogenic strains. Here again as in the case of pneumococcus polysaccharide the structure is built up by the successive addition of specific sugars in the form of sugar nucleotides, to the appropriate precursor. The specific arrangement of sugars in the polysaccharide appears to result from the action of specific enzymes each of which recognizes the structure required for the addition of the next sugar. The possibility remains that the antigenic portions of the molecule whose structure is genetically controlled may be coded by a kind of messenger RNA although evidence for this has not yet been provided.

#### LIPID SYNTHESIS

Lipid synthesis in bacteria probably follows mechanisms similar to those worked out for mammalian cells although the details are lacking. Bacteria may contain unusual lipids for example, the lipid found in the endotoxin of gram negative microorganisms contains glucosamine rather than glycerol and a predominant fatty acid in the lipid is  $\beta$  hydroxymyristic acid. Hydroxy fatty acids are common in bacterial systems and relatively unknown in mammalian cells. Their biochemical origin has not been clarified.

#### BIOSYNTHESIS OF THE CELL WALL MUCOPEPTIDE AND TEICHOIC ACIDS

In the case of the muramic acid mucopeptides, which are important structural elements in the cell wall of both gram negative and gram positive microorganisms little is known of the details of biosynthesis. The basic structural unit contains  $\beta$ 16 acetyl glucosaminyl acetyl muramic acid with peptide chains attached to the carboxyl group in the lactyl residue of the muramic acid component. The synthesis of the cell wall mucopeptide is inhibited by penicillin and in penicillin treated cells uridine nucleotide derivatives accumulate which appear to be the precursors of the mucopeptide. The steps in the synthesis of cell wall precursor are indicated in Figure 24.

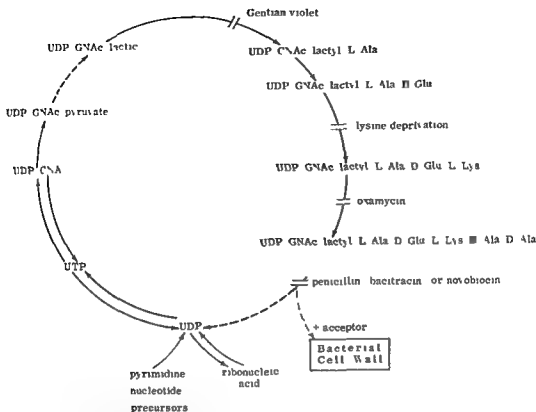


FIG 24 Cycle leading to the synthesis of bacterial cell wall mucopeptide (Strominger J L in Gunsalus I C and Stamen R Y (eds) *The Bacteria* Vol III p 445 New York Academic Press 1962)

The dye gentian violet appears to block the incorporation of the first L alanine residue into the nucleotide. In cells treated with oxymycin, an analogue of D alanine, there appears to be a specific inhibition of the addition of the last D alanyl D alanine group, which is attached as a unit rather than as single amino acids. Finally, the antibiotics penicillin, bacitracin, and novobiocin appear to block the incorporation of the completed uridine nucleotide derivative into the bacterial cell wall. Unfortunately, nothing is known of the mechanism of this important step in the process. There is reason to believe that new cell wall is synthesized by extension of existing cell wall. In lysozyme-treated cells, where the cell wall has been extensively or entirely removed, the synthesis of new cell wall is resumed with great difficulty. On the other hand, if cell wall synthesis is inhibited

by the presence of penicillin, in which case the existing cell wall is not destroyed, new cell wall synthesis begins as soon as penicillin is removed.

Teichoic acid, found in the cell wall of gram-positive organisms, is synthesized by polymerization of ribitol phosphate or glycerol phosphate. The precursors are the nucleotides CDP ribitol and CDP glycerol.

## CONTROL OF METABOLISM

### CONTROL OF PROTEIN SYNTHESIS

A most striking aspect of bacterial growth is that it responds rapidly to changes in the environment. As has been pointed out earlier, cells growing in a complex medium containing amino acids and nucleotides will grow and divide more rapidly than cells growing in minimal medium, where they are required

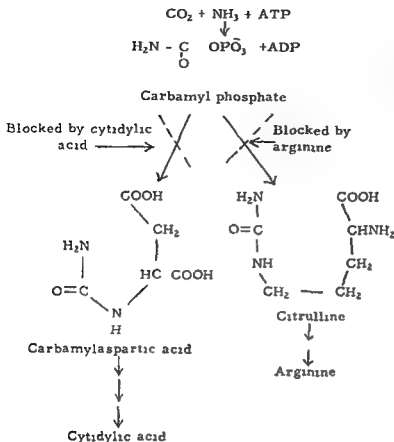
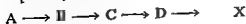


FIG 25 Specific feed back inhibition mechanisms for the control of arginine and pyrimidine synthesis. The first step before the branch point is not blocked by either end product

to make all of the components needed for growth. It has been demonstrated repeatedly that bacteria tend to make only those enzymes (proteins) which are necessary for growth. Cells growing in a mixture rich in amino acids can be shown to lack many if not all of the enzymes required for the biosynthesis of these amino acids. Therefore cells growing in a minimal medium must produce many more enzymes than cells growing in a complex medium; this probably accounts for the difference in rates of growth under the two conditions.

Two mechanisms are known to control protein synthesis in a specific manner. One has been termed *feedback inhibition* and the second, *enzyme repression*. In feedback inhibition, the product of a biosynthetic pathway specifically inhibits the first enzyme in that pathway. Thus, in the sequence



X would specifically inhibit the enzyme responsible for the conversion of A to B. An example of this type of feedback inhibition is found in the synthesis of cytidylic acid from aspartic acid. The first step in this biosynthetic pathway is the formation of carbamyl aspartate from aspartic acid and carbamyl phosphate, a reaction catalyzed by the enzyme *aspartate transcarbamylase*. This enzyme is specifically inhibited by the end product, cytidylic acid, although this substance bears no resemblance to either of the substrates for the enzyme. Characteristic of feedback inhibition is that it is generally competitive with the substrate and that it specifically blocks the first step in the biosynthetic pathway. Reactions preceding the first specific reaction, which may be required for other processes, are not affected. For example, in the biosynthesis of cytidylic acid, carbamyl phosphate is a precursor, but car-

bamyl phosphate is also required for the biosynthesis of arginine and its synthesis is not inhibited either by arginine or by cytidylic acid (Fig 25)

### ENZYME REPRESSION

A second important mechanism for the control of biosynthesis is enzyme repression. This mechanism operates at the genetic level and prevents the transfer of genetic information and therefore the appearance of specific enzymes (Fig 26). Specific repressors are formed presumably by way of specific messenger RNA although it is not yet known whether the repressor (R) is RNA or a protein formed in response to a message from RNA. The repressor (R) interacts with the effector (F) which would be the end product metabolite or a product formed from the metabolite. This yields the modified repressor  $R^1$  which is capable of interacting with the operator portion of the chromosome which controls replication of messenger RNA from the structural genes. Thus in salmonella species all of the genes

which govern the biosynthesis of histidine are located in one region of the cell. This region is controlled by an operator located at one end of the region. Interaction of the activated repressor ( $R^1$ ) with the operator prevents the function of the entire portion of the chromosome. Since the repressor functions only if histidine is present, it must be presumed that there is an interaction between the primary product of the regulator gene and histidine or a metabolite of histidine. The same model can be used to account for enzyme induction or the formation of enzyme in response to a specific substrate. In this case R acts as a repressor which is neutralized by interaction with the effector.

### CONTROL OF NUCLEIC ACID BIOSYNTHESIS

It is clear from the foregoing that biosynthesis of nucleic acids is itself a controlled process and that only those portions of the bacterial chromosome are active which are required for the growth of the cell under specific conditions. For example, organisms containing the genes for the metabolism of

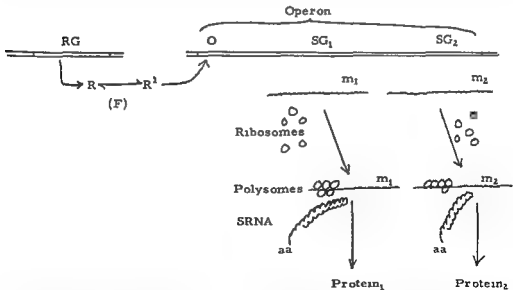
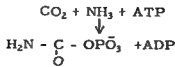


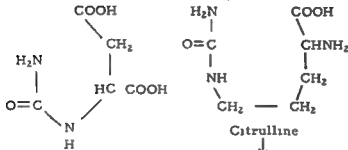
FIG 26 Model of regulation of enzyme synthesis. RG, regulator gene; R, repressor converted to  $R^1$  in presence of effector F (inducing or repressing metabolite); O, operator; SG<sub>1</sub>, SG, structural genes; m<sub>1</sub>, m<sub>2</sub>, messenger RNAs made by SG<sub>1</sub> and SG; aa, amino acids attached to SRNA (Jacob F and Monod J. On the regulation of gene activity. Symposium on Quant Biol 26:193-209, 1961).



### Carbamyl phosphate

Blocked by cytidylic  
acid  $\longrightarrow$

Blocked by  
arginine



### Carbamylaspartic acid

### Citrulline

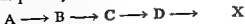
**Arginine**

**Cytidylic acid**

**FIG 25** Specific feed back inhibition mechanisms for the control of arginine and pyrimidine synthesis. The first step before the branch point is not blocked by either end product.

to make all of the components needed for growth. It has been demonstrated repeatedly that bacteria tend to make only those enzymes (proteins) which are necessary for growth. Cells growing in a mixture rich in amino acids can be shown to lack many if not all of the enzymes required for the biosynthesis of these amino acids. Therefore cells growing in a minimal medium must produce many more enzymes than cells growing in a complex medium. This probably accounts for the difference in rates of growth under the two conditions.

Two mechanisms are known to control protein synthesis in a specific manner. One has been termed feedback inhibition and the second enzyme repression. In feedback inhibition the product of a biosynthetic pathway specifically inhibits the first enzyme in that pathway. Thus in the sequence



X would specifically inhibit the enzyme responsible for the conversion of A to B. An example of this type of feedback inhibition is found in the synthesis of cytidylic acid from aspartic acid. The first step in this biosynthetic pathway is the formation of carbamyl aspartate from aspartic acid and carbamyl phosphate, a reaction catalyzed by the enzyme aspartate transcarbamylase. This enzyme is specifically inhibited by the end product cytidylic acid, although this substance bears no resemblance to either of the substrates for the enzyme. Characteristic of feedback inhibition is that it is generally competitive with the substrate and that it specifically blocks the first step in the biosynthetic pathway. Reactions preceding the first specific reaction, which may be required for other processes, are not affected. For example, in the biosynthesis of cytidylic acid, carbamyl phosphate is a precursor, but car

- nucleic acids in *The Bacteria* (Gunsalus I C. and Stanier R Y eds) Vol III pp 471-577 New York Acad Press
- Geller D M 1961 Bacterial photosynthesis in *The Bacteria* Gunsalus I C and Stanier R Y eds Vol II pp 461-478 New York Acad Press
- Gunsalus I C Horecker B L and Wood W A 1955 Pathways of carbohydrate metabolism in microorganisms *Bact Rev* 19 79-128
- Horecker B L 1962 Pentose metabolism in bacteria New York Wiley 100 pp
- Horecker B L and Hiatt H H 1958 Pathways of carbohydrate metabolism in normal and neoplastic cells *New Eng J Med* 258 177-184 225-232
- Hurwitz J and Furth J J 1962 Messenger RNA *Sci Am* 206 no 2 41-49
- Kornberg A 1961 Enzymatic synthesis of DNA New York Wiley 103 pp
- Kramnitz L O 1961 Cyclic mechanisms of terminal oxidation, in *The Bacteria* Gunsalus I C and Stanier R Y eds Vol II pp 209-256 New York Acad Press
- Lwoff A 1944 L'évolution physiologique etude des pertes de fonctions chez les micro-organismes Paris Hermann 308 pp
- Meister A 1957 Biochemistry of the Amino Acids New York Acad Press
- Monod J 1949 The growth of bacterial cultures *Ann Rev Microbiol* 3 371-394
- Monod J Changeaux J P and Jacob F 1963 Allosteric proteins and cellular control systems *J Mol Biol* 6 306-329
- Novick A 1955 Growth of bacteria *Ann Rev Microbiol* 9 97-110
- Pardee A B 1962 The synthesis of enzymes in *The Bacteria* Gunsalus I C and Stanier R Y eds Vol III pp 577-630 New York Acad Press
- Smith L 1961 Cytochrome systems in aerobic electron transport in *The Bacteria*, Gunsalus I C and Stanier R Y eds Vol II pp 365-396 New York Acad Press
- Stanier R Y Doudoroff M and Adelberg E H 1957 *The Microbial World* Englewood Cliffs N J Prentice Hall 682 pp
- Strominger J L 1962 Biosynthesis of bacterial cell walls in *The Bacteria* Gunsalus I C and Stanier R Y eds Vol III pp 413-470 New York Acad Press
- Umbarger E and Davis B B 1962 Pathways of amino acid biosynthesis in *The Bacteria* Gunsalus I C and Stanier R Y eds Vol III pp 167-252 New York Acad Press
- White A Handler P Smith E L and Stetten DeW Jr 1959 *Principles of Biochemistry* ed 2 New York McGraw Hill 1150 pp
- Wood W A 1961 Fermentation of carbohydrates and related compounds in *The Bacteria* Gunsalus I C and Stanier R Y eds Vol II pp 59-149 New York Acad Press

galactose or galactosides do not possess the enzymes necessary for the utilization of the substrates unless an inducer is present in the growth medium. The action of the inducer is considered to be similar to that of the repressor. The control gene produces a factor controlling inducibility. In the absence of the inducer, this product of the repressor prevents the chromosome from expressing itself through the synthesis of the specific messenger RNA. This repressor is neutralized by the inducer, thus allowing the gene to function and the enzyme to be produced. Enzyme induction is characteristic of catabolic systems, while repression is characteristic of anabolic systems. As a result of the interaction of these mechanisms with the bacterial chromosome, the organism is able to cope with rapid changes in its environment and to respond to these changes by turning on or turning off the synthesis of specific enzymes, as the requirement of the medium may dictate.

#### METABOLIC CONTROL THROUGH TRANSPORT OR PERMEATION

Bacteria are able to maintain themselves in an environment whose composition is vastly different from that found inside the cells. Generally, they can be considered to be quite impermeable to solutes in the medium and to possess selective mechanisms for taking up the substances which they require. Such specific permeation mechanisms have been described for various carbohydrates, amino acids and other derivatives. The permease for galactosides, which has been studied extensively, is specific for the disaccharide lactose and certain of its analogues. It will not effect the transport into the cell of a closely related disaccharide such as maltose. Conversely, a specific system for the transport of maltose is known which is not active with lactose or other disaccharides. A variety of specific permeases have been detected for amino acids. In many cases, these can be shown to be inducible and to be affected by agents responsible for protein synthesis; this evidence suggests that the transport mechanisms are at least in part protein in nature. Furthermore, they follow the classic kinetics of enzyme systems in

cluding competitive inhibition, substrate saturation, etc. Differences in the ability of organisms to utilize various external substrates may be related to the presence or the absence of specific permeases; thus *E. coli* is unable to utilize exogenous citrate although citrate is a normal intermediate in metabolism in this organism. On the other hand, *Aerobacter aerogenes* can utilize external citrate. The difference has been shown to be due to the presence in *A. aerogenes* of a citrate permease. This permease is inducible; it is not formed in cells grown on glucose. The presence of specific transport or permeability systems also accounts for differing responses to antibiotics. Actinomycin will inhibit the growth of *Bacillus subtilis* since it can enter the cell and block the synthesis of messenger RNA. On the other hand, while the synthesis of messenger RNA in *E. coli* is just as sensitive as it is in *B. subtilis*, in the former actinomycin is excluded from the cell and therefore the intact cell is resistant to this antibiotic. Canavanine is an antibacterial agent in some organisms because it interferes with the utilization of aspartic acid. However, certain resistant mutants have lost the ability to transport canavanine, which appears to be transported by the arginine permease. Thus, external canavanine is blocked from interfering with the utilization of endogenous arginine. Similar specific and active transport mechanisms must exist for a variety of other cell components such as salts and ions. These have been little studied in bacteria.

#### REFERENCES

- Barker, H. A. 1956 *Bacterial Fermentations*. New York: Wiley, 95 pp.
- . 1961 Fermentations of nitrogenous organic compounds. In *The Bacteria* (Gunsalus I. C. and Stanier R. Y. eds.) Vol. II, pp. 151-207. New York: Acad. Press.
- Cohen, G. N. and Monod, J. 1957 Bacterial permeases. *Bact. Rev.* 21: 169-194.
- Dolin, M. I. 1961 Cytochrome independent electron transport enzymes of bacteria. In *The Bacteria* (Gunsalus I. C. and Stanier R. Y. eds.) Vol. II, pp. 425-460. New York: Acad. Press.
- Gale, E. F. 1962 The synthesis of protein and

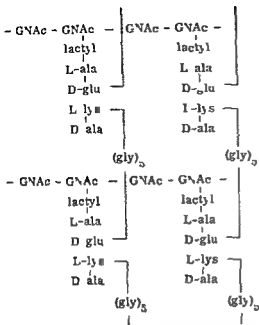


FIG 1 The cell wall of *Staph aureus*. A representation of part of a macro-molecular network is shown. Some of the glycine cross bridges presumably go to the planes in front and back of the sheet in order to build a 3-dimensional network (Modified from Mandelstam and Strominger 1961)

netic information, proteins as catalysts and carbohydrates and fats as sources of energy. Only comparatively recently has sufficient information accumulated regarding the broad similarities among cells to permit attention to be directed to dissimilarities to the chemical processes which determine that each species of organism is uniquely different from every other. Antibiotics have been and will be important tools in such studies.

In this chapter we shall examine the mode of action of antibacterial agents from the point of view of the types of reactions in bacteria which are inhibited and the important role which these agents have had in the uncovering and the exploration of these reactions.

## INHIBITORS OF CELL WALL SYNTHESIS

A remarkable chemical and morphologic difference between bacterial cells and all



FIG 2 Penicillin induced formation of *E. coli* protoplasts (Hahn and Cihak 1957)

other types of cells is the presence in bacteria of a rigid outer layer termed the cell wall (see Salton 1960). The cytoplasm of animal, plant and bacterial cells is limited by an outer membrane called the cytoplasmic membrane. This membrane is relatively fragile and is the permeability barrier of the cell. In this membrane are permeases which catalyze the translocation of nutrients and ions in and out of the cell. In addition to this membrane, bacterial and plant cells are bounded by a more rigid external layer, the cell wall. Some bacteria also have a third layer, the capsule, less defined morphologically and external to the cell wall.

The cell wall of bacteria is chemically distinct from that of fungi and other plants. It is an exceedingly complex polymer in



6

## Mechanisms of Action of Antimicrobial Agents

Without question the control of infectious diseases in the last half century albeit still incomplete is the greatest advance ever made in the conquest of human disease. This advance is the consequence of the introduction of public health measures of specific immunization technics and of chemotherapeutic agents selectively toxic for bacteria but relatively nontoxic for the infected human host. The possibility of finding such selectively toxic antibacterial agents had occurred to Pasteur but in 1906 the German chemist Ehrlich (see Ehrlich and Hata 1910) made the first discovery of such an agent, arsphenamine, the magic bullet. This substance or some closely related compound was employed in the treatment of syphilis for over 30 years.

The modern era of chemotherapy was ushered in by the accidental discovery of a powerful bactericidal agent, penicillin, by Fleming in 1929 (see Fleming 1946) and by the further success of another German chemist, Domagk (1935) in discovering a synthetic chemical with a broader antibacterial spectrum than arsphenamine. Prontosil\* Dubos (1939) then attempted systematically to find in the soil some organism which might excrete substances toxic to

other bacteria. He did find two such substances, tyrocidin and gramicidin, which were potent antibacterial agents but which unfortunately were too toxic to be used parenterally in the human host. This experience was typical. Many screening programs in the past decade have led to the isolation of innumerable antibiotic-producing organisms but among the substances found only a few were sufficiently selectively toxic to be used in human beings. In the early 1940's, spurred partly by the need for antibacterial agents in World War II, Florey and Chain undertook the isolation of penicillin (see Florey 1949). The birth of modern chemotherapy came when this purified substance was injected into experimental animals and found not only to cure infections but also to possess incredibly low toxicity for animals. This fact ushered in an intense search for other antibacterial agents of low toxicity and led in rapid succession to the isolation of streptomycin, chloramphenicol, the tetracyclines and a whole host of other antibiotics.

The thread which runs through this brief history is the two words, selective toxicity. They imply that the biochemical processes of bacteria are in some way different from those of animal cells and that advantage of this difference can be taken in chemotherapy. All cells are of course fundamentally similar in their chemical reactions, utilizing nucleic acids as the carriers and messengers of ge-

\* Prontosil is an azo dye and is broken down in the animal organism to p-aminobenzenesulfonamide (sulfanilamide). It is the sulfonamide, not the dye, which is in fact the antibacterial agent.



variably containing 2 amino sugars (acetyl glucosamine and a lactic acid ether of acetylglucosamine called acetylmuramic acid) and 4 amino acids (D alanine L alanine D glutamic acid and either L lysine or meso  $\alpha$ - $\epsilon$ -diaminopimelic acid). These are the constituents of the basal layer of the wall a polymer containing a polysaccharide and a highly cross linked peptide (Fig 1) (see Strominger 1962) \* The two sugars alternate in the polysaccharide and in *S aureus* are linked by  $\beta$  1 4 bonds. In some species the N acetylmuramic acid residues are also O acetylated i.e. N O diacetylmuramic acid is present. Possibly other differences between species occur in the polysaccharide. However the whole structure has not yet been completely elucidated in one species and only scanty data on comparative biochemistry are available. Similarly no full study of the cross linked peptide has been published but the available data indicate that there are gross differences in the nature of the cross links among species. N acetylmuramic acid is a unique component of bacteria and has been found in no other type of cell. Indeed its presence in *Streptomyces* has been used as a basis for classifying these organisms as true bacteria. Diaminopimelic acid and the D amino acids are also unusual constituents of bacterial cells.

The cell wall is essential for the integrity of most microbial cells in their normal environment. Egg white lysozyme brings about lysis by catalyzing hydrolysis of the cell wall polysaccharide resulting in solubilization of the entire wall. However lysis of bacterial cells by egg white lysozyme can be prevented if treatment with the enzyme is carried out in hypertonic broths (Weibull 1953). Under these conditions the cells are converted to spherical forms lacking cell walls and called protoplasts. Bacteria have unusually high internal osmotic pressures estimated to be equivalent to 5 to 20 atmospheres due to the fact that they concentrate nutrients

\* In addition to the polysaccharide and the peptide which are components of the glycopeptide all bacteria contain additional wall components referred to as special structure. These components are immunologically active in higher animals as for example the teichoic acid of *S aureus* or the group carbohydrate of *S hemolyticus* or the lipopolysaccharide of *E coli*.

against an osmotic gradient. The hypertonic solutions are needed to counterbalance this osmotic pressure. If protoplasts with their fragile limiting cytoplasmic membranes are placed in media of ordinary tonicity they explode.

Penicillin can also induce this evolution of bizarre or spherical forms in bacteria (Duguid 1945 Lederberg 1956) resulting in lysis if the treatment is carried out in ordinary media. However in hypertonic broth the spherical forms are stabilized (Lederberg 1956) just as are those which are produced under the action of lysozyme. If the penicillin is washed out of the culture these organisms grow and revert to their normal form. In one species, growth and cell division occur as a spheroplast in the presence of penicillin (Lark 1958). These observations indicate that penicillin has no deleterious effect and certainly no lethal effect on that portion of the organism internal to the cell wall and they led to the hypothesis that penicillin interferes either with the maintenance or the integrity of the cell wall.

Independently of this line of investigation it was found that a uridine nucleotide containing an unusual activated sugar fragment accumulated in *S aureus* after treatment with penicillin (Park 1952 Strominger 1957). The fragment which this nucleotide contained was an acetylmuramyl peptide similar in structure to a part of the cell wall. These observations suggested that the accumulated nucleotide was a biosynthetic precursor of the cell wall and therefore led also to the hypothesis that penicillin was a selective inhibitor of bacterial cell wall synthesis thereby inducing nucleotide accumulation (Park and Strominger 1957 Strominger *et al* 1959).

Isotopic experiments carried out in a number of laboratories have shown that penicillin does in fact inhibit cell wall synthesis while permitting protein and nucleic acid synthesis for example to go on at normal rates thus demonstrating directly its selectivity as an inhibitor of cell wall synthesis (Gale *et al* 1958 Handcock and Park 1958 Mandelstam and Rogers 1959 Nathenson and Strominger 1961). Even in *E coli* which is relatively resistant to penicillin a growth inhibitory concentration of the antibiotic selectively

of wall synthesis need not be its primary mode of action D-cycloserine (Ciak and Hahn, 1959 Strominger *et al* 1959) and gentian violet inhibit at earlier points and lead to the accumulation of earlier precursors

The penultimate reactions in cell wall synthesis those that lead to the utilization of the nucleotide intermediates for polymer (i.e. cell wall) synthesis are only beginning to be understood and only a few of the reactions which must be involved have been identified It seems unlikely that each of the five antibiotics which inhibits at this penultimate stage does so in precisely the same manner Those five compounds represent several different types of structure and among them only penicillin and bacitracin show cross resistance The most recent information suggests that ristocetins and vancomycin directly inhibit the transfer reaction involving the uridine nucleotide (Anderson and Meadow 1964 Meadow *et al* 1964) The others could interfere with other aspects of polymer synthesis e.g. synthesis of the acceptor (which the uridine nucleotide transglycosylase requires) with access of substrate to this acceptor with formation of the complex peptide cross bridge or even with the integrity or replication of a cell wall synthesizing particle Studies of models have suggested that penicillin may be an analogue of acetylmuramic acid (Collins and Richmond 1962) but experimental proof of this idea is still lacking

D-cycloserine inhibits at an earlier point in the cycle (Fig 3) leading to the accumulation of a uridine nucleotide which lacks two D alanine residues This antibiotic is a competitive antagonist of the utilization of D alanine for cell wall synthesis In whole cells nucleotide accumulation induced by D-cycloserine is reversed by D alanine In vitro two enzymatic reactions for which D alanine is a substrate are competitively inhibited alanine racemase and D alanyl D alanine synthetase (Strominger *et al* 1960 Neuhaus and Lynch 1964)

1  $L$  alanine  $\rightleftharpoons$  D alanine (alanine racemase)

2  $2$  D alanine + ATP  $\rightarrow$  D alanyl D alanine + ADP +  $P_i$  (D alanyl D alanine synthetase)

The antibiotic is a structural analogue of the

substrate (Fig 4) It is bound to the inhibited enzymes about 100 times as efficiently as their natural substrate D alanine Presumably the ring present in the antibiotic but absent in the substrate fixes the antibiotic in one configuration and by restricting molecular rotation in this manner either makes it relatively difficult for the molecule to come off the enzyme surface or relatively easy for it to go on the enzyme surface One of the enzymes which is inhibited alanine racemase contains pyridoxal phosphate as a coenzyme D-cycloserine is known to react with pyridoxal phosphate in a complex manner and L-cycloserine (which does not inhibit cell wall synthesis) will inhibit some reactions of L alanine involving pyridoxal phosphate enzymes The use of D-cycloserine in chemotherapy is limited by a severe central nervous system toxicity in man This toxicity could be due to a reaction with pyridoxal phosphate in nervous tissue

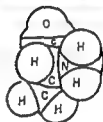
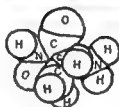
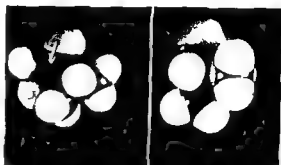
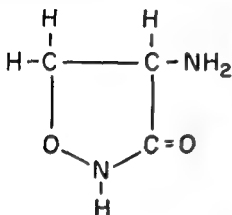
The large viruses such as meningopneumonia and psittacosis are inhibited by both cycloserine and penicillin Cycloserine inhibition is reversed by D alanine (Moulder *et al* 1963) These viruses have cell walls containing acetylmuramic acid and they may be defective bacteria rather than true viruses

The discovery that a number of antibacterial agents are selective inhibitors of cell wall synthesis has opened a whole new area of microbial physiology to exploration These substances have provided both the conceptual background and the tools with which to obtain intermediates needed for the study of the structure and the biosynthesis of bacterial cell walls As more information is obtained perhaps it may be possible to design more effective inhibitors of cell wall synthesis or to find other ways of bringing about the death of bacterial cells as a consequence of the loss of integrity of the cell wall

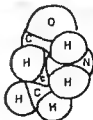
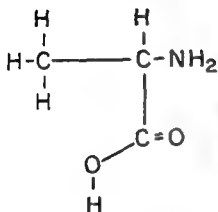
#### AGENTS THAT AFFECT THE INTEGRITY OR THE FUNCTION OF THE CELL MEMBRANE

Although the cell wall is a unique component of the outer surface of cells of plants and bacteria the cytoplasm of all living cells is bounded by a limiting cell membrane This

1963) and vancomycin (Jordan 1961 Reynolds, 1961) all inhibit at a late stage, leading to the accumulation of the most complex of the known precursors Novobiocin also inhibits at this late stage (Strominger and Threnn 1959), but its effect is not so selective as that of the other substances (Brock 1962 Wishnow *et al* 1964) and inhibition



D-cycloserine



D-alanine

FIG 4 Structures (left) and molecular models (right) of D alanine and D cycloserine (Strominger J L Biosynthesis of bacterial cell walls in Gunsalus I C and Stanier R Y (eds) The Bacteria vol 3 New York Acad Press pp 413-470)

of wall synthesis need not be its primary mode of action. D-cycloserine (Ciak and Hahn 1959; Strominger *et al* 1959) and gentian violet inhibit at earlier points and lead to the accumulation of earlier precursors.

The penultimate reactions in cell wall synthesis—those that lead to the utilization of the nucleotide intermediates for polymer (i.e. cell wall) synthesis—are only beginning to be understood, and only a few of the reactions which must be involved have been identified. It seems unlikely that each of the five antibiotics which inhibits at this penultimate stage does so in precisely the same manner. These five compounds represent several different types of structure, and among them only penicillin and bacitracin show cross resistance. The most recent information suggests that ristocetins and vancomycin directly inhibit the transfer reaction involving the uridine nucleotide (Anderson and Meadow 1964; Meadow *et al* 1964). The others could interfere with other aspects of polymer synthesis, e.g. synthesis of the acceptor (which the uridine nucleotide transglycosylase requires) with access of substrate to this acceptor with formation of the complex peptide cross bridge or even with the integrity or replication of a cell wall synthesizing particle. Studies of models have suggested that penicillin may be an analogue of acetylmuramic acid (Collins and Richmond 1962), but experimental proof of this idea is still lacking.

D-cycloserine inhibits at an earlier point in the cycle (Fig. 3) leading to the accumulation of a uridine nucleotide which lacks two D-alanine residues. This antibiotic is a competitive antagonist of the utilization of D-alanine for cell wall synthesis. In whole cells, nucleotide accumulation induced by D-cycloserine is reversed by D-alanine. In vitro, two enzymatic reactions for which D-alanine is a substrate are competitively inhibited: alanine racemase and D-alanyl-D-alanine synthetase (Strominger *et al* 1960; Neuhaus and Lynch 1964).

1.  $\text{L-alanine} \rightleftharpoons \text{D-alanine}$  (alanine racemase)

2.  $2 \text{ D-alanine} + \text{ATP} \rightarrow \text{D-alanyl-D-alanine} + \text{ADP} + \text{P}_i$  (D-alanyl-D-alanine synthetase)

The antibiotic is a structural analogue of the

substrate (Fig. 4). It is bound to the inhibited enzymes about 100 times as efficiently as their natural substrate, D-alanine. Presumably the ring present in the antibiotic but absent in the substrate fixes the antibiotic in one configuration and by restricting molecular rotation in this manner either makes it relatively difficult for the molecule to come off the enzyme surface or relatively easy for it to go on the enzyme surface. One of the enzymes which is inhibited, alanine racemase, contains pyridoxal phosphate as a coenzyme. D-cycloserine is known to react with pyridoxal phosphate in a complex manner, and L-cycloserine (which does not inhibit cell wall synthesis) will inhibit some reactions of L-alanine involving pyridoxal phosphate enzymes. The use of D-cycloserine in chemotherapy is limited by a severe central nervous system toxicity in man. This toxicity could be due to a reaction with pyridoxal phosphate in nervous tissue.

The large viruses, such as meningopneumonitis and psittacosis, are inhibited by both cycloserine and penicillin. Cycloserine inhibition is reversed by D-alanine (Moulder *et al* 1963). These viruses have cell walls containing acetylmuramic acid, and they may be defective bacteria rather than true viruses.

The discovery that a number of antibacterial agents are selective inhibitors of cell wall synthesis has opened a whole new area of microbial physiology to exploration. These substances have provided both the conceptual background and the tools with which to obtain intermediates needed for the study of the structure and the biosynthesis of bacterial cell walls. As more information is obtained, perhaps it may be possible to design more effective inhibitors of cell wall synthesis or to find other ways of bringing about the death of bacterial cells as a consequence of the loss of integrity of the cell wall.

#### AGENTS THAT AFFECT THE INTEGRITY OR THE FUNCTION OF THE CELL MEMBRANE

Although the cell wall is a unique component of the outer surface of cells of plants and bacteria, the cytoplasm of all living cells is bounded by a limiting cell membrane. This

structure is the permeability barrier and has the function of controlling the internal composition of the cell. Through it must pass all of the nutrients which are used to form cellular compounds and the ions which are contained in the cellular environment. It acts as a selective membrane to organic molecules and to inorganic ions. Some organic molecules are excluded, others are concentrated by specific energy dependent mechanisms to which the name permeases has been applied. Inorganic ions are also exchanged selectively so that the internal composition of the cell may be quite different from the composition of the extracellular fluid. It is not surprising therefore that this important external membrane is a site of attack for many cytotoxic agents. That some of these agents are more toxic for one type of cell than for another reveals another aspect of biochemical individuality among cells and permits some of these agents to be used for chemotherapeutic purposes.

The immediate onset of leakage of cellular

constituents is the consequence of membrane damage and provides a simple method for measuring the effects of these antibacterial agents which have such an action. Depending on the extent of damage, ions, small organic molecules such as purine and pyrimidine nucleotides (which absorb at  $260\text{ m}\mu$ ), amino acids and phosphate esters and even larger molecules such as protein may escape from the cell with consequent impairment of a large number of cellular metabolic activities. The loss of these constituents is most easily followed by the loss of material absorbing at  $260\text{ m}\mu$ .

#### POLYPEPTIDE ANTIBIOTICS

The cationic detergents (e.g. Zephiran) are the simplest examples of agents which bring about the death of bacterial cells by disrupting the function of the cell membrane. A number of highly toxic polypeptide antibiotics also exert their bactericidal action through this mechanism (Fig. 5). These include the cyclic polypeptides tyrocidin



FIG. 5 Effects of polymyxin on *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. (1) Normal cells. (2) Cells treated with  $25\text{ }\mu\text{g/ml}$  of polymyxin. This concentration causes maximum release of  $260\text{ m}\mu$  absorbing material from the cells. (3) Cell treated with  $500\text{ }\mu\text{g/ml}$  of polymyxin (Newton, *J. Gen. Microbiol.* 9:54).

gramicidin polymyxins and colistin (Hotchkiss 1946 Newton 1956 Newton 1958 Chapman 1962) However some selectivity exists in their action since it is apparent that these agents can be used on superficial infections and with great caution parenterally Renal damage is a common toxic consequence but it is apparent that, although the therapeutic margin is narrow massive necrosis of animal cells does not occur at concentrations which may be bactericidal Similarly some microorganisms are not sensitive to the effects of these agents and resistant strains of previously sensitive organisms have been isolated The structure of cell membranes whether in microorganisms or in higher forms of life is virtually unknown and further information about the mechanism by which these agents disorganize the function of cell membranes must await more detailed knowledge of the structure and the function of these membranes

It may be pointed out that inhibition of cell wall synthesis in some cases may be only a special example of limited membrane damage since the cell membrane of bacteria is believed to contain the enzymes necessary for synthesis of the cell wall Although polymyxin is generally considered to disrupt membrane function in a gross manner several observations have suggested that under some circumstances it may have a more limited action on the membrane Thus *Rhodospirillum rubrum* grows as bacilli rather than in the spirillar form at low concentrations of polymyxin and at higher concentrations protoplasts are formed (Tuttle and Gest 1959) In *Neisseria catarrhalis* pretreatment with polymyxin renders the cells sensitive to lysozyme (Warren *et al* 1957) In both cases it may be inferred that polymyxin may be acting in a limited manner on one particular aspect of membrane function synthesis of the cell wall

#### POLYENE ANTIFUNGAL ANTIBIOTICS

A particularly interesting example of the selectivity of some agents for cell membrane damage is the recent demonstration that the polyene antifungal antibiotics disturb the function of the fungal cell membrane Fungi are relatively insensitive to polymyxin and tyrocidin and bacteria are insensitive to the

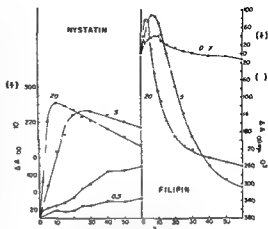


FIG 6 Shrinkage and lysis of protoplasts of *Neurospora crassa* induced by the polyene antibiotics nystatin and filipin Shrinkage (observed as an absorbancy increase) precedes lysis (absorbancy decrease) Lysis occurs more rapidly with filipin than with nystatin (Kinsky S C J Bact 83 351)

polyene antibiotics The effect of the polyene antibiotics on permeability was observed simultaneously in two different laboratories through two different experimental approaches On the one hand studies of the metabolism of pathogenic yeasts had shown that the polyenes resulted in a severe loss of respiratory metabolism which was eventually traced to the leakage of ions and essential cofactors from the cells into the medium (Mann *et al* 1961) On the other hand studies of *Neurospora crassa* resulted in the finding that mycelial mats obtained from organisms treated with the polyenes had lost considerable weight compared with untreated controls (Kinsky 1961 1964) The weight loss was due to massive loss of intracellular constituents An elegant demonstration of the effect of polyene antibiotics is the measurement of rapid efflux of potassium from *N crassa* accompanied by diminution of the membrane potential recorded with intracellular electrodes (Slayman and Slayman 1962 Slayman 1963 Slayman and Tatum 1964)

These effects of the polyene antibiotics are due to interaction of the antibiotic with a sterol ergosterol which is present in the fungal cell membrane (Kinsky 1962a)



Bacteria do not contain sterols in their cell membranes and hence once more, an aspect of cellular individuality is seen to be the basis of selective toxicity. That the lack of effect of polyenes on bacteria is due to the absence of sterols in the membrane rather than to some protective effect of the cell wall is shown by the fact that bacterial protoplasts are also insensitive to these agents. By contrast protoplasts of *N. crassa* are lysed by the polyenes (Kinsky 1962b) (Fig 6).

The requirement of the presence of membrane sterols for action of polyene antibiotics may also explain some aspects of the toxicity of these agents. Hemolytic anemia may be a consequence of therapy with these agents. The membranes of red cells contain a sterol cholesterol and red cells are lysed by low concentrations of the polyenes in a manner similar to the lysis of protoplasts of *N. crassa* (Kinsky *et al.* 1962). The renal toxicity of polyene antibiotics may eventually also be traced to interaction with the sterols which are present in the membranes of animal cells.

The function of sterols in membranes is unknown. It is an explanation of the ability of bacteria to exist without them. Virtually nothing is known about the structure of cell membranes and the statement that the cyclic peptides bring about the disorganization of the lipoprotein of the membrane is simply a restatement of our ignorance of membrane structure. This field is certain to be an important and exciting one in the future and the antibiotics which affect membrane function may be important probes in these studies.

## INHIBITORS OF PROTEIN SYNTHESIS

Chloramphenicol, puromycin, streptomycin, tetracyclines and erythromycin are all believed to act at least in part through inhibition of protein biosynthesis. The current (June 1964) concepts of protein biosynthesis outlined here are undergoing almost constant revision.

The information for protein sequence is contained in DNA. This information is transcribed to messenger RNA (mRNA) through DNA-dependent RNA polymerase. The machinery for transcribing this genetic mes-

sage from mRNA to protein is the ribosome or an aggregate of ribosomes termed polysomes held together by a strand of mRNA. The ribosomes are defined as a class of intracellular particles containing protein and RNA which in the *E. coli* system at least sediment in buffered sucrose gradients containing 0.01 M  $MgCl_2$  with a characteristic velocity and are termed 70s particles. At lower  $Mg^{++}$  ( $10^{-4}$  M), each of these particles dissociates into a 30s and a 50s subunit and any mRNA (8-14s) which has been bound is released. At still lower  $Mg^{++}$  or in the absence of  $Mg^{++}$ , further dissociation to particles smaller than 23s occurs. The mRNA contains the information for protein biosynthesis in the form of a sequence of nucleotide triplets, each triplet (or codon) coding for a particular amino acid. Thus 300 nucleotides on an mRNA molecule would contain information for the sequence of a protein of 100 amino acids. This sequence of nucleotides must be preceded and followed by periods or commas in the code which signal the beginning or the end of a new protein molecule. Perhaps each ribosome found in the mRNA polysome complex is concerned with the synthesis of a particular protein coded in one part of the RNA molecule.

The amino acids are activated for peptide bond synthesis by the formation of aminoacyl-sRNA. ATP is required for this synthesis and is split in the reaction into AMP and PP. Each sRNA molecule is specific for a given amino acid but several different specific sRNA molecules may occur for each amino acid. The nonphosphorylated end of all sRNA molecules ends in adenosine and the activated amino acid is esterified to the 3-hydroxyl of the terminal adenosine. In addition to components already mentioned, two other protein fractions and GTP are required for protein biosynthesis.

One present scheme visualizes each ribosome as containing 2 sites for attachment of aminoacyl-sRNA on the 50s subunit: the initial attachment at site A being determined by the codon of the mRNA molecule in position on the 30s subunit at that moment. One supernatant protein factor and GTP would be required for the translocation of this aminoacyl-sRNA (perhaps accompanied

by movement of the mRNA molecule along the ribosome) to a second site. Then a second sRNA molecule would be bound to the ribosome at the first site and the amino acid at site B now would be transferred from sRNA<sub>1</sub> to the free amino group of amino acyl sRNA at site A with formation of dipeptidyl sRNA catalyzed by the second required supernatant protein fraction. Thus by repeating this cycle the protein would be synthesized starting from its amino end (which would always remain free). Finally at some comma in the code on the mRNA the protein molecule would be released from the last sRNA molecule (by a mechanism not yet understood) with formation of a soluble protein.

#### CHLORAMPHENICOL

In 1953 it was found that chloramphenicol inhibited the incorporation of amino acids into proteins of *S. aureus* cells while permitting the synthesis of nucleic acids (Gale and Folkes 1953). In fact both RNA and DNA synthesis proceeded at normal rates (Wisseman *et al.* 1954) and under some circumstances RNA synthesis was accelerated (Fig 7). Later it was found that the synthesis of cell wall and a variety of other metabolic processes were unaffected by the antibiotic. This striking selectivity of action has provided a remarkable tool with which the processes of nucleic acid synthesis and protein synthesis could be dissociated and has also provided a simple means of distinguishing incorporation of amino acids into cell wall (which is insensitive to chloramphenicol) from incorporation into protein. Despite the fact that this substance has been used and studied for over a decade perhaps more extensively than any other antibiotic its precise mode of action remains speculative.

In an early observation of considerable importance the accumulation of RNA in the presence of the antibiotic was observed (Wisseman *et al.* 1954). This so-called chloramphenicol RNA was believed by many to be an abnormal RNA since after removal of chloramphenicol from inhibited cells it was broken down before cell growth commenced again. Its nature has been the subject of extensive investigation and it

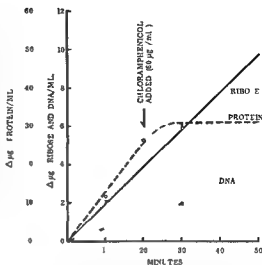


Fig 7 Effect of chloramphenicol on protein RNA and DNA synthesis in *E. coli* (Wisseman *et al.* J Bact 67 662)

seems most likely at the present time that it represents a mixture of mRNA and of RNA containing ribosomal particles deficient in protein (Kurland *et al.* 1962 Hahn and Wolfe 1961 Midgely and McCarthy 1962 Aronson and Spiegelman 1961). Thus 18s and 25s particles are obtained from chloramphenicol treated cells rather than the 30s and the 50s particles found in normal cells. However the RNA obtained from these particles (i.e. ribosomal RNA) appears to be the same 16s and 23s RNA obtained from normal cells. These protein poor ribosomal particles may be precursors of the normal particles and their occurrence may be a secondary reflection of a general depression of protein biosynthesis. If indeed mRNA accumulates in chloramphenicol treated cells it is a remarkable fact since the instability or rapid turnover of bacterial mRNA is one of the features which distinguishes protein biosynthesis in bacteria from the same process in animals. Recent experiments have suggested that the accumulated RNA is not abnormal since if the treated cells are placed in an enriched medium which permits immediate protein biosynthesis accumulated RNA does not break down (Aronson and Spiegelman 1961).

Chloramphenicol appears to dissociate

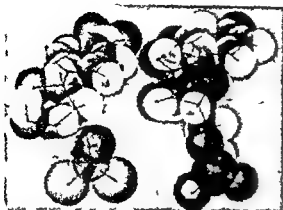


FIG 8 Molecular models of chloramphenicol (left) and uridylic acid (right) (Modified from Jardetzky 1963)

RNA synthesis from its normal control. Normally RNA synthesis requires concomitant protein synthesis (Gros and Gros 1958; Pardee and Prestidge 1956). For example if an amino acid auxotroph is deprived of its required amino acid RNA synthesis ceases. The addition of chloramphenicol under these circumstances has been observed to restore RNA synthesis and under some circumstances the rate of RNA synthesis may be greater than that which occurs normally (Aronson and Spiegelman 1962; Kurland and Maaløe 1962). An explanation of the mechanism of this effect of chloramphenicol is not now available.

In cell free systems of bacterial origin chloramphenicol interferes with the incorporation of amino acids into protein. However it does not interfere with the activation process i.e. with the formation of amino acyl-sRNA and its locus of action lies somewhere in the complex reaction sequence from amino acyl-sRNA to protein on the ribosomal particle (Nathans and Lipmann 1961; Rendi and Ochoa 1962). The best current hypothesis is that this substance prevents attachment of mRNA to ribosomes. It has been suggested from nuclear magnetic resonance studies that chloramphenicol is an analogue of uridylic acid (Fig 8) (Jardetzky 1963) and it has been found recently that chloramphenicol inhibits attachment of poly-uridylic acid to ribosomes (Jardetzky and Julian 1964). However  $C^{14}$ -chloramphenicol is bound to the 50s component of the 70s aggregate (Vasquez, 1964) while the

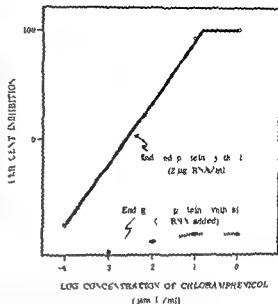


FIG 9 Chloramphenicol inhibition of ribosomal protein synthesis (rabbit reticulocyte system) induced by added mRNA. Protein synthesis occurring without added mRNA and due to endogenous mRNA was not significantly inhibited by chloramphenicol. In contrast the additional protein synthesis induced by added mRNA was completely inhibited by chloramphenicol (Weisberger A S *et al* J Exp Med 120 161).

30s component is the site of attachment of polyuridylic acid and other mRNA molecules. These facts remain to be reconciled.

If the assumption that chloramphenicol is a uridylic acid analogue is correct this is indeed remarkable since its close chemical relation to phenylalanine and the fact that it inhibited protein synthesis had led earlier to the natural supposition that it was an amino acid analogue. Indeed its chemical structure is extremely simple and it is the only antibiotic for which chemical synthesis is preferred to fermentation in commercial production.

An explanation of the selective toxicity of chloramphenicol for bacteria as compared with animals (or fungi) is not now available. It seems clear that a difference in permeability to chloramphenicol of animal and bacterial cells is not the explanation. A cell free protein synthesizing system from rabbit reticulocytes is insensitive to the antibiotic (von

Ehrenstein and Lipmann 1961) and more over chloramphenicol is believed to kill bacteria which are located within animal cells

The basis of selective toxicity may lie in a difference of some detail of the bacterial and the animal protein synthesizing mechanisms. The difference in stability or turnover of mRNA previously referred to is the only such difference now known. Apparently chloramphenicol is far more effective in inhibiting the protein synthesis stimulated by added mRNA (e.g. in the form of synthetic polynucleotides) than it is in inhibiting that due to endogenous mRNA already attached to the ribosomes (Fig. 9) (Weisberger *et al.* 1964a, Weisberger and Wolfe 1964). Therefore the difference in sensitivity of animal and bacterial systems to chloramphenicol both *in vivo* and *in vitro* could lie in a difference in stability of attachment to or turnover on ribosomes of mRNA. Chloramphenicol would thus inhibit only the attachment and the function of new mRNA in bacteria but would have no influence on the function of stably attached mRNA in animal cells.

Some data to support this concept have been reported. Antibody synthesis must first involve the synthesis and the attachment of new mRNA and it has been observed that formation of antibody in lymph node cultures is strongly inhibited by chloramphenicol (Ambrose and Coons 1963). In treatment

of infections in man with chloramphenicol one wonders whether a normal antibody response to infection would occur. Similarly chloramphenicol has prolonged skin homograft survival presumably due to inhibition of new antibody synthesis (Weisberger *et al.* 1964b) and one wonders whether chloramphenicol might find some use in modification of the immune response. Bone marrow cells in tissue culture exhibited a marked reduction in protein synthesis after exposure to chloramphenicol for 4 to 6 days (Djordjevic and Szybalski 1960). Perhaps this time interval is required for displacement of mRNA from the ribosomes or perhaps it reflects the normal slow turnover of mammalian mRNA.

Chloramphenicol is a remarkably good agent for the treatment of a number of infections and in some cases appears to be superior to other antibiotics, e.g. in salmonella infections. It is unfortunate therefore that toxicity to bone marrow cells which apparently occurs with a very low incidence but high mortality limits its general usefulness (Council on Drugs 1960). This toxicity may be related to the effects on protein synthesis described above although it is difficult at present to describe irreversible marrow aplasia in these terms. However it seems likely that immature reticulocytes would be precisely the type of cell which

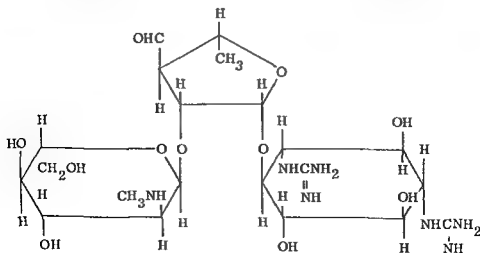


FIG. 10 Streptomycin

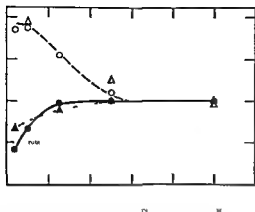


FIG 11 Effect of the streptomycin concentration in the medium on cellular composition of a dependent strain of *E. coli* (Spotts C R and Stanier R Y Nature 192 633)

would be most sensitive to chloramphenicol. The maturation of reticulocytes might involve the stimulation of mRNA formation by hormonal or other means thus leading to hemoglobin synthesis as one aspect of maturation. It is precisely in this kind of situation the formation of new mRNA and its attachment to ribosomes that chloramphenicol might be expected to have its greatest effect on animal cells.

### STREPTOMYCIN

The mode of action of streptomycin has been the subject of more controversy in the past few years than has that of any other antibiotic. It has been proposed that it (1) induces a permeability defect in bacteria (Anand and Davis 1960), (2) induces synthesis of a specific streptomycin permease (Hurwitz 1964) and (3) is an inhibitor of protein synthesis (Spotts and Stanier 1961). The reader is referred to other reviews for a critical review of these various proposals. The effects of streptomycin on protein synthesis will be described here because they appear to be the area of greatest current interest.

Streptomycin was discovered as the consequence of a systematic search for new antibiotics soon after the importance of penicillin in chemotherapy became apparent. Chemically it is composed of a base streptidine (containing 2 guanido groups) and 2

glycosidically linked sugars streptose and N-methyl-L-glucosamine (Fig 10). Streptose is a branched deoxypentose containing a C-formyl group. Reduction of the formyl group yields dihydrostreptomycin which has a similar antibacterial spectrum. The strongly basic character of these antibiotics is presumably important in their antibacterial activity. In early work low potency of some preparations was observed and was due to the presence of an additional fermentation product, mannosidostreptomycin. Thus the addition of mannose to the streptomycin molecule severely reduces the antibacterial activity.

Activity of this group of substances is mainly directed against some gram-negative bacteria and mycobacteria but some gram-positive organisms are frequently susceptible also. So far no one has attempted to explain differences in susceptibility in terms of proposed mechanisms of action.

Drug resistance and drug dependence occur rapidly after exposure to streptomycin and have been observed both *in vitro* and *in vivo* and any explanation of the mode of action of streptomycin must take account of the fact that resistance, dependence, and sensitivity appear to be multiple alleles of a single genetic locus. Indeed a ribosomal locus of streptomycin action was first proposed on the basis of consideration of these facts (Spotts and Stanier 1961).

Both streptomycin and dihydrostreptomycin have been shown to inhibit protein synthesis including induced enzyme formation (Fitzgerald *et al* 1948) in intact bacteria and amino acid incorporation in reconstructed systems *in vitro* at extremely low concentrations (Flaks *et al* 1962; Speyer *et al* 1962). In streptomycin-dependent bacteria, deprivation of streptomycin leads to an increase in the amount of RNA per cell and a decrease in protein and DNA (Fig 11). This phenomenon and the accumulation of RNA in streptomycin-sensitive bacteria (Dubin *et al* 1963; Dubin 1964; Stern and Cohen 1964) recall similar phenomena observed in chloramphenicol-treated bacteria.

As in the case of chloramphenicol, streptomycin has no effect on amino acid activation but interferes with the ribosomal phase

of protein synthesis. For example the poly uridylic acid stimulated incorporation of phenylalanine is strikingly inhibited (Fig 12) (Flaks *et al* 1962). Streptomycin becomes attached to ribosomes in sensitive cells. Although it had been postulated that this attachment would prevent the subsequent attachment of mRNA (Spotts and Stanier 1961) it has been found that mRNA is bound even in the presence of streptomycin. The resulting complex is functionally inactive (Davies 1964 Cox *et al* 1964). If mRNA (e.g. polyuridylic acid) is added to ribosomes before streptomycin the effect of the antibiotic is greatly reduced. Incorporation due to endogenous mRNA is also not affected (Fig 12). As indicated above streptomycin is a polyanion and it may attach in the same manner or in place of  $Mg^{++}$  or polyamines. Streptomycin will bind tightly to several acidic proteins (Brock 1964) as well as to polynucleotides (Cohen 1946) and either an acidic ribosomal protein or ribosomal RNA could be the site of its attachment.

The site of streptomycin resistance is the 30s ribosome (Davies 1964 Cox *et al* 1964). Ribosomes (70s) from sensitive and resistant cells were each dissociated into 30s and 50s subunits in low  $Mg^{++}$  and then 70s ribosomes were reconstituted using various combinations of 30s and 50s ribosomes from the sensitive and the resistant cells. A 70s ribosome containing a 30s subunit from a resistant cell was always resistant to streptomycin while sensitivity or resistance was indifferent to the origin of the 50s subunit. Thus the 70s ribosome composed of 30s (sensitive) plus 50s (resistant) subunits was sensitive to streptomycin while the ribosome composed of 30s (resistant) plus 50s (sensitive) subunits was resistant. The 30s subunit of ribosomes obtained from streptomycin-dependent strains was similarly resistant to inhibition by the drug but no dependence of these ribosomes on streptomycin could be demonstrated (Cox *et al* 1964). However it seems likely that streptomycin would have become tightly attached to these ribosomes during growth in the presence of the drug.

The 30s subunit is the site of attachment of mRNA. It has not been directly shown

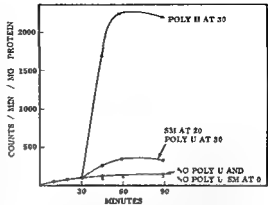


FIG 12 Effect of streptomycin (SM) on polyuridylic acid (poly U) stimulated incorporation of phenylalanine and/or incorporation due to endogenous mRNA (no poly U added) (Flaks J G *et al* Biochem Biophys Res Comm 7 385)

that streptomycin is bound to this subunit nor has the competition for binding between streptomycin and chloramphenicol been studied. However it will be recalled that the 50s subunit is the site of chloramphenicol binding.

It is apparent therefore that streptomycin interferes not with the attachment but with the function of mRNA. Even more remarkable is the fact that this functional impairment can be manifested as misreading (Davies *et al* 1964). Thus in the poly uridylic acid stimulated synthesis of phenylalanine addition of streptomycin can lead to the incorporation of isoleucine. Indeed variation of  $Mg^{++}$  concentration can also lead to isoleucine incorporation in the absence of streptomycin although to a lesser extent. Once again these observations suggest a resemblance between streptomycin binding and  $Mg^{++}$  binding. Other amino glycoside antibiotics (kannamycin, neomycin B and C) have effects similar to streptomycin but remarkably they alter the code words in different ways leading to stimulation of incorporation of other amino acids. Evidence from mutants suggests that kannamycin is bound to ribosomes differently from streptomycin (Tanaka *et al* 1964). Although ribosomes from a streptomycin resistant mutant were resistant to streptomycin

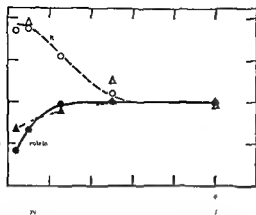


FIG 11 Effect of the streptomycin concentration in the medium on cellular composition of a dependent strain of *E. coli* (Spotts C R and Stanier R Y Nature 192 633)

would be most sensitive to chloramphenicol. The maturation of reticulocytes might involve the stimulation of mRNA formation by hormonal or other means thus leading to hemoglobin synthesis as one aspect of maturation. It is precisely in this kind of situation the formation of new mRNA and its attachment to ribosomes that chloramphenicol might be expected to have its greatest effect on animal cells.

### STREPTOMYCIN

The mode of action of streptomycin has been the subject of more controversy in the past few years than has that of any other antibiotic. It has been proposed that it (1) induces a permeability defect in bacteria (Anand and Davis 1960) (2) induces synthesis of a specific streptomycin permease (Hurwitz 1964) and (3) is an inhibitor of protein synthesis (Spotts and Stanier 1961). The reader is referred to other reviews for a critical review of these various proposals. The effects of streptomycin on protein synthesis will be described here because they appear to be the area of greatest current interest.

Streptomycin was discovered as the consequence of a systematic search for new antibiotics soon after the importance of penicillin in chemotherapy became apparent. Chemically it is composed of a base streptidine (containing 2 guanido groups) and 2

glycosidically linked sugars streptose and N methyl L glucosamine (Fig 10). Streptose is a branched deoxypentose containing a C formyl group. Reduction of the formyl group yields dihydrostreptomycin which has a similar antibacterial spectrum. The strongly basic character of these antibiotics is presumably important in their antibacterial activity. In early work low potency of some preparations was observed and was due to the presence of an additional fermentation product mannosidostreptomycin. Thus the addition of mannose to the streptomycin molecule severely reduces the antibacterial activity.

Activity of this group of substances is mainly directed against some gram negative bacteria and mycobacteria but some gram positive organisms are frequently susceptible also. So far no one has attempted to explain differences in susceptibility in terms of proposed mechanisms of action.

Drug resistance and drug dependence occur rapidly after exposure to streptomycin and have been observed both *in vitro* and *in vivo* and any explanation of the mode of action of streptomycin must take account of the fact that resistance dependence and sensitivity appear to be multiple alleles of a single genetic locus. Indeed a ribosomal locus of streptomycin action was first proposed on the basis of consideration of these facts (Spotts and Stanier 1961).

Both streptomycin and dihydrostreptomycin have been shown to inhibit protein synthesis including induced enzyme formation (Fitzgerald *et al* 1948) in intact bacteria and amino acid incorporation in reconstructed systems *in vitro* at extremely low concentrations (Flaks *et al* 1962; Speyer *et al* 1962). In streptomycin-dependent bacteria deprivation of streptomycin leads to an increase in the amount of RNA per cell and a decrease in protein and DNA (Fig 11). This phenomenon and the accumulation of RNA in streptomycin sensitive bacteria (Dubin *et al* 1963; Dubin 1964; Stern and Cohen 1964) recall similar phenomena observed in chloramphenicol treated bacteria.

As in the case of chloramphenicol streptomycin has no effect on amino acid activation but interferes with the ribosomal phase

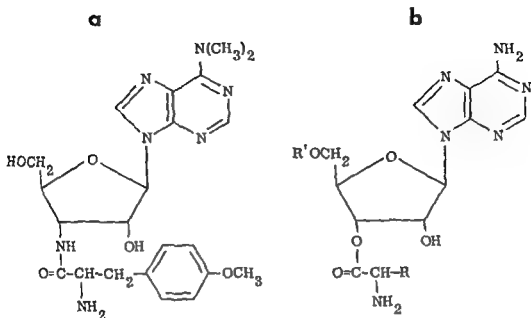


FIG 13 Structures of puromycin (a) and the adenosine end group of aminoacyl sRNA (b)  
R' = phosphodiester to the rest of the RNA molecule

carried out. Thus puromycin appears to be acting as a metabolic analogue of sRNA of which it is also a structural analogue replacing an incoming aminoacyl sRNA molecule in the chain elongation reaction of protein or polypeptide synthesis (Fig. 14). Since it is an analogue of only the end of the sRNA molecule it does not attach to the sRNA site on the 50S subunit of the ribosome. Hence the polypeptide chain transferred to puromycin is released. If puromycin is added during the course of protein synthesis small peptides of various sizes containing the antibiotic are released. In the case of the polyuridylic acid stimulated polypeptide synthesis polyphenylalanyl sRNA is formed. Since the mRNA employed (polyuridylic acid) contains no signal for the release of polypeptide from sRNA the polyphenylalanyl sRNA remains attached to the ribosome and the subsequent addition of puromycin brings about its release (Gilbert 1963). Thus in this isolated system the puromycin reaction can be used as a model of the peptide bond forming step itself. It is noteworthy that this reaction is stimulated

by GTP and one of the soluble protein fractions possibly the peptide bond forming enzyme (Traut and Monro 1964). Moreover this step is inhibited by chlortetracycline (see below) and chloramphenicol. Whether this effect of chloramphenicol is significant or related to its other known effects remains to be investigated.

It is noteworthy that puromycin does not act specifically as an analogue of tyrosyl sRNA. Differences in the actions of various synthetic analogues in which O-methyl tyrosine is replaced by other amino acids still remain to be explained (Nathans and Neele 1963). Some analogues e.g. the glycyl analogue are relatively inactive and an aromatic amino acid appears to be important in obtaining maximum effects. The transfer of the amino acid peptide linkage to the 2' or the 5' position of the ribose in the nucleoside destroys activity. This structural specificity is the best evidence albeit weak, that the amino acid ester is actually located on the 3' position of the ribose in the terminal nucleoside of a normal sRNA.



they were sensitive to kanamycin. However, ribosomes from kanamycin-resistant cells were resistant to both antibiotics.

This phenomenon may prove to be of much use in further elucidating the ribosomal mechanism. Misreading could provide an explanation of the suppression of various mutations by streptomycin (Gorini and Kataja 1964, Lederberg *et al.* 1964). Moreover, suppression of a lethal mutation would be an excellent explanation of streptomycin dependence. This phenomenon may also provide an explanation of the bactericidal effect of this antibiotic (Davies *et al.* 1964). If the formation of abnormal and functionally inactive proteins is induced, the presence of these materials could seriously interfere with the ability of the cell to survive, even in the resting state. The requirement for a small amount of growth for initiation of the lethal effect of streptomycin could be explained by the fact that streptomycin can be attached to ribosomes only in the absence of mRNA. Thus a single cycle of protein synthesis would release mRNA and make the ribosome accessible to the antibiotic.

Finally, it should be mentioned that chloramphenicol is bacteriostatic and its action is readily reversed. Moreover, chloramphenicol antagonizes the lethal effect of streptomycin. This could be explained by a competition for binding sites or conceivably by the fact that a lethal synthesis, i.e. the synthesis of abnormal proteins, is required for killing by streptomycin, while chloramphenicol blocks this lethal synthesis in the same manner as it blocks normal protein synthesis. As in the case of chloramphenicol, the extreme resistance of animal cells and fungi to the action of streptomycin has not been explained adequately, nor is there any explanation of the high toxicity of the aminoglycoside antibiotics for the acoustic nerve of higher animals.

The means of reconciliation of the observed effect of streptomycin on permeability and on protein synthesis is not immediately apparent. However, two possibilities suggest themselves. If the ribosomal system were closely associated with the membrane, both phenomena might be the consequence of binding. Alternatively, if streptomycin

competes for  $Mg^{++}$  or polyamine sites on the ribosome, it might also compete for functionally important anionic binding sites on the membrane, perhaps  $Mg^{++}$  or  $Ca^{++}$  binding sites.

#### Puromycin

This antibiotic is nephrotoxic in animals and is inhibitory to tissue culture cells. It is not useful in the therapy of bacterial infections, but related compounds have been of some interest as possible anticancer agents. Although it had been observed earlier that it inhibited induced enzyme synthesis (Creaser 1955), its unusual structure first suggested that it might function as a specific inhibitor of protein synthesis. It is a nucleoside in which the base is 6-dimethylamino purine (6-dimethyladenine) and the pentose is 3-amino-D-ribose. Moreover, the amino group of the sugar is substituted in a peptide linkage with 3-O-methyl-L-tyrosine (Fig. 13). This structure suggested that this substance might act as an analogue of aminoacyl-sRNA (Yarmolinsky and de la Haba 1959) (Fig. 13). It was found to inhibit protein synthesis *in vitro*. It did not inhibit the formation of aminoacyl-sRNA but, like chloramphenicol and streptomycin, it blocked the ribosomal stage of protein biosynthesis (Yarmolinsky and de la Haba 1959). As the consequence, small peptides accumulated in the medium (Nathans *et al.* 1962). Moreover, nascent protein attached to ribosomes could be released by puromycin (Morris and Schweet 1961) and with the rabbit reticulocyte ribosome system, which synthesizes polypeptide chains of hemoglobin containing N-terminal valine, amino acid labeled puromycin was incorporated into the peptide products in an amount equivalent to the amount of N-terminal valine (Allen and Zamecnik 1962). Recently, further evidence that puromycin is a part of the peptide product in the *E. coli* system has also been obtained (Nathans 1964a, b). Chloramphenicol acts at an earlier point in the ribosomal mechanism than does puromycin, since in the presence of both antibiotics no formation of peptides characteristic of the puromycin effect can be demonstrated. Analogous experiments with streptomycin have not been

RNA polymerase and DNA polymerase see different surfaces of the DNA molecule. At higher concentrations of actinomycin DNA polymerase is also inhibited. At these concentrations the melting curve of DNA is

shifted upward (Fig. 16). Apparently the double stranded configuration is stabilized and lowered activity of the enzyme is due to failure of strand separation of its DNA substrate (Reich 1964).

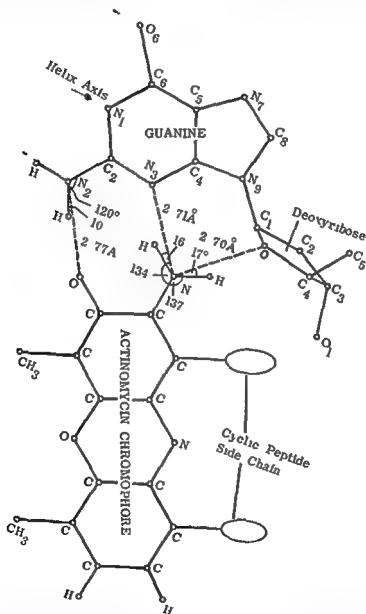


FIG. 15 Model of actinomycin binding to deoxyguanosine of DNA in the B configuration. Hydrogen bonds between actinomycin and DNA are indicated by — — and hydrogen bonds between guanine and cytosine in DNA are indicated by (Hamilton L. D. *et al.* Nature 198 538).

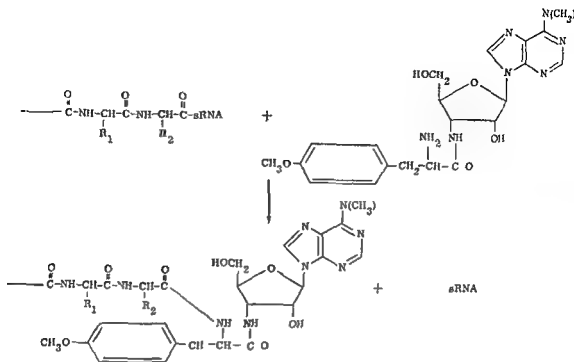


FIG 14 Proposed reaction of puromycin with ribosomal bound polypeptidyl sRNA

#### OTHER INHIBITORS OF PROTEIN BIOSYNTHESIS

Tetracyclines (Gale and Folkes 1953 Rendi and Ochoa 1961 Hash *et al* 1964) erythromycin (one of a group of macrolide antibiotics) (Benigno *et al* 1954 Wolfe and Hahn 1964) streptogramin (Vazquez 1962) and lincomycin (Josten and Allen 1964) all have been reported to inhibit protein synthesis in a relatively specific manner. Insufficient information is available at present to describe their mechanisms of action in detail. The first two of these substances are remarkably nontoxic for animals.

#### INHIBITORS OF NUCLEIC ACID SYNTHESIS

##### ACTINOMYCIN C<sub>1</sub>

The actinomycins are bright red peptide containing antibiotics. They are highly toxic for animal cells as well as for bacteria and have a useful role in therapy of some tumors. They inhibit the growth of DNA viruses but

not of most RNA containing viruses. Their primary action is due to complex formation with DNA. They do not bind to RNA. The DNA-actinomycin complex is strikingly inhibitory to the DNA dependent RNA polymerase but DNA polymerase is inhibited only at high concentrations of the antibiotic (Reich 1964 Goldberg and Reich 1964).

The actinomycin molecule binds to the deoxyguanosine residues in DNA. Binding is readily observed as a spectral shift in the actinomycin chromophore. Apurinic DNA and deoxyadenosine-thymidine copolymer do not bind the antibiotic. However a crab DNA which contains only 2 per cent deoxyguanosine does bind actinomycin. The chromophore amino group, the quinoidal ring system and the peptide chain lactone ring are all essential for the interaction. An elegant model for the binding has been proposed (Hamilton *et al* 1963) (Fig 15).

DNA dependent RNA polymerase is inhibited by low concentrations of the antibiotic (Fig 16). At these concentrations DNA replication is unaffected. Apparently

respiratory chain or in the phosphorylating mechanism. They have permitted the isolation of portions of the respiratory chain for study and have been utilized in the preparation of fragments of the phosphorylating particles. Moreover, in several cases the identification of partial reactions as bona fide portions of the mechanism has been aided by their sensitivity to an antibiotic known to inhibit the intact system. In addition to those already studied in detail, other toxic antibiotics are known to inhibit these systems, and it is to be hoped that detailed studies of their mechanisms will shed additional light on this important area of biochemistry. The known differences between oxidative phosphorylation in bacteria and in animals also suggests that an antibiotic which inhibits bacterial oxidative phosphorylation and is nontoxic for animals may be found someday.

## METABOLITE ANALOGUES

### SULFONAMIDES AND P-AMINOSALICYLIC ACID

The modern history of studies of the mechanisms of killing of bacteria by drugs began with investigations of sulfonamides. These early studies led to the discovery by Woods in 1939-1940, even before penicillin had been isolated, of a naturally occurring competitive antagonist of sulfonamide action (Woods 1940). This compound was isolated and identified as p-aminobenzoic acid.

a previously unknown metabolite (Fig. 17). Later it was found that p-aminobenzoic acid was an essential part of an important coenzyme, folic acid. The sole metabolic function of p-aminobenzoic acid is its role as a folic acid precursor. Animals are unable to synthesize folic acid and depend on an exogenous source, while bacteria manufacture their own folate compounds. Hence only bacteria can be inhibited by sulfonamides. Some bacteria do not synthesize folic acid but require it for growth. These organisms, like animal cells, are not inhibited by the sulfonamides.

More than 20 years elapsed after this discovery until more detailed knowledge of the structure and the mode of synthesis of folic acid permitted a precise definition of the inhibitory action (Brown 1962). Folate compounds are formed from pteridine precursors. The immediate reaction in which p-aminobenzoic acid participates is the ATP-dependent condensation of 2-amino-4-hydroxy-6-hydroxymethyl pteridine with p-aminobenzoic acid to yield dihydropteroic acid, which is subsequently converted to dihydrofolic acid. It is this reaction which is inhibited by sulfonamides. In fact, sulfonamides participate as substrates so that nonfunctional analogues of dihydropteroic acid are formed. These products may themselves be inhibitory, and kinetics typical of pure competitive inhibition were not obtained.

Another analogue of p-aminobenzoic acid, p-aminosalicylic acid (Fig. 17), is an impor-

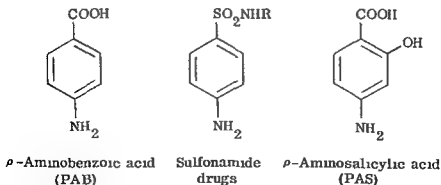


FIG. 17 p-Aminobenzoic acid (left), a sulfonamide (middle), and p-aminosalicylic acid (right).

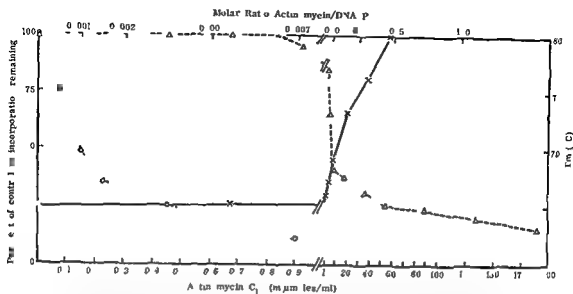


FIG 16 Effect of actinomycin on RNA polymerase (open circles) DNA polymerase (open triangles) and melting curve ( $T_m$ ) of pneumococcal DNA (crosses). The incorporation of nucleotide in both polymerase reactions is plotted as a function of actinomycin concentration (lower abscissa) while the  $T_m$  is plotted as a function of the ratio of actinomycin to DNA P (upper abscissa). The latter ratios correspond to those in the enzyme reaction mixtures (Reich E Science 143 684)

### MITOMYCIN

This antibiotic is also toxic to both animal cells and bacteria. It is an effective antitumor agent and is mutagenic. It brings about depolymerization of DNA. The substance itself is inactive but on reduction enzymatically or chemically an active form is produced. This activated substance is a bifunctional alkylating agent and brings about the cross linking of DNA strands apparently involving deoxyguanosine and deoxycytosine residues on complementary strands (Iyer and Szybalski 1963; Iyer and Szybalski 1964).

### OTHER AGENTS

Phleomycin (Tanaka *et al* 1963; Falaschi and Kornberg 1964) a nitrofur derivative (Endo *et al* 1963), phenethyl alcohol (Berrah and Konetzka 1962) and ethidium bromide (Newton 1957; Elliott 1963) are all inhibitors of DNA and/or RNA synthesis. Their mechanisms of action are being studied in a number of laboratories. Phleomycin like actinomycin is bound to DNA resulting in an alteration of the melting curve. The binding probably involves deoxyadenosine or

thymidine residues. While the binding of this antibiotic inhibits DNA polymerase, the DNA-dependent RNA polymerase is not affected (Falaschi and Kornberg 1964). This situation is just the opposite of that seen with actinomycin  $C_1$ .

### INHIBITORS OF OXIDATIVE PHOSPHORYLATION

A number of antibiotics highly toxic for both animals and bacteria, have been found to be inhibitors of oxidative phosphorylation. Although studies of the mechanism of oxidative phosphorylation have shown that there are important differences between the bacterial and the animal systems, no inhibitors of this kind have been found so far which are selectively toxic for bacteria. However, those agents which have been found have been extremely useful in studies of oxidative phosphorylation, especially antimycin A, oligomycin, aureomycin and gramicidin (Hotchkiss 1944; Brodie and Gray 1956; Chance 1956; Lardy *et al* 1958; Lardy 1961). These inhibitors act at specific loci in the

peutic agents now used and of the basis of their toxic side-effects in animals. Perhaps it will even lead to the design of more effective chemotherapeutic agents than those now available but without question such studies have contributed and will contribute in an important way to that fund of basic knowledge on which modern science including medicine is based.

## REFERENCES\*

- Abraham E P and Newton G G F 1958 Structure and function of some sulphur containing peptides in Wolstenholme G E W and O'Connor C M (eds) *Ciba Symposium on Amino Acids and Peptides With Antimetabolic Activity* pp 205 223 London Churchill
- Allen D W and Zamecnik P C 1962 The effect of puromycin on rabbit reticulocyte ribosomes *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 55 865 874
- Ambrose C T and Coons A H 1963 Studies on antibody production. VIII The inhibitory effect of chloramphenicol on the synthesis of antibody in tissue culture *J. Exp. Med.* 117 1075
- Anand N and Davis H D 1960 Damage by streptomycin to the cell membrane of *Escherichia coli* *Nature* 185 22 23
- Anderson I S and Meadow P M 1964 Enzymatic polymerization of UDP acetyl muramyl ala glu lys ala ala and UDP acetyl glucosamine by a particulate enzyme system from *Staphylococcus aureus* *Fed. Proc.* 23 380
- Aronson A I and Spiegelman B 1961 On the nature of the ribonucleic acid synthesized in the presence of chloramphenicol *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 53 84-95
- 1962 Protein and ribonucleic acid synthesis in a chloramphenicol inhibited system *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 53 70-84
- Benigno P Porro A and Cima L 1954 *Atti Accad. Nazl. Lincei. Rend. Classe Sci. Fis. Mat. Nat.* 16 773 cited by Wolfe and Hahn 1964
- Berrah G and Konetzka W A 1962 Selective and reversible inhibition of synthesis of bacterial deoxyribonucleic acid by phenethyl alcohol *J. Bact.* 83 738 744
- Brock T D 1962 Magnesium binding as an explanation of the mode of action of novobiocin *Science* 136 316 317
- 1964 The mode of action of streptomycin and related antibiotics *Fed. Proc.* 23 965
- Brodie A F and Gray C T Phosphorylation coupled to oxidation in bacterial extracts *J. Biol. Chem.* 219 853 862
- Brown G M 1962 Biosynthesis of folic acid II Inhibition by sulfonamides *J. Biol. Chem.* 237 536 540
- Chance B 1956 in Gaebler O H (ed) *Enzymes. Units of Biological Structure and Function* p 447 New York Acad. Press
- Chapman G B 1962 Cytological aspects of antimicrobial antibiotics II Cytological changes associated with exposure of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Bacillus megaterium* to colistin sulfate *J. Bact.* 84 180-185
- Ciak J and Hahn F E 1959 Mechanisms of action of antibiotics II Studies on the modes of action of cycloserine and its L-stereoisomer *Antibiot. Chemother.* 9 47
- Cohen S S 1946 Streptomycin and deoxyribonuclease in the study of variations in the properties of a bacterial virus *J. Biol. Chem.* 166 393 394
- Collins J F and Richmond M H 1962 A structural similarity between N acetyl muramic acid and penicillin as a basis for antibiotic action *Nature* 195 142 143
- Council on Drugs 1960 Blood dyscrasias associated with chloramphenicol therapy *J. A.M.A.* 172 2044
- Cox B C White J R and Flaks J G 1964 Streptomycin action and the ribosome *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci.* 51 703 709
- Creaser E H 1955 *J. Gen. Microbiol.* 12 288
- Davies J E 1964 Studies on the ribosomes of streptomycin sensitive and resistant strains of *Escherichia coli* *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci.* 51 659 644
- Davies J Gilbert W and Gorini L 1964 Streptomycin suppression and the code *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci.* 51 883 890
- Davis H D and Feingold D S 1962 Antimicrobial agents. Mechanism of action and use in metabolic studies in Gunsalus I C and Stamen R Y (eds) *The Bacteria* vol 4 pp 343 397 New York Acad. Press
- Djordjevic B and Szybalski W 1960 Genetics of human cell lines III Incorporation of 5 bromo and 5 iododeoxyuridine into deoxyribonucleic acid of human cells and its

Two excellent and comprehensive reviews of the subject of this chapter have been published recently (Davis and Feingold 1962 Gale 1963) and interested readers are referred to them for a more detailed treatment of some aspects as well as for additional references.

tant antitubercular drug. It is remarkable that while *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is effectively inhibited by p-aminosalicylic acid, sulfonamides have no inhibitory action. Correspondingly, sulfonamide-sensitive bacteria are by and large insensitive to p-aminosalicylic acid. Like sulfonamides, p-aminosalicylic acid may also be utilized by sensitive organisms in vivo at least to form folic acid analogues.

These observations imply that the receptor site for p-aminobenzoic acid on the sensitive enzyme may be different in different organisms in one case being fit by sulfonamides and in another by p-aminosalicylic acid. Indeed, alterations in enzyme receptor sites for p-aminobenzoic acid are one mechanism by which cells of *E. coli* become sulfonamide-resistant (Pato and Brown 1963). In view of the importance of p-aminosalicylic acid as an antitubercular drug and the high frequency with which resistance to it develops, it is surprising that this system has barely been studied in mycobacteria. It may be hoped that the description of the enzymatic mechanisms involved will stimulate further work in this area.

The discovery of the p-aminobenzoic acid-sulfonamide antagonism led to the general concept of antimetabolites as potential therapeutic agents and to the hope that this concept would permit the rational design of new antibacterial substances. Although a large number of compounds of various types have been made and tested, none of them has possessed the selectivity required for this purpose.\*

#### OTHER SUBSTANCES

A number of other antibiotics are antimetabolites. Thus, diazo-oxo-norleucine

\* A striking exception to this statement in another area of chemotherapy is iododeoxyuridine. This compound was originally synthesized as a nucleic acid antimetabolite in a search for anticancer agents and does have limited use in the therapy of some tumors. However, it is a potent inhibitor of the replication of *Herpes simplex*, a DNA-containing virus. Infection of the eye with *Herpes* is an important cause of blindness, and local instillation of iododeoxyuridine in the eye produces a rapid cure of this disease (Kauffman *et al.* 1962). This compound is the first antiviral agent of value. It is also being tried in the treatment of smallpox.

(DON) and azaserine are glutamine analogues (Hartman *et al.*, 1956) and hadacidin is an L-aspartic acid analogue (Shigeura and Gordon 1962). Psicofuranine is an adenosine analogue, containing the keto sugar psicose rather than ribose. This latter is of particular interest because it illustrates a novel mechanism of antimetabolite action (Moyed 1961). The antibiotic is an inhibitor of xanthosine 5-phosphate aminase, which catalyzes the formation of guanylic acid:  $\text{XMP} + \text{ATP} + \text{NH}_3 \rightleftharpoons \text{GMP} + \text{AMP} + \text{PP}$ . This enzyme has an allosteric regulatory site for which AMP may be the normal regulator. The antibiotic appears to inhibit the enzyme by acting at the regulator site. Several synthetic amino acid analogues have a similar action in inhibiting amino acid biosynthesis.

#### CONCLUSION

In concluding this chapter on the mechanism of action of antimicrobial agents, one pauses to reflect on the enormous effort which has been expended in this area of investigation. This has been due largely to the fascination of scientists with antibiotics as keys with which to unlock new areas of microbial physiology. These efforts have been richly rewarded. Studies of sulfonamides led to the isolation of p-aminobenzoic acid, and studies of penicillin led to the full realization of the functional importance of the bacterial cell wall. Chloramphenicol and other antibiotics have been exceedingly important in unraveling the mysteries of protein and nucleic acid synthesis and perhaps the polyenes and other antibiotics will play a similar role in the eventual understanding of membrane structure and function. It is of interest that most of the agents studied have interfered in one way or another with the macromolecular components of bacterial cells and that simple competitive antagonism is a relatively unusual phenomenon. The concept of biochemical individuality among cells is slowly being defined, partly with the aid of these substances and indeed is the basis of the selective toxicity of those antibiotics which are useful in chemotherapy. It is to be hoped that these fundamental investigations will lead to a better understanding of the thera-

- Jardetzky O 1963 Studies on the mechanism of action of chloramphenicol I The conformation of chloramphenicol in solution *J Biol Chem* 238 2498-2508
- Jardetzky O and Julian G R 1964 Chloramphenicol inhibition of polyuridylic acid binding to *E coli* ribosomes *Nature* 201 397-398
- Jordan B C 1961 Effect of vancomycin on the synthesis of the cell wall mucopeptide of *Staphylococcus aureus* *Biochem Biophys Res Comm* 11 167-170
- Josten J J and Allen P M 1964 The Mode of Action of Lincomycin *Biochem Biophys Res Comm* 14 241-244
- Kauffman, H E Nesburn A D and Maloney E D 1962 *Arch Ophth* 67 536
- Kinsky S C 1961 Alterations in the permeability of *Neurospora crassa* due to polyene antibiotics *J Bact* 82 889-897
- 1962a Effect of polyene antibiotics on protoplasts of *Neurospora crassa* *J Bact* 83 351-358
- 1962b Nystatin binding by protoplasts and a particulate fraction of *Neurospora crassa* and a basis for the selective toxicity of polyene antifungal antibiotics *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 48 1049-1056
- 1964 Membrane sterols and the selective toxicity of polyene antifungal antibiotics *Antibiotics Annual* (in press)
- Kinsky S C Ayruch J Permutt M Rogers H H and Schonder A A 1962 The lytic effect of polyene antifungal antibiotics on mammalian erythrocytes *Biochem Biophys Res Comm* 9 503-507
- Kurland C G Nomura M and Watson J D 1962 The physical properties of the chloromycetin particles *J Molec Biol* 4 388-395
- Kurland C G and Maaløe O 1962 *J Molec Biol* 4 193
- Lardy H 1961 Reactions involved in oxidative phosphorylation as disclosed by studies with antibiotics in Goodwin T W and Lindbergh O (eds) *Proceedings of the First IUB/IUBS International Symposium* vol 2 New York Acad Press
- Lardy H A Johnson D and McMurray W C 1958 Antibiotics as tools for metabolic studies I A survey of toxic antibiotics in respiratory phosphorylative and glycolytic systems *Arch Biochem Biophys* 78 587-597
- Lark K G 1958 *Canad J Microbiol* 4 165
- Lederberg E M Cavalli-Sforza L and Lederberg J 1964 Interaction of streptomycin and a suppressor for galactose fermentation in *E coli* K 12 *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 51 678-682
- Lederberg J 1956 Bacterial protoplasts induced by penicillin *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 42 574-577
- Mandelstam J and Rogers H J 1959 The incorporation of amino acids into the cell wall mucopeptide of *Staphylococci* and the effect of antibiotics on the process *Biochem J* 72 654-662
- Mandelstam M H and Strominger J L 1961 On the structure of the cell wall of *Staphylococcus aureus* (Copenhagen) *Biochem Biophys Res Comm* 5 466-471
- Marini F Arnow P and Lampen J O 1961 Effect of monovalent cations on inhibition of yeast metabolism by nystatin *J Gen Microbiol* 24 51-62
- Meadow P M Anderson J S and Strominger J L 1964 Enzymatic polymerization of UDP acetyluramyl L ala D glu L lys D ala D ala and UDP acetylglucosamine by a particulate enzyme from *Staphylococcus aureus* and its inhibition by antibiotics *Biochem Biophys Res Comm* 14 382-387
- Midgley J E M and McCarthy B J 1962 Synthesis and kinetic behavior of deoxyribonucleic acid like ribonucleic acid in bacteria *Biochim Biophys Acta* 61 696-717
- Morris A and Schweet R 1961 Release of soluble protein from reticulocyte ribosomes *Biochim Biophys Acta* 47 415-416
- Moulder J W Novosel D L and Officer J E 1963 Inhibition of the growth agents of the psittacosis group by *D cycloserine* and its specific reversal by *D alanine* *J Bact* 85 707-711
- Moyed H S 1961 Cold Spring Harbor Symposium Quant Biol 26 323
- Nathans D 1964a Puromycin inhibition of protein synthesis Incorporation of puromycin into peptide chains *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 51 585-592
- 1964b Inhibition of protein synthesis by puromycin *Fed Proc* 23 984
- Nathans D and Lipmann F 1961 Amino acid transfer from aminoacyl ribonucleic acids to protein on ribosomes of *Escherichia coli* *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 47 497-504
- Nathans D and Neele A 1963 Structural requirements for puromycin inhibition of protein synthesis *Nature* 197 1076-1077
- Nathans D von Ehrenstein G Monro R and Lipmann F 1962 Protein synthesis from aminoacyl soluble ribonucleic acid *Fed Proc* 21 127-133



- effect on radiation sensitivity *J Exp Med* 112 509
- Domagk G 1935 Ein Beitrag zur Chemo therapie der bakteriellen Infektionen *Deutsch med Wschr* 61 250 253
- Dubin D T 1964 Some effects of streptomycin on RNA metabolism in *Escherichia coli* *J Molec Biol* 8 749 767
- Dubin D T Hancock R and Davis B D 1963 Sequence of some effects of streptomycin in *Escherichia coli* *Biochim Biophys Acta* 74 476 489
- Dubos R J 1939 *Studies on a bactericidal agent extracted from a soil bacillus* Part I Preparation of the agent Its activity *in vitro* Part II Protective effect of the bactericidal agent against experimental pneumococcus infections in mice *J Exp Med* 70 110 117
- Duguid J P 1945 The sensitivity of bacteria to the action of penicillin *Edinburgh M J* 53 407-412
- Ehrlich P and Hata S 1910 *Die experimentelle Chemotherapie der Spirillosen* Berlin Julius Springer
- Elliott W H 1963 The effects of antimicrobial agents on deoxyribonucleic acid polymerase *Biochem J* 86 562 567
- Endo H Ishizawa M Kamiya T and Kuwano M 1963 A nitrofurant derivative a new inducing agent for the phage development in lysogenic *Escherichia coli* *Biochim Biophys Acta* 68 502 505
- Falascchi A and Kornberg A 1964 Phleomycin an inhibitor of DNA polymerase *Fed Proc* 23 940
- Fitzgerald R J Bernheim F and Fitzgerald D B 1948 The inhibition by streptomycin of adaptive enzyme formation in *Mycobacteria* *J Biol Chem* 175 195 200
- Flaks J G Cox E C and White J R 1962 Inhibition of polypeptide synthesis by streptomycin *Biochem Biophys Res Comm* 7 385 393
- Fleming A 1946 History and development of penicillin in Fleming A (ed) *Penicillin Its Practical Application* Philadelphia Blakiston
- Florey H W 1949 Historical introduction in Florey H W *et al* *Antibiotics* vol 1 New York Oxford Univ Press
- Gale E F 1963 Mechanisms of antibiotic action *Pharmacol Rev* 15 481 530
- Gale E F and Folkes J P 1953 The assimilation of amino acids by bacteria 15 Actions of antibiotics on nucleic acid and protein synthesis in *Staphylococcus aureus* *Biochem J* 53 493 498
- Gale E F Shepherd C J and Folkes J P 1958 *Nature London* 182 592
- Gilbert W 1963 Polypeptide synthesis in *Escherichia coli* II The polypeptide chain and S-RNA *J Molec Biol* 6 389-403
- Goldberg I H and Reich E 1964 Actinomycin inhibition of RNA synthesis directed by DNA *Fed Proc* 23 958
- Gorini L and Kataja E 1964 Phenotypic repair by streptomycin of defective genotypes in *E coli* *Proc Nat Acad Sc* 51 487 492
- Gros F and Gros F 1958 Role des acides amines dans la synthese des acides nucleiques chez *Escherichia coli* *Exp Cell Res* 14 104 131
- Hahn F E and Ciak J 1957 Penicillin induced lysis of *Escherichia coli* *Science* 125 119 120
- Hahn F E and Wolfe A D 1961 Mode of action of chloramphenicol 8 Resemblances between labile chloramphenicol ribonucleic acid and deoxyribonucleic acid of *Bacillus cereus* *Biochem Biophys Res Comm* 6 464 468
- Hamilton L D Fuller W and Reich H 1963 X ray diffraction and molecular model building studies of the interaction of actinomycin with nucleic acids *Nature* 198 538 540
- Hancock R and Park J T 1958 Cell wall synthesis by *Staphylococcus aureus* in the presence of chloramphenicol *Nature* 181 1050 1052
- Hartman S C Levenberg B and Buchanan J M 1956 Bioynthesis of the purines XI Structure enzymatic synthesis and metabolism of glycynamide ribotide and ( $\alpha$ N formyl) glycynamide ribotide *J Biol Chem* 221 1057 1070
- Hash J H Wishnick M and Miller P A 1964 On the mode of action of the tetracycline antibiotics in *Staphylococcus aureus* *J Biol Chem* 239 2070-2078
- Hotchkiss R D 1944 Gramicidin tyrocidine and tyrothricin *Adv Enzymol* 4 153 199
- 1946 The nature of the bactericidal action of surface active agents *Ann N Y Acad Sc* 46 479-483
- Hurwitz C 1964 Mechanism of action of streptomycin *Antibiotics Annual* 1963 371 386
- Iyer V N and Szybalski W 1963 A molecular mechanism of mitomycin action Linking of complementary DNA strands *Proc Nat Acad Sc* 50 355 362
- 1964 Mitomycins and porfiromycin Chemical mechanism of activation and cross linking of DNA *Science* 145 55

- particle systems and the photochemical apparatus of *Rhodospirillum rubrum* Proc Nat Acad Sci 45 1261 1269
- Vasquez D 1962 The mode of action of streptogramin Biochim Biophys Acta 61 849 851
- 1964 The binding of chloramphenicol by ribosomes from *Bacillus megaterium* Biochem Biophys Res Comm 15 464-468
- von Ehrenstein G and Lipmann F 1961 Experiments on hemoglobin synthesis Proc Nat Acad Sci 47 941 950
- Wallas C and Strominger J L 1963 Ristocetins inhibitors of cell wall synthesis in *Staphylococcus aureus* J Biol Chem 238 2264 2266
- Warren G H Gray J and Yurcheno J A 1957 Effect of polymyxin on the lysis of *Neisseria catarrhalis* by lysozyme J Bact 74 788 793
- Weibull C 1953 The isolation of protoplasts from *Bacillus megaterium* by controlled treatment with lysozyme J Bact 66 688 702
- Weisberger A S and Wolfe S 1964 The effect of chloramphenicol on protein synthesis Fed Proc 23 976
- Weisberger A S Wolfe S and Armentrout S 1964a Inhibition of protein synthesis in mammalian cell free systems by chloramphenicol J Exp Med 120 161
- Weisberger A S Daniel T M and Hoffman A 1964b Suppression of antibody synthesis and prolongation of homograft survival by chloramphenicol J Exp Med 120 183
- Wishnow R Strominger J L Birge C and Threnn R H 1964 Biochemical effects of novobiocin on *Staphylococcus aureus* J Bact (submitted for publication)
- Wissemann C L Jr Smadel J E Hahn F E and Hopps H E 1954 Mode of action of chloramphenicol I Action of chloramphenicol on assimilation of ammonia and on synthesis of proteins and nucleic acids in *Escherichia coli* J Bact 67 662
- Wolfe A D and Hahn F E 1964 Erythromycin Mode of action Science 143 1445 1446
- Woods D D 1940 Brit J Exp Path 21 74
- Yarmolinsky M B and de la Haba G L 1959 Inhibition by puromycin of amino acid incorporation into protein Proc Nat Acad Sci 45 1721 1729

- Nathenson S G and Strominger J L 1961 Effects of penicillin on the biosynthesis of the cell walls of *Escherichia coli* and *Staphylococcus aureus* J Pharmacol 131 111
- Neuhaus F C and Lynch J L 1964 The enzymatic synthesis of *D* alanyl *D* alanine III On the inhibition of *D* alanyl *D* alanine synthetase by the antibiotic *D*-cycloserine Biochem J 93 471-480
- Newton H A 1953 The release of soluble constituents from washed cells of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* by the action of polymyxin J Gen Microbiol 9 54-64
- 1956 The properties and mode of action of the polymyxins Bact Rev 20 14-27
- 1958 Surface active bactericides in The Strategy of Chemotherapy Symp Soc Gen Microbiol Vol 8 pp 62-93 London Churchill
- Pardee A B and Prestidge L S 1956 The dependence of nucleic acid synthesis on the presence of amino acids in *Escherichia coli* J Bact 71 677-683
- Park J T 1952 Uridine 5 pyrophosphate derivatives J Biol Chem 194 877-903
- Park J T and Strominger J L 1957 Mode of action of penicillin Science 125 99-101
- Pato M L and Brown G M 1963 Mechanisms of resistance of *Escherichia coli* to sulfonamides Arch Biochem Biophys 103 443-448
- Reich E 1964 Actinomycin Correlation of structure and function of its complexes with purines and DNA Science 143 684-689
- Rendi R and Ochoa S 1961 Science 133 1367
- 1962 Effect of chloramphenicol on protein synthesis in cell free preparations of *Escherichia coli* J Biol Chem 237 3711-3713
- Reynolds P E 1961 Studies on the mode of action of vancomycin Biochim Biophys Acta 52 403-405
- Rogers H J and Jelfaszewicz J 1961 Inhibition of the biosynthesis of cell wall mucopeptides by the penicillins Biochem J 81 576-584
- Salton M R J 1960 Microbial Cell Walls New York Wiley
- Shigeura H T and Gordon C N 1962 Hadacidin a new inhibitor of purine biosynthesis J Biol Chem 237 1932-1936
- Slayman C W 1963 Potassium transport in *Neurospora crassa* Doctoral Thesis The Rockefeller Institute 47 pp
- Slayman C L and Slayman C W 1962 Measurement of membrane potentials in *Neurospora* Science 136 867-877
- Slayman C W and Tatum E 1964 Potassium transport in *Neurospora* I Biochim Biophys Acta In Press
- Speyer J F Lengyel P and Basilio C 1962 Ribosomal localization of streptomycin sensitivity Proc Nat Acad Sci 48 684-686
- Spotts C R and Stanier R Y 1961 Mechanism of streptomycin action on bacteria A unitary hypothesis Nature 192 633-637
- Stern J L and Cohen S S 1964 Lethality and the stimulation of RNA synthesis by streptomycin Proc Nat Acad Sci 51 859-865
- Strominger J L 1957 Microbial uridine-5 pyrophosphate N acetyl amino sugar compounds I Biology of the penicillin induced accumulation II Incorporation of uracil 2 C<sup>14</sup> into nucleotide and nucleic acid J Biol Chem 224 509-523 525-532
- 1959 The amino acid sequence in the uridine nucleotide peptide from *Staphylococcus aureus* C R Trav Lab Carlsberg 31 181-192
- 1962 Biosynthesis of bacterial cell walls in Gunsalus I C and Stanier R Y (eds) The Bacteria vol 3 pp 413-470 New York Acad Press
- Strominger J L Ito E and Threnn R H 1960 Competitive inhibition of enzymatic reactions by oxamycin J Am Chem Soc 82 998-999
- Strominger J L Park J T and Thompson R E 1959 Composition of the cell wall of *Staphylococcus aureus* its relation to the mechanism of action of penicillin J Biol Chem 234 3263-3268
- Strominger J L and Threnn R H 1959 The optical configuration of the alanine residue in a uridine nucleotide and in the cell wall of *Staphylococcus aureus* Biochim Biophys Acta 33 280-281
- Strominger J L and Threnn R H and Scott S S 1959 Oxamycin a competitive antagonist of the incorporation of *D* alanine into a uridine nucleotide in *Staphylococcus aureus* J Am Chem Soc 81 3803-3804
- Tanaka N Sashikata K Nishimura T and Umezawa H 1964 Activity of ribosomes from kanamycin resistant *E coli* Biochem Biophys Res Comm 16 216-220
- Tanaka N Yamaguchi H and Umezawa H 1963 Mechanism of action of phleomycin a tumor inhibitory antibiotic Biochem Biophys Res Comm 10 171-174
- Traut R R and Monro R E 1964 The puromycin reaction and its relation to protein synthesis J Molec Biol 10 63
- Tuttle A L and Gest H 1959 Subcellular

- particle systems and the photochemical apparatus of *Rhodospirillum rubrum* Proc Nat Acad Sci 45 1261 1269
- Vasquez D 1962 The mode of action of streptogramin Biochim Biophys Acta 61 849 851
- 1964 The binding of chloramphenicol by ribosomes from *Bacillus megaterium* Biochem Biophys Res Comm 15 464-468
- von Ehrenstein G and Lipmann F 1961 Experiments on hemoglobin synthesis Proc Nat Acad Sci 47 941 950
- Wallas C and Strominger J L 1963 Ristocetin inhibitors of cell wall synthesis in *Staphylococcus aureus* J Biol Chem 238 2264 2266
- Warren G H Gray J and Yurchenko J A 1957 Effect of polymyxin on the lysis of *Neisseria catarrhalis* by lysozyme J Bact 74 788 793
- Weibull C 1953 The isolation of protoplasts from *Bacillus megaterium* by controlled treatment with lysozyme J Bact 66 688 702
- Weisberger A S and Wolfe S 1964 The effect of chloramphenicol on protein synthesis Fed Proc 23 976
- Weisberger A S Wolfe S and Armentrout S 1964a Inhibition of protein synthesis in mammalian cell free systems by chloramphenicol J Exp Med 170 161
- Weisberger A S Daniel T M and Hoffman A 1964b Suppression of antibody synthesis and prolongation of homograft survival by chloramphenicol J Exp Med 120 183
- Wishnow R Strominger J L Birge C and Thress R H 1964 Biochemical effects of novobiocin on *Staphylococcus aureus* J Bact (submitted for publication)
- Wisseman C L Jr Smadel J E Hahn F E and Hopps H E 1954 Mode of action of chloramphenicol I Action of chloramphenicol on assimilation of ammonia and on synthesis of proteins and nucleic acids in *Escherichia coli* J Bact 67 662
- Wolfe A D and Hahn F E 1964 Erythromycin Mode of action Science 143 1445 1446
- Woods D D 1940 Brit J Exp Path 21 74
- Yarmolinsky M B and de la Haba G L 1959 Inhibition by puromycin of amino acid incorporation into protein Proc Nat Acad Sci 45 1721 1729

## 7

## Pathogenic Properties of Bacteria

## INTRODUCTION

Our purpose in this chapter is to discuss examples of factors possessed by bacteria that enable them to cause disease. Much has been written about commensalism and parasitism between microorganism and animal or plant host. It has been stressed that disease is a rare event in the normal parasitic relationship and therefore is a minor aspect of parasitism in which peaceful coexistence is averred to be the rule. On the other hand depression of the host's resistance by ionizing radiations for example shows clearly that bacteria which we are wont to consider as commensals, the normal flora of the gut under usual circumstances are prevented from invading the tissues to cause disease and death only because the protective mechanisms are intact. Furthermore many of the species of microorganisms that cause disease are not found in a benign parasitic relationship as for instance the viruses of influenza measles and smallpox in man or rinderpest in cattle. When these agents have been introduced into a population overt disease is the rule unless specific prophylaxis by immunization has been practiced or the population has become immune because of previous epidemic infection. Between the two extremes of parasites which usually are commensal and those that usually cause widespread disease in the unimmunized there is a spectrum of relationships in which the frequency of disease depends on an unsteady balance between the state of the

host and the pathogenicity of the number less microbial species or strains that are encountered.

From the standpoint of the host the aim is to preserve homeostasis and a variety of protective mechanisms are available to achieve this end. Homeostasis can be maintained despite the presence of large and varied microbial populations provided that they are restricted to certain regions of the body where they can be tolerated. However, if for one reason or another there is a defect in the homeostatic barriers and the microorganisms gain access to other tissues disease results. The relation between microbe and host is dynamic whether the species of microorganism is classed as pathogen or commensal. The host appears to do everything in its power to rid itself of the parasite and if this is not possible at least to restrict it to a region where it can do the smallest amount of harm or occasionally be of benefit because the parasite is uniquely able to synthesize nutritional factors necessary for the host or possesses enzymes capable of cleaving ingested materials to a state in which the host can utilize them.

In summary it can be said of the relations between host and microorganism that in some instances there is a state of relatively peaceful coexistence or commensalism in others there is an uneasy truce that is commonly broken and in the case of highly pathogenic microbial species the usual state is open warfare. Whatever military figure of speech is used to describe the complex relationships

it is clear that no single generalization can apply to all but that each case needs to be analyzed separately as has been done in subsequent chapters

## PATHOGENIC PROPERTIES OF BACTERIA

The term *pathogenicity* refers to the capacity of microorganisms to cause disease either natural or experimental in a given host species. *Pneumococcus* is pathogenic for the mouse although spontaneous pneumococcal disease never has been observed in this species. Nonetheless the mouse is extremely susceptible to experimental infection and rapidly succumbs following injection of only a few bacteria. In order for disease to occur naturally in a population pathogenic bacteria must be endowed also with certain attributes which will be discussed under the collective term *communicability* although it should be borne in mind that factors pertaining to the host or to intermediate vectors in addition to intrinsic properties of the microbes play a large part in transmission of infection from one individual to another.

Pathogenicity and virulence have commonly been used as synonyms but as Miles (1955) has pointed out a useful distinction can be made between the terms. Pathogenicity may be regarded as a general attribute of a species or genus or some other grouping of microorganisms the term *virulence* being used to indicate the degree of pathogenicity of a given type strain or clone as observed in a particular host species under defined conditions. *Bacillus anthracis* is pathogenic for many genera of animals. Mutant strains or variants of anthrax bacillus show great differences in virulence or relative pathogenicity when tested in guinea pigs for example and the differences in virulence are stable characteristics of the variants. These then are virulent or avirulent strains of the pathogenic species *B. anthracis*. Pathogenicity of pneumococcus as a species is attributable to the presence of antiphagocytic polysaccharide capsules which surround the cells. In the same animal species mouse enormous differences in virulence occur as characteristics of different capsular types. Moreover within a single type stable

mutants exhibit high or low virulence correlated with synthesis of large or small amounts respectively of capsular polysaccharide.

Although the virulence of a specified stable strain of a microbial species can be measured with relative reproducibility in a given inbred strain of laboratory animal it is a common place to find quite different results when other strains of the same animal species are similarly tested. It follows that the results found in one animal species should not be extrapolated to another.

Virulence can be expressed only in comparative terms because of variations in both host and parasite. To arrive at even a rough numerical value for the virulence of a newly isolated microorganism be it bacterial, viral or fungal requires the use of large numbers of animals infected with increments of dosage and whenever possible by comparison with the results found with a calibrated strain of the same species tested at the same time. Then a numerical comparison of virulence for the animal species under test can be made based either on the number or the dose of infectious agents required to produce a pathologic effect or else by differences in the effect caused by similar doses of each microbe.

The nature of the effect chosen as the indicator of virulence may vary from the number of microorganisms or colony producing units found per unit weight of a selected infected tissue to an estimate of the number and the extent of the lesions produced. Death of the animal usually provides the most secure end point.

The concept of a minimum lethal dose (M.L.D.) of microorganisms as a measure of virulence may be grossly misleading because it does not take account of variations in resistance of different members of the host population of variation in virulence among the microorganisms inoculated nor of differences in response to increments of dose. Death rates resulting from constant increments of dose in similar groups of a population of animals are found usually to increase slowly in the range of 1 to 10 per cent and 90 to 99 per cent mortality and most rapidly in the region of 50 per cent mortality. For this reason the dose that kills

50 per cent of the animals can be estimated more precisely than at either extreme of the mortality curve. As a result the median or 50 per cent lethal dose ( $LD_{50}$ ) is used most commonly in the description of virulence. Calculation of the  $LD_{50}$  can be made by employing a formula such as that devised by Reed and Muench (1938)

In infectious processes where death can not be used as the endpoint, other pathologic effects can be related to the dosage of microbes required to produce them in 50 per cent of the test animals in a given time. This dosage is often referred to as the median or 50 per cent infectious dose ( $ID_{50}$ )

Although estimation of the median lethal dose of certain well studied strains of microbes can be made in the laboratory with fair reproducibility it should be emphasized that this measurement may bear little relation to virulence of a species of bacterium in the natural state

### MICROBIAL FACTORS THAT DETERMINE PATHOGENICITY

The production of disease involves interaction between microbe and host and for this reason discussion of the pathogenic properties of the infective agent requires also a consideration of factors of host resistance. Recognition that bacterial products are concerned in virulence depends on the specific pathologic effects they produce as well as on the immunologic response of the host to the infective agent or fractions of it

Bail and Weil (1911) introduced the word *aggressins* to describe nontoxic factors produced by *B. anthracis* and other bacteria that interfere with host resistance and cause the production of specific, protective antibodies. The usefulness of the term is debatable. The same may be said for the expression *aggressive factors* which have been defined as substances produced by microorganisms that assist them to establish or extend the infection by inhibiting phagocytosis by breaking down mechanical barriers to spread or by killing the host's tissues. The expression *aggressive factors* is so comprehensive that it could almost be used as a synonym for pathogenic factors. However because of the confusion that might result the terms

pathogenic factors or virulence factors will be used in the present discussion

It should be understood clearly that the factors which govern the pathogenicity of one bacterial species may be entirely different from those of another species. This may be illustrated by contrasting the factors concerned in the pathogenicity of *Clostridium tetani* and pneumococcus

If the spores of *Cl. tetani* are introduced into a wound together with some material capable of causing local tissue damage germination takes place, and growth of the vegetative form of the bacillus occurs locally. During growth a highly poisonous and freely diffusible protein tetanus toxin is elaborated by the bacteria. The toxin travels centripetally along peripheral nerves probably in the interneuronal tissue spaces (see Wright 1955) reaches the central nervous system where it affects the motor neurons and produces the frequently fatal disease tetanus. The bacteria themselves are present only at the original site of introduction. All the characteristics of the natural disease can be reproduced in animals by injecting minute doses of highly purified tetanus toxin, immunization by means of toxoid prepared from the toxin prevents the disease. *Cl. tetani* possesses a single factor tetanus toxin which appears to account for its pathogenic qualities

The course of events differs greatly when a few virulent pneumococci are introduced into the tissues of a susceptible animal. The microorganisms multiply rapidly, invade the blood stream and are carried throughout the body. At death they are found in large numbers in all organs in striking contrast with the animal infected with tetanus bacilli. The capacity to invade and multiply in the tissues is determined by the polysaccharide capsule which surrounds virulent pneumococci. This viscous substance inhibits ingestion of the microbes by phagocytes apparently in a mechanical way and is not toxic for the isolated phagocytes or for the intact animal even though injected in very large amounts. No toxin in any way analogous to tetanus toxin is known to be produced by pneumococcus. Furthermore antibodies to the purified polysaccharides confer complete protection against infection

Therefore the single demonstrable patho

TABLE 1 FACTORS THAT INFLUENCE PATHOGENICITY OF SOME BACTERIAL SPECIES

BACTERIAL SPECIES	NATURE	SITE OF ACTION	MODE OF ACTION	SPECIFIC IMMUNITY TO INFECTION	COMMENT
<i>Pneumococcus</i>	Capsular polysaccharide	Phagocytes	Inhibits phagocytosis	Antipolysaccharide antibodies	Antibodies enhance phagocytosis No significant toxin identified
<i>Hemophilus influenzae</i>	Capsular polysaccharide	Phagocytes	Inhibits phagocytosis	Antipolysaccharide antibodies	Role of endotoxins factors unknown
<i>Streptococcus pyogenes</i>	M proteins on cell surface	Phagocytes	Inhibits phagocytosis	Anti M protein antibodies	Hyaluronic acid = not antigenic Antibodies to various toxins do not prevent infection but may mitigate it, e.g. antihyalinogenic toxin prevents rash of scarlet fever antistreptokinase inhibits digestion of fibrin by streptokinase plasminogen plasmin system
	Hyaluronic acid capsule	Phagocytes	Inhibits phagocytosis		
	Numerous exotoxins and extracellular enzymes	Multiple blood vessels red blood cells leukocytes myocardium etc	Cytotoxic hemolytic various hydrolytic enzyme reactions		
<i>Bacillus anthracis</i>	D polyglutamic acid capsule	Phagocytes	Inhibits phagocytosis		Antibodies to capsular material not protective See text
	Extracellular toxin	Generalized	Damages phagocytes produces edema and necrosis shock oligemia and death	Antibodies to toxin or possibly to sporeaneously toxoided derivatives	



TABLE 1 FACTORS THAT INFLUENCE PATHOGENICITY OF SOME BACTERIAL SPECIES (Continued)

BACTERIAL SPECIES	NATURE	SITE OF ACTION	MODE OF ACTION	SPECIFIC IMMUNITY TO INFECTION	COMMENT
<i>Pasteurella pestis</i>	Envelope or capsular antigen (Fraction I) carbohydrate protein complex	Phagocytes	Inhibits phagocytosis		Fraction I evokes protective antibodies in rats mice rabbits and monkeys when given in saline or oil protective to guinea pigs if given in oil in doses not exceeding 500 µg antibodies in VW protect mice against infection by virulent strains that lack envelope antigen role of Fraction I in mouse virulence is not clear
	VW antigen complex	Phagocytes	Inhibits phagocytosis of <i>P. pestis</i> by mouse cells	Antibodies to envelope antigen (Fraction I) antibodies to VW complex in mice	
	Extracellular protein toxin	Phagocytes liver (?) kidney (?)	Prevents destruction of <i>P. pestis</i> by damaging phagocytes		
<i>Corynebacterium diphtheriae</i>	Exotoxin protein	Cells of most tissues	Necrotizing inhibits protein synthesis inhibits oxidative processes possibly through interference with cytochrome b	Antitoxin	Toxin produced following infection with appropriate diphtherial bacteriophages
<i>Clostridium botulinum</i>	Exotoxin protein	Cholinergic nerve endings in peripheral autonomic and somatic fibers	Anticholinergic inhibits release of acetylcholine	Antitoxin	Six types of <i>Cl. botulinum</i> A B C D E F produce immunologically distinct toxins
<i>Clostridium welchii</i>	Lecithinase exotoxin	Lecithin of cell membranes and mitochondria	Cytolytic	Antilecithinase	

Collagenase	Collagen framework of intact tissues	Proteolytic	Destroys collagen framework in intact muscle. Antibodies to collagenase and hyaluronidase not protective against infection
Hyaluronidase	Intercellular ground substance	Depolymerizes hyaluronic acid	
Exotoxin protein	Motor neurons in cerebro spinal axis	Anticholinergic (?) abolishes synaptic inhibition	Toxin is bound by ganglioside of nervous tissue
O antigens polysaccharide protein phospholipid complex	Circulating phagocytes and RES cells serum factors small blood vessels	Inhibits phagocytosis in RES cells inhibits complement modifies fibrinogen potentialities effects of epinephrine etc	Antibodies to cells containing O antigen
<i>Clostridium tetani</i>			
<i>Salmonella typhosa</i>			
<i>V. antigen (polysaccharide)</i>	Phagocytes	Antiphagocytic	

TABLE I FACTORS THAT INFLUENCE PATHOGENICITY OF SOME BACTERIAL SPECIES (Continued)

BACTERIAL SPECIES	NATURE	SITE OF ACTION	MODE OF ACTION	SPECIFIC IMMUNITY TO INFECTION	COMMENT
<i>Pasteurella pestis</i>	Envelope or capsular antigen (Fraction I) carbohydrate protein complex	Phagocytes	Inhibits phagocytosis		Fraction I evokes protective antibodies in rats mice rabbits and monkeys when given in saline or oil protective to guinea pigs if given in oil in doses not exceeding 500 µg antibodies in VW protect mice against infection by virulent strains that lack envelope antigen role of Fraction I in mouse virulence is not clear
	VW antigen complex	Phagocytes	Inhibits phagocytosis of <i>P. pestis</i> by mouse cells	Antibodies to envelope antigen (Fraction I) antibodies to VW complex in mice	
	Extracellular protein toxin	Phagocytes liver (?) kidney (?)	Prevents destruction of <i>P. pestis</i> by damagunophagocytes		
<i>Corynebacterium diphtheriae</i>	Exotoxigenic protein	Cells of most tissues	Necrotizing inhibits protein synthesis inhibits oxidative processes possibly through interference with cytochrome b	Antitoxin	Toxin produced following infection with appropriate diphtherial bacteriophages
<i>Clostridium botulinum</i>	Exotoxigenic protein	Cholinergic nerve endings in peripheral autonomic and somatic fibers	Anticholinergic inhibits release of acetylcholine	Antitoxin	Six types of <i>C. botulinum</i> A B C D E F produce immunologically distinct toxins
<i>Clostridium Welchii</i>	Lecithinase exotoxin	Lecithin of cell membranes and mitochondria	Cytolytic	Antilecithinase	

Collagenase	Collagen framework of intact tissues	Proteolytic	Destroys collagen framework in intact muscle. Antibodies to collagenase and hyaluronidase not protective against infection
<i>Clostridium tetani</i>			
Hyaluronidase	Intercellular ground substance	Depolymerizes hyaluronic acid	
Exotoxin protein	Motor neurons in cerebro spinal axis	Anticholinergic (?) abolishes synaptic inhibition	Antitoxin Toxin is bound by ganglioside of nervous tissue
O antigens polysaccharide protein phospholipid complex	Circulating phagocytes and RES cells serum factors small blood vessels	Inhibits phagocytosis in rabbits complement modifies fibrinogen potentiates effects of epinephrine etc	Antibodies to cells containing O antigen
V <sub>1</sub> antigen (polysaccharide)	Phagocytes	Antiphagocytic	

genic factor in pneumococcus the capsular polysaccharide differs entirely from tetanus toxin both in its nature and mode of action and the mechanisms by which these two bacterial species cause disease are quite different Tetanus is a highly fatal disease caused by a toxic metabolic product of a microorganism that is incapable of multiplying in healthy tissue whereas in pneumococcal infections the invasive bacteria cause death only after extensive multiplication in tissues of the host

Many diseases caused by bacteria fall into either one of the two categories illustrated by the foregoing examples However a larger number belong to a third category in which the microorganisms exhibit multiple pathogenic qualities as shown in Table 1

Possession of an antiphagocytic component such as a capsule does not mean that this material is the most significant factor in virulence This is well illustrated by the anthrax bacillus in which all naturally occurring virulent strains are found to be encapsulated on the other hand encapsulated strains may be avirulent It is apparent that other factors have overriding importance as compared with the capsule

To determine precisely the part that a particular cell component plays in the pathogenicity of a bacterial species may be very difficult In pneumococcus the situation is deceptively simple since invasiveness can be shown by a variety of methods to depend on a single morphologic structure the polysaccharide capsule which is antigenic More or complete protection against infection is provided by antipolysaccharide antibodies In general demonstration that antibodies to a cell fraction are protective has afforded the most secure basis for inferring that it determines or influences pathogenicity In cases such as the anthrax bacillus in which antibodies to the polyglutamic acid capsule do not prevent infection more indirect methods must be used such as the demonstration in vitro that the capsule inhibits phagocytosis In Group A and Group C streptococci the hyaluronic acid capsules are not antigenic but appear to influence pathogenicity because it has been shown that infected animals may be afforded a degree of protection if they are injected with the enzyme hyalu-

ronidase which digests away the hyaluronic acid capsule in vivo

If antibodies to a cell product prevent infection this is very strong evidence that it is a virulence factor For example, antibodies to the M proteins on the surface of Group A streptococci are protective However it is much more difficult to specify the role of other cell products such as toxins or extracellular enzymes of streptococci in the infectious process because antibodies to them do not prevent disease although they may modify its course Demonstration that an isolated product is toxic such as the O hemolysin of several bacterial species can not be taken to mean that it has significance as a determinant of pathogenicity At the same time one should not infer that such products have no influence on the course of disease on the grounds that antibodies to them do not prevent initiation of infection It would seem to be more reasonable to consider the M proteins as the primary determinants of virulence and the other cell products as secondary candidates that may come into operation after infection has been established

Pathogenic staphylococci produce during growth both in cultures and in the course of naturally occurring infections a relatively potent toxic protein termed alpha toxin Non pathogenic strains do not produce it As little as 1 mcg of this substance is capable of killing a mouse (Bernheimer and Schwartz 1963) and about the same quantity injected into the skin of a rabbit results in the local development of an impressive necrotic lesion Striking damage in vitro to erythrocytes leukocytes platelets and tissue-culture cells can be demonstrated Despite these properties the extent to which alpha toxin contributes to the pathogenesis of staphylococcal disease is not clearly understood for some humans who have substantial amounts of circulating antitoxin are nevertheless susceptible to staphylococcal disease and the degree of protection afforded by specific antitoxin to artificially infected animals seems to depend on the experimental conditions selected by the investigator

The species listed in Table 1 have been chosen to exemplify the multiplicity of factors that are involved in the pathogenicity of

bacteria and to indicate something of their nature and mode of action. Complete information is not available for any species. Even in the case of pneumococcus which has been studied more extensively than any of the other species shown in Table 1 we are entirely ignorant of the factor or factors produced by it which cause death of the infected host. It is abundantly clear that the nontoxic polysaccharide capsules are of primary importance in enabling pneumococcus to be invasive and equally plain that death of the host cannot be ascribed to a direct toxic action of the polysaccharides.

1 *Nontoxic antigenic surface components which act by inhibiting phagocytosis and antibodies to which are protective.* The polysaccharide capsules of pneumococci already referred to are examples of this category. Through inhibition of phagocytosis they permit multiplication of bacteria in the tissues. Antibodies to them promote phagocytosis and protect against infection. Many other important pathogens such as *Hemophilus influenzae* and *Klebsiella pneumoniae* likewise owe their chief pathogenic activity to the protection against phagocytosis afforded by antigenic polysaccharide capsules.

A surface antigen of *Staphylococcus aureus* consisting principally of polysaccharide has been isolated by Morse (1962). This substance appears to be responsible for resistance to engulfment by phagocytes because absorption of antiserum with it removes opsonizing antibody; moreover, injection of the antigen into mice results in protection against intraperitoneal challenge with the homologous strain. However, the antigen appears to be absent from a number of other strains of *Staph. aureus* and the general significance of the observations has still to be evaluated.

Proteins on the bacterial surface may act in a similar way. Group A streptococci (*Streptococcus pyogenes*) can be differentiated into many types based on immunologically distinct acid-soluble M proteins which are present at the cell surface. Although Group A streptococci produce many other components, toxins and enzymes which may play a pathogenic role once infection has been established, the ability to initiate the disease process depends in the main on

the antiphagocytic activity of the M proteins. Moreover, anti-M antibodies are protective, whereas antibodies to other cell products, although they may modify the disease, do not prevent infection.

Naturally occurring, fully virulent *Pasteurella pestis* produces a surface material referred to as envelope antigen, capsular antigen or Fraction I which inhibits phagocytosis. It appears to be a carbohydrate-protein complex. Antibodies to it protect against experimental infection in mouse, rat, guinea pig, monkey and presumably in man (for review see Burrows, 1955). Burrows (1957) has described a second antiphagocytic material termed the VW antigen complex which is also toxic for leukocytes. Mouse virulent mutants of the plague bacillus occur that lack capsular antigen. In these strains the toxic antiphagocytic VW complex appears to be responsible for virulence. Antibodies to the capsular antigen (Fracton 1) alone do not protect mice against infection with noncapsulated strains that contain VW. However, virulent strains as encountered in nature possess both capsular and VW antigens and at least in experimental infections of mouse, rat and monkey, antibodies to both antiphagocytic materials do not appear to be necessary for protection but only the anticapsular antibodies. A maximum degree of protection may require both antibodies. Discovery of the VW antigens provides an explanation for the older observations that although fully virulent wild type *P. pestis* are encapsulated, not all encapsulated strains are virulent. It may be that the latter lack the VW antigens.

2 *Nontoxic antigenic surface components which inhibit phagocytosis but antibodies to which are not protective.* All pathogenic strains of *Bacillus anthracis* form capsules composed chiefly of D-polyglutamic acid which has antiphagocytic properties. However, capsulated but nonvirulent strains exist as mentioned earlier. The capsular material is antigenic but antibodies to it fail to protect animals against infection. A protective antigen, distinct from the polyglutamic acid capsule, is produced during the course of infection and is present in edema fluid which can be used to immunize animals against the disease. Under appropriate cultural con-

ditions as shown by Gladstone (1946), the protective antigen is formed in artificial culture medium and this finding is the basis for the preparation of the immunizing materials currently in use for the protection of man (Wright *et al* 1954 Strange and Belton 1954) An exotoxin described by Smith and Keppie and their colleagues (see Smith and Keppie 1955) is lethal for laboratory animals and produces edema following injection into the skin It consists of 3 components called Factors I II and III each of which is a protein and each of which by itself is nontoxic A combination of I and II is both edema producing and lethal while addition of III to the combination results in a decrease in its capacity to provoke edema but in an increase in lethality (See Stanley and Smith 1961 1963 and Beall Taylor and Thorne 1962) Of the 3 factors II is the only one which when injected by itself into guinea pigs immunizes them against infection with *B anthracis* while addition of the other two alters the capacity of II to do so Preparations currently used for immunization of man against anthrax contain II and III The antiphagocytic polyglutamic acid capsule although uniformly possessed by virulent strains, is not a part of the protective antigen

3 *Nontoxic nonantigenic surface components which inhibit phagocytosis* Two examples may be cited the hyaluronic acid capsules of streptococci of Groups A and C and the fibrin coating derived from the host which is deposited on the surface of staphylococci that form coagulase

In addition to M proteins at the cell surface which on the basis of immunologic evidence are the primary determinants of pathogenicity, Group A streptococci form a second surface component hyaluronic acid that is also antiphagocytic though less active than the M proteins Hyaluronic acid is nonantigenic in man and other animals because similar or identical polymerized acidic polysaccharides are distributed throughout the animal body as constituents of the intercellular ground substance Evidence for the pathogenic role of hyaluronic acid in streptococci was obtained originally by Hirst (1941) who found that experimental infections of mice by Group C streptococci can be modified

by injecting crude hyaluronidase preparations from leeches which act by depolymerizing the polysaccharide Hirst found no effect of hyaluronidase in Group A infections Subsequently Kass and Seastone (1944) using hyaluronidase prepared from bull testes reported a modifying effect on Group A infections of mice

For many years coagulase is a product of most strains of pathogenic staphylococci was considered to be a virulence factor Coagulase is an enzyme or enzyme activator which in concert with a factor present in plasma of certain species, converts fibrinogen to fibrin It was held that coagulase acts by causing a fibrin coat to be deposited on the bacteria which protects them from phagocytosis (Smith Hale and Smith 1947) However, a primary role for coagulase in the pathogenicity of *Staphylococcus pyogenes* has not been proved At the present time it is more reasonable to consider coagulase production as one of the properties which characterize the species *Staphylococcus pyogenes* along with many others such as production of golden pigment and  $\alpha$  hemolysin ability to ferment mannitol and susceptibility to lysis by a variety of bacteriophages

4 *Toxic antigenic surface components (O antigens) of the enterobacteria and other gram negative bacteria* These substances termed endotoxins, are lipopolysaccharides whose role in infections and other pathologic conditions has been studied extensively Endotoxins are discussed in detail in a chapter which follows

5 *Exotoxins which account for the principal pathogenic properties of bacteria* This category is exemplified by the classic exotoxins produced by *C diphtheriae* *C tetani* and *C botulinum* Injection into animals of the purified toxins in minute amounts reproduces the significant pathologic changes in each case and antibodies directed against the toxins are protective In none of these diseases is there invasion of the living tissues of the host indeed *C botulinum* should not be classed as an infectious agent The toxins of the 6 types of *C botulinum* are formed outside the animal body and, following ingestion are absorbed through the wall of the gut.

A brief description of the chemistry and the pharmacology of some important bacterial exotoxins is given in a subsequent section.

■ *Extracellular products of bacteria that are not the principal pathogenic factors but may contribute to the disease picture* Examples which fall into this category are numerous. In some instances the evidence is good for their participation in the natural disease; in many there is as yet no solid evidence that they contribute to the pathologic changes. In a third group, such as the hyaluronidases of many bacterial species and the collagenase of *C. welchii*, although the experimental evidence would appear to rule them out as significant pathogenic factors, doubt lingers as to whether or not it is adequate to exclude them entirely.

Many of the substances in this category are extracellular enzymes that are produced during or shortly after active growth of the bacteria *in vitro*. The manner in which they are released from the bacteria is not understood but may involve autolysis in some instances. Some of them—for example the proteolytic enzyme of *S. pyogenes* and the  $\epsilon$  toxin of *C. welchii*—are released as inactive precursors that subsequently undergo conversion to active enzyme or toxin respectively. The extracellular products are excreted during growth of the microorganisms also in natural disease as may be determined either by their pathologic effects or because specific antibodies to them appear during disease or in convalescence.

Group A streptococci produce a greater number of extracellular toxic and enzymatic products than are recognized for most other human pathogens. As many as 20 extracellular streptococcal antigens are detectable using normal pooled human gamma globulin as a source of antibodies (Halbert and Auerbach 1961) and only a minority of the antigens are identifiable with products of defined toxic or enzymatic activity. Of these, erythrogenic or scarlatinal toxin is responsible for the skin rash in scarlet fever, which is essentially a streptococcal infection caused by a toxin-producing strain in a person who has not acquired immunity to the toxin. But erythrogenic toxin has no influence on the ability of streptococci to initiate infection

so far as we are aware. Its effect becomes apparent after invasion by streptococci has occurred. Antibodies to the toxin which specifically neutralize its toxic action appear on recovery. The manner in which erythrogenic toxin affects the small blood vessels to produce the scarlatinal blush is unknown.

Most strains of hemolytic streptococci of Group A, as well as some Group C and G strains, produce an extracellular enzyme, streptokinase, which brings about digestion of fibrinogen and lysis of fibrin clots. The remarkable specificity of streptokinase for fibrin was first described by Tillett and Garner (1933) who termed it fibrinolysin. Subsequently it was shown by Christensen and MacLeod (1945) that it is a kinase which activates an enzyme precursor, plasminogen, in the plasma of man and animals to form the proteolytic enzyme plasmin. Plasmin has affinity for fibrin and fibrinogen both in the test tube and *in vivo*, and it seems likely that the thin exudates characteristic of streptococcal infections are due to the action of streptokinase. At any rate as soon as the antibody, antistreptokinase, makes its appearance during the disease in man, the exudates become thick and fibrinous, presumably because antibody has neutralized the kinase. It is not known whether streptokinase has other pathologic effects, although both it and streptococcal hyaluronidase have been invoked to explain the typically rapid extension of streptococcal cellulitis through digestion of fibrin barriers and the intercellular ground substance. Anti-streptokinase does not prevent infection, and information is not available that demonstrates whether it modifies the disease except as indicated above.

In addition to erythrogenic toxin and streptokinase, Group A streptococci produce two extracellular hemolysins or cytotoxins, streptolysin O and streptolysin S, neither of which has been shown to take part in the pathogenesis of the infection, although both are very powerful cytotoxins that cause death of animals when injected with very small doses. Streptolysin O is released during infection as indicated by antibody production to it. Streptolysin S, in all probability, is also excreted by the bacteria during disease but is not so easily detectable because either it



is not antigenic or else the antibody to it does not neutralize its toxic action

Streptolysin O is a protein which is readily oxidized to an inactive form by atmospheric oxygen. It is related antigenically to oxygen labile hemolysins produced by pneumococcus (pneumolysin), *Cl tetani* (tetanolysin) and *Cl welchii* ( $\theta$  toxin). Significantly none of the O hemolysins of these 3 species in common with streptolysin O has been shown to affect the course of natural or experimental disease.

Certain strains of Group A streptococci produce an extracellular proteolytic enzyme of the papain type which is activated by KCN and sulfhydryl compounds. The enzyme destroys M protein present on the surface of living cells and streptococci which produce large amounts are avirulent for mice. Enhancement of virulence by mouse passage is accompanied by a diminished capacity of strains to produce the proteinase (Elliott 1945). Although production of the enzyme may affect the virulence of the bacterial cells themselves through digestion of M protein there is no evidence that its production in vivo is detrimental to the tissues of the infected host.

Wilson (1957) has investigated the leukotoxicity of streptococci, a property first described in 1918 by Levaditi. This effect which is entirely distinct from the leukocidal action of the oxygen labile hemolysin streptolysin O occurs only after the bacteria are ingested and results in death of the phagocyte. Filtrates of leukotoxic streptococci do not damage the phagocytes and a protective effect of antiserum cannot be demonstrated. It appears that the leukotoxin is able to damage cells only if it is liberated within them and to this end the streptococci serve as Trojan horses. Leukotoxin is produced by many but not all strains of Group A streptococci and its formation is associated especially with certain M types such as Type 12. The formation of leukotoxin is not correlated with mouse virulence. Bernheimer, Lazarides and Wilson (1957) have documented an interesting association between leukotoxicity and the production by certain strains of an enzyme streptococcal DPNase which destroys the coenzyme diphosphopyridine nucleotide. The identity of leukotoxin

and DPNase has not been proved. As in the case of a number of other streptococcal extracellular products no correlation has been shown between their activity and virulence but as Wilson (1957) points out it is possible that in the contest between the invading bacteria and the cells of the host the leukotoxin might at times determine whether infection will be established or not. The same might be said of other activities of Group A streptococci.

Although apparently bearing no relation ship to the phenomenon just described streptolysins O and S are known to destroy leukocytes in vitro (Todd 1942, Bernheimer and Schwartz 1960). Recently both of these agents have been shown to bring about the release of hydrolytic enzymes from lysosomes isolated from various tissues (Weissmann, Keiser and Bernheimer 1963). In view of the lysosomal nature of the leukocytic granules it has been suggested that streptolysins O and S might disrupt the granules in intact white cells thereby releasing autolytic enzymes which in turn would digest other leukocyte structures resulting eventually in cell death. Consistent with this concept is the finding that early rapid and extensive lysis of cytoplasmic granules does indeed occur when leukocytes are exposed to streptolysins (Hirsch, Bernheimer and Weissmann 1963).

*Cl welchii* the most frequent cause of gas gangrene in common with other clostridia produces a powerful proteolytic enzyme collagenase which is capable of disintegrating muscle of laboratory animals in vivo by decomposing the reticular framework. Pulping of affected muscles is characteristic of clostridial myositis. However it is by no means clear that collagenase contributes in a significant way to the pathogenesis of infection by *Cl welchii*. Indeed the weight of evidence is against it since the specific antibody anticollagenase neither prevents infection nor appears to modify its course. Similarly antibodies to *Cl welchii* hyaluronidase do not prevent infection nor do they mitigate the progress of the lesion. Protection against infection depends on antibodies to the  $\alpha$  toxin, lecithinase which hydrolyzes lecithin to phosphoryl choline and a diglyceride. The lecithinase causes rapid lysis of erythrocytes

and necrosis of other cells and can account for most of the severe local effects following infection by *Cl welchii*. However it is not proved that death from gas gangrene is caused by  $\alpha$  toxin absorbed from the involved muscle and disseminated throughout the body. Pro found shock is seen in severe and fatal cases but free toxin is not demonstrable in the circulation nor does intravascular hemolysis occur except in cases of septic abortion in which in contrast with clostridial myositis the clostridia themselves are present in the blood.

#### VARIATIONS IN VIRULENCE ASSOCIATED WITH THE PRODUCTION OF DIFFERENT AMOUNTS OF A PATHOGENIC FACTOR

Variations in virulence between strains of the same species or type may depend not only on the presence or the absence of a factor known to be concerned in pathogenicity but also on the amount produced. For example in pneumococcus loss of capsulation through S  $\rightarrow$  R mutation results in loss of virulence. Mutants of intermediate virulence are commonly encountered and in strains of 3 different types it has been shown that virulence for mice is correlated with the amount of capsular polysaccharide produced *in vitro* (MacLeod and Krauss 1950). Studies by Wood (for summary see Wood 1951 52) explain in part the influence of different amounts of polysaccharide on virulence, since he has shown the pneumococci that possess large capsules are phagocytized with great difficulty. Moreover if a strain produces large amounts of polysaccharide a lag in opsonization results because the host must produce larger amounts of specific antibody to combine with the excess of free polysaccharide in the tissues and body fluids as well as that present on the surface of the bacteria themselves. The delay in opsonization permits more extensive multiplication. Differences in capsule size corresponding to the amount of polysaccharide formed *in vitro* can be demonstrated *in vivo*. In *Klebsiella pneumoniae* it has been found also that the amount of capsular polysaccharide and its rate of production bear a relationship to virulence (Ehrenworth and Baer, 1956).

A similar quantitative relationship may exist in diphtheria bacilli in which the exotoxin is the chief determinant of pathogenicity. The simplest explanation of why *gravis* strains in general cause a more severe type of diphtheria than *mitis* strains would be that they are able to produce more toxin *in vivo*. Pappenheimer and Johnston (1936) showed that the amount of iron present in the medium in which toxigenic diphtheria bacilli are growing determines the amount of toxin formed. Under the conditions of their studies the amount of toxin increased as the iron concentration was increased up to 100 mcg of iron per liter which yielded peak toxin production. As iron was increased beyond 100 micrograms per liter toxin production declined although growth improved. At 500 mcg Fe per liter toxin production no longer could be demonstrated. In explanation of the seemingly paradoxical relation between iron and toxin production it should be pointed out that whereas iron is essential for growth of the organisms no toxin is formed by the bacteria until the medium has been exhausted of iron (Mitsuhashi, Kurokawa and Kojima 1949). At iron concentrations found optimal for toxin formation by laboratory strains no correlation has been found between toxin production of different strains isolated from patients and the severity of the disease they cause. Mueller (1941) observed that the amount of iron present in diphtheritic membrane is many times that found to be optimal for toxin formation *in vitro* and that if a correlation exists between the amount of toxin and clinical severity it should be looked for under conditions where iron is in excess. Mueller tested a *gravis* strain and 3 *mitis* strains under these conditions and found that in the presence of excess iron the *gravis* strain formed from 12 to 15 times as much toxin as the *mitis* strains. Therefore it is tempting to relate differences in virulence of diphtheria bacilli to toxin production at high iron concentrations although this has not been shown to occur *in vivo*. Pappenheimer (1955) has reported the growth rate of a *gravis* strain to be about 3 times as fast as a *mitis* strain the generation times being 60 and 160 minutes respectively. If this difference in growth rate exists also in the diphtheritic membrane it might be expected that

is not antigenic or else the antibody to it does not neutralize its toxic action

Streptolysin O is a protein which is readily oxidized to an inactive form by atmospheric oxygen. It is related antigenically to oxygen labile hemolysins produced by pneumococcus (pneumolysin), *Cl tetani* (tetanolysin) and *Cl welchii* ( $\theta$  toxin). Significantly none of the O hemolysins of these 3 species in common with streptolysin O has been shown to affect the course of natural or experimental disease.

Certain strains of Group A streptococci produce an extracellular proteolytic enzyme of the papain type which is activated by KCN and sulphhydryl compounds. The enzyme destroys M protein present on the surface of living cells and streptococci which produce large amounts are avirulent for mice. Enhancement of virulence by mouse passage is accompanied by a diminished capacity of strains to produce the proteinase (Elliott 1945). Although production of the enzyme may affect the virulence of the bacterial cells themselves through digestion of M protein there is no evidence that its production in vivo is detrimental to the tissues of the infected host.

Wilson (1957) has investigated the leukotoxicity of streptococci, a property first described in 1918 by Levaditi. This effect which is entirely distinct from the leukocidal action of the oxygen labile hemolysin streptolysin O occurs only after the bacteria are ingested and results in death of the phagocyte. Filtrates of leukotoxic streptococci do not damage the phagocytes and a protective effect of antiserum cannot be demonstrated. It appears that the leukotoxin is able to damage cells only if it is liberated within them and to this end the streptococci serve as Trojan horses. Leukotoxin is produced by many but not all strains of Group A streptococci, and its formation is associated especially with certain M types such as Type 12. The formation of leukotoxin is not correlated with mouse virulence. Bernheimer, Lazarides and Wilson (1957) have documented an interesting association between leukotoxicity and the production by certain strains of an enzyme streptococcal DPNase which destroys the coenzyme diphosphopyridine nucleotide. The identity of leukotoxin

and DPNase has not been proved. As in the case of a number of other streptococcal extracellular products no correlation has been shown between their activity and virulence but as Wilson (1957) points out it is possible that in the contest between the invading bacteria and the cells of the host the leukotoxin might at times determine whether infection will be established or not. The same might be said of other activities of Group A streptococci.

Although apparently bearing no relation ship to the phenomenon just described streptolysins O and S are known to destroy leukocytes in vitro (Todd 1942, Bernheimer and Schwartz 1960). Recently both of these agents have been shown to bring about the release of hydrolytic enzymes from lysosomes isolated from various tissues (Weissmann, Keiser and Bernheimer 1963). In view of the lysosomal nature of the leukocytic granules it has been suggested that streptolysins O and S might disrupt the granules in intact white cells thereby releasing autolytic enzymes which in turn would digest other leukocyte structures resulting eventually in cell death. Consistent with this concept is the finding that early rapid and extensive lysis of cytoplasmic granules does indeed occur when leukocytes are exposed to streptolysins (Hirsch, Bernheimer and Weissmann 1963).

*Cl welchii* the most frequent cause of gas gangrene in common with other clostridia produces a powerful proteolytic enzyme collagenase which is capable of disintegrating muscle of laboratory animals in vivo by decomposing the reticular framework. Pulping of affected muscles is a characteristic of clostridial myositis. However it is by no means clear that collagenase contributes in a significant way to the pathogenesis of infection by *Cl welchii*. Indeed the weight of evidence is against it since the specific antibody anticollagenase neither prevents infection nor appears to modify its course. Similarly antibodies to *Cl welchii* hyaluronidase do not prevent infection nor do they mitigate the progress of the lesion. Protection against infection depends on antibodies to the  $\alpha$  toxin, a lecithinase which hydrolyzes lecithin to phosphoryl choline and a diglyceride. The lecithinase causes rapid lysis of erythrocytes

and necrosis of other cells and can account for most of the severe local effects following infection by *C. welchii*. However it is not proved that death from gas gangrene is caused by  $\alpha$  toxin absorbed from the involved muscle and disseminated throughout the body. Pro found shock is seen in severe and fatal cases but free toxin is not demonstrable in the circulation nor does intravascular hemolysis occur except in cases of septic abortion in which in contrast with clostridial myositis the clostridia themselves are present in the blood.

#### VARIATIONS IN VIRULENCE ASSOCIATED WITH THE PRODUCTION OF DIFFERENT AMOUNTS OF A PATHOGENIC FACTOR

Variations in virulence between strains of the same species or type may depend not only on the presence or the absence of a factor known to be concerned in pathogenicity but also on the amount produced. For example in pneumococcus loss of capsulation through S  $\rightarrow$  R mutation results in loss of virulence. Mutants of intermediate virulence are commonly encountered and in strains of 3 different types it has been shown that virulence for mice is correlated with the amount of capsular polysaccharide produced in vitro (MacLeod and Krauss 1950). Studies by Wood (for summary see Wood 1951-52) explain in part the influence of different amounts of polysaccharide on virulence since he has shown the pneumococci that possess large capsules are phagocytized with great difficulty. Moreover if a strain produces large amounts of polysaccharide a lag in opsonization results because the host must produce larger amounts of specific antibody to combine with the excess of free polysaccharide in the tissues and body fluids as well as that present on the surface of the bacteria themselves. The delay in opsonization permits more extensive multiplication. Differences in capsule size corresponding to the amount of polysaccharide formed in vitro can be demonstrated in vivo. In *Alebsiella pneumoniae* it has been found also that the amount of capsular polysaccharide and its rate of production bear a relationship to virulence (Ehrenworth and Baer 1956).

A similar quantitative relationship may exist in diphtheria bacilli in which the exotoxin is the chief determinant of pathogenicity. The simplest explanation of why *gravis* strains in general cause a more severe type of diphtheria than *mitis* strains would be that they are able to produce more toxin in vivo. Pappenheimer and Johnston (1936) showed that the amount of iron present in the medium in which toxigenic diphtheria bacilli are growing determines the amount of toxin formed. Under the conditions of their studies the amount of toxin increased as the iron concentration was increased up to 100 mcg of iron per liter which yielded peak toxin production. As iron was increased beyond 100 micrograms per liter toxin production declined although growth improved. At 500 mcg Fe per liter toxin production no longer could be demonstrated. In explanation of the seemingly paradoxical relation between iron and toxin production it should be pointed out that whereas iron is essential for growth of the organisms no toxin is formed by the bacteria until the medium has been exhausted of iron (Mitsuhashi, Kurokawa and Kojima 1949). At iron concentrations found optimal for toxin formation by laboratory strains no correlation has been found between toxin production of different strains isolated from patients and the severity of the disease they cause. Mueller (1941) observed that the amount of iron present in diphtheritic membrane is many times that found to be optimal for toxin formation in vitro and that if a correlation exists between the amount of toxin and clinical severity it should be looked for under conditions where iron is in excess. Mueller tested a *gravis* strain and 3 *mitis* strains under these conditions and found that in the presence of excess iron the *gravis* strain formed from 12 to 15 times as much toxin as the *mitis* strains. Therefore it is tempting to relate differences in virulence of diphtheria bacilli to toxin production at high iron concentrations although this has not been shown to occur in vivo. Pappenheimer (1955) has reported the growth rate of a *gravis* strain to be about 3 times as fast as a *mitis* strain the generation times being 60 and 160 minutes respectively. If this difference in growth rate exists also in the diphtheritic membrane it might be expected that

*gravis* strains would produce more toxin in vivo. The precise relationship of iron concentration to the bacteriophage infection of *C. diphtheriae* which must be present if toxin is to be formed (Freeman 1951) has not been defined (for discussion see Pappenheimer 1955).

### ENHANCEMENT OF VIRULENCE

Enhancement of bacterial virulence is readily demonstrable experimentally on animal passage of bacterial strains. For example most Group A streptococcal strains and some pneumococci on primary isolation from man are of low virulence for mice. By repeated mouse passage virulence of pneumococcus may be increased from an  $LD_{50}$  of 100 000 bacteria or more to a degree where less than 10 cocci uniformly cause fatal infection. Enhancement of virulence by animal passage results from selection of virulent mutants present in the original heterogeneous culture or that have arisen on multiplication in the animal body.

It is commonly believed that during the course of epidemic disease in man the virulence of the infecting agent increases. While this seems to be reasonable and may be true there is no objective evidence to support it. The many factors involved in the spread of an epidemic disease make it almost impossible to establish that virulence has increased. Perhaps the greatest difficulty in analysis lies in the fact that virulence for laboratory animals is rarely a measure of virulence for man and since virulence for man cannot be determined under accurately controlled conditions any inferences must be based on epidemiologic analysis. Such analysis has not brought forth proof of increasing bacterial or viral virulence during the course of a human epidemic. To the contrary it would appear more likely that a highly virulent and communicable mutant was selected through one means or another before the epidemic began. If this were not the case it is difficult to visualize how an epidemic could start.

A possible exception to the remarks in the preceding paragraph is the appearance of drug resistant mutants of bacteria under circumstances where large numbers of infected persons are treated over an extended period

or where the drugs are used in low dosage for prophylaxis. Under such circumstances sulfonamide resistant gonococci and Group A streptococci have appeared and have partially replaced the sulfonamide susceptible strains previously encountered as the causes of epidemic disease of man. There is no evidence that the resistant mutants are more virulent for normal man than susceptible strains. However the additional attribute of drug fastness which enables resistant strains to cause disease in persons treated with sulfonamides, can perhaps be termed an enhancement of virulence since sulfonamide sensitive strains are not able to cause disease under the same circumstances.

Virulence is also said to be increased by certain artificial methods such as the injection of bacteria suspended in mucin. Enhancement of virulence by such methods should be regarded as more apparent than real. Meningococci, typhoid bacilli, staphylococci and some other bacterial species are quite avirulent for mice and to cause death these animals must be injected in relatively enormous doses, often 0.1 to 1 ml of broth culture. The number of living organisms required to bring about a fatal infection does not differ markedly from the number of heat-killed bacteria or their toxic products which cause death on injection. If living meningococci or typhoid bacilli are suspended in a viscous protective medium such as mucin fatal infections result in mice after intraperitoneal injection of only a few bacteria. The small inoculum protected by a surrounding coating of mucin presumably multiplies until sufficient bacteria are present to constitute a lethal toxic dose. It may be added that studies of virulence in laboratory animals using bacteria suspended in mucin have provided little insight into the mechanisms involved in virulence and moreover have no relationship to virulence for man.

Just as the virulence of bacteria may be increased by selection through repeated animal passage so it may often decrease by continued cultivation on artificial media. The process again appears to be one of selection in this case of less virulent mutants. Many examples of such loss of virulence on laboratory media following isolation might be given of which only one will be discussed.

here *Cl septicum* a strict anaerobe not infrequently associated with wound infections in man produces a potent exotoxin when cultivated in meat broth following isolation from the infected tissue. If the organisms are transferred a few times in a chemically defined medium which supports luxuriant growth their capacity to produce this toxin is lost and at the same time the strain loses its virulence (Bernheimer, 1944). If such cultures are plated on blood agar the colonies are found to be rough in form as contrasted with the smooth colonies formed by freshly isolated virulent toxin producing strains. It seems probable that the chemically defined medium is lacking in some growth factor present in animal tissue which is required by the smooth virulent organisms but is not required by the rough mutants. The factor is apparently present in meat broth since the change from smooth to rough occurs more slowly on transfer in this medium.

## CHEMISTRY AND PHARMACOLOGY OF BACTERIAL TOXINS

### CLASSIC EXOTOXINS OF GRAM POSITIVE BACTERIA

Several examples of diffusible toxins produced by gram positive bacteria have been referred to already. These substances have been called exotoxins because they are found in filtrates of growing organisms exhibiting no visible evidence of autolysis or else are found to increase in amount parallel with growth. In some instances such as *Cl botulinum* and *Cl tetani* the yield of toxin is increased on autolysis. Exotoxins are characteristic of gram positive bacteria and are produced by many pathogenic species. Gram negative bacteria on the other hand produce lipopolysaccharide endotoxins which form a part of the O or somatic antigen and are intimately associated with the structural integrity of the cells. They are not liberated into the medium unless autolysis has occurred. An exception among gram negative bacteria is the type species *Shigella dysenteriae* that produces a very potent protein exotoxin the so-called shiga neurotoxin distinct from the endotoxin. Antibodies to the neurotoxin neutralize its toxicity but do not

TABLE 2 AMINO ACID COMPOSITION OF TETANUS AND BOTULINUS TOXINS AND OF RABBIT  $\alpha$  GLOBULIN (ANTIBODY TO PNEUMOCOCCAL POLYSACCHARIDES)

	TETANUS TOXIN <sup>1</sup>	BOTULINUS TOXIN TYPE A	RABBIT <sup>3</sup> GLOBULIN
	per cent	per cent	per cent
Nitrogen	15.7	16.3	16.0
Sulfur	1.04	0.44	1.32
Cystine	—	0.53	2.25
Cysteine	—	0.27	—
Methionine	1.78	1.06	1.40
Tyrosine	4.47 <sup>4</sup>	13.5	6.62
Tryptophane	0.91	1.86	2.70
Phenylalanine	4.91	1.17	5.49
Arginine	3.36	4.62	5.04
Histidine	1.15	1.03	1.53
Lysine	10.0	7.74	6.46
Aspartic acid	15.3	20.26	9.67
Glutamic acid	10.3	15.57	11.8
Isoleucine	9.36	11.94	4.39
Leucine	8.23	10.30	7.90
Threonine	5.13	8.49	13.22
Valine	5.39	5.29	10.22
Glycine	3.34	1.38	5.72
Alanine	4.09 <sup>4</sup>	3.92	5.68
Serine	5.27 <sup>4</sup>	4.36	10.92
Proline	3.66 <sup>4</sup>	2.60	8.56
Sedimentation constant	4.5S	17.3S	6.3S
Molecular weight	67 000	900 000	160 000

<sup>1</sup> Dunn M S, Camien H N and Pillemer L. Arch Biochem 1949 22 374-376

<sup>2</sup> Buehler H J, Schantz E J and Lamanna C. J Biol Chem 1947 169 253-302

<sup>3</sup> McFadden M L and Smith E L. J Biol Chem 1955 214 185-196

Smith E L, McFadden M L, Stockell A and Buettner Janusch V. J Biol Chem 1955 214 197-207

<sup>4</sup> Bizzini M, Turpin A and Raynaud M. Ann Pasteur Inst. In press

protect against infection. It is not established that shiga neurotoxin contributes to the pathogenic properties of *Sh dysenteriae* under natural conditions.

The toxins produced by *C diphtheriae*, *Cl tetani* and *Cl botulinum* type A have been isolated in highly purified form as heat labile proteins. Indeed the toxins of tetanus (Pillemer et al 1946) and type A botulinus

*gravis* strains would produce more toxin in vivo. The precise relationship of iron concentration to the bacteriophage infection of *C. diphtheriae* which must be present if toxin is to be formed (Freeman 1951) has not been defined (for discussion see Pappenheimer 1955).

## ENHANCEMENT OF VIRULENCE

Enhancement of bacterial virulence is readily demonstrable experimentally on animal passage of bacterial strains. For example, most Group A streptococcal strains and some pneumococci on primary isolation from man are of low virulence for mice. By repeated mouse passage virulence of pneumococcus may be increased from an LD<sub>50</sub> of 100 000 bacteria or more to a degree where less than 10 cocci uniformly cause fatal infection. Enhancement of virulence by animal passage results from selection of virulent mutants present in the original heterogeneous culture or that have arisen on multiplication in the animal body.

It is commonly believed that during the course of epidemic disease in man the virulence of the infecting agent increases. While this seems to be reasonable and may be true there is no objective evidence to support it. The many factors involved in the spread of an epidemic disease make it almost impossible to establish that virulence has increased. Perhaps the greatest difficulty in analysis lies in the fact that virulence for laboratory animals is rarely a measure of virulence for man and since virulence for man cannot be determined under accurately controlled conditions any inferences must be based on epidemiologic analysis. Such analysis has not brought forth proof of increasing bacterial or viral virulence during the course of a human epidemic. To the contrary it would appear more likely that a highly virulent and communicable mutant was selected through one means or another before the epidemic began. If this were not the case it is difficult to visualize how an epidemic could start.

A possible exception to the remarks in the preceding paragraph is the appearance of drug resistant mutants of bacteria under circumstances where large numbers of infected persons are treated over an extended period

or where the drugs are used in low dosage for prophylaxis. Under such circumstances sulfonamide resistant gonococci and Group A streptococci have appeared and have partially replaced the sulfonamide susceptible strains previously encountered as the causes of epidemic disease of man. There is no evidence that the resistant mutants are more virulent for normal man than susceptible strains. However the additional attribute of drug fastness which enables resistant strains to cause disease in persons treated with sulfonamides can perhaps be termed an enhancement of virulence since sulfonamide sensitive strains are not able to cause disease under the same circumstances.

Virulence is also said to be increased by certain artificial methods such as the injection of bacteria suspended in mucin. Enhancement of virulence by such methods should be regarded as more apparent than real. Meningococci, typhoid bacilli, staphylococci and some other bacterial species are quite avirulent for mice and to cause death these animals must be injected in relatively enormous doses, often 0.1 to 1 ml of broth culture. The number of living organisms required to bring about a fatal infection does not differ markedly from the number of heat-killed bacteria or their toxic products which cause death on injection. If living meningococci or typhoid bacilli are suspended in a viscous protective medium such as mucin fatal infections result in mice after intraperitoneal injection of only a few bacteria. The small inoculum protected by a surrounding coating of mucin presumably multiplies until sufficient bacteria are present to constitute a lethal toxic dose. It may be added that studies of virulence in laboratory animals using bacteria suspended in mucin have provided little insight into the mechanisms involved in virulence and moreover have no relationship to virulence for man.

Just as the virulence of bacteria may be increased by selection through repeated animal passage so it may often decrease by continued cultivation on artificial media. The process again appears to be one of selection in this case of less virulent mutants. Many examples of such loss of virulence on laboratory media following isolation might be given of which only one will be discussed.

here *Cl septicum* a strict anaerobe not infrequently associated with wound infections in man produces a potent exotoxin when cultivated in meat broth following isolation from the infected tissue. If the organisms are transferred a few times in a chemically defined medium which supports luxuriant growth their capacity to produce this toxin is lost and at the same time the strain loses its virulence (Bernheimer 1944). If such cultures are plated on blood agar the colonies are found to be rough in form as contrasted with the smooth colonies formed by freshly isolated virulent toxin producing strains. It seems probable that the chemically defined medium is lacking in some growth factor present in animal tissue which is required by the smooth virulent organisms but is not required by the rough mutants. The factor is apparently present in meat broth since the change from smooth to rough occurs more slowly on transfer in this medium.

## CHEMISTRY AND PHARMACOLOGY OF BACTERIAL TOXINS

### CLASSIC EXOTOXINS OF GRAM POSITIVE BACTERIA

Several examples of diffusible toxins produced by gram positive bacteria have been referred to already. These substances have been called exotoxins because they are found in filtrates of growing organisms exhibiting no visible evidence of autolysis or else are found to increase in amount parallel with growth. In some instances such as *Cl botulinum* and *Cl tetani* the yield of toxin is increased on autolysis. Exotoxins are characteristic of gram positive bacteria and are produced by many pathogenic species. Gram negative bacteria on the other hand produce lipopolysaccharide endotoxins which form a part of the O or somatic antigen and are intimately associated with the structural integrity of the cells. They are not liberated into the medium unless autolysis has occurred. An exception among gram negative bacteria is the type species *Shigella dysenteriae* that produces a very potent protein exotoxin the so-called shiga neurotoxin distinct from the endotoxin. Antibodies to the neurotoxin neutralize its toxicity but do not

TABLE 2 AMINO ACID COMPOSITION OF TETANUS AND BOTULINUS TOXINS AND OF RABBIT  $\gamma$ -GLOBULIN (ANTIBODY TO PNEUMOCOCCAL POLYSACCHARIDES)

	BOTULINUS		
	TETANUS TOXIN <sup>1</sup>	TOXIN TYPE A	RABBIT <sup>2</sup> GLOBULIN
	per cent	per cent	per cent
Nitrogen	15.7	16.3	16.0
Sulfur	1.04	0.44	1.32
Cystine	—	0.53	2.25
Cysteine	—	0.27	—
Methionine	1.78	1.06	1.40
Tyrosine	6.47 <sup>4</sup>	13.5	6.62
Tryptophane	0.91	1.86	2.70
Phenylalanine	4.91	1.17	5.49
Arginine	3.36	4.62	5.04
Histidine	1.15	1.03	1.53
Lysine	10.0	7.74	6.46
Aspartic acid	15.3	20.26	9.67
Glutamic acid	10.3	15.57	11.8
Isoleucine	9.36	11.94	4.39
Leucine	8.23	10.30	7.90
Threonine	5.13	8.49	13.22
Valine	5.39	5.29	10.22
Glycine	3.34	1.38	5.72
Alanine	4.09 <sup>4</sup>	3.92	5.68
Serine	5.27 <sup>4</sup>	4.36	10.92
Proline	3.66 <sup>4</sup>	2.60	8.56
Sedimentation			
constant	4.5S	17.3S	6.3S
Molecular weight	67 000	900 000	160 000

<sup>1</sup> Dunn M. S., Camien M. N. and Pillemer L. Arch. Biochem. 1949 22 374-376

Buehler H. J., Schantz, E. J. and Lamanna C. J. Biol. Chem. 1947 169 295-302

<sup>2</sup> McFadden M. L. and Smith E. L. J. Biol. Chem. 1955 214 185-196

Smith M. L., McFadden M. L., Stockell A. and Buettner Janusch V. J. Biol. Chem. 1955 214 197-207

<sup>4</sup> Bizzini B., Turpin A. and Raynaud M. Ann. Pasteur Inst. In press

protect against infection. It is not established that shiga neurotoxin contributes to the pathogenic properties of *Sh. dysenteriae* under natural conditions.

The toxins produced by *C. diphtheriae*, *Cl. tetani* and *Cl. botulinum* type A have been isolated in highly purified form as heat labile proteins. Indeed the toxins of tetanus (Pillemer *et al.* 1946) and type A botulinus



have been obtained in crystalline form (Abrams *et al* 1946 Lamanna *et al* 1946) These proteins in common with shiga neurotoxin are among the most powerful poisons known It has been estimated that 1 mg of crystalline tetanus or botulinus toxin is sufficient to kill 1 000 tons of guinea pig The minimal lethal dose of botulinus toxin for the mouse is only 20 000 000 molecules Different animal species show great variation in susceptibility to bacterial toxins (Metchnikoff 1905) Man horse and guinea pig are extremely susceptible to tetanus botulinus and diphtheria toxin The mouse and the rat are only about 1/1000th as sensitive as the guinea pig to diphtheria toxin The dog while very resistant to botulinus and tetanus toxins is highly sensitive to diphtheria toxin Rabbits are approximately 10 000 times as susceptible to the killing action of shiga neurotoxin as guinea pigs

Cold blooded animals are completely resistant to large doses of tetanus botulinus and diphtheria toxins with the interesting exception of the frog and certain lizards Injection of tetanus toxin into these amphibia has no effect at low temperatures but symptoms of tetanus appear when the creatures are kept at temperatures above 20 C

On the basis of the amount of purified toxin required to produce death ( $LD_{50}$ ) in a susceptible species such as the guinea pig tetanus and botulinus toxin the most poisonous substances known are about 400 times as toxic as diphtheria toxin The reason for the difference may lie in the fact that tetanus and botulinus toxins have selective affinity and toxicity for limited portions of the nervous system whereas diphtheria toxin is a general poison that is taken up by and affects any cells it comes in contact with

Chemical analysis of bacterial toxins has not provided an explanation for their extraordinary toxicity Reasonably complete information on amino acid composition of tetanus and type A botulinus toxin is available as shown in Table 2 in which for the sake of comparison data are presented for a well characterized protein rabbit  $\gamma$  globulin antibody to pneumococcal polysaccharides No unusual chemical groupings that can account for toxicity have been discovered Dunn *et al* (1949) have noted that in tetanus and type A botulinus toxins the ratios of aspartic

acid to glutamic acid and of isoleucine to leucine are reversed as compared with most other proteins that have been studied Toxicity appears to depend on the spatial configuration of amino acids and peptide chains within the intact protein molecule and procedures which alter the protein are likely to cause loss of toxicity More recent analyses of tetanus toxin diphtheria toxin staphylococcal  $\alpha$  toxin and the  $\epsilon$  prototoxin of Type D *C. welchii* indicate that these do not differ substantially in amino acid composition from the total bacterial protein

### TOXOID FORMATION

A variety of agents which react with bacterial toxins cause irreversible loss of toxicity without loss of antigenicity or of power to combine with antitoxin All of these reagents apparently attack free amino groups they include iodine ketene (an acetylating agent) and diazonium salts However, the most commonly used reagent is dilute formaldehyde It was discovered by Glenn and Hopkins and by Ramon that crude diphtheria toxin could be completely detoxified by treatment with dilute formalin (0.4-0.5%) at slightly alkaline pH The reaction is usually complete after 3 or 4 weeks at 37 C The detoxified product termed *anatoxine* by Ramon (1928) and *toxoid* by Glenn and Hopkins (1923) retains its immunologic specificity and antigenic properties Tetanus and botulinus toxoids may be prepared in a similar manner by treatment of the corresponding toxins with formalin Diphtheria and tetanus toxoids are used on a large scale for active immunization of man against diphtheria and tetanus

The change from toxin to toxoid is a property common to most bacterial toxins and is a process which can occur spontaneously to a certain extent even at low temperatures This spontaneous detoxification without parallel loss in immunologic combining power was observed by Paul Ehrlich in 1903 who was in fact the first to use the term *toxoid*

### PHARMACOLOGIC ACTION OF DIPHTHERIA TETANUS AND BOTULINUS TOXINS AND LECITHINASE OF *C. WELCHII*

The pharmacologic action of each of these toxins is different Diphtheria toxin causes damage to almost all types of cell in the sus

ceptible animal whereas the action of botulinus toxin is restricted to cholinergic nerve endings in peripheral autonomic and somatic fibres and tetanus toxin appears to affect only the motor neurons in the cerebrospinal axis. As noted above, the selectivity of action of tetanus and botulinus toxins can well account for their extraordinary toxic effect as measured by their  $LD_{50}$  in susceptible animals. The  $\alpha$  toxin of *Cl welchii* is a lecithinase.

Pappenheimer and his associates (for review see Pappenheimer 1955) have accumulated suggestive evidence that the toxicity of diphtheria toxin is due to its interference with the cytochrome system of the cells of susceptible animals. Toxin is formed by diphtheria bacillus only in the presence of oxygen and a supply of iron less than is necessary for optimal growth. In studies of the Park Williams 8 strain which is used in most laboratories for toxin production it has been shown that bacteria harvested from cultures in which an amount of iron optimal for toxin formation is present have a very low iron content and that all iron-containing respiratory enzymes are reduced in amount. This is particularly striking in the case of cytochrome  $b_1$ , the principal respiratory pigment to which 9/10ths of the hemin iron is bound. As toxin is produced by iron depleted cells, coproporphyrin III is also excreted into the medium. The ratio of toxin to porphyrin is 1:4, the same as is present in iron-containing respiratory enzymes. This observation suggested to Pappenheimer that toxin may be related to the protein portion of diphtherial cytochrome  $b_1$  and that toxin may cause injury to the cells of susceptible animals by interfering with cytochrome  $b_1$ , a respiratory pigment which is similar to diphtherial cytochrome  $b_1$  and like it is concerned in succinate oxidation. This ingenious scheme to account for the toxicity of diphtheria toxin has not yet been proved but strong indirect evidence for it has been presented.

Macfarlane and Datta (1954) have shown that succinoxidase activity of mitochondria is reduced markedly by the  $\alpha$  toxin (lecithinase) of *Cl welchii*. The mechanism is distinct from that proposed for diphtheria toxin and is associated with hydrolysis of lecithin in the mitochondria (for discussion see review by Macfarlane 1955). Macfarlane

points out that the decrease in the oxidative processes of the cells causes a shift in metabolism to glycolysis. When this occurs the accumulation of organic acids would further damage the cells of the host. Lecithinase of *Cl welchii* is also strongly hemolytic in vitro or on intravenous injection in animals because of digestion of lecithin of the red cell membrane. However, hemolysis is not a feature of the local infection clostridial myositis but does occur often to a marked degree in the bacteremia of septic abortions in which *Cl welchii* is the infecting agent. The genesis of the profound shock and death seen in severe clostridial myositis is unknown. Because there is no evidence of hemolysis it has been suggested that the general effects are due not to toxin carried throughout the body via the bloodstream but to some other product elaborated in the affected muscle.

In contrast with the action of diphtheria toxin and lecithinase of *Cl welchii*, botulinus and tetanus toxins act only on the nervous system (for review see Wright 1955). The parallelism between the sites of action of acetylcholine and botulinus toxin made it appear probable that botulinus toxin has an anticholinergic action and it has been shown that the toxin acts very widely on all parts of the peripheral nervous system that are cholinergic, whether they are preganglionic or postganglionic components of the autonomic system or are the motor innervation of skeletal muscles. The studies of Burgen, Dickens and Zatman (1949) demonstrated that botulinus toxin depresses the release of acetylcholine and the pharmacologic effects can be explained best on this basis.

Whereas botulinus toxin acts on peripheral nerves, the action of tetanus toxin is in the cerebrospinal axis only and there is no clear evidence that it has any action on peripheral nerves. From its site of introduction tetanus toxin travels to the central nervous system along peripheral nerves. Early studies suggested travel within the axon itself but the later work of Baylis and his colleagues (1952) indicates strongly that the toxin moves centripetally in the interneuronal tissue spaces propelled by the pressure from contracting muscles and enters the interstitial tissue fluid of the central nervous system at the point of emergence of the peripheral nerve trunks from the spinal cord. Its effect

have been obtained in crystalline form (Abrams *et al* 1946 Lamanna *et al* 1946) These proteins in common with shiga neurotoxin are among the most powerful poisons known It has been estimated that 1 mg of crystalline tetanus or botulinus toxin is sufficient to kill 1 000 tons of guinea pig The minimal lethal dose of botulinus toxin for the mouse is only 20 000 000 molecules Different animal species show great variation in susceptibility to bacterial toxins (Metchnikoff 1905) Man horse and guinea pig are extremely susceptible to tetanus botulinus and diphtheria toxin The mouse and the rat are only about 1/1000th as sensitive as the guinea pig to diphtheria toxin The dog while very resistant to botulinus and tetanus toxins is highly sensitive to diphtheria toxin Rabbits are approximately 10 000 times as susceptible to the killing action of shiga neurotoxin as guinea pigs

Cold blooded animals are completely resistant to large doses of tetanus botulinus and diphtheria toxins with the interesting exception of the frog and certain lizards Injection of tetanus toxin into these amphibia has no effect at low temperatures but symptoms of tetanus appear when the creatures are kept at temperatures above 20 °C

On the basis of the amount of purified toxin required to produce death ( $LD_{50}$ ) in a susceptible species such as the guinea pig tetanus and botulinus toxin the most poisonous substances known are about 400 times as toxic as diphtheria toxin The reason for the difference may lie in the fact that tetanus and botulinus toxins have selective affinity and toxicity for limited portions of the nervous system whereas diphtheria toxin is a general poison that is taken up by and affects any cells it comes in contact with

Chemical analysis of bacterial toxins has not provided an explanation for their extraordinary toxicity Reasonably complete information on amino acid composition of tetanus and type A botulinus toxin is available as shown in Table 2 in which for the sake of comparison data are presented for a well characterized protein rabbit  $\gamma$  globulin antibody to pneumococcal polysaccharides No unusual chemical groupings that can account for toxicity have been discovered Dunn *et al* (1949) have noted that in tetanus and type A botulinus toxins the ratios of aspartic

acid to glutamic acid and of isoleucine to leucine are reversed as compared with most other proteins that have been studied Toxicity appears to depend on the spatial configuration of amino acids and peptide chains within the intact protein molecule and procedures which alter the protein are likely to cause loss of toxicity More recent analyses of tetanus toxin diphtheria toxin staphylococcal  $\alpha$  toxin and the  $\epsilon$  prototoxin of Type D *C. welchii* indicate that these do not differ substantially in amino acid composition from the total bacterial protein

### TOXOID FORMATION

A variety of agents which react with bacterial toxins cause irreversible loss of toxicity without loss of antigenicity or of power to combine with antitoxin All of these reagents apparently attack free amino groups they include iodine ketene (an acetylating agent) and diazonium salts However, the most commonly used reagent is dilute formaldehyde It was discovered by Glenny and Hopkins and by Ramon that crude diphtheria toxin could be completely detoxified by treatment with dilute formalin (0.4-0.5%) at slightly alkaline pH The reaction is usually complete after 3 or 4 weeks at 37 °C The detoxified product termed *anatoxine* by Ramon (1928) and *toxoid* by Glenny and Hopkins (1923) retains its immunologic specificity and antigenic properties Tetanus and botulinus toxoids may be prepared in a similar manner by treatment of the corresponding toxins with formalin Diphtheria and tetanus toxoid are used on a large scale for active immunization of man against diphtheria and tetanus

The change from toxin to toxoid is a property common to most bacterial toxins and is a process which can occur spontaneously to a certain extent even at low temperatures This spontaneous detoxification without parallel loss in immunologic combining power was observed by Paul Ehrlich in 1903 who was in fact the first to use the term *toxoid*

### PHARMACOLOGIC ACTION OF DIPHTHERIA TETANUS AND BOTULINUS TOXINS AND LECITHINASE OF *C. WELCHII*

The pharmacologic action of each of these toxins is different Diphtheria toxin causes damage to almost all types of cell in the sus

organisms has lagged far behind knowledge of factors which influence virulence

Although communicability must be possessed by naturally pathogenic species it is not confined to virulent microorganisms. The bacteria which comprise the normal flora of the skin the oropharynx the alimentary tract and the external genitalia of healthy persons are by definition communicable even though they rarely cause disease in normal persons. Indeed certain of the microorganisms forming the normal flora of the alimentary canal may be essential for health through the synthesis of vitamins or the partial digestion of nutrients for which the host does not possess enzymes. For example much of the vitamin *B* requirement of man and animals appears to be supplied by intestinal bacteria which are able to synthesize it. In ruminants bacteria in the stomachs play a very important part in the digestion of food.

In contrast with microorganisms that are communicable but nonvirulent are those that are virulent when introduced into the animal body but are not communicable from experimentally infected animals to normal cage mates. For example pneumococci are virulent when introduced experimentally into mice by almost any route. One or two cocci of the most virulent strains will cause the death of mice following intraperitoneal injection but normal mice kept in the same cage remain well.

Because communicability and virulence are not necessarily interdependent it would appear that epidemic strains of a bacterial species are those in which natural selection has operated to permit the survival of variants which are concurrently highly communicable and virulent.

The site of the lesions in the infected host has an important influence on communicability and this may have a bearing on the non-communicability of pneumococcal infections in mice where the disease does not involve the respiratory tract primarily even though the bacteria are placed directly within the trachea but instead produces a rapidly fatal bacteremic infection. If the disease were localized in the lungs and mice had the capacity to cough and spit pneumococcal infection might occur as an epizootic disease in this species.

The influence of the site of the lesion on communicability is illustrated by plague in man which occurs in two well recognized clinical forms called bubonic and pneumonic plague. The bubonic form is spread from rats to man through the bite of the rat flea *Buboes* form in areas adjacent to the point where the organisms are introduced through the bite of the flea and although invasion of the bloodstream commonly occurs secondary cases of plague do not arise because the bubonic form is essentially a closed infection. On the other hand pneumonic plague caused by the same bacterial species *Pasteurella pestis* is contagious to those in proximity to the sufferer who expels enormous numbers of plague bacilli during coughing and in the copious discharges from the respiratory tract. Secondary cases of pneumonic plague occur under certain undefined environmental circumstances because the open nature of the pulmonary lesions permits dissemination of the bacilli.

A less exotic illustration of the influence of the site of the lesions on the communicability of bacteria is afforded by the hemolytic streptococcus. The expression dangerous carrier has come into current usage to indicate infected individuals from whom secondary cases arise commonly. Several independent investigations have shown that patients with purulent lesions discharging on the body surface as for example otitis media cervical adenitis and wound infections are more likely to transmit infection than patients with uncomplicated streptococcal pharyngitis. The reason for this difference in communicability from different lesions caused by the same streptococcal strains may be because purulent lesions discharge more streptococci into the environment contaminating heavily everything in contact with the patient whereas from patients with uncomplicated pharyngitis fewer organisms are discharged into the environment therefore there is less chance of secondary cases arising.

**Size of the Inoculum** In the case of virulence of bacteria the size of the inoculum is of great significance. The same may also be true of communicability though this has not been demonstrated. When a microorganism

is on motor neurons exclusively Ambache (1948) and his associates have demonstrated in local tetanus intoxication of the eye that the formation of acetylcholine is greatly reduced. There is evidence therefore that both botulinus and tetanus toxin act through interference with cholinergic mechanisms and thru the mode of action in each case may be similar. The great difference in the action of the toxins is that tetanus acts centrally in the cerebrospinal axis whereas botulinus toxin affects only cholinergic nerve endings in peripheral somatic and autonomic fibers. The degeneration of anterior horn cells observed in tetanus intoxication is believed to be a secondary manifestation and is not the cause of the characteristic symptomatology.

It has been known since the 19th century that nervous tissue binds or fixes tetanus toxin *in vitro*. In this respect brain tissue is more effective than spinal cord and gray matter more than white. The constituent responsible for fixation of the toxin has been identified as ganglioside (van Heyningen 1959, van Heyningen and Miller 1961) and the capacity of ganglioside to form a complex with toxin depends in part on its content of sialic acid whose free carboxyl group is essential for fixation. It is interesting and perhaps significant that ganglioside also fixes strychnine and certain other drugs which by suppressing synaptic inhibition have the same neurophysiologic action as tetanus toxin (van Heyningen 1963). Interaction of toxin with ganglioside does not appear to bring about any enzymatic alteration of this constituent of nervous tissue and hence the precise manner in which combination of toxin with ganglioside may affect motor neurons remains to be elucidated. The low order of sensitivity of the frog to tetanus toxin can be attributed to the fact that frog nervous tissue has very little capacity to fix toxin (van Heyningen and Woodman 1963).

### THE RELATION OF HYPERSENSITIVITY TO DISEASE PROCESSES

Although hypersensitivity to components of the bacterial cell undoubtedly plays a considerable part in the type and the progress of the lesions in many infectious diseases especially those of chronic nature little spe-

cific information is available except in the case of tuberculosis. In tuberculosis in guinea pigs the effect of hypersensitivity to tuberculo-proteins which in themselves are non-toxic can be demonstrated readily. Normal guinea pigs injected with as much as 2 ml of Koch's Old Tuberculin do not suffer any obvious ill effects. On the other hand if a tuberculous guinea pig during the 8th or the 10th week of infection is injected with as little as 0.01 ml of tuberculin death may occur within a few hours. An intense inflammatory reaction occurs at the site of injection and throughout the body wherever tubercles are present.

The generalized tuberculin reaction in the guinea pig which ends in death illustrates the ill effects of the allergic reaction in its most severe form. Less spectacular but nonetheless damaging effects due to the hypersensitive state that uniformly exists and the presence in the lesions of tubercle bacilli and their products almost certainly occur in the course of the tuberculous process in man and animals. It is likely that the destructiveness of the tuberculous lesions in the adult type of tuberculosis with extensive caseation and fibrosis is strongly influenced by hypersensitivity.

In other chronic bacterial infections for example brucellosis hypersensitivity to the bacteria and their products likewise may have an important influence on the character and the persistence of the lesions. However this has not been clearly defined. Up to the present time there is no good evidence that the hypersensitive state is part of the host's defense against infection.

### THE COMMUNICABILITY OF BACTERIA

A great deal more is known of the factors influencing the pathogenicity of micro-organisms than of the properties they must possess in order to be communicable from host to host under natural conditions. Pathogenicity is more susceptible to experimental study because of its end result—disease—whereas organisms may be transmitted from host to host without any detectable pathologic alteration. For this reason the study of properties concerned in communicability of micro-

control of infectious disease by quarantine of the sick for example would be a relatively simple procedure. However since perfectly well individuals either recovered from infection or who at no time have shown clinical evidence of disease may harbor the fully virulent pathogen it is apparent that for most infectious diseases quarantine of the sick is not an effective control procedure.

The development of a carrier state in normal individuals who at no time have shown evidence of disease is of more significance in many instances than the persistence of the agent in recovered patients. This is true in the case of meningococci for example where the number of normal persons who carry the microorganism exceeds by far those who develop meningococcal infection. In this instance the person who never has been ill is of greater importance in the transmission of the microorganisms than those recovered from infection. With the typhoid bacillus on the other hand the individual who has recovered from the disease is the primary source for the maintenance and the dissemination of the bacteria. Therefore it is apparent that no general rule can be laid down concerning the circumstances under which pathogens can best survive in the body. With different microorganisms affecting different areas of the body the conditions of parasitism vary.

The ability to survive outside the animal body in which disease is produced or in which they can be carried intermittently may have considerable significance in the communicability of many bacteria. The most striking illustrations of organisms having the ability to survive outside the animal body are the spore forming pathogens. Anthrax spores may survive in pasture land for as long as 12 years as described by Pasteur in 1881 and animals feeding on it may be infected. The spores of the tetanus bacillus and the anaerobic bacteria associated with gas gangrene which find their way to the soil especially through the feces of man and animals survive there for long periods of time and on introduction into wounds may germinate and cause disease. In the case of organisms existing only in a vegetative phase the capacity to survive outside the animal body is not nearly so great as for spore formers although

if vegetative forms are dried rapidly they may remain viable for long periods of time under natural climatic conditions.

Numerous studies of the environment have been made in an attempt to explain the epidemiology of hemolytic streptococcal infections of the respiratory tract. In places where the disease is endemic living streptococci can be isolated from clothing, bedding and other articles as well as from dust and from the air itself. The general contamination of the environment was long considered as being of great significance in the spread of streptococcal disease and based on this circumstantial evidence elaborate procedures were set up in military establishments to reduce it. Oiling of floors to hold down dust borne streptococci had no influence on the incidence of disease nor did sterilization of air by glycol aerosols or ultraviolet light. The studies of Rammelkamp, Wannamaker, Perry and their colleagues (for review see Rammelkamp 1955-56) have explained why such procedures are ineffective. They have presented strong evidence that transmission is direct from man to man and does not appear to occur commonly at a distance through the air or because of dried streptococci present in the dust or on fomites. Direct contact with fresh moist secretions of the infected person appears to be the important means of transmission. Indeed these investigators have demonstrated that living but dried Group A streptococci present in floor dust are not infectious for man even when instilled into the nasopharynx in large numbers. It would appear likely that they are taken up and destroyed by phagocytic cells during the prolonged lag phase before growth can be initiated from the dried state.

Likewise pneumococci have been isolated from the environment in places where pneumococcal pneumonia was epidemic and it has been assumed that this environmental contamination is of importance in spread. Similarly in the case of epidemic staphylococcal infections in hospitals which constitute such a serious problem at the present time airborne spread is considered as being of great importance although no solid evidence is available to prove it.

Unless it is shown otherwise it would ap

TABLE 3 OPERATION OF CHANCE IN PNEUMOCOCCAL CARRIER STATE

Number of carriers of	
1 pneumococcal type	1 317
2 pneumococcal types	200
3 pneumococcal types	27
4 pneumococcal types	4
Ratio of carriers of	
2 types to carriers of 1 type	$\frac{200}{1\,317} = 0.152$
3 types to carriers of 2 types	$\frac{27}{200} = 0.135$
4 types to carriers of 3 types	$\frac{4}{27} = 0.148$

is transmitted from one individual of a species to another of the same species communicable variants alone are involved presumably because only these variants would have survived in the original host. The size of the inoculum here should play only a small part since most of the bacterial population would consist of communicable variants. However in transmission from one species of animal to another it is probable that the size of the inoculum is of considerable significance because the conditions necessary for survival in the new host are likely to be different from those in the original host. If the inoculum is large there is more chance of communicable mutants being present than if it is small.

**Chance.** In transmission from one host to another of the same species chance may determine largely whether or not the new host becomes a carrier although even in individuals of the same species there may be differences which influence the capacity to become carriers. By chance is meant simply the accident of coming in contact with a bacterial species or strain. The operation of chance is well illustrated in the communicability for man of pneumococci (Hodges and MacLeod 1946). From 40 to 70 per cent of normal adult humans carry one or more of the many serologic types of pneumococci in the pharynx at any given time some persons carrying as many as 5 distinct types all at once. The ratios of carriers of 2

types to 1 type 3 types to 2 types etc as shown in Table 3 are approximately the same indicating that in the main chance has determined how many types of these communicable organisms are carried by an individual.

However further analysis of pneumococcal carriers shows that host factors also operate in determining whether or not an individual will become a carrier of a particular pneumococcal type (MacLeod, Hodges, Heidelberger and Bernhard 1945). In a population of which half the members were immunized against pneumococcus Types 1, 2, 5 and 7 it was found that significantly fewer of the immunized men were carriers of these types as compared with the nonimmunized. It is apparent therefore that pneumococci are not as communicable to immune persons as to nonimmunized. Analogous data are not available for other bacteria although a similar state of affairs probably exists for diphtheria bacilli also. In this case immunization of approximately half of the susceptible population affords a very considerable measure of protection in the nonimmunized portion as was found true also for pneumococcal infection in a partially immunized population. The chain of transmission from one susceptible individual to another appears to be broken by the interposition of immune individuals who are less able to act as carriers. In other words the immune status of the individual in the case of pneumococci and probably diphtheria bacilli exerts a powerful influence on communicability.

#### Survival Capacity in Immune Subjects

Whereas with certain bacteria the immune individual is less likely to become or remain a carrier than the nonimmune the capacity of many bacterial species to survive in immune subjects is an important contributing factor in communicability. An obvious example is the persistence of typhoid bacilli in the biliary tracts of a proportion of those who have recovered from the disease whence the organisms are discharged into the intestinal canal and through subsequent fecal contamination of food or water become transmitted to susceptible individuals. If the reservoir of infectious agents consisted only of persons actually sick with infection the

- ments and factors affecting the production of toxin of *Clostridium septicum* J Exp Med 80 321 331
- Bernheimer A W Lazzarides P and Wilson A T 1957 Diphosphopyridine nucleotidase as an extracellular product of streptococcal growth and its possible relationship to leukotoxicity J Exp Med 106 27 37
- Bernheimer A W and Schwartz L L 1960 Leucocidal agents of haemolytic streptococci J Path Bact 79 37-46
- 1963 Isolation and composition of staphylococcal alpha toxin J Gen Microbiol 30 455-468
- Burgen A ■ V Dickens F and Zatman L J 1949 The action of botulinum toxin on the neuro muscular junction J Physiol 109 10 24
- Burrows T W 1955 The basis of virulence for mice of *Pasteurella pestis* in Mechanisms of Microbial Pathogenicity pp 152 175 New York Cambridge Univ Press
- Christensen L R and MacLeod C M 1945 A proteolytic enzyme of serum characterization activation and reaction with inhibitors J Gen Physiol 28 559 583
- Dunn M S Camien M N and Pillemer L 1949 The amino acid composition of tetanal toxin Arch Biochem 22 374 376
- Ehrenworth L and Baer H 1956 The pathogenicity of *Klebsiella pneumoniae* for mice the relationship to the quantity and rate of production of type-specific capsular polysaccharide J Bact 72 713 717
- Ehrlich P 1903 Über Giftcomponenten des Diphtherie Toxins Berlin klin Wschr 40 793 825 848
- Elliott S D 1945 A proteolytic enzyme produced by group A streptococci with special reference to its effect on the type specific M antigen J Exp Med 81 573 592
- Freeman V J 1951 Studies on the virulence of bacteriophage infected strains of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* J Bact 61 675 688
- Gladstone G P 1946 Immunity to anthrax protective antigen present in cell free culture filtrates Brit J Exp Path 27 394-418
- Glenny A T and Hopkins B E 1923 Diphtheria toxin as an immunising agent Brit J Exp Path 4 283 288
- Halbert ■ P and Auerbach T 1961 The use of precipitin analysis in agar for the study of human streptococcal infections IV Further observations on the purification of group A extracellular antigens J Exp Med 113 131 158
- Harris Smith P W Smith H and Keppie J 1957 Production *in vitro* of the anthrax toxin previously recognized *in vivo* J Gen Microbiol 16 vii
- Hirsch J G Bernheimer A W and Weissmann G 1963 Motion picture study of the toxic action of streptolysins on leucocytes J Exp Med 118 223 228
- Hirst G K 1941 The effect of a polysaccharide splitting enzyme on streptococcal infection J Exp Med 73 493 506
- Hodges R G and MacLeod C M 1946 Epidemic pneumococcal pneumonia I Description of the epidemic Am J Hyg 44 183 192
- 1946 Epidemic pneumococcal pneumonia II The influence of population characteristics and environment Am J Hyg 44 193 206
- 1946 Epidemic pneumococcal pneumonia IV The relationship of nonbacterial respiratory disease to pneumococcal pneumonia Am J Hyg 44 231 236
- 1946 Epidemic pneumococcal pneumonia V Final consideration of the factors underlying the epidemic Am J Hyg 44 237 243
- Hodges R G MacLeod C M and Bernhard W G 1946 Epidemic pneumococcal pneumonia III Pneumococcal carrier studies Am J Hyg 44 207 230
- Kass ■ H and Seastone C V 1944 The role of the mucoid polysaccharide (hyaluronic acid) in the virulence of group A hemolytic streptococci J Exp Med 79 319 330
- Lamanna C Eklund H W and McElroy O E 1946 Botulinum toxin (type A) in cluding a study of shaking with chloroform as a step in the isolation procedure J Bact 52 1 13
- Levaditi C 1918 Action leucotoxique du streptocoque des plaies de guerre Considerations sur le mecanisme de la phagocytose C r soc biol 81 1064 1067
- Macfarlane M G 1955 On the biochemical mechanism of action of gas gangrene toxins in Mechanisms of Microbial Pathogenicity pp 57 77 New York Cambridge Univ Press
- Macfarlane M G and Datta N 1954 Observations on the immunological and biochemical properties of liver mitochondria with reference to the action of *Clostridium welchii* toxin Brit J Exp Path 35 191 202
- MacLeod C M Hodges R G Heidelberger M and Bernhard W G 1945 Prevention



appear more reasonable to consider that when bacteria in the dried state are present as general contaminants of the environment this may have no more significance than as a reflection of the fact that disease caused by them is taking place in that environment. It should not be assumed that these dried environmental deposits have a significant part to play in spread.

Survival in water has an important bearing on communicability of enteric pathogens such as those causing typhoid or paratyphoid fevers, dysentery and cholera, all of which may be water borne diseases though not transmitted in this manner exclusively.

The ability to survive and multiply in an intermediate host or vector is of prime significance with some microorganisms, of which plague is a good example. The plague bacillus causes natural disease in many species of rodents in different parts of the world and is transmitted to man through the bite of various species of fleas which are ectoparasites of the rodents. The bacilli are able to multiply and cause disease in the upper portion of the alimentary tract of the fleas which derive their infection from the rodent reservoir. The ability of plague bacilli to infect fleas is thus a crucial factor in their communicability. *Pasteurella tularensis*, an organism related to the plague bacillus and the cause of tularemia, has its reservoir also in various rodent species and may be carried by arthropods such as ticks and deer flies which feed on the rodents. Although in the United States the disease in man is most often acquired during the skinning and the dressing of wild rabbits, it is also possible for transmission to occur through the bite of the arthropod vectors.

Flies (*Musca domestica*) have long been suspected as being of importance in the transmission of typhoid fever. In this instance however the insect occupies a relatively passive role in that the fly is not infected by the typhoid bacillus, nor does it become a permanent carrier of the microorganisms. The feet of the fly and other parts of its body surface become contaminated during contact with feces and then the organisms may be transferred mechanically to human food.

From this discussion it can be seen that certain of the general properties necessary

for communicability of various bacterial species can be defined. However, as noted earlier, little information of a specific nature is available. With pathogenic species the communicable organisms carried in the body usually possess the cell structures known to be associated with virulence though this is not uniformly true. Pneumococci isolated from normal humans are in the encapsulated state, a potentially pathogenic state, and the nonencapsulated rough variants are not found. On the other hand, hemolytic streptococci isolated from carriers not infrequently have lost the M protein which is known to be concerned in their virulence. Therefore these organisms must possess a component or components other than the important M protein which prevent their destruction by the body. It can be argued that such avirulent variants, lacking M protein, may have no pathogenic significance. However, on transmission to a nonimmune host the capacity to produce M protein may be regained because of mutation or possibly as a result of genetic recombination through mechanisms such as transduction or transformation.

## REFERENCES

- Abrams A, Kegeles G and Hottel G A  
1946 The purification of toxin from *Clostridium botulinum* type A. *J Biol Chem* 164: 63-79.
- Ambache N, Morgan R S and Wright G P  
1948 The action of tetanus toxin on the rabbits' iris. *J Physiol* 107: 45-53.
- 1948 The action of tetanus toxin on the acetylcholine and cholinesterase contents of the rabbits' iris. *Brit J Exp Path* 29: 408-418.
- Bail O and Weil E  
1911 Beitrage zum Studium der Milzbrandinfektion. *Arch Hyg* 73: 218-264.
- Baylis J H, MacIntosh J, Morgan R S and Wright G P  
1952 The effect of sclerosis of the nerve trunk on the ascent of tetanus toxin in the sciatic nerve of rabbits and the development of local tetanus. *J Path Bact* 64: 33-45.
- Beall F A, Taylor M J and Thorne C H  
1962 Rapid lethal effect in rats of a third component found upon fractionating the toxin of *Bacillus anthracis*. *J Bact* 83: 1274-1280.
- Bernheimer A W  
1944 Nutritional require

- Wright, G G Green T W and Kanode R G Jr 1954 Studies on immunity in anthrax V Immunizing activity of alum precipitated protective antigen J Immunol 73 387 391
- Wright G P 1955 Botulinus and tetanus toxins in Mechanisms of Microbial Pathogenicity p 78 New York Cambridge Univ Press

- of pneumococcal pneumonia by immunization with specific capsular polysaccharides *J Exp Med* 82 445 465
- MacLeod C M and Krauss M R 1950 Relation of virulence of pneumococcal strains for mice to the quantity of capsular polysaccharide formed *in vitro* *J Exp Med* 92 19
- Martin E P and Kerby G P 1950 The splanchic removal in rabbits during fatal bacteremias of the circulating organisms and of superimposed non pathogenic bacteria *J Exp Med* 92 45 49
- Metchnikoff E 1905 *Immunity in Infective Diseases* New York Cambridge Univ Press
- Miles A A 1955 The meaning of pathogenicity in *Mechanisms of Microbial Pathogenicity* pp 116 New York Cambridge Univ Press
- Mitsuhashi S Kurokawa M and Kojima Y 1949 Study on the production of the toxin by *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* I Conditions for the toxin production by the shaking culture method *Jap J Exp Med* 20 261 269
- Morse S J 1962 Isolation and properties of a surface antigen of *Staphylococcus aureus* *J Exp Med* 115 295 311
- Mueller J H 1941 Toxin production as related to the clinical severity of diphtheria *J Immunol* 42 353 360
- Pappenheimer A M Jr 1955 The pathogenesis of diphtheria in *Mechanisms of Microbial Pathogenicity* pp 40 56 New York Cambridge Univ Press
- Pappenheimer A M Jr and Johnson S J 1936 Studies in diphtheria toxin production I The effect of iron and copper *Brit J Exp Path* 17 335 341
- Pasteur L 1881 Sur la longue duree de la vie des germes charbonneux III sur leur conservation dans les terres cultivées *C r acad sci* 92 209 211
- Pillemer L Wittler R and Grossberg H H 1946 The isolation and crystallization of tetanal toxin *Science* 103 615 616
- Ramon G 1928 L'anatoxine diphterique Ses proprietes—ses applications *Ann Inst Pasteur* 42 959 1009
- Rammelkamp C H Jr 1955 56 *Epidemiology of streptococcal infections* Harvey Lect 51 113 142
- Reed L J and Muench H 1938 A simple method of estimating fifty per cent end points *Am J Hyg* 27 493 497
- Ribi E Haskins W T Landy M and Milner K C 1961 I Relationship of chemical composition to biological activity *Bact Rev* 25 427-436
- Smith H and Keppie J 1955 Studies on the chemical basis of the pathogenicity of *Bacillus anthracis* using organisms grown *in vivo* in *Mechanisms of Microbial Pathogenicity* pp 126 151 New York Cambridge Univ Press
- Smith W Hale J H and Smith M M 1947 The role of coagulase in staphylococcal infections *Brit J Exp Path* 28 57 67
- Stanley J L and Smith H 1961 Purification of factor I and recognition of a third factor of the anthrax toxin *J Gen Microbiol* 26 49 66
- 1963 The three factors of anthrax toxin their immunogenicity and lack of demonstrable enzymic activity *J Gen Microbiol* 31 329 337
- Strange R E and Belton F C 1954 Studies on a protective antigen produced *in vitro* from *Bacillus anthracis* purification and chemistry of the antigen *Brit J Exp Path* 35 153 165
- Tillett W S and Garner R L 1933 The fibrinolytic activity of hemolytic streptococci *J Exp Med* 58 485 502
- Todd E W 1942 The leucocidin of group A haemolytic streptococci *Brit J Exp Path* 23 136 145
- van Heyningen W E 1959 Tentative identification of the tetanus toxin receptor in nervous tissue *J Gen Microbiol* 20 310 320
- 1963 The fixation of tetanus toxin strychnine serotonin and other substances by ganglioside *J Gen Microbiol* 31 375 387
- van Heyningen W E and Muller P A 1961 The fixation of tetanus toxin by ganglioside *J Gen Microbiol* 24 107 119
- van Heyningen W E and Woodman R J 1963 The fixation of tetanus toxin by frog brain *J Gen Microbiol* 31 389 392
- Weissmann G Keiser H and Bernheimer A W 1963 Studies on lysosomes III The effects of streptolysins O and S on the release of acid hydrolases from a granular fraction of rabbit liver *J Exp Med* 118 205 222
- Westphal O Luderitz O and Staub A M 1961 Bacterial endotoxins *J Med Pharm Chem* 4 497 504
- Wilson A C 1957 The leukotoxic action of streptococci *J Exp Med* 105 463-484
- Wood W B Jr 1951 52 *Studies on the cellular immunology of acute bacterial infections* Harvey Lect 47 72 98

by the wall of fibrin deposited about many abscesses

Thus anatomic barriers commonly are considered to serve in host defense by limiting penetration and dissemination of microorganisms. In some situations however structures within the body appear to permit passage of microbes but not phagocytic cells thus offering havens in which bacteria are protected from usually effective cellular host defense systems. Consider for example the pathogenesis of subacute bacterial endocarditis. The microbe involved in this severe or even fatal disease is commonly an alpha hemolytic streptococcus otherwise an essentially avirulent organism. Alpha streptococci can be introduced into the tissues or even the bloodstream of the normal person with production of little or no disease but in the rare individual with a congenital anomaly of the large blood vessels or with endocardial scars from previous rheumatic fever a few alpha hemolytic streptococci may alight on these abnormal areas and multiply locally to produce the typical lesions called vegetations. Microbes disseminated to other tissues from these vegetations are promptly ingested by phagocytes and destroyed but apparently the anatomic arrangements within the vegetation itself afford shelter for the streptococci from host defense mechanisms.

Similarly a piece of devitalized bone a sequestrum may provide for staphylococci or other organisms causing osteomyelitis a focus which cannot be penetrated by phagocytic cells because of the microanatomy and such a situation usually leads to persistent infectious disease.

#### ANTIBODY AND PHAGOCYTES

Antibody complement and phagocytic cells usually are considered to be the main agencies by which the host rids itself of invading microbes. These systems will be discussed in detail in following chapters therefore they are mentioned here only for continuity and for a few general comments. Humoral and cellular mechanisms for combating invading microbes or their toxins were discovered at approximately the same time (1890) and together formed the corner stone for the science of immunology. For decades a polemic raged between workers

led by Von Behring and Pfeiffer who claimed that humoral factors were mainly responsible for host resistance to infectious diseases and scientists under Metchnikoff at the Pasteur Institute who proposed on the contrary that such resistance was due mainly to the action of phagocytic cells. Signs of this argument still remain but the debate now has been largely resolved in favor of both sides. Most types of microbes survive exposure to serum even in the presence of specific antibody. Invading bacteria by and large are killed following engulfment by phagocytic cells. However phagocytes are able to engulf bacteria efficiently only if serum factors (opsonin and/or antibody) are present. Antibodies also clearly play a central role in neutralizing microbial exotoxins. Thus effective host resistance requires conjoint action of both humoral and cellular factors.

The crucial role of antibodies and of phagocytic cells in resistance to infectious diseases is established beyond doubt. The enormous increase in susceptibility to sepsis of persons lacking antibodies (agammaglobulinemia) or lacking phagocytes (agranulocytosis) illustrates clearly the importance of these factors in host defense. However much remains to be learned about their precise mechanism of action. For instance much is known about the nature of antibodies in terms of their site of formation and chemical properties but little can be said concerning the intimate nature of their action. Similarly although we know much about morphologic and other alterations accompanying the killing of bacteria within phagocytes the substance or system responsible for the bactericidal effect remains in doubt or in some cases is completely unknown.

#### THE CHEMICAL MICROENVIRONMENT

Many phenomena indicate that host resistance is based at least in part on factors other than anatomic barriers, antibodies and phagocytes. One such phenomenon has to do with localization of bacterial infectious diseases. Most microbes show a distinct preference for multiplication in a certain tissue or organ of a given host. For example streptococci pneumococci and meningococci usually

## 8

## Host Resistance to Infectious Disease

In modern times endemic patterns of infectious diseases are prevalent in which the causative microbes may be widely disseminated in the population but only rarely produce detectable disease. For example, fully virulent forms of staphylococci, pneumococci, meningococci, diphtheria and certain clostridia are found frequently in cultures taken from skin, mucous membranes or intestinal contents of healthy persons. In this setting the critical determinant of disease is not merely exposure or contact but rather the net result of the complex interaction between virulence factors of the microbes and resistance mechanisms of the host.

It is our aim in this chapter to consider from the overall point of view some of the general and the specific mechanisms involved in host resistance to bacterial infectious diseases.

## BASIC MECHANISMS OF HOST RESISTANCE

## ANATOMIC BARRIERS

Perhaps the most obvious of the host resistance mechanisms is that of barriers posed by skin, mucous membranes and other anatomic structures. The surface linings of the intestines, the upper respiratory tract and the skin in the normal state are swarming with untold numbers of microorganisms, whereas beneath these surfaces in the submucosa or the subcutaneous tissue sterile conditions usually prevail. Microbes on the

surface are unable to pass freely through these anatomic barriers.

That such barriers do in fact function to protect the host against infectious disease is obvious. Everyone knows that skin lacerations commonly are followed by local infectious disease or that a perforated appendix leads to peritonitis. However, recent observations indicate that even in the healthy person skin and mucous membranes are penetrated relatively frequently by small numbers of bacteria. Minute abrasions accompany such everyday activities as chewing and digesting food, brushing teeth, shaving or scratching the skin and so forth. Apparently tiny breaks in the barrier permit passage of the surface microorganisms for if cultures are taken sufficiently frequently bacteria of the normal intestinal or skin flora can be recovered on occasions from tissues, regional lymph nodes and even from the bloodstream (see Hirsch 1960). This invasion by bacteria probably occurs several times daily in everyone, but the small numbers of relatively nonvirulent organisms so introduced are eliminated readily by other host defense mechanisms and no disease ensues.

In addition to skin and mucosal barriers there exist within the tissues other membranes such as muscle, fascia, joint synovia or pleural surfaces which act in many instances to localize an infectious process. Furthermore, in injured or inflamed areas new barriers may be formed as exemplified

centa this localization being in all probability responsible for the cardinal clinical feature of the disease namely abortion (Smith *et al* 1961). The inability of anti bodies and phagocytes to reach the fetal placenta cannot explain the unbridled proliferation of brucella organisms at this site for infection of pregnant cattle with various other types of bacteria does not show similar localization. Extracts of fetal placenta infected or normal have been found to produce marked stimulation of the growth of brucellae but not of other microbes on artificial media or inside cells in tissue culture. Extracts similarly prepared from various other tissues and organs of the same animals have no such action on brucella cultures. The active agent in the fetal placenta extracts has now been isolated and identified as erythritol a 4-carbon polyalcohol (Pearce *et al* 1962). This substance is present in fetal placental tissues and fluids but not in various maternal organs or in the fetus itself (Williams *et al* 1962). The evidence thus suggests that trace amounts of this organic chemical which accumulate for reasons unknown in the fetal placenta determine by means of some vitaminlike effect on brucellae to a considerable extent the pathogenesis of infectious abortion in cattle. Perhaps similar mechanisms at present totally unknown operate to determine localization of other bacterial infections at other organ or tissue sites.

In addition to their action on invading microbes local physicochemical conditions in tissues also undoubtedly influence the function of the classic humoral and cellular host defense agencies. In contrast with the situation in guinea pig tuberculosis mentioned above the kidney and especially the renal medulla exhibits striking susceptibility to sepsis in many other laboratory models of infectious diseases as well as in some clinical situations. Detailed study of this phenomenon shows as the probable explanation for localization of disease a delayed and grossly deficient phagocytic reaction in the renal medulla (Rocha and Fekety 1964). The high salt concentration of interstitial fluids about the renal tubules might be responsible for impairing phagocytic function both by interfering with mechanisms of chemotaxis

and with phagocytosis itself (Chernew and Braude 1962). Ordinary avirulent coliform bacteria also commonly produce infectious disease in the urinary tract. Many of these microbes are killed by the combined action of antibody and complement and it has been suggested that the urinary tract manifests unusual susceptibility to sepsis by coliforms because the ammonia normally produced and excreted by the kidneys inactivates essential complement components thus impairing or eliminating completely this humoral defense mechanism (Beeson and Rowley 1959).

## THE INFLAMMATORY REACTION

Thus far our discussion has dealt largely with interactions between bacteria and humoral cellular and tissue factors of the normal host. In reality the conflict between host and microbe is waged not in normal body tissues or fluids but rather in a tissue environment modified by the conflict itself. This modified tissue environment is termed inflammation or the inflammatory reaction (Florey 1962; Spector and Willoughby 1963).

When bacteria are introduced into tissues the irritating effects of the organisms themselves or of toxins produced by them or of the procedure of their introduction set in motion a sequence of vascular humoral and cellular alterations. The initial change in small blood vessels probably brought on by reflex nerve action is constriction. Soon thereafter the vessels relax and enter into a stage of prolonged dilatation. Blood flow through the dilated capillaries slows and the endothelial surfaces change so that leukocytes adhere to the vessel walls. Vascular permeability increases due probably in the early phase of inflammation to the pharmacologic action of histamine and serotonin released from damaged mast cells in the area. Plasma leaks out of the capillaries and the postcapillary venules and is diluted in the tissue juices leading to activation of enzymes and production of substances which alter the vessels so as further to increase their permeability. Leukocytes adhering to the endothelium begin to move about and eventually crawl through the capillary wall probably

contact man via the oropharynx yet if disease results from this contact it typically appears in the pharynx with streptococci the lungs with pneumococci and the membranous coverings of the central nervous system with meningococci. Many other examples could be given of organ or tissue localization of infectious agents which can not be attributed to the route of exposure. This localization can hardly be based primarily on interactions of the bacteria with phagocytes or antibodies, since these are available to any part of the host via the bloodstream. Local chemical and physical conditions must differ in various tissues and subtle features of this tissue microenvironment must determine whether or not a particular organism is able to survive and multiply.

Biochemical conditions might determine the suitability of a given site for proliferation of bacteria in one of two ways. A particular tissue in the host might contain antibacterial substances or conditions which kill or inhibit the microorganism or on the other hand nutrient or vitaminlike substances essential for virulent proliferation of the microbe might be lacking in some tissues but not in others. This aspect of host resistance has been but little investigated and in most instances nothing is known about the local physiochemical conditions playing a role in determining the fate of invading bacteria. Examples selected from among the few cases in which these microenvironmental agents have been studied will serve to emphasize and illustrate the phenomenon.

Many chemical substances found in tissues do in fact exhibit antimicrobial activity under certain circumstances in vitro. Long and short-chain fatty acids, surface active lipids or proteins, basic peptides, amines and heme compounds occur in some tissues at concentrations higher than those which kill certain bacteria in the test tube. Although studies along these lines are numerous in no instance is there convincing evidence of specific antibacterial action by one of these compounds in vivo (reviewed by Skarnes and Watson 1957 and by Hirsch 1960).

The difficulty of establishing the role of a tissue antibacterial substance in determining the course of an infectious process may

be illustrated by the following example. The guinea pig is notoriously susceptible to tuberculosis yet the guinea pig kidney exhibits remarkable resistance to this same disease. If virulent tubercle bacilli are inoculated directly into the guinea pig kidney the animal develops a progressive fatal illness. At autopsy, extensive tuberculosis is found in many organs and tissues but the kidneys regularly appear to be spared even though the original renal inoculation site is healed completely (Birkhauser, 1950). With this phenomenon in mind studies have been done attempting to extract from kidney tissue a substance capable of killing or inhibiting tubercle bacilli in culture. A crystalline compound with potent antimycobacterial activity has been isolated from the kidney extracts and identified as spermine (Hirsch and Dubos 1952), an organic amine of unknown function distributed widely and variously in tissues. Further study in the laboratory on the mechanism of action of spermine on tubercle bacilli has revealed that spermine is in fact not itself directly inhibitory for the organisms; rather spermine is degraded by an amine oxidase present in the culture medium and it is some product of this enzymatic attack which then acts to kill or block growth of the microbes (Hirsch 1953). Thus possible antimycobacterial activity of spermine in tissues if it occurs would depend not only on the tissue concentration of spermine but also on the concentration of the amine oxidase and on the presence of physicochemical conditions conducive to the enzymatic reaction and stabilization of the antibacterial product. The complexity of this situation has made it impossible to reach definitive conclusions on the role of this system in determining the fate of tubercle bacilli in the infected animal.

An example of a tissue chemical agent which favors growth of a specific microbe and may determine the localization of an infectious disease comes from very recent work on the pathogenesis of brucellosis. Study of the distribution of viable *Brucella abortus* in various organs and tissues of infected cattle when abortion is imminent shows a striking pattern of the  $10^{14}$  brucellae found in the entire animal approximately 75 per cent are localized in the fetal pla

in most instances understood poorly or not at all but they might act directly or indirectly (1) to alter capacity of the microbe for virulent behavior (2) to affect one or more of the basic host resistance mechanisms—*anatomic barriers*, *phagocytic cells*, *humoral factors* or *local tissue biochemistry* or (3) to change the timing or the qualitative or quantitative nature of the inflammatory response

Obviously no attempt can be made here to review thoroughly the broad range of environmental effects and organic disorders which alter more or less resistance to infectious agents and their toxins. Rather we shall discuss briefly a few examples to illustrate the wide range of factors which come into play and to point out the general lack of understanding of mechanisms in this field.

#### HORMONES AND HOST RESISTANCE

Hormones secreted by the various endocrine glands serve to regulate a wide variety of physiologic functions. Circumstantial and in some cases direct evidence indicates that many of these hormones exert an influence on host resistance mechanisms (reviewed by Kass 1960).

Many observers have commented on relationships between thyroid function and susceptibility to infections. The reports are somewhat conflicting with the effects of too much or too little thyroid hormone apparently varying depending on the host and the parasite species studied. In experimental tuberculosis in rabbits hyperthyroidism is associated with increased host resistance whereas hypothyroid animals are more susceptible than normal and develop spreading disease (Lurie *et al.* 1959a, b). On the other hand hyperthyroidism results in lowering of resistance of rats and mice to experimental streptococcal or staphylococcal infections (Reichlin and Glaser 1958; Smith and Dubos 1956).

Epinephrine administered locally say into the skin can interfere profoundly with the host's ability to handle various bacteria injected into the same site (Miles *et al.* 1957). The primary action of the hormone in this situation appears to be a protracted vasoconstriction with as a result delay in the development of an inflammatory response

and alteration in the tissue microenvironment.

Most extensively studied of the hormonal effects on infectious disease is that of the adrenal glucocorticoid hormones. These hormones have been used widely during the past decade for treating various diseases. Their administration in large doses to man or various animals is regularly accompanied by an impressive increase in susceptibility to invasion by a wide variety of microorganisms including ordinarily avirulent species or latent microbes which are somehow awakened from their state of hibernation to become invasive. There is no evidence that cortisone exerts any direct effect on microbes rather it somehow produces alterations in basic host defense mechanisms (reviewed by Germuth 1956; Robinson 1956). An animal under the influence of excess adrenal glucocorticoids exhibits striking suppression of the inflammatory response to a wide variety of noxious agents including invading microbes. Cortisone apparently somehow prevents the increased capillary permeability and the leukocyte emigration which underlie inflammation; this action undoubtedly accounts at least in part for the lowered host resistance to infection. Cortisone and similar steroids also influence carbohydrate and protein metabolism and thus possibly alter the local tissue biochemical environment so as to render it more suitable for microbial proliferation. No definitive evidence on this possibility is available. Very high levels of cortisone can lead to suppression of antibody formation but this action is probably not primarily responsible for the depressed host resistance (Germuth 1956). Functional capacity of polymorphonuclear leukocytes and of reticuloendothelial macrophages appears not to be significantly altered by excess adrenal hormones although there is some disagreement on this point (see Germuth 1956; Hirsch and Church 1961).

#### THE INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS DISEASES ON HOST RESISTANCE

Various disseminated diseases especially in their terminal phases are associated with a striking increase in susceptibility to infectious agents. Patients with leukemia, carcinoma, uremia and other severe illnesses



by penetrating between endothelial cells. Through a poorly understood mechanism of attraction called chemotaxis, the leukocytes move toward the invading organisms and if conditions are suitable engulf and destroy them. Excessive exudation of fluid into the inflamed area leads to dilatation of lymphatic vessels and increased drainage into regional lymph nodes. Microbes caught up in this lymph drainage are filtered in the nodes, being taken up by fixed mononuclear phagocytes which are part of the reticulo-endothelial system. Fibrinogen in the extravasated fluid may clot particularly at the periphery of the inflamed zone to form a fibrin barrier serving to limit direct spread of the microbes and influencing fluid and cellular exchange between the inflammatory area and the surrounding normal tissue.

Thus when bacteria gain access to tissues a race of sorts ensues. The outcome depends in no small measure on the rapidity and the nature of the inflammatory reaction which provides a mechanism for the controlled escape of humoral and cellular resistance agencies from the bloodstream so that they may establish contact with the invading microbes.

The physicochemical features of the inflammatory site remain to be studied thoroughly but they differ in many regards from those of normal tissue. Blood stasis, influx of phagocytic cells with glycolytic metabolism, growth of the microbes themselves, damage and even death of host cells produce in the inflamed zone a slightly acid pH, a lowered oxygen tension, retention of CO<sub>2</sub>, accumulation of lactic acid and undoubtedly numerous other changes (Dubos 1954, 1955). Some of these biochemical alterations may act, for instance by damaging blood vessels to perpetuate or increase the inflammatory reaction; they also undoubtedly affect both the capacity of the microbes to thrive and the functional efficiency of classic humoral and cellular defense systems.

An inflammatory reaction which is overly vigorous or uncontrolled multiplication of the bacteria may lead to tissue necrosis with further changes in the microenvironment in which the battle is fought. Of course tissue necrosis is not the result to be desired by the host but in at least some situations

necrosis and the attendant local biochemical changes may serve to limit further multiplication of the parasite and act ultimately as a host defense mechanism. Consider for instance microscopic features of the typical lesion of tuberculosis, the tubercle (Canetti 1955). The center of such a lesion is composed of structureless partially autolysed necrotic tissue, and surrounding this central core is a cuff of viable tissue heavily vascularized and infiltrated with phagocytic cells. Tubercle bacilli die off and disappear from the central necrotic area whereas they continue to thrive in the surrounding inflamed living tissue. Thus is presented the paradoxical situation of continued growth of the invading microbes in the area containing an abundant supply of the classic host defense systems: humoral and cellular, and death of the organisms in the avascular, acellular zone.<sup>1</sup>

So little is known about the chemical composition of necrotic tissue that no definitive statements are possible as to the physicochemical components which might exert antimicrobial effects therein. Accumulation of fatty acids, porphyrins and amines, liberation of basic proteins and peptides and release of antibacterial substances from disrupted phagocytic cells may well be responsible at least in part for suppressing microbial growth in such areas (see Hirsch 1960). Synergists and antagonists for these antibacterial substances from tissue are probably always present or readily available in an infected area and no doubt determine in no small measure whether or not *in vivo* activity can occur. Our knowledge of the subtle and dynamic biochemical aspects of the local site of the host-parasite encounter is primitive indeed yet it is likely that just these aspects determine directly or indirectly the fate of the invading microbes.

#### FACTORS THAT ALTER HOST RESISTANCE TO INFECTION

Many disease processes or environmental factors result in disturbances of general host physiology which are associated with altered resistance to infectious diseases. The precise means by which these abnormal physiologic states influence the host-parasite conflict are

of the intestinal flora (Dubos and Schaedler 1962). Even severe degrees of malnutrition do not significantly impair antibody formation or grossly interfere with phagocyte performance or the inflammatory reaction.

The widespread notion that better than average nutrition leads to better than average resistance to infections appears to be a misconception. There is little evidence that supplementation of ordinary diets with vitamins or other factors has any effect on host resistance (see Scrimshaw *et al.* 1959).

In fact in a few instances dietary deficiencies seem to be associated with increased ability to ward off microbial invaders. An example of such a phenomenon is the resistance to malaria of rats or monkeys on a milk diet. When this association was first noted it was assumed that milk might contain some resistance factor for malaria. Further study has shown that the milk diet is deficient in a vitaminlike substance, para-aminobenzoic acid, required for growth of malaria parasites. Resistance while on the milk diet is due to this deficiency; for supplementation with the acid promptly renders the animals susceptible to malaria infections (Hawking 1954).

#### THE INFLUENCE OF WEATHER ON INFECTIOUS DISEASES

Most infectious diseases display a rather regular pattern of seasonal incidence—streptococcal pharyngitis is most common in late winter or early spring, viral influenza occurs most frequently in early winter, infantile diarrhea due to coliform organisms prevails in the summer, etc. These seasonal patterns are commonly explained by prevalence of insect vectors, by variations in sanitary conditions, by crowding of the host, or by effects of temperature, humidity, and sunlight on survival of the microbe outside the host. However, for many infectious diseases seasonal patterns are completely unexplained.

Such seasonal fluctuations may also be due at least in part to effects of the weather on host physiology and resistance mechanisms, as indicated by the following example. In the course of studies on streptococcal infection of mice in an aerosol chamber, Coburn and associates (1957) noted that the animals developed severe

often fatal diseases when the experiments were done in winter months, whereas during the summer the mice showed no illness following similar exposure. To study the phenomenon further, a large batch of virulent streptococci was cultured and then divided into small lots which were preserved by freeze drying so that essentially identical bacteria could be used for the inoculations over the course of 2 or more years. Then mice were exposed to the streptococcal aerosol under standard conditions every month. Cultures taken from the animals after exposure established that similar numbers of viable bacteria were introduced in all seasons, thus contact between mice and the streptococcal bacteria was the same. Yet over the period of observation the mice so exposed developed streptococcal infectious disease often fatal, only during winter and spring months. In the summer and the fall no disease resulted. These results thus indicate that in this particular model, season or weather may influence the occurrence of infectious disease by affecting the physiology of the host somehow to alter susceptibility to sepsis.

Similarly, recent studies on experimental transmission of viral influenza in mice also suggest that seasonal factors may somehow influence host resistance (Schulman and Kilbourne 1963).

Many different types of environmental factors are included under the terms weather or season, and few studies have been done attempting to relate isolated meteorologic factors and susceptibility to infectious diseases. Temperature may well play a role in this regard for animals exposed to cold exhibit impaired resistance to salmonellosis and staphylococcal infections (Miraglia and Berry 1962).

#### ROLE OF THE NORMAL FLORA IN HOST RESISTANCE

Host resistance to sepsis is influenced by the nature of the normal microbial flora. As stated earlier, skin, mucous membranes of the upper respiratory tract, and intestines are swarming with myriads of microbes living in peaceful coexistence with the host. When this normal flora is eliminated or altered drastically by germ-free technique or by administration of antimicrobial drugs, striking

often develop sepsis the invading microbe may be one of the avirulent members of the indigenous flora. Information is not available on the precise alterations in host resistance mechanisms in this setting.

Persons afflicted with diabetes mellitus are unusually prone to develop cellulitis or boils and seem to exhibit lowered resistance to infectious diseases in general. The resistance to experimental fungal infections of animals made diabetic by administration of alloxan is depressed only if their diabetes is uncontrolled to the extent that acidosis develops. Detailed investigation of the host-parasite interaction in these diabetic and acidotic animals shows as a possible basis for their increased susceptibility a delayed and grossly deficient influx of phagocytic cells into the challenge site (Sheldon and Bauer 1959). Metabolic derangements in diabetes doubtless also lead to changes in local tissue chemistry which may well influence the course of incipient infectious disease.

Disturbance of host resistance is by no means limited to generalized or severe diseases. Local abnormalities sometimes exert a profound effect on pathogenesis of infections. As discussed in an earlier section, an endocardial scar resulting from an attack of rheumatic fever often becomes the site of local invasion by usually benign microbes with resulting production of the serious disease subacute bacterial endocarditis. Other local abnormalities also can result in ineffective host resistance. For example, obstruction to the flow of any drainage system—urinary tract, respiratory tree, bile canals, etc.—is almost uniformly associated with invasion of the obstructed system by bacteria of the normal flora and production of severe and often persistent infectious disease. The precise mechanisms which account for local paralysis of host defense in this setting are not clearly established, altered local physical and chemical conditions which result from obstruction probably affect both the parasite and the host response.

Disease caused by one microbial agent may also influence host resistance to another unrelated microorganism. The striking increase in susceptibility to bacterial pneumonia which follows an attack of viral influenza exemplifies this phenomenon.

Mechanisms underlying this relationship are not well understood.

Host resistance may also be altered strikingly by the therapy administered for other diseases. As mentioned above, multiple host resistance agencies are affected by cortisone and related steroids. Increasing use is now being made of certain antimetabolites and alkylating drugs for cancer chemotherapy and for suppression of transplantation immunity; these drugs often impair both cellular and humoral resistance mechanisms, and patients who receive them show unusual susceptibility to infectious diseases. Similar or even more marked impairment of resistance to sepsis is seen in persons or animals exposed to large doses of gamma or x irradiation which result in breakdown in anatomic barriers, cessation of phagocyte production and paralysis of antibody formation (Miller 1956).

#### NUTRITION AND INFECTION

Long before the modern microbial era it was recognized that a relationship existed between famine and epidemic contagious disease. History continues to record this relationship during World War II, striking outbreaks of infectious disease occurred among prisoners-of-war deprived of adequate food.

The literature on relationships between nutrition and infection is voluminous and disconcertingly inconclusive (reviewed by Schneider 1946, Scrimshaw *et al.* 1959, Dubos and Schaedler 1959). In some instances the diet has important effects on the invading microbe and on the mechanisms of the host response; however, these effects often vary depending on the particular microbe and host and are intimately interwoven with other aspects of host physiology.

Even a relatively short period of starvation renders experimental animals unusually susceptible to microbial challenge. Imbalance in the diet and especially shortage of adequate protein nutrients can lead to similar effects (see Dubos and Schaedler 1959). Little is known about the precise chain of events involved in depression of resistance by these nutritional disturbances. The effect may be a direct one or in some instances it may operate through associated disturbances, e.g., hormonal changes or alteration

- sion of phagocytosis by solutes in concentrations found in the kidney and urine *J Clin Invest* 41 1945 1953
- Coburn A F Frank P F and Nolan J 1957 Studies on the pathogenicity of *Streptococcus pyogenes* IV The relation between the capacity to induce fatal respiratory infections in mice and epidemic respiratory diseases in man *Brit J Exp Path* 38 256 267
- Dubos R J 1954 *Biochemical Determinants of Microbial Diseases* pp 1 121 Harvard Univ Press Cambridge Mass
- 1955 The micro environment of inflammation or Metchnikoff revisited *Lancet* 2 15
- Dubos R J and Schaedler R W 1959 Nutrition and infection *J Pediat* 55 1 14
- 1962 The effect of diet on the fecal bacterial flora of mice and on their resistance to infection *J Exp Med* 115 1161 1172
- Florey H W 1962 *General Pathology* pp 21 126 Saunders Philadelphia and London
- Germuth F G Jr 1956 The role of adrenocortical steroids in infection immunity and hypersensitivity *Pharmacol Rev* 8 1 24
- Hawking F 1954 Milk *p* aminobenzoate and malaria of rats and monkeys *Brit Med J* 1 425 429
- Hirsch J G 1953 The essential participation of an enzyme in the inhibition of growth of tubercle bacilli by spermine *J Exp Med* 97 327 343
- 1960 Antimicrobial factors in tissues and phagocytic cells *Bact Rev* 24 133 140
- Hirsch J G and Church A B 1961 Adrenal steroids and infection The effect of cortisone administration on polymorphonuclear leukocyte functions and on serum opsonins and bactericidins *J Clin Invest* 40 794 798
- Hirsch J G and Dubos R J 1952 The effect of spermine on tubercle bacilli *J Exp Med* 95 191 208
- Kass E H 1960 Hormones and host resistance to infection *Bact Rev* 24 177 185
- Lurie M B Zappasodi P Blaker R G and Levy R S 1959a On the role of the thyroid in native resistance to tuberculosis II The effect of hypothyroidism The mode of action of thyroid hormones *Am Rev Tuberc and Pulm Dis* 79 180 203
- Lurie M B Zappasodi P Levy R S and Blaker R G 1959b On the role of the thyroid in native resistance to tuberculosis I The effect of hyperthyroidism *Am Rev Tuberc and Pulm Dis* 79 152 179
- Miles A A Miles E M and Burke J 1957 The value and duration of defense reactions of the skin to the primary lodgement of bacteria *Brit J Exp Path* 38 79 96
- Miller C P 1956 The effect of irradiation on natural resistance to infection *Ann NY Acad Sci* 66 280 291
- Miraglia G J and Berry L J 1962 Enhancement of salmonellosis and emergence of secondary infection in mice exposed to cold *J Bacteriol* 84 1173 1180
- Pearce J H Williams A E Harris Smith P W Fitzgeorge R B and Smith H 1962 The chemical basis of the virulence of *Brucella abortus* II Erythritol a constituent of bovine foetal fluids which stimulates the growth of *Br abortus* in bovine phagocytes *Brit J Exp Path* 43 31 37
- Reichlin S and Glaser R J 1958 Thyroid function in experimental streptococcal pneumonia in the rat *J Exp Med* 107 219 236
- Robinson H J 1956 Adrenal cortical hormones and infection *Pediatrics* 17 770 780
- Rocha H and Fekety F R Jr 1964 Acute inflammation in the renal cortex and medulla following thermal injury *J Exp Med* 119 131 138
- Schneider H A 1946 Nutrition and resistance to infection The strategic situation *Vitamins and Hormones* 4 35 70
- Schulman J L and Kilbourne E D 1963 Experimental transmission of influenza virus infection in mice II Some factors affecting the incidence of transmitted infection *J Exp Med* 118 267 275
- Scrimshaw N S Taylor C M and Gordon J E 1959 Interactions of nutrition and infection *Am J Med Sci* 273 367-403
- Sheldon W H and Bauer H 1959 The development of the acute inflammatory response to experimental cutaneous mucormycosis in normal and diabetic rabbits *J Exp Med* 110 845 852
- Skarnes R C and Watson D W 1957 Antimicrobial factors of normal tissues and fluids *Bact Rev* 21 273 294
- Smith H Keppie J Pearce J M Fuller R and Williams A E 1961 The chemical basis of the virulence of *Brucella abortus* I Isolation of *Br abortus* from bovine foetal tissue *Brit J Exp Path* 42 631 637
- Smith J M and Dubos R J 1956 The effect of dinitrophenol and thyroxine on the susceptibility of mice to staphylococcal infections *J Exp Med* 103 119 126
- Spector W G and Walloughby D A 1963

changes take place in susceptibility to certain infectious diseases. For example bacillary dysentery cannot be produced in ordinary guinea pigs even when large doses of virulent shigella organisms are given. However administration of the same microbes to germ free guinea pigs gives rise to fatal ulcerative enteritis (Sprintz *et al*, 1961). The increased incidence of staphylococcal enterocolitis and of moniliasis during the course of long term therapy of persons with broad spectrum antibiotics is an example of the same phenomenon from the field of clinical medicine.

Strictly speaking the normal flora cannot be classified as a host resistance mechanism since the microbes are outsiders living with but not part of the host. Their role in determining pathogenesis of infectious diseases is nevertheless important. How does the normal flora protect the host from potentially harmful bacteria?

The most logical explanation would invoke a kind of interference. As an analogy a dense healthy stand of good grass is relatively resistant to growth of airborne weed seeds alighting upon it whereas a barren field provides a fertile area for uncontrolled growth of weeds. The skin or the mucosal surfaces of mammals perhaps provide sufficient nutrients for survival of only a finite concentration of microorganisms. If the normal flora effectively utilizes this supply of nutrients invaders find it difficult or impossible to establish a foothold. Or an alternative explanation would involve production by the normal flora of substances (antibiotics) or conditions (acidity, low oxygen tension etc.) inhibitory for foreign microbes attempting to establish residence in the area.

Some evidence suggests furthermore that the normal flora affects resistance of the host to infection at sites far removed from the habitat of the flora itself. Thus it is also possible and even likely that the normal flora exerts a significant influence on general host physiology, perhaps by providing vitamins, by exposing the host continuously to small doses of endotoxins or by affecting directly or indirectly antibody producing systems or turnover of phagocytic cells. These physiologic effects might well be re-

flected in alterations in the ability of the host to handle a given challenge of infectious material.

## CONCLUSION

Pathogenesis of infectious diseases seems at first glance to be relatively simple and well understood. The environment in which man lives is swarming with microbes of all sorts some of these are capable of virulent behavior based on specific structures which they possess or poisons which they produce. To ward off the challenge of these potentially virulent bacteria man calls into play his defense mechanisms: anatomic barriers, phagocytic cells and antibodies.

Our purpose in this chapter has been to examine anew the mechanisms of resistance to infectious disorders in the light of modern knowledge and concepts emphasizing the unknown as well as the known. These mechanisms are multiple, are in many instances still understood poorly or not at all and probably differ from microbe to microbe, from person to person and from time to time. Host resistance is determined not only by antibodies and phagocytes but also by a myriad of subtle factors some local, some general and some entirely separate from the host itself.

The pathogenesis of infectious diseases in many ways illustrates well the infinite complexity of biological systems with living things existing in a state of delicate balance under the constant influence of interactions between themselves and their environment.

## REFERENCES

- Beeson P. B. and Rowley D. 1959 The anticomplementary effect of kidney tissue. Its association with ammonia production. *J. Exp. Med.* 110: 685-697.
- Burkhauser H. 1950 Die Resistenz der Meerschweinchen Niere gegen Tuberkulose. *Schweiz. Z. Path. Bakt.* 13: 455-463.
- Canetti G. 1955 The Tubercle Bacillus in the Pulmonary Lesions of Man. pp. 1-205. Springer New York.
- Chernow I. and Braude A. I. 1962 Depres-

9

## The Role of Antibody, Complement and Other Humoral Factors in Host Resistance to Infections

### INTRODUCTION

Host defense to infectious agents is a complex biologic process requiring participation of cells as well as humoral factors. In this chapter we shall deal exclusively with the nature and the function of humoral factors. It is to be emphasized that separate treatment of the humoral aspect represents an abstraction from the actual biologic phenomenon in the living organisms: cellular and humoral defense mechanisms are interdependent and intimately interwoven.

Serum factors contribute to host defense essentially in three ways: neutralization of bacterial toxins and viruses, destruction of microorganisms and promotion of phagocytosis. The factors primarily responsible for these effects are antibody, complement and opsonin. Initially, these terms designated merely serologic activities. Today at least some of these activities can be ascribed to discrete serum protein entities which are now being subjected to thorough physical and chemical analysis. The achievements of recent years encourage the belief that it will be possible in the foreseeable future to describe the humoral mechanisms of host defense entirely in terms of the underlying molecular events. Wherever feasible the molecular aspect will be preferred to the serologic throughout the following discussion.

### HISTORY

The chemical approach to problems of immunity was introduced by Paul Ehrlich. He believed so firmly in the chemical mode of action of antibody and complement that he was led to attempt imitation of their biologic activity with the aid of compounds synthesized in the laboratory. When Ehrlich began his work on the mechanism of immunity, the cellular theory of immunity was well established. Metchnikoff had drawn wide attention to the crucial role of the migrating phagocytic cell in host defense against invading microorganisms. He regarded the phagocytic cell as solely responsible for the phenomenon of natural immunity and as the primary force in acquired immunity. Nuttall's demonstration of bactericidal power of serum was attributed by Metchnikoff to an artefact. He ascribed it to the release of bactericidal substances from leukocytes on their disintegration *in vitro*. That phagocytosis required the presence of serum was in his opinion due to the sustaining effect of serum on cell function (Metchnikoff 1905).

During the latter part of the last century theories of biology and medicine were based on cellular phenomena. Humor was a notion which was colored and burdened with the memory of obsolete speculations. Therefore theories invoking the body fluids met with

- The inflammatory response *Bact Rev* 27  
117 154
- Sprinz H Kundel D W Dammin G J  
Horowitz R E Schneider H and  
Formal S B 1961 The response of the  
germ free guinea pig to oral bacterial chal-  
lenge with *Escherichia coli* and *Shigella*  
*flexneri* with special reference to lymphatic  
tissue and the intestinal tract *Am J Path*  
39 681 695
- Williams A E Keppie J and Smith H  
1962 The chemical basis of the virulence of  
*Brucella abortus* III Foetal erythritol—a  
cause of the localisation of *Brucella abortus*  
in pregnant cows *Brit J Exp Path* 43 530-  
537

9

## The Role of Antibody, Complement and Other Humoral Factors in Host Resistance to Infections

### INTRODUCTION

Host defense to infectious agents is a complex biologic process requiring participation of cells as well as humoral factors. In this chapter we shall deal exclusively with the nature and the function of humoral factors. It is to be emphasized that separate treatment of the humoral aspect represents an abstraction from the actual biologic phenomenon in the living organisms; cellular and humoral defense mechanisms are interdependent and intimately interwoven.

Serum factors contribute to host defense essentially in three ways: neutralization of bacterial toxins and viruses; destruction of microorganisms; and promotion of phagocytosis. The factors primarily responsible for these effects are antibody, complement and opsonin. Initially these terms designated merely serologic activities. Today at least some of these activities can be ascribed to discrete serum protein entities which are now being subjected to thorough physical and chemical analysis. The achievements of recent years encourage the belief that it will be possible in the foreseeable future to describe the humoral mechanisms of host defense entirely in terms of the underlying molecular events. Wherever feasible the molecular aspect will be preferred to the serologic throughout the following discussion.

### HISTORY

The chemical approach to problems of immunity was introduced by Paul Ehrlich. He believed so firmly in the chemical mode of action of antibody and complement that he was led to attempt imitation of their biologic activity with the aid of compounds synthesized in the laboratory. When Ehrlich began his work on the mechanism of immunity the cellular theory of immunity was well established. Metchnikoff had drawn wide attention to the crucial role of the migrating phagocytic cell in host defense against invading microorganisms. He regarded the phagocytic cell as solely responsible for the phenomenon of natural immunity and as the primary force in acquired immunity. Nuttall's demonstration of bactericidal power of serum was attributed by Metchnikoff to an artefact. He ascribed it to the release of bactericidal substances from leukocytes on their disintegration *in vitro*. That phagocytosis required the presence of serum was in his opinion due to the sustaining effect of serum on cell function (Metchnikoff 1905).

During the latter part of the last century theories of biology and medicine were based on cellular phenomena. Humor was a notion which was colored and burdened with the memory of obsolete speculations. Therefore theories invoking the body fluids met with



suspicion. While cells and the phagocytic process could be comprehended easily by microscopic observation there was no microscope at hand to visualize serum constituents and to facilitate the understanding of their function. Nevertheless the basic concepts of humoral immunology were evolved then and they have retained their validity to the present. Due to a complete lack of information regarding the composition of serum the terminology created by the early students of antibody and complement is often romantic and awkward and tends to obscure the extent of their contribution.

Soon after Nuttall's discovery of the bactericidal power of serum Pfeiffer (1903) found bacteriolytic activity to be increased in the serum of animals that had survived a bacterial infection. The serum would lyse only those bacteria with which the animal had been infected. The activity could be transferred with cell free serum to a non immune recipient. It was thermostable and this property distinguished it from the heat labile bactericidal principle which Buchner attributed to an enzyme in serum. Thus there appeared to be two humoral principles and it was soon recognized that both were required for bacteriolysis. The heat stable factor with specificity for microorganisms was later designated as antibody and the heat labile enzymelike substance as complement. It was Ehrlich (1906) who formulated the final concept of immune cytotoxicity according to which antibody combines by means of a specific combining site with a receptor on the cell surface. Complement secondarily attaches itself to a receptor site on the antibody molecule and thereby is enabled to execute its damaging effect on the cell membrane.

Bordet's discovery of immune hemolysis greatly facilitated the study of serum factors with cytotoxic activity. It provided a simpler experimental system and a means for precise quantitation of the effect of antibody and complement. More importantly it led to the realization that immune cytotoxicity is not confined to microorganisms but concerns cells in general thus forming the basis for the concept developed later that antibody and complement not only participate in host defense against pathogenic microbes but also against heterologous and isologous cells

transferred from another organism. This view now has been broadened even further to include the possibility that complement might be capable of damaging autologous cells in diseases with an immunologic basis.

The key idea in the young field of humoral immunology was that of the specificity of antibodies. In 1890 Emil von Behring discovered that animals which had been infected with diphtheria produced antibody to diphtheria toxin. The antibody was able to confer immunity on another animal which had not been previously exposed to either the microorganism or the toxin and the protective effect was entirely specific. Almost simultaneously Ehrlich carried out experiments with the plant poisons ricin and abrin and demonstrated that an antiricin antibody could neutralize the effect of ricin but not of abrin and vice versa. In defining antibody specificity Ehrlich resorted to the principles of enzymology. Emil Fischer had compared the fit between enzyme and substrate with the relationship between key and lock. It was this highly specific relationship that Ehrlich visualized to exist between antibody and antigen. The subsequent work of Landsteiner and that of Avery and his collaborators revealed how sensitive a tool an antibody is for the detection of minute differences in the structure of antigenic determinants.

The earliest phase of chemical immunology began when it became possible to study antigen antibody reactions in vitro. Since the plant poisons ricin and abrin have the ability to agglutinate the red cells of certain species inhibition of agglutination could be used as a measure of neutralization of toxin by antitoxin. Using this method Ehrlich established a quantitative relation between the dose of antitoxin and the degree of neutralization. He also demonstrated with these experiments that the neutralization of toxin is a purely humoral process which does not require cells.

The term neutralization was chosen by Ehrlich because he firmly believed that the interaction between antigen and antibody was basically similar to an acid base reaction. Arrhenius adopted this view and developed it by applying the law of mass action to the theoretical treatment of immune complexes. Like other chemical reactions the union of

antigen and antibody was considered to be reversible and the equilibrium dependent on the concentrations of the reactants and the reaction product. Arrhenius thus introduced methods and principles of physical chemistry into immunology. Incidentally he was the first to speak of the science of immunochemistry.

After the basic concepts of chemical immunology had been developed during the latter part of the last century, interest turned to the elucidation of the nature of antibody and complement and of the structure of antigenic determinants. This new period of activity began in the mid-twenties and is still continuing.

## ANTIBODY

Antibodies are serum proteins which are uniquely endowed with an affinity for a multitude of naturally occurring and synthetic substances called antigens. Each antibody molecule carries specificity for only one antigenic group. In general, antibody molecules possess two sites capable of combining with antigen. By virtue of their combining sites, antibodies can give rise to the formation of soluble antigen-antibody complexes, insoluble immune precipitates, and to agglutination of cells and particles, if antigen is bound to their surface. Antibodies themselves are antigenic, belong to the immunologically defined family of  $\gamma$  globulins.

### LOCALIZATION OF ANTIBODY ACTIVITY IN $\gamma$ GLOBULINS

The proteins of serum may be separated in an electric field into 4 major fractions of different electrochemical properties. In the order of their mobility at pH 8.6 they are designated albumin,  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $\gamma$  globulin, the last being the slowest migrating fraction. To determine the relation of the electrophoretic fractions to antibody activity of serum, Tiselius and Kabat (1939) compared the patterns of normal sera with those of hyperimmune sera. Hyperimmune sera differed strikingly from normal controls in that the  $\gamma$  globulin fraction was conspicuously increased. On absorption with homologous antigen, the  $\gamma$  globulin concentration in immune sera was reduced to a normal level.

With these observations, Tiselius and Kabat established that antibody activity is a function of the  $\gamma$  globulin molecule. Today the terms antibody protein and  $\gamma$  globulin are often used synonymously, and it is thought probable that all  $\gamma$  globulin occurring in normal serum represents specific antibody. This view is strengthened by observations of animals raised in a germ-free environment:  $\gamma$  globulin levels in such animals are often as low as 10 per cent of the normal, and they rise rapidly on exposure of the animals to an ordinary environment (Gustafsson and Laurell 1959).

Since the early days of electrophoretic investigation when  $\gamma$  globulin was defined by the physical chemist as the slowest migrating fraction of serum, the story of  $\gamma$  globulin has become immensely complex. This development began when immunochemists discovered that small amounts of protein closely related to  $\gamma$  globulin are found with great regularity in the  $\beta$  and even the  $\alpha$  globulin region of the electrophoretic spectrum (Slater 1955, Williams and Grabar 1955). Today therefore an immunochemical definition is preferred according to which all proteins that are recognized by antibody to classic  $\gamma$  globulin are members of the  $\gamma$  globulin family, irrespective of electrophoretic mobility. This group of related proteins is comprised of 7S  $\gamma$  globulin, 19S  $\gamma$  globulin, and  $\beta_2$  globulin, including their pathologic counterparts, the myeloma proteins and the macroglobulins of the Waldenström type. The low molecular weight  $\gamma_L$  globulin of serum and normal and pathologic urine also belongs to this group. With identification of the  $\beta$  proteins and the 19S proteins as  $\gamma$  globulins, the question arose whether these proteins also have antibody activity.

There is no doubt that 19S  $\gamma$  globulin possesses antibody activity. In fact, the earliest studies of hydrodynamic aspects of purified antibodies disclosed the occurrence of active 19S components in hyperimmune sera (Heidelberger and Pedersen 1937, Kabat 1939). Later, certain antibodies of human origin such as the Wassermann antibody and the antibody to the somatic O antigen of the typhoid bacillus were found to be of high molecular weight (Davis *et al.* 1945, Deutsch *et al.* 1946). In recent years, Kun

TABLE 1 PROPERTIES OF THE HUMAN GAMMA GLOBULINS

	7S $\gamma$ GLOBULIN	19S $\gamma$ GLOBULIN	$\beta_{2A}$ GLOBULIN	$\gamma_L$ GLOBULIN
Approximate serum concentration	1 000 mg %	50 100 mg %	60-200 mg %	trace
Sedimentation coefficient	7S	19S	7 15S	1S
Molecular weight	160 000	1 000 000	150 000 600 000	25 000
Carbohydrate content	2.6%	10.5%	10%	0%
Antibody activity	present	present	present	absent
Pathologic counterpart	$\gamma$ Myeloma protein	Waldenstrom's macroglobulin	$\beta_{2A}$ Myeloma protein	Bence Jones protein

kel (1960) has studied a larger series of human antibodies and has demonstrated conclusively the existence of an entire class of antibodies of high molecular weight. To it belong certain isoagglutinins and antibodies against the M, the N and the P antigens of human red cells, normal and pathologic cold agglutinins and heterophile antibodies as well as certain autoantibodies occurring in patients with lupus erythematosus and similar diseases. Rheumatoid factors are also 19S antibodies (Kunkel *et al.*, 1959); they are of particular interest since they exhibit a high degree of specificity for autologous and isologous  $\gamma$  globulin and have permitted the discovery of hereditary  $\gamma$  globulin groups.

Much more difficult to answer has been the question whether  $\beta_{2A}$  globulin contains antibody activity. Some evidence suggests the occurrence of antibodies against bacteria and viruses (Schultze 1959) and of reaginic activity (Heremans *et al.* 1962) in this fraction. There has also been the suggestion that a new ultracentrifugal species of antibodies (9 15S) might be related to  $\beta_A$  globulin primarily because their sedimentation behavior resembles that of  $\beta_A$  polymers (Rockey and Kunkel 1962). Using highly specific antiserum to  $\beta_A$  globulin, Fireman *et al.* (1963) succeeded in absorbing  $\beta_{2A}$  globulin from human serum virtually without affecting the concentration of the other two  $\gamma$  globulins. When this procedure was applied to sera containing skin sensitizing antibodies to ragweed pollen, the reaginic activity was eliminated completely together with  $\beta_A$  globulin. These elegant experiments established conclusively that antibody activity does reside in this fraction. Thus all 3 major  $\gamma$  globulins have been shown to have antibody function.

#### TYPES OF $\gamma$ GLOBULIN AND THEIR PROPERTIES

There are 4 principle types of  $\gamma$  globulin which are related to each other through common antigenic determinants. In terms of molecular structure the 4  $\gamma$  globulins share certain polypeptide chains but differ with respect to others.

7S  $\gamma$  Globulin represents approximately 10 per cent of total serum protein. Its molecular weight is in the vicinity of 160 000. The predominant N terminal amino acids are aspartic and glutamic acid. A carbohydrate moiety accounts for 2.6 per cent of the weight of the molecule and is composed of galactose, mannose, fucose, hexosamine and neuraminic acid. While 7S  $\gamma$  globulin appears to be quite homogeneous when examined in the ultracentrifuge, it exhibits a perplexing heterogeneity on electrophoresis. The electrophoretic mobility spectrum ranges from  $-0.5$  to  $-3 \times 10^{-5}$  cm<sup>2</sup> sec<sup>-1</sup> V<sup>-1</sup>. Approximately 80 per cent of the protein behaves electrophoretically as classic  $\gamma$  globulin. The rest has mobility values of  $\beta$  and  $\alpha$  globulins (Slater 1955, Williams and Grabar, 1955). This fact was first revealed with the aid of the immunoelectrophoretic method and prompted definition of  $\gamma$  globulin in terms of antigenic rather than electrochemical properties.

The wide electrophoretic distribution of 7S  $\gamma$  globulin is due to the presence in this fraction of a large number of discrete molecular species, each presumably derived from an individual clone of plasma cells. That individual plasma cell clones are able to produce  $\gamma$  globulins with an extremely narrow mobility distribution is apparent from the behavior of myeloma proteins and of certain

antibodies (Kunkel *et al.* 1963). They may give rise to unusually sharp protein peaks. Originally the sharpness of their peaks as well as some other features were believed to be reflections of an abnormal protein structure but present evidence suggests that myeloma proteins are only abnormal elevations of otherwise normal individual species of  $\gamma$ -globulin. In many recent studies therefore they have been utilized to obtain information on monoclonal  $\gamma$  globulins which for technical reasons could not be obtained on normal serum. As will be seen below myeloma proteins and highly purified antibodies resemble each other in certain structural features. Therefore it is tempting to relate the molecular heterogeneity of 7S  $\gamma$  globulin to the multitude of different antibody specificities which reside in this protein. Different specificities require differences in combining regions which in turn may produce dissimilarities in overall molecular characteristics. On the other hand molecular heterogeneity may be an expression of complexity of the cell population from which the protein originated.

**19S  $\gamma$  Globulin** This protein was not clearly recognized as a separate entity until it was isolated and shown to be chemically different from 7S  $\gamma$  globulin (Müller-Eberhard *et al.* 1956). It contains a carbohydrate moiety which accounts for more than 10 per cent of the molecule and is 4 times larger than that of 7S  $\gamma$  globulin. The individual carbohydrate constituents are the same as in 7S  $\gamma$  globulin but their relative proportions differ. The protein has a molecular weight of 1 million and an electrophoretic mobility intermediate to  $\gamma$  and  $\beta$  globulin.

The most interesting feature of this protein is that it is composed of a number of subunits probably 6 which are held together by disulfide bonds. By treating 19S  $\gamma$  globulin with disulfide bond-breaking reagents Deutsch and Morton (1957) were able to dissociate it into 7S subunits. With this discovery they called attention to the significance of S-S bonds for the structure of  $\gamma$  globulin and stimulated studies concerned with the chemical dissociation of  $\gamma$  globulin into polypeptide chains. The role of intramolecular S-S bonds in the activity of 19S antibodies is revealed by the effect of reduction and reoxidation. Reduction with mercapto

ethanol is accompanied by complete loss of activity (Fudenberg and Kunkel 1957). Subsequent reoxidation leads to reactivation (Kunkel *et al.* 1961).

The pathologic counterparts of 19S  $\gamma$  globulin are the macroglobulins of the Waldenström type. If the pathologic  $\gamma$  globulins represent unusually elevated normal proteins then it ought to be possible to find antibody activity associated with at least some of them. While such observations have not been reported for myeloma proteins with one possible exception (Waldenström 1961) antibody activities have definitely been found for some of the Waldenström macroglobulins (Mackay 1959 Krizman *et al.* 1961).

**$\beta$  & Globulin** This serum component was discovered in immunoelectrophoretic studies by Grabar and Williams (1953). It migrates in the region between  $\gamma$  and  $\beta$ -globulin. The carbohydrate content of the purified material is approximately 10 per cent (Heremans 1960). It occurs in several molecular species the major component has an  $s$  rate of 7S the minor components of 9-15S. The faster sedimenting material can be dissociated into 7S units by reduction with mercaptoethanol (Fahey 1961).

**$\gamma_L$  Globulin** To the 3 categories of  $\gamma$  globulins discussed so far a 4th one has been added recently. Evidence for its existence was first obtained when a  $\gamma$  globulin of low molecular weight was isolated from normal human urine (Webb *et al.* 1958; Franklin 1959). Originally it was thought to be a breakdown product derived from normal serum  $\gamma$  globulin but now it is considered to arise from *de novo* synthesis. Interest in  $\gamma_L$  globulin was stimulated considerably when Berggård (1961) demonstrated its occurrence in normal human plasma. Its concentration in plasma is so low that it can be recognized only after separation from the bulk of the serum proteins by ultrafiltration and subsequent concentration. The best estimates indicate a molecular weight of 25 000 which is surprisingly low for a serum protein therefore it was named  $\gamma_L$  globulin (L stands for low molecular weight). The immunologic identity of  $\gamma_L$  of plasma and of urine has been established (Berggård 1961).

$\gamma$  Globulins of low molecular weight are known to occur in the urine of patients with

multiple myeloma. Such patients excrete large amounts of the so-called Bence Jones protein which is also characterized by peculiar thermosolubility properties. Bence-Jones proteins precipitate at temperatures between 50 and 60 C and become soluble again at higher temperatures. These proteins have been identified with a well characterized species of polypeptide chains the so-called L chains, of normal and pathologic  $\gamma$  globulins (Edelman and Gally 1962). Since  $\gamma_L$  globulin was found to resemble L chains in several important respects (Berggard and Edelman, 1963), it is now regarded as the normal counterpart of Bence Jones proteins.

Present evidence indicates that the isolated light polypeptide chains of antibodies do not have antibody activity (see below). Inasmuch as  $\gamma_L$ -globulin consists of light chains, antibody activity would not be expected to reside therein. Contrary to this reasoning one group of investigators (Remington *et al* 1962) has reported poliovirus neutralizing activity and specificity to tetanus toxin to be present in urinary  $\gamma_L$  globulin of an immunized person.

#### GENETIC TYPES OF HUMAN $\gamma$ GLOBULIN

The existence of genetic types of  $\gamma$  globulin was discovered by Grubb and Laurell (1956). To date 7 genetic factors are known. The 4 major ones are called Gm (a), Gm(b), Inv(a) and Inv(b). They are determined by genes present at 2 loci, the Gm and the Inv. The genetic properties are detected by a method utilizing rheumatoid factors which have anti Gm and anti Inv specificity. Gm(a) and Gm(b) sites are found only in 7S  $\gamma$  globulin. They are absent from 19S  $\gamma$  globulin,  $\beta_A$  globulin and Bence Jones proteins. By contrast the Inv character is a property of all 4  $\gamma$  globulins. It follows from the distribution of the genetic sites that the Inv character must be located on a type of polypeptide chain which occurs in all 4 proteins, whereas the Gm site should be located in a region of the molecule which is peculiar to 7S  $\gamma$  globulin. Indeed it has been possible to localize the Inv and the Gm properties to different parts of the 7S  $\gamma$  globulin molecule. The Inv property is located in the so-called S-fragment and the Gm site in the F fragment (Harboe *et*

*al* 1962, Franklin *et al* 1962). Only the F fragment is unique to 7S  $\gamma$  globulin, whereas the S fragment contains groups that are common to the entire  $\gamma$  globulin family.

#### STRUCTURE OF $\gamma$ GLOBULIN

Elucidation of the structure of a protein with a molecular weight of 160 000 is a formidable task. In the case of  $\gamma$  globulin this task is particularly difficult owing to the existence of a bewildering microheterogeneity within the protein. Isolation from normal serum of homogeneous species of  $\gamma$  globulin or of antibody directed to a single antigenic determinant is not possible at present. In spite of these difficulties the problem of  $\gamma$  globulin structure is being pursued actively in a number of laboratories. Interest centers on the question of what constitutes the chemical basis of antibody specificity. Is there a region in the molecule with a high degree of initial flexibility, which is potentially capable of assuming many different conformations? Or is there a segment which varies in amino acid composition from one antibody to another? In short, is specificity determined by primary or by secondary and tertiary structure? In pursuing these questions several groups of investigators recently have succeeded in elucidating some general structural features of the  $\gamma$  globulin molecule. The overall objective has been separation of the molecule into structural and functional subunits. Two methods have been used: hydrolysis with proteolytic enzymes and chemical dissociation.

#### Fragmentation by Enzymatic Hydrolysis

In 1958 Porter separated papain-digested rabbit antibody on carboxymethyl cellulose and obtained 3 distinct products. Further work (Porter 1959, Nisonoff *et al* 1960, Palmer *et al*, 1962) yielded the following information. Treatment of rabbit 7S antibody with papain in the presence of cysteine produces 3 fragments called I, II and III. Fragments I and II have a molecular weight of 50,000. They are highly similar or even identical with each other for a given antibody molecule and cannot be separated. Fragment III has a molecular weight of 80 000 and can be crystallized. It differs from the other 2 pieces in many respects. Piece I and piece II each contain one antibody-combining site.

Being univalent they are unable to precipitate homologous antigen. Yet they are capable of inhibiting specific precipitation by intact antibody. Piece III is entirely devoid of specific antibody activity, but it is responsible for placental transfer of the intact 7S molecule and for its ability to fix to skin which is a prerequisite for cutaneous anaphylaxis (Ovary *et al.* 1961). In the undegraded molecule, pieces I and II are linked to each other by a rather labile disulfide bond, and both are linked to piece III by peptide bonds. If pepsin is used for degradation instead of papain activated by cysteine, the labile disulfide bond is not split. A bivalent 5S antibody results which consists of 2 univalent pieces held together by 1 disulfide bridge. Fragment III becomes dialyzable under these conditions.

Enzymatic degradation has also been applied to the study of the antigenic structure of human  $\gamma$  globulin (Edelman *et al.* 1960; Franklin and Stanworth 1961). By immunoelectrophoresis 2 antigenically distinct fractions can be identified. One migrates more slowly than 7S  $\gamma$  globulin and therefore is called the S fragment. The other migrates faster and accordingly is designated the F fragment. The S fragment is analogous to pieces I and II of rabbit  $\gamma$  globulin; it contains univalent antibody activity (Morse and Heremans 1962). The F fragment corresponds to piece III. There is no immunologic cross reaction between the S- and the F fragments.

This new approach has led to a better understanding of the structural basis for the well known immunologic interrelationship between the various  $\gamma$  globulins. The cross-reacting determinants are confined entirely to the S fragment, and the F fragment is unique for 7S  $\gamma$  globulin (Franklin and Stanworth 1961). Thus the chemical groups that occur in all major classes of  $\gamma$  globulin have been identified as a part of the fragment which carries the antibody-combining site.

**Fragmentation into Polypeptide Chains**  
Following the discovery of the critical role played by disulfide bonds in the structure of 19S  $\gamma$  globulin (Deutsch and Morton 1957), Edelman (1959) demonstrated their significance for the structure of 7S  $\gamma$  globulin. Treatment of the protein in strong urea

solutions with reducing agents resulted in diminution of the molecular weight from 160 000 to 50 000. The concomitant appearance of 14 to 18 sulfhydryl groups per molecule indicated that 7 to 9 disulfide bonds were broken in the process. Edelman interpreted these findings to indicate that the 7S molecule is composed of several polypeptide chains and that these chains are interlocked by S-S bonds and weaker forces.

Further evidence for the validity of this hypothesis came from experiments employing starch gel electrophoresis (Edelman and Poulik 1961). Two different categories of fragments were detected in reduced and alkylated 7S  $\gamma$  globulins. One category comprised electrophoretically fast migrating units which later turned out to be of very low molecular weight; they were called light (L) chains. The other consisted of more slowly migrating and heavier fragments; they were termed heavy (H) chains. The pattern of reduced whole  $\gamma$  globulin was not very revealing. However, the patterns of reduced myeloma proteins and antibodies disclosed the presence of only a small number of chains in a given protein. Most interestingly, starch gel patterns obtained on reduced individual  $\gamma$  globulins differed from one protein to the other, leading to the impression that the individual species of 7S molecules contained similar or identical H-chains but varied in their set of L-chains. Exactly how many chains make up one  $\gamma$  globulin molecule was difficult to ascertain. Quantitation was seriously hampered because of insolubility of the dissociated chains outside strong urea solutions.

Further progress was afforded by the development of a method which allowed preparation of the chains in a soluble form without the use of urea (Fleischman *et al.* 1963). It was now possible to separate H and L-chains by a simple gel filtration process to quantitate their relative proportions and to determine the molecular weights. Utilizing the body of accumulated information, Porter (1962) proposed a model for the structure of rabbit 7S  $\gamma$  globulin (Fig. 1). He envisions one molecule to consist of 4 polypeptide chains. Two of these are H-chains having a molecular weight of 50 000 to 60 000, and 2 are L-chains with a molecu-

lar weight of 20 000 to 25 000. The heavy chains are held together by 3 S-S bridges and the light chains are linked each to 1 of the 2 heavy chains through 1 disulfide bond. Thus according to Porter there exists a total of 5 interchain disulfide bonds per molecule. However Palmer and Nisonoff (1964) have found only 1 S-S bridge between the 2 heavy chains and the total number of interchain disulfide bonds may be only 3.

Papain is visualized to act on the heavy chains only. In terms of the model piece III and F fragment correspond to the larger portion of the 2 H-chains, pieces I, II and S fragment correspond to the rest of the molecule consisting of the smaller portions of the split H chains plus L-chains.

Of the 2 types of polypeptide chains L chains appear to have the greater structural significance. Both molecular individuality as well as features shared by all  $\gamma$  globulins are expressed through them. As indicated by starch gel electrophoresis of reduced antibodies and myeloma proteins, individual species of 7S molecules differ primarily in their set of L-chains. On the other hand, these L-chains also carry the antigenic de-

terminants that are characteristic for the entire family of  $\gamma$  globulins (Fahey 1963). Thus these polypeptide chains vary greatly among  $\gamma$  globulin molecules but must also contain regions that are constant in composition and identical for all  $\gamma$  globulin molecules.

However the matter is even more complex. There are 2 groups of light chains which are antigenically unrelated (Mannik and Kunkel 1963, Fahey 1963). In 7S  $\gamma$  globulin approximately 60 per cent of the molecules are endowed with L-chains of group I, and 30 per cent with those of group II. An antiserum prepared against group I L chains will not react at all with group II molecules, and vice versa. These types of L chain molecules are also found in 19S  $\gamma$  globulins,  $\beta_2$  globulins and their pathologic counterparts (Mannik and Kunkel, 1962), as well as in  $\gamma_L$  globulin (Stevenson 1962) and Bence-Jones proteins. In fact the 2 groups were originally discovered by Korn gold and Lipari (1956) in Bence Jones proteins which consist entirely of light chains.

In summary work on the chemical and the antigenic structure of  $\gamma$  globulin has led to the development of the following tentative concept. The molecules of 7S and 19S  $\gamma$

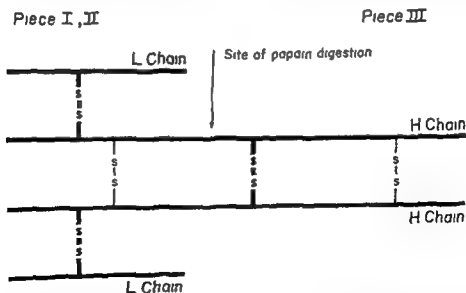


FIG. 1. Structure of rabbit 7S  $\gamma$  globulin as originally proposed by Porter (1962) who visualized three S-S bonds linking the two H-chains and as modified by Palmer and Nisonoff (1964) who demonstrated that there is only one S-S bond between the H-chains. (In Porter's terminology H-chain = A-chain, L-chain = B-chain.)

globulin are composed of light and of heavy polypeptide chains. The chains are interlocked by disulfide bonds.  $\gamma_L$  Globulin (and Bence Jones proteins) consist of light chains only. The heavy chains are specific for each class of  $\gamma$  globulin i.e. for  $\gamma_1$ ,  $\gamma_2$ ,  $\gamma_3$ ,  $\gamma_4$  globulin and for  $\beta_2$ . Within a given class there is little variation in heavy chain properties. By contrast light chains exhibit no class specificity. L-chains with the same general features occur in all 4 classes of  $\gamma$  globulin. However they do possess group specificity giving rise to 2 categories of L-chains. Each molecule of the  $\gamma$  globulin family belongs to either one or the other group depending on its L-chain make up. In addition to these general structural features L-chains possess properties which confer individuality on a single species of  $\gamma$  globulin molecules thus giving rise to great molecular heterogeneity within the various classes.

#### THE PROBLEM OF THE ANTIBODY COMBINING SITE

Theoretically specific antibody activity may be a function either of L-chains or of H-chains or of an interaction between both. Since the S fragment of papain digested antibody behaves as univalent antibody it is evident that the larger portion of H-chains is dispensable for antibody activity and not involved in the active site. What about the L-chains which are contained in S fragments? When purified antibodies against haptens are dissociated and examined by starch gel electrophoresis in urea discrete electrophoretic patterns are obtained (Fig 2). Antibodies of different specificities give rise to patterns which differ in the number and the distribution of the bands that represent L-chains. However highly cross reactive antibodies yield patterns that resemble each other closely (Edelman *et al* 1961). It appears that antibodies of different specificities consist of different types of L-chains and that L-chains might therefore carry antibody combining activity. However isolated L-chains proved to be completely inactive.

Unlike L-chains purified H-chains from certain antibodies were found to be active in terms of specific inhibition of precipitation and in terms of co precipitation. Recovery of specific activity was incomplete and varied

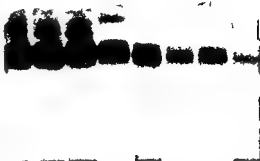


FIG 2 Starch gel patterns of reduced and alkylated guinea pig antibodies of different specificities (Edelman *et al* 1961). Direction of migration is toward the top. The more slowly migrating bands represent H-chains the faster ones L-chains. The first pattern on the left was obtained from whole guinea pig  $\gamma$  globulin. The experiment demonstrates the variation in L-chains between antibodies of different specificities.

with the degree of reduction (Fleischman *et al* 1963). Porter concludes that the combining region is located on H-chains and that the variability of L-chains is unrelated to antibody activity.

However other recent reports indicate that L-chains although inactive *per se* bear an intimate relationship to the combining region. Labeling of the combining site by different methods followed by dissociation of the antibody disclosed the presence of label in H- and in L-chains (Metzger *et al* 1964, Roholt *et al* 1963). These observations suggest participation of L-chains in the formation of the active site although the extent of this participation and its significance for antibody activity remains unknown.

Also unknown is whether the specificity of the combining region is determined by amino acid composition and sequence or by folding. According to a hypothesis put forth



by Karush (1960), specificity is acquired by variable pairing of sulfhydryl groups and subsequent stabilization of conformation by disulfide bonds. In this way a small number of disulfide bonds could afford the formation of a large number of different folding patterns. According to Buckley, Whitney and Tanford (1963) this possibility appears to be eliminated by the available chemical data (Fleischman *et al.* 1963). The number of distinguishable patterns which can be formed within the restrictions of the known arrangement of intrachain S-S bonds in pieces I and II is exceedingly small. These authors conclude that antibody specificity is generated primarily by differences in amino acid sequence in some portion of the antibody molecule.

### COMPLEMENT

The term complement refers to a highly complex system of blood serum factors which possesses the potential capacity to cause irreversible damage to cell membranes. It consists of at least 9 or 10 components, the exact number being unknown. It is activated by interaction with antigen-antibody complexes or  $\gamma$  globulin aggregates. Activation is followed by a chain reaction which involves all the components in characteristic sequence and results in loss of overall complement activity. By virtue of its combining power with  $\gamma$  globulin, complement is capable of precipitating soluble antigen-antibody complexes and of reacting with cell membranes. For its cytotoxic action, specific antibody to cell membrane antigens is required in most instances. The chemical mode of the complement reaction and the mechanism by which complement interferes with normal membrane function are unknown.

### THE COMPLEMENT REACTION

**The Components.** In the course of the discussion of antibodies it was possible to proceed from a mere description of serologic phenomena to an analysis of the underlying molecular properties of antibody protein, i.e.  $\gamma$  globulin. A similarly illuminating advancement of our understanding of complement has not yet been achieved. For most of the individual activities which together form

the cytotoxic capacity of serum, the chemical correlative is not known. In the few instances where it has been identified recently, many of the physicochemical and chemical details have not been worked out. Further, with one exception, none of these activities is defined in familiar biochemical terms. They remain for the time being enigmatic serologic activities defined only by their role in the cytotoxic activity of fresh blood serum. A comparison of the few isolated and purified complement components with each other and with  $\gamma$  globulin shows that complement components bear no antigenic resemblance to  $\gamma$  globulin and unlike different antibodies, no resemblance to each other. They appear to possess as different molecular properties as they have different functions in the complement reaction.

Originally, complement activity was estimated by bacteriolysis. When immune hemolysis was discovered, antibody-coated erythrocytes became the universally employed indicator system. In most laboratories, sheep erythrocytes are used and are sensitized with nonagglutinating quantities of antibody to sheep erythrocytes produced in rabbits. The widespread use of erythrocytes as indicator cells has created the impression that complement is primarily hemolytic. The fact is that a large variety of cells of mammalian origin as well as from lower animals and certain microorganisms are susceptible to the action of complement. The advantage of using erythrocytes is that part of their intracellular protein is intensely colored and can be readily quantitated spectrophotometrically after liberation from the cells. Therefore, the amount of extracellular hemoglobin is used commonly as a convenient measure for the number of red cells lysed by complement.

That complement is not a single substance can be demonstrated easily by the separation of serum into euglobulins and pseudoglobulins, which is accomplished by dialysis of serum against buffer of low ionic strength. Neither the euglobulins nor the pseudoglobulins *per se* are capable of lysing antibody-coated red cells. However, recombination of the 2 fractions results in reconstitution of the hemolytic activity of the original serum. Treatment of serum with small amounts of ammonia or hydrazine as well as heating at

56 °C for a short period of time also results in hemolytically inactive complement. That the hydrazine sensitive material is not identical with the heat labile substance but that both are independent parts of the complement system is shown by recovery of activity after pooling of the 2 differently treated sera. In this and in similar fashion early students of complement succeeded in demonstrating that complement consists of at least 4 components with widely diverging properties. These components were numbered and referred to as C'1, C'2, C'3 and C'4. C'1 and C'2 were found to be thermolabile and C'3 and C'4 thermostable components. C'1 and most of C'3 were characterized as euglobulins, C'2 and C'4 as pseudoglobulins. C'3 could be preferentially inactivated by incubation of serum with zymosan which is an insoluble yeast polysaccharide and C'4 was destroyed by treatment with ammonia or with hydrazine. Analysis of the sequence of action of these 4 components in immune hemolysis established that C'1 initiates the reaction and that this component is followed by the 4th, the 2nd and finally the 3rd component.

Only recently have the new and powerful protein separation methods been employed for the separation of complement activities. After adsorption of serum to a DEAE cellulose column the various complement components are eluted in a characteristic sequence on variation of ionic strength or pH. Application of more complex chromatographic procedures has afforded the preparation of serum fractions which contain only one component. Such preparations are referred to as functionally pure complement components and have been used to great advantage in kinetic studies of the complement reaction (Mayer 1961a). It is important to realize at the outset that for the time being complement components are defined by their activities only because in most instances other parameters are unknown. Therefore when a preparation of a component is considered to be functionally pure this does not imply and must not be confused with purity as defined by the criteria of protein chemistry. In fact functionally pure components can be highly heterogeneous mixtures of proteins of which the active component constitutes only a very small part.

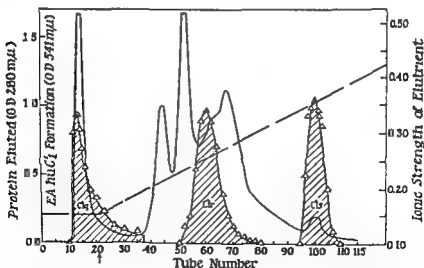


FIG 3 Separation of the classic first component of human complement into three subcomponents by DEAE chromatography (Lepow *et al* 1963). All three factors are required for generation of the activity of the classic first component. It is an example of the molecular complexity of components previously believed to be monomolecular.

In chromatograms of human or of guinea pig serum C 2 and C 4 activities can be detected readily and are found in fractions which are definitely separable from each other (Rapp *et al* 1959 Becker 1960). However attempts to detect C'1 and C'3 activities have encountered considerable initial difficulty and have led subsequently to the realization that both C'1 and C'3 are complex each having a number of different activities. C 1 of human serum is separated on chromatography into 3 subcomponents C'1q C'1r and C'1s (Lepow *et al* 1963). Recovery of whole C 1 activity is achieved only by recombination of the chromatographic fractions containing the 3 subcomponents (Fig 3). Similarly C 3 of guinea pig serum consists of 4 separate factors called C'3a, C'3b C'3c and C'3d (Linscott and Nishioka 1963). The new nomenclature of complement proposes to call these subcomponents of the classic 3rd component C'3 C'5 C'6 and C'7 according to their sequence of action. Provision has to be made for the discovery of additional factors essential for complement activity. Indeed evidence has been obtained suggesting the existence of at least one more component which contributes to the activity of the classic 3rd component. Details will be discussed below.

**The Reaction Steps** Complement reactive sites on the cell surface are generated by the attachment of antibody molecules to membrane antigens. Complement binding apparently requires that at least 2 antibody molecules must be brought together and held in close proximity to each other. It is postulated that a site reactive with complement is formed either by 2 molecules of antibody of the 19S variety or by 4 of the 7S class (Weinrach and Talmage 1958). It follows that the degree of complement fixation should be dependent also on the distribution of antigenic sites on the cell surface. If these are spaced so that antibody molecules will not attain the necessary degree of proximity interaction with complement would not be expected to occur. The inability of Rh antibodies to fix complement has been explained in this fashion. As further support for the above hypothesis the observation can be cited that the number of reactive sites on the surface of a sensitized cell is con-

siderably smaller than the total number of antibody molecules that have combined with it (Mayer, 1961a). To some extent antibody molecules are able to transfer from site to site and from cell to cell thus increasing the probability of formation of reactive sites and enhancing their hemolytic efficiency.

The combining region for complement was originally attributed to fragment III of the antibody molecule (Taranta and Franklin 1961, Amurajan and Leikhim, 1961). After pepsin treatment which eliminates this part of the molecule complement fixation power is indeed strikingly reduced but is not completely abolished. An appreciable proportion of the original fixation capacity is retained by the resulting 5S antibody derivative (Schur and Becker 1963). There is probably more than one region in the  $\gamma$  globulin molecule which is involved in interaction with complement. The existence of at least 2 receptor sites has to be postulated: one for the C'1 complex the other for C 4 since removal of C'1 from immune aggregates containing complement does not affect binding of C'4. Although the groups on  $\gamma$  globulin which are responsible for complement binding are unknown binding is dependent on an intact internal structure. Reduction of disulfide bonds followed by alkylation a treatment which does not affect the molecular weight of 7S antibodies or their capacity to combine with antigen renders antibody molecules incapable of interacting with complement (Wiedermann *et al* 1963).

The first step of the complement reaction involves the components C'1q C'1r and C'1s and leads to the generation of esterase activity. Upon uptake of the 3 components by reactive sites the proesterase C 1s is activated presumably by the action of C'1q and C'1r (Lepow *et al* 1963). The product of this reaction EAC 1a is a cell (E) or a cellular site which contains antibody (A) and active first component (C 1a) and is ready to react with the next component. Uptake of the whole C 1 complex requires participation of calcium ions although C'1q which will be discussed as 11S component has the ability to combine with  $\gamma$  globulin in the absence of bivalent cations. This latter fact as well as moderate success in preparing the EAC 1q intermediate complex (Muller Eberhard

1961) has suggested a sequence of action which begins with C1q and ends with C1s. Activated C1 is able to transfer from site to site and from cell to cell as is typical of an enzyme; it can react with many molecules of substrate (Borsos and Mayer 1962). When calcium is withdrawn from the reaction mixture the reaction between sensitized cells and the first component is reversed (Becker 1960). Under these conditions the fluid phase contains C1 esterase as well as hemolytically active C1. Although it is an enzyme, C1 esterase is not involved in the actual process of cell lysis. Its natural substrate is not the cell membrane but apparently 2 of the other complement components, namely C4 and C2. Recent studies by Naff, Pensky and Lepow (1964) indicate that the 3 subcomponents of C1 occur in serum in the form of a macromolecular complex which is held together by  $\text{Ca}^{++}$  and has a sedimentation rate of 18S.

The next event in the complement reaction is uptake by EAC1a cells of C4 activity, a step which depends entirely on the action of C1 esterase as evidenced by the failure of uptake on blocking of the esterase by DFP (diisopropyl fluorophosphate). Once C4 activity is attached to the cell it is firmly retained even if subsequently C1 is removed by treatment with EDTA (Becker 1960). Until recently it was not known whether uptake of C4 activity corresponded to an actual attachment of the C4 molecule or to an interaction with resulting change in membrane conditions and simultaneous destruction of C4 activity in the fluid phase. It has now been established that formation of EAC1a4 is dependent on physical uptake of the protein in which C4 activity has been found to reside (Muller-Eberhard and Biro 1963). This protein is called  $\beta_{1E}$  globulin and will be described below. To combine with EAC1a cells it must react with a receptor site located either on the antibody molecules or on the cell membrane since C1 is excluded as a possible receptor. While there is evidence for fixation of  $\beta_{1E}$  globulin to antibody in complement treated immune precipitates, experiments to be alluded to later indicate that in cytolytic reactions  $\beta_{1E}$  globulin combines directly with the cell membrane.

During the subsequent step C2 reacts with EAC1a4 cells to produce intermediate complexes containing the activated form of the second component of complement, C2a. This step requires magnesium ions. In the somewhat awkward but systematic language adhered to by students of complement, this product is symbolized by the expression EAC1a42a. Two phases of this reaction can be distinguished: during the first C2 becomes loosely attached to EAC1a4 and during the second phase the activated first component acts on C2, probably by cleaving the molecule and transferring an active group, C2a, to a receptor on C4. An inactive fragment, C2i, is released into the fluid phase and can be demonstrated there by immunologic means (Mayer 1963). Activation, which is highly dependent on temperature, can be inhibited by agents which block or competitively inhibit C1 esterase. One of the peculiarities of C2a is its marked lability, which is particularly conspicuous at an elevated temperature and results in reversion of the intermediate complex EAC1a42a to the EAC1a4 state (Mayer 1961a). The cause of the decay has not been elucidated. It is prevented or perhaps it becomes undetectable and immaterial when the next 3 components of the complement system have completed their reaction with the cell. Evidence is accumulating suggesting that C2a constitutes an enzyme or at least part of an enzyme which acts on C3.

Conversion of an EAC1a42a cell to a state in which it will undergo spontaneous lysis is known to require at least 4 factors of guinea pig serum (Linscott and Nishioka 1963). Two of these are thought to be necessary to render an EAC1a42a cell unsusceptible to the effects of time and temperature, i.e. to preserve its reactivity with the last 2 components of the system. Although such an accumulation of factors may seem to be elaborate enough to achieve and to secure a simple biologic effect such as immune cytotoxicity, the latest evidence indicates that actually 3 separate factors are required for the conversion of EAC1a42a to a stable intermediate; thus at least 5 factors are necessary for the conversion of the same complex to an irreversibly damaged cell that finally will undergo lysis.

The component which is able to react directly with EAC'1a<sub>4</sub>2a cells is defined as C'3 and has been identified with a protein in human serum designated  $\beta_{1c}$  globulin. In the course of their interaction with cells containing C'2a a certain proportion of C'3 molecules is taken up and firmly retained by cellular sites while the majority of the molecules are released into the fluid phase in physicochemically altered and hemolytically inactive form. Both uptake of C'3 and conversion to C'3i are highly temperature dependent processes; they are independent of bivalent cations and are not catalyzed by C'1 esterase.

Following C'3 two factors here referred to as C'5 and C'6, are the next ones to act. Only if both of these components react with EAC'1a<sub>4</sub>2a<sub>3</sub> will an intermediate complex be formed which no longer displays the decay phenomenon so characteristic for its 3 immediate precursors (Nilsson and Muller Eberhard 1964; Nelson personal communication; Wellensiek and Klein 1965). The stable complex may be represented by the expression EAC'1a<sub>4</sub>2a<sub>3</sub>5<sub>6</sub>. It is characteristic for C'5 and C'6 that they require for their action the presence on the cell of both C'2a and C'3. If C'2a has decayed cells now in the state EAC'1a<sub>4</sub>3 can be restored to EAC'1a<sub>4</sub>2a<sub>3</sub> by addition of C'2 (Linscott and Nishioka 1963). C'5 of human serum has been identified with a protein which, on the basis of its immunoelectrophoretic behavior, has been named  $\beta_{1f}$  globulin (Nilsson and Muller Eberhard 1964).

The final 2 steps lead to the critical changes in membrane integrity which initiate cell lysis. After action of C'7 the cells exhibit increased fragility and this has been interpreted to indicate partial disintegration of cell membrane structure without breakdown of membrane function. The fatal event is caused by C'8, after it has acted on the cells lysis ensues. Heat lability of C'7 and C'8 and temperature dependence of the final reaction suggests that these 2 components may be enzymatic in nature (Linscott and Nishioka 1963). Since questions concerning nomenclature have not been settled definitively it should be pointed out that the terms C'3<sub>5</sub>6<sub>7</sub>8 used by the author correspond to C'3c<sub>5</sub>6<sub>7</sub>8 of Nelson's terminology.

The entire sequence of events is illustrated diagrammatically in Figure 4. Although there is reason to believe that an organism endowed with this highly complex cytotoxic mechanism has a selective advantage over one that lacks it, one cannot help wonder why it is so unusually complex. To our mind the biologic role of complement is revealed in its capacity to impair cell membranes. Experimentally, destruction of cell membranes *in vitro* and *in vivo* is accomplished readily by enzymes such as lecithinase and, indeed, enzymatic activity is implicated in the final steps of complement action. Why then has nature evolved and maintained this elaborate system when the task could be achieved essentially by a single enzyme? Evidently, to be compatible with life, cytotoxic activity must not occur in a

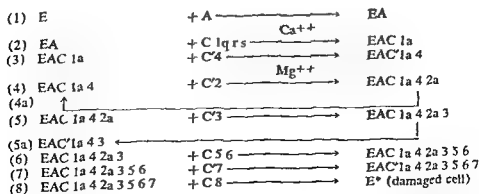


FIG. 4. Complement reaction sequence.

form which would act indiscriminately. Safety devices are required which impose rigid restrictions on its action and direct it to selected targets. The components which precede the last 2 in the complement reaction may well represent such a device. On the other hand one has to be mindful of the possibility that earlier steps of the complement reaction may have their own biologic significance which may be entirely unrelated to membrane damage. As will be discussed below complement promotes phagocytosis for this to occur the reaction does not have to go to completion. Similarly other as yet unidentified biologic functions may be associated with limited parts of the complement reaction or with individual components.

### CHEMICAL ASPECTS

**C'1 Esterase.** The discovery of the enzymatic nature of C'1 constitutes perhaps the most significant recent contribution in the complement field. With this observation complement has come within reach of biochemical definition.

The initial observation was made by Levine (1955) who found that diisopropyl fluorophosphate (DFP), a powerful inactivator of esterases, inhibits immune hemolysis by guinea pig complement. He also found that this effect is due to an action of DFP on EAC'1a<sub>4</sub> cells. Subsequently Becker showed the affected component to be C'1a. From his work (Becker 1956, 1960) and that of Lepow (Lepow *et al.* 1956, Ratnoff and Lepow 1957, Lepow *et al.* 1963) the following concept evolved. A portion of the first component C'1s represents an inactive proenzyme which cannot be inhibited by DFP. Upon interaction with C'1q and C'1r it occurs during immune hemolysis the proenzyme is activated and esterase activity ensues. Unlike its precursor the activated enzyme is readily blocked by DFP as evidenced by disappearance of esterase activity and of C'1a hemolytic activity.

The enzymatic activity of C'1a can be demonstrated with the aid of certain synthetic amino acid esters which are hydrolyzed by C'1a at the ester linkage. For human C'1 esterase the most susceptible compound is N acetyl L tryptophan ethyl ester p toluene

sulfonyl L arginine methyl ester and benzoyl L arginine methyl ester also display a high degree of susceptibility whereas many other compounds of similar structure do not.

Although no proteolytic activity has been demonstrated for C'1 esterase the enzyme is capable of destroying C'2 and C'4 activity in serum. This may seem to be in striking contrast with its presumed function the catalysis of the union of C'4 and C'2 with antibody coated cells. However if it is assumed that C'1 esterase acts identically in both cases for instance by splitting a bond which thereafter can react either with a cellular receptor site or with water then the discrepancy is resolved. Whether a molecule is activated or inactivated by C'1 esterase may thus depend merely on the immediate availability or the lack of cellular receptor sites. Much is in favor of such a hypothesis.

For activation and uptake of C'1 calcium ions are important. The role of calcium during activation is strictly specific (Mayer 1961) whereas a number of bivalent cations can substitute for calcium in establishing and maintaining the bond between C'1a and EA (Wirtz and Becker 1961). It is possible that calcium functions as a ligand linking 2 negatively charged molecules.

More than 2,400 fold purification of C'1 esterase has been achieved by chromatographic techniques (Haines and Lepow 1963). However these highly purified preparations are still not quite homogeneous in the ultracentrifuge and on immunochemical analysis. The enzyme migrates as  $\alpha$  globulin on paper electrophoresis and has an  $\eta$  rate of 4S.

**11S Component.** When human serum is adsorbed with soluble aggregates of  $\gamma$  globulin in the presence of EDTA hemolytic complement activity is lost. When this observation was first made it was most startling and at variance with the well established concept that complement cannot interact with immune aggregates in the absence of bivalent cations. In confirmation of this widely held view it was found that none of the classic components was removed by this treatment. Therefore it was concluded that a factor had been eliminated from serum which although not a classic component is nevertheless essential for hemolytic complement activity and is capable of combining directly

with  $\gamma$  globulin even in the absence of calcium ions. This postulated factor was isolated from  $\gamma$  globulin aggregates which had been exposed to EDTA containing serum (Muller Eberhard and Kunkel, 1961).

Since the sedimentation coefficient of this new complement component is 11S it was tentatively called the 11S component. Its electrophoretic behavior resembles that of a slow  $\gamma$  globulin; it must be one of the most basic proteins of human serum. Although it migrates in the electric field like a  $\gamma$  globulin it bears no immunochemical relationship to  $\gamma$  globulin.

When purified 11S component is added to a serum preparation previously depleted of this protein and thus rendered hemolytically inactive activity is fully restored. The quantity of 11S component required for full restoration of activity corresponds to approximately 0.05 per cent of the total serum protein present in the reaction mixture. Interaction of the component with soluble immune or  $\gamma$  globulin aggregates results in their precipitation suggesting at least 2 combining sites on a molecule of 11S component. Both hemolytic and precipitating activity are rapidly destroyed on heating of the protein to 56° C. The bond between 11S component and antibody coated cells or soluble  $\gamma$  globulin aggregates appears to be weak. It is much strengthened by the participation of C1r and C1s.

Lepow recently has shown that the 11S component which he calls C1q together with C1r is required for activation of C1 esterase. Thus present evidence suggests that the 11S component assumes the important function of initiating the complement reaction by combining with  $\gamma$  globulin molecules and by participating in the activation of C1 esterase. An analogous activity has been described for rabbit and for guinea pig serum (Barbaro 1963).

**$\beta_{1E}$  Globulin.** This is the 4th component of human complement and the 1st of the classic components which has been isolated and characterized. Isolation was accomplished by a combination of preparative electrophoresis and chromatography (Muller Eberhard and Biro 1963). The final product exhibited a high degree of physicochemical

homogeneity and could be defined with the aid of antisera as a single immunochemical entity of human serum. The protein was designated  $\beta_{1E}$  globulin. It has a sedimentation coefficient of 10S which is independent of concentration. It contains a carbohydrate moiety. On treatment with dilute hydrazine which is known to inactivate C4 the protein undergoes some distinct physicochemical changes.

Before concluding that an activity resides in a given protein, it is necessary to demonstrate their inseparability by a variety of separation procedures. In addition whenever possible more specific criteria should be employed. In the case of  $\beta_{1E}$  globulin such criteria are given by the known behavior of C4 activity. In complete analogy to C4 activity  $\beta_{1E}$  globulin combines only with cells containing the active first component of complement and not with sensitized cells or with DFP inhibited EAC1a. Further treatment with hydrazine renders  $\beta_{1E}$  globulin incapable of combining with EAC1a cells but when EAC1a4 cells, which contain  $\beta_{1E}$ , are treated with hydrazine  $\beta_{1E}$  remains cell bound as does C4 activity. The presence of  $\beta_{1E}$  globulin on the cell surface can be demonstrated either directly by using radioactively labeled  $\beta_{1E}$  or indirectly by agglutination of the cells with an antiserum to this component. It thus appears that  $\beta_{1E}$  globulin represents human C4 and that the conversion of EAC1a to EAC1a4 cells corresponds to attachment of  $\beta_{1E}$  to the cells.

**$\beta_{1C}$  Globulin.** Only after its isolation from human serum was this protein recognized as an essential part of the hemolytic complement system (Muller-Eberhard *et al.* 1960). It is defined as C3 because it interacts directly with cells containing C2a (EAC1a42a). The reaction does not proceed at 0° C. The protein migrates in the electric field as a slow  $\beta_1$  globulin; it has a sedimentation coefficient of 9.5S and is endowed with a carbohydrate moiety and is characterized by a pronounced lability. On treatment with dilute hydrazine or ammonia or on aging it undergoes distinct physicochemical changes. The altered protein has a greater electrophoretic mobility and a lower sedimentation rate (7S). It is designated  $\beta_{1A}$  globulin. In this form the protein is hemolytically inactive.

TABLE 2 PROPERTIES OF ISOLATED COMPLEMENT COMPONENTS

	11S COMPONENT	$\beta_{1E}$ GLOBULIN	$\beta_{1C}$ -GLOBULIN	$\beta_{1F}$ GLOBULIN
20 w	11 IS	10 OS	9 SS	9 AS
Electrophoretic mobility	$\gamma$	$\beta_{1-\alpha_2}$	$\beta_2 \beta_1$	$\beta_{1-\alpha_2}$
Serum concentration ( $\mu\text{g/ml}$ )	20 30	30 50	300-400	30 50
Activity	C'1q	C'4	C'3	C'5
Receptor	EA	EAC'1a	EAC'1a 4 2a	EAC'1a 4 2a 3
Temperature requirement	0	0	+	
Inactivated by	heat	N <sub>2</sub> H	N H	heat

The conversion from the active  $\beta_{1C}$  to the inactive  $\beta_{1A}$  form can be followed best by immunoelectrophoretic analysis of whole serum or of the isolated protein. It is so conspicuous that this phenomenon originally led to the recognition of the protein as a potential complement component.

During immune hemolysis when C'3 activity is consumed  $\beta_{1C}$  globulin is affected in seemingly two ways: it is changed and it is in part attached to the cells. Approximately 80 to 90 per cent of the protein is found after the reaction in the fluid phase. It is present in an electrophoretically faster form closely resembling  $\beta_{1A}$  globulin but differing in that its sedimentation rate is practically unchanged. To distinguish this reaction product from  $\beta_{1A}$  globulin, the product of aging, the term  $\beta_{1G}$  globulin is tentatively proposed. Approximately 10 to 20 per cent of the original  $\beta_{1C}$  molecules are found to be in firm combination with the cell membranes. Whether these molecules are in the  $\beta_{1C}$  or in the  $\beta_{1G}$  state or represent still another form is not known with certainty. Some observations suggest that the protein occurs on the cell surface in more than one discrete form and that the form which is reactive with C'5 is  $\beta_{1G}$ .

The chemical events underlying the conversion of  $\beta_{1C}$  globulin during the complement reaction have not yet been elucidated. However, since the phenomenon is temperature dependent and highly reproducible, it may be postulated that it is mediated by an enzyme associated with the complement system. When cells in the state EAC'1a 4 2a are reacted at 37°C with highly purified human  $\beta_{1C}$  globulin (free of detectable quantities of C'5 and C'6), conversion proceeds rapidly.

Since DFP inhibits neither uptake nor conversion and since cells previously decayed to the EAC'1a 4 state are completely inert to  $\beta_{1C}$  globulin, it must be concluded that C'2a is responsible for uptake and conversion of  $\beta_{1C}$  globulin (Muller Eberhard *et al.* 1964). The possible enzymatic nature of C'2a deserves serious consideration and exploration.

**$\beta_{1F}$  Globulin.** This protein has been recognized only recently as a new entity of human serum and as the carrier of C'5 activity (Nilsson and Muller Eberhard 1964). Detection was facilitated by an antibody occurring in some antisera to  $\beta_{1C}$  globulin. The original preparations of  $\beta_{1C}$  globulin were contaminated with small amounts of  $\beta_{1F}$  globulin. Electrophoretically, the protein behaves like a fast  $\beta$  globulin; its sedimentation coefficient is 9.4S. Its activity is exceedingly thermostable.

Table 2 summarizes a few characteristic features of the components isolated so far. In spite of certain physicochemical similarities, these proteins are completely unrelated to each other by immunochemical criteria. They also are unrelated to  $\gamma$  globulin.

## OTHER HUMORAL FACTORS

In addition to antibody and complement, some other factors may play a role in humoral defense mechanisms.

### LYSOZYME

This is an enzyme which is capable of lysing certain bacteria by attacking cell wall mucopolysaccharides. It is widely distributed in nature and occurs in the body fluids including serum and plasma of man and animals.



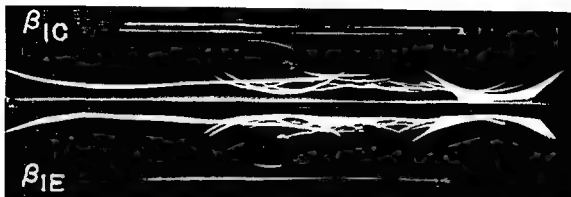


FIG 5 Immunoelectrophoretic demonstration of two complement components in human serum. The single precipitin line above represents  $B_{1C}$  globulin (C3) it was obtained by filling specific anti  $B_{1C}$  antiserum into the longitudinal well at the top. The line at the bottom represents  $B_{1E}$  (C4) it was developed using a specific anti  $B_{1E}$  antiserum. The trough in the middle was filled with antiserum to whole human serum.

The richest source for lysozyme is egg white.

Lysozyme is a basic protein with an isoelectric point at pH 10.11. Its sedimentation coefficient  $s_{20w}$  is 1.9S, the molecular weight 14,400 (Sophianopoulos *et al* 1962). It is stable at acid pH even when heated but unstable in alkaline pH. The primary structure of egg white lysozyme has been worked out by Jollès *et al* (1963) who also showed that there is 1 disulfide bridge in the molecule.

Lysozyme activity is commonly determined by lysis of a gram positive coccus which was isolated by Fleming and named by him *Micrococcus lysodeikticus*. Degradation of this microorganism by lysozyme results in the release of N-acetylaminosugar compounds and N-acetylaminosugar peptide complexes. Lysozyme breaks the glycosidic bond between carbon atom Number 1 of N-acetylmuramic acid and carbon atom Number 4 of N-acetylglucosamine (Salton and Ghuyssen 1959) accordingly the enzyme is a  $\beta$  (1.4) N-acetyl-hexosaminidase.

#### BETA LYSIN

Beta lysin (Pettersen, 1926) also called the beta bactericidal system of serum is distinct from antibody and complement and also from lysozyme. It is capable of killing a number of gram positive microorganisms by an unknown mechanism of action. *Bacillus subtilis* is commonly used to test for its

presence in serum. Beta lysin can be separated into two components which are both required for full bactericidal activity against *Bacillus subtilis* (Myrvik and Leake 1960). Component I is precipitated at 16 per cent ethanol concentration and component II at 40 to 50 per cent. Both components are heat stable and nondialysable; neither is inactivated by ammonia. The activity is potentiated by bicarbonate. Heat stability distinguishes the system from complement components C'1 and C'2, resistance to treatment with ammonia from components C'3 and C'4. Since addition of specific agglutinins to serum does not enhance the activity, antibody is believed not to be involved. Lysozyme from egg white cannot substitute for either component. While quite a bit is known about what beta lysin is, not little in fact is known about what it is. Some light on its peculiar nature is shed by the finding that plasma, even when prepared without resort to anticoagulants, manifests no such bactericidal activity; apparently the responsible factors are liberated from platelets during the clotting process (Hirsch 1960, Jago and Jacox 1961).

#### OPSONIN

Substances present in blood serum which act on bacteria to render them subject to phagocytosis are called opsonins. They function by altering the surface conditions of objects to be ingested. There appears to be a

number of substances in serum that can act as opsonin. Antibody exerts a strong opsonizing effect in many instances and complement generally enhances this effect. Phagocytosis of larger cells e.g. erythrocytes proceeds poorly or not at all in the absence of complement. In certain instances still other serum factors come into play. Hirsch has described a heat labile opsonin which is operative when specific antibody is lacking. It is distinguished from antibody by the following properties: it is not a  $\gamma$  globulin and it lacks specificity; it is heat labile and is inactivated by dilute ammonia and hydrazine; it reacts rapidly with bacteria at  $38^{\circ}\text{C}$  but not at  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  (Hirsch and Strauss 1964). These properties are reminiscent of those of complement. However, the heat labile opsonin described by Hirsch is distinct from hemolytic complement in that it does not require calcium and magnesium for combination with bacteria. The presence of this material on the surface of opsonized and washed bacteria can be demonstrated by the fluorescent antibody technique (Hirsch 1964). The chemical or immunochemical nature of the heat labile opsonin is unknown.

#### HUMORAL FACTORS IN CELLULAR IMMUNE MECHANISMS

Mention should be made of a group of humoral principles which are involved in cellular immune and defense mechanisms. Hardly anything is known about their nature and practically nothing about their mode of action. However, the biologic role of these factors is so important that attention should be focused on them.

A number of years ago Lawrence discovered that delayed sensitivity to bacterial and fungal antigens can be transferred from immune to nonimmune individuals by leukocyte extracts. The active principle which originates from lymphoid cells was called transfer factor. It is dialysable and has a molecular weight of less than 10,000. Its activity is resistant to treatment with DNase and RNase. The factor is released on contact of sensitized lymphoid cells with the antigen. The significance of transfer factor derives from its ability to endow recipients with delayed sensitivity *de novo*. In other words, this factor is capable of transferring immu-

nologic information and of causing the recipient to possess the immunologic memory of the donor for prolonged periods (Lawrence 1960).

Recently Najarian and Feldman (1963) demonstrated the transfer of homograft immunity by a soluble substance which was obtained from disrupted tissue sensitized lymphoid cells. The material possessed immunologic specificity and was not identical with transfer factor. Thermostability, solubility and chromatographic characteristics suggested to these authors that it might be a  $\gamma$  globulin representing transplantation antibody.

Another recent and most interesting development is the demonstration by Levey, Trainin and Law (1963) of a humoral factor that diffuses from thymic tissue and appears to be responsible for the evolution of immunologically competent lymphoid tissue. Mice thymectomized within 12 hours after birth develop the characteristic symptoms of neonatal thymectomy: marked lymphopenia, involution of lymphoid tissue and severe wasting disease. Death occurs at 7 to 8 weeks of age. In contrast, these symptoms did not develop when a cell tight diffusion chamber containing isologous newborn thymus was implanted in 3 to 4 week-old thymectomized mice. These animals did not show depletion of lymphocytes or involution of lymphoid tissue or any signs of wasting disease. Independently, Osoba and Miller (1963) demonstrated that a humoral factor of embryonic or neonatal thymus is able to restore the capacity to reject homografts in thymectomized mice.

Elucidation of the nature of this group of humoral factors will contribute considerably to the advancement of our understanding of immune phenomena.

#### EFFECT OF ANTIBODY AND COMPLEMENT ON CELL MEMBRANES

##### EFFECT OF ANTIBODY

Effective immune cytotoxicity requires both antibody and complement. To evaluate critically the role of complement it is necessary to determine whether antibody alone might be capable of inducing some changes in cell

metabolism or morphology Easton, Goldberg and Green (1962) have studied this question extensively, utilizing Krebs's ascites tumor cells. Viewing the cells with the electron microscope they found that ferritin labeled cytotoxic antibody was localized on the outer cell membrane. None of the ferritin label was detected inside the cell, indicating that antibody cannot pass the membrane of intact cells. Even over prolonged periods of time antibody had no effect on the cytoplasmic structures mitochondria and endoplasmic reticulum. However it did induce folding of limited portions of the outer cell membrane particularly in those areas where the antibody concentration was especially dense. These folded areas appeared to facilitate agglutination, since indigitation of surface projections of adjacent cells was observed frequently. The morphologic change induced by antibody was not accompanied by any functional lesion. In fact the cells could be grown in normal fashion with cytotoxic antibody present. These results support the concept that cytotoxic antibody alone has no adverse effect on cells and that its function in immune cytotoxicity is to mediate the action of complement. Further evidence of the mediating role of specific antibody is provided by observations indicating that antibody can be replaced by so-called non specific sensitizers.

#### NONSPECIFIC SENSITIZERS

A number of substances which chemically have nothing in common with antibody have been shown to function as sensitizers in immune hemolysis. The most thoroughly studied is polyethylene glycol. Cowan (1954) demonstrated its ability to replace antibody in the conventional hemolytic system consisting of sheep red cells, rabbit antibody and guinea pig complement. For effective hemolysis the concentration of polyethylene glycol in the reaction mixture had to be approximately 6 per cent and the concentration of calcium 5 times the conventional value. Under these conditions the reaction resembled in all phases the ordinary type of immune hemolysis which depends on antibody. Since cells treated with polyethylene glycol do not remain sensitized during subsequent washing, Cowan concluded that this

substance functions as a sensitizer by forming a loose, reversible link between the cell surface on the one hand and complement on the other.

An alternative mechanism of action is suggested by the finding that polyethylene glycol causes reversible aggregation of  $\gamma$  globulin in whole serum (Dalmaso and Muller Eberhard 1964). These aggregates are capable of interacting with complement. Therefore, it appears probable that polyethylene glycol causes  $\gamma$  globulin in the reaction mixture to aggregate and then binds some of the aggregates loosely to the cells. Complement reacting with aggregates which are in close proximity to the cell surface thus may affect the cell membrane directly. Whether processes similar to these in vitro experiments can occur in vivo is unknown.

The use of polyethylene glycol has aided the exploration of complement-cell membrane interaction substantially. Cells first treated with polyethylene glycol and human serum lacking cytotoxic antibody and then thoroughly washed were found to be coated heavily with  $\beta_{1E}$ - and  $\beta_{10}$  globulin. As judged by negative agglutination reactions with specific antisera these cells did not contain any of the 3  $\gamma$ -globulins. 7S  $\gamma$  globulin, 19S  $\gamma$  globulin,  $\beta_1$  globulin. Therefore it appears that the continued presence of these 2 complement components on the cell surface is not dependent on a sensitizer antibody or  $\gamma$  globulin. It must be postulated that both components are capable of establishing a direct link with membrane sites.

#### NATURE OF LESION CAUSED BY COMPLEMENT

**Morphology of Lysis of Mammalian Cells**  
Goldberg and Green (1959) have conducted electron microscopic studies on Krebs's ascites tumor cells treated with specific antibody plus complement. Within 2 minutes at 37°C dramatic morphologic changes become observable. The cells begin to swell and large areas of the cytoplasmic matrix are cleared of all particulate structures. The small electron-dense particles which form the background density of normal cells disappear. Mitochondria and the endoplasmic reticulum also swell and give rise to the formation of large cytoplasmic vesicles. All

these changes occur in the absence of detectable defects in the integrity of the outer cell membrane. However, Borsos, Dourmashkin and Humphrey (1964) using negative staining with potassium phosphotungstate were able to demonstrate holes in the membranes of a variety of cells which had been lysed by antibody and complement. The holes had a diameter of 80 to 100 Å.

**The Permeability Defect** The morphologic changes are accompanied by a drastic redistribution of water, small ions and macromolecules between the cytoplasm and the outer fluid. Within 5 minutes after the onset of complement action, 90 per cent of the intracellular potassium has left the cells and extracellular sodium has entered them. At this time only 15 per cent of intracellular protein has escaped. Later, after 1 or 2 hours, 50 per cent of intracellular protein, 75 per cent of RNA and most of the amino acids and the nucleotides have leaked into the supporting medium (Green *et al.* 1959).

A thorough study of the escape rate for small and for large molecules has enabled Green, Barrow and Goldberg (1959) to describe the course of events of cytolysis in the following way: the action of antibody and complement gives rise to functional holes of small size in the membrane which permit free exchange of potassium and sodium between the interior and the exterior of the cell. Equilibration results in an increased intracellular osmotic pressure. The reason for a rise in intracellular pressure is the high concentration of cytoplasmic macromolecules. With rising osmotic pressure following the action of antibody and complement, water enters the cells and they swell. Concomitant stretching of the cell membrane causes the primary lesions, now to permit passage of macromolecules. Swelling of the cells and subsequent loss of macromolecules can be prevented by a high concentration of extracellular protein sufficient to balance the intracellular colloid osmotic pressure. Sucrose does not prevent swelling; it can pass through the initial lesions into the interior of the cells. Thus, immune cytolysis represents a form of colloid osmotic lysis. The nature of the initial lesion is still obscure.

**Formation of Spheroplasts from Gram Negative Microorganisms** In the case of

bacterial cells, the primary injury caused by antibody and complement appears to involve the cell wall, not the membrane. The plasma membrane of bacteria is not immediately accessible since it is located on the inside of the cell wall. The firm structure of the wall serves to prevent the cells from bursting in hypotonic environments. For bacteria, most environments are hypotonic because of their own high intracellular osmotic pressure. Theoretically, complement might destroy bacteria either by damaging the cell wall, thereby depriving the underlying membrane of the much needed mechanical support, or it might impair the functional integrity of the plasma membrane, causing leakage of intracellular constituents through an unharmed cell wall. The latter alternative would require that the intact cell wall be permeable to macromolecules of the size of complement components.

Recently, several groups of investigators have studied the primary events in bacterial lysis induced by antibody and complement. They found that lysis of bacteria can be prevented by high concentrations of sucrose or lactose in the medium. Under these conditions, the organisms convert to protoplast-like osmotically fragile forms which remain viable as long as osmotic protection is provided. The phenomenon has been demonstrated for *Shigella dysenteriae* (Michael and Braun 1959), *Salmonella typhosa* and *Escherichia coli* (Muschel *et al.* 1959) and for *Vibrio cholerae* (Freeman *et al.* 1963). Evidently, the action of complement is directed against the cell wall, not the plasma membrane. There is some evidence that the cell wall is not completely removed by complement but is sufficiently altered as to allow the cell to assume a spherical shape.

Penicillin in the presence of sucrose also causes the formation of spheroplasts from gram negative organisms. However, the mode of action of complement and of penicillin differs (Michael and Braun 1959). Penicillin is most effective on bacteria which are in the exponential phase of growth; complement is effective on bacteria in the stationary phase. Penicillin interferes with cell wall synthesis; complement appears to act enzymatically on cell walls previously formed.

**The One Hit Theory** The number of

lesions required for lysis of a cell by complement is undoubtedly a reflection on the nature of the injury inflicted. For immune hemolysis, Mayer (1961b) has postulated a one-hit or single site reaction mechanism. His theory proposes that the production of a single damaged site is sufficient for lysis. This is difficult to comprehend in view of the limited size of the membrane defect caused by complement. It would seem to be reasonable and biologically sound to assume that a cell can compensate for a single lesion which is so small as to allow only electrolytes to pass freely. The one hit theory was developed by Mayer when he found that the absolute velocity and the extent of the hemolytic reaction are independent of the total number of cells in the reaction mixture. The observation precluded the possibility of a multiple hit or cumulative damage mechanism. However it does not necessarily exclude the possibility that more than one molecule of any one of the complement components may interact with a single cellular site. What the theory requires is that a single molecule of at least one of the components involved in the hemolytic reaction suffices for the production of a damaged site i.e. for at least one of the reaction steps there should exist a direct proportionality between the amount of the complement component reacting and the number of sites produced. According to Borsos, Rapp and Mayer (1961) this condition is fulfilled for the reaction between EAC'1a 4 and C'2 and according to Hoffmann (1960) for the interaction of EA with C 1 and of EAC 1a with C 4. A satisfactory correlation was found to exist between the number of lesions predicted on the basis of the one hit theory and the lesions actually counted by electronmicroscopy (Borsos, Dourmashkin and Humphrey 1964).

#### MODE OF ACTION OF COMPLEMENT

**Three Hypotheses** The injury caused to cell membranes by complement may be due to mechanical stress or direct enzymatic attack or to a nonenzymatic cytolytic agent produced in the course of the complement reaction. The first two hypotheses imply a direct and the last an indirect mode of action of complement on cell membranes.

The hypothesis of indirect action through a cytolytic agent is old but has been revived recently and tested experimentally by Fischer and Haupt (1961). These authors found that when fresh serum is treated with antigen-antibody precipitates, a cytolytic substance is produced. The material was isolated and identified by paper chromatography as lysolecithin. While a protein free filtrate of fresh guinea pig serum contained only 0.5  $\mu\text{g}$  of lysolecithin per ml, 3.7  $\mu\text{g}$ /ml were found after incubation of serum with immune complexes. A similar increment in the lysolecithin content of serum was not observed when any one of the classic complement components was inactivated prior to treatment. The authors conclude that lysolecithin represents the end product of the complement reaction and the substance to which complement owes its cytotoxic capacity.

The lysolecithin hypothesis implies that one of the two terminal complement components is a lipoprotein capable of donating lecithin and the other an enzyme which is able to convert lecithin to lysolecithin. However a serious difficulty arises from quantitative considerations. According to Fischer and Haupt,  $3.85 \times 10^{10}$  molecules of lysolecithin are necessary for lysis of a single human erythrocyte. Accordingly only  $10^5$  erythrocytes should be lysed by the amount of lysolecithin liberated from 1 ml of serum whereas the total hemolytic capacity of this amount of serum is far greater. Therefore, it was postulated that the efficiency of lysolecithin is much increased when it is liberated at a critical site on the cell surface. On the basis of present experimental evidence the lysolecithin hypothesis can be neither refuted nor accepted.

Mechanical stress appears to be the least likely cause of the effect of complement on membranes. No doubt a considerable number of complement molecules accumulate at a single reactive site therefore the possibility of increasing mechanical stress is by no means excluded but it seems unlikely to be the primary cause of membrane injury. A cell in the state EAC'1a 4 2a 3 5 6 probably has taken up all the complement macromolecules which are capable of permanent attachment since C'7 and C'8 which are not depleted in immune reactions (Lin, Scott and Nishioka 1963), probably are not

bound. Yet such a cell does not display any tendency to lyse.

Marked thermolability of C7 and C8 (Linscott and Nishioka 1963) and lack of their depletion in immune reactions are consistent with the assumption of an enzymatic mode of complement action.

The "Substrate" Plasma membranes are thought to be composed of a bimolecular leaflet of lipid covered on both surfaces with a layer of protein. Such a concept is consistent with the structure of membranes as observed in high resolution electron micrographs (Stoeckenius 1962). Accordingly there are at least 3 possible substrates for complement: lipid and protein.

Observations on immune bacteriolysis suggest that complement acts on lipid or lipid-polysaccharide complexes. Gram positive bacteria are generally resistant to destruction by complement; their cell wall is deficient in lipid. Gram negative microorganisms may be killed and lysed by antibody and complement. A large proportion of their cell wall consists of lipid complexes. Moreover, lysis of gram negative organisms by complement can be inhibited by certain phospholipid compounds (Ginsburg 1960). Therefore the assumption may be justified that gram negative organisms and mammalian cells are susceptible to complement because of the lipid moiety in their wall and membrane respectively.

Further evidence for the lipid nature of the substrate of complement has come from work on immune inhibition of the electron transfer system (Davis *et al.* 1963). Antibodies against rat mitochondria have *per se* very little effect on the activity of dihydrodiphosphopyridine nucleotide (DPNH) oxidase. However, marked inhibition is observed on addition of complement to the system. Since DPNH-oxidase consists of a complex chain of oxidation-reduction components it is not immediately evident with which component complement is interfering. The electron transfer chain includes cytochrome C which functions as an electron bridge between the 3rd and the 4th component in the chain (Green and Fleischer 1963). Apparently it is here that complement exerts its effect because the complement-inhibited system can be reactivated by the addition of small amounts of cytochrome C.

The components of the electron transfer system including cytochrome C have been shown to occur in the form of complexes with phospholipids (phosphatidylethanolamine, phosphatidylcholine, phosphatidylethanolamine, phosphatidylinositol and polyglycerol phosphatide). These compounds are of vital importance for the activity of the electron transfer system since activity is lost when they are extracted and is regained when they are replaced (Green and Fleischer 1963). In view of the importance of phospholipids to the system it may not be too surprising that phospholipase A is able to inactivate DPNH-oxidase. As in the case of inhibition by complement the effect of phospholipase is overcome by exogenous cytochrome C. Phospholipase presumably cleaves the phospholipid-cytochrome C complex (Ambe and Crane 1959). Since phospholipase is also capable of rapidly lysing mammalian cells it may be concluded that the action of complement resembles in certain respects that of phospholipase.

## HUMORAL MECHANISMS OF HOST DEFENSE

### NEUTRALIZATION OF VIRUSES AND BACTERIAL TOXINS

The capacity of viruses to infect cells and to multiply is readily inactivated by specific antibody. Virus is accessible to antibody as long as it is outside cells. Antibody is not virucidal; i.e. it does not destroy virus particles. Instead, antibody interferes with the attachment of virus to potential host cells. There are 2 phases of virus attachment: the mutual reversible binding and the subsequent formation of an irreversible bond between virus and cell surface. Whereas antibody does not interfere with reversible attachment of virus, it does block the reaction leading to irreversible attachment. Since the latter is a prerequisite for penetration and invasion of the host cell, a neutralized virus particle is rendered incapable of injecting its constituents into the cell.

Not all antiviral antibodies possess the capacity to neutralize. Antibody to bacteriophages, for instance, may be directed against either the head or the tail antigen. Since a phage particle combines with a host cell through groups located at the tip of its tail

only antitoxin antibody is able to neutralize the phage. The surface of the phage tail is visualized to contain a repeating pattern of antigenic structures which enables it to accommodate a large number of antibody molecules. However neutralization of a phage particle is effected by only a very few antibody molecules in fact a single molecule may suffice. This is inferred from kinetic studies which indicate that the rate limiting step is the reaction of 1 antibody molecule with 1 virus particle (Cann and Clark 1956). Various aspects of the problem of virus neutralization by antibody have been discussed by de St Groth (1962) and by Talmage and Cann (1961).

In addition to immune antibody normal mammalian sera of various sources have been reported to possess virus neutralizing activity. Recently several groups of investigators (Cowan 1962, Muschel and Toussaint 1962) studied the inactivation of coliphages by normal sera. These authors found that normally occurring specific antibody as well as complement participates in the reaction. Unlike immune antibody normal serum antibody is *per se* not effective against viruses although it does combine with phage particles even in the absence of complement. Neutralization occurs only when complement and bivalent cations are present. The observed complement requirement suggested a mechanism of neutralization for normal serum which differs from that ascribed to immune antibody. However the possibility of a virucidal action of complement could be excluded. Inactivation by normal serum is completely reversed on treatment of neutralized phage with papain (Muschel and Toussaint 1962).

A number of animal viruses have also been shown to be inactivated by normal serum. In certain cases serum substances other than antibody and complement have been held responsible for the effect. These substances have been discussed by Ginsberg (1960).

Little is known about the mechanism of neutralization of bacterial toxins although there are indications that it is similar to the neutralization of viruses. Many pathogenic species of gram positive bacteria produce exceedingly poisonous protein exotoxins

(see Chap 7). Antitoxin appears to exercise its neutralizing effect by preventing the interaction between toxin molecules and susceptible sites in the tissues. How many antitoxin molecules are needed for neutralization of one molecule of toxin has not been established unequivocally. As in the case of viruses neutralization is reversible by dissociation of the toxin antitoxin complex.

#### DESTRUCTION OF MICROORGANISMS

Many microorganisms including some pathogenic species, are killed by fresh serum. It appears to be reasonable to postulate that these substances sometimes function *in vivo* as they do *in vitro* and that they constitute important host defense factors.

Killing of gram positive microorganisms by serum is attributed to the action of beta lysin, a bactericidal system which has been discussed above. In brief, the system consists of two heat stable components (I and II) of unknown nature which bear no resemblance to antibody and complement. Sera from healthy human beings contain relatively low levels of beta lysin activity due to a deficiency in component I. In contrast acute phase sera are very active owing to a rapid rise in concentration of component I during the early stages of an infection (Myrvik and Leake 1960).

Gram positive organisms are also susceptible to the action of lysozyme. This enzyme which occurs in human serum in a concentration of approximately 5  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  attacks mucopeptide complexes in bacterial cell walls. Some of the bacteria which are most easily lysed by lysozyme belong to the genera *Micrococcus*, *Sarcina*, *Staphylococcus* and *Bacillus* (Salton 1957). Thus at least part of the bactericidal activity of serum for gram positive microorganisms may be due to lysozyme.

The destruction of gram negative bacteria is commonly ascribed to the action of complement and antibody. Some of these organisms undergo overt lysis when treated with serum whereas others are killed without lysis. If lysis occurs as in the case of *Sh. dysenteriae*, *S. typhosa*, *E. coli* and *V. cholerae* it results from primary damage to the cell wall not to the plasma membrane. Lysis is preceded by conversion of these

organisms to spheroplasts. According to Muschel and Treffers (1956) destruction of one bacterial cell of *S. typhosa* requires 700 to 860 molecules of antibody and  $1.5 \times 10^7$  molecules of complement the latter being estimated on the basis of complement nitrogen values and an assumed molecular weight of complement of 160 000.

While lysozyme cannot lyse gram negative bacteria as long as their cell wall is intact it definitely can do so in the presence of EDTA or after certain pretreatments of the organisms (Salton 1957 Repaske 1958). The cell wall has been demonstrated to contain the mucopeptide substrate of lysozyme (Mandelstam 1961) however the molecular arrangement of the wall is such that the enzyme cannot gain access to it. The mucopeptide complexes are probably covered by lipid or lipoproteins and they become accessible only after the organization of the lipid moiety has been impaired. Since complement seems to affect the lipid moiety in cell walls treatment with complement should render gram negative cells susceptible to lysozyme. Consequently lysozyme should enhance the bactericidal effect of antibody and complement although *per se* it is not bactericidal for gram negative bacteria. In deed enhancement of the bactericidal action of antibody and complement by lysozyme has been observed (Wardlaw 1962 Muschel 1963).

#### PROMOTION OF PHAGOCYTOSIS

Serum promotes phagocytosis by interacting with the particle to be ingested (Wright and Douglas 1904) and not by supporting the function of the phagocytic cell as Metchnikoff believed. The action of serum on microbes and other objects results in an alteration of their surface properties thereby facilitating their attachment to phagocytes. Factors responsible for phagocytosis promoting activity of serum are called opsonins. A number of different opsonins have been distinguished and include antibody complement and heat labile factors of unknown nature. Whether one or the other opsonin comes into play in a given situation depends largely on the nature of the surface constituents of the object to be ingested.

**In vitro Studies MICROORGANISMS** In re

lation to opsonin requirement for phagocytosis bacteria can be divided into 3 general classes some which require no serum for ingestion others which are engulfed when either heat labile opsonin or antibody is present and still others representing encapsulated strains which are ingested only in the presence of specific antibody (Hirsch and Strauss 1964). The first class is exemplified by group A streptococcus devoid of hyaluronic acid capsule and M protein the second by *Staphylococcus albus* and the third by *Klebsiella C*. Obviously immune antibody exerts in most instances an adequate opsonic effect on microorganisms so that additional heat labile components are rarely needed. However in the absence of specific antibody phagocytosis depends heavily on heat labile opsonins. Therefore it is likely that these latter factors assume a special significance *in vivo* when immune antibodies to invading microorganisms have not yet reached effective serum concentrations.

Heat labile opsonin shares its most characteristic feature thermolability with both natural antibody and complement. However according to Hirsch and Strauss (1964) it is not identical with either. These authors studied heat labile opsonin in rabbit serum and found that it differs from natural antibody in that it lacks specificity for bacterial antigens does not function at 4°C is not a  $\gamma$  globulin and is inactivated by dilute ammonia or hydrazine. While hydrazine sensitivity and temperature dependence of the opsonic reaction would relate heat labile opsonin to hemolytic complement complete independence of the reaction of bivalent cations seems to preclude an identity. However the possibility exists that the material is related to at least part of the complement system namely to one of the two hydrazine labile components. Indeed there is evidence suggesting that  $\beta_{1C}$  globulin constitutes a factor of the heat labile opsonin system in human serum. Regarding the mode of action of heat labile opsonin on bacteria information is scarce except for the important fact that it combines firmly with the bacterial cell surface (Hirsch 1964). Serum opsonins act by combining with constituents of the bacterial surface thereby neutralizing their



only antitail antibody is able to neutralize the phage. The surface of the phage tail is visualized to contain a repeating pattern of antigenic structures which enables it to accommodate a large number of antibody molecules. However, neutralization of a phage particle is effected by only a very few antibody molecules in fact a single molecule may suffice. This is inferred from kinetic studies which indicate that the rate limiting step is the reaction of 1 antibody molecule with 1 virus particle (Cann and Clark 1956). Various aspects of the problem of virus neutralization by antibody have been discussed by de St Groth (1962) and by Talmage and Cann (1961).

In addition to immune antibody, normal mammalian sera of various sources have been reported to possess virus neutralizing activity. Recently several groups of investigators (Cowan 1962, Muschel and Toussaint 1962) studied the inactivation of coliphages by normal sera. These authors found that normally occurring specific antibody as well as complement participates in the reaction. Unlike immune antibody, normal serum antibody is *per se* not effective against viruses although it does combine with phage particles even in the absence of complement. Neutralization occurs only when complement and bivalent cations are present. The observed complement requirement suggested a mechanism of neutralization for normal serum which differs from that ascribed to immune antibody. However, the possibility of a virucidal action of complement could be excluded. Inactivation by normal serum is completely reversed on treatment of neutralized phage with papain (Muschel and Toussaint 1962).

A number of animal viruses have also been shown to be inactivated by normal serum. In certain cases serum substances other than antibody and complement have been held responsible for the effect. These substances have been discussed by Ginsberg (1960).

Little is known about the mechanism of neutralization of bacterial toxins although there are indications that it is similar to the neutralization of viruses. Many pathogenic species of gram positive bacteria produce exceedingly poisonous protein exotoxins

(see Chap. 7). Antitoxin appears to exercise its neutralizing effect by preventing the interaction between toxin molecules and susceptible sites in the tissues. How many antitoxin molecules are needed for neutralization of one molecule of toxin has not been established unequivocally. As in the case of viruses, neutralization is reversible by dissociation of the toxin-antitoxin complex.

#### DESTRUCTION OF MICROORGANISMS

Many microorganisms, including some pathogenic species, are killed by fresh serum. It appears to be reasonable to postulate that these substances sometimes function *in vivo* as they do *in vitro* and that they constitute important host defense factors.

Killing of gram positive microorganisms by serum is attributed to the action of beta-lysin, a bactericidal system which has been discussed above. In brief, the system consists of two heat-stable components (I and II) of unknown nature which bear no resemblance to antibody and complement. Sera from healthy human beings contain relatively low levels of beta-lysin activity due to a deficiency in component I. In contrast, acute phase sera are very active owing to a rapid rise in concentration of component I during the early stages of an infection (Myrvik and Leake 1960).

Gram positive organisms are also susceptible to the action of lysozyme. This enzyme, which occurs in human serum in a concentration of approximately 5  $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$ , attacks mucopeptide complexes in bacterial cell walls. Some of the bacteria which are most easily lysed by lysozyme belong to the genera *Micrococcus*, *Sarcina*, *Staphylococcus* and *Bacillus* (Salton 1957). Thus, at least part of the bactericidal activity of serum for gram positive microorganisms may be due to lysozyme.

The destruction of gram negative bacteria is commonly ascribed to the action of complement and antibody. Some of these organisms undergo overt lysis when treated with serum, whereas others are killed without lysis. If lysis occurs, as in the case of *Sh. dysenteriae*, *S. typhosa*, *E. coli* and *V. cholerae*, it results from primary damage to the cell wall, not to the plasma membrane. Lysis is preceded by conversion of these

rat erythrocytes is strikingly reduced (Spiegelberg *et al* 1963). The rate of clearance becomes normal even in these de-complemented mice if the bacteria or the red cells are treated with fresh mouse serum *in vitro* prior to injection. If they are incubated with heat inactivated serum instead restoration of clearance is not observed. Since opsonization of both rat erythrocytes and *E. coli* with fresh mouse serum is completely prevented by EDTA it may be concluded that the opsonizing factor is related to hemolytic complement.

#### NON-COMPLEMENT BINDING ANTIBODY

The participation of complement in phagocytosis *in vivo* was corroborated further in studies employing antibody rendered incapable of binding complement. Pepsin digestion of antibody produces a bivalent 5S antibody fragment which is still capable of precipitation and agglutination of antigen but has lost most of its ability to fix complement. Erythrocytes coated with such digested antibody were eliminated from the blood of mice as slowly as untreated erythrocytes (Spiegelberg *et al* 1963). The antibody used had an  $s$  rate of 7S and on treatment with mercaptoethanol became nonhemolytic although its  $s$  rate and valency were unchanged. Evidently it had lost the intramolecular organization which is a prerequisite for complement fixation. However it had also lost its opsonic function (Miescher *et al* 1963). This is good evidence for an opsonin function of complement or parts thereof *in vivo*. These studies were performed in mice; the results are not necessarily representative for all other mammalian species. In the human for instance certain erythrocytes coated with non-complement fixing antibody are cleared rapidly (Mollison 1962).

**Immune Adherence** Nelson (1963) has furnished evidence that phagocytosis of microorganisms *in vitro* and *in vivo* might be aided substantially by their adherence to erythrocytes. Human and monkey red cells possess receptors on their surface allowing the attachment of particles which are coated with antibody and complement. The nature of the cellular receptor site is unknown but the component of complement responsible for the adherence phenomenon has been de-

termined and is according to Nelson identical with  $\beta_{1c}$  globulin. Thus a complement treated erythrocyte which has reached the state EAC 1a 4 2a 3 will give rise to a positive immune adherence phenomenon on addition of primate cells. This can be observed under the microscope or can be recognized macroscopically by overt agglutination. Pertinent in this connection is the demonstration by Nelson that phagocytosis of bacteria *in vitro* is considerably enhanced in the presence of primate erythrocytes. Apparently the phagocytic cell can get hold of a small particle more easily when it adheres to a large surface. The erythrocytes are not ingested under these conditions.

**Immunoconglutinin.** This is an autoantibody to fixed complement which is produced in man and animals in response to the invasion of the body by microorganisms (Coombs *et al* 1961). It appears to be a typical  $\gamma$  globulin with a sedimentation rate of 7S and 19S. The specificity of immunoconglutinin is directed against chemical groups of complement which are hidden in the native molecules but are revealed during the interaction of complement with antigen-antibody complexes. Lachmann (1962) found that cells in the state EAC 1a 4 2a are not conglutinated i.e. agglutinated by immunoconglutinin. However treatment of this intermediate complex with isolated  $\beta_{1c}$  globulin rendered it highly susceptible to conglutination. Thus in all probability the antigenic determinants which are reactive with immunoconglutinin are derived from  $\beta_{1c}$  globulin. That this protein undergoes characteristic physicochemical changes during the complement reaction has been discussed above.

Coombs *et al* (1961) have accumulated evidence indicating that immunoconglutinin has an effect on resistance to bacterial infections. In the mouse the conglutinin level can be raised readily by the injection of either live or killed bacteria. Mice with immunoconglutinin in their circulation clear bacteria from the blood more rapidly than control mice; furthermore bacterial counts of liver and spleen show enhanced intracellular killing.

**Attraction of Leukocytes by Serum Factors** In concluding the discussion of phago-

antiphagocytic effect, which otherwise would prevent attachment to phagocytes

In the case of some group A streptococci two distinct antiphagocytic surface materials can be distinguished M protein and hyaluronic acid To render these microbes susceptible to engulfment by phagocytes 2 different opsonins are required specific antibody to M protein and a heat labile factor The latter differs from the heat labile opsonin discussed above, since it occurs in human but not in rabbit serum The factor has been shown to counteract the anti-phagocytic effect of the hyaluronic acid capsule (Hirsch and Church 1960) it does not seem to be a component of complement since serum can be depleted of it without affecting any of the classic complement components (Stollerman *et al*, 1963)

According to Jenkin (1963) serum opsonins may have important functions beyond the promotion of phagocytosis and also play a role in determining the fate of ingested bacteria In the absence of serum opsonins certain bacteria survived and multiplied intracellularly whereas they were killed in the phagocytes when previously exposed to serum

**ERYTHROCYTES** The opsonic requirements for the ingestion of red cells apparently differ from those of bacteria This might be expected in view of their rather different surface properties Antibody alone is not a sufficient opsonin for red cells a heat labile material is necessary in addition to antibody Nelson (1962) identified the heat labile material as part of the hemolytic complement system He established the requirements of the 1st the 2nd and the 4th component and of C3c which is analogous to  $\beta_{10}$ -globulin Thus the complement reaction need not go to completion for the production of an opsonic effect The critical condition appears to be the presence of  $\beta_{10}$  globulin on the cell surface Antiserum to  $\beta_{1E}$  globulin and to  $\beta_{10}$ -globulin have been shown to inhibit the ingestion of red cells (Gerling Petersen and Pondman 1962)

**In Vivo Studies** The nature of opsonic factors operative *in vivo* is difficult to determine, since the experimental conditions are not readily controlled In spite of intrinsic difficulties the problem has been tackled by

several investigators, and interesting results have been obtained *In vivo* phagocytosis of gram positive and gram negative organisms and of colloidal particles like carbon is dependent on serum opsonins These opsonins are thought to be identical with antibody and complement and it is felt that there exists a reciprocal relationship between the quantities of the two substances required for effective opsonization

**DEPLETION OF OPSONIN** The critical role of serum factors for the clearance of bacteria and colloids *in vivo* has been demonstrated convincingly through studies of opsonin depletion Injection of a large dose of carbon into a mouse causes a marked reduction in the rate of clearance of a second dose given a short time after the first If bacteria are injected instead of carbon the rate of clearance is similarly low Initially the phenomenon was interpreted to indicate saturation of the phagocytic cells by the first carbon dose However Jenkin and Rowley (1961) showed that it is not the capacity of the phagocytes which is exhausted but the amount of available opsonin in the circulation Opsonization of the bacteria or the carbon with fresh serum *in vitro* resulted in their prompt clearance from the blood on injection into opsonin-depleted animals

**DECOMPLEMENTATION** The role of complement or other heat labile factors in opsonization has been particularly difficult to establish One approach to the problem involves the use of avian antibody as sensitizer Avian antibodies bind mammalian complement rather poorly Bacteria sensitized with this antibody and then injected into animals should be cleared less efficiently than bacteria coated with mammalian antibody provided that complement has an opsonic function *in vivo* That this is so has been demonstrated by Benacerraf and Miescher (1960) A more direct approach involves decomposition of the animals which are going to be subjected to phagocytosis studies Injection of heat aggregated  $\gamma$  globulin into the peritoneal cavity of mice is followed by a drop in serum complement activity to less than 5 per cent of the original value within 2 hours (Biozzi and Stiffel 1962) In such animals the rate of clearance of antibody coated *E. coli* and of sensitized

- antigen antibody precipitates *Nature* 199 819
- Becker E L 1956 Concerning the mechanism of complement action I Inhibition of complement activity by diisopropyl fluorophosphate *J Immunol* 77 462-468
- 1960 Concerning the mechanism of complement action V The early steps in immune hemolysis *J Immunol* 84 299-308
- Benacerraf B and Miescher P 1960 Bacterial phagocytosis by the reticuloendothelial system in vivo under different immune conditions *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 88 184-195
- Berggård I 1961 On a  $\gamma$  globulin of low molecular weight in normal human plasma and urine *Clin Chim Acta* 6 545-549
- Berggård I and Edelman G M 1963 Normal counterparts to Bence Jones proteins Free L polypeptide chains of human  $\gamma$  globulin *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 49 330-337
- Biozzi G and Stüffel C 1962 Role of normal and immune opsonins in the phagocytosis of bacteria and erythrocytes by the reticuloendothelial cells in Grabar P and Miescher P (eds) *Mechanism of Cell and Tissue Damage Produced by Immune Reactions* Basel/Stuttgart Schwabe
- Borsos T Dourmashkin R R and Humphrey J II 1964 Lesions in erythrocyte membranes caused by immune hemolysis *Nature* 202 251-252
- Borsos T and Mayer M M 1962 Mechanism of action of guinea pig complement in Grabar P and Miescher P (eds) *Mechanism of Cell and Tissue Damage Produced by Immune Reactions* Basel/Stuttgart Schwabe p 13
- Borsos T Rapp H J and Mayer M M 1961 Studies on the second component of complement I The reaction between EAC'14 and C'2: evidence on the single site mechanism of immune hemolysis and determination of C'2 on a molecular basis *J Immunol* 87 310-325
- Boyden J 1962 The chemotactic effect of mixtures of antibody and antigen on polymorphonuclear leucocytes *J Exper Med* 115 453-466
- Bruton O C 1952 Agammaglobulinemia *Pediatrics* 9 722-728
- Buckley C E Whitney P L and Tanford C 1963 The unfolding and renaturation of a specific univalent antibody fragment *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 50 827
- Cann J R and Clark H W 1956 Kinetics of the antigen antibody reaction Effect of salt concentration and pH on the rate of neutralization of bacteriophage by purified fractions of specific antiserum *J Am Chem Soc* 78 3627-3631
- Coombs R E A Coombs A M and Ingram D G 1961 *The Serology of Conglutination and Its Relation to Disease* Oxford Blackwell
- Cowan K M 1954 Lysis of sheep erythrocytes by a long-chain polymer polyethylene glycol and complement Dissertation submitted to the School of Hygiene and Public Health The Johns Hopkins University
- 1962 Studies on the coliphage neutralizing activity of normal human serum *J Immunol* 88 476-481
- Dalmasso A P and Muller Eberhard H J 1964 Interaction of Autologous Complement with Red Cells in the Absence of Antibody *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 117
- Davis H D Moore D H Kabat E A and Harris A 1945 Electrophoretic ultracentrifugal and immunochemical studies on Wassermann antibody *J Immunol* 50 1-20
- Davis J S Hurt J O and Bollet A J 1963 Studies on complement effects in a new immune system *J Immunol* 91 339-347
- de St Groth S F 1962 The neutralization of viruses *Adv Virus Research* 9 1-125
- Deutsch H F Alberty R A and Gosting L J 1946 Biophysical studies of blood plasma proteins IV Separation and purification of a new globulin from normal human plasma *J Biol Chem* 165 21-35
- Deutsch H F and Morton J I 1957 Dissociation of human serum macroglobulins *Science* 125 600
- Easton J M Goldberg B and Green H 1962 Immune cytotoxic electron microscopic localization of cellular antigens with ferritin antibody conjugates *J Exp Med* 115 275-288
- Edelman G M 1959 Dissociation of  $\gamma$  globulin *J Am Chem Soc* 81 3155-3156
- Edelman G M Benacerraf B Ovary Z and Poulik M D 1961 Structural differences among antibodies of different specificities *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 47 1751-1758
- Edelman G M and Gally J A 1962 The nature of Bence Jones proteins Chemical similarities to polypeptide chains of myeloma globulins and normal  $\gamma$  globulins *J Exp Med* 116 207-227
- Edelman G M Heremans J F Heremans M Th and Kunkel H G 1960 Immunological studies of human  $\gamma$  globulin Relation of the precipitin lines of whole  $\gamma$  globulin to those of the fragments produced by papain *J Exp Med* 112 203-223

cytosis promoting activity of serum mention should be made of still another important aspect. A prerequisite for engulfment of harmful microbes is their recognition by phagocytic cells. It is well known that mammalian leukocytes migrate actively toward clumps of bacteria and immune precipitates. Apparently, certain diffusible substances are produced in the course of immune reactions which are instrumental in attracting these cells. Although the nature of this material is still enigmatic, some clues have been obtained recently. Boyden (1962) found that antigen-antibody complexes *per se* exert no chemotactic effect on rabbit polymorphonuclear leukocytes *in vitro*; however, on interaction of these complexes at 37° C with fresh serum, the active principle is generated. It is heat stable and nondialysable. Since it is produced only from fresh and not from previously heated serum, it might be derived from complement.

*In vivo* experiments on rats also suggest that complement fixation is essential for the attraction and the accumulation of neutrophils in the tissue (Ward and Cochrane, 1964). In normal animals, deposition of immune complexes in the vessel walls leads to the infiltration of neutrophils and the development of Arthus vasculitis. In animals de complemented with aggregated  $\gamma$  globulin or antibody against rat  $\beta_{2c}$  globulin, an Arthus reaction could not be elicited. Polymorphonuclear leukocytes were not attracted to the deposited antigen-antibody complexes. Inhibition of the reaction was correlated with lack of complement binding in the tissue.

## IMPAIRMENT OF HOST RESISTANCE DUE TO HEREDITARY DEFECTS

### CONGENITAL AGAMMAGLOBULINEMIA IN MAN

The disease was first described by Bruton (1952) and since has been investigated extensively (Good and Zak, 1956; Good *et al.*, 1962). Afflicted patients exhibit gross deficiency in plasma cells and absence of  $\gamma$  globulin from serum. Immuno-electrophoresis has disclosed lack of all 3 major  $\gamma$  globulins: 7S  $\gamma$  globulin, 19S  $\gamma$  globulin and  $\beta_2$  globulin (Gutlin *et al.*, 1956). Isolated deficiency in 19S  $\gamma$  globulin and  $\beta_2$  globulin

in the presence of a normal concentration of 7S  $\gamma$  globulin has also been observed (Gideon *et al.*, 1957). Family studies suggest that the disease is due to an inborn error of metabolism transmitted as a sex-linked recessive trait.

The main clinical feature of the disease is an increased susceptibility to bacterial infections. These are primarily due to *Staph aureus*, pneumococci, streptococci, meningococci and *H influenzae*. These patients die of infection if not protected by frequent administration of pooled  $\gamma$  globulin.

### CONGENITAL COMPLEMENT DEFICIENCY IN RABBITS

In 1961 Rother and Rother reported the occurrence of a recessively inherited complement defect in rabbits. Analysis of the serum revealed the absence of one of the factors of the classic third component of hemolytic complement. The identity of the deficient factor has not been determined but it must be either C3, C5 or C6 since incubation of the serum with sensitized cells yields a rapidly decaying EAC<sub>1</sub>a<sub>4,2a</sub> complex. Immuno-electrophoresis and starch gel electrophoresis indicate the lack of a  $\beta$  globulin which has not been characterized in detail. The serum of deficient animals is devoid of bactericidal activity although antibody production appears to be unimpaired. An Arthus reaction cannot be elicited unless exogenous complement is supplied. Despite continuous efforts to increase the number of these interesting animals, only a few are alive at present because of the high mortality rate during the first 2 weeks after birth (Rother, personal communication).

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Ambe, K. S. and Crane, F. L. 1959 Phospholipase induced release of cytochrome c from the electron transport particle. *Science* 129: 98-99.
- Amirajan, K. and Leikum, E. J. 1961 Interaction of fragment III of rabbit gamma globulin and guinea pig complement. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 108: 454-457.
- Barbano, J. F. 1963 Demonstration of a hemolytically active 11S component of rabbit guinea pig and human serum by means of

- G 1962 Localization of two genetic factors to different areas of  $\gamma$  globulin molecules *Science* 136 979 980
- Heidelberger M and Pedersen K O 1937 The molecular weight of antibodies *J Exp Med* 65 393-414
- Heremans J F 1960 Les globulines sériques du système gamma Brussels Editions Arscia
- Heremans J F and Vaerman J P 1962  $\beta_A$  globulin as a possible carrier of allergic reaginic activity *Nature* 193 1091 1092
- Hirsch J G 1960 Comparative bactericidal activities of blood serum and plasma serum *J Exp Med* 112 15 22
- 1964 Demonstration by fluorescence microscopy of adsorption onto bacteria of a heat labile factor from guinea pig serum *J Immunol* 92 155 158
- Hirsch J G and Church A B 1960 Studies of phagocytosis of Group A streptococci by polymorphonuclear leucocytes *in vitro* *J Exp Med* 111 309 322
- Hirsch J G and Strauss B 1964 Studies on heat labile opsonin in rabbit serum *J Immunol* 92 145 154
- Hoffman L G 1960 Purification of the first and fourth components of guinea pig complement and studies on their mechanism of action Dissertation Johns Hopkins School of Hygiene and Public Health
- Jago R and Jacox R F 1961 Cellular source and character of a heat stable bactericidal property associated with rabbit and rat platelets *J Exp Med* 113 701 711
- Jenkin C R 1963 The effect of opsonins on the intracellular survival of bacteria *Brit J Exp Path* 44 47 57
- Jenkin C and Benacerraf B 1960 *In vitro* studies on the interaction between mouse peritoneal macrophages and strains of *Salmonella* and *Escherichia coli* *J Exp Med* 112 403 417
- Jenkin C R and Rowley D 1961 The role of opsonins in the clearance of living and inert particles by cells of the reticuloendothelial system *J Exp Med* 114 363 374
- Jolles J, Jauregui Adell J and Jolles P 1963 Preliminary contribution to the study of the disulfide bonds in hen's egg white lysozyme *Biochim Biophys Acta* 71 488-490
- Kabat E A 1939 The molecular weight of antibodies *J Exp Med* 69 103 118
- Karush F 1960 Disulfide pairing and the biosynthesis of antibody *in* Heidelberger M and Plescia O (eds) *Immunochemical Approaches to Problems in Microbiology* New Brunswick N J Rutgers Univ Press p 368
- Korngold L and Lipari R 1956 Multiple myeloma proteins III The antigenic relationship of Bence Jones proteins to normal gamma globulin and multiple myeloma serum proteins *Cancer* 9 262 272
- Kritzman J, Kunkel H G, McCarthy J and Mellors R C 1961 Studies of a Waldenström type macroglobulin with rheumatoid factor properties *J Lab Clin Med* 57 905 917
- Kunkel H G 1960 Macroglobulins and high molecular weight antibodies *in* Putnam (ed) *The Plasma Proteins* vol I New York Acad Press p 279
- Kunkel H G, Franklin E C and Muller Eberhard H J 1959 Studies on the isolation and characterization of the rheumatoid factor *J Clin Invest* 38 424-434
- Kunkel H G, Mannik M and Williams R C 1963 Individual antigenic specificity of isolated antibodies *Science* 140 1218 1219
- Kunkel H G, Rockey J H and Tomasi T B 1961 Methods of separation and properties of antibodies of high molecular weight *in* Heidelberger M and Plescia O J (eds) *Immunochemical Approaches to Problems in Microbiology* New Brunswick N J Rutgers Univ Press p 30
- Lachmann P J 1962 A comparison of some properties of bovine conglutinin with those of rabbit immunoconglutinin *Immunology* 5 687 705
- Lawrence H S 1960 Some biological and immunological properties of transfer factor *in* Ciba Foundation Symposium on Cellular Aspects of Immunity London Churchill p 243
- Lepow I H, Naff G B, Todd E W, Pensky J and Hinz C F Jr 1963 Chromatographic resolution of the first component of human complement into three activities *J Exp Med* 117 983 1008
- Lepow I H, Ratnoff O D, Rosen F S and Pillemer L 1956 Observations on a pro esterase associated with partially purified first component of human complement (C'1) *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 92 32 37
- Levey R H, Trautman N and Law L W 1963 Evidence for function of thymic tissue in diffusion chambers implanted in neonatally thymectomized mice Preliminary report *J Natl Cancer Inst* 31 199 217
- Levine L 1955 Inhibition of immune hemolysis

- Edelman G M and Poulik M D 1961 Studies on structural units of the  $\gamma$  globulins *J Exp Med* 113 861 884
- Ehrlich P 1906 Studies on Immunity (translated by Charles Bolduan) New York Wiley
- Fahey J L 1961 Physicochemical characterization of mouse myeloma proteins. Demonstration of heterogeneity for each myeloma globulin *J Exp Med* 114 399-413
- 1963 Structural basis for the differences between type I and type II human  $\gamma$  globulin molecules *J Immunol* 91 448 459
- Fireman P Vannier W E and Goodman H C 1963 The association of skin sensitizing antibody with the  $\beta$   $\gamma$  globulins in sera from ragweed sensitive patients *J Exp Med* 117 603 620
- Fischer H and Haupt I 1961 Das cytolysierende Prinzip von Serumkomplement *Z Naturforsch* 166 321 328
- Fleischman J H Porter R R and Press E M 1963 The arrangement of the peptide chains in  $\gamma$  globulin *Biochem J* 88 220 227
- Franklin E C 1959 Physicochemical and immunologic studies of gamma globulins of normal human urine *J Clin Invest* 38 2159 2167
- Franklin E C Fudenberg H Meltzer M and Stanworth D R 1962 The structural basis for genetic variations of normal human  $\gamma$  globulins *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 48 914 922
- Franklin E C and Stanworth D R 1961 Antigenic relationships between immune globulins and certain related paraproteins in man *J Exp Med* 114 521 533
- Freeman H A Mustekis G M and Burrows W 1963 Protoplast formation as the mechanism for immune lysis of *Vibrio cholerae* *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 113 675 680
- Fudenberg H H and Kunkel H G 1957 Physical properties of the red cell agglutinins in acquired hemolytic anemia *J Exp Med* 106 689 702
- Gerlins Petersen H T and Pondman K W 1962 Erythrophagocytosis. A study of the antigen antibody complement reaction *Vox Sang* N S 7 655 674
- Giedion A and Scheidegger J J 1957 Kongenitale Immundefizienz bei Fehlen spezifischer  $\beta$  Globuline und quantitativ normalen  $\gamma$  Globulinen *Helv Paed Acta* 12 241 259
- Ginsberg H E 1960 Serum and tissue inhibitors of virus *Bact Rev* 24 141 150
- Ginsburg I 1960 Action of phospholipids on the cytotoxic effect of rabbit antibodies against Ehrlich ascites tumour cells *Brit J Exp Path* 41 648 659
- Gitlin D Hitzig W H and Janeway C A 1956 Multiple serum protein deficiencies in congenital and acquired agammaglobulinemia *J Clin Invest* 35 1199 1204
- Goldberg B and Green H 1959 The cytotoxic action of immune gamma globulin and complement on krebs ascites tumor cells I Ultrastructural studies *J Exp Med* 109 505 510
- Good R A Kelly W D and Gabrielsen A E 1962 Studies of the immunologic deficiency diseases agammaglobulinemia Hodgkin's disease and sarcoidosis in Grabar P and Miescher P (eds) Mechanism of Cell and Tissue Damage Produced by Immune Reactions Basel/Stuttgart Schwabe p 353
- Good R A and Zak S J 1956 Disturbances in gamma globulin synthesis as experiments of nature *Pediatrics* 18 109 149
- Grabar P and Williams C A 1953 Méthode permettant l'étude conjuguée des propriétés électrophorétiques et immunochimiques d'un mélange de protéines Application au sérum sanguin *Biochim Biophys Acta* 10 193 194
- Green D E and Fleischer S 1963 The role of lipids in mitochondrial electron transfer and oxidative phosphorylation *Biochim Biophys Acta* 70 554 582
- Green H Barrow P and Goldberg B 1959 Effect of antibody and complement on permeability control in ascites tumor cells and erythrocytes *J Exp Med* 110 699 713
- Green H Fleischer R A Barrow P and Goldberg B 1959 The cytotoxic action of immune gamma globulin and complement on krebs ascites tumor cells II Chemical studies *J Exp Med* 109 511 521
- Grubb R and Laurell A B 1956 Hereditary serological human serum groups *Acta Path Microbiol Scand* 39 390-398
- Gustafsson B and Laurell C B 1959 Gamma globulin production in germfree rats after bacterial contamination *J Exp Med* 110 675 684
- Haines A L and Lepow I H 1964 Studies on human C<sup>1</sup>-esterase I Purification and enzymatic properties *J Immunol* in press
- Harboe M Osterland C K and Kunkel H

- Nelson R A 1962 Immune adherence in Grabar P and Miescher P (eds) Mechanism of Cell and Tissue Damage Produced by Immune Reaction Basel/Stuttgart Schwabe p 245
- Nelson R A Jr 1963 Complement and body defense *Transfusion* 3 250-259
- Nilsson U and Muller Eberhard H J 1964 Isolation of  $\beta_{1F}$  globulin and its characterization as a complement component *Fed Proc* 23 506
- Nisonoff A Wissler F C Lipman L N and Woernley D L 1960 Separation of univalent fragments from the bivalent rabbit antibody molecule by reduction of disulfide bonds *Arch Biochem Biophys* 89 230-244
- Osoba D and Miller J F A P 1963 Evidence for a humoral thymus factor responsible for the maturation of immunological faculty *Nature* 199 653-654
- Ovary Z and Karush F 1961 Studies on the immunologic mechanism of anaphylaxis II Sensitizing and combining capacity in vivo of fractions separated from papain digests of antihapten antibody *J Immunol* 86 146-150
- Palmer J L Mandy W J and Nisonoff A 1962 Heterogeneity of rabbit antibody and its subunits *Proc Nat Acad Sci US* 48 49-53
- Palmer J L and Nisonoff A 1964 Dissociation of rabbit  $\gamma$  globulin into half molecules after reduction of one highly labile disulfide bond *Fed Proc* 23 453
- Pettersson A 1926 Über die wärmebeständigen keimtötenden Substanzen die beta Lysine der Tiersera und die von diesen beeinflussten Bakterien *Z Immunitätsforsch* 48 233-296
- Pfeiffer R and Friedberger E 1903 Weitere Beiträge zur Theorie der bacteriolytischen Immunität *Zbl Bakt Abt I Orig* 34 70-84
- Porter R R 1959 The hydrolysis of rabbit  $\gamma$  globulin and antibodies with crystalline papain *Biochem J* 73 119-126
- 1962 The structure of gamma globulin and antibodies in Gellhorn A and Hirschberg E (eds) Symposium on Basic Problems in Neoplastic Disease New York Columbia Univ Press
- Rapp H J Sims M R and Borsos T 1959 Separation of components of guinea pig complement by chromatography *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 100 730-733
- Ratnoff D and Lepow I H 1957 Some properties of an esterase derived from preparations of the first component of complement *J Exp Med* 106 327-343
- Remington J S Merler E Lerner A M Gitlin D and Finland M 1962 Antibodies of low molecular weight in normal human urine *Nature* 194 407-408
- Repaske R 1958 Lysis of gram negative organisms and the role of versene *Biochim Biophys Acta* 30 225-232
- Rockey J H and Kunkel H G 1962 Unusual sedimentation and sulfhydryl sensitivity of certain isohemagglutinins and skin sensitizing antibody *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 110 101-105
- Robolt O A Radzinski G and Pressman B 1963 Antibody combining site the II polypeptide chain *Science* 141 726-727
- Rother U and Rother K 1961 Ueber einen angeborenen Komplement Defekt bei Kaninchen *Z Immunitätsforsch* 121 224-232
- Salton M R J 1957 The properties of lysozyme and its action on microorganisms *Bact Rev* 21 82-100
- Salton M R J and Ghuyssen J M 1959 The structure of di and tetra saccharides released from cell walls by lysozyme and streptomycies F<sub>1</sub> enzyme and the  $\beta(1 \rightarrow 4)$  N acetyl hexosaminidase activity of these enzymes *Biochim Biophys Acta* 36 552-554
- Schultze H E 1959 The synthesis of antibodies and proteins *Clin Chim Acta* 4 610-626
- Schur P H and Becker E L 1963 Pepsin digestion of rabbit and sheep antibodies The effect on complement fixation *J Exp Med* 118 891-904
- Slater R J 1955 The serum  $\gamma$  globulins defined by electrophoretic and immunologic analyses *Arch Biochem Biophys* 59 33-44
- Sophianopoulos A J Rhodes C K Holcomb D N and Van Holde K E 1962 Physical studies of lysozyme I Characterization *J Biol Chem* 237 1107-1112
- Spiegelberg H L Miescher P A and Benacerraf B 1963 Studies on the role of complement in the immune clearance of *Escherichia coli* and rat erythrocytes by the reticuloendothelial system in mice *J Immunol* 90 751-759
- Stevenson G T 1962 Further studies of the gamma related proteins of normal urine *J Clin Invest* 41 1190-1198
- Stoeckenius W 1962 Structure of the plasma membrane An electron microscope study *Circulation* 26 1066-1069
- Stollerman G H Rytel M and Ortiz J



- sis by diisopropyl fluorophosphate *Biochim Biophys Acta* 18 283 284
- Linscott W D and Nishioaka K 1963 Components of guinea pig complement II Separation of serum fractions essential for immune hemolysis *J Exp Med* 118 795 815
- Mackay I R 1959 Macroglobulins and macroglobulinaemia *Australian Ann Med* 8 158 170
- Mandelstam J 1961 Isolation of lysozyme soluble mucopolysaccharides from the cell walls of *Escherichia coli* *Nature* 189 855 856
- Mannik M and Kunkel H G 1962 Classification of myeloma proteins Bence Jones proteins and macroglobulins into two groups on the basis of common antigenic characters *J Exp Med* 116 859 877
- 1963 Two major types of normal  $\gamma$  globulin *J Exp Med* 117 213 230
- Mayer M M 1961a Complement and complement fixation in Kabat E A and Mayer M M (eds) *Experimental Immunochimistry* Springfield Ill: Thomas
- 1961b Development of the one hit theory of immune hemolysis in Heidelberger M and Plescia O (eds) *Immunological Approaches to Problems in Microbiology* New Brunswick N J: Rutgers Univ Press p 268
- 1963 In Summary of complement workshop Science 141 738
- Metchnikoff I 1905 Immunity in Infective Diseases Translated from the French by Francis C Binnie London: Cambridge Univ Press
- Metzger H Wofsy L and Singer S J 1964 The participation of A and B polypeptide chains in the active sites of antibody molecules *Proc Nat Acad Sci In press*
- Michael J G and Braun W 1959 Serum spheroplasts of *Shigella dysenteriae* *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 100 422-425
- Miescher P A Spiegelberg H L and Benacerraf B 1963 Mechanism of elimination of sensitized rat erythrocytes and *E coli* from the circulation of mice in Grabar P and Miescher P (eds) *Immunopathology* Basel/Stuttgart: Schwabe p 311
- Mollison P L 1962 Destruction of incompatible red cells in vivo in relation to antibody characteristics in Grabar P and Miescher P (eds) *Mechanism of Cell and Tissue Damage Produced by Immune Reactions* Basel/Stuttgart: Schwabe p 267
- Morse J H and Heremans J F 1962 Immunoelectrophoretic analysis of human insulin binding antibody and its papain produced fragments *J Lab Clin Med* 59 891 897
- Muller Eberhard H J 1961 Isolation and description of proteins related to the human complement system *Acta Soc Med Upsal* 66 152 170
- Muller Eberhard H J and Biro C E 1963 Isolation and description of the fourth component of human complement *J Exp Med* 118 447 466
- Muller Eberhard H J Calcott M A and Mardiney M R 1964 Conversion of  $\beta_{10}$  globulin by C 2a *Fed Proc* 23 506
- Muller Eberhard H J and Kunkel H G 1961 Isolation of a thermolabile serum protein which precipitates  $\gamma$  globulin aggregates and participates in immune hemolysis *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 106 291 295
- Muller Eberhard H J Kunkel H G and Franklin C 1956 Two types of  $\gamma$  globulin differing in carbohydrate content *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 93 146 150
- Muller Eberhard H J Nilsson U and Aronsson T 1960 Isolation and characterization of two  $\beta_1$  glycoproteins of human serum *J Exp Med* 111 201 215
- Muschel L H 1963 Activity of the antibody complement system and lysozyme against gram negative organisms *Fed Proc* 22 673
- Muschel L H Carey W F and Baron L S 1959 Formation of bacterial protoplasts by serum components *J Immunol* 82 38-42
- Muschel L H and Toussaint A J 1962 Studies on the bacteriophage neutralizing activity of sera II Comparison of normal and immune phage neutralizing antibodies *J Immunol* 89 35-40
- Muschel L H and Treffers H P 1956 Quantitative studies on the bactericidal actions of serum and complement II Some implications for the mechanism of the bactericidal reaction *J Immunol* 76 11 19
- Myrvik Q N and Leake E S 1960 Studies on antibacterial factors in mammalian tissues and fluids IV Demonstration of two non dialyzable components in the serum bactericidin system for *Bacillus subtilis* *J Immunol* 84 247 250
- Naff G B Pensky J and Lepow I H 1963 The macromolecular nature of the first component of human complement *J Exp Med* 119 593 613
- Najarian J S and Feldman J D 1963 Passive transfer of transplantation immunity IV Transplantation antibody from extracts of sensitized lymphoid cells *J Exp Med* 118 759 766

## 10

## Phagocytic Cells

## INTRODUCTION AND HISTORICAL ASPECTS

It is difficult or impossible to identify the discoverer of phagocytic cells or the precise date of their discovery. In the mid 1800's mammalian tissues and fluids were studied extensively under the microscope among the types of cells recognized were some which exhibited locomotion and showed a tendency to engulf foreign particles in their environment. For many years these ameboid cells were thought to function as scavengers serving to carry away debris introduced into tissues. It was also widely held that they accounted for spreading infectious diseases by ingesting and transporting microbes.

Precise staining procedures introduced by Ehrlich enabled the classification of ameboid blood cells into several types including neutrophils, eosinophils and monocytes. Studies by von Recklinghausen, Aschoff and others on the localization of vital dyes injected into animals led to the recognition of two groups of large ameboid cells in tissues, one freely wandering and the other apparently fixed to the inner linings of small vessels in organs such as the liver, the spleen and lymph nodes.

Elie Metchnikoff, a zoologist by profession, began his classic studies on these ameboid cells of animal tissues in 1882. It was he who gave them the name phagocyte derived from the Greek for eating cell. Metchnikoff's great contribution for which

he shared the Nobel Prize with Ehrlich in 1908 was the discovery that phagocytes were not mere scavengers but rather constituted one of the principle agencies of host resistance against microbial invaders (Metchnikoff 1892-1905). Metchnikoff observed closely a variety of experimental infectious diseases ranging from inoculation of a yeast-like microorganism into daphnia, a tiny crustacean, to the introduction of anthrax bacilli into mammals and concluded that the outcome—disease or no disease—was determined largely by the interaction between the microbes and the phagocytic cells of the host. As a rule whenever phagocytes accumulated about the injected microorganisms and engulfed them, no disease followed; whereas inoculation of microbes that resisted the phagocytic attack resulted in fulminating infectious disease.

Metchnikoff's concept of the role of phagocytes in host resistance to sepsis has been amply confirmed. In this chapter we shall review the current state of knowledge of the biology and the functions of mammalian phagocytic cells.

## MORPHOLOGY OF VARIOUS TYPES OF PHAGOCYtic CELLS

Phagocytic cells have been classified into various types on the basis of their morphology and staining reactions on exposure to mixtures of acid and basic dyes.

- 1963 Accessory plasma factors involved in the bactericidal test for type-specific antibody to Group A streptococci II Human plasma cofactor(s) enhancing opsonization of encapsulated organisms *J Exp Med* 117 117
- Talmage D W and Cann J R 1961 *The Chemistry of Immunity in Health and Disease* Springfield Ill Thomas
- Taranta A and Franklin E C 1961 Complement fixation by antibody fragments *Science* 134 1981-1982
- Tiselius A and Kabat E A 1939 An electrophoretic study of immune sera and purified antibody preparations *J Exp Med* 69 119-131
- Waldenstrom J 1961 Studies on conditions associated with disturbed gamma globulin formation (gammopathies) *The Harvey Lectures* 56 211-231
- Ward P A and Cochrane C G 1964 A function of bound complement in the development of Arthus reactions *Fed Proc* In press
- Wardlaw A C 1962 The complement-dependent bacteriolytic activity of normal human serum I The effect of pH and ionic strength and the role of lysozyme *J Exp Med* 115 1231-1249
- Webb T Rose B and Schon A II 1958 Biocolloids in normal human urine II Physicochemical and immunochemical characteristics *Canad. J Biochem* 36 1167-1175
- Weinrach R S and Talmage D W 1958 The role of antibody in immune hemolysis *J Infect. Dis* 102 74-80
- Wellensiek H J and Klein F G 1965 Multiple nature of the third component of guinea pig complement I Separation and characterization of three factors *a*, *b* and *c* essential for hemolysis II Separation and description of two additional factors  $\beta$  and  $d$  preparation and characterization of four intermediate products *Immunology* In Press
- Wiedermann G Miescher P A and Franklin E C 1963 Effect of mercaptoethanol on complement binding ability of human 7S gamma globulin *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 113 609-613
- Williams C A Jr and Grabar P 1955 Immunoelectrophoretic studies on serum proteins I The antigens of human serum *J Immunol* 74 158-168
- Wirtz G H and Becker E L 1961 Studies of the reaction between the sensitized erythrocyte and the first component of complement, *Immunology* 4 473-485
- Wright A C and Douglas S R 1903 An experimental investigation of the role of the blood fluids in connection with phagocytosis *Proc Roy Soc (London)* 72 357

eral groups monocytes and macrophages. Monocytes are slightly larger than granulocytes and in stained preparations show an oval or horseshoe shaped nucleus and abundant basophilic cytoplasm with fine azurophilic granulations. Macrophages vary considerably in morphology depending on their tissue localization and physiologic status. These morphologic differences have been studied extensively (Maximow 1932) and have led to a multitude of names for the various types of cells—histiocyte, clasmatoocyte, Kupffer cell, alveolar macrophage or dust cell and so on. These cells share general morphologic features such as large size, round or oval nucleus and abundant basophilic cytoplasm with variable granularity. Differences between these macrophages are brought out on supravital staining or on study of their ultrastructure.

Living phagocytic cells observed under phase contrast optics are shown in Figure 1. The migrating human neutrophil and eosinophil both show a ruffled border or pseudopod at the leading edge and constriction into a tail like structure at the rear often with thin cytoplasmic strands extending from the trailing edge. Granules in the cytoplasm are tiny and indistinct in the neutrophil but are well visualized in the eosinophil. Nuclear lobes are homogeneous or slightly mottled in appearance. A rabbit alveolar macrophage is shown in the lower portion of Figure 1. Among the distinguishing features are the large size, the ruffled membrane with microvillous projections and the large number and variety of cytoplasmic formed elements. Small granules of macrophages commonly are gathered in the perinuclear region forming a rosette pattern about the centrosphere region. Various types of large granular elements are located in the peripheral cytoplasm.

Electron microscopic features of neutrophils, eosinophils, monocytes and macrophages are illustrated in Figures 2 and 3. Noteworthy aspects of the neutrophil include peripheral condensation of dense material in the nuclear lobes, the large number of cytoplasmic granules appearing as electron dense homogeneous bodies surrounded by a membrane and the relative scarcity of other cytoplasmic organelles.

Eosinophils resemble neutrophils in general; their granules are larger in most species and a dense crystalloid structure is commonly seen in the otherwise homogeneous granule matrix. The monocyte shows only a few dense bodies or granules in the cytoplasm; mitochondria, Golgi apparatus and endoplasmic reticulum may be abundant. The rabbit alveolar macrophage shown in Figure 10-3 has in its cytoplasm a great number and variety of dense bodies, granules and vesicular structures.

### THE LIFE HISTORY OF PHAGOCYTIC CELLS: ORIGIN, DISTRIBUTION AND FATE

Neutrophils and eosinophils are both produced in the bone marrow from stem cells passing through well known stages of maturation: Myeloblast → promyelocyte → myelocyte → metamyelocyte → juvenile or stab form → mature granulocyte (reviewed by Wintrobe 1962). Early forms are rich in endoplasmic reticulum and show cytoplasmic basophilia. These morphologic signs of protein synthesis disappear as maturation progresses and cytoplasmic granules are formed. Division of the nucleus into lobes occurs late in neutrophil differentiation.

Use of modern radioactive techniques has enabled reasonably precise determination of the distribution and the turnover of neutrophils (Osgood 1954; Bryant and Kelly 1958; Athens *et al.* 1961; Brecher *et al.* 1962a). Maturation in the marrow from stem cell to fully developed granulocyte requires 2 to 3 days. In a healthy man approximately 25 billion neutrophils are circulating in the bloodstream at a given time. A similar number of these cells are marginated on vessel walls. For every circulating neutrophil approximately 100 mature cells are held in the bone marrow reserve pool. Neutrophils remain in the bloodstream for 6 to 12 hours and then pass into the tissues by traversing capillary walls. Once in tissues they never return to the circulation. The life span of neutrophils in tissues is not known precisely but they are end cells incapable of division and probably die or pass into the

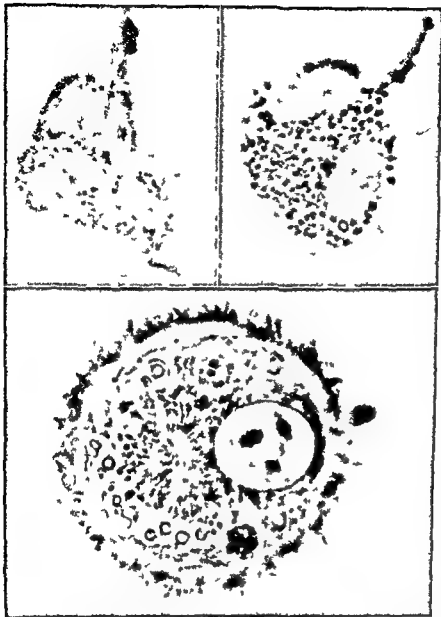


Fig 1 Phase contrast appearance of (top left) a human neutrophil (top right) a human eosinophil and (bottom) a rabbit alveolar macrophage in thin glass coverslip preparations  $\times 2,000$  The neutrophil and the eosinophil show a ruffled membrane at the leading edge and a tail like structure at the rear Nuclear lobes and cytoplasmic granules are evident The alveolar macrophage shows myriads of microvillous surface projections Nucleus and nucleoli are well visualized Cytoplasmic structures may be divided into 3 zones (1) a collection of small dense granules arranged in a radiating pattern about the centrosphere region and adjacent to the nucleus (2) a peripheral zone containing large granules and inclusion bodies of varied size and shape and (3) perinuclear small rod shaped structures

Polymorphonuclear phagocytes of 2 types are recognized neutrophils and eosinophils Neutrophils have a nucleus divided into several oval or sausage shaped lobes connected one to another by thin strands of nuclear material Their cytoplasm shows little or no basophilia and contains numerous (50 to 200) tiny granules which do not show a preference for either the acid or the basic stain giving rise to the names granulocyte and neutrophil In some species such as rabbit and guinea pig the cytoplasmic granules are acidophilic thus requiring the term

heterophil or pseudoeosinophil For the sake of clarity and convenience in this discussion we shall employ the term neutrophil for all cells of this class

Eosinophil leukocytes commonly show a nucleus divided into 2 lobes shaped like tear drops Their cytoplasm is weakly basophilic Granules in eosinophil cytoplasm have as the name implies a strong affinity for acid dyes The size and the number of eosinophil granules varies markedly from species to species

Mononuclear phagocytes fall into 2 gen

outside world in respiratory or intestinal contents after a few days at most. The picture then is one of production of neutrophils in large numbers with dynamic turnover and transportation to the tissues via the blood stream. Little is known about mechanisms that regulate the rate of neutrophil production or the rate of release of mature neutrophils from the bone marrow into the blood stream (Gordon *et al.* 1960).

Eosinophil life history has also been studied extensively and resembles closely the life history of the neutrophil (Rytomaa 1960). Marrow maturation of eosinophils requires approximately 2 days (Bryant and Kelly 1958). Eosinophils in the bloodstream pass into the tissues within a few hours. For every circulating eosinophil there are approximately 200 mature cells in the marrow reserve and 500 eosinophils in tissues. The tissues notably rich in eosinophils are in testis, skin, respiratory tract and vagina, i.e. sites in contact with the outside world. Eosinophils are probably incapable of division and survive in tissues for only a few days.

Despite extensive study the life history of mononuclear phagocytic cells remains poorly understood. Monocytes of the blood may be produced from stem cells in bone marrow or may arise from cell differentiation in lymph nodes or spleen. In contrast with the granulocytes, mature monocytes have the necessary equipment for various synthetic activities for long term survival and possibly for cell division. The life span of circulating monocytes and their fate in tissues is not known.

Macrophages include a variety of large mononuclear phagocytic cells distributed throughout various organs and tissues. These cells derive from embryonic mesenchymal elements (Maxamow 1907). As mentioned

above they differ somewhat from one another in morphology but appear to be related functionally as reflected by their ability to concentrate vital dyes and their phagocytic activity (Aschoff 1924). Macrophages occur in particular abundance in liver, spleen, lymph nodes, omentum, lung and subcutaneous tissue. The numbers and also the activity of macrophages in a given tissue change following various stimuli. The exact mechanism underlying this cell proliferation and alteration is not clearly understood in some instances. Monocytes from blood may emigrate into the tissues and undergo transformation into macrophages (Ebert and Florey 1939), whereas in other situations existing tissue macrophages or primitive cells in lymph nodes or spleen may be stimulated to multiply or to alter their morphology and functional capacity.

Macrophages may also transform into large sessile or epithelioid cells under the influences of such agents as tubercle bacilli. These epithelioid cells, together with giant multinucleated cells thought to arise from fusion or amitotic division of macrophages, are prominent features of the granulomatous response seen in certain chronic infectious or allergic conditions.

### BIOCHEMISTRY AND GENERAL PHYSIOLOGY OF PHAGOCYTIC CELLS

Carbohydrate metabolism of neutrophils has been studied extensively in recent years (reviewed by Karnovsky 1962). These cells derive their energy from the breakdown of glucose or other simple carbohydrates and they carry reserve stores of such nutrients in their cytoplasm in the form of glycogen. Even under aerobic conditions neutro-

Fig. 2. Low power electron micrographs. (Top) a human neutrophil, (bottom) a human eosinophil. In both cells the nuclear lobes (N) show dense staining peripherally. The very small dark dots distributed throughout the cytoplasm are glycogen deposits. Neutrophil granules (G) are round, oval or rod shaped with a homogeneous dense matrix and a limiting membrane visible in some instances. A few of the granules appear to be partially empty. Mitochondria and endoplasmic reticulum are sparse or absent. The eosinophil granules (G) are large, round or oval structures with a denser crystalline inclusion within them. A few mitochondria (M) and many small vesicular bodies are also seen. Fixed in phosphate buffered osmic acid, embedded in epon, double stained with uranyl and lead ions.  $\times 17,600$ .

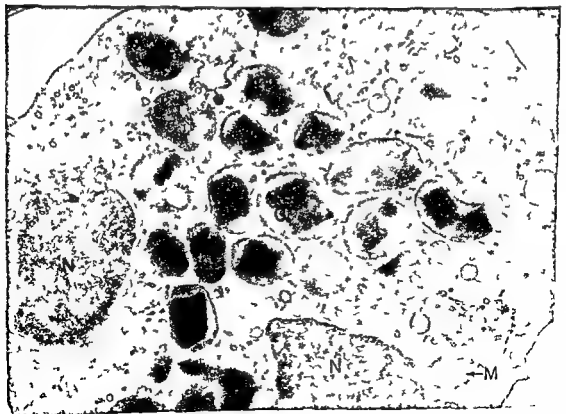
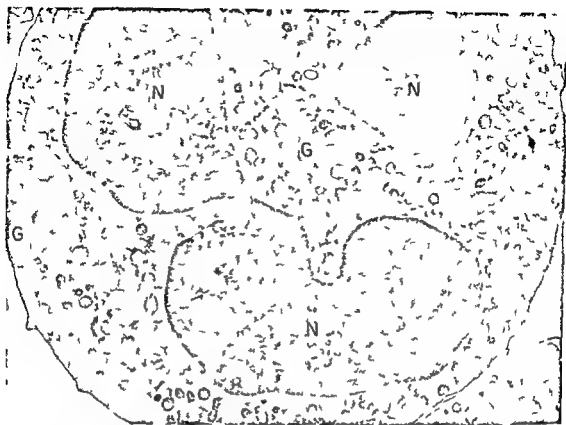


FIGURE 2 (Caption on facing page)



FIG 4 An electron micrograph showing a polymorphonuclear leukocyte (1) crawling through a capillary wall. The lumen of the blood vessel is at the top. The leukocyte has extended a long pseudopod (Ps) between the endothelial cells (E). (From Marchesi V T Quart J Exp Physiol 46 1961)

phils derive most of their energy from glycolysis not respiration. These phagocytes continue to function well in the absence of oxygen or after the addition of cyanide to their environment; on the other hand function is blocked by iodoacetate or other inhibitors of glycolysis. Neutrophils degrade glucose by the Embden Meyerhof pathway and to some extent utilize the hexose monophosphate shunt. They produce large amounts of lactic acid as a result of their glycolytic metabolism. A functioning Krebs cycle has been reported but is not considered

to be a major metabolic pathway in the cell. Normal neutrophils consume oxygen and possess respiratory capabilities. Approximately two thirds of the oxygen uptake is cytochrome linked and presumably associated with mitochondrial activity, whereas the remaining oxygen consumption is non-cytochrome linked and apparently reflects the activity of cytoplasmic oxidases.

The synthetic abilities of mature neutrophils are largely unknown. Although labeled precursors are incorporated into ribonucleic acid, neutral lipids, phospholipids and pro-

FIG 3 Low power electron micrographs: (top) a human blood monocyte; (bottom) a rabbit alveolar macrophage.

The monocyte has a large horseshoe shaped nucleus (N). Stacks of small membrane-like structures, the Golgi complexes (Go), are prominent. The cytoplasm also contains many mitochondria (M), a few dense granules, numerous small vesicles and glycogen deposits.  $\times 17,600$ .

The alveolar macrophage shows in its cytoplasm many large homogeneous dense granules (G) arranged in a radiating pattern about a clear zone. Also seen are dense inclusion bodies (IB), many of which have an onion skin or myelin figure appearance. Very small vesicular structures are numerous and endoplasmic reticulum is visible in some regions.  $\times 14,000$ .



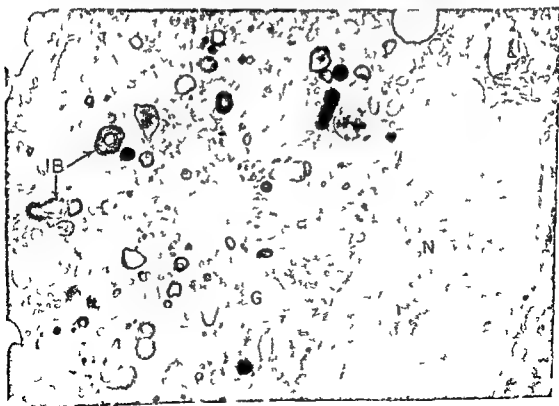


FIGURE 3 (Caption on facing page)

cussed later. Phagocytosis and pinocytosis are probably similar processes differing only in the solid or the liquid state of the material engulfed and the size of the invaginated membrane pocket (Holter 1959).

## THE INFLAMMATORY RESPONSE

In the sequence of events whereby phagocytic cells function in host defense against infectious diseases the first essential step or series of steps involves mechanisms for establishing contact between these cells and the invading microbes. This contact is established in broad terms by one of two means: (1) movement of phagocytic cells to the site of bacteria lodged in tissues or (2) movement of bacteria in the lymph or the blood circulation to the site of fixed phagocytic cells of the reticuloendothelial system in certain organs such as lymph nodes, the liver and the spleen.

### PARTICIPATION OF PHAGOCYTES IN THE LOCAL INFLAMMATORY RESPONSE TO MICROBES LODGED IN TISSUES

When microorganisms gain entry into tissues there follows a series of changes leading to inflammation with redness, swelling, heat and pain as the gross signs of this reaction. Studies on the microscopic and the biochemical aspects of the inflammatory reaction are too extensive to be considered in general fashion here; current knowledge in this field has been reviewed recently (Specator and Willoughby 1963). We shall limit our discussion to the mechanisms whereby phagocytes accumulate in regions of microbial invasion and inflammation.

A regular feature of the microscopic appearance of inflamed areas of various types and duration is heavy infiltration with phagocytes. Direct continuous observations of the inflammatory reaction in living tissue of the rabbit ear chamber (Ebert and Florey 1939; Allison *et al.* 1955) has established clearly that most of the phagocytic cells in these sites come from the bloodstream: they pass through the walls of capillaries and move to the infected or the injured area.

In the normal capillary vessel red cells

usually stream through the central zone whereas leukocytes are seen to tumble along in a relatively clear layer of plasma at the periphery. Very soon after injury or the introduction of microbes the endothelial lining of small vessels in the vicinity becomes sticky. The exact nature of this change is not known, but in any event leukocytes begin to adhere to the wall, forming a sort of a pavement lining the vessel (Florey 1962).

White cells adhering to the endothelium crawl about and soon pass through the vessel wall to reach the tissues. The precise mechanism by which white cells accomplish this remarkable feat of traversing the apparently intact capillary wall has been studied recently by electron microscopy. In experimental pancreatitis endothelial cells seem to send out processes and actually engulf the leukocytes (Williamson and Grisham 1961). Studies have also been done by Marchesi and Florey (1960) and by Marchesi (1961) on phagocytes emigrating through capillaries of the rat mesentery; their pictures, one of which is reproduced in Figure 4, clearly show the phagocyte sending out a pseudopod to penetrate the junction between endothelial cells. This junction ordinarily tightly closed is thus opened, whether this opening is accomplished by mechanical forces alone or also involves the secretion of enzymes to dissolve the cement substance remains to be determined.

Following their emigration from blood vessels, phagocytes congregate in the injured and infected area. This accumulation may be based either on chemotaxis, i.e. specific attraction and directed locomotion toward the invading microbes, or on random locomotion of phagocytes and immobilization of those cells wandering into the challenge area.

During the early stages of an inflammatory response to bacteria, neutrophils predominate; only a few eosinophils and mononuclear phagocytes being in evidence. In prolonged inflammatory reactions such as those due to chronic infection, macrophages often constitute a large proportion of the cells present. Formerly it was held that neutrophils were specifically attracted to the acutely inflamed area and that macrophages moved in later, perhaps as a result of neutrophil degeneration or biochemical changes

tein the net synthesis of these compounds has not been demonstrated (reviewed by Karnovsky, 1962). Enzymes responsible for the synthesis of glycogen are apparently present.

Essentially nothing is known concerning metabolic activities of eosinophilic leukocytes.

Knowledge concerning the metabolism of monocytes and macrophages is sparse, but it is believed that metabolic pathways similar to those in neutrophils are operative. Glucose utilization and oxygen consumption of macrophages are somewhat higher than in neutrophils (Stahelin *et al.* 1956). Recent evidence suggests that various types of mononuclear phagocytes may differ in their metabolism. For example, alveolar macrophages show greater respiratory activity than do the other phagocytic cells and seem to be dependent on an aerobic environment for their function (Oren *et al.* 1963).

All 3 types of phagocytic cells contain a number of hydrolytic enzymes which are thought to be concerned with the degradation of ingested foreign material. These enzymes include peroxidase, alkaline and acid phosphatase, acid ribonuclease, acid deoxyribonuclease, lipases, proteinases, beta glucuronidase, and lysozyme. Recent studies on neutrophils (Cohn and Hirsch 1960), eosinophils (Archer and Hirsch 1963a) and macrophages (Cohn and Wiener 1963a) show that these digestive enzymes are contained in or firmly attached to cytoplasmic granules of the phagocytic cells. Therefore these granules can be considered to be a form of the lysosome originally described by de Duve in rat liver homogenates (de Duve 1955, Navikoff 1961).

The physiologic functions of granulocytes and macrophages center about surface phenomena resulting in locomotion, phagocytosis and pinocytosis.

Neutrophils and eosinophils show active amoeboid movement when placed in warm chambers. Locomotion can be quite rapid, ranging up to 40 microns per minute (cited by Dittrich 1962). Monocytes and macrophages move about slowly or not at all under *in vitro* conditions but do show undulating movements of their membranes. After prolonged culture on glass surfaces they com-

monly assume a stellate shape. Mononuclear phagocytes observed in tissues move slowly.

All 3 types of phagocytic cells move toward or away from certain objects or substances in their environment, a phenomenon termed chemotaxis. Chemotaxis of leukocytes has been studied for nearly a century. Many of the studies on this phenomenon have led to fallacious conclusions based on technical artifacts (Harris 1954, 1959), but it is true that once within range (usually 100 microns or less) of a suitably attractive object, phagocytic cells of all types abandon their random locomotion and move in a straight line toward the object. The precise mechanism involved in this sensory response of phagocytic cells remains unknown (McCutcheon 1955). Most authorities have proposed the existence of a concentration gradient of chemical nature about the particle, this gradient being based either on the liberation of some substance from the particle or on adsorption onto the particle of a component of the micro-environment. Also possible but unsupported by experimental evidence is a mechanism whereby a single leukocyte first encounters a particle by chance and then as a result of this encounter liberates a chemical messenger to call other phagocytes to the area. Chemotaxis to bacteria such as staphylococci apparently operates in the absence of serum (cited by Florey 1962). On the other hand, recent studies by Boyden (1962) indicate that chemotaxis of antigen-antibody precipitates requires the presence of fresh serum. The precipitates are not themselves chemotactic but rather interact with heat labile serum factors to produce a heat stable substance which attracts white cells.

Pinocytosis, first described by Lewis (1931) in cultures of macrophages, consists of tiny invaginations of undulating surface membranes to form long thin channels extending into the cell; these pinch off, resulting in the formation of cytoplasmic vesicles containing fluid from the environment (Chapman and Andresen 1962). Mammalian phagocytes apparently employ pinocytosis for the bulk transport of both small and large molecular weight solutes. The analogous process by which solid particles are taken into the cell, phagocytosis, will be dis-

the ingestion process and the role of leukocyte metabolism in particle uptake. Under conditions in which fully susceptible bacteria are presented to phagocytes in an optimal environment it is possible to block the ingestion process by introducing certain metabolic inhibitors. Studies with polymorphonuclear leukocytes clearly indicate that compounds which block the glycolytic pathway also destroyed the capacity of the cell to carry out particle ingestion (Sbarra and Karnovsky 1959; Cohn and Morse 1960a). In contrast phagocytosis is not prevented by factors which depress respiration such as an anaerobic environment, cyanide or antimycin A. Similar metabolic requirements for phagocytosis have also been found for peritoneal macrophages of various animals (Oren *et al.* 1963). However the alveolar macrophage appears to depend on both the respiratory and the glycolytic pathways for its function.

The susceptibility of bacteria to phagocytosis varies widely depending on the physicochemical nature of their surface which apparently determines whether or not fixation to phagocyte membrane can occur. From this point of view microbes can be divided into 3 groups: (1) a group of avirulent, rough strains exemplified by rough pneumococci and some streptococci possessing no M protein or hyaluronic acid capsule whose surface apparently requires no modification in order for attachment to phagocytes to occur; (2) strains such as *Staphylococcus albus* or some coliforms which are not taken in unless they have been coated either with heat labile serum factors or with antibody; and (3) potentially virulent encapsulated microbes whose surface enables them to ward off phagocytosis under many conditions unless this surface is altered by reaction with specific antibody (Hirsch and Strauss 1964). The nature of the antiphagocytic surface material may be carbohydrate, protein or both as illustrated by the polysaccharide capsule of pneumococci, the M protein and hyaluronic acid of streptococci, the polyglutamic acid capsule of anthrax bacilli or the surface factor of some strains of *Staphylococcus aureus* (see chapters on these microbes in this volume). Thus clearly established is the prime importance in phago-

cytosis of serum factors of antibody and/or complementlike nature collectively known as opsonins. Efficient operation of host resistance in this regard requires the combined action of both humoral and cellular agencies. The role of opsonins in promoting phagocytosis has been demonstrated *in vitro* under various conditions and also in the clearing of bacteria from tissues or the bloodstream of living animals (reviewed by Rowley 1962).

A variety of other environmental factors influence the kinetics of phagocytosis. These include salt concentration, pH, divalent cations and temperature (Mudd *et al.* 1934; Chernew and Braude 1962). In most instances the changes in the medium required to impair phagocytic function significantly are drastic and far removed from physiologic conditions. Phagocytosis proceeds quite well over a rather wide range of hydrogen ion concentration, say pH 6 to 8. A variety of reagents which chelate divalent cations block phagocytosis; these cations are apparently necessary for normal cell function and perhaps also play a role in attachment of microbes to cell membrane. Salt concentrations of the medium somewhat lower than the physiologic level actually increase the rate of phagocytosis. In contrast when the ionic strength is increased to approximately twice that of physiologic solutions, particle uptake is blocked.

In addition to chemical composition the physical nature of the environment also plays a prominent role in phagocytosis. This is illustrated best by the process of surface phagocytosis as described by Wood and associates (1951). These investigators found that leukocytes in a structured environment sometimes were able to engulf encapsulated bacteria in the absence of antibody in contrast with the lack of ingestion in glass systems *in vitro*. Direct observation of this process reveals that the phagocytes trap or cover the microorganisms on suitably rough surfaces and proceed to engulf them. A similar process called intercellular phagocytosis occurs in dense suspensions of leukocytes in which surrounding cells serve as the trapping surfaces.

Another type of reaction which bears some resemblance to surface phagocytosis is the

associated with the evolution of the reaction. More precise quantitation of phagocytes in inflammation (Paz and Spector, 1962) has revealed that all types of phagocytes move into the area initially, the macrophage predominance later on does not necessarily reflect specific attraction of these cells but rather may be based on death and removal of the short lived polymorphonuclear leukocytes in the area and at the same time survival and fixation of macrophages.

Some inflammatory reactions due to allergies or parasitic infestations show eosinophils as the predominant phagocytic cell. Antigen antibody complexes may be responsible for the accumulation of eosinophils at these sites (Litt 1961, 1962). Most immune precipitates attract all types of phagocytic cells but apparently in certain situations, not yet precisely defined, specific eosinophilotactic conditions arise.

#### CLEARANCE OF MICROBES FROM THE BLOOD OR LYMPHATIC CIRCULATIONS BY FIXED MONONUCLEAR PHAGOCYTES OF THE RETICULOENDOTHELIAL SYSTEM

In the course of the inflammatory reaction permeability of capillaries and small venules to blood fluids is increased. The resulting local edema of tissues leads to distention of the lymphatic channels and an increase in lymph flow. Microbes are frequently caught up in this lymph drainage and transported to the regional lymph nodes where they encounter fixed macrophages arranged in a sort of a filtering system. Bacteria may become lodged in the lymph vessel or nodes before they are taken up by fixed macrophages, and cause inflammation—lymphangitis and lymphadenitis—with an attendant influx of blood phagocytes of all types from adjacent capillaries.

Microbes caught in the lymph drainage may escape engulfment by the fixed macrophages in lymph nodes and be carried eventually to the blood. In other instances microbes gain entry directly into the blood stream for example as a result of wounds or in cases of inflammation accompanied by necrosis. Clearance of bacteria and other particles from blood has been studied extensively (Halpern *et al*, 1953; Rowley 1962).

Removal of microbes from blood is accomplished primarily by phagocytic activity of fixed macrophages in sinusoids of certain organs such as the liver and the spleen. Even though they are present in large numbers circulating phagocytes seem to play a relatively minor role in most instances probably because opportunity for contact is limited between leukocytes and microbes, both of which are carried along passively in the bloodstream.

#### PHAGOCYTOSIS AND THE ENSUING INTRACELLULAR EVENTS

Phagocytic cells play their role in host resistance to sepsis by ingesting and inactivating microorganisms. This function can be separated into 2 stages which have different determinants. The first step is the actual engulfment process in which the phagocyte surrounds the microbe by means of pseudopods and transfers it to an intracytoplasmic locus. The second stage comprises the variety of intracellular events—both morphologic and biochemical—which often result in destruction of the microorganism.

Extensive discussion of general aspects of the act of phagocytosis and its consequences can be found in the reviews of Mudd *et al* (1934), Suter (1956) and Karnovsky (1962).

#### DETERMINANTS OF THE RATE OF ENGULFMENT OF MICROBES BY PHAGOCYTIC CELLS

Assuming that contact between phagocyte and microbe has been established, various factors determine whether or not the microbe will be engulfed. These factors include the metabolism of the phagocyte, the nature of the bacterial surface, the chemical composition of the extracellular medium and the physical nature of the environment. For the sake of simplicity these will be discussed separately although it is obvious that all interact to produce a more complicated picture under natural conditions.

Originally phagocytosis was thought to be a passive physical process dependent only on the surface tension of the cell and of the particle (Fenn 1921). More recent observations establish the active nature of

ment occurring in the phosphatidic acids (Elsbach 1959 Karnovsky and Wallach 1961) These changes in metabolism are unrelated to the nature of the ingested particle and their mechanism and significance are not clearly understood Tentatively they may be considered to reflect the increased demand for energy associated with the phagocytic process and possibly the synthesis of new lipoprotein membranes

During or shortly after the phagocytic process a most striking morphologic event takes place This is the degranulation phenomenon which occurs in all 3 types of phagocytic cells (Hirsch and Cohn 1960 Archer and Hirsch 1963b Cohn and Wiener 1963b) Intimate morphologic features of the degranulation reaction have been studied in polymorphonuclear leukocytes

(Hirsch 1962) Granules lyse only when they come into contact with the wall of the phagocytic pouch or with clear zones resulting from prior granule rupture The upper part of Figure 6 shows on the right a neutrophil degranulated after ingesting many bacilli and for comparison on the left a normal neutrophil with numerous granules The rapidity and the detailed morphology of lysis of individual granules in a chicken neutrophil ingesting 2 yeast bodies is shown in the lower portion of Figure 6 Lysis of an individual granule is a very rapid almost explosive event During degranulation hydrolytic enzymes and antibacterial substances in the granules are liberated in soluble form (Cohn and Hirsch 1960b) and probably are transferred directly into the phagocytic vacuole Electron micro-

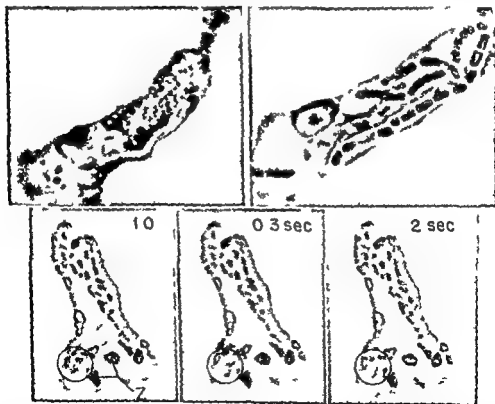


FIG 6 Degranulation which accompanies phagocytosis (Top left) A normal neutrophil with its full complement of granules (Top right) The neutrophil has engulfed numerous microbes which lie in vacuoles cytoplasmic granules have vanished  $\times 2,000$  (Bottom) Morphologic and temporal features of granule lysis (in the circled areas) in a chicken polymorphonuclear leukocyte during phagocytosis of yeast cell wall bodies (zymosan Z)

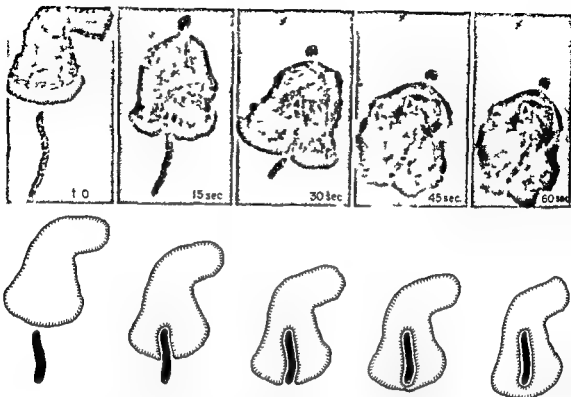


FIG 5 (Top) Prints from a motion picture of a human neutrophil engulfing *Bacillus megaterium*  $\times 1000$  (Bottom) In diagrammatic form the mechanism by which phagocytosis is accomplished i.e. invagination of cell membrane

immune adherence phenomenon (Nelson 1953) Certain bacteria in the presence of antibody and complement adhere to the surface of erythrocytes. When this occurs leukocytes move about avidly ingesting the immobilized organisms.

#### INTRACELLULAR EVENTS

Following the initial contact between bacterium and phagocyte pseudopod formation is stimulated and contact spreads until at the distal portion of the particle cell membranes from opposite sides meet and fuse. The ingested particle is thus confined intracellularly within a pouch or phagocytic vacuole the wall of this pouch being formed by the inverted cytoplasmic membrane of the phagocyte. Figure 5 shows (upper row) photomicrographs of a human neutrophil ingesting *Bacillus megaterium*. The lower portion of the figure presents the phagocytic process schematically to emphasize the membrane invagination which accompanies particle uptake.

During or at the completion of engulfment a variety of metabolic and morphologic events occur which have important effects on both the phagocyte and the ingested particle. The majority of studies on the intracellular consequences of particle ingestion have been performed with polymorphonuclear leukocytes although a similar series of events may take place within macrophages.

During the process of particle ingestion the phagocyte displays a number of changes in its metabolism. The first of these to be studied was stimulation of oxygen consumption (Baldrige and Gerard 1933) a good portion of which is not linked to the usual electron transfer scheme. More recent investigations have demonstrated the stimulation of glucose consumption, lactic acid production, glycogenolysis and the utilization of glucose by means of the hexose monophosphate shunt (Sbarra and Karnovsky 1959, Cohn and Morse 1960a). In addition there is an increased turnover of neutral lipids and phospholipids with a major incre

microorganisms are destroyed rapidly within phagocytes. These susceptible bacteria include among others pneumococci streptococci staphylococci of both albus and aureus strains, *Klebsiella* species and coliforms (Wood 1960). These microbes survive in side neutrophils for only a short time their half life being 7 to 8 minutes. Whether or not all forms of macrophages are equally effective or quick in killing ingested bacteria is not known and some recent evidence suggests that they may differ in this function (Mackness 1960 Pavillard and Rowley 1962). Little is known about inactivation of bacteria within eosinophils.

Our knowledge concerning the intracellular bactericidal mechanisms is fragmentary. A more comprehensive discussion of this field can be found in the reviews of Skarnes and Watson (1957) and Hirsch (1960a). Two bactericidal agents can be extracted from neutrophils of various animals. These are lysozyme and a factor called phagocytin. Lysozyme was discovered by Fleming (1922) it is a low molecular weight basic protein which acts enzymatically to degrade certain acetylamino polysaccharides. Microbes whose cell wall contains this substrate in form accessible to the enzyme are lysed on exposure to lysozyme. Other microbes not susceptible to direct attack by lysozyme are killed on exposure to combinations of this substance and antibody (Amano *et al* 1954) or certain chelating agents (Repaske 1956). Phagocytin has a wide spectrum of activity against both gram positive and gram negative bacteria (Hirsch 1960b). It has properties suggestive of a basic protein (Zeya and Spitznagel 1963) but has not been isolated in pure form as yet. Both phagocytin and lysozyme are associated with the granules in the normal cell and are liberated at the time of phagocytosis (Cohn and Hirsch 1960).

In contrast with the neutrophil peritoneal macrophages and blood eosinophils contain no phagocytin or lysozyme (Myrvik 1960 Hirsch 1960b Archer and Hirsch 1960a) and alveolar macrophages contain lysozyme but no phagocytin (Myrvik 1960 Cohn and Wiener 1963a). Therefore it is apparent that much remains to be learned about the bactericidal activity of phagocytic

cells in particular the mechanism by which macrophages kill microbes remains a mystery. The possible antibacterial role of lactic acid (Dubos 1954 Locke and Rowley 1962) and hydrogen peroxide (Iyer *et al* 1961) produced during metabolism of phagocytes should be mentioned. Recent observations (Jenkin 1963) suggest that specific antibody and possibly complement may sensitize strains of salmonella for killing within macrophages. As yet no such effect has been noted for polymorphonuclear leukocytes.

Although most microorganisms are rapidly inactivated within phagocytes there are several instances in which this is not the case. For example the tubercle bacillus survives within both granulocytes and macrophages. *Brucella abortus*, *Pasteurella tularensis*, some strains of salmonella and *Listeria monocytogenes* have also been reported to survive and multiply within peritoneal macrophages of laboratory animals.

Following the bactericidal event susceptible bacteria are gradually degraded within phagocytic cells. This observation was made initially by Metchnikoff (1905) on morphologic grounds and has been documented repeatedly by subsequent investigators. Ingested microorganisms soon lose their basophilia and in some instances their structural integrity. More exact biochemical information indicates that degradation of bacterial macromolecules takes place rapidly and that in some instances the phagocyte can use these products as substrates for its own synthetic or metabolic processes (Cohn 1963). The rate and the extent of digestion of bacteria are similar within neutrophils and macrophages. In the course of this intraphagocytic digestion bacterial toxins and antigens may be destroyed at least in some instances (Walsh and Smith 1951 Cohn 1962a).

Thus far our discussion has been related primarily to the influence of phagocytes on the ingested microorganism. In some cases however bacterial products affect phagocytes adversely. Although many bacterial products can damage phagocytic cells only a few have this effect in high dilution. For example some strains of *Streptococcus pyogenes* produce streptolysins whose effect on phagocytes has been investigated recently (Hirsch





FIG 7 Electron micrograph of a rabbit polymorphonuclear leukocyte soon after ingestion of zymosan particles (Z). At two points indicated by the arrows the membrane surrounding the engulfed particle is seen to be continuous with membranes about cytoplasmic granules indicating that membrane fusion accounts for discharge of granule contents into the phagocytic vacuole  $\times 32,000$  (Zucker Franklin and Hirsch J G J Exp Med 1964)

graphic studies suggest that this transfer is accomplished by fusion of the granule membrane with the inverted cell membrane surrounding the engulfed microorganism (Lockwood and Allison 1963 Zucker Franklin and Hirsch 1964). Figure 10.7 shows the discharge of the contents of the granule into the phagocytic pouch shortly after a neutrophil has ingested yeast cell wall (zymosan) particles.

Studies on the fate of bacteria within phagocytic cells have been performed in vitro

for the most part and with a variety of experimental systems. One of the most direct of these has been described by Wilson *et al* (1957); the viability of strains of streptococci has been determined within individual cells at various times after ingestion by human neutrophil leukocytes. Other techniques in which the overall fate of bacterial populations can be investigated have been described for neutrophils (Cohn and Morse 1959) and macrophages (Rowley 1960). In general the vast majority of common

Patients with diabetes mellitus seem to be unusually susceptible to certain bacterial diseases and the acidotic experimental animal has clearly lost its ability to ward off certain fungal agents. Although the mechanism is not fully understood a delayed and inadequate phagocytic reaction is seen in the tissues of the challenged animal in diabetic acidosis (Sheldon and Bauer 1959).

The unusual susceptibility to bacterial invasion of the renal medulla has been noted in various clinical and experimental situations. Recently it has been found that the phagocytic response to lodgement of microbes in the medulla of the kidney is considerably delayed as compared with that in the cortex or other tissues (Rocha and Fekety 1964). Furthermore when leukocytes finally emigrate into medullary tissue their phagocytic ability may be unpaired by the high salt concentration likely to be present (Chernew and Braude 1962) or by the fact that ammonia produced in the kidney inactivates the 4th component of complement and destroys opsonic factors required for efficient ingestion of the bacteria (Beeson and Rowley 1959).

#### FUNCTIONS OF FIXED PHAGOCYtic CELLS IN CLEARING BACTERIA FROM THE BLOOD OR THE LYMPH CIRCULATION

The functioning of fixed macrophages in the blood and the lymphatic streams does not involve a long chain of events as described above for tissue clearance. Bacteria are carried to the phagocytes by blood or lymphatic flow; therefore variations in function involve primarily the numbers of filtering cells and the efficiency of their individual performance.

Quantitative methods have been developed for measuring the rate of bloodstream clearance of carbon particles or labeled bacteria by the reticuloendothelial system. This removal rate is influenced by many factors including the size of the particles and the presence of opsonins (reviewed by Benacerraf and Miescher 1960 and by Rowley 1962).

Clearance can be blocked or severely impaired by the injection of large amounts of certain materials such as bacterial lipo-

polysaccharide Thorotrast or colloidal sulfur. In some instances such blockade may reflect inadequate function of overstuffed macrophages. Some evidence also suggests that the less efficient phagocytosis under these circumstances may be based at least in part on depletion of opsonic factors following injection of large amounts of these colloid materials.

Following the period of blockade the clearance rate not only returns to normal but often is for a time considerably faster than normal. This stimulation of fixed phagocytic activity is accounted for by an increase in the number of these cells and also an increase in individual cell performance (see Rowley 1962). Higher than normal levels of circulating opsonic factors may also contribute to the efficiency of reticuloendothelial clearance at this time.

In many instances the resistance of experimental animals to bacteria inoculated intravenously is found to be directly related to the efficiency with which the reticuloendothelial system is functioning.

#### THE PHENOMENON OF ACQUIRED CELLULAR IMMUNITY

Although the majority of the common pathogenic and saprophytic bacteria are handled effectively by phagocytic cells, certain organisms are able to survive in the intracellular environment. Furthermore with many of these microbes it can be demonstrated that serum antibody plays no important opsonic or bactericidal role. However the animal previously exposed to such organisms often acquires a relative immunity to reinfection. In order to explain this form of resistance the concept of *cellular immunity* has been invoked. Work on this subject has been done with only a few intracellular parasites i.e. tubercle bacilli, brucellae, *Pasteurella tularensis* and *Listeria monocytogenes* and generally has been limited to observations on their interaction with mononuclear phagocytes. At the present time there is no evidence that neutrophils or eosinophils from immunized animals behave differently from cells of the normal animal.

On reinfection tubercle bacilli do not multiply and may even be destroyed in contrast with the growth of the microbes seen

*et al* 1963) These hemolytic proteins kill polymorphonuclear leukocytes apparently by lysing their cytoplasmic granules and liberating digestive enzymes into the cytoplasm of the cell with ensuing autolysis. Comparable studies by Woodin (1962) on the action of staphylococcal leukocidin have shown a similar effect. However, the importance of these substances in determining the pathogenicity of these organisms has not been established.

The complex lipopolysaccharide endotoxins of gram negative bacilli alter the activity of both mononuclear and polymorphonuclear phagocytes. In low concentrations these substances enhance the rate of phagocytosis and of glycolysis, whereas at higher levels they inhibit these parameters as well as the migration of cells from buffy coat explants (Cohn and Morse 1960b, Rowley 1960).

## FUNCTIONS OF PHAGOCYtic CELLS

### ROLE IN COMBATING MICROBIAL INVADERS IN THE TISSUES

The function of phagocytes in response to microbes introduced into tissues involves a rather lengthy chain of events: production of mature polymorphonuclear leukocytes or mononuclear phagocytes from precursor cells in bone marrow or extramedullary sites; delivery of adequate numbers of these cells to the blood; margination and emigration from capillaries in or near the invaded tissue; locomotion and perhaps directed movement toward the microbes; phagocytosis; transfer of bactericidal agents and hydrolytic enzymes from lysosomal granules to the phagocytic pouch or vacuole; killing and digestive attack on the microbes; and finally egestion, excretion or utilization of the degraded microbial products.

It should be emphasized that weakness in any link of this chain of events can result in an inadequate over-all phagocytic performance and diminished resistance to infectious disease. A few examples of naturally occurring or experimental abnormalities of phagocytic function and host resistance may help to make the point.

Perhaps the role of neutrophils in host re-

sistance to infectious diseases is illustrated best by the notorious susceptibility to sepsis of individuals afflicted with agranulocytosis, a disorder in which neutrophil production in the marrow is blocked by toxic or allergic reactions.

Following massive exposure to x irradiation, circulating neutrophils fall to low levels or even disappear, and resistance to bacterial invasion is reduced markedly (Brecher *et al* 1962b, Cohn 1962b, Smith *et al*, 1963). The scarcity of phagocytic cells almost certainly accounts in part for susceptibility to infectious agents in this situation; however, other host resistance mechanisms such as anatomic barriers and antibody production are also altered following irradiation.

Many forms of leukemia and blood dyscrasias are associated with enhanced susceptibility to bacterial disease. Total numbers of circulating leukocytes may be higher than normal in some of these conditions, but the bulk of the cells are immature. These immature leukocytes are grossly deficient in their ability to emigrate from the blood stream (Rebuck *et al* 1961) and to phagocytize microorganisms (Jersild 1948).

Patients given large doses of certain adrenocortical steroid hormones are unusually prone to develop infectious diseases. Latent microbial agents or avirulent species may produce sepsis in this setting. Cortisone administration leads to an increase in numbers of circulating functionally normal neutrophils (Hirsch and Church 1961). However, under the influence of cortisone the inflammatory process is severely suppressed or retarded; the hormone apparently interferes with margination, emigration and accumulation of phagocytic cells at the challenge site (Germuth 1956, Cohn 1962b). Furthermore, suppression of antibody formation by these steroids and alterations in the local biochemical environment in tissues may contribute to the change in host resistance.

Other agents such as levans (Shilo 1962), endotoxins (Cohn 1962b) and epinephrine (Miles 1956) act locally to block or retard the influx of phagocytic cells into tissues or body cavities and thus favor markedly the survival of microbes introduced into the affected area.

of Arthus reaction sites (Daems and Oort 1962) thus autolytic enzymes released from the granules might conceivably cause local tissue necrosis or extension of the inflammatory process

A specific function for eosinophils in the inflammatory site has also been proposed. Eosinophil granules contain in addition to hydrolytic enzymes substances capable of blocking the action of histamine (Kovacs 1950 Vercauteren and Peeters 1952) and of serotonin and bradykinin (Archer and Broome 1963). These 3 materials are responsible at least in part for increased vascular permeability in the inflamed area (Spector and Willoughby 1963). Therefore it is proposed that eosinophils play a homeostatic role - serving to counteract or limit the effects of vasoactive substances.

Finally to be mentioned is the role of phagocytic cells in general host responses to sepsis (see Chap. 13) the best example of such a role being the release from neutrophils of a fever producing agent endogenous pyrogen (reviewed by Atkins 1960).

## REFERENCES

- Allison F Jr, Smith M R and Wood W B Jr 1955 Studies on the pathogenesis of acute inflammation. I The inflammatory reaction to thermal injury as observed in the rabbit ear chamber. *J Exp Med* 102 655-668
- Amano T, Inai S, Seki Y, Kashiba M, Fujikawa J and Nishimura S 1954 Accelerating effect on the immune bacteriolysis by lysozyme like substance of leucocytes and eg. white lysozyme. *Med J Osaka Univ* 4 401
- Archer G T and Hirsch J G 1963a Isolation of granules from eosinophil leucocytes and study of their enzyme content. *J Exp Med* 118 277-286
- 1963b Motion picture studies on degranulation of horse eosinophils during phagocytosis. *J Exp Med* 118 287-294
- Archer R K and Broome J 1963 Bradykinin and eosinophils. *Nature* 198 893-894
- Aschoff L 1924 Das reticulo endotheliale System. *Ergebn inn Med Kinderheilk* 26 1-118
- Athens J W, Haab O E, Raab S O, Mauer A M, Ashenbrucker H, Cartwright G E and Wintrobe M M 1961 Leukokinetic studies. IV The total blood circulating and marginal granulocyte pools and the granulocyte turnover rate in normal subjects. *J Clin Invest* 40 989-995
- Atkins E 1960 Pathogenesis of fever. *Physiol Rev* 40 580-646
- Baldridge C W and Gerard R W 1933 The extra respiration of phagocytosis. *Am J Physiol* 103 235-236
- Beeson P B and Rowley D 1959 The anti-complementary effect of kidney tissue. Its association with ammonia production. *J Exp Med* 110 685-697
- Benacerraf B and Miescher P 1960 Bacterial phagocytosis by the reticuloendothelial system *in vivo* under different immune conditions. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 88 184-195
- Boyden S 1962 The chemotactic effect of mixtures of antibody and antigen on polymorphonuclear leucocytes. *J Exp Med* 115 453-466
- Brecher G, von Foerster H and Cronkite E P 1962a Production, differentiation and lifespan of leucocytes. In Braunsteiner H (ed) *The Physiology and Pathology of Leukocytes*. New York: Grune, p 170
- Brecher G, Smith W W and Cronkite E P 1962b Granulocytes and radiation injury. In Braunsteiner H (ed) *The Physiology and Pathology of Leukocytes*. New York: Grune, p 220
- Bryant B J and Kelly L S 1958 Autoradiographic studies of leukocyte formation. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 99 681-684
- Chapman Andresen C 1962 Studies on pinocytosis in Amoebae. *C R Lab Carlsberg* 33 73-264
- Chernow I and Braude A I 1962 Depression of phagocytosis by solutes in concentrations found in the kidney and urine. *J Clin Invest* 41 1945-1953
- Cochrane C G, Weigle W O and Dixon F J 1959 The role of polymorphonuclear leucocytes in the initiation and cessation of the Arthus vasculitis. *J Exp Med* 110 481-494
- Cohn Z A 1962a Influence of rabbit polymorphonuclear leucocytes and macrophages on the immunogenicity of *Escherichia Coli*. *Nature* 196 1066-1068
- 1962b Determinants of infection in the peritoneal cavity. II Factors influencing the fate of *Staphylococcus aureus* in the mouse. *Yale J Biol Med* 35 29-47
- 1963 The fate of bacteria within phagocytic cells. I The degradation of isotopically labeled bacteria by polymorpho-

following the initial challenge. Studies by Lurie (1942) indicate that this inhibition of multiplication in the immunized animal is related to a property of its mononuclear phagocytes. Suter (1953) found, in a tissue culture system that macrophages from immunized animals inhibit the intracellular multiplication of virulent tubercle bacilli whereas these bacteria multiply freely in cells from normal animals. Sera from normal and vaccinated animals do not differ detectably in their effect on the fate of mycobacteria in this type of in vitro system. Employing a slightly different technic Mackaness (1954) obtained contrary results namely that prior vaccination does not alter the rate of mycobacterial multiplication within macrophages of the rabbit. It should be stressed that in none of these experiments do the immune macrophages have a lethal effect on the bacilli.

Similar experiments employing strains of *Brucella abortus* have been reported by 2 groups of investigators (Pomales Lebrun and Stinebring 1957; Holland and Pickett 1958). In both cases macrophages from immunized animals inhibit the multiplication of virulent organisms.

Perhaps the most conclusive studies on the topic of cellular immunity are those reported recently by Mackaness (1962) using a system of mouse macrophages and *Listeria monocytogenes*. Peritoneal macrophages from the normal mouse allow multiplication of a virulent strain. In contrast the infection of the animal with small numbers of viable bacteria results in a marked increase in the resistance of the peritoneal cells on the 4th day. At this time 90 per cent of these cells rapidly inactivate an inoculum of *Listeria*.

The specificity of this reaction has been studied subsequently by Mackaness (1964). Employing *Brucella abortus* as an infecting agent, it was possible to demonstrate that peritoneal macrophages became resistant to an in vitro challenge with *Listeria*. Since there is no known immunologic relationship between the two strains this implied that the macrophage alteration was nonspecific. However little is known concerning the mechanism of this change nor is there adequate data relative to the size of the macro-

phage pool in the sensitized animal. These questions are currently under investigation in a number of laboratories.

#### FUNCTIONS OF PHAGOCYTIC CELLS UNRELATED TO THEIR INTERACTION WITH MICROBES

Of course phagocytic cells do play a role as scavengers that is to say, they engulf nonmicrobial foreign material and digest it or sequester it within their cytoplasm or transport it to the outside world in intestinal and respiratory tract secretions. Phagocytes also ingest damaged tissue cells and effete erythrocytes, the destruction of red blood cells being primarily an activity of macrophages in the spleen and the liver (Muir and Niven 1935).

Much work has been done concerning possible relationships between phagocytes and antibody production or destruction. As mentioned earlier some antigens apparently are degraded within neutrophils to such an extent that they are no longer immunogenic. On the other hand eosinophils (Speirs 1958, 1963) or macrophages (Fishman 1961; Fishman and Adler 1963) are thought by many to play an essential role in preparing antigen in transporting antigen to the potential antibody producing cell or even in producing antibody directly.

Antigen antibody complexes may exert harmful effects on host tissues. Since phagocytic cells are capable of engulfing and digesting immune precipitates (Sorkin and Boyden 1959; Cochrane *et al.* 1959) they may well function to protect against these harmful effects. Eosinophils seem to be particularly prone to accumulate about antigen antibody complexes (Litt 1961, 1962) and do ingest these complexes (Sabesin 1963) degranulating during the process (Archer and Hirsch 1963b).

In some instances phagocytic cells in the inflammatory area may be responsible for damage to host tissue as well as to the microbial invaders. For example Arthus or Shwartzman reactions are suppressed or even blocked in the neutropenic animal (Stetson and Good 1951; Humphrey 1955). Degranulation of neutrophils has been noted in electron microscopic studies

- Hirsch J G and Strauss H 1964 Studies on heat labile opsonin in rabbit serum *J Immunol* 92 145 154
- Holland J J and Pickett M J 1958 A cellular basis of immunity in experimental *Brucella* infection *J Exp Med* 108 343 360
- Holter H 1959 Pinocytosis *Intern Rev Cytol* 8 481 504
- Humphrey J H 1955 The mechanism of Arthus reactions I The role of polymorphonuclear leucocytes and other factors in reversed passive Arthus reactions in rabbits *Brit J Exp Path* 36 268 282
- Iyer G Y N Islam D M F and Quastel J H 1961 Biochemical aspects of phagocytosis *Nature* 192 535 541
- Jenkin C R 1963 The effect of opsonins on the intracellular survival of bacteria *Brit J Exp Path* 44 47 57
- Jersild M 1949 Phagocytic activities of various types of leucocytes *Acta med scand Suppl* 213 238 246
- Litt M 1961 Studies in experimental eosinophilia III The induction of peritoneal eosinophilia by the passive transfer of serum antibody *J Immunol* 87 522 529
- 1962 Studies in experimental eosinophilia IV Determinants of eosinophil localization *J Allergy* 33 532 543
- Lockwood W R and Allison F Jr 1963 Electron micrographic observations of changes induced in human leucocytes by ingestion of pneumococcus *Clin Res* 11 210
- Karnovsky M L 1962 Metabolic basis of phagocytic activity *Physiol Rev* 42 143 168
- Karnovsky M L and Wallach D F H 1961 The metabolic basis of phagocytosis III Incorporation of inorganic phosphate into various classes of phosphatides during phagocytosis *J Biol Chem* 236 1895 1901
- Kovács A 1950 Antihistaminic effect of eosinophil leucocytes *Experientia* 6 349 350
- Lewis W H 1931 Pinocytosis *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 49 17 27
- Looke E and Rowley H 1962 The lack of correlation between sensitivity of bacteria to killing by macrophages or acidic conditions *Australian J Exp Biol Med Sci* 40 315 319
- Lurie M H 1942 Studies on the mechanism of immunity in tuberculosis The fate of tubercle bacilli ingested by mononuclear phagocytes derived from normal and immunized animals *J Exp Med* 75 247 268
- McCutcheon M 1955 Chemotaxis and locomotion of leucocytes *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 59 941 944
- Macnass G B 1954 Growth of tubercle bacilli in monocytes from normal and vaccinated rabbits *Am Rev Tuberc* 69 495 504
- 1960 The phagocytosis and inactivation of staphylococci by macrophages of normal rabbits *J Exp Med* 112 35 53
- 1962 Cellular resistance to infection *J Exp Med* 116 381-406
- 1964 The immunological basis of acquired cellular resistance *J Exp Med* 120 105 120
- Marchesi V T 1961 The site of leucocyte emigration during inflammation *Quart J Exp Physiol* 46 115 118
- Marchesi V T and Florey H W 1960 Electron micrographic observations on the emigration of leucocytes *Quart J Exp Physiol* 45 343 348
- Maximow A 1907 Über die Entwicklung der Blut und Bindegewebszellen beim Säugetier embryo Vorläufige Mitteilung, *Fol haematol* 4 611 626
- 1932 *Macrophages or histiocytes in* Cowdry E V (ed) *Special Cytology* 2 vol 2 New York Hoeber p 711
- Metchnikoff E 1892 *Leçons sur la pathologie comparée de l'inflammation* Paris Masson
- 1905 *Immunity in Infective Diseases* trans from the French by Francis G Binnie Cambridge Harvard Univ Press
- Miles A A 1956 Nonspecific defense reactions in bacterial infections *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 66 356-369
- Mudd S McCutcheon M and Lucké H 1934 Phagocytosis *Physiol Rev* 14 210 275
- Muir R and Niven J S F 1935 The local formation of blood pigments *J Path Bact* 41 183 197
- Myrvik Q 1960 Lysozyme and the host *Symposium Soc Amer Bact Geneva Biotech* p 27
- Nelson R A Jr 1953 Immune adherence phenomenon immunologically specific reaction between microorganisms and erythrocytes leading to enhanced phagocytosis *Science* 118 733 737
- Novikoff A H 1961 Lysosomes and related particles in Brachet J and Mirsky A E (eds) *The Cell* vol 2 New York Acad Press pp 423-488
- Oren R Farnham A E Saito K Milofsky E and Karnovsky M L 1963 Metabolic patterns in three types of phagocytizing cells *J Cell Biol* 17 487 501

- nuclear leucocytes and macrophages *J Exp Med* 117 27 42
- Cohn Z A and Hirsch J G 1960a The isolation and properties of the specific cytoplasmic granules of rabbit polymorphonuclear leucocytes *J Exp Med* 112 983 1004
- Cohn Z A and Hirsch J G 1960b The influence of phagocytosis on the intracellular distribution of granule associated components of polymorphonuclear leucocytes *J Exp Med* 112 1015 1022
- Cohn Z A and Morse S I 1959 Interactions between rabbit polymorphonuclear leucocytes and staphylococci *J Exp Med* 110 419 443
- 1960a Functional and metabolic properties of polymorphonuclear leucocytes I Observations on the requirements and consequences of particle ingestion *J Exp Med* 111 667 687
- 1960b Functional and metabolic properties of polymorphonuclear leucocytes II The influence of a lipopolysaccharide endotoxin *J Exp Med* 111 689 704
- Cohn Z A and Wiener E 1963a The particulate hydrolases of macrophages I Comparative enzymology isolation and properties *J Exp Med* 118 991 1008
- 1963b The particulate hydrolases of macrophages II Biochemical and morphological response to particle ingestion *J Exp Med* 118 1009 1020
- Daems W T and Oort J 1962 Electron microscopic and histochemical observations on polymorphonuclear leucocytes in the reversed Arthus reaction *Exp Cell Res* 28 11 20
- de Duve C 1955 Lysosomes a new group of cytoplasmic particles in Hayashi T (ed) *Subcellular Particles* New York Ronald p 128
- Dittrich H 1962 Physiology of neutrophils in Braunsteiner H (ed) *The Physiology and Pathology of Leukocytes* New York Grune pp 130 151
- Dubos R J 1954 *Biochemical Determinants of Microbial Diseases* Cambridge Harvard Univ Press p 37
- Ebert R H and Florey H W 1939 Extra vascular development of monocyte observed in vivo *Brit J Exper Path* 20 342 356
- Elsbach P 1959 Composition and synthesis of lipids in resting and phagocytizing leukocytes *J Exp Med* 110 969 980
- Fenn W O 1921 The phagocytosis of solid particles I Quartz *J Gen Physiol* 3 439 464
- Fishman M 1961 Antibody formation in vitro *J Exp Med* 114 837 856
- Fishman M and Adler F L 1963 Antibody formation initiated in vitro II Antibody synthesis in X irradiated recipients of diffusion chambers containing nucleic acid derived from macrophages incubated with antigen *J Exp Med* 117 595 602
- Fleming A 1922 On a remarkable bacteriolytic element found in tissues and secretions *Proc Roy Soc (London) series B* 93 306-317
- Florey H W 1962 *Inflammation* in Florey H (ed) *General Pathology* Philadelphia Saunders pp 40 97
- Germuth F G Jr 1956 The role of adrenocortical steroids in infection immunity and hypersensitivity *Pharmacol Rev* 8 1 24
- Gordon A ■ Siegel C D Dornfest B S Handler E S LoBue J Neri R O and Eisler M 1960 Humoral regulation of leukocyte numbers *Trans N Y Acad Sci series II* 23 39 50
- Halpern B N Benacerraf B and Biozzi G 1953 Quantitative study of the granulopoietic activity of the reticulo endothelial system I The effect of the ingredients present in India ink and of substances affecting blood clotting in vivo on the fate of carbon particles administered intravenously in rats mice and rabbits *Brit J Exp Path* 34 426-440
- Harris H 1954 Role of chemotaxis in inflammation *Physiol Rev* 34 529 562
- 1960 Mobilization of defensive cells in inflammatory tissue *Bact Rev* 24 3 15
- Hirsch J G 1960a Antimicrobial factors in tissues and phagocytic cells *Bact Rev* 24 133 140
- 1960b Further studies on preparation and properties of phagocytin *J Exp Med* 111 323 337
- 1962 Cinemicrophotographic observations on granule lysis in polymorphonuclear leucocytes during phagocytosis *J Exp Med* 116 827 834
- Hirsch J G Bernheimer A W and Weissmann G 1963 Motion picture study of the toxic action of streptolysins on leucocytes *J Exp Med* 118 223 228
- Hirsch J G and Church A ■ 1961 Adrenal steroids and infection The effect of cortisone administration on polymorphonuclear leukocyte functions and on serum opsonins and bactericidins *J Clin Invest* 40 794 798
- Hirsch J G and Cohn Z A 1960 Degranulation of polymorphonuclear leucocytes following phagocytosis of microorganisms *J Exp Med* 112 1005 1014

- Hirsch J G and Strauss B 1964 Studies on heat labile opsonin in rabbit serum *J Immunol* 97 145 154
- Holland J J and Pickett M J 1958 A cellular basis of immunity in experimental *Brucella* infection *J Exp Med* 108 343 360
- Holter H 1959 Pinocytosis *Intern Rev Cytol* 8 481 504
- Humphrey J H 1955 The mechanism of Arthus reactions I The role of polymorpho nuclear leucocytes and other factors in reversed passive Arthus reactions in rabbits *Brit J Exp Path* 36 268 282
- Iyer G Y N Islam D M F and Quastel J H 1961 Biochemical aspects of phagocytosis *Nature* 197 535 541
- Jenkin C R 1963 The effect of opsonins on the intracellular survival of bacteria *Brit J Exp Path* 44 47 57
- Jersild M 1948 Phagocytic activities of various types of leucocytes *Acta med scand Suppl* 213 238 246
- Litt M 1961 Studies in experimental eosinophilia III The induction of peritoneal eosinophilia by the passive transfer of serum antibody *J Immunol* 87 522 529
- 1962 Studies in experimental eosinophilia IV Determinants of eosinophil localization *J Allergy* 33 532 543
- Lockwood W R and Allison F Jr 1963 Electron micrographic observations of changes induced in human leucocytes by ingestion of pneumococcus *Clin Res* 11 210
- Karnovsky M L 1962 Metabolic basis of phagocytic activity *Physiol Rev* 42 143 168
- Karnovsky M L and Wallach D F H 1961 The metabolic basis of phagocytosis III Incorporation of inorganic phosphate into various classes of phosphatides during phagocytosis *J Biol Chem* 236 1895 1901
- Kovacs A 1950 Antihistaminic effect of eosinophil leukocytes *Experientia* 6 349 350
- Lewis W H 1931 Pinocytosis *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 49 17 27
- Looke E and Rowley D 1962 The lack of correlation between sensitivity of bacteria to killing by macrophages or acidic conditions *Australian J Exp Biol Med Sci* 40 315 319
- Lurie M H 1942 Studies on the mechanism of immunity in tuberculosis The fate of tubercle bacilli ingested by mononuclear phagocytes derived from normal and immunized animals *J Exp Med* 75 247 268
- McCutcheon M 1955 Chemotaxis and locomotion of leukocytes *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 59 941 944
- Mackanness G H 1954 Growth of tubercle bacilli in monocytes from normal and vaccinated rabbits *Am Rev Tuberc* 69 495 504
- 1960 The phagocytosis and inactivation of staphylococci by macrophages of normal rabbits *J Exp Med* 112 35 53
- 1962 Cellular resistance to infection *J Exp Med* 116 381 406
- 1964 The immunological basis of acquired cellular resistance *J Exp Med* 120 105 120
- Marchesi V T 1961 The site of leucocyte emigration during inflammation *Quart J Exp Physiol* 46 115 118
- Marchesi V T and Florey H W 1960 Electron micrographic observations on the emigration of leucocytes *Quart J Exp Physiol* 45 343 348
- Maximow A 1907 Über die Entwicklung der Blut und Bindegewebszellen beim Säugetier embryo Vorläufige Mitteilung, *Fol haematol* 4 611 626
- 1932 Macrophages or histiocytes in Cowdry E V (ed) *Special Cytology* ed 2 vol 2 New York Hoeber p 711
- Metchnikoff E 1892 *Leçons sur la pathologie comparée de l'inflammation* Paris Masson
- 1905 *Immunity in Infective Diseases* trans from the French by Francis G Binnie Cambridge Harvard Univ Press
- Miles A A 1956 Nonspecific defense reactions in bacterial infections *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 66 356 369
- Mudd S McCutcheon M and Lucke B 1934 Phagocytosis *Physiol Rev* 14 210 275
- Muir R and Niven J S F 1935 The local formation of blood pigments *J Path Bact* 41 183 197
- Myrvik Q 1960 Lysozyme and the host Symposium Soc Amer Bact Geneva Biotech p 27
- Nelson R A Jr 1953 Immune adherence phenomenon immunologically specific reaction between microorganisms and erythrocytes leading to enhanced phagocytosis *Science* 118 733 737
- Novikoff A B 1961 Lysosomes and related particles in Brachet J and Mirsky A E (eds) *The Cell* vol 2 New York Acad Press pp 423-488
- Oren R Firnham A E Saito K Milofsky E and Karnovsky M L 1963 Metabolic patterns in three types of phagocytizing cells *J Cell Biol* 17 487 501



- Osgood E E 1954 Number and distribution of human hemic cells *Blood* 9 1141 1154
- Pavillard E R and Rowley D 1962 A comparison of the phagocytic and bactericidal ability of guinea pig alveolar and mouse peritoneal macrophages *Australian J Exp Biol Med Sci* 40 207 214
- Paz R A and Spector W G 1962 The mononuclear cell response to injury *J Path Bact* 84 85 103
- Pomales Lebrón A and Stinebring W R 1957 Intracellular multiplication of *Brucella abortus* in normal and immune mononuclear phagocytes *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 94 78 83
- Rebuck J W Petz A J Riddle J M Priest R J and Lo Grippo G A 1961 Human leucocytic functions in the tissues in Wolstenholme G E W and O'Connor M (eds) *Biological Activity of the Leucocyte* Ciba Foundation Study Group No 10 Boston Little p 3
- Repaske R 1956 Lysis of gram negative bacteria by lysozyme *Biochim Biophys Acta* 22 189 191
- Rocha H and Fekety F R Jr 1964 Acute inflammation in the renal cortex and medulla following thermal injury *J Exp Med* 119 131 138
- Rowley D 1960 Antibacterial systems of serum in relation to nonspecific immunity to infection *Bact Rev* 24 106 114
- 1962 Phagocytosis *Adv Immunol* 2 241
- Rytomas T 1960 Organ distribution and histochemical properties of eosinophil granulocytes in rat *Acta path microbiol scand* 50 Suppl 140 pp 1 118
- Sabesin S M 1963 A function of the eosinophil Phagocytosis of antigen antibody complexes *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 112 667 670
- Sbarra A J and Karnovsky M L 1959 The biochemical basis of phagocytosis I Metabolic changes during the ingestion of particles by polymorphonuclear leukocytes *J Biol Chem* 234 1355 1362
- Sheldon W H and Bauer H 1959 The development of the acute inflammatory response to experimental cutaneous mucormycosis in normal and diabetic rabbits *J Exp Med* 110 845 852
- Shilo M 1962 The effect of levan on extravasation of humoral and cellular components into the peritoneal cavity of the mouse *Brit J Exp Path* 43 142 152
- Skarnes H C and Watson D W 1957 Anti microbial factors of normal tissues and fluids *Bact Rev* 21 273 294
- Smith M R Fleming D O and Wood W B Jr 1963 The effect of acute radiation injury on phagocytic mechanisms of antibacterial defense *J Immunol* 90 914-924
- Sorkin E and Boyden E V 1959 Studies on the fate of antigens *in vitro* I The effect of specific antibody on the fate of I<sup>131</sup> trace labeled human serum albumin *in vitro* in the presence of guinea pig monocytes *J Immunol* 82 332 339
- Spector W G and Willoughby D A 1963 The inflammatory response *Bact Rev* 27 117 154
- Speirs R S 1958 Advances in the knowledge of the eosinophil in relation to antibody formation *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 73 283 306
- 1963 Cells involved in hypersensitivity and immunity *Blood* 22 363
- Stahelin H Suter E and Karnovsky M L 1956 Studies on the interaction between phagocytes and tubercle bacilli I Observations on the metabolism of guinea pig leukocytes and the influence of phagocytosis *J Exp Med* 104 121 136
- Stetson C A and Good R A 1951 Studies on the mechanism of the Schwartzman phenomenon Evidence for the participation of polymorphonuclear leukocytes in the phenomenon *J Exp Med* 93 49 64
- Suter E 1953 Multiplication of tubercle bacilli within mononuclear phagocytes in tissue cultures derived from normal animals and animals vaccinated with BCG *J Exp Med* 97 235 245
- 1956 Interaction between phagocytes and pathogenic microorganisms *Bact Rev* 20 94-132
- Vercauteren R and Peeters G 1952 On the presence of an antihistaminicum in isolated eosinophilic granulocytes *Arch Int Pharmacodyne Therap* 84 10 14
- Walsh T E and Smith C A 1951 The influence of polymorphonuclear leukocytes and macrophages on antibody production *J Immunol* 66 303 310
- Williamson J R and Grisham J W 1961 Electron microscopy of leukocytic margination and emigration in acute inflammation in dog pancreas *Am J Path* 39 239 256
- Wilson A T Wiley G G and Bruno P 1957 Fate of non virulent group A streptococci phagocytized by human and mouse neutrophils *J Exp Med* 106 777 786

## References

- Wintrobe M M 1961 *Clinical Hematology* ed 5 Philadelphia Lea & Febiger
- Wood W B Jr 1951-52 Studies on the cellular immunology of acute bacterial infections Harvey Lectures series 47 72-98
- 1960 Phagocytosis with particular reference to encapsulated bacteria *Bact Rev* 24 41-49
- Woodin A M 1962 The extrusion of protein from the rabbit polymorphonuclear leucocyte treated with staphylococcal leucocidin *J* 82 9-15
- Zeya H I and Spitznagel J K 1963 Acid bacterial and enzymic basic proteins from leukocyte lysosomes Separation and identification *Science* 142 1085-1087
- Zucker Franklin D and Hirsch J G 1964 Electron microscope studies on the degranulation of rabbit peritoneal leukocytes during phagocytosis *J Exp Med* 120 569-576

- Osgood E E 1954 Number and distribution of human hemic cells *Blood* 9 1141 1154
- Pavillard E R and Rowley D 1962 A comparison of the phagocytic and bactericidal ability of guinea pig alveolar and mouse peritoneal macrophages *Australian J Exp Biol Med Sci* 40 207 214
- Paz R A and Spector W G 1962 The mononuclear cell response to injury *J Path Bact* 84 85 103
- Pomales Lebron A and Stinebring W R 1957 Intracellular multiplication of *Brucella abortus* in normal and immune mononuclear phagocytes *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 94 78 83
- Rebuck J W, Petz A J, Riddle J M, Priest R J and Lo Grippo G A 1961 Human leucocyte functions in the tissues in Wolstenholme G E W and O'Connor M (eds) *Biological Activity of the Leucocyte* Ciba Foundation Study Group No 10 Boston Little p 3
- Repaske R 1956 Lysis of gram negative bacteria by lysozyme *Biochim Biophys Acta* 22 189 191
- Rocha H and Fekety F R Jr 1964 Acute inflammation in the renal cortex and medulla following thermal injury *J Exp Med* 119 131 138
- Rowley D 1960 Antibacterial systems of serum in relation to nonspecific immunity to infection *Bact Rev* 24 106 114
- 1962 Phagocytosis *Adv Immunol* 2 241
- Rytomaa T 1960 Organ distribution and histochemical properties of eosinophil granulocytes in rat *Acta path microbiol scand* 50 Suppl 140 pp 1 118
- Sabesan S M 1963 A function of the eosinophil Phagocytosis of antigen antibody complexes *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 112 667 670
- Sbarra A J and Karnovsky M L 1959 The biochemical basis of phagocytosis I Metabolic changes during the ingestion of particles by polymorphonuclear leukocytes *J Biol Chem* 234 1355 1362
- Sheldon W H and Bauer H 1959 The development of the acute inflammatory response to experimental cutaneous mucormycosis in normal and diabetic rabbits *J Exp Med* 110 845 852
- Shilo M 1962 The effect of levan on extravasation of humoral and cellular components into the peritoneal cavity of the mouse *Brit J Exp Path* 43 142 152
- Skarnes R C and Watson D W 1957 Anti microbial factors of normal tissues and fluids *Bact Rev* 21 273 294
- Smith M R, Fleming D O and Wood W H Jr 1963 The effect of acute radiation injury on phagocytic mechanisms of anti bacterial defense *J Immunol* 90 914-924
- Sorkin E, and Boyden S V 1959 Studies on the fate of antigens *in vitro* I The effect of specific antibody on the fate of  $I^{131}$  trace labeled human serum albumin *in vitro* in the presence of guinea pig monocytes *J Immunol* 82 332 339
- Spector W G and Willoughby D A 1963 The inflammatory response *Bact Rev* 27 117 154
- Speirs H S 1958 Advances in the knowledge of the eosinophil in relation to antibody formation *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 73 283 306
- 1963 Cells involved in hypersensitivity and immunity *Blood* 22 363
- Stahelin H, Suter E and Karnovsky M L 1956 Studies on the interaction between phagocytes and tubercle bacilli I Observations on the metabolism of guinea pig leukocytes and the influence of phagocytosis *J Exp Med* 104 121 136
- Stetson C A and Good R A 1951 Studies on the mechanism of the Schwartzman phenomenon Evidence for the participation of polymorphonuclear leukocytes in the phenomenon *J Exp Med* 93 49 64
- Suter E 1953 Multiplication of tubercle bacilli within mononuclear phagocytes in tissue cultures derived from normal animals and animals vaccinated with BCG *J Exp Med* 97 235 245
- 1956 Interaction between phagocytes and pathogenic microorganisms *Bact Rev* 20 94 132
- Vercauteren R and Peeters G 1952 On the presence of an antihistaminicum in isolated eosinophilic granulocytes *Arch Int Pharmacodyn Therap* 84 10 14
- Walsh T E and Smith C A 1951 The influence of polymorphonuclear leukocytes and macrophages on antibody production *J Immunol* 66 303 310
- Williamson J R and Grisham J W 1961 Electron microscopy of leukocytic migration and emigration in acute inflammation in dog pancreas *Am J Path* 39 239 256
- Wilson A T, Wiley G G and Bruno P 1957 Fate of non virulent group A streptococci phagocytized by human and mouse neutrophils *J Exp Med* 106 777 786

TABLE 1 TYPES OF ALLERGIC INFLAMMATORY RESPONSES IN MAN\*

	IMMEDIATE TYPE	
	WHEAT AND-ERYTHEMA†	ARTHUS-TYPE
Clinical state	Hay fever asthma Serum sickness Purpura Physical allergies Some infectious allergies Penicillin rashes	Serum sickness Erythroblastosis Purpura (drugs) Glomerulonephritis ? Rheumatic fever ? Rheumatoid arthritis ? Periarthritis nodosa ?? Anaplasmosis ?? Ulcerative colitis
Sensitizing materials	Pollen molds kapok danders Antibiotics a few drugs special allergens (ascaris toxoid horse serum etc.) Altered tissues of the in dividual (physical aller gies)	Soluble proteins Drugs antibiotics Polysaccharides of bacteria and parasites Erythrocytes (Rh positive) ? (unknown materials)
Antibody	Present in serum Nonprecipitable Heat labile	Present in serum Precipitable Heat stable
Transfer of sensitivity	With serum	With serum
Cytotoxicity of antigen for sensitive explanted cells	None	None

	DELAYED TYPE	
	MICROBIAL HYPERSENSITIVITIES	NONLIVING AGENTS
Clinical state	Tuberculosis tularemia brucellosis Lymphogranulomatosis smallpox mumps Histoplasmosis and other mycoses Trichinosis	Cutaneous rashes (Allergic contact type dermatitis) Homograft rejection ? Multiple sclerosis ? Thyroiditis
Sensitizing materials	Bacteria viruses fungi par asites	Poison ivy plant oils simple chemicals plastics anti biotics etc Histocompatibility antigens Altered tissues ?
Antibody	Not found in serum Not found within cells	
Transfer of sensitivity	With cells not with serum	
Cytotoxicity of antigen for explanted sensitive cells	Present	

\* Adapted from Lawrence H S 1956 Am J Med 20 478-447

† Urticaria gastrointestinal disturbances angioneurotic edema and eczema although immediate type allergies may not exhibit cutaneous reactivity or presence of reagins Foodstuffs often represent the offending allergens The position of infantile eczema is undetermined

11

## The Allergic State

The term allergy designates an altered reactivity of the tissues toward particular substances as judged from previous experiences of a given individual with the same material or from the norm provided by other individuals of the same species.\* This definition must exclude the occasional instances of idiosyncrasy in which one encounters an inherent qualitatively abnormal reactivity toward physiologically active materials e.g. morphine. Allergy as seen in man includes a wide variety of manifestations—serum sickness, hay fever and asthma, allergy to foods, infantile eczema, poison ivy dermatitis, sensitivity to antibiotics and synthetic drugs, and sensitivity to products of microbial origin such as tuberculin.

The inciting substances, indeed various in nature, induce the altered reactivity in the host following penetration by ingestion, absorption through mucous membranes or through skin, mechanical injection or invasion of the tissues by pathogenic microbial or viral or parasitic agents.

The allergic or hypersensitive state may be viewed as an acquired capacity of the body to react against antigen. Reactions of hypersensitivity are then the outcome of what we may term the immunologic apparatus interacting with antigen in the

presence of tissues or cells, and *allergic inflammation* is the common response.

To take the broadest example, every animal that has received injections of a foreign protein is potentially an allergic individual. For suitably tested, it can exhibit anaphylactic shock or inflammatory responses at sites of intradermal injection and in addition a release of histamine and various physiologically active substances can be shown.

Allergic reactions that are mediated by circulating antibody commence at once upon the formation of antigen-antibody complexes and in this sense can be called immediate with regard to the time of inception of the reaction, although a longer period may be required before the physiologic disturbance has reached its maximum. Typical examples would be allergic rhinitis (hay fever), anaphylactic shock, reactions of Arthus type, serum sickness, and experimental glomerulonephritis (Table 1). The types of antibody that are concerned vary as will be described below.

Another major category of allergic reactions shows no obvious relationship to circulating antibody. The time-course in such reactions becomes apparent only after several hours and the maximal reaction is reached after 1 to 2 days or longer. The term delayed type reactions has been applied to these tissue responses which appear to be attributable to special properties of the white cells, probably of the lymphocytic series.

\* The term is used here in the original sense of von Pirquet (1906) who introduced it to cover all changes induced in the state of reactivity in consequence of contact with any living thing or inanimate substance.

vary in their relative combining affinity (avidity) for their specific antigen. First formed antibody is generally of low avidity, binding with antigen but dissociating from it with fair ease. With further antigenic stimulation antibody appears that is increasingly more avid. Again while antibodies usually have more than one combining site and are able to bind antigenic molecules in a lattice-work that eventually precipitates some classes of antibodies bind to only one molecule of antigen and consequently do not build up a precipitating complex; these have been called univalent antibodies. Certain Rh human antibodies for example attach to red cells but must be detected by agglutination with antihuman globulin in the indirect Coombs test.

Consequently the antibodies operative in reactions of the immediate type of hypersensitivity all attuned in some measure to their inciting antigen fall into several classes. However in anaphylaxis and the Arthus reaction we shall be dealing with precipitating antibodies except as specifically noted.

## ANAPHYLAXIS

Anaphylaxis in its primary sense is an acute systemic reaction species characteristic that is exhibited by sensitized animals shortly after reinjection of the same antigen.

The word anaphylaxis was coined by Richet in 1902 as a term to contrast with prophylaxis in order to describe a state of *excessive susceptibility* discovered in dogs that he was attempting to immunize with toxic materials. Subsequent observations made on guinea pigs by Theobald Smith, Otto and many others established that the phenomenon resulted from antigen antibody reactions occurring in vivo. For example serum from a guinea pig undergoing active anaphylactic sensitization could sensitize normal guinea pigs (passive transfer).

The symptom complex of anaphylaxis differs with the species such that the physiologic events set in motion by the antigen antibody reaction in vivo appeared to be baffling. Some workers held that a soluble anaphylatoxin was set free in the blood stream; others that the phenomenon primarily involved tissue cells. Subsequent work has revealed that both groups of workers had

been dealing with different but valid facets of anaphylactic shock.

The discovery of histamine by Sir Henry Dale (1913) gave the first proof of a physiologically active chemical mediator of anaphylaxis. The number of skeptics was legion not only was demonstration of its occurrence in all the various species difficult in view of dilution in the circulation and degradation by histaminase but it did not account for all phenomena.

Today besides histamine 3 other pharmacologically active chemical materials are known to arise in vivo following antigen antibody combination (Table 2). Histamine and serotonin (5 hydroxytryptamine) both exist preformed in the tissues. Two further materials are not preformed but arise *de novo* in consequence of the antigen antibody reaction, namely SRS-A (Slow Reacting Substance of Anaphylaxis) formed in the tissues and special short peptides, plasma kinins that arise by enzymic cleavage of certain plasma proteins. The responsible enzymes for engendering SRS-A and plasma kinins are bound to fixed tissues (Table 2) and it is not unlikely that they may be held within intracellular granules termed lysosomes (Chap. 10) awaiting degranulation by antigen antibody interaction at the cell surfaces.

The other preformed substances, acetylcholine and heparin appear to play minor roles although release of heparin from mast cells may act to mitigate certain features of shock. The active products called anaphylatoxin and leukotaxine are still unknown chemically and it is possible that they may come to be identified with plasma kinins for example.

A role has often been pictured for serum enzymes after activation from inactive precursors such as plasmin from plasminogen. At least 2 types of serum antiproteases serve to inhibit plasmin (Norman 1957). One serum inhibitor combines rapidly and dissociably with activated plasmin, the other more slowly but permanently. The net effect is to permit a definite though temporary proteolytic action on suitable substrate. Interestingly dilution of fresh guinea pig rat or human serum in glass gives rise in the course of an hour to a nonhistamine permeability factor injection causing a marked

Despite the special and unexpected features that are coming to light through the newer attacks on the problem it still appears likely that the cellular mechanisms of delayed type allergies is immunologic in nature and is connected with the antibody forming apparatus. Such allergic responses are characterized by the known immunologic attributes of *specificity* and are capable of *specific desensitization*. It is not unlikely that we have to deal with cell bound antibodies of a special sort, perhaps a primitive type of antibody. As examples, we may mention dermatitis owing to poison ivy or other contactants and reactions appearing on intradermal testing of patients for current or previous infection when microbial products such as tuberculin or histoplasmin are injected (Table 1).

Owing to these apparent differences in mechanism the 'immediate' and the delayed types of allergic reactions will be examined separately. Grossly they are not always sharply distinguishable. The roles of antibodies and white cells remain rather obscure and allergic excitants can stimulate the immunologic apparatus in both its types of response. In clinical tuberculosis for example several circulating antibodies against constituents of the tubercle bacillus appear as well as delayed type reactivity to tuberculo proteins.

As Table 1 shows some allergic excitants are frank antigens (serum proteins, pollen extracts) whereas others are obviously not antigens in their own right. Some non antigens (as simple chemical allergens) can be shown to combine with proteins or other substances of the host's tissues as carrier and serve as an artificial antigen. At times some alteration in the original structure of the allergen owing to intermediate metabolism is probably involved prior to combination. It may be helpful to think of antigenic complexes arising from the interaction *in vivo* between chemical and body constituents as *derivative antigens*.

In much the same sense the currently emphasized concept of autosenesitization in which an individual is pictured as becoming sensitized to certain of his own tissues probably would require a degradation of native structure to the point of incipient antigenicity.

The delicate and dynamic balance that exists in the tissues (*homeostasis*) can be upset in ways other than by allergic mechanisms. Indeed Roessle has suggested *normergy* to describe the norm of inflammatory responses of normal tissues to a given stimulus, *hyperergy* for supranormal reactivity (owing either to the existence of an immune state or to abnormal cellular physiology) and *hypoergy* has appeared as well commonly to mean a lessened reactivity subsequent to known sensitivity. It will be evident that nearly all of the manifestations of allergy are instances of increased levels of reactivity (*hyperergy*).

Principal emphasis will be given to mechanisms known to be operative in allergic phenomena particularly in animals the principles then being applied to hypersensitivities as seen in man.\*

## REACTIONS OF IMMEDIATE TYPE

The allergic responses of animals afford the bulk of our knowledge concerning antigen antibody reactions in relation to tissues. Historically, the injection of antigen into actively sensitized animals by the intraperitoneal or the intravenous routes led to the discovery of *systemic shock* (anaphylaxis) whereas injection just below or into the skin led to the finding of *local tissue damage* (the Arthus reaction). Both lines of study have made uniquely additive contributions.

The role played by antibodies is proved. Immune globulins or antibodies identified as modified gamma  $\beta_1$  and  $\beta_{2-4}$  globulins (see Chap 9) are complex in structure and combine with antigen in varying proportions. Some classes of antibodies over 1 000 000 in molecular weight sediment in a centrifugal field with a speed of 19 Svedberg (19S) units; others range around 160 000 in weight (7S) while some human antibodies (reagins) show an intermediate sedimentation pattern somewhat heavier than 7S antibodies. Moreover antibodies

\*For books presenting special aspects see Lawrence (1958) Shaffer, LoGripio and Chase (1958) and volumes in the series entitled *Progress in Allergy* (Karger, New York) and *Advances in Immunology* (Academic Press, New York).

guinea pig within 10 to 21 days by means of a single injection of soluble foreign protein in the order of 0.1 mcg to 1 mg of crystalline ovalbumin or 0.0001 ml to 0.01 ml of horse serum, preferably injected into the skin. With some materials that are less antigenic than native proteins several preparatory injections may be required. Because the guinea pig does not form antibody readily and antigens can remain in excess for some time the use of large amounts of native protein antigens can delay appearance of the anaphylactic state for perhaps 6 weeks or more. The symptom-complex known as anaphylaxis is demonstrable within 3 to 6 minutes after a 2nd injection of the antigen (0.1 to 10 mg) is given by the intravenous route. Alternatively larger amounts may be given by the intraperitoneal route in which case shock often not so acutely manifested starts when enough of the antigen has been absorbed.

Within the following minute restlessness is evident, the hair especially at the nape bristles, often feces and urine are voided, the animal scratches at the muzzle with a wiping motion of the forepaws, coughs, arches its back and raises its head with obvious dyspnea. It gives a series of jerks, sways, goes into violent tonic and clonic convulsions and falls over with cyanosis evident particularly around the muzzle and the ears. Death ensues after a few shallow gasps. All this occurs often within a period of 3 to 5 minutes. Postmortem search reveals firm inflated lungs, an actively beating heart, active peristalsis and evidences of visceral congestion. The trapped air in the lung is seen readily when the organ is cut under water and compressed lightly. Coagulability of the blood is found to be decreased.

Death from acute shock in the guinea pig is attributable to contraction of the smooth muscle around the secondary and the tertiary bronchioles, a prominent anatomic feature in this species. The air passages are occluded through infolding of the bronchial mucosa and with lungs remaining distended death results by suffocation. Contraction of smooth muscle also explains bristling of hair, peristalsis and defecation and contraction of the bladder with involuntary micturition.

Lesser degrees of anaphylactic sensitivity

than the rapidly fatal form described here are to be encountered. Minimal symptoms include scratching, defecation and the characteristic coughs and dyspnea may be transient or not evident.

There is another form of shock (protracted shock) in which dyspnea and bronchoconstriction are much less prominent or even absent; this results rather unpredictably usually from subcutaneous or intraperitoneal injection of antigen into the sensitized animal. Instead of shock that is explosive in character there is a profound depression at times comalike and often with copious tearing accompanied by a marked drop in body temperature (as much as 8° or 9° C). The shock can last for several hours before death or recovery occurs. Indeed the guinea pig that exhibits the protracted form of shock instead of acute death is perhaps more informative; one sees more drastic changes in blood pressure which after an initial rise falls steadily during the entire period of shock, almost complete loss of coagulability of the blood, a leukopenia, a marked decrease in numbers of blood platelets and a diminution in the titer of complement (see Chap. 9) in the blood owing to fixation by antigen-antibody complexes or participation in the activation of plasmin (*vide infra*). When death ensues one observes instead of ballooning of the lungs, edema and hemorrhages of the lungs and congestion of the viscera, especially the liver (cf. Winter 1945).

In studies of acute shock induced with antigens coupled to radioactive tracers (Warren and Dixon 1948; Dixon and Warren 1950) the antigen causing shock was found to localize around the bronchi particularly in the collagenous tissue between the smooth muscle layer and the cartilage rings; this would indicate that specific antibody exists in high local concentration, a rather unexpected finding. Furthermore these workers found evidence when death failed to ensue until the first 2 to 3 minutes had elapsed of the relaxation of smooth muscle, occlusion of the bronchi being then ensured by massive interstitial edema. Bradykinin has been demonstrated in guinea pigs undergoing anaphylactic shock reaching a peak at 2½ minutes (Brocklehurst and



but transient increase in the permeability of skin capillaries the substance in guinea pig serum appears to be an  $\alpha$  globulin perhaps of protease nature attacking ester linkages meeting in guinea pig serum an  $\alpha_1$  globulin inhibitor (cf Wilhelm 1962) Globulin permeability factor is distinguishable from plasmin but its relation to kallikrein remains unsettled

The relative roles played by these chemical mediators vary from one species to another in relation to amounts available relative sensitivities of a species to particular mediators location of sensitive tissues vis à vis sites of antigen antibody interaction types of antibody and so on For example in the guinea pig we have clear evidence of the fixation of antibody to tissues with positive responses obtainable months after antibody is no longer detectable in the serum a necessary period for fixation or equilibration of passively administered antibody and probably an inhibitory effect of excess circulating antibody in this species histamine in particular appears to play a major role in acute shock although bradykinin may contribute Thus a markedly low susceptibility to anaphylactic shock found in an isologous strain of guinea pig (Wright's Family II) was found to be correlated with a hereditary paucity of histamine in the lung (Stone Liacopoulos Briot Halpern and Neveu to be published) The rabbit in contrast shows only slight evidence of the fixation of antibody to tissues—chiefly in the pulmonary arteries and certain other vessels—but requires circulating antibody in excess in order to undergo anaphylaxis Histamine and perhaps serotonin to a degree (Lecomte and Fischer 1958) appears to play the major role in anaphylactic shock of the rabbit platelets and basophiles being implicated On the contrary in sensitized rats in which there is great insensitivity to histamine (Table 3) serotonin released from mast cells may play a relatively important role perhaps bradykinin also a substance like SRS-A appears when antigen is injected intraperitoneally Anaphylatoxin shown to be important in dermal reactivity is also produced when antigen antibody complexes unite with serum complement The role of the slow

reacting substances can be greater in species in which acute shock is not produced quickly

The precipitating feature is union of antigen and serum complement with antibody close to or on the surface of cells It has been suggested that the function of antigen consists in collecting and aggregating gamma globulin molecules such aggregates are pictured as the material causing cellular damage (Ishizaka *et al* 1961) Cells of the vascular endothelium often are affected, becoming swollen apparently phagocytic and permeable allowing rapid development of edema Free and tissue fixed mast cells (Benditt and Rowle, 1956 Weiser 1957) and other basophiles (Rorsman Shelley see p 266) are degranulated by antigen antibody reaction releasing histamine heparin and varying with the species serotonin Platelets and white blood cells in the circulation undergo alterations also becoming attached to the walls of small vessels and producing a temporary leukopenia

Heparin preparations have been found to be inhibitory to the release of histamine and serotonin from platelets by thrombin (Humphrey and Jaques 1955) but it appears questionable whether the heparin of basophiles exerts any significant role in the phenomena of hypersensitivity

It is necessary to state that some or all of the end events can be attained in ways that do not require antigen antibody reactions Such phenomena have been termed *anaphylactoid reactions* appearing for example after intravenous injection of bacteriologic peptone or of trypsin or of normal serum either in the pre-clot stage or after incubation of serum with kaolin starch agar and the like Today as Table 2 shows we accept the activation of tissue cathepsins or serum enzymes and their action on cells and substrates as the probable pathways Dextran and egg white are known to release serotonin

Not all events following combination of antigen with antibody are worked out completely but studies made with the guinea pig are so important that this species will be described in detail

**Anaphylaxis in the Guinea Pig** The anaphylactic state is readily established in the

guinea pig within 10 to 21 days by means of a single injection of soluble foreign protein in the order of 0.1 mg to 1 mg of crystalline ovalbumin or 0.0001 ml to 0.01 ml of horse serum preferably injected into the skin. With some materials that are less antigenic than native proteins several preparatory injections may be required. Because the guinea pig does not form antibody readily and antigens can remain in excess for some time the use of large amounts of native protein antigens can delay appearance of the anaphylactic state for perhaps 6 weeks or more. The symptom complex known as anaphylaxis is demonstrable within 3 to 6 minutes after a 2nd injection of the antigen (0.1 to 10 mg) is given by the intravenous route. Alternatively larger amounts may be given by the intraperitoneal route in which case shock often not so acutely manifested starts when enough of the antigen has been absorbed.

Within the following minute restlessness is evident the hair especially at the nape bristles often feces and urine are voided the animal scratches at the muzzle with a wiping motion of the forepaws coughs arches its back and raises its head with obvious dyspnea it gives a series of jerks sways goes into violent tonic and clonic convulsions and falls over with cyanosis evident particularly around the muzzle and the ears. Death ensues after a few shallow gasps. All this occurs often within a period of 3 to 5 minutes. Postmortem search reveals firm inflated lungs an actively beating heart, active peristalsis and evidences of visceral congestion. The trapped air in the lung is seen readily when the organ is cut under water and compressed lightly. Coagulability of the blood is found to be decreased.

Death from acute shock in the guinea pig is attributable to contraction of the smooth muscle around the secondary and the tertiary bronchioles a prominent anatomic feature in this species. The air passages are occluded through infolding of the bronchial mucosa and with lungs remaining distended death results by suffocation. Contraction of smooth muscle also explains bristling of hair peristalsis and defecation and contraction of the bladder with involuntary micturition.

Lesser degrees of anaphylactic sensitivity

than the rapidly fatal form described here are to be encountered. Minimal symptoms include scratching defecation and the characteristic coughs and dyspnea may be transient or not evident.

There is another form of shock (protracted shock) in which dyspnea and bronchoconstriction are much less prominent or even absent this results rather unpredictably usually from subcutaneous or intraperitoneal injection of antigen into the sensitized animal. Instead of shock that is explosive in character there is a profound depression at times comalike and often with copious tearing accompanied by a marked drop in body temperature (as much as 8° or 9° C) the shock can last for several hours before death or recovery occurs. Indeed the guinea pig that exhibits the protracted form of shock instead of acute death is perhaps more informative one sees more drastic changes in blood pressure which after an initial rise falls steadily during the entire period of shock almost complete loss of coagulability of the blood a leukopenia a marked decrease in numbers of blood platelets and a diminution in the titer of complement (see Chap 9) in the blood owing to fixation by antigen antibody complexes or participation in the activation of plasmin (*vide infra*). When death ensues one observes instead of a ballooning of the lungs edema and hemorrhages of the lungs and congestion of the viscera especially the liver (cf Winter 1945).

In studies of acute shock induced with antigens coupled to radioactive tracers (Warren and Dixon 1948 Dixon and Warren 1950) the antigen causing shock was found to localize around the bronchi particularly in the collagenous tissue between the smooth muscle layer and the cartilage rings this would indicate that specific antibody exists in high local concentration a rather unexpected finding. Furthermore these workers found evidence when death failed to ensue until the first 2 to 3 minutes had elapsed of the relaxation of smooth muscle occlusion of the bronchi being then ensured by massive interstitial edema. Bradykinin has been demonstrated in guinea pigs undergoing anaphylactic shock reaching a peak at 2½ minutes (Brocklehurst and

Lahiri 1962) Possibly bradykinin as well as histamine may contribute to such massive edema Collier *et al* (1960) for example found it usually possible to suppress anaphylaxis by the combined action of an antihistamine (pyrilamine maleate 2 mg/kg) and of aspirin (8 mg/kg) the latter known to mitigate the action of bradykinin on guinea pig bronchioles (aspirin does not antagonize other effects of bradykinin, however)

**PASSIVE TRANSFER** As mentioned above serum from a guinea pig undergoing active anaphylactic sensitization can passively sensitize normal guinea pigs the recipient animals exhibiting typical anaphylaxis when an injection of antigen is made within the next few days but not before some hours have elapsed

Not only antibody of the guinea pig but in certain instances antibody prepared in other species can sensitize passively e.g. rabbit The guinea pig is essentially susceptible to antibody produced by horse, cattle, chicken or rat Certain human sera can establish passive anaphylactic sensitization—human antitoxic (diphtheric) sera (Neill Sugg and Richardson 1932, Kuhns and Pappenheimer 1952), specimens of serum sickness sera (Longcope and Rackemann 1918, Tuft and Ramsdell 1929) and certain specimens from asthmatic cases (Ramsdell 1930) but human sera containing solely reagins do not do so

Quite recently it has been shown that guinea pig antibodies to soluble protein are separable into 2 types both of molecular weight 160 000 (7S antibodies) but differing in electrophoretic mobility (White Jenkins and Wilkinson 1963, Benacerraf *et al* 1963) Only one of these termed 7S<sub>Y1</sub> appears to be able to fix to tissues and mast cells and give rise to passive anaphylaxis (Ovary Benacerraf and Bloch 1963 cf White *et al* 1963) The other antibody termed 7S<sub>Y2</sub> seems to arise particularly when certain adjuvants are used Both antibodies are heat stable In the following it must be kept in mind that the quantitative studies cited have been based on total antibody and doubtless adjustments may be in order Likewise it is possible that the similar existence of both slow migrating  $\gamma$  and faster  $\gamma_{1A}$  antibody in mouse, horse and so

on will yield information on tissue fixation of antibody in these species

The amount of guinea pig antibody that is required to sensitize for fatal anaphylactic shock is extremely small—5 to 30 mcg of antibody nitrogen or less than 0.2 mg of antibody globulin (Kabat and Boldt 1944) The minimal amount of rabbit antibody is of the same order of magnitude—about 30 mcg antibody nitrogen (Kabat and Landow 1942) and 20 mcg of antibody nitrogen has been found to be entirely adequate to ensure maximal sensitization of lung the subsequently isolated lung preparation releasing all available histamine (Liacopoulos *et al* 1963) Rabbit antibody is equally effective whether used as the common precipitating variety or as nonprecipitating or univalent antibody (Kabat and Benacerraf 1949)

It will be apparent that only a fraction of the administered antibody can become associated with for example a uterine horn removed and perfused prior to use for organ anaphylaxis (*vide infra*) Grabar (1953) has estimated the amount as 0.01 mcg antibody nitrogen

In the guinea pig the anaphylactic state can be inherited from the mother apparently an instance of passive transfer of antibodies as the sensitivity is gradually lost during the first 6 to 10 weeks of life

It has long been known that a latent period of some hours (4 to 18) should be allowed prior to challenge of the passively sensitized guinea pig and from the start the latent period was interpreted as being the time required for fixation of antibody to tissue cells If sufficiently large amounts of immune serum are employed or if one injects soluble preformed antigen antibody complexes prepared in antigen excess (Germuth and McKinnon 1957) no latent period need be observed Benacerraf and Kabat (1949) using quantitative methods and constant antigen found that the amount of antibody needed to result in immediate shock was at least 40 times that required when a 5 hour latent period was allowed and that the sensitizing amount of antibody becomes progressively less as the latent period is extended the minimal shocking dose of antigen decreasing at the same time

Therefore it is understandable that for

passive reversed anaphylaxis in which antigen is injected prior to antibody very large amounts of antibody are required

Passive sensitization can be accomplished by bathing isolated normal tissues in antisera (Dale 1913 Hartley 1939 Kulka 1943 Mongar and Schild 1957a b c Feigen *et al* 1962) including mast cells in pieces of mesentery (Mota 1963) Again the variety of guinea pig antibody that binds to skin and permits PCA tests ( $7S_{Y1}$ ) is the one that sensitizes chopped lung for maximal histamine release  $7S_Y$  proving to be ineffective (Baker Bloch and Austen 1964) The subject has been investigated in detail recently (cf Halpern 1961 Binaghi *et al* 1962) As is seen for sensitization in vivo high concentrations (2 mcg Ab N/ml) of antibody will sensitize in less than an hour but as the exposure time is lengthened increasingly smaller concentrations suffice to attain the same degree of sensitization (0.1 mcg Ab N/ml in 4 hours) In the artificial situation presented here it can be shown that the speed of sensitization is accelerated to a few minutes if the electrolyte concentration is reduced markedly ( $5 \times 10^{-4}M$ ) or if isotonic nonpolar glucose is used More important it was shown that addition of normal gamma globulin to antibody globulin in the bath (a ratio of 10:1 and higher) reduced the speed of passive sensitization progressively this effect being limited to gamma globulins of those species whose antibody can establish passive anaphylaxis in the guinea pig Like wise the presence of a great excess of non-antibody gamma globulin interferes with passive sensitization with antibody in vivo over a certain time range

**PASSIVE CUTANEOUS ANAPHYLAXIS** In stead of inducing passive transfer of the anaphylactic state by means of immune sera injected intravenously or intraperitoneally one may inject intradermally into young guinea pigs (200 to 320 Gm) suitable dilutions of antibody (guinea pig rabbit human) and secure local passive sensitization After a suitable latent period such passively sensitized sites can react when antigen is administered systemically or—far more efficiently—intravenously This method of procedure termed Passive Cutaneous Anaphylaxis or simply PCA represents the phenomena of anaphylaxis transposed to and

visualized in the dermis (Ramsdell 1928 Chase 1943 1947 Ovary 1951 Ovary and Bier 1953 see review by Ovary 1958) There is an immediate and sharply delimited reaction reaching maximal erythema and edema within 20 minutes and then fading away The technic has been developed chiefly for delicate measurements of antibody (0.03 mcg Ab N/ml or less)

As commonly practiced capillary damage is visualized by mixing with the antigen just prior to intravenous injection dyestuffs that bind to serum albumin—3.5 mg Evans Blue (Ovary) or Coomassie Blue (Feinberg 1963) The local sites develop color within 1.5 to 5 minutes as serum albumin escapes through the injured capillaries the area varying with the concentration of fixed antibody

Just as in passive sensitization in vitro of uterine horn or ileal segment normal gamma globulin can compete with antibody gamma globulin for sites of local fixation along the endothelial wall Hence the technic lends itself best to semiquantitative studies when the concentration of immune globulin in the antiserum is high enough to allow dilution to say 1:30 Further individual differences in capacity to exhibit PCA make it advisable to prepare one site with a standard antiserum of the same specificity as the one under test (Battisto and Chase 1963)

The time for adequate fixation varies with the antiserum Ovary has found standard rabbit antibody to require 4 to 6 hours and Chase has encountered guinea pig antibody that does not react before 9 to 10 hours

Both for passive systemic and for PCA sensitization with guinea pig immune sera there is required the special  $7S_{Y1}$  antibody the  $7S_{Y2}$  antibody being said not to participate in anaphylaxis but in hemorrhagic Arthus type reactions (p 255) Certain other points deserve mention

(1) Following an intense reaction there occurs a local exhaustion within the area of skin of some component that may not be replaced for as long as 7 days (Chase 1947) probably related to recovery of mast cells (2) Excess antibody introduced into the skin can establish systemic anaphylactic sensitivity and an onset of systemic shock during the test with antigen will negate development of the local reaction (3) Some reactivity remains as long as 5 to 10 days

Lahiri 1962) Possibly bradykinin as well as histamine may contribute to such massive edema Collier *et al* (1960), for example found it usually possible to suppress anaphylaxis by the combined action of an antihistamine (pyrilamine maleate, 2 mg/kg) and of aspirin (8 mg/kg) the latter known to mitigate the action of bradykinin on guinea pig bronchioles (aspirin does not antagonize other effects of bradykinin however)

**PASSIVE TRANSFER** As mentioned above serum from a guinea pig undergoing active anaphylactic sensitization can passively sensitize normal guinea pigs the recipient animals exhibiting typical anaphylaxis when an injection of antigen is made within the next few days but not before some hours have elapsed

Not only antibody of the guinea pig but in certain instances antibody prepared in other species can sensitize passively e.g. rabbit The guinea pig is essentially susceptible to antibody produced by horse cattle chicken or rat Certain human sera can establish passive anaphylactic sensitization—human antitoxic (diphtheric) sera (Neill Sugg and Richardson 1932 Kuhns and Pappenheimer 1952) specimens of serum sickness sera (Longcope and Rackemann 1918 Tuft and Ramsdell 1929) and certain specimens from asthmatic cases (Ramsdell 1930) but human sera containing solely reagins do not do so

Quite recently it has been shown that guinea pig antibodies to soluble protein are separable into 2 types both of molecular weight 160 000 (7S antibodies) but differing in electrophoretic mobility (White Jenkins and Wilkinson 1963 Benacerraf *et al* 1963) Only one of these termed 7S<sub>Y</sub> appears to be able to fix to tissues and mast cells and give rise to passive anaphylaxis (Ovary Benacerraf and Bloch 1963, cf White *et al* 1963) The other antibody termed 7S<sub>X</sub> seems to arise particularly when certain adjuvants are used Both antibodies are heat stable In the following it must be kept in mind that the quantitative studies cited have been based on total antibody and doubtless adjustments may be in order Likewise it is possible that the similar existence of both slow migrating  $\gamma$  and faster  $\gamma_{1A}$  antibody in mouse horse and so

on will yield information on tissue fixation of antibody in these species

The amount of guinea pig antibody that is required to sensitize for fatal anaphylactic shock is extremely small—5 to 30 mcg of antibody nitrogen or less than 0.2 mg of antibody globulin (Kabat and Boldt 1944) The minimal amount of rabbit antibody is of the same order of magnitude—about 30 mcg antibody nitrogen (Kabat and Landow 1942) and 20 mcg of antibody nitrogen has been found to be entirely adequate to ensure maximal sensitization of lung the subsequently isolated lung preparation releasing all available histamine (Liapopoulos *et al* 1963) Rabbit antibody is equally effective whether used as the common precipitating variety or as nonprecipitating or univalent antibody (Kabat and Benacerraf 1949)

It will be apparent that only a fraction of the administered antibody can become associated with for example a uterine horn removed and perfused prior to use for organ anaphylaxis (*vide infra*) Grabar (1953) has estimated the amount as 0.01 mcg antibody nitrogen

In the guinea pig the anaphylactic state can be inherited from the mother apparently an instance of passive transfer of antibodies as the sensitivity is gradually lost during the first 6 to 10 weeks of life

It has long been known that a latent period of some hours (4 to 18) should be allowed prior to challenge of the passively sensitized guinea pig and from the start the latent period was interpreted as being the time required for fixation of antibody to tissue cells If sufficiently large amounts of immune serum are employed or if one injects soluble preformed antigen antibody complexes prepared in antigen excess (Germuth and McKinnon 1957) no latent period need be observed Benacerraf and Kabat (1949) using quantitative methods and constant antigen found that the amount of antibody needed to result in immediate shock was at least 40 times that required when a 5 hour latent period was allowed and that the sensitizing amount of antibody becomes progressively less as the latent period is extended the minimal shocking dose of antigen decreasing at the same time

Therefore it is understandable that for

Becker and Wirtz (1959) suggested that immune hemolysis of erythrocytes might offer a useful analogy to allergic events

The same procedure of exposing chopped sensitized lung to antigen or perfusing intact lung with antigen gives rise not only to histamine but to another pharmacologically active material *Slow Reacting Substance A* (SRS A) (Table 2) Assay is made on guinea pig ileum in the presence of antihistamine drug and atropine Histamine liberation is essentially complete in 5 minutes SRS A appears somewhat later its concentration increasing for more than 15 minutes Neither platelets nor plasma is required for its production but the synthesis is halted by interfering with the enzymatic pathway that liberates the preformed histamine Since guinea pig bronchioles are relatively insensitive to SRS A this material probably has no large part in acute shock in this species

Another pharmacologically active substance bradykinin appears in anaphylaxis (Brocklehurst and Lahiri 1962) The action of antigen on sensitized tissue releases a factor that acts directly or indirectly to secure enzymic cleavage of plasma globulins producing a 9 peptide chain which has been synthesized (Table 2) This potent bronchoconstrictor (cf Collier 1963) has been found to be present within 2 to 5 minutes in anaphylactic shock although it is short lived owing to the action of peptidases The contribution to systemic anaphylaxis of the guinea pig is not determined A general summary is provided in Tables 3 and 4

**Anaphylaxis in the Dog** Several injections of native protein are usually required to sensitize dogs adequately to prepare for shock although the anaphylactic state may be induced passively by administration of antiserum and reactions can be secured without any latent period (Sherwood *et al* 1946)

Injection of antigen by the intravenous route is followed by restlessness then vomiting salivation and diarrhea (at times bloody) and finally profound collapse with loss of muscle tone and slow often labored respiration at the same time the blood pressure and the body temperature decrease markedly As with the guinea pig the released heparin causes a loss of coagulability

of the blood and there is a decrease in serum complement a pronounced leukopenia in the peripheral blood reflects the elective retention of polymorphonuclear leukocytes in the lung capillaries where masses of white cells adhere tenaciously (Dean and Webb 1944)

In the most acute instances of anaphylactic death necropsy discloses chiefly an enormously distended and congested liver (indeed it may contain as much as 60% of the blood) for it is the liver that releases the bulk of the histamine (Dragstedt *et al* cf Code 1944) owing to the numerous mast cells in the parenchyma of dog's liver

During shock reactions have been shown in various organs in situ (Manwaring *et al* 1925) contraction of the uterus the intestinal tract (chiefly the colon and the rectum) and the urinary bladder

The isolated liver perfused with antigen in Locke's solution will not release histamine and heparin (Scroggie and Jaques 1949) but does so readily when perfused with antigen in whole blood (Rocha e Silva)

Perhaps affording a most important clue to anaphylaxis in the dog is the observation that 2 classes of canine antibodies can play separate roles passive transfer of serum from dogs spontaneously sensitive to ragweed (see p 263) imposes anaphylactic sensitivity to ragweed extract but demonstration of anaphylaxis is blocked on injecting antiragweed serum prepared in normal dogs (Tennenbaum Patterson and Pruzansky 1963) Here the anaphylactic antibody is heat labile and the second one is heat stable

**Anaphylaxis in the Rabbit** Systemic shock is not experienced regularly Consequently less is known about the conditions for producing systemic shock in the rabbit than in either the guinea pig or the dog The concentration of circulating antibody must be high (Jackson 1935) Passive sensitization is possible with adequately large volumes of serum (Arthus 1919) and may be demonstrated without a preliminary incubation period

Upon intravenous injection of antigen rabbits that show anaphylactic shock show arrhythmic respiration then panting with temporary hyperemia in the ear followed by arteriolar contraction and blanching the rab-

in skin prepared with certain guinea pig antisera, although the sensitivity decreases with time (4). The reactions are usually to be induced far more sharply in the skin of a recipient guinea pig than in the skin of the antibody donor, probably because antibody present in the latter's circulation blunts the anaphylactic type reactivity by overlaying an Arthus component.

Human skin it may be noted serves for PCA type reactions for a few hours *vis à vis* certain rabbit immunoglobulins (see p 263); normal gamma globulins compete in fixation to skin so that highly purified rabbit antibody has been required.

**ORGAN ANAPHYLAXIS** The features of anaphylaxis encountered in the intact sensitized guinea pig are met with also in the individual organs. Excised uterine tissue for example contracts on contact with specific antigen even after the organ has been perfused (Dale 1913) and so likewise strips of ileum (Schultz 1910). In the lung bronchospasm and occluding constriction may be demonstrated; blood vessels constrict; strips of gallbladder contract; the isolated heart exhibits an increased rate of beat, arrhythmia and constriction of the coronary arteries. All these responses are transient; the tissue soon returning to the normal state while still bathed with antigen.

For detecting the existence of anaphylactic sensitivity as when antibody is not demonstrable in serum the Schultz Dale test can be carried out suspending short lengths of

ileum or uterine horns from young females in a 37° C oxygenated bath with  $\text{Ca}^{++}$  but without carbonate buffer and adding antigen (Fig 1). By this means one can demonstrate readily the complete loss of anaphylactic (but not physiologic) reactivity of the tissue following one maximal response to specific antigen and through this demonstration rule out nonspecific causes of shock.

A most important advance was initiated by Mongar and Schild (1957; see review of 1962) who tested *in vitro* the output of histamine when antigen was added to sliced but not macerated lung fragments of sensitized guinea pigs. Below 15° C tissue became desensitized *without* histamine liberation. Release of histamine at 37° C was found to involve a heat labile (45°) enzyme precursor (tissue complement) requiring  $\text{Ca}^{++}$  for activation. The short lived enzyme system released bound histamine, probably by degranulating mast cells in the lung. Sulfhydryl inhibitors blocked the release. Subsequent detailed studies by Austen and Brocklehurst (1961a b c) with various enzyme inhibitors indicated that the enzyme involved resembled chymotrypsin in its specificity, becoming active only after the reaction of the sensitized tissue and antigen. Excluded were cathepsin C, carboxypeptidase, trypsin, and so on. Chymotrypsin itself added to lung tissue had no effect. Other evidence suggested that there may be a stage in anaphylactic reaction involving the third component of complement  $\text{C}_3$  (Chap 9).

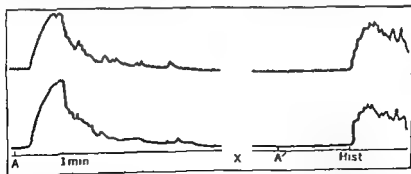


FIG 1 Schultz Dale test. Two strips of uterus are tested simultaneously in the same bath. A, addition of antigen to the bath; contraction occurring after a short latent period. X, complete replacement of bath. A', second addition of antigen to demonstrate desensitization. Hist, histamine 1:20,000,000 added.

(2) Kallidin Lys-Bradykinin†					Werle 1960 Pierce and Webster 1961 Greenbaum 1963
Acetylcholine $\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \quad \text{H} \\ \text{H} \quad \text{H} \\ \text{CH}_3 \text{C} \text{OCCN}(\text{CH}_3)_3 \end{array} \text{C}$	Yes	by action of kallikreins (esterases?) on plasma α 2 globulin	Parasympathomimetic agent Control of bronchial tone and glandular activity	Irritable	Dale 1914 Went 1936 Farber <i>et al</i> 1944 Brookchurst 1958
Heparin Complex acid mucopolysaccharide as Na+ salt	Yes	Mast cells	Inhibitor of blood clotting	Yes via mast cell degranulation	Gregoire 1946 Lecomte & Hugues 1954
G (Fraction of plasma (Permeability factors))	Precursors only	α and β globulins	Increase of capillary permeability	?	Wilhelm & Miles 1955 Wilhelm 1956
Leucotaxine Peptide chain ca 14 amino acids	No	Cell damage by activated cathepsins	Increase of capillary permeability	Probable	Menkin 1950 1956
Anaphylatoxin"	No	Incubation of Ag/Ab complexes with fresh guinea pig or rat serum involving complement	Mast cell degranulation and histamine release	Probable	Oster <i>et al</i> 1959



TABLE 2 PHARMACOLOGICALLY ACTIVE SUBSTANCES IN ANAPHYLAXIS AND ALLERGIC REACTIONS\*

[248]

COMPOUNDS	PRE FORMED	SOURCE	FUNCTIONAL ROLES	RELEASE BY ANTIGEN/ANTIBODY	CITATIONS*
Histamine Decarboxylated histidine <chem>NC1=CN(C=C1)CCN</chem>	Yes	Mast cell degranulation Blood platelets (rabbit) Human white blood cells Inducible enzyme histidine decarboxylase (Schayer 1961)	Bronchoconstrictor Capillary relaxant	Yes	Dale 1913 Monger and Schild 1957 Austen and Brocklehurst 1961
Serotonin 5 hydroxy tryptamine <chem>OC1=CC=C2C(=C1)C(=CN2)CCN</chem>	Yes	Intestinal mucosa Nervous tissue Platelets Mast cells of rodents	Constrictor of gut uterus and smooth muscle especially for rat and mouse	Yes	Humphrey & Jaques 1955 Waalkes <i>et al</i> 1957 Levy 1957 Barbato 1961
SRS A (Slow Reacting Substance A) Acidic substance (complexing with lipids of cell membranes?)	No	Sensitized guinea pig lung perfused with antigen also aorta and great veins	Constriction of guinea pig ileum and rabbit jejunum Bronchoconstrictor for human	Yes (from tissues not plasma)	Kellaway and Trethowan 1940 Austen and Brocklehurst 1961 Boreus and Chakraverty 1960 Brocklehurst 1962
Plasma kinins Peptides formed <i>in vivo</i> (1) Bradykinin Nonapeptide has been synthesized <chem>NC(CCC(=O)N)CCC(=O)NCC(=O)NCC(=O)O</chem> H <sup>+</sup> Arg Pro Gly Phe Ser Pro Phe Arg OH-	No	Degradation of pseudoglobulins by enzymes by action of enzyme in pancreas and salivary glands upon activation of proenzyme in plasma slowly by plasmin or trypsin	Bronchoconstrictor Vasodilator of coronary vessels Constrictor of smooth muscle Vasodilator of skin vessels sweat secretion Increases capillary permeability role in edema in allergy	Yes (both tissues and plasma required)	Rocha <i>et al</i> 1949 Antonio and Rocha e Silva 1961 Bernillo 1950 Lewis 1958 Elliott Horton and Lewis 1960 Brocklehurst and Fabrit 1962 Antopol and Chayman 1963

(2) Kallidin Lys Bradykinin		by action of kallikreins (esterases?) on plasma $\alpha$ 2 globulin		Werle 1960 Pierre and Weber 1961 Greenbaum 1963
Acetylcholine $\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{H H} \\     \\ \text{CH}_3 \text{C O C C N}(\text{CH}_3)_3 \\     \\ \text{H H} \end{array} \right] \text{C}$	Yes	Bound to protein complex fixed by nerve impulses usually Atrium of mammalian heart etc	Parasympathomimetic agent Control of bronchial tone and glandular activity	Dale 1914 Went 1936 Farber <i>et al</i> 1944 Brocklehurst 1958
Heparin Complex acid mucopolysaccharide as Na <sup>+</sup> salt	Yes	Mast cells	Inhibitor of blood clotting	Gregoire 1946 Lecomte & Hughes 1954
G fraction of plasma (Permeability factors <sup>†</sup> )	Pre works only	$\alpha$ and $\beta$ globulins	Increase of capillary permeability	?
Leucotaxine Peptide chain ca 14 amino acids	No	Cell damage by activated cathepsins	Increase of capillary permeability	Wilhelm & Miles 1955 Wilhelm 1956
Anaphylatoxin <sup>††</sup>	No	Incubation of Ag/Ab complexes with fresh guinea pig or rat serum involving complement	Mast cell degranulation and histamine release	Menkin 1950 1956
				Oster <i>et al</i> 1959

Reviews in Erdos *ed* *or* 1963 Humphrey 1967 Brocklehurst 1962

† Arg arginine Gly glycine Lys lysine Phe phenylalanine Pro proline Ser serine

TABLE 3 SPECIES DIFFERENCES TO ACTION OF PHARMACOLOGIC MEDIATORS

[250]

	GUINEA PIG	DOG	RABBIT	MOUSE	RAT	MAN
Sensitivity to histamine (lethal*) (mg/kg body weight)	0.3-0.4	3	0.6-3.0	250-300†	170-500 (1.5 mcg i.d. for local vasodilation)	
Physiologic acutance to histamine				Adrenalectomy Use of <i>H. pertussis</i> vaccine	Adrenalectomy	
Role of histamine	Certain	Certain	Principal constrictor	Questionable	Questionable	Certain
Role of serotonin (5 HT)	Not probable		Probable auxiliary role	Certain (Principal constrictor?)	Certain (released in intestine) (Principal constrictor?)	Not probable
SRS A	Produced in lung by Ag/Ab reaction		Produced in tissues by Ag/Ab reaction		Found by Ag/Ab reaction in peritoneal cavity	Produced in lung by Ag/Ab reaction (potent bronchoconstrictor)
Bradykinin	Present in shock (potent bronchoconstrictor)	Present in shock	Present in shock		Present in shock	Possible role
Anaphylatoxin	Can shock				Can shock	
Role of acetylcholine	Improbable	Not probable				Uncertain
G <sub>2</sub> α globulin (permeability factor)	Possible role					Possible role

\* Data compiled by the late R. L. Mayer

† Datum applies to the Swiss albino mice many other strains are more resistant (cf. Tolanda *et al.* 1963)

TABLE 4 CHARACTERISTICS OF ANAPHYLAXIS IN CERTAIN SPECIES

	GUINEA PIG	DOG	RABBIT	MOUSE	RAT	MAN
Onset of systemic shock	3 to 6 min	10 sec (acute)	15 sec	12 to 60 min	GI tract liver congested	Few seconds
Sinus of acute shock	Lung bronchoconstriction	Liver gallbladder GI tract Lungs	Pulmonary arteries mechanical heart failure Liver			Lung
Duration of sensitivity*	Many months	Long vs dog reaction	Brief	Brief	Brief	Many months†
Fixation of antibody to tissues†	Uterus gut lung vessels gallbladder heart coronary arteries urinary bladder	Brief vs classic antibody body	Strips of pulmonary artery blood vessels of lung and ear	Yes slight		Skin lung‡
Incubation period in passive transfer	Several hours	None	None	None		Several hours‡ (Prausnitz Kuestner)
Antibody in excess PCA	Not necessary Yes (180—320 gm body weight)	Necessary	Necessary Ear only	Necessary Yes		Not necessary‡ Prausnitz Kuestner reaction

\* Sensitization established without use of mycobacterial adjuvants

† Reaction to A in saline after perfusion

‡ Reaginic antibody

bit becomes weak and collapses gives a few convulsive movements defecates, and dies suddenly with head retracted and eyes in exophthalmos Bronchospasm is absent but the lung is nonetheless the main organ of shock

At necropsy extreme dilatation of the right half of the heart is seen The inferior vena cava the portal vein and the liver are engorged In 1919 Coca referred the cause of death to obstruction of the pulmonary arterioles which causes right sided dilatation of the heart death being attributable to secondary heart failure While contraction of the abundant smooth muscle around the pulmonary arterioles was first regarded as the source of obstruction McKinnon *et al* (1957) emphasized the occurrence of obstructing intravascular amorphous micro thrombi in the pulmonary circulation that in actuality are antigen antibody precipitates as shown by the use of fluorescing antigen Clumps of leukocytes also occur even sufficient to obstruct small vessels The stickiness of leukocytes and the clumping together and clinging of these cells to the vascular endothelium may be observed in newly regenerated blood vessels of the rabbit ear when antigen enters the circulation (Abell and Schenk 1938)

In isolated organs perfused with antigen constriction of a few tissues has been shown (Table 4) but systemic anaphylaxis is attributable to antigen antibody reactions that release histamine and serotonin from the blood platelets and/or leukocytes (Katz *cf* Waalkes *et al* 1957) probably in close relationship to the pulmonary arteries where white cells and platelets accumulate during shock as mentioned

Liberation occurs also when antibody and antigen are added to normal rabbit blood or to buffy coat the basophile becoming degranulated meanwhile (p 266) and symptoms of shock (nonfatal) can be produced in normal rabbits by injecting antigen antibody precipitates (McKinnon *et al* 1957) In the same way adding preformed antigen antibody precipitates to normal rabbit platelets releases histamine *in vitro* (Barbaro 1961)

As with other animals temporary anaphylactic desensitization seems to be attained by a few subcutaneous injections of small

amounts of antigen in the course of 3 or 4 hours this procedure is employed at times in resuming intravenous injections with certain antigens following periods of rest

**Anaphylaxis in Rodents** The actively sensitized rat and mouse highly resistant to histamine intoxication (Table 3) undergo systemic anaphylactic shock less readily than other species, and onset is slow Mast cells are injured the chief site of increased capillary permeability is the intestine where enterochromaffin cells appear to be a source of serotonin (Benditt *et al* 1963)

Upon passive sensitization with rabbit or homologous precipitating antibodies mice and rats give evidence of anaphylaxis but no damage occurs to their mast cells (Moia 1963) one is again reminded of the 2 classes of antibodies described in the guinea pig by Bloch *et al* (1963) for perhaps these species too develop in active anaphylaxis a variety of antibody that fixes directly to tissues Indeed the conditions for successful passive anaphylaxis— injection of antigen and antibody closely spaced or presented as soluble antigen antibody complexes (Tokuda and Weiser 1961)—would suggest an anaphylatoxic mechanism as operative by this route Serotonin of high concentration in rodent mast cells has been implicated (*cf* Weiser 1957) both bradykinin and anaphylatoxin may be involved

The rat does not become sensitized readily unless special methods are used (Lipton Stone and Freund 1956) but rabbit guinea pig and potent rat antisera prepare rat skin for passive cutaneous anaphylaxis (Ovary 1958) Indeed Brocklehurst *et al* (1955) showed that PCA reactions were nearly normal in rats 90 per cent depleted of skin histamine by use of the compound 48/80 It is interesting to note that guinea pig 7S<sub>1</sub> antibody is adequate to prepare PCA sites in the rat even if not in the guinea pig This has been taken to mean that complement fixing antibody and perhaps anaphylatoxin are important for triggering the reactions of rats (Osler *et al* 1957 1959 Bloch *et al* 1963)

Mice can be sensitized by several injections of fluid antigen (*cf* Cameron 1956) but much more easily by alum precipitated

antigen (Solotorovsky and Winsten 1953) or other adjuvants McMaster and Kruse (1951) have employed the ear of the sensitized mouse for direct observation of vessel spasms during anaphylaxis arteriolar and venous spasm following intravenous injection of antigen is dramatic the capillaries and lymphatics remaining unaffected Mice like rats can be prepared for passive cutaneous anaphylaxis but often reversed passive cutaneous anaphylaxis is employed antibody being injected intravenously and antigen given intradermally 48 hours later

Passive sensitization is possible with potent antisera of rabbit and guinea pig and no incubation period is necessary (Burdon 1946) Several procedures enhance the anaphylactic sensitivity of the mouse adrenal ectomy shortly before sensitization or pre-treatment with *H. pertussis* vaccine (Kind and Parfentjev 1951 review by Pittman 1957) The latter procedure renders mice more than 10 fold as sensitive to histamine as they are normally (Table 3)

**Anaphylaxis in Other Animals** Anaphylaxis occurs in horse calf and monkey (see p 162 ed 3) Birds may be sensitized and in particular several studies have been carried out in the pigeon the anaphylactic contractility of the isolated circular muscle of the pigeon's crop has been suggested as a laboratory tool

**Systemic anaphylaxis in the monkey** is not easy to secure The time of reaction to the shocking injection varied from 30 minutes to 24 hours edema and hemorrhage of the lungs and the intestinal tract and of the skin were observed when death did not occur early (see Kinsell Kopeloff *et al* 1941)

**Desensitization** The introduction of very small amounts of antigen beneath the skin given as a series of injections of increasing amounts over the course of a few hours without the production of symptoms serves to desensitize an animal and to render it immune to shock for some days (Besredka) In desensitization (cf Longcope 1923) it is commonly said that the available antibody is neutralized but some alteration in the reactivity of the tissue component may possibly be involved as well Practical use is still made of this procedure when sensitized animals must receive further injection (Kay 1940)

it has been applied successfully to man also but it is hazardous (Friedberger and Mita 1912 Mackenzie 1921 Ratner 1943) Eventually however with cessation of injections the anaphylactic state becomes re established *there is no known technique for effecting a permanent desensitization*

**Inhibition and Shock by Haptenes** With the advent of artificial conjugated antigens owing to the work of Landsteiner (Chap 9) it became possible to examine by anaphylaxis the serologic specificity lent to proteins by the attachment of certain types of chemical radicals which have come to be called haptenes When guinea pigs were given sensitizing injections with such a grouping combined with one protein fatal shock could result from subsequent testing with the same grouping combined with an entirely different protein If now the hapten itself or a simple derivative of it was injected intravenously prior to the shocking conjugate a state of specific inhibition of shock was to be found akin to inhibition in vitro of a precipitating antigen antibody system that is the small molecule could compete successfully with the large protein complex for hapten-specific antibody and so delay the requisite interaction between antibody and the full antigen In some cases the effect appears to be a simple inhibition with the tissue retaining its full reactivity in others there is evidence for specific desensitization as well

Similarly azodyes in particular those containing 2 haptenic groupings to the molecule (made by such devices as a double coupling to resorcinol) and having probably a larger structure owing to aggregation of molecules of the dis azodye can cause anaphylaxis directly without use of protein carriers this matter has been pursued by Campbell and McCasland (1944) who showed further the inhibiting effect of univalent haptenes

Recently haptenic amino acid conjugates (termed unifunctional haptenes) have been used to inhibit reactions given by multifunctional haptenic protein conjugates with the intent to study specificity For example  $\epsilon$  penicilloyl aminocaproate will in excess molar ratio block reactions given by penicilloyl polylysine and by penicilloyl serum albumin (see p 269)

**Reversed Anaphylaxis** A special instance

described as reversed anaphylaxis is presented by those animal species in whose tissues Forssman heterophil antigens are present for instance the guinea pig. If an antiserum produced against some other heterophil antigen is introduced intravenously (such as an antiserum against sheep erythrocytes developed in the Forssman negative rabbit) the antibody reacts with the guinea pig's tissues and leads to death with pronounced anaphylactic features; however the isolated guinea pig uterus is said not to respond to such antisera.

### THE ARTHUS REACTION

Antigen antibody reactions that resulted in localized tissue damage were found by Arthus in 1903. Rabbits injected repeatedly beneath the skin with horse serum came to respond with progressively more intense reactions at the site of each succeeding injection. Eventually Arthus observed hyperemia and edema that were shortly followed by hemorrhage and intense swelling progressing to deep necrosis by the following day later sloughing. Study of the Arthus reaction which now is conducted by intradermal injections of antigen into well sensitized rabbits has led to additional knowledge of the effects of antigen antibody reactions in tissues.

In the Arthus reaction antigen antibody complexes start forming promptly shortly leading to precipitation in the vessel walls. Vascular damage and thrombus formation soon occur but the final consequences—necrosis of the arteriolar vessel wall, hemorrhage, fibrinoid degeneration and edema when the antibody concentration is sufficiently high—require several hours to a day or more.

The earlier stages have been studied by Gerlach (1923), Stetson (1951) and Gell and Hinde (1954). Stetson noted pronounced but transient leukopenia within 15 minutes; the cells and the platelets being sequestered by adhesion to the endothelium of small vessels; aggregates of leukocytes and platelets appeared at the site of injection and formed thrombi. Along with vasodilatation and injury to the vascular endothelium swelling of connective tissue fibrils and massive edema occurred locally. With the continued

increase in numbers of leukocytes at the local site over a period of several hours there was detected an abnormal accumulation of lactic acid owing to aerobic glycolysis by the exudate leukocytes.

The acute phase appears to be over by 8 hours (Gell and Hinde, 1954; Cochrane *et al.* 1959). Many polymorphonuclear leukocytes are then degenerate; still others of them ingest and begin to degrade the antigen antibody precipitate. At 8 hours a circumferential mononuclear cell reaction is present. In the zone of the mononuclear cells, immature plasma cells and eosinophils are seen by the 4th day and thereafter progression to plasma cells proceeds apace. Although several aspects of this mononuclear contribution are seen also in tuberculin reactions of the delayed type, the final appearance of plasma cells is confined to the Arthus reaction.

Polymorphonuclear leukocytes are essential for inflammatory necrotizing reactions; removal of the leukocytes by prior treatment with nitrogen mustard inhibits the Arthus reaction but the Arthus reaction starts up on the eventual return of these cells since the antigen antibody precipitates have not been removed (Stetson 1951).

In relatively avascular cornea slowly developing but marked inflammatory changes can be demonstrated in sensitized rabbits by intracorneal injection of protein (Germuth *et al.* 1962). In such sub-Arthus reactions antibody diffuses into the cornea from injured vessels at the limbus producing local formation of antigen antibody precipitate (cf. Movat *et al.* 1963). Collagen fibers it has been said become swollen and fragmented but recent studies by Movat *et al.* (1963) have not confirmed such alterations. The reaction occurs even in animals largely depleted of polymorphonuclear leukocytes by nitrogen mustard treatment.

The fixed tissue cells are not themselves sensitive but owe their capacity to react to environmental cellular elements and plasma factors for cells of the sensitized rabbit survive normally in tissue culture when antigen is added.

In Arthus reactions ideal conditions apparently exist for antigen antibody complexes to degranulate polymorphonuclear leukocytes; intracellular enzymes being freed in

high local concentration along the walls of vessels. Platelets give up histamine and serotonin (Table 2) and mast cells in the local site become degranulated. The activation of enzymes may bring plasma kinins into play.

One newly discovered factor not discussed above may come into play in tissue reactions that are prolonged over several hours. Schayer (1961, 1963) has pointed out that histidine decarboxylase is an inducible enzyme contained in the endothelial cells; its amount increasing markedly under stress within short periods of time. Consequently there is available in an animal not only its preformed histamine but an induced synthesis of new histamine. The total amount would not be large but its synthesis for some time in injured endothelium should aggravate vessel permeability, increase diapedesis of cells, and tend to prolong the local reaction.

The intensity of the Arthus reaction varies with the concentration of immune globulin in the serum. 120 to 160 mcg antibody nitrogen/ml being required for deep necrosis and slough (Culbertson 1935). Passive transfer of sufficient amounts of immune serum intraperitoneally or intravenously determines typical Arthus reactions upon intradermal injection of antigen and the binding with antigen is found to be maximal within 15 minutes (Benacerraf and Kabat 1950).

A more delicate measurement is reversed passive transfer in which antibody is injected into the dermis and antigen is supplied locally or intravenously. Because rabbit antibody does not fix in rabbit skin antigen usually is given intravenously prior to the intradermal injection of antibody. The amount of immune globulin needed for reversed passive transfer has been determined as 225 mcg antibody nitrogen for maximal and 24 mcg for minimal reactions (Fischel and Kabat see Kabat and Mayer 1961).

A clear differentiation between anaphylactic and Arthus type sensitivities of the guinea pig was made in 1950 (Benacerraf and Kabat) antibody made both in rabbit and in guinea pig being used. In recent studies of Benacerraf and his group (1963) in which guinea pig antibodies are separated into  $7S_{Y_1}$  and  $7S_Y$  classes it turns out that

the 2 varieties of antibody play rather different roles. Anaphylactic sensitivity is determined by the  $7S_{Y_1}$  whereas Arthus type reactions are induced—differently—by both. The  $7S_Y$  antibody which fixes complement gives rise in reversed passive Arthus tests to hemorrhagic necrosis and  $7S_{Y_1}$  contributes markedly to the edema (Bloch *et al.* 1963). It will be useful to cite the previously described distinguishing features applicable to the use of rabbit antibody as well: (1) There is no need of a latent or incubation period before demonstrating passive Arthus reactivity whereas there can be such a requirement for passive anaphylactic sensitization with the lapse of some hours both states coexist. (2) The amount of antibody required upon intravenous injection for Arthus type reactivity to be established is considerably greater than that for fatal anaphylactic sensitization. (3) Nonprecipitating or univalent rabbit antibody leads only to a low grade Arthus reactivity although it is as effective as precipitating antibody in transferring anaphylactic sensitization. (4) Conversely Arthus type sensitivity of moderate intensity is established by injecting antibody of the horse (one reacting with pneumococcal carbohydrate) which is not able to induce anaphylactic sensitivity.

The amount of antibody required for reversed passive Arthus reactions in the guinea pig has been measured about 200 mcg antibody nitrogen produces maximal reactions and 10 mcg minimal reactions about the same values as those found in the rabbit (Benacerraf and Kabat 1950). Rabbit antiovalbumin and guinea pig anti-ovalbumin were found to be quantitatively equivalent but rabbit nonprecipitating or univalent antibody was markedly inferior.

Arthus type reactivity occurs also in monkey (Kopeloff and Kopeloff 1939), horse (Gerlach 1922) and man. It is not induced readily in the rat and the mouse except in the hip owing to the number of mast cells found there (Freund and Stone 1956).

A final example apparently the creation of a local Arthus reaction by causing polymorphonuclear leukocytes to concentrate in an area of the skin and there to be affected by antigen antibody complexes forming and



circulating in the bloodstream is provided by experiments of Opie (1936) and Klinge (1933). They showed that localized inflammatory responses may be caused in sensitized rabbits by irritating the skin by xylol or heating or chilling antigen being injected into the circulation.

Upon injecting soluble antigen antibody complexes Ishizaka and Campbell (1958) had noted increased vascular permeability in the skin and Cochrane and Weigle (1958) had found Arthus like responses. With the thought that this result might be referable solely to gamma globulin molecules held closely oriented in the soluble complex Ishizaka *et al* (1959, 1961) aggregated normal gamma globulin by heating or by cross coupling with bis diazobenzidine such aggregates if formed of rabbit or human gamma globulins indeed gave Arthus type hemorrhagic responses in guinea pig skin and fixed complement to the same degree as soluble antigen antibody complexes. Accordingly tissue damage can result from interaction of normal gamma globulin molecules serum complement playing a necessary role. Ishizaka (1963) recently has reviewed the role of gamma globulin in hypersensitivity reactions. Gamma globulin complexes interacting with serum can activate esterase (from complement fraction  $C_1$ ), fibrinolysin, anaphylatoxin and bradykinin.

#### LOCALIZED TISSUE DAMAGE

Many workers have injected antigen into sensitized animals in order to explore the pathologic consequences. In most experiments of this type the amounts of antigen introduced have been large, artificially so in terms of duplicating exposures to antigen that might occur in disease but indeed sites other than the skin of sensitized rabbits develop an inflammatory response when antigen is injected locally (e.g., stomach submucosa, testicle, kidney and other organs, ligatured blood vessels, knee joints, pericardium and myocardium). Thus Klinge (1933) injected antigen into knee joints of sensitized rabbits and produced intense inflammation extending to the adjacent soft tissue with necrosis and collagenous degeneration and repeated injections led to severe destructive and deforming arthritis.

Some experiments have approached the problem of disease in more promising fashion. Unilateral glomerulonephritis has appeared in sensitized rabbits following the injection of bacterial cells directly into the renal artery (Lukens and Longcope 1931), evidently because of a local retention of bacillary antigen in high concentration.

In an attempt to study the genesis of human rheumatic fever Murphy and Swift (1949, 1950) induced successive infections with different serologic types of group A streptococci in a proportion of rabbits subjected to a series of intracutaneous infections over a long period of time. Cardiac lesions were found that resembled closely those of human rheumatic fever including Aschoff bodies (cf Murphy, 1963). Streptococci were chosen because of the long suspected association between rheumatic fever and preceding streptococcal infection. Genetic factors appeared to determine the proportion of the rabbits thus affected. (In some instances however comparable lesions were found to be induced by large amounts of foreign serum.)

Most interesting results have been found in newer studies of so-called Masugi nephritis. Here onset of experimental glomerulonephritis is induced by administering low titer specific antikidney antibodies made in other species. The foreign gamma globulin attaches to the renal tissue for which it possesses specific affinity constituting there a local concentration of foreign antigenic protein (cf Pressman, Korngold and Heymann 1953, Hammer and Dixon 1963). Nearly immediate onset of kidney damage follows the injection of first quality immune sera (cf Hasson, Bevans and Seegal 1957, Seegal and Bevans 1957) but such sera in diluted form or sera possessing lower concentrations of antibody require a latent period of 4 to 12 days for the production of host antibody against the foreign gamma globulin. Once initiated the acute glomerulonephritis can prove to be fatal within a few days or it can undergo remission for several months to be followed by chronic nephritis that persists for months or years. The reason for persisting nephritis appears to be deposition of antigen host antibody and components of complement on the base

FIG 2 Section through submucosa of stomach of rabbit subjected to allergic insult showing marked necrosis of medium sized arteries. An oblique section of an artery has been exposed revealing 2 segments of its lumen. Marked localized damage is evident. There is slight infiltration of polymorphonuclear leukocytes in and about the necrotic arterioles. Hematoxylin and eosin stain  $\times 75$ . The histologic finding is typical of this particular animal was prepared passively by the slow infusion of antibody after injection of antigen (Germuth F G Jr and Pollock A D 1958 Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 5 245 Photograph from Dr F G Germuth Jr)



ment membranes of the glomeruli (Fig 4)

Another technic has been to inject into the bloodstream of normal animals very large doses of antigen (0.25 to 1 Gm/Kg protein or 10 ml/Kg foreign serum) the protein being intended both to sensitize and by its persistence in the tissues to provide residual antigen for reaction with newly formed antibodies. It will be recognized that this procedure is based on but exaggerates the one

that used to lead quite regularly to the development of serum sickness in man when antiserum produced in a foreign species was injected for prophylaxis (antitetanus anti diphtheria serums)

Intensive studies of the pathology produced in normal rabbits following administration of large initial intravenous doses of horse serum were carried out by Rich *et al* (1943 1947) whose studies of fulminating serum disease in man pointed convincingly

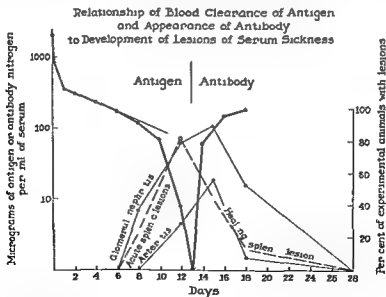


FIG 3 A comparative histologic and immunologic study in rabbits of induced hypersensitivity of the serum sickness type (Germuth F G Jr 1953 J Exp Med 97 272)

circulating in the bloodstream is provided by experiments of Opie (1936) and Klinge (1933). They showed that localized inflammatory responses may be caused in sensitized rabbits by irritating the skin by xylol or heating or chilling antigen being injected into the circulation.

Upon injecting soluble antigen antibody complexes Ishizaka and Campbell (1958) had noted increased vascular permeability in the skin and Cochrane and Weigle (1958) had found Arthus like responses. With the thought that this result might be referable solely to gamma globulin molecules held closely oriented in the soluble complex, Ishizaka *et al* (1959, 1961) aggregated normal gamma globulin by heating or by cross coupling with bis diazobenzidine such aggregates if formed of rabbit or human gamma globulins indeed gave Arthus type hemorrhagic responses in guinea pig skin and fixed complement, to the same degree as soluble antigen antibody complexes. Accordingly tissue damage can result from interaction of normal gamma globulin molecules serum complement playing a necessary role. Ishizaka (1963) recently has reviewed the role of gamma globulin in hypersensitivity reactions. Gamma globulin complexes interacting with serum can activate esterase (from complement fraction C<sub>1</sub>) fibrinolysin anaphylatoxin and bradykinin.

#### LOCALIZED TISSUE DAMAGE

Many workers have injected antigen into sensitized animals in order to explore the pathologic consequences. In most experiments of this type the amounts of antigen introduced have been large artificially so in terms of duplicating exposures to antigen that might occur in disease but indeed sites other than the skin of sensitized rabbits develop an inflammatory response when antigen is injected locally (e.g. stomach submucosa, testicle, kidney and other organs ligatured, blood vessels, knee joints, pericardium and myocardium). Thus Klinge (1933) injected antigen into knee joints of sensitized rabbits and produced intense inflammation extending to the adjacent soft tissue with necrosis and collagenous degeneration and repeated injections led to severe destructive and deforming arthritis.

Some experiments have approached the problem of disease in more promising fashion. Unilateral glomerulonephritis has appeared in sensitized rabbits following the injection of bacterial cells directly into the renal artery (Lukens and Longcope 1931) evidently because of a local retention of bacillary antigen in high concentration.

In an attempt to study the genesis of human rheumatic fever Murphy and Swift (1949, 1950) induced successive infections with different serologic types of group A streptococci in a proportion of rabbits subjected to a series of intracutaneous infections over a long period of time. Cardiac lesions were found that resembled closely those of human rheumatic fever including Aschoff bodies (cf Murphy 1963). Streptococci were chosen because of the long suspected association between rheumatic fever and preceding streptococcal infection. Genetic factors appeared to determine the proportion of the rabbits thus affected. (In some instances however comparable lesions were found to be induced by large amounts of foreign serum.)

Most interesting results have been found in newer studies of so called 'Masugi nephritis'. Here onset of experimental glomerulonephritis is induced by administering low titer, specific antikidney antibodies made in other species. The foreign gamma globulin attaches to the renal tissue for which it possesses specific affinity constituting there a local concentration of foreign antigenic protein (cf Pressman, Korngold and Heymann 1953, Hammer and Dixon 1963). Nearly immediate onset of kidney damage follows the injection of first quality immune sera (cf Hasson, Bevans and Seegal 1957, Seegal and Bevans 1957) but such sera in diluted form or sera possessing lower concentrations of antibody require a latent period of 4 to 12 days for the production of host antibody against the foreign gamma globulin. Once initiated the acute glomerulonephritis can prove to be fatal within a few days or it can undergo remission for several months to be followed by chronic nephritis that persists for months or years. The reason for persisting nephritis appears to be deposition of antigen host antibody and components of complement on the base

3) It is evident that the acute lesions—glomerulonephritis arteritis and reversible granulomatous lesions in the spleen and the lymph nodes—occurred during very early antibody synthesis when antibody could be determined only by change in the rate of clearance of antigen from the bloodstream and by consumption of serum complement (Dixon *et al* 1961) (The minimal amount of antibody required to produce this degree of immune clearance was estimated as 2.5 to 4.0 mg of antibody nitrogen in the entire circulation.) Next it will be noted that upon disappearance of free antigen and the finding of circulating antibody the various lesions resolved shortly. It is evident that the lesions occurred while antigen antibody complexes formed in antigen excess were present and indeed these complexes can be found at the site of damage by fluorescent antibody techniques. The transient nature of even acute lesions after one injection of antigen and their occurrence only in certain rabbits—the better antibody producers—are evidence of how baffling the problem had been prior to this time.

Dixon, Feldman and Vasquez (1961) extended this work by giving smaller repeated doses of antigen instead of 1 large injection to a large number of rabbits during many months. Here the rabbits suffering from lesions were *not* the better antibody producers (for such animals quickly eliminated each dose of antigen) but the poor antibody producers able to synthesize just enough antibody to form antigen antibody complexes in antigen excess and to retain these for a time in the tissues. An example is shown in Figure 4 A and B. The lumpy dense deposits along the outer aspect of the basement membrane consist of antigen antibody complement complexes. Antigen is localized by staining either with fluorescent antibody or with ferritin tagged antibody (Andreas *et al* 1963). One can draw the conclusion that repeated allergic insults with antigen in persons unable to respond well to the antigenic stimulus may constitute a cause of chronic allergic disease in the tissues.

Another example of allergic damage caused apparently by a high local concentration of antigen antibody complexes was provided in artificial manner by Kopeloff and

Kopeloff (1949). These workers by introducing antigen into the foot of the guinea pig 3 or 4 days before the onset of sensitivity—established principally from a distant repository of the same antigen in a water-in-oil emulsion—produced a most striking inflammatory reaction leading to a chronic arthritic deformity of the foot.

#### IMMEDIATE TYPE ALLERGIES OF MAN

From the studies made on animals the occurrence of the early type of reaction clearly coincides with the presence of antibodies capable of sensitizing normal individuals the apparent exception being a persisting sensitivity in some animals principally the guinea pig for many months after the antibody has become undetectable in the serum. This state is probably due to continued synthesis of antibody in very low concentration followed by fixation to tissues as the transient sensitivity of litters born to female guinea pigs suggests.

In man there occur Arthus type reactions anaphylactic shock and localized tissue damage such as glomerulonephritis all related to immunoglobulins. We must make it clear at the outset that questions regarding the nature of the antibodies concerned and the subjects capable of producing them are not to be resolved simply. So called classic antibodies are produced in man—agglutinins to invading microorganisms and transfused incompatible erythrocytes precipitins to foreign proteins pneumococcal polysaccharides dextrans and so on and univalent antibodies as seen especially in the Rh blood typing system. Several other types are known chiefly by studies in man—allergic reagins blocking antibodies and hemagglutinins to pollen extracts.

As will be mentioned below the capacity to synthesize reaginic antibodies is supposedly inherited only in a small proportion (5 to 15%) of individuals (termed atopic from *atopy* strange disease) exhibiting allergic diseases of the acute type. Very many individuals synthesize reaginic antibody in response to horse serum and special materials such as *Ascaris* extract but the synthesis is apparently transient in contrast with that of atopic individuals.

Episodes of acute anaphylactic shock in

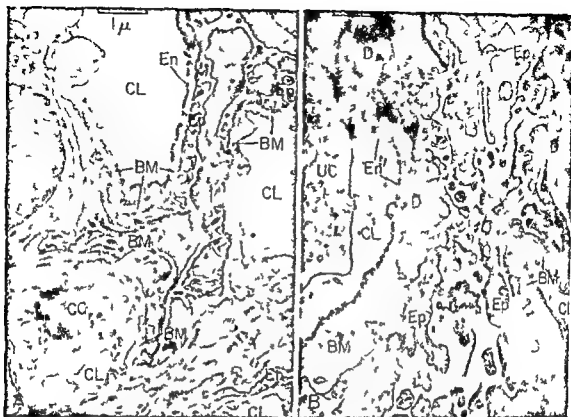


FIG 4 A B Glomerular damage. Shown at the same magnification are (A) section through a glomerulus of a normal rabbit and (B) portion of a glomerulus from a rabbit injected with bovine serum albumin daily for 4 months. The basement membrane (BM) on the epithelial side has become markedly and irregularly thickened by deposits (D) that are demonstrated through fluorescence microscopy to contain antigen antibody and complement. Normal foot processes of the epithelial structure (Ep) are replaced by continuous sheets of cytoplasm (Ep). The inner surface of the basement membrane is flanked by thin fenestrated endothelial cytoplasm (En) becoming more filmlike in the diseased glomerulus. BM basement membrane, CL, capillary loop. Me mesangial areas. Ep epithelial foot processes. En endothelial cytoplasm. D deposits of immune precipitates. CC circulating cell within one loop. UC cytoplasm of an unidentified cell occupying a large part of one loop. (Drs Joseph D Feldman and F J Dixon)

to sensitization as the cause of periarteritis nodosa.

Rabbits given horse serum (10 ml/Kg) were sacrificed between 1 and 7 days after the last injection and various types of pathology were found—acute necrotizing arteritis, glomerulonephritis of several degrees of severity, granulomatous lesions in the spleen and the lymph nodes, endocarditis and subendothelial cellular infiltrations (Rich and Gregory 1943). The principle being once established, subsequent workers have injected normal rabbits with preformed

antigen antibody complexes or have injected antigen intravenously and then infused antibody slowly. A typical instance of pathology produced in this way is shown in Figure 2.

Most interesting principles emerged when Germuth (1953, Germuth *et al* 1957) and later Dixon *et al* (1961) studied the time at which lesions appeared in relation to antibody synthesis. After a single injection of bovine albumin lesions appeared only in those animals that were best able to respond to antigen by early antibody production (Fig

3) It is evident that the acute lesions—glomerulonephritis arteritis and reversible granulomatous lesions in the spleen and the lymph nodes—occurred during very early antibody synthesis when antibody could be determined only by change in the rate of clearance of antigen from the bloodstream and by consumption of serum complement (Dixon *et al* 1961) (The minimal amount of antibody required to produce this degree of immune clearance was estimated as 2.5 to 4.0 mg of antibody nitrogen in the entire circulation.) Next it will be noted that upon disappearance of free antigen and the finding of circulating antibody the various lesions resolved shortly. It is evident that the lesions occurred while antigen-antibody complexes formed in antigen-excess were present and indeed these complexes can be found at the site of damage by fluorescent antibody techniques. The transient nature of even acute lesions after one injection of antigen and their occurrence only in certain rabbits—the better antibody producers—are evidence of how baffling the problem had been prior to this time.

Dixon, Feldman and Vasquez (1961) extended this work by giving smaller repeated doses of antigen instead of 1 large injection to a large number of rabbits during many months. Here the rabbits suffering from lesions were not the better antibody producers (for such animals quickly eliminated each dose of antigen) but the poor antibody producers able to synthesize just enough antibody to form antigen-antibody complexes in antigen excess and to retain these for a time in the tissues. An example is shown in Figure 4 A and B. The lumpy dense deposits along the outer aspect of the basement membrane consist of antigen-antibody-complement complexes. Antigen is localized by staining either with fluorescent antibody or with ferritin tagged antibody (Andreas *et al* 1963). One can draw the conclusion that repeated allergic insults with antigen in persons unable to respond well to the antigenic stimulus may constitute a cause of chronic allergic disease in the tissues.

Another example of allergic damage caused apparently by a high local concentration of antigen-antibody complexes was provided in artificial manner by Kopeloff and

Kopeloff (1949). These workers by introducing antigen into the foot of the guinea pig 3 or 4 days before the onset of sensitivity—established principally from a distant repository of the same antigen in a water-in-oil emulsion—produced a most striking inflammatory reaction leading to a chronic arthritic deformity of the foot.

#### IMMEDIATE TYPE ALLERGIES OF MAN

From the studies made on animals the occurrence of the early type of reaction clearly coincides with the presence of antibodies capable of sensitizing normal individuals; the apparent exception being a persisting sensitivity in some animals, principally the guinea pig for many months after the antibody has become undetectable in the serum; this state is probably due to continued synthesis of antibody in very low concentration followed by fixation to tissues. ■ the transient sensitivity of litters born to female guinea pigs suggests

In man there occur Arthus type reactions, anaphylactic shock, and localized tissue damage such as glomerulonephritis, all related to immunoglobulins. We must make it clear at the outset that questions regarding the nature of the antibodies concerned and the subjects capable of producing them are not to be resolved simply. So-called classic antibodies are produced in man—agglutinins to invading microorganisms and transfused incompatible erythrocytes, precipitins to foreign proteins, pneumococcal polysaccharides, dextrans and so on, and univalent antibodies as seen especially in the Rh blood typing system. Several other types are known chiefly by studies in man—allergic reagents blocking antibodies and hemagglutinins to pollen extracts.

As will be mentioned below, the capacity to synthesize reaginic antibodies is supposedly inherited only a small proportion (5 to 15%) of individuals (termed atopic from *atopy*—strange disease) exhibiting allergic diseases of the acute type. Very many individuals synthesize reaginic antibody in response to horse serum and special materials such as *Ascaris* extract but the synthesis is apparently transient in contrast with that of atopic individuals.

Episodes of acute anaphylactic shock in

man appear to be referable to the human reagin which binds to tissues rather than to other antibodies but it is possible that in instances of delayed shock can involve other types of antibodies

For example Werne and Garrow (1946) reported delayed shock regarded as an instance of anaphylaxis and certainly related to antibody production Following 2 injections of a prophylactic preparation of alum precipitated diphtheria toxoid and pertussis antigen identical twins died in delayed shock 16 and 24 hours, respectively after the 2nd injection A role played by hereditary factors seems to be obvious Both children showed histopathologic evidence of acute vascular injury and edema constricted arteries and tissue eosinophilia (The preparation used for the injections it may be added was shown to produce no untoward reaction in many other children)

In linking immediate type allergies of man to participation of antibodies it is necessary to point out that antibodies have not been surely demonstrated in for example eczema urticaria (hives) and angioneurotic edema Likewise some instances of food allergy can occur without evidence of circulating antibody or cutaneous reactivity to the offending foodstuff for these Coca introduced the term familial nonreaginic food allergy Modern developments in biochemistry and in immunology should allow resolution of these areas for a role of antibodies is most probable

To connote sites of predilection for allergic reactions seen in various individuals allergists have introduced the term shock organ—the bronchial mucous membrane (asthma) the mucous membrane of the eyes and the upper respiratory tract (hay fever allergic coryza or rhinitis) the endothelium of the superficial vessels in the upper cutis (urticaria wheal reacting allergies) the gastrointestinal tract (forms of food allergy) and the like The implication that antibodies are distributed unequally among the various tissues suggests a need for critical experimentation To some extent the concept of a particular shock organ will be an artificiality for the observed reaction may reflect the usual route of contact with the allergen vis a vis the intensity of the sensitivity rather than

solely the existence of foci with exaggerated sensitivity For example a person who suffers only from hay fever under natural conditions of exposure will sometimes exhibit instead an attack of asthma or a generalized urticaria when his allergen is injected for prophylactic purposes

**Arthus Reactions in Man** Lesions of the Arthus type can occur in man but are seen only under special circumstances

An excellent example occurred in 1909 (Lucas and Gay) when a decision was reached to sustain immunity against diphtheria in institutionalized children by giving subcutaneous injections of antitoxic horse serum at 3 week intervals Unwittingly, in view of then current knowledge it was found that between the 2nd and the 6th injections there appeared in addition to scattered cases of generalized urticaria the characteristic local changes—edema tenderness erythema and marked persistent induration or eventual necrosis

Reactions of Arthus type were seen in recent times in some individuals who received a single deep intramuscular injection of penicillin in a beeswax and oil vehicle Apparently, antibodies arose to some component of the injection mass and reacted with the antigen still partly held in situ

Therapeutic injections of immune horse serum given to severely ill, sensitive patients have at times produced extraordinarily extensive reactions and sometimes have even showed black dry eschars over large areas (Gatewood and Baldrige 1927 Tumpeier *et al* 1931) Extensive slough of the skin and the subcutaneous tissue has been noted (Kohn McCabe and Brem 1938) Whether or not there is some auxiliary role attributable to concomitant bacterial disease is unknown—for example participation of the Sanarelli Shwartzman phenomenon (p 293) Passive transfer of local serum reactivity in man has been reported by Kojus (1942)

**Serum Disease** \* After the discovery and the clinical application of diphtheria antitoxin the illness known as serum sickness came to attention Patients treated by therapeutic injections of a single dose of antitoxic

\* The monograph by von Pirquet and Schick (1905) is comprehensive see Longcope and Winkler (1941) and Ratner (1943)

horse serum showed within 7 to 12 days—closely similar to the time required for the development of the anaphylactic state in the guinea pig—widespread urticarial or erythematous eruptions with intense itching, a generalized swelling of lymph nodes and often edema of the eyelids, the face and the ankles. In severe cases arthralgia and fever followed the eruption.

The disease appears as a consequence of the interaction between specific antibodies newly formed and remaining traces of foreign proteins. The disease may be transient (the usual period is slightly over 2 days) or it may last up to 2 weeks. With use of crude horse serum there were usually several spontaneous recurrences of the eruption attributable to the fact that antibody formation is established at different times to the various serum proteins. Hawn and Janeway (1947) showed for example that serum sickness following injection of isolated beef gamma globulin occurred in 7 days and in 14 days when beef albumin was employed alone. Similarly in rabbits the times for beef gamma globulin and beef albumin to induce pathologic changes after single injections followed the pattern seen here for human serum disease, owing to the differential rate of catabolism of these proteins. gamma globulin produced chiefly kidney and nonarterial heart lesions and albumin caused arterial lesions (Hawn and Janeway 1947; Heptinstall and Germuth 1957).

The incidence of serum sickness today is reduced because of a lessened use of sera of animal origin and because of chemical modifications to which some immune globulins can be submitted (e.g. partial cleavage with pepsin as in the Parvenjev process of Rose *et al.* 1962). Antibody preparations to tetanus toxin were long used as a prophylaxis following wounds, but the present trend is to immunize in the early years with tetanus toxoid and also with diphtheria toxoid. Nevertheless it was estimated that 136 000 doses of tetanus antitoxin were administered in Canada in 1 year (Toogood 1960) with 7 900 allergic reactions.

In serum disease antibodies have been found in patients' sera, giving precipitation *in vitro* with horse serum anaphylactic sensitization in the guinea pig and tanned

cell hemagglutination reactions versus horse serum (Longcope and Rackemann 1918; Tuft and Ramsdell 1929; Arbesman *et al.* 1962) and like findings appeared in certain allergies to common foods (Schloss 1912). These antibodies being precisely those that were to be expected in view of the antigenic stimulus, the disease came to be regarded as either an anaphylactic or an Arthus type allergy as would be consonant with the involvements of joints and lymph nodes (cf. Table 1). At the same time skin sensitizing antibodies having the characteristics of reagins often are present (de Besche 1923) and perhaps are responsible for the urticaria and the itching. Arbesman *et al.* (1962) found that reagins arose with the onset of clinical symptoms preceding the rise of antibodies that are measured by hemagglutination and falling while the antibodies demonstrable by tanned cell hemagglutination still persisted. (Similarly transient display of wheal and flare reactions but persistence of hemagglutinins was found by Fisher and Connell (1963) upon actively sensitizing a normal nonatopic volunteer with ragweed extract.) Clearly both skin sensitizing reagins and classic antibodies occur together. In this regard it may be mentioned that the antibodies present in serum sickness can be demonstrated advantageously by reversing the sequence of injections used in the Prausnitz-Kuestner technique, probably because antibodies other than reaginic skin sensitizing antibody can participate (Voss 1938; Wright and Hopkins 1941; Karelitz and Glorig 1943).

In predicting which patients would develop serum sickness Arbesman *et al.* (1962) stated that the greatest correlation was observed with patients having pre-injection titers against horse serum-coated tanned erythrocytes greater than 1:200 by their method.

Reinjection at a time when the sensitivity is sufficiently high may cause local immediate reactions within 15 minutes to an hour and also general immediate reactions occurring within some minutes to 12 hours. Generalized immediate reactions often are severe and occasionally may prove to be fatal. Further mention will be made below.

If the antibody producing mechanism has



been established by some previous but not too recent injection a new administration of the same foreign protein will bring on the original train of events after a shorter interval 3 to 5 days ( accelerated reaction ) paralleling the recall phenomenon observed when animals are restimulated with antigen after a rest period

In recent years clinical manifestations closely resembling serum disease have been seen as a consequence of drug therapy for instance with the sulfonamides, the arsphenamines penicillin and others (Longcope, 1943 cf Carr 1954) A formation of derivative antigens in vivo between tissue component and chemical probably explains the sensitizing effect and could account for the frequent failure to find antibody or to reveal skin sensitivity by use of the chemicals themselves The pattern of serum disease is manifest in the occurrence of fever skin eruptions (erythema urticaria or purpura) and lymphadenopathy and as an aftermath of sensitization both accelerated and immediate types of response are to be encountered upon readministration of the drug

**Anaphylaxis in Man** Reactions that were judged to be anaphylactic in character were noted in the older experiences with foreign serum as during the course of spaced intrathecal injections of antimeningococcal horse serum employed therapeutically for meningitis Most of the fatal and grave incidents encountered in administering horse serum occurred in people having a pre-existing clinical sensitivity to horse dander that is horse asthmatics (Ratner and Gruhl 1929) and again it is the reaginic antibody and atopic individuals that are implicated Most prone to systemic accidents were those who gave immediate flare and wheal reactions in skin testing (This statement holds also for persons sensitive to insect stings e.g. bees wasps)

An ostensible instance of reversed anaphylaxis not dependent on reagents was seen in uterine contractions following the administration of specific horse antipneumococcal sera to women ill with lobar pneumonia and consequently possessing pneumococcal polysaccharide

In recent years fatal reactions to penicillin (p 269) have been noted as well as to

bee venom foreign protein and pollen extracts all of these being related to the allergic state and probably to a reaginic mechanism (cf James and Austen 1964)

Longcope and Winkenwerder (1941) reviewed the severe reactions occurring after administration of horse serum—collapse fall of blood pressure tachycardia dyspnea of the asthmatic type suffusion of the face urticaria with giant wheals and sometimes marked edema of the entire body in fatal cases death would occur within a few minutes or as late as 24 hours Postmortem examination was apt to reveal distended lungs splanchnic congestion and at times engorgement of the liver

Quite recently James and Austen (1964) examined 6 instances of fatal anaphylaxis in which death ensued within 16 minutes to 2 hours Hyperinflation of the lungs was encountered in the 5 cases presenting respiratory symptoms Both grossly and microscopically there was obstructing edema of the hypopharynx epiglottis and larynx in 4 patients, and microscopically there was acute emphysema in all 5

One lesson remains to us whenever it is deemed advisable to inject a foreign protein the possibility of pre-existing sensitivity must be kept in mind Testing for immediate type sensitivity is generally practiced by cautious intracutaneous injection and conjunctival instillation of dilute material waiting up to 2 hours for evidence of a reaction prior to therapeutic administration of antisera of animal origin As Longcope emphasized (1943) there should be employed in addition a preliminary intravenous test with 0.1 ml or less of the material untoward reactions may occur in the absence of positive cutaneous and conjunctival tests as is comprehensible in view of the several varieties of antibody mentioned above

**Allergic Coryza (Hay Fever)** The prompt response that occurs in patients who encounter pollen to which they are sensitive and their physiologic reactions when pollen extract is injected in too high a concentration constitute a prime example of anaphylaxis in man (The other chief example is afforded by insect stings which will not be treated here) The parallelism between human and guinea pig anaphylaxis is shown in Table

TABLE 5 COMPARISON OF HUMAN ANTIBODIES ENCOUNTERED IN ALLERGIC CORYZA AND ASTHMA

	REAGIN	CLASSIC 7S ANTIBODY
Heredity implicated	Yes ( Atopics )	No
Antigenic stimulus	Natural exposure ( spontaneous )	Via injection (traces by natural exposure)
Protein type	$\beta$ A globulin also others (?)	$\gamma$ globulins
Ultracentrifugation $S_{w0}$	8 to 11S	7S
Heating at 60 C	Labile	Stable
Reaction in vitro with antigen	Allergen bound to immune precipitates of reagins (??)	Precipitation shown by special methods in patients serum
Passive sensitization of skin	Fixes to skin mucous membranes of nose eye in testine	Leaves skin readily
Prausnitz Kuestner test	Yes	No
Placental passage	No	Yes

4 Because of the danger of anaphylaxis associated with the injection of specific allergens dilute solutions are used and epinephrine is kept ready the latter both relaxes smooth muscle and contracts some of the peripheral vessels

The antibody responsible is the human reagin \* (1) It fixes to normal skin upon passive intradermal transfer and gives flare and wheal reactions when the corresponding allergen is injected intradermally into the same site (Prausnitz Kuestner 1921 the P K technic ) or is absorbed following injection of larger amounts into remote tissues (Lippard and Schmidt 1937) Injected sites can give some measure of response when tested initially as long as 45 days later (2) The antibody differs from classic antibodies (Table 5) in several respects it is heat labile (56° to 60 C for 1 to several hours) it fails to show visible reaction in vitro with the corresponding allergen it is associated with  $\beta$  A globulins and perhaps with other serum globulins but not with the classic

gamma globulins it is dissociated by mercapto-ethanol (Leddy *et al* 1962) It is absent in children born to allergic mothers and it is not able to sensitize guinea pigs anaphylactically even though other human antibodies can prepare sites for passive cutaneous anaphylaxis in guinea pigs

Its prototype has been found in a few dogs suffering spontaneously from allergic coryza (Wittich 1941 Patterson 1960) in certain cows (Reddin 1948) in rabbits (Sherman *et al* 1939 cf Vaughan and Kabat 1953 Aladjem *et al* 1957) and probably in guinea pigs (Caulfield Brown and Waters 1937) as judged by heat lability The rabbit and the guinea pig antibodies are assigned to the class of reagins principally because of demonstrated fixation in human skin Intensive studies of dogs spontaneously allergic to ragweed are presently being conducted Transfer of dog reagent serum imposes anaphylactic sensitivity as well as cutaneous sensitivity and asthmatic attacks occur by inhalation of the allergen (Patterson and Sparks 1962 Tennenbaum *et al* 1963)

It should be noted that isolated specific rabbit immunoglobulins (prepared to dinitrophenylated proteins and to penicilloyl bovine gamma globulin) will serve to sensi-

Reagins or less precisely skin sensitizing antibodies are not to be confused with Wassermann reagin which for long has been a designation for the syphilitic antibody

tize and to produce wheal and flare reactions in human skin the nonreaginic antibody having a half life of only 10 hours (Farah Kern and Eisen 1960 Parker *et al* 1962)

The flare and wheal reaction appearing in sensitive persons by scratch testing through drops of allergenic extract or more exactly by injecting graded doses intradermally, consists of 3 developmental phases duplicating those seen upon injecting histamine into human skin (the triple response described by Sir Thomas Lewis) (1) local capillary vasodilatation producing an initial erythema (2) a local axon reflex causing widespread arteriolar dilatation and producing a flush or flare spreading gradually from the center (3) an increase of permeability in the integrity of minute blood vessels allowing very rapid passage of fluid with development of a wheal (a sharply circumscribed and elevated blanched central area sometimes showing pseudopodial extensions) The entire area involved may extend from 3 to 10 or more centimeters in diameter with a wheal of 1 to 3 centimeters The reaction occurs within 5 to 30 minutes and usually begins to fade within a further 15 to 60 minutes after which the skin nearly regains its normal appearance

Not every person synthesizes reagin under conditions of natural exposure those who do so being classed as atopics It is widely believed that the synthesis of reagins is an inherited capacity (Cooke and Vander Veer 1916 Spain and Cooke 1924) indeed only between 5 and 15 per cent of the population suffer from atopic diseases and it seems that hay fever (with asthma) runs in families The inheritable property is a susceptibility for sensitization only since the allergens concerned and the type of clinical manifestations vary among sibs and between children and their parents

The development of reagins or the reaginic type of skin reactivity in a sample of the population has been observed several times under conditions of natural exposure e.g. to dead sewage flies (*Psychoda*) (Ordman 1946) and to castor bean pomace (Figley *et al* 1928 1950) The small proportion of reactors among those exposed is at least consonant with the idea of inherited susceptibility At the other extreme is the formation of the reagin type of antibody by many persons upon adequate artificial immuniza-

tion with selected materials namely, extracts of *Ascaris* (Rackemann and Stevens 1927 Davidson Baron and Walzer 1947) and of *Trichina* (Baron and Brunner 1942) and horse serum (p 261) Apparently in an intermediate position between these 2 groups stands the relatively high proportion—at least 40 per cent—of persons who develop flare and wheal reactions to an impurity contained in diphtheria toxoid in consequence of a single booster dose of partially purified toxoid (Kuhns and Pappenheimer 1952 Relyveld Henocq and Raynaud 1961) The problem is difficult e.g. among bakers in Denmark developing clinical sensitivity to flour no evident familial susceptibility could be established (Schwartz 1952)

THE PR AUSNITZ KUESTNER TEST The passive sensitization of normal volunteers with patient's serum remains the only sure identification of the human reagin In sensitizing passively one sees the same relationship as in establishing passive anaphylaxis in the guinea pig a given amount of reaginic serum will produce markedly greater sensitivity if a latent period of 1 day is observed but it is possible at the cost of working with submaximal reactions to obtain immediate reactions by injecting allergen and reagin together when the latter is sufficiently concentrated A more compelling reason to observe a waiting period is to avoid misinterpretation since immediate whealing can be produced in human skin by the toxic effects of certain sera and by mechanical trauma \* As with all transfers of human serum the danger of serum hepatitis must be weighed

Human reagins fix in the tissues of monkeys Walzer having used rhesus monkeys for passive sensitization of the stomach submucosa and so on (see Walzer 1941) Rather recently it has been shown that the *Macaca irus* monkey can give useful passive sensitization of the skin (Layton Lee and DeEds 1961) and some workers are using such animals as substitutes for human volunteers It is necessary to elicit locally prepared sites by intravenous challenge with Evans

\* Immediate whealing is produced in normal individuals upon injection of aggregated human gamma globulin formed by heat or coupling via bis-diazotized benzidine (Ishizaka *et al* 1961) The activity of such aggregates appears to be related to their interesting property of binding serum complement

Blue and allergen and monkeys can be reused several times at intervals of 2 weeks before they become refractory to human reagin. An intravenous injection of as little as 3 ml of human reaginic serum prepares the animals for general cutaneous reactions and for exhibiting typical asthma by inhalation of the corresponding pollen.

There is a high correlation between reagins and clinical disease in wheal reacting allergies but failure to detect reagins by passive transfer (P K) in the circulation does not mean the absence of disease upon exposure owing perhaps to continued synthesis in trace amounts and tissue fixation of reagins.

One unresolved problem is that reagins have been found in individuals who show no corresponding clinical allergy (Grow and Herman 1936) judgment having been made on the basis of history (natural exposures) and not under experimental conditions. This finding is consonant with the finding by allergists of flare and wheal reactions in diagnostic testing that may be deemed of no clinical significance. Rather case histories are sought relative to allergens showing the strongest responses upon testing and treatment may be confined to the use of several allergens or only those for which the case history indicates clinical disease. In a few instances reagins have been detected 1 to 3 years before the onset of a corresponding clinical allergy.

Several questions might warrant evaluation (1) whether in addition to reagin some special concentration of it or alteration in a particular tissue site (shock tissue) is required to establish a clinical disorder (2) whether reagins can exist of low avidity (or affinity) that would give rise to less physiologic disturbance in mucous membranes than would be expected from their whealing reactions in the skin.

**HISTAMINE RELEASE FROM WHITE BLOOD CELLS** In the last few years knowledge has grown concerning the multiple antigens of ragweed and grass pollens\* these being subjected to separation by modern biochemical

techniques and studied by immunoelectrophoresis versus rabbit antisera. Aqueous ragweed extract for example contains more than 13 antigenic components not all of these being related to clinical sensitization. As purer products become available it is found that very dilute solutions of certain fractions of short ragweed as  $5 \times 10^{-10}$  mg/ml induce whealing in sensitive skin less than a 1/1000th the amount of crude extractives (King and Norman 1962, King, Norman and Connell 1964). Some ragweed-sensitive individuals appear to have coexisting sensitivities in more than a single constituent, since P K test sites after exhaustion of the capacity to react with purified material can still respond to whole extract (Arbesman *et al* 1962). The preparation of rather pure allergenic substances which are present only in small concentration in whole extract allows much more critical tests to be made than formerly were possible. For example the coating of red cells with such products gives much higher titers than when many substances compete for the surface of the erythrocyte.

Lichtenstein and Osler (1963) using the highly purified Antigen E of King *et al* (1962, 1964) have been able to show histamine release from the washed blood cells of ragweed sensitive patients at an allergen concentration of only  $10^{-3}$  mcg/ml or less thereby confirming with 100- to 1,000-fold less material the pioneer findings of Van Arsdel and Middleton *et al* (1958). Middleton *et al* (1960), Van Arsdel and Middleton (1961). The antibody that is attached to the circulating white cells of allergic patients appears to be reagin both because it has been seen to decrease upon hyposensitization (Van Arsdel and Middleton 1961) and because reaginic sera can sensitize passively normal human erythrocytes providing that serum is held at  $-70^{\circ}\text{C}$  or is fresh (Van Arsdel and Sells 1963). Augustin (1962) concluded that reagins absorb both to normal leukocytes and to sheep erythrocytes. The ratio of allergen to white blood cells is critical less histamine appearing when allergen is in excess. Divalent cations are required. All human leukocytes were found to contain a soluble product which enhances histamine release in this system.

**BASOPHILE DEGRANULATION TEST** In 1957 Rorsman noted that the number of

\* See Augustin and Hayward 1961 (orchard grass timothy pollens) cf. Richter and Sehon (1960), Goldfarb and Callaghan (1961), King and Norman (1962), and Robbins *et al* (1963) on short ragweed pollen.

basophilic leukocytes was decreased in the blood of patients with urticaria, he suggested that antigen antibody reactions or histamine liberating substances might degranulate these cells. Subsequently Rorsman studied basophiles during allergic reactions of rabbits (1961) and guinea pigs (1962). In particular, he found that basophiles decrease if the anaphylactic shock of the guinea pig is mild or only moderately severe. Shelley approached the problem by seeking to demonstrate basophile degranulation in vitro. Shelley and Caro (1962) indeed found that addition of antigen (1% ovalbumin) to blood of sensitized rabbits degranulated a significant proportion of the basophiles in vitro and that these cells disappeared from the blood upon systemic shock.

Turning to human allergic sera, Shelley devised several techniques to allow diagnostic use of such a test (1962, 1963). The *indirect method* consists of using rabbit basophiles from selected New Zealand rabbits having 8 to 10 per cent of these cells passively coating the cells with sera of penicillin sensitive patients and observing the basophiles delineated by the vital dye neutral red for degranulation during exposure to allergen. Positive results were reported in a narrow time range (1963a, b). Several other types of hypersensitivity were tested with reports of positive results. Although the method holds promise and many laboratories are engaged in study, it is not presently perfected technically and indeed passive sensitization of rabbit cells with human reagins offers difficulty. Some claims such as that prompt degranulation follows simple admixture of aspirin with basophiles and sera of aspirin sensitive patients deserve critical study.

**NONREAGINIC ANTIBODIES DESENSITIZATION.** Under natural conditions of exposure to pollens the allergic individual—the so called pretreatment patient—long had been thought to produce reaginic antibodies solely, these antibodies being multiple and corresponding to one or several of the allergenic substances within a given pollen.

Yet with introduction of the passive hemagglutination technique in which the allergens are attached to the erythrocyte surface by diazotization through a benzidine bridge (via bis diazobenzidine or BDB) or

are coated onto tanned red blood cells, it was found that pretreatment patients possessed antibodies that agglutinated the erythrocytes in varying degrees but failed to precipitate ragweed proteins in vitro (Gordon, Rose and Schon, 1958). If the serum globulins were concentrated 10 to 20 fold, however, direct precipitation was demonstrable (Perel, Mutter *et al*, 1962). Subsequently it became possible largely to separate the hemagglutinins apparently having properties of divalent precipitating antibodies from the reagins (Schon, 1962).

When allergic individuals have been subjected to desensitizing injections with their allergens in gradually ascending tolerated concentrations, their posttreatment sera have been found to acquire a heat stable antibody designated as blocking antibody that combines readily and specifically with the allergenic material (Cooke *et al*, 1935; Loveless, 1940). The thermostable antibody neutralizes the allergen, becomes a mixture of the two, will fail to produce a positive skin test on a sensitive individual (Loveless, 1940)—hence the name blocking or neutralizing antibody. (Normal nonatopic individuals under the same treatment give rise somewhat less readily than allergic individuals to the same type of antibody; reagin does not appear in the circulation but under intense antigenic stimulation Fisher and Connell (1963) observed a wheal and flare of activity of transient nature.)

The higher titered specimens of blocking antibody were found to bind with allergen in complement fixation tests (Chap. 9), then by diffusion in gel media these antibodies were seen to precipitate the allergen(s). Today the blocking antibodies are equated with the hemagglutinins mentioned above; the apparent differences between nonprecipitating blocking antibody, precipitins and hemagglutinating antibody being attributed to the concentrations in which they occur in different sera.

In light of the recognition of blocking antibody as dilute precipitating antibody and the large number of antigens in ragweed that incite separate antibodies in rabbits, it seems obvious that man under desensitization treatment will produce a variety of precipitins toward different constituents

Study of various aspects of the problems of desensitization doubtless will require that separated allergens be available

The presence of blocking antibodies in the serum of allergen treated patients can be determined after heat inactivation of the reagins by *in vivo* testing. Conversely since blocking antibodies readily leave the skin after injection whereas reagin does not it is possible to measure reagin separately. In order to test blocking antibody *in vivo* mixtures made with allergen are injected directly into sensitive or passively sensitized skin. (The concentration of blocking antibody does not rise sufficiently high in patients possessing it to influence the occurrence of wheal and flare reactions upon cutaneous testing with allergens.)

The idea that the process of desensitization is the development of a type of antibody other than the reagin the former protecting the patient by isolating newly absorbed allergen from sensitized tissues is still to be decided. The complexity of pollens make the issue hard to resolve. A more favorable situation for deciding the issue is offered by cases of insulin sensitivity coexisting reagin and thermostable antibody have been encountered the thermostable antibody appearing indeed to be responsible for periods of insulin fastness (Lowell 1944 1947 Loveless 1946 Berson *et al* 1956).

In attempting to desensitize the allergist is limited to the administration of very small amounts of pollen extract lest systemic accidents result. The administration may be pre-seasonal in the case of flowering plants or it may be maintained throughout the year (perennial treatment). The idea that depot treatment—*injection of large amounts of allergen in water droplets emulsified within a continuous phase of paraffin oil*—would allow slow release of a greater amount of allergenic solutes and be more efficacious has come to the fore (Loveless 1957 Brown 1959). Unfortunately the idea of one shot injection therapy has dominated rather than a careful appraisal of the possible merits of the new type of treatment utilizing several injections. Owing to improper emulsification or to instability of stored emulsions free allergen has been found at times in dangerous concentrations. Nevertheless the method has

yielded results that compare favorably with standard desensitizing procedures and study continues. Other problems can arise as by provoking delayed type hypersensitivity to allergens p 287.

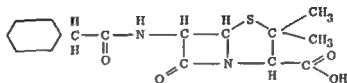
**NATURE OF THE REAGINS** The thermostable reagins in serum as has been seen above are accompanied by other immunoglobulins and they are dilute. One estimate of the maximum concentration is 100 mcg/ml in those few sera that can give P K tests in 1:1000 dilution (Gyenes and Schon 1960). All early methods of fractionation indicated that reagins become more widely distributed over crude fractions than precipitins. Further they have proved to be labile during biochemical fractionation and recovery of activity is low. Again the number of specimens of reaginic serum that have been examined by modern methods is not large. There is strong suspicion that a certain number of ragweed sensitive patients are sensitized to more than a single allergen of the extract. The available evidence associates at least the major reagin of ragweed serum with  $\beta_1$  globulin and appears to exclude participation of  $\beta_2$  macroglobulin (19S). Some allergic individuals however are said to lack  $\beta_1$  globulin.

Heremans (1960) and Augustin (1961) suggested the relation of reagins to  $\beta_1$  globulin and indeed Fireman Vannier and Goodman (1963) found reaginic activity to follow  $\beta_1$  globulins as they fractionated serum from treated ragweed sensitive individuals obtaining 10 per cent recovery. Selective removal of  $\beta_2$  globulins from entire serum by means of specific sheep antiserum gave a marked decrease in reaginic activity whereas a similar selective removal of gamma globulin left the original titer unaltered. Ishizaka *et al* (1964) have found  $\beta_1$  globulins as the sole protein of the parotid duct along with the presence of reagin. It may be added that most workers have found reagin to elute in column chromatography just ahead of gamma globulin. This finding would be consistent with the determination of Rockey and Kunkel (1962) that the skin sensitizing antibody reacting with a highly purified glucagon sedimented faster than 7S antibody perhaps between 8 and 11S. In

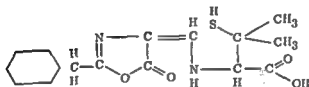
this case the reaginic property was inactivated by 0.1 M mercapto ethanol

In a new technic (Yagi *et al*, 1963), the proteins of reaginic serum were separated by electrophoresis and then precipitated *in situ* by antibody to human serum  $I^{125}$  labeled allergen being present. Labeled allergen became bound to the precipitate its position being detected by autoradiography. Insulin

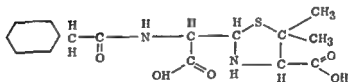
became bound to gamma globulin and at times to  $\beta_A$  globulins and a rather purified sample of ragweed allergens became bound to  $\beta_{2A}$  globulins and to gamma globulin and sometimes to  $\beta_M$  macroglobulin (Yagi *et al* 1963b). Obviously, it is not possible to know the participation of hemagglutinating and other nonreaginic antibody in these precipitates. The same technic was applied in an



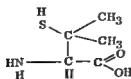
Benzylpenicillin



Benzyl penicillenic acid



Benzyl penicilloic acid



Penicillamine

FIG 5 Some reaction products of penicillin G

other form by Pruzansky *et al* (1962) a large amount of a highly purified I<sup>131</sup> ragweed allergen binding in vitro to a precipitate formed by mixing reaginic serum directly with antihuman gamma globulin

**REAGINS TO PENICILLIN** Even though the more common form of hypersensitivity seen with penicillin is a delayed reaction resembling that of serum sickness explosive systemic reactions related to the presence of reagins can present grave danger and result in death Within 2 or 3 months after shock circulating reagins disappear the patient retaining cutaneous reactivity In testing actively sensitized persons or passively sensitized sites potassium penicillin G usually induces wheal and flare reactions (Schwartz and Vaughan 1963 VanArsdel *et al* 1963 Siegel 1962) but the reagins of 1 patient reacted only to stored procaine penicillin G solutions Of the proposed pathways through which (benzyl)penicillin reacts with host tissues successive conversions to penicillemic acid and then to penicilloic acid (Fig 5) have been postulated (Levine 1960 1961 Parker de Weck Kern and Eisen 1962) protein reactions occurring both via amino lysyl groups and SH groupings the latter products involving the SH of penicillemic acid and forming mixed disulfides

In order to detect immediate type reactivity to penicillin penicilloyl human gamma globulin conjugates have been employed in intradermal tests (Levine and Ovary 1961 Parker *et al* 1962) The most extensive investigations have been made with penicilloyl polylysine some preparations of which have contained not only penicilloyl groups but also a few penicillenate groups and penamaldehyde penilaldehyde groupings newer preparations are virtually free of any but penicilloyl groupings (Parker Shapiro Kern and Eisen, 1962 Parker and Thiels 1963) Reactivity is expressed almost exclusively to the penicilloyl groupings and accordingly inhibition of cutaneous reactivity is usually demonstrable with a penicilloyl aminocaproate (Recently Parker and Thiels 1963 have suggested that conjugates with polylysine made from the unnatural (D) amino acid may prove to be safer with respect to nonantigenicity of the complex) Yet about one half of reacting individuals respond to penicil-

lenate conjugates as well reflecting the complexity of degradation reactions of penicillin in vivo When it is considered mandatory to make intradermal tests with penicillin G in order to reveal the most sensitive persons great caution must be exercised with use of scratch tests with 1 unit followed by intradermal tests with 1.5 and slightly higher unitage Only a few persons react in this way in contrast with the numbers reacting to tests with polylysine conjugate

In addition to reagins other types of antibodies to penicillin—both 7S and 19S—can be found in serum capable of agglutinating penicillin treated erythrocytes (Ley *et al* 1958 Schwartz and Vaughan 1963 Van Arsdel *et al* 1963) and fixing in guinea pig skin (PCA reactions) Indeed many individuals given penicillin form antibodies that can be detected by hemagglutination but without concomitant symptomatology or disease (Ley *et al* 1958) such antibodies arise also in rabbits injected with penicillin (Josephson 1960) In patients who give penicillin reactions the antibodies appear to be 7S and probably the antibodies are largely 19S in other persons

**Asthma** The problem of seasonal asthma differs from that of hay fever in the duration of attacks the basic reaginic mechanism being common to both Indeed progression from hay fever to asthma has been observed It has been alleged that in the asthmatic patient the tissue component can become altered pathologically through undergoing repeated allergic responses

In persons that have been termed horse asthmatics because of their responses to horse dander the hypertrophy of bronchial musculature frequently developing has been interpreted as rendering them particularly liable to respiratory symptoms and has been likened to the condition normally existing in guinea pig lung Kallos and Kallos Deffner (1937) found evidence of enlarged and emphysematous lungs in autopsy records of patients dying in asthmatic attacks and they pointed out that the special histologic character of the alterations in *Asthma bronchiale* rests on a peculiar allergic reaction of the bronchial wall and of the lung tissue (translocation)

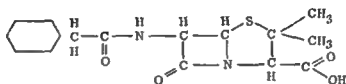
It could not be expected that prolonged



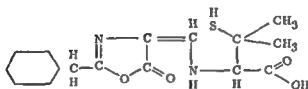
this case, the reagenic property was inactivated by 0.1 M mercapto-ethanol

In a new technic (Yagi *et al* 1963) the proteins of reagenic serum were separated by electrophoresis and then precipitated *in situ* by antibody to human serum,  $I^{125}$  labeled allergen being present. Labeled allergen became bound to the precipitate its position being detected by autoradiography. Insulin

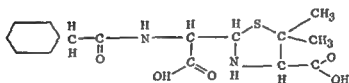
became bound to gamma globulin and at times to  $\beta_1$  globulins and a rather purified sample of ragweed allergens became bound to  $\beta_{2A}$  globulins and to gamma globulin and sometimes to  $\beta_{2M}$  macroglobulin (Yagi *et al* 1963b). Obviously it is not possible to know the participation of hemagglutinating and other nonreagenic antibody in these precipitates. The same technic was applied in an



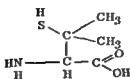
Benzylpenicillin



Benzyl penicillenic acid



Benzyl penicilloic acid



Penicillamine

FIG 5 Some reaction products of penicillin G

serum albumin (Fig 4 B) can be shown to consist of human gamma globulin and complement

Proof that the gamma globulin is antibody in these lesions is mostly wanting as is true also in systemic lupus rheumatic fever rheumatoid arthritis and periarteritis nodosa. Through recent studies however a definite relationship is coming to light between acute and subacute glomerulonephritis in man and preceding streptococcal infection. Antigen that appears to represent streptococcal products especially of Type XII is found to be associated with glomerular membranes in acute disease. In subacute glomerulonephritis antigen is less often detected but the globulin-complement deposits in the intermesangial spaces seemingly have the capacity to bind fluorescein labeled Type XII streptococcal antigens (Seegal Andreas Hsu and Zabriskie 1964)

Dixon (1963) has further stressed that the sites in which complexes localize and cause injury do not reflect immunologic relationship between a complex and a tissue but are selected by local factors in the tissues and the character and the amount of complexes. The existence of focal tissue injuries for example may cause localization of small complexes that otherwise would be clinically ineffective.

Apart from the demonstration by fluorescence microscopy of host gamma globulin in lesions a search can be made for complexes present in the circulation. Ultracentrifugation actually has disclosed the presence of gamma globulin containing complexes in the sera of patients primarily those with rheumatoid arthritis that are analogous to antigen antibody complexes (Kunkel *et al* 1961). Rheumatoid factors (19S 7S) which act like antiglobulin antibody complex with the patient's own 7S gamma globulin to give products in the ranges plus 22 and 9-17S (Williams and Kunkel 1962 view the rheumatoid factor as antibody to buried determinants on normal gamma globulin). Likewise among patients with purpura subacute bacterial endocarditis idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis macroglobulinemia and so on gamma globulin-containing complexes have become to light.

**Auto antibodies in Allergy** The thought that antibodies might arise to an individual's

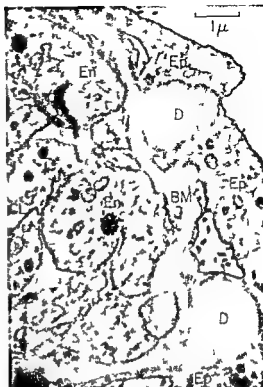


FIG 6 Portion of a glomerulus from an adult with subacute and chronic glomerulonephritis. A part of one loop is visible (CL). Its lumen is filled with cytoplasm of swollen endothelial cells (En). The basement membrane (BM) is irregularly thickened and serpentine. On its epithelial side are 2 dense deposits (D) resembling the deposits seen in rabbits with glomerulonephritis induced by injecting antigen over a prolonged period of time (see Fig 4). Epithelial foot processes have been replaced by sheets of cytoplasm (Ep) which cover both the deposits and the basement membrane (Drs Joseph D Feldman and F J Dixon)

own tissues and react with cytotoxic effect is strengthened by supportive observations. Much evidence has accumulated especially by use of fluorescing antihuman immune globulin antibodies (cf Coons 1956) that a patient's own gamma globulin affixes in sites of specific lesions—systemic lupus erythematosus and nephrotic glomerulonephritis (Melchers Ortega and Holman 1957) subcutane-

asthmatic attacks would be explained by local release of preformed histamine for endogenous histamine should produce early and sharp reactions and mast cells would become exhausted. A probable role of 'Slow Reacting Substance A' in human asthma has been predicted (cf Brocklehurst 1962 and Tables 2 and 3) since its release starts later than that of histamine and its concentration continues to mount 87 per cent of the contracting potency of lung perfusate at 30 minutes being referable to SRS-A. Samples of freshly excised sensitive human lung either perfused with specific allergen or chopped and bathed in specific allergen released both histamine and SRS A exactly as did the lungs of sensitized guinea pigs or of sensitized monkeys. The SRS A of both human and guinea pig origin caused contraction of human bronchioles *in vitro* in entire absence of tachyphylaxis hence a tissue subjected to repeated doses does not show any diminishing effectiveness. A second possibility for persisting reactions in the asthmatic lung would be new formation of histamine by the inducible enzyme histidine decarboxylase (p 255) and a third possibility would be bradykinin (Tables 2 and 3), not yet demonstrated to arise in humans.

Pointing once again to tissue changes in the lung tissue of asthmatics is the finding that aerosol inhalation of 0.5 per cent bradykinin reduces the vital capacity but even high doses are ineffective in nonallergic patients (Herxheimer and Stresemann 1961a).

As noted above the important finding that asthma can be produced in the *Macaca irus* monkey with human reagin offers a new tool in these studies.

**Physical allergies toward light (urticaria solaris) and toward cold** are known. Sera of such patients are found at times to permit transfer by the Prausnitz-Kuestner procedure the prepared sites on the recipient being subjected respectively to irradiation with the proper wavelength of light or to chilling. Such transfers show that an autologous substance must arise in the skin of all persons upon exposure only a very few persons developing hypersensitivity to it. Urticaria solaris probably may represent the oldest form of auto-immune disease (Baer). The reagin is heat labile and often unstable and appears

to be found in several serum fractions. Thus after a reaginic serum in a case of physical allergy to cold had been separated into several protein fractions successful transfer was possible only by use of a mixture of component fractions (Sherman and Seeborn 1950). In reaginic type cold allergy Lennart and Shelley (1961) showed by punch biopsy that tissue mast cells underwent degranulation in chilled areas of skin releasing histamine.

Among persons showing urticaria to light the reaginic factor is found chiefly in persons sensitive to the 2800–3200 Å range of ultra-violet and having an atopic background and reagins have been found also in certain but not all persons sensitive to the 4000–5000 Å range of blue and violet light.

Not all instances of urticaria due to light are allergic in nature one type seems to correlate with a heightened concentration of protoporphyrin IX in the skin, and some examples are referable to phototoxicity of ingested drugs such as sulfonamides and demethylchlortetracycline (Declomycin) (Epstein 1939, Harber *et al* 1961). But certain drugs and chemical compounds have proved to be *photo-allergic* in some individuals—the antihistamine promethazine (Phenergan) chlorothiazide (Diuril) sulfanilamide.

**Tissue Injury** Studies on experimental animals already described (p 259) provide the current model for exploring tissue injury as a consequence of antigen-antibody complexes. Most often involved probably is the poorer antibody producer in whom antigen is not subjected to prompt immune elimination permitting soluble antigen-antibody complexes to form and to persist. It will be recalled that complexes can persist for long periods of time sequestered in the thickened basement membranes of the kidney glomerulus without causing acute inflammatory reactions. Dixon points to concomitant persistence of associated renal malfunction lasting as long as a year i.e., proteinuria (Dixon 1963).

An example of human subacute and chronic glomerulonephritis is shown in Figure 6. The segregated dense deposits resembling in location and size those arising in rabbits injected for months with bovine

antibodies can be involved—being either complete incomplete or hemolytic (with complement) and others are active between 4 to 16° or more being macro globulins (19S) of the cold variety utilizing complement. In patients that recover owing to treatment the antibodies disappear.

The origin and the significance (in terms of allergic episodes) of certain other important factors found in the serum of patients have not yet been determined. Patients with lupus erythematosus (L E) possess a gamma globulin which is responsible for the formation of the bizarre L E cell that appears in the blood the factor fixing to the nuclei (Miescher *et al* 1954 Holman and Kunkel 1957) of polymorphonuclear leukocytes which then form a swollen body become free and undergo ingestion by normal polymorphonuclear leukocytes. The factor fixes to the separated nuclei of several species and is viewed as an auto antibody to nucleoprotein or deoxyribonucleic acid (cf Robbins *et al* 1957).

The idea has been voiced that some allergic diseases may occur without participation of any antigen. Thus if molecular changes should arise in gamma globulin that would allow these molecules to aggregate complement fixation could take place resulting in nonspecific agglutination of red cells and platelets in the absence of antigen and antibody (Ishizaka *et al* 1961 1962).

To study auto immune diseases various laboratory models have been used many using antigens that differ from those of the subject animal itself. Often denatured autologous proteins are used as antigen or normal tissue is injected with mycobacterial paraffin oil adjuvant or guinea pigs whose tissues contain Forssman antigen are injected with anti Forssman immune globulin. Halpern *et al* (1963) have injected papain repeatedly into monkeys and rabbits leading to destructive alterations in the tissues and a finding of antibodies toward tissue structures containing glucoproteins. In one model a graft versus host reaction (p 289) is established by appropriate cellular transfer and the pathologic events occurring in runt disease are noted. The value of such study involving erythema purpura acanthosis and

various extreme lesions as well as the histologic resemblances to lupus erythematosus and scleroderma has been stressed by Stastny *et al* (1963).

### ALLERGIC INFLAMMATION DELAYED RESPONSES

Allergic reactions that require some hours to become manifest after the test material is applied are placed in a separate category not because of the delay in development but rather because they exhibit no readily demonstrable relation to circulating antibodies and the procedure of passive transfer by means of serum is typically unsuccessful. Transfer with white cells in contrast has been demonstrated in several key instances without direct evidence of circulating immunoglobulin (Table 1). The coexistence of a delayed type of response and a circulating antibody has been noted in some cases which is not surprising since the stimuli giving rise to delayed type hypersensitivity excites the antibody forming apparatus as well even if not in an equal degree.

Dermal sensitivity is induced chiefly by percutaneous absorption following contact of the skin with substances of low molecular weight (simple chemical substances nickel salts urushiol from the poison ivy plant and the like) or with products of fungi growing superficially in the skin. Upon a subsequent exposure to the same agent there appear reactions of eczematous type such as by peremia macules papules or even vesicles as the epidermis separates and fluid accumulates beneath itching can occur as well. Histologically there is infiltration with lymphocytes and monocytes giving rise to induration as contrasted with the edema seen in immediate type reactions.

Invasion of the body by a variety of infective agents (bacteria fungi parasites viruses etc.) establishes hypersensitivity around foci of infection. The presence of hypersensitivity is detected by injecting various extractives or metabolites of the infectious agent (or entire viral suspensions) into the skin (cf Jadassohn 1932) with resulting cellular infiltration hyperemia and gradually increasing induration.

ous nodules of rheumatoid arthritis and heart valves in fatal rheumatic fever (Vazquez and Dixon 1956)—and often there is no known alteration in the tissues to suggest the reason for auto antibody formation

It is first necessary to set apart instances in which the antigenic stimulus is provided from without the body as in the production of thrombocytopenic purpura by the administration of allergenic drugs

In studying thrombocytopenic purpura that followed the ingestion of the drug Sedormid Ackroyd (1949 1955) found an antibody that agglutinated and evidently lysed the patient's platelets whenever the drug was ingested. In vitro studies on the resulting antibody drug platelet complex have been possible in both Sedormid and quimidine hypersensitivities (Ackroyd 1955 Dausset 1957 Bolton 1956 Shulman 1958). The antibody fixes complement. It attaches so loosely to the platelet that it is freed by dialyzing away Sedormid.

The idea has been advanced that group A streptococci contain an antigen immunologically related to human heart tissue and may give rise to antibodies that function as organ specific auto antibodies (Kaplan, 1962 cf Cavelti 1947). This could perhaps explain the finding of antibodies fixed in the heart tissues of persons dying of acute rheumatic fever.

In other areas the alteration of tissues by disease or mechanical trauma could lead to the formation of 'nonself' products of potential antigenicity.

Thus Schwentker and Rivers (1934) showed that monkey brain—usually altered by autolysis or viral infection—was antigenic in monkeys; their work led directly to experiments that resulted in production of isoallergic encephalomyelitis for which a highly artificial adjuvant system is now employed (this disease will be discussed later). The same device—the use of dead mycobacteria in paraffin oil and tissue maintained in water droplets for slow release—leads to autosenesitization vs thyroid (Witebsky and Rose 1956) testis (Voisin *et al* 1951 Freund *et al* 1953) and so on. In all of these states antibody is demonstrable but does not appear to play a chief role.

Often however there is no clue as to the 'antigen' that gives rise to auto antibody. For example in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP) a plasma factor has been demonstrated leading to a marked and prompt reduction in the numbers of platelets in transfused normal volunteers and producing frankly hemorrhagic manifestations in some of them (cf Harrington Minnich Hollingsworth and Moore 1951 Harrington Minnich and Arimura, 1956). The activity is found to reside in the globulin fraction (Evans *et al* 1951). Yet there is no good in vitro technique for studying the ITP plasma factor such as that which exists for the antiplatelet antibodies induced by drugs.

Indeed the view that antigen should be some altered body constituent capable of inducing antibody production has been doubted. The alternate theoretical view—by no means proved—is that special cell lines having potential antibody forming capacity remain within exceptional individuals under some sort of control (tolerance is alleged) but eventually come to react to say the individuals erythrocytes and form antibody against entirely normal cells. This explanation is advanced to explain the fate of a particular strain of mouse the New Zealand Black in which all animals eventually develop auto immune hemolytic anemia some showing lupus nephritis also (Bielschowsky Helyer and Howie 1959 Helyer and Howie 1963). In this disease in which antibodies attaching to the red cells come to be formed by splenic cells between 4 and 12 months of age (cf Holmes Gorrie and Burnet 1961) outbreeding was seen to alter the age of onset and made the predominant feature sometimes lupus nephritis with renal failure sometimes hemolytic anemia. In man too attention is being paid increasingly to susceptibilities within family groups—for example toward auto immune thyroiditis.

Auto immune hemolytic anemia of man is a disease seemingly having no intimate relevance to hypersensitivity globulins become adsorbed to erythrocytes, resulting in early removal and anemia and often ending in death. The antibodies encountered among patients fall into various types. Some are active at 37°—both  $\gamma$  globulin and non- $\gamma$  Rh

antibodies can be involved—being either complete incomplete or hemolytic (with complement) and others are active between 4 to 16 or more being macro globulins (19S) of the cold variety utilizing complement. In patients that recover owing to treatment the antibodies disappear.

The origin and the significance (in terms of allergic episodes) of certain other important factors found in the serum of patients have not yet been determined. Patients with lupus erythematosus (L.E.) possess a gamma globulin which is responsible for the formation of the bizarre L.E. cell that appears in the blood the factor fixing to the nuclei (Miescher *et al* 1954 Holman and Kunkel 1957) of polymorphonuclear leukocytes which then form a swollen body become free and undergo ingestion by normal polymorphonuclear leukocytes. The factor fixes to the separated nuclei of several species and is viewed as an auto antibody to nucleoprotein or deoxyribonucleic acid (cf Robbins *et al* 1957).

The idea has been voiced that some allergic diseases may occur without participation of any antigen. Thus if molecular changes should arise in gamma globulin that would allow these molecules to aggregate complement fixation could take place resulting in nonspecific agglutination of red cells and platelets in the absence of antigen and antibody (Ishizaka *et al* 1961 1962).

To study autoimmune diseases various laboratory models have been used many using antigens that differ from those of the subject animal itself. Often denatured autologous proteins are used as antigen or normal tissue is injected with mycobacterial paraffin oil adjuvant or guinea pigs whose tissues contain Forssman antigen are injected with anti Forssman immune globulin. Halpern *et al* (1963) have injected papain repeatedly into monkeys and rabbits leading to destructive alterations in the tissues and a finding of antibodies toward tissue structures containing glucoproteins. In one model a graft versus host reaction (p. 289) is established by appropriate cellular transfer and the pathologic events occurring in runt disease are noted. The value of such study involving erythema purpura acanthosis and

various extreme lesions as well as the histologic resemblances to lupus erythematosus and scleroderma, has been stressed by Stastny *et al* (1963).

## ALLERGIC INFLAMMATION DELAYED RESPONSES

Allergic reactions that require some hours to become manifest after the test material is applied are placed in a separate category not because of the delay in development but rather because they exhibit no readily demonstrable relation to circulating antibodies and the procedure of passive transfer by means of serum is typically unsuccessful. Transfer with white cells in contrast has been demonstrated in several key instances without direct evidence of circulating immunoglobulin (Table 1). The coexistence of a delayed type of response and a circulating antibody has been noted in some cases which is not surprising since the stimuli giving rise to delayed type hypersensitivity excites the antibody forming apparatus as well even if not in an equal degree.

Dermal sensitivity is induced chiefly by percutaneous absorption following contact of the skin with substances of low molecular weight (simple chemical substances nickel salts urushiol from the poison ivy plant and the like) or with products of fungi growing superficially in the skin. Upon a subsequent exposure to the same agent there appear reactions of eczematous type such as hyperemia macules papules or even vesicles as the epidermis separates and fluid accumulates beneath. Itching can occur as well histologically there is infiltration with lymphocytes and monocytes giving rise to induration as contrasted with the edema seen in immediate type reactions.

Invasion of the body by a variety of infective agents (bacteria fungi parasites viruses etc.) establishes hypersensitivity around foci of infection. The presence of hypersensitivity is detected by injecting various extractives or metabolites of the infectious agent (or entire viral suspensions) into the skin (cf Jadassohn 1932) with resulting cellular infiltration hyperemia and gradually increasing induration.

The 'delay' in onset of reactions both in testing for contact dermatitis and for tuberculin type allergies appears to represent the time required for white cells to leave the vessels accumulate at the test site and react there with the test material. There seems to be no inherent sensitiveness of the skin (Frei 1928 Landsteiner *et al.*, 1948 Livingood 1952 Curtis 1952). Indeed in transplanting skin between twins one of whom had been sensitized to dinitrochlorobenzene Haxthausen (1943) observed that skin of the normal brother exhibited hypersensitivity after being grafted to the sensitive twin and, conversely that a skin graft from the sensitized brother to the normal twin showed no capacity to react.

Further discussion of mechanisms will be given below. Here it is useful only to note that the term cell bound antibody has unfortunately arisen conjuring up the picture of lymphocyte or monocyte carrying preformed antibody firmly bound to it. There is little evidence that this is the situation according to one recent report continued synthetic function of the competent cell may be required to effect reaction with allergen (Bloom *et al.* 1964).

It would appear from the several aspects of delayed hypersensitivity (which too often are studied singly) that allergic conversion is associated with (1) an altered behavior of lymphoid cells (2) an altered behavior of macrophages and (3) often a stimulation to form immunoglobulins. Without doubt future studies will put these into sharper focus.

The hypersensitive state related to infectious processes will be considered first. The outstanding example of reactions of delayed type was provided by Koch's discovery in 1891 of the tuberculin tuberculosis relationship although the underlying allergic basis was not recognized until 1903 (von Pirquet). Owing to several confusing factors a clear distinction between the tuberculin reaction and reactions of the anaphylactic type was drawn only much later (Coca 1920 Calmette 1920 Zinsser 1921).

#### TUBERCULIN HYPERSENSITIVITY

In Koch's experiments tuberculous guinea pigs were found to possess a special reactivity when superinfection was attempted. At

the subcutaneous injection site there occurred a massive inflammatory reaction of the tissues, walling it off within 3 days and usually leading to slough—the 'Koch phenomenon'. Since living cells were not necessary, Koch sought a bacterial extract possessing the same property and attained it by heating the mycobacteria for some hours in the medium in which they had grown (meanwhile concentrating the fluid), and finally removing the bacterial residue. Injection of this preparation called OT or old tuberculin caused a severe to lethal shock of delayed type termed the systemic reaction. A local reaction occurred not only as a papule in the skin where the injection had been made but also along the needle track and the draining lymph nodes were discolored and enlarged. There were also focal reactions of inflammation around existing tuberculous lesions with dense leukocytic infiltrations and with hemorrhagic exudate in serous cavities. The focal reactions seem to give rise to the general toxemia and death.

In 1903 von Pirquet advanced the hypothesis that tuberculin shock was another of the phenomena of sensitization and this belief led him to the discovery in 1907 of the cutaneous tuberculin reaction, so important diagnostically. A delayed type of ocular reactivity was noted almost simultaneously. Thus the relatively avascular cornea of tuberculous guinea pigs reacts to direct injection of tuberculin (Holley 1935 Rich and Folis 1940) with edema swelling of the fibers infiltration with granulocytes and necrotization of corneal cells.

Indeed the 4 types of response—local focal ocular and systemic—remain as our most stringent criteria of delayed type hypersensitivity to water soluble allergens but such critical tests are possible only in sensitized laboratory animals. Local reactions at the site of skin tests showing induration at 48 hours systemic reaction to injections made by the peritoneal or intravenous routes, and corneal reactions resulting from intracorneal injection. Even in diagnostic testing by intracutaneous injection (Mantoux) it is necessary to select the dosage of tuberculin with caution for an excess of tuberculin may cause not only unduly severe reactions in the skin but also some degree of lighting up

around tuberculous lesions and febrile systemic reactions (Tytler 1930)

Obviously bacteria offer numerous antigens to the invaded host. In the case of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* circulating antibodies to perhaps 7 of these have been discovered by the application of special techniques (Boyden and Sorkin 1956) although the concentration of the antibodies is seldom high. Indeed one of the early difficulties in interpreting the tuberculin reaction had to do with the occasional demonstration of an anaphylactic state in tuberculous guinea pigs. It is now rather well agreed that these antibodies are not causally related to the delayed type hypersensitivity. Several of the tuberculo proteins tested in their native state elicit cutaneous delayed type reactions, one being heat-coagulable and of large molecular size (ca 44 000). For the purpose of human skin testing it would seem to be desirable to elect low molecular and even heat altered material as long as it is serologically reactive in order to avoid the acquisition of sensitiveness to proteins through repeated skin testing. Present practice however is to prepare the testing materials such as PPD (purified protein derivative) from culture filtrates that approach the native state.

When suitably diluted tuberculin is injected into the skin of the tuberculous individual redness appears after some hours and the local inflammation with its associated infiltrate gradually increases in intensity and extent for from 15 to 48 hours and attains a typical firm induration when the dose and the degree of sensitivity cause a more severe reaction there are central blanching and a gradually developing innermost livid zone which often becomes necrotic. The inflammation slowly fades but the lesion is palpable for some days and pigmentation may be seen for several weeks.

Histologically the reaction to tuberculin is attended by characteristic focal accumulations of mononuclear cells (Dienes and Mallory 1932, Laporte 1934, Fisher to be published). In tuberculous guinea pigs Fisher found that lymphoid cells left the vessels in the corium and migrated upwards toward the epidermis and the hair bulbs. Within 12 hours the epidermis became acanthotic and the lymphoid cells formed

focal accumulations (spongiosis) with vesiculation and perivascular granulomas appeared in the corium. Hyperplasia occurred in the papillary cells of the hair roots along with destruction of the hair bulbs causing loss of hair. (When sensitization is effected by using dead mycobacteria in paraffin oil other features are noted in addition probably owing to participation of immunoglobulins.) Studies of tuberculin reactions in rabbits by Gell and Hinde (1951, 1954) showed proliferation and differentiation of the infiltrating monocytes and also of local histiocytes and mesenchymal cells. From their studies with rabbits sensitized with dead mycobacteria and hydrocarbon—this species producing antibody in high concentration—these workers were less inclined than others to distinguish between Arthus and purely tuberculin reactions. Indeed when necrosis results from tuberculin reactions there are no differentiating histologic features between severe tuberculin and Arthus reactions.

By injection of killed mycobacterial cells it is possible to induce only low grade sensitivity to tuberculin but there is remarkable enhancement of sensitization when the dead bacilli are suspended in hydrocarbons such as paraffin oil. Many attempts had been made to obtain a bacillary extract capable of substituting for the whole killed cells in inducing the delayed type of hypersensitivity. Finally Raffel found a wax fraction of the cells in conjunction with tuberculo protein present as an impurity or intentionally admixed to possess the property sought (cf. Myrvik and Weiser 1952). The directive effect of the wax in inducing sensitization to tuberculin appears to be dependent on its lipopolysaccharide Choucrour (1939, 1947) had separated a lipopolysaccharide that gives rise to delayed type hypersensitivity while Asselineau and Lederer (1949) extracted wax D from human tubercle bacilli its counterpart in bovine strains remaining bound to the cell walls. Wax D both sensitizes to tuberculin and possesses the adjuvant property of mycobacteria. It is a peptidoglycolipid containing mycolic acid joined in ester linkage to a polysaccharide composed of arabinose, mannose, galactose, glucosamine and galactosamine and through the hexosamine to a heptapeptide containing



alanine glutamic acid glycine and  $\alpha$ ,  $\epsilon$  diaminopimelic acid (Asselineau, Buc Jolles and Lederer 1958)

After a single large injection of tuberculin has produced severe constitutional reactions desensitization—usually incomplete—is found in tuberculous animals and human beings. Desensitization is peculiarly hazardous because of the danger of focal reactions but desensitization by repeated gradually increasing doses of tuberculin protein has often been carried to a point at which the patients were able to tolerate without a focal or constitutional reaction, doses of the protein which in the undesensitized body would undoubtedly have produced extreme focal reactions and death (Rich 1951). The desensitization of tuberculous guinea pigs is a difficult task requiring large repeated doses of the tuberculin preparation PPD, but during the treatments the skin is maintained truly nonreactive and it even will react to intradermal spread of dyes in the same way as does normal skin (Birkhaug and Berle 1945). However, sensitivity returns when administration is discontinued.

Cellular sensitivity to tuberculin was observed by Rich and Lewis (1928, 1932) it was evidenced by a decided inhibition of migration of the allergic cells from the explant into the surrounding tuberculin containing plasma and by the fact that the relatively few cells which do wander out die in a few hours. Confirmation has been forthcoming when proper concentrations of tuberculin are used but cells of well sensitized individuals are required (cf Aronson, 1931; Moen and Swift 1936; Heilman 1944; Waksman 1953; Florio *et al* 1958; Hall and Scherago 1957). Apparently sensitivity of macrophages is evident even in their descendant or daughter cells at least of the immediately succeeding generations (Moen 1936) and sensitivity of fibroblasts is variable but often trivial. It is not surprising in view of failure to find inherent sensitiveness of the skin that sensitivity is not seen in cultures of corneal epithelial cells or cutaneous or hepatic epithelium (cf May and Weiser 1956).

Yet not until 1945 was it recognized that living white cells of tuberculin sensitive animals serve to transfer the delayed type of

reaction to another animal of the same species (Chase, 1945; Cummings *et al*, 1947; Stavitsky 1948). Competent cells contained in peritoneal exudates lymph nodes spleens or blood would induce hypersensitivity to tuberculin for 5 to 9 days. Termination appeared to depend on homograft type rejection of the transferred cells. For transfers between isologous guinea pigs were durable (Chase, 1960, 1963; Bauer and Stone, 1961). Further, Kirchheimer and Weiser (1947) showed that systemic reactivity to tuberculin is transferable likewise by means of cells (cf Kirchheimer *et al* 1949; Wesslen 1952). It is highly probable that analogous transfers were encountered in older attempts since tissue and white cells were often included inadvertently in the material transferred (cf Bail 1910; Fellner, 1919), but the experiments were discounted because they lacked reproducibility.

When transfer is made by injecting large numbers of competent cells intradermally into normal recipients special observations have been possible. If rather large amounts of tuberculin were given parenterally tuberculin reactions (probably with participation of a Shwartzman effect) occurred in the sites of cellular deposition in both guinea pigs and rabbits (Metaxas and Metaxas Buhler 1948, 1949; Wesslen 1952). It was shown that mixtures of cells and tuberculin were fully effective when injected intradermally (Metaxas and Metaxas Buhler 1955). By means of the latter technique mixtures of tuberculin and competent rat cells reportedly have given effective reactions in guinea pig recipients a first instance of crossing the species barrier (Bacon, Dabney and Wallace 1961; cf Wallace, 1958).

Under normal conditions of cellular transfer, in which cells must survive and escape from blood vessels to the test site no large number of donor cells (labeled proportionately by tritiated thymidine) is found to participate. The processes leading to cellular damage in the test site are largely unknown but will be discussed below.

More recently, intensive study has begun on the direct reaction *in vitro* between competent cells and tuberculin. Cellular migration from explants of macrophages taken up to 10 months following sensitization was

inhibited consistently in tests with 10 mcg/ml tuberculin PPD and sensitivity was seen to spread gradually from cells of the nearest lymph nodes to splenic cells and hepatic macrophages (Carpenter 1963). Using macrophages and lymphocytes packed in capillary tubes David *et al* (1964) studied cellular outgrowth into culture medium containing PPD. Not only were sensitive cells specifically inhibited but all migration was blocked provided that as little as 2.5 per cent of tuberculin sensitive cells were mixed with normal cells.

A phenomenon of lympholysis was described by Favour (1947). When tuberculin was mixed with lymphocytes from tuberculous mice a loss of 20 to 40 per cent of these cells occurred in less than 1 hour. The effect appears to depend on an antibody present in tuberculous plasma and serum complement is required for lysis. In guinea pig and man granulocytes and large mononuclear cells are lysed also but more slowly. The serum factor has been stated to be released by the tuberculin sensitive lymphocytes upon incubation in normal plasma (Miller and Favour 1951). In studies by Waksman (1953) and Waksman and Bocking (1954) inhibition of macrophages in tissue culture and not lympholysis paralleled dermal reactivity to tuberculin (cf Waksman's extensive review 1958).

A wholly different phase of sensitization—a slow synthesis of gamma globulin—has been emphasized by studies of lymphocytes in culture following the addition of allergen. As Pearmain, Lycette and Fitzgerald (1963) showed with tuberculin and is now well confirmed (cf Hirschhorn *et al* 1963a, b) lymphocytes of persons with delayed type hypersensitivities when exposed to the allergen in maintenance culture are found to respond with significant changes in 5 days: they aggregate, increase in size and synthesize gamma globulin, show mitotic figures (0.6 to 3%) and blast cell formation (3 to 20%) and some cells come to resemble plasmacytes. For undiscovered reasons normal lymphocyte cultures are stimulated to undergo this same sequence of changes starting within 4 hours and completed in 3 days upon addition of a leuko agglutinin present in crude phytohemagglutinin or

lectin. Nearly every cell responds to leuko agglutinin but in the case of hypersensitive donors only a proportion of the total cells reacts to specific allergen (5 to 35%) probably those that are immunologically competent cells. The observation may well bear on the acquired capacity for antibody production that follows the onset of delayed hypersensitivity. Boyden and Suter (1952) showed for example that in tuberculous guinea pigs cutaneous testing with tuberculin stimulates production of circulating antibody within 5 days. Whatever the relation to delayed type hypersensitivity may prove to be the ability to discover the causal allergen should make this technique a powerful tool.

Quite novel aspects of tuberculin hypersensitivity diverging in several respects from the above account have been forthcoming from studies in man chiefly by Lawrence. By cellular transfer of small volumes of white cells from the peripheral blood Lawrence reported transfer in man of tuberculin (1949) and of streptococcal (1952) hypersensitivities. Lawrence then found (1954, 1959, 1960) that lysates of the cells induced sensitization which was unaffected by exposure to deoxyribonuclease, ribonuclease or trypsin. Because the induced sensitivity was found to persist for many months and successive serial transfers were possible using recipients cells lysed in turn the concept of a replicating transfer factor was developed to explain the retained sensitivity in later cell generations. Transfer factor is liberated when cells are incubated with tuberculin, no evident damage occurring to the cells and it is readily separable from DNase treated cells by passage through dialysis membranes. The active material has a molecular weight of 10 000 or less and is unaffected by ribonuclease; it is not a protein (Lawrence *et al* 1963). The subject now is opened to identification of the active material and an understanding of the mechanism by which it operates.

II as has been stated transfer factor is unique for the human being: human monocytes still react to tuberculin as explants; the points at issue concern (1) replication *in vivo*, (2) the existence of a preformed dissociable factor bound to lymphocytes, (3) the apparent loss by living lymphocytes of

alanine glutamic acid, glycine and  $\alpha$   $\epsilon$ -diaminopimelic acid (Asselineau Buc Jollès and Lederer 1958)

After a single large injection of tuberculin has produced severe constitutional reactions desensitization—usually incomplete—is found in tuberculous animals and human beings. Desensitization is peculiarly hazardous because of the danger of focal reactions but desensitization by repeated gradually increasing doses of tuberculo-protein has often been carried to a point at which the patients were able to tolerate without a focal or constitutional reaction doses of the protein which in the undesensitized body, would undoubtedly have produced extreme focal reactions and death (Rich 1951). The desensitization of tuberculous guinea pigs is a difficult task requiring large, repeated doses of the tuberculin preparation PPD but during the treatments the skin is maintained truly nonreactive and it even will react to intradermal spread of dyes in the same way as does normal skin (Birkhaug and Berle 1945). However sensitivity returns when administration is discontinued.

Cellular sensitivity to tuberculin was observed by Rich and Lewis (1928 1932). It was evidenced by a decided inhibition of migration of the allergic cells from the explant into the surrounding tuberculin-containing plasma and by the fact that the relatively few cells which do wander out die in a few hours.

Confirmation has been forthcoming when proper concentrations of tuberculin are used but cells of well sensitized individuals are required (cf Aronson 1931 Moen and Swift, 1936, Heilman, 1944 Waksman 1953 Florio *et al* 1958 Hall and Scherago, 1957). Apparently sensitivity of macrophages is evident even in their descendant or daughter cells, at least of the immediately succeeding generations (Moen 1936) and sensitivity of fibroblasts is variable but often trivial. It is not surprising in view of failure to find inherent sensitiveness of the skin that sensitivity is not seen in cultures of corneal epithelial cells or cutaneous or hepatic epithelium (cf May and Weiser, 1956).

Yet not until 1945 was it recognized that living white cells of tuberculin sensitive animals serve to transfer the delayed type of

reaction to another animal of the same species (Chase 1945, Cummings *et al* 1947 Stavitsky, 1948). Competent cells contained in peritoneal exudates lymph nodes spleens or blood would induce hypersensitivity to tuberculin for 5 to 9 days. Termination appeared to depend on homograft type rejection of the transferred cells for transfers between isologous guinea pigs were durable (Chase 1960, 1963 Bauer and Stone 1961). Further Kirchheimer and Weiser (1947) showed that systemic reactivity to tuberculin is transferable likewise by means of cells (cf Kirchheimer *et al*, 1949 Wesslen 1952). It is highly probable that analogous transfers were encountered in older attempts since tissue and white cells were often included inadvertently in the material transferred (cf Bail 1910 Fellner 1919) but the experiments were discounted because they lacked reproducibility.

When transfer is made by injecting large numbers of competent cells intradermally into normal recipients special observations have been possible. If rather large amounts of tuberculin were given parenterally tuberculin reactions (probably with participation of a Schwartzman effect) occurred in the sites of cellular deposition in both guinea pigs and rabbits (Metaxas and Metaxas Buhler 1948 1949 Wesslén 1952). It was shown that mixtures of cells and tuberculin were fully effective when injected intradermally (Metaxas and Metaxas Buhler 1955). By means of the latter technique mixtures of tuberculin and competent rat cells reportedly have given effective reactions in guinea pig recipients a first instance of crossing the species barrier (Bacon Dabney and Wallace 1961 cf Wallace 1958).

Under normal conditions of cellular transfer in which cells must survive and escape from blood vessels to the test site no large number of donor cells (labeled proportionately by tritiated thymidine) is found to participate. The processes leading to cellular damage in the test site are largely unknown but will be discussed below.

More recently intensive study has begun on the direct reaction *in vitro* between competent cells and tuberculin. Cellular migration from explants of macrophages taken up to 10 months following sensitization was

tially purified culture filtrate rich in the enzymes streptokinase and streptodornase

Allergy to streptococci has been well studied in laboratory animals. In natural infections with group C streptococci there is pronounced skin reactivity to streptococcal extracts in guinea pigs that are ill with epizootic lymphadenitis or are healthy carriers of the responsible microorganism (Moen 1936b) and there is reactivity in rabbits to extracts of their natural pathogen *Pasturella cuniculicola* the organism causing snuffles (Hanger 1927)

Delayed type hypersensitivity can be established in rabbits with *viridans* streptococci by intracutaneous injection and by several other routes but not by intravenous injection. Apparently in connection with the development of some focal tissue reaction the animals presented cutaneous, ophthalmic and systemic hypersensitivity to the administration of living streptococci, all being expressions of a delayed type of reaction unrelated to the amount or the type of circulating antibody and not transferable by serum.

To relate further the mechanisms of streptococcal and tuberculin hypersensitivity Moen (1936a) examined both sorts of sensitivity in parallel in tissue culture using explants of tuberculous tissues and explants of the spleen of guinea pigs infected with a natural streptococcal pathogen (group C hemolytic streptococci from guinea pig lymphadenitis). The presence of streptococcal extract led to a slowly developing specific toxic effect on the cells of streptococcus infected animals quite similar to but quantitatively less than that of tuberculin on tuberculin sensitive cultures. The streptococcus sensitive cells exhibited more unequal gradations of sensitivity than were seen in tuberculin sensitive cultures, some cells being killed rapidly, others being only slightly inhibited. Very much less evidence of persisting sensitivity was seen in subcultures of the streptococcus sensitive cells as compared with explants of tissues from tuberculous animals.

As mentioned above Lawrence (1952) has reported transfer of streptococcal hypersensitivity from man to man by means of peripheral blood leukocytes.

**Pneumococcal Allergy** Pneumococcal allergy has been studied in much the same way as has streptococcal hypersensitivity. Deposition of vaccine in the skin of rabbits leads to a delayed type of skin reactivity to ward pneumococcal vaccine or nucleoprotein and a delayed type of ocular reactivity (Julianelle 1930 Harley 1935 1937) the manifestation of reactivity to nucleoprotein is passively transferable by means of serum and apparently is of Arthus type whereas neither the allergy to vaccine nor the eye reaction is so transferable. In contrast the injection of intact cocci by the intravenous route leads to the development of antihyaluronic acid antibodies and to immediate type reactivity expressed toward the corresponding polysaccharide.

During the course of pneumococcal pneumonia 2 types of specific skin reaction were observed (Tillett and Francis 1929) one being in response to the type specific capsular polysaccharide and appearing at the onset of convalescence consisting of an immediate reaction of urticarial type and the other elicited by species specific nucleoprotein and being of the tuberculin type. A 3rd type of reaction can be produced by intradermal tests with somatic C polysaccharide of pneumococci during a limited period of the disease the reaction depends on a special protein (termed the C reactive protein) which appears as a consequence of many acute infections not only with the pneumococcus and happens to react with C polysaccharide even *in vitro*. An analogous factor not capable of reacting directly with C polysaccharide appears also in animals during acute inflammatory responses viz to typhoid vaccine (Kushner and Kaplan 1961).

#### SKIN TESTS

To make any test practicable for diagnosis it is necessary to use relatively purified preparations to know the proper doses with respect both to tissue irritation and concentrations that will not cause focal reactions in positive reactors and to understand the specificity of the reaction. It must also be known whether the material employed for skin testing can lead to active sensitization and validate future tests. Even in the most

their property of effecting transfer after transfer factor has been dissociated (4) the relation of the small nonprotein molecule to synthetic functions awakened by immunologic stimulation and (5) the functional specificity of transfer factor. Transfer factor appears not to have been encountered in animals (Bloom 1963) previous reports seemingly being explained by technics of testing the animals.

#### ALLERGY IN MICROBIAL DISEASES OTHER THAN TUBERCULOSIS

In other microbial infections (with bacteria fungi viruses) and in certain parasitic infestations there is exhibited much the same sort of delayed type reactions when the corresponding agents or extracts thereof are put into the skin. In variable degree one finds also the other chief attributes of delayed type sensitization—systemic reactions sensitivity of the cells in tissue culture toward the respective allergens and characteristic damaging reactions upon intracorneal injection. However many reactions are less pronounced than in the tuberculin tuberculosis relationship for as Boyd has remarked tuberculin allergy is one of the more extreme examples of bacterial allergy. Furthermore one finds the early type of sensitivity far more frequently the extracts employed for testing sometimes giving immediate type reactions particularly in relation to a content of specific polysaccharides. Often both types of sensitization coexist probably related to different constituents of the test material.

The degree to which microbial allergies may shape the disease pattern has been long debated. Fundamental studies regarding the effect of delayed hypersensitivity on invading microorganisms were made in mice by Mackaness (1962). When *Listeria monocytogenes* selected for virulence and multiplication within macrophages was injected in sublethal numbers intracellular multiplication progressed to the 4th day and then ceased abruptly. Delayed type hypersensitivity appeared at this time demonstrable by the reactivity of the footpad to culture filtrate and coincidentally macrophages showed accelerated mitotic activity destruction of bacteria and resistance to superinfection. Similarly intense mitotic activity was caused

in the peritoneal macrophages of hypersensitive mice when culture filtrate was injected. Seemingly the altered macrophages accounted for the resistance of convalescent mice to challenge. Resistance continued for a few weeks and then gradually diminished even though hypersensitivity persisted. As long as hypersensitivity was present there was capacity to give an accelerated response to reinfection perhaps through formation of a new population from surviving hypersensitive macrophages. In general however, it is not possible to isolate so clearly the processes ensuing after invasion by microorganisms and the role played by hypersensitivity usually has remained indeterminate. In the same way a greater destruction of tubercle bacilli occurs in vitro within macrophages of hypersensitive animals than within normal macrophages (cf review by Elberg 1960 Suter 1953 1954 Fong *et al* 1957 1963) but the role played by white cells in delayed type hypersensitivity probably exceeds that of intracellular digestion by monocytes. It may be noted that immunity to tularemia appears to have been passively transferred briefly by spleen cells and peritoneal leukocytes (Allen 1962).

**Streptococcal Allergy** Evidence of infection with streptococci usually is sought in the form of circulating antibodies directed against streptococcal enzymes and type specific antigens. However preceding infection can be witnessed by delayed type allergy toward streptococci. Relatively large samples of the population have been tested by means of killed streptococcal cells (vaccines) cellular substances (nucleoprotein M substance) and culture filtrates. Mackenzie and Hangar (1927) found the incidence of sensitivity to increase gradually with age and superimposed upon this finding a sharp rise in the number of reactors whenever diseases associated with streptococci became prevalent. Lawrence (1952) in testing 472 persons having no apparent streptococcal infection found that only about 11 per cent failed to react at all but that only half of the subjects exhibited a well-established degree of sensitivity. The sensitivity expressed was unequal to his testing materials suggesting elective sensitization to different bacillary constituents—vaccine cellular M substance and a par-

trially purified culture filtrate rich in the enzymes streptokinase and streptodornase

Allergy to streptococci has been well studied in laboratory animals. In natural infections with group C streptococci there is pronounced skin reactivity to streptococcal extracts in guinea pigs that are ill with epizootic lymphadenitis or are healthy carriers of the responsible microorganism (Moen 1936b) and there is reactivity in rabbits to extracts of their natural pathogen *Pasturella multocida* the organism causing snuffles (Hanger 1927).

Delayed type hypersensitivity can be established in rabbits with viridans streptococci by intracutaneous injection and by several other routes but not by intravenous injection. Apparently in connection with the development of some focal tissue reaction the animals presented cutaneous ophthalmic and systemic hypersensitivity to the administration of living streptococci all being expressions of a delayed type of reaction unrelated to the amount or the type of circulating antibody and not transferable by serum.

To relate further the mechanisms of streptococcal and tuberculin hypersensitiveness Moen (1936a) examined both sorts of sensitivity in parallel in tissue culture using explants of tuberculous tissues and explants of the spleen of guinea pigs infected with a natural streptococcal pathogen (group C hemolytic streptococci from guinea pig lymphadenitis). The presence of streptococcal extract led to a slowly developing specific toxic effect on the cells of streptococcus infected animals quite similar to but quantitatively less than that of tuberculin on tuberculin sensitive cultures. The streptococcus sensitive cells exhibited more unequal gradations of sensitivity than were seen in tuberculin sensitive cultures some cells being killed rapidly others being only slightly inhibited. Very much less evidence of persisting sensitivity was seen in subcultures of the streptococcus sensitive cells as compared with explants of tissues from tuberculous animals.

As mentioned above Lawrence (1952) has reported transfer of streptococcal hypersensitivity from man to man by means of peripheral blood leukocytes.

**Pneumococcal Allergy** Pneumococcal allergy has been studied in much the same way as has streptococcal hypersensitivity. Deposition of vaccine in the skin of rabbits leads to a delayed type of skin reactivity toward pneumococcal vaccine or nucleoprotein and a delayed type of ocular reactivity (Julianelle 1930 Harley 1935 1937) the manifestation of reactivity to nucleoprotein is passively transferable by means of serum and apparently is of Arthus type whereas neither the allergy to vaccine nor the eye reaction is so transferable. In contrast the injection of intact cocci by the intravenous route leads to the development of anticarbohydrate antibodies and to immediate type reactivity expressed toward the corresponding polysaccharide.

During the course of pneumococcal pneumonia 2 types of specific skin reaction were observed (Tillett and Francis 1929) one being in response to the type specific capsular polysaccharide and appearing at the onset of convalescence consisting of an immediate reaction of urticarial type and the other elicited by species specific nucleoprotein and being of the tuberculin type. A 3rd type of reaction can be produced by intradermal tests with somatic C polysaccharide of pneumococci during a limited period of the disease the reaction depends on a special protein (termed the C reactive protein) which appears as a consequence of many acute infections not only with the pneumococcus and happens to react with C polysaccharide even in vitro. An analogous factor not capable of reacting directly with C polysaccharide appears also in animals during acute inflammatory responses viz to typhoid vaccine (Kushner and Kaplan 1961).

#### SKIN TESTS

To make any test practicable for diagnosis it is necessary to use relatively purified preparations to know the proper doses with respect both to tissue irritation and concentrations that will not cause focal reactions in positive reactors and to understand the specificity of the reaction. It must also be known whether the material employed for skin testing can lead to active sensitization and vitiate future tests. Even in the most

studied case tuberculosis investigation does not cease. In instances in which both early and delayed reactions can be shown it is important to evaluate independently the significance of each type of reaction.

In general when the method of testing is specific such tests have a significance similar to that of tuberculin. A negative reaction in a healthy subject allays suspicion and a positive reaction denotes the occurrence of infection but gives no generally reliable indication of current activity. A reaction of unusual size will require close scrutiny. It is most informative when the skin reactivity is known to have been acquired recently. One must recall furthermore that in advanced stages of all diseases including tuberculosis the skin may fail to react; this condition is called anergy and has been considered to be a consequence of exhaustion on the part of the tissue cells. Also in intercurrent infection such as measles and chickenpox the tuberculous host temporarily may cease to give skin reactions to tuberculin. Even a positive test which is specific may not always be of practical diagnostic value. For example, Sulzberger (1940) points out that interpretation of reactions to extract of *Monilia* (*Oidio mycin*) must be weighed against the well nigh universal exposure to various species of *Monilia*.

In special cases delayed type hypersensitivity to proteins is encountered such as tetanus toxoid and diphtheria toxoid. Consequently in performing the Schick test with diphtheria toxin—a test for the presence of neutralizing antibodies that avert the normal toxicity of the material for skin—a parallel test with heated toxin or with toxoid is used to detect the existence of sensitivity to the protein itself. This tuberculin type of response representing the so-called false or pseudopositive Schick reaction lasts a day or so and then fades. Usually it can be differentiated from the positive Schick reaction in that the true toxic effect appears slowly and develops increasingly during the course of 4 or five days. Both to purified diphtheria toxin and toxoid the tuberculin type of sensitivity occurs in about one fifth of young adults infrequently in children (Pappenheimer 1948). (In addition immediate

type flare and wheal reactions occur in some individuals to these same constituents of diphtheria toxin and toxoid.)

**Tuberculosis.** Of the several varieties of tuberculoproteins and other mycobacterial products the preparation PPD is chiefly used in this country. The 3 test strengths contain in 0.1 ml doses 0.02, 0.2 and 5.0 mcg (1, 10 and 250 TU or international tuberculin units) termed respectively first test strength, intermediate strength and second test strength. Other preparations of Seibert's from human tubercle bacilli are being evaluated currently, some apparently being more reactive than standard PPD (Vakilzadeh *et al.*, 1962). (It should be mentioned that intradermal testing with a suspension of Choucrour's lipopolysaccharide PmKo gives more information at certain stages of the disease than does PPD; see Kourilsky, Choucrour and Gresland 1963.) With the realization that persons reactive only to 250 TU of PPD S come from certain geographic areas (Edwards *et al.* 1959) study has shown that tissue invasion in those localities occurs by strains of the atypical mycobacteria. Tests made with PPD preparations of atypical mycobacterial strains place particular importance on PPD B prepared from the Battey (Group III) strain and to PPD G prepared from a scotochromogen (Group II) strain (reviewed by Youmans, 1963). Such tuberculins in standard doses of 5 TU (1 mcg) are especially useful in revealing infections with the atypical mycobacteria. Avian PPD gives reactions in these particular patients also.

**Leprosy.** Lepromin, an extract of heated human lepromatous nodules rich in bacillary bodies, provokes skin reactions in patients with tuberculoid leprosy (cf. Mitsuda 1936). (Lepromin produces cross reactions in tuberculin sensitive individuals.) In addition to the initial tuberculin type reaction appearing within 2 days and termed the *Fernandez reaction*, the presence of bacillary bodies can provoke nodular reactions starting by the 7th day and developing progressively in size for a month (Mitsuda reaction). It is interesting to note that the selective reactivity of lepromin for patients with tuberculoid but not lepromatous leprosy has

allowed positive identification of isolates growing in animal tissues as true *M leprae* (Shepard and Guinto 1963)

**Brucellosis** Skin reactions have been employed to detect present or past infection with *Brucella* both with *Brucella* vaccine and with an actively antigenic nucleoprotein extract Brucellergen (Huddleson 1943) The skin reactivity appearing in brucellosis of the guinea pig has been transferred by means of white cells (Metaxas Buhler 1952)

**Tularemia** Chemically treated (nitrous acid) vaccines have been injected intradermally as a diagnostic tool (Foshay 1940) During this disease as in pneumococcal pneumonia intradermal injection of *P tularensis* polysaccharide gives an immediate reaction of urticarial type Later when the patient's tissues contain an excess of polysaccharide intradermal tests with specific goat antipolysaccharide also produce an immediate type of reaction

**Glanders** The injection of mallein prepared from the causative agent of this disease *Actinobacillus mallei* can cause local focal systemic and ocular reactions as described for tuberculosis Cutaneous testing of infected horses and man has been practiced as well as of experimentally infected guinea pigs

**Paratuberculosis of Cattle (Johnes Disease)** The testing material is johnin a preparation made like tuberculin from the etiologic agent *Mycobacterium paratuberculosis* and variously purified dermal systemic and conjunctival reactions are encountered

**Allergic Reactions to Fungal Materials** Skin test materials are available to test for present or past infections with histoplasmosis coccidioidomycosis and blastomycosis all prepared as filtrates of culture medium (synthetic) which has supported growth of the fungi for several months in the mycelial phase In general tests for hypersensitivity are performed and interpreted as with the tuberculin tests Readings should be made both at 24 and 48 hours since significant reactions may vanish after the 1st day (Fiese 1958 Salvin 1959) In fungal diseases cutaneous anergy may develop as the lesions become widespread The test materials—histoplasmin coccidioidin and blas-

tomycin—are adjusted in potency to match reference standards and are diluted 1:100 for use in testing coccidioidin is diluted 1:1000 for persons known to be highly sensitive

The active components in the skin test materials that produce delayed skin reactions are viewed as nitrogen-containing polysaccharides reportedly free of protein although one product prepared by Salvin and Smith (1959) was a protein-carbohydrate complex (Edwards Knight and Marcus 1961 see review by Salvin 1963) Polysaccharide seems to be the active principle in sporotrichin and paracoccidioidin also

The 3 test materials give varying degrees of cross reactions There is a particularly high degree of cross reactivity between histoplasmin and blastomycin and attempts have been made to eliminate the problem by extracting specific fractions Thus Dyson and Evans (1955) have suggested as a more specific test substance an alternative preparation separated by fractional alcoholic precipitation from culture supernatant of the yeast phase of *Blastomyces dermatitidis* Coccidioidin is more specific for reactions to it are found less frequently in histoplasmosis and blastomycotic infections than reactions with histoplasmin in coccidioidin infections (Smith *et al* 1949)

By reason of skin test surveys Edwards and Palmer (1963) hypothesize that in certain geographic areas that are free of coccidioidomycosis (e.g. Louisiana) the large number of feeble reactions encountered to histoplasmin probably represents cross reactivity reflecting infection with some new agent possibly another fungal agent

As in microbial hypersensitivity inhibition of macrophage migration—partial but specific—has been noted when histoplasmin was added to splenic explants of animals sensitized with *H capsulatum* (Carpenter 1963)

The coccidioidin hypersensitivity system has been studied recently for purposes of transfer of hypersensitivity (*vide infra*)

**Allergic Reactions to Viral Materials** Evidence of hypersensitivity of the delayed type was observed unknowingly by Jenner in 1798 with the virus of cowpox individuals



rendered immune by inoculation with cowpox virus later responded to this or the closely related smallpox virus with a small local redness that appeared within 48 to 72 hours and then faded quickly. This manner of response was interpreted as an allergy by von Pirquet and Schick in 1903. The role of hypersensitivity was convincingly demonstrated when Hooker (1929) injected heat inactivated virus into the skin of cowpox immunized individuals.

The Frei test (originally an injection of diluted and heat sterilized pus from the lesion later of infected mouse brain) is now performed with antigen obtained from chick-embryo cultures. A skin test betokening past infection with mumps virus has been developed by Enders *et al* (1945-1946) for the assessment of immunity. Newer test preparations have been made of viral material grown in the allantoic fluid of embryonated eggs (Henle *et al* 1951).

**Allergy in Parasitic Infestations.** In contrast with the above observations the form of allergic response that has received chief consideration in parasitic helminth infestations—for example schistosomiasis, echinococcus disease, filariasis, trichiniasis and ascariis infestation—has been the immediate reactions of the wheal and-erythema type found when the skin of the host is tested with extracts of the body substance of the same or related parasites. Usually antibodies can be demonstrated in the serum by serologic methods at the same time. Asthma and rhinitis are sometimes elicited upon exposure to the specific agents. While there is often an early reaction to hydatid fluid in echinococcus infestation it appears that the delayed type or *Casoni reaction* should be given chief diagnostic interpretation.

In protozoan infestations skin tests have been less useful. The only instance to be mentioned is leishmaniasis in which a tuberculin like reaction has been observed in skin tests made with an extract of cultured Leishmania.

Even as an aftermath of sensitization by insect bites delayed allergic reactions have been demonstrated (Benson 1936) independently of early reactions (and corresponding reagins) which occur at times both varieties may be seen in the same individual.

## THE ADJUVANT EFFECT OF TUBERCLE BACILLI AUTO-ALLERGIC DISEASES

Special properties of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* came to light when Dienes (1929) showed that the injection of protein antigens into a tuberculous focus led to a delayed type of hypersensitivity directed against the protein as well as the expected appearance of circulating antibody. The induced tuberculin type hypersensitiveness to egg protein as Burnet (1948) has said, therefore seems to be definitely related to the placing of the antigen in an inflammatory area in which histiocytes and lymphocytes predominate.

Following the discovery by French workers that the sensitizing property of killed mycobacteria is greatly enhanced in the presence of hydrocarbons Freund and McDermott (1942) imitated Dienes' injection of protein into a tuberculous focus by blending horse serum and an emulsifier in paraffin oil containing killed tubercle bacilli and injecting the water-in-oil emulsion. Probably owing to the type of cellular response evoked by the liquid hydrocarbon and the mycobacterial substance an intense cutaneous reactivity to horse serum of delayed type resulted. At the same time the output of circulating antibody became exaggerated and was sustained for many months.

Therefore in animals so prepared a high degree of Arthus type reactivity is superimposed on the original Dienes effect. Reference to either or both of these effects is variously intended when the term adjuvant effect of killed mycobacteria is used but it is necessary to distinguish between the effects due to the presence of mycobacteria and the effectiveness of antigen dispersed in hydrocarbon without the incorporation of mycobacteria or special mycobacterial wax. So far as the concentration of circulating antibody is at issue the mycobacteria often can be omitted from the emulsion but the directive effect of the mycobacteria is needed in order to secure certain of the delayed type allergic effects.

When brain substance was incorporated in the Freund adjuvant it was found that a fatal demyelinating disease was induced in monkeys with disseminated lesions in brain and cord (Morgan 1946, Kabat, Wolf and Bezer 1946). The effect was secured only

when mycobacteria were included in the emulsion. The disease currently termed experimental allergic encephalomyelitis or EAE has been studied intensively in laboratory animals particularly in guinea pigs, rabbits, rats and certain strains of mice. It has been viewed as a possible laboratory prototype of multiple sclerosis (see Kolb 1950). That the mechanism is independent of any subtle intraspecies antigenicity of brain substance has been nicely shown by Kabat *et al* (1949) who induced the condition in monkeys in response to a portion of their own brain substance removed in a prior operation. The active material in brain resides chiefly in the white matter and has been isolated in several forms differing in their effectiveness in the various species of laboratory animals—proteolipid, basic protein and most recently a dialyzable encephalitogen (Robertson *et al* 1962).

Delayed type reactions to brain are demonstrable by intradermal testing under appropriate conditions. Thus Waksman and Morrison (1951) found dermal and corneal reactivity in tests with rabbit brain after homologous brain had been injected intradermally in Freund type adjuvant in order to prepare rabbits for EAE and Alvord and colleagues recently have found a skin reaction in guinea pigs to the encephalitogenic basic protein of homologous brain. Such reactivity at 10 days had predictive value for early onset of EAE.

The event of EAE can be deviated by injecting either brain or mycobacteria some days before administration of brain emulsified with mycobacteria apparently an initial production of antibrain antibodies effectively diverts the sensitization process as does prior sensitization to mycobacteria. Thus Paterson and Harwin (1963) have found that injections of antibrain serum (19S antibodies) before sensitization can suppress development of EAE in rats. Also the use of 6 mercaptopurine which suppresses immunologic activity will postpone the onset of EAE (Hoyer, Good and Condie 1962).

Iso antibodies to brain substance are found irregularly, one (19S) fixing complement with brain extracts and another type (with complement) being cytotoxic for cultured myelin and glial cells. Serum does

not transfer the condition to normal animals (cf Waksman and Morrison 1951) but transfer between rats and between isologous guinea pigs has been effected by means of lymph node cells (Paterson 1960, Paterson and Didakow 1961, Paterson and Bell 1962, Stone 1961). Rats developing EAE after cellular transfer also develop cytotoxic antibody but its relation to the lesions is not demonstrated. However rabbits with induced EAE possess specific immunoglobulins that localize specifically in the myelin sheaths and glial cell membranes of cultured rat cerebellum causing marked demyelination within a few hours (Appel and Bornstein 1964).

An allergic neuritis has been shown to occur as another distinct entity when peripheral (sciatic) nerve is used instead of brain suggesting immunologic differences in myelins from the 2 sources (Waksman and Adams 1955, 1956). Transferred recently to a tissue culture system of trigeminal ganglia the process of demyelination has been observed to occur within 3 days when specifically competent lymph node cells were added to the culture and only infrequently when serum of the cell donors was used (Winkler 1964).

If testicular tissue instead of brain is incorporated in the emulsion another but non fatal iso allergic condition arises namely a marked degeneration of sperm cells from spermatogonia to the mature sperm. This condition can be initiated by injection of material from one of the animal's own testicles removed beforehand (Voisin *et al* 1951, Freund *et al* 1953, 1955). The active antigen is heat stable and contains polysaccharide or glycoprotein.

With use of thyroid tissue likewise incorporated in mycobacterial adjuvant even auto allergic thyroiditis could be demonstrated by Witebsky and co-workers rabbits being sensitized with portions of their own thyroid (cf Terplan *et al* 1960). Studied in a histocompatible strain of guinea pigs a chronic primarily lymphocytic disease was found to persist for 2 years after its peak severity at 2 months (Lerner and McMaster 1964). Delayed type reactions to thyroid were found at 5 to 7 days before onset of the disease and antithyroid antibody ap

rendered immune by inoculation with cowpox virus later responded to this or the closely related smallpox virus with a small local redness that appeared within 48 to 72 hours and then faded quickly. This manner of response was interpreted as an allergy by von Pirquet and Schick in 1903; the role of hypersensitivity was convincingly demonstrated when Hooker (1929) injected heat inactivated virus into the skin of cowpox immunized individuals.

The Frei test (originally an injection of diluted and heat sterilized pus from the lesion later of infected mouse brain) is now performed with antigen obtained from chick-embryo cultures. A skin test betokening past infection with mumps virus has been developed by Enders *et al* (1945, 1946) for the assessment of immunity. Newer test preparations have been made of viral material grown in the allantoic fluid of embryonated eggs (Henle *et al* 1951).

**Allergy in Parasitic Infestations.** In contrast with the above observations the form of allergic response that has received chief consideration in parasitic helminth infestations—for example schistosomiasis, echinococcus disease, filariasis, trichiniasis, and ascariis infestation—has been the immediate reactions of the wheal and erythema type found when the skin of the host is tested with extracts of the body substance of the same or related parasites. Usually antibodies can be demonstrated in the serum by serologic methods at the same time. Asthma and rhinitis are sometimes elicited upon exposure to the specific agents. While there is often an early reaction to hydatid fluid in echinococcus infestation it appears that the delayed type or *Casoni* reaction should be given chief diagnostic interpretation.

In protozoan infestations skin tests have been less useful. The only instance to be mentioned is leishmaniasis in which a tuberculin-like reaction has been observed in skin tests made with an extract of cultured Leishmania.

Even as an aftermath of sensitization by insect bites delayed allergic reactions have been demonstrated (Benson 1936) independently of early reactions (and corresponding reagins) which occur at times both varieties may be seen in the same individual.

## THE ADJUVANT EFFECT OF TUBERCLE BACILLI 'AUTO-ALLERGIC DISEASES'

Special properties of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* came to light when Dienes (1929) showed that the injection of protein antigens into a tuberculous focus led to a delayed type of hypersensitivity directed against the protein as well as the expected appearance of circulating antibody. The induced tuberculin type hypersensitiveness to egg protein as Burnet (1948) has said, therefore seems to be definitely related to the placing of the antigen in an inflammatory area in which histiocytes and lymphocytes predominate.

Following the discovery by French workers that the sensitizing property of killed mycobacteria is greatly enhanced in the presence of hydrocarbons Freund and McDermott (1942) imitated Dienes' injection of protein into a tuberculous focus by blending horse serum and an emulsifier in paraffin oil containing killed tubercle bacilli and injecting the water-in-oil emulsion. Probably owing to the type of cellular response evoked by the liquid hydrocarbon and the mycobacterial substance an intense cutaneous reactivity to horse serum of delayed type resulted. At the same time the output of circulating antibody became exaggerated and was sustained for many months.

Therefore in animals so prepared a high degree of Arthus type reactivity is superimposed on the original Dienes effect. Reference to either or both of these effects is variously intended when the term adjuvant effect of killed mycobacteria is used but it is necessary to distinguish between the effects due to the presence of mycobacteria and the effectiveness of antigen dispersed in hydrocarbon without the incorporation of mycobacteria or special mycobacterial wax. So far as the concentration of circulating antibody is at issue the mycobacteria often can be omitted from the emulsion but the directive effect of the mycobacteria is needed in order to secure certain of the delayed type allergenic effects.

When brain substance was incorporated in the Freund adjuvant it was found that a fatal demyelinating disease was induced in monkeys with disseminated lesions in brain and cord (Morgan 1946, Kabat, Wolf and Bezer 1946). The effect was secured only

as a flare in previously injected sites owing to a reaction with remaining traces of the sensitizing complex. The full degree of sensitivity is best demonstrated by applying the same material (usually dissolved in a suitable vehicle) to a fresh area of the skin or by injecting intracutaneously either the incitant or an artificial conjugate antigen<sup>10</sup> made by joining the incitant to an appropriate soluble protein.

The identification of sensitizing chemicals as those which can combine with proteins was demonstrated in the case of chloro and nitro-substituted benzenes (Landsteiner and Jacobs 1936) and conversely sensitive animals can be provoked to react by other chemically related compounds only when the latter can themselves combine with proteins (Eisen *et al* 1952). However not all classes of sensitizing substances exhibit so clear a basis for combination with proteins and alteration *in vivo* prior to combination must be assumed.

Study in guinea pigs again points clearly to an altered behavior of lymphoid cells altered behavior of macrophages and a stimulus to form immunoglobulins and it emphasizes the cellular basis of contact sensitivity. Upon transfer of living mononuclear cells the delayed type of dermal sensitivity not transferable with serum is imposed on normal guinea pigs exactly as in the case of tuberculin hypersensitivity (Landsteiner and Chase 1942; Haxthausen 1947; Nilzen 1952; Seeborn, Tremaine and Jeter 1954). For this manner of sensitization Mitchison has introduced the term adoptive transfer. The general histology of contact reactions after cellular transfer has been studied by deWeck and Brun (1956). With use of marker techniques mentioned previously donor cells are found in reacting test sites of the recipient animal in small ratio to host mononuclear cells. The chief question concerns the attraction of donated cells to test sites as to whether the ratio of donor to host cells differs in test sites from that in lymphoid tissue or the circulation. Some workers have not found an elective concentration of labeled cells in cutaneous test sites greater than in the organs (Hamilton and Chase 1962; McCluskey *et al* 1963) but others have found specific accumulations

(Najarian and Feldman 1961; 1963; Kay and Rieke 1963). In respect to their findings Najarian and Feldman (1963) are inclined to view the ratios found as representing preferential retention of labeled competent cells in specific test sites rather than specific attraction.

In man it has proved to be unexpectedly difficult to transfer contact type sensitivity with cells. However experimental sensitivity to 2,4-dinitrochlorobenzene seems to have been so transferred into patients with hypogammaglobulinemia (Good *et al* 1957; 1962) and sensitivity to dinitrochlorobenzene, parantrosodimethylaniline and perhaps poison ivy also (Epstein and Kligman 1957). If so the mode of sensitivity in man would be established. In this connection one will recall the already mentioned experiment of Haxthausen in transplanting skin between identical twins, one of whom had been sensitized with dinitrochlorobenzene. When a satisfactory operational procedure is devised for this type of study in man one may expect positive results rather than negative or borderline instances of transfer that have been reported (Baer and Sulzberger 1952; Baer *et al* 1952; Harber and Baer 1961). Recent studies on exudates and blister fluids and cells adhering to cover slip windows at the site of specific reactions have shown a surprising richness in the types of white blood cells that are associated with passive transfer (Nexmond 1949; 1950; Baer and Yanowitz 1952; Braunsteiner *et al* 1958; cf. Fellner 1919).

In experimental sensitization with simple chemical allergens not only delayed-type hypersensitivity to contact with the chemical arises but immunoglobulins are synthesized as well (Chase 1947); these probably being chiefly of the 7S<sub>1</sub> variety (see page 244). Allergic conversion precedes the appearance of antibody; the interval shortening as sensitizing applications are increased in number. For demonstration of the antibody usually by PCA the preparation of soluble haptene protein conjugates is required; systemic anaphylactic shock often can be shown also.

When cellular transfer is made from animals that possess delayed type hypersensitivity and are actively synthesizing circulating immunoglobulins the transferred cells can

peared slightly later. By chemical modification of thyroglobulin that reduces the amount of circulating antibody, Miescher *et al* (1961) concluded likewise that delayed type hypersensitivity is the basis of the tissue damage rather than antibody.

Auto immune nephrosis occurs when rats are sensitized by repeated injections of kidney extract with mycobacterial adjuvant and the disease can be transferred by means of lymph node cells (Hess Ashworth and Ziff 1962).

### CONTACT DERMATITIS\*

The most common route of sensitization to natural products and defined chemical substances is the percutaneous one involving direct contact with the skin. Existing irritations in the skin, the kind of perspiration, the chemical properties of the sensitizing material and the intensity of exposure are prime factors in sensitization. In addition, inherited factors influencing the degree of susceptibility such as are proved to occur in animals almost certainly exist in man. Most frequently encountered by far is the delayed type of reaction with manifestations ranging from macules to frank epithelial injury and exfoliative dermatitis, but reactions have been detected now and then and doubtless stimuli arise for synthesis of the more usual types of immunoglobulins as well.

Inciting agents or contactants range from water soluble to fat soluble materials and can arise for example through the action of acidic perspiration on nickel-plated jewelry. One widespread agent is the catechol derivative of the poison ivy plant, urushiol, which causes the allergy known as poison ivy dermatitis with frequent presentation of separation of the epithelial layer and formation of bullae. Mild forms of contact dermatitis naturally can be mimicked by temporary superficial inflammations.

The causative agents, not antigens as such, appear to acquire antigenic capacity by combining with the tissues of the host (either directly or after some intermediary chemical

alteration *in vivo*) as conjugated haptene protein structures analogous to the artificial conjugated antigens of Landsteiner. Such haptene protein structures are believed to incite sensitization and to elicit subsequent reactions whenever the same or a chemically related substance presents itself by the proper route.

Experimental investigation may be said to date from 1896 when Jadassohn first published his careful observations and introduced the patch test as a diagnostic procedure in the study of contact dermatitis. The idea that such allergies represented individual and innate idiosyncrasies became untenable when Bloch and Steiner-Wourisch (1926) pointed out that any individual could be rendered sensitive to the primrose plant (*Primula obconica*) if one simply used a concentrated extract of *Primula* leaves and a sufficient number of applications. Some persons became sensitive after 1 application whereas others required several treatments and evidently the role played by heredity was reflected in this variable sensitivity. The same workers next showed (1930) that guinea pigs as well could be sensitized to *Primula* and Mayer (1931) demonstrated that like human beings guinea pigs could be made sensitive to paraphenylenediamine, a compound often used in the dyeing of furs. The way was now open for animal experimentation for the manifestations of dermatitis in man and in sensitized guinea pigs were analogous even if not identical.

Experimentation in guinea pigs has proceeded with use of 2,4-dinitrochlorobenzene, picryl chloride, *p*-nitrosodimethylaniline, *p*-phenylenediamine, 2-phenyl-4-ethoxymethyl-ene-5-oxazolone, substituted benzoyl and benzyl chlorides, acid anhydrides, Salvarsan, urushiol and so on, most being proved to be sensitizers of man also. In both species sensitization is accomplished by repeated applications made on or into the skin and it may be necessary to provide a previously irritated cutaneous area for the treatments. These techniques sensitize the skin generally though in man there is some evidence for a slight delay before areas remote from the site of application acquire their sensitivity. The sensitivity arises usually in 5 to 10 days and often is seen first on the 7th or the 8th day.

\* The reader is referred to Sulzberger (1940), Landsteiner (1945), Carr (1954) and Jadassohn (1932) for reviews which deal with historic and theoretic aspects.

yet been evolved and except for spontaneous recession the sensitivity soon returns as is true in all other types of allergic manifestations. Thus the degree of dinitrochlorobenzene sensitivity in animals could be lowered for only a short period by giving very large amounts of the allergen intravenously (Frey and Geleick 1962). For use in special studies it may be mentioned that guinea pigs can be prevented from undergoing specific sensitization to certain simple chemicals by certain elective experiences induced with the chemical before attempting experimental sensitization (intravenous injection of arsphenamine Sulzberger feeding of fat soluble allergenic chemicals Chase).

In man immediate type flare and wheal reactions to drugs have been found in several instances (Salvarsan formaldehyde phthalic anhydride chloramine T sulfathiazole and sulfadiazine) and often are accompanied by demonstrable reagins; it is evident that these incitants which can give early type reactions would belong largely in the category of the more reactive compounds capable of rapid coupling to form hapten protein conjugates. It may well be that as in the case of immunoglobulins in guinea pigs sensitized with chemicals these reagins may occur more commonly than has been recognized and that their detection by skin test may wait upon the use of suitable hapten-carrier conjugates. For example using succinylated polylysine as a nonprotein (and nonantigenic) carrier of dinitrophenyl groupings Parker Kern and Eisen (1962) elicited flare and wheal reactions in a sensitive human subject as readily as with dinitrophenylated protein.

In order to search for nonreaginic antibodies that may be present even in low concentrations in human beings exhibiting delayed hypersensitivity many novel methods have been proposed. These deal chiefly with the use of allergen-coupled erythrocytes to detect antibody either by direct agglutination or by indirect tests for adsorption of immunoglobulin (cf Coombs Mynors and Weber 1950 Coombs and Fiset 1954) that would be similar in principle to the Middlebrook Dubos or the Boyden tests for the detection of antibodies in tuberculosis. With certain very simple chemical allergens

direct coupling to erythrocytes has been made (Johnson 1962 Bullock and Kantor 1964) these proving useful in animal experimentation. With many allergens of man however it may not be possible to couple to protein without enslaving the immunologically determinant sites of the allergens.

#### DELAYED SENSITIVITY TO PROTEINS

Seen only transiently in man and there termed the Jones Mote phenomenon delayed sensitivity to proteins has been studied extensively in laboratory animals. After a single intradermal sensitizing injection of protein reinjection between the 3rd and the 5th days reveals a delayed type response initiated by small mononuclear cells but thereafter immunoglobulin appears and the delayed sensitivity is lost to view. The time at which masking antibody will appear can be postponed by sensitizing with only small amounts of protein (3 to 30 mcg) or with protein precipitated by specific antibody (Uhr *et al* 1957) or with protein altered chemically by heavy coupling to haptens. In most instances the sensitizing procedure primes the immunologic apparatus silently so that a secondary response is evoked by the first subsequent skin test; therefore these studies of delayed sensitivity are carried out usually with single tests made around the 8th to the 10th days. The subject is reviewed in detail by Gell and Benacerraf (1961) and by Salvin (1962).

Examples of the experimental sensitization of man to proteins have been provided by the so called one shot treatment of allergic patients with allergens incorporated in mineral oil. The inclusion in such emulsions of allergens to which the patient did not possess a specific hypersensitivity (wheal and flare type) has been found to induce long sustained delayed type reactions some times with ulceration (Feinberg *et al* 1960 Becker *et al* 1961).

#### HOMOGRAFT REJECTION

Skin and organ homografts placed in genetically unselected individuals are rejected regularly within 10 days to 3 weeks but not when donor and recipient are syngeneic (identical twins highly inbred strains of mice and guinea pigs). The manner of

give rise to synthesis of antibody in the recipient as well as delayed hypersensitivity (Chase 1951) several days are required for detectable synthesis of antibody and the process stops at the time of the rejection of the donated cells. The cellular transfers of delayed type hypersensitivity and of antibody synthesis are independent events in deed if donors have been stimulated with such antigens as bacterial extracts and diphtheric toxoid antibody synthesis can occur following cellular transfer (Harris and Harris 1951 Wager and Chase 1952).

The mechanism underlying drug sensitization appears to be involved intimately with the antibody producing system. That in the establishment of delayed type sensitivities one is dealing with some part of the antibody-producing mechanism seems to follow also from some other observations. First dermal sensitivity of the delayed type can be induced by an insoluble complex antigen (made of the chemical coupled to erythrocyte stromata) when it is used along with the Freund adjuvant (Landsteiner and Chase 1941 cf Chase 1954). Second when one feeds certain allergenic chemicals to non-sensitized animals there is induced a state of specifically depressed receptivity involving both the acquisition of delayed type dermal sensitivity and the production of antibody. The animal acquires resistance to a subsequent dermal sensitization with this chemical and upon stimulation with conjugated homologous antigens bearing the same immunologically determinant structure there is pronounced depression in synthesis of corresponding circulating antibodies (see p 294). Again administration of methotrexate (aminomethylpteroylglutamic acid) which depresses the immunologic apparatus was found to block development of contact sensitivity and the primary antibody response (Friedman Buckler and Baron 1961).

Although sensitization as induced by percutaneous or intradermal application of chemical allergens shows specificity within the bounds set by their structures closer examination reveals that specificity is not related solely to the haptenic group that couples to self protein for adjacent portions of the carrier constitute part of the sensitizing structure (cf Benacerraf and Gell

1959 Gell and Benacerraf 1961a 1962b Salvin and Smith 1960 Benacerraf and Levine, 1962 Gell and Silverstein 1962 Leskowitz, 1963). In many such studies unfortunately sensitization has been effected with adjuvant incorporating highly coupled haptenic protein conjugates, enough so to mask the role of the specific haptenic moiety.

In parallel with tuberculin hypersensitivity the macrophages of guinea pigs sensitized with simple chemical allergens display inhibition of migration in vitro when specific soluble haptenic protein conjugates are added such as picrylated bovine gamma globulin in picryl chloride sensitive animals (Carpenter 1963 David *et al* 1964 Sune bring Axelrod and Trakatellis 1963). Again the role played by the carrier protein looms large.

In studying the cellular changes occurring within auricular nodes chemical allergens being applied to the ear Turk and Stone (1963) found a marked increase of large pyroninophilic cells on the 3rd and the 4th days exactly at the time of incipient contact sensitivity. Sensitivity ascended during the following 4 days as these large cells declined in number. As postulated by Gowans (1962) the evidence was that the large pyroninophilic cells arose from small lymphocytes and in turn gave rise to immunologically competent small lymphocytes. Cellular transfer of contact type sensitivity was regularly successful by the 5th day whole lymph node slices being used. The relationship of the observed cellular changes to antibody synthesis on the one hand and on the other hand to development of cells effective in transfer of contact sensitivity is not known. Processes known to interfere with the immunologic apparatus—specific tolerance cyclophosphamide—blocked the cellular changes although methotrexate permitted large cells to develop but still prevented sensitization.

Finally it may be said that attempts at desensitization in contact dermatitis in man have met with limited success. Some cases recede spontaneously a few others have been benefited by subcutaneous injection of the incitant in an oil vehicle (Caulfield 1936) or by cautious ingestion (Park 1944 Stevens 1945). A useful method has not

Converse and Tillett (1960) studied transfer factor (see p 277) prepared from lymphocytes of persons actively rejecting skin homografts (As mentioned previously such investigations are now possible only in man) The plan consisted in the transfer of acquired hypersensitivity transferred from an individual rejecting a particular skin to an individual newly grafted with the same skin and in the finding of accelerated rejection as compared with an indifferent skin graft Preparations made from the leukocytes of 3 persons who had rejected skin 4 times in succession caused specific accelerated rejection when injected into the intended recipients 8 days before or 3 days after grafting preparations from 3 individuals who had rejected a skin only twice were weaker and caused rejection only if infiltrated around the graft after vascularization on the 3rd day The factor in the lymphocytes was lost quickly and effective preparations could be secured only at the height of the rejection

As Stetson and Demopoulos (1958) showed circulating immunoglobulin is entirely adequate to ensure rejection of newly placed skin grafts but is of little effect on well established grafts serum complement seems to be required for the action of such antibody Other evidence supports this view as Gorer (1960) and Amos (1962) have emphasized the homograft reaction is complex and the basis of rejection may include in varying measure both delayed type hypersensitivity and humoral antibodies Demonstration that humoral antibody occurs in sufficient concentration to reject first set homografts has seldom been offered Homograft rejection was interpreted by Najarian and Feldman (1962 1963a b) to depend solely on an antibody mechanism labeled spleen and lymph node cells transferred from mice or guinea pigs that were stimulated by both skin graft and injection of spleen cells did not appear in the recipient's test graft although rejection occurred Finally a globulin-containing extract of the transfer cells was shown to effect rejection directly and in small amount Whether this is the sole mode of homograft rejection remains moot since antibody can be found in spleen cells of animals actively synthesizing it Yet Prendergast (1964) found that substantial

numbers of labeled cells were present within all of 4 skin homografts during their rejection although the labeled cells arose only within one node that drained one of the homografts And indeed one finds a heavy infiltration of small lymphocytes in first set homografts

The participation of lymphocytes in both delayed type hypersensitivity and in events leading to antibody formation emphasizes the difficulty in separating the 2 functions Gowans McGregor Cowen and Ford (1962) and Gowans (1962) have shown impairment of primary antibody formation in rats by thoracic duct drainage and restoration by return of lymphocytes to the circulation a finding quite in accord with the role of lymphocytes in antibody production following stimulation with RNA from macrophages that had been incubated with antigen (Fishman and Adler 1963) Also Gowans *et al* studied transformation of rat small lymphocytes stimulated by placement in an alien host the small lymphocytes went to the spleen became large pyroninophilic cells and finally produced further small lymphocytes This sequence of changes occurs in the graft versus host reaction as well as in skin homograft rejection

The graft versus host phenomenon following cellular transfer implies that instead of expected homograft rejection transferred cells sometimes can respond to antigens of the recipient animal and affect the latter's well being (cf Simonsen 1962) This effect—termed homologous disease or runt disease or wasting disease—depends on the relative impact of antigenic stimulation and it varies considerably according to the choice of donor and the recipient strains e.g. among inbred mouse strains Homologous disease in the adult rat shows a great variety of allergic inflammations the reaction leading to dermatitis of host skin and rejection of autografts even while homografts are becoming established free of dermatitis (Stasny Stembridge and Ziff 1963)

In the area of allergic encephalomyelitis (EAE) rat lymphocytes taken on the 7th to the 11th days after the sensitizing injection of brain (in mycobacterial adjuvant) were found to cause destruction of glial elements of cultured puppy brain first ag



initial rejection and the speedier rejection of a later identical graft point to immunologic mechanisms. The manner of rejection of a first set graft shows similarities with tuberculin type allergy as has been outlined by Lawrence (1957) and emphasized by experimental studies in animals (Medawar, 1958, Brent Brown, and Medawar 1959 Billingham Silvers and Wilson 1963). Second set grafts from the same donor are rejected more quickly. Sooner or later attempts to re-graft meet with failure to vascularize even briefly, as witnessed by the telltale white graft. This final stage is attributed to interference by circulating antibody: passive transfer of selected sera will duplicate the effect (Stetson and Demopoulos 1958). Sufficient antibody indeed can be directly damaging for first implanted cells (Siskind and Thomas, 1959 Gorer and Boyse 1959). These points of view—emphasis on delayed type hypersensitivity vs a role of immunoglobulins—will be discussed in turn.

Not only the lymphocyte but also the macrophage assumes a new role after the onset of sensitization. The rejection of incompatible tumors by mice has emphasized the role of the macrophage: phagocytosis being often prominent. Monocytes transferred after such rejection can protect other mice from successful implantation even when washed free of iso antibody (Old *et al.*, 1963). Another interesting example is the acute allogenic disease studied by Granger Weiser and Holmes (1963) when an ascites tumor indigenous to strain A mice is used to sensitize C57Bl mice: the latter's macrophages, not lymphocytes, are found to be capable of killing normal strain A mice within 40 hours by attacking primarily the capsule of the pancreas: humoral antibody not being detectable.

Consonant with the interpretation that delayed type hypersensitivity underlies first set rejections are experimental studies in animals showing similarities in the time of onset of the reaction, the histology of the graft bed, a failure to transfer with serum and especially a role of lymphoid cells in inducing rejection of tolerated grafts: the cells being transferred from graft sensitized individuals (cf Billingham Silvers and Wilson 1963). Moreover such graft sensitized guinea pigs

exhibit a delayed type sensitivity toward extracts of the donor's tissues and yield lymphoid cells that produce local hypersensitivity reactions when injected into the donor's skin (Brent Brown and Medawar 1962). Still further evidence for the role of delayed type hypersensitivity is offered in the rejection of skin homografts by fetal lambs approaching delivery although an ability to respond to antigens is developing slowly: they reject skin regularly without the presence of discernible antibody (Schinkel and Ferguson 1953 Silverstein Prendergast and Kraner 1963).

Other evidence has been cited against a major role of humoral antibody in graft rejection. When alien homologous cells are placed within a noncompatible host as target tissue but in chambers faced by special permeable (Millipore) membranes the cells survive (Algire *et al.* 1954, 1957 Weaver *et al.* 1955 Billingham and Silvers 1963, Billingham Silvers and Wilson 1963). However destruction ensues when immunologically competent cells are introduced into the chamber: damage extending both to target cells and lymphoid cells (Weaver *et al.* 1955). Many attempts to duplicate this result *in vitro* failed finally. Rosenau and Moon (1961, 1962 cf Rosenau 1963) used specifically competent lymphocytes in high ratio to target cells and indeed found cytolysis of mouse L-cell fibroblasts. During the 1st day the slow attachment of perhaps 5 per cent of the lymphocytes was seen whereas lysis was most rapid between 36 and 48 hours. Cytolysis of this type occurred without addition of serum complement. In contrast humoral cytotoxic antibodies required a supplementary source of complement to effect lysis of such cells. In similar exposures of cultured thyroid cells to competent lymphocytes Rose *et al.* (1963) found thyroid cells to round up to retract and to cease growth yet the effect could be duplicated when lymphocytes of nonthyroid origin provenance were used in sufficiently great numbers. Neither donors' serum nor cell sap of the competent lymphocytes produced any effect on the cultured cells.

Seeking in another way to demonstrate that homograft rejection depends on delayed type hypersensitivity Lawrence Rapaport

and Moon and only 5 to 35 per cent of lymphocytes in studies made by others were stimulated by tuberculin to synthesize gamma globulin in vitro (Pearmain *et al* and Hirsch horn *et al*) despite the competency of all the lymphocytes to form gamma globulin under the stimulus of bean leucoagglutinin (p 277) Yet it should be emphasized again that monocytes acquire new properties in consequence of sensitization as is shown well by in vitro inhibition of migration by exposure to the allergen and by the sequences seen in experimental listeriosis (p 278)

It seems curious that in man the transfer of microbial hypersensitivities is accomplished with so few cells as 0.15 ml moist volume and the hypersensitivity persists for so long (cf Lawrence 1960 Good Kelly Rotstein and Varco 1962) whereas in animals the hypersensitivity appears to be a function of survival of the transferred cells The easy separation of transfer factor from this small number of cells and the demonstration of dialyzability and small molecular weight should shortly increase our understanding of delayed type hypersensitivity in a way seemingly not possible by animal experiments

In an endeavor to rule out re excitation of existing but latent hypersensitivities—the constant hazard in dealing with microbial hypersensitivities—Rapaport Lawrence Millar Pappagianis and Smith (1960) studied transfer of coccidioidin hypersensitivity in man using as recipients persons far removed from an endemic area of coccidioidomycosis Transfer was successful reactions occurring to tests made 6 to 14 days later Control leukocytes from the single negative individual used gave only 1 moderate transfer among 9 recipients injected An extensive series of transfers with frozen human cells was made by Jensen Patnode Townsley and Cummings (1962) from persons variously sensitive to special tuberculins (PPD S PPD Battey and PPD Avian) recipients being tested on days 2 7 and 30 Transfers were multiple being positive in 70 per cent of 26 trials but positive only in 30 per cent toward PPD S In 6 instances sensitivity appeared to tuberculins that were not reactive in the donors and 1 negative control donor appeared to transfer reactivity to PPD

B and PPD A Histoplasmin sensitivity proved to be difficult to transfer in this way even from good reactors

It has been noted that the special waxy substance of mycobacteria possesses a remarkable directive effect in inducing delayed type hypersensitivity to tuberculin and to other proteins or hapten protein complexes deliberately injected with it (cf White in Shaffer *et al* 1958) The directive effect may well be the attraction of cellular types such as monocytes and cells of the lymphatic series and the resultant formation of a local granulomatous response In addition the use of mycobacterial wax as adjuvant is accompanied by a widespread proliferation of plasma cell elements and an increased amount of antibody (White Coons and Connolly 1955) In the guinea pig indeed the effect of mycobacteria on antibody formation appears to be electively to induce synthesis of 7S<sub>1</sub> antibody (White *et al* 1963) Benacerraf *et al* 1963)

For the special case of chemical allergens Mayer (1957) has suggested that fibroid proteins such as collagen rather than soluble proteins may be the necessary carrier for the coupling that leads to delayed type hypersensitivity Mayer's evidence rests on his finding that procollagen may be substituted for mycobacteria or mycobacterial wax in a special procedure of sensitizing the skin by injecting a chemical allergen intraperitoneally and allowing coupling in situ The conclusion that the usual role of mycobacteria is to allow local accumulation of collagen as in the peritoneal cavity requires further examination

The hypothesis of cell bound antibody has been offered to explain the injury done by tubercula to monocytes of the tuberculous host and by extension has been applied to lymphocytes which have been regarded as the prototypic cell in delayed type hypersensitivity The closest approach to cell bound antibody is the specific nonimmunoglobulin transfer factor of Pappenheimer and Lawrence However Bloom *et al* (1964) have concluded from metabolic alterations secured with Mitomycin C that transferred guinea pig cells must continue to metabolize in the new host in order to produce contact reactions Protein synthesis is suggested also

glutinating on to the glial elements and then largely disappearing within 4 days destruction of the cells occurred within 6 days. The serum contained antibody that was absorbable by nonsensitized lymphocytes which then showed weaker contactual agglutination onto glial elements and apparently caused some destruction of the latter (Koprowski and Fernandes 1962).

The opposite of homograft rejection, homograft tolerance, remains under active study because of its theoretic implications (cf Brent and Gowland 1963). The artifice of establishing tolerance through neonatal experience with cellular antigens (white cells of spleen, peripheral blood, lymph nodes) was established by the brilliant experiments of Medawar, Billingham and Brent; the subject has been reviewed in extenso by Brent (1958) and Hašek *et al* (1961). Tolerance can be established in certain cases in older animals by administering during the days of first contact with foreign tissue antimetabolites (p. 294) that suppress the functioning of the immunologic apparatus. Tolerance can be abolished by injecting isogenic cells either normal or with more prompt rejection, those having a specifically acquired competence against the graft (Billingham, Silvers and Wilson 1963).

#### THEORETICAL CONSIDERATIONS OF DELAYED TYPE HYPERSENSITIVITY

As we have seen, the delayed type of hypersensitivity is associated in some way with alterations in cells: lymphocytes and macrophages especially, and with antigenic stimuli that lead in a measure to synthesis of circulating immunoglobulins. Some unifying principles must underlie the delayed type of hypersensitivities that are apparent after microbial invasion, after application of contactant chemicals, after primary intradermal injections of soluble proteins, and probably after the placing of homografts. It has been suggested that delayed type hypersensitivity is the earliest and an immature stage in antibody formation directed against large surface areas of the inciting material, in contrast with the production of mature antibody which recognizes limited areas or surface patches of antigen (Salvin and Smith 1960). Because it is found in appropriate instances

that both forms of hypersensitivity can co-exist, 2 separable processes must occur in the immunologic apparatus. For example, Gell and Hinde (1954) have suggested that delayed type hypersensitivity results from an antigenic stimulus that stops short of inducing plasma cell formation, being confined to mononuclear cells. Interestingly, delayed type hypersensitivity occurs in many patients with agammaglobulinemia who have a pronounced deficiency in plasma cells and in the capacity to synthesize antibody. Such patients show dermal reactivity following infections such as tuberculosis and *Candida*, or as a consequence of experimental sensitization by BCG vaccination or dinitrofluorobenzene or protein antigens coated with antibody (cf Porter, 1957; Good, Bridges and Condie 1960). In all these cases cellular transfer with peripheral leukocytes was possible. Yet some persons with agammaglobulinemia do not respond to allergization; indeed one patient studied was found to be deficient in mononuclear cells during experimental inflammation. An extensive review is presented by Good, Kelly, Rotstein and Varco (1962).

Emphasizing the role played by white cells in delayed allergies have been experiments showing that the allergic response is reduced significantly by depleting mononuclear cells through short term treatment with antilymph node serum or antimacrophage serum (Inderbitzen 1956; Wilhelm *et al* 1958; Waksman, Arbouys and Arnason 1961; Pincus and Flick 1963), or through thoracic duct drainage prior to sensitization (Gowans *et al* 1962; Gowans 1962) or through thymectomy of rats at birth (Arnason, Janković, Waksman and Wennersten 1962). Affected are the allergic responses to tuberculin, chemical contactants, proteins, inactivated vaccinia virus, graft versus host reactions, and in a measure allergic encephalomyelitis and homograft rejection.

The number of lymphocytes stimulated by the process of sensitization is only a fractional part of the population, as is evidenced by the finding of "competence" initially almost exclusively in nodes draining the site on which a sensitizing application is made. Only 5 per cent of the lymphocytes attached to target tissue in the experiments of Rosenau

pig peritoneal cells. Efforts are being made to relate this antibody (which appears to adsorb to cell surfaces) to delayed type hypersensitivity but no evidence has yet been presented of accomplishing passive transfer.

## THE SHWARTZMAN PHENOMENON

There remains to be mentioned a special sort of hemorrhagic necrotic reaction the Sanarelli Schwartzman phenomenon that can be produced in the skin and some other organs (chiefly the kidney). Accordingly the phenomenon is divided into the *local* and the *generalized* Schwartzman reactions. It is not an antigen antibody mechanism but it possesses features in common with the Arthus reaction and its participation in acute disease processes is suspected.

In this type of local tissue reactivity developed so ably by Schwartzman (cf. review of 1937) sites in the skin of normal rabbits were prepared by injecting endotoxin-containing culture filtrates of certain bacteria. These sites would exhibit gross hemorrhage and necrosis within a few hours when culture filtrate was injected into the bloodstream between 8 and 32 hours later. It was found that the skin preparatory factors and the reacting factors need not be identical or even immunologically related. For example, the local preparatory injection could be made with culture filtrates of *E. coli* or *S. typhosa* and the intravenous eliciting injection with meningococcal culture filtrates. The active material in culture filtrates is identified with endotoxins of the bacteria; the nitrogen free nontoxic lipopolysaccharide from *S. marcescens* will both prepare and elicit the reaction. The rabbit is the animal of choice for this experiment; goats and horses show the effect; guinea pigs respond irregularly and less intensely; and mice and rats generally are found to be insensitive. However, in certain specially bred strains of mice Schwartzman reactions have appeared upon an initial injection of bacterial polysaccharide (Kelly *et al.* 1957). In another highly inbred strain classic Schwartzman reactions were found to occur regularly (Arndt and Schneider 1960). As in the work of Kelly, some of the mice reacted to the initial

intradermal injection of endotoxin; the authors relating this to preparation by gram-negative microorganisms that were infecting the lung tissues without overt signs.

It is possible to prepare the skin site with bacterial endotoxin or culture filtrates and to elicit the reaction by intravenous injection of certain nonbacterial materials—starch glycogen agar or washed antigen antibody precipitates, all of these being procedures which would affect guinea pig serum *in vitro* so that the serum would cause anaphylactoid shock. Similarly, endotoxin prepared skin will react locally when antigen antibody aggregates are allowed to form *in vivo*. The reverse situation—namely substituting for the preparatory injection a fully developed tuberculin reaction on a tuberculous animal and giving later an intravenous injection of a potent Schwartzman filtrate or even tuberculin—also results in a typical Schwartzman reaction. (Freund 1934; guinea pig; Stetson 1955; rabbits) tumor tissue in mice is said to offer a naturally prepared situs for Schwartzman effects since it responds with inflammation when potent bacterial filtrates are injected intravenously.

From studies chiefly by Thomas and Stetson (1949) and Stetson (1951a, b) it is known that after the preparatory injection polymorphonuclear leukocytes accumulate locally in the tissue around the smaller veins as cuffs and probably owing chiefly to the metabolic character of exudate polymorphonuclear leukocytes abnormal quantities of lactic acid are produced there through aerobic glycolysis. Changes (histologically inapparent) then occur in the adjacent vascular endothelium, perhaps of a sort that render this tissue sensitive to the action of tissue protease. Then upon the intravenous eliciting injection a peripheral vasoconstriction occurs impairing the blood supply; white cells and blood platelets clump and become sequestered especially in the lung and attach markedly to the damaged endothelium. In the latter areas the aggregates form leukocyte platelet thrombi and actually occlude the small veins and the capillaries. The death and the disintegration of involved vessels and of cells within the following 2 or 3 hours follow in the pattern of developing

by Janković and Dvorak (1962) in their finding that ribonuclease will inhibit temporarily interaction between competent rabbit lymph node cells and target cells

The relation of delayed type hypersensitivity to antibody-synthesis remains a major question even if the interpretation of 2 separate processes is correct Pappenheimer (cf Shaffer *et al* 1958) proposed that delayed type hypersensitivity may occur always as a first step in the production of antibody, representing a mechanism analogous to induced enzyme formation, that prepares the altered cells to produce circulating antibody selectively upon a subsequent experience with the same antigen Yet delayed type hypersensitivity is not always found to precede antibody formation and the conclusion that this hypersensitivity becomes superseded when circulating antibody appears would require continuous and silent stimulation of newly maturing cells to sustain delayed type hypersensitivity

In seeking explanations for delayed type hypersensitivity in terms of antibody Burnet once suggested that eventually there is produced and put into the bloodstream a special antibody of such variety that it binds to the tissues with extreme readiness and is seldom to be encountered in the blood in an amount sufficient to permit passive transfer A search for such antibody was made by Cole and Favour (1955) and by Rauch and Favour (1960) in the plasma of tuberculin sensitive guinea pigs the equivalent of 80 ml being transferred At times a positive nontypical reaction to tuberculin was seen in the recipient but this approach appears to have been abandoned

Also in line with Burnet's suggestion is a hypothesis of delayed type hypersensitivity offered recently by Karush and Eisen (1962) and intended to unify all varieties of delayed hypersensitivity—tuberculin reactions contact dermatitis homograft rejection delayed type ocular reactions inhibition of cellular migration and other manifestations of tissue damage occurring *in vitro* (The hypothesis does not concern itself with the transfer factor of Lawrence and Pappenheimer) According to this concept the delay in the reaction appearing at a test site on a sensi-

tive individual represents the time for synthesis of a very highly avid antibody its rate of production being sufficient to bind 10 per cent per hour of the antigenic complex in the test site during a 24 hour period, thereby producing gradually ascending inflammation The idea calls for stimulation and continued production of antibody possessing an exceedingly high avidity but at a concentration not to exceed  $1 \times 10^{-10}$  molarity in the serum (consequently not allowing transfer by serum) The test injection is pictured as immediately producing small amounts of soluble antigen antibody complexes These taken up from the circulation by the spleen and the nodal tissues would stimulate a recall synthesis leading to perhaps 4 fold as much newly synthesized antibody within 24 hours as had been present in a sensitized guinea pig before testing the rate of synthesis would necessitate a much more rapid turnover of the antibody than of total gamma globulin After reaction the production of this highly avid antibody would drop back to the previous undetectable concentration Adoptive transfer of contact type hypersensitivity would be ascribed to synthesis by the transferred cells of high affinity antibody Similarly cytotoxicity in tissue culture would result from antibody synthesis by the competent cells

As corollaries it would follow that (1) the highly avid antibody must appear in 5 or 6 days after injection of chemicals like dinitrochlorobenzene when the sensitizing injection was intradermal and not appear when the injection was intramuscular (2) the directive effect of mycobacterial adjuvant with haptene protein complexes would be explainable as causing production of highly avid antibody and (3) the rate of its synthesis must drop as soon as an animal has become sensitive although the synthesis of less avid antibodies is not hindered Whatever the merits of the hypothesis may be it will stimulate a more intensive study of antibody patterns

Another type of antibody cytophilic antibody has been described (cf Boyden 1963) being found in very low concentration in serum, the antibody is heat stable and adsorbs to cell surfaces such as guinea

haps be described as the Frei-Sulzberger-Chase phenomenon. The subject is of particular interest because certain noncutaneous routes of administering sensitizing compounds will alter the status even of adult animals deviating later attempts to induce delayed type hypersensitivity towards the same compound (reviewed by Chase 1959 1963 cf Coe and Salvin 1963 Battisto and Chase 1963). This type of unresponsiveness persists for 10 or more months and it is accompanied by depression of antibody synthesis. The mechanism is unknown.

### ANTIHISTAMINES

Emphasis on the role of histamine in anaphylactic shock and in allergic reactions of immediate type excited the hope that the physiologic consequences of antigen-antibody interaction might be avoided if the liberated histamine could be rendered ineffective. Various approaches have been explored such as administration of the enzyme histaminase, immunization by an artificial antigen containing histamine coupled to a protein and administration of special compounds possessing antihistaminic properties. This last approach has provided a powerful adjunct in the treatment of allergic conditions. The compounds influence in some degree other physiologically active substances (Loew 1950 Fernberg *et al.* 1950). They are presumed to function as competitive inhibitors for the sites affected by histamine and they can be effective only as long as they can be maintained in tissues at an adequate level with respect to the histamine concentration.

As with other proprietary compounds the products possess not only their trade names but also type names: thus Pyribenzamine is one brand of tripeleannamine hydrochloride, Histadyl and Thientene are different brands of methapyrilene hydrochloride, Benadryl is a brand of diphenhydramine hydrochloride and so on (cf Wilhelm 1961 for discussion of chemical classes).

The evidence for the protective action of these compounds against the effects produced in a normal animal by administration of histamine is impressive: it extends to protection of the isolated guinea pig gut or uterine horn from contraction by histamine and to inhibition of vascular effects of histamine in the

rabbit and other animals to the protection of guinea pigs from multiple lethal doses of histamine and from the bronchospasm caused by histamine aerosol. At the same time it is found that most of these compounds do not modify the gastric secretagogue action of histamine. When the antihistamine compounds are tested for ability to protect anaphylactically sensitized guinea pigs against systemic shock by an intravenous injection of antigen, larger amounts are necessary (3 mg/kg down to 1 mg/kg) than are needed to deviate the effects of purely histamine shock.

The variety in formulae has been welcomed because of individual reactions and requirements (cf Wilhelm 1961). All these compounds can produce undesirable side reactions such as drowsiness, dizziness, disorientation and gastrointestinal disturbances and occasionally (with overdose) even death; hence the use of these substances by allergic individuals should be under medical supervision. Often the antihistamines prove to be valuable in cases of allergic urticaria and allergic rhinitis, although asthma especially is apt to be resistant. Since the compounds function also as local anesthetics, somewhat more so in this respect than procaine, they may relieve the itching in poison ivy dermatitis but they do not modify in fundamental manner reactions that are of the delayed type.

### ACTH AND CORTISONES

Following the introduction of porcine ACTH (pituitary adrenocorticotrophic hormone) in 1946 many diverse disease processes were found to be markedly ameliorated and among these were nearly all varieties of allergic manifestations. Shortly afterward compound E of the adrenal cortex (cortisone) became available and was found to influence markedly the allergic state. Other compounds including partially synthesized materials have since been developed (cf Jauler 1955). These materials include hydrocortisone, 5-fluorohydrocortisone, prednisone, prednisolone, methylprednisolone, dexamethasone and betamethasone. They prove to be effective in relieving intrinsic and extrinsic asthma and as salves they control allergic eczema as well. Treatment with

**Arthus reactions** The characteristic and prominent hemorrhage in the prepared site would follow as a consequence of necrosis of the vessel walls

As Rall *et al* (1957) point out, adrenergic vasoconstriction accompanying the eliciting injection could enhance local damage since epinephrine is known to exaggerate Schwartzman effects. After making parallel studies on tuberculin sensitive rabbits injected with Old Tuberculin Stetson (1955) has suggested that the biologic activity of endotoxins may reflect a delayed type natural hypersensitivity of the rabbit to gram negative bacteria. Evidence has been found also for this conclusion in rabbits hypersensitive to staphylococci (Atkins 1962b). Perhaps one could say that the Schwartzman event is to the Arthus and the delayed type allergies what the anaphylactoid is to the anaphylactic shock, namely parallel and interwoven mechanisms for obtaining the same ultimate tissue response.

Besides this *dermal* Schwartzman reaction the second aspect is the *generalized* Schwartzman reaction in which both injections must be given intravenously. Characteristically from 6 to 8 hours after the eliciting injection there is deposition of a fibrinoidlike homogeneous material particularly within the glomerular capillaries of the kidney which leads to occlusion of the circulation and results in bilateral renal cortical necrosis. The determining event in initiating the generalized Schwartzman phenomenon appears to be in intravascular coagulation. The phenomenon can be duplicated when thrombin is injected directly into the renal arterial circulation (Robbins and Collins 1961) thus circumventing the normal action of the reticulo-endothelial system (RES) in clearing fibrin (Lee 1962). Neither the local nor the generalized Schwartzman phenomena occurs if leukopenia has been induced previously as by nitrogen mustard.

There has been active speculation that natural infections with bacteria may cause tissue preparation and that Schwartzman effects can occur owing to reacting factors provided by the infection itself by a proximal antigen antibody reaction or by a variety of other nonspecific stimuli; this sequence has been surmised to be one possible factor oper-

ating in bacterial allergy and in the genesis of conditions such as pulmonary abscess or hemorrhagic lesions seen in meningococcemia (Black-Shaffer *et al*, 1947). Recently it has been found that when pregnant rats are placed on a diet of oxidized cod liver oil the pathology of the generalized Schwartzman phenomenon is duplicated without use of endotoxin (Stamler, 1959; McKay and Wong 1962).

## MODIFICATIONS IN THE ALLERGIC STATE

Certain pharmacologically active materials serve temporarily to mitigate or to suppress allergic episodes of man. Included are the so called antihistamines, pituitary adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH), cortisone (compound E), hydrocortisone, fluorohydrocortisone, prednisone, prednisolone and still others.

Also for experimental purposes one can hold the immunologic apparatus in check for some days by means of antimetabolites such as 6 mercaptopurine, methotrexate, cyclophosphamide and the like administered just prior to and for some days after institution of a sensitizing procedure (cf Schwartz 1963; Hoyer, Good and Condie 1963). Notable effects have been seen also by applying sublethal x irradiation for its effective depletion of lymphoid cells or by lowering the population of monocytic cells before intended sensitization by giving antilymphocyte or antimonocyte sera or by subjecting animals at birth to thymectomy thereby depressing the full development of lymphoid tissue.

Under special conditions the immunologic apparatus can be rendered unresponsive to stimulation by particular antigens and yet retain responsiveness toward others (reviewed by Chase 1959; cf Bussard consulting editor 1963). Both synthesis of immunoglobulin and manifestations of delayed type hypersensitivity can be influenced.

Of the many facets of immunologic tolerance induced tolerance to homografts already has been considered and mention need be made here only of induced unresponsiveness to sensitization with simple chemical compounds in guinea pigs which can per-

- by guinea pig 7S<sub>1</sub> antibodies *Fed Proc* 23 403
- Battisto J R and Chase M W 1963 Immunological unresponsiveness to sensitization with simple chemical compounds A search for antibody absorbing depots of allergen *J Exp Med* 118 1021 1035
- Benacerraf B and Gell P G H 1959 Studies on hypersensitivity I Delayed and Arthus type skin reactivity to protein conjugates in guinea pigs *Immunology* 11 53 63
- Benacerraf B Ovary Z Bloch K J and Franklin E C 1963 Properties of guinea pig 7S antibodies I Electrophoretic separation of two types of guinea pig 7S antibodies *J Exp Med* 117 937 949
- Berson F Yalow R Bauman A Rothschild M A and Newerly K 1956 Insulin <sup>125</sup>I metabolism in human subjects demonstration of insulin binding globulin in the circulation of insulin treated subjects *J Clin Invest* 35 170 190
- Billingham R E Silvers W K and Wilson D H 1963 Further studies on adoptive transfer of sensitivity to skin homografts *J Exp Med* 118 397-420
- Billingham R E Silvers W K and Willys K 1963 Sensitivity to homografts of normal tissues and cells *Ann Rev Microbiol* 17 531 564
- Birnaghi R Liacopoulos P Halpern B N and Liacopoulos Briot M 1962 Interference of non specific gamma globulins with passive in vitro anaphylactic sensitization of isolated guinea pig intestine *Immunology* 5 204 210
- Bloch K J Kourilsky F M Ovary Z and Benacerraf B 1963 Properties of guinea pig 7S antibodies III Identification of antibodies involved in complement fixation and hemolysis *J Exp Med* 117 965 981
- Bloom B R 1963 Studies on delayed type hypersensitivity including attempts to effect transfer in guinea pigs with subcellular materials Doctoral dissertation The Rockefeller Institute New York N.Y.
- Bloom B R Hamilton L D and Chase M W 1964 Effects of Mitomycin C on the cellular transfer of delayed type hypersensitivity in the guinea pig *Nature* 201 689 691
- Bolton F G 1956 Thrombocytopenic purpura due to quinidine II Serologic mechanisms *Blood* 11 547 564
- Boyden S V 1963 Cytoplasmic antibody in Amos B and Koprowski H (eds.) *Cell Bound Antibodies* Wistar Institute Press Phila pp 7 14
- Boyden S V and Sorkin E 1956 Antigens of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* *Bibl tuberc* 10 17 51
- Boyden S V and Suter W E 1952 Stimulating effect of tuberculin upon production of circulating antibodies in guinea pigs infected with tubercle bacilli *J Exp Med* 68 577 589
- Brent L Brown J H and Medawar P B 1962 Quantitative studies on tissue transplantation immunity VI Hypersensitivity reactions associated with the rejection of homografts *Proc Roy Soc (London) Series B* 156 187 209
- Brent L and Gowland G 1963 On the mechanism of immunological tolerance in Conceptual Advances in Immunology and Oncology 16th Annual Symposium on Fundamental Cancer Research 1962 Hoeber Harper New York pp 355 383
- Brocklehurst W E 1962 Slow reacting substance and related compounds in Kallos P and Waksman B H (eds.) *Progress in Allergy* New York Karger 6 539 558
- Brocklehurst W E and Lahiri S C 1962 The production of bradykinin in anaphylaxis *J Physiol (London)* 160 15 16
- Bussard M A consulting editor 1963 *La Tolerance Acquise et La Tolerance Naturelle a L'Egard des Substances Antigeniques De fines Colloques Internationaux du Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique* No 116 CNRS Paris 490 pp
- Carpenter R R 1963 In vitro studies of cellular hypersensitivity I Specific inhibition of migration of cells from adjuvant immunized animals by purified protein derivative and other protein antigens *J Immunol* 91 803 818
- Carr E A Jr 1954 Drug allergy *Pharmacol Rev* 6 365-425
- Chase M W 1945 The cellular transfer of cutaneous hypersensitivity to tuberculin *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 59 134 135
- Chase M W 1959 Immunologic tolerance *Ann Rev Microbiol* 13 349 376
- Cochrane C G Weigle W D and Dixon F J 1959 The role of polymorphonuclear leukocytes in the initiation and cessation of the Arthus vasculitis *J Exp Med* 110 481 494
- Collier H O J Holgate J A Schacter M and Shorley P G 1960 The bronchoconstrictor action of bradykinin in the guinea pig *Brit J Pharmacol* 15 290 297
- Coons A H Leduc E H and Connolly J M 1955 Studies on antibody production I A method for the histochemical demonstration of specific antibody and its application



ACTH has been shown to mitigate dyspnea and bronchoconstriction in man toward experimentally administered histamine and Mecholyl (Rose 1950). Likewise, these compounds are of benefit in the collagen vascular diseases thought to be allergic in nature.

Cortisone and hydrocortisone were investigated at once and were found to possess as Germuth (1956) has remarked a marked antiinflammatory effect owing perhaps to a vasoconstrictive action that leads to reduction in blood flow and inhibition of capillary permeability; there is increased vascular tone, lessened diapedesis and inhibition of lymphocytic reproduction. These compounds do not affect the interaction of antigen and antibody for passive Arthus reactions can be evoked typically (Germuth and Ottinger 1950) although synthesis of antibody appears largely to cease upon hormonal treatment (cf. Germuth *et al.* 1951); reduction in circulating antibody does not run parallel with clinical improvement.

Actively sensitized dogs and mice exhibit diminution in anaphylactic shock. In rabbits both the Shwartzman reaction and serum disease are inhibited. Intensive treatment with the hormones also diminishes delayed type reactions as to tuberculin. A prototype has been seen in the markedly lessened inflammatory response of intensively treated animals injected with oil of turpentine (Osgood and Favour 1951; cf. Gell and Hinde 1951).

Stringent medical supervision is required with these highly useful agents, particularly with regard to occurrence of peptic ulcer, diabetes and osteoporosis. The physician must weigh carefully the temporary benefits that the patient may derive against the grave disadvantages that come from exhaustion of the adrenals and impairment of the normal hypothalamus-pituitary-adrenal axis. Since inflammatory responses are suppressed, there is the hazard with continued use that serious bacterial and fungal infections may become established. With ACTH there is occasional allergization which usually is specific for the species of origin. A hormone fastness also has been encountered infrequently.

Although initial symptomatology usually returns with cessation of treatment in instances in which the offending allergen can

be expected to disappear within a definitely limited time from the environment (pollens) or from tissue sites (e.g. following a reaction to injected penicillin), there may be no further symptoms after treatment is terminated.

## REFERENCES \*

- Aladjem F, MacLaren W R and Campbell D H 1957 Skin sensitizing activity of globulin fractions from rabbit immune serum. *Science* **125** 692-693.
- Allen W P 1962 Immunity against tularemia: passive protection of mice by transfer of immune tissues. *J Exp Med* **115** 411-420.
- Amos D B 1962 The use of simplified systems as an aid to the interpretation of mechanisms of graft rejections. In Kallós P and Waksman B H (eds) *Progress in Allergy* **6** 468-538.
- Andreas G A, Seegal B C, Hsu K C, Rothenberg M S and Chapeau M L 1963 Electron microscopic studies of experimental nephritis with ferritin-conjugated antibody: Localization of antigen-antibody complexes in rabbit glomeruli following repeated injections of bovine serum albumin. *J Exp Med* **117** 691-704.
- Appel S H and Bornstein M B 1964 The application of tissue culture to the study of experimental allergic encephalomyelitis. II. Serum factors responsible for demyelination. *J Exp Med* **119** 303-312.
- Arndt W F and Schneider H A 1960 The extension of the Shwartzman phenomenon to the mouse and some ecological determinants of the single injection reaction. *J Exp Med* **112** 167-186.
- Augustin R and Hayward B J 1962 Grass pollen allergens. IV. The isolation of some of the principal allergens of *Phleum pratense* and *Daelytus glomerata* and their sensitivity spectra in patients. *Immunology* **5** 424-460.
- Austen K F and Brocklehurst W E 1961 Anaphylaxis in chopped guinea pig lung. I. Effect of peptidase substrates and inhibitors. II. Enhancement of the anaphylactic release of histamine and slow reacting substance by certain dibasic aliphatic acids and inhibition by monobasic fatty acids. *J Exp Med* **113** 521-539 and 541-557.
- Baker A R, Bloch K J and Austen K F 1964 In vitro sensitization of guinea pig lung.

\* Additional citations in text can be traced by initials given in the Bibliographic Index.

- by guinea pig 7S<sub>1</sub> antibodies *Fed Proc* 23 403
- Battisto J R and Chase M W 1963 Immunological unresponsiveness to sensitization with simple chemical compounds A search for antibody absorbing depots of allergen *J Exp Med* 118 1021 1035
- Benacerraf B and Gell P G H 1959 Studies on hypersensitivity I Delayed and Arthus type skin reactivity to protein conjugates in guinea pigs *Immunology* 11 53 63
- Benacerraf B Ovary Z Bloch K J and Franklin E C 1963 Properties of guinea pig 7S antibodies I Electrophoretic separation of two types of guinea pig 7S antibodies *J Exp Med* 117 937 949
- Berson F Yalow R Bauman A Rothschild M A and Newerly K 1956 Insulin I<sup>125</sup> metabolism in human subjects demonstration of insulin binding globulin in the circulation of insulin treated subjects *J Clin Invest* 35 170 190
- Billingham R E Silvers W K and Wilson D H 1963 Further studies on adoptive transfer of sensitivity to skin homografts *J Exp Med* 118 397 420
- Billingham R E Silvers W K and Willys K 1963 Sensitivity to homografts of normal tissues and cells *Ann Rev Microbiol* 17 531 564
- Binaghi R Liacopoulos P Halpern B N and Liacopoulos Briot M 1962 Interference of non specific gamma globulins with passive in vitro anaphylactic sensitization of isolated guinea pig intestine *Immunology* 5 204 210
- Bloch K J Kounitsky F M Ovary Z and Benacerraf B 1963 Properties of guinea pig 7S antibodies III Identification of antibodies involved in complement fixation and hemolysis *J Exp Med* 117 965 981
- Bloom H R 1963 Studies on delayed type hypersensitivity including attempts to effect transfer in guinea pigs with subcellular materials Doctoral dissertation The Rockefeller Institute New York NY
- Bloom B R Hamilton L D and Chase M W 1964 Effects of Mitomycin C on the cellular transfer of delayed type hypersensitivity in the guinea pig *Nature* 201 689 691
- Bolton F G 1956 Thrombocytopenic purpura due to quinidine II Serologic mechanisms *Blood* 11 547 564
- Boyden S V 1963 Cytophilic antibody in Amos B and Koprowski H (eds) *Cell Bound Antibodies* Wistar Institute Press Phila pp 7 14
- Boyden S V and Sorkin E 1956 Antigens of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* *Bibl tuberc* 10 17 51
- Boyden S V and Suter W E 1952 Stimulating effect of tuberculin upon production of circulating antibodies in guinea pigs infected with tubercle bacilli *J Exp Med* 68 577 589
- Brent L Brown J H and Medawar P H 1962 Quantitative studies on tissue transplantation immunity VI Hypersensitivity reactions associated with the rejection of homografts *Proc Roy Soc (London) Series B* 156 187 209
- Brent L and Gowland G 1963 On the mechanism of immunological tolerance in Conceptual Advances in Immunology and Oncology 16th Annual Symposium on Fundamental Cancer Research 1962 Hoeber Harper New York pp 355 383
- Brocklehurst W E 1962 Slow reacting substance and related compounds in Kallos P and Waksman H H (eds) *Progress in Allergy* New York Karger 6 539 558
- Brocklehurst W E and Lahiri S C 1962 The production of bradykinin in anaphylaxis *J Physiol (London)* 160 15 16
- Bussard M A consulting editor 1963 *La Tolerance Acquise et La Tolerance Naturelle a L'Egard des Substances Antigéniques* De fines Colloques Internationaux du Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique No 116 CNRS Paris 490 pp
- Carpenter R R 1963 In vitro studies of cellular hypersensitivity I Specific inhibition of migration of cells from adjuvant immunized animals by purified protein derivative and other protein antigens *J Immunol* 91 803 818
- Carr E A Jr 1954 Drug allergy *Pharmacol Rev* 6 365 425
- Chase M W 1945 The cellular transfer of cutaneous hypersensitivity to tuberculin *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 59 134 135
- Chase M W 1959 Immunologic tolerance *Ann Rev Microbiol* 13 349 376
- Cochrane C G Weigle W O and Dixon F J 1959 The role of polymorphonuclear leukocytes in the initiation and cessation of the Arthus vasculitis *J Exp Med* 110 481 494
- Collier H O J Holgate J A Schacter M and Shorley P G 1960 The bronchoconstrictor action of bradykinin in the guinea pig *Brit J Pharmacol* 15 290-297
- Coons A H Leduc E H and Connolly J M 1955 Studies on antibody production I A method for the histochemical demonstration of specific antibody and its application

- to a study of the hyperimmune rabbit *J Exp Med* 102 49 60
- David J R Al Askari ■ Lawrence H S and Thomas L 1964 Delayed hypersensitivity in vitro I The specificity of inhibition of cell migration by antigen II The effect of sensitive cells on normal cells in the presence of antigen III The specificity of hapten protein conjugates in the inhibition of cell migration *J Immunol* 93 264 282
- Dixon F J 1963 The role of antigen antibody complexes in disease *Harvey Lect* 58 21 52
- Dixon F J Feldman J D and Vasquez J J 1961 Experimental glomerulonephritis The pathogenesis of a laboratory model resembling the spectrum of human glomerulonephritis *J Exp Med* 113 899 920
- Elberg S S 1960 Cellular immunity *Bact Rev* 24 67 95
- Erdos E G editor 1963 Structure and function of biologically active peptides bradykinin kallidin and congeners *Ann New York Acad Sc* 104 1-464
- Farah F S Kern M and Eisen H N 1960 Specific inhibition of wheal and erythema responses with univalent haptens and univalent antibody fragments *J Exp Med* 112 1211 1226
- Feigen G A Nielsen C B and Terres G 1962 Effect of antibody concentration and temperature upon physical adsorption and histamine release *J Immunol* 89 717 729
- Fellner H 1919 Ueberimpfungsversuche mit Pirquetschen Papelsubstanzen am Menschen *Wien klin Wschr* 32 936 941
- Fireman P Vannier W E and Goodman H C 1963 The association of skin sensitizing antibody with the  $\beta_A$  globulin in sera from ragweed sensitive patients *J Exp Med* 117 603 620
- Fishman M and Adler F L 1963 Antibody formation initiated *in vitro* II Antibody synthesis in X irradiated recipients of diffusion chambers containing nucleic acid derived from macrophages incubated with antigen *J Exp Med* 117 595 602
- Freund J and Stone S H 1956 Arthus reaction in the mouse and the rat after intralabial injection of antigens *J Immunol* 76 138 145
- Freund J Thompson G E and Lipton M M 1955 Aspermatogenesis anaphylaxis and cutaneous sensitization induced in the guinea pig by homologous testicular extract *J Exp Med* 101 591 604
- Friedman R M Buckler C ■ and Baron S 1961, The effect of aminomethylpteroyl glutamic acid on the development of skin hypersensitivity and on antibody formation in guinea pigs *J Exp Med* 114 173 183
- Gell P G H and Benacerraf B 1959 Studies on hypersensitivity II Delayed hypersensitivity to denatured proteins in guinea pigs *Immunology* 2 64 70
- 1961a Studies on hypersensitivity IV The relationship between contact and delayed sensitivity A study on the specificity of cellular immune reactions *J Exp Med* 113 571 585
- 1961b Delayed hypersensitivity to simple protein antigens in Taltiaferro W H and Humphrey J H (eds) *Advances in Immunology Acad Press* 1 319 343
- Gell P G H and Hinde I T 1954 Observations on the histology of the Arthus reaction and its relation to other known types of skin hypersensitivity *Internat Arch Allergy* 5 23-46
- Germuth F G Jr 1953 A comparative histologic and immunologic study in rabbits of induced hypersensitivity of the serum sickness type *J Exp Med* 97 257 282
- 1956 The role of adrenocortical steroids in infection immunity and hypersensitivity *Pharmacol Rev* 8 1 24
- Germuth F G Maumenee A E Senterfit L II and Pollack A D 1962 Immunohistologic studies on antigen antibody reactions in avascular cornea I Reactions in rabbits actively sensitized to foreign protein *J Exp Med* 115 919 928
- Germuth F G Jr and McKinnon G F 1957 Studies on the biological properties of antigen antibody complexes I Anaphylactic shock induced by soluble antigen antibody complexes in unsensitized normal guinea pigs *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 101 13 43
- Good R A Kelly W D Rotstein J and Varco R L 1962 Immunological deficiency diseases in Kallós P and Waksman B H (eds) *Progress in Allergy Karger New York* 6 187 319
- Good R A Varco R L Aust J ■ and Zak S J 1957 Transplantation studies in patients with agammaglobulinemia *Ann New York Acad Sc* 64 882 924
- Gowans J L 1962 The fate of parental strain small lymphocytes in  $F_1$  hybrid rats *Ann New York Acad Sc* 99 432-455
- Gowans J L McGregor D D Cowen D M and Ford C E 1962 Initiation of immune responses by small lymphocytes *Nature (London)* 196 651 655

- Granger G A Weiser R S and Holmes II 1963 Pathogenesis of acute allogenic disease (AAD) of mice *Fed Proc* 22 p 393 (Abstract)
- Hammer K and Dixon F J 1963 Experimental glomerulonephritis II Immunologic events in the pathogenesis of nephrotoxic serum nephritis in the rat *J Exp Med* 117 1019 1034
- Hasek M Lengerova A and Hrabá T 1961 Transplantation immunity and tolerance in Taliaferro W H and Humphrey J H (eds) *Advances in Immunology* Acad Press New York 1 166
- Hasson M W Bevans M and Seegal M C 1957 Immediate or delayed nephritis in rats produced by duck anti rat kidney sera *Arch Pathol* 64 192 204
- Hawn C V Z and Janeway C A 1947 Histological and serological sequences in experimental hypersensitivity *J Exp Med* 85 571 590
- Haxthausen H 1943 The pathogenesis of allergic eczema elucidated by transplantation experiments on identical twins *Acta dermat venereol* 23 438-457
- Helyer B J and Howie B J 1963 Spontaneous auto immune disease in NZB/BL mice *Brit J Haematol* 9 119 131
- Henle G Henle W Burgoon J S Baske W J Jr and Stokes J Jr 1951 Studies on the prevention of mumps I The determination of susceptibility *J Immunol* 66 535 549
- Heptinstall R H and Germuth F G Jr 1957 Experimental studies on the immunologic and histologic effects of prolonged exposure to antigen I Distribution of allergic lesions following multiple injections of bovine albumin bovine gamma globulin and albumin and globulin together with special reference to the occurrence of granulomatous arteritis *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 100 71 98
- Hess E V Ashworth C T and Ziff M 1962 Transfer of an autoimmune nephrosis in the rat by means of lymph node cells *J Exp Med* 115 421 438
- Hirschhorn K Bach F Kolodny R L Firschein I L and Hashem N 1963 Immune response and mitosis of human peripheral blood lymphocytes in vitro *Science* 142 1185 1186
- Holmes M C Gorrie J and Burnet F M 1961 Transmission by splenic cells of an autoimmune disease occurring spontaneously in mice *Lancet* 2 638 639
- Hoyer L W Good R A and Condie R M 1963 Experimental allergic encephalomyelitis the effect of 6 mercaptopurine *J Exp Med* 117 311 327
- Humphrey J H 1962 Biochemical mediators of antigen antibody reactions *Proc IV Intern Cong Allergology* (E A Brown ed) Pergamon Press NY 71 83
- Humphrey J H and Jaques R 1955 The release of histamine and 5 hydroxytryptamine (serotonin) from platelets by antigen antibody reactions (in vitro) *J Physiol* 128 9 27
- Ishizaka K 1963 Gamma globulin and molecular mechanisms in hypersensitivity reactions in Kallos P and Waksman M H (eds) *Progress in Allergy* Karger New York 7 32 106
- Ishizaka K Dennis E G and Hornbrook M 1964 Presence of reagin and  $\gamma_{1A}$  globulin in saliva *J Allergy* 35 143 148
- Ishizaka K Ishizaka T and Sugahara T 1961 Biological activity of aggregated  $\gamma$  globulin III Production of Arthus like reactions *J Immunol* 86 220 237
- Jadassohn W 1932 *Die Immunobiologie der Haut in Handbuch der Haut und Geschlechtskrankheiten* vol 2 pp 353-478 Berlin Springer
- Jailer J W consulting editor 1955 Hydrocortisone its newer analogs and aldosterone as therapeutic agents *Ann New York Acad Sc* 61 281 636
- James L P and Austen K F 1964 Fatal systemic anaphylaxis in man *New Engl J Med* 270 597 603
- Johanovsky J 1960 Production of pyrogenic substances in the reaction of cells of hypersensitive guinea pigs with antigen in vitro *Immunology* 3 179 189
- Kabat E A and Mayer M M 1961 *Experimental Immunochemistry* (Second Edition) Charles C Thomas Springfield Ill
- Karush F and Eisen H N 1962 A theory of delayed hypersensitivity *Science* 136 1032 1039
- King T P and Norman M S 1962 Isolation studies of allergens from ragweed pollen *Biochemistry (ACS)* 1 709 720
- King T P Norman M S and Connell J T 1964 Isolation and characterization of allergens from ragweed pollen *Biochemistry (ACS)* 3 458-468
- Kirchheimer W F Weiser R S and Van Liew R 1949 Tuberculin Reaction III Transfer of systemic tuberculin sensitivity

- with cells of tuberculous guinea pigs *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 70 99 102
- Koprowski H and Fernandes M V 1962 Auto-sensitization in vitro Contactual agglutination of sensitized lymph node cells in brain tissue culture accompanied by destruction of glial elements *J Exp Med* 116 467 476
- Kourilsky R Choucrour N and Gresland P 1963 Etude comparative des épreuves intradermiques à la tuberculine et au lipo polysaccharide Pm<sub>40</sub> en fonction de l'état des pièces d'exérèse de sujets tuberculeux *Rev Tuberc (Paris)* 27 273 286
- Kunkel H G Muller Eberhard H J Fudenberg H H and Tomas T II 1961 Gamma globulin complexes in rheumatoid arthritis and certain other conditions *J Clin Invest* 40 117 129
- Landsteiner K 1945 *The Specificity of Serological Reactions* (rev ed) Dover Publications Inc New York (reprinted 1962)
- Landsteiner K and Chase M W 1942 Experiments on transfer of cutaneous sensitivity to simple compounds *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 49 688 690
- Landsteiner K and Jacobs J 1936 Studies on the sensitization of animals with simple chemical compounds II *J Exp Med* 64 625 639
- Lawrence H S 1955 The transfer in humans of delayed skin sensitivity to streptococcal M substance and to tuberculin with disrupted leucocytes *J Clin Invest* 34 219 230
- 1957 Similarities between homograft rejection and tuberculin type allergy: a review of recent experimental findings *Ann New York Acad Sc* 64 826 835
- (ed) 1958 *Cellular and Humoral Aspects of the Hypersensitive States* New York Hoeber
- 1960 Some biological and immunological properties of transfer factor in Ciba Foundation Symposium on Cellular Aspects of Immunity Boston Little Brown pp 243 271
- Lawrence H S Al Askari E David J Franklin E C and Zweiman II 1963 Transfer of immunological information in humans with dialysates of leucocyte extracts *Trans Assn Am Physicians* 76 84-89
- Lawrence II S Rapaport F T Converse J M and Tillett W S 1960 Transfer of delayed hypersensitivity to skin homografts with leucocyte extracts in man *J Clin Invest* 39 185 198
- Layton L L Lee S and DeEds F 1961 Diagnosis of human allergy utilizing passive skin sensitization in the monkey *Macaca mris* *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 108 623 626
- Leddy J P Freeman G L, Luz A and Todd R II 1962 Inactivation of the skin sensitizing antibodies of human allergy by thiols *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 111 712
- Leskowitz S 1963 Immunological study of antigenic specificity in delayed hypersensitivity II Delayed hypersensitivity to polytyrosine azobenzenearsonate and its suppression by haptens *J Exp Med* 117 909 923
- Levine II B 1960 Studies on the mechanism of the formation of the penicillin antigens I Delayed allergic cross reactions among penicillin G and its degradation products *J Exp Med* 112 1131 1154
- Levine II B and Ovary Z 1961 Studies on the mechanism of the formation of the penicillin antigen III The N (D $\alpha$  benzylpenicilloyl) group as an antigenic determinant responsible for hypersensitivity *J Exp Med* 114 875 904
- Ley A B Harris J P Brinkley M Liles B Jack J A and Cahan A 1958 Circulating antibody directed against penicillin *Science* 117 1118 1119
- Liacopoulos P Stone S H and Perramant M F 1963 The molecular ratio between tissular antibodies and released histamine during the anaphylactic reaction in isolated guinea pig lung preparations *J Immunol* 91 348 353
- Lichtenstein L M and Osler A G 1963 *In vitro* studies of histamine release from human leukocytes by ragweed antigen *Fed Proc* 22 560
- McCluskey R T Benacerraf II and McCluskey J W 1963 Studies on the specificity of the cellular infiltrate in delayed hypersensitivity reactions *J Immunol* 90 466-477
- Mackaness G B 1962 Cellular resistance to infection *J Exp Med* 116 381-406
- May K J and Weiser R S 1956 The tuberculin reaction VI Studies on the effect of tuberculin on tissue cultures of the corneas of tuberculin sensitive guinea pigs *J Immunol* 77 34-39
- Mayer R L 1931 Die Ursolidiosynkrasie des Meerschweinchens *Arch Dermat & Syph* 163 223 244
- Medawar P B 1958 *The homograft reaction* *Proc Roy Soc (London) Series B* 149 145 166
- Metaxas M N and Metaxas Buchler M 1955 *Studies on the cellular transfer of*

- tuberculin sensitivity in the guinea pig. *J Immunol* 75 333 347
- Moen J K. 1936 Tissue culture studies on bacterial hypersensitivity III The persistence in vitro of the inherent sensitivity in tuberculin of cells from tuberculous animals *J Exp Med* 64 943 951
- Mongar J L. and Schild H O. 1962 Cellular mechanisms in anaphylaxis *Physiol Rev* 42 226-270
- Mota I. 1963 Mast cells and anaphylaxis *Ann New York Acad Sci* 103 264 276
- Movat H Z. Fernando N V P. Uruhara T. and Weiser W J. 1963 Allergic inflammation III The fine structure of collagen fibrils at sites of antigen antibody interaction in Arthus type lesions *J Exp Med* 118 557 564
- Murphy G E. 1963 The characteristic rheumatic lesions of striated and of non-striated or smooth muscle cells of the heart. Genesis of the lesions known as Aschoff bodies and those myogenic components known as Aschoff cells or as Antischkow cells or myocytes *Medicine* 42 73 117
- Murphy G E. and Swift H F. 1950 The induction of rheumatic like cardiac lesions in rabbits by repeated focal infections with group A streptococci *J Exp Med* 91 483 498
- Najarian J S. and Feldman J D. 1963a Passive transfer of transplantation immunity III Inbred guinea pigs *J Exp Med* 117 449-456
- 1963b Passive transfer of contact sensitivity by tritiated thymidine labelled lymphoid cells *J Exp Med* 117 775 781
- 1963c Specificity of passively transferred delayed hypersensitivity *J Exp Med* 118 341 353
- 1963d Passive transfer of transplantation immunity IV Transplantation antibody from extracts of sensitized lymphoid cells *J Exp Med* 118 759 766
- Osler A G. Hawnsiak, M M. Ovary Z. Siqueira M. and Bier O G. 1957 Studies on the mechanism of hypersensitivity phenomena. II The participation of complement in passive cutaneous anaphylaxis of the albino rat *J Exp Med* 106 811 834
- Osler A G. Randall H G. Hill B M. and Ovary Z. 1959 Studies on the mechanism of hypersensitivity phenomena III The participation of complement in the formation of anaphylatoxin *J Exp Med* 110 311 339
- Ovary Z. 1958 Immediate reactions in the skin of experimental animals provoked by antibody antigen interaction in Kallós P (ed) *Progress in Allergy* 5 459 508
- Ovary Z. Benacerraf B. and Bloch K. J. 1963 Properties of guinea pig 7S antibodies II Identification of antibodies involved in passive cutaneous and systemic anaphylaxis *J Exp Med* 117 951 964
- Padawar J. editor 1963 Mast Cells and Basophiles *Ann New York Acad Sci* 103 1-492
- Parker C W. Kern M. and Eisen H N. 1962 Polyfunctional dimethylphenyl haptens as reagents for elicitation of immediate type allergic skin responses *J Exp Med* 115 789 801
- Parker C W. Shapiro J. Kern M. and Eisen H N. 1962 Hypersensitivity to penicillenic acid derivatives in human beings with penicillin allergy *J Exp Med* 115 821 838
- Parker C W. and Thiels J A. 1963a Studies in human penicillin allergy A comparison of various penicilloyl polylysines *J Lab Clin Med* 62 482-491
- 1963b Immunogenicity of penicilloyl polylysines *J Lab Clin Med* 62 998 999
- Paterson P Y. and Bell J. 1962 Studies of induction of allergic encephalomyelitis in rats and guinea pigs without the use of mycobacteria *J Immunol* 89 72 79
- Patterson R. and Sparks D B. 1962 The passive transfer of normal dogs to normal dogs of skin reactivity asthma and anaphylaxis from a dog with spontaneous ragweed pollen hypersensitivity *J Immunol* 88 262 268
- Pereinutter L. Lea D J. Freedman S O. and Schon A H. 1962 Demonstration of precipitating antibodies in sera of ragweed allergic individual by the agar gel technique *Intern Arch Allergy* 20 355 367
- Pincus W B. and Flick J A. 1963 Inhibition of the primary vaccinal lesion and of delayed hypersensitivity by an antimononuclear cell serum *J Infect Dis* 113 15 21
- von Pirquet C. and Schick B. 1905 Die Serumkrankheit Leipzig und Wien Deuticke
- Serum Sickness translation by B. Schick 1951 Baltimore Williams & Wilkins
- Prausnitz C. and Kustner H. 1921 Studien über die Überempfindlichkeit *Zentralbl f Bakt Orig* 86 160 169
- Rapaport F T. Lawrence H S. Miller J W. Pappagarras D. and Smith C. 1960 Transfer of delayed hypersensitivity to coccidioidin in man *J Immunol* 84 358 367
- Rich A R. 1951 The Pathogenesis of Tuberculosis ed 2 Springfield Ill Thomas
- 1948 Hypersensitivity in disease with especial reference to periarthritis nodosa

- rheumatic fever disseminated lupus erythematosus and rheumatoid arthritis Harvey Lect (1946-1947) 42 106 147
- Rich A R and Lewis M M 1932 The nature of allergy in tuberculosis as revealed by tissue culture studies Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 50 115 131
- Richter M and Sehon A H 1960 Studies on the allergens of ragweed pollen a review J Allergy 31 111 133
- Robbins K C Wu H Baram P and Mosko M M 1963 Isolation of nondialyzable allergens and antigens from low ragweed pollen (Ambrosia elatior) J Immunol 91 354 361
- Rockey J H and Kunkel H G 1962 Unusual sedimentation and sulphydryl sensitivity of certain isohemagglutinins and skin sensitizing antibody Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 110 101 105
- Rorsman H 1961 Basophils and other leucocytes in allergic reaction in rabbits Acta Allerg 16 302 328
- Rose N E Reisman R E Witchsky E and Arbesman C E 1962 Serum sickness III Characterization of antigens J Allergy 33 250 258
- Rose N R Kite J H Jr Doebbler T K and Brown R C 1963 *In vitro* reactions of lymphoid cells with thyroid tissue in Amos B and Koprowski H (eds) Cell Bound Antibodies Wistar Institute Press Philadelphia pp 19 31
- Rosenau W 1963 Interaction of lymphoid cells with target cells in tissue culture in Amos B and Koprowski H (eds) Cell Bound Antibodies Wistar Institute Press Philadelphia pp 75 80
- Rosenau W and Moon H D 1961 Lysis of homologous cells by sensitized lymphocytes in tissue culture J Nat Cancer Inst 27 471-483
- Salvin S B 1963 Immunologic aspects of the mycoses in Kallós P and Waksman B H (eds) Progress in Allergy Karger New York 7 213 331
- Salvin S B and Smith R F 1961 The specificity of allergic reactions III Contact hypersensitivity J Exp Med 114 185 194
- Schayer R W 1961 Significance of induced synthesis of histamine in physiology and pathology Chemotherapy (Basel) 3 128 136
- 1963 Induced synthesis of histamine microcirculatory regulation and the mechanism of action of the adrenal glucocorticoid hormones in Kallós P and Waksman B H (eds) Progress in Allergy Karger New York 7 187 212
- Schwartz R S 1963 Alteration of immunity by antimetabolites in Conceptual Advances in Immunology and Oncology 16th Annual Symposium on Fundamental Cancer Research 1962 Hoeber Harper New York pp 137 163
- Schwartz R H and Vaughan J H 1963 Immunologic responsiveness of man to penicillin JAMA 186 1151 1157
- Seegal B C Andreas G A Hsu K C and Zabriskie J B 1965 Fed Proc 24 (Jan Feb)
- Sehon A H 1963 Hemagglutinating factors in allergic sera in Brown E A (ed) Allergy Pergamon Press London pp 300 318
- Shaffer J H LoGrippe G A and Chase M W (eds) 1958 The Mechanisms of Hypersensitivity Boston Little Brown and Company
- Shelley W B 1963 Indirect basophil degranulation test for allergy to penicillin and other drugs JAMA 184 171 178
- Shepard C C and Guinto R S 1963 Immunological identification of foot pad isolates as *Mycobacterium leprae* by lepromin reactivity in leprosy patients J Exp Med 118 195 204
- Siegel B R 1962 Reaginic penicillin sensitivity in Brown E A (ed) Allergy Pergamon Press New York pp 125 130
- Simonsen M 1962 Graft versus host reactions Their natural history and applicability as tools of research in Kallós P and Waksman B H (eds) Progress in Allergy 6 349-467
- Stastny P Stembridge V A and Ziff M 1963 Homologous disease in the adult rat a model for autoimmune disease I General features and cutaneous lesions J Exp Med 118 635 648
- Stetson C A Jr 1951 Similarities in the mechanisms determining the Arthus and Schwartzman phenomena J Exp Med 94 347 358
- 1955 Studies in the mechanism of the Schwartzman phenomenon Similarities between reactions to endotoxins and certain reactions of bacterial allergy, J Exp Med 101 421 436
- Stetson C A and Jensen E 1960 Humoral aspects of the immune response to autografts Ann New York Acad Sci 87 249 257
- Stone S H 1961 Transfer of allergic encephalomyelitis by lymph node cells in inbred guinea pigs Science 134 619 620
- Stone S H Liacopoulos Briot M Halpern B and Neveu T to be published

- Sulzberger M B 1940 *Dermatologic Allergy* Springfield Ill Thomas
- Tennenbaum J I Patterson R and Pruzansky J J 1963 Canine antisera analogous to human allergic and blocking antisera *Science* 142 589 590
- Tokuda ■ and Weiser R S 1961 Studies on the role of serotonin and mast cells in anaphylaxis of the mouse produced with soluble antigen antibody complexes *J Immunol* 86 292 301
- Turk J L and Stone S H 1963 Implications of the cellular changes in lymph nodes during the development and inhibition of delayed type hypersensitivity in Amos B and Koprowski ■ (eds) *Cell Bound Antibodies* Wistar Institute Press Philadelphia pp 51 59
- Uhr J W Salvin S H and Pappenheimer A M Jr 1957 Delayed hypersensitivity II Induction of hypersensitivity in guinea pigs by means of antigen antibody complexes *J Exp Med* 105 11 23
- Vakilzadeh J Vandiviere M R and Vandiviere H M 1962 Tuberculo proteins in experimental tuberculo allergy *Am Rev Resp Dis* 85 40-50
- VanArsdel P P and Middleton E 1961 The effect of hyposensitization on the in vitro histamine release by specific antigen *J Allergy* 32 348 356
- VanArsdel P P and Sells C J 1963 Antigenic histamine release from passively sensitized human leukocytes *Science* 141 1190 1191
- VanArsdel P P Tobe A D and Pasnick L J 1963 Association of hemagglutinating antibodies with skin sensitivity in penicillin allergy *J Allergy* 34 526 534
- Voisin G Delaunay A and Barber M 1951 Lesions testiculaires provoquées chez le cobaye par injection d'extraits de testicules homologues *C R Acad sci* 232 1264 1266
- Waksman H H 1958 Cell lysis and related phenomena in hypersensitive reactions including immunohematologic diseases in Kallos P (ed) *Progress in Allergy* Karger New York 5 349 458
- Waksman H H Arbouys S and Arnason H G 1961 The use of specific lymphocyte antisera to inhibit hypersensitive reactions of the delayed type *J Exp Med* 114 997 1022
- deWeck A and Brun R 1956 de l'eczéma expérimental IV A propos de l'histologie des réactions obtenues par transfert de la sensibilité *Acta dermat venerol* 36 360 368
- Wesslen T 1952 Passive transfer of tuberculin hypersensitivity by viable lymphocytes from the thoracic duct *Acta tuberc scand* 26 38 54
- White R G Jenkins G C and Wilkinson P C 1963 The production of skin sensitizing antibody in the guinea pig *Internat Arch Allergy* 22 156 165
- Wilhelm D L 1962 The mediation of increased vascular permeability in inflammation *Pharmacol Rev* 14 251 280
- Wilhelm R E 1961 The newer anti allergic agents *Med Clin North Amer* 45 887 906
- Winkler G F 1964 *In vitro* demyelination of peripheral nerve induced with sensitized cells in Conference on Research in Demyelinating Diseases New York Academy of Sciences in press
- Yagi Y Maier P Pressman D Arbesman C E and Reisman R ■ 1963 The presence of the ragweed binding antibodies in the  $\beta_A$ ,  $\beta_M$  and  $\gamma$  globulins of the sensitive individuals *J Immunol* 91 83 89
- Youmans G P 1963 The pathogenic atypical mycobacteria *Ann Rev Microbiol* 17 473 494



## 12

### Endotoxins

The injection of cell walls of gram negative bacteria into experimental animals is followed by an array of toxic effects. These include fever, leukopenia, skin reactions, the Shwartzman phenomenon, shock, and death, depending on the dose of material and the route of its administration. The active material or endotoxin can be extracted readily from intact bacteria or from purified cell wall preparations. Endotoxin preparations derived from one bacterial species may differ quantitatively in potency from preparations from other bacteria, but the effects produced by all endotoxins are qualitatively the same. The lethal dose of endotoxin for most laboratory animals is of the order of 1 mg/kg of body weight, while the intravenous injection of less than a microgram causes a brisk fever in man, rabbit, and other species. Because of the possibility that bacterial endotoxins are involved in various human disease states and because of the variety of the effects which they produce (Thomas 1954), much investigation has been carried out on the chemical nature of endotoxins and on the mechanisms by which they act.

Extraction of gram negative bacterial cell walls with trichloroacetic acid or aqueous phenol yields a toxic macromolecular complex of protein, lipid, and polysaccharide with a molecular weight of the order of 1 to 10 million. Protein can be eliminated from such preparations without apparent loss of toxicity, and much of the lipid can

be removed from the resultant lipopolysaccharide without significant loss in endotoxin activity (Ribi *et al*, 1964), but no truly lipid free preparations have shown endotoxin activity.

The polysaccharide of the endotoxin is the somatic or O antigen of the bacteria. Purified preparations of these polysaccharides retain their antigenicity, and analysis of the products of hydrolysis of these has provided a basis for the chemical interpretation of their immunologic specificities. In general, the polysaccharides of all endotoxins contain D glucosamine, heptose, and glucose, most also contain one or more additional sugars such as pentoses, desoxyhexoses, deoxyhexoses, mannose, or galactosamine. The patterns in which these sugars occur have permitted the arrangement of *Salmonella* into a system of chemotypes (Kauffmann *et al*, 1960) which corresponds nicely to the older serotypic classification.

It has been suggested that the toxicity of the lipopolysaccharide endotoxin resides primarily in the lipid and that the polysaccharide moiety merely serves a carrier function (Westphal and Lüderitz 1954), but little evidence has been forthcoming to support this view. Indeed, there is some doubt that endotoxins possess any intrinsic pharmacologic activity or toxicity as do exotoxins. It has been pointed out that in many ways the effects produced by the injection of bacterial endotoxins into normal animals resemble the effects produced by the

injection of other antigens into specifically hypersensitive animals (Stetson 1955) For example the biphasic febrile response of normal rabbits to endotoxin is quantitatively and qualitatively much like that of tuberculin sensitive rabbits to injections of tuberculo protein The skin reaction of normal rabbits to the intradermal injection of endotoxin closely resembles in its timing and histopathologic features the classic combined allergic reaction of Gell and Hinde (1954) The transient leukopenia thrombocytopenia and vasomotor phenomena seen during systematic reactions to endotoxin have their counterpart in typical anaphylaxis and Weil and Spink (1957) have pointed out many similarities between anaphylactic shock and shock caused by endotoxin

The Schwartzman phenomena (Schwartzman 1937) once were considered to be manifestations of a unique toxic property of endotoxins In the local Schwartzman phenomenon an intradermal injection of endotoxin is followed in several hours by an intravenous injection resulting in severe hemorrhagic necrosis at the site of the intradermal injection The generalized Schwartzman phenomenon is produced by 2 intravenous injections of endotoxin separated by a suitable time interval and results in the production of massive bilateral renal cortical necrosis It has been possible to reproduce both of these phenomena with other antigens in suitably sensitized or immunized animals (Lee 1963)

Therefore it may be that endotoxins possess biologic activity only by virtue of their antigenicity Obviously relevant to this problem is the demonstration by Schaedler and Dubos (1961 1964) that the reactivity of mice to endotoxins is very much dependent on or conditioned by the bacterial flora of their intestinal tracts Mice reared in an environment free of the usual enteric pathogens lack normal susceptibility to endotoxin On exposure of such mice to gram negative bacteria, they quite promptly become susceptible to the lethal effect of endotoxin These observations may indicate that susceptibility to endotoxin is due to sensitization by somatic antigens of intestinal bacteria The natural antibodies to somatic antigens of various enterobacteria probably

arise as a consequence of active antigenic stimulation of the host by intestinal bacterial antigens as newborn animals or animals reared under germ free conditions have markedly reduced levels of such natural antibodies A number of considerations suggest that these antibodies may be the mediators of the various biologic activities of endotoxin (Landy and Weidanz 1964, Lee and Stetson 1960)

The repeated injection of sublethal amounts of an endotoxin results in a remarkable state of tolerance in which further injections of the same or any other endotoxin fail to produce their usual effects While this phenomenon has some operational and other similarities to the phenomenon of allergic desensitization the parallelism is not exact Endotoxin tolerance appears to depend in large part on the development of a marked increase in the phagocytic capacity of the fixed cells of the reticuloendothelial system with a correspondingly rapid clearance of endotoxin from the circulation Blockade of the reticuloendothelial system by Thorotrast or other colloidal material promptly restores the susceptibility to endotoxin (Bee son 1947) However tolerance also seems to depend to an appreciable extent on the prompt and vigorous humoral antibody response occasioned by the repeated exposures to the highly antigenic endotoxin Serum of tolerant animals is capable of conferring partial tolerance on normal recipients (Freedman 1960) Thus the more rapid removal of endotoxin from the circulation of a tolerant animal is probably due to prompt interaction with antibody with subsequent phagocytosis of the antigen antibody complexes The relative importance of the humoral and the cellular factors is still a matter of controversy but there is now no doubt that a tolerant state develops in man during typhoid fever (Greisman *et al* 1961) and the mechanism of endotoxin tolerance has become of more than academic interest

This brief account has made no mention of the capacity of bacterial endotoxin to elicit tumor hemorrhage to enhance the antibody response to unrelated antigens to initiate intravascular coagulation and to induce severe functional impairment of the

## 12

## Endotoxins

The injection of cell walls of gram negative bacteria into experimental animals is followed by an array of toxic effects. These include fever, leukopenia, skin reactions, the Schwartzman phenomenon, shock and death depending on the dose of material and the route of its administration. The active material or endotoxin can be extracted readily from intact bacteria or from purified cell wall preparations. Endotoxin preparations derived from one bacterial species may differ quantitatively in potency from preparations from other bacteria but the effects produced by all endotoxins are qualitatively the same. The lethal dose of endotoxin for most laboratory animals is of the order of 1 mg/Kg of body weight while the intravenous injection of less than a microgram causes a brisk fever in man, rabbit and other species. Because of the possibility that bacterial endotoxins are involved in various human disease states and because of the variety of the effects which they produce (Thomas 1954) much investigation has been carried out on the chemical nature of endotoxins and on the mechanisms by which they act.

Extraction of gram negative bacterial cell walls with trichloroacetic acid or aqueous phenol yields a toxic macromolecular complex of protein, lipid and polysaccharide with a molecular weight of the order of 1 to 10 million. Protein can be eliminated from such preparations without apparent loss of toxicity, and much of the lipid can

be removed from the resultant lipopolysaccharide without significant loss in endotoxin activity (Ribi *et al.* 1964) but no truly lipid free preparations have shown endotoxin activity.

The polysaccharide of the endotoxin is the somatic or O antigen of the bacteria. Purified preparations of these polysaccharides retain their antigenicity and analysis of the products of hydrolysis of these has provided a basis for the chemical interpretation of their immunologic specificities. In general the polysaccharides of all endotoxins contain D-glucosamine, heptose and glucose, most also contain one or more additional sugars such as pentoses, desoxyhexoses, deoxyhexoses, mannose or galactosamine. The patterns in which these sugars occur have permitted the arrangement of *Salmonella* into a system of chemotypes (Kauffmann *et al.* 1960) which corresponds nicely to the older serotypic classification.

It has been suggested that the toxicity of the lipopolysaccharide endotoxin resides primarily in the lipid and that the polysaccharide moiety merely serves a carrier function (Westphal and Luderitz 1954) but little evidence has been forthcoming to support this view. Indeed there is some doubt that endotoxins possess any intrinsic pharmacologic activity or toxicity as do exotoxins. It has been pointed out that in many ways the effects produced by the injection of bacterial endotoxins into normal animals resemble the effects produced by the

## 13

## General Host Responses to Infection

Our purpose in this chapter is to describe and characterize certain physiologic reactions produced by infection in the mammalian host, particularly in man. These host responses are fever and other alterations in control of body temperature, circulatory changes, hematologic abnormalities, subjective feelings such as weakness and malaise, and a miscellany of hormonal and other metabolic reactions. The immune response and the actions of bacterial exotoxins are reasonably classified as systemic reactions to infection but are more specific than these others and are dealt with in detail elsewhere in this book.

In a sense these systemic responses to infection can be regarded as the actual substance of disease. They underlie the sensations which the individual human patient recognizes collectively as illness and they are the basis for the manifestations recognized by the clinician as the signs and symptoms of disease.

The various local events initiated by implantation, survival and replication of pathogenic microorganisms in the tissues of a susceptible host have been detailed in preceding chapters. Inflammation and attendant phenomena such as phagocytosis are inevitable biochemical and biophysical resultants of the interaction of parasite and host. However, it is most difficult to avoid a teleologic or perhaps pragmatic concept of them as mechanisms of host resistance or defenses. The local defense is often

so efficient that no injury is recognized or that the only stigma is a subsequent immunologic response. In other words, the infectious process remains *subclinical*. At other times local inflammation becomes grossly evident and signals disease by erythema, pain, swelling and impairment of function. Finally, in a minority of instances, when local defenses are insufficient to contain the parasite or its products, the general responses of the host come into play, clinical illness is recognized and infection has evolved into *systemic disease*.

The local inflammatory response is non-specific in the sense that its general pattern is the same for injury produced by microbes, antigens to which the host is allergic, chemical toxins or physical trauma. Similarly, any or all of the systemic reactions of the infected host can be elicited by noninfectious disorders ranging from thrombosis to neoplasia. The ease with which local exudation and phagocytosis are interpreted as host defenses contrasts with the difficulty experienced in demonstrating that many of the general responses described below have a role in protecting the host.

## FEVER

In man and in many animals the febrile response is a regular accompaniment of systemic disorders of many etiologies involving pathologic processes of almost every type. So frequent is fever and so easily is it detected

reticuloendothelial system A comprehensive source of more detailed information concerning bacterial endotoxins has been provided recently by Braun and Landy (1964)

## REFERENCES

- Beeson P B 1947 Tolerance to bacterial pyrogens II Role of the reticulo endothelial system *J Exp Med* 86 39-44
- Freedman H H 1960 Further studies on passive transfer of tolerance to pyrogenicity of bacterial endotoxin The febrile and leucopenic responses *J Exp Med* 112 619-634
- Gell P G H and Hinde I T 1954 Observations on the histology of the Arthus reaction and its relation to other known types of skin hypersensitivity *Int Arch Allergy* 5 23-46
- Greisman S E Woodward T E Hornick R B and Snyder M J 1961 Role of endotoxin in typhoid fever *Bull NY Acad Med* 37 493-498
- Kauffmann F Luderitz O Stierlin H and Westphal O 1960 Zur Immunochemie der O Antigene von Enterobacteriaceae I Analyse der Zuckerbausteine von Salmonella O Antigenen *Zbl Bakt [Orig]* 178 442-458
- Landy M and Braun W 1964 Bacterial Endotoxins Rutgers Univ Press New Brunswick N J 1964
- Landy M and Weidanz W P 1964 Natural antibodies against gram negative bacteria in Bacterial Endotoxins Landy M and Braun W (eds) Rutgers Univ Press New Brunswick N J 1964
- Lee L 1963 Antigen antibody reaction in the pathogenesis of bilateral renal cortical necrosis *J Exp Med* 117 365-376
- Lee L and Stetson C A Jr, 1960 Studies on the mechanism of the Schwartzman phenomenon Accelerated cutaneous reactivity to bacterial endotoxins *J Exp Med* 111 761-772
- Ribi E Anacker E L Fukushi K Haskins W T, Landy M, and Milner K C 1964 Relationship of chemical composition to biological activity in Bacterial Endotoxins Landy M and Braun W (eds) Rutgers Univ Press New Brunswick N J 1964
- Schaedler R W and Dubos R J 1961 The susceptibility of mice to bacterial endotoxins *J Exp Med* 113 559-570
- Schaedler R W and Dubos R J 1964 Relationship of intestinal flora to resistance to endotoxin in Bacterial Endotoxins Landy M and Braun W (eds) Rutgers Univ Press New Brunswick N J 1964
- Swartzman G 1937 Phenomenon of Local Tissue Reactivity and Its Immunological Pathological and Clinical Significance Hoeber New York
- Stetson C A Jr 1955 Studies on the mechanism of the Schwartzman phenomenon Similarities between reactions to endotoxins and certain reactions of bacterial allergy *J Exp Med* 101 421-436
- Thomas L 1954 The physiological disturbances produced by endotoxins *Ann Rev Physiol* 16 467-490
- Weil M H and Spink W W 1957 A comparison of shock due to endotoxin with anaphylactic shock *J Lab Clin Med* 50 501-515
- Westphal O and Luderitz O 1954 Chemische Erforschung von Lipopolysacchariden gramnegativer Bakterien *Angew Chem* 66 407-417

importance of humoral mechanisms in the resistance

The importance of avoiding endotoxin contamination in the experimental study of fever and the additional usefulness of endotoxin fever as a standard of comparison in the laboratory will be evident in the discussion to follow

Finally the fact that endotoxin is injurious to tissue must be borne in mind The delay between injection of endotoxin and the onset of fever led Beeson to suggest some years ago that the pyrogenic action of endotoxin might be secondary to tissue injury and that the lag period might be the time required for release of endogenous fever producing material from injured cells

**Endogenous Pyrogens** The extensive work of Menkin on inflammation included the isolation from sterile exudates of a substance *pyrexin* capable of producing high fever in animals Menkin postulated that pyrexin was the product of tissue injury responsible for the fever that accompanies many inflammatory states Comparison by Bennett and Beeson of the properties of pyrexin and of ordinary bacterial endotoxins indicated that their activities were identical in every respect and made it probable that that pyrexin owed its potency to endotoxin contamination The properties of pyrexin are unlike those of any of the endogenous pyrogenic substances that have been isolated in recent years

Proceeding on the assumption that normal tissues might contain a pyrogenic material which is released at the time of injury Bennett and Beeson attempted to extract fever producing substances from the tissues of the normal rabbit Of all cells and tissues tested only the polymorphonuclear leukocyte was found to contain a pyrogenic substance Extracts of polymorphonuclear leukocytes produced a brief monophasic fever after a very short lag period and animals continued to respond to daily injections of this material with the same amount of fever Furthermore leukocyte pyrogen was fully active in animals made tolerant to bacterial endotoxin and was destroyed by mild heat

ing  
Atkins and Wood searched for endogenous pyrogenic substances in animals given

endotoxin Immediately after injection circulating blood was found to contain a pyrogen which resembled in every respect the endotoxin originally injected The blood then became nonpyrogenic but somewhat later another pyrogenic material appeared in the blood usually reaching a peak 2 hours after injection This second pyrogen usually referred to now as endogenous serum pyrogen was found to possess properties entirely different from those of the endotoxin originally injected Indeed by every biologic test it was identical in activity with leukocytic pyrogen Since one of the initial responses of an animal to injection of bacterial endotoxin is the development of a profound neutropenia it was suggested that endotoxin produced its febrile response by initial injury to leukocytes and possibly to other tissues with release of an endogenous tissue pyrogen which had a direct action on the cerebral temperature regulating centers By perfusing the carotid artery King and Wood were able to confirm a direct action of endogenous pyrogen on the brain

Additional studies indicate that the febrile responses to pneumococcal infection to hemolytic streptococcal infection to injection of myxoviruses to injection of antigen into hypersensitive animals and to injection of certain strains of staphylococci are mediated by an endogenous pyrogenic material which appears in the serum of the febrile animal and remains there throughout the febrile period While an initial neutropenia is not as striking in all of these experimental fevers as it is with endotoxin there is ample reason to believe that an important source of the serum pyrogen is the polymorphonuclear leukocyte

Recently Atkins and Snell have demonstrated thermogenic substances in normal rabbit tissues including skeletal muscle liver and kidney The pyrogens are demonstrable only after extraction of relatively large amounts of tissue and the febrile response does not completely imitate that obtained with leukocyte extract However the fact that pyrogen may be derived from cells other than the polymorphonuclear leukocyte is now established and many of the fevers in disorders that appear to involve no direct injury to leukocytes eventually may be explainable on this basis

that it is one of the first signs looked for when illness is suspected. Practically speaking fever can be regarded as one of the dividing lines between health and disease.

### PYROGENIC AGENTS

Some bacteria, fungi, and viruses produce high fever in animals or man. However, other microorganisms are lacking in any immediate pyrogenic activity; furthermore, fever is a common accompaniment of diseases that apparently do not involve invasion of the body by a biologic agent. The obvious common denominator in disease is injury to tissues and cells. Consequently, it has long been believed that fever is the result of release of endogenous pyrogenic substances from injured tissues. Evidence accumulated in recent years supports the existence of this mechanism, particularly in fevers accompanying infectious diseases, but detailed knowledge of the nature of the derangement of temperature regulation in many disorders is incomplete.

**Bacterial Pyrogens.** Until the 3rd decade of this century, there had been many reports that seemed to support unequivocally the hypothesis that the products of injured tissue were responsible for the fever of disease. However, the discovery by Florence Seibert of bacterial pyrogens cast doubt on the significance of all earlier demonstrations of thermogenic activity in biologic materials and furthermore made it feasible to design valid experiments on the pathogenesis of fever. It had been known for a long time that the intravenous infusion of a wide variety of fluids such as saline or glucose was likely to be followed by a shaking chill and several hours of fever. Bacterial etiology of these fevers had been ruled out since sterile fluids retained pyrogenicity; the tendency was to attribute injection fevers to an intrinsic property of the solution in use. Seibert and her colleagues demonstrated that pyrogenic fluids contained small amounts of bacterial products and that the pyrogenic activity of these materials was unaffected by ordinary means of sterilization, including autoclaving. These materials, formerly referred to as bacterial pyrogens, are now known to be the endotoxins of gram-negative organisms. Modern methods for the preparation of fluids for

intravenous use are dependent on the avoidance of contamination because of the extreme difficulties encountered in removing these substances once they have made their appearance. Bacterial endotoxins have been purified and are known to be lipopolysaccharides. Not only are they capable of inducing high fever when injected into man or animals, but also they possess other biologic activities, including the induction of severe leukopenia, hemorrhagic necrosis (Shwartzman phenomenon), shock, and even death (Chap. 12).

The ubiquity, the heat stability, and the potency of these thermogenic bacterial products made it evident that the search for endogenous pyrogens released from injured tissue must employ techniques that would avoid endotoxins. It became mandatory for investigators to demonstrate that any so-called product of tissue injury with pyrogenic properties was not simply contaminated with exogenous bacterial substances.

**Endotoxin Fever.** The febrile response of most laboratory animals to endotoxin is rather characteristic. There is a delay between injection of the material directly into the circulation and onset of fever. In man, this lag period may be as long as 90 minutes, but in most animals it is somewhat shorter. With daily injections of the same dose of endotoxin, there develops a state of resistance to its pyrogenic effect, and this tolerance persists as long as regular injections are continued. When injections cease, the ability to respond with high fever is restored quickly. The injection of particulate materials such as certain dye suspensions of carbon or colloidal thorium dioxide (Thorotrast) increases the susceptibility of the normal or tolerant animal to the effects of endotoxin. Endotoxin tolerance is not dependent on the classic antibody response and is nonspecific in the sense that an animal made resistant to an endotoxin from one bacterial species will also exhibit tolerance to endotoxins from nonrelated organisms. Tolerant animals clear injected endotoxin from the bloodstream more rapidly than do normal animals; the clearance involves the reticuloendothelial cells of the liver and the spleen. However, tolerance can be passively transferred by serum (the transfer is only partial but is definite), indicating the possible

mals with chronic pyelonephritis and in human subjects with chronic urinary tract infection produced by gram negative bacilli.

The injection of endotoxin into the circulation or its release from organisms multiplying in tissue is almost certainly followed by injury to polymorphonuclear leukocytes and possibly to other cells with the release of pyrogenic material. The endogenous pyrogen or pyrogens then apparently act directly on the cerebral centers governing body temperature and fever follows. If the number of circulating granulocytes is reduced by administration of nitrogen mustard the amount of serum pyrogen demonstrable after infection of endotoxin is reduced materially (see Gillman, Bornstein and Wood for summary of all studies). However such results are difficult to interpret in view of the debilitating effect of nitrogen mustard and the reduction in febrile response is perhaps not specific.

Injection of endotoxin into the lateral ventricle of dogs or into the subarachnoid space of rabbits elicits high fevers which come on after little or no lag period which are unaccompanied by peripheral leukopenia and to which animals develop no tolerance despite repeated injections (Bennett, Petersdorf and Keene). While further work is needed on this subject it seems likely that the action of endotoxin in producing fever may involve more than one mechanism and that endotoxin may be able to act directly on the cerebral centers.

#### THE SIGNIFICANCE OF FEVER IN INFECTIOUS DISEASE

Fever is no more than a physical sign of disease and therefore can be interpreted only in light of all information available to a physician. However close attention to the type of fever and to certain accompaniments of fever can yield valuable diagnostic information. The fever in many infectious diseases is so irregular that it offers little help in diagnosis but in some instances it can serve as a reliable guide to the physician in planning diagnostic procedures in evaluating therapeutic response and in indicating relapse or recurrence.

Important points to be noticed in evaluating fever as a physical sign are height

diurnal pattern, type of temperature curve, association with bradycardia, association with chills and the occurrence of certain complications.

**Height of Fever.** Very high fevers may be seen in patients with meningitis, poliomyelitis, viral encephalitis and of course in other disorders of the central nervous system. The hyperthermia observed under these conditions probably is a result of some direct involvement of the hypothalamus by the disease process.

When the oral temperature in an adult with an infectious disease exceeds 105° F one should suspect the possibility of tuberculous malaria, relapsing fever or a gram negative bacillary infection such as tularemia, brucellosis, typhoid fever or pyelonephritis.

There are some infections in which fever is not as prominent as might be expected. For example, the febrile response in diphtheria is usually less than 102° F and in the presence of pharyngitis with high fever streptococcal or viral infection is more likely. Certain types of cutaneous ulceration such as anthrax and sporotrichosis are characterized by low grade fever and thus may help the physician to differentiate these from tularemia or glanders. Among mycotic diseases, cryptococcosis is characteristically an afebrile disease.

**Type of Temperature Curve.** Elevation of body temperature by disease usually does not interfere with the normal diurnal variation and fevers are likely to be highest in the evening hours and lowest in the morning. There are several other types of fever curve that maintain enough regularity in pattern to allow classification.

When body temperature remains more or less continuously elevated throughout the 24 hours of the day the patient is said to have a *continuous* or a *sustained* fever. This type of fever is characteristic of typhoid, pneumococcal pneumonia, rickettsial infections and certain viral diseases such as psittacosis.

An *intermittent* or *quotidian* fever shows daily elevations with return of the temperature curve to the normal base line at least once during each 24 hour period. If the patient's fever shows variations of more than 1° F during the 24 hour period of the day but does not return to the base line it is



The studies of Collins and Wood, Berlin and Wood and Kaiser and Wood have led to further understanding of the mechanism of production or release of leukocytic pyrogen. The pyrogen is actively produced by leukocytes, and under appropriate environmental conditions *in vitro* leukocytes will continue to discharge increasing amounts of pyrogen into the suspending medium for several hours. The production of this pyrogenic material involves active metabolic processes within the cell and its release from the cell is dependent on appropriate concentrations of electrolytes particularly potassium. The pyrogen itself has not yet been completely purified but according to Rafter it appears to be a protein. The inflammatory response apparently activates polymorphonuclear leukocytes to produce and release pyrogen. Incubation of endotoxin and polymorphonuclear leukocytes *in vitro* results in production of leukocytic pyrogen.

There is a degree of species specificity for both leukocytic and serum endogenous pyrogens. This is not absolute but for example human leukocytes will not produce fever in rabbits. The failure of investigators in the past to observe pyrogenic activity when inflammatory exudates of human origin were tested in laboratory animals is perhaps explainable on this basis.

**Endogenous Pyrogens in Man.** The best confirmation of a role of endogenous pyrogenic substances in the pathogenesis of fever in man comes from Snell's studies of sterile exudates from patients with fever. With few exceptions the reinjection at a later time of these materials into the patient produced a sharp febrile response. The pyrogenic activity was heat labile and it disappeared from body fluids with the subsidence of the pathologic process responsible for the fever. Thus far attempts to demonstrate a pyrogen in human blood have been unsuccessful but it is possible that this failure may be related to dosage. Indeed in animal experiments the detection of endogenous pyrogen in serum is sometimes difficult and requires the use of large volumes in testing.

**Steroid Fever.** Kappas and his associates have shown that a certain number of steroid hormones are pyrogenic when injected intramuscularly in man and there is some evi-

dence for a role of these substances in rare instances of unexplained long-continued fever. However, these materials produce no fever in laboratory animals and it is doubtful that they play a role in fever accompanying infectious disease. Shulman has suggested that their pyrogenic action (which is evident only after intramuscular administration and not after intravenous infusion in man) may be secondary to extensive inflammation at the injection site.

#### THE ROLE OF ENDOTOXIN IN FEVER

An obvious possibility recognized for a long time is a role of endotoxin in the pathogenesis of the fever produced by gram-negative organisms. Inconclusive results were obtained in early studies conducted on the assumption that convalescence from a gram-negative bacillary infection should be accompanied by a demonstrable tolerance to the pyrogenic action of endotoxin if the endotoxin were responsible for the fever of the disease. The recent studies by Greisman and Hornick on the pathogenesis of typhoid fever in volunteers have clarified the situation considerably. Typhoid confers tolerance to the pyrogenic effect of the endotoxin of the typhoid bacillus and to endotoxins from other species. This tolerance is demonstrable during convalescence but not during the active phase of disease. Indeed during active infection there is a hyperactivity to injected endotoxin (of homologous or heterologous origin). Presumably the patient with typhoid is exposed to a constant infusion of endotoxin and the effects of this type of exposure may be very different from those seen with intermittent injections. Even in volunteers made tolerant by daily injections of endotoxin before the induction of typhoid fever, tolerance disappears during the active infection but reappears immediately when disease is terminated by chemotherapy. Further studies of these patients by Greisman and Wagner have shown that tolerance to the pyrogenic effect of endotoxin is accompanied by an increased ability to clear the bloodstream of endotoxin and that this increased clearance is specific for endotoxins and does not apply to other materials such as colloidal gold, etc.

Unequivocal tolerance to endotoxin has also been demonstrated by McCabe in ani-

diseases may be explained by some ancillary protective effect of these illnesses against infection by the herpes virus. Certainly the factors underlying the differential incidence of herpes labialis in various febrile diseases could be explored profitably.

Fever alone is capable of producing enough disturbance in cerebral function to result in delirium. Individual susceptibility to this complication of fever is quite variable. Preexisting disease of the brain (cerebral arteriosclerosis, alcoholism) increases the likelihood of febrile delirium. Disorientation is particularly common in typhoid, psittacosis and rickettsial disease.

A rather common complication of febrile illness in children is a convulsion. While children with a family history of idiopathic epilepsy are somewhat more susceptible to febrile convulsions, these do not necessarily herald the onset of epilepsy or some serious disorder of the nervous system.

Ordinarily elevation of body temperature is accompanied by a proportional increase in pulse rate. Relative bradycardia is seen in typhoid fever, tularemia and psittacosis, but it is by no means limited to these infections. Individuals with acute meningitis may show impressive slowing of the pulse, presumably as a result of increase in intracranial pressure. A disproportionate bradycardia is also observed with considerable frequency in infectious mononucleosis, mumps, dengue, primary atypical pneumonia and yellow fever (Faget's sign).

Patients with febrile disease often complain of headache, but this is not invariable, and fever itself is probably not responsible for the cephalgia. Studies of the headache accompanying fever induced by the intravenous injection of typhoid vaccine have indicated that the pain is a result of dilatation and stretching of the large arterial vessels at the base of the brain, similar to that seen in histamine headache. It has also been shown that if one increases the cerebrospinal fluid pressure, the intensity of headache is reduced.

Whether fever alone is actually responsible for physical discomfort is an extremely difficult question. It is well known that some patients with tuberculosis feel surprisingly well in the presence of high fever.

Indeed, this characteristic of the febrile response in tuberculosis has been referred to as *spes phthisica*. The fact that antipyretic drugs are also analgesics makes it very difficult to separate the symptoms of elevation of body temperature from the discomfort accompanying invasion of the body by the responsible infectious agent.

#### FEVER AS A PROTECTIVE MECHANISM

Fever has sometimes been regarded as one of the body's protective responses to invasion by microorganisms. The wisdom of using antipyretic drugs to reduce fever has been questioned from time to time on this basis. Furthermore, induction of fever by artificial means has been shown to have great therapeutic benefit in some diseases, including syphilis of the central nervous system, ophthalmic inflammations and certain types of arthritis.

An extensive review by Bennett and Nicastri of the available evidence, both experimental and clinical, failed completely to give any support to the concept that elevation of body temperature *per se* exerts a protective effect or plays any important part in host defense. On the other hand, the harmful effects of hyperthermia are well substantiated, and it is obvious that the increased demands on the heart accompanying elevation of body temperature may exert a deleterious effect in individuals with heart disease. Therefore, there is little question about the advisability of reducing body temperature in many patients with fever.

#### CIRCULATORY CHANGES

Many hemodynamic changes observed in animals or patients with infectious disease are directly related to changes in body temperature. Others result from direct damage to the heart, the pericardium, the vessels or the central nervous system by the infecting agent or its products. When myocardial damage is already present, high fever or the stress of infection may lead to cardiac decompensation. For example, individuals with mitral stenosis sometimes develop heart failure in the course of relatively trivial viral respiratory illness. Whether these infections exert their seemingly dispropor-

referred to as a *remittent* fever. Very wide swings of temperature of a remittent or intermittent pattern constitute a *hectic* or *septic* fever. Remittent fevers are characteristic of patients with brucellosis, and the fever of typhoid is sometimes mildly remittent rather than sustained.

Of course hectic fevers are characteristic of pyogenic infections (particularly when there is localized suppuration) tuberculosis and malaria. A hectic temperature curve which shows 2 distinct spikes during the 24 hours of the day is referred to as a *double quotidian* curve and is a classic sign of gonococcal endocarditis or kala azar. At the present time in the United States a double quotidian curve is more suggestive of miliary tuberculosis than anything else although many of these patients will show the pattern for only a few days a time.

Occasionally one sees a hectic temperature curve in which the normal diurnal gradient seems to have been reversed. The patient will show high spiking fever in the morning hours. This pattern so-called *typhus inversus* is highly suggestive of tuberculosis.

*Recurrent* or *relapsing* fevers consist of short febrile episodes of a few days interspersed with similar periods of normal temperature. Rat bite fever caused by *Spirillum minus*, relapsing fever (*Borrelia*), malaria and chronic meningococcemia commonly elicit this type of febrile response. Recurrent fevers are not infrequent in patients with tuberculosis and are also seen in the type of brucellosis which occurs in the Mediterranean area (hence the name undulant fever) although brucellosis in the United States is accompanied by an intermittent or mildly remittent fever in most instances.

Many viral diseases are biphasic and are characterized by a few days of febrile illness, apparent recovery and then a second period of illness and fever. The minor illness and the major illness of poliomyelitis exemplify this type of pattern. Infections by the Coxsackie virus, dengue, smallpox, yellow fever, Colorado tick fever, lymphocytic choriomeningitis and infectious mononucleosis are other viral or presumed viral infections in which there may be two rather distinct periods of febrile illness separated by a few days of well being.

**Rigors.** For reasons that are incompletely understood, shaking chills are characteristic of certain infections and extremely rare in others. In evaluating the significance of chills it is important for the physician to remember that the administration of antipyretic drugs such as aspirin can induce chills in patients with fever of almost any type and it is necessary to differentiate chilliness, chilly sensations and true chills. Repeated chills suggest pyogenic infection with intermittent discharge of bacteria into the bloodstream such as can occur in infections of the liver, the biliary tract and the kidneys. Malaria of course is characterized by chills at rather regular intervals. A single chill in a patient with bacterial pneumonia suggests pneumococcal etiology, and the occurrence of repeated chills is strong evidence that the pneumonia is caused by some other organism.

Chills are quite rare in certain diseases. The onset of typhoid is usually unaccompanied by chill and rigors are unusual in uncomplicated viral hepatitis. Therefore in a patient with jaundice the presence of true chills is strong evidence for leptospiral infection or ascending cholangitis. Repeated chills would also be good evidence for a diagnosis of bacterial endocarditis or bacterial pneumonia rather than rheumatic fever or pulmonary infarct.

**Other Accompaniments of Fever.** Fever often activates the herpes simplex virus resulting in the production of so-called *fever blisters*. Some infections are more likely to be complicated by herpes labialis than are others. Fever blisters are very common in pneumococcal infections, malaria, rickettsioses, meningococcemia and streptococcal infections, especially scarlet fever. In contrast, the presence of herpes labialis is strong argument against a diagnosis of primary atypical pneumonia, typhoid, tuberculosis, smallpox, brucellosis or staphylococcal disease.

The fact that artificial fever therapy results in the appearance of fever blisters in almost half of patients undergoing this type of treatment seems to indicate that it is the elevation of body temperature itself that activates the virus. Therefore the rarity of fever blisters in certain febrile infectious

diseases may be explained by some ancillary protective effect of these illnesses against infection by the herpes virus. Certainly the factors underlying the differential incidence of herpes labialis in various febrile diseases could be explored profitably.

Fever alone is capable of producing enough disturbance in cerebral function to result in *delirium*. Individual susceptibility to this complication of fever is quite variable. Preexisting disease of the brain (cerebral arteriosclerosis, alcoholism) increases the likelihood of febrile delirium. Disorientation is particularly common in typhoid, psittacosis and rickettsial disease.

A rather common complication of febrile illness in children is a *convulsion*. While children with a family history of idiopathic epilepsy are somewhat more susceptible to febrile convulsions, these do not necessarily herald the onset of epilepsy or some serious disorder of the nervous system.

Ordinarily, elevation of body temperature is accompanied by a proportional increase in pulse rate. *Relative bradycardia* is seen in typhoid fever, tularemia and psittacosis, but it is by no means limited to these infections. Individuals with acute meningitis may show impressive slowing of the pulse, presumably as a result of increase in intracranial pressure. A disproportionate bradycardia is also observed with considerable frequency in infectious mononucleosis, mumps, dengue, primary atypical pneumonia and yellow fever (Faget's sign).

Patients with febrile disease often complain of *headache*, but this is not invariable, and fever itself is probably not responsible for the cephalgia. Studies of the headache accompanying fever induced by the intravenous injection of typhoid vaccine have indicated that the pain is a result of dilatation and stretching of the large arterial vessels at the base of the brain, similar to that seen in histamine headache. It has also been shown that if one increases the cerebrospinal fluid pressure, the intensity of headache is reduced.

Whether fever alone is actually responsible for physical discomfort is an extremely difficult question. It is well known that some patients with tuberculosis feel surprisingly well in the presence of high fever.

Indeed, this characteristic of the febrile response in tuberculosis has been referred to as *spes phthisica*. The fact that antipyretic drugs are also analgesics makes it very difficult to separate the symptoms of elevation of body temperature from the discomfort accompanying invasion of the body by the responsible infectious agent.

#### FEVER AS A PROTECTIVE MECHANISM

Fever has sometimes been regarded as one of the body's protective responses to invasion by microorganisms. The wisdom of using antipyretic drugs to reduce fever has been questioned from time to time on this basis. Furthermore, induction of fever by artificial means has been shown to have great therapeutic benefit in some diseases, including syphilis of the central nervous system, ophthalmic inflammations and certain types of arthritis.

An extensive review by Bennett and Nicastri of the available evidence, both experimental and clinical, failed completely to give any support to the concept that elevation of body temperature *per se* exerts a protective effect or plays any important part in host defense. On the other hand, the harmful effects of hyperthermia are well substantiated, and it is obvious that the increased demands on the heart accompanying elevation of body temperature may exert a deleterious effect in individuals with heart disease. Therefore, there is little question about the advisability of reducing body temperature in many patients with fever.

#### CIRCULATORY CHANGES

Many hemodynamic changes observed in animals or patients with infectious disease are directly related to changes in body temperature. Others result from direct damage to the heart, the pericardium, the vessels or the central nervous system by the infecting agent or its products. When myocardial damage is already present, high fever or the stress of infection may lead to cardiac decompensation. For example, individuals with mitral stenosis sometimes develop heart failure in the course of relatively trivial viral respiratory illness. Whether these infections exert their seemingly disproportionate

tionate effect on the circulation by aggravating the retention of sodium or by direct action on the myocardium is not known. However, it is clear that support of myocardial function becomes a major therapeutic objective when such pre-existing lesions complicate the course of infectious disease.

In this section no attempt will be made to categorize all possible circulatory changes associated with specific infectious diseases. Rather, the major types of alteration in body hemodynamics will be discussed and selected examples described.

### CENTRAL CIRCULATORY FAILURE

Circulatory failure may be central or peripheral. Central circulatory failure is the term used to describe any impairment of the heart as a pump which results in a cardiac output that is inadequate for the body's needs. It may be the result of damage to heart valves as can occur in the course of subacute bacterial endocarditis. It may be the result of myocarditis of viral or rickettsial origin. The heart is also directly affected by diphtheria toxin and by severe bacterial infections such as meningococcemia. Heart failure may be the result of pericardial disease with the development of acute tamponade as can occur in acute purulent pericarditis or the gradual development of heart failure as is seen in chronic tuberculous pericarditis.

It seems to be unnecessary here to rehearse the pathogenesis of the clinical manifestations of congestive heart failure. When evidence of impairment of myocardial function occurs in the course of infectious disease, the therapeutic measures employed differ in no important way from those utilized in individuals without infectious disease. The presence of known heart disease of any type should alert the clinician to the possibility of incipient congestive heart failure.

Bacterial infections of the lung are often associated with transient bouts of cardiac arrhythmia such as atrial fibrillation. These arrhythmias usually disappear as the infection is brought under control and do not necessarily indicate pre-existing heart disease or significant myocardial damage.

Electrocardiographic abnormalities can be detected with considerable regularity in a

number of common infectious diseases including viral diseases such as poliomyelitis, mumps, measles, etc., but there is little evidence that these transient abnormalities are of immediate or long-term physiologic significance. However, the potential seriousness of otherwise banal infections in terms of possible damage to the myocardium must always be borne in mind by the clinician.

### PERIPHERAL CIRCULATORY FAILURE

The picture of peripheral circulatory failure or shock with severe hypotension, tachycardia, cold clammy extremities, evidence of cerebral ischemia, thirst, etc., can be elicited by several mechanisms. In most instances of infectious disease, shock probably results from a combination of several physiologic alterations which lead to a reduction in the circulating blood volume or extensive local or general vasodilatation.

In any severe systemic disease, irreversible damage to body cells by interference with metabolism or by toxic injury can result in a drop in blood pressure and peripheral circulatory failure. When this type of shock appears in an individual with an active infectious disease, the only lasting therapy is that directed toward elimination of the infectious agent or toward neutralization of toxic products of the offending microorganisms. While measures to support the circulation are indicated, they will inevitably fail if employed without specific attention to the infectious agent responsible for the damage to body cells. Because damage to cells may be irreversible, specific therapy of an infection with antibiotics or by appropriate surgery may fail to modify peripheral circulatory failure, and patients may go on to die despite the achievement of a bacteriologic cure. This is seen occasionally in patients with bacterial meningitis and particularly in individuals with pneumonic plague.

Reduction in blood volume in an infectious disease may result from dehydration, a frequent event in very young or very elderly patients. Severe diarrhea or vomiting causes increased fluid loss, and in many ill individuals dehydration develops as a result of failure of the individual to maintain an intake of fluids through anorexia, unwillingness to cooperate, or neglect.

In disease produced by meningococci various rickettsiae and certain viruses responsible for the so-called hemorrhagic fevers there is severe damage to capillaries and venules with transudation of electrolytes, water and plasma proteins into the extravascular tissues. These patients may develop peripheral circulatory failure as a result of the reduction in circulating blood volume despite the presence of edema.

**Defervescence, Hypotension and Hyperthermia.** A rapid rise in body temperature such as may occur with a shaking chill involves massive autonomic activity of the adrenergic type. In an individual with rising temperature there is extreme peripheral vasoconstriction with a grayish pallor; there may be elevation of blood pressure, agitation and pupillary dilatation. Perhaps more important as a source of clinical confusion are the changes accompanying rapid defervescence. In this situation there is extreme cholinergic activity with peripheral vasodilatation, diaphoresis and other changes such as pupillary constriction and involuntary urination. With any intense activity of the mechanisms for dissipation of heat there is very likely to be a drop in both systolic and diastolic blood pressure. Patients undergoing rapid defervescence may be uncomfortable because of profuse sweating, but the hypotension that so regularly accompanies this heat loss is not ordinarily dangerous and certainly does not signify failure of the peripheral circulation. Hypotension is seen regularly after a paroxysm of malaria; it is a frequent accompaniment of spontaneous crises in pneumococcal pneumonia and it occurs with regularity following single chills in individuals with transient bacteremia.

If defervescence is induced by drugs such as aspirin there may be considerable drop in blood pressure; a striking example of this being the picture that occurs when individuals with typhoid fever are given an antipyretic drug. The administration of cortisone with rapid defervescence can be followed by hypotension which may last for several hours. Similarly in individuals whose defervescence is the result of a dramatic response to the administration of antibiotics there may be moderate hypotension for as long as a day or two.

With the exception of occasional individuals with pre-existing hypertension the drop in blood pressure accompanying defervescence rarely has any serious result, although it is certainly preferable to avoid too rapid cooling in febrile patients whenever possible. However it is most important to avoid confusing this type of transient hypotension with true peripheral circulatory collapse.

**The Role of Endotoxin in Shock.** Among the many potent biologic effects of the endotoxins elaborated by gram-negative bacteria is their ability to produce hypotension and eventually severe circulatory failure. Before discussing a possible role of endotoxin in the shock associated with various infectious diseases it should be mentioned that there is some evidence to support the idea that these substances have a role in shock of non-infectious origin. The possibility that the irreversibility of hemorrhagic shock is a result of absorption of preformed endotoxin from the intestinal lumen has been explored extensively and has not yet been excluded. However a discussion of the role of endotoxin in the pathogenesis of noninfectious shock is not germane at this point and the reader is referred to the publications of Fine in this connection.

Gilbert has reviewed the mechanisms of the circulatory changes produced by endotoxin. The available information is rather difficult to interpret in view of the fact that injection of endotoxin produces a different sequence of changes in various animal species. Therefore as in other areas utmost caution must be exercised in applying the findings in various animals to man. However despite the marked species differences several things can be said about the effect of endotoxin on the circulatory system.

The effect of endotoxin is not limited to a single portion of the cardiovascular system. Following injection of endotoxin in most species there is a stage of intense increase in total peripheral resistance which with large doses is followed by a later fall as vasodilatation occurs. This sequence of changes fits direct observations on the effect of endotoxin on the reactivity of small vessels to epinephrine. With low doses of endotoxin there is sustained vasoconstriction

with moderate doses there is vasoconstriction followed by dilatation and with lethal doses vasodilatation may be the only reaction observed. The fact that peripheral resistance is quite high in the initial stages of endotoxin shock fits the observation that the administration of vasodilators prior to endotoxin is protective and that vasoconstrictors have no such effect.

Profound hypotension is a part of the reaction to large doses of endotoxin in every species studied. This appears to result from impairment of venous return to the heart and the decreased venous return is doubtless a result of pooling of blood in capillaries and veins. Among the striking species differences in the effect of endotoxin is the location of this pooling. For example, there is entrapment in the liver and other abdominal viscera of the dog. However, the changes in the dog are not seen in the monkey, the cat or in man. In these last three, it cannot yet be stated with certainty where the major portion of the pooling occurs. However, it is clear that the picture of endotoxin shock in man and other animals is not attributable to any reduction in total blood volume but is a result of a redistribution of blood within the intravascular space.

The relative roles of catechol amines, serotonin, histamine and other vasoactive agents known to be released into the circulation after the injection of endotoxin are unknown at the present time.

Cortisone and related steroids are clearly capable of modifying the reaction of animals to endotoxin, particularly when these hormones are administered beforehand but there is very little evidence that the circulatory failure produced by endotoxin is a result of adrenal insufficiency. Indeed, the circulating levels of these steroids are elevated in individuals with reversible endotoxin shock and it is possible also to demonstrate increased peripheral utilization of injected steroids. In contrast in fatal endotoxin shock there is evidence that the high levels of circulating hydrocortisone result partly from an impairment of peripheral utilization.

A possible exception to the statement that endotoxin does not produce its effects through adrenal insufficiency is the occa-

sional occurrence of massive bilateral adrenal hemorrhage (Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome) in individuals with certain types of bacteremia. While adrenal apoplexy is not limited to patients with gram-negative infections, it is far more frequent with this group and its relationship to endotoxin and to shock seems to be well established.

## HEMATOLOGIC CHANGES

Infectious diseases of many types are accompanied by changes in the formed elements of the blood. These alterations include variation in the number and the type of circulating leukocytes, anemia, acceleration of the sedimentation rate of erythrocytes and alterations in the numbers of circulating platelets. None of these hematologic abnormalities is peculiar to infectious disease; the situation being similar to that for the other systemic manifestations discussed in this chapter. Despite an enormous body of clinical information concerning the alterations to be expected in specific infections of one type or another, our knowledge of the mechanisms responsible for many of the changes is scant.

### CHANGES IN LEUKOCYTES

The characteristic finding in most instances of infection by pyogenic bacteria is a polymorphonuclear leukocytosis. The neutrophilic leukocytes are of great importance in the initial stages of the acute inflammatory response and it is highly probable that the increase in the number of these cells in the circulation is related in some way to the inflammatory response. A number of substances have been described which are thought to influence the level of circulating polymorphonuclear leukocytes but at the present time, their status remains in doubt.

In recent years, the dynamics of production and distribution of polymorphonuclear leukocytes have been studied by radioactive isotopic techniques. Athens has reviewed the current status of leukokinetics in an excellent monograph. Polymorphonuclear leukocytes are produced continuously in the bone marrow and mature granulocytes are stored in a medullary pool before entry into the circulation. Further, there are two

pools of granulocytes in the circulating blood and these are of approximately equal size. The first pool consists of cells which are actively circulating and the second consists of granulocytes which are sequestered or margined in various capillary beds. Acute changes in the number of circulating granulocytes following such stimuli as exercise or the injection of catechol amines are apparently a result of entry of these margined leukocytes into the circulating pool.

Other stimuli such as endotoxin and presumably active infection may cause an initial increase in the number of granulocytes in the margined pool and hence transient neutropenia but this is followed by a striking increase in total leukocytes in the circulation. This increase arises from re-entry of cells from the margined pool and the addition of new cells from the stores in the bone marrow.

As yet the influence of infectious disease on the rate of production and maturation of granulocytes has not been carefully studied but probably there is stimulation of production and more rapid maturation. It is highly probable that leukocytosis in infections is attributable initially to mobilization of granulocytes from the pools and that the participation of the bone marrow is reflected later in the eventual appearance of less mature forms of granulocytes.

There are certain bacterial infections such as typhoid fever in which leukopenia is an almost constant finding at some stage of the disease. In many other infections such as brucellosis, tularemia and viral diseases (particularly in the early stages) including measles, dengue, Colorado tick fever, small pox and influenza, a significant reduction in the total number of circulating leukocytes is seen with considerable frequency. In almost any type of overwhelming infection there may be a reduction in the total peripheral leukocyte count. It cannot be stated with certainty what accounts for the leukopenia characteristic of these diseases.

One particular type of leukopenia is of considerable significance. The injection of bacterial endotoxin or of suspensions of bacteria is followed immediately by a sharp reduction in circulating granulocytes. Within 30 minutes to 4 hours there is observed a

rebound leukocytosis and this appears to be a result of release of cells from the margined pool and the bone marrow reservoir.

The initial leukopenia probably results from margination and sequestering of leukocytes in capillary beds particularly in the lung. Clinically this transient reduction and elevation in peripheral granulocytes may be important in that misleadingly low counts will result if blood samples are taken immediately following a shaking chill and misleadingly high counts will be found if samples are taken during the rebound 4 or 5 hours after a chill.

As is evident from the discussion above almost all studies on alterations in numbers of granulocytes during infections have dealt with cells in the blood. Such studies may have limited significance since the polymorphonuclear leukocyte carries out its function for the most part after leaving the circulation. Techniques have not yet been devised for measuring the concentration and the life span of granulocytes in tissues.

Eosinophilia, relative or absolute may be observed in the course of recovery from infections of several types. It is common in parasitic infestations and is also likely to be seen in any individual with extensive skin rash. The mechanisms which lead to blood or tissue eosinophilia are unknown although the association of these cells with hypersensitivity reactions is probably important. Supravital studies indicate an almost selective avidity of the cells for the ingestion of antigen-antibody complexes. Almost nothing is known about the factors controlling production of eosinophils by the bone marrow their entry into the bloodstream etc.

The lymphocytes of the circulating blood continue to pose a great mystery in terms of function. It is generally agreed that they play some part in antibody formation and it is highly probable that certain lymphocytes at least, are capable of undergoing transformation into macrophages at sites of inflammation. A large majority of lymphocytes appear to have a very long life span although one small population exhibits a much shorter period of viability. Virtually nothing is known of the stimuli which lead to the appearance of lymphocytosis in the course of certain infectious diseases. Absolute lym-



with moderate doses there is vasoconstriction followed by dilatation and with lethal doses vasodilatation may be the only reaction observed. The fact that peripheral resistance is quite high in the initial stages of endotoxin shock fits the observation that the administration of vasodilators prior to endotoxin is protective and that vasoconstrictors have no such effect.

Profound hypotension is a part of the reaction to large doses of endotoxin in every species studied. This appears to result from impairment of venous return to the heart and the decreased venous return is, doubtless, a result of pooling of blood in capillaries and veins. Among the striking species differences in the effect of endotoxin is the location of this pooling. For example, there is entrapment in the liver and other abdominal viscera of the dog. However, the changes in the dog are not seen in the monkey, the cat or in man. In these last three it cannot yet be stated with certainty where the major portion of the pooling occurs. However, it is clear that the picture of endotoxin shock in man and other animals is not attributable to any reduction in total blood volume but is a result of a redistribution of blood within the intravascular space.

The relative roles of catechol amines, serotonin, histamine and other vasoactive agents known to be released into the circulation after the injection of endotoxin are unknown at the present time.

Cortisone and related steroids are clearly capable of modifying the reaction of animals to endotoxin, particularly when these hormones are administered beforehand, but there is very little evidence that the circulatory failure produced by endotoxin is a result of adrenal insufficiency. Indeed, the circulating levels of these steroids are elevated in individuals with reversible endotoxin shock and it is possible also to demonstrate increased peripheral utilization of injected steroids. In contrast to fatal endotoxin shock, there is evidence that the high levels of circulating hydrocortisone result partly from an impairment of peripheral utilization.

A possible exception to the statement that endotoxin does not produce its effects through adrenal insufficiency is the occa-

sional occurrence of massive bilateral adrenal hemorrhage (Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome) in individuals with certain types of bacteremia. While adrenal apoplexy is not limited to patients with gram-negative infections, it is far more frequent with this group and its relationship to endotoxin and to shock seems to be well established.

## HEMATOLOGIC CHANGES

Infectious diseases of many types are accompanied by changes in the formed elements of the blood. These alterations include variation in the number and the type of circulating leukocytes, anemia, acceleration of the sedimentation rate of erythrocytes, and alterations in the numbers of circulating platelets. None of these hematologic abnormalities is peculiar to infectious disease; the situation being similar to that for the other systemic manifestations discussed in this chapter. Despite an enormous body of clinical information concerning the alterations to be expected in specific infections of one type or another, our knowledge of the mechanisms responsible for many of the changes is scant.

### CHANGES IN LEUKOCYTES

The characteristic finding in most instances of infection by pyogenic bacteria is a polymorphonuclear leukocytosis. The neutrophilic leukocytes are of great importance in the initial stages of the acute inflammatory response, and it is highly probable that the increase in the number of these cells in the circulation is related in some way to the inflammatory response. A number of substances have been described which are thought to influence the level of circulating polymorphonuclear leukocytes, but at the present time their status remains in doubt.

In recent years the dynamics of production and distribution of polymorphonuclear leukocytes have been studied by radioactive isotopic techniques. Athens has reviewed the current status of leukokinetics in an excellent monograph. Polymorphonuclear leukocytes are produced continuously in the bone marrow and mature granulocytes are stored in a medullary pool before entry into the circulation. Further, there are two

a result of involvement of the spleen in these diseases and occasionally the anemia has been relieved by splenectomy

As has been mentioned chronic infections of several types may be accompanied by anemia. This is commonly referred to as secondary anemia, but a preferable term according to Wintrobe is simple chronic anemia. There is very little alteration in the morphology of erythrocytes in this anemia and it bears a close resemblance to that observed in chronic debilitating disease of several types including disseminated tumors and chronic renal failure.

Among infections in which anemia may become very prominent is subacute bacterial endocarditis. In the vast majority of instances the anemia is only moderate and is not a serious clinical problem. Brucellosis, tuberculosis, prolonged suppuration, etc. are also regularly accompanied by mild anemia. The decrease in circulating erythrocytes in chronic infection apparently results from a combination of depression of the bone marrow and a shortened life span of the red cells. One of the earliest changes noted in infection is a reduction in plasma iron content and in serum iron binding capacity. This cannot be influenced by the administration of iron, whether given in the usual form or as transfused erythrocytes. There is delay in the incorporation of labeled iron into erythrocytes and this is mirrored by the clinical observation that individuals with chronic infection are unable to respond to such stimuli as bleeding or an acute hemolytic episode with an outpouring of reticulocytes. Indeed the response of patients with pernicious anemia to therapy with vitamin B<sub>12</sub> may be interrupted by an intercurrent infection. Other chemical changes observed in the course of the anemia of chronic infection include elevation of serum copper, elevation of erythrocyte protoporphyrin and an increased excretion of coproporphyrin. There is usually no evidence of increased hemolysis in the form of elevation of urobilinogen or of serum bilirubin, but measurement of the life span of erythrocytes in chronic infection has regularly demonstrated a shortening. At the present time the only definitive treatment for the anemia of chronic infection is control of the infectious process itself. With con-

valescence there is prompt correction in the hematologic defect.

### CHANGES IN PLATELETS

Thrombocytopenia has been observed in a large number of infectious diseases particularly those accompanied by bacteremia. The mechanism of the reduction in circulating platelets is not known but may be sequestration in areas where there has been damage to endothelium. Purpura is a relatively common manifestation of severe bacterial infections such as meningococcemia and bacterial endocarditis, but the relative role of thrombocytopenia, capillary fragility and other factors in these conditions remains to be worked out.

A lowered number of platelets, although not a reduction to levels that might be expected to lead to significant bleeding, is observed with great regularity when counts are made in patients with many different types of infectious disease, including typhoid, the rickettsioses, the viral exanthemata, subacute bacterial endocarditis and infectious hepatitis.

Whether the ability of the bone marrow to produce platelets is actually impaired in the course of any of these infections is a question which has not been investigated. It is probable that occasional instances of secondary thrombocytopenic purpura are attributable to hypersplenism in the course of chronic infections, but this seems to be rare.

### WEAKNESS AND MALAISE

Patients with acute or chronic infectious disease complain of a variety of unpleasant somatic sensations. These include weakness, fatigability, anorexia, generalized aching, etc. While a patient may attempt to describe his symptoms in many ways, one ordinarily has only to look at him to realize that he is miserable and uncomfortable beyond his ability to vocalize or to localize the seat of his complaints.

Despite the great frequency of these ill-defined manifestations of illness, surprisingly little is known about the basic mechanisms involved. The manifestations are in no way peculiar to infection and indeed many of

phocytosis of a mild degree is seen characteristically in the later stages of certain common viral diseases such as mumps and measles. For mysterious reasons an enormous lymphocytosis is characteristic of pertussis. In this disease the lymphocytosis appears in the early stages of infection and persists well into convalescence. Finally a peculiar disease, acute infectious lymphocytosis, presumably of viral origin, is seen primarily in children and is characterized by enormous increases in the peripheral count of mature lymphocytes.

There are several other diseases in which lymphocytosis is seen with regularity and in which the increase in lymphocytes is attributable to atypical cells. The best example of this is infectious mononucleosis, a disease of presumed but not proved viral origin. Similar cells are seen in other viral diseases, particularly in infectious hepatitis. Indeed these atypical lymphocytes are often referred to as virocytes. This change in morphology remains unexplained. Similar alterations have been described in response to stress, but the significance of this for viral diseases is doubtful.

Monocytosis has been noted with considerable regularity during the period of convalescence from many acute bacterial infections. Monocytosis is sometimes especially prominent in patients with tuberculosis, subacute bacterial endocarditis or listeria infections, and occasionally it is seen in typhoid or brucellosis. The mechanism of these fluctuations in circulating monocytes is entirely unknown and other than to point out their occurrence little else can be said.

### CHANGES IN ERYTHROCYTES

Perhaps the most frequent change involving circulating erythrocytes in the course of infectious diseases is an increase in their sedimentation rate. While a number of factors are known to influence the rate at which erythrocytes will settle from plasma, it cannot be said with certainty which of these are involved in the acceleration observed in infectious diseases. The addition of fibrinogen, bacterial polysaccharides and various plasma globulin fractions will increase erythrocyte sedimentation. Albumin

appears to inhibit sedimentation and, interestingly enough, gamma globulins are less effective than alpha and beta globulins in accelerating the sedimentation rate. Furthermore, it appears that the proportion of components of plasma protein is more important than the absolute concentration of any single one. The rate of erythrocyte sedimentation is accelerated in the vast majority of infectious diseases, particularly systemic infections. Of course, high sedimentation rates also occur in noninfectious diseases. The clinical usefulness of the test lies in its ability to indicate organic illness and to substantiate subsidence of infection or other inflammatory disease.

Anemia is a common complication of infection. It is seen more frequently in chronic, prolonged infectious diseases than in acute bacterial and viral disorders.

Acute hemolytic anemia may complicate the course of viral infections, including acute viral hepatitis and herpes simplex. Primary atypical pneumonia due to *Mycoplasma* infection may be complicated by hemolytic anemia, the mechanism presumably being related to the frequent development of cold agglutinins in this disease.

Excepting Oroya fever, the bacterial infection in which acute hemolytic anemia is seen with greatest regularity is *Clostridium welchii* bacteremia. There is massive destruction of red cells, hemoglobinuria and severe prostration. Not infrequently control of the bacterial infection is to no avail, the patient finally dying as a result of the renal complications of the massive hemolysis. Despite the fact that several other bacteria are known to produce hemolysins, there is little evidence except in the case of the Welch bacillus that these hemolysins are particularly active in the course of infection in man. However, hemolysis of significant degree has been observed in typhoid (it is probably a more regular occurrence than has been recognized previously) and rarely in beta hemolytic streptococcal infections and in infections by the influenza bacillus.

Occasional instances of hemolytic anemia have been reported to complicate the course of tuberculosis and other infectious granulomata such as those produced by fungi. In several instances this has appeared to be

a result of involvement of the spleen in these diseases and occasionally the anemia has been relieved by splenectomy

As has been mentioned chronic infections of several types may be accompanied by anemia. This is commonly referred to as secondary anemia but a preferable term according to Wintrobe is simple chronic anemia. There is very little alteration in the morphology of erythrocytes in this anemia and it bears a close resemblance to that observed in chronic debilitating disease of several types including disseminated tumors and chronic renal failure.

Among infections in which anemia may become very prominent is subacute bacterial endocarditis. In the vast majority of instances the anemia is only moderate and is not a serious clinical problem. Brucellosis, tuberculosis, prolonged suppuration, etc. are also regularly accompanied by mild anemia. The decrease in circulating erythrocytes in chronic infection apparently results from a combination of depression of the bone marrow and a shortened life span of the red cells. One of the earliest changes noted in infection is a reduction in plasma iron content and in serum iron binding capacity. This cannot be influenced by the administration of iron, whether given in the usual form or as transfused erythrocytes. There is delay in the incorporation of labeled iron into erythrocytes and this is mirrored by the clinical observation that individuals with chronic infection are unable to respond to such stimuli as bleeding or an acute hemolytic episode with an outpouring of reticulocytes. Indeed the response of patients with pernicious anemia to therapy with vitamin B<sub>12</sub> may be interrupted by an intercurrent infection. Other chemical changes observed in the course of the anemia of chronic infection include elevation of serum copper, elevation of erythrocyte protoporphyrin and an increased excretion of coproporphyrin. There is usually no evidence of increased hemolysis in the form of elevation of urobilinogen or of serum bilirubin, but measurement of the life span of erythrocytes in chronic infection has regularly demonstrated a shortening. At the present time the only definitive treatment for the anemia of chronic infection is control of the infectious process itself. With con-

valescence there is prompt correction in the hematologic defect.

### CHANGES IN PLATELETS

Thrombocytopenia has been observed in a large number of infectious diseases, particularly those accompanied by bacteremia. The mechanism of the reduction in circulating platelets is not known but may be sequestration in areas where there has been damage to endothelium. Purpura is a relatively common manifestation of severe bacterial infections such as meningococcemia and bacterial endocarditis, but the relative role of thrombocytopenia, capillary fragility and other factors in these conditions remains to be worked out.

A lowered number of platelets, although not a reduction to levels that might be expected to lead to significant bleeding, is observed with great regularity when counts are made in patients with many different types of infectious disease, including typhoid, the rickettsioses, the viral exanthemata, subacute bacterial endocarditis and infectious hepatitis.

Whether the ability of the bone marrow to produce platelets is actually impaired in the course of any of these infections is a question which has not been investigated. It is probable that occasional instances of secondary thrombocytopenic purpura are attributable to hypersplenism in the course of chronic infections, but this seems to be rare.

### WEAKNESS AND MALAISE

Patients with acute or chronic infectious disease complain of a variety of unpleasant somatic sensations. These include weakness, fatigability, anorexia, generalized aching, etc. While a patient may attempt to describe his symptoms in many ways, one ordinarily has only to look at him to realize that he is miserable and uncomfortable beyond his ability to vocalize or to localize the seat of his complaints.

Despite the great frequency of these ill-defined manifestations of illness, surprisingly little is known about the basic mechanisms involved. The manifestations are in no way peculiar to infection and indeed many of

them occur in endocrinopathies and even in purely psychiatric disorders. The present discussion will be confined to certain aspects of muscle function and to problems of convalescence.

### MUSCLE WEAKNESS IN INFECTIOUS DISEASES

When the term weakness is used by a patient to describe his symptoms it is necessary to make further inquiry and to differentiate true loss of muscle strength from lassitude and fatigue. When weakness can be demonstrated objectively it becomes important to decide whether the weakness is limited to certain muscle groups, in which case one is dealing with local *paresis* or whether the muscle weakness is generalized in which case a proper term is *asthenia* or *myasthenia*. With paralysis or paresis, the possibility of viral infection of the nervous system or of postinfectious neurologic complications must be considered.

In terms of the effect of the infectious process on muscle tissue itself there is a wide discrepancy between a patient's complaints and objective findings. Adams, Denny Brown and Pearson have summarized the available information on alterations in skeletal muscle associated with acute and chronic infectious diseases. They classify the pathologic changes into 3 groups. Zenker's hyaline degeneration, muscle atrophy usually secondary to malnutrition and cachexia in chronic infections, and focal myositis, a relatively rare occurrence.

**Zenker's hyaline or waxy degeneration** is accompanied by no definite clinical manifestations although it is found relatively frequently in severe infections. The morphologic changes consist of focal swelling of muscle fibers usually with eventual involvement of the entire fiber. In the beginning striations are easily visible but eventually these disappear, leaving a homogeneous eosinophilic hyaline structure which may undergo degeneration or more often is the seat of regeneration as the infectious process subsides. This change can occur in typhoid where it was originally described by Zenker but it has been seen in fatal influenza, in pneumococcal pneumonia and numerous other fatal diseases. The changes are par-

ticularly common in the rectus abdominis muscle, but waxy degeneration is also found in the proximal muscles of the pelvis and the shoulder girdle, in the diaphragm and in the larger muscles of the trunk. Occasionally there is hemorrhage into the belly of the muscle, in which case there may be local pain but the process is ordinarily difficult to correlate with myalgia in the course of infectious disease. When the changes are marked as Adams and his colleagues point out the aches and pains of diseases may be attributable, in part to this type of degeneration. However the frequency of impaired muscle strength is far greater than is that of well-demarcated Zenker's degeneration and it appears that this type of change in muscle accounts for only a small part of the objective weakness that accompanies infectious diseases. The extent of Zenker's waxy degeneration seems to correlate very well with the severity of the infectious process and lesions of this type have been found in diphtheria, tuberculosis, tetanus, cholera, typhoid fever, infectious hepatitis, smallpox, yellow fever and severe staphylococcal and streptococcal infections. It is of considerable interest that similar lesions have been found in patients with noninfectious diseases such as disseminated malignant tumors, hepatic cirrhosis, etc.

**Muscle Atrophy.** In elderly patients with debilitating disease, particularly chronic infections, one may see atrophy of muscle. This is occasionally associated with vacuolation and edema of individual fibers and is probably a result of a combination of disuse, the effect of microorganisms and their toxins and muscle atrophy secondary to the polyneuropathy of malnutrition. The recognition of this type of muscle disorder is relatively easy because it is accompanied by other evidences of emaciation, with disappearance of subcutaneous fat and reduction in muscle mass. A characteristic clinical reaction is the ridgelike contraction that can be elicited by a sharp blow. This so-called *myoedema* or *idiomuscular contraction* has been believed to be specific for certain chronic infections such as tuberculosis but careful observations have shown that any chronic disease that impairs general nutrition can produce similar changes in muscle. The reduction in muscle

strength in this type of atrophy is usually proportional to reduction in muscle size. Consequently the strength of these atrophied muscles is sometimes surprisingly good.

**Focal Myositis.** Several infections produce specific and relatively characteristic changes in muscle in the form of focal myositis. The muscle lesion in leptospiral infections particularly in Weil's disease is undoubtedly responsible for the severe myalgia that characterizes this disease. There is very good evidence that it is produced by leptospiral infection of the muscle itself.

While it is entirely possible for pyogenic bacteria to produce muscle abscesses this type of lesion is quite rare in the absence of septic embolization or penetrating injuries.

The myositis produced by certain strains of clostridia is described elsewhere. Myositis as a result of direct action of the infectious agent has been described in tuberculosis, syphilis and actinomycosis.

Finally it appears likely that inflammation of muscle can accompany certain viral infections in man although the clinical incidence of viral myositis remains to be evaluated by properly controlled studies. Viruses of the Coxsackie group are capable of producing significant destruction of muscle fibers in suckling mice and hamsters. It has been shown also that Arboviruses and other neurotropic viruses produce significant muscle lesions in suckling mice but the clinical counterpart of these lesions in man remains to be determined.

The occasional instances of myocarditis that complicate viral infections of many types may have their counterpart in focal lesions of skeletal muscle which are ordinarily so insignificant as to remain unobserved. Certainly the fact that Coxsackie B viruses can produce fatal myocarditis in infants is of interest in this regard.

#### LASSITUDE, FATIGABILITY AND PROBLEMS OF CONVALESCENCE

Lassitude and fatigue are terms often employed to describe the lack of energy experienced by patients with infectious or other diseases in the absence of objective signs of paralysis or myasthenia. The frequency of the subjective sensations described by patients as all in "without pep" no

ambition, no interest, being fed up, lack of energy, languor, "listlessness," weariness, etc., stands in striking contrast to the small body of objective knowledge concerning the mechanisms involved.

Infection is a relatively infrequent cause of complaints of chronic fatigue. The fact that certain low grade chronic infections may be accompanied by manifestations of lassitude and fatigue is indisputable but the frequency of entirely similar manifestations in individuals with no evidence of an infectious process makes it all the more difficult to link infection with these manifestations in causal fashion.

Diseases such as brucellosis, tuberculosis, infectious hepatitis and certain viral infections of the respiratory tract including influenza are more likely to result in a rather prolonged period of debilitation than are other illnesses with more dramatic acute manifestations. On the other hand careful study shows clearly the importance of psychological factors in the persistence of symptoms of lassitude and irritability following apparent recovery from infectious diseases. In one such study 24 individuals with a history of acute brucellosis were studied several years after recovery from acute illness. Eight of the patients had recovered promptly and uneventfully after subsidence of the febrile stage of the disease. Among the remaining patients there were 6 who had remained symptomatic for a year or longer after the acute stage of brucellosis but who had subsequently recovered and 10 patients who had had persistent symptoms for 2 to 8 years since the acute febrile stage of brucellosis and were still symptomatic. Medically there was absolutely no evidence of any persistent infection. Furthermore extensive psychological testing revealed normal intellectual function without evidence of organic brain damage in all subjects. However when these patients were evaluated independently by psychological testing and psychiatric interview it became evident that the "chronically ill" patient uniformly revealed evidence of emotional disturbance usually in the pattern of depression. Indeed a review of the psychological and psychiatric data made it possible for independent observers to classify each patient without prior knowledge of the

them occur in endocrinopathies, and even in purely psychiatric disorders. The present discussion will be confined to certain aspects of muscle function and to problems of convalescence.

### MUSCLE WEAKNESS IN INFECTIOUS DISEASES

When the term weakness is used by a patient to describe his symptoms it is necessary to make further inquiry and to differentiate true loss of muscle strength from lassitude and fatigue. When weakness can be demonstrated objectively, it becomes important to decide whether the weakness is limited to certain muscle groups in which case one is dealing with local *paresis* or whether the muscle weakness is generalized in which case a proper term is *asthenia* or *myasthenia*. With paralysis or paresis the possibility of viral infection of the nervous system or of postinfectious neurologic complications must be considered.

In terms of the effect of the infectious process on muscle tissue itself there is a wide discrepancy between a patient's complaints and objective findings. Adams, Denny, Brown and Pearson have summarized the available information on alterations in skeletal muscle associated with acute and chronic infectious diseases. They classify the pathologic changes into 3 groups: Zenker's hyaline degeneration, muscle atrophy usually secondary to malnutrition and cachexia in chronic infections, and focal myositis, a relatively rare occurrence.

**Zenker's hyaline or waxy degeneration** is accompanied by no definite clinical manifestations although it is found relatively frequently in severe infections. The morphologic changes consist of focal swelling of muscle fibers, usually with eventual involvement of the entire fiber. In the beginning striations are easily visible but eventually these disappear leaving a homogeneous eosinophilic hyaline structure which may undergo degeneration or, more often, is the seat of regeneration as the infectious process subsides. This change can occur in typhoid where it was originally described by Zenker but it has been seen in fatal influenza, in pneumococcal pneumonia and in numerous other fatal diseases. The changes are par-

ticularly common in the rectus abdominis muscle, but waxy degeneration is also found in the proximal muscles of the pelvis and the shoulder girdle in the diaphragm and in the larger muscles of the trunk. Occasionally there is hemorrhage into the belly of the muscle in which case there may be local pain but the process is ordinarily difficult to correlate with myalgia in the course of infectious disease. When the changes are marked as Adams and his colleagues point out the aches and pains of diseases, may be attributable in part to this type of degeneration. However the frequency of impaired muscle strength is far greater than is that of well-demarcated Zenker's degeneration and it appears that this type of change in muscle accounts for only a small part of the objective weakness that accompanies infectious diseases. The extent of Zenker's waxy degeneration seems to correlate very well with the severity of the infectious process, and lesions of this type have been found in diphtheria, tuberculosis, tetanus, cholera, typhoid fever, infectious hepatitis, smallpox, yellow fever and severe staphylococcal and streptococcal infections. It is of considerable interest that similar lesions have been found in patients with noninfectious diseases such as disseminated malignant tumors, hepatic cirrhosis, etc.

**Muscle Atrophy.** In elderly patients with debilitating disease, particularly chronic infections, one may see atrophy of muscle. This is occasionally associated with vacuolation and edema of individual fibers and is probably a result of a combination of disuse, the effect of microorganisms and their toxins, and muscle atrophy secondary to the polyneuropathy of malnutrition. The recognition of this type of muscle disorder is relatively easy because it is accompanied by other evidences of emaciation with disappearance of subcutaneous fat and reduction in muscle mass. A characteristic clinical reaction is the ridge-like contraction that can be elicited by a sharp blow. This so-called *myoedema* or *idiomuscular contraction* has been believed to be specific for certain chronic infections such as tuberculosis but careful observations have shown that any chronic disease that impairs general nutrition can produce similar changes in muscle. The reduction in muscle

measles vaccine was followed by varying periods of cutaneous nonreactivity with a gradual reappearance of the ability to show a positive skin test

## CONCLUSION

This summary of some of the systemic manifestations to infectious diseases has laid particular emphasis on the reactions of man to invasion by pathogenic microorganisms. The great frequency of infectious diseases and the manifestations of illness that have been mentioned in this chapter stand in striking contrast to the relative paucity of information about the physiologic alterations underlying both the objective and the subjective changes that are common to many infections. There is perhaps no more fruitful field for future investigation than the re-examination of these common responses with a view of gaining some understanding of the basic mechanisms responsible for them and hopefully the development of methods for their control.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Adams R D 1962 Lassitude (including neurasthenia) and weakness in Harrison T R (ed.) *Principles of Internal Medicine* ed 4 New York Blakiston McGraw Hill p 383
- Adams R D, Denny Brown D and Pearson C M 1962 *Diseases of Muscle. A Study in Pathology* ed 2 New York Hoeber pp 233 238 386 396 573 584
- Archer G T and Hirsch J G 1963 Motion picture studies on degranulation of horse eosinophils during phagocytosis *J Exp Med* 118 287 294
- Athens J W 1963 Blood leukocytes *Ann Rev Physiol* 25 195 212
- Atkins E 1956 The relation of a circulating endogenous pyrogen to the cause of experimental fever *Bull NY Acad Med* 32 846 847
- 1960 Pathogenesis of fever *Physiol Rev* 40 580 646
- Atkins E and Freedman L R 1963 Studies in staphylococcal fever I Responses to bacterial cells *Yale J Biol Med* 35 451-471
- Atkins E and Huang W C 1958 Studies on the pathogenesis of fever with influenzal viruses I The appearance of an endogenous pyrogen in the blood following intravenous injection of virus *J Exp Med* 107 383-401
- 1958 II The effects of endogenous pyrogen in normal and virus tolerant recipients *J Exp Med* 107 403-414
- Atkins E and Snell E S 1963 in press
- Atkins E and Wood W B Jr 1955 Studies on the pathogenesis of fever II Identification of an endogenous pyrogen in the blood stream following the injection of typhoid vaccine *J Exp Med* 102 499 516
- Atwood R P and Kass E H 1963 Influence of body temperature on lethal action of bacterial endotoxin *J Clin Invest* 42 914
- Bennett I L Jr 1948 Observations on the fever caused by bacterial pyrogens I A study of the relationship between the fever caused by bacterial pyrogens and the fever accompanying acute infections *J Exp Med* 88 267 278
- 1954 The significance of fever in infections *Yale J Biol Med* 26 491 505
- 1956 Studies on the pathogenesis of fever V The fever accompanying pneumococcal infection in the rabbit *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 98 216-235
- Bennett I L Jr and Beeson P B 1950 The properties and biologic effects of bacterial pyrogens *Medicine* 29 365-400
- 1953 Studies on the pathogenesis of fever I The effect of injection of extracts and suspensions of uninfected rabbit tissues upon the body temperature of normal rabbits *J Exp Med* 98 477-492
- 1953 Studies on the pathogenesis of fever II Characterization of fever producing substances from polymorphonuclear leukocytes and from the fluid of sterile exudates *J Exp Med* 98 493 508
- Bennett I L Jr and Cluff L E 1957 Bacterial pyrogens *Pharmacol Rev* 9 427-475
- Bennett I L Jr and Hook E W 1957 Fever of Unknown Origin *DM Disease a Month series Chicago Year Book Pub Nov*
- Bennett I L Jr and Nicastri A 1960 Fever as a mechanism of resistance *Bact Rev* 24 16 34
- Bennett I L Jr, Petersdorf R G and Keene W R 1957 Pathogenesis of fever Evidence for direct cerebral action of bacterial endotoxins *Trans Assoc Am Physicians* 70 64 73
- Berlin R D and Wood W B Jr 1962 Molecular mechanisms involved in the release of pyrogen from polymorphonuclear



clinical course of his disease. Thus the emotional disturbance as manifested by a chronic symptomatology in these individuals was not entirely a result of the bacterial disease but was closely related to the personality structure of the individual at the time of the acute illness.

A prospective study carried out by obtaining psychological information on a closed population before the onset of an epidemic of viral influenza revealed that the occurrence of prolonged convalescence could be predicted. Among a group of 600 individuals on whom data were obtained there were 26 documented instances of influenzal infection. The symptoms of acute influenza were the same in all patients. However 14 of them reported complete recovery within 14 days whereas in the remaining 12 symptoms of tiredness, weakness, insomnia, headache, anorexia, etc. persisted for more than 3 weeks. Every individual in whom symptoms persisted showed a pattern of response in the psychological tests characteristic of depression-prone individuals. Since the psychological data were obtained prior to illness, the emotional state or attitude was not secondary to infection but existed prior to the onset of acute illness and was a most significant factor in delaying symptomatic recovery (Imboden).

#### MISCELLANEOUS CHANGES ASSOCIATED WITH INFECTIOUS DISEASE

A variety of systemic alterations can be mentioned briefly. It is not surprising that infectious diseases, both acute and chronic, may interfere with general nutrition due to both reduced intake of food and increased metabolic rate. Even in individuals with localized suppuration there may be striking weight loss. Loss of 25 to 40 pounds within a period of 4 weeks by patients with pleural empyema or chronic lung abscess is not unusual.

Acute changes in electrolytes may occur in many infectious diseases. In pneumococcal pneumonia and in tuberculosis, there is depression in the urinary excretion of sodium and of chloride and there may be a reduction in the serum concentration of these ions. Especially in individuals with tuberculosis the level of serum sodium seems to be low

and despite administration of large amounts of fluid and electrolyte it is not possible to restore serum levels to the normal range for healthy individuals. With response to specific antimicrobial therapy the patient's electrolyte pattern promptly returns to normal.

It is not surprising that acute infections stimulate adrenal cortical function, the increase being mediated through the pituitary. There may also be a mild increase in thyroid function concomitant with the increase in metabolism that occurs with elevation of body temperature.

Of considerable importance is the effect of bacterial or viral infection on certain hormonal disorders. Perhaps the outstanding example of this is the profound worsening of diabetes mellitus that occurs in the presence of infection. The insulin requirement in these patients is enormously increased and diabetic acidosis with coma is more likely to be precipitated by infection than by any other single factor excepting the omission of insulin by the diabetic patient. As is well known, crisis in patients with Addison's disease is often precipitated by viral or bacterial illness and in the past many patients with adrenal insufficiency succumbed to intercurrent infection. At the present time, with better control of Addison's disease through the use of complete replacement therapy this is a less serious clinical problem.

Finally mention may be made of the effect of certain viral diseases on the nephrotic syndrome and on the ability of the skin to react to allergens. Children with nephrosis often will undergo spontaneous diuresis as a result of infection with measles or with the virus of sandfly fever. The mechanism of this induction of remission is entirely unknown but it appears to depend on a specific property of only a few viruses. Individuals recovering from measles often undergo a transient period during which they will not react to the subcutaneous injection of tuberculin or of other substances such as *codene*. This period of cutaneous "anergy" is variable but may last for several months. That it is closely related to infection by the measles virus is indicated by recent studies in volunteers known to react cutaneously to certain allergens. The administration of live

- Lennox W G 1953 Significance of febrile convulsions *Pediatrics* **11** 341-357
- Lillehei R C and MacLean L D 1958 The intestinal factor in irreversible endotoxin shock *Ann Surg* **148** 513-525
- McCabe W R 1963 Endotoxin tolerance I Its induction by experimental pyelonephritis *J Clin Invest* **42** 610-617
- 1963 Endotoxin tolerance II Its occurrence in patients with pyelonephritis *J Clin Invest* **37** 618-625
- Melby J C and Spink W W 1958 Comparative studies on adrenal cortical function and cortisol metabolism in healthy adults and in patients with shock due to infection *J Clin Invest* **37** 1791-1798
- Menkin V 1945 The chemical basis of fever with inflammation *Arch Path* **39** 28-36
- 1956 Biochemical mechanisms in inflammation ed 2 Springfield Ill Thomas p 234
- Neva F A and Morgan H R 1950 Tolerance to the action of endotoxins of enteric bacilli in patients convalescent from typhoid and paratyphoid fevers *J Lab Clin Med* **35** 911-922
- Palmer R H Glickman P B and Kappas A 1962 Pyrogenic and inflammatory properties of certain bile acids in man *J Clin Invest* **41** 1573-1577
- Petersdorf R G and Bennett I L Jr 1957 Studies on the pathogenesis of fever VII Comparative observations on the production of fever by inflammatory exudates in rabbits and dogs *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* **100** 277-286
- Pilcher J D 1930 Diminution in the circulation of the skin a factor in decreasing the cutaneous tuberculin reaction *Am Rev Tuberc* **21** 669-683
- Rafter G W Collins R D and Wood W B Jr 1959 The chemistry of leukocytic pyrogen *Trans Assoc Am Physicians* **72** 323-330
- Seibert F B and Mendel I B 1953 Protein fevers With special reference to casein *Am J Physiol* **67** 105-123
- Sheth U K and Borison H L 1960 Central pyrogenic action of *Salmonella typhosa* lipopolysaccharide injected into the lateral cerebral ventricle in cats *J Pharmacol Exp Therap* **130** 411-417
- Shulman J A and Hertmann W 1963 Pathogenesis of etiocholanolone fever *J Clin Invest* **42** 979-980
- Snell E S 1962 Pyrogenic properties of human pathological fluids *Clin Sci* **23** 141-150
- Stead E A Jr 1963 Circulatory collapse and shock in Beeson P and McDermott, W (eds) *Textbook of Medicine* ed 11 Philadelphia Saunders p 630
- Tardieu G 1942 Le typhus Etude physiopathologique de l'atteinte du diencephale au cours de la fièvre typhoïde *Presse méd* **50** 75-78
- Thal A P and Egner W 1956 The mechanism of shock produced by means of staphylococcal toxin *A.M.A. Arch Path* **61** 488-495
- Thomas L 1954 The physiological disturbances produced by endotoxins *Ann Rev Physiol* **16** 467-490
- Thomas L 1956 The role of epinephrine in the reactions produced by the endotoxins of Gram negative bacteria I Hemorrhagic necrosis produced by epinephrine in the skin of endotoxin treated rabbits *J Exp Med* **104** 865-880
- Visscher M B 1958 Shock with particular reference to endotoxin shock *Postgrad Med* **73** 545-549
- Wagner H N Jr Ito M and Hornick R B 1963 Studies of the reticuloendothelial system (RES) II Changes in the phagocytic capacity of the RES in patients with certain infections *J Clin Invest* **42** 427-434
- Warren S L Carpenter C M and Boak R A 1940 Symptomatic herpes a sequela of artificially induced fever Incidence and clinical aspects recovery of a virus from herpetic vesicles and comparison with a known strain of herpes virus *J Exp Med* **71** 155-168
- Weil M 1963 in press
- Weil M H and Spink W W 1958 The shock syndrome associated with bacteremia due to Gram negative bacilli *A.M.A. Arch Int Med* **101** 184-193
- Wintrobe M M 1961 *Clinical Hematology* ed 5 Philadelphia Lea & Febiger pp 240-243 250-263 326-333 576-578 606-609 844
- Wunderlich C A 1871 *On the Temperature in Diseases* (Tr by W H Woodman) London New Sydenham Society
- Yokoi Y Kuwamura T and Muto Y 1961 A new explanation for the biphasic pattern of fever induced by bacterial pyrogen *Japanese J Physiol* **11** 270-280
- Zweifach B W 1963 in press

- leucocytes *Trans Assoc Am Physicians* 75 190 197
- Bourn J M and Seibert F II 1925 The cause of many febrile reactions following intravenous injections II The bacteriology of twelve distilled waters *Am J Physiol* 71 652 659
- Castle W B 1961 Disorders of the blood in Sodeman W A (ed) *Pathologic Physiology* ed 3 Philadelphia Saunders pp 861 1012
- Cluff L E Trever R W Imboden J B and Canter A 1959 Brucellosis II Medical aspects of delayed convalescence *AMA Arch Int Med* 103 398 405
- Collins R D and Wood W II Jr 1959 Studies on the pathogenesis of fever VI The interaction of leucocytes and endotoxin *in vitro* *J Exp Med* 110 1005 1016
- Dowdle E 1956 The reaction of patients with typhoid fever to the administration of aspirin *South African M J* 30 474-477
- Du Bois E F 1948 Fever and the regulation of body temperature Springfield Ill Thomas
- 1949 Why are fever temperatures over 106° F rare? *Am J M Sci* 217 361 368
- Ebert R V and Stead E A Jr 1941 Circulatory failure in acute infections *J Clin Invest* 20 671 679
- Egdahl R H 1959 The differential response of the adrenal cortex and medulla to bacterial endotoxin *J Clin Invest* 38 1120-1125
- Farr R S Clark S L Jr Proffitt J E and Campbell D H 1954 Some humoral aspects of the development of tolerance to bacterial pyrogens in rabbits *Am J Physiol* 177 269 278
- Fine J 1963 in press
- Fine J Frank E II Ravin H A Rutenberg S II and Schweinburg F B 1959 The bacterial factor in traumatic shock *New Engl J Med* 260 214 220
- Gilbert R P 1960 Mechanisms of the hemodynamic effects of endotoxin *Physiol Rev* 40 245 279
- Gillman S M Bornstein D L and Wood W B Jr 1961 Studies on the pathogenesis of fever VIII Further observations on the role of endogenous pyrogen in endotoxin fever *J Exp Med* 114 729 739
- Greisman S E Hornick R B Carozza F A Jr and Woodward T E 1963 The role of endotoxin during typhoid fever and tularemia in man I Acquisition of tolerance to endotoxin *J Clin Invest* 42 1064 1075
- Greisman S E Woodward T E Hornick R B and Snyder M J 1961 Role of endotoxin in typhoid fever *Bull N Y Acad Med* 37 493 498
- Hall C H Jr and Atkins E 1959 Studies on tuberculin fever I The mechanism of fever in tuberculin hypersensitivity *J Exp Med* 109 339 359
- Heyman A and Beeson P II 1949 Influence of various disease states upon the febrile response to intravenous injection of typhoid bacterial pyrogen With particular reference to malaria and cirrhosis of the liver *J Lab Clin Med* 34 1400-1403
- Hildreth E A 1963 Alterations in delayed hypersensitivity produced by live attenuated measles vaccine in human adults *Trans Am Clin and Climat Assoc* 75 in press
- Imboden J B Canter A and Cluff L E 1961 Convalescence from influenza *AMA Arch Int Med* 108 393 399
- Imboden J B Canter A and Cluff L E 1961 Symptomatic recovery from medical disorders Influence of psychological factors *JAMA* 178 1182 1184
- Imboden J B Canter A Cluff L E and Trever R W 1959 Brucellosis III Psychologic aspects of delayed convalescence *AMA Arch Int Med* 103 406-414
- Janoff A 1963 in press
- Kaiser H K and Wood W II Jr 1962 Studies on the pathogenesis of fever IX The production of endogenous pyrogen by polymorphonuclear leucocytes *J Exp Med* 115 27 36
- 1962 X The effect of certain enzyme inhibitors on the production and activity of leucocytic pyrogen *J Exp Med* 115 37-47
- Kappas A Soybel W Fukushima D K and Gallagher T F 1959 Studies on pyrogenic steroids in man *Trans Assoc Am Physicians* 72 54 61
- Kass E H 1963 in press
- Kass G H 1955 Hypothermia following cortisone administration *Am J Med* 18 146 149
- King M K and Wood W II Jr 1958 Studies on the pathogenesis of fever IV The site of action of leucocytic and circulating endogenous pyrogen *J Exp Med* 107 291 303
- Kleitman N 1939 Sleep and Wakefulness as Alternating Phases in the Cycle of Existence Chicago Univ Chicago Press
- Knox S J 1963 An evaluation of CMI responses in the identification of psychiatric illness associated with mitral surgery *J Psychosom Res* 7 35 39

## THE INDIGENOUS BACTERIA AND FUNGI

The following listing is limited to the more clearly recognized species found commonly in the absence of significant disease in one or more loci of the normal flora of man. Pathogenic associations are noted. Sites, frequencies of occurrence and concentrations are considered in a later section.

### Cocci

**Staphylococci** Among gram positive mass forming cocci the principal members of the indigenous biota are the potentially pathogenic (coagulase positive) *Staph. aureus* (*Staph. pyogenes*) and the coagulase negative *Staph. albus* Tetrads (*Gaffkya tetragena*) and packets (*Sarcina lutea*) forming cocci have also been recovered from the human mouth (Pike 1962) but less regularly. *Staph. albus* appears to be a typical amphibiont.

**ANAEROBIC MICROCOCCI** The least obscure members of this poorly studied group are *Staphylococcus anaerobius* (Foubert and Douglas 1948) a nonfermenting catalase former and *Micrococcus niger* which forms gas and a black pigment.

**Streptococci** Group A *Str. pyogenes* and *Diplococcus pneumoniae* have been recovered often enough from healthy persons to be thought of as indigenous. However, the characteristic indigenous streptococci fall into the enterococci and the viridans groups.

**ENTEROCOCCI** are characterized by the group D polysaccharide. They are extraordinarily resistant to environmental influences (see Buttiaux and Mossel 1961). Most species of enterococci grow at both 10° and 45° at pH 9.6 in 6.5 per cent NaCl and in 40 per cent bile and withstand 60° temperature for 30 minutes. They are generally resistant to penicillin. The commonest species in man are *Str. faecalis* and *Str. faecium* which are distinguished by failure of the latter to reduce litmus milk or to grow in 1:2:500 potassium tellurite and of the former to ferment arabinose. Varieties of *Str. faecalis* which yield  $\beta$  hemolysis (*Str. zymogenes*) or liquefy gelatin (*Str. liquefaciens*) are also common (see Papavassiliou 1962, Colobert *et al* 1962, Defayolle and Colobert 1962).

Enterococci are amphibiotic in man and animals without clearly defined primary pathogenicity but are nevertheless capable of causing disease in some situations notably subacute bacterial endocarditis and urinary tract infections. An attempt by Deibel and Silliker (1963) to confirm experimentally in human volunteers early suggestions that enterococci may be implicated in food poisoning was unsuccessful.

**VRIDANS STREPTOCOCCI** are a heterogeneous group of amphibionts principally non-hemolytic, sometimes greening on blood. They lack either D or A polysaccharides (or the group N antigen of the lactic streptococci). The Lancefield polysaccharides C, E, F, G, H, O, K and M have been identified in streptococci that probably belong in the viridans groups. Williams (1956) for example found that 58 per cent of 103 strains of *Str. salivarius* reacted with group K antisera and considered this and other antigens of this class (H and E) to be nonspecific (See also Ottens and Winkler 1962, Rifkind and Cole 1962, Stewart and McKeever 1963).

*Str. salivarius* (syn *Str. hominis*) the most clearly defined viridans streptococcus is characterized by levan production and large mucoid colonies on 5 per cent sucrose agar. It is usually nonhemolytic on blood agar, grows at 45° but not at 10°, ferments inulin, salicin and esculin and acidifies and coagulates litmus milk.

*Str. mitis* The remaining members of the viridans group although various may be grouped pending more adequate classification under the specific name *mitis*. All are levan and inulin negative and do not grow as mucoid colonies on sucrose agar but some form dextran from sucrose. These are characteristically but not invariably greening on blood agar. Streptococci of subacute endocarditis fall largely in this group but attempts to define a pathogenic species (so-called *Str. sanguis* or *Str. s.b.*) are not considered valid. The encapsulated *Streptococcus MG* used diagnostically in primary atypical pneumonia may be a distinctive antigenic type.

**PEPTOSTREPTOCOCCUS** Anaerobic streptococci, some of which become adapted to aerobic growth have been reclassified as a separate genus by Breed *et al* (1957). Little

## 14

## Bacteria Indigenous to Man

From the moment of birth and through out life man is exposed to microorganisms. The resultant effects may take a seemingly continuous range of forms depending on the distinctive reactivity of the microorganisms. Many true saprophytes fail to maintain themselves on human tissues. But given suitable partial adaptation of microbe to host species the resultant is likely to include a manifest host response recognizable as overt disease. Pathogens may achieve equilibrium with the host either from the start (as in healthy carriers of pneumococci or hemolytic streptococci) or after an initial upset as with a wide and familiar range of infective diseases. As discussed in Chapter 2, there is a continuous spectrum from the imminent or potential pathogenicity known as latency through apparently permanent neutrality (the resultant of the interaction being undetectable) to symbiosis. The word commensalism is often applied to this intermediate range but like other terms that grew out of an early and necessarily rigid interpretation of the germ theory in which the focus was sharply on disease and a simple cause and effect relationship commensalism implies a passivity that now seems to be unsophisticated. A better term borrowed from vertebrate zoology may be *amphibiosis*—including both symbiosis and antibiosis (or pathogenicity) or anything between the two. The indigenous bacterial biota of man may thus be characterized as occupying a band of a continuous spectrum between saprophytes

and pathogens typically neither but merging with both. In the middle of the band the biota consists of obligate parasites which in pure culture lack obvious or easily demonstrable pathogenicity. Some of them are distinctive species known to occur only in this habitat. The greater variety are closely related to the more characteristic freely communicable bacterial pathogens for man. On the other hand animal pathogens that infect man aberrantly and are not usually communicated from man to man like *Pasteurella* or *Brucella* do not have relatives in the indigenous biota. These circumstances suggest an evolutionary adaptation of both participants from pathogenicity toward amphibiosis.

In this context the word infection may need redefinition. All that it implies is an interaction of a host organism with a smaller self replicating agent. This definition is in line with the now generally held view that infection can occur without disease which is only one of its possible consequences. At the end of the spectrum in which the microorganisms concerned are most highly adapted to man as host—the true amphibionts—the relationship is a balanced and stable one. Nevertheless the balance still may be upset with resulting damage to either parasite or host.

The following account of the indigenous biota including the sections on its distribution and significance and on its nonpathogenic effects is abridged with additions from the more recent literature from Rosebury (1962).

*fermenti* with smooth to intermediate colonies less actively saccharolytic and having intermediate acidogenicity and (5) *L. brevis* rough with short to medium bacilli fermenting a wider range of test carbohydrates than the preceding but producing relatively little acid

**Corynebacterium** These principally or exclusively catalase positive gram positive non motile rods often pleomorphic include the characteristic diphtheroids of mucous membranes. The traditional simple criterion of fermentation of glucose and sucrose separates the nonfermenting *C. hojmanni* (*C. pseudodiphtheriticum*) and the fermentative *C. xerosis* from pathogenic forms (*C. diphtheriae* and others) which ferment only glucose. However nontoxigenic *C. diphtheriae* and otherwise nonpathogenic glucose fermenters are well recognized and all 3 fermentation patterns appear commonly among indigenous species. *C. haemolyticum* and other aerobic catalase negative forms are probably more appropriately classified as streptococci or in other genera (see Zinnesman and Turner 1963)

**Corynebacterium acnes** and other anaerobic or micro aerophilic diphtheroidlike bacteria constitute an ill-defined group members of which have been classified variously as *Lactobacillus*, *Actinomyces*, *Propionibacterium* and in several less familiar genera. The definition of *Lactobacillus* given above separates that group. It may be feasible to include catalase negative anaerobic forms in the genus *Actinomyces* as noted below. Among the remaining members of this group the catalase positive anaerobe *C. acnes* (or *Propionibacterium acnes* see Moore and Cato 1963) is indigenous to skin and widely distributed in other locations both amphibiologically and saprophytically. Several studies have established a clear distinction between this organism and the anaerobic actinomycetes. Bouisset *et al.* (1963) have reported differences in DNA base ratios between the aerobic diphtheroids and the anaerobes.

**Actinomyces** If the generic name *Actinomyces* is limited to anaerobic catalase negative gram positive bacilli with a tendency to branch it would include 2 groups: (1) those associated with actinomycosis the *bovis israeli* forms and (2) *A. bifidus* more com-

monly called *Lactobacillus bifidus* but excluded from the latter genus by several groups of workers in recent years

A distinction between two species of the first group *A. israeli* and *A. bovis* now seems unequivocal on the basis of differences in cell wall composition and serology (King and Meyer 1963). *A. israeli* is a rough amphibiogenic form which sometimes causes actinomycosis in man. *A. bovis* is smoother more diphtheroidlike and is found typically in cattle.

**Actinomyces bifidus** (*Lactobacillus bifidus*) although recognized since the turn of the century as the predominating bacterium of the feces of breast fed babies remains inadequately defined and classified. Studies especially during the 1950's which have established the characteristics of the lactobacilli generally have excluded the *bifidus* forms both morphologic and metabolic findings have pointed to a relationship to *A. israeli*. Attempts to subdivide the *bifidus* group have yielded inconsistent results. The occurrence of a variety *pennsylvanicus* (Gyorgy *et al.* 1954) which requires for growth a mucopolysaccharide fraction of blood group substance found in human milk and colostrum has been suggested as explaining the *bifidus* nursing relationship but the *A. bifidus* found in nursing feces has simpler nutritive requirements not including the *pennsylvanicus* factor and it is possible that human milk selects *A. bifidus* by inhibiting coliforms and enterococci rather than by direct stimulation.

**Leptotrichia** General agreement seems to have been reached in the early 1960's that this generic name and the single identified species name *L. buccalis* be limited to a bacterium long recognized as an amphibiogenic resident of the human mouth, a rather thick unbranched gram positive organism growing as long rods or filaments, anaerobic, catalase negative, homolactic (final pH approximately 5.0) forming typical translucent rough colonies on enriched agar. Irregularities of morphology and a tendency to decolorize in the gram stain have led to confusion between this organism and *Fusobacterium* which is however morphologically and biochemically distinct.

**Bacterionema matruchoti** (syn *Lepto*

attention has been paid to them in recent years and they are in need of reconsideration. These streptococci have been associated with endogenous anaerobic mixed infections including a form of puerperal fever studied especially in the 1930's wound and other infections in which bacteroides were also implicated and the so-called fusospirochetal infections as detailed in a later section. Although additional species names are used the following represent the principal ones.

*P. putridus* a strict anaerobe gas forming and fetid forms large volumes of gas, principally CO from glucose fructose and maltose but only in the presence of S-containing compounds (Hare *et al* 1952). Also formed are NH<sub>3</sub>, H<sub>2</sub>S and formic butyric and acetic acids. The cocci tend to be large and pleomorphic.

*P. evolutus* which acquires oxygen tolerance and *P. micros* a strict anaerobe both fail to produce gas or odor (see Hare *et al* 1952 Mergenhagen and Scherp 1957).

*Neisseria N. meningitidis* like group A streptococci and pneumococci has frequently been found in healthy carriers in whom it may achieve amphibiotic status. However the more typically indigenous members of this genus are characteristic amphibionts. The generic name should be limited to aerobic oxidase positive gram negative cocci. Principal species are *N. catarrhalis* unpigmented no acid from carbohydrates *N. sicca* unpigmented ferments glucose maltose fructose and sucrose (but see Berger 1961a b) resembles the meningococcus but grows more abundantly and at 22° it forms a dry rough colony and is antigenically distinctive. *N. pharyngis* chromogenic (forming greenish yellow colonies) fermentative with strain variations antigenically heterogeneous and *N. mucosa* resembling *N. sicca* but encapsulated mucoid and serologically distinct.

Pike *et al* (1962) have suggested that nonpathogenic neisseria including named strains from various sources and fresh isolates from the mouth all could be grouped as *N. pharyngis* and *N. catarrhalis* of which the former was the more common. For a review of nonpathogenic neisseria see Berger (1963).

*Veillonella*. Although several species of

strictly anaerobic gram negative cocci are thought to exist only one *V. alcalescens* (syn *V. gazogenes Micrococcus lactilyticus*) has been identified clearly (see e.g., Rogosa *et al* 1961). This widely distributed amphibiont is a small spherical mass forming coccus which may be gram positive during the first few hours of growth but is uniformly gram negative after 12 hours. It fails to ferment sugars but ferments lactate and other intermediate products of hexose breakdown producing propionic and acetic acids with CO and H<sub>2</sub> in large amounts, accompanied by a rise in pH. Many biochemical studies of this organism have been published (see e.g., McCormick *et al* 1962a b Whiteley and McCormick 1963 Woolfolk *et al* 1962). *V. alcalescens* is apparently not specifically pathogenic. It contains endotoxin (Mergenhagen *et al* 1962 1963).

#### GRAM POSITIVE BACILLI

*Lactobacillus*. The generic name *Lactobacillus* is coming to be limited to catalase negative gram positive nonmotile rods that grow aerobically and ferment carbohydrates actively either homofermentatively to lactic acid or heterofermentatively to lactic acid and other products including CO<sub>2</sub>. (The anaerobic *L. bifidus* is included under *Actinomyces* see below). Many species of lactobacilli inhabit the mucous membranes. Of these only one *L. acidophilus* is obligately parasitic the others including the commonest and most numerous indigenous species are widely distributed in nature. Some of these organisms by virtue of their high acid production may be a significant factor in dental caries. They are thought to play a symbiotic role in limiting the flora of the vagina.

Among indigenous homofermentative lactobacilli the commonest species found are (1) *L. casei* with smooth colonies and curved bacilli growing at 15° and irregularly at 45° actively acidogenic (2) *L. acidophilus* rough with long bacilli growing at 45° but not at 15° less actively saccharolytic and acidogenic and (3) *L. plantarum* smooth with short straight bacilli growing at 15° but usually not at 45° actively saccharolytic and acidogenic. The two commonest heterofermentative species are (4) *L.*

cific or variety names (*Bacterium* etc.) *aurum* and *glucidolytica*. This organism is also known by the notebook code designation B5W.

Although the literature on these microorganisms deals predominantly with their occurrence in disease they also reside on normal mucous membranes. The principal sites in which members of the group have been found normally are the nose, the vagina and the conjunctiva. Pathologically they have been recovered from a wide range of sites and conditions. The conditions attributed to them include for all 3 species conjunctivitis and meningitis, and especially for penicillin resistant forms (*Mima* spp.) gonorrhealike urethritis. Attempts to demonstrate experimental pathogenicity have been successful in some instances but in general only with massive doses suggesting a typical amphibiotic behavior.

**Pseudomonas Alcaligenes** A large group of gram negative strictly aerobic saprophytic bacilli, some of which are pigment formers and manifest obligately aerobic glycolysis (*Pseudomonas*) while others are achromogenic and may be nonglycolytic (*Achromobacter*) are linked in part because variants of the first group may lose or fail to show the distinguishing features mentioned. Motility due to polar flagella is characteristic of the first group and is variable in the second. The most important strains are *P. aeruginosa* (*Bacillus pyocyaneus*) and *Alcaligenes (Achromobacter) faecalis*.

*Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is identified by the formation of water soluble fluorescent bluish green pigments (the blue green phenazine pigment pyocyanin and the greenish yellow fluorescein). It is proteolytic and forms acid from glucose only when grown with free access to air. Other distinguishing features are oxidation of potassium gluconate, a rapidly positive test for cytochrome oxidase and rapid breakdown of arginine. Along with staphylococci, *Candida albicans* and a few other species, this micro-organism has become of greater pathogenic importance during the antibiotic era (see Flynn and others 1963). The increased frequency of pseudomonas disease is based at least in part on the widespread distribution of this

organism and on its ability to develop resistance to antibiotics. Experimental pathogenicity has been demonstrated under conditions typical for amphibionts, entailing e.g. injection of  $10^8$  or more organisms intraperitoneally into mice after pretreatment with x radiation.

*Alcaligenes faecalis* is distinguished from *Mima polymorpha* which it resembles biochemically by being consistently bacillary and gram negative, growing regularly on simple nutrient agar and being frequently motile. It does not attack glucose or other carbohydrates but grows in a medium containing only lactate, asparagine and salts. It is found in feces and appears uncommonly in a variety of pathologic situations (see Sherman *et al.* 1960).

**Vibrio** Aerobic members of this genus recovered from feces, e.g. *V. alcaligenes* and *V. percolans* have been found to be indistinguishable from *Alcaligenes faecalis* or from pseudomonads.

**Haemophilus** Of the nutritionally fastidious aerobic gram negative bacilli requiring phosphopyridine nucleotide (V factor) or hemin (X) or both *H. influenzae* and the hemolytic *H. haemolyticus* which require both are characteristically found in the healthy mouth and upper respiratory tract as are the corresponding forms that require only V factor, *H. parainfluenzae* and *H. para-haemolyticus*. The indigenous influenza bacillus proper is usually rough and lacks the b capsular antigen of the typical pathogen for man but probably possesses endogenous pathogenicity.

*H. aegyptius* (the Koch Wells bacillus) antigenically distinct from non type specific *H. influenzae* has been found in the healthy conjunctival sac as well as in conjunctivitis. Two other species, *H. vaginalis* and *H. aphrophilus* are both probably better classified in other genera. Neither species appears to require X or V factors. *H. vaginalis* associated with vaginitis but probably indigenous to the area (see Dunkelberg *et al.* 1962) has been classified as *Corynebacterium vaginale* principally on morphologic grounds but differs from diphtheroids in being catalase negative (Zinnemann and Turner 1963). *H. aphrophilus* is a little studied gram negative aro-



TABLE 1 PRINCIPAL DISTINGUISHING CHARACTERISTICS OF *Moraxella Mima*\*

Neisserialike short rods or coccid forms in pairs or short chains with some longer rods and filaments  
gram negative to gram amphophule aerobic anaerogenic Indole and Voges Proskauer negative Usually  
nonmotile encapsulated and methyl red negative

	SERUM REQUIRED FOR GROWTH	GROWTH IN DEFINED MEDIA	LIQUEFAC- TION OF SERUM OR GELATIN	ACID FROM GLUCOSE	H <sub>2</sub> S FORMED	NO <sub>3</sub> REDUCED TO NO	OXI- DASE	SENSI- TIVE TO PENI- CILLIN
<i>Moraxella lacunata</i>	V	0	V	0	0v	+	+	S
<i>Mima polymorpha</i>	0	V	V	0	V	0v	V	V
<i>Mima vaginicola</i>	0	+	V	+	V	0	0	R

+ positive 0 negative V variable 0v usually negative S sensitive R resistant

\* (From Rosebury [1962] McGraw Hill Book Co.)

*trichia dentium*) is another oral bacterium sometimes confused with *L. buccalis* but clearly distinguished since 1958. This organism is aerobic, catalase positive and consistently gram positive, forming filaments often with elongated swellings and sometimes showing branching. A relationship to *L. buccalis* and to *Nocardia* was suggested by Davis and Baird Parker (1959b) on the basis of the finding of DAP in the cell wall. Common antigens have been found by complement fixation with *Nocardia*, *Mycobacterium*, *Corynebacterium* and *Actinomyces* but not with *Lactobacillus* (Schmidt and Richardson 1962). Sibal and co-workers (1962) using acid soluble antigens in tube precipitin and gel diffusion studies found little or no cross reaction with *L. buccalis*, *Actinomyces* spp., *Nocardia asteroides* or *Lactobacillus* spp.

**Mycobacterium** There are suggestions that several species of mycobacteria other than true tubercle bacilli occur in man frequently enough in the absence of symptoms to be thought of as indigenous. These include *M. smegmatis* present in external genital secretions according to early literature and other members of the so-called atypical or unclassified mycobacteria (see Chap. 21).

**Clostridium** *C. perfringens* (type A) is found commonly in human feces. *C. tetani* common in animal feces has been recovered only irregularly in man. More typical soil clostridia have also been found occasionally in man but as with members of the genus *Bacillus* under similar circumstances may probably be dismissed as transients.

#### GRAM NEGATIVE AEROBIC BACILLI (See also Chap. 25)

**Enterobacteria** The easily grown aerobic gram negative rods, although outnumbered in the intestinal tract by anaerobes of other genera, are the best known of indigenous bacteria.

**Moraxella and Mima** Certain gram negative aerobic bacilli on which a large literature has been accumulating are distinguished by neisserialike characters: coccid as well as bacillary (and filamentous) forms, a tendency to gram variability, intracellular occurrence pathologically in spinal fluid or genital urinary exudates, and a gradient of properties ranging from oxidase positivity and penicillin sensitivity to the reverse. The former are also generally glucose nonfermenters, whereas the oxidase negative penicillin resistant forms tend to be aerobically glycolytic. Variation from apparently obligate parasitism to saprophytism is correlated with decreasingly exacting nutritive requirements. The principal features of the 3 species defined tentatively pending more adequate taxonomic study of the group are given in Table 1.

**Moraxella lacunata** (the *Morax* Axenfeld bacillus) here includes *M. duplex* and its variants. *Mima polymorpha* is considered to be a transitional group, some strains of which are oxidase and penicillin positive, similar strains giving negative reactions constitute the *Moraxella hooffi* of French workers. *Mima vaginicola*, the glycolytic group, appears under a variety of names including the genera *Herellea*, *Achromobacter* and *Actinobacter* as well as *Moraxella* and the spe-

appearance of tufts of flagella in light microscopy has given rise to the apparently erroneous practice of considering this organism to be a protozoan (*Selenomonas sputigena*). *S. sputigenum* appears to be an unusually fastidious anaerobe difficult to cultivate on agar surfaces but growing well in thioglycollate broth under petrolatum.

*Vibrio sputorum* is a small usually curved polar flagellated gram negative organism with pointed ends. Its motility is rapid darting often in an elliptical course and characterized by stops sometimes with reversal of direction. It grows anaerobically on enriched agar surfaces or as stab cultures in semi solid agar but poorly in broth. It is non-saccharolytic.

*Butyrivibrio fibrosolvens* a small motile gram negative anaerobe originally isolated from the rumen was recovered from high dilutions of human feces in 2 of 7 trials by Brown and Moore (1960) who also provided evidence that the organism may participate in fermentation in the human intestine producing butyric and other fatty acids.

#### SPIROCHETES (See Chap. 24)

These flexible highly motile nonflagellated microorganisms include anaerobic forms indigenous to mucous membranes. Usually sparse in the absence of inflammatory disease they may occur in enormous numbers under many pathologic conditions. Since gingivitis commonly mild or localized is seldom entirely absent spirochetes can be demonstrated nearly universally best at the bottom of the gingival crevice or pocket.

The amphibiotic spirochetes have been cultivated principally by variations of the Noguchi method in the depths of enriched agar media. Means for isolation from surface colonies have been proposed in recent years (Socransky *et al.* 1959 Hardy *et al.* 1963). The validity of the current classification of the indigenous spirochetes is doubtful. Cultures derived from different sites such as mouth, intestine and genitalia, have been arbitrarily given different names. The evidence suggests that both of the anaerobic parasitic genera *Treponema* and *Borrelia* are represented among indigenous forms but until more reliable information is at

hand only a single species of each need be named.

*Treponema dentium* (*T. microdentum* etc.) is a pallidumlike spirochete tightly wound single contoured capable of active motility with rapid rotation darting progression and flexing movements suggesting greater rigidity than do the typically soft undulations of *T. pallidum*. Listgarten *et al.* (1963) found in electron micrographs an axial filament made of 2 fibrils (*T. pallidum* has 3) approximately 150 Å in diameter lying between an external envelope and the protoplast. The organisms are usually actively proteolytic but many cultures do not ferment carbohydrates. They appear to be very fastidious both in their nutritive requirements (see Pilot 1962) and in their need for anaerobiosis. Their pathogenic properties remain poorly defined. These forms rather than *Borrelia* spp. seem to be most consistently associated with fusospirochetal disease but most attempts to demonstrate experimental pathogenicity have yielded at most nontransmissible disease (see Hampp and Mergenhagen 1961 1963).

*Borrelia refringens*. These loosely wound indigenous spirochetes have been defined only provisionally. The name assigned by Schaudinn and Hoffmann in 1905 to a genital form (which they distinguished from the spirochete of syphilis) has priority. Forms with single contours (called *B. vincentii* in the mouth) and double contours (*B. buccale*) are probably variants of one species. Many other synonyms have been used. The pitch (crest-to-crest distance) of *B. refringens* is usually more than twice that of *T. dentium* (approximately 2.5 to 4 microns as compared with 1.2 microns). The coils are regular when the spirochetes are viable and active. Swain (1955) gave the following measurements from electron micrographs: thickness 0.23 to 0.64 micron; average 0.42 micron; 8 to 11 axial fibrils; 200 Å wound helically around the helical protoplast. In active motion these spirochetes spin rapidly and seem to stretch their coils almost taut as they move in straight lines; they may stop intermittently relax their winding and reverse their direction. Slower movements are less characteristic. These spirochetes stain more easily with aniline

bic rod which has been found together with *Actinomyces israeli* in actinomycosis as has the equally obscure so called *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans*. Both organisms have also been found under normal conditions. The two forms appear to be distinct (see King and Tatum 1963)

#### GRAM NEGATIVE ANAEROBIC BACILLI AND SPIRILLA (See also Chap 32)

**Bacteroides, Fusobacterium** A large and varied group of amphibiotic obligately anaerobic gram negative rods some of which are fusiforms or filamentous or highly pleomorphic have been classified under many names, both generic and specific but are grouped here pending further study into two related genera and a restricted range of species. The bacteroides are probably the most numerous organisms in adult human feces (see Zubrzycki and Spaulding 1962). On the other hand Haenel (1961) made no mention of gram negative anaerobes in reporting on 50 analyses of feces of 21 healthy adults. According to this worker the predominant organism in feces ( $10^9$  to  $10^{10}$  per Gm) is a facultatively anaerobic lactobacillus. They are usually nonfusiform but range in morphology from regular rods to filaments and highly pleomorphic forms. All but one species (*B. serpens* one of the least understood of this neglected group) are nonmotile. The fusobacteria include one motile and one nonmotile species.

*Bacteroides fragilis* probably the commonest species in feces is nonpleomorphic saccharolytic (pH in glucose 4.6 to 5.4) and penicillin resistant. It usually requires enriched media. *B. funduliformis* (*B. [Sphaerophorus] necrophorus*) the highly pleomorphic form most commonly implicated in disease is a moderately weak fermenter (pH 5.6 to 6.5) grows in simple media after isolation and reacts variably to penicillin. It produces  $H_2$  and  $NH_3$  and a predominantly butyric fermentation. *B. nigrescens* (*B. melaninogenicus*) is a distinctive species or group that forms a black pigment (a hematin derivative) from hemoglobin after 3 to 5 days growth. These pigment formers have been intensively studied in recent years under the hypothesis that they may be significant

contributors to certain mixed anaerobic infections as noted below. Sawyer *et al* (1962) found that all of 31 strains actively hydrolyzed collagen and gelatin and produced  $H_2$ . All required or were stimulated by hemin. Some strains required menadione or related naphthoquinones. Wide variation in fermentative activity was observed. *B. nigrescens* is sensitive to penicillin and to other antibiotics.

*Bacteroides (Dialister) pneumosintes* is the name assigned to a small gram negative anaerobic bacillus first isolated from the nasopharynx during the 1920s and said to be filterable through Berkefeld V and N filters. A single strain obtained from Prevot was studied by Sonnenwirth (1960) and more recently by Chien-Ching Chen and Cleverdon (1963). Except for its small size the organism seems to be related to *B. fragilis*. The latter workers established its maximum diameter as 0.4 to 0.6 micron by Millipore filtration.

*Fusobacterium fusiforme* is the typical small nonmotile fusiform bacillus found on normal mucous membranes and in fusospirochetal disease. Morphologically it resembles *B. funduliformis* but is more clearly spindle shaped and less pleomorphic. It differs also in being less acidogenic in glucose (final pH not less than 6.0) in requiring enriched media and in being uniformly sensitive to penicillin. This organism has been confused with *Leptotrichia buccalis* from which it differs in morphology and metabolism. Confusion with spirilla (e.g. *S. sputigenum* see below) and spirochetes was formerly common. *F. fusiforme* is easily and clearly separable from both.

*Fusobacterium girans* is a slowly motile nonflagellated gram negative anaerobic fusiform found in the mouth.

**Anaerobic Spirilla and Vibrios** A group of curved or helical flagellated anaerobic bacteria is found in areas of abundant mucous membrane flora and is associated especially with fusospirochetal overgrowths. Among these can be distinguished *Spirillum sputigenum* a variable comma shaped S shaped or helical form showing active motility. This organism is typically gram negative but may appear to be weakly positive. Its flagella are peritrichous but the



## TABLE 2. MICROORGANISMS COMMONLY FOUND ON HEALTHY HUMAN BODY SURFACES\*

TABLE 2. JOURNAL OF THE

CENTRODIAPYCNIA	SPECIES ON GROUP	SKIN	C n	UPPER RESPIRATORY TRACT	MOUTH	LOWER INTESTINE	Feces	CENTRODIAPYCNIA	Vag on
Ante	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on
Ect	F	Ect	C n	N	P	F	C n	Ante	Vag on

of averages (2) the colony count per unit of surface volume or weight given as a range in rounded logs<sub>10</sub> and (3) where the preceding data are not available a rougher measure of occurrence or prominence in terms of  $\pm$  1+ or 2+ Spaces left blank usually indicate absence of information

In body sites not given in the table the prevailing condition in health is presumably either microbiologic sterility as in blood and tissues or a sparse biota approaching extinction or in passage as in larynx trachea bronchi accessory nasal sinuses esophagus stomach upper portions of the intestinal tract upper urinary and posterior genital tracts and subjacent structures The healthy conjunctiva and anterior urethra also have a scanty flora and the nasal and the vaginal mucous membranes are relatively lightly populated

Microbic colonization begins at birth the first settlers being transferred from the maternal vagina and perineal area to the infant skin mouth nose and oropharynx The characteristic biotas of these and other areas develop later and probably are derived and selected from various environmental sources The character of the amphibiotic relationship and the relative uniformity of the flora in widely scattered persons suggest an origin principally in other human beings

It may be useful to subdivide the indigenous microbiota of man into 3 groups In the first of these (the lower intestine) extraneous pabulum is present in massive amounts and tends to favor the overgrowth of saprophytes (although true amphibionts such as bacteroides still predominate) In the second—the mouth the oropharynx and the vulva—pabulum is relatively abundant enriched either by extraneous material (from ingested food) or accumulated cell debris or both crypts or recesses particularly favor anaerobes The third—the skin—differs in its lower moisture and high lipid contents which tend to select a somewhat different biota It is worth emphasizing that in general strict anaerobes tend to outnumber facultative forms and aerobes usually by a factor of 10 to 100 or more This is true even in skin and in the highly ventilated nasal passages

## SIGNIFICANCE OF THE INDIGENOUS BIOTA

Under the usual conditions of exposure man's skin and the mucous membrane lined orifices leading inward directly from it rapidly become populated with a varying but nevertheless characteristic range of microorganisms These are assumed to be in continual interaction with the host and with other species within the biota itself leading to fluctuations in the biota both qualitative and quantitative and to more or less pronounced effects on the host These effects range from beneficial through inapparent to detrimental (See also Dubos *et al* 1963)

## NONPATHOGENIC ACTIVITIES

The discernible nonpathogenic effects of the normal flora on the host include (1) nutritional effects resulting from microbial synthesis (2) various interactions between microbiota and host (3) protective effects of latent infection (4) direct and indirect consequences of interactions between the microbes themselves including antibiotic effects and (5) other phenomena that can be recognized either directly or by inference from experimental studies of germ free animals

Germ free animal studies merit more extended discussion than space permits (see Rosebury 1962 and the review by Mickelsen 1962)

Several species of vertebrates have been bred through successive generations in a germ free state Thus the biota is not essential for their continued existence Experiments in which germ free animals have been contaminated deliberately or accidentally have begun to provide much basic information on the effects of the microbiota which will be considered under the following heads

**The Indigenous Biota in Host Nutrition**  
Despite the fact that the microbiota is not essential to host life considerable evidence indicates that the normal intestinal flora contributes to host nutrition Some members of the biota especially the nutritionally nonfastidious enterobacteria, synthesize vitamins

dyes, e.g., crystal violet than the tightly wound forms they are typically distorted in routine dried films. Cultivation of the loosely wound forms has been reported less frequently than of *T. dentium*, especially from the mouth. Detailed methods that might permit cultivation of *B. refringens* apart from the other forms have not been reported. Statements as to its nutritional and metabolic characteristics are to be regarded with caution. It has been suggested that these loosely wound spirochetes share the elusive pathogenic attributes of the tightly wound forms (Hampp and Mergenhagen 1961).

### FUNGI

(See also Chap. 37)

Nearly all fungi found in man are saprophytes widely distributed in the environment. Therefore the separation of indigenous species is more than ordinarily difficult. Exceptions appear among yeastlike fungi. The association of *Pityrosporum* species (*P. ovale* and *P. orbiculare*) with the skin may be due to its requirement for fatty acids or glycerol. *Torulopsis glabrata* also occurs on the skin and the mucous membranes; it is said to require biotin, thiamin, niacin, and pyridoxin for growth at 37°C. The dimorphic yeastlike form *Candida albicans*, although capable of growing saprophytically, seems to be limited in its distribution to parasitic sites. Other species of *Candida*, namely the closely related *C. stellatoidea* and *C. tropicalis*, may be true amphibionts, while still others—*C. parapsilosis*, *C. krusei*, *C. guilliermondi*, and *C. pseudotropicalis*—although saprophytic, appear on mucous membranes often enough to be thought of as indigenous. *T. glabrata* and the *Candida* species can cause experimental disease in mice and have also been implicated in human disease (see e.g., Hurley and Winner 1962). *C. albicans* is evidently the most pathogenic of these forms, but even this species causes disease only when the infecting dose is large or when certain abnormal conditions exist, for example, when the experimental animal has been pretreated with cortisone or x-radiation. Prolonged treatment with broad spectrum antibiotics often leads to the appearance of candidiasis in man and also

facilitates the establishment of *C. albicans* in the mouse intestine (see Sheldon and Bauer 1962).

Certain of the dermatophytes of tinea pedis, namely *Trichophyton rubrum*, *T. mentagrophytes*, and *Epidermophyton floccosum*, may be included among amphibionts because of their widespread occurrence on healthy skin of the feet and also because certain aspects of both the naturally occurring disease and of its experimental reproduction in man suggest endogenous infection (see Barlow *et al.*, 1961, but also Ajello 1962).

Although protozoa are outside the scope of this book, it should be noted that members of this group are indigenous to the human mouth, intestine, and vagina (see Rosebury, 1962).

### PLEUROPNEUMONIALIKE AND RELATED FORMS

(See also Chap. 35)

The interrelationship between so-called PPLO (pleuropneumonia-like organisms), L-phase variants of bacteria, and bacteria from which the cell wall has been denuded experimentally, partially or completely (spheroplasts and protoplasts), is still unsettled. For this reason it is inadvisable to apply separate generic and specific names to these forms (Rosebury, 1962). In the present context it may be noted that both PPLO, which are not known to revert to bacteria, and L forms, which are, have been recovered from oral, pharyngeal, anorectal, and genitourinary mucous membranes both in health and in disease. They are recovered more commonly under pathologic conditions and have been held responsible for disease, especially non-specific urethritis, but experimental pathogenicity generally has not been demonstrable.

### DISTRIBUTION OF THE INDIGENOUS MICROBIOTA

The distribution of species or groups of bacteria and fungi in various sites are summarized in Table 2. Data are given in the table in 3 ways: (1) the incidence as a percentage of subjects studied, given as a range

of averages (2) the colony count per unit of surface volume or weight, given as a range in rounded logs<sub>10</sub> and (3) where the preceding data are not available a rougher measure of occurrence or prominence in terms of  $\pm 1+$  or  $2+$ . Spaces left blank usually indicate absence of information.

In body sites not given in the table the prevailing condition in health is presumably either microbiologic sterility as in blood and tissues or a sparse biota approaching extinction or in passage as in larynx trachea bronchi accessory nasal sinuses esophagus stomach upper portions of the intestinal tract upper urinary and posterior genital tracts and subjacent structures. The healthy conjunctiva and anterior urethra also have a scanty flora and the nasal and the vaginal mucous membranes are relatively lightly populated.

Microbic colonization begins at birth the first settlers being transferred from the maternal vagina and perineal area to the infant skin mouth nose and oropharynx. The characteristic biotas of these and other areas develop later and probably are derived and selected from various environmental sources. The character of the amphibiotic relationship and the relative uniformity of the flora in widely scattered persons suggest an origin principally in other human beings.

It may be useful to subdivide the indigenous microbiota of man into 3 groups. In the first of these (the lower intestine) extraneous pabulum is present in massive amounts and tends to favor the overgrowth of saprophytes (although true amphibionts and bacteroides still predominate). In the second—the mouth the oropharynx and the vulva—pabulum is relatively abundant enriched either by extraneous material (from ingested food) or accumulated cell debris or both crypts or recesses particularly favor anaerobes. The third—the skin—differs in its lower moisture and high lipid contents which tend to select a somewhat different biota. It is worth emphasizing that in general strict anaerobes tend to outnumber facultative forms and aerobes usually by a factor of 10 to 100 or more. This is true even in skin and in the highly ventilated nasal passages.

## SIGNIFICANCE OF THE INDIGENOUS BIOTA

Under the usual conditions of exposure man's skin and the mucous membrane lined orifices leading inward directly from it rapidly become populated with a varying but nevertheless characteristic range of microorganisms. These are assumed to be in continual interaction with the host and with other species within the biota itself leading to fluctuations in the biota both qualitative and quantitative and to more or less pronounced effects on the host. These effects range from beneficial through inapparent to detrimental. (See also Dubos *et al* 1963.)

## NONPATHOGENIC ACTIVITIES

The discernible nonpathogenic effects of the normal flora on the host include (1) nutritional effects resulting from microbial synthesis (2) various interactions between microbiota and host (3) protective effects of latent infection (4) direct and indirect consequences of interactions between the microbes themselves including antibiotic effects and (5) other phenomena that can be recognized either directly or by inference from experimental studies of germ free animals.

Germ free animal studies merit more extended discussion than space permits (see Rosebury 1962 and the review by Mickelsen 1962).

Several species of vertebrates have been bred through successive generations in a germ free state. Thus the biota is not essential for their continued existence. Experiments in which germ free animals have been contaminated deliberately or accidentally have begun to provide much basic information on the effects of the microbiota which will be considered under the following heads.

**The Indigenous Biota in Host Nutrition**  
Despite the fact that the microbiota is not essential to host life, considerable evidence indicates that the normal intestinal flora contributes to host nutrition. Some members of the biota especially the nutritionally nonfastidious enterobacteria, synthesize vitamins



in excess of their own requirements, and there is evidence that such microbes contribute to host nutrition by supplying significant amounts of biotin, vitamin K, pantothenic acid, pyridoxine and vitamin B<sub>12</sub>. In germ free rats there is striking evidence of a need for dietary vitamin K which is not required by conventional animals (Gustafsson 1959).

**Host Biota Interactions Other Than Disease** Whenever a given microbial species is found regularly and in appreciable numbers in an indigenous locus it may be assumed that its metabolic activity directly or indirectly influences the host.

Observations on germ free animals indicate that the indigenous flora may exert on the host beneficial effects not directly related to nutritional supplementation. For example in the absence of an intestinal flora guinea pigs and other animals develop an unusual anomaly: cecal distension (see Mickelsen 1962). Skelly *et al.* (1962) found that enlargement of the caecum in germ free mice could be corrected by feeding anaerobes isolated from the ceca of normal mice: a clostridium or a mixture of two strains of bacteroides. Germ free animals are also abnormal in many biochemical activities as well as in their greater susceptibility to infection (references in Rosebury 1962). Phillips and Wolfe (1961) observed spontaneous pneumonic disease of presumed viral origin in germ free guinea pigs which could be cured by feeding autoclaved cecal contents of conventional animals (See also Lev 1961).

**Latent Infection Antibody Formation** Antibodies have been found in healthy human serum or other body fluids to the following microorganisms listed above as indigenous: coagulase positive staphylococci, nonhemolytic streptococci, lactobacilli, actinomycetes of the israeli group, *E. coli* and other enterobacteria, *P. aeruginosa*, *H. influenzae*, *B. funduliformis*, fusobacteria, indigenous spirochetes and *Candida albicans* and other members of this genus. The significance of these antibodies is not clear but it is probable that they indicate past invasion and presumably subclinical disease. Findings in germ free animals make it likely that such antibodies help to protect the host against further invasion by the microbial species concerned. The ques-

tion has been explored especially in germ free rats in which lymphatic tissue was found to be poorly developed (Thorbecke *et al.* 1957). There was an associated marked reduction in serum globulin and in antibody activity. Grabar *et al.* (1961) found that only small amounts of  $\gamma$  globulin were detectable in germ free rat serum by direct analysis although all major antigenic components in conventional rat serum could be demonstrated by immuno-electrophoresis of anti germ free rat immune rabbit serum. However germ free mice have normal levels of antibody to endotoxins of gram negative bacilli presumably in response to antigens present in food and water (Landy *et al.* 1962). In some instances germ free animals are susceptible to disease induced by indigenous microorganisms for example *Sarcina lutea* and *Bacillus subtilis* (Taylor 1959) but in other cases they have been contaminated with normal faeces without developing disease (Gordon 1959).

**Interactions of Indigenous Microorganisms** Both cooperative (synergistic, syntrophic) and competitive interactions occur among indigenous microbial species and between these and either saprophytic or pathogenic intruders. Our knowledge of such interactions is generally meager. Their study presents formidable difficulties inherent in the vagaries of population mixtures comprising 2 or more species (see Parker and Snyder 1961, Jameson 1962).

Cooperative interactions (other than genetic exchange) include (1) satellitism: the production by one species of a condition (e.g. a low oxidation-reduction potential) or a substance (e.g. a growth factor) which permits contiguous growth of another species and (2) enzyme sharing: e.g. permitting growth of two species in media inadequate for either alone or yielding a joint product not found in the separate pure cultures. For examples see Rosebury (1962) and also Freter (1962).

Competitive interactions probably depend on either or both of two phenomena: (1) competition for nutrients and (2) the production by one species of conditions (e.g. a low pH) or substances (antibiotics) adverse for others. Antibiotic effects have been described for the following indigenous species

(1) *Staphylococcus aureus* and other staphylococci against corynebacteria including *C. diphtheriae*, *Bacillus* spp. streptococci including *S. faecalis*, mycobacteria, clostridia, other staphylococci and other species. (2) Nonhemolytic streptococci, especially viridans forms (and pneumococci) acting against a wide range of test species including staphylococci, corynebacteria, neisseria and many others among them  $\beta$  streptococci. Some of these streptococcal effects are known to be due to H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> and some including the  $\alpha$ / $\beta$  effect are mutual inhibitions effected by the more against the less abundant species. (3) Lactobacilli (in addition to their effects at tributable to low pH) inhibit staphylococci, enterobacteria and other organisms. (4) *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* produces a range of antibiotic substances against *B. anthracis*, *V. cholerae*, staphylococci, streptococci, enteric pathogens and others as well as against *Candida albicans* and other fungi. This species also produces pyocins analogous to colicins (see below). (5) Enterobacteria, especially *E. coli*, have been found to be inhibitory in vitro for *Candida albicans* and *C. krusei* and for several bacterial species other than enterobacteria themselves but such antibacterial effects have seldom been striking or easily demonstrable. The name colicins has been applied to an apparently diverse group of substances produced by certain enterobacteria, especially certain strains of *E. coli*, which are inhibitory in vitro for other enterobacteria, frequently for other strains of the producing species, often also for *Sh. sonnei*. Goebel and his co-workers (see Goebel and Amano 1959, Hutton and Goebel 1962) have found two colicins (K and V) to be associated with the O antigens of the effector strains. The strain specificity of colicins has led to their use in typing enteropathogenic *E. coli* and other enterobacteria.

## PATHOGENIC EFFECTS OF THE INDIGENOUS BIOTA

### ENDOGENOUS INFECTIVE DISEASES SOME GENERAL PRINCIPLES

The subject to be surveyed here is so varied that no attempt can be made to cover it completely. Both the idea that indigenous

micro-organisms may participate in disease in the presence of predisposing conditions and the term applied to such disease endogenous infections seem to have originated with Escherich in 1889. Although the idea has found support in relation to particular diseases and seems never to have been abandoned it has had a discontinuous history. The apparent difficulty that such processes violate an unstated corollary of Koch's first postulate—the alleged causative agents being found in health as well as in disease (the postulates are reviewed in Editorial 1961) and difficulty with the third postulate—isolated pure cultures are nearly always nonpathogenic under customary test conditions—may have contributed to this neglect. Today these obstacles no longer block the road: the carrier state and silent infections negate as a fallacy the assumed corollary to the first postulate; fulfillment of the third postulate has been accomplished often enough to establish the principle.

Before presenting a few examples of endogenous infective diseases it may be useful to outline certain features common to the whole group. It has been pointed out already that diseases associated with indigenous microorganisms cannot be sharply distinguished from exogenous infections in which latency or its equivalent is a conspicuous feature. Indeed it may be noted that the very word endogenous is used only for convenience. The group differs from endogenous reinfection in tuberculosis, for example, principally in that *M. tuberculosis* is easily recognizable as a pathogen.

The common features of endogenous infective diseases may be listed as follows: (1) Microorganisms found in the indigenous biota are indispensable agents in the pathogenesis of endogenous infective diseases. (2) The microbial agents of endogenous infective diseases occur in the indigenous biota in health but in disease they are either significantly increased in concentration in or near their usual sites or are found proliferating in an unusual site—in the tissues. (3) The bacterial agents of endogenous infective diseases are characterized by low intrinsic pathogenicity. (4) A state equivalent to latency in exogenous infections is characteristic of endogenous infective diseases which there

fore have no definable incubation period (5) Endogenous bacterial diseases are not communicable within the accepted limits of meaning of this term (6) Immunity, in the sense of specific protection against recurrence of a given endogenous infective disease is not recognized clinically rather the diseases have a marked tendency either to recur or to progress slowly over a period of many years (7) In endogenous infective diseases, causes or determinants other than the activity of indigenous microbic agents are as indispensable to pathogenesis as are the agents themselves Another feature of this group of diseases frequent but apparently not universal is that they are likely to be nonspecific with respect both to their microbic agents and to other determinants of pathogenesis It is usually futile to search for single causes of diseases in this group, or otherwise to attempt to deal with them by analogy with disease outside the group

### SUBACUTE BACTERIAL ENDOCARDITIS

Subacute bacterial endocarditis (s b e) is a characteristic endogenous infection whose pathogenesis is rather well understood and comparatively simple Implantation on a previously damaged heart valve of nonhemolytic streptococci or other microorganisms follows an initial transitory bacteremia induced by surgical or comparable manipulation The organisms proliferate in and under cover of fibrin platelet thrombi which protect them from phagocytosis and other blood clearing mechanisms forming vegetations which lead to persistent bacteremia and in untreated cases to death by occlusion of the affected valve, other vascular accidents or serious embolism The microbic agents concerned are usually nonpathogens, pathogenesis seems to require of them only an ability to proliferate under conditions provided by the host

There seems to have been no marked reduction in the incidence of s b e since the advent of the antibiotic era (see e.g. Pankey, 1961), and although modern treatment has reduced mortality markedly—formerly it approximated 100 per cent—deaths continue

to be common seldom fewer than 20 per cent of cases even in small favorable groups (e.g. Hamburger *et al.*, 1961), and as high as 72 per cent in a group of older patients (Cummings *et al.* 1960)

In s b e, indigenous viridans streptococci continue to be the most common organisms enterococci are also found in a significant minority of instances (see Toh and Ball 1960 Koenig and Kaye, 1961 Tompsett and Pizette 1962) Groupable streptococci other than A D or N hemolytic or not have also been found In addition many diverse indigenous species appear including uncommonly or rarely, such otherwise benign species as lactobacilli or veillonellae Mixed infections are found but not frequently A considerable proportion of cultures remain sterile perhaps in part because routine methods do not disclose them—as would be true of fastidiously anaerobic amphibions (for recent reviews see Jackson and Allison 1961 Quinn and Colville 1961, Vogler *et al.*, 1962a b)

Pre-existing cardiac damage most commonly affecting the mitral valve is an important antecedent of s b e In approximately 75 to 92 per cent of instances in which such damage is recognized it is rheumatic in origin in the remainder it may be arteriosclerotic congenital or syphilitic In many instances of rheumatic valvular injury the patient is unaware of the defect before the onset of s b e

The streptococci most frequently implicated in this disease and many of the other species recovered from blood cultures are nonpathogenic for laboratory animals by the usual routes of inoculation However progressive disease closely similar to s b e in man has been produced experimentally in animals by a variety of means including cardiac damage induced before intravenous inoculation of nonhemolytic streptococci Highman *et al.* (1952) showed that cardiac damage could be induced in rats exposed intermittently for prolonged periods in a low pressure chamber to simulated altitudes of 25 000 feet Some of these animals developed spontaneous bacterial implants Repeated intravenous injection of *S. mitis* or a single large dose of *S. faecalis* yielded bac

terial endocarditis in a majority of the animals (See also Altland *et al* 1959 Walker and Hamburger 1959)

The bacteremia which leads to s b e is of diverse origin. With indigenous microorganisms the mechanism may include trauma manipulation or massage of a mucous or skin surface. Tonsillectomy and dental operations have been particularly incriminated especially in cases involving viridans streptococci. However evidence for the association is often lacking. It is recognized that manipulation of other loci with a normal flora (e.g. the genitourinary tract see Lein and Stander 1959 Koenig and Kaye 1961) may be responsible. Dental interest in this problem is reflected in a considerable literature in which in addition to tooth extraction and other oral surgery (e.g. Shirger *et al* 1960) transient bacteremias have been induced especially by gingival and periodontal manipulation (Vargas *et al* 1959 Gutverg and Haberman 1962 Korn and Schaffer 1962). On the other hand cavity preparation pulpotomy (Beechen *et al* 1956) and root canal operations (Bender *et al* 1960) have been found not to induce bacteremia. Bender and his co-workers recommended that such treatment be chosen in preference to extraction in persons with valvular disease when this is feasible. The occasional alternative suggestion that tooth extraction be performed prophylactically in susceptibles seems to be of doubtful validity. Massaro and Katz (1960) recorded an instance in which viridans streptococcal s b e occurred in an edentulous man and mentioned 2 earlier cases.

Specific therapy of s b e caused by penicillin sensitive streptococci (briefly reviewed by Hamburger *et al* 1961) continues to favor a combination of penicillin with streptomycin. This combination also has a good record in enterococcal endocarditis even when in vitro sensitivity tests have not been favorable (Koenig and Kaye 1961 Tompsett and Pizette 1962). Control measures usually emphasize the administration of antibiotics before during and after surgery or other potentially precipitating manipulations in patients with known or suspected cardiac damage. Several studies of this procedure agree that it reduces but does not abolish the

incidence of bacteremia (e.g. Shirger *et al* 1960 Gutverg and Haberman 1962).

## ACTINOMYCOSIS

A subacute or chronic usually progressive disease of orofacial thoracic or abdominal tissues actinomycosis produced by *A. israeli* alone or perhaps in combination with other microorganisms is another clear example of endogenous infection. In this instance however while host factors in pathogenesis seem to be essential to permit or enable the occasional invasion by a surface parasite the nature of these factors is poorly understood. Actinomycosis occurs in man cattle and other animals. It is characterized in man by the development of indurated granulating swellings chiefly in connective tissue by suppuration usually of limited extent and by the presence of *A. israeli* in the pus or lesions. The disease develops over periods ranging from a few weeks to a year or more and may spread widely by contiguity sometimes pointing toward the skin and forming fistulae that tend to heal and re-form elsewhere rarely pointing toward mucous or serous membranes. The organism may be disseminated through the blood or in the lungs through the bronchi. The lymphatic system is only rarely involved. Bone lesions are uncommon in man.

Actinomycosis is generally thought to occur in the cervicofacial region somewhat more frequently than in all others combined. Such cases are seen most frequently in dental or oral surgical clinics. Fisher and Harvey (1956) found that of 90 cases treated over a 25 year period 55 per cent involved the abdominal wall or viscera 23 per cent were thoracic 13 per cent were cervicofacial and 9 per cent appeared in other areas. The commonest cervicofacial lesions are seen on the cheek or submaxillary skin as indurated or edematous swellings often bluish or reddish in color with a tendency to form a series of irregular folds separated by furrows the healing area forming scars as new lesions develop. Thoracic actinomycosis is found mainly in the lungs with the formation of abscesses and cavities which are usually small. Extensive abscesses may be found in the bronchi and

their rupture may lead to dissemination of the infection by way of the bronchial tree. Actinomycotic pleurisy and empyema have been observed as has involvement of the heart and the pericardium. Abdominal actinomycosis may be found in any organ but is most common in the region of cecum and appendix. From here the lesion may extend with suppurative foci and the formation of fibrous adhesions to the abdominal wall where skin lesions may appear similar to those of cervicofacial actinomycosis. Or the lesion may remain circumscribed forming a fibromalike mass. The liver is commonly attacked and lesions of the genital tract are relatively frequent. The stomach, the small intestine and the kidney are seldom affected. Rarely actinomycosis may be found in the norectal area or the testis.

The microscopic appearance of the lesions of actinomycosis varies from that of an acute abscess with an abundance of polymorphonuclear cells to the more chronic lesion in which proliferating connective tissue is the most conspicuous feature. Commonly the picture includes necrosis with an abundance of leukocytes surrounded in turn by granulation tissue and a profuse formation of dense fibrous tissue. It is thus not characteristic unless sulfur granules are present. These are frequently lacking in either tissue or pus and when present particularly in lesions in man may not show typical clubs. Club bearing granules may be found in several distinct diseases distinguishable from those of true actinomycosis in gram stained but not in routine hematoxylin eosin sections. Details of the typical granule are seen best under magnifications of 400 diameters or more. It may be roughly circular or irregular in outline or may consist of several colonies of different size and shape that have coalesced. The granule is composed of a dense reticulum of fibrils which stain violet by Gram's method but may otherwise stain irregularly. Around the periphery the ends of individual filaments may project, with or without radially arranged hyaline clubs. The clubs when present, take the eosin stain and are several times larger than the filaments whose ends they enclose. Pine and Overman (1963) have found sulfur granules (of *A. bovis* from cattle) to have essentially the same composition as

organisms grown in vitro except that the sulfur granule contained about 50 per cent calcium phosphate.

The epidemiology of actinomycosis is that of an endogenous infection as was clearly shown by Wolff and Israel in 1891 and by Wright in 1905. Nevertheless the pathogenesis of actinomycosis is incompletely known. In the hands of earlier workers attempts to demonstrate pathogenicity of *A. israeli* for common laboratory animals by the usual routes were usually unsuccessful or yielded only localized lesions.

Repeated passage, trauma during inoculation or admixture with other bacteria were generally ineffectual. However progressive and fatal experimental actinomycosis with typical granules and other pathologic signs has been produced—although again without regularity—by repeated inoculation at intervals that might have permitted development of allergy to the organism but allergy could not be demonstrated convincingly. Meyer and Verges (1950) and Geister and Meyer (1951) have reported the consistent production of actinomycosis in mice by injecting pure cultures in association with gastric mucin. Hazen *et al.* (1952) produced typical actinomycosis in 21 of 28 young male hamsters with any of 8 strains of *A. israeli*. Gale and Waldron (1955) found that actinomycotic lesions with typical granules usually without clubs could be produced in mice with any of 7 strains of *A. israeli* but the disease developed during the first week after inoculation and then tended to recede. Guinea pigs inoculated with a single strain responded similarly. These results may help to explain the failure of other workers who depended on gross illness or death as a sign of experimental infection. Strains of *A. israeli* isolated from mucous membranes have been found as capable of inducing lesions as strains obtained from the natural disease. The experimental findings as a whole leave the pathogenesis of the progressive disease in man uncertain. The comparative rarity of actinomycosis suggests that autoinoculation resulting from minor trauma perhaps even when repeated can be no more than a contributory incident. More severe traumatic events have often been associated with actinomycosis e.g. tooth extraction or other

injury to mouth or throat human bite or knuckle injuries from a blow to the teeth or aspiration of an extracted tooth or tooth fragment into the lungs *A. israeli* has been found in salivary calculus and detached masses of tartar may be involved in comparable traumatic accidents. Actinomycotic pus from closed lesions frequently perhaps invariably contains other organisms in addition to *A. israeli* the suggestion has been made that a mixed infection may be important in establishing the disease.

Although the finding of microscopically typical sulfur granules is presumptively diagnostic of actinomycosis in man the diagnosis cannot be considered as established unless *A. israeli* is isolated from the lesions. For this purpose plates should be serially streaked on brain heart medium containing 2 per cent agar or on blood agar and incubated anaerobically with 5 per cent CO<sub>2</sub> for 4 to 6 days at 37°. The opaque white heaped up colonies of *A. israeli* particularly the rough colonies can be identified easily even in the presence of abundant contaminating growth but smooth colonies may be indistinguishable from those of diphtheroids. Isolation may be made into tubes containing a 10 cm column of glucose infusion broth in which the organism typically grows after aerobic incubation as a crumbly or tiny cauliflower-like mass in the bottom with the supernatant broth clear but smooth strains may grow more diffusely. In glucose agar shake cultures incubated aerobically for 4 to 6 days the typical picture is that of whitish spherical or mulberry shaped colonies of varying size up to 3 mm in diameter growing only in the depths of the agar often with a dense zone of colonies 0.5 to 2 cm below the free surface. Recovery of an occasional *A. israeli* colony from materials subjected to direct contamination from a mucous membrane (e.g. in expectorated sputum) has no diagnostic significance.

*A. israeli* is sensitive to several antibiotics in vitro (see McVay and Sprunt 1953). Penicillin tetracyclines chloramphenicol and isoniazid have all been reported as effective with occasional failures. High dosage for sustained periods is usually used accompanied by surgical measures where possible (See also Peabody and Seabury 1960).

## BACTEROIDES AND ANAEROBIC STREPTOCOCCI—MIXED OR SYNERGISTIC ANAEROBIC INFECTIVE DISEASES

A diverse group of diseases of animals and man has been associated for many years with bacteroides or anaerobic streptococci separately or together or mixed with other bacterial species. Bacteroides were described in calf diphtheria in 1884 by Loeffler and were found in and cultivated from necrotic disease of other animals in the years immediately following (see Lahelle 1947 Rosebury 1962). Bacteroides were recovered from fetid and gangrenous suppurations in man by Veillon and Zuber in 1897. Veillon also isolated anaerobic streptococci from the lesions of Ludwig's angina perinephric abscess and Bartholin's in 1893. Schottmüller first cultivated anaerobic streptococci from the blood in 1910. These species perhaps occasionally alone more often in bacterial associations are capable of inducing significant disease. However the pathogenesis is virtually unknown. The clinical processes concerned may be classified in three groups. In the first anaerobic or microaerophilic streptococci occur with other indigenous bacteria in a spreading gangrene of the skin or in wound infections. In the second either anaerobic streptococci or bacteroides or both recovered in blood cultures with or without additional species are found in diseases beginning especially in the pharyngeal intestinal or genital mucous membranes and progressing to a septicemia or pyemia often associated with thrombophlebitis. In the third group in which indigenous spirochetes are prominently associated with bacteroides anaerobic streptococci and a profusion of other indigenous species—the so called fusospirochetal diseases—the lesions are usually inflammatory or destructive processes of the mucous membranes themselves or of directly adjacent tissues. The last group is considered separately in the following section the first two are dealt with here as a unit. The distinction between the three groups is not sharp. It need hardly be emphasized that collectively these diseases occupy a distinctly higher level of complexity than the endogenous infective diseases considered previously and it is not

their rupture may lead to dissemination of the infection by way of the bronchial tree. Actinomycotic pleurisy and empyema have been observed as has involvement of the heart and the pericardium. *Abdominal actinomycosis* may be found in any organ but is most common in the region of cecum and appendix. From here the lesion may extend with suppurative foci and the formation of fibrous adhesions to the abdominal wall where skin lesions may appear similar to those of cervicofacial actinomycosis. Or the lesion may remain circumscribed forming a fibromalike mass. The liver is commonly attacked and lesions of the genital tract are relatively frequent. The stomach, the small intestine and the kidney are seldom affected. Rarely actinomycosis may be found in the anorectal area or the testis.

The microscopic appearance of the lesions of actinomycosis varies from that of an acute abscess with an abundance of polymorphonuclear cells to the more chronic lesion in which proliferating connective tissue is the most conspicuous feature. Commonly the picture includes necrosis with an abundance of leukocytes surrounded in turn by granulation tissue and a profuse formation of dense fibrous tissue. It is thus not characteristic unless *sulfur granules* are present. These are frequently lacking in either tissue or pus and when present particularly in lesions in man may not show typical clubs. Club bearing granules may be found in several distinct diseases distinguishable from those of true actinomycosis in gram stained but not in routine hematoxylin-eosin sections. Details of the typical granule are seen best under magnifications of 400 diameters or more. It may be roughly circular or irregular in outline or may consist of several colonies of different size and shape that have coalesced. The granule is composed of a dense reticulum of fibrils which stain violet by Gram's method but may otherwise stain irregularly. Around the periphery the ends of individual filaments may project with or without radially arranged hyaline clubs. The clubs when present take the eosin stain and are several times larger than the filaments whose ends they enclose. Pine and Overman (1963) have found sulfur granules (of *A. bovis* from cattle) to have essentially the same composition as

organisms grown *in vitro* except that the sulfur granule contained about 50 per cent calcium phosphate.

The epidemiology of actinomycosis is that of an endogenous infection as was clearly shown by Wolff and Israel in 1891 and by Wright in 1905. Nevertheless the pathogenesis of actinomycosis is incompletely known. In the hands of earlier workers attempts to demonstrate pathogenicity of *A. israelii* for common laboratory animals by the usual routes were usually unsuccessful or yielded only localized lesions.

Repeated passage, trauma during inoculation or admixture with other bacteria were generally ineffectual. However, progressive and fatal experimental actinomycosis with typical granules and other pathologic signs has been produced—although again without regularity—by repeated inoculation at intervals that might have permitted development of allergy to the organism but allergy could not be demonstrated convincingly. Meyer and Verges (1950) and Geister and Meyer (1951) have reported the consistent production of actinomycosis in mice by injecting pure cultures in association with gastric mucus. Hazen *et al.* (1952) produced typical actinomycosis in 21 of 28 young male hamsters with any of 8 strains of *A. israelii*. Gale and Waldron (1955) found that actinomycotic lesions with typical granules, usually without clubs, could be produced in mice with any of 7 strains of *A. israelii* but the disease developed during the first week after inoculation and then tended to recede. Guinea pigs inoculated with a single strain responded similarly. These results may help to explain the failure of other workers who depended on gross illness or death as a sign of experimental infection. Strains of *A. israelii* isolated from mucous membranes have been found as capable of inducing lesions as strains obtained from the natural disease. The experimental findings as a whole leave the pathogenesis of the progressive disease in man uncertain. The comparative rarity of actinomycosis suggests that autoinoculation resulting from minor trauma perhaps even when repeated can be no more than a contributory incident. More severe traumatic events have often been associated with actinomycosis e.g. a tooth extraction or other

extracts of the latter species prepared by grinding with sand digestion with trypsin or extraction with trichloroacetic acid had little or no effect

In vitro antibiotic sensitivity tests with these organisms have been reported most recently by Garrod (1955) and by Loden kamper and Stuenkel (1955). The former found *B. nigrescens*, *B. funduliformis* and a fusiform bacillus to be most sensitive to penicillin but *B. fragilis* was penicillin resistant. All 4 species were also sensitive to oxytetracycline and chloramphenicol more so to the former erythromycin was effective against *B. nigrescens* and polymyxin against the fusiform bacillus and *B. funduliformis*. Streptomycin and bacitracin were generally ineffective. The German workers studied both bacteroides and anaerobic cocci separately and as mixtures. Best results were obtained with the tetracyclines but resistant strains were found to nearly all antibiotics tested.

Such clinical data as are available are generally consistent with these findings. Tetracyclines and chloramphenicol have been used effectively, penicillin, streptomycin and sulfonamides have usually failed. See McHenry *et al.* (1961) Tynes and Frommeyer (1962).

## FUSOSPIROCHETAL DISEASES

The group of diseases in which indigenous spirochetes appear as prominent components of a profuse mixed biota include some of the most widespread ills of mankind. The early literature on fusospirochetal disease has been reviewed by Rosebury (1938). The group includes the periodontal diseases which are treated in the next section, the complex of ulceromembranous stomatitis or pharyngitis or equivalent disease of the external genitalia and the extreme form of this process, noma, comparable putrid necrotic diseases of the respiratory and the intestinal tracts, a form of tropical ulcer of the skin and similar lesions of other areas. Fusospirochetal disease seems always to be superimposed on tissue damage induced by other agencies including scurvy, pellagra, inanition or other nutritional disturbances, agranulocytosis or radiation injury, viral infections including measles and primary herpes simplex and probably more commonly complexes or constellations of

factors exemplified in the periodontal disease group.

Experimental fusospirochetal disease was produced first in rabbits by Veszpremi in 1905 and 1907 and since repeatedly in guinea pigs and other animals by many workers. The lesions have been initiated with whole exudates from any of a series of fusospirochetal diseases in man and are regularly transmissible with the resulting animal lesion exudates inoculated by any of several routes. Subcutaneous inoculation of guinea pigs, the method most commonly used, yields either large necrotic abscesses tending to evacuate and heal or a spreading cellulitis which either heals after belated localization or more typically leads to death in 2 to 7 days. In the more severe infections the exudate is serofibrinous, it is always foul and contains spirochetes in a complex mixture of other bacteria. In animals sacrificed while moribund a cellulitis is found dissecting the fascial planes from the point of inoculation, the viscera are somewhat congested and the adrenals are enlarged and hemorrhagic but no visceral infection is found. In such animals as in comparable disease in man, spirochetes have been found in vital tissue while other bacteria are limited, sometimes sharply to the distal border of the necrotic zone. Pathologic changes are those of acute inflammation in fatal infection, the cellular response is disorderly or at times apparently entirely lacking. The species in one guinea pig passage exudate (Rosebury *et al.* 1950) in which the LD<sub>50</sub> was estimated as  $8 \times 10^6$  organisms were identified as spirochetes of the *T. dentium* variety *Fusobacterium fusiforme* and atypical fusiform bacilli, both *Vibrio sputorum* and *Spirillum sputigenum*, unidentified bacteroides *Str. mitis* and in completely characterized anaerobic streptococci and a miscellany of gram positive bacilli, all except *Str. mitis* appeared to be strict anaerobes. From another passage exudate Macdonald *et al.* (1954) isolated a similar range of species but only atypical fusiform organisms were present as was an unidentified motile gram negative anaerobic bacillus and *B. nigrescens*. *S. sputigenum* was not found. A later study by these workers (Macdonald *et al.* 1956) indicates that one of the cultures was an aerobic diphtheroid.



surprising that the role of indigenous microorganisms in these processes is frequently disregarded or overlooked. The record suggests that these organisms have been found among hospital cases whenever appropriate means have been employed to detect them (See Tynes and Utz 1960 McHenry *et al.* 1961 Johnson 1962, Tynes and Frommeyer 1963 and Murphy *et al.* 1963).

The role of anaerobic streptococci and bacteroides in endogenous infective diseases is made clear most convincingly by studies of their experimental pathogenicity and is supported by the results of antibiotic therapy in man. The following discussion is limited to these two topics. For reviews of other aspects of this subject see Lahelle (1947) Carter *et al.* (1953) and Alston (1955).

In pure culture anaerobic streptococci have been found to be nonpathogenic for animals almost uniformly. As for bacteroides, on the other hand early workers had little difficulty demonstrating pathogenicity especially with strains isolated from animal disease, but since about 1935 such tests have nearly always resulted negatively. Dack (1940) suggested that animals used by the earlier workers may have been fed deficient diets. The more significant findings relating to pathogenicity are to be found in studies with mixtures of pure cultures which have yielded positive results consistently when the mixtures contained organisms identified as or resembling *P. evolutus*, *P. putridus* (or incompletely identified anaerobic cocci), *B. funduliformis*, *B. fragilis* or *B. nigrescens*. Meleney (1931), Henthorne and McDonald (1936) and Steinhorn (1945) have reported that mixtures of anaerobic streptococci with staphylococci or unnamed second species inoculated subcutaneously produced ulcerative, necrotic or gangrenous lesions, often very destructive and sometimes fatal in guinea pigs, mice or other animals, the individual cultures inoculated alone showed little or no pathogenicity. Altmeier (1942) produced severe cellulitis with abscess formation, ulceration or gangrene in guinea pigs with mixtures containing 4 to 6 pure cultures isolated from peritonitis in man. The pure cultures by themselves were again noninfective for the most part. Five of the 6 mixtures included either an anaerobic streptococcus or a bacteroides culture, the other

species studied included aerobic cocci; coliforms *C. hoffmanni* and *Ps. aeruginosa*. Ryff and Lee (1946) found that a strain of *B. funduliformis* isolated from necrotic stomatitis in a calf produced lesions independently when inoculated in 0.5 ml amounts into the labial skin of rabbits. When 0.1 ml of this culture in itself innocuous was mixed with an equal volume of one of a long series of pure cultures of other species most of which were also nonpathogenic independently necrotic or suppurative lesions resulted in the majority of trials. Among the ancillary nonpathogens were indigenous aerobic streptococci, micrococci or corynebacteria *B. subtilis* and *L. bifidus*. In additional experiments by these workers more severe lesions resulted in rabbits fed deficient diets and then inoculated similarly with the bacteroides cultures mixed with an aerobic streptococcus or *B. subtilis*. The most extensive studies of this kind were reported by Hite *et al.* in 1949. These workers used a group of cultures isolated from the female genital tract under either normal or pathologic conditions including *B. funduliformis*, *B. nigrescens* and other bacteroides, a strain listed as *Bact. fusiformis* but not otherwise identified, a group of anaerobic streptococci and other cocci not clearly characterized and the aerobes *Str. liquefaciens*, *Str. mitis* and *Staph. albus*. Subcutaneous inoculation of mice with single pure cultures of the anaerobes again yielded minimal lesions or none; the aerobes alone were nonpathogenic. In pairs however, comprising either two anaerobes or anaerobe plus aerobe inoculation of half volumes of each yielded lesions with many of the mixtures described as necrotizing often suppurative sometimes extending to the peritoneum and the viscera and in some instances leading to death of the animal. The most significantly pathogenic mixtures contained anaerobic cocci with either *Str. liquefaciens* or the fusiform bacillus bacteroides with any of the aerobes or, curiously *B. funduliformis* with either *B. nigrescens* or the fusiform bacillus. It is of interest that mixtures of bacteroides with the anaerobic cocci were generally ineffectual. Synergistic infection was also observed when *Str. liquefaciens* was mixed with heat killed *B. funduliformis* but mixtures of the same streptococcus with

cal massive overgrowth of the fusospirochetal biota is present in all three varieties and is indistinguishable among them. The inflammatory and destructive symptoms of periodontal disease are referable to fusospirochetal infection which in turn may be traced to tissue damage associated with gingival accumulations of food desquamated epithelium and salivary calculus the first two serving as pabulum for the biota the last presumably as an additional source of irritation and tissue deformation. These antecedents of infection may in turn be attributed to a wide range of subtle local or general disturbances in the structural and functional relationships of the dental periodontal apparatus.

The pattern of ideal relationships entails a complex equilibrium changing with time between functional stress upon the teeth occlusal tooth wear and continued eruption of the teeth and apposition of cementum probably accompanied by a rootward shift of the terminal epithelium of the gingiva. Functional stress transmitted through the teeth maintains the integrity of the periodontal ligament and the alveolar bone and both structures shift and change with age to compensate for cusp loss and interproximal attrition. Additional compensatory changes with age involve these tissues the dental arches as units and the temporomandibular joints. Disturbances in this process which alter the ideal relationships of the attached epithelium the gingival margin and the underlying bony support impair the hygienic mechanism whereby ideally functional movements prevent gingival accumulations of gross bacterial pabulum such accumulations and the consequent infection aggravate the cycle of changes.

The circumstances that induce periodontal disharmony are themselves varied and complex. They may include any agency that leads to impaired cell metabolism of the tissues concerned, nutritional or hormonal upsets, intoxications or exogenous infections abetted by tooth loss or damage resulting from dental caries or by faulty dental restorations and doubtless also by the character of ingested food as it promotes or fails to promote healthy function and retention of food residues in addition to its nutritional quality.

Emotional disturbances interrelated with metabolic upsets and with salivary function stimulated by gross fusospirochetal infection clenching and grinding of the teeth neglect of nutrition and toothbrushing must also be included among the forces leading to periodontal disease. It is probable that the customary diet of the present day promotes a marginal gingivitis if it is inadequately compensated for by toothbrushing; this form of the disease usually responds quickly to simple hygienic treatment. If treatment is deferred the cycle of changes proceeds to suppurative periodontal breakdown which can usually be arrested by similar treatment of the more deeply involved tissues. Under more acute stress such as fatigue intoxication and deficiency especially of B group vitamins the ulcerative form of gingivitis may appear. Outbreaks of this condition have occurred under group conditions especially in wartime. It is also likely that a metabolic disturbance such as a transient deficiency of ascorbic acid may initiate a cycle of changes in the periodontal tissues that eventuate in breakdown many years later. Ascorbic acid deficiency and consequent failure of collagen formation lead in a condition in guinea pigs that resembles acute periodontal breakdown. Such metabolic disturbances are particularly implicated in a form of periodontal pocket formation that is not accompanied by gingivitis.

Periodontal disease has been observed or produced experimentally in several animal species (see Gupta and Shaw 1956; Baer and White 1960; Macdonald *et al.* 1960) but findings thus far have shed little light on the problem in man. Alveolar bone loss one of the features of chronic periodontal disease in man has been found in germ free mice by Baer and Newton (1959). Treatment of periodontal disease varies with the clinical entity. Chemotherapy is indicated only to relieve acute symptoms e.g. in ulcerative gingivitis recurrence is likely unless other measures are employed. Such measures emphasize the removal of gingival and subgingival microbial pabulum and tartar and where necessary the correction of faulty dental restorations and of defects of occlusion and alignment of the teeth. Local treatment of this kind supplemented by toothbrushing is frequently sufficient in itself to arrest the dis-

Socransky *et al* (1963) and Gibbons *et al* (1963) have reported quantitative studies of the gingival microbiota in which the microorganisms were similar in health and in periodontal disease except for a significant increase in spirochetes in the latter there was more than a 10 fold increase of the total flora in disease

Attempts to reproduce transmissible fusospirochetal infections with recombined mixtures of pure cultures and thus to define the essential component species have yielded equivocal results up to the present. The earlier studies initiated by Kritchewski and Seguin in 1920 have been reviewed by Rosebury *et al* (1950). D. T. Smith in 1932 and Proske and Sayers in 1934 reported that a mixture of pure cultures of 4 anaerobes—*T. microdentium*, a fusiform bacillus, a vibrio and a streptococcus—was the only effective combination among many tested. Rosebury *et al* (1950) using the cultures previously noted and others were unable to produce typical or transmissible fusospirochetal infection with similar or other combinations. However typical infection could be induced by inoculation of cultures grown from whole exudate as a mixture through 10 successive culture passages without loss of infectivity hence the infective mixture is cultivable in vitro as such. An estimate of the dilution of the original inoculum entailed by this procedure was in line with other studies which suggested that a virus is not a component of the infective complex. Successful recombination was accomplished by Macdonald *et al* (1954) who produced typical transmissible fusospirochetal infection with material taken from the hub of wheel plates on which 16 cultures isolated from guinea pig exudate had been streaked radially to a common center. Spirochetes from a culture having been added at the hub. In 3 of 9 trials in which the spirochetes and all or all but one of the spoke cultures grew under these conditions an emulsion of the mixture reproduced the typical disease. In a subsequent study Macdonald *et al* (1956) using the wheel plate method recombined the same 16 cultures in various groups and concluded that the minimum group capable of eliciting typical transmissible infection consisted of 2 strains of *Bacteroides* (including *B. negres*

*cens*), an unidentified motile gram negative anaerobic bacillus and an aerobic diphtheroid. The diphtheroid was thought to serve the nonspecific function of supporting growth of *B. negrescens*. None of the species considered essential by D. T. Smith and Proske and Sayers was present in the inoculum nor did any appear in the exudates from which the 4 species employed were reisolated. The positive aspects of these findings are in line with those noted previously in experimental studies of bacteroides but their negative aspects as Macdonald and his co-workers themselves suggested and as Berger (1957) has pointed out cannot be considered as demonstrating that neither spirochetes nor typical fusiform bacilli participate in fusospirochetal infections.

The probability that bacteroides and fusospirochetal diseases although pathologically similar may be etiologically distinct is supported by findings with penicillin therapy. It has been noted that *B. fragilis* is resistant to penicillin in vitro and that although other bacteroides are penicillin sensitive clinical trials with this antibiotic have yielded poor results. The value of penicillin in controlling the infective phase of fusospirochetal disease in man on the other hand was established early and has included a wide range of fusospirochetal diseases among them the highly destructive and fatal forms in agranulocytosis (Robertson 1949) and noma (Jelliffe 1953).

## PERIODONTAL DISEASE

The following brief treatment of periodontal disease is included here for its intrinsic interest and as an example of the presumed interplay of host factors in an endogenous infective disease. The three principal varieties of periodontal disease comprise a subacute or chronic inflammation of the gingival margin (marginal gingivitis), an acute ulcerative variety (Vincent's gingivitis) and periodontal breakdown (pyorrhea), the most chronic form characterized by progressive development of pockets opening at the inner gingival margin. Chronic periodontal disease occurs nearly universally in the 4th or the 5th decade of life and is mainly responsible for tooth loss among adults. A typi-

cal massive overgrowth of the fusospirochetal biota is present in all three varieties and is indistinguishable among them. The inflammatory and destructive symptoms of periodontal disease are referable to fusospirochetal infection which in turn may be traced to tissue damage associated with gingival accumulations of food desquamated epithelium and salivary calculus the first two serving as pabulum for the biota the last presumably as an additional source of irritation and tissue deformation. These antecedents of infection may in turn be attributed to a wide range of subtle local or general disturbances in the structural and functional relationships of the dental periodontal apparatus.

The pattern of ideal relationships entails a complex equilibrium changing with time between functional stress upon the teeth, occlusal tooth wear and continued eruption of the teeth and apposition of cementum probably accompanied by a rootward shift of the terminal epithelium of the gingiva. Functional stress transmitted through the teeth maintains the integrity of the periodontal ligament and the alveolar bone and both structures shift and change with age to compensate for cusp loss and interproximal attrition. Additional compensatory changes with age involve these tissues, the dental arches as units and the temporomandibular joints. Disturbances in this process which alter the ideal relationships of the attached epithelium, the gingival margin and the underlying bony support impair the hygienic mechanism whereby ideally functional movements prevent gingival accumulations of gross bacterial pabulum, such accumulations and the consequent infection aggravate the cycle of changes.

The circumstances that induce periodontal disharmony are themselves varied and complex. They may include any agency that leads to impaired cell metabolism of the tissues concerned, nutritional or hormonal upsets, intoxications or exogenous infections abetted by tooth loss or damage resulting from dental caries or by faulty dental restorations and doubtless also by the character of ingested food as it promotes or fails to promote healthy function and retention of food residues in addition to its nutritional quality.

Emotional disturbances interrelated with metabolic upsets and with salivary function stimulated by gross fusospirochetal infection, clenching and grinding of the teeth, neglect of nutrition and toothbrushing must also be included among the forces leading to periodontal disease. It is probable that the customary diet of the present day promotes a marginal gingivitis if it is inadequately compensated for by toothbrushing; this form of the disease usually responds quickly to simple hygienic treatment. If treatment is deferred the cycle of changes proceeds to suppurative periodontal breakdown which can usually be arrested by similar treatment of the more deeply involved tissues. Under more acute stress such as fatigue, intoxication and deficiency especially of B group vitamins, the ulcerative form of gingivitis may appear. Outbreaks of this condition have occurred under group conditions especially in wartime. It is also likely that a metabolic disturbance such as a transient deficiency of ascorbic acid may initiate a cycle of changes in the periodontal tissues that eventuate in breakdown many years later. Ascorbic acid deficiency and consequent failure of collagen formation lead to a condition in guinea pigs that resembles acute periodontal breakdown. Such metabolic disturbances are particularly implicated in a form of periodontal pocket formation that is not accompanied by gingivitis.

Periodontal disease has been observed or produced experimentally in several animal species (see Gupta and Shaw 1956; Baer and White 1960; Macdonald *et al.* 1960) but findings thus far have shed little light on the problem in man. Alveolar bone loss, one of the features of chronic periodontal disease in man, has been found in germ-free mice by Baer and Newton (1959). Treatment of periodontal disease varies with the clinical entity. Chemotherapy is indicated only to relieve acute symptoms, e.g. in ulcerative gingivitis, recurrence is likely unless other measures are employed. Such measures emphasize the removal of gingival and subgingival microbial pabulum and tartar and where necessary the correction of faulty dental restorations and of defects of occlusion and alignment of the teeth. Local treatment of this kind supplemented by toothbrushing is frequently sufficient in itself to arrest the dis-

ease Surgical procedures for elimination of pockets and diseased gingival tissue are widely and successfully used For additional details and references see Rosebury 1952 1955 Glickman 1956 1963

## DENTAL CARIES

Dental caries one of the most prevalent of all diseases is a distinctive process of disintegration of the hard dental tissues proceeding centripetally from the exposed surface Its unique characteristics are determined in part by the tissues in which it appears which are either entirely noncellular (enamel) or contain only the processes of pulpal cells (dentin) and hence do not react to injury as do cellular tissues Most carious lesions begin at one of three sites in the pits and fissures of the functional surfaces at approximating areas of contact and on surfaces of enamel or exposed cementum or dentin near the gingival margin Lesions in the first two areas are most common in the period immediately following tooth eruption, i.e., in childhood and adolescence There is nearly universal agreement on the main lines of pathogenesis stemming principally from the studies of W D Miller in 1890 Research during the last decade has generally supported this approach while elucidating many details (e.g. biochemical and histochemical studies Mandel, 1955 Opdyke 1962 Zipkin and Gold 1963 microradiography Bergman and Engfeldt 1954 Guzman *et al* 1957 electron microscopy Scott and Albright 1954 Helmcke 1959 and *in vitro* experimental caries Forziati *et al* 1956 Rowles *et al* 1963)

According to this view caries is initiated by acid products of bacterial fermentation of carbohydrates formed locally at sites of food accumulation or impaction Demineralization of enamel (or of dentin or cementum if the lesion begins in these tissues) appears to be the first step in the process subsequent steps may vary in sequence depending in part on the site and on the rate of progress of the lesion They include bacterial invasion proteolysis of enamel matrix, decalcification followed by digestion of dentin or cementum and loss of tissue by minute or gross fracture consequent on both function and forces asso-

ciated with demineralization such as shrinkage and gas formation The bacterial species involved are almost certainly mixed in all instances but lactobacilli probably play a distinctive role in the mixture they alone among bacterial species recovered from caries have been found to be significantly increased in relation to clinical caries activity and their ability both to produce and to withstand low pH levels is unlikely to be coincidental The failure of germ free rats given sterilized caries producing diets to develop lesions (Orland 1954) confirmed the indispensability of microorganisms in the process Keyes (1960) has reported that experimental caries in hamsters and rats is infectious and transmissible under laboratory conditions but applicability of these findings to man is doubtful Whether the finding that rodent caries can be initiated specifically by certain streptococci (Fitzgerald and Keyes 1960 Keyes and Fitzgerald 1962) can be applied to man is also conjectural (Fitzgerald 1963)

For the most part our knowledge of the pathogenesis of caries is consistent with the fact that the disease is nearly universal in modern man Its apparently essential ingredients—retentive sites on the teeth the participating microorganisms and the required pabulum as well as the susceptibility of the teeth to disintegration all appear to be nearly ubiquitous Yet the occasional complete absence of caries in an adult may be attributable in part to the first factor, tooth form and dental architecture presumably implying a genetic component and the most probable mechanism for the protective effect of fluoride ion seems to be related to the last item the acid solubility of the dental tissues Nevertheless wide individual variation both in prevalence and in rate of progress of caries examined in detailed context points to the operation of additional factors and provides at least potentially means toward control

Experimental caries in hamsters and certain experimental lesions in rats seem to be most comparable with dental caries in man From the studies of Rosebury *et al* (see Rosebury 1938b) Sognnaes (1948) and Gustafson *et al* (1953 1955) emerge a group of interdependent determinants of caries susceptibility that seem to be consistent

with the human disease. These include (1) the retentiveness of carbohydrate foods as determined by their physical state (2) the metabolic availability of the carbohydrate as substrate for fermentation (3) dental function or lack of function (4) it promotes or prevents food retention (5) a protective role of dietary fat perhaps acting by retarding carbohydrate solubility and (6) many other conditions less clearly defined including nutritional endocrine and other factors affecting the structure of the dental tissues salivary flow and composition and the pabulum retaining propensities of periodontal (interproximal and gingival) areas. There is cogent evidence that starchy foods in dry compact form (e.g. raw rice or corn in animals, hard fat free biscuit in both man and rats) serve as the initiating substrate for caries by forcible impaction into retentive sites. On the other hand certain sugars especially sucrose and fructose but not starch or dextrin incorporated in the diet in dry finely divided form promote caries particularly in hamsters in proportion to their concentration. In this instance it appears that impaired function evidenced after extraction of opposing teeth is necessary to permit accumulation or prevent removal of the pabulum. When to such sugar diets enough distilled water was added to dissolve the carbohydrate caries in hamsters was markedly reduced suggesting that the major cariogenic effect of the diet is exerted in the mouth and not via nutritional channels (Gustafson *et al.* 1955). Retardation of caries by inclusion of fat in the diet first noted in studies with children by Mellanby *et al.* (see Committee 1936) has been observed in rats by Rosebury and Karshan (1935, 1939) and Granados *et al.* (1948) and in hamsters by Gustafson *et al.* (1955). These findings suggest the possibility of preparing noncariogenic carbohydrate foods perhaps even confections by appropriate admixture with fats. Among other influences on caries it may be noted that abundant evidence from studies both in man and in experimental animals indicates that if basic cariogenic conditions are present nutritional adequacy e.g. of vitamin D decreases or retards the progress of the lesions.

Diagnosis of dental caries is made clinically

with the aid of roentgenograms. Counts of lactobacilli in saliva and other caries activity tests are useful principally in confirming a clinical diagnosis of rampant caries and as a sensitive index in the individual patient of the progress of attempts at dietary control. Control of unusually high caries activity in children has been effective by drastic limitation of carbohydrate intake. The use of a variety of dentifrices containing alleged anticariogenic agents is of doubtful utility but carefully supervised toothbrushing with any dentifrice or none may have some value. Caries can be arrested by the traditional dental practice of removing involved tissue and replacing it with inert filling materials. The fluoridation of public water supplies to the average level of 1 part per million has been fully established as nontoxic and effective in reducing the community prevalence of caries by 60 per cent or more most actively in children born and reared on fluoridated water but with distinct value when started at any age (see Arnold 1957, Hayes, Littleton and White 1957). This now widespread practice is probably the most thoroughly studied of all public health procedures; its effectiveness is beyond serious question but it is capable of solving only approximately half the problem of dental caries. The effectiveness of topical application of 2 per cent NaF to the teeth of children has also been clearly demonstrated and is applicable where community fluoridation is not feasible. The mechanism of inhibition of caries by fluoride seems to involve its incorporation in enamel as fluorapatite.

## REFERENCES

- Ajello L. 1962. Present day concepts of the dermatophytes. *Mycopathologia* 17: 315-324.
- Alston J. M. 1955. Necrobacillosis. *Great Britain Brit. Med. J.* 2: 1524-1528.
- Altmeier W. A. 1942. The pathogenicity of the bacteria of appendicitis peritonitis. *Surgery* 11: 374-384.
- Alland P. D., Highman H. and Roshe J. 1959. Effects of altitude on dogs with valvular heart disease. *Arch. Path.* 68: 475-486.
- Arnold F. A. 1957. Grand Rapids fluoridation study—results pertaining to the eleventh year of fluoridation. *Am. J. Pub. Health* 47: 539-545.

- Baer P N and Newton W L, 1959 The occurrence of periodontal disease in germfree mice *J Dent Res* 38 1238
- 1960 Studies on periodontal disease in the mouse III The germfree mouse and its conventional control *Oral Surg* 13 1134 1144
- Baer P N and White C L 1960 Studies on periodontal disease in the mouse I Effect of age sex cage factor diet *J Periodont* 31 27 30
- Barlow A J E Chattaway F W Brunt R V and Townsley J D 1961 A study of susceptibility to infection by *Trichophyton rubrum* *J Invest Derm* 37 461 468
- Beechen I I Laston D J and Garbarino V E 1956 Transitory bacteremia as related to the operation of vital pulpotomy *Oral Surg* 9 902 905
- Bender I H Seltzer S and Yermish M 1960 The incidence of bacteremia in endodontic manipulation preliminary report *Oral Surg* 13 353 360
- Berger U 1957 Neuere Anschauungen über die Pathogenese der oralen Fusospirochätosen *Fortschr Kiefer Gesichtschir* 3 314 318
- 1961a Zur Verwertung von Monosacchariden durch saprophytische Neisserien *Arch Hyg Bakt* 145 190 195
- 1961b Zur Variabilität der Zuckervergarungen durch Neisserien *Arch Hyg Bakt* 145 296 301
- 1963 Die anspruchlosen Neisserien *Ergebn Mikrobiol Immunitätsforsch* 36 97 167
- Bergman G and Engfeldt B 1954 Studies on mineralized dental tissues V Microradiographic investigation of experimentally produced caries and attrition in white rats *Acta odont scand* 12 193 200
- Breed R S Murray E G D and Smith N R 1957 Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology ed 7 Williams & Wilkins Baltimore
- Brousset L Breuillaud J and Michel G 1963 Étude de l'ADN chez les actinomyces Les ADN des *Corynebacterium* *Ann Inst Pasteur* 104 488 495
- Brown D W and Moore W E C 1960 Distribution of *Butyrivibrio fibrosolvens* in nature *J Dairy Sci* 40 1570 1574
- Buttiaux R and Mossel D A A 1961 The significance of various organisms of faecal origin in foods and drinking water *J Appl Bact* 24 353 364
- Carter B Jones C P Alter R L Creadick R N and Thomas W L 1953 *Bacteroides Infections in obstetrics and gynecology* *Obstet Gynec* 1 491 510
- Chen C C and Cleverdon R C 1963 Some investigations on the growth of *Dialister pneumosintes* *J Appl Bact* 26 107 111
- Colobert L and Blondeau H 1962 Lespece *Streptococcus faecalis* I Étude de l'homogénéité par la méthode Adansonienne *Ann Inst Pasteur* 103 345 362
- 1962 Lespece *Streptococcus faecalis* III La répartition différente des divers biotypes dans l'intestin de l'homme et du porc permet-elle de révéler l'origine humaine d'une contamination des semi-conserves de viande de porc? *Ann Inst Pasteur* 103 707 715
- Committee for the Investigation of Dental Disease 1936 The influence of diet on caries in children's teeth (final report) *Med Res Council Spec Rep Ser* No 211
- Cummings V Furman S Dunst M and Rubin I L 1960 Subacute bacterial endocarditis in the older age group *JAMA* 172 137 141
- Dack G M 1940 Non spore forming anaerobic bacteria of medical importance *Bact Rev* 4 227 259
- Davis G H G, and Baird Parker A C 1959 The classification of certain filamentous bacteria with respect to their chemical composition *J Gen Microbiol* 21 612 621
- Defayolle M and Colobert L 1962 Lespece *Streptococcus faecalis* II Étude de l'homogénéité par l'analyse factorielle *Ann Inst Pasteur* 103 505 522
- Deibel R H and Siliker J H 1963 Food poisoning potential of the enterococci *J Bact* 85 827 832
- Dunkelberg W E Hefner J D Patow W E Wyman F J and Orup H I 1962 *Hemophilus vaginalis* among asymptomatic women *Obstet Gynec* 20 629 632
- Editorial 1961 The postulates of Robert Koch *JAMA* 175 1003 1005
- Fisher A M and Harvey J C 1956 Actinomycosis some concepts of therapy and prognosis *Postgrad Med* 19 32 35
- Fitzgerald R J 1963 Microbiological aspects of dental caries *J Am Dent Ass* 66 597 599
- Fitzgerald R J and Keyes P H 1960 Demonstration of the etiologic role of streptococci in experimental caries in the hamster *J Am Dent Ass* 61 9 19
- Flynn R J 1963 Introduction *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection and its effects on biological and medical research *Lab Animal Care Suppl* 13 1 5
- 1963 *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infec

- tion and radiobiological research at Argonne National Laboratory effects diagnosis epidemiology control Lab Animal Care Suppl 13 25 35
- Forziati A F Losee F L Pigman W W Jennings W H and Lawson M E Jr 1956 In vitro production of experimental enamel caries J Am Dent Ass 53 655 661
- Freter R 1962 In vivo and in vitro antagonism of intestinal bacteria against *Shigella flexneri* II The inhibitory mechanism J Infect Dis 170 38 46
- Gale D and Waldron C A 1955 Experimental actinomycosis and *Actinomyces israelii* The development of visceral actinomycosis J Infect Dis 97 251 261
- Garrod L P 1955 Sensitivity of four species of *Bacteroides* to antibiotics Brit Med J 2 1529 1531
- Geister R S and Meyer E 1951 The effect of aureomycin and penicillin on experimental actinomycosis infections in mice J Lab Clin Med 38 101 111
- Gibbons R J Socransky S M Sawyer S Kapsimalis II and Macdonald J B 1963 The microbiota of the gingival crevice area of man—II The predominant cultivable organisms Arch Oral Biol 8 281 289
- Gluckman I 1956 The role of nutritional therapy in the management of periodontal disease J Am Dent Ass 52 275 283
- 1963 Periodontology J Am Dent Ass 66 636 647
- Goebel W F and Amano T 1959 On the nature of colicine K Science 129 1284
- Gordon H A 1959 Morphological and physiological characterization of germfree life Ann NY Acad Sci 78 208 220
- Grabar P Courcon J and Westmann B S 1962 Immunoelectrophoretic analysis of the serum of germfree rats J Immun 88 679 682
- Granados II Glavind J and Dam H 1948 Observations on experimental dental caries The effect of purified rations with and without dietary fat Acta path microbiol scand 25 453-459
- Gupta O P and Shaw J H 1956 Periodontal disease in the rice rat II Methods for the evaluation of the extent of periodontal disease Oral Surg 9 727 735
- Gustafson M Stelling E Abramson E and Brunius E 1953 Experimental dental caries in golden hamsters III The effect of replacement of cereals with sucrose in a diet of human type Odont T 61 386-399
- 1955 Experimental dental caries in golden hamsters IV Experiments with various fats in a cariogenic diet Tandlaegebladet 59 107 113
- Gustafsson II E 1959 Vitamin K deficiency in germfree rats Ann NY Acad Sci 78 166-174
- Gutberg M and Haberman S 1962 Studies on bacteremia following oral surgery some prophylactic approaches to bacteremia and the results of tissue examination of excised gingiva J Periodont 33 105 115
- Guzman C Brudevold F and Mermagen H 1957 A soft roentgen ray study of early carious lesions J Am Dent Ass 55 509 515
- Gyorgy P Norris R F and Rose C S 1954 Bifidus factor I A variant of *Lactobacillus bifidus* requiring a special growth factor Arch Biochem 48 193 201
- Haenel H 1961 Some rules in the ecology of the intestinal microflora of man J Appl Bact 24 242 251
- Hamburger M Kaplan S and Walker W F 1961 Subacute bacterial endocarditis caused by penicillin sensitive streptococci Value of oral phenoxymethyl penicillin and intramuscular streptomycin JAMA 175 554 557
- Hammond C W 1963 *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection and its effects on radiobiological research Lab Animal Care 13 6 10
- Hampe E G and Mergenhausen S E 1961 Experimental infections with oral spirochetes J Infect Dis 109 43 61
- 1963 Experimental intracutaneous fusobacterial and fusospirochetal infections J Infect Dis 112 84 99
- Hardy P H Jr Lee Y C and Nell E E 1963 Colonial growth of anaerobic spirochetes on solid media J Bact 86 616 626
- Hare R Wildy P Billett F S and Twort D N 1952 The anaerobic cocci gas formation fermentation reactions sensitivity to antibiotics and sulphonamides Classification J Hyg 50 295 319
- Hayes R L Littleton N W and White C L 1957 Postoperative effects of fluoridation on first permanent molars of children in Grand Rapids Michigan Am J Pub Health 47 192 199
- Hazen E L Little G N and Resnick H 1952 The hamster as a vehicle for the demonstration of pathogenicity of *Actinomyces bovis* J Lab Clin Med 40 914-918
- Helmcke J G 1959 Kariesforschung mit dem Elektronenmikroskop Fortschr Med 77 175 176
- Henthorne J C and McDonald J R 1936 The role of anaerobic streptococci in inflammation J Immun 30 396
- Highman B Aldand M D and Eagle H



- Baer P N and Newton W L 1959 The occurrence of periodontal disease in germfree mice, *J Dent Res* 38 1238
- 1960 Studies on periodontal disease in the mouse III The germfree mouse and its conventional control *Oral Surg* 13 1134 1144
- Baer P N and White C L 1960 Studies on periodontal disease in the mouse I Effect of age sex cage factor diet *J Periodont* 31 27 30
- Barlow A J E Chattaway F W Brunt R V and Townsley J D 1961 A study of susceptibility to infection by *Trichophyton rubrum* *J Invest Derm* 37 461-468
- Beechen I I Laston D J and Garbarino V E 1956 Transitory bacteremia as related to the operation of vital pulpotomy *Oral Surg* 9 902 905
- Bender I B Seltzer S and Yermish M 1960 The incidence of bacteremia in endodontic manipulation preliminary report *Oral Surg* 13 353 360
- Berger U 1957, *Neuere Anschauungen über die Pathogenese der oralen Fusospirochätosen* Fortschr Kiefer Gesichtschir 3 314 318
- 1961a Zur Verwertung von Monosacchariden durch saprophytische Neisserien *Arch Hyg Bakt* 145 190 195
- 1961b Zur Variabilität der Zuckervergarungen durch Neisserien *Arch Hyg Bakt* 145 296 301
- 1963 Die anspruchlosen Neisserien *Ergebn Mikrobiol Immuninfektforsch* 36 97 167
- Bergman G and Engfeldt R 1954 Studies on mineralized dental tissues V Microradiographic investigation of experimentally produced caries and attrition in white rats *Acta odont scand* 12 193 200
- Breed R S Murray E G D and Smith N R 1957 *Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology* ed 7 Williams & Wilkins Baltimore
- Bouisset L Breuillaud J and Michel G 1963 Étude de l'ADN chez les actinomyces Les ADN des *Corynebacterium* *Ann Inst Pasteur* 104 488 495
- Brown D W and Moore W E C 1960 Distribution of *Butyrivibrio fibrosolvens* in nature *J Dairy Sci* 40 1570 1574
- Butiaux R and Mossel D A A 1961 The significance of various organisms of faecal origin in foods and drinking water *J Appl Bact* 24 353 364
- Carter B Jones C P Alter R L Creadick R N and Thomas W L 1953 *Bacteroides* Infections in obstetrics and gynecology *Obstet Gynec* 1 491 510
- Chen C C and Cleverdon H C 1963 Some investigations on the growth of *Dialister pneumosintes* *J Appl Bact* 26 107 111
- Colobert L and Blondeau H 1962 Lespece *Streptococcus faecalis* I Étude de l'homogénéité par la méthode Adansonnienne *Ann Inst Pasteur* 103 345 362
- 1962, Lespece *Streptococcus faecalis* III La répartition différente des divers biotypes dans l'intestin de l'homme et du porc permet elle de révéler l'origine humaine d'une contamination des sems conservés de viande de porc? *Ann Inst Pasteur* 103 707 715
- Committee for the Investigation of Dental Disease 1936 The influence of diet on caries in children's teeth (final report) *Med Res Counse Spec Rep Ser No* 211
- Cummings V Furman S Dunst M and Rubin I L 1960 Subacute bacterial endocarditis in the older age group *JAMA* 172 137 141
- Dack G M 1940 Non spore forming anaerobic bacteria of medical importance *Bact Rev* 4 227 259
- Davis G H G and Baird Parker A C 1959 The classification of certain filamentous bacteria with respect to their chemical composition *J Gen Microbiol* 21 612 621
- Defayolle M and Colobert L 1962 Lespece *Streptococcus faecalis* II Étude de l'homogénéité par l'analyse factorielle *Ann Inst Pasteur* 103 505 522
- Deibel R H and Siliker J H 1963 Food poisoning potential of the enterococci *J Bact* 85 827 832
- Dunkelberg W E Hefner J D Patow W E Wyman F J and Orup H I 1962 Hemophilus vaginalis among asymptomatic women *Obstet Gynec* 20 629 632
- Editorial 1961 The postulates of Robert Koch *JAMA* 175 1003 1005
- Fisher A M and Harvey J C 1956 Actinomycosis some concepts of therapy and prognosis *Postgrad Med* 19 32 35
- Fitzgerald M J 1963 Microbiological aspects of dental caries *J Am Dent Ass* 66 597 599
- Fitzgerald R J and Keyes P H 1960 Demonstration of the etiologic role of streptococci in experimental caries in the hamster *J Am Dent Ass* 61 9 19
- Flynn R J 1963 Introduction *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection and its effects on biological and medical research *Lab Animal Care Suppl* 13 1 5
- 1963 *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infec

- tion and radiobiological research at Argonne National Laboratory effects diagnosis epidemiology control Lab Animal Care Suppl 13 25 35
- Forziati A F Losee F L Pigman W W Jennings W H and Lawson M E Jr 1956 In vitro production of experimental enamel caries J Am Dent Ass 53 655 661
- Freter R 1962 In vivo and in vitro antagonism of intestinal bacteria against *Shigella flexneri* II The inhibitory mechanism J Infect Dis 110 38 46
- Gale D and Waldron C A 1955 Experimental actinomycosis and *Actinomyces israelii* The development of visceral actinomycosis J Infect Dis 97 251 261
- Garrod L P 1955 Sensitivity of four species of *Bacteroides* to antibiotics Brit Med J 2 1529 1531
- Geister R S and Meyer E 1951 The effect of aureomycin and penicillin on experimental actinomycosis infections in mice J Lab Clin Med 38 101 111
- Gibbons R J Socransky S S Sawyer S Kapstam R B and Macdonald J ■ 1963 The microbiota of the gingival crevice area of man—II The predominant cultivable organisms Arch Oral Biol 8 281 289
- Glickman I 1956 The role of nutritional therapy in the management of periodontal disease J Am Dent Ass 52 275 283
- 1963 Periodontology J Am Dent Ass 66 636 647
- Goebel W F and Amano T 1959 On the nature of colicine K Science 129 1284
- Gordon H A 1959 Morphological and physiological characterization of germfree life Ann NY Acad Sci 78 208 220
- Grabar P Courton J and Westmann B S 1962 Immunoelectrophoretic analysis of the serum of germfree rats J Immun 88 679 682
- Granados H Glavind J and Dam H 1948 Observations on experimental dental caries The effect of purified rations with and without dietary fat Acta path microbiol scand 25 453-459
- Gupta O P and Shaw J H 1956 Periodontal disease in the rice rat II Methods for the evaluation of the extent of periodontal disease Oral Surg 9 727 735
- Gustafson G Stelling E Abramson ■ and Brunus E 1953 Experimental dental caries in golden hamsters III The effect of replacement of cereals with sucrose in a diet of human type Odont T 61 386 399
- 1955 Experimental dental caries in golden hamsters IV Experiments with various fats in a cariogenic diet Tandlaegebladet 59 107 113
- Gustafsson H E 1959 Vitamin K deficiency in germfree rats Ann NY Acad Sci 78 166-174
- Gulberg M and Haberman S 1962 Studies on bacteremia following oral surgery some prophylactic approaches to bacteremia and the results of tissue examination of excised gingiva J Periodont 33 105 115
- Guzman C Brudevold F and Mermagen ■ 1957 A soft roentgen ray study of early carious lesions J Am Dent Ass 55 509 515
- Gyorgy P Norris R F and Rose C ■ 1954 Bifidus factor I A variant of *Lactobacillus bifidus* requiring a special growth factor Arch Biochem 48 193 201
- Haenel H 1961 Some rules in the ecology of the intestinal microflora of man J Appl Bact 24 242 251
- Hamburger M Kaplan S and Walker W F 1961 Subacute bacterial endocarditis caused by penicillin sensitive streptococci Value of oral phenoxymethyl penicillin and intramuscular streptomycin JAMA 175 554 557
- Hammond C W 1963 *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection and its effects on radiobiological research Lab Animal Care 13 6 10
- Harrop ■ G and Mergenhagen S E 1961 Experimental infections with oral spirochetes J Infect Dis 109 43 61
- 1963 Experimental intracutaneous fusobacterial and fusospirochetal infections J Infect Dis 112 84 99
- Hardy P ■ Jr Lee Y C and Nell E E 1963 Colonial growth of anaerobic spirochetes on solid media J Bact 86 616 626
- Hare R Wildy P Billeit, F ■ and Twort D N 1952 The anaerobic cocci gas formation fermentation reactions sensitivity to antibiotics and sulphonamides Classification J Hyg 50 295 319
- Hayes R L Littleton N W and White C L 1957 Post-eruptive effects of fluoridation on first permanent molars of children in Grand Rapids Michigan Am J Pub Health 47 192 199
- Hazen E L Little G N and Resnick H 1952 The hamster as a vehicle for the demonstration of pathogenicity of *Actinomyces bovis* J Lab Clin Med 40 914-918
- Helmcke J G 1959 Kariesforschung mit dem Elektronenmikroskop Fortschr Med 77 175 176
- Henshorne J C and McDonald J R 1936 The role of anaerobic streptococci in inflammation, J Immun 30 396
- Highman B Alland P D and Eagle H

- 1952 Experimental bacterial endocarditis in altitude rats III Effect of age of infection on response to penicillin Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 81 135 139
- Hite K E Locke M and Hesseltine H C 1949 Synergism in experimental infections with non sporulating anaerobic bacteria J Infect Dis 84 19
- Hurley R and Winner H I 1962 The pathogenicity of *Candida tropicalis* J Path Bact 84 33 38
- Hutton J J and Goebel W F 1962 The isolation of colicine V and a study of its immunological properties J Gen Physiol 45 125 141
- Jackson J F and Allison F Jr 1961 Bacterial endocarditis Southern Med J 54 1331 1339
- Jameson J E 1962 A discussion of the dynamics of salmonella enrichment J Hyg 60 193 207
- Jelliffe D B 1953 Antibiotic treatment of infective gangrene of the mouth J Trop Med 56 53 56
- Johnson A C 1962 Bacteroides infection with a report of a case cured by chloramphenicol Canad Med Ass J 86 72 73
- Keyes P H 1960 The infectious and transmissible nature of experimental dental caries findings and implications Arch Oral Biol 1 304 320
- Keyes P H and Fitzgerald R J 1962 Dental caries in the Syrian hamster—IX Arch Oral Biol 7 267 278
- King E O and Tatum H W 1963 *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans* and *Hemophilus aphrophilus* J Infect Dis 111 85 94
- King S and Meyer E 1963 Gel diffusion technique in antigen antibody reactions of *Actinomyces* species and anaerobic diphtheroids J Bact 85 186 190
- Koenig M G and Kaye D 1961 Enterococcal endocarditis Report of nineteen cases with long term follow up data New Eng J Med 264 257 264
- Korn N A and Schaffer E M 1962 A comparison of the postoperative bacteremias induced following different periodontal procedures J Periodont 33 226 231
- Kritchewski B and Seguin P 1920 Spirochetes buccales—reproduction experimental et traitement Rev stomatol 22 613 647
- Lahelle O 1947 *Necrobacterium* A study of its bacteriology serology and pathogenicity and its relation to *Fusobacterium* Acta path microbiol scand Suppl 67
- Landy M Whitby J L Michael J G Woods M W and Newton W L 1967 Effect of bacterial endotoxin in germ free mice Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 109 357 356
- Lem J N and Standler R W 1959 Subacute bacterial endocarditis following obstetric and gynecologic procedures Obstet Gynec 13 568 573
- Lev M 1961 Germ free animals and their uses in elucidating the action of the gut flora on the host J Appl Bact 24 307 315
- Listgarten M A Loesche W J and Socransky S S 1963 Morphology of *Treponema microdentium* as revealed by electron microcopy of ultrathin sections J Bact 85 932 939
- Lodenkamper H and Strenen G 1955 Importance and therapy of anaerobic infections Antibiot Med 1 653 660
- McCormick N G Ordal E J and Whiteley H R 1962a Degradation of pyruvate by *Micrococcus lactilyticus* I General properties of the formate exchange reaction J Bact 83 887 898
- 1962b Degradation of pyruvate by *Micrococcus lactilyticus* II Studies of cofactors in the formate exchange reaction J Bact 83 899 906
- McHenry M C Wellman W E and Martin W J 1961 Bacteremia due to *Bacteroides* Review of 11 cases Arch Intern Med 107 572 577
- McVay L V Jr and Sprunt D H 1953 A long term evaluation of aureomycin in the treatment of actinomycosis Ann Int Med 38 955 966
- Macdonald J B Socransky S S and Sawyer S J 1960 Pathogenicity experiments with the flora of the periodontium in rice rats J Dent Res 39 861
- Macdonald J B Sutton R M and Knoll M L 1954 The production of fusospirochetal infections in guinea pigs with combined pure cultures J Infect Dis 95 275 284
- Macdonald J B Sutton R M Knoll M L Madlener E M and Grainger R M 1956 The pathogenic components of an experimental fusospirochetal infection J Infect Dis 98 15 20
- Mandel I D 1955 Histological histochemical and other aspects of caries initiation J Am Dent Ass 51 432 441
- Massaro D and Katz S 1960 Subacute bacterial endocarditis due to *Streptococcus viridans* in an edentulous man New Eng J Med 263 911
- Meleney F L 1931 Bacterial synergism in

- disease processes with a confirmation of the synergistic bacterial etiology of a certain type of progressive gangrene of the abdominal wall *Ann Surg* 84 961 981
- Mergenhausen S E and Scherp H W 1957 Nutritional patterns of some anaerobic streptococci *J Bact* 74 749 756
- Mergenhausen S E and Varah E 1963 Serologically specific lipopolysaccharides from oral *Veillonella* *Arch Oral Biol* 8 31 36
- Mergenhausen S E Zipkin I and Varah E 1962 Immunological and chemical studies on an oral *Veillonella* endotoxin *J Immun* 88 482 487
- Meyer E and Verges P 1950 Mouse pathogenicity as a diagnostic aid in the identification of *Actinomyces bovis* *J Lab Clin Med* 36 667 674
- Mickelsen O 1962 Nutrition—germfree animal research *Ann Rev Biochem* 31 515 548
- Miller W D 1890 *The Micro-Organisms of the Human Mouth* S S White Philadelphia
- Millican R C 1963 *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection and its effects in non radiation stress *Lab Animal Care Suppl* 13 11 19
- Moore W E C and Cato H P 1963 Validity of *Propionibacterium acnes* (Gilchrist) Douglas and Gunter comb nov *J Bact* 85 870 874
- Murphy R Katz S and Massaro D 1963 Fusobacterium septicemia following a human bite *Arch Intern Med* 111 51 53
- Opdyke D L J 1962 The histochemistry of dental decay *Arch Oral Biol* 7 207 219
- Orland F J *et al* 1954 Use of the germfree animal technic in the study of experimental dental caries I Basic observations on rats reared free of all microorganisms *J Dent Res* 33 147 174
- Ottens H and Winkler K C 1962 Indifferent and haemolytic streptococci possessing group antigen F *J Gen Microbiol* 28 181 191
- Pankey G A 1961 Subacute bacterial endocarditis at the University of Minnesota Hospital 1939 through 1959 *Ann Intern Med* 55 550 561
- Papavassiliou J 1962 Species differentiation of group D streptococci *Appl Microbiol* 10 65 69
- 1963 *Aerobacter (Enterobacter) cloacae* in human and animal feces *J Bact* 85 1176-1177
- Parker R H and Snyder M L 1961 Interactions of the oral microbiota I A system for the defined study of mixed cultures *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 108 749 752
- Peabody J W Jr and Seabury J H 1960 Actinomycosis and nocardiosis A review of the basic differences in therapy *Am J Med* 28 99 115
- Phillips H P and Wolfe P A 1961 Pneumonic disease in germfree animals *J Infect Dis* 108 12 18
- Pike E H 1962 The classification of staphylococci and micrococci from the human mouth *J Appl Bact* 25 448-455
- Pike E B Freer J H Davis G H G and Bisset K A 1962 The taxonomy of micrococci and neisseriae of oral origin *Arch Oral Biol* 7 715 726
- Pine L and Overman J R 1963 Determination of the structure and composition of the sulphur granules of *Actinomyces bovis* *J Gen Microbiol* 32 209 223
- Proske H O and Sayers R R 1934 Pulmonary infection in pneumococcosis I A bacteriologic and experimental study *Pub Health Rep* 49 839 858
- 1934 Pulmonary infection in pneumococcosis II Fuso spirochaetal infection Experiments in guinea pigs *Pub Health Rep* 49 1212 1217
- Quinn E L and Colville J M 1961 Subacute bacterial endocarditis Clinical and laboratory observations in 27 consecutive cases treated with penicillin V by mouth *New Eng J Med* 264 835 842
- Rifkind D and Cole R M 1962 Non beta hemolytic group M reacting streptococci of human origin *J Bact* 84 163 168
- Robertson K 1949 The role of infection in granulopenia *Brit Med J* 1 799
- Rogosa M Hampp E G and MacKintosh M E 1961 Serological studies on the genus *Veillonella* *Bacteriol Proc* p 127
- Rosebury T 1938a The etiology of Vincent's infection in Dental Science and Dental Art (S M Gordon ed) pp 415-438 Philadelphia Lea & Febiger
- 1938b The problem of dental caries in Dental Science and Dental Art (S M Gordon ed) pp 269 326 Philadelphia Lea & Febiger
- 1952 Etiological factors in periodontal disease *Oral Surg* 5 473-482
- 1955 Outline of a theory of periodontal disease *Washington U Dent J* 21 35-40 *Canad Dent A J* 21 463 467
- 1962 *Microorganisms Indigenous to Man* New York McGraw Hill
- Rosebury T Clark A R Engel S G and Tergis F 1950 Studies of fusospirochaetal infection I Pathogenicity for guinea pigs of individual and combined cultures of spiro

- chetes and other anaerobic bacteria derived from the human mouth *J Infect Dis* 87 217 225
- Rosebury T Clark A R MacDonald J B and O'Connell D C 1950 Studies of fuso spirochetal infection III Further studies of a guinea pig passage strain of fusospirochetal infection including the infectivity of sterile exudate filtrates of mixed cultures through ten transfers and of recombined pure cultures *J Infect Dis* 87 234 248
- Rosebury T Clark A R Tergis F and Engel S G 1950 Studies of fusospirochetal infection II Analysis and attempted quantitative recombination of the flora of fuso spirochetal infection after repeated guinea pig passage *J Infect Dis* 87 226 233
- Rosebury T and Karshan M 1935 Susceptibility to dental caries in the rat V Influence of calcium phosphorus vitamin D and corn oil *Arch Path* 20 697 707
- 1939 Susceptibility to dental caries in the rat VIII Further studies of the influence of vitamin D and of fats and fatty oils *J Dent Res* 18 189 202
- Rowles S L Sidaway D A MacGregor A B and Marsland E A 1963 An apparatus for the production of dental caries *in vitro* *Arch Oral Biol* 8 311 318
- Ryff J F and Lee A M 1946 The etiology of calf diphtheria *Am J Vet Res* 7 41-44
- Sawyer S J Macdonald J B and Gibbons R J 1962 Biochemical characteristics of *Bacteroides melaninogenicus* A study of thirty one strains *Arch Oral Biol* 7 685 691
- Schurger A Martin W J Royer R Q and Needham G M 1960 Bacterial invasion of blood after oral surgical procedures *J Lab Clin Med* 55 376 380
- Schmidt J M and Richardson R L 1962 Serology of *Bacterionema matruchotii* *J Bact* 83 584 589
- Scott D B and Albright J T 1954 Electron microscopy of carious enamel and dentine *Oral Surg* 7 64 78
- Sheldon W H and Bauer H 1962 The role of predisposing factors in experimental fungus infections *Lab Invest* 11 1184 1191
- Sherman J D Ingall D Wiener J and Pryles C V 1960 *Alcaligenes faecalis* in feces in the newborn *Am J Dis Child* 100 212 216
- Sibal L R Kroeger A V Kumarich D and Meyer E 1962 Serological specificity of acid soluble antigens of *Bacterionema matruchotii* *J Bact* 83 811 818
- Skellern H J Trexler P C and Tanami J 1962 Effect of a *Clostridium* species upon cecal size of gnotobiotic mice *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 110 455-458
- Smith D T 1932 Oral Spirochetes and Related Organisms in Fuso spirochetal Disease Baltimore Williams and Wilkins
- Socransky S S Gibbons R J Dale A C Bortnick L Rosenthal E and Macdonald J B 1963 The microbiota of the gingival crevice area of man—I Total microscopic and viable counts and counts of specific organisms *Arch Oral Biol* 8 275 280
- Socransky S S Macdonald J B and Sawyer S 1959 60 The cultivation of *Treponema microdentium* as surface colonies *Arch Oral Biol* 1 171 172
- Soggeaen R F 1948 Caries-conducive effect of a purified diet when fed to rodents during tooth development *J Am Dent Ass* 37 676 692
- Sonnenwirth A C 1960 A study of certain gram negative non sporulating anaerobic bacteria indigenous to man with special reference to their classification by serological means Dissertation St Louis Washington University
- Steinhorn S R 1945 The possible role of bacterial synergism in puerperal infections due to anaerobic streptococci *Am J Obstet Gynec* 50 63 68
- Stewart F S and McKeever J D 1963 Serological definition of Lancefield group K *J Path Bact* 85 383 388
- Swain R H A 1955 Electron microscopic studies of the morphology of pathogenic spirochaetes *J Path Bact* 69 117 128
- Taylor A B 1959 Theoretical and practical considerations of germfree animals in virology *Ann NY Acad Sci* 78 102 115
- Thorbecke G Gordon H A Westman H Wagner M and Reyniers J A 1957 Lymphoid tissue and serum gamma globulin in young germfree chicks *J Infect Dis* 101 237 251
- Toh C C S and Ball K P 1960 Natural history of *Streptococcus faecalis* endocarditis *Brit Med J* 2 640 644
- Tompsett R and Pizette M 1962 Enterococcal endocarditis Lack of correlation between therapeutic results and antibiotic sensitivity tests *Arch Int Med* 109 146 150
- Tynes H B and Frommeyer W B Jr 1962 *Bacteroides septemicus* cultural clinical and therapeutic features in a series of twenty five patients *Ann Intern Med* 56 12 26
- Tynes H B and Utz J P 1960 *Fusobacterium septemicus* *Am J Med* 29 879 887
- Vargas H Collings C K Polter L and

- Haberman S 1959 Effects of certain factors on bacteremias resulting from gingival resection J Periodont 30 196 207
- Veillon A and Zuber A 1897 Sur quelques microbes strictement anaerobies et leur role dans la pathologie humaine C R soc biol 49 253 255
- 1898 Recherches sur quelques microbes strictement anaerobies et leur role en pathologie Arch med exp et anat path 10 517 545
- Veszpremi D 1905 Kultur und Tierversuche mit dem Bacillus fusiformis und dem Spirillum Centralb Bakt I Abt Orig 38 136 137
- 1907 Zuchtungs und Tierversuche mit Bacillus fusiformis Spirochaete gracilis und Cladothrix putridogenes Beitrage zur Bakteriologie und Histogenese der experimentellen gangranösen Entzündungen Centralb Bakt I Abt Orig 44 332 339 408-415 515 523
- Vogler W R and Dorney E R 1962a Bacterial endocarditis in congenital heart disease Am Heart J 64 198 206
- Vogler W R Dorney E R and Bridges H A 1962b Bacterial endocarditis A review of 148 cases Am J Med 32 910 921
- Walker W F and Hamburger M 1959 A study of experimental staphylococcal endocarditis in dogs I Production of the disease its natural history and tissue bacteriology J Lab Clin Med 53 931 941
- Whiteley H R and McCormick N G 1963 Degradation of pyruvate by *Micrococcus lactilyticus* III Properties and cofactor requirements of the carbon dioxide exchange reaction J Bact 85 382 393
- Williams R E O 1956 *Streptococcus salivarius* (vel *hominis*) and its relation to Lancefield's group K J Path Bact 72 15 25
- Woodward J M 1963 *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection and its control in the radio biological research program III Oak Ridge National Laboratory Lab Animal Care 13 20-24
- Woolfolk C A 1962a Reduction of inorganic compounds with molecular hydrogen by *Micrococcus lactilyticus* II Stoichiometry with inorganic sulfur compounds J Bact 84 659 668
- Woolfolk C A and Whiteley H R 1962b Reduction of inorganic compounds with molecular hydrogen by *Micrococcus lactilyticus* I Stoichiometry with compounds of arsenic selenium tellurium transition and other elements J Bact 84 647 658
- Zinneman K and Turner G C 1963 The taxonomic position of *Haemophilus vaginalis* [*Corynebacterium vaginale*] J Path Bact 85 213 219
- Zipkin I and Gold R S 1963 The citrate content of teeth Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 113 580 584
- Zubrzycka L and Spaulding E H 1962 Studies on the stability of the normal human fecal flora J Bact 83 968 974

## 15

## The Hemolytic Streptococci

The streptococci comprise a large and biologically diverse group of microorganisms. The principal criteria for classifying them are morphologic. In general, streptococci can be defined as gram positive organisms, spherical or oval in shape, that tend to grow in chains. With the exception of the pneumococci, which are usually considered separately by medical bacteriologists because of their unique biologic characteristics, those streptococci which possess primary pathogenicity for man and animals belong to the subdivision of hemolytic streptococci. The nonhemolytic streptococci are saprophytic, and many species can be found among the flora of the upper respiratory and the intestinal tracts of normal individuals. They are sometimes found in association with infectious processes, most commonly when some predisposing structural abnormality is present, as in bacterial endocarditis, urinary tract infections, or secondary wound infections.

Hemolytic streptococci cause the lysis of mammalian red blood cells, a property which is useful in the initial isolation and identification of these organisms in culture material. As a result of extensive serologic studies, they have been divided into a number of distinct serologic groups which are related in some degree to the natural habitat and the pathogenicity of the organism. Accordingly, serologic group has assumed primary importance in the identification of pathogenic streptococci. It has become apparent that hemolytic streptococci of a single group, group A, are

not only responsible for most of the acute streptococcal disease of man but also are involved in the initiation of late sequelae such as rheumatic fever and glomerulonephritis.

## HISTORY

Streptococci were first seen in materials obtained from certain human infections. Thus Billroth (1874) described globular chains of microorganisms in erysipelas and wound infections, and Pasteur (1879) demonstrated similar organisms in the blood of a patient with puerperal sepsis. Ogston (1881) isolated cocci growing in chains from acute abscesses and used animal experiments to demonstrate the pathogenicity of the organisms after they had been grown on artificial media. Following the demonstration by Koch (1881) that streptococci were present with great regularity in excised erysipelas lesions, Fehleisen (1882, 1883) grew the organism in pure culture from such areas and induced typical erysipelas in human beings with subcultures.

Organisms with similar characteristics were subsequently obtained from a wide variety of materials, and considerable difficulty arose concerning their identification and classification. Inevitably, many streptococci were considered to be specific for the disease entity in which they appeared, and as a result such names as *Streptococcus erysipelas* and *Streptococcus scarlatinae* came into use. Attempts to arrive at a system of classification

by studying biochemical and physiologic properties such as the pattern of fermentation by various carbohydrates did not prove to be of great value since no clear relationship between these findings and disease producing capacity could be established. The differentiation of streptococci into hemolytic, green and indifferent strains based on their action on red blood cells in vitro was first proposed by Schottmüller (1903). In his elaboration of this technic Brown (1919) introduced the terms alpha, beta and gamma to describe slight hemolysis with greening, frank hemolysis or no effect on erythrocytes respectively. It was recognized early that pathogenic streptococci for the most part fell in the truly hemolytic (beta) category.

A useful system for the classification of hemolytic streptococci was gradually evolved by the application of serologic technics. Although not historically the first step, a development of primary importance in bringing order into the study of streptococci came with the separation of these organisms into well defined serologic groups by Lancefield (1933). It was clear that most strains associated with human infections belonged to a single serologic group designated group A. The occurrence of serologically differentiable types among human strains had been demonstrated earlier by agglutination and mouse protection tests (Dochez, Avery and Lancefield 1919). The further development of type differentiation of human strains was pursued by different approaches in 2 laboratories. Lancefield (1928a) devised a precipitin technic for typing based on the use of extracts containing type specific protein antigens and Griffith (1927, 1934) classified streptococcal strains by applying a slide agglutination technic. Information obtained from the grouping and the typing of hemolytic streptococci established the fact that the use of disease specific names is not justified since group A strains of a single type can be recovered from a variety of disease entities. More important, the serologic classification of streptococci supplied the tools required for a detailed study of the bacteriology, the immunology and the epidemiology of streptococcal disease.

## MORPHOLOGY

The outstanding morphologic characteristic of streptococci is their tendency to grow in chains. At certain stages of the growth cycle the individual cocci are spheroid. However, during growth of the organisms prior to division they become elongated on an axis parallel with that of the chain and assume an ovoid appearance. The average diameter of the cocci is approximately 1 micron, although there is considerable variation in size and certain minute streptococci may be one fourth to one half this size. When growing under unfavorable conditions bizarre forms frequently appear with irregularities in the size, the shape and the gram positivity of cocci even within a single chain. In young, actively growing cultures in favorable media such as serum or blood broth the cocci are uniform and the chains appear in their most characteristic form.

After elongation during growth the cocci divide in a plane perpendicular to the long axis of the chain. Because the individual cocci divide into pairs a diplococcal appearance of the members of a chain is often striking. Chaining results from the fact that a connecting link between the cocci, probably composed of material like that forming the cell wall, is retained following division. These intercellular bridges are not easily broken and withstand such procedures as shaking; however, the chains can be disrupted without extensive destruction of cocci by subjecting them to brief periods of sonic oscillation (Slade and Slamp 1956). The length of the chains varies within wide limits and is influenced to some degree by the nature of the culture medium. Many hemolytic streptococci grow in relatively short chains of 8 to 10 members; others much longer. Occasionally one will find extremely long chains suggesting that each individual chain of the inoculum has continued to increase in length without disrupting during growth. This type of chain formation is more common among certain of the nonhemolytic streptococci.

The chain forming property has an important bearing on the interpretation of quantitative studies on the growth of streptococci. The usual technic for determining the number of viable bacterial cells depends on count



## 15

## The Hemolytic Streptococci

The streptococci comprise a large and biologically diverse group of microorganisms. The principal criteria for classifying them are morphologic. In general streptococci can be defined as gram positive organisms spherical or oval in shape that tend to grow in chains. With the exception of the pneumococci which are usually considered separately by medical bacteriologists because of their unique biologic characteristics those streptococci which possess primary pathogenicity for man and animals belong to the subdivision of hemolytic streptococci. The nonhemolytic streptococci are saprophytic and many species can be found among the flora of the upper respiratory and the intestinal tracts of normal individuals. They are sometimes found in association with infectious processes most commonly when some predisposing structural abnormality is present as in bacterial endocarditis, urinary tract infections or secondary wound infections.

Hemolytic streptococci cause the lysis of mammalian red blood cells, a property which is useful in the initial isolation and identification of these organisms in culture material. As a result of extensive serologic studies they have been divided into a number of distinct serologic groups which are related in some degree to the natural habitat and the pathogenicity of the organism. Accordingly serologic group has assumed primary importance in the identification of pathogenic streptococci. It has become apparent that hemolytic streptococci of a single group, group A, are

not only responsible for most of the acute streptococcal disease of man but also are involved in the initiation of late sequelae such as rheumatic fever and glomerulonephritis.

## HISTORY

Streptococci were first seen in materials obtained from certain human infections. Thus, Billroth (1874) described globular chains of microorganisms in erysipelas and wound infections, and Pasteur (1879) demonstrated similar organisms in the blood of a patient with puerperal sepsis. Ogston (1881) isolated cocci growing in chains from acute abscesses and used animal experiments to demonstrate the pathogenicity of the organisms after they had been grown on artificial media. Following the demonstration by Koch (1881) that streptococci were present with great regularity in excised erysipelas lesions, Fehleisen (1882-1883) grew the organism in pure culture from such areas and induced typical erysipelas in human beings with subcultures.

Organisms with similar characteristics were subsequently obtained from a wide variety of materials and considerable difficulty arose concerning their identification and classification. Inevitably many streptococci were considered to be specific for the disease entity in which they appeared and as a result such names as *Streptococcus erysipelas* and *Streptococcus scarlatinae* came into use. Attempts to arrive at a system of classification

composition are formed by certain members of group C. These capsules are composed largely of hyaluronic acid which is either identical with or very closely related to the hyaluronic acid found in mammalian tissues. Capsules are most readily demonstrated microscopically in very young actively growing cultures in enriched media. With continued growth the hyaluronic acid is released into solution in the medium and capsules are no longer demonstrable. The capsules are seen most easily in wet preparations prepared by the India ink technique and appear as a large clear zone surrounding the chains, frequently several times the diameter of the cocci.

Capsulation in group II streptococci is quite different in nature and depends on the occurrence of type specific polysaccharides comparable with those elaborated by pneumococci.

### COLONY FORMS

The colonial characteristics of hemolytic streptococci are usually studied on the surface of blood agar plates so that the pattern of hemolysis and colony morphology can be observed simultaneously. The size, the distinctness and the rate of development of the zone of hemolysis surrounding surface colonies vary considerably. Some strains, notably certain members of groups C and D, produce unusually large and brilliant zones, while others may show no more than a narrow ring of hemolysis surrounding the colony. The species of blood used in the agar medium influences the nature of the hemolysis and streptococci occur which give clear hemolysis with one mammalian blood but cause no hemolysis or only greening with others.

Not all streptococci which fall into the recognized serologic groups produce hemolysis on the surface of blood agar plates. Thus certain members of groups B, C, D, H, K, and O and all members of group N are essentially nonhemolytic. Even among group A strains, variants occur which lack the ability to produce or release streptolysin S and thus are nonhemolytic under the aerobic conditions of surface growth. Variants of this type are being encountered with increasing frequency on routine throat cultures, leading to some difficulty in the initial recognition of pathogenic strains. Such strains possess the colonial morphology of typical group A

strains and produce the oxygen labile streptolysin O so that they become hemolytic when grown anaerobically or as deep colonies in agar pour plates.

Isolated colonies of streptococci on blood agar average 1 to 2 mm in diameter. The so-called minute streptococci, including members of groups F and G, form much smaller colonies. The topography of the colonies does not follow a single well-defined pattern; they are usually circular in outline with smooth or slightly serrated edges and a rounded surface.

Among group A streptococci several different colony forms are recognized and the descriptive terms most commonly employed are mucoid, matt, and glossy. The mucoid character is associated with the production of hyaluronic acid capsules and the most strikingly mucoid strains are those that form abundant amounts of polysaccharide with large well-developed capsules. Mucoid colonies are observed most satisfactorily on fresh blood agar plates or plates that have been treated to prevent loss of moisture. They tend to be large and glistening and may have the appearance of droplets of water (Fig. 1 A), although when touched with a loop the viscous character of the colony is readily apparent. The suggestion of fluidity is increased by the fact that the colonies frequently do not retain a circular shape. The hyaluronate gel often collapses as a result of drying, enzymatic action, or chemical effect, leaving a flattened colony with an irregular surface (Figs. 1 B and C). It is these colonies that are currently referred to by the term "matt," although they might more appropriately be designated as "postmucoid."

Glossy colonies are formed by strains that do not produce capsules during growth on agar. These nonmucoid colonies are smaller and usually more rounded than the mucoid forms and they tend to have a shiny reflecting surface (Fig. 1 D). The importance of the capsule in colony form is illustrated by the fact that strains such as those shown in Figures 1 A to C produce typical glossy colonies when grown in the presence of hyaluronidase.

There is a limited relationship between colony form and production of antigenic constituents responsible for type specificity and

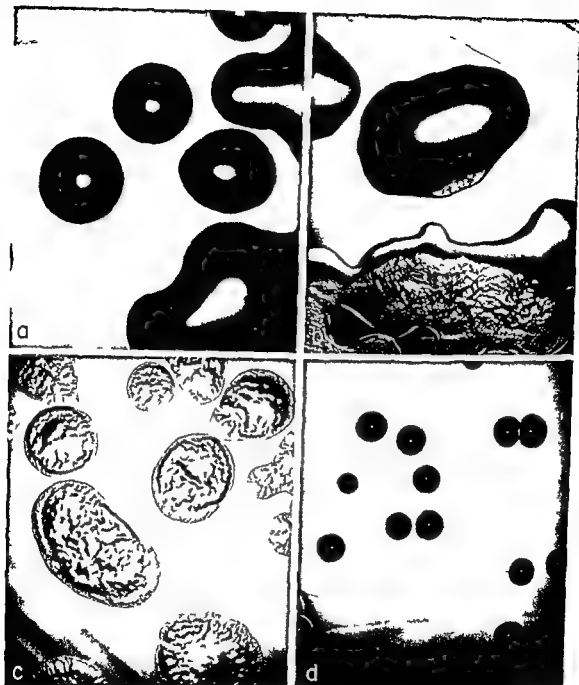


FIG 1 Colony forms of group A streptococci. Magnification  $55\times$ . a Mucoid colonies. b Mucoid colonies with beginning conversion to post mucoid state. c Postmucoid colonies. d Nonmucoid (glossy) colonies. (Photographs from Dr A T Wilson, Alfred I du Pont Institute of the Nemours Foundation, Wilmington, Delaware.)

ing the colonies formed when dilutions of the culture are incorporated in an appropriate agar medium. In the case of streptococci this procedure provides an estimate not of

the number of individual viable cells but of the number of intact chains.

Capsule formation is characteristic of many group A streptococci and capsules of similar

the amount of growth significantly. The reducing conditions necessary for the initiation of growth in these media are usually obtained by the addition of a sulfhydryl compound such as cysteine or thioglycollate.

There is a certain amount of evidence to suggest that the missing substances which account for the inadequacy of defined media are peptide in nature. The substance designated streptogenin (Woolley 1941) which was found to be necessary for the growth of certain group A streptococcal strains is apparently a family of peptides rather than a single substance. Others have found that peptide preparations are stimulatory to the growth of group A streptococci in defined media (Slade 1954).

Theoretically investigation of the extra cellular enzymes and toxins of group A streptococci would be carried out most satisfactorily with defined media because of the absence of macromolecular constituents not arising from the organisms. However these media have proved to be generally unsatisfactory for this purpose and the alternative approach of employing only the dialyzable components of complex meat infusion peptone media has been adopted (Stock 1939; Dole 1946). Most strains grow well and produce the expected complement of extracellular substances in appropriate dialysate media.

The hemolytic streptococci are facultative anaerobes and metabolize glucose with the formation of lactic acid. The accumulation of lactic acid with the attendant fall in pH is a limiting factor in the growth of the organisms in an otherwise adequate medium as indicated by the fact that massive growth can be obtained in the presence of excess glucose if the lactic acid formed is continuously neutralized. Growth is optimal at 37°C and is markedly inhibited at temperatures above 40°C.

## GROUP DIFFERENTIATION

The division of hemolytic streptococci into serologic groups depends on the occurrence of group specific cellular antigens which are carbohydrate in nature and are designated as C carbohydrates (Lancefield 1928b; 1933). The presence of these antigens is demonstrated by means of precipitation reactions be-

tween solutions of the carbohydrate extracted from streptococcal cells and antisera prepared by immunizing rabbits with heat killed suspensions of streptococci. Lancefield showed that separating hemolytic streptococci into distinct categories by this technique resulted in a classification related to the most characteristic source of the organisms. Thus group A is composed of strains usually pathogenic for man; group B of strains from bovine mastitis; group C is commonly found in streptococcal diseases of lower animals etc. The source and the characteristics of the common serologic groups—including those that have been added since the initial studies of Lancefield—are summarized in Table 1. The relationship between group specificity and habitat is not a rigid one. Thus although group A strains are responsible for most human streptococcal infections occasionally representatives of all other groups may be isolated from human sources.

The serologic groups listed in Table 1 embrace the great majority of strains of hemolytic streptococci. However additional strains are encountered which possess the general properties of hemolytic streptococci but do not fall into any of the defined groups.

Information concerning the cellular localization and the chemical composition of the group specific carbohydrates has been obtained in recent years. In the case of group A streptococci the carbohydrate is an integral component of the bacterial cell wall and may account for as much as 10 per cent of the dry weight of the organism (McCarty 1952; Salton 1953). The same localization has been shown to hold for several other groups (B, C, G and E) and the presence of rhamnose as a major monosaccharide in the cell wall of all major groups of streptococci indicates a uniform pattern which supports the concept of a basic interrelationship between the hemolytic streptococci (Cummins and Harris 1956; Slade and Slamp 1962). Variations in the content of hexosamines and other monosaccharides in the cell wall of different groups provide an adequate chemical basis for serologic differences.

The group D streptococci stand as an important exception since the group specific antigen in these organisms has been identified as a member of the family of glycerol

TABLE 1 SUMMARY OF RECOGNIZED SEROLOGIC GROUPS OF STREPTOCOCCI

GROUP	USUAL HABITAT	USUAL PATHOGENICITY
A	Man	Many human diseases
B	Cattle	Mastitis
C	Many animals	Many animal diseases
	Man (human strains)	Mild respiratory infections
D	Dairy products	Genitourinary tract infections
	Intestinal contents of man and animals (enterococci)	endocarditis wound infections
E	Normal milk	None known
	Swine	Pharyngeal abscesses of swine
F	Man	Questionable found in respiratory tract
G	Man	Mild respiratory infections rare
	Dogs	Genital tract infections in dogs
H	Man	Questionable found in respiratory tract
K	Man	Questionable found in respiratory tract
L	Dogs	Genital tract infections
M	Dogs	Genital tract infections
N	Dairy products	None
O	Man	Occur in upper respiratory tract but not associated with disease Endocarditis

Groups A to E were described by Lancefield (1933) groups F and G by Lancefield and Hare (1935) groups H and K by Hare (1935) and groups L and M by Fry (unpublished) Group N was identified independently by several groups and the letter N was assigned by Shattock and Matlack (1943) Group O was described by Boissard and Wormald (1950)

virulence Strains that produce mucoid colonies usually elaborate M protein and are potentially virulent while those that produce glossy colonies often contain little or no M protein and are of low virulence However there are many exceptions to this relationship and colony form cannot be used as a reliable indication of either M protein production or potential virulence Thus non virulent strains can produce hyaluronic acid and give mucoid colonies and M protein may be produced by organisms which form typically glossy colonies These relationships have been discussed in detail by Wilson (1959)

Other more subtle differences in colony topography between strains of group A streptococci can be demonstrated when the organisms are grown on special media and examined at higher magnification but the basis for these differences is not yet established

### GROWTH REQUIREMENTS

The pathogenic hemolytic streptococci are among the most fastidious of microorganisms

in growth requirements As a routine procedure they are usually cultivated in complex media composed of peptone meat infusion salts and glucose Heating may reduce the ability of a medium to support growth and the best results are obtained when the broth is sterilized by filtration With even the most satisfactory media of this type further enhancement of growth usually can be achieved by the addition of blood or serum The effect of blood or serum is especially striking in the case of solid media since the growth of streptococci on the surface of agar plates tends to be quite poor in the absence of these additives

Some information concerning the minimal requirements for the growth of group A streptococci has been obtained by the use of chemically defined media (Bernheimer *et al* 1942 Slade *et al* 1951) although very few strains will grow vigorously and reproducibly under these conditions The findings indicate that up to 15 amino acids and almost all of the known members of the vitamin B complex are needed In addition purines and pyrimidines are required for certain strains and asparagine and glutamine may increase

different methods have been employed for this purpose (1) Extraction of cells at pH 2 and 100 C (Lancefield 1928a b) This method has the distinct advantage of simultaneously providing M protein containing extracts suitable for typing of group A strains (2) Extractions of cells with formamide at 160 to 180 C (Fuller 1938) (3) Lysis of streptococci with enzymes derived from *Streptomyces albus* (Maxted 1948) The cell wall is actually dissolved by this procedure consequently the highest yields of carbohydrate are obtained (4) Autoclaving of suspensions of cells at 15 pounds pressure for 15 minutes (Rantz and Randall 1955) Characteristically solutions of the carbohydrate react rapidly with specific antisera to give floccules of antigen antibody precipitate and show little or no cross reaction with heterologous group antisera Thus with an appropriate supply of antisera the serologic group of unknown strains can be quickly determined The glycerol teichoic acid antigens are also released in serologically active form by these several methods

Serologic grouping can also be achieved without extraction of the antigen by application of the fluorescent antibody technic (Moody *et al* 1958) When carried out with reliable reagents and adequate controls on streptococci isolated from throat cultures this procedure gives results comparable with those obtained by the precipitin test

A nonserologic method of differentiating group A from the other groups of streptococci has been suggested by Maxted (1953) Group A strains were shown to be significantly more sensitive to bacitracin than strains of all other groups and by choosing the appropriate concentration of the antibiotic Maxted devised a simple plate method for tentative identification of group A strains In a survey of a large series of strains the accuracy of this technic proved to be very high although rare exceptions were encountered

Streptococcal bacteriophages have been known for many years but the earlier studies were carried out for the most part without reference to serologic grouping Recent studies have shown that several group A phages are related serologically to one another but distinct from group C phage fur-

thermore that susceptibility of streptococci of these two groups is primarily a group specific phenomenon (Krause 1957) although other factors influence the susceptibility of group A strains (Maxted 1955) The cell wall carbohydrate of group C strains inactivates group C phage suggesting that the group specific carbohydrate may serve as a phage receptor site in this case but no similar effect can be demonstrated with group A carbohydrate Also of interest with respect to the cell wall structure of streptococci is the fact that phage lysates of group C streptococci contain a lytic factor presumably an enzyme which is highly active on group A and group E strains as well as on group C (Maxted 1957 Krause 1957) This enzyme dissolves the cell wall with release of the group specific carbohydrate in much the same way as the *Streptomyces albus* enzymes

#### ANTIGENIC AND BIOCHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF GROUP A STREPTOCOCCI

Because of the importance of group A streptococci in human infections the composition of these organisms has been studied in great detail Of particular importance are the several surface antigens and the wide variety of extracellular products which are released into the environment during growth Not all of these antigens are limited in their occurrence to group A streptococci and substances similar to or identical with certain of these components are produced by some members of other groups

##### SURFACE ANTIGENS

The properties of the several surface components of streptococci are summarized in Table 2 Most of these are antigenic but the nonantigenic substances in the surface complex are included to provide a complete picture

**Group specific Carbohydrate** As noted above the group A carbohydrate is the major component of the bacterial cell wall The monosaccharide constituents are rhamnose and N acetyl glucosamine in a ratio of approximately 2:1 (Schmidt 1952 McCarty 1952 Salton 1953) When the carbohy-

TABLE 2 SURFACE COMPONENTS OF STREPTOCOCCI

	COMPOSITION	DISTRIBUTION	SIGNIFICANCE
Capsule			
Hyaluronic acid	Repeating polymer of N acetyl glucosamine and glucuronic acid	Capsular material in most strains of group A and some of group C	Antiphagocytic effect under certain conditions Human serum contains factor counteracting this effect
Polysaccharide	Complex polysaccharides	Capsular material in group B	Type specific antigens in group B with antiphagocytic effect
Cell Wall			
M proteins	Protein	Type specific antigen on surface of cell wall in group A	Primary factor in virulence of group A streptococci through antiphagocytic effect
T & R proteins	Protein	Also on surface of cell wall of group A strep Analogous proteins probably occur in other groups (e.g. groups C and G)	No demonstrable role in virulence Participate in agglutination reactions
Carbohydrate	Polysaccharides with rhamnose as prominent component in most groups Hexosamines and often hexoses also present	Integral part of insoluble cell wall probably lying under surface proteins	Group specific antigens of groups A B C E and G (and probably others)
Mucopeptide	Polymer of N acetyl glucosamine and N acetyl muramic acid with peptides attached through carboxyl of muramic acid	Inner layer of cell wall Similar in all groups and in other bacteria	Rigid skeletal framework of cell wall
Glycerol teichoic acids	$\alpha$ Glycerophosphate polymers with additional substituents (sugars D alanine)	Localization unknown Not attached to wall by primary bonds but near surface of cell	Group specific antigens in groups D and N Heterophile antigen present in most groups
Cell membrane	Complex lipoprotein structure	Underlies cell wall	Limiting membrane in L forms and protoplasts Site of synthetic mechanisms for hyaluronic acid (and possibly other surface components)

teichoic acids which are not bound to the cell wall (Elliott 1962 Wicken *et al* 1963). In this instance the rhamnose containing carbohydrates of the cell wall have been designated as type specific antigens so that group D appears to comprise a rather diverse group of organisms all of which produce similar teichoic acids (Elliott 1960). This situation is not confined to a single group and the group-specific antigen of group N

streptococci has also been identified as a glycerol teichoic acid.

The occurrence of carbohydrate antigens as a part of the essentially insoluble cell wall structure explains the need for relatively drastic procedures in obtaining solutions of the carbohydrates. It is necessary to bring about partial disintegration of the cell wall with the release of soluble carbohydrate in a form that retains its serologic reactivity. In practice 4

protein is not a highly antigenic substance and prolonged immunization with suitable streptococcal vaccines is often necessary in order to produce adequate amounts of precipitating antibody. The antisera obtained must be absorbed with organisms of heterologous types to remove antibodies to common streptococcal antigens which might give cross reactions. Because of these considerations typing of streptococci is not widely used as a routine bacteriologic diagnostic procedure. However it has proved to be of great importance in special clinical and epidemiologic studies.

The detection of antibody to M proteins in human sera poses a special problem. The ordinary *in vitro* tests such as the precipitin reaction are not sufficiently specific for this purpose since M antigen preparations contain other streptococcal substances which give rise to a high incidence of cross reactions. As a result the measurement of type specific antibody has depended on complex biologic tests based on the role of the M antigen in virulence and phagocytosis. For example it is often possible to demonstrate type specific protection with human sera in mouse infections but this procedure is somewhat insensitive and requires relatively large amounts of M antibody. The most widely used procedure has been the so-called bactericidal test which exploits the fact that usually streptococci are rapidly killed following phagocytosis. Streptococci containing M protein resist phagocytosis by human leukocytes and grow vigorously in normal blood. However in the presence of type-specific antibody phagocytosis is greatly enhanced and virulent streptococci inoculated into blood if not present in excessive numbers can be completely destroyed by leukocytes. Quantitative procedures for carrying out phagocytic tests have been devised and have been applied not only to the measurement of M antibody (Kuttner and Lenert, 1944; Rothbard 1945) but also to the antigenic analysis of streptococci (Maxted 1956; Lancefield 1957).

Because of the complexity of the phagocytic test other procedures have been sought for the measurement of type specific antibody. Stollerman *et al.* (1959) have shown that growth in the presence of M antibody

significantly enhances the chain length of selected M-containing strains and have used this phenomenon in the measurement of type specific antibody. Efforts have been made to apply such methods as passive hemagglutination in which tanned erythrocytes are treated with M extracts but it has been difficult to achieve specificity because of cross reacting antigens in the extracts which are common to many types of streptococci. Some success has been reported recently in the elimination of these cross reactions by inhibition with heterologous extracts (Vosti and Rantz 1964).

**Other Surface Protein Antigens** In addition to the M protein there are other protein antigens which occur at or near the cell surface and apparently are attached to the cell wall. Those which have been studied in detail and are characterized to some degree serologically and chemically have been designated T antigen and R antigen (Lancefield 1940; Lancefield and Perlmann 1952b).

T antigens are present in most strains of group A streptococci and as in the case of the M antigens they are represented by a large number of serologically distinct proteins (see summary in Lancefield 1954). However the distribution of T antigens is not directly related to that of the M antigens. In some instances a common or closely related T antigen is found in several different specific M types. For example types 15, 17, 19, 23, 30 and 47 appear to have closely related T antigens. In addition within a single M type certain strains may have one T antigen while others have a totally unrelated T antigen and some strains may have no demonstrable T antigen.

The T proteins are resistant to proteolytic digestion and serologically active preparations have been obtained in soluble form by extracting streptococci with proteolytic enzymes. Because they are readily destroyed by heat at acid pH ordinarily these antigens are not represented in M-containing extracts. Streptococci are agglutinated by antisera containing homologous T antibodies and T antigens have been studied most extensively by this technique. Determination of T antigen by agglutination techniques can occasionally be a useful adjunct in the identification of streptococci particularly in those cases where



drate is solubilized by the use of cell wall dissolving enzymes, purified preparations also contain muramic acid and amino acids characteristic of the mucopeptide structure found in all bacterial cell walls. However the carbohydrate and the mucopeptide are independent elements of the wall and are separable by appropriate chemical techniques (Krause and McCarty, 1961). The dominant serologic specificity of the carbohydrate appears to depend on terminal  $\beta$  N acetyl glucosamine residues on side chains or branches (McCarty 1956, 1958). These terminal residues can be removed selectively by an induced enzyme obtained from a soil bacillus with concomitant loss of reactivity with group A antisera.

In the course of passage of group A strains through animal hosts variants have been isolated which appear to have lost their group specific carbohydrates since extracts do not react with group A antisera (Wilson 1945, Lancefield and Perlmann 1952b). These variants contain a cell wall carbohydrate composed of the same monosaccharides as the group A carbohydrate but with a much higher ratio of rhamnose to N acetyl glucosamine. Both the chemical and the serologic differences of the variant carbohydrate are explained by the total absence of terminal N acetyl glucosamine determinants on the side chains. The chemical basis for reactivity of variant carbohydrate with homologous antisera is a rhamnose linkage which is also present in group A carbohydrate but is ordinarily masked by the terminal N acetyl glucosamine units (McCarty 1956).

Despite the fact that the group specific carbohydrate occurs near the surface of the cell in the cell wall it does not appear to participate vigorously in agglutination reactions of intact cells. However fluorescein labeled antibody to the carbohydrate causes strong specific fluorescence of the entire surface of the cell. Agglutination reactions have been shown to be dependent on protein antigens occurring at the cell surface.

Soluble preparations of the carbohydrate have little toxicity for animals and are rapidly and quantitatively excreted by the kidney. However Schwab et al (1959) have shown that cell wall fragments obtained by sonification and composed of the carbohydrate and

the mucopeptide elements cause relapsing nodular lesions in the skin of the rabbit.

**M Protein** The M proteins are the most important of the surface proteins. They are the antigens which determine the type specificity of group A streptococci and in addition they have been shown to be an important factor in virulence. Their role in virulence is comparable with that of the capsular polysaccharides in the virulence of pneumococci. That is they serve to inhibit phagocytosis of the organisms by host leukocytes and this antiphagocytic effect is nullified by specific antibody. There are more than 40 recognized types of group A streptococci each characterized by a serologically distinct M protein. It is indicated both by animal experiments and by observation of natural human infections that protective immunity is directed against the M protein and is therefore type specific. The M proteins are firmly attached to the cell surface. After mechanical disintegration of streptococci they remain associated with the isolated cell walls. Removal of the protein in a soluble and serologically active form from either the intact cell or the cell wall is usually accomplished by the relatively drastic procedure of boiling at pH 2. However enzymatic dissolution of the cell wall in the absence of proteolysis e.g. with the lytic factor in group C phage lysates releases M protein in a comparable form.

The M proteins of the various types of group A streptococci have many properties in common such as their resistance to heat in acid solution and their great susceptibility to proteolytic digestion. The susceptibility of M protein to proteolytic enzymes is a property of the native protein and not dependent on previous treatment with acid and heat since it has been shown that this antigen can be destroyed by trypsin treatment of viable streptococci without killing the cells (Lancefield 1943). This fact provides additional evidence for the localization of M protein at the surface of the cell.

The typing of group A streptococci is accomplished best by means of a precipitin reaction between an M containing extract of the organism and type specific rabbit antiserum. Of necessity this means that there must be available a collection of a large number of different antisera. Unfortunately M

TABLE 3 EXTRACELLULAR PRODUCTS OF GROUP A STREPTOCOCCI

	INHIBITION BY SPECIFIC ANTIBODY	DISTRIBUTION	COMMENT
Erythrogenic toxin	+	Produced by majority of strains	Evidence for at least 3 serologically different toxins Production shown to be dependent on infection with temperate bacteriophage in case of Toxin A
Streptolysin S	-	Produced by most strains	Probably cell bound to large extent Released from cell in combination with serum albumin or polyribonucleotides
Streptolysin O	+	Produced by most strains	Active in reduced state only
Diphosphopyridine nucleotidase	+	Production more common among some serologic types than others	
Streptokinase	+	Produced by most strains	
Deoxyribonuclease	A	One or more produced by all strains	Four serologically distinct enzymes which attack the same substrate
	S		
	C		
	D		
Hyaluronidase	+	Produced by most members of types 4 & 22 Found only in minute amounts during in vitro growth of other strains	Production enhanced by presence of substrate
Streptococcal proteinase and precursor	+	Produced by majority of strains	Precursor usually found only at pH 5.5 to 6.5 Spontaneous activation under reducing conditions
Amylase	?	Variable but produced by many strains	Production enhanced by presence of substrate
Esterase	-	Produced by most strains	

glycerophosphate isolated from these organisms also react with extracts of most other groups of streptococci as well as those of certain other gram positive bacteria (McCarty 1959). The serologic specificity of this heterophile antigen is dependent on glycerophosphate determinants but in other cases as in the group D and N antigens substituent groups are the primary determinants of specificity. The biologic significance of the glycerol teichoic acids remains obscure.

#### L FORMS AND PROTOPLASTS

Typical L forms of group A streptococci were first isolated by Sharp (1954) by anaerobic growth of the organisms on a

hypertonic agar medium in the presence of penicillin. It was shown by chemical and serologic techniques that these L forms lack components characteristic of the cell wall (Sharp *et al* 1957). Following the pioneering work of Weisbull on other bacteria, streptococcal protoplasts were later prepared by enzymatic removal of the cell wall in a hypertonic environment that prevented osmotic rupture (Gooder and Maxted 1958; Freimer *et al* 1959). The L forms and the protoplasts are quite similar in their properties and represent forms free of cell wall obtained by two different procedures.

Protoplasts of group A streptococci have one unusual property that is not common in the protoplasts of other bacterial species in

little or no M antigen appears to be present. However, since the T antigens have no known relationship to virulence or protection, identification of this component does not have the same significance as determination of the specific M type.

The R antigens represent a third class of surface proteins of group A streptococci which can participate in agglutination reactions. The first protein in this category was encountered in type 28 strains and was originally confused with the type specific antigen (Lancefield and Perlmann 1952b). The type 28R antigen resists tryptic digestion but is destroyed by pepsin and it is only slowly destroyed by heat and acid pH. Three distinct M types (types 2, 28 and 48) have been shown to produce the same R protein (Lancefield 1957). A second R antigen has been found to occur in type 3 strains but so far has not been demonstrated in strains of any other type (Lancefield 1958). The distinction between R and T antigens is not entirely sharp, being based primarily on their relative susceptibility to proteolytic digestion and heating in acid and together they form a category of surface proteins which have no detectable relationship to virulence.

In view of the complexity of the antigenic structure of group A streptococci, it seems probable that there are other as yet unidentified surface antigens. However, the extensive serologic studies suggest that the M, T and R antigens are the most prominent representatives of this class.

**Hyaluronic Acid Capsule.** Several independent attempts to demonstrate antigenicity of streptococcal hyaluronate have resulted in failure. Despite the apparent nonantigenicity of this substance, it is appropriate to consider it with the other surface constituents of the cell because of its peripheral distribution. In its native state it is a mucopolysaccharide of high molecular weight which forms highly viscous solutions and is composed of equimolar quantities of N-acetyl glucosamine and glucuronic acid. It does not appear to be distinguishable chemically from mammalian hyaluronate, a fact which may have some bearing on its lack of antigenicity.

As indicated in the discussion of morphology of the streptococcal cell, in young cultures the hyaluronate surrounds the organism in a well defined capsular structure. As

growth proceeds the capsules tend to diminish or disappear and the hyaluronate is found in solution in the medium. In general, the environment provided by host tissues appears to promote capsule formation so that the behavior of capsules *in vivo* may be quite different from that observed in artificial media.

The role of the hyaluronate capsule in virulence is not altogether clear, but there is some evidence that it may help to protect the organism from phagocytosis and destruction and thus potentiate the antiphagocytic effect of the M protein. In the case of mouse infections with encapsulated group C streptococci, a marked degree of protection can be achieved by treating infected animals with hyaluronidase. With group A strains the effect of hyaluronidase treatment of mouse infection is much less dramatic and protection is observed only when very low infecting doses are employed. This is in contrast with the marked protective action of type specific anti-M serum (Rothbard 1948). The relative importance of hyaluronate and M protein in natural infections of man has not been determined directly, although here again it appears probable that the M protein plays a dominant role. Studies with *in vitro* phagocytic systems indicate that normal human serum contains a factor which neutralizes the antiphagocytic effect of hyaluronic acid, thus providing an explanation for the limited role of the capsule in human infections (Hirsch and Church 1960, Stollerman 1963).

**Glycerol Teichoic Acids.** As noted above, the group-specific antigens of group D and N streptococci belong to the family of bacterial substances designated as glycerol teichoic acids. Basically these are polymers of glycerol phosphate joined by 1,3-phosphodiester linkages with additional substituents through the hydroxyl at position 2 of the glycerol. The most common of these substituents are ester-linked D-alanine and monosaccharides or oligosaccharides. In streptococci, these antigens are not bound to the cell wall but nonetheless appear to be present in the surface complex. They are much more widely distributed than might appear from their designation as the group-specific antigens of groups D and N and rabbit antisera to group A streptococci which react with a poly

TABLE 4 DIFFERENCES IN PROPERTIES OF STREPTOLYSIN O AND S\*

	STREPTOLYSIN O	STREPTOLYSIN S
Activation by SH compounds	+	-
Neutralization by specific antibody	+	-
Release enhanced by serum or by polyribonucleotide	-	+
Trypsin sensitivity	+	-
Inhibition by low concentrations of cholesterol	+	-
Inhibition by low concentrations of lecithin	-	+
Rate of lysis	Not directly proportional to lysin concentration	Directly proportional to lysin concentration
Induction period prior to lysis	Short	Long

\* Adapted from Bernheimer 1954

of the effects of toxin by antibody is further demonstrated by the fact that the intradermal injection of potent antitoxic sera will result in blanching of the rash in the early stages of scarlet fever (Schulz and Charlton 1918)

The erythrogenic toxins produced by all strains of group A streptococci are not identical. Thus Coffey (1938) in a survey of a large number of strains found that the toxins of about 80 per cent were neutralized by a single antitoxic serum while most of the remaining 20 per cent were neutralized by one or the other of two additional antiserum. The existence of serologically distinct erythrogenic toxins clarifies some of the irregularities observed in reversal of the Dick test after scarlet fever and also provides a rational explanation for the occurrence of second attacks of the disease.

Recent evidence (Zabriskie 1964) indicates that the production of erythrogenic toxin by streptococci is associated with the lysogenic state—i.e. the infection of the organism with certain temperate bacteriophages—in the same way that lysogeny is involved in the production of diphtheria toxin. Strains of group A streptococci which do not release detectable toxin can be converted to toxin production by infection with temperate bacteriophages derived from known toxinogenic strains thus providing an explanation for the transmissible toxigenicity first described by Frobisher and Brown (1927). The induction of phage replication and release by ultraviolet irradiation is associated with a sharp increase in

the amount of erythrogenic toxin appearing in the culture medium.

Preparations of erythrogenic toxin have been obtained in a concentrated and partially purified state with potencies as high as  $10^5$  skin test doses per  $\mu\text{g}$  N (Stock 1939). Progress in the study of the toxin has been limited by the crude nature of the assay procedure which depends on the rather non-specific erythematous skin reaction. However it is clear that different strains of streptococci vary in the amount of toxin produced in artificial media and the differences are great enough to suggest that they may play a role in the variability of the occurrence of scarlet fever in different epidemics of streptococcal disease. Certain strains of group C and group G streptococci have been found to produce a toxin with similar properties.

**Streptolysin S** This agent is responsible for the zones of hemolysis which surround streptococcal colonies on the surface of blood agar plates. The designation S refers to serum and derives from the fact that the hemolysin appears to be extracted from living streptococci when they are shaken with serum (Todd 1938). Subsequently Okamoto (1939) found that yeast ribonucleic acid is highly active in inducing release of a hemolysin which appears to be identical with streptolysin S. Detailed studies of this material have been made by Okamoto and by Bernheimer (see review by Bernheimer 1954). Recent studies by Ginsburg *et al* (1963) suggest that streptolysin S is in large

that they will proliferate to form colonies in hypertonic agar medium. The colonies formed are typical of L-forms, and their growth is unaffected by penicillin in high concentration. Despite the absence of the cell wall these forms continue to produce M protein during growth but the antigen is released into the medium rather than being retained on the cell surface. In addition, certain of the characteristic extracellular products deoxyribonuclease and a hemolysin can be demonstrated in the agar medium in which protoplasts are grown. Adaptation to growth in fluid media has proved to be difficult although it has been achieved with a few strains of L-forms.

The cell membrane obtained after osmotic lysis of protoplasts is a lipoprotein structure quite distinct from the cell wall in composition (Freimer 1963). It contains antigens not present in the wall or the cytoplasm and there is preliminary evidence for distinctive antigenic differences between the membranes of different groups of streptococci. The finding offers a possible means of identifying L-forms isolated from human materials. The ability of cell wall free forms of streptococci to survive *in vivo* and their possible pathogenic significance remain to be explored.

Markovitz and Dorfman (1962) have shown that hyaluronic acid can be synthesized from uridine nucleotide intermediates with enzymes present in the protoplast membrane. It seems likely the enzymatic systems for the synthesis of other surface components will also be found in the membrane.

#### EXTRACELLULAR PRODUCTS OF GROUP A STREPTOCOCCI

Group A streptococci elaborate a wide variety of biologically active substances including toxins and enzymes which accumulate in the culture medium during growth. Not all of these extracellular products are produced simultaneously by any single strain but most strains are capable of forming a majority of them. It is known that environmental conditions exert a profound effect on the production of certain of the extracellular substances consequently their occurrence in infected host tissues may differ from that observed in artificial media. However since

specific antibodies to most of these substances can be found in the sera of patients convalescing from streptococcal infections it is evident that the organisms retain the ability to produce them under *in vivo* conditions.

The list of the known extracellular products (Table 3) probably falls far short of representing the total capacity of group A streptococci in this regard. This is indicated not only by the fact that new substances continue to be discovered but also by the results of serologic and electrophoretic studies of concentrated culture fluids which suggest that the known substances can account for only a fraction of the streptococcal protein present.

The extent to which the various extracellular substances contribute to the pathogenicity of hemolytic streptococci can for the most part only be surmised since it is difficult to evaluate the importance of a single enzyme or toxin in the overall interaction between parasite and host tissues. However on general biologic grounds it seems likely that they are useful to the survival of the organism in its natural habitat which must be assumed to be human tissues. The properties of the extracellular substances are discussed in the following sections.

Erythrogenic toxin is the substance responsible for the characteristic skin rash of scarlet fever. Its mode of action is unknown and the only assay procedure available for the study of the toxin filtrates of streptococcal cultures is a skin test depending on intracutaneous injection of the material in humans (Dick test 1924) or certain susceptible animals. The potency of the toxin is such that culture filtrates of appropriate strains can be diluted 100 fold or more and thus the non-specific irritating effect of other substances in the broth usually can be avoided. A positive Dick test is an erythematous and often edematous area of more than 10 mm diameter which appears within 6 to 24 hours.

The effects of the toxin are neutralized by antibody. A susceptible child shows a positive Dick test and this reactivity persists during the acute phase of scarlet fever. However after convalescence the skin test becomes negative in the vast majority of patients as the result of antibody formation. Inhibition

TABLE 4 DIFFERENCES IN PROPERTIES OF STREPTOLYSIN O AND S\*

	STREPTOLYSIN O	STREPTOLYSIN S
Activation by SH compounds	+	-
Neutralization by specific antibody	+	-
Release enhanced by serum or by polyribonucleotide	-	+
Trypsin sensitivity	+	-
Inhibition by low concentrations of cholesterol	+	-
Inhibition by low concentrations of lecithin	-	+
Rate of lysis	Not directly proportional to lysin concentration	Directly proportional to lysin concentration
Induction period prior to lysis	Short	Long

Adapted from Bernheimer 1954

of the effects of toxin by antibody is further demonstrated by the fact that the intradermal injection of potent antitoxic sera will result in blanching of the rash in the early stages of scarlet fever (Schulz and Charlton 1918)

The erythrogenic toxins produced by all strains of group A streptococci are not identical. Thus Coffey (1938) in a survey of a large number of strains found that the toxins of about 80 per cent were neutralized by a single antitoxic serum while most of the remaining 20 per cent were neutralized by one or the other of two additional antisera. The existence of serologically distinct erythrogenic toxins clarifies some of the irregularities observed in reversal of the Dick test after scarlet fever and also provides a rational explanation for the occurrence of second attacks of the disease.

Recent evidence (Zabriskie 1964) indicates that the production of erythrogenic toxin by streptococci is associated with the lysogenic state—i.e. the infection of the organism with certain temperate bacteriophages—in the same way that lysogeny is involved in the production of diphtheria toxin. Strains of group A streptococci which do not release detectable toxin can be converted to toxin production by infection with temperate bacteriophages derived from known toxinogenic strains thus providing an explanation for the transmissible toxigenicity first described by Frohisher and Brown (1927). The induction of phage replication and release by ultraviolet irradiation is associated with a sharp increase in

the amount of erythrogenic toxin appearing in the culture medium.

Preparations of erythrogenic toxin have been obtained in a concentrated and partially purified state with potencies as high as  $10^6$  skin test doses per  $\mu\text{g}$  N (Stock 1939). Progress in the study of the toxin has been limited by the crude nature of the assay procedure which depends on the rather non-specific erythematous skin reaction. However it is clear that different strains of streptococci vary in the amount of toxin produced in artificial media and the differences are great enough to suggest that they may play a role in the variability of the occurrence of scarlet fever in different epidemics of streptococcal disease. Certain strains of group C and group G streptococci have been found to produce a toxin with similar properties.

**Streptolysin S** This agent is responsible for the zones of hemolysis which surround streptococcal colonies on the surface of blood agar plates. The designation S refers to serum and derives from the fact that the hemolysin appears to be extracted from living streptococci when they are shaken with serum (Todd 1938). Subsequently Okamoto (1939) found that yeast ribonucleic acid is highly active in inducing release of a hemolysin which appears to be identical with streptolysin S. Detailed studies of this material have been made by Okamoto and by Bernheimer (see review by Bernheimer 1954). Recent studies by Ginsburg *et al* (1963) suggest that streptolysin S is in large

that they will proliferate to form colonies in hypertonic agar medium. The colonies formed are typical of L-forms and their growth is unaffected by penicillin in high concentration. Despite the absence of the cell wall these forms continue to produce M protein during growth but the antigen is released into the medium rather than being retained on the cell surface. In addition certain of the characteristic extracellular products deoxyribonuclease and a hemolysin can be demonstrated in the agar medium in which protoplasts are grown. Adaptation to growth in fluid media has proved to be difficult although it has been achieved with a few strains of L forms.

The cell membrane obtained after osmotic lysis of protoplasts is a lipoprotein structure quite distinct from the cell wall in composition (Freimer, 1963). It contains antigens not present in the wall or the cytoplasm and there is preliminary evidence for distinctive antigenic differences between the membranes of different groups of streptococci. The finding offers a possible means of identifying L forms isolated from human materials. The ability of cell wall free forms of streptococci to survive *in vivo* and their possible pathogenic significance remain to be explored.

Markovitz and Dorfman (1962) have shown that hyaluronic acid can be synthesized from uridine nucleotide intermediates with enzymes present in the protoplast membrane. It seems likely the enzymatic systems for the synthesis of other surface components will also be found in the membrane.

#### EXTRACELLULAR PRODUCTS OF GROUP A STREPTOCOCCI

Group A streptococci elaborate a wide variety of biologically active substances including toxins and enzymes which accumulate in the culture medium during growth. Not all of these extracellular products are produced simultaneously by any single strain but most strains are capable of forming a majority of them. It is known that environmental conditions exert a profound effect on the production of certain of the extracellular substances consequently their occurrence in infected host tissues may differ from that observed in artificial media. However since

specific antibodies to most of these substances can be found in the sera of patients convalescing from streptococcal infections it is evident that the organisms retain the ability to produce them under *in vivo* conditions.

The list of the known extracellular products (Table 3) probably falls far short of representing the total capacity of group A streptococci in this regard. This is indicated not only by the fact that new substances continue to be discovered but also by the results of serologic and electrophoretic studies of concentrated culture fluids which suggest that the known substances can account for only a fraction of the streptococcal protein present.

The extent to which the various extracellular substances contribute to the pathogenicity of hemolytic streptococci can for the most part only be surmised since it is difficult to evaluate the importance of a single enzyme or toxin in the overall interaction between parasite and host tissues. However, on general biologic grounds it seems likely that they are useful to the survival of the organism in its natural habitat, which must be assumed to be human tissues. The properties of the extracellular substances are discussed in the following sections.

**Erythrogenic toxin** is the substance responsible for the characteristic skin rash of scarlet fever. Its mode of action is unknown and the only assay procedure available for the study of the toxin filtrates of streptococcal cultures is a skin test depending on intracutaneous injection of the material in humans (Dick test 1924) or certain susceptible animals. The potency of the toxin is such that culture filtrates of appropriate strains can be diluted 100 fold or more and thus the non-specific irritating effect of other substances in the broth usually can be avoided. A positive Dick test is an erythematous and often edematous area of more than 10 mm diameter which appears within 6 to 24 hours.

The effects of the toxin are neutralized by antibody. A susceptible child shows a positive Dick test and this reactivity persists during the acute phase of scarlet fever. However after convalescence the skin test becomes negative in the vast majority of patients as the result of antibody formation. Inhibition

and unrelated techniques for inhibiting its biologic activity: oxidation, cholesterol inhibition and inhibition by specific antibody. Thus any property of a streptolysin O preparation which is nullified by all three techniques can reasonably be assumed to be due to the hemolysin. Using these techniques Todd (1942) has presented evidence that streptolysin O is toxic for leukocytes. It has been shown to act as a lethal toxin on intravenous injection into a variety of laboratory animals and one possible explanation for its lethal action has come from studies of its cardiotoxicity. Bernheimer and Cantoni (1945) first demonstrated that streptolysin O in small amounts causes systolic standstill in the isolated frog heart. More recently these studies (Kellner *et al.* 1956) have been extended to a study of the mammalian heart. The isolated hearts of rat, rabbit and guinea pig all respond with irreversible loss of myocardial contractility when as little as 25 to 50 hemolytic units of streptolysin O are added to the perfusion fluid. Partially purified preparations of the hemolysin have been obtained with a potency as high as 33 000 hemolytic units per mg N and thus it is apparent that very minute amounts are sufficient to exert a cardiotoxic effect.

Halbert *et al.* (1961) have extended these studies on cardiotoxicity of streptolysin O to the intact animal and have shown that death from lethal doses is consistently preceded by profound electrocardiographic changes.

**Diphosphopyridine Nucleohydase (DPNase)\*** Streptococcal DPNase was discovered in the course of attempts to determine the mechanism of the cardiotoxic effect of streptolysin O on mammalian hearts. The streptolysin O preparations used were found to inhibit certain of the metabolic enzymes of mammalian heart muscle (Carlson *et al.* 1956) but this enzyme inhibition was not affected by any of the procedures known to inactivate the hemolysin. Thus it was necessary to attribute the effect to some unknown component of the preparation. The key to its nature was provided by the fact that all of the enzyme systems inhibited involve the coenzyme DPN and direct test revealed the presence of a highly active DPNase which

acts by liberating nicotinamide from the molecule (Carlson *et al.* 1957).

Streptococcal DPNase is produced by a wide variety of group A strains although many are encountered which do not form appreciable amounts even when grown in the presence of serum, a procedure which increases the yield of the enzyme. There appears to be some relationship between DPNase production and serologic type. For example Lazarides and Bernheimer (1957) have found that all of 23 strains of type 3 and 52 of 58 strains of type 12 produce the enzyme while all of 33 strains of type 1 and 38 strains of type 19 do not. Among other serologic groups certain strains of group C and G possess this property.

The enzyme is antigenic and antibodies which inhibit its activity are found in the serum of patients convalescing from streptococcal infections. Ayoub and Wannamaker (1963) have described the occurrence in culture filtrates of a substance possibly an inactive form of the enzyme or a zymogen which binds antibody to DPNase. This finding must be taken into consideration in standardizing methods for the measurement of antibody.

A possible toxic role for DPNase has been suggested as a result of studies of the phenomenon of leukotoxicity. This phenomenon first described by Levaditu (1918) years ago is manifested by sudden death and disintegration of leukocytes after the ingestion of streptococci. Wilson (1957) has shown that certain streptococcal strains consistently exert this effect on a proportion of the leukocytes which phagocytize them while others apparently lack the ability to injure the leukocyte. In a collaborative study (Bernheimer, Lazarides and Wilson 1957) involving 39 different streptococcal strains it has been found that there is an excellent correlation between the ability of a strain to produce DPNase and its leukotoxicity. All but 2 of the DPNase positive and none of the DPNase negative strains proved to be leukotoxic. While these findings suggest that the enzyme may be concerned in the destruction of the leukocyte, some form of direct confirmatory evidence will be needed to establish the relationship.

**Streptokinase** The occurrence of a substance in streptococcal culture filtrates which

\* In the new terminology this enzyme is referred to as nicotinamide adenine dinucleohydase (NADase).



part cell bound and that its release from the cell depends on association with some carrier molecule such as serum albumin or ribonucleic acid. These observations would explain much of the anomalous behavior of this hemolysin.

Partially purified preparations of streptolysin S induced with ribonucleic acid have been obtained with potencies as high as 390 000 hemolytic units per mg N (Bernheimer 1954). These preparations contain both protein and polynucleotide. However the activity of the material is destroyed by certain proteolytic enzymes and the hemolytic activity is electrophoretically separable from the polynucleotide, so that it seems probable that streptolysin S is protein in nature. Despite this fact the present evidence indicates that streptolysin S is not antigenic or at least that any antibodies formed are not able to neutralize its hemolytic action. Inhibitory antibodies are not found in sera of immunized animals or of patients convalescing from streptococcal disease. Earlier studies which suggested the occurrence of neutralizing antibody in low titer have been shown to depend on the nonspecific inhibitory effect of serum lipoprotein. Phospholipids in the form of lipoprotein complexes appear to play the major role in this inhibition.

Attempts to determine whether streptolysin S has toxic effects other than that represented by hemolysis of erythrocytes have been hampered by the fact that pure preparations are not available so it is not possible to be certain that any pharmacologic or pathologic effect observed is not due to some other substance present in the material. Evidence for another biologic effect of the hemolysin has been supplied recently by Weissmann *et al* (1963) who showed that preparations of both streptolysin S and O cause disruption of lysosomes of mammalian cells and release of lysosomal enzymes.

The production of streptolysin S by groups of streptococci other than A has not been studied adequately, although it must be assumed that in most instances an analogous lysin is formed which is responsible for lysis on the surface of blood agar plates. No systematic information is available on the effect of ribonucleic acid on the production of hemolysin by other groups.

**Streptolysin O** This hemolysin is so designated because of its oxygen lability and is quite distinct from streptolysin S (see summary of comparative properties in Table 4). It is hemolytically inactive in the oxidized form but is readily activated by the addition of reducing agents such as sulfhydryl compounds. This property of reversible oxygen lability is shared with certain other bacterial hemolysins e.g., pneumolysin and tetanolysin. It is responsible for the failure of streptolysin O to participate in the formation of hemolytic zones around colonies of streptococci grown aerobically on the surface of blood agar. The reducing conditions which develop in the environment of deep colonies in blood agar pour plates are sufficient to activate the hemolysin. Streptolysin O is produced by almost all strains of group A streptococci and strains which lack this property are encountered only rarely. It is also formed by many strains of groups C and G.

Streptolysin O has not been obtained in pure form but since it is readily destroyed by proteolytic enzymes it would appear to be protein in nature. It is antigenic, eliciting the formation of antibodies which effectively neutralize its hemolytic action. A high proportion of patients with streptococcal infections show an antibody response during convalescence; consequently the measurement of serum antistreptolysin O has become widely used as a test for establishing the occurrence of a recent streptococcal infection. Both the oxidized and the reduced forms will combine with specific antibody indicating that reversible oxidation is not associated with major changes in the antigenic properties of streptolysin O. Cholesterol is highly active as an inhibitor of streptolysin O. For some reason the free cholesterol of normal serum does not exert an appreciable inhibitory effect and does not interfere with the measurement of specific antistreptolysin O. However bacterially contaminated serum or serum subjected to certain kinds of chemical treatment may develop inhibitory activity as a result of changes in the lipoproteins.

Despite the fact that streptolysin O has not been obtained in pure form, study of its biologic effects has met with more success than in the case of streptolysin S. This is made possible by the availability of three specific

first serologic studies on deoxyribonuclease (McCarty 1949) has been shown to produce predominantly deoxyribonuclease A and this accounts for the low incidence of antibody responses observed in patients. There is little information on the possible diversity of groups C and G deoxyribonucleases although deoxyribonuclease A appears to be the most common enzyme in group C.

The production by streptococci of 4 enzymes which attack the same substrate is of theoretic interest. It is possible that each enzyme hydrolyzes a different specific linkage in the substrate macromolecule but comparative studies of the split products have not yet been made. There is no evidence that deoxyribonuclease attacks living cells and thus it is unlikely that the streptococcal enzymes exert a deleterious effect on tissues during streptococcal infections. However they are effective in hydrolyzing the nucleic acids and the nucleoproteins released by necrotic cells and the split products are apparently utilized by the microorganism indicating that the enzymes may have nutritional significance. The effect of deoxyribonuclease on nucleoproteins has been exploited as a therapeutic tool in the liquefaction of highly viscous exudates which result from the disintegration of leukocytes as in the case of empyema. Preparations containing streptokinase and deoxyribonuclease (streptodornase) from group C strains are commercially available and have been employed in a variety of conditions in which fibrinous or nucleoprotein-containing exudates accumulate (Tillett 1950).

Ribonuclease activity found in culture fluids of group A streptococci (McCarty 1948) is probably due to deoxyribonuclease II (Yasminch *et al.* 1963). Thus this enzyme possesses a rather unusual substrate specificity.

**Hyaluronidase.** The production of an extracellular hyaluronidase by an organism which is also able to elaborate a hyaluronic acid capsule would appear at first glance to present something of a paradox especially since it is known that the capsule is destroyed readily by the enzyme. However *in vitro* studies indicate that streptococci rarely produce both substances simultaneously. There-

fore the two functions are to some extent mutually exclusive although there is reason to believe that a single strain may produce capsules while growing under one set of conditions and hyaluronidase under different conditions. Hyaluronidase accumulates in relatively large amounts in the culture fluids of most strains of type 4 and type 22 (Crowley 1944) and these strains are apparently never encapsulated. Only rare strains of other types have been described as producing comparable amounts of hyaluronidase. In the case of the majority of group A strains the presence of an extracellular hyaluronidase can be demonstrated if at all only by highly sensitive tests and often after prolonged incubation even with the use of these techniques the amount produced is extremely small compared with that of types 4 and 22 strains. The production of the enzyme by types 4 and 22 strains is enhanced by the addition of hyaluronate to the medium (Rogers 1945).

The results of antibody studies suggest that the *in vitro* findings do not reflect the true potentialities of group A streptococci with respect to hyaluronidase formation. Following streptococcal infections a high percentage of patients show an increasing titer of antibodies which specifically inhibit hyaluronidase preparations obtained from types 4 or 22 strains. It has been established that this is a true antibody and is not related to the non-specific hyaluronidase inhibitors found in normal sera. Since these antibodies are formed regardless of the type of streptococcus associated with the infection it seems obvious that the pattern of hyaluronidase production observed in laboratory studies is misleading and that most group A strains must produce hyaluronidase during infections in sufficient amounts to stimulate antibody production. The explanation of this discrepancy remains obscure and it may involve the action of some undefined factor in the *in vivo* environment that stimulates production or activation of the enzyme.

The understanding of hyaluronidase production by streptococci is further complicated by the finding of Kjems (1958) that this enzyme is also produced during the interaction of many bacteriophages with group A streptococci. He believes that these latter enzymes are associated with the bac-

promotes the lysis of human fibrin clots was first described by Tillett and Garner (1933) and the active agent was termed streptococcal fibrinolysin. Subsequently, it was found (Milstone 1941) that fibrinolysis depends on the presence of an essential serum factor which was later identified as the inactive precursor of a proteolytic enzyme (Christensen 1945). The accumulated evidence indicates that the streptococcal substance exerts its effect by causing the activation of this precursor termed plasminogen and because of the similarity to the activation of trypsinogen by enterokinase the term streptokinase was suggested as more appropriate than fibrinolysin. There is a possibility that streptokinase does not act directly on plasminogen but rather on a proactivator which in turn activates plasminogen. This human plasma protease system is further complicated by the occurrence of natural inhibitors which affect both the activation process and the enzymatic activity of the protease.

Streptokinase is a remarkably potent activator of the human protease system. Partially purified preparations containing 2 000 fibrinolytic units per microgram of nitrogen, have been obtained by Christensen (1954) who estimates that as little as 0.00005 mcg of streptokinase nitrogen will exert a detectable effect on a fibrin clot. In general it appears to be much less effective in the protease systems of other animal species. This may depend on both quantitative and qualitative differences in plasminogen and inhibitors.

The biologic activity is readily destroyed by trypsin suggesting that streptokinase is a protein in nature. It is antigenic and again the antibodies formed specifically inhibit its action. The inhibitory effect of antibody can be clearly distinguished from the effects of natural inhibitors of the protease system, and methods have been devised for measuring the amount of antibody in human sera. Increases in titer of specific antistreptokinase occur in a high percentage (70 to 80%) of patients following streptococcal infections.

Strains of group A streptococci vary over a wide range in the amount of streptokinase produced when the organisms are grown under favorable conditions in artificial media but very few strains appear to lack this property completely. Certain group C strains

elaborate streptokinase in large amounts, and these have been used in large scale production of the substance which has been undertaken because of the therapeutic value of its fibrinolytic action. It is also produced by some group G strains.

The possible part that streptokinase plays in the pathogenesis of streptococcal infection is unknown and there is no clear indication that activation of the plasma proteolytic enzyme results in toxic effects or tissue damage. However it seems inescapable that streptokinase must prevent the formation of an effective fibrin barrier and thus influence the character of lesions by interfering with localization of the infection.

**Deoxyribonuclease** The supernatant fluid from the growth of certain streptococci can effect rapid depolymerization of deoxyribonucleic acid (Tillett *et al.*, 1948, McCarty 1948). This deoxyribonuclease activity is found in cultures of all group A strains in readily detectable amounts and is also present in representatives of several other groups. As in the case of many of the other extracellular streptococcal products strains of groups C and G are prominent among the latter.

Group A streptococci produce 4 serologically distinct deoxyribonucleases, designated A, B, C and D (Wannamaker 1958, 1962). The enzymes are separable by zone electrophoresis and each is magnesium activated and inhibited by versene. Antibodies to the individual enzymes produced in rabbits inhibit the homologous enzyme but do not affect the activity of the others. Serum from patients with rheumatic fever or convalescent from streptococcal infections also show marked differences in their ability to inhibit the 4 enzymes. A high percentage of patients comparable with that observed in the case of antistreptolysin O produce inhibitory antibody to deoxyribonuclease B while the response to A, C and D appears to be inconstant and irregular.

Strains of group A streptococci vary in the relative amounts of the 4 enzymes elaborated. Some strains produce all 4 enzymes but the predominant enzyme is usually deoxyribonuclease B, a fact which is in accord with the serologic findings in patients. The organism used in the preparation of enzyme for the

toconcal proteinase causes tissue damage in the course of streptococcal infections. The requirement of low pH and reducing conditions for the release of the enzyme suggests that it will be formed only in certain kinds of infection as for example in an abscess where the appropriate environment would be expected. That the enzyme is capable of inducing tissue changes in experimental animals has been demonstrated by Kellner and Robertson (1954) who found that intravenous injection of activated streptococcal proteinase results in the formation of necrotic myocardial lesions in rabbits, guinea pigs and mice. This effect is also shown by other proteolytic enzymes and thus is not specific for streptococcal proteinase.

**Amylase.** Many strains of group A streptococci elaborate an extracellular amylase when grown in the customary peptone media (Crowley 1950, 1954). The enzyme has the properties of an  $\alpha$  amylase and hydrolyzes glycogen and amylopectin in addition to starch. Production of amylase varies greatly among strains and even individual members of a population of a single strain may show differences in enzyme activity. The presence of substrate in the medium greatly enhances the amount of amylase released.

Further studies have revealed that the same strains which produce amylase will under different cultural conditions synthesize a starchlike polysaccharide (Crowley 1955, Crowley and Jevons 1955). The presence of human plasma in the medium is important for the formation of the substance and maltose serves as an adequate substrate although starch and glycogen are also effective. These findings provide another example of the marked influence of environmental conditions on the biologic behavior of streptococci.

The antigenicity of amylase and the possible occurrence of antibodies in human sera have not been investigated.

**Esterase.** Stock *et al.* (1961) have described the production by group A streptococci of an extracellular esterase which acts on the substrate  $\beta$  naphthyl acetate. The antibody to this enzyme found in rabbit and human antisera does not inhibit the action of the enzyme.

### INTRACELLULAR COMPONENTS

The intracellular components of group A streptococci have received little attention in comparison with that given to the surface constituents and extracellular products. In part this is referable to the fact that cellular extracts represent highly complex mixtures which are difficult to resolve. Such extracts contain a variety of proteins including the various metabolic and synthetic enzymes of the cell and large amounts of other material such as nucleotides and nucleic acids. A nucleoprotein fraction obtained by extraction with weak alkali has been examined for its serologic properties (Lancefield 1925). Although this material probably makes up a large portion of the total cellular contents and must be very heterogeneous antigenically the serologic studies are useful in indicating interrelationships between bacterial species. Thus nucleoproteins from hemolytic streptococci react with antisera from animals immunized with nucleoproteins from both hemolytic and nonhemolytic streptococci as well as with similar preparations obtained from pneumococci. A lesser degree of cross reactivity was observed with antisera to staphylococcal nucleoproteins.

The properties of individual cellular enzymes have been investigated in only a few instances. Jacox (1953) reported the occurrence of a  $\beta$  glucuronidase which he found in representatives of only 4 of 32 different types of group A streptococci. There was no evidence of inhibition of the enzyme by the sera of patients convalescing from streptococcal infections. The lipoproteinase described by Krumwiede (1954) which causes opalescence in serum by splitting  $\alpha_2$  lipoprotein probably represents a cellular enzyme since it is extractable from washed organisms with 40 per cent urea. However it may be released into the environment under conditions reminiscent of those which affect the production of streptolysin S, that is, it is found in serum broth cultures and appears to be extractable from cells with serum. Preliminary studies suggest that certain human sera may contain antibodies which inhibit lipoproteinase and inhibitory antisera have been obtained by immunizing rabbits with crude enzyme preparations.

terrophage and are serologically distinct from the streptococcal hyaluronidase. The relationship is therefore somewhat different from that observed in the case of erythrogenic toxin.

Streptococcal hyaluronidase differs from testicular hyaluronidase in several respects. The end products of hydrolysis by the bacterial enzyme are not identical with those of the mammalian enzyme, and the former does not attack chondroitin sulfate.

Hyaluronidase production occurs in streptococci other than those of group A, notably in certain strains of groups B, C and G. In the case of groups C and G it has been shown that the enzymes are serologically distinct from those of group A and are not significantly inhibited by antibody to the group A enzyme.

**Streptococcal Proteinase.** This enzyme and its inactive precursor are the only extracellular substances which have been obtained in crystalline form (Elliott 1950). They are also unique by virtue of the marked effect exerted by environmental conditions on their production. Proteinase precursor is released by most strains of streptococci only when the pH of the medium is maintained between 5.5 and 6.5. Thus, except in the case of certain unusual strains, none of this substance is found under the optimal conditions for growth of the organisms, between pH 7.0 and pH 8.0, which also favor the production of other extracellular enzymes. As in the case of streptolysin S and deoxyribonuclease, precursor is formed by washed streptococcal cells when suspended in an incomplete medium. Salts and glucose are sufficient for this purpose if the pH is maintained below 6.5, but production is greatly enhanced by the addition of peptone products. The capacity of streptococci to produce this substance under appropriate conditions appears to be much greater than for the other extracellular enzymes, and Elliott (1950) reports the recovery of 169 mg. of 6 times recrystallized material from 10 liters of culture filtrate.

The precursor is autocatalytically converted to active proteinase under suitable reducing conditions (Elliott and Dole 1947). This conversion may occur in culture media if aerobic conditions do not prevent

a fall in oxidation-reduction potential and can be achieved in solutions of the crystalline precursor by the addition of sulfhydryl compounds or other reducing agents. The autocatalytic effect appears to depend on the initial presence of traces of active enzyme. The action of trypsin in low concentration also brings about rapid conversion of the precursor. Formation of active enzyme by either method is accompanied by the release of dialyzable split products amounting to 40 per cent of the weight of crystalline precursor. Streptococcal proteinase resembles cathepsins and plant enzymes of the papain family in requiring activation by sulfhydryl compounds or comparable reducing agents. Studies on synthetic substrates indicate that it has an unusually broad substrate specificity (Mycek *et al.* 1952).

The production of proteinase by streptococci appears to be largely limited to members of group A. It has been found in representative cultures of most of the serologic types, although enhancement of virulence by mouse passage results in suppression of its production (Elliott 1945). Growth of streptococci under conditions which allow the appearance of active proteinase in the medium can have a profound effect on other biologic properties. Thus the M protein is destroyed because of its great susceptibility to proteolytic digestion, and serologic typing of the organisms becomes impossible (Elliott 1945). Furthermore, certain of the other extracellular products, e.g., streptokinase and hyaluronidase, may be destroyed by proteolytic action.

Precipitating antibodies have been prepared in rabbits against both crystalline proteins. The proteins differ serologically, and the precursor behaves as though it has 2 antigenic components, one of which is specific and the other identical with the proteinase antigen (Elliott 1950). Rabbit and horse antibodies to proteinase have been shown to inhibit the action of the enzyme. However, inhibitory antibodies are not readily demonstrated in sera of patients after streptococcal infections, but it has been possible by the use of a hemagglutination technique to demonstrate that antibodies are produced by a large proportion of such patients (Ogburn *et al.* 1958). It is not known whether or not strep-

partum endometrium and septicemia of the newborn can be caused by these organisms

Hemolytic streptococcal infections are to be distinguished from infections associated with the various nonhemolytic streptococci which are found among the normal flora of the respiratory and the gastrointestinal tracts. These organisms frequently find their way into the bloodstream in small numbers but under ordinary conditions they are readily disposed of by the natural defense mechanisms. However, in the presence of anomalies of anatomic structure they may become established as infectious agents. Thus subacute bacterial endocarditis which affects heart valves altered by congenital malformations or rheumatic heart disease is most frequently associated with this class of organisms. Similarly infections of the urinary tract with nonhemolytic streptococci may be encountered when anomalies or obstruction of the outflow tract are present. The nature of the organism which lodges on the heart valves in endocarditis would appear to be a matter of chance rather than the expression of specific pathogenic properties. Although the streptococci involved usually do not belong to one of the recognized groups, members of certain serologic groups are also encountered. For example group D streptococci which normally inhabit the gastrointestinal tract (enterococci) are often incriminated in endocarditis as well as in urinary tract infection. Members of other groups (e.g. group O) are also occasionally isolated from the bloodstream of patients with endocarditis.

Because of the pre eminent importance of group A streptococci in human disease the following sections deal primarily with the characteristics of infections with these organisms.

#### RESPIRATORY TRACT

The primary site of invasion of the human body by group A streptococci is through the upper respiratory tract. Streptococcal pharyngitis or tonsillitis is by far the most common of all streptococcal infections and provides the focus from which the organisms are disseminated to initiate most other forms of streptococcal disease.

Streptococci appear to have a special pre-

dilection for the lymphatic system and in the upper respiratory tract the initial localization of the infection is in the lymphoid tissue of the pharynx. The infectious process is manifested by swelling and reddening of the tonsils and other pharyngeal lymphoid tissue and in the classic disease is accompanied by the appearance of focal or confluent accumulations of exudate on the affected areas. The adjacent mucous membranes are also commonly involved in the inflammatory process. These changes cause soreness of the throat which may be quite marked and in addition the infection leads to systemic manifestations such as fever and general toxicity. While this represents the typical picture of the full blown disease, streptococcal pharyngitis can also occur with only minimal evidence of inflammation and minimal symptoms.

Complications of this relatively superficial infection occur by extension either through lymphatic channels or by direct involvement of other areas. The cervical lymph nodes at the angle of the jaw which drain the tonsillar area are usually involved to some degree and become swollen and tender. In severe cases infection of these nodes may progress to the formation of purulent abscesses. Abscesses may also form in the deep peritonsillar tissues (quinsy) and particularly in infants in the retropharyngeal tissues. Like many of the other severe manifestations of streptococcal disease, peritonsillar and retropharyngeal abscesses are now relatively rare. This is true also of Ludwig's angina which represents cellulitis and subsequent abscess formation in the tissues of the neck, especially at the base of the tongue and on the floor of the mouth. The extensive swelling associated with all three of these conditions often leads to difficulty in swallowing and serious embarrassment of respiration.

Streptococcal infections of the pharynx readily extend to the paranasal sinuses through the natural openings. Similarly the eustachian tube is frequently involved and leads to acute infections of the middle ear. Both the sinusitis and the otitis media which result from these extensions may develop into chronic purulent processes. In the case of otitis media the infection can invade the air cells of the mastoid bone causing mas-

Attempts have been made to resolve the cellular components of group A streptococci into definable fractions by electrophoretic techniques (Hess and Slade 1955). These experiments involve extracts obtained after disintegration of the cells by sonic oscillation or shaking with glass beads. The electrophoretic patterns obtained with extracts of various types have been compared but there is still little information on the biologic activity of the several electrophoretic components.

### RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN STREPTOCOCCI OF GROUP A AND OTHER GROUPS

The basic similarity in the monosaccharide composition of the cell wall carbohydrates of groups A through G has already been mentioned. There is in addition evidence for a close biologic relationship between groups A, C and G which is based largely on the study of strains of human origin. For example, it is evident from the discussion of the extracellular products of group A streptococci that the same or similar substances are in most cases also produced by some strains of groups C and G. Certain of the enzymes, such as streptokinase and deoxyribonuclease, may be found in cultures of some other groups but it is only in groups C and G that one finds a total complement of extracellular substances approaching that of group A. Further support for the interrelationship comes from studies on the distribution of surface protein antigens. Thus R antigen serologically identical or closely related to the group A substance has been found in members of groups C and G streptococci as well as in some of group B (Maxted 1949).

The group specific carbohydrate of group C appears to differ from that of group A primarily in the fact that N acetyl galactosamine rather than N acetyl glucosamine has a terminal position on the side-chains and serves as the major antigenic determinant (Krause and McCarty 1962). The structure of the remainder of the molecule is essentially the same and mutants of group C streptococci have been isolated which produce a carbohydrate lacking the N acetyl galactosamine determinants and possessing the chemical and serologic properties of

group A variant carbohydrate (Araujo and Krause, 1963).

Several of the streptococcal groups other than A have been subdivided into serologic types but in no case has a type specific protein antigen been identified which has been clearly shown to have a relationship to virulence comparable with that of M protein. Type differentiation in group C streptococci has not been explored intensively, but it appears to depend on surface protein antigens and it is possible that in some instances these may be M like in their biologic properties. In the case of other groups in which specific types have been described (groups B, D, F and G) the available evidence suggests that the type specific substance is polysaccharide in nature. This has been clearly established in the case of group II streptococci which have polysaccharide capsules analogous to those of pneumococci.

The various similarities and dissimilarities between hemolytic streptococci do not fall in sufficiently uniform patterns to allow for many broad generalizations. On the whole, however, it seems clear that they are much more closely related to one another than to the numerous nonhemolytic and anaerobic streptococci.

### HEMOLYTIC STREPTOCOCCAL INFECTIONS IN MAN

Hemolytic streptococci are associated with a wide variety of disease entities in man and in the vast majority of these acute infections the causative organisms belong to group A. Streptococci of groups C and G, possibly as a reflection of their biologic similarities to group A, are sometimes implicated in similar infections, especially those involving the upper respiratory tract. These infections with groups C and G streptococci are characteristically mild and usually do not lead to the complications observed in group A infections. They are not known to initiate late sequelae such as rheumatic fever or glomerulonephritis. Occasionally other groups of streptococci are encountered in association with pathologic processes which are more commonly caused by group A streptococci. For example, puerperal fever can result from group B streptococcal infection of the post

more commonly associated with scarlet fever than others. This may conceivably be referable to the relative capacity of individual strains to produce erythrogenic toxin in large amounts *in vivo* but a correlation of this kind has not been demonstrated by laboratory studies.

Scarlet fever has been described in association with upper respiratory infections with group C streptococci and even in infections with more distantly related organisms the staphylococci. In the latter case the staphylococci involved are found to produce an erythrogenic toxin with properties like that of the streptococcal toxin. However these are relatively rare exceptions and in nearly all cases of the disease group A streptococci are recovered on culture.

#### OTHER ACUTE STREPTOCOCCAL INFECTIONS

While the upper respiratory tract is the principal site of group A streptococcal infections these organisms have the capacity to localize and produce infections in many other areas. The initiation of infection in these areas may result either from hematogenous spread or from the chance inoculation of susceptible tissues with organisms from the environment. The adaptability of streptococci to the invasion of human tissues is well illustrated by their behavior when introduced directly through the normal skin barrier. This can occur in a variety of accidental injuries as in the case of infection of cuts or blisters or in natural portals of entry such as the umbilical cord of the newborn infant. The course of events following production of lesions of this type by virulent streptococci in the extremities follows a well defined pattern. The lymphatic vessels are quickly involved often with minimal evidence of reaction at the site of the local lesion and the occurrence of advancing lymphangitis is visibly manifested by the appearance of red streaks moving up the arm or the leg. The draining lymph nodes become swollen and tender but do not significantly check the centripetal spread of the lymphatic infection which continues until it reaches the bloodstream and gives rise to septicemia. Frequently the progress of this type of infection is so rapid that septicemia and death can occur within 24 to 48 hours of the initial injury. Varia-

tions in virulence of the organism or in host resistance may alter this course of events and one may even encounter localized purulent infections of the skin which spread only in an indolent fashion.

Septicemia may develop as a complication of other localized streptococcal infections. It is always a most serious manifestation accompanied by high fever and severe toxic symptoms. Prior to the discovery of effective chemotherapeutic agents the occurrence of septicemia was always a grave prognostic sign. In contrast with this form of blood stream infection which is always associated with some focus that provides a continuing supply of organisms transient bacteremia can occur without giving rise to apparent symptomatology unless the organisms are able to establish themselves at another site. This phenomenon is responsible for hematogenous dissemination of streptococcal infection. Thus septic arthritis manifested by the accumulation of purulent infected exudate within the joint cavity must be assumed to originate by this process. Similarly streptococcal meningitis sometimes appears in the absence of demonstrable mastoiditis suggesting that it originates by way of the blood stream rather than by direct contiguity.

The classic puerperal fever in its most virulent form represents a group A streptococcal infection of the postpartum endometrium with subsequent septicemia. The evidence indicates that this endometritis results from direct infection of a highly susceptible tissue. At the time that this infection was widely prevalent it was noted that its greatest incidence coincided with epidemics of scarlet fever and streptococcal sore throat increasing the opportunity for dissemination of streptococci from the respiratory tracts of carriers who came into contact with the patient. The institution of suitable aseptic techniques did much to reduce the danger of puerperal fever even as it reduced the occurrence of streptococcal infection of surgical wounds.

Erysipelas is a streptococcal skin infection which like scarlet fever was originally thought to be a specific disease until it was demonstrated that the organisms responsible belong to the same serologic types as those causing other streptococcal infections. This infection characteristically spreads in all di-



toiditis and ultimately osteomyelitis of the surrounding bony structures. If invasion of the bone progresses to the meningeal surfaces serious complications such as meningitis or cerebral sinus thrombosis may result.

Extension of streptococcal pharyngitis may also occur downward into the lower respiratory tract. Here it gives rise to bronchitis and interstitial bronchopneumonia characterized by extensive involvement of the lymphatic vessels. Spread of the infection by the lymphatics typical of the streptococcal lymphangitis in other areas follows the flow to the draining lymph nodes but may proceed in a retrograde direction in occluded vessels and reach the pleural surfaces. Because of this retrograde extension pleurisy is common in streptococcal pneumonia and leads to the formation of large quantities of sero-fibrinous pleural exudate.

Relative to the great frequency of upper respiratory infections with streptococci pneumonia is a rare event. Certain viral infections of the respiratory tract seem to promote the occurrence of this complication when they occur simultaneously with streptococcal infection. During World War I for example a large number of cases of streptococcal pneumonia with massive pleural effusion were encountered among military personnel in the course of measles and in influenza epidemics.

### SCARLET FEVER

Scarlet fever was recognized as one of the common exanthematous diseases of children for centuries before its streptococcal etiology was discovered. Because of this history it is usually considered as a separate disease entity although modern bacteriologic findings indicate that it merely represents streptococcal pharyngitis or tonsillitis with an accompanying rash. Thus in a given epidemic of streptococcal disease a single predominant type of group A streptococcus may be recovered from cases of both scarlet fever and streptococcal sore throat.

The erythrogenic toxin is responsible for the rash of scarlet fever but the importance of this substance in other toxic manifestations of the disease has not been clearly established. As indicated in the discussion of the extracellular products of group A strepto-

cocci this substance is only one of several with potentially toxic properties. Symptoms of systemic toxicity occur in the case of streptococcal sore throat which are indistinguishable from those of scarlet fever and the degree of this manifestation is more a function of the severity of the disease process than of the presence or the absence of a skin rash. Other clinical findings of scarlet fever such as the so called strawberry tongue resulting from the appearance of prominent papillae on an otherwise smooth and diffusely reddened organ also occur in uncomplicated streptococcal pharyngitis. The purulent complications of scarlet fever (cervical adenitis, sinusitis, otitis, etc.) are identical with those described for streptococcal pharyngitis and the same delayed nonsuppurative sequelae are encountered.

The rash of scarlet fever is characterized by diffuse reddening of the skin which may cover most of the body but is frequently most prominent on the trunk. The changes induced in the skin result in desquamation during convalescence. This is especially evident on the hands and the feet where a thick keratinized layer is present.

There are certain anomalies in the occurrence of scarlet fever which are not satisfactorily explained on the basis of susceptibility or immunity to a primary toxin. For example, the disease is rarely seen in infants and very young children and infants do not give positive reactions with Dick toxin. These findings cannot be correlated with the transfer of passive immunity from the mother and have led to the suggestion that the development of hypersensitivity through prior exposure to erythrogenic toxin is required before this agent can induce the formation of the characteristic rash. In any event it is clear that immunity to the toxin is effective in preventing second attacks of the scarlet fever in the vast majority of cases, although it has no effect on the occurrence of subsequent streptococcal infections. As noted earlier the occasional occurrence of second attacks of scarlet fever can be explained by the fact that certain strains of group A streptococci produce an erythrogenic toxin which is serologically distinct from that of the majority of strains. It is evident also that some epidemics of streptococcal disease are much

majority of recovered patients do not show evidence of chronic kidney damage. Further more recurrent attacks of glomerulonephritis are rare.

An additional important difference in the pathogenesis of the two diseases has been established recently by the finding that only certain types of group A streptococci appear to be associated with the initiation of glomerulonephritis (Rammelkamp and Weaver 1953). These studies now adequately confirmed show that the great majority of cases are preceded by type 12 streptococcal infections and that the remaining cases are usually attributable to one or two additional types. This strongly suggests that some specific property of certain strains of group A streptococci is important in the etiology of glomerulonephritis. These findings also serve to explain the rarity of second attacks of the disease as contrasted with the frequent recurrence of rheumatic fever.

Erythema nodosum, the third representative of this group of diseases, is less clearly delineated and only a portion of the cases showing the clinical picture of the disease can be attributed to a preceding streptococcal infection. However, when this relationship exists, it follows the same pattern of delayed appearance after the bacterial infection and can recur following subsequent attacks of streptococcal sore throat. The disease is manifested by the occurrence of red, extremely tender, nodular swellings, particularly on the extensor surfaces of the extremities, in association with fever and signs of general toxicity. Lesions of the same type may be encountered occasionally in rheumatic fever, but erythema nodosum is seen more commonly in the absence of other rheumatic stigmata and recovery occurs without residual damage.

There is evidence to suggest that these late sequelae of streptococcal infection may represent a severe and exaggerated form of a type of host reaction that is commonly manifested during convalescence. Thus, during the period following apparent recovery from the acute infections, one may encounter recurrent swelling and tenderness of the cervical lymph nodes, transient arthralgias, transient electrocardiographic changes, microscopic hematuria, etc. The time of appearance of

these changes, as well as the time of onset of the overt poststreptococcal diseases, coincides with the time at which antibody response to streptococcal antigens is reaching its maximum, and this has been an important factor in the formulation of the theory that hypersensitivity reactions are concerned with pathogenesis of the delayed sequelae.

## IMMUNITY

As noted earlier, specific antibodies to most of the extracellular products of group A streptococci are demonstrable in the serum of a large percentage of patients after recovery from streptococcal infections. Similarly, certain of the surface antigens and cellular components have been shown to induce antibody response (see review in McCarty 1954). Furthermore, even though the number of individual streptococcal antigens which have been studied is relatively large, it is evident that this represents only a portion of the potential antigens. These findings emphasize perhaps more clearly than in the case of any other bacterial infection that the patient with a streptococcal infection is exposed to a wide variety of different antigenic substances during the active disease. However, there are few instances in which the antibodies produced can be related to immunity to infection. Among the several extracellular substances, for example, only the antibody to the erythrogenic toxin has been shown to have a readily demonstrable effect on a disease manifestation. Since the antibodies to other toxins and enzymes usually inhibit their action, it is conceivable that they may affect the development of the disease process in a manner that remains undefined.

In general, immunity to streptococcal infection is type-specific and depends on the production of antibodies to M protein. This has been demonstrated both in experimental infections in laboratory animals and in natural infections in man. Studies of repeated attacks of streptococcal pharyngitis in a single individual have shown that each episode is associated with a different type of group A streptococcus, and that recurrent infections with the same type are extremely rare. In this connection, it should be noted that effective penicillin therapy can suppress the antibody

reactions in the subepidermal tissues from an original focus which may or may not be readily apparent. The inflammatory process is manifested by redness and edema and the advancing elevated margin of the lesion is clearly demarcated from normal skin. Streptococci are usually demonstrable only in the edema fluid from the advancing edge. The area of skin involved may be extensive and in severe cases deeper penetration or septi- cemia can ensue.

Streptococci are also involved in the superficial purulent skin lesions of impetigo contagiosa. Here they are usually found in association with staphylococci and the lesions assume a more chronic and indolent character. They begin as individual vesicles which subsequently break with the formation of encrusted purulent lesions.

#### DELAYED SEQUELAE OF STREPTOCOCCAL INFECTIONS

This group of diseases includes acute rheumatic fever, acute hemorrhagic glomerulonephritis and erythema nodosum. They represent an entirely different order of disease phenomena from the various suppurative complications of acute streptococcal disease in which the infecting organisms play so prominent a role. The mechanisms involved in the initiation of the delayed sequelae by streptococcal infection have not been clarified, but it is evident not only that the clinical findings are unique but also that the nature of the pathologic lesions is distinct from that of the processes in which direct bacterial involvement is evident.

Rheumatic fever is the most important and widespread of the late sequelae. Characteristically this disease is preceded by a typical streptococcal infection of the upper respiratory tract and has its onset after a latent interval which is variable in length with an average of about 3 weeks. The nature and the severity of the symptoms of rheumatic fever cover a wide range. However, the most prominent features of the classic disease are fever, migratory polyarthritis and carditis. The arthritis is not to be confused with the acute septic arthritis mentioned previously, since streptococci are not demonstrable in the joint fluid and recovery occurs without residual damage to the joint. Involvement of

the heart is the most significant aspect of the disease from the point of view of both the severity of the acute illness and the production of permanent damage. All layers of the heart may be affected and signs of myocarditis and pericarditis are frequently present. The basic pathologic finding is a focal inflammatory process characterized by the occurrence of unique myocardial lesions known as Aschoff bodies. Involvement of the endocardium can result in deformative scarring of the valves and adjacent structures which leads to chronic rheumatic valvular heart disease.

The generalized nature of the rheumatic process is illustrated by the variety of other manifestations which may occur in the course of the disease, including involvement of the skin and of the central nervous system (chorea). The disease may become subacute or chronic and in extreme cases evidence of rheumatic activity may persist for years. After recovery from rheumatic fever the patient is highly susceptible to recurrence of the disease following a new streptococcal infection and many attacks can occur in a single individual.

There appears to be no strain selectivity among group A streptococci in their ability to initiate rheumatic fever, since practically all of the prevalent serologic types have been found to be associated with the disease. However, only a small percentage of patients with streptococcal sore throat develop this late complication and it is evident that host factors must play a role in the pathogenesis of the disease.

Acute hemorrhagic glomerulonephritis resembles rheumatic fever in the occurrence of a latent interval between the streptococcal infection and onset of the disease, although in this case the average length of the interval is probably shorter. As the name suggests, this disease involves primarily the glomerulus of the kidney and is associated with the appearance of blood in the urine and general manifestations of kidney disease such as edema and hypertension. As might be expected from their common origin, rheumatic fever and glomerulonephritis occasionally occur simultaneously in the same patient. However, there is less evidence of permanent damage in glomerulonephritis and the great

majority of recovered patients do not show evidence of chronic kidney damage. Further more recurrent attacks of glomerulonephritis are rare.

An additional important difference in the pathogenesis of the two diseases has been established recently by the finding that only certain types of group A streptococci appear to be associated with the initiation of glomerulonephritis (Rammelkamp and Weaver 1953). These studies now adequately confirmed show that the great majority of cases are preceded by type 12 streptococcal infections and that the remaining cases are usually attributable to one or two additional types. This strongly suggests that some specific property of certain strains of group A streptococci is important in the etiology of glomerulonephritis. These findings also serve to explain the rarity of second attacks of the disease as contrasted with the frequent recurrence of rheumatic fever.

Erythema nodosum the third representative of this group of diseases is less clearly delineated and only a portion of the cases showing the clinical picture of the disease can be attributed to a preceding streptococcal infection. However when this relationship exists it follows the same pattern of delayed appearance after the bacterial infection and can recur following subsequent attacks of streptococcal sore throat. The disease is manifested by the occurrence of red extremely tender nodular swellings particularly on the extensor surfaces of the extremities in association with fever and signs of general toxicity. Lesions of the same type may be encountered occasionally in rheumatic fever but erythema nodosum is seen more commonly in the absence of other rheumatic stigmata and recovery occurs without residual damage.

There is evidence to suggest that these late sequelae of streptococcal infection may represent a severe and exaggerated form of a type of host reaction that is commonly manifested during convalescence. Thus during the period following apparent recovery from the acute infections one may encounter recurrent swelling and tenderness of the cervical lymph nodes, transient arthralgias, transient electrocardiographic changes, microscopic hematuria, etc. The time of appearance of

these changes as well as the time of onset of the overt poststreptococcal diseases coincides with the time at which antibody response to streptococcal antigens is reaching its maximum and this has been an important factor in the formulation of the theory that hypersensitivity reactions are concerned with pathogenesis of the delayed sequelae.

## IMMUNITY

As noted earlier specific antibodies to most of the extracellular products of group A streptococci are demonstrable in the serum of a large percentage of patients after recovery from streptococcal infections. Similarly certain of the surface antigens and cellular components have been shown to induce antibody response (see review in McCarty 1954). Furthermore even though the number of individual streptococcal antigens which have been studied is relatively large it is evident that this represents only a portion of the potential antigens. These findings emphasize perhaps more clearly than in the case of any other bacterial infection that the patient with a streptococcal infection is exposed to a wide variety of different antigenic substances during the active disease. However there are few instances in which the antibodies produced can be related to immunity to infection. Among the several extracellular substances for example only the antibody to the erythrogenic toxin has been shown to have a readily demonstrable effect on a disease manifestation. Since the antibodies to other toxins and enzymes usually inhibit their action it is conceivable that they may affect the development of the disease process in a manner that remains undefined.

In general immunity to streptococcal infection is type-specific and depends on the production of antibodies to M protein. This has been demonstrated both in experimental infections in laboratory animals and in natural infections in man. Studies of repeated attacks of streptococcal pharyngitis in a single individual have shown that each episode is associated with a different type of group A streptococcus and that recurrent infections with the same type are extremely rare. In this connection it should be noted that effective penicillin therapy can suppress the antibody

response to various streptococcal antigens, including the extracellular products and M protein, and consequently may result in an increased incidence of second infections with a single type. Following untreated infection, the great majority of patients develop M antibody which is measurable by the bactericidal technic previously described. There is evidence that type specific antibody may persist in detectable amounts for many years and thus provide a basis for prolonged immunity to a given type.

Although type specific immunity has been established as a major factor in streptococcal disease, certain aspects of the natural history of these infections suggest the possibility of some form of nonspecific resistance or immunity. Experiments with laboratory animals have contributed little in this regard. In the naturally occurring disease streptococcal infections are most common among school children and there is a progressive decrease in incidence with advancing age. Considering the large number of types of group A streptococci which may be prevalent at different times, it is difficult to ascribe the relative immunity of adults entirely to type specific immunity. However, many factors other than humoral immunity may play a role in this problem and under appropriate conditions of increased exposure as in military establishments the incidence of streptococcal infections in adults can be very high.

In addition to a decrease in incidence of streptococcal infections with age, there are changes in the characteristic manifestations of the disease that may be related to the immune response. For example, in infants under 3 years of age the disease is commonly a low grade, subacute process which can last several weeks and often does not show the clear cut localizing signs that characterize streptococcal pharyngitis in the older child and adult. These changes have been emphasized by Powers and Boersvert (1944) who suggested the term streptococcosis for all streptococcal disease in analogy with the course of events in tuberculosis. The development of immunity and hypersensitivity is considered to play a major part in the changing patterns of both diseases. There is evidence that the vigorous type of antibody response to a variety of streptococcal antigens in chil-

dren and adults may be dependent on prior conditioning during streptococcal infections in infancy. Thus, it has been found (Rantz *et al.*, 1951) that the production of anti streptolysin O is often very feeble in young infants and that even in children from 1 to 6 years of age increased antibody levels are maintained for a shorter period of time than in older children. In addition, the appearance of detectable levels of M antibody after infection is usually greatly delayed in comparison with antibodies to the extracellular products. This can be explained best by assuming that the latter represent the secondary or anamnestic type of antibody response while the M protein is a new antigen to which the individual has not been exposed previously. If this explanation is correct it supports the view that the antistreptolysin O type of response characteristic of the older patient is conditioned by prior exposure to the antigen.

During the past several decades there seems to have been a progressive decline in the severity of streptococcal infections. This is most evident in the case of readily recognizable manifestations such as scarlet fever. This decrease in severity unaccompanied by a comparable decrease in the morbidity rate antedates the introduction of antibacterial drugs and it must be assumed that either changes in the virulence of the organism or in the susceptibility of the human population or possibly a combination of both factors are responsible. Similar changes in the severity of scarlet fever were reported in past centuries and although the validity of these older observations is uncertain, the possibility of recurring cycles of varying disease intensity is suggested. The fact that the immunity status of a population can play a key role in the severity of streptococcal disease is indicated by the highly fatal streptococcal epidemics that are seen occasionally in isolated groups not previously exposed to streptococci. It is evident that the matter of non specific immunity to streptococcal infection requires further study.

Immunity in rheumatic fever is no more than a special case of streptococcal immunity. The same antibodies are formed as in streptococcal infections which do not give rise to this delayed complication. However, there

may be a quantitative difference since in a given epidemic of streptococcal disease the mean antibody response of rheumatic fever patients to a variety of streptococcal antigens is greater than in patients with uncomplicated infections. In the case of glomerulonephritis the importance of type specific immunity is emphasized. As pointed out earlier the low incidence of recurrences of this disease in contrast with rheumatic fever probably depends on the fact that a single type of group A streptococcus is responsible for most of the disease. Thus the development of M antibody to this type during the first attack greatly reduces the chance of a recurrence.

### DIAGNOSIS

Few of the many manifestations of streptococcal disease are sufficiently distinctive to allow for conclusive diagnosis on clinical grounds alone. Scarlet fever and erysipelas exemplify the more readily recognizable streptococcal infections and classic attacks can be diagnosed with reasonable accuracy from the signs and symptoms. However the findings in streptococcal pharyngitis and tonsillitis are much more variable than they were once thought to be. In many cases exudate is absent and the inflammation of the pharynx cannot be distinguished from that caused by a variety of other upper respiratory infections. Even when exudate or follicular tonsillitis is present the diagnosis is not certain because of the occurrence of non-streptococcal infections which give a similar picture. It must be concluded that isolation of the organism by bacteriologic culture is of primary importance in accurate diagnosis.

The material for culture is most commonly obtained from the throat or the nasopharynx by the use of a sterile swab. It is important to transfer the material promptly to the culture medium without allowing the swab to become dry. This is done most conveniently by rolling the swab on the surface of a blood agar plate after which the inoculum is streaked out with a sterile bacteriologic loop. In this way an adequate distribution of the material is usually obtained so that isolated colonies appear. The nature of the blood used is of importance and sheep blood is recommended because of its property of suppressing

the growth of certain hemolytic members of the genus *Hemophilus*. However the zones of hemolysis are not always typical and some workers use both rabbit and sheep blood plates in the initial isolation of streptococci. The use of blood of other species (human horse) may lead to difficulties in the recognition of hemolytic colonies and requires special care and experience. In order to obtain typical colony formation it is preferable to use fresh blood agar plates or plates that have been sealed to prevent the loss of moisture during refrigeration.

After overnight incubation the plates are examined for the presence of hemolytic colonies. In the majority of streptococcal infections a large number of characteristic colonies with distinct hemolytic zones will be apparent if a satisfactory culture technique has been employed. In some instances however because of the occurrence of strains which show little hemolysis on initial isolation or do not produce streptolysin S the presence of streptococci may not be obvious. Experience is required to recognize colonies of these strains although certain techniques may assist in identifying them. Thus when streaking the culture one may make a stab deep into the agar through the heavily inoculated portion of the plate so that subsurface colonies will form which can show hemolysis as the result of production of streptolysin O. Some workers recommend the use of anaerobic culture conditions as a means of increasing the efficiency of isolating streptococci on initial culture.

In view of the primary importance of group A streptococci and the possible occurrence of streptococci of other groups in the human throat further identification of the organism should be carried out by serologic grouping. Since grouping antisera are now available commercially this additional step is feasible in most diagnostic laboratories. For this purpose isolation of individual colonies and growth in pure culture in amounts sufficient to prepare extracts containing the group-specific carbohydrate are required. Typing of proved group A streptococci has a more limited application and usually is carried out only in connection with special studies.

Some confusion may result in attempting to differentiate streptococcal carriers from

patients with acute streptococcal disease by means of cultural studies. However, group A streptococci are not often the predominant organism in the throat of carriers, and whenever these organisms are present in large numbers in association with symptoms of respiratory disease the diagnosis of streptococcal infection must be made.

The use of cultures of relatively little value in the diagnosis of rheumatic fever and glomerulonephritis since the initiating streptococcal infection usually has subsided before the onset of these late complications. However, antibody studies have proved to be of value in establishing the occurrence of a recent streptococcal infection. Thus, the titers of antistreptolysin O, antistreptokinase and antihyaluronidase are still increasing at the time of onset of most cases of rheumatic fever and in doubtful cases this immunologic information may be of importance in supporting the clinical diagnosis.

### TREATMENT

Prior to the introduction of the sulfonamide drugs, the methods available for treatment of streptococcal infections were generally unsatisfactory. Hemolytic streptococci proved to be among the most susceptible of all pathogenic bacteria to the bacteriostatic action of sulfanilamide and the discovery of this drug began a new era in the management of streptococcal disease. The effect of the new drugs was most dramatic in the highly fatal forms of infection, e.g., meningitis and septicemia, which were seldom treated successfully by older methods. The number of effective therapeutic agents has been increased by the subsequent discovery of penicillin and some of the other antibiotic drugs such as the tetracyclines, since here again streptococci are among the most susceptible of all bacteria.

Penicillin in contrast with the sulfonamides is bactericidal for streptococci and the use of this agent is the treatment of choice in most cases of severe streptococcal disease. When penicillin is used in adequate dosage for a sufficient period of time it is possible to eliminate the organisms from the upper respiratory tract so that they are no longer recoverable on culture. Sulfonamides, on the

other hand, act by retarding the multiplication of streptococci which allows the natural host defenses to control the infection. However, viable streptococci usually remain in the respiratory tract and the sulfonamides are not effective in eliminating the carrier state. The difference in mode of action of the two drugs is reflected in their effect on antibody formation. The antistreptolysin O response of patients treated with sulfonamides is not significantly different from that of the untreated patient while the response of penicillin treated patients is markedly depressed. Thus destruction of the organisms appears to reduce the antigenic stimulus.

Hemolytic streptococci do not appear to be able to give rise to antibiotic resistant mutants with the ease displayed by staphylococci and certain other organisms. Despite the wide spread use of penicillin in the general population there has been no significant change in the penicillin sensitivity of organisms isolated from streptococcal infections. Even in the laboratory it is difficult to isolate variants of group A streptococci with significant resistance to penicillin. Sulfonamide resistant mutants of a few serologic types of group A streptococci became prevalent following a mass prophylaxis experiment with sulfonamides in military populations during World War II but subsequently the incidence of these strains has greatly decreased. In general it would appear that drug resistance is not a major problem in the treatment of streptococcal disease. A more important complication arises from hypersensitivity of the host to the therapeutic agent. Reactions of various kinds have been encountered with the sulfonamides, and at the present time there is an increasing incidence of hypersensitivity to penicillin. Since penicillin sensitivity may be expressed by an acute anaphylactoid reaction the results of administration of the drug to a sensitive individual can be serious. Consequently care must be exercised in the use of penicillin, particularly when it is given by parenteral injection.

It has been established that the prompt use of penicillin therapy in streptococcal sore throat will greatly reduce the occurrence of rheumatic fever. Prevention of rheumatic fever depends on elimination of the organisms and the sulfonamides are totally ineffec-

tive for this purpose. When the symptoms of rheumatic fever have already developed penicillin therapy is indicated for the destruction of any streptococci remaining in the body but it appears to have little effect on the course of the acute disease. However the exquisite sensitivity of group A streptococci to antibiotics has been exploited successfully in preventing recurrence of rheumatic fever in known rheumatic subjects. For this purpose either penicillin or sulfonamide is effective and the continuous use of one of these agents in doses below that required for treatment of active disease decreases the risk of acquisition of a streptococcal infection and consequently the risk of recurrence of rheumatic fever.

## EPIDEMIOLOGY

The incidence of streptococcal infections varies in different geographic areas. They are most common in the colder climates and in the north temperate zone reach a peak incidence during the winter and the early spring. The apparent rarity of streptococcal infections in tropical and subtropical regions may be due in part to the fact that the disease occurs in an atypical or subclinical form since culture surveys and antibody studies indicate that the incidence of infection is higher than had been supposed on clinical grounds. Crowding plays a role in the dissemination of infection. The influence of this factor is illustrated by the frequency of the disease in crowded tenements and military barracks.

Transmission of streptococcal infections depends primarily on intimate contact between individuals with dissemination of the organisms from the upper respiratory tract. Prior to the institution of modern methods for handling and pasteurizing milk, milk-borne epidemics often resulted from contamination of milk by infected employees. Isolated outbreaks due to infected food are still encountered occasionally but the major problem in the spread of streptococcal disease is concerned with the transfer of organisms from the respiratory tract of one individual to another.

Viable streptococci are recovered readily from a variety of sources in the immediate environment of individuals who harbor the

organism. Thus they are found in the dust of the room in blankets on books and other objects handled by the patient. These environmental reservoirs were formerly considered to be of great importance in spread of the disease but recent detailed epidemiologic studies in a military installation throw serious doubt on their significance. These studies and other aspects of the epidemiology of streptococcal infections are discussed in detail by Rammelkamp (1957). The major risk of acquiring a streptococcal infection at least under the conditions of barracks life seems to be in the proximity to a carrier who is disseminating viable organisms.

After spontaneous recovery from streptococcal upper respiratory infection some individuals continue to harbor the infecting organism for long periods of time. In these cases streptococci can be recovered repeatedly on culture of the nasopharynx or the throat. Even when cultures are negative residual organisms may remain in lymphoid tissue as indicated by the isolation of streptococci from the deep tissues of excised tonsils. The potential danger of a carrier depends on a number of factors such as the number of organisms present, the biologic state of the organisms and the ease with which they are disseminated into the environment. In general the ability to spread infection appears to diminish with the time which the streptococci have resided in the upper respiratory tract. This decrease in infectivity is referable to qualitative changes in the organisms as well as to reduction in numbers and it has been found that in many cases streptococci tend to lose their M protein during prolonged residence in the pharyngeal tissues (Rothbard and Watson 1948).

The carrier state is not necessarily dependent on previous clinical infection. During epidemic periods of streptococcal disease culture surveys of school and military populations have shown that a large proportion of the population up to one third or more may carry one of the types of group A streptococci involved in the epidemic. During the pre-epidemic period there is often a progressive rise in the carrier rate which precedes the occurrence of significant numbers of frank streptococcal infections. Epidemics can be avoided, or terminated abruptly once they



occur, by the use of mass penicillin prophylaxis

## REFERENCES

- Araujo P and Krause R M 1963 Group specific carbohydrate of Group C variant hemolytic streptococci *J Exp Med* 118 1059 1067
- Ayoub E M and Wannamaker, L W 1963 A factor other than streptococcal nicotina mide adenine dinucleotidase which combines with antibody to this enzyme Its production and effect on antibody determinations *J Immunol* 90 793 803
- Baddiley J 1962 Teichoic acids in walls and cells of gram positive bacteria *Fed Proc* 21 1084 1088
- Bernheimer A W 1954 Streptolysins and their inhibitors in McCarty M (ed) *Streptococcal Infections* pp 19 38 New York Columbia Univ Press
- Bernheimer A W and Cantoni G L 1945 The cardiotonic action of preparations containing the oxygen labile hemolysis of *Streptococcus pyogenes* I Increased sensitivity of the isolated frog's heart to repeated application of the toxin *J Exp Med* 81 295 306
- Bernheimer A W Gillman W Hottel G A and Pappenheimer A M Jr 1942 An improved medium for the cultivation of hemolytic streptococcus *J Bact* 43 495 498
- Bernheimer A W Lazandes P D and Wilson A T 1957 Diphosphopyridine nucleotidase as an extracellular product of streptococcal growth and its possible relationship to leukotoxicity *J Exp Med* 106 27 37
- Bilroth T 1874 Untersuchungen über die Vegetationsformen von *Coccobacteria septica* den Antheil welchen sie an der Entstehung und Verbreitung der accidentellen Wundkrankheiten haben Versuch einer wissenschaftlichen Kritik der verschiedenen Methoden antiseptischer Wundbehandlung Berlin Reimer 244 pp
- Boissard J M and Wormald P J 1950 A new group of haemolytic streptococci for which the designation group O is proposed *J Path Bact* 62 37 41
- Brown J H 1919 The Use of Blood Agar for the Study of Streptococci New York The Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research (Monograph No 9) 122 pp
- Carlson A S Kellner A and Bernheimer A W 1956 Selective inhibition by preparations of streptococcal filtrates of the oxidative metabolism of mitochondria procured from rabbit myocardium *J Exp Med* 104 577 587
- Carlson A S Kellner A Bernheimer A W and Freeman E H 1957 A streptococcal enzyme that acts specifically upon diphosphopyridine nucleotide Characterization of the enzyme and its separation from streptolysin O *J Exp Med* 106 15 26
- Christensen L R 1945 Streptococcal fibrinolysis A proteolytic reaction due to a serum enzyme activated by streptococcal fibrinolysin *J Gen Physiol* 28 363 383
- 1954 The streptokinase plasminogen system in McCarty M (ed) *Streptococcal Infections* pp 39 55 New York Columbia Univ Press
- Coffey J M 1938 Further observations on the toxigenic properties of hemolytic streptococci *J Immunol* 35 121 130
- Crowley N 1944 Hyaluronidase production by haemolytic streptococci of human origin *J Path Bact* 56 27 35
- 1950 The degradation of starch by strains of group A streptococci having related antigens *J Gen Microbiol* 4 156 170
- 1954 On amylolytic strains of *Streptococcus pyogenes* *J Gen Microbiol* 10 411 426
- 1955 The action of streptococcal amylase in relation to the synthesis of an amylosaccharide by amylolytic strains of *Streptococcus pyogenes* *J Gen Microbiol* 13 218 225
- Crowley N and Jevons M P 1955 The formation of a starch like polysaccharide from maltose by strains of *Streptococcus pyogenes* *J Gen Microbiol* 13 226 234
- Cummins C S and Harris H 1956 The chemical composition of the cell wall in some Gram positive bacteria and its possible value as a taxonomic character *J Gen Microbiol* 14 583 600
- Dick G F and Dick G H 1924 A skin test for susceptibility to scarlet fever *JAMA* 82 265 266
- Dochez A R Avery O T and Lancefield R C 1919 Studies on the biology of streptococcus I Antigenic relationships between strains of *Streptococcus haemolyticus* *J Exp Med* 30 179 213
- Dole V P 1946 A dialyzable medium for cultivation of group A hemolytic streptococci *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 63 122 126
- Elliott H H 1945 A proteolytic enzyme pro-

- duced by group A streptococci with special reference to its effect on the type-specific M antigen *J Exp Med* 81 573 592
- 1950 The crystallization and serological differentiation of a streptococcal proteinase and its precursor *J Exp Med* 92 201 218
- 1960 Type and group polysaccharides of Group D streptococci *J Exp Med* 111 621 630
- 1962 Teichoic acid and the group antigen of group D streptococci *Nature* 193 1105 1106
- 1963 Teichoic acid and the group antigen of lactic streptococci (group N) *Nature* 200 1184 1185
- Elliott S D and Dole V P 1947 An in active precursor of streptococcal proteinase *J Exp Med* 85 305 320
- Fehleisen F 1882 Ueber die Zuchtung der Erysipelkokken auf kunstlichem Nahrboden und ihre Uebertragbarkeit auf den Menschen *Deutsch med Wschr* 8 553 554
- Freimer H 1963 Studies of L forms and protoplasts of Group A streptococci II Chemical and immunological properties of the cell membrane *J Exp Med* 117 377 399
- Freimer E H Krause R M and McCarty M 1959 Studies of L forms and protoplasts of Group A streptococci I Isolation growth and bacteriologic characteristics *J Exp Med* 110 853 874
- Frobisher M Jr and Brown J H 1927 Transmissible toxicogenicity of streptococci *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 41 167 173
- Fuller A T 1938 The formamide method for the extraction of polysaccharides from haemolytic streptococci *Brit J Exp Path* 19 130 139
- Ginsburg I and Harris T N 1963 Oxygen stable hemolysins of Group A streptococci II Chromatographic and electrophoretic studies *J Exp Med* 118 919 934
- Gooder H and Maxted W R 1958 Protoplasts of group A beta haemolytic streptococci *Nature* 182 808 809
- Griffith F 1927 Types of haemolytic streptococci in relation to scarlet fever (second report) *J Hyg* 26 363 373
- 1934 The serological classification of *Streptococcus pyogenes* *J Hyg* 34 542 584
- Halbert S P Bircher R and Dahle E 1961 The analysis of streptococcal infections V Cardiotoxicity of streptolysin O for rabbits *in vivo* *J Exp Med* 113 759 784
- Hare R 1935 The classification of haemolytic streptococci from the nose and throat of normal human beings by means of precipitin and biochemical tests *J Path Bact* 41 499 512
- Hess H L and Slade H D 1955 An electrophoretic examination of cell free extracts from various serological types of group A hemolytic streptococci *Biochim biophys acta* 16 346-353
- Hirsch J G and Church A B 1960 Studies of phagocytosis of Group A streptococci by polymorphonuclear leucocytes *in vitro* *J Exp Med* 111 309 322
- Jacox R F 1953 Streptococcal  $\beta$  glucuronidase *J Bact* 65 700-705
- Kellner A Bernheimer A W Carlson A S and Freeman E B 1956 Loss of myocardial contractility induced in isolated mammalian hearts by streptolysin O *J Exp Med* 104 361 373
- Kellner A and Robertson T 1954 Myocardial necrosis produced in animals by means of crystalline streptococcal proteinase *J Exp Med* 99 495 504
- Kjems E 1958 Studies on streptococcal bacteriophages 3 Hyaluronidase produced by the streptococcal phage host system: *Acta path microbiol scand* 44 429-439
- Koch R 1881 Zur Untersuchung von pathogenen Organismen *Mitt Kaiser Gesdhts amte* 1 1 48
- Krause R M 1957 Studies on bacteriophages of hemolytic streptococci I Factors influencing the interaction of phage and susceptible host cell *J Exp Med* 106 365 384
- Krause R M and McCarty M 1961 Studies on the chemical structure of the streptococcal cell wall I The identification of a mucopeptide in the cell walls of Groups A and A variant streptococci *J Exp Med* 114 127 140
- 1962 Studies on the chemical structure of the streptococcal cell wall II The composition of Group C cell walls and chemical basis for serologic specificity of the carbohydrate moiety *J Exp Med* 115 49 62
- Krumwiede E 1954 Studies on a lipoproteinase of group A streptococci *J Exp Med* 100 629 639
- Kuttner A G and Lenert T F 1944 The occurrence of bacteriostatic properties in the blood of patients after recovery from streptococcal pharyngitis *J Clin Invest* 23 151 161
- Lancefield R C 1925 The immunological relationships of *Streptococcus viridans* and certain of its chemical fractions II Sero

occur, by the use of mass penicillin prophylaxis

## REFERENCES

- Araujo P and Krause R M 1963 Group specific carbohydrate of Group C variant hemolytic streptococci *J Exp Med* 118 1059 1067
- Ayoub E M and Wannamaker L W 1963 A factor other than streptococcal nicotina mide adenine dinucleotidase which combines with antibody to this enzyme Its production and effect on antibody determinations *J Immunol* 90 793 803
- Baddiley J 1962 Teichoic acids in walls and cells of gram positive bacteria *Fed Proc* 21 1084 1088
- Bernheimer A W 1954 Streptolysins and their inhibitors in McCarty M (ed) *Streptococcal Infections* pp 19 38 New York Columbia Univ Press
- Bernheimer A W and Cantoni G L 1945 The cardiotoxic action of preparations containing the oxygen labile hemolysin of *Streptococcus pyogenes* I Increased sensitivity of the isolated frog's heart to repeated application of the toxin *J Exp Med* 81 295 306
- Bernheimer A W Gillman W Hostle G A and Pappenheimer A M Jr 1942 An improved medium for the cultivation of hemolytic streptococcus *J Bact* 43 495 498
- Bernheimer A W Lazarides P D and Wilson A T 1957 Diphosphopyridine nucleotidase as an extracellular product of streptococcal growth and its possible relationship to leukotoxicity *J Exp Med* 106 27 37
- Billroth T 1874 Untersuchungen über die Vegetationsformen von *Coccobacteria septica* den Anteil welchen sie an der Entstehung und Verbreitung der accidentellen Wundkrankheiten haben Versuch einer wissenschaftlichen Kritik der verschiedenen Methoden antiseptischer Wundbehandlung Berlin Reimer 244 pp
- Boissard J M and Wormald P J 1950 A new group of haemolytic streptococci for which the designation group O is proposed *J Path Bact* 62 37 41
- Brown J H 1919 *The Use of Blood Agar for the Study of Streptococci* New York The Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research (Monograph No 9) 122 pp
- Carlson A Kellner A and Bernheimer A W 1956 Selective inhibition by preparations of streptococcal filtrates of the oxidative metabolism of mitochondria procured from rabbit myocardium *J Exp Med* 104 577 587
- Carlson A S Kellner A Bernheimer A W and Freeman E R 1957 A streptococcal enzyme that acts specifically upon diphosphopyridine nucleotide Characterization of the enzyme and its separation from streptolysin O *J Exp Med* 106 15 26
- Christensen L R 1945 Streptococcal fibrinolysis A proteolytic reaction due to a serum enzyme activated by streptococcal fibrinolysin *J Gen Physiol* 28 363 383
- 1954 The streptokinase plasminogen system in McCarty M (ed) *Streptococcal Infections* pp 39 55 New York Columbia Univ Press
- Coffey J M 1938 Further observations on the toxicogenic properties of hemolytic streptococci *J Immunol* 35 121 130
- Crowley N 1944 Hyaluronidase production by haemolytic streptococci of human origin *J Path Bact* 56 27 35
- 1950 The degradation of starch by strains of group A streptococci having related antigens *J Gen Microbiol* 4 156 170
- 1954 On amylolytic strains of *Streptococcus pyogenes* *J Gen Microbiol* 10 411 426
- 1955 The action of streptococcal amylase in relation to the synthesis of an amylosaccharide by amylolytic strains of *Streptococcus pyogenes* *J Gen Microbiol* 13 218 225
- Crowley N and Jevons M P 1955 The formation of a starch like polysaccharide from maltose by strains of *Streptococcus pyogenes* *J Gen Microbiol* 13 226 234
- Cummins C S and Harris H 1956 The chemical composition of the cell wall in some Gram positive bacteria and its possible value as a taxonomic character *J Gen Microbiol* 14 583 600
- Dick G F and Dick G H 1924 A skin test for susceptibility to scarlet fever *JAMA* 87 265 266
- Dochez A R Avery O T and Lancefield R C 1919 Studies on the biology of streptococcus I Antigenic relationships between strains of *Streptococcus haemolyticus* *J Exp Med* 30 179 213
- Dole V P 1946 A dialyzable medium for cultivation of group A hemolytic streptococci *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 63 122 126
- Elliott S D 1945 A proteolytic enzyme pro-

- on *Streptococcus pyogenes* J Gen Microbiol 12 484-495
- 1956 The indirect bactericidal test as a means of identifying antibody to the M antigen of *Streptococcus pyogenes* Brit J Exp Path 37 415-422
- 1957 The active agent in nascent phage lysis of streptococci J Gen Microbiol 16 584-595
- Milstone H 1941 A factor in normal human blood which participates in streptococcal fibrinolysis J Immunol 42 109-116
- Moody M D Ellis E C and Updyke E L 1958 Staining bacterial smears with fluorescent antibody IV Grouping streptococci with fluorescent antibody J Bact 75 553-560
- Mycek M J Elliott S D and Fruton J S 1952 The specificity of a crystalline streptococcal proteinase J Biol Chem 197 637-640
- Ogburn C A Harris T N and Harris S 1958 The determination of streptococcal antiproteinase titers in sera of patients with rheumatic fever and streptococcal infection J Immunol 81 396-403
- Ogston A 1881 Report upon microorganisms in surgical diseases Brit Med J 1 369-375
- Okamoto H 1940 Über die hochgradige Steigerung des Hamolysebildungsvermögens des *Streptococcus haemolyticus* durch Nukleinsäure I Mitteilung Jap J M Sc Sect 4 Pharmacol 12 167-208
- Pasteur L 1879 Seance du 11 mars Bull Acad Med 2 série 8 256-260 Seance du 18 mars 8 271-274
- Powers G F and Boisvert P L 1944 Age as a factor in streptococcosis J Pediat 25 481-504
- Rammelkamp C H Jr 1957 Epidemiology of streptococcal infections Harvey Lect ser 51 (1955-1956) pp 113-142
- Rammelkamp C H Jr and Weaver R S 1953 Acute glomerulonephritis The significance of the variations in the incidence of the disease J Clin Invest 32 345-358
- Rantz L A Maroney M and Di Caprio J M 1951 Antistreptolysin O response following hemolytic streptococcus infection in early childhood Arch Int Med 87 360-371
- Rantz L A and Randall E 1955 Use of autoclaved extracts of hemolytic streptococci for serological grouping Stanford M Bull 13 290-291
- Rogers H J 1945 The conditions controlling the production of hyaluronidase by microorganisms grown in simplified media Biochem J 39 435-443
- Rothbard S 1945 Bacteriostatic effect of human sera on group A streptococci I Type specific antibodies in sera of patients convalescing from group A streptococcal pharyngitis J Exp Med 82 93-106
- 1948 Protective effect of hyaluronidase and type specific anti M serum on experimental group A streptococcus infections in mice J Exp Med 88 325-342
- Rothbard S and Watson R F 1948 Variation occurring in group A streptococci during human infection Progressive loss of M substance correlated with increasing susceptibility to bacteriostasis J Exp Med 87 521-533
- Salton M R J 1953 Studies of the bacterial cell wall IV The composition of the cell walls of some Gram positive and Gram negative bacteria, Biochim biophys acta 10 512-523
- Schmidt W C 1952 Group A streptococcus polysaccharide Studies on its preparation chemical composition and cellular localization after intravenous injection into mice J Exp Med 95 105-118
- Schottmüller H 1903 Die Artunterscheidung der für den Menschen pathogenen Streptokokken durch Blutager München med Wschr 50 849-853 909-912
- Schultz W and Charlton W 1918 Serologische Beobachtungen am Scharlachexanthem Z Kinderheilk 17 328-333
- Schwab J H Cromartie W J and Roberson H S 1959 Identification of a toxic cellular component of Group A streptococci as a complex of group specific C polysaccharide and a protein, J Exp Med 109 43-54
- Sharp J T 1954 L colonies from hemolytic streptococci New technique in the study of L forms of bacteria Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 87 94-97
- Sharp J T Hijmans W and Dienes L 1957 Examination of the L forms of group A streptococci for the group-specific polysaccharide and M protein J Exp Med 105 153-159
- Shattock P M F and Mattick A T R 1943 The serological grouping of *Streptococcus lactis* (group N) and its relationship to *Streptococcus faecalis* J Hyg 43 173-188
- Slade H D 1954 The metabolism of amino acids by streptococci in McCarty M (ed) Streptococcal Infections pp 65-86 New York Columbia Univ Press
- Slade H D Knox G A and Stamp W C

- logical reactions obtained with antinucleo protein sera J Exp Med 42 397 412
- 1928a The antigenic complex of *Streptococcus haemolyticus* I Demonstration of a type specific substance in extracts of *Streptococcus haemolyticus* J Exp Med 47, 91 103
- 1928b The antigenic complex of *Streptococcus haemolyticus* III Chemical and immunological properties of the species specific substance J Exp Med 47 481 491
- 1933 A serological differentiation of human and other groups of hemolytic streptococci J Exp Med 57 571 595
- 1940 Type specific antigens M and T of mait and glossy variants of group A hemolytic streptococci J Exp Med 71 521 537
- 1941 Specific relationship of cell composition to biological activity of hemolytic streptococci Harvey Lect Ser 36 (1940 1941) pp 251 290
- 1943 Studies on the antigenic composition of group A hemolytic streptococci I Effects of proteolytic enzymes on streptococcal cells J Exp Med 78 465-476
- 1954 Cellular constituents of group A streptococci concerned in antigenicity and virulence in McCarty M (ed) Streptococcal Infections pp 3 18 New York Columbia Univ Press
- 1957 Differentiation of group A streptococci with a common H antigen into three serological types with special reference to the bactericidal test J Exp Med 106 425 544
- 1958 Occurrence of R antigen specific for Group A Type 3 streptococci J Exp Med 108 329 341
- Lancefield R C and Dole V P 1946 The properties of T antigens extracted from group A hemolytic streptococci J Exp Med 84 449 471
- Lancefield R C and Hare R 1935 The serological differentiation of pathogenic and non pathogenic strains of hemolytic streptococci from parturient women J Exp Med 61 335 349
- Lancefield R C and Perlmann G E 1952a Preparation and properties of type specific M antigen isolated from a group A type I hemolytic streptococcus J Exp Med 96 71 82
- 1952b Preparation and properties of a protein (R antigen) occurring in streptococci of group A type 28 and in certain streptococci of other serological groups J Exp Med 96 83 97
- Lazarides P D and Bernheimer A W 1957 Association of production of diphosphopyridine nucleotidase with serological type of group A streptococcus J Bact 74 412-413
- Levaditi C 1918, Action leucotoxique du streptocoque des plaies de guerre Considerations sur le mecanisme de la phagocytose Compt rend soc biol 81 1064-1067
- Markovitz A and Dorfman A 1962 Synthesis of capsular polysaccharide (hyaluronic acid) by protoplast membrane preparations of a group A streptococcus J Biol Chem 237 273 279
- McCarty M 1948 The occurrence of nucleases in culture filtrates of group A hemolytic streptococci J Exp Med 88 181 188
- 1949 The inhibition of streptococcal desoxyribonuclease by rabbit and human antiserum J Exp Med 90 543 553
- 1952 The lysis of group A hemolytic streptococci by extracellular enzymes of *Streptomyces albus* II Nature of the cellular substrate attacked by the lytic enzymes J Exp Med 96 569 580
- 1954 The antibody response to streptococcal infections in McCarty M (ed) Streptococcal Infections pp 130 142 New York Columbia Univ Press
- 1956 Variation in the group specific carbohydrate of group A streptococci II Studies on the chemical basis for serological specificity of the carbohydrates J Exp Med 104 629 643
- 1958 Further studies on the chemical basis for serological specificity of Group A streptococcal carbohydrate J Exp Med 108 311 323
- 1959 The occurrence of polyglycero phosphate as an antigenic component of various Gram positive bacterial species J Exp Med 109 361 378
- McCarty M and Lancefield R C 1955 Variation in the group specific carbohydrate of group A streptococci I Immunochemical studies on the carbohydrates of variant strains J Exp Med 102 11 28
- Maxted W R 1948 Preparation of streptococcal extracts for Lancefield grouping Lancet 2 255 256
- 1949 Occurrence of the M substance of type 28 group A in streptococci of Lancefield groups II C and G J Gen Microbiol 3 1 6
- 1953 The use of bacitracin for identifying Group A haemolytic streptococci J Clin Path 6 224 226
- 1955 The influence of bacteriophage

## 16

### The Pneumococci

The pneumococcus is a gram positive coccus frequently of lancet shape usually arranged in pairs or short chains. The virulent forms possess an easily demonstrable capsule. *Pneumococcus* is nonmotile and does not form spores. It is lysed by bile salts and other surface active agents. It is classified into types on the basis of immunologic and chemical differences in the highly polymerized polysaccharides which compose its capsule. It is an inhabitant of the upper respiratory tract of man and certain animals and causes infection primarily in the respiratory tract and adjacent structures especially pneumonia, sinusitis, otitis, conjunctivitis and meningitis.

Synonyms are *Diplococcus pneumoniae* and *Streptococcus pneumoniae*.

#### HISTORY

*Pneumococcus* was first isolated and cultured in 1881 by Pasteur in France and independently in the same year by Sternberg in New York. In both instances saliva of persons who were not suffering from a respiratory disease was injected into rabbits from whose blood the organisms were subsequently isolated. Neither Pasteur nor Sternberg recognized the relationship of the organism to disease. This was demonstrated by the independent studies of Frankel and of Weichselbaum between 1884 and 1886 who showed pneumococcus to be the most frequent cause of lobar pneumonia in man.

Classification of pneumococcus into types began in Germany with the work of Neufeld and Handel (1909 and 1910) who observed that strains of pneumococci differ in their immunologic properties. Shortly afterward Dochez and Gillespie (1913) in New York subdivided pneumococci into 3 distinct types and a 4th heterogeneous group on the basis of agglutination reactions and protection tests in mice. Simultaneously Lister in South Africa reported similar findings. Two of the types described by Dochez and Gillespie, namely Types I and II, have been associated with pneumococcal pneumonia in adults more commonly than any of the other types together they were responsible for about one half of all cases during the 20 year period between 1920 and 1940. During the past two decades infection caused by Type II has been very uncommon on the eastern seaboard of the United States in contrast with the earlier experience (Austrian 1959). Information on type incidence in other sections of the country is not available.

Type III, the 3rd type described by Dochez and Gillespie, is carried in the normal human pharynx more commonly than any other single type of pneumococcus and is likewise a frequent cause of pneumonia and other lesions. Subsequent study of the heterogeneous group IV of Dochez and Gillespie has resulted in the recognition of more than 80 distinct pneumococcal types.

The basis for the immunologic classification of pneumococci into types was demon

- 1951 The amino acid nutrition of group A hemolytic streptococci with reference to the effect of glutathione on the cystine requirement *J Bact* 62 669 675
- Slade H D and Stamp W C 1956 Sonic oscillation as an aid in the counting of group A streptococci by the pour plate method *J Bact* 71 624 625
- 1962 Cell wall composition and the grouping antigens of streptococci *J Bact* 84 345 351
- Sprince H and Woolley D W 1944 Relationship of a new growth factor required by certain hemolytic streptococci to growth phenomena in other bacteria *J Exp Med* 80 213 217
- Stock A H 1939 Studies on the hemolytic streptococcus I Isolation and concentration of erythrogenic toxin of the NY5 strain of hemolytic streptococcus *J Immunol* 36 489-498
- Stock A H Uriel J and Grabar P 1961 Esterase in extracellular concentrates of group A streptococci and the homologous antibody *Nature* 192 434-435
- Stollerman G H Rytel M and Ortiz J 1963 Accessory plasma factors involved in the bactericidal test for type specific antibody to Group A streptococci II Human plasma cofactor(s) enhancing opsonization of encapsulated organisms *J Exp Med* 117, 1 17
- Stollerman G H Siegel A C and Johnson E E 1959 Evaluation of the long chain reaction as a means for detecting type specific antibody to Group A streptococci in human sera *J Exp Med* 110 887 897
- Tillett W S 1952 Studies on the enzymatic lysis of fibrin and inflammatory exudates by products of hemolytic streptococci Harvey Lect ser 45 (1949 1950) pp 149 210
- Tillett W S and Garner R L 1933 The fibrinolytic activity of hemolytic streptococci *J Exp Med* 58 485 502
- Tillett W S Sherry S and Christensen L R 1948 Streptococcal desoxyribonuclease Significance in lysis of purulent exudates and production by strains of hemolytic streptococci *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 68 184 188
- Todd E W, 1938 The differentiation of two distinct serological varieties of streptolysin streptolysin O and streptolysin S *J Path Bact* 47 423-445
- 1942 The leucocidin of group A haemolytic streptococci *Brit J Exp Path* 23 136 145
- Vostu K L and Rantz L A 1964 The measurement of type and non type specific group A hemolytic streptococcal antibody with an hemagglutination technique *J Immunol* 92 185 191
- Wannamaker L W, 1958 The differentiation of three distinct desoxyribonucleases of group A streptococci, *J Exp Med* 107 797 812
- 1962 Characterization of a fourth desoxyribonuclease of group A streptococci *Fed Proc* 21 p 231
- Weissmann G Keiser H and Bernheimer A W 1963 Studies on lysosomes III The effects of streptolysins O and S on the release of acid hydrolases from a granular fraction of rabbit liver *J Exp Med* 118 205 222
- Wicken A J Elliott S D and Baddiley J 1963, The identity of streptococcal group D antigen with teichoic acid *J Gen Microbiol* 31 231 239
- Wilson A T 1945 Loss of group carbohydrate during mouse passages of a group A hemolytic streptococcus *J Exp Med* 81 593 596
- 1957 The leukotoxic action of streptococci *J Exp Med* 105 463 484
- 1959 The relative importance of the capsule and the M antigen in determining colony form of Group A streptococci *J Exp Med* 109 257 270
- Woolley D W 1941 A new growth factor required by certain hemolytic streptococci *J Exp Med* 73 487 492
- Yasmunch W G Gray E D and Wannamaker L W 1963 Kinetic studies on the desoxyribonucleases of streptococci *Fed Proc* 22 p 348
- Zabriskie J B 1964 The role of temperate bacteriophage in the production of erythrogenic toxin by Group A streptococci *J Exp Med* 119 761 780

## 16

## The Pneumococci

The pneumococcus is a gram positive coccus frequently of lancet shape usually arranged in pairs or short chains. The virulent forms possess an easily demonstrable capsule. Pneumococcus is nonmotile and does not form spores. It is lysed by bile salts and other surface active agents. It is classified into types on the basis of immunologic and chemical differences in the highly polymerized polysaccharides which compose its capsule. It is an inhabitant of the upper respiratory tract of man and certain animals and causes infection primarily in the respiratory tract and adjacent structures especially pneumonia, sinusitis, otitis, conjunctivitis and meningitis.

Synonyms are *Diplococcus pneumoniae* and *Streptococcus pneumoniae*.

## HISTORY

Pneumococcus was first isolated and cultured in 1881 by Pasteur in France and independently in the same year by Sternberg in New York. In both instances saliva of persons who were not suffering from a respiratory disease was injected into rabbits from whose blood the organisms were subsequently isolated. Neither Pasteur nor Sternberg recognized the relationship of the organism to disease. This was demonstrated by the independent studies of Frankel and of Weichselbaum between 1884 and 1886 who showed pneumococcus to be the most frequent cause of lobar pneumonia in man.

Classification of pneumococcus into types began in Germany with the work of Neufeld and Handel (1909 and 1910) who observed that strains of pneumococci differ in their immunologic properties. Shortly afterward Dochez and Gillespie (1913) in New York subdivided pneumococci into 3 distinct types and a 4th heterogeneous group on the basis of agglutination reactions and protection tests in mice. Simultaneously Lister in South Africa reported similar findings. Two of the types described by Dochez and Gillespie, namely Types I and II, have been associated with pneumococcal pneumonia in adults more commonly than any of the other types together they were responsible for about one half of all cases during the 20 year period between 1920 and 1940. During the past two decades infection caused by Type II has been very uncommon on the eastern seaboard of the United States in contrast with the earlier experience (Austrian 1959). Information on type incidence in other sections of the country is not available.

Type III, the 3rd type described by Dochez and Gillespie, is carried in the normal human pharynx more commonly than any other single type of pneumococcus and is likewise a frequent cause of pneumonia and other lesions. Subsequent study of the heterogeneous group IV of Dochez and Gillespie has resulted in the recognition of more than 80 distinct pneumococcal types.

The basis for the immunologic classification of pneumococci into types was demon-



strated by Dochez and Avery (1917) to reside in the elaboration during growth of so-called specific soluble substances (SSS) which constitute the capsules of the microorganisms. Heidelberger and Avery (1923) showed that the specific soluble substances are carbohydrate in nature and to them and Goebel is due the greatest part of our knowledge of the immunologic and chemical properties of these capsular constituents. The production of the capsular polysaccharides is essential to the pathogenicity of pneumococcus, and antibodies which protect man or animals against infection are directed against this capsular material.

Many of the biologic properties of pneumococcus are similar to those of various species of streptococci, especially streptococci of the viridans group. It is for this reason that certain taxonomists have included pneumococcus as a species of streptococcus under the name *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, though agreement on this designation is not universal. The most important properties which distinguish pneumococcus from the green-producing streptococci are its predilection in causing pneumonia, its virulence for laboratory animals on primary isolation and its dissolution by bile salts and other surface active agents.

## MORPHOLOGY

In the sputum the pus and the lungs of patients with pneumonia pneumococcus appears singly in pairs or in short chains of ovoid or lanceolate cocci. When in pairs, the adjacent ends of the cocci are generally rounded with the distal ends pointed. The appearance in artificial culture medium is similar except that short chains of cocci are seen more commonly, especially in young cultures. During the active phases of growth pneumococcus is gram positive but as the culture begins to age gram negative forms appear which retain their coccoid shape. On continued incubation the gram positive forms gradually disappear and eventually are replaced entirely by gram negative cocci. This is followed by further autolytic changes so that finally no formed elements but only gram negative debris can be seen.

The process of autolysis can be greatly enhanced by surface active compounds. On the

addition of whole bile or bile salts such as sodium deoxycholate or taurocholate pneumococcus autolyzes with great rapidity the clearing of a turbid suspension of organisms occurring within a matter of minutes. The phenomenon of bile solubility is due to activation of the autolytic enzymes of pneumococcus. If the enzymes are first inactivated by heating the suspension of cocci at 65° C for 30 minutes, autolysis no longer takes place either spontaneously or when bile is added. The mechanism of activation of the autolytic enzyme system by surface active substances has not been explained, though it seems not unlikely that activation results from alteration or removal from the cells of a normal inhibitor of autolysis.

On the surface of solid media such as fresh peptone infusion agar plates to which blood has been added, young cultures of the virulent organisms form smooth glistening unpigmented dome shaped colonies which are circular in outline and in general vary from 0.5 to 1.5 mm in diameter. Colonies formed by Type III pneumococcus are larger and more mucoid than those produced by other types and commonly attain a diameter of from 2 to 3 mm on blood agar. The greater size and more mucoid consistency of the Type III colonies are due to the larger amount of capsular polysaccharide synthesized by this type. As the cultures on blood agar age autolytic changes appear. The centers of the colonies collapse, often leaving a small central papilla with a depressed area intervening between it and the raised outer margin of the colony.

Surrounding the colonies on blood agar and becoming more apparent with continued incubation at 37° C, there is a zone of alpha hemolysis showing the characteristic greenish brown color.

In fluid media encapsulated pneumococci grow diffusely and tend to sediment only when the pH has fallen because of acid production. This occurs in media containing relatively large amounts of glucose or other fermentable carbohydrates.

## NUTRITION

In the older literature pneumococcus is characterized as a "fastidious" microorganism indicating difficulties in cultivation and

maintenance in the viable state. These difficult cultures were probably multiple in nature and due not only to partial deficiencies in essential nutrients but also to improper oxidation-reduction potential of the medium.

The importance of the oxidation-reduction potential has been clarified, especially through the studies of Dubos (1929). When peptone-meat infusion broth is exposed to the air, the medium becomes oxidized. Under such circumstances, large inocula of pneumococcus must be used to obtain growth. The large inoculum is able through its metabolic activity to lower the redox potential sufficiently to permit growth, whereas with a small inoculum this may not occur. When the medium is reduced by placing it under reduced pressure, by heating to drive off dissolved oxygen, or better by addition of a reducing agent such as cysteine or thioglycolic acid, growth can be initiated from a very small inoculum. Media satisfactory for pneumococcal growth can be prepared readily from fresh meat infusion with the addition of any good brand of peptone. The pH of the medium should be between 7.2 and 7.4 after sterilization, which should be accomplished with a minimum of heating. Media made with a fresh meat infusion base are in general more satisfactory than the dehydrated media which are commercially available.

The optimum pH for growth of pneumococcus is stated to be 7.8. Excellent growth can be obtained over the range of pH 7.2 to 7.8, but from the practical viewpoint it is probably desirable to use media of pH 7.2 to 7.4 because there is less chance of deleterious alterations occurring on sterilization by heat at lower pH values.

All of the nutritional factors required for growth of pneumococcus have not been determined. However, a partially defined medium has been prepared by Adams and Roe (1945) which supports the growth of many but not all strains. This medium is basically that designed by Bernheimer *et al.* (1942) for the cultivation of Group A streptococci with the addition of asparagine and choline which have been shown to be essential for growth of most pneumococcal strains tested. In addition to an acid hydrolysate of casein supplemented by l-cystine and l-tryptophane, the medium contains the following accessory growth factors: biotin, nicotinic acid, panto-

themic acid, choline, pyridoxine, thiamine, riboflavin, adenine, and uracil. Of these, the first 4 are known to be essential. In common with Group A streptococci, pneumococcus has been found to require large amounts of glutamine. Immediately before inoculation, sodium bicarbonate is added to provide CO<sub>2</sub> which is essential for the initiation of growth, and the redox potential is lowered by the addition of a reducing agent such as thioglycolic acid. Glucose is used as a carbon source since pneumococcus derives almost all of its energy requirements from anaerobic glycolysis. Table 1, which is taken from the paper by Adams and Roe, lists the components of the partially defined medium and the method of preparation. Further work is required to find out if all of the accessory growth factors listed are essential for pneumococcal growth and to determine the amino acid requirements.

Defined media such as that described are especially useful for chemical investigations of bacteria, for example, the preparation of capsular polysaccharides or somatic proteins, because all of the constituents of the medium are dialyzable and can be eliminated by this means.

For routine cultivation of pneumococcus, it is preferable to use complex media such as peptone-fresh meat infusion broth to which blood has been added. Growth of all strains can be obtained; autolysis is less rapid than in the defined medium described, and cultures can be stored in the refrigerator for prolonged periods of time. The presence of blood is particularly important for storing cultures. Presumably this is because the catalase present in the red cells destroys hydrogen peroxide produced by pneumococcus. Pneumococcus contains neither catalase nor peroxidase, and in consequence H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> accumulates in its environment if air is present, in an amount probably great enough to affect the viability of the organisms. In any case, although blood does not improve the growth of pneumococcus when added to a good medium, its presence favors preservation of viability of the organisms on storage.

## PHYSIOLOGY

As noted above, pneumococcus derives most of its energy requirements from the fer-

TABLE 1 COMPOSITION AND METHOD OF PREPARATION OF A PARTIALLY DEFINED MEDIUM FOR PNEUMOCOCCUS\*

*Basal Medium—for 1 liter of medium*

Acid hydrolysate of casein	200 ml of 10% solution
1 Cystine	150 mg
1 Irvptophane	20 mg
KCl	3 Gm
Na HPO <sub>4</sub> 12H <sub>2</sub> O	7.5 Gm
MgSO <sub>4</sub> 7H <sub>2</sub> O	0.5 Gm
Distilled water to make	900 ml

Adjust pH to 7.5 heat to boiling filter and tube in 9 ml amounts or appropriate multiple  
Autoclave

*Solution 1—vitamin mixture for 12.5 liters*

Biotin	0.015 mg
Nicotinic acid	15.0 mg
Pyridoxine	15.0 mg
Calcium pantothenate	60.0 mg
Thiamine	15.0 mg
Riboflavin	7.0 mg
Adenine sulfate	150.0 mg
Uracil	150.0 mg

Dissolve in 100 ml of distilled water and sterilize by filtration Store in refrigerator

*Solution 2—salt mixture for 50 liters*

FeSO <sub>4</sub> 7H <sub>2</sub> O	50 mg
CuSO <sub>4</sub> 5H <sub>2</sub> O	50 mg
ZnSO <sub>4</sub> 7H <sub>2</sub> O	50 mg
MnCl <sub>2</sub> 4H <sub>2</sub> O	20 mg
HCl concentrated	1 ml

Dissolve in 100 ml of distilled water and sterilize by boiling

*Addition mixture per liter of medium*

Vitamin mixture (solution 1)	8.0 ml
Salt mixture (solution 2)	2.0 ml
Glucose (20% solution)	10.0 ml
Glutamine	200 mg
Asparagine	100 mg
Choline	10 mg
CaCl <sub>2</sub> 2H <sub>2</sub> O	10 mg
Distilled water to make	50 ml

Sterilize by filtration and store in refrigerator Add 0.5 ml to each 9 ml of basal medium This addition mixture should not be kept longer than a few weeks since the glutamine is unstable  
Solutions 1 and 2 appear to keep indefinitely

*Bicarbonate—thioglycolate mixture*

Thioglycolic acid	10%
-------------------	-----

Add 1 ml of thioglycolic acid to 9 ml of sterile distilled water mix well and heat in boiling water bath for 10 minutes

Bicarbonate Weigh 200 mg samples of sodium bicarbonate into test tubes and autoclave

Add 10 ml of sterile distilled water to a test tube containing bicarbonate and dissolve the latter Then add 0.2 ml of 10 per cent thioglycolic acid and mix well immediately Add 0.5 ml of the mixture to each 9.5 ml of medium This bicarbonate thioglycolate mixture is unstable and must be made up and added to the medium just prior to inoculation

\* From Adams M. H. and Roe A. S. 1945 A partially defined medium for cultivation of pneumococci J. Bact. 49: 401

mentation of glucose. Practically all of the glucose metabolized can be accounted for by the lactic acid which accumulates in the medium during growth. The metabolism of pneumococcus is thus essentially anaerobic. However, it can grow in the presence or the absence of oxygen and hence has been classified as aerobic or facultatively anaerobic. Growth is somewhat better under aerobic conditions even though pneumococcus does not possess a complete cytochrome system or catalase. Better growth under aerobic conditions apparently is due to the capacity to take up oxygen through a flavin containing enzyme system. Under these conditions  $H_2O_2$  produced by the auto-oxidation of reduced flavoprotein. As previously noted  $H_2O_2$  accumulates in the medium because pneumococcus possesses neither catalase nor peroxidase.

One of the most important factors limiting the growth of pneumococcus is the lowering of the pH of the medium due mainly to the accumulation of lactic acid although with some strains significant amounts of formic and acetic acid may be produced (Friedmann 1938). Massive growth can be obtained by supplying a large amount of glucose and neutralizing the lactic acid with NaOH as it is formed. For the preparation of the capsular polysaccharides neutralization with NaOH should be avoided. Even though alkali is added cautiously and with very careful stirring of the culture during addition, it has been shown that degradation of the polysaccharides is likely to occur (Heidelberger *et al.* 1950).

## IDENTIFICATION

Members of the heterogeneous group of gram positive cocci collectively described under the term viridans streptococci are the only bacteria which are commonly confused with pneumococcus. However, a single test may be used to separate them, namely bile solubility. Pneumococcus is bile soluble whereas the viridans streptococcus is not. This test is very reliable provided that the conditions are proper and appropriate controls are used. In general, it is advisable to remove the living organisms by centrifugation from the medium in which they are

grown, especially if it contains blood or other protein materials. The organisms should be suspended in isotonic saline adjusted so that the pH is in the neutral range. Under these circumstances pneumococci go into solution with great rapidity either at room temperature or at  $37^\circ C$  on the addition of an equal volume of 10 per cent bile. Dissolution is faster at  $37^\circ C$  and if the suspension has not cleared within 30 minutes at this temperature it is most unlikely that the microorganism in question is pneumococcus. Individual bile salts such as sodium deoxycholate or sodium taurocholate in a concentration of 1 per cent may be substituted for whole bile in carrying out the solubility test.

In recent years use has been made of bile containing disks to distinguish pneumococcus from streptococci. A bile disk is placed on a blood agar plate on which the culture has been streaked. If pneumococcus is present its growth is inhibited in a zone surrounding the disk whereas the growth of streptococci is unaffected.

Disks containing optochin (ethylhydrocupreine hydrochloride) can be used in a similar way. Growth of pneumococcus is inhibited by optochin but streptococcal growth is not affected unless very high concentrations of the drug are used.

The fermentation of inulin has been used as a differential test to distinguish pneumococci from streptococci. While it is true that inulin fermentation is a property of pneumococcus, it is not a reliable test when used by itself since certain streptococci, especially those of the *salivarius* group, share this capacity.

Another property which is of great use in identifying pneumococcus is its virulence for mice on inoculation. Streptococci of the viridans group are avirulent for mice whereas most strains of pneumococci are highly virulent even on primary isolation. However, there are important exceptions since certain commonly encountered pneumococcal types, for example Type XIV, are of low mouse virulence.

## VARIATION

On cultivating encapsulated pneumococci in nutrient broth to which antipolysaccharide

TABLE 1 COMPOSITION AND METHOD OF PREPARATION OF A PARTIALLY DEFINED MEDIUM FOR PNEUMOCOCCUS\*

*Basal Medium—for 1 liter of medium*

Acid hydrolysate of casein	200	ml of 10% solution
l Cystine	150	mg
l Tryptophane	20	mg
KCl	3	Gm
Na HPO <sub>4</sub> 12H <sub>2</sub> O	7.5	Gm
MgSO <sub>4</sub> 7H <sub>2</sub> O	0.5	Gm
Distilled water to make	900	ml

Adjust pH to 7.5 heat to boiling filter and tube in 9 ml amounts or appropriate multiple Autoclave

*Solution 1—vitamin mixture for 12.5 liters*

Biotin	0.015	mg
Nicotinic acid	15.0	mg
Pyridoxine	15.0	mg
Calcium pantothenate	60.0	mg
Thiamine	15.0	mg
Riboflavin	7.0	mg
Adenine sulfate	150.0	mg
Uracil	150.0	mg

Dissolve in 100 ml of distilled water and sterilize by filtration Store in refrigerator

*Solution 2—salt mixture for 50 liters*

FeSO <sub>4</sub> 7H <sub>2</sub> O	50	mg
CuSO <sub>4</sub> 5H <sub>2</sub> O	50	mg
ZnSO <sub>4</sub> 7H <sub>2</sub> O	50	mg
MnCl <sub>2</sub> 4H <sub>2</sub> O	20	mg
HCl concentrated	1	ml

Dissolve in 100 ml of distilled water and sterilize by boiling

*Addition mixture per liter of medium*

Vitamin mixture (solution 1)	8.0	ml
Salt mixture (solution 2)	2.0	ml
Glucose (20% solution)	10.0	ml
Glutamine	200	mg
Asparagine	100	mg
Choline	10	mg
CaCl <sub>2</sub> 2H <sub>2</sub> O	10	mg
Distilled water to make	50	ml

Sterilize by filtration and store in refrigerator Add 0.5 ml to each 9 ml of basal medium This addition mixture should not be kept longer than a few weeks since the glutamine is unstable Solutions 1 and 2 appear to keep indefinitely

*Bicarbonate—thioglycollate mixture*

Thioglycollic acid 10%

Add 1 ml of thioglycollic acid to 9 ml of sterile distilled water mix well and heat in boiling water bath for 10 minutes

Bicarbonate Weigh 200 mg samples of sodium bicarbonate into test tubes and autoclave

Add 10 ml of sterile distilled water to a test tube containing bicarbonate and dissolve the latter Then add 0.2 ml of 10 per cent thioglycollic acid and mix well immediately Add 0.5 ml of the mixture to each 9.5 ml of medium This bicarbonate thioglycollate mixture is unstable and must be made up and added to the medium just prior to inoculation

\* From Adams M H and Roe A S 1945 A partially defined medium for cultivation of pneumococcus J Bact 49 401

the culture medium under appropriate environmental conditions is taken up by the growing cells incorporated into their genetic structure replicated and transmitted to the descendants. Therefore transformations in pneumococci have great biologic significance because it was by these reactions that it was demonstrated originally that DNA possesses genetic specificity and a method was provided for studying the characteristics of the genetically active material.

DNA extracted from pneumococci or other cells is not a single molecular species but rather a mixture of many deoxyribo nucleic acids which differ from one another both in their content of purine and pyrimidine bases and their sequence in the nucleotide chains. Depolymerization effected by enzymatic chemical or physical means destroys the specificity of DNA as evidenced by the loss of its ability to cause genetic transformation.

The mechanisms which enable bacterial cells to take up free DNA from the environment and incorporate it into their genetic constitution is unknown. The long threadlike molecules with molecular weights estimated by different investigators to be from 1 000 000 to 16 000 000 are transported across the cell wall and the cytoplasmic membrane and having gained access to the interior of the cell are incorporated into the nuclear apparatus by a process which appears to be analogous to crossing over in genetic exchanges in higher species.

The usefulness of transformation reactions in genetic studies has been greatly extended by the discovery of additional hereditary characteristics of pneumococci and other bacterial species which can be altered by them. The demonstration by Hotchkiss (1951) that drug resistance can be transferred to sensitive cells by DNA from resistant mutants has provided a series of genetic markers that permit quantitative studies to be carried out with relative ease (Hotchkiss 1957). Other pneumococcal transformations include alterations in the quantity of SSS produced changes in the serologic type of M proteins capacity to produce an adaptive enzyme mannitol phosphate dehydrogenase changes in R colonial morphology. It has also been demonstrated (Bracco *et al.* 1957) using

streptomycin resistance and resistance to optochin (ethylhydrocupreine) as genetic markers that transformations mediated by the respective DNAs can take place reciprocally between pneumococci and distantly related streptococci. The efficiency of interspecies transformation is less than the intraspecies reaction presumably because of less accurate fit of heterologous DNA in the receptor chromosome (Krauss and MacLeod 1963).

Until recently genetic transformations have been observed only under artificial conditions in the mouse or in the test tube. However the experiments of Ottolenghi and Hotchkiss (1962) show that pneumococcal cultures release genetically active DNA during growth and that recombinants can be recovered from mixed growing cultures in the test tube. In addition it has been demonstrated (Ottolenghi and MacLeod 1963) that genetic exchange can occur between two genetically distinguishable populations of pneumococcus growing together in the same living host the mouse. These studies support strongly the idea that genetic exchange by way of transformation is a natural mechanism of recombination.

## ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

Pneumococcus can be divided into 75 or more types on the basis of differences in the capsules which surround the cells. The capsules are composed of highly polymerized polysaccharides which are immunologically distinct for each type. Extensive studies carried out especially by Heidelberger Goebel Avery and by Stacey and his associates have provided a chemical basis for the immunologic specificity of the capsular polysaccharides of a number of types. Table 2 shows certain of the chemical properties of polysaccharides of Types I II III VIII XIV and XVIII.

It has been repeatedly noted that the capsular polysaccharides of pneumococci are antigenic in certain species such as man and mouse whereas in other species such as rabbit they are not antigenic but behave rather as haptenes. However antipolysaccharide antibodies in very high titer can be prepared readily in rabbits by injecting them with

antibodies have been added after a few serial transfers many of the cocci will be found to be devoid of capsules (Stryker 1916) For example when pneumococcus Type I is grown in the presence of Type I antipneumococcal serum encapsulated Type I pneumococci disappear and are replaced by non encapsulated forms With loss of the capsule the organisms lose type specificity and virtually all of their pathogenicity

On the surface of an agar medium encapsulated pneumococci form characteristic smooth glistening colonies The pneumococci composing the smooth colonies are referred to as *mutoid smooth* or *S* organisms With disappearance of the encapsulated forms such as occurs on cultivation in homologous antiserum the colonies formed on agar lose their glistening appearance and tend to have a finely granular or roughened surface The organisms composing these colonies are spoken of as *rough* or *R*

A third form characterized by colonies with a markedly roughened surface has been described by Dawson (1934) to appear following prolonged incubation of cultures planted on the surface of agar plates Whether grown in fluid or on solid media the organisms of such strains are arranged in chains that may contain several hundred cocci In strains of *viridans* streptococci where colonies having a very rough surface are commonly seen, the cocci also occur in chains of great length The markedly roughened surface seems to be caused in both cases by the coiling and the piling up of the long coccal chains

It has been customary in the past to speak of anti *S* serum as "causing reversion from *S* to *R*" thereby inferring that anti *S* serum in some way depresses capsular synthesis and that anti *R* serum stimulates it This is an incorrect view Any pneumococcal culture although superficially homogeneous contains a large number of variants and all cultures throw off *R* mutants at a fairly constant rate It has been shown experimentally that if a mixture of *S* and *R* cells is inoculated into broth containing anti *S* serum *R* cells have a selective advantage over *S* and conversely when such a mixture is grown in anti *R* serum *S* organisms have a selective advantage over *R* forms

When certain cultures of *R* pneumococci are grown in broth containing anti *R* serum or when the *R* culture is inoculated into mice the *R* pneumococci disappear and are replaced by *S* pneumococci of the same serologic type as that from which the *R* strain was derived by mutation and selection With some *R* cultures this does not occur *R* cultures which "revert" to the *S* form either contain *S* organisms in numbers so small that they are undetectable unless they are cultivated in a selective environment or else back mutation from *R* to *S* has occurred

The enhancement of virulence which occurs upon repeated animal passage is due to a similar process of selection The less virulent forms are destroyed by the host the more virulent are able to survive and thus are specifically selected Selection of drug resistant variants or mutants by cultivation of the organisms in increasing concentrations of a particular drug may also be cited as another example of the same process

Variation in pneumococcus can also be studied by means of transformation reactions As shown originally by Griffith (1928) pneumococcus of one specific type can be transformed to another specific type by way of the *R* variant In his original experiments Griffith obtained *R* cells from a culture of pneumococcus Type II by cultivation in Type II antiserum Then the living *R* cells derived from Type II were subcutaneously inoculated into mice along with large numbers of heat killed Type III *S* cells On death of the mice cultures of the heart blood showed the presence of living Type III *S* cells In other words *R* cells derived from a strain that originally synthesized Type II capsular polysaccharide had been transformed so that they produced the Type III capsule This alteration in polysaccharide synthesis resulted from a permanent genetic change in the recipient cells

Subsequently it was shown by Avery MacLeod and McCarty (1944) that type transformation can be effected by purified preparations of highly polymerized deoxyribonucleic acids (DNA) DNA from *S* cells of a particular type when applied to *R* cells derived from another type cause the latter to synthesize capsular polysaccharide of the type from which the DNA was prepared. Exogenous DNA which has been added to

whole encapsulated pneumococcal cells Recent studies show that the isolated polysaccharides behave not as haptens in rabbits but as weak primary antigens if injected in appropriate small doses (2 to 20 mcg) Increase in dosage obliterates the immune response in rabbits as it does in the case of the mouse in which species also the effective antigenic dose is critically small (0.2 to 5.0 mcg) Larger doses of polysaccharide result in a state called immunologic paralysis by Felton and Ottinger who first described the phenomenon in the mouse (1942) Paralysis or immunologic unresponsiveness is specific for the polysaccharide injected and does not affect demonstrably the response to unrelated antigens Its mechanism is not yet understood

In both mouse and rabbit the isolated capsular polysaccharides are only weakly antigenic as shown by the very low antibody titers resulting from primary immunization as well as the inability to yield an anamnestic response when injected a second time The ease with which immunologic unresponsiveness can be induced in mouse and rabbit by moderate increases in the dose of polysaccharides probably is related to their low order of antigenicity in these two animal species In rabbits that have developed antipolysaccharide antibodies in high titer following hyperimmunization with intact living or killed pneumococcal cells immunologic paralysis does not occur when large doses of homologous polysaccharide are injected On the contrary such previously immunized rabbits develop a brisk secondary immune response

The somatic portion of the cells although antigenically similar in all types is not identical Antisera prepared against R pneumococci derived from one type agglutinate homologous R organisms to higher titer than heterologous R cells This is due in part to the presence of prolaminate M proteins which are antigenically dissimilar in pneumococci of different capsular types and in the R organisms derived therefrom (Austrian and MacLeod 1949) In nature cells of a particular capsular type commonly possess an M protein characteristic for that type However capsular polysaccharide and M protein can vary independently of one another as shown particularly by transforma-

tion reactions Pneumococcal M proteins have chemical properties similar to M proteins of Group A streptococci but are immunologically distinct

As in  $\beta$  hemolytic streptococci the somatic portion of pneumococcus contains a C or cellular carbohydrate described by Tillett Goebel and Avery (1930) which is immunologically as characteristic of pneumococcus as a species as are the C carbohydrates of the Lancefield groups of streptococci However the C carbohydrate of pneumococcus has not been used as a means of classifying pneumococci

Goebel and Adams (1943) showed that the C carbohydrate forms a portion of the Forsmann (heterophile) antigen of pneumococcus Recent studies of Liu and Gottschlich (1963) have resulted in the identification of the components making up about 80 per cent of the weight of C polysaccharide There are 4 major amino acids (lysine serine glutamic acid and alanine) and 4 amino sugars (D glucosamine D galactosamine 6 phosphate muramic acid and muramic acid phosphate) Almost 35 per cent of the total weight of the polysaccharide is accounted for by D galactosamine 6 phosphate This sugar has not been found previously in bacterial cell walls

Tillett (1928) demonstrated that rabbits immunized with heat killed R pneumococci develop resistance to infection with virulent encapsulated pneumococci of Types I II and III Subsequently Dubos (1938) extracted a soluble antigen from pneumococcal cells which caused the production in rabbits of antibodies capable of protecting mice against infection with both homologous and heterologous types The nature of the antigen responsible for the broad immunity studied by Tillett and by Dubos is unknown although there is evidence that the C polysaccharide may be involved (Enders Wu and Shaffer 1936) Antibodies to M protein are not protective However it is worth emphasizing that non type specific resistance to infection obtained by the methods described above is slight when compared with the high degree of immunity afforded by type specific antibodies and probably plays a minor part in protection against pneumococcal infection



TABLE 2 PROPERTIES OF THE SPECIFIC CAPSULAR POLYSACCHARIDES OF SIX PNEUMOCOCCAL TYPES

Type	$[\alpha]_D$	ACID EQUIVALENT	MOLECULAR WEIGHT	N	REDUCING POWER ON HYDROLYSIS AS GLUCOSE	CONSTITUENTS IDENTIFIED	COMMENT
				per cent	per cent		
I <sup>1</sup>	+265 to +277	650	171 000	4.6	30	Galacturonic acid (30%) N acetyl glucosamine acetic acid	
II <sup>3</sup>	+60	1030	504 000 <sup>2</sup>	0.2 (none 6b)	95	D glucose D glucuronic acid L-rhamnose 1 3 7	Cross reacts with K friedlander Type B All glucose in form 1 4 6 branch points (3a) Cross reacts with lung galactan (3c) and gum arabic (3d)
III <sup>4</sup>	-33 to -37	3 0	141 000 <sup>2</sup>	0.05	85	Glucuronic acid glucose 1 1	Type III antiserum cross reacts with Type VIII polysaccharide and vice versa. Oxidized cotton cross reacts with Type III and VIII horse sera (4b) Cellobiuronic acid is the structural unit of Type III
VIII	+1 1	703	140 000	none	87	D glucose D galactose D glucuronic acid 2 1 1	Cellobiuronic acid in common with Type III
XIV <sup>6</sup>	+12.5	— <sup>9</sup>		2.0	84	D galactose N acetyl D glucosamine D glucose	Type XIV antiserum cross reacts with blood group substances especially A and with lung galactan (3c)
XVIII <sup>7</sup>	+86 to +89	— <sup>9</sup>		0.3	51	D glucose L-rhamnose phosphate 5 1 1	

<sup>1</sup> Contains no acid groups

<sup>2</sup> Contains phosphate bound in secondary linkage

- 1 a. Heidelberger M Kendall F F and Scherp H W J Exp Med 1936 64 559
- b Westphal O Immunochemie in Physiologische Chemie Ed Flaschentrager and Lehnartz Springer 1937
- Molecular weights as given by Stacey M Endeavour 1953 1 38
- 2 a Butler K and Stacey M J Chem Soc 1955 Part II 1537
- b Record B R and Stacey M J Chem Soc 1948 Part II 1561
- c Heidelberger M Dische Z Neely W B and Wolfson M J Am Chem Soc 1955 77 3413
- d Heidelberger M Avery O T and Goebel W F J Paper Med 1929 49 847
- 3 a Reeves H E and Goebel W F J Biol Chem 1911 139 511
- b Heidelberger M and Hobby G L Proc Natl Acad Sci 1942 28 516
- c Heidelberger M MacLeod C M Markowitz H and DiLapi M M J Exper Med 1951 94 359
- 4 a Goebel W F J Biol Chem 1935 110 391
- b Heidelberger M Kabat E A and Mayer M M J Exper Med 1942 75 35
- c Jones J K N and Ferry M B J Am Chem Soc 1957 79 2787
- d Jones J K N and Ferry M B J Am Chem Soc 1957 79 2787
- 5 a Goebel W F Beeson P B and Hoagland C L J Biol Chem 1939 129 455
- b Heidelberger M Lectures in Immunology Academic Press New York 1956
- 7 Markowitz H and Heidelberger M J Am Chem Soc 1954 76 1317

tions to this generalization because certain types of which XIV is a good example have a low order of virulence for mice and it is not enhanced on mouse passage. Despite its low mouse virulence Type XIV is one of the common causes of pneumococcal pneumonia in children.

Similar observations have been made in the rabbit with pneumococcus Type III which although highly virulent for man and mouse is almost avirulent for the rabbit. However an occasional strain of Type III has been described which possesses pathogenic properties for rabbits. A satisfactory explanation for the difference in virulence of these strains of pneumococcus Type III has not been found.

Both dogs and monkeys have been used extensively for the study of pneumococcal lobar pneumonia produced by experimental inoculation by the intratracheal route and under appropriate conditions both are highly susceptible. Felines are relatively insusceptible to experimental infection and birds are especially resistant.

It is apparent from the observations on pathogenicity described above that the data obtained from studies of one animal species cannot be transferred to another.

### FACTORS INVOLVED IN PATHOGENICITY OF PNEUMOCOCCUS

Pneumococcus is a good illustration of a bacterial species that produces disease apparently solely through invasive properties in other words because of the capacity to invade and multiply in living tissues without evidence that soluble toxins in the usual sense play a part. *Cl botulinum* at the other end of the scale exerts its pathogenicity entirely through a potent exotoxin which is produced outside the body and causes disease on absorption through the gut. *Cl botulinum* has no invasive capacity whatsoever. Between these two extremes of purely invasive and purely toxigenic pathogens are many species that possess both capacities in varying degrees.

The search for a toxin produced by pneumococcus which can account for its disease producing capacity has been unsuccessful. It

is true that two toxic principles have been identified but since neither of them is liberated in detectable amount except on autolysis of the bacterial cells it is doubtful that either plays a significant part in pneumococcal pathogenicity.

Pneumolysin an oxygen labile or O hemolysin is liberated from pneumococcus especially on autolysis (Cole 1914). It is related serologically to the O hemolysins produced by hemolytic streptococci *Cl tetani* and *Cl welchii* as shown by Todd (1934). However it should be noted that hemolysis is never a feature of even overwhelming pneumococcal infection and also that in the case of the 3 toxigenic species noted above which produce similar O hemolysins it has not been proved that these substances play a significant part in disease caused by the respective species.

Under conditions of autolysis there is also liberated from pneumococcus a purpura producing principle whose effect can be demonstrated both in the skin and the internal organs of experimental animals injected with sterile pneumococcal autolysates. Once again however purpura or other hemorrhagic incidents are not seen except in the rarest instances in pneumococcal infection whether in man or other animals so that the purpura producing principle would appear to have little significance in the pathogenicity of pneumococci.

So far as we know at present, pneumococci produce disease and death solely through their capacity to multiply in the tissues. However it is not improbable that a toxin is produced in the tissues which differs in nature from any previously studied and that its demonstration requires new methods.

Another possible mechanism whereby such a rapidly growing pathogen might produce tissue damage is through the production of local or general acute deficiencies in one or more essential metabolites whether vitamins, amino acids, purines or constituents of other cell components. The demands of bacterial cells having a generation time of from 20 to 30 minutes on available supplies of essential metabolites in the animal body must be great indeed and conceivably the microorganisms might compete for limited supplies of such materials on a more favorable basis than the

TABLE 3 DISTRIBUTION OF  
PNEUMOCOCCAL TYPES IN ADULTS  
WITH LOBAR PNEUMONIA

PNEUMOCOCCAL TYPE	NUMBER OF CASES	PER CENT OF TOTAL
I	1 063	28.6
II	425	11.4
III	500	13.5
IV	131	3.5
V	298	8.0
VI	66	1.8
VII	240	6.5
VIII	287	7.7
Total I VIII	3 010	81.0
All other types	703	19.0
	3 713	100.0

### DISTRIBUTION

*Pneumococcus* has a world wide distribution. It is a normal inhabitant of the naso-pharynx of man under all climatic conditions. In many parts of the world Types I and II have been reported as the most frequent causes of human disease although in normal people other types are carried more commonly in the pharynx. Among other animal species, guinea pigs, monkeys and rats are the only ones that are known to harbor pneumococci commonly. These species have little or no importance as reservoirs of pneumococci so far as human disease is concerned. However, epizootics of pneumococcal pneumonia occur among monkeys in captivity and in the guinea pig pneumococcus Type XIX causes one of the most frequent and fatal epizootic diseases of this species. None of the other types is of importance in causing disease in guinea pigs though they may become carriers if other types are experimentally implanted in the nasopharynx. In rats severe epizootics have been caused by pneumococcus Type II (Mirick *et al* 1950).

### PATHOGENICITY AND HOST RANGE

Infections in man can be caused by any of the more than 75 serologic types of pneumococcus. However, of this large number of types a few account for most human disease. Types I, II and III cause

approximately one half of all the cases of lobar pneumonia in adults in different parts of the world (Heffron, 1939), with 8 types causing about 75 to 80 per cent of the total number of infections. Table 3 which is taken from the summaries of Heffron shows the incidence of lobar pneumonia caused by various types in 3 large cities in the north eastern United States.

Following the advent of chemotherapy for pneumococcal infections in the latter half of the 1930's typing of pneumococci from patients with pneumonia was abandoned in most parts of the world because the effectiveness of the new drugs did not appear to be related to the immunologic type causing disease. Therefore it is not known whether the type distribution is the same now as it was before antimicrobial drugs were introduced. In this respect the data collected by Austrian (1959) on pneumococcal infections in New York City between 1952 and 1957 are of considerable interest. In Austrian's series of 1,322 adult patients, pneumococcus Type II was found only 7 times, an incidence of about 0.5 per cent whereas in series of cases collected before 1935, Type II accounted for as much as 11 per cent of adult infections.

It should be noted that the figures given in Table 3 are for cases of pneumonia having anatomically a lobar distribution. Pneumococci are also the most frequent causative agents of bronchopneumonia.

In children below the age of 12 the distribution of pneumococcal types in lobar pneumonia differs from that in adults with Types XIV, I, VI, V, VII and XIX in that order causing more than half the cases (Heffron). It is of interest that the capsular polysaccharide of Type XIV is immunologically related to blood group A substance (Beeson and Goebel 1939).

Among laboratory animals the mouse is the most susceptible species although rats and rabbits are also highly susceptible to experimental inoculation. The virulence of most types for mice can be enhanced by repeated passage due to the selection by this means of the most virulent mutants from a mixed population of cells. With many types as few as 1 to 5 cocci inoculated intraperitoneally into mice will cause death within 48 hours. However there are important excep-

tions to this generalization because certain types of which XIV is a good example have a low order of virulence for mice and it is not enhanced on mouse passage. Despite its low mouse virulence Type XIV is one of the common causes of pneumococcal pneumonia in children.

Similar observations have been made in the rabbit with pneumococcus Type III which although highly virulent for man and mouse is almost avirulent for the rabbit. However an occasional strain of Type III has been described which possesses pathogenic properties for rabbits. A satisfactory explanation for the difference in virulence of these strains of pneumococcus Type III has not been found.

Both dogs and monkeys have been used extensively for the study of pneumococcal lobar pneumonia produced by experimental inoculation by the intratracheal route and under appropriate conditions both are highly susceptible. Felines are relatively unsuitable to experimental infection and birds are especially resistant.

It is apparent from the observations on pathogenicity described above that the data obtained from studies of one animal species cannot be transferred to another.

### FACTORS INVOLVED IN PATHOGENICITY OF PNEUMOCOCCUS

*Pneumococcus* is a good illustration of a bacterial species that produces disease apparently solely through invasive properties in other words because of the capacity to invade and multiply in living tissues without evidence that soluble toxins in the usual sense play a part. *Cl. botulinum* at the other end of the scale exerts its pathogenicity entirely through a potent exotoxin which is produced outside the body and causes disease on absorption through the gut. *Cl. botulinum* has no invasive capacity whatsoever. Between these two extremes of "purely" invasive and purely toxigenic pathogens are many species that possess both capacities in varying degrees.

The search for a toxin produced by pneumococcus which can account for its disease-producing capacity has been unsuccessful. It

is true that two "toxic" principles have been identified but since neither of them is liberated in detectable amount except on autolysis of the bacterial cells it is doubtful that either plays a significant part in pneumococcal pathogenicity.

Pneumolysin an oxygen labile or O hemolysin is liberated from pneumococcus especially on autolysis (Cole 1914). It is related serologically to the O hemolysins produced by hemolytic streptococci *Cl. tetani* and *Cl. welchii* as shown by Todd (1934). However it should be noted that hemolysis is never a feature of even overwhelming pneumococcal infection and also that in the case of the 3 toxigenic species noted above which produce similar O hemolysins it has not been proved that these substances play a significant part in disease caused by the respective species.

Under conditions of autolysis there is also liberated from pneumococcus a purpura-producing principle whose effect can be demonstrated both in the skin and the internal organs of experimental animals injected with sterile pneumococcal autolysates. Once again however purpura or other hemorrhagic incidents are not seen except in the rarest instances in pneumococcal infection whether in man or other animals so that the purpura producing principle would appear to have little significance in the pathogenicity of pneumococci.

So far as we know at present, pneumococci produce disease and death solely through their capacity to multiply in the tissues. However it is not improbable that a toxin is produced in the tissues which differs in nature from any previously studied and that its demonstration requires new methods.

Another possible mechanism whereby such a rapidly growing pathogen might produce tissue damage is through the production of local or general acute deficiencies in one or more essential metabolites whether vitamins, amino acids, purines or constituents of other cell components. The demands of bacterial cells having a generation time of from 20 to 30 minutes on available supplies of essential metabolites in the animal body must be great indeed and conceivably the microorganisms might compete for limited supplies of such materials on a more favorable basis than the

cells of the host with a resulting acute deficiency for the host cells. Other means by which a primarily invasive organism such as pneumococcus causes tissue damage might be suggested but would serve only to emphasize our state of ignorance.

Whatever may be the ultimate means by which pneumococcus produces damage to tissues, a fact of great significance is that most of the pathogenic power of this species is exerted through possession of a nontoxic surface component—the pneumococcal capsule. All virulent strains of pneumococcus possess a capsule which forms a protective mantle about the cells. The sole function of the pneumococcal capsule appears to be to delay or prevent ingestion of pneumococci by the phagocytic cells of the body. The free isolated polysaccharides which compose the capsules in the different types are nontoxic on injection in even very large doses. Evidence of the role of the capsule in pathogenicity has been obtained in a variety of ways, a number of which will be described.

Upon immunization of animals by injecting them with killed encapsulated pneumococci, antibodies are formed which are able to protect other animals infected experimentally with the same type. For example, a serum prepared by immunizing rabbits with pneumococcus Type I protects against experimental infection with living Type I pneumococci but will not protect against infection with Type II pneumococcus. In other words, the protective antibodies are type specific.

The capsular polysaccharides of several types of pneumococcus have been prepared in relatively pure form as previously noted. It has been shown that the protective capacity of a serum depends on the amount of antibody present which is capable of reacting with the capsular polysaccharides. By the addition of an appropriate amount of purified specific capsular polysaccharide to a highly protective serum, all of the anticapsular antibodies can be precipitated and removed. A serum absorbed in this way loses its protective power. Anticapsular antibodies can also be absorbed from a serum by permitting it to react with whole encapsulated pneumococcal cells, and here again the protective power is removed at the same time. However, one cannot conclude from the results of absorp-

tion with whole bacterial cells that it is the anticapsular antibodies that are of importance in protecting against infection, since other antibodies reacting with other components of the pneumococcal cell may be removed simultaneously. On the other hand, absorption of serum with purified capsular polysaccharides shows unequivocally that it is the antibody to this material that is of importance in protection against infection and at the same time demonstrates the importance of the capsule in the pathogenicity of the organism.

Loss of the capsule from R cells, which has resulted because of mutation, deprives the cells of most of their virulence, although not all. With fully virulent encapsulated strains, a dilution of broth culture containing from 1 to 5 viable organisms ( $1 \times 10^{-8}$  ml of culture) will kill mice following intraperitoneal injection. With R organisms selected from the same strain by growing it in anti S serum, 0.5 to 1.0 ml of culture is necessary to cause death or approximately 100,000,000 to 200,000,000 living R organisms. Therefore, loss of the capsule has decreased virulence by a factor of roughly 100,000,000. In mice, in the case of Types II, III, and VII, virulence is related to the quantity of SSS formed by different strains of the same type (MacLeod and Krauss, 1950). For example, strains of Type II that produce small amounts of SSS II are less virulent for mice than strains that form larger amounts.

The quantity of SSS synthesized by strains of pneumococci is under genetic control. This can be shown by study of spontaneous mutants which have different synthetic capacities for a particular polysaccharide and also by genetic transformation reactions carried out with DNA extracted from them. In the final analysis, therefore, the virulence factor for a pneumococcal strain can be considered as the gene that controls the amount of capsular polysaccharide synthesized per cell. The gene concerned may be expected to vary from one mutated strain to another within a given type as well as from one type to another because of the complex nature of the capsular polysaccharides and because of differences in chemical composition among the various types. Alteration in the amount or activity of one out of a number of enzymes involved in polysaccharide syn-

thesis may cause diminished polysaccharide formation and result in decreased virulence.

The antiphagocytic property of the pneumococcal capsule can be demonstrated *in vitro* by mixing R and S pneumococci respectively with heparinized normal human blood. Phagocytosis of R cells takes place rapidly whereas the leukocytes have a limited capacity to phagocytose the S forms. However if a small amount of type specific antiserum is added the S cells are taken up rapidly by the leukocytes. The combination of specific antibody with the capsular polysaccharide removes its antiphagocytic property. The antiphagocytic action of the capsule appears to be mechanical and not to be caused by a toxic effect on the leukocytes. The detailed studies of Wood and his co-workers (see review by Wood 1951-52) indicate that when phagocytosis experiments are carried out on smooth surfaces such as glass or wax, encapsulated pneumococci are pushed about by the leukocytes which have difficulty in embracing the organisms within the pseudopodia because the pneumococci slide away over the smooth surface. On the other hand on a roughened surface such as blotting paper, filter paper, fibrin films or fixed sections of lung the leukocytes take up encapsulated pneumococci fairly readily even in the absence of specific antibody because the bacteria can be pinned against obstructions on the roughened surface and then enclosed in the pseudopodic extensions. Intracellular digestion ensues. Wood has shown that the nature of the surface influences phagocytosis *in vivo* also.

If antibody is added to the mixture of encapsulated pneumococci and phagocytes the nature of the surface on which the experiment is carried out makes little difference. The combination of antibody with the capsule appears to make the pneumococci sticky since now they adhere to the leukocytes and are readily ingested.

From the foregoing observations it should be apparent that the presence of type specific antibody is not a prerequisite for phagocytosis of encapsulated pneumococci. In the absence of antibody phagocytosis is relatively slow but it is enhanced enormously when antibody is added.

The studies of Dubos and Avery on an enzyme which specifically digests the cap-

sular polysaccharide of pneumococcus Type III both when the polysaccharide is in the isolated purified state and when it is present on the surface of the living virulent cells provide further evidence for the importance of the capsule in pathogenicity of pneumococci (Dubos 1939-1940). From the soil of a cranberry bog an aerobic sporulating bacillus was isolated which when grown in a medium containing Type III polysaccharide as the sole carbon source is induced to form an enzyme that has the capacity to hydrolyze specifically Type III capsular polysaccharide but none of the other pneumococcal polysaccharides. In the test tube the Type III enzyme digests and removes the capsule from either dead or living Type III pneumococci; moreover the enzyme when injected as long as 18 hours after the experimental infection of mice, rabbits or monkeys with pneumococcus Type III prevents the death of the animals. The sole action of the S-III enzyme is to remove the pneumococcal capsule by digesting it with the result that the decapsulated bacteria become highly susceptible to phagocytosis. It should be emphasized that digestion of the Type III capsule from the living organisms *in vitro* in no way affects their viability although as long as active enzyme is present, the capsular material is digested as rapidly as it is produced. However when transferred to fresh medium lacking the S-III enzyme the pneumococci again produce their capsules normally.

A considerable body of evidence has been accumulated therefore which emphasizes the importance of the pneumococcal capsule in pathogenicity. On the other hand the part played by somatic factors has received little attention though there is evidence of their significance. One of the most clear-cut illustrations of the influence of somatic factors is in the case of two well known laboratory strains of pneumococcus Type III known as A66 and SV III. Strain SV III is highly virulent for rabbits whereas A66 has very little virulence even on repeated animal passage. The capsular polysaccharide is immunologically identical in both strains. Moreover if the capsule is switched from A66 to SV III and vice versa, by means of transformation reactions no change in virulence occurs (Shaffer, Enders and Wu 1936). In other words the difference in virulence of

these strains appears to depend on the somatic portion of the cells

Pneumococcus may be of low virulence for a species because of the nature of the capsule. Type XIV, for example, is avirulent for the mouse on this basis. R pneumococci derived from avirulent Type XIV pneumococcus become highly virulent in the mouse when transformed to pneumococcus Type II; similarly, when virulent Type II pneumococci are transformed to Type XIV by way of the R variant, the newly constituted Type XIV strain is as avirulent for the mouse as naturally occurring Type XIV pneumococci (MacLeod and McCarty 1942).

### PATHOGENESIS OF PNEUMOCOCCAL INFECTION

Pneumococcal pneumonia is rarely a primary infection but usually follows damage to the respiratory tract caused by some unrelated agent, whether viral or chemical. In most instances pneumonia is preceded by an upper respiratory infection such as common cold or influenza. Therefore pneumococcal pneumonia may be classed as a complex infection. This relationship to viral infections probably explains why pneumococcal pneumonia is commonest during the cold months of the year in northern latitudes, since common colds and influenza occur with greatest frequency at these times. It is unlikely that the virulence of pneumococci for man varies with the seasons.

It is apparent from the relation of pneumococcal pneumonia to viral infection that the normal respiratory mucosa must possess great natural resistance to pneumococcus, especially when it is recalled that between 40 and 70 per cent of all normal humans are carriers of pneumococci, many types of which are potentially virulent. The factors normally involved in protection of the respiratory mucous membrane have not been defined and we are also ignorant of the nature of the predisposing injury caused by viruses or chemical irritants such as gases, though it seems likely that actual destruction of the superficial cell layers may be important in permitting invasion of underlying tissues. Epidemiologic evidence indicates that the possession of type specific antibody not only

protects man against infection under natural conditions but also renders him less likely to become a carrier of pneumococci of homologous type (MacLeod *et al.*, 1945). However, it is reasonably certain that, in the main, normal resistance to pneumococcal pneumonia does not depend on the possession of antibodies reactive with the many types with which one comes in contact but rather on other factors including whether one happens to be a carrier of a highly pathogenic type such as Type I or II.

In the healthy adult pneumococcal pneumonia characteristically involves one or more lobes or a discrete portion of them, leaving the remaining bronchopulmonary system relatively uninvolved. In infants, young children and the aged, the lesions more commonly follow a bronchial distribution without the localized character of lobar pneumonia.

Experimental pneumococcal pneumonia has been studied in the monkey by Blake and Cecil (1920) and in the dog by Robertson and others (see Terrell *et al.* 1933). In both species pneumonia can be produced successfully by administering a narcotic such as morphine to depress respiration and the cough reflex and then introducing virulent pneumococci into the trachea or directly into a portion of a pulmonary lobe by means of a fine catheter. In the dog an important factor is the production of atelectasis in the portion of the lobe infected and it seems likely that atelectasis may be important also in the etiology of lobar pneumonia in man. Increased bronchial secretions and edema occurring during viral infections of the upper respiratory tract may play a significant part through plugging of bronchioles and the production of areas of atelectasis. In addition, the tendency for secretions to pool in the most dependent portions may explain in part why the lower pulmonary lobes are most frequently involved.

### PATHOLOGIC AND CLINICAL PICTURE

The lesion in the lung consists essentially of marked edema of the alveolar walls with an outpouring into the alveoli of fibrous exudate containing large numbers of red blood cells and polymorphonuclear leuko-

cytes. Therefore the affected lung becomes consolidated. The overlying pleura is involved early with a serous pleural effusion as a common incident. Pneumococci in large numbers can be seen throughout the inflamed area but despite their presence both in the alveoli and the alveolar septa necrosis does not take place. The absence of necrosis of the alveolar septa explains why upon recovery from the disease the lung is able to return to its original state.

Sputum which is usually coughed up throughout the disease is characteristically bloody or rusty, the red cells being intimately mixed with the other components. Large numbers of pneumococci are usually present and can be identified quickly by immunologic methods, especially the Neufeld quellung or capsular swelling reaction.

The onset of acute lobar pneumonia is characteristically sudden, often with the occurrence of a chill and sharp pleural pain. Recovery of untreated cases frequently occurs likewise with dramatic suddenness—the so-called pneumonic crisis which generally occurs within 5 to 10 days from the initial chill.

Pneumococci can be recovered from the blood in a variable proportion of cases; the reported incidence of bacteremia depending in good part on the frequency with which cultures are made and the technique followed. In the large series of cases compiled by Heffron (1939) bacteremia occurred in 26 per cent. Persistent and increasing bacteremia are grave prognostic signs.

Before the introduction of chemotherapy empyema was the commonest complication of lobar pneumonia, occurring in approximately 3 per cent of patients (Heffron). Adequate antimicrobial therapy has made it a rarity.

The evidence indicates very strongly that spontaneous recovery from pneumococcal pneumonia is dependent on the development of type specific antibody which can be demonstrated usually in the blood at about the time of crisis. However it should be remembered that the antibody demonstrable in the circulating blood represents the excess left over after combination with type specific polysaccharide present in the lung and other organs of the body. In other words antibody

is being formed before recovery is apparent but appears in sufficient excess at that time so that it can be detected in the blood serum.

## LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The effective use of specific serum therapy for treatment of pneumococcal pneumonia necessitated rapid and accurate methods of etiologic diagnosis. Of the many methods described the Neufeld quellung or capsular swelling reaction is the simplest and best. Neufeld observed in 1902 that when pneumococci of a particular type and homologous antiserum are mixed together the capsules of the organisms become greatly swollen and in this state are clearly visible under the microscope. The swelling is due to combination of specific antibody with the capsular polysaccharide.

Sputum is emulsified by drawing it repeatedly into a syringe. Then it is stained by Gram's method to determine whether organisms having the morphology of pneumococci are present. Loopfuls of emulsified sputum are mixed with a loopful of the various specific antipneumococcal sera; a loopful of methylene blue is added to make the somatic portion of the cells more easily visible and the preparation is examined immediately under the oil immersion lens. In a positive reaction the pneumococcal capsule has a greatly swollen appearance; it becomes more refractile and its border is sharply delimited from the surrounding medium. The quellung reaction can be used to identify pneumococci directly in sputum, in spinal fluid, and in the exudates from experimentally infected animals and when grown in artificial culture media. Under the latter circumstances young cultures should be examined since in older cultures much of the capsular material diffuses away from the pneumococci into the surrounding medium so that capsular swelling is less striking. Although wet preparations of sputum or exudates are generally used it should be noted that the quellung reaction can also be carried out by applying specific antiserum to dried smears on glass slides.

Diagnosis can also be made by injecting mice intraperitoneally with sputum. In general pneumococci are much more pathogenic



for the mouse than other organisms present in sputum or saliva and consequently come to predominate within a few hours in both the peritoneal exudate and the blood of the mouse. On death of the mouse which usually occurs within 16 to 48 hours following injection of sputum, some of the peritoneal exudate is removed, examined microscopically after Gram staining and then typed by the quellung reaction. Pneumococci can usually be recovered in pure culture from the heart blood of the infected mouse. It is good practice to make cultures of the heart blood for confirmatory studies.

Pneumococci can be typed also by agglutination and precipitin reactions but the simplicity and the great accuracy of the quellung reaction make it a preferable technique.

Culture of the blood of patients with pneumonia is important from the diagnostic point of view but even more so as a guide in prognosis.

### SPECIFIC SERUM THERAPY

Pneumococcal pneumonia is one of the few infectious diseases for which effective specific serum therapy was evolved. The introduction of sulfonamide drugs in 1937 and the many antibiotics since that time have entirely displaced antiserum in therapy because they are more effective and much easier to use. However, a description of serum therapy is given because of its historical interest as well as the general principles which it illustrates. The basis for serum therapy was laid in the fundamental studies of Avery, Chickering, Cole and Dochez (1917) who first showed convincingly that the antiserum to be used must be type specific; that antibody must be given in adequate amounts and that it is most effective when administered early in the course of the disease. Applied originally to treatment of pneumonia caused by Types I and II, highly potent antisera later became available commercially for pneumonia caused by the majority of pneumococcal types (for summaries see Bullowa, 1937, and Lord and Heffron, 1938).

The earliest antisera were prepared by the immunization of horses with killed pneumo-

cocci and were administered intravenously in unconcentrated form. Subsequently various methods were developed for refining and concentrating the antibody globulins in the crude serum which greatly facilitated treatment. The introduction of rabbits for preparing antipneumococcal serum for therapeutic purposes was another advance since in general higher titers of antibody could be obtained (Horsfall *et al.* 1937).

The dosage of type specific antipneumococcal serum can be controlled by determining whether the patient's blood and tissues contain an excess of antibody. Specimens of blood serum obtained at intervals after treatment can be tested for free antibody by means of agglutination reactions with suspensions of homologous pneumococci. Dosage of antiserum is adjusted so that an excess of antibody is constantly present in the blood. However, a more useful method is the skin test with the purified specific capsular polysaccharides described by Francis (1933). 0.1 mg of homologous specific capsular polysaccharide dissolved in 0.1 ml of saline is injected intracutaneously. If circulating antibody is present a wheal and erythema reaction appears at the site of polysaccharide injection within 15 or 30 minutes. The wheal and erythema are due to the combination locally of polysaccharide and homologous antibody. As early as possible in the course of the disease antibody is administered intravenously in an amount sufficient to result in a positive polysaccharide skin test. In most instances defervescence and the onset of recovery occur within a few hours after sufficient antibody has been given. At intervals of a few hours after serum therapy was first given the polysaccharide skin test is repeated in order to make sure that antibody remains present in excess.

The ability to make a rapid etiologic diagnosis by means of the quellung reaction, the preparation of highly concentrated preparations of specific antibody and the control of dosage by the polysaccharide skin test together made the serum treatment of pneumococcal pneumonia highly effective. On the other hand the specialized nature of the techniques involved the necessity for maintaining stocks of many type specific

antiserum and the constant fear of anaphylactic reactions following intravenous administration of foreign protein prevented the serum treatment of pneumococcal pneumonia from achieving general use

## CHEMOTHERAPY

Of bacteria causing human infections *pneumococci* are among the most susceptible to the action of antimicrobial drugs. More over with the exception of the sulfonamides the appearance of drug resistance has been a rare occurrence during the course of therapy and up to the present time has caused little difficulty. Resistance of pneumococci to sulfonamides has been encountered especially in patients treated with inadequate dosage and in cases in which a purulent complication such as empyema was present. Penicillin, the tetracycline compounds and chloramphenicol are more effective agents in treating pneumococcal infections and have largely displaced the sulfonamides although the latter are considered a useful adjunct in treating cases of meningitis. Pneumonia due to tetracycline resistant strains of pneumococci has been reported recently in England and the United States.

For respiratory tract infections penicillin remains the drug of choice because it is bactericidal and also because the capacity of pneumococcus to develop resistance to penicillin *in vivo* is extremely limited. There is no authenticated instance recorded of therapeutic failure in a pneumococcal infection treated with penicillin as the result of resistance of the bacteria to the drug.

It is instructive to compare the mechanism of action of specific serum therapy and chemotherapy in combating pneumococcal infections. Spontaneous recovery from pneumococcal pneumonia is associated with the appearance of specific antibody in the blood over and above the amount required to combine with the capsules of the organisms and thus render them susceptible to phagocytosis. Therefore in the natural disease there is a competition between the capacity of the pneumococci to grow and produce SSS and the ability of the infected person to form antibody to it. Treatment with specific antiserum tips the balance in favor of the host

since sufficient antiserum can be given in a short time to combine with all the SSS present both that which is on the surface of the microorganisms and that which is free in the blood and the tissues.

The sulfonamide drugs which are essentially bacteriostatic act by restraining the growth of the organisms until sufficient antibody has been formed in the body to assure opsonization and phagocytosis of the pneumococci. The participation of specific immunity appears to be necessary for a successful outcome in sulfonamide therapy.

In the case of penicillin which is a bactericidal compound when used in a full therapeutic dosage the development of specific antibody seems to play a less significant part in recovery in the natural disease in man or in experimental infections of the highly susceptible mouse (MacLeod and Stone 1945). The role of a specific antibody response in recovery following treatment with the bacteriostatic tetracycline compounds has not been studied adequately.

## EPIDEMIOLOGY OF PNEUMOCOCCAL PNEUMONIA

As noted above pneumococcal pneumonia occurs almost always secondary to injury to the respiratory mucosa caused by an unrelated agent such as a viral infection or an irritating gas. Furthermore the virulence of the various pneumococcal types for man differs greatly. Types I and II have the most pronounced human virulence since between them they cause about half of all the cases of lobar pneumonia in the adult. On the other hand certain other types are encountered very rarely as the cause of pneumonia and hence can be considered to be of low human virulence. Therefore it should be apparent that the chances of developing pneumococcal pneumonia depend in great part on whether or not the nonimmune individual is a carrier of one of the more highly pathogenic pneumococcal types at the time he acquires a viral infection of the respiratory tract such as the common cold or influenza. There is ample evidence (summarized by Heffron 1939) that when pneumococcal pneumonia is epidemic in a community it is always associated with a high

carrier incidence of the pneumococcal types causing disease. Significantly, most epidemics of pneumococcal pneumonia reported in the literature have been caused by the same types that are responsible for most cases of endemic pneumonia. Types I, II, IV, V and VII. Under normal circumstances the incidence of carriers of the highly pathogenic types is relatively low. However, if a high carrier incidence of pathogenic types prevails at a time when viral infections of the respiratory tract are epidemic, epidemic pneumococcal pneumonia is liable to occur also (Hodges and MacLeod 1946).

Chance would appear to determine whether the nonimmune individual becomes a carrier of one or more types of the pneumococci (Hodges *et al.* 1946) although the immune person is less capable of becoming a carrier than the nonimmune (MacLeod *et al.* 1945).

Most reported epidemics of pneumococcal pneumonia have occurred in relatively closed communities such as mental hospitals, prisons and military installations. The living conditions in such circumstances appear to favor the dissemination of the more pathogenic types once the latter are introduced into the community. In addition the incidence of pneumococcal pneumonia is higher in workers in certain occupations such as in steel mills and in coal mines than in the general population (Heffron 1939).

There is evidence that the normal carrier is of more importance in the dissemination of the infective types than the patient ill with pneumonia (MacLeod *et al.* 1945).

## PREVENTION OF PNEUMOCOCCAL PNEUMONIA

From the observations cited in relation to the epidemiology of pneumococcal pneumonia, it seems likely that control can be achieved either by preventing the nonbacterial respiratory infections which predispose or else by specific prophylaxis of pneumococcal infections themselves. A certain amount of success has been achieved through both approaches.

In recent years evidence has been presented that the incidence of influenza can be greatly reduced by immunization with vac-

cines of influenza virus types A and B, provided that the strains of virus present in the vaccine are closely related immunologically to the strains of virus causing epidemic influenza. Therefore improvement in influenza vaccines and their general use might be expected to cause a reduction not only in influenza but also in pneumococcal pneumonia which occurs secondary to influenza. Similarly the development of specific immunizing preparations for other viral infections of the respiratory tract should lead to a concomitant reduction in pneumococcal infections.

Repeated attempts have been made to immunize against pneumococcal pneumonia (for review see Heffron 1939). In earlier trials the vaccines consisted of heat killed pneumococci which were injected subcutaneously. Although proof was lacking the general opinion of those who employed whole bacterial vaccines was that a beneficial result was obtained. The evidence of Lister and Ordman (1935) in South Africa was especially suggestive of a prophylactic effect. In more recent years preparations of the capsular polysaccharides have been used following the demonstration by Francis and Tillet in 1930 that the isolated polysaccharides are antigenic for man. Again suggestive evidence was obtained especially through the studies of Felton (Ekwurzel *et al.* 1938) that immunization of man with the capsular polysaccharides prevents pneumococcal pneumonia. Most of the studies on antipneumococcal immunization have been inadequate in one or more respects especially because of failure to determine whether the apparent reduction in pneumonia was confined to the types against which immunization was practiced as well as failure to design the experiment so that adequate controls were included.

Most of the deficiencies inherent in previous attempts at immunization against pneumococcal pneumonia appear to have been avoided in the studies reported by MacLeod, Hodges, Heidelberger and Bernhard (1945) who have presented what may be considered as reasonably conclusive evidence that immunization by subcutaneous injection of purified capsular polysaccharides can prevent pneumococcal pneumonia.

Immunization was carried out in an Army

camp where Types I II IV V VII and XII pneumococcal pneumonia had been epidemic for 2 years. A dose of 0.06 mg of each of the capsular polysaccharides of pneumococcus Types I II V and VII was injected subcutaneously into half the population the remainder serving as controls. In the immunized men occurrence of pneumonia caused by Types I II V and VII ceased within 2 weeks after immunization but continued in the nonimmunized controls. The incidence of pneumonia caused by pneumococcal types other than those represented in the vaccine was not affected in either group.

Although Types I II V and VII pneumococci continued to cause disease in the non-immune group the incidence was not so high as was expected on the basis of the previous 2 years experience moreover the incidence of pneumonia caused by Type XII and other types was unaffected. Therefore it is likely that immunization of one half the population protects not only those who are immunized but also affords a measure of protection to the nonimmune segment. Partial protection of the nonimmune portion of the population may be explained by the observation that the immunized individual is less capable of carrying homologous pneumococci in the pharynx than the nonimmune and because of the reduction in carriers dissemination of pneumococci is reduced.

Large scale immunization of a civilian population by means of specific polysaccharides has not been employed for the prevention of pneumococcal pneumonia.

## REFERENCES

- Adams M H and Roe A S 1945 A partially defined medium for cultivation of pneumococcus *J Bact* 49 401-409
- Austrian R 1959 The prevalence of pneumococcal types and the continuing importance of pneumococcal infection *Am J M Sci* 138 133-139
- Austrian R and MacLeod C M 1949a, A type specific protein from pneumococcus *J Exp Med* 89 439-450
- 1949b Acquisition of M protein by pneumococci through transformation reactions *J Exp Med* 89 451-460
- Avery O T Chickering H T Cole R and Dochez A R 1917 Acute Lobar Pneumonia Prevention and Serum Treatment New York Monographs of The Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research No 7
- Avery O T, MacLeod C M and McCarty M 1944 Studies on the chemical nature of the substance inducing transformation of pneumococcal types. Induction of transformation by a desoxyribonucleic acid fraction isolated from *Pneumococcus* type III *J Exp Med* 79 137-158
- Beeson P H and Goebel W F 1939 The immunological relationship of the capsular polysaccharide of type XIV pneumococcus to the blood group A specific substance *J Exp Med* 70 239-247
- Bernheimer A W Giffman W Hottel G A and Pappenheimer A M Jr 1942 An improved medium for the cultivation of hemolytic streptococcus *J Bact* 43 495-498
- Blake F G and Cecil R L 1920 Studies on experimental pneumonia I Production of pneumococcus lobar pneumonia in monkeys *J Exp Med* 31 403-443
- Bracco R M Krauss M R Roe A S and MacLeod C M 1957 Transformation reactions between pneumococcus and three strains of streptococci *J Exp Med* 106 247-259
- Bullowa, J G M 1937 The Management of the Pneumonias for Physicians and Medical Students New York Oxford Univ Press
- Cole R 1914 *Pneumococcus hemolyticus* *J Exp Med* 20 346-362
- Dawson M H 1934 Variation in the pneumococcus *J Path Bact* 39 323-344
- Dochez A R and Avery O T 1917 The elaboration of specific soluble substance by pneumococcus during growth *J Exp Med* 26 477-493
- Dochez A R and Gillespie L J 1913 A biologic classification of pneumococci by means of immunity reactions *JAMA* 61 727-732
- Dubos R 1929 The initiation of growth of certain facultative anaerobes as related to oxidation reduction processes in the medium *J Exp Med* 49 559-573
- 1938 Immunization of experimental animals with a soluble antigen extracted from pneumococci *J Exp Med* 67 799-808
- 1939-40 Utilization of selective microbial agents in the study of biological problems The Harvey Lectures Series XXXV pp 223-242
- Ekwall G M Simmons J S Dublin L I and Felton L D 1938 Studies on immunizing substances in pneumococci VIII Report on field tests to determine the prophylactic value of a pneumococcus antigen *Public Health Rep* 53 1877-1893

- Enders J F Wu C J and Shaffer M F 1936 Studies on natural immunity to *Pneumococcus* type III IV Observations on a non type specific humoral factor involved in resistance to *Pneumococcus* Type III J Exp Med 64 425-438
- Felton L D and Ottinger B 1942 *Pneumococcus* polysaccharide as a paralyzing agent on the mechanism of immunity in white mice J Bact 43 94 95 (Abst)
- Francis T Jr 1933 The value of the skin test with type specific capsular polysaccharide in the serum treatment of Type I *pneumococcus pneumonia* J Exp Med 57 617 631
- Francis T Jr and Tillett W S 1930 Cutaneous reactions in pneumonia The development of antibodies following the intradermal injection of type specific polysaccharide J Exp Med 52 573 585
- Friedemann T E 1938 Metabolism of pathogenic bacteria I Bacteriological and chemical methods J Bact 35 527 546
- Goebel W F and Adams M H 1943 The immunological properties of the heterophile antigen and somatic polysaccharide of *pneumococcus* J Exp Med 77 435 449
- Griffith F 1928 The significance of pneumococcal types J Hyg 27 113 159
- Heffron R 1939 *Pneumonia With Special Reference to Pneumococcus Lobar Pneumonia* New York The Commonwealth Fund
- Heidelberg M and Avery O T 1923 The soluble specific substance of *pneumococcus* J Exp Med 38 73 79
- Heidelberg M MacLeod C M Markowitz H and Roe A S 1950 Improved methods for the preparation of the specific polysaccharides of *pneumococcus* J Exp Med 91 341 349
- Hodges R G and MacLeod C M 1946 Epidemic pneumococcal pneumonia Final consideration of the factors underlying the epidemic Am J Hyg 44 237 243
- Hodges R G MacLeod C M and Bernhard W G 1946 Epidemic pneumococcal pneumonia III Pneumococcal carrier studies Am J Hyg 44 207 230
- Horsfall F L Jr Goodner K MacLeod C M and Harris A H 2d 1937 Antipneumococcus rabbit serum as a therapeutic agent in lobar pneumonia JAMA 108 1483 1490
- Hotchkiss R D 1951 Transfer of penicillin resistance in pneumococci by desoxyribonucleate derived from resistant cultures Cold Spring Harbor Symposia on Quant Biol 16 457-461
- 1957 Criteria for quantitative genetic transformation of bacteria in McElroy W D and Glass B (eds) The Chemical Basis of Heredity Baltimore Johns Hopkins Press pp 321 335
- Krauss M R, and MacLeod C M 1963 Intraspecies and interspecies transformation reactions in *pneumococcus* and *streptococcus* J Gen Physiol 46 1141 1150
- Lister S and Ordman D 1935 The epidemiology of pneumonia on the Witwatersrand goldfields and the prevention of pneumonia and other allied acute respiratory diseases in native labourers in South Africa by means of vaccine, Pub South African Inst Med Res 1935 1938 Vol VII Publication No 37 5
- Liu T Y and Gotschlich E C 1963 The chemical composition of pneumococcal C polysaccharide J Biol Chem 238 1928 1934
- Lord F T and Heffron R 1938 *Pneumonia and Serum Therapy* New York Commonwealth Fund
- MacLeod C M Hodges R G Heidelberg M and Bernhard W G 1945 Prevention of pneumococcal pneumonia by immunization with specific capsular polysaccharides J Exp Med 82 445 465
- MacLeod C M and Krauss M R 1950 Relation of virulence of pneumococcal strains for mice to the quantity of capsular polysaccharide formed *in vitro* J Exp Med 92 1 9
- MacLeod C M and McCarty M 1942 The relation of a somatic factor to virulence of pneumococci J Clin Invest 21 647
- MacLeod C M and Stone E R 1945 Differences in the nature of antibacterial action of the sulfonamides and penicillin and their relation to therapy Bull N Y Acad Med 21 375 388
- Minick G S Richter C P Schaub I G Franklin R MacCleary R Schipper G and Spitznagel J 1950 An epizootic due to *pneumococcus* type II in laboratory rats Am J Hyg 52 48 53
- Neufeld F 1902 Ueber die Agglutination der Pneumokokken und über die Theorien der Agglutination Z Hyg 40 54 72
- Ottolenghi E and Hotchkiss R D 1962 Release of genetic transforming agent from pneumococcal cultures during growth and disintegration J Exp Med 116 491 519
- Ottolenghi E and MacLeod C M 1963

- Genetic transformation among living pneumococci in the mouse *Proc Nat Acad Sci U.S.A.* 50 417-419
- Shaffer M F Enders J F and Wu C J 1936 Studies on natural immunity to *Pneumococcus* Type III II Certain distinguishing properties of two strains of *Pneumococcus* Type III varying in their virulence for rabbits and the reappearance of these properties following R  $\rightarrow$  S reversion of their respective rough derivatives *J Exp Med* 64 281-305
- Stryker L M 1916 Variations in the pneumococcus induced by growth in immune serum *J Exp Med* 24 49-68
- Terrell E E Robertson O H and Coggeshall L T 1933 Experimental pneumococcus lobar pneumonia in the dog I Method of production and course of the disease *J Clin Invest* 12 393-432
- Tillett W S 1928 Active and passive immunity to pneumococcus infection induced in rabbits by immunization with R pneumococci *J Exp Med* 48 791-804
- Tillett W S Goebel W F and Avery O T 1930 Chemical and immunological properties of a species specific carbohydrate of pneumococci *J Exp Med* 52 895-900
- Todd E W 1934 A comparative serological study of streptolysins derived from human and from animal infections with notes on pneumococcal haemolysin tetanolysin and staphylococcus toxin *J Path Bact* 39 299-321
- White H Robinson E S and Barnes I A 1938 *The Biology of Pneumococcus The Bacteriological Biochemical and Immunological Characters and Activities of *Diplococcus pneumoniae** New York: Commonwealth Fund
- Wood W B Jr 1951-52 Studies on the cellular immunology of acute bacterial infections *The Harvey Lectures Series XLVII* pp 72-98

- Enders J F Wu C J and Shaffer M F. 1936 Studies on natural immunity to *Pneumococcus* type III IV Observations on a non type specific humoral factor involved in resistance to *Pneumococcus* Type III J Exp Med 64 425-438
- Felton L D and Ottinger B 1942 *Pneumococcus* polysaccharide as a paralyzing agent on the mechanism of immunity in white mice J Bact 43 94-95 (Abst)
- Francis T Jr 1933 The value of the skin test with type specific capsular polysaccharide in the serum treatment of Type I pneumococcus pneumonia J Exp Med 57 617 631
- Francis T Jr and Tillett W S 1930 Cutaneous reactions in pneumonia The development of antibodies following the intradermal injection of type specific polysaccharide J Exp Med 52 573 585
- Friedemann T E 1938 Metabolism of pathogenic bacteria I Bacteriological and chemical methods J Bact 35 527 546
- Goebel W F and Adams M H 1943 The immunological properties of the heterophile antigen and somatic polysaccharide of pneumococcus J Exp Med 77 435-449
- Griffith F 1928 The significance of pneumococcal types J Hyg 27 113 159
- Heffron R 1939 *Pneumonia With Special Reference to Pneumococcus Lobar Pneumonia* New York The Commonwealth Fund
- Heidelberger M and Avery O T 1923 The soluble specific substance of pneumococcus J Exp Med 38 73 79
- Heidelberger M MacLeod C M Markowitz H and Roe A S 1950 Improved methods for the preparation of the specific polysaccharides of pneumococcus J Exp Med 91 341 349
- Hodges R G and MacLeod C M 1946 Epidemic pneumococcal pneumonia Final consideration of the factors underlying the epidemic Am J Hyg 44 237 243
- Hodges R G MacLeod C M and Bernhard W G 1946 Epidemic pneumococcal pneumonia III Pneumococcal carrier studies Am J Hyg 44, 207 230
- Horsfall F I Jr Goodner K MacLeod C M and Harris A H 2d 1937 Antipneumococcus rabbit serum as a therapeutic agent in lobar pneumonia JAMA 108 1483 1490
- Hotchkiss R D 1951 Transfer of penicillin resistance in pneumococci by deoxyribonucleate derived from resistant cultures Cold Spring Harbor Symposia on Quant Biol 14 457-461
- 1957 Criteria for quantitative transformation of bacteria in McElroy W D and Glass B (eds) *The Chemical Basis of Heredity* Baltimore Johns Hopkins Press pp 321 335
- Krauss M R and MacLeod C M 1963 Intraspecies and interspecies transformation reactions in pneumococcus and streptococcus J Gen Physiol 46 1141 1150
- Lister S and Ordman D 1935 The epidemiology of pneumonia on the Witwatersrand goldfields and the prevention of pneumonia and other allied acute respiratory diseases in native labourers in South Africa by means of vaccine Pub South African Inst Med Res 1935 1938 Vol VII Publication No 37 5
- Liu T Y and Gotschlich E C 1963 The chemical composition of pneumococcal C polysaccharide J Biol Chem 238 1973-1934
- Lord F T and Heffron R 1938 *Pneumonia and Serum Therapy* New York Commonwealth Fund
- MacLeod C M Hodges R G Heidelberger M and Bernhard W G 1945 Prevention of pneumococcal pneumonia by immunization with specific capsular polysaccharides J Exp Med 82 445-465
- MacLeod C M and Krauss M R 1946 Relation of virulence of pneumococcal strains for mice to the quantity of capsular polysaccharide formed *in vitro* J Exp Med 91 1 9
- MacLeod C M and McCarty M 1943 The relation of a somatic factor to virulence of pneumococci J Clin Invest 21 647
- MacLeod C M and Stone E R 1945 Differences in the nature of antibacterial action of the sulfonamides and penicillin and their relation to therapy Bull N Y Acad Med 21 375 388
- Minck G S Richter C P Schaub I G Franklin R MacCleary R Schipper G and Spitznagel J 1950 An epizootic due to pneumococcus type II in laboratory rats Am J Hyg 52 48 53
- Neufeld F 1902 Ueber die Agglutination der Pneumokokken und uber die Theorien der Agglutination Z Hyg 40 54 72
- Ottolenghi E and Hotchkiss R D 1967 Release of genetic transforming agent from pneumococcal cultures during growth and disintegration J Exp Med 116 491 519
- Ottolenghi E and MacLeod C M 1963

staphylococcus from the Greek *staphule* = a bunch of grapes

The ability of staphylococci to induce abscess formation in man was established by Garré (1885) and others who inoculated or rubbed staphylococcal cultures into the skin and recovered the organism from the localized pustules which formed

On the basis of colonial pigmentation 3 species of staphylococci were recognized *Staph aureus* *Staph albus* and *Staph citreus* (Rosenbach 1884 Passet 1885) Most strains isolated from human lesions produced the golden yellow *aureus* pigment whereas colonies of the usually nonpathogenic staphylococci were white (*albus*) or lemon yellow (*citreus*) However since colonies of pathogenic strains were sometimes white it became apparent that colonial pigmentation alone would not suffice for classification Studies on the physiologic and the biochemical attributes of the staphylococci also failed to provide a firm basis for species differentiation The early observations of Loeb (1903) and Much (1908) that cultures of *Staph aureus* coagulate plasma were extended and coagulase production is now the most useful criterion for identification A staphylococcus that produces coagulase is now termed *Staph aureus* irrespective of colonial pigmentation (Breed *et al* 1957) However the general problem of taxonomy of staphylococci and micrococci remains quite complex (Cowan 1962)

Staphylococcal disease although of relatively frequent occurrence received less attention in the early decades of the 20th century than did the more dramatic diseases caused by other pyogenic cocci Interest in staphylococci was stimulated considerably as a result of the Bundaberg disaster (Report of the Royal Commission 1928) Bundaberg a city in Australia was threatened with a diphtheria epidemic and toxin antitoxin mixtures were administered for prophylaxis One vial kept at room temperature in the summer heat without a preservative was used to inoculate 21 children Within several hours 16 of them became acutely ill and 12 died within 2 days with symptoms of septicemia or toxemia *Staph aureus* was recovered both from the vial and from lesions

Studies on the toxic effects of staphylococci and their products in animals led to the proposal that  $\alpha$  hemolysin present in culture filtrates was responsible for lethality as well as dermonecrosis (Burnet 1929) For a time the clinical use of staphylococcal toxin and antitoxin was in vogue but results were disappointing

The inability to incriminate a single product component or property of *Staph aureus* as the determinant of pathogenicity is a recurring feature in the history of research on staphylococcal disease Included in the list of substances or characteristics which have been advanced as primary factors are coagulase  $\alpha$  toxin and hemolysins leukocidin lipase hyaluronidase and other enzymes and the ability of the organisms to resist phagocytosis or to multiply within phagocytic cells In each instance proponents have been unable to gather sufficient evidence to establish the role of the proposed mechanism Only the ability of staphylococcal enterotoxin to induce food poisoning but not in vasive disease remains intact in the legacy of this search

In 1928 Alexander Fleming contracted to write on The Staphylococci for a systematic treatise on bacteriology Requiring more information on the variation of *Staph aureus* agar cultures he restudied the problem During this investigation a phenomenon was noted which was described in the text of the treatise (1929) as follows A common laboratory contaminant *Penicillium* has a very marked lytic action on staphylococci growing in its neighborhood It is one of the ironies in the history of bacterial disease that the organism on which the effect of penicillin was originally seen had the capacity to produce an enzyme capable of destroying penicillin Over the course of time penicillinase producing penicillin resistant *Staph aureus* strains have become responsible for a significant proportion of staphylococcal disease The same phenomenon has occurred after the introduction of other antibiotics—fully pathogenic resistant strains have replaced susceptible strains of *Staph aureus*

#### MORPHOLOGY

In stained preparations of pus *Staph aureus* appears as irregular groups of cocci



## 17

## Staphylococci and Other Micrococci

## STAPHYLOCOCCUS AUREUS

Staphylococci are facultatively anaerobic, nonmotile gram positive cocci that tend to grow in irregular clusters. Two species *Staph aureus* and *Staph epidermidis*, are currently recognized and they constitute a genus in the family Micrococcaceae (Breed *et al* 1957). *Staph aureus* (*Staph pyogenes* *M pyogenes* var *aureus*) is responsible for a variety of clinical disorders in man and animals ranging from pustules to food poisoning to fulminating septicemia. However *Staph aureus* is also encountered as a normal inhabitant of human skin and mucous membranes in the absence of overt disease. Although most strains produce a number of biologically active toxins and enzymes the mechanisms underlying the development and the persistence of disease are poorly understood. Interest in the pathogenesis of staphylococcal disease has been aroused in recent years by an apparently increasing incidence of severe illness particularly in hospital environments where many strains are insensitive to the antimicrobial agents which have so successfully curbed the morbidity and the mortality of disease caused by other pyogenic cocci.

## HISTORY

In the latter half of the 19th century spherical microorganisms were repeatedly observed in suppurative lesions. Biliroth (1874) recognized the diverse arrangement of the cocci and classified them as mono-

coccus, diplococcus, streptococcus and glia coccus. He postulated that all were forms of one organism, *Coccobacteria septica* and that their presence in pus was a secondary event and not of etiologic significance. Koch (1878) found this view untenable and demonstrated at least 6 different disease syndromes in experimental animals injected with purulent material. In each instance organisms identical with those originally present were recovered from the experimental lesions. Koch's thesis regarding the induction of specific disease by specific microorganisms was substantiated with respect to abscess formation by both Pasteur (1880) and Ogston (1881).

Pasteur noted the presence of small spherical units, sometimes in pairs rarely in tetrads but most usually associated in small masses in pus from furuncles. He also found entirely similar organisms in the contents of an osteomyelitic lesion leading him to state that osteomyelitis is a furuncle of the osseous medulla. Studies in experimental animals supported the contention that both superficial and deep seated disease could be produced by the furunculosis organism.

Ogston examined aspirated fluid from 82 abscesses and found cocci in all but 13, these 13 were cold abscesses. Injection of pus containing the cocci produced either septicaemia or localized suppuration in experimental animals. Ogston noted that the cocci sometimes were found in chains whereas on other occasions clumps of cocci were seen. Because of their aggregation he called the latter

species of blood used and the organism examined. Rabbit blood is usually employed because erythrocytes of that animal are markedly sensitive to the  $\alpha$  hemolysin produced by most strains of *Staph aureus* isolated from human infections.

#### VARIATION

*Staph aureus* shows a wide variation in biologic properties both in nature as well as after laboratory manipulations. In any given culture colonies may appear with altered pigmentation, qualitative and quantitative differences in production of diffusible toxins and enzymes and varying susceptibilities to bacteriophage and to antimicrobial agents.

Of particular interest are the small colony G (gonidial) forms of *Staph aureus*. G forms of *Staph aureus* were first noted on agar subcultures of organisms grown in broth containing lithium chloride (Hoffstadt and Youmans 1932) and are also produced in media containing antibiotics, particularly penicillin (Wise and Spink 1954; Wise 1956). Bacteriophage resistant cells in a sensitive culture also may form G colonies (Smith 1953). G colonies are pinpoint and nonpigmented, have a high thermal death point, do not produce  $\alpha$  hemolysin, form little or no free coagulase, and are resistant to antibiotics. They do not require hypertonic media for growth. Reversion occurs after a varying period of time following removal of the inducing material; some G colonies have remained stable for many months. The individual cells appear to be normal except for a few swollen forms. G colonies do not produce lesions in experimental animals but persist in tissues for several weeks. G colonies have been isolated from lesions of untreated patients as well as from those who have received antibiotic therapy.

L forms have also been isolated from staphylococci grown in penicillin. They differ from G colonies morphologically in their requirement for hypertonic conditions for initial growth and also in their ability to grow well under anaerobic conditions (Mattman *et al.* 1961; Marston 1961a,b). Subcultures of L forms can grow in low salt concentrations and in the absence of penicillin for a number of weeks before reversion occurs. Like G colonies, the L forms are non-

hemolytic and unsusceptible to bacteriophage lysis. Coagulase production is also diminished.

It is likely that cells of G and L forms are deficient in cell wall material and that this deficiency is more marked in L forms which require hypertonic media for primary isolation. Osmotically fragile protoplasts which are completely devoid of cell wall material can be prepared with lysozyme from the few strains of *Staph aureus* susceptible to this cell wall dissolving enzyme.

#### BIOCHEMICAL REACTIONS

The type strain of *Staph aureus* (Cowan *et al.* 1954) liquefies gelatin in 24 hours at 27° C. Milk is acidified at 37° C in 1 day with clot formation and liquefied and digested at 5 and 7 days respectively. The methyl red test is positive. Acetoin is produced from glucose (positive Voges-Proskauer test); nitrates are reduced to nitrites; catalase, urease, and phosphatase activities are found. Acid is formed from glucose, xylose, lactose, sucrose, maltose, glycerol, and mannitol, whereas neither dulcitol nor salicin is fermented. Again, individual *Staph aureus* strains vary considerably from the type strain in their range of biochemical and enzymatic activities.

#### CLASSIFICATION

Strain or type specific antigens of *Staph aureus* are unknown, and the agglutination procedures commonly employed in serologic classification depend on the reactivity of several distinct antigens. Cowan (1939a) classified 70 per cent of strains into 3 major agglutinating groups, and since then additional groups have been defined (Christie and Kooch 1940; Hobbs 1948). At present 13 serotypes are recognized. Other workers rather than utilizing a restricted number of serotypes have arbitrarily designated agglutinating factors, and strains are identified by the specific factors they possess (Oeding 1960; Pillet *et al.* 1961). The factors do not necessarily represent single agglutinogens, and some are known to consist of several antigens. In both systems it is of crucial importance to prepare appropriately absorbed antiserum specific for the particular serotype or factor. Slide agglutination rather than the tube test, is generally used. Serologic typing

single elements, pairs, tetrads and short chains may also be seen. The formation of irregular masses is most marked on agar cultures and is less prominent in liquid media. Staphylococci divide in irregular fashion in two planes at right angles to each other resulting in the formation of clumps.

The individual cocci are quite uniform in size 0.8 to 1.0 micron in diameter and in general are smaller than the saprophytic micrococci. Neither flagellae nor spores are present. The cocci are spherical but their opposing surfaces may appear to be somewhat flattened.

*Staph. aureus* is strongly gram positive but individual cells in old cultures may lose the ability to retain the gram stain. In infected material staphylococci ingested by phagocytic cells may be gram negative.

Encapsulation of *Staph. aureus* has been a matter of dispute. Lyons (1937) claimed that in broth cultures capsules were present within the first few hours of growth but disappeared after incubation for 24 hours. This finding was not confirmed by others (Spink, 1939). Price and Kneeland (1954, 1956) isolated a mucoid encapsulated variant of *Staph. aureus* after passage of the parent organism through embryonated eggs. Addition of homologous antiserum produced a prompt quelling phenomenon. A capsular antigen has been isolated from culture filtrates of the encapsulated mucoid Smith strain of *Staph. aureus* but is present in only a few biologically similar strains (Morse 1962a, 1963a). Thus some strains of *Staph. aureus* are clearly encapsulated but most show no capsule and no relationship has been established between capsule formation and pathogenicity.

The fine structure of *Staph. aureus* as revealed by electron microscopic examination is similar to that of most other gram positive organisms (Suganuma 1961). The finely granular cytoplasm is surrounded by a delicate membrane which is clearly separated from the thick rigid overlying cell wall. Thus far morphologic substructure of the cell wall of *Staph. aureus* has not been demonstrated.

#### CULTIVATION

*Staph. aureus* grows readily in a variety of conventional nutrient media. Essential

growth factors have been delineated through the use of chemically defined media (Fildes *et al.* 1936). Amino acid requirements vary from strain to strain but cystine, valine, glycine, proline, aspartic acid and leucine are usually necessary (Gladstone, 1937; Bondi *et al.* 1954). Thiamine and nicotinic acid are essential for aerobic growth (Knight, 1937) and uracil is required in anaerobic cultures (Richardson 1936). Biotin and pantothenic acid stimulate growth of some strains (Gretler *et al.* 1955). Optimal growth temperature is 36° C to 38° C but the organism will multiply readily at temperatures from 10° C to 45° C. Many strains of *Staph. aureus* grow over a wide range of pH 4.8 to 9.4 though the optimum is near neutrality.

Broth cultures are usually smooth but occasional strains yield a granular appearance. After a few days the organisms begin to settle out and a scum often appears on the surface. On storage of broth cultures in the refrigerator the cocci frequently form a viscid stringy mass.

Individual colonies on agar are round, convex and 1 to 4 mm in diameter with a sharp border. Most strains are not mucoid. Pigment which does not occur in broth or under anaerobic conditions is discerned most satisfactorily on agar plates left at room temperature for 24 to 48 hours after initial culture at 37° C for 24 hours. If direct determination of the colonial coloration is difficult it can be assessed further by transferring a portion of the colony to a white surface and examining it after the organisms have dried.

Pigment production by *Staph. aureus* varies from white to orange depending on the strain and the media used. The golden yellow pigment which is most commonly found is due to the carotenoids  $\delta$ -carotene and rubixanthene (Sabai and Stahly 1942; Suzue and Tanaka 1959). Enhanced pigment production is obtained by the addition of carbohydrates, milk or glycerol monoacetate (Wilis and Turner 1962). On blood agar plates colonies of *Staph. aureus* frequently are surrounded by zones of clear hemolysis. Since *Staph. aureus* can produce 3 distinct hemolysins with different lytic spectra the extent of hemolysis depends both on the

species of blood used and the organism examined Rabbit blood is usually employed because erythrocytes of that animal are markedly sensitive to the  $\alpha$  hemolysin produced by most strains of *Staph aureus* isolated from human infections

### VARIATION

*Staph aureus* shows a wide variation in biologic properties both in nature as well as after laboratory manipulations. In any given culture colonies may appear with altered pigmentation qualitative and quantitative differences in production of diffusible toxins and enzymes and varying susceptibilities to bacteriophage and to antimicrobial agents

Of particular interest are the small colony G ("gonidial") forms of *Staph aureus*. G forms of *Staph aureus* were first noted on agar subcultures of organisms grown in broth containing lithium chloride (Hoffstadt and Youmans 1932) and are also produced in media containing antibiotics particularly penicillin (Wise and Spink 1954 Wise 1956). Bacteriophage resistant cells in a sensitive culture also may form G colonies (Smith 1953). G colonies are pinpoint and nonpigmented have a high thermal death point do not produce  $\alpha$  hemolysin form little or no free coagulase and are resistant to antibiotics. They do not require hypertonic media for growth. Reversion occurs after a varying period of time following removal of the inducing material some G colonies have remained stable for many months. The individual cells appear to be normal except for a few swollen forms. G colonies do not produce lesions in experimental animals but persist in tissues for several weeks. G colonies have been isolated from lesions of untreated patients as well as from those who have received antibiotic therapy.

L forms have also been isolated from staphylococci grown in penicillin. They differ from G colonies morphologically in their requirement for hypertonic conditions for initial growth and also in their ability to grow well under anaerobic conditions (Mattman *et al* 1961 Marston 1961a,b). Subcultures of L forms can grow in low salt concentrations and in the absence of penicillin for a number of weeks before reversion occurs. Like G colonies the L forms are non

hemolytic and insusceptible to bacteriophage lysis. Coagulase production is also diminished.

It is likely that cells of G and L forms are deficient in cell wall material and that this deficiency is more marked in L forms which require hypertonic media for primary isolation. Osmotically fragile protoplasts which are completely devoid of cell wall material can be prepared with lysozyme from the few strains of *Staph aureus* susceptible to this cell wall-dissolving enzyme.

### BIOCHEMICAL REACTIONS

The type strain of *Staph aureus* (Cowan *et al* 1954) liquefies gelatin in 24 hours at 27°C. Milk is acidified at 37°C in 1 day with clot formation and liquefied and digested at 5 and 7 days respectively. The methyl red test is positive. Acetoin is produced from glucose (positive Voges-Proskauer test). Nitrates are reduced to nitrites. Catalase, urease and phosphatase activities are found. Acid is formed from glucose, xylose, lactose, sucrose, maltose, glycerol and mannitol whereas neither dulcitol nor salicin is fermented. Again individual *Staph aureus* strains vary considerably from the type strain in their range of biochemical and enzymatic activities.

### CLASSIFICATION

Strain or type specific antigens of *Staph aureus* are unknown and the agglutination procedures commonly employed in serologic classification depend on the reactivity of several distinct antigens. Cowan (1939a) classified 70 per cent of strains into 3 major agglutinating groups and since then additional groups have been defined (Christie and Keogh 1940 Hobbs 1948). At present 13 serotypes are recognized. Other workers rather than utilizing a restricted number of serotypes have arbitrarily designated agglutinating factors and strains are identified by the specific factors they possess (Oedling 1960 Pillet *et al* 1961). The factors do not necessarily represent single agglutinogens and some are known to consist of several antigens. In both systems it is of crucial importance to prepare appropriately absorbed antiserum specific for the particular serotype or factor. Slide agglutination rather than the tube test, is generally used. Serologic typing

single elements, pairs tetrads and short chains may also be seen. The formation of irregular masses is most marked on agar cultures and is less prominent in liquid media. Staphylococci divide in irregular fashion in two planes at right angles to each other resulting in the formation of clumps.

The individual cocci are quite uniform in size 0.8 to 1.0 micron in diameter and in general are smaller than the saprophytic micrococci. Neither flagellae nor spores are present. The cocci are spherical but their opposing surfaces may appear to be somewhat flattened.

*Staph. aureus* is strongly gram positive but individual cells in old cultures may lose the ability to retain the gram stain. In infected material staphylococci ingested by phagocytic cells may be gram negative.

Encapsulation of *Staph. aureus* has been a matter of dispute. Lyons (1937) claimed that in broth cultures capsules were present within the first few hours of growth but disappeared after incubation for 24 hours. This finding was not confirmed by others (Spink 1939). Price and Kneeland (1954, 1956) isolated a mucoid encapsulated variant of *Staph. aureus* after passage of the parent organism through embryonated eggs. Addition of homologous antiserum produced a prompt quellung phenomenon. A capsular antigen has been isolated from culture filtrates of the encapsulated mucoid Smith strain of *Staph. aureus* but is present in only a few biologically similar strains (Morse 1962a, 1963a). Thus some strains of *Staph. aureus* are clearly encapsulated but most show no capsule and no relationship has been established between capsule formation and pathogenicity.

The fine structure of *Staph. aureus* as revealed by electron microscopic examination is similar to that of most other gram positive organisms (Suganuma 1961). The finely granular cytoplasm is surrounded by a delicate membrane which is clearly separated from the thick rigid overlying cell wall. Thus far morphologic substructure of the cell wall of *Staph. aureus* has not been demonstrated.

#### CULTIVATION

*Staph. aureus* grows readily in a variety of conventional nutrient media. Essential

growth factors have been delineated through the use of chemically defined media (Fildes *et al.* 1936). Amino acid requirements vary from strain to strain but cystine, valine, glycine, proline, aspartic acid and leucine are usually necessary (Gladstone 1937, Bondi *et al.* 1954). Thiamine and nicotinic acid are essential for aerobic growth (Knight 1937) and uracil is required in anaerobic cultures (Richardson 1936). Biotin and pantothenic acid stimulate growth of some strains (Gretler *et al.* 1955). Optimal growth temperature is 36° C to 38° C but the organism will multiply readily at temperatures from 10° C to 45° C. Many strains of *Staph. aureus* grow over a wide range of pH 4.8 to 9.4 though the optimum is near neutrality.

Broth cultures are usually smooth but occasional strains yield a granular appearance. After a few days the organisms begin to settle out and a scum often appears on the surface. On storage of broth cultures in the refrigerator the cocci frequently form a viscid stringy mass.

Individual colonies on agar are round, convex and 1 to 4 mm in diameter with a sharp border. Most strains are not mucoid. Pigment which does not occur in broth or under anaerobic conditions is discerned most satisfactorily on agar plates left at room temperature for 24 to 48 hours after initial culture at 37° C for 24 hours. If direct determination of the colonial coloration is difficult it can be assessed further by transferring a portion of the colony to a white surface and examining it after the organisms have dried.

Pigment production by *Staph. aureus* varies from white to orange depending on the strain and the media used. The golden yellow pigment which is most commonly found is due to the carotenoids  $\delta$ -carotene and rubixanthene (Sabín and Stähly 1942, Suzue and Tanaka 1959). Enhanced pigment production is obtained by the addition of carbohydrates, milk or glycerol monoacetate (Wilis and Turner 1962). On blood agar plates colonies of *Staph. aureus* frequently are surrounded by zones of clear hemolysis. Since *Staph. aureus* can produce 3 distinct hemolysins with different lytic spectra the extent of hemolysis depends both on the

insoluble residue is the structured mucopeptide which confers spatial configuration to the bacterial cell. In common with the mucopeptide of the cell walls of other gram positive organisms the mucopeptide of *Staph aureus* walls consists of a limited number of amino acids and the amino sugars N acetylglucosamine and N acetylmuramic acid. The amino acids characteristically present are alanine, glutamic acid, lysine and glycine.

Antigenic specificity of the teichoic acid resides in the N acetylglucosamine moieties (Morse 1962c, Nathenson and Strominger 1962). The amino sugar may be in either  $\alpha$  or  $\beta$  glycosidic linkage and both configurations may confer immunologic specificity. The heterogeneity requires that antisera utilized for the detection of the antigen recognize both configurations. Polysaccharide A is a determinant of cell wall agglutination but it does not play a role in the agglutination of the intact organism. It has been suggested that antibodies against *Staph aureus* cell wall teichoic acid 1c. Polysaccharide A are required for efficient phagocytosis (Mudd *et al* 1963).

An immediate skin reaction occurs in most adults after intradermal injection of Polysaccharide A. Fewer reactions are seen in children. Low levels of precipitating antibodies are present in the majority of adult sera and higher levels are found in sera of patients with severe staphylococcal disease.

**Antigen A.** Another widely distributed antigenic component of *Staph aureus* is a protein termed Antigen A. Originally described by Verwey (1940) and further studied by Jensen (1958) and others (Lofkvist and Sjoquist 1962). Antigen A is a constituent of the cell wall and is released from the walls into solution by deoxyribonuclease (Yoshida *et al* 1963). It is a basic protein with a molecular weight of about 13 000 and it is destroyed by trypsin or chymotrypsin. Antigen A is found in a majority of *Staph aureus* strains with the notable exception of the Wood 46 strain used in the commercial production of toxoid and is an important factor in the agglutination of intact bacterial cells. Absorption of agglutinating antisera with Antigen A significantly reduces the agglutinin titer against a variety of strains of *Staph aureus* and thus the antigen is of no

taxonomic value (Lenhart *et al* 1963). Its biologic properties *in vivo* are unknown but impure preparations are toxic for the isolated guinea pig ileum. The antigen, although an agglutinin, apparently plays no role in the phagocytosis of *Staph aureus*. Antibodies against Antigen A are invariably present in normal human sera but are not found in normal rabbit sera.

**Capsular Antigen.** Homogeneous capsular material has been isolated from culture supernatant fluids as well as from bacterial cells of the distinctive mucoid Smith strain commonly used for experimental purposes. The antigen is found in only a few strains of *Staph aureus* which have in common with the Smith strain a mucoid colonial appearance, inability to be typed by bacteriophage and absence of bound coagulase (Morse 1962a, 1963). The major structural unit of the antigen is 2 aminoglucuronic acid, variable amounts of amino acids are also present (Perkins 1963, Haskell and Hanessian 1963).

Immunologically reactive polysaccharide material has been obtained from the supernatant fluid of stored cultures of *Staph aureus*. Chemical analysis suggests that this represents polyglycerophosphate released from within the cell rather than true capsular antigen (Wiley and Wonnacott 1962).

**Polyglycerophosphate ("Intracellular" Glycerol Teichoic Acid).** Polyglycerophosphate first identified as an antigenic component of streptococci is found in many gram positive organisms including the staphylococci (McCarty 1959). The exact localization of polyglycerophosphate is unclear but it is not found in the cell walls and hence is termed an intracellular glycerol teichoic acid. The antigen readily diffuses from the bacterial cell and it or related compounds represents a heterophile erythrocyte sensitizing antigen found in the culture supernatant fluids of *Staph aureus* and other gram positive organisms (Gorzynski *et al* 1960). Both unsubstituted polyglycerophosphate and chains with D alanyl units in labile ester linkage have serologic activity. *Staph aureus* also contains glycerol teichoic acids with sugar substituents but their serologic activity is unknown (RajBhandary and Baddley 1962).

has proved to be useful in epidemiologic studies but the multiplicity of ill defined agglutinogens the presence of blocking antigens, antigenic overlap and difficulties in preparing proper antisera preclude general usefulness. Moreover differences in agglutination reactions may reflect only quantitative rather than qualitative differences in antigenic composition (Stern and Elek 1957). Attempts to distinguish between *Staph aureus* strains by precipitin hemagglutination and complement fixation reactions have been unsuccessful.

In the absence of precise and practical methods of serologic differentiation bacteriophage typing of *Staph aureus* is utilized extensively. Since Fisk's (1942) initial studies, the usefulness of this method has been extended by the selection of bacteriophages with restricted host range and by standardization of techniques (Blair and Williams 1961, Wentworth 1963). From the large number of known lytic phages only a basic working set is generally used for routine typing.

Group I 29, 52, 52A 79 and 80

Group II 3A 3B 3C 55 and 71

Group III 6 7, 42E 47 53 54, 75 77 and 83A

Group IV 42D

Miscellaneous 81 and 87

The phages in each group have similar host ranges and a given culture of *Staph aureus* is often lysed by more than one phage in a group; occasionally a strain is lysed by bacteriophages in more than one group. The phages in each group tend to be serologically related. The mechanism determining specific susceptibility to bacteriophage is uncertain but it does not appear to be due to different receptor substances (Rountree 1947, Morse, 1962b). It is of interest that there is a rough correlation between serologic typing and bacteriophage typing (Oeding and Williams 1958). Certain biologic characteristics are also correlated with phage type e.g. the prevalence of multiple antibiotic resistance in strains typed by Groups I and III phages (Knight and Holzer 1954, Barber and Burton 1955).

In practice a culture of *Staph aureus* is flooded or swabbed onto an agar plate, and after drying bacteriophage suspensions are applied as fine drops at suitable distances

from each other. After incubation for 18 hours at 30° to 32° C, the bacteriophage strains which produce definite lysis are recorded and the phage pattern assigned to the organism e.g., an organism lysed by phages 52A, 79 and 80 is designated as phage type 52A/79/80. The dilution of bacteriophage applied is that which just fails to give confluent lysis of the propagating strain—the routine test dilution or RTD. Ten to 30 per cent of *Staph aureus* strains are not typable at the RTD but some of these are lysed at higher phage concentrations.

Bacteriophages also exert a profound influence on the biology of *Staph aureus*. The vast majority of strains are lysogenic and the existence of prophage affects such diverse properties as susceptibility to lytic phage, production of various enzymes and hemolysins and resistance to antibiotics. Transduction of these properties can be achieved in vitro (Morse, 1959, Rountree 1949, Blair and Carr 1961, Morse and La Belle 1962, Pattee and Baldwin 1962).

*Staph aureus* strains can also be distinguished by differences in susceptibility to various antibiotics and the determination of antimicrobial sensitivity serves as a useful adjunct to bacteriophage or serologic typing.

#### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

**Polysaccharide A (Cell Wall Teichoic Acid)** A species specific polysaccharide was isolated from virulent staphylococci by Julianelle and Wieghard (1935, Wieghard and Julianelle 1935). This antigen called Polysaccharide A recently has been identified as a carbohydrate component of the cell wall of *Staph aureus* (Haukenes *et al.* 1961, McCarty and Morse 1964). It belongs to the group of bacterial polyolphosphate polymers called teichoic acids and consists of a backbone chain of ribitol linked 1,5 by phosphodiester bridges to form polyribitol phosphate (Baddiley 1962). N acetylglucosamine is in glycosidic linkage to C<sub>4</sub> of each ribitol and D alanine is in labile ester linkage to C<sub>2</sub> or C<sub>3</sub> of the ribitol residues. Like the C polysaccharide of Group A streptococci Polysaccharide A is localized to the cell wall where it is attached by primary chemical bonds. The antigen is solubilized by extracting the walls with trichloroacetic acid. The

affects human as well as rabbit white blood cells leukocytes of other species are not susceptible. Addition of leukocidin to suspensions of human granulocytes in the presence of calcium ions results in degranulation of the cells and the formation of cytoplasmic vesicles (Woodin *et al* 1963). Woodin (1959) found that P V leukocidin consists of 2 protein components both of which are required for leukotoxicity. Antibody to either component protects against leukocyte damage (Gladstone *et al* 1962).

**Free Coagulase** Plasmas of many animal species are readily clotted by the extracellular or free coagulase of *Staph aureus*. Free coagulase does not act directly to convert fibrinogen to fibrin but rather interacts with a plasma factor (coagulase reacting factor or CRF) to produce an active principle very similar to thrombin. Both thrombin and the coagulase-CRF principle release similar peptides from fibrinogen during clotting (Drummond and Tager 1963). Both have esterase activity (Haughton and Duthie 1959) and the esterase as well as the clotting properties are inhibited by diisopropyl fluorophosphate but not by soybean trypsin inhibitor (Drummond and Tager 1962). However the coagulase-CRF factor differs from thrombin in not requiring calcium for its formation and in its relative insensitivity to heparin (Sanders 1963).

The plasmas of most animal species are susceptible to the action of free coagulase with the notable exceptions of the mouse and fowl which are deficient in CRF. The action on guinea pig plasma is variable. Studies on partially purified coagulase reveal it to be a heat labile protein which is destroyed by both trypsin and pepsin. Less than 0.1 mcg will clot human plasma in 24 hours. The intravenous injection of 22 mcg/kg is lethal for the rabbit, whereas 35 times that dose is required to kill mice (Duthie and Haughton 1958).

Coagulase is only weakly antigenic but at least 7 antigenically distinct staphylocoagulases have been recognized (Rammelkamp *et al* 1950; Duthie 1952; Zen Yoji *et al* 1961a,b). There is a relationship between the type of coagulase produced by an organism and its bacteriophage type but no correlation exists with serologic classification.

**Bound Coagulase** When *Staph aureus* cells are mixed with plasma on a glass slide thick clumps appear due to deposition of fibrin around the organisms. The slide coagulase test correlates well with the tube coagulase test and originally it was believed that both reflected activity of the same product free coagulase. It is now apparent that an other coagulase bound coagulase is responsible for the positive slide test (Duthie 1954). Bound coagulase or clumping factor is not found in culture filtrates. Antibody to bound coagulase prevents clumping of *Staph aureus* in plasma, and there is no inhibition by free coagulase antibodies. Bound coagulase also differs from free coagulase in its spectrum of activity against various plasmas e.g. mouse plasma which is not efficiently clotted by free coagulase but readily coagulated by bound coagulase. However the most significant difference between the two coagulases is that bound coagulase converts fibrinogen directly to fibrin without requiring an accessory plasma factor.

**Staphylokinase (Fibrinolysin)** The fibrinolytic capacity of *Staph aureus* was recognized more than 50 years ago when it was noted that clots induced by staphylocoagulase lysed after several hours. Lack (1948) demonstrated clearly that as in the case of streptococci clot dissolution by staphylococci is not the direct result of a bacterial fibrinolytic factor but is caused by activation of plasma plasminogen to the fibrinolytic enzyme plasmin. For this reason the term staphylokinase is preferred to fibrinolysin. Staphylokinase is formed by 70 to 90 per cent of strains and unlike streptokinase it activates plasminogen from many species and does not require plasma proactivator (Davidson 1960). Specific antibodies to staphylokinase inhibit its action on plasminogen (Quie and Wannamaker 1962). Staphylokinase is also responsible for the production of punctate areas of hemolysis and proteolysis which occur at a distance from colonies grown on blood agar the Muller phenomenon (Quie and Wannamaker 1961). Purified preparations of staphylokinase have not been obtained yet.

**Hyaluronidase** Over 90 per cent of *Staph aureus* strains produce the enzyme hyaluronidase which depolymerizes mucopolysac-



**Other Antigens** Immunodiffusion studies reveal that *Staph aureus* contains a multiplicity of other antigenic components which have not been isolated or characterized (Bernheimer and Schwartz 1961, Oeding and Haukenes 1963). Interestingly, antibody against one of these antigens is widely distributed in normal mammalian sera including that of germ free mice (Cohen *et al* 1963). Further studies may reveal a role for some of these antigens in pathogenicity as well as facilitating classification.

### TOXINS AND ENZYMES

**$\alpha$  Toxin ( $\alpha$  Hemolysin)** Culture filtrates of many strains of *Staph aureus* lyse rabbit erythrocytes are lethal for experimental animals and produce local necrosis following intradermal injection. It has long been suspected that one substance is responsible for these activities; recent studies have confirmed this hypothesis (Bernheimer and Schwartz 1963, Lominski *et al* 1963). Purified  $\alpha$ -toxin is a heat labile protein of molecular weight 44 000. As little as 0.008 mcg lyses a standard suspension of rabbit erythrocytes; erythrocytes of sheep and humans are 25 and 150 times more resistant respectively. Also 0.5 to 1.0 mcg of purified  $\alpha$  toxin produces dermonecrosis and 4.0 mcg is lethal for the rabbit. The precise mechanism of action of  $\alpha$  toxin is not understood but it has no proteolytic activity. Impure preparations cause marked contraction of smooth muscle followed by atony and flaccid paralysis; striated muscle is not affected (Thal and Egner 1962).

Maximum amounts of  $\alpha$  toxin are formed only after incubation for several days. Yeast extract and increased carbon dioxide concentration appear to enhance production whereas anaerobiosis is inhibitory.  $\alpha$  Toxin is also formed *in vivo*. The toxin is antigenic and toxoid is prepared by treating crude culture filtrates with formalin. Anti- $\alpha$  toxin blocks all of the biologic activity of the toxin.

**$\beta$  Hemolysin**, which is found more often in strains from animal sources, is a hot cold hemolysin; i.e. extensive lysis of erythrocytes does not occur during primary incubation at 37° C but does after subsequent storage at cold temperature (Glenny and

Stevens 1935). Sheep ox and goat erythrocytes are markedly susceptible to  $\beta$  lysis whereas those of rabbit and man are resistant. Divalent cations are required for hemolysis (Jackson 1963). Like  $\alpha$  toxin  $\beta$  hemolysin is heat labile but production of the latter is not inhibited by anaerobiosis. There is evidence that  $\beta$  lysis is a phospholipase which hydrolyzes sphingomyelin and that differences in the susceptibility of red blood cells from different species reflect the availability of this substrate (Doery *et al* 1963).  $\beta$  Hemolysin has less intrinsic toxicity for experimental animals than  $\alpha$  toxin. It is antigenic, and antitoxin prevents hemolytic activity.

**$\delta$  Hemolysin** A third distinct hemolysin produced by *Staph aureus* is  $\delta$  hemolysin (Williams and Harper 1947) which is considerably more heat stable in crude culture filtrates than  $\alpha$  or  $\beta$  lysis. Purified  $\delta$  hemolysin is a trypsin sensitive protein with a molecular weight of approximately 70 000 (Yoshida 1963). It hemolyzes human erythrocytes as well as those of the rabbit; sheep erythrocytes are less susceptible. Heated culture filtrates with  $\delta$  hemolysin activity are not toxic but intravenous injection of concentrated material into rabbits is lethal (McLeod 1963). The most striking pathologic finding is an acute nephritic lesion. The existence of a fourth hemolysin  $\gamma$  hemolysin has been postulated but many workers believe that it is identical with  $\delta$  hemolysin (Smith and Price 1938, Elek and Levy 1950).

**Leukocidins** Three distinct leukocytotoxic substances can be found in culture filtrates of staphylococci. The leukocidin described by Neisser and Wechsberg (1900) which agglomerates rabbit white cells and interferes with their respiration is identical with  $\alpha$  toxin and has no effect on human leukocytes. A thermostable leukocytotoxic substance termed leukolysin by Gladstone and van Heyningen (1957) causes marked morphologic changes in the leukocytes of all species examined except those of sheep. Leukolysin is apparently identical with  $\delta$  hemolysin. The third leukocidin described by Pantan and Valentine (1932) is not associated with hemolytic activity and is formed by approximately 40 to 50 per cent of strains. The P.V. leukocidin or human leukocidin

phosphatase (Barber *et al* 1951) and lipase and phospholipase (Magnuson *et al* 1962 Shah and Wilson 1963). Certain strains also produce an autolysin which differs from the lytic factor virolysin (Ralston *et al* 1957) produced during virulent phage infection.

#### ECOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

*Staph aureus* frequently is found in large numbers on normal human skin and mucous membranes and yet serious staphylococcal disease is comparatively rare. Colonization begins in infancy within the first week to 10 days of life as many as 90 per cent of new borns are nasal carriers of *Staph aureus*. Infants born at home acquire *Staph aureus* at a rate only slightly less than that found in hospital nurseries. The carrier rate falls to about 20 per cent during the first 2 years of life but by age 4 to 5 it approaches the adult rate of 30 to 50 per cent (Williams 1963). The organism is found most commonly in the anterior nares and this is the site usually cultured in epidemiologic studies. However significant skin carriage also occurs particularly on the dorsum of the hands. Usually the same phage type of *Staph aureus* is found both in the nares and on the skin of an individual carrier. *Staph aureus* can also be isolated from throat cultures of asymptomatic persons and intestinal carriage is estimated at 20 to 30 per cent.

With respect to nasal carriage 3 kinds of individuals are recognized. Some 10 to 20 per cent of normal adults yield *Staph aureus* from the nose at all examinations and most keep the same phage type for many months or years (Roodyn 1960). An equal number of persons rarely harbor *Staph aureus*. The majority of people are intermittent carriers. That is they carry the organism for a period of a few weeks then are free from *Staph aureus* for a similar period and then once again are carriers often with a strain of a different phage type.

The dynamics of acquisition are not fully understood but several important phenomena have been observed. As indicated the newborn rapidly acquires *Staph aureus* and in nurseries the strain carried is that predominant within the hospital unit (Barber *et al* 1953). The site of primary colonization of the newborn is the umbilicus and the

nasal carrier rate can be diminished markedly by maintaining sterility of the umbilical stump (Gluck and Wood 1961). Spread of the organism in the nursery is primarily by direct contact with personnel although it is well known that *Staph aureus* survives in fomites for long periods of time (Mortimer *et al* 1962).

Epidemics of suppurative disease in new born nurseries which are of considerable concern in many areas are usually associated only with certain strains of *Staph aureus*. These strains designated hospital or "epidemic" strains are usually resistant to a variety of antibiotics. Strains of the 80/81 complex became widely distributed in hospitals throughout the world beginning in 1954 and were responsible for many nursery and other nosocomial epidemics. Other epidemic types usually in phage Groups I or III are also known (Parker and Jevons 1963). Even in the case of these epidemic strains healthy carriage among hospital personnel and patients is more frequent than is the occurrence of disease.

In a nursery epidemic of staphylococcal disease as many as 50 per cent of infants will develop either superficial or deep suppurative lesions (Shaffer *et al* 1957). The onset of disease may take place after discharge from the nursery and it is not uncommon for an infant to disseminate the hospital strain within the home and for lesions to develop in family members particularly breast abscesses in nursing mothers (Hurst and Grossman 1960).

The acquisition and the carriage of *Staph aureus* by adults is a complex situation. It is not known why certain persons are always carriers and why others are almost never carriers. Moreover it is unclear why it is rare for a person to harbor more than one phage type of organism. Most of the studies on the dynamics of the carrier state in adults have also been performed in hospital settings. Approximately 20 to 30 per cent of patients admitted to hospitals will become carriers of the prevalent hospital strain; the incidence of colonization increases with the duration of hospital stay (Noble *et al* 1964). Persons who are already carriers have a lower acquisition rate than do those free of staphylococci (Williams *et al* 1959). Acquisition

charides (Rogers, 1954) Hyaluronidase is antigenic and immunologic analyses thus far have revealed only one such enzyme in staphylococci

**Penicillinase** Many strains of *Staph aureus* particularly those lysed by bacteriophages in Groups I and III are resistant to penicillin Resistance is due to inactivation of penicillin by an enzyme penicillinase, which opens the  $\beta$  lactam ring of the penicillin molecule (Pollock, 1962) Penicillinase is a genetically constitutive enzyme but phenotypic expression i.e. the amount of enzyme formed is enhanced by the presence of the penicillin substrate Penicillinase production can also be increased by exposure of the organisms to some of the synthetic penicillins despite the fact that these compounds are only minimally susceptible to the enzyme (Batchelor *et al* 1963) Penicillinase formation has been demonstrated in strains isolated before the general use of the antibiotic suggesting that the current prevalence of penicillin resistant strains is the result of selection rather than recent mutation (Kirby 1944) Attempts to induce penicillinase formation in strains lacking the enzyme by exposing them to penicillin have been uniformly unsuccessful Penicillin resistance may develop in some strains treated in this manner but a different mechanism of resistance is apparently involved Moreover such strains in contradistinction to penicillinase producing organisms are unstable and nonpathogenic (Barber 1962) However penicillinase production can be induced in strains lacking the enzyme by transduction (Ritz and Baldwin 1961) Penicillinase producing *Staph aureus* may impair locally the action of penicillin on other pathogens (Simon and Sakai 1963)

Penicillinase may be found as either an endocellular or an exocellular product depending on the strain and the cultural conditions Purified exocellular penicillinase has been prepared recently (Richmond 1963)

**Enterotoxin** The majority of cases of food poisoning related to bacteria or bacterial products are caused by staphylococcal enterotoxin (Dack 1956) Enterotoxin is produced by only a few strains of *Staph aureus* and these are generally of phage type 6/47 or 42D (Allison 1949) However, the

converse is not true and most organisms of these phage types do not produce enterotoxin Enterotoxin producing strains do not differ fundamentally from conventional strains of *Staph aureus* in terms of biochemical reactions or in the production of hemolysins coagulase, etc Therefore, identification of toxic strains depends on the direct demonstration of enterotoxin in culture filtrates Few experimental animals are susceptible to enterotoxin the most reliable species for testing are the monkey (*Macaca mulatta*) and man Vomiting can be induced in monkeys by the feeding or the intravenous injection of culture filtrates which contain enterotoxin in both instances there is a latent period of 1½ to 3 hours Several antigenically distinct types of enterotoxin exist A and B are the most common some strains produce both types (Casman *et al* 1963) The enterotoxins are trypsin resistant basic proteins rich in lysine which withstand boiling for 30 minutes Enterotoxin B has a molecular weight of 24 000 and is free of carbohydrate and lipid (Bergdoll *et al* 1959a Hibnick and Bergdoll, 1959) Intravenous injection of 1 mcg/kg of purified toxin into monkeys produces emesis After an oral or an intravenous dose the animals become refractory to a second dose for a period of several days and this temporary resistance is specific for each antigenic type (Sugiyama *et al* 1962) Following repeated administration of enterotoxin a more lasting resistance develops which may represent true humoral immunity specific antibodies are known to block completely the effects of enterotoxin (Bergdoll *et al* 1959b) Enterotoxin is pyrogenic and its emetic action is enhanced by the prior administration of Thorotrast (Sugiyama *et al* 1963) The site of action of enterotoxin is not certain but the weight of evidence indicates that its effects are mediated by peripheral and/or central neurons rather than through a direct toxic action on the intestine (Clark *et al* 1962)

**Other Substances** Most strains of *Staph aureus* produce a number of enzymes capable of hydrolyzing substances in mammalian tissues or fluids These include nucleases (Cunningham *et al* 1960 Alexander *et al* 1961) proteases (Lack and Wailing 1954),

Dissemination from cutaneous lesions occurs by extension or embolization of infected thrombi and fortunately is rare. Particularly dangerous are furuncles on the upper lip or in the nares because of the direct connection of the rich venous plexuses with the cavernous sinus. Retrograde extension from such lesions is a common cause of cavernous sinus thrombosis. Hematogenous spread of *Staph aureus* may lead to visceral abscess formation particularly in the kidney though indeed any organ may be involved.

Acute hematogenous osteomyelitis a disease of young persons is most often caused by *Staph aureus*. The incidence has decreased markedly during the antibiotic era. Osteomyelitis presents with acute pain, tenderness and swelling over the metaphysis of the long bones. Early in the course roentgenograms of the bone are normal but then areas of medullary necrosis appear together with marked osteoblastic and osteoplastic reaction. The organism can be recovered either from the lesion itself, the periosteum or the overlying subcutaneous tissue. Necrotic bone (sequestrum) may separate from viable bone and serve as a nidus for continued bacterial growth.

Blood borne *Staph aureus* can induce a lesion on a heart valve which is congenitally deformed, one previously damaged by rheumatic fever or occasionally on a normal valve. The clinical outlook is grave and the rapid downhill course with valve destruction and metastatic abscess formation constitutes the most common form of acute bacterial endocarditis.

Staphylococcal bacteremia is a state characterized by the almost constant presence of large numbers of *Staph aureus* in the blood stream. Metastatic abscesses are numerous and each in turn may seed the bloodstream and continue the cycle. The patient is acutely ill, febrile and exhibits profound toxemia. This syndrome was almost uniformly fatal before the introduction of antibiotic therapy; unfortunately the mortality is still high (30 to 50%). Less hectic and more chronic staphylococcal bacteremia is also encountered and the source of seeding may not be apparent.

Staphylococcal pneumonia in adults is almost invariably preceded by viral influenza and is one of the major causes of death

during influenza epidemics and pandemics. Patchy bronchopneumonia rather than lobar pneumonia is usual and the necrotizing lesions often progress to cavity abscesses. Empyema is common. The onset is acute with high fever, cough productive of purulent pinkish sputum and cyanosis. Fatalities are frequent. *Staph aureus* pneumonia in children may occur as a complication of measles or whooping cough as well as influenza. Recurrent bronchopneumonia is also a serious problem in children with cystic fibrosis. In addition, what appears to be primary staphylococcal pneumonia with extensive necrosis of pulmonary tissue is seen in infants particularly those under 1 year of age. Empyema, pneumatoceles and/or pyopneumothorax occur in more than 50 per cent of cases. Cutaneous lesions in infants are less well localized than in adults and *Staph aureus* is a major cause of impetigo contagiosa. *Staph aureus* is also one of the most common causative agents of neonatal meningitis.

Staphylococcal pseudomembranous enterocolitis is characterized by copious diarrhea with attendant symptoms and signs of dehydration: fever, nausea, abdominal pain and vomiting. If the dehydration is extreme, shock ensues. Large numbers of *Staph aureus* are present in the diarrheal stools but even in their absence or in the presence of only low numbers of *Staph aureus*, some workers feel that the organism has an etiologic role. Many of the strains isolated produce both enterotoxin A and B (Warren et al 1963). This disease was clearly recognized before the antimicrobial era but became more frequent when persons were given antimicrobials which affected indigenous intestinal flora but not *Staph aureus*.

One of the most troublesome features of invasive staphylococcal disease is the tendency for recurrence in the face of what appears to be an effective cure. Osteomyelitis for example may recur as long as 20 years after the initial episode. Exacerbations of disease generally are due to the same strain that caused the initial lesion. It is believed the recrudescence is due to multiplication of small numbers of organisms, persisters, localized in necrotic foci or small abscesses that are protected from the host's cellular and humoral defense mechanisms as well as

of the hospital strains is enhanced in patients treated with antibiotics to which the hospital strain is insensitive (Knight *et al.*, 1958). As with newborns the most important route of spread is probably direct contact but air-borne dissemination and contamination of bed clothing may also play a role (Hare, 1963).

Outbreaks of *Staph aureus* disease occur in adult medical and surgical wards as well as in newborn nurseries. The persons most susceptible are those who have undergone major operative procedures and those with severe underlying disorders including disseminated malignancy or leukemia, diabetes, hypoadrenalism, agammaglobulinemia, aplastic anemia or agranulocytosis and viral influenza (Nahmas and Eickhoff 1961).

The finding of asymptomatic persons who carry epidemic strains of *Staph aureus* has led to the controversial concept of the dangerous carrier. However, disease is not exclusively due to these organisms and many persons carry the epidemic strains without apparent harm to themselves or their associates. Nevertheless, the existence of strains with epidemiologic virulence calls for alertness to the possibility of outbreaks of serious disease.

Both nasal and skin carriage of *Staph aureus* often are eliminated temporarily by topical application of antibiotics to the anterior nares. This suggests that in many instances skin isolates represent transient contamination by organisms in the nose. The carrier state can also be eradicated by systemic antimicrobial therapy but organisms of the original phage type often reappear 1 to 4 weeks after the cessation of treatment. The mechanisms involved in the persistence of organisms are unknown.

In view of the extremely high rate of carriage in human populations it is clear that the primary reservoir of *Staph aureus* is man but many domestic animals including dogs can be asymptomatic carriers of strains associated with human disease. In addition, strains implicated in diseases of animals such as those producing bovine mastitis may also produce disease in man.

#### DISEASES OF MAN

The characteristic lesion produced in man by *Staph aureus* is the abscess and the most

frequent area of involvement is the skin. Large numbers of granulocytes rapidly migrate to the site of bacterial localization and there is exudation of plasma components as well. If the cocci are not ingested and destroyed during the initial inflammatory response more phagocytic cells and fluid accumulate. In the fully developed lesion there is a central necrotic core filled with dead leukocytes and bacteria which is demarcated from surrounding tissue by a fibroblastic wall containing viable cocci and phagocytic cells. As the necrotic material increases and liquefies the tension within the abscess rises accompanied by marked local pain and tenderness. The abscess becomes frankly fluctuant and there is thinning of the overlying skin. In the absence of therapy the abscess spontaneously bursts, drains and heals. Cellulitis and lymphadenitis occur if the lesion is not efficiently walled off. Constitutional symptoms do not accompany small abscesses but with severe, deep seated lesions there is fever, rapid pulse and a polymorphonuclear leukocytosis.

Minor cutaneous abscesses are termed pustules and larger ones furuncles (boils). A more serious skin lesion is the carbuncle which is a laterally burrowing interconnected lesion usually occurring in the thick collagenous tissue of the back of the neck, that has multiple channels of egress to the skin. Approximately 80 per cent of persons will incur one or more episodes of superficial lesions during their lifetime and the yearly incidence is somewhere between 2 and 10 per cent of the population. Fortunately the lesions are usually self limited and not of serious consequence. Nevertheless, local abscesses, such as infected hangnails (paronychia) prevent normal function of manual tasks and may mean temporary economic disability. Moreover, 20 per cent of patients with one episode have one or more recurrences during the ensuing year and the risk of disease for members of the family is 4 times greater than in the general population (Kay 1962). A small number of patients have chronic recurrent furunculosis lasting over several months or even years due to the same phage type of *Staph aureus*. It is impossible to predict which patients will fall into this category nor is it known why the episodes suddenly cease.

that of mice. Animals inoculated intravenously with  $10^8$  to  $10^{10}$  organisms usually die within 24 hours whereas after an inoculum of  $10^3$  organisms the deaths occur after several days and suppurative renal lesions are the most striking finding (Cowan 1939b; Stamp 1961; Li and Kapral 1962).

It is clear from the above that the experimental animals commonly used in the study of staphylococcal disease are markedly resistant to *Staph aureus*. Other animals such as guinea pigs afford no particular advantage and although infection of the chick embryo has been studied this model is clearly unrelated to human disease. The chinchilla is uniquely susceptible to staphylococcal enterocolitis (Wood *et al* 1956).

Many artifices have been designed to enhance the pathogenicity of *Staph aureus* in experimental animals. The lethal intraperitoneal dose in mice is decreased markedly by suspending the organisms in mucin cutaneous lesions are more readily induced after tissue injury (Goshi *et al* 1961); systemic *Staph aureus* disease is enhanced by the administration of a variety of substances including thyroxine and dinitrophenol and animals are more susceptible during acute starvation (Smith and Dubos 1956b, c). Resistance to staphylococcal disease is also increased by many nonspecific factors particularly after heterologous immunization (Cowan 1939b).

A few experimental studies have been performed in man. Elek and Conen (1957) showed that the skin of normal humans is highly resistant to induced staphylococcal disease. Formation of self limited pustules occurs only when more than  $5 \times 10^6$  cocci are injected irrespective of whether the organism is isolated from normal flora or from lesions. In surgical patients stitch abscesses are the most common form of staphylococcal disease; the minimum pus forming dose in normal skin can be reduced to as few as 100 cocci if the organisms are impregnated on a silk suture tied through the skin. The suture technique for enhancing *Staph aureus* infection is also applicable to experimental animals (James and MacLeod, 1961).

It is difficult to establish the carrier state for prolonged time periods in experimental

animals but some information on the phenomenon of persistence has been obtained. Following intracerebral or subcutaneous injection of *Staph aureus* organisms can be recovered for several weeks in the absence of a discernible lesion (Fisher 1962; Fisher and Robson 1963). Moreover despite prolonged intensive streptomycin therapy a few surviving fully streptomycin-susceptible *Staph aureus* cells can be found in the kidneys of intravenously injected mice for long periods of time (McCune *et al* 1956). Guinea pigs exposed to tetracycline resistant *Staph aureus* by aerosol retain culturable organisms in their nares for only a few days but the organisms can be evoked by the administration of tetracycline as long as 6 months after initial exposure (Simon 1963).

#### PATHOGENICITY AND VIRULENCE

The roles in the production of disease played by the many toxins and enzymes synthesized by *Staph aureus* are uncertain. Local or systemic injection of culture filtrates containing  $\alpha$  toxin into susceptible animals causes tissue necrosis or death (Blair 1958) but preformed toxin present in the usual bacterial inoculum apparently plays no role in the development of lesions. Organisms suspended in saline are no less virulent than those suspended in culture medium containing  $\alpha$  toxin (Elek and Conen 1957). The small role of  $\alpha$ -toxin in the development of progressive lesions is further demonstrated by the general failure of active or passive immunization against  $\alpha$  toxin to protect against the development of progressive disease (Smith 1937; Elek, 1959; Foster 1963). However rabbits injected with toxoid are protected against pustule formation in traumatized skin, although not in normal skin (Goshi *et al* 1961b).

Under certain circumstances  $\alpha$  toxin seems clearly to be of importance. For example immunization with toxoid prevents acute death in experimental animals given large intravenous inocula of *Staph aureus*. In contrast, such immunization does not affect the outcome of rapidly fatal intraperitoneal infections associated with the finding of large amounts of  $\alpha$  toxin in the peritoneal fluid (Koenig *et al* 1962). The paradox may re

from antimicrobial agents. There is also speculation that *Staph aureus* may persist in an altered state such as the G form which is not readily cultured and which resists a variety of bactericidal substances.

Food poisoning due to *Staph aureus* is due to ingestion of preformed enterotoxin. The symptoms usually begin 3 hours after ingestion, but the time of onset ranges from 1 to 6 hours. The heralding sign is increased salivation, followed by nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain and watery diarrhea. Recovery is generally within 24 hours and death occurs only when dehydration is excessive, particularly in infants or the debilitated.

#### DISEASES OF ANIMALS

*Staph aureus* is found in lesions in a variety of wild and domestic animals and birds but the specific role of the organism is difficult to define since other microorganisms are often present. However, disease in sheep and cows, particularly bovine mastitis, may be due solely to *Staph aureus* approximately 70 per cent of dairy herds in the United States have staphylococcal mastitis (Courter and Galton 1962). The strains isolated from animals are more likely to be of phage type 42D and to produce  $\beta$  hemolysin than human strains. However, strains of a variety of phage types including 80/81 are also found. Many different strains of *Staph aureus* can also be carried by animals free of disease.

The presence of *Staph aureus* in domestic animals may affect man. Enterotoxin-producing strains can incite bovine mastitis and raw milk and its products have been responsible for several outbreaks of food poisoning. *Staph aureus* carriage and/or invasive disease can also be exchanged between man and domestic animals. The use of antibiotics in animal food like the use of antibiotics in human populations is accompanied by an increase in the number of antibiotic resistant strains which are carried. Thus 93 per cent of *Staph aureus* strains isolated from pigs fed tetracycline were resistant to the drug, whereas only 5 per cent of strains obtained from animals not fed the antibiotic were resistant (Smith and Crabb 1960).

#### EXPERIMENTAL INFECTION

Most laboratory animals are relatively resistant to infection with *Staph aureus* and none of the experimental models is an accurate reproduction of human disease. Intracutaneous inoculation of as many as  $10^7$  organisms in the mouse or the rabbit produces only small, self-limited necropurulent lesions (Johnson *et al.* 1961, Fisher 1962). Larger doses in the rabbit cause spreading erythematous necrotic lesions. Intramuscular injection of *Staph aureus* in mice induces local edema and infiltration with inflammatory cells. The intensity of the reaction is determined by the degree of swelling, is sometimes used as a criterion of the virulence of a particular strain (Selbie and Simon 1952).

The dynamics of intraperitoneal infection in mice have been studied extensively. Quite large inocula of most strains  $5 \times 10^4$  to  $5 \times 10^6$  organisms are required to produce lethal disease. In most cases death occurs within 24 hours and is associated with the production of large amounts of  $\alpha$  toxin *in vivo* (Cohn 1962, Koenig *et al.* 1962).

Intravenous injection of approximately  $10^3$  to  $10^5$  viable units kills mice within 24 hours. The acute deaths are usually ascribed to the production of  $\alpha$  toxin *in vivo*. When between  $10^7$  and  $10^8$  organisms are inoculated, delayed deaths occur. The injected cocci are cleared rapidly from the blood stream and can be recovered primarily from the major organs of the reticuloendothelial system: the spleen and the liver (Smith and Dubos 1956a, Fisher 1962). Lesser numbers are present in the lungs and the kidneys. The titers of organisms in the spleen and the liver gradually decrease until 2 weeks later, virtually no cocci can be recovered, whereas the number of organisms in the lungs remains relatively constant. However, there is a gradual increase in the bacterial population of the kidneys which may reach  $10^5$  to  $10^{10}$  staphylococci and renal abscesses are found. Quantitative studies indicate that at least  $10^4$  organisms must be extracted by the kidneys after challenge before progressive fatal lesions develop. The anatomic site of multiplication is the cortex. The fate of rabbits receiving intravenous *Staph aureus* is similar to

termining the outcome of encounters with *Staph aureus*

Studies on the interaction between *Staph aureus* and phagocytic cells reveal that both heat stable and heat labile factors are required for efficient ingestion (Cohn and Morse 1959 Rogers and Melly 1962) The heat stable substance is specific antibody whereas the labile factor is presumed to be a component of the complement system Normal rabbit serum does not contain *Staph aureus* opsonizing antibody and the organisms are not ingested in vitro by either polymorphonuclear leukocytes or macrophages unless antiserum is added (Cohn and Morse 1959 Mackaness 1960) However phagocytosis of *Staph aureus* by fixed or circulating cells in the intact rabbit may not depend on opsonic antibody since very large inocula are required to produce disease It is known that *Staph aureus* is ingested in the absence of antibody by the process of surface phagocytosis *Staph aureus* is readily ingested by human leukocytes suspended in human serum which unlike rabbit serum normally contains opsonizing antibodies

The dynamics of the phagocytosis of *Staph aureus* in vivo have been studied in the peritoneal cavity of the mouse where ingestion of the organism by mononuclear and polymorphonuclear leukocytes has been shown to be efficient It is not certain whether normal mouse sera contain opsonizing antibodies

Once ingested more than 95 per cent of *Staph aureus* cells are killed rapidly within human and rabbit leukocytes in vitro and within mouse leukocytes in vivo (Cohn and Morse 1959 Mackaness 1960 Rogers and Melly 1960 Cohn 1962) It is uncertain whether the existence of small numbers of viable intraleukocytic organisms is of significance in the production or the persistence of *Staph aureus* disease The mechanism of killing within granulocytes is probably related to the presence within these cells of the bactericidal basic protein phagocytin (Hirsch 1960) since *Staph aureus* is resistant to lysozyme as well as to the acid pH of the intraleukocytic environment

Apparent defects in phagocytosis of *Staph aureus* are observed when an inoculum is manifestly larger than the number of cells mobilized to the inflammatory site or

when emigration of phagocytes is retarded by vascular compromise or by the administration of adrenal cortical hormones Under these circumstances *Staph aureus* multiplies extracellularly at a rapid rate producing a variety of toxins and enzymes and the lesions may become progressive Phagocytosis of *Staph aureus* by mouse peritoneal cells can be impaired by suspending the inoculum in mucin but in man the induction of cutaneous lesions is not affected

The opsonic determinants of conventional strains of *Staph aureus* are not completely known Some workers suggest that antibodies against Polysaccharide A are necessary for phagocytosis to occur (Mudd et al 1963) In the case of the unique mucoid strains such as the Smith strain the capsular material is an important determinant of phagocytosis (Morse 1962a) Absorption of anti serum by the isolated capsular antigen removes opsonizing antibodies and immunization of mice with this antigen produces protection against an intraperitoneal challenge with the mucoid strains suspended in mucin Immunization with the antigen does not protect against challenge with conventional strains in mucin or the Smith strain suspended in saline (Morse 1962a Fisher et al 1963) Strains of the Smith type are encountered infrequently are readily phagocytized by human leukocytes and apparently are not of exceptional virulence for man

There have been many attempts to induce antibacterial immunity to conventional strains of *Staph aureus* in experimental animals In the case of *Staph aureus* antibacterial immunity implies the production of factors which increase phagocytosis of the organism since serum bactericidal or bacteriostatic antibodies are nonexistent Experimental studies are plagued by two major problems Most animals including man have a high degree of resistance to staphylococcal disease and protective effects which are observed are often of doubtful significance Secondly resistance to *Staph aureus* in both man and experimental animals often can be increased by immunization with heterologous bacteria or bacterial products (Cowan 1939b)

Despite these inherent difficulties available evidence suggests that specific antibacterial immunity to conventional strains of



flect the production of  $\alpha$  toxin in the peritoneal cavity in amounts exceeding the binding capacity of antitoxin. It is of interest in this regard that  $\alpha$  toxin production *in vivo* is greater than that *in vitro* (Gladstone and Glencross 1960 Cohn 1962).

The role of  $\alpha$  toxin in human staphylococcal disease is not clear. It does not affect human erythrocytes and leukocytes but is capable of damaging skin. The intracutaneous injection of an amount of preformed toxin sufficient to produce large areas of redness and swelling does not potentiate the ability of a given inoculum to produce a pyogenic lesion (Elek and Conen 1957). Moreover, approximately 4 per cent of strains isolated from human lesions do not manufacture  $\alpha$  toxin *in vitro* (Lack and Wailing 1954). On the other hand Kleiger and Blair (1940) have pointed out that the symptoms of acute staphylococcal toxemia mimic the manifestations which follow the intravenous injection of  $\alpha$  toxin into experimental animals and it is likely that  $\alpha$  toxin was responsible for some of the deaths in the Bundaberg disaster.

Neither  $\beta$  hemolysin nor  $\delta$  hemolysin have been shown to be responsible for particular manifestations or the development of human disease, but it is noteworthy that  $\delta$  hemolysin is toxic for human leukocytes.

Coagulase has also been implicated as a factor in pathogenicity. It was originally suggested that the deposition of fibrin about the organisms due to either free or bound coagulase might inhibit the ability of phagocytic cells to engulf *Staph aureus* (Hale and Smith 1945). Careful studies fail to support this notion (Rogers and Tompsett 1952). Although injection of large amounts of free coagulase produces widespread clotting *in vivo*, extensive intravascular clotting does not accompany severe or fatal staphylococcal disease (Fisher 1936). Strains of *Staph aureus* varying in ability to clot guinea pig plasma do not vary in capacity to produce disease in these animals (Foster 1962). Moreover, laboratory derived mutants lacking free and bound coagulase are as pathogenic for rabbits as the parent strain (Li and Kapral 1962). Coagulase may actually act in favor of the host by localizing lesions through the deposition of a fibrin barrier and it is of interest that infants and children who tend to have more spreading lesions have

lower levels of coagulase reacting factor than adults (Rammelkamp and Lebovitz 1956). On the other hand mice and fowl which are deficient in CRF, are very resistant to *Staph aureus* disease. Specific protection by immunization with preparations rich in Type I but not Type III coagulase in rabbits has been reported (Lominski *et al.*, 1962), but in other experiments (Fisher, 1962) protection was not correlated with titers of circulating anticoagulase.

The P-V leukocidin destroys human leukocytes and it is possible that this effect *in vivo* aids the initiation and the progression of disease. There is an inverse correlation between the level of cord blood antileukocidin and the incidence of staphylococcal disease in the newborn (Johanovsky, 1959 Banfer 1962). Moreover immunization of pregnant women with leukocidin rich toxoid decreases the incidence of disease in both the newborn and mothers. Whether these observations reflect correlative or nonspecific factors awaits the results of intensive studies now being pursued.

Other potentially injurious enzymatic products such as hyaluronidase lipase etc. have been implicated as determinants of pathogenicity but they do not appear to be primary factors (Elek 1959). Strains possessing all these factors may be found in healthy carriers but strains lacking one or more of the enzymes or toxins mentioned (with the exception of free coagulase which defines the species) have been isolated from human lesions.

The ability of a microorganism to survive and multiply in the host can be as important for pathogenicity as the elaboration of toxic substances. *Staph aureus* is capable of surviving environmental circumstances inimical to other microorganisms. It is unusually resistant to acid mercuric ions, heat, hypertonic sodium chloride, phenol and drying. *Staph aureus* also resists the action of serum bactericidins; most strains grow readily in broth containing serum. Other body fluids which contain fatty acids lethal for many bacteria do not inactivate *Staph aureus* and the majority of *Staph aureus* strains are also not susceptible to killing by lysozyme.

The ability or the inability of host cellular elements to ingest and destroy microorganisms probably plays a central role in de-

form free coagulase but the converse is not true. Therefore strains that are negative by slide test which otherwise resemble *Staph aureus* should be tested for free coagulase.

A variety of differential and selective media are used for the separation and the identification of *Staph aureus*. Mannitol fermentation is demonstrated by an appropriate indicator in media containing the polyol free phenolphthalein is liberated by *Staph aureus* phosphatase in phenolphthalein phosphate agar (Barber and Kuper 1951). Tellurite is reduced and the organism grows as black colonies on tellurite glycine agar (Zebowitz *et al* 1955) and opacity is produced on solid media containing egg yolk by the action of lipases (Graber *et al* 1958). Selective media incorporate factors such as mercuric ions which are inimical to the growth of other microorganisms (Moore 1960). Most strains of *Staph aureus* grow readily in high salt concentrations. Solid nutrient media containing 7.5 per cent sodium chloride are the most useful of the selective media. None of the differential media replaces the coagulase test for identification of *Staph aureus* and the use of selective media excludes the growth of other microorganisms which may be of clinical significance. For these reasons these media are more useful in epidemiologic studies than in routine laboratory procedures.

Susceptibility of a micrococcus to *Staph aureus* bacteriophage clearly identifies it as a member of the species but bacteriophage typing is an epidemiologic rather than a diagnostic tool. Determination of antibiotic sensitivity is also more important for clinical and epidemiologic purposes than for diagnosis. Epidemic strains generally display a high degree of multiple antibiotic resistance. However in the laboratory these organisms can not be differentiated from other *Staph aureus* strains.

The physician often asks if a *Staph aureus* isolated from a lesion or from body fluid is of etiologic significance or merely a contaminant. The laboratory cannot answer the question. In view of the widespread environmental distribution of *Staph aureus* each specimen must be obtained with meticulous precaution to avoid extraneous contamination.

Since direct tests for the presence of en-

terotoxin by feeding of material to monkeys or man is impractical the finding of large numbers of culturable *Staph aureus* in suspected food is presumptive evidence that the organism is the responsible agent in cases of food poisoning. However food which has been contaminated and then heated will yield no culturable organisms though the enterotoxin remains active.

#### TREATMENT AND CONTROL

**Treatment** Most instances of staphylococcal disease are relatively minor cutaneous lesions, pustules and furuncles. The basic principle of therapy of these lesions is to promote adequate drainage. Spontaneous drainage is facilitated by the application of moist hot compresses. Surgical incision may be necessary but is performed only when the lesion is fluctuant. Systemic antibiotic therapy is not generally warranted. Skin care with germicidal baths lessens contamination and decreases the likelihood of auto infection. The patient must be warned against manipulation of the lesions to prevent hematogenous spread. Carbuncles because of their burrowing characteristic generally do not drain adequately and often both antimicrobial therapy and surgical drainage are required.

Serious staphylococcal disease—bacteremia, endocarditis, pneumonia, meningitis, acute osteomyelitis, etc.—calls for the prompt administration of systemic antimicrobial therapy in large doses and therapy often must be continued for a prolonged time to effect cure. The surgical removal or drainage of suppurative foci is of great importance in the outcome of these conditions.

When penicillin was first introduced 85 to 90 per cent of *Staph aureus* strains were sensitive to the antibiotic. Although there is considerable variation more than 80 per cent of strains now responsible for serious hospital acquired staphylococcal disease are penicillin resistant and 20 to 40 per cent of community strains also are not susceptible. In addition hospital strains are frequently resistant to other antibiotics such as tetracycline about 50 per cent, chloramphenicol about 40 per cent and erythromycin about 40 per cent (Barber and Burston 1955, Rogers 1956, Finland *et al* 1960, Petersdorf *et al* 1960, Cohen *et al* 1962, Cheate

*Staph aureus* can be induced in mice and rabbits after administration of cells or cell fractions (Stamp, 1961; Fisher, 1962; Koenig *et al*, 1962; Ekstedt, 1963). In most instances the degree of protection is small and incomplete. Passive administration of anti-bacterial serum similarly produces partial protection against experimental disease.

The importance of allergy to *Staph aureus* in pathogenesis of disease is uncertain but Johanovsky (1958) and Johnson *et al* (1961) have indicated that delayed hypersensitivity to staphylococcal components increases susceptibility to experimental disease.

As previously stated some strains of *Staph aureus* are epidemiologically more virulent than others but attempts to elucidate the specific factors involved have been unsuccessful and these strains do not induce experimental disease more readily than others.

It is obvious that orthodox approaches have not provided a thesis that satisfactorily explains the induction or the development of progressive staphylococcal disease. This is particularly true in man in whom the situation is compounded by the frequent occurrence of apparently fully pathogenic strains in the absence of illness and the presence in the sera of most normal adults of antibodies to many *Staph aureus* components. Variations in serum titer of a variety of these antibodies with the possible exception of anti-human leukocidin are not closely correlated with disease. One must conclude that in man invasion of tissues by *Staph aureus* is prevented in most instances by the rapid mobilization of natural host defense mechanisms reinforced by specific antibodies. In the face of local or systemic abnormalities or in the case of the newborn of physiologic immaturity the organism multiplies at a rate which surpasses the ability of the host to destroy the inoculum. A multiplicity of unknown factors—bacterial toxins or enzymes, inactivation or inaccessibility of antibodies and phagocytes etc—then may come into play. Delineation of these interactions has proved to be extraordinarily difficult.

Persistence of organisms is a phenomenon which relates to pathogenicity as well as to healthy carriage. Despite prolonged therapy with an effective antimicrobial agent small

numbers of organisms are frequently found in necrotic foci. In some situations organisms cannot be cultured and yet disease due to the same phage type of *Staph aureus* recurs after a variable time period. It is unknown whether the organisms exist in a site inaccessible to antimicrobials or cultural techniques are inadequate or the cocci are in an altered form.

## DIAGNOSIS

The presence of typical irregular clusters of gram positive cocci in purulent material suggests the presence of staphylococci or other micrococci. Precise identification of *Staph aureus* requires laboratory isolation. Hemolysis and golden yellow pigmentation of colonies of gram positive cocci in characteristic aggregation point to the diagnosis. It does the ability of the organism to ferment mannitol. However, *Staph aureus* strains differ in the types of hemolysins produced and certain strains are nonhemolytic. Furthermore pigmentation as well as fermentative capacities vary. At the same time other micrococci are hemolytic and can form orange-colored colonies which are difficult to distinguish from those of *Staph aureus*.

By definition a strain which produces free coagulase is *Staph aureus*. Strains isolated from clinical material that do not produce free coagulase are extremely rare. The test for free coagulase is performed by adding 0.5 ml of a broth culture or a loopful of agar growth to 0.5 ml of a 1:5 dilution of citrated human or rabbit plasma in a serologic test tube. The mixture is incubated at 37° C. Definite clot formation usually occurs within 3 hours but may not take place for 18 hours. Each plasma lot should be tested with a known coagulase positive strain to ensure that inhibitors or coagulase antibodies are not blocking the reaction.

Because free and bound coagulase generally are found together the simple and convenient slide test for bound coagulase is often used as a routine screening procedure (Cadness Graves *et al* 1943). A bacterial suspension is mixed with a drop of plasma or fibrinogen solution on a microscope slide. In a positive reaction clumping of the bacteria occurs within 30 seconds. Virtually all strains that produce bound coagulase also

multiply readily should be kept refrigerated until use. Many different foods have been found to be the source of food poisoning outbreaks but bakery products particularly those with cream fillings, gravies and certain meats are implicated most frequently. There is no external evidence such as a change in the taste or the smell of food that indicates contamination with *Staph aureus*. Enterotoxin is heat stable and therefore heating of contaminated food will not destroy the toxin though viable organisms are killed.

#### IMMUNITY IN MAN

Sera of most normal adults contain antibodies to a variety of components and products of *Staph aureus* including  $\alpha$  toxin, coagulase, human leukocidin, hyaluronidase, staphylokinase, Polysaccharide A and the agglutinin Antigen A. In addition human gamma globulin protects mice against invasive staphylococcal disease (Fisher 1959). Antibodies to  $\alpha$  toxin, leukocidin, staphylokinase, Antigen A and the mouse protective factor are known to cross the placental barrier. Antibody titers in the infant decline during the first few months of life and then rise over the next few years, presumably as the result of the antigenic stimulus derived from carriage of *Staph aureus* or minor lesions (Quie and Wannamaker 1964). No correlation between the titer of a particular antibody and resistance or susceptibility to disease has been discovered. It is noteworthy that an increase in antibody titer does not occur regularly in patients with disease even when the illness is chronic (Lack and Towers 1962).

Despite the presence of antibodies in normal sera and the apparent inability of natural infection with *Staph aureus* to induce protection against recurrence, there is still interest in active immunization as a way of increasing resistance, particularly in patients with recurrent furunculosis. Among the materials that have been used for immunization are toxoids prepared from culture filtrates rich in  $\alpha$  toxin or leukocidin, killed *Staph aureus* isolated either from the patient (autogenous vaccine) or from other sources and lysates. Reports of successes are approximately as numerous as those of failures. Some of the successes may be related to non

specific factors. Studies on active immunization continue in many parts of the world and as the components of the vaccines are elucidated the materials standardized and specific serologic responses measured, precise information may be forthcoming.

#### STAPHYLOCOCCUS EPIDERMIDIS

*Staph epidermidis* (*Staph albus*) resembles *Staph aureus* closely in microscopic morphology. Colonies are almost invariably chalkwhite and zones of clear hemolysis due to  $\epsilon$  hemolysin are seen on blood agar (Elek and Levy 1950). The organism grows well on most nutrient media, biotin is required for aerobic growth and uracil for anaerobic growth (Jones *et al* 1963). Acetoin is formed from glucose and nitrates are reduced to nitrites. A variety of sugars are fermented but unlike *Staph aureus*, *Staph epidermidis* does not ferment mannitol and gelatin is liquefied only at a slow rate. The most important feature that differentiates the species is that *Staph epidermidis* strains do not produce coagulase; they are often referred to as coagulase negative staphylococci. Coagulase negative staphylococci are sensitive to inhibition or killing by a variety of factors in the milieu such as high salt concentration which do not affect *Staph aureus*.

The species antigen of *Staph epidermidis* is also a cell wall teichoic acid, Polysaccharide B, which has a polyglycerophosphate backbone. Monoglucoside units in  $\alpha$  linkage which are the antigenic determinants are attached to some of the glycerols whereas others have D alanine residues in labile ester linkage (Morse 1963b). The antigen does not cross react with Polysaccharide A of *Staph aureus* but a common protein antigen in the two species has been reported (Elek 1959).

*Staph epidermidis* does not produce the extensive complement of toxins and enzymes found in *Staph aureus* and the organism is essentially nonpathogenic in experimental animals. In man *Staph epidermidis* is a part of the normal mucocutaneous flora. It produces disease less frequently than *Staph aureus* but may be responsible for minor cutaneous lesions such as infected acne and small pustules, particularly stye abscesses. Serious disease including endocarditis and

1962) The recent synthesis of penicillins insusceptible to *Staph aureus* penicillinase, such as methicillin has materially aided therapy of disease due to penicillinase producing strains of *Staph aureus* (Batchelor *et al*, 1963)

Acute staphylococcal pneumonia or bacteremia is often a medical emergency, and penicillin plus methicillin is given until the sensitivity of the organism is determined. Vancomycin is a useful drug in treating patients allergic to penicillin and some physicians utilize bacitracin and kanamycin despite their inherent toxicity. *Staph aureus* strains that are resistant to methicillin have now been isolated and no doubt will increase in frequency. The methicillin-resistant strains are fully capable of producing disease and the problem of antimicrobial therapy of *Staph aureus* disease is therefore by no means solved (Chabbert and Baudens 1962, Jevons *et al* 1962, Stewart and Holt 1963).

Other antibiotics such as erythromycin, tetracycline and chloramphenicol are not indicated for the primary treatment of severe staphylococcal disease but may be of use in treating minor lesions and occasionally in combined therapy of disease which does not respond to the administration of a single antimicrobial agent.

Passive administration of anti  $\alpha$  toxin is not generally employed in the management of severe staphylococcal disease nor has the use of human gamma globulin as a specific therapeutic measure been rewarding. Both local and systemic bacteriophage therapy have been tried also without significant success.

**Control** There is no practical way of removing *Staph aureus* from its widespread and usually benign association with man. Efforts are directed toward the prevention and the control of disease in hospitals where contact occurs between susceptible persons and apparently more virulent strains. Hospitals tend to have their own unique staphylococcal problem and the uncertainties regarding the spread and the acquisition of *Staph aureus* prevent the delineation of firm rules. Certain general principles are of importance. Persons with staphylococcal lesions disseminate large numbers of organisms and they should be segregated from adult sus-

ceptibles or newborns. Similarly, ward personnel with open lesions are not allowed to perform their usual duties. Highly susceptible individuals, such as those with agranulocytosis are protected from other patients and personnel who are carriers. Especially to be avoided is the indiscriminate use of antimicrobials which may lead to the acquisition of resistant strains by the patient and the prevalence of such strains within an institution. Finally all minor or major surgical procedures and wound care should be performed with maximal asepsis.

Questions regarding the disposition of asymptomatic carriers of an epidemic strain are difficult to answer except in specific situations. It is advisable that each institution establish a surveillance committee to evaluate the risks involved and to act promptly if an epidemic occurs. Under epidemic conditions a search for the source of infection is initiated and personnel who are carriers of offending strains are removed from the ward and not permitted to return until the carrier state is eliminated (Nahmias and Eickhoff 1961, Williams and Shooter 1963). Nevertheless despite intensive efforts to eliminate carriers and isolate patients closed epidemics are often recurrent, and entire wards have had to be closed.

The newborn is particularly susceptible to staphylococcal disease and decreased colonization by hospital strains is achieved by care of the umbilical stump and the skin with germicidal liquid or powder. Shinefield and co workers (1963) recently presented a novel way of protecting infants from acquiring epidemic strains. A penicillin sensitive strain of *Staph aureus* which does not have epidemiologic virulence is implanted in small numbers in the nares or on the umbilicus soon after birth. The carrier state thereby established seems to prevent or retard colonization by epidemic strains during the limited hospital stay of the infant. This is an example of a process variously termed interference, infection immunity or premunition.

Prevention of food poisoning due to *Staph aureus* involves avoidance both of food contamination and bacterial growth. Persons with open lesions should not participate in the preparation of food. More importantly, foodstuffs in which enterotoxinogenic strains

- lococcus aureus* Proc Roy Soc Sec B 158 311 328
- Bergdoll M D Sugiyama H and Dack G M 1959a, Staphylococcal enterotoxin I Purification Arch Biochem Biophys 85 62 69
- Bergdoll M S Surgalla M J and Dack, G M 1959b Staphylococcal enterotoxin identification of a specific precipitating anti body with enterotoxin neutralizing property J Immun 83 334 338
- Bernheimer A W and Schwartz L L 1961 Extracellular proteins of staphylococci Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 106 776 780
- 1963 Isolation and composition of staphylococcal alpha toxin J Gen. Microbiol 30 455 468
- Bilroth T 1874 Untersuchungen über die Vegetationsformen von *Coccobacteria septicæ* Berlin Reimer 244 pp
- Blair J E 1958 Factors determining the pathogenicity of staphylococci Ann Rev Microbiol 12 491 506
- Blair J E and Carr M 1961 Lysogeny in staphylococci J Bact 82 984-993
- Blair J E and Williams R E O 1961 Phage typing of staphylococci Bull W H O 24 771 784
- Bondi A Kornblum J and de St Phalle M 1955 The amino acid requirements of penicillin resistant and penicillin sensitive strains of *Micrococcus pyogenes* J Bact 68 617 621
- Breed R S Murray E G D and Smith N R 1957 Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology ed 7 Baltimore Williams & Wilkins 1529 pp
- Burnet F M 1929 The exotoxins of *Staphylococcus pyogenes aureus* J Path Bact 32 717 734
- Cadness Graves B Williams R Harper G J and Miles A A 1943 Slide test for coagulase positive staphylococci Lancet 1 736 738
- Casman E P Bergdoll M and Robinson J 1963 Designation of staphylococcal enterotoxins J Bact 85 715 716
- Chabbert Y A and Baudens J G 1962 Souches de staphylocoques résistant naturellement à la méthicilline et à la 5 méthyl 3 phényl 4-iso-oxazolyl pénicilline Ann Inst Past 103 222 230
- Cheate E L 1962 Results of a data processing method applied to the clinical bacteriology laboratory in Sylvester J C (ed) ed 2 Interscience Conference on Anti microbial Agents and Chemotherapy pp 35
- 42 Chicago American Society for Microbiology
- Christie R and Keogh E V 1940 Physiological and serological characteristics of staphylococci of human origin J Path Bact 51 189 197
- Clark W G Vanderhooft G F and Bouson H L 1962 Emetic effect of purified staphylococcal enterotoxin in cats Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 111 205 206
- Cohen J O Newton W L Cherry W B and Updyke E L 1963 Normally occurring staphylococcal antibodies in germfree mice J Immun 90 358 367
- Cohen L S Fekety F R and Cluff L E 1962 Studies of the epidemiology of staphylococcal infection IV The changing ecology of hospital staphylococci New Eng J Med 266 367 372
- Cohn Z A 1962 Determinants of infection in the peritoneal cavity I Response to and fate of *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Staphylococcus albus* in the mouse Yale J Biol Med 35 12 28
- Cohn Z A and Morse S I 1959 Interactions between rabbit polymorphonuclear leucocytes and staphylococci J Exp Med 110 419-443
- Courter R D and Galton M M 1962 Animal staphylococcal infections and their public health significance Am J Pub Health 52 1818 1827
- Cowan H T 1939a Classification of staphylococci by slide agglutination J Path Bact 48 169 173
- 1939b Staphylococcal infection in rabbits antibacterial and non specific immunity J Path Bact 48 545 555
- 1962 An introduction to chaos or the classification of micrococci and staphylococci J Appl Bact 3 324 340
- Cowan S T Shaw C and Williams R E O 1954 Type strain for *Staphylococcus aureus* Rosenbach J Gen. Microbiol 10 174-176
- Cunningham L Catlen B W and Privat de Garthe M 1960 A deoxyribonuclease of *Micrococcus pyogenes* J Am Chem 78 4642-4645
- Dack G M 1956 Food Poisoning ed 3 Chicago Univ Chicago Press 251 pp
- Davidson F M 1960 The activation of plasminogen by staphylokinase Comparison with streptokinase Biochem J 76 56-61
- Doery H M Magnusson, B J Cheyne I M and Gulasekharan J 1963 A phospholipase in staphylococcal toxin which hydrolyzes sphingomyelin Nature 198 1091 1092
- Drummond M C and Tager M 1962 En

bacteremia, can also occur, particularly in debilitated persons and the mortality is high (16 to 20%). Therapeutic principles for *Staph aureus* disease apply also to *Staph epidermidis*—drainage of abscesses and administration of antimicrobials in severe disease.

Many strains of *Staph epidermidis* are resistant to antibiotics. In a recent study of 175 clinical isolates most of them from blood cultures 50 per cent were resistant to penicillin and 10 per cent were resistant to methicillin (Kjellander *et al.*, 1963). Insusceptibility to penicillin is due both to the production of a penicillinase which like *Staph aureus* penicillinase is a beta lactamase and to a level of inherent resistance (Kjellander and Finland 1963). Many of the strains were also resistant to chloramphenicol, tetracycline and erythromycin. Thus the antimicrobial therapy of serious disease due to *Staph epidermidis* holds many of the problems found in treating illness caused by *Staph aureus*.

### OTHER MICROCOCCI

**Gafkya tetragena** (M. tetragenus) This species of the genus *Gafkya* is distinguished by the arrangement of cells in packets of fours (tetrads) which are often surrounded by a capsule or pseudocapsule. These features are found in material obtained directly from animal tissue or fluids but in artificial culture the characteristics may not be apparent. *Gafkya tetragena* is slower growing than the staphylococci. It is a facultative anaerobe. On agar, the colonies are white to gray moist gleaming and viscid. A variety of sugars are fermented but not mannitol. Gelatin is not liquefied. Coagulase is not formed by *Gafkya tetragena* nor by the other micrococci. The organism can be isolated from the normal upper respiratory tract or the skin of man and frequently is found in the sputum of tuberculous patients. *Gafkya tetragena* produces a rapidly fatal septicemia in mice. In man either localized or septicemic disease occasionally occurs particularly in persons with lowered general resistance.

**Sarcina** The cocci in this genus tend to divide perpendicularly in 3 planes resulting

in the formation of packets of 8, 16, 32 or more elements. Some species are anaerobic but the species most commonly isolated from the environment of man is the aerobic *Sarcina lutea*. *Sarcina lutea* produces sulfur to chrome yellow colonies on agar, and pigment is formed in liquid culture. Sugars are not generally fermented. Human disease caused by *Sarcina lutea* is extremely rare.

The other aerobic species of micrococci which, like staphylococci, grow in irregular masses constitute a heterogeneous group included in the genus *Micrococcus*. They are of relatively little importance in human disease.

### REFERENCES

- Alexander M, Heppel L A and Hurwitz J 1961 The purification and properties of micrococcal nuclease. *J Biol Chem* 236: 3014-3019.
- Allison V D 1949 Discussion on food poisoning. *Proc Roy Soc Med* 42: 214-220.
- Baddiley J 1962 Teichoic acids in walls and cells of Gram positive bacteria. *Federation Proc* 21: 1084-1088.
- Banfer J R J 1962 Anti leucodidin and mastitis puerperalis. *Brit Med J* 2: 1224-1226.
- Barber M 1962 Coagulase positive staphylococci resistant to benzyl penicillin, methicillin and other penicillins. In de Reuck A V S and Cameron M P (eds) *Resistance of Bacteria to the Penicillins* pp 89-102. CIBA Foundation, Boston, Little.
- Barber M, Brooksbank H W L and Kuper S W A 1951 Staphylococcal phosphatase, glucuronidase and sulphatase. *J Path Bact* 63: 57-64.
- Barber M and Burston J 1955 Antibiotic resistant staphylococcal infection. A study of antibiotic sensitivity in relation to bacteriophage types. *Lancet* 269: 578-582.
- Barber M and Kuper S W A 1951 Identification of *Staphylococcus pyogenes* by the phosphatase reaction. *J Path Bact* 63: 65-68.
- Barber M, Wilson B D R, Rippon J E and Williams R E 1953 Spread of *Staphylococcus aureus* in a maternity department in the absence of severe sepsis. *J Obstet Gynaec Brit Empire* 60: 476-482.
- Batchelor F R, Cameron Wood J, Chan E B and Rolinson G N 1963 Studies on penicillinase produced by a strain of *Staphy*

- necrosis and antitoxic immunity *J Exp Med* 113 259 270
- Graber C D Latta R Fairchild J P and Vogel E H Jr 1958 Production of opal essence by staphylococci in egg yolk medium as index to bacteriophage typability *Am J Clin Path* 30 314 317
- Gretler A C Mucciolo P Evans J B and Niven C F Jr 1955 Vitamin nutrition of the staphylococci with special reference to their biotin requirements *J Bact* 70 44-49
- Hale J H and Smith W 1945 The influence of coagulase on the phagocytosis of staphylococci *Brit J Exp Path* 26 209 216
- Hare R 1963 Dispersal of staphylococci in Williams R E O and Shooter R A (eds) *Infection in Hospitals* pp 75 86 Oxford Blackwell
- Haskell T H and Hanessian S 1963 2 amino 2 deoxy D glucuronic acid the main constituent of SPA (staphylococcal polysaccharide antigen) *Nature* 199 1074 1075
- Haughton G and Duthie E S 1959 The activation of staphylococcal free coagulase by plasma constituents and the hydrolysis of N toluene p sulfonyl L arginine methyl ester (TAME) by activated coagulase *Biochem J* 71 348 355
- Haukenes G Ellwood D C Baddiley J and Oeding P 1961 Serological cross reactivity between Polysaccharide A and teichoic acid of *Staphylococcus aureus* *Biochim biophys acta* 53 425-426
- Hibnick H E and Bergdoll M S 1959 Staphylococcal enterotoxin II *Chemistry Arch Biochem Biophys* 85 70 73
- Hirsch J G 1960 Further studies on preparation and properties of phagocytin *J Exp Med* 111 323 337
- Hobbs H C 1948 A study of the serological type differentiation of *Staphylococcus pyogenes* *J Hyg* 46 222 238
- Hofstad R E and Youmans G P 1932 *Staphylococcus aureus* dissociation and its relation to infection and immunity *J Infect Dis* 51 216 242
- Hurst V and Grossman M 1960 The hospital nursery as a source of staphylococcal disease among families of newborn infants *New Eng J Med* 262 951 956
- Jackson A W 1963 Purification of staphylococcal  $\beta$  lysin *Canad J Biochem Physiol* 3 755 761
- James R D and MacLeod C M 1961 Induction of staphylococcal infections in mice with small inocula introduced on sutures *Brit J Exp Path* 42 266 277
- Jensen K 1958 A normally occurring staphylococcal antibody in human serum *Acta path microbiol scand* 44 421-428
- Jevons M P Coe A W and Parker M T 1963 Methicillin resistance in staphylococci *Lancet* i 904 907
- Johanovský J 1958 Role of hypersensitivity in experimental staphylococcal infection *Nature* 182 1454
- 1959 Die Bedeutung des Antileukozydens und Antitoxins bei der Immunität gegen Staphylokokken infektionen *Z. Immunitätsforsch* 116 318 328
- Johnson J E Cluff L E and Goshi K 1961 Studies on the pathogenesis of staphylococcal infection I The effect of repeated skin infections *J Exp Med* 113 235 247
- Jones D Dibel R H and Niven C F Jr 1963 Identity of *Staphylococcus epidermidis* *J Bact* 85 62 67
- Julianelle L A and Wieghard C W 1935 The immunological specificity of staphylococci I The occurrence of serological types *J Exp Med* 62 11 21
- Kay C R 1962 Sepsis in the home *Brit Med J* i 1048 1052
- Kirby W M M 1944 Extraction of a highly potent penicillin inactivator from penicillin resistant staphylococci *Science* 99 452-453
- Kjellander J O and Finland M 1963 Studies on the penicillinase of *Staphylococcus albus* *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 113 1031 1037
- Kjellander J O Klein J O and Finland M 1963 *In vitro* activity of penicillins against *Staphylococcus albus* *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 113 1023 1031
- Kleiger H and Blair J E 1940 Correlation between clinical and experimental findings in cases showing invasion of the blood stream by staphylococci *Surg Gynec Obstet* 71 770 777
- Knight H C J G 1937 The nutrition of *Staphylococcus aureus* nicotinic acid and vitamin B<sub>1</sub> *Biochem J* 31 731 737
- Knight V and Holzer A R 1954 Studies on staphylococci from hospital patients I Pre dominance of strains of Group III phage patterns which are resistant to multiple antibiotics *J Clin Invest* 33 1190 1198
- Knight V White A C and Hemmerly T 1958 The effect of antibiotics on staphylococci of hospital patients in Proceedings of the National Conference on Hospital acquired Staphylococcal Disease pp 39 54 Washington US Govt Printing Office
- Koch R 1878 Untersuchungen über die Aetiologie der Wundinfektionskrankheiten Leipzig, Vogel



- zymatic activities associated with clotting of fibrinogen by staphylocoagulase and coagulase reacting factor and their inhibition by disopropylfluorophosphate *J Bact* 83 975 980
- 1963 Fibrinogen clotting and fibrinopeptide formation by staphylocoagulase and the coagulase reacting factor *J Bact* 85 628 635
- Duthie E S 1952 Variation in the antigenic composition of staphylococcal coagulase *J Gen Microbiol* 7 320 326
- 1954 Evidence for two forms of staphylococcal coagulase *J Gen Microbiol* 10 427-436
- Duthie E S and Haughton G 1958 Purification of free staphylococcal coagulase *Biochem J* 70 125 134
- Ekstedt R D 1963 Studies on immunity to staphylococcal infection in mice III A protein antigen that induces protection against challenge with saline suspended organisms *J Infect Dis* 113 105 109
- Elek S D 1959 *Staphylococcus pyogenes* and its Relation to Disease Baltimore Williams & Wilkins 767 pp
- Elek S D and Conen P E 1957 The virulence of *Staphylococcus pyogenes* for man A study of the problems of wound infection *Brit J Exp Path* 38 573 586
- Elek S D and Levy E 1950 Distribution of hemolysins in pathogenic and non pathogenic staphylococci *J Path Bact* 62 541 554
- Fildes P Richardson G M Knight B C J G and Gladstone G P 1936 A nutrient mixture suitable for the growth of *Staphylococcus aureus* *Brit J Exp Path* 17 481 494
- Finland M Hirsch H A and Wallmark G 1960 Pathogenic staphylococci isolated at Boston City Hospital in 1958 *Arch Int Med* 110 383 397
- Fisher A M 1936 The plasma-coagulating properties of staphylococci *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 59 393-414
- Fisher M W 1959 Measurement of staphylococcal antibody in human serum by mouse protection test *Nature* 183 1692
- Fisher M W Devlin H B and Erlanson A L 1963 A new staphylococcal antigen Its preparation and immunizing activity against experimental infections *Nature* 199 1074 1075
- Fisher M 1962 The problem of the staphylococcus a study of host parasite relationship in staphylococcal infections *Med J Aust* 1 29 39
- Fisher S and Robson J E 1963 Experimental staphylococcal infection of the subcutaneous tissue of the mouse I Bacterial population changes in relation to tissue response *J Infect Dis* 113 204-212
- Fisk R T 1942 Studies on staphylococci II Identification of *Staphylococcus aureus* strains by means of bacteriophage *J Infect Dis* 71 161 165
- Fleming A 1929 *The Staphylococci in Fildes P and Ledingham J C G (eds) A System of Bacteriology in Relation to Medicine Vol II p 15 London Medical Research Council*
- Foster W D 1962 The comparative pathogenicity of strains of *Staphylococcus aureus* with particular reference to coagulase production *J Path Bact* 84 253 256
- Foster W D 1963 The role of alpha hemolysin in the pathogenicity of *Staphylococcus aureus* *J Path Bact* 86 535 543
- Garre C 1885 Zur Aetiologie acut eitriger Entzündungen (Osteomyelitis Furunkel und Panaritium) *Fortschr Med* 3 165 173
- Gladstone G P 1937 The nutrition of *Staphylococcus aureus* nitrogen requirements *Brit J Exp Path* 18 322 333
- Gladstone G P and Glencross M J G 1960 Growth and toxin production of staphylococci in cellophane sacs *in vivo* *Brit J Exp Path* 41 313 333
- Gladstone G P and van Heyningen W E 1957 Staphylococcal leucodidms *Brit J Exp Path* 38 123 137
- Gladstone G P Mudd S Hochstein H D and Lenhart N A 1962 The assay of anti staphylococcal leucocidal components (F and S) in human serum *Brit J Exp Path* 43 295 312
- Glenny A T and Stevens M F 1935 *Staphylococcus toxins and antitoxins* *J Path Bact* 40 201 210
- Gluck L and Wood H F 1961 Effect of an antiseptic skin care regimen in reducing staphylococcal colonization in newborn infants *New Eng J Med* 265 1177 1181
- Gorzynski E A Neter E and Cohen E 1960 Effect of lysozyme on the release of erythrocyte modifying antigen from staphylococci and *Micrococcus lysodeikticus* *J Bact* 80 207 211
- Goshi K Cluff L E Johnson J E and Conti C R 1961a Studies on the pathogenesis of staphylococcal infection II The effect of non specific inflammation *J Exp Med* 113 249 257
- Goshi K Cluff L E and Johnson J E 1961b Studies on the pathogenesis of staphylococcal infection III The effect of tissue

- necrosis and antitoxic immunity *J Exp Med* 113 259 270
- Graber C D Latta R Faureld J P and Vogel E H Jr 1958 Production of opalescence by staphylococci in egg yolk medium as index to bacteriophage typability *Am J Clin Path* 30 314 317
- Gretler A C Mucciolo P Evans J B and Niven C F Jr 1955 Vitamin nutrition of the staphylococci with special reference to their biotin requirements *J Bact* 70 44-49
- Hale J H and Smith W 1945 The influence of coagulase on the phagocytosis of staphylococci *Brit J Exp Path* 26 209 216
- Hare R 1963 Dispersal of staphylococci in Williams R E H and Shooter R A (eds) *Infection in Hospitals* pp 75 86 Oxford Blackwell
- Haskell T H and Hanessian S 1963 2 amino-2-deoxy D glucuronic acid the main constituent of SPA (staphylococcal polysaccharide antigen) *Nature* 199 1074-1075
- Haughton G and Duthie E H 1959 The activation of staphylococcal free coagulase by plasma constituents and the hydrolysis of N toluene p sulfonyl L-arginine methyl ester (TAME) by activated coagulase *Biochem J* 71 348 355
- Haukenes G Ellwood D C Baddiley J and Oeding P 1961 Serological cross reactivity between Polysaccharide A and teichoic acid of *Staphylococcus aureus* *Biochim biophys acta* 53 425-426
- Hibnick H E and Bergdoll M S 1959 Staphylococcal enterotoxin. II Chemistry *Arch Biochem Biophys* 85 70 73
- Hirsch I G 1960 Further studies on preparation and properties of phagocytin *J Exp Med* 111 323 337
- Hobbs H C 1948 A study of the serological type differentiation of *Staphylococcus proteus* *J Hyg* 46 222 238
- Hoffstadt R E and Youmans G P 1932 *Staphylococcus aureus* dissociation and its relation to infection and immunity *J Infect Dis* 51 216 242
- Hurst V and Grossman M 1960 The hospital nursery as a source of staphylococcal disease among families of newborn infants *New Eng J Med* 262 951 956
- Jackson A W 1963 Purification of staphylococcal  $\beta$  lytin *Canad J Biochem Physiol* 3 755 761
- James R D and MacLeod C M 1961 Induction of staphylococcal infections in mice with small inocula introduced on sutures *Brit J Exp Path* 42 266 277
- Jensen K 1958 A normally occurring staphylococcal antibody in human serum *Acta path microbiol scand* 44 421-428
- Jevons M E Coe A W and Parker M T 1963 Methicillin resistance in staphylococci *Lancet* 1 904 907
- Johanovsky J 1958 Role of hypersensitivity in experimental staphylococcal infection *Nature* 182 1454
- 1959 Die Bedeutung des Antileukozytens und Antitoxins bei der Immunität gegen Staphylokokken infektionen *Z Immunitätsforsch* 116 318 328
- Johnson J E Cluff L E and Goshi K 1961 Studies on the pathogenesis of staphylococcal infection 3 The effect of repeated skin infections *J Exp Med* 113 235 247
- Jones D Diebel K H and Niven C F Jr 1963 Identity of *Staphylococcus epidermidis* *J Bact* 85 62 67
- Julanella L A and Wieghard C W 1935 The immunological specificity of staphylococci 1 The occurrence of serological types *J Exp Med* 62 11 21
- Kay C R 1962 Sepsis in the home *Brit Med J* 1 1048 1052
- Kurb W M M 1944 Extraction of a highly potent penicillin inactivator from penicillin resistant staphylococci *Science* 99 452-453
- Kjellander J O and Finland M 1963 Studies on the penicillinase of *Staphylococcus albus* *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 113 1031 1037
- Kjellander J O Klein J O and Finland M 1963 *In vitro* activity of penicillins against *Staphylococcus albus* *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 113 1023 1031
- Kleiger M and Blair J E 1940 Correlation between clinical and experimental findings in cases showing invasion of the blood stream by staphylococci *Surg Gynec Obstet* 71 770 777
- Knight H C J G 1937 The nutrition of *Staphylococcus aureus* nicotinic acid and vitamin B<sub>1</sub> *Biochem J* 31 731 737
- Knight V and Holzer A R 1954 Studies on staphylococci from hospital patients 1 Pre dominance of strains of Group III phage patterns which are resistant to multiple antibiotics *J Clin Invest* 33 1190 1198
- Knight V White A C and Hemmerly T 1958 The effect of antibiotics on staphylococci of hospital patients in Proceedings of the National Conference on Hospital acquired Staphylococcal Disease pp 39 54 Washington US Govt Printing Office
- Koch R 1878 Untersuchungen über die Aetiologie der Wundinfektionskrankheiten Leipzig, Vogel

- Koenig M G Melly M A and Rogers D E 1962 Factors relating to the virulence of staphylococci III Antibacterial versus antitoxic immunity *J Exp Med* 116 601 610
- Lack C H 1948 Staphylokinase an activator of plasma protease *Nature* 161 559 560
- Lack C H and Towers A G 1962 Serological tests for staphylococcal infection *Brit Med J* 2 1227 1229
- Lack C H and Wailing D G 1954 A study of 435 strains of *Staphylococcus pyogenes* with reference to factors which may contribute to pathogenicity *J Path Bact* 68 431 443
- Lenhart N A Mudd S Yoshida A and Li I W 1963 The common protein agglutinin of *Staphylococcus aureus* I Distribution in international serotypes and corresponding antibody in human populations *J Immun* 91 771 776
- Li I W and Kapral F A, 1962 Virulence and coagulases of *Staphylococcus aureus* II Survival of certain coagulase negative mutants in the organs of intravenously injected rabbits *J Infect Dis* 111 204-208
- Loeb L 1903 The influence of certain bacteria on the coagulation of the blood *J Med Res* 10 407-419
- Lofkvist T and Sjoquist J 1962 Chemical and serological analysis of antigen preparations from *Staphylococcus aureus* *Acta path microbiol scand* 56 295 304
- Lominski I Arbuthnott J P and Spence J B 1963 Purification of staphylococcus alpha toxin *J Path Bact* 86 258 262
- Lominski I Smith D D Scott A C Arbuthnott J P Gray E Muir D Turner G H and Hedges C K 1962 Immunisation against experimental staphylococcal infection with coagulase rich preparations *Lancet* 1 1315 1318
- Lyons C 1937 Antibacterial immunity to *Staphylococcus pyogenes* *Brit J Exp Path* 18 411-422
- McCarty M 1959 The occurrence of polyglycerophosphate as an antigenic component of various Gram positive bacterial species *J Exp Med* 109 361 378
- McCarty M and Morse S I 1964 Cell wall antigens of Gram positive bacteria *Adv Immun* 4 249 286
- McCune E M Jr Dineen P A P and Batten J C 1956 The effect of antimicrobial drugs on an experimental staphylococcal infection in mice *Ann NY Acad Sci* 65 91 102
- McLeod J W 1963 Thermostable staphylococcal toxin *J Path Bact* 86 35 54
- Mackaness G B 1960 The phagocytosis and inactivation of staphylococci by macrophages of normal rabbits *J Exp Med* 112 35 53
- Magnuson B J Doery, H M and Gulasek harem, J 1962 Phospholipase activity of staphylococcal toxin *Nature* 196 270 271
- Marston J 1961a Observations on L forms of staphylococci *J Infect Dis* 108 75 84
- 1961b Cultivation of staphylococcal L forms in a liquid medium *J Bact* 81 832 833
- Mattman L H Tunstall L H and Rossmoore H W Induction and characteristics of staphylococcal L forms *Canad J Microbiol* 7 705 713
- Moore B 1960 New screen test and selective medium for rapid detection of epidemic strains of *Staph aureus* *Lancet* 2 453-458
- Morse M L 1959 Transduction by staphylococcal bacteriophage *Proc Nat Acad Sci US* 45 722 727
- Morse M L and La Belle J W 1962 Characteristics of a staphylococcal phage capable of transduction *J Bact* 83 775 780
- Morse S I 1962a Isolation and properties of a surface antigen of *Staphylococcus aureus* *J Exp Med* 115 295 311
- 1962b Studies on the interactions between components of *Staphylococcus aureus* and staphylococcus bacteriophage *J Exp Med* 116 247 251
- 1962c Studies on the chemistry and immunochemistry of cell walls of *Staphylococcus aureus* *J Exp Med* 116 229 245
- 1963a Distribution of a surface antigen of *Staphylococcus aureus* *Nature* 200 1126 1127
- 1963b Isolation and properties of a group antigen of *Staphylococcus albus* *J Exp Med* 117 19 26
- Mortimer E A Jr Lipsitz P J Wolinsky E Gonzaga A J and Rammelkamp C H Jr 1962 Transmission of staphylococci between newborns Importance of the hands of personnel *Am J Dis Child* 104 289 295
- Much H 1908 Über eine Vorstufe der Fibrinolyse in Kulture von *Staphylococcus aureus* *Biochem Z* 14 143 155
- Mudd S Yoshida A Li I W and Lenhart N A 1963 Identification of a somatic antigen of *Staphylococcus aureus* critical for phagocytosis by human blood leucocytes *Nature* 199 1200 1201
- Nahmias A J and Eickhoff T C 1961 Staphylococcal infections in hospitals *Re*

- cent developments in epidemiologic and laboratory investigation *New Eng J Med* 765 74 81 120 128 177 182
- Nathenson S G and Strominger J L 1962 Enzymatic synthesis and immunochemistry of N acetylglucosaminylribitol linkages in the teichoic acids of *Staphylococcus aureus* strains *J Biol Chem* 237 3839 3841
- Neisser M and Wechsberg F 1900 Über eine neue einfache Methode zur Beobachtung von Schädigungen lebender Zellen und Organismen (Bioskopie) München med Wschr 47 1261 1262
- Noble W C Williams R E O Jevons M P and Shooter R A 1964 Some aspects of nasal carriage of staphylococci *J Clin Path* 17 79 83
- Oeding P 1960 Antigenic properties of *Staphylococcus aureus* *Bact Rev* 24 374 396
- Oeding P and Haukenes G 1963 Identification of *Staphylococcus aureus* antigens and antibodies by means of the gel precipitation technique *Acta path microbiol scand* 57 438-450
- Oeding P and Williams R E O 1958 The type classification of *Staphylococcus aureus* A comparison of phage typing with serological typing *J Hyg* 56 445 454
- Ogston A 1881 Report upon microorganisms in surgical diseases *Brit Med J* 2 369 375
- Panton P N and Valentine F C O 1932 Staphylococcal toxin *Lancet* 1 506 508
- Parker M T and Jevons M P 1963 Hospital strains of staphylococci in Williams R E O and Shooter R A (eds) *Infection in Hospitals* pp 55 65 Oxford Blackwell
- Passet J 1885 Über mikroorganismen der enterischen Zellgewebsentzündungen des Menschen *Fortschr Med* 3 33-43
- Pasteur L 1880 De l'extension de la theorie des germes a l'etiology de quelques maladies communes *C R acad sc* 90 1033 1044
- Pattee P A and Baldwin J N 1962 Transduction of resistance to some macrolide antibiotics in *Staphylococcus aureus* *J Bact* 84 1049 1055
- Perkins H R 1963 A polymer containing glucose and aminohexuronic acid isolated from the cell walls of *Micrococcus lysodeikticus* *Biochem J* 86 475-483
- Petersdorf R G Rose M C Rose A B Minchew H B Keene W R and Bennett I L Jr 1960 The sensitivity of hemolytic staphylococci to a series of antibiotics *Arch Int Med* 105 398-412
- Pillet J Orta, B and Pernier M 1961 Recherches sur l'individualisation serologique des staphylocoques Mise en evidence de deux nouveaux agglutinogenes specifiques *Ann Inst Past* 101 590 595
- Pollock M R 1962 Penicillinase in de Reuck A V E and Cameron M P (eds) *Resistance of Bacteria to the Penicillins* pp 56 70 CIBA Foundation Boston Little
- Price K M and Kneeland Y Jr 1954 A mucoid form of *Micrococcus pyogenes* var *aureus* which shows capsular swelling with specific immune serum *J Bact* 67 472-475
- 1956 Further studies of the phenomenon of capsular swelling of *Micrococcus pyogenes* var *aureus* in the presence of immune serum *J Bact* 71 229 230
- Que P G and Wannamaker L W 1961 Staphylococcal Muller Phenomenon Relationships to the plasminogen plasmin system *J Bact* 82 770 783
- 1962 Demonstration of an inhibitor of the Muller Phenomenon in human sera Its identification as anti staphylokinase *J Clin Invest* 41 92 100
- 1964 Serum antibodies in staphylococcal disease *Pediatrics* 33 63 70
- RajBhandary U L and Baddiley J 1963 The intracellular teichoic acid from *Staphylococcus aureus* H *Biochem J* 87 429-435
- Ralston P J Lieberman M Baer B S and Kruger A P 1957 Staphylococcal virolysin a phage induced lysis its differentiation from the autolysin of normal cells *J Gen Physiol* 40 791 807
- Rammelkamp C H Jr Hezebeck M M and Dingle J H 1950 Specific coagulases of *Staphylococcus aureus* *J Exp Med* 91 295 307
- Rammelkamp C H Jr and Lebovitz J L 1956 The role of coagulase in staphylococcal infections *Ann NY Acad Sci* 65 144 151
- Report of The Royal Commission 1928 *Med J Aust* 2 230 38 52 58 65
- Richardson G M 1936 The nutrition of *Staphylococcus aureus* Necessity for uracil in anaerobic growth *Biochem J* 30 2184 2190
- Richmond M H 1963 Purification and properties of the exopenicillinase from *Staphylococcus aureus* *Biochem J* 88 452-459
- Ritz H L and Baldwin J N 1961 Transduction of capacity to produce staphylococcal penicillinase *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 107 678 680
- Rogers D E 1956 The current problem of staphylococcal infections *Ann Int Med* 45 748 781

- Rogers D E and Melly M A 1960 Further observations on the behavior of staphylococci within human leucocytes *J Exp Med* 111 533 558
- 1962 Observations on immunology of pathogenic staphylococci *Yale J Biol Med* 34 560 581
- Rogers D E and Tompsett R 1952 The survival of staphylococci within human leucocytes *J Exp Med* 95 209 230
- Rogers H J 1954 The rate of formation of hyaluronidase coagulase and total extracellular protein by strains of *Staphylococcus aureus* *J Gen Microbiol* 10 209 220
- Roodyn L 1960 Recurrent staphylococcal infections and duration of the carrier state *J Hyg* 58 11 19
- Rosenbach F J 1884 Mikroorganismen bei den Wundinfektionskrankheiten des Menschen Wiesbaden Bergmann
- Rountree P 1947 Staphylococcal bacteriophages II Bacteriophage absorption by staphylococci *Aust J Exp Biol Med Sci* 25 203 212
- Rountree P M 1949 Changes in the phage typing patterns of staphylococci following lysogenization *J Gen Microbiol* 20 620 633
- Sabin B and Stahly G L 1942 The isolation and absorption spectrum maxima of bacterial carotenoid pigments *J Bact* 44 265 276
- Sanders E 1963 Inhibition of coagulase reaction of pathogenic staphylococci by heparin *in vitro* II Use of sterile cell free preparations of coagulase *J Bact* 86 1350 1351
- Selbie F R and Simon R D 1952 Virulence to mice of *Staphylococcus pyogenes* its measurement and its relation to certain *in vitro* properties *Brit J Exp Path* 33 315 326
- Shaffer E T Sylvester R F Baldwin J N and Rhems M S 1957 Staphylococcal infections in newborn infants II Report of 19 epidemics caused by an identical strain of *Staphylococcus pyogenes* *Am J Pub Health* 47 990 994
- Shah D B and Wilson J B 1963 Egg yolk factor of *Staphylococcus aureus* I Nature of the substrate and enzyme involved in the egg yolk opacity reaction *J Bact* 85 516 521
- Shinefield H R Ribble J C Boris M and Eichenwald H F 1963 Bacterial interference Its effect on nursery acquired infection with *Staphylococcus aureus* V An analysis and interpretation *Am J Dis Child* 105 683 688
- Simon H J 1963 Epidemiology and pathogenesis of staphylococcal infection I An experimentally induced attenuated staphylococcal infection in guinea pigs and its modification by tetracycline *J Exp Med* 118 149 164
- Simon H J and Sakai W 1963 Staphylococcal antagonism to penicillin G therapy of hemolytic streptococcal pharyngeal infection Effect of oxacillin *Pediatrics* 31 463-469
- Smith C H 1953 Variation in a small colony strain of staphylococcus *J Gen Microbiol* 9 19
- Smith H W and Crabb W E 1960 The effects of diets containing tetracyclines and penicillin on the *Staphylococcus aureus* flora of the nose and skin of pigs and chickens and their human attendants *J Path Bact* 79 243 249
- Smith J M and Dubos R J 1956a The behavior of virulent and avirulent staphylococci in the tissues of normal mice *J Exp Med* 103 87 107
- 1956b The effect of nutritional disturbances on the susceptibility of mice to staphylococcal infections *J Exp Med* 103 109 118
- 1956c The effect of dimetophenol and thyroxin on the susceptibility of mice to staphylococcal infections *J Exp Med* 103 119 126
- Smith M L 1937 Circulating antitoxin and resistance to experimental infection with staphylococci *J Path Bact* 45 305 310
- Smith M L and Price S A 1938 Staphylococcus  $\gamma$  haemolysin *J Path Bact* 47 379 393
- Spink W W 1939 Attempts to demonstrate surface antigen of staphylococci and specific phagocytosis *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 40 549 552
- Stamp L 1961 Antibacterial immunity to *Staphylococcus pyogenes* in rabbits *Brit J Exp Path* 42 30 37
- Stern H and Elek S D 1957 Antigenic structure of *Staphylococcus pyogenes* *J Path Bact* 73 473-493
- Stewart G T and Holt R J 1963 Evaluation of natural resistance to newer penicillins *Brit Med J* 1 308 311
- Suganuma A 1961 The plasma membrane of *Staphylococcus aureus* *J Biophys Biochem Cytol* 10 292 298
- Sugiyama H Bergdoll M and Dack G M 1962 Early development of a temporary resistance to the emetic action of staphylococcal enterotoxin *J Infect Dis* 111 233 238

- Sugiyama H McKissie E M Jr and Bergdoll M S 1963 Sensitivity of thorotrast treated monkeys to staphylococcal enterotoxin *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 113 468 470
- Suzue G and Tanaka S 1959 Carotenogenesis and resistance of *Micrococcus pyogenes* to tetracyclines *Science* 129 1359 1360
- Thal A P and Egner W 1962 The site of action of the staphylococcus alpha toxin *J Exp Med* 113 67 81
- Verwey W F 1940 A type specific antigenic protein derived from the staphylococcus *J Exp Med* 71 635 644
- Warren S E Sugiyama H and Prohaska J V 1963 Correlation of staphylococcal enterotoxins with experimentally induced enterocolitis *Surg Gynec Obstet* 116 29 33
- Wentworth H 1963 Bacteriophage typing of the staphylococci *Bact Rev* 27 253 272
- Wiegand C W and Julianelle L A 1935 The immunological specificity of staphylococci II The chemical nature of the soluble specific substances *J Exp Med* 62 23 30
- Wiley B B and Wonnacott J C 1962 Isolation and partial characterization of a capsular material from *Staphylococcus aureus* *J Bact* 83 1169 1176
- Williams R E O 1963 Healthy carriage of *Staphylococcus aureus* Its prevalence and importance *Bact Rev* 27 56 71
- Williams R E O and Harper G J 1947 Staphylococcal haemolysins on sheep blood agar with evidence for a fourth haemolysin *J Path Bact* 59 69 78
- Williams R E O Jevons M P Shooter R A Hunter C J W Girling J A Griffiths J D and Taylor G W 1959 Nasal staphylococci and sepsis in hospital patients *Brit Med J* 2 658 662
- Williams R E O and Shooter R A (eds) 1963 *Infections in Hospitals* Oxford Blackwell 355 pp
- Willis A T and Turner G C 1962 Staphylococcal lypolysis and pigmentation *J Path Bact* 84 337 347
- Wise H I 1956 Small colonies (G variants) of staphylococci isolation from cultures and infections *Ann NY Acad Sci* 65 169 174
- Wise R I and Spink W W 1954 The influence of antibiotics on the origin of small colonies (G variants) of *Micrococcus pyogenes* var *aureus* *J Clin Invest* 33 1611 1622
- Wood J S Bennett I L Jr and Yardley J H 1956 Staphylococcal enterocolitis in chinchillas *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 98 454 466
- Woodin A M 1959 Fractionation of a leucocidin from *Staphylococcus aureus* *Biochem J* 73 225 237
- Woodin A M French J E and Marchesi V T 1963 Morphological changes associated with the extrusion of protein induced in the polymorphonuclear leucocyte by staphylococcal leucocidin *Biochem J* 87 567 571
- Yoshida A 1963 Staphylococcal  $\gamma$  hemolysin I Purification and chemical properties *Biochim biophys acta* 71 544 553
- Yoshida A Mudd S and Lenhart N A 1963 The common protein agglutinin of *Staphylococcus aureus* II Purification chemical characterization and serologic comparison with Jensen's antigen *J Immun* 91 777 782
- Zebrovitz E Evans J B and Niven C R Jr 1955 Tellurite glycine agar a selective plating medium for the quantitative detection of coagulase positive staphylococci *J Bact* 70 686 690
- Zen-Yoji H Terayama T and Benoki M 1961a Studies on staphylococcal coagulase I Antigenic difference of coagulase and distribution of the anticoagulase in human sera *Jap J Microbiol* 5 237 247
- Zen-Yoji H Terayama T Benoki M and Kuwahara S 1961b Studies on staphylococcal coagulase II Coagulase typing of staphylococci and its relationship to phage typing *Jap J Microbiol* 5 367 374

## 18

## The Meningococci

The meningococci are gram negative cocci, usually occurring in pairs which form non pigmented translucent colonies and ferment dextrose and maltose with production of acid. They are aerobic nonsporulating and non motile. They are strict parasites of man and are the cause of several types of infections of which the most important are meningococcemia and meningococcal meningitis. The accepted name is *Neisseria meningitidis* although occasionally used synonyms are *Neisseria intracellularis* and *Diplococcus intracellularis meningitidis*.

## HISTORY

Epidemic cerebrospinal meningitis is undoubtedly an ancient disease but its early history remains unclear because of the difficulty in differentiating it from other syndromes of a similar nature. This confusion is exemplified by some of the names used to describe the disease in the early 19th century viz sinking typhus, spotted fever and brain fever. According to Hirsch (1886) the disease was first recognized in epidemic form in Geneva, Switzerland in 1805 by Vieusseux and 1 year later in the United States at Medfield, Mass. where an outbreak was described by Danielson and Mann. During the next 75 years an increasing number of outbreaks of a disease which may be presumed to be epidemic cerebrospinal meningitis on the basis of clinical and epidemiologic

data occurred in Western Europe and the United States. Military forces particularly those stationed in barracks seemed to be unduly prone to epidemics of the disease. By the end of the century outbreaks had been reported from Asia, Africa and Australia as well. The isolation and the description of the causative organism *Neisseria meningitidis* from spinal fluid of a clinical case by Weichselbaum in 1887 permitted the diagnosis to be made with certainty. Since then extensive outbreaks have occurred in many parts of the world. A major epidemic occurred in New York City in 1904 and 1905. During World War I the Allied Forces both in England and on the Continent, suffered from outbreaks of the disease. In the United States in recent years it has tended to occur at irregular intervals. There was a severe outbreak in the period of 1928 to 1930 and another during the opening years of World War II, 1940 to 1943.

With the widespread application of diagnostic laboratory procedures our knowledge of the disease increased rapidly. It was recognized that meningococcal meningitis could occur endemically as well as in the form of epidemics. A septicemic form of the disease in which the central nervous system was not involved was recognized and given the name meningococcemia. The organism was isolated from the nasopharynx of a significant number of individuals during the course of routine surveys and based on this evidence

the concept of the healthy carrier developed

Dopter (1909) was the first to recognize the existence of serologically specific types of *meningococcus*. This work was continued and extended by British and French workers during World War I and laid the firm basis for our present system of classification. Serum therapy for meningococcal meningitis was introduced by Jochmann in 1906 and its use was firmly established by the work of Flexner (1913). The era of chemotherapy started in 1939 and today this form of treatment has completely displaced serum therapy. The outbreaks of epidemic disease which accompanied World War II gave investigators the opportunity to carry out valuable investigations on the epidemiology, the therapy and specific prevention of the disease. The recent reviews by Branham (1953), by Goeters (1954) and by Scherp (1955) may be consulted for further reference.

## MORPHOLOGIC AND BIOCHEMICAL CHARACTERISTICS

The meningococci are gram negative, non-motile, nonsporulating cocci approximately 0.6 to 0.8 microns in diameter which in body fluids and liquid media at least are often arranged in pairs giving rise to the synonym *diplococcus*. When found in pairs the adjacent sides are usually flattened to produce the typical biscuit or reniform shape. Considerable variation occurs in both size and staining properties particularly in older cultures. Autolysis is a prominent characteristic of the meningococci and is presumably responsible for the numerous ghost cells seen in older cultures as well as for the marked variations in staining properties. The organism is usually described as being nonencapsulated since no capsule has been demonstrated unequivocally by direct capsular stains. On the other hand, in at least 2 groups of meningococci a capsule may be demonstrated in freshly isolated strains by the application of homologous typing serum.

On solid media meningococci give rise to smooth, nonpigmented and nonhemolytic colonies. Freshly isolated strains produce transparent, glistening colonies with a smooth border when grown on a transparent medium. The so-called lens effect may be observed in

that when distant objects are viewed through the colony they become sharply focused. Some strains tend to produce mucoid colonies. As the colony ages it tends to become opaque and granular and to lose its smooth border. Old laboratory strains frequently give rise to rough colonies.

Ever since the publication of Murray's monograph (1929) meningococci have been regarded as highly fastidious organisms which require accessory growth factors such as are present in blood, serum and certain vegetable extracts. Many media incorporating one or more of these products have been devised for the propagation of these organisms. However, their definitive growth requirements remain to be determined and more recent work by Frantz (1942) among others suggests that the primary difficulty is not a nutritional deficiency but rather the extreme sensitivity of meningococci to the toxic effects exerted by a variety of amino acids, fatty acids and salts. The role of animal proteins and vegetable extracts in culture media appears to be one primarily of absorbing toxic substances so as to permit growth rather than the furnishing of any necessary growth requirement. An atmosphere containing 5 to 10 per cent carbon dioxide enhances the growth of most strains of the organism.

The meningococci grow best at a temperature of 35° to 37° C. At temperatures higher or lower than this the amount of growth falls off rapidly. The organisms are strict aerobes and no growth takes place under strictly anaerobic conditions. Blood agar, chocolate agar, trypticase soy agar and the starch casein hydrolysate agar of Mueller and Hinton (1941) represent the solid media in common use for the propagation of these organisms. Growth in broth (tryptose phosphate veal infusion, starch casein hydrolysate) is relatively poor, resulting in a granular turbidity and little or no surface growth.

The carbohydrate fermentation properties of these organisms are sharply limited. Dextrose and maltose are fermented with the production of acid but no gas. Lactose, sucrose, levulose and other sugars are not fermented. Indole and hydrogen sulfide are not formed but catalase is present. In common with other organisms belonging to the genus *Neisseria*, meningococci contain cytochrome



TABLE 1 GROUPING OF MENINGOCOCCI

RECOM- MENDED BY SUBCOM- MITTEE 1950	DESIGNA- TION IN COMMON USE 1940 1955	GORDON AND MURRAY (1915) TYPES
A	I	I III
B	II	II
C	II <i>alpha</i>	
D	IV	IV

oxidase which rapidly oxidizes dimethyl- or tetramethyl paraphenylene diamine hydrochloride (McLeod *et al.* 1934). The presence of this oxidase cannot be demonstrated in killed organisms. It provides a useful means for the provisional differentiation of the members of the genus *Neisseria* from other microbial organisms which with rare exceptions lack this enzyme.

As previously mentioned, the possession by meningococcus of an active autolytic enzyme system results in swelling, loss of staining properties, and in the ultimate disappearance of the cell itself in cultures more than a few hours old. This process may be halted by the inactivation of the autolytic enzymes either by heating the culture to 65° C for 30 minutes or by the addition of potassium cyanide or formalin.

The resistance of the meningococci to physical and chemical agents is relatively low and these organisms experience considerable difficulty in surviving outside the human body. They are quite susceptible to desiccation and are killed by heating to 55° C for 30 minutes or by exposure to any of the common germicides in relatively low dilutions. Most strains of meningococci are sensitive to the action of the sulfonamides, penicillin, and broad spectrum antibiotics such as the members of the tetracycline series. Although fresh strains are sensitive to the action of streptomycin, highly resistant forms develop rapidly, and in some instances streptomycin dependent strains are the end result.

### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

At least 4 broad serologic groups of meningococci have been recognized on the basis of antigenic differences. The original classifica-

tion of Gordon and Murray (1915) has been followed in its general outline, but the use of different terminologies by English, French, and American workers has caused a considerable amount of confusion. The subject has been reviewed by Branham (1953, 1958). The classification described in Table 1 follows that recommended by a subcommittee of the Nomenclature Committee of the International Association of Microbiologists in 1950. For clarification, the terminology in common use in the United States during the period 1940 to 1955 is set up in parallel together with the original classification of Gordon and Murray.

Of the 4 types originally described by Gordon and Murray, I corresponds to Group A, II to Group B, and IV to Group D. It is the general consensus today that their Type III cannot be distinguished from Type I and therefore both are included in Group A. Strains falling in this group (A) are the causative agents of the great majority of epidemic outbreaks of the disease. Group B has been responsible for the majority of sporadic cases occurring in interepidemic periods. Group C, originally designated II *alpha*, has been isolated chiefly from sporadic cases of the disease. Very few strains falling into Group D have been isolated in the United States. There is relatively little crossing over between the 4 groups. In addition to these, a number of nasopharyngeal strains have been isolated which have not been agglutinated by any of the specific antisera. These organisms apparently play no significant role in the causation of disease. The production of group transformation has been described by Alexander and Redman (1953).

Group A and C strains are better antigens than those belonging to Group B, and long courses of immunization are necessary with the latter in order to produce high titered diagnostic antisera. Chemical fractionation (Scherp and Rake 1935; Kabat 1943) has revealed 3 types of antigenic substances. A nucleoprotein or P substance is found in all meningococci as well as in other *Neisseria* and in Type III pneumococci. This material apparently contributes to the toxicity of these organisms. A polysaccharide or C substance is also found in other members of the *Neisseria* as well as in certain unrelated or

ganisms. A Boivin type toxic glucolipid is present in all meningococci and is closely related to similar antigens found in other *Neisseria*. In addition a polysaccharide specific for Group A meningococci has been identified and purified in the form of the sodium salt of a polysaccharide acid. Although not a complete antigen in itself it is presumably responsible for the specific serologic reactions given by Group A. Among these are included the capsular swelling and the so-called halo reaction. This last reaction represents the formation of a ring of precipitate around the individual colonies of the Group A meningococci when they are inoculated into an agar medium containing an excess of specific antibody. Similar reactions have been observed with Groups B and C strains when they are brought into contact with specific antisera. In the case of Group C meningococci this reaction is due to a capsular polysaccharide haptene which is predominantly a polymer of a sialic acid congener (Watson *et al.* 1958). No capsule has been demonstrated in Group B meningococci; the specific surface haptene appears to be a noncapsular carbohydrate containing polypeptide. In the case of Group A antisera at least there appears to be a close correlation between their anti-polysaccharide content and their protective ability. After absorption of the antiserum with the specific polysaccharide there remains some residual antibody which affords appreciable protection in mice against experimental meningococcal infections (Kabat *et al.* 1945).

Group B meningococci contain a protein fraction which is common to all members of the group and is antigenic. In addition there is a carbohydrate polypeptide complex ( $\kappa$  substance) which although not a complete antigen in itself reacts with Group B specific antibodies.

Since the early work of Flexner (1907) investigators have recognized the lethal activity of heat killed or autolyzed cultures of the meningococci. The fact that such preparations are markedly toxic for laboratory animals has suggested that an endotoxin released by the autolysis of the bacteria is responsible for many of the signs of the disease. The endotoxin appears to be relatively nonspecific, antigenic and heat stable pre-

sumably it contains both nucleoprotein and glucolipid elements.

## NATURAL HABITAT AND RANGE OF PATHOGENICITY

The meningococci are strict parasites of man; their natural habitat is the nasopharynx of this species. Natural infections are found only in man and the organisms have a relatively low virulence for other species. Flexner (1907) was able to produce a picture of meningitis in monkeys following the intraspinal inoculation of a relatively large number of organisms. As pointed out by Murray (1929) laboratory animals such as mice, guinea pigs and rabbits are susceptible to the inoculation of meningococci only when the infecting dose is so large that it approaches the lethal dose of the heat killed organisms. However, if the organisms are suspended in 2 to 5 per cent hog gastric mucin (Miller 1933) a relatively small number of organisms suffices to initiate a fatal infection. The enhancing effect of the mucin is due presumably to the protective effect it exerts against the body's natural defense mechanisms. Although this technique has been employed in the determination of antibody levels in sera and of the relative efficacy of drugs, this type of infection bears little resemblance to the natural disease as it is seen in man; hence its usefulness is limited. Embryonated eggs are susceptible to infection following inoculation of the organisms via the yolk sac route and this technique too has been employed for the assay of antibody levels and the therapeutic efficacy of certain drugs. There is a considerable variation in virulence between strains of meningococci. Old laboratory strains and those which have gone rough are of relatively low virulence as compared with strains freshly isolated from human beings.

## PATHOGENESIS

Meningococci gain entrance to the human body via the nasopharynx. After becoming implanted in this area they may set up a localized inflammatory reaction or they may remain completely quiescent, giving rise to no signs or symptoms. In a relatively small proportion of these infections invasion of the

bloodstream takes place. This may remain limited as a simple bacteremia, or as the organisms are disseminated through the body, metastatic lesions may be set up in various sites such as the skin, joints, ears, lungs and adrenal glands and most important of all the central nervous system. Here an inflammatory reaction involving the meninges of both the brain and the spinal cord is the chief finding. While it is possible that in some instances organisms spread directly from the nasopharynx into the meninges by penetrating through the cribriform plate, it is generally accepted that the central nervous system is invaded from the bloodstream. Those factors which govern the ability of the organisms to spread from the nasopharynx into the bloodstream and ultimately to reach the central nervous system in a small percentage of these cases remain undetermined. In most infections it appears that the organisms do not progress farther than the nasopharynx.

It is not clear what are the mechanisms by which the meningococci give rise to the characteristic pathologic findings. Presumably the endotoxic material released from the bacterial cells as a result of the process of autolysis is responsible for the initiation of the process. The vascular system appears to be particularly sensitive to the action of this material and hemorrhagic manifestations (perhaps due to a Schwartzmanlike phenomenon) are common in the disease. In fulminating meningococcemia this hemorrhagic process is particularly noticeable in the skin and in the adrenal cortex. The so-called Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome is occasionally associated with massive adrenal hemorrhage but widespread vascular dysfunction causing peripheral pooling of the blood appears to be the usual cause of the profound shock associated with this condition rather than acute adrenal cortical failure.

Meningococcal infection of the nasopharynx may set up so mild a reaction in the host that it attracts no notice. In other instances an acute inflammatory process may progress to the stage of a purulent rhinitis.

Meningococcemia presents the picture of acute sepsis with fever, chills, malaise and prostration. Usually the typical rash can be detected early in the disease. This consists of dusky red spots or petechiae of varying sizes

up to 15 mm in diameter which involve the skin and the mucous membranes of the body. In severe cases the petechiae may assume a purpuric appearance as the result of hemorrhage. These may reach a diameter of several centimeters and go on to actual necrosis. In mild cases the spots disappear within a few days leaving small brownish areas in their wake. Histologic examination has revealed that these lesions are due to thrombo-embolic involvement of the capillaries. Puncture of the lesion frequently demonstrates the presence of meningococci. Fulminant infections often give rise to the Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome characterized by circulatory collapse and shock. Diffuse hemorrhage into and necrosis of the adrenal glands are occasionally found at autopsy but these appear to be associated rather than essential pathologic lesions (Ferguson and Chapman 1948). In the absence of this complication recovery is the general rule if the disease is treated vigorously and promptly.

Invasion of the central nervous system is marked by signs and symptoms of meningeal irritation and inflammation. Severe headache, pain in the posterior aspects of the neck on forward flexion, nausea, vomiting and often coma are prominent features. Physical examination reveals muscular spasm, stiff neck, exaggerated reflexes and positive Kernig and Brudzinski signs. Convulsions and bulging fontanelles are common findings in infants.

The meningitis is characterized by an acute inflammatory reaction accompanied by thromboses of the smaller blood vessels and hemorrhage. In the later stages marked thickening of the meningeal coverings is a prominent feature as the originally purulent exudate becomes organized. Encephalitic involvement is characterized by focal areas of hemorrhage, thrombosis and perivascular infiltration.

## IMMUNITY

The mechanism of recovery from clinically recognizable meningococcal infections has not been determined. During the course of the clinical illness antibody formation may be demonstrated by a variety of techniques including agglutination, mouse protection and bactericidal tests among others. The role that this antibody formed during the course of the

illness plays in the recovery of the patient remains uncertain. Because of the low morbidity rate which makes it statistically improbable that second attacks will occur and because of the existence of several serologically specific meningococcal groups or types, nothing is known concerning the potential immunity conferred by a clinical attack of the disease.

There is no reliable method for measuring the susceptibility of an individual to either clinical or subclinical infections with meningococci. Man appears to be relatively susceptible to inapparent nasopharyngeal infections with these organisms. This is evidenced by the fact that a significant carrier rate of meningococci can be demonstrated in the general population throughout the year. Most of these infections are entirely silent although a few may give rise to a local inflammatory process in the nasopharynx. On the other hand, the resistance of man to chlamydia infections appears to be relatively high in that cases of meningococcemia and meningococcal meningitis are relatively rare even during epidemic periods. It has been shown by Thomas and Dingle (1943) among others that a good proportion of the adult human population possesses bactericidal antibodies against the meningococci which may be demonstrated in the test tube. The role played by these protective antibodies in limiting the number and the severity of clinical infections remains undetermined. However, the erratic results obtained with various strains of meningococci suggest that it does not play a dominant role. Presumably these antibodies are formed in most instances as a result of inapparent infections but this theory remains to be proved.

Although there is some degree of positive correlation between the presence of group specific antibodies and the protective value of a given serum (Branham 1940) the fact that absorption with the whole homologous organism (as opposed to the specific polysaccharide alone) is necessary for the complete removal of the protective effect of the serum suggests that some other material (antigen or haptene) is playing a significant role in the production of protective antibody. Presumably this protective antibody or antibodies exerts its beneficial effect through

promoting phagocytosis by a process of opsonization and through enhancing the bacteriolytic process. In this last regard it appears that both group specific antibody and complement play significant roles in the mechanism of the process. Although numerous attempts have been made to develop a satisfactory process of active immunization the results in terms of protective antibody formation have been inconclusive and in general poor.

## DIAGNOSIS

The laboratory diagnosis of meningococcal infection is made by the isolation and the identification of the specific organism. Blood, spinal fluid and nasopharyngeal swabs represent the 3 most important materials to be examined for the presence of these organisms. Although the techniques required for the isolation and the identification of these organisms are not difficult, they do necessitate careful attention to the details of the work. Furthermore, a thorough knowledge of the pathogenesis of the disease is required in order that cultures may be taken from proper sites at the correct moment.

The importance of blood cultures in the diagnosis of meningococcemia is obvious. In meningococcal meningitis these are positive in approximately half the cases if they are taken early in the course of the disease. Blood taken from the basilic vein is inoculated into both liquid and solid media. From 5 to 10 ml of blood is added to 100 ml of tryptose phosphate veal infusion or casein hydrolysate broth. Approximately 0.1 ml of blood is spread over the surface of a blood agar chocolate agar or casein hydrolysate plate. These are incubated at 35° to 37° C under conditions of increased humidity and carbon dioxide content (5 to 10%). Cultures should be inspected daily for 7 days before being discarded as negative. In cases of overwhelming sepsis it is not uncommon to recognize gram negative diplococci in simple blood smears prepared for routine hematologic examination. Similarly in such cases where petechiae or a purpuric rash are a prominent feature it is often possible to demonstrate the specific organism in these lesions by means of smear or culture or broth.

bloodstream takes place. This may remain limited as a simple bacteremia or, as the organisms are disseminated through the body, metastatic lesions may be set up in various sites such as the skin, joints, ears, lungs and adrenal glands and most important of all, the central nervous system. Here an inflammatory reaction involving the meninges of both the brain and the spinal cord is the chief finding. While it is possible that in some instances organisms spread directly from the nasopharynx into the meninges by penetrating through the cribriform plate, it is generally accepted that the central nervous system is invaded from the bloodstream. Those factors which govern the ability of the organisms to spread from the nasopharynx into the bloodstream and ultimately to reach the central nervous system in a small percentage of these cases remain undetermined. In most infections it appears that the organisms do not progress farther than the nasopharynx.

It is not clear what are the mechanisms by which the meningococci give rise to the characteristic pathologic findings. Presumably the endotoxic material released from the bacterial cells as a result of the process of autolysis is responsible for the initiation of the process. The vascular system appears to be particularly sensitive to the action of this material and hemorrhagic manifestations (perhaps due to a Shwartzmanlike phenomenon) are common in the disease. In fulminating meningococcemia this hemorrhagic process is particularly noticeable in the skin and in the adrenal cortex. The so-called Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome is occasionally associated with massive adrenal hemorrhage but widespread vascular dysfunction causing peripheral pooling of the blood appears to be the usual cause of the profound shock associated with this condition rather than acute adrenal cortical failure.

Meningococcal infection of the nasopharynx may set up so mild a reaction in the host that it attracts no notice. In other instances an acute inflammatory process may progress to the stage of a purulent rhinitis.

Meningococcemia presents the picture of acute sepsis with fever, chills, malaise and prostration. Usually, the typical rash can be detected early in the disease. This consists of dusky red spots or petechiae of varying sizes

up to 15 mm in diameter which involve the skin and the mucous membranes of the body. In severe cases the petechiae may assume a purpuric appearance as the result of hemorrhage. These may reach a diameter of several centimeters and go on to actual necrosis. In mild cases the spots disappear within a few days, leaving small brownish areas in their wake. Histologic examination has revealed that these lesions are due to thrombo-embolic involvement of the capillaries. Puncture of the lesion frequently demonstrates the presence of meningococci. Fulminant infections often give rise to the Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome characterized by circulatory collapse and shock. Diffuse hemorrhage into and necrosis of the adrenal glands are occasionally found at autopsy, but these appear to be associated rather than essential pathologic lesions (Ferguson and Chapman 1948). In the absence of this complication recovery is the general rule if the disease is treated vigorously and promptly.

Invasion of the central nervous system is marked by signs and symptoms of meningeal irritation and inflammation. Severe headache, pain in the posterior aspects of the neck on forward flexion, nausea, vomiting and often coma are prominent features. Physical examination reveals muscular spasm, stiff neck, exaggerated reflexes and positive Kernig and Brudzinski signs. Convulsions and bulging fontanelles are common findings in infants.

The meningitis is characterized by an acute inflammatory reaction accompanied by thromboses of the smaller blood vessels and hemorrhage. In the later stages marked thickening of the meningeal coverings is a prominent feature as the originally purulent exudate becomes organized. Encephalitic involvement is characterized by focal areas of hemorrhage, thrombosis and perivascular infiltration.

## IMMUNITY

The mechanism of recovery from clinically recognizable meningococcal infections has not been determined. During the course of the clinical illness antibody formation may be demonstrated by a variety of techniques including agglutination, mouse protection and bactericidal tests among others. The role that this antibody formed during the course of the

TABLE 2 DIFFERENTIAL CHARACTERISTICS OF *Neisseria*

ORGANISM	APPEARANCE OF COLONY AFTER 24 HOURS INCUBATION	GROWTH ON PLAIN NUTRIENT AGAR	GROWTH AT 22° C	FERMENTATION			OTHER
				DEX TROSE	MALT OSE	SU CROSE	
<i>N meningitidis</i>	Round smooth glistening translucent color less creamy consistency	—	—	+	+	—	4 distinct antigenic groups serologically
<i>N gonorrhoea</i>	Similar to <i>N meningitidis</i> Smaller and more opalescent	—	—	+	—	—	
<i>N catarrhalis</i>	Smooth glistening translucent or firm somewhat opaque and adherent May be difficult to emulsify	+	+	—	—	—	Often agglutinates in normal horse serum or saline
<i>N flavescens</i>	Yellow pigmentation when first isolated otherwise similar to <i>N meningitidis</i>	+	±	—	—	—	Homogeneous distinct group serologically
<i>N sicca</i>	Small somewhat opaque wrinkled colonies quite brittle	+	+	+	+	+	Spontaneous agglutination in saline and normal horse serum

for 2 hours in a water bath before being examined. A final confirmatory examination may be carried out after overnight incubation at 4° C.

Growth characteristics fermentation reactions and serologic tests serve to differentiate other members of the genus *Neisseria* from the meningococci (Table 2). *Neisseria catarrhalis* and *N sicca* are characterized by their ability to grow at room temperature. The latter forms rough dry appearing colonies and both species tend to agglutinate spontaneously in saline or normal horse serum. Of the various pigmented species of *Neisseria* only *N flavescens* appears to be of any importance since it was isolated from a small epidemic of meningitis in Chicago by Branham (1930). The growth characteristics of the gonococcus closely resemble those of the meningococcus. As regards biochemical reactions *N catarrhalis* and *N flavescens* fail to ferment dextrose maltose and sucrose and the gonococcus ferments only dextrose. On the other hand *N sicca* ferments all 3 sugars. Agglutination tests will usually demonstrate the antigenic specificity of these organisms. Since all *Neisseria* possess the ox-

dase which attacks dimethyl or tetramethyl paraphenylene diamine hydrochloride this reaction is of little diagnostic value except in instances of cultures taken from the nasopharynx where it may be helpful in the recognition of organisms presumably falling into the genus *Neisseria*.

## TREATMENT

Serum therapy was introduced by Jochmann in 1906 and its use on a wide scale was stimulated by the report of Flexner in 1913. With the recognition of serologic groups among the meningococci came the development of polyvalent sera for the treatment of the disease with a concomitant improvement in results. Although serum therapy is immunologically sound and the beneficial results obtained unquestioned it has found little use since 1940 because of the superior efficacy and ease of administration of chemotherapeutic agents such as the sulfonamides and penicillin.

The extreme sensitivity of meningococci to the sulfonamides in the past has made these the agents of choice in the treatment of

Spinal fluid is collected by lumbar puncture in the 4th lumbar interspace. The spinal fluid is permitted to drop directly onto the surface of plates of casein hydrolysate blood agar or chocolate agar medium. It is well to inoculate a tube of broth in addition and most authorities recommend the incubation of a few ml of spinal fluid collected in a sterile test tube since on occasion positive results will be obtained in this material on subinoculation when the other cultures remain negative. Finally, approximately 5 ml is collected for physical examination including cell count and smear and in addition immunologic tests. A marked polymorphonuclear pleocytosis is the usual finding. The fluid is centrifuged and the sediment stained with methylene blue in order to reveal the typical extracellular or intracellular diplococci. It is imperative that this examination be made promptly because of the tendency of these organisms to undergo autolysis. In those instances where organisms are found in great numbers the addition of a small amount of specific antiserum may result in the demonstration of capsular swelling and the consequent serologic identification of the causative organism. A small amount of the supernatant fluid may be transferred to a small precipitin tube in which it is layered gently over an approximately equal amount of monovalent anti-meningococcal serum. Frequently a positive precipitin reaction may be obtained in cases of severe infections in which the organism has been demonstrated in the sediment. Occasionally a positive reaction may be obtained even when no organisms are visible in the smear. The reaction observed is usually specific for the various serologic groups of meningococci and thus affords a rapid method of diagnosis.

Since meningococcal meningitis represents a purulent form of the disease the spinal fluid shows a predominance of polymorphonuclear leukocytes. The finding of such a fluid in the course of an epidemic should be taken as presumptive evidence of infection due to the meningococcus until proved otherwise. The general inflammatory nature of the meningeal reaction is reflected by the increase of spinal fluid protein and by the abnormal colloidal gold curve. If organisms are present in significant numbers, the spinal fluid sugar level is reduced accordingly as in the case of

other pyogenic forms of meningitis. Nasopharyngeal cultures are of importance since in most cases of meningococcal meningitis and meningococcemia cultures taken from this area yield positive results. In such instances the organisms isolated from the blood or the spinal fluid and from the nasopharynx are almost inevitably of the same group. The culture is taken by means of a bent wire swab with cotton wool on the end. This is inserted carefully behind the uvula and the soft palate so as to avoid contamination from other oral structures and is rubbed gently over the surface of the posterior nasopharynx. Then the swab is drawn over part of a suitable plate and the streaking is completed by means of a wire loop. Prompt inoculation and incubation of these plates are of importance; however if this is impossible the meningococci may be preserved by inserting the swab into a small amount of sterile horse blood contained in a sterile tube. Under these conditions apparently there is no significant diminution in the number of viable organisms over a period of some hours. If positive blood and spinal fluid usually yield the organism in pure culture frequently nasopharyngeal cultures give the same results. Suspicious colonies and broth cultures may be subcultured for the identification of the specific organism by means of gram stain, fermentation tests and serologic typing. The morphologic appearance of the meningococcus on smear has been described. These organisms usually ferment maltose and dextrose although the reaction may be delayed and somewhat erratic in the case of freshly isolated strains. Sucrose is not fermented. For serologic identification suspicious colonies are emulsified in small amounts of saline which usually contain 0.1 per cent potassium cyanide to inhibit the autolytic process. The addition of group-specific antisera A, B or C usually results in the specific identification of the organism by means of the agglutination test. Strains isolated from the nasopharynx during interepidemic periods are frequently untypable. Error due to nonspecific agglutination should be guarded against by the use of a normal control serum diluted 1:50 and of a saline suspension of the organism. The tube agglutination test has been found to yield reliable results; the suspension is shaken at room temperature and incubated at 37° C.

TABLE 2 DIFFERENTIAL CHARACTERISTICS OF *Neisseriae*

ORGANISM	APPEARANCE OF COLONY AFTER 24 HOURS INCUBATION	GROWTH ON PLAIN NUTRIENT AGAR	GROWTH AT 22 C	FERMENTATION			OTHER
				DEX TROSE	MALT OSE	SU CROSE	
<i>N. meningitidis</i>	Round smooth glistening translucent, colorless, creamy consistency	—	—	+	+	—	4 distinct antigenic groups serologically
<i>N. gonorrhoea</i>	Similar to <i>N. meningitidis</i> Smaller and more opalescent	—	—	+	—	—	
<i>N. catarrhalis</i>	Smooth glistening translucent or firm somewhat opaque and adherent. May be difficult to emulsify	+	+	—	—	—	Often agglutinates in normal horse serum or saline
<i>N. flavescens</i>	Yellow pigmentation when first isolated otherwise similar to <i>N. meningitidis</i>	+	±	—	—	—	Homoeneous distinct group serologically
<i>N. sicca</i>	Small somewhat opaque wrinkled colonies quite brittle	+	+	+	+	+	Spontaneous agglutination in saline and normal horse serum

for 2 hours in a water bath before being examined. A final confirmatory examination may be carried out after overnight incubation at 4° C.

Growth characteristics, fermentation reactions and serologic tests serve to differentiate other members of the genus *Neisseria* from the meningococci (Table 2). *Neisseria catarrhalis* and *N. sicca* are characterized by their ability to grow at room temperature. The latter forms rough, dry appearing colonies and both species tend to agglutinate spontaneously in saline or normal horse serum. Of the various pigmented species of *Neisseria*, only *N. flavescens* appears to be of any importance since it was isolated from a small epidemic of meningitis in Chicago by Branham (1930). The growth characteristics of the gonococcus closely resemble those of the meningococcus. As regards biochemical reactions, *N. catarrhalis* and *N. flavescens* fail to ferment dextrose, maltose and sucrose and the gonococcus ferments only dextrose. On the other hand, *N. sicca* ferments all 3 sugars. Agglutination tests will usually demonstrate the antigenic specificity of these organisms. Since all *Neisseria* possess the out-

dase which attacks dimethyl or tetramethyl paraphenylene diamine hydrochloride, this reaction is of little diagnostic value except in instances of cultures taken from the nasopharynx where it may be helpful in the recognition of organisms presumably falling into the genus *Neisseria*.

## TREATMENT

Serum therapy was introduced by Jochmann in 1906 and its use on a wide scale was stimulated by the report of Flexner in 1913. With the recognition of serologic groups among the meningococci came the development of polyvalent sera for the treatment of the disease with a concomitant improvement in results. Although serum therapy is immunologically sound and the beneficial results obtained unquestioned, it has found little use since 1940 because of the superior efficacy and ease of administration of chemotherapeutic agents such as the sulfonamides and penicillin.

The extreme sensitivity of meningococci to the sulfonamides in the past has made these the agents of choice in the treatment of



Spinal fluid is collected by lumbar puncture in the 4th lumbar interspace. The spinal fluid is permitted to drop directly onto the surface of plates of casein hydrolysate, blood agar or chocolate agar medium. It is well to inoculate a tube of broth in addition and most authorities recommend the incubation of a few ml of spinal fluid collected in a sterile test tube since on occasion positive results will be obtained in this material on subinoculation when the other cultures remain negative. Finally approximately 5 ml is collected for physical examination including cell count and smear and in addition immunologic tests. A marked polymorphonuclear pleocytosis is the usual finding. The fluid is centrifuged and the sediment stained with methylene blue in order to reveal the typical extracellular or intracellular diplococci. It is imperative that this examination be made promptly because of the tendency of these organisms to undergo autolysis. In those instances where organisms are found in great numbers the addition of a small amount of specific antiserum may result in the demonstration of capsular swelling and the consequent serologic identification of the causative organism. A small amount of the supernatant fluid may be transferred to a small precipitin tube in which it is layered gently over an approximately equal amount of monovalent antimeningococcal serum. Frequently a positive precipitin reaction may be obtained in cases of severe infections in which the organism has been demonstrated in the sediment. Occasionally a positive reaction may be obtained even when no organisms are visible in the smear. The reaction observed is usually specific for the various serologic groups of meningococci and thus affords a rapid method of diagnosis.

Since meningococcal meningitis represents a purulent form of the disease the spinal fluid shows a predominance of polymorphonuclear leukocytes. The finding of such a fluid in the course of an epidemic should be taken as presumptive evidence of infection due to the meningococcus until proved otherwise. The general inflammatory nature of the meningeal reaction is reflected by the increase of spinal fluid protein and by the abnormal colloidal gold curve. If organisms are present in significant numbers the spinal fluid sugar level is reduced accordingly as in the case of

other pyogenic forms of meningitis. Nasopharyngeal cultures are of importance since in most cases of meningococcal meningitis and meningococcemia cultures taken from this area yield positive results. In such instances the organisms isolated from the blood or the spinal fluid and from the nasopharynx are almost inevitably of the same group. The culture is taken by means of a bent wire swab with cotton wool on the end. This is inserted carefully behind the uvula and the soft palate so as to avoid contamination from other oral structures and is rubbed gently over the surface of the posterior nasopharynx. Then the swab is drawn over part of a suitable plate and the streaking is completed by means of a wire loop. Prompt inoculation and incubation of these plates are of importance; however if this is impossible the meningococci may be preserved by inserting the swab into a small amount of sterile horse blood contained in a sterile tube. Under these conditions apparently there is no significant diminution in the number of viable organisms over a period of some hours. If positive blood and spinal fluid usually yield the organism in pure culture frequently nasopharyngeal cultures give the same results. Suspicious colonies and broth cultures may be subcultured for the identification of the specific organism by means of gram stain, fermentation tests and serologic typing. The morphologic appearance of the meningococcus on smear has been described. These organisms usually ferment maltose and dextrose although the reaction may be delayed and somewhat erratic in the case of freshly isolated strains. Sucrose is not fermented. For serologic identification suspicious colonies are emulsified in small amounts of saline which usually contain 0.1 per cent potassium cyanide to inhibit the autolytic process. The addition of group specific antisera A, II or C usually results in the specific identification of the organism by means of the agglutination test. Strains isolated from the nasopharynx during interepidemic periods are frequently untypable. Error due to nonspecific agglutination should be guarded against by the use of a normal control serum diluted 1:50 and of a saline suspension of the organism. The tube agglutination test has been found to yield reliable results the suspension is shaken at room temperature and incubated at 37° C.

laboratory methods for the isolation and the identification of the organisms have increased our knowledge of the epidemiology of meningococcal infections. Inapparent or subclinical cases far outnumber clinically recognizable cases. "Healthy" carriers are fairly common in both interepidemic and epidemic periods, yet even in the latter relatively few of the "carriers" develop clinically recognizable disease. A positive correlation between the carrier rate and the incidence of clinical cases has long been postulated, but careful analyses carried out in World War II (Phair and Schoenbach 1944, Aycock and Mueller 1950) have shown that no such relationship exists.

The vast majority of epidemic outbreaks of meningococcal meningitis are due to Group A strains although small outbreaks due to Group C strains have been reported. Sporadic cases of the clinical disease are usually due to Group B or C strains. Cases due to Group D strains are so rare that the data are inconclusive. These facts are reflected in the carrier rates. In interepidemic periods Group B strains represent the predominating organism isolated from carriers; in actual fact, Group A strains are marked by their rarity. However in epidemic periods strains belonging to this latter group may furnish a significant proportion of the organisms isolated from apparently healthy individuals.

The clinical disease has long been associated with military camps and barracks and, in these recruits have appeared to suffer far more than seasoned troops. Immunologic inexperience and susceptibility to excessive fatigue consequent upon the "hardening" process of the raw recruit have been given as factors influencing this difference of incidence but convincing evidence is lacking. No doubt overcrowding a situation often found among military and civilian groups during wartime conditions favors the spread of the organism from one individual to another (Hirsch 1886). However even during the course of an epidemic in a closed group it is difficult to find evidence of spread from one clinical case to another. The epidemiology of meningococcemia and meningococcal meningitis will not be clear until some understanding and recognition are obtained of those factors in the host which permit or

favor the development of the clinically inapparent carrier state in a full-blown case of a dramatic and dangerous disease.

## PREVENTION

The extreme degree of sensitivity of the meningococci to the action of the sulfonamide compounds has rendered chemoprophylaxis the most effective method of preventing clinical cases of meningococcal infection in the past. The efficacy of small doses of sulfadiazine in clearing the carrier state was demonstrated early in World War II and the knowledge was quickly applied to the institution of chemoprophylactic measures on a large scale with gratifying results. While small doses resulted in the prompt disappearance of meningococci from the nasopharynx, there was a general tendency for the organisms to reappear after an interval of a few days. Larger prophylactic doses resulted in the disappearance of the organisms for appreciably longer period of time. The results of continuous prophylaxis (1 Gm of sulfadiazine per day over a period of months) may be illustrated by the experience of United States naval recruits in World War II. Although the primary object of chemoprophylaxis was the reduction of infections due to beta hemolytic streptococci, the virtual elimination of meningococcal meningitis in the recruits during an epidemic period was the most impressive result.

In the light of these results it seems wise to give close contacts of frank cases of meningococcal disease brief courses of chemoprophylaxis with sulfisoxazole or other soluble sulfonamide compounds. This is particularly important if (1) the close contacts are children and (2) exposure occurs during an epidemic period. In the case of hypersensitivity to these compounds penicillin provides an adequate substitute. Presumably the administration of a longer course of chemoprophylaxis to the members of a closed community would result in an appreciable period of freedom from these infections. Such a program should not be initiated without due consideration for the potential complications arising from the emergence of drug-resistant strains not only of meningococci but of other bacterial pathogens as well in

the disease Sulfisoxazole (Gantrisin) has been the preferred drug because of its relatively low toxicity. The equally effective sulfadiazine entails the risk of crystalluria particularly when administered parenterally although this hazard may be markedly reduced by alkalinization of the urine and maintenance of an adequate renal output. The average uncomplicated case responds promptly to the administration of either of these sulfonamides when treatment is initiated early in the course of the disease. If the patient is conscious oral administration of the drug will usually suffice although frequently a priming dose of parenterally administered drug is given at the onset of treatment in order to build up adequate levels in the blood as soon as possible. In the unconscious or critically ill patient the drug must be administered parenterally. Specific therapy must be maintained for several days after the patient's clinical course has returned to normal.

Until recently primary sulfonamide resistant strains of meningococci were unknown and the emergence of drug resistant strains during therapy was not a problem. In 1963 relatively high meningococcal carrier rates due to sulfonamide resistant strains of Group B were detected in 3 military installations in the United States (Millar 1963). This has led to a careful re-examination of the whole problem including the testing of many strains of the organism for sulfonamide sensitivity. With one exception all strains of Group C have shown exquisite sensitivity to these drugs in the absence of recent outbreaks due to Group A organisms. No new strains of this type have been available for testing. Many but not all Group B strains have shown a slight but definite degree of resistance in the 3 instances described above. Resistance to sulfonamides was complete. Further studies are required in order to determine if Group B meningococci are distinguished by their latent ability to develop resistance to the sulfonamide series of drugs. The practical implication of these recent findings is that the critically ill patient or the one who fails to respond promptly and dramatically to sulfonamide therapy should be treated with a combination of agents. Since excellent therapeutic results have been obtained with penicillin this is usually the drug of choice for

combination with sulfisoxazole or sulfadiazine. The broad spectrum antibiotics (notably chloramphenicol) are also effective. Resistance to these agents or to penicillin has not been reported as yet.

The occurrence of acute meningococcemia accompanied by vascular collapse (the Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome) calls for heroic measures including chemotherapy with both sulfisoxazole and penicillin and intravenous fluids (physiologic saline with 10% glucose) to combat shock. Norepinephrine and cortisone (or hydrocortisone) have been given traditionally to relieve presumed adrenal insufficiency but the advisability of this procedure has been questioned recently (Margaretten and McAdams 1958; May 1960). Acute congestive failure due primarily to acute interstitial myocarditis is an important complication and the case fatality rate is high even in the presence of vigorous and sustained treatment.

## EPIDEMIOLOGY

Man represents the only recognized reservoir of the meningococcus. The portal of entry and exit is the upper respiratory tract and the means of spread is essentially person to person via air borne droplets or by inanimate objects which are contaminated by the nasopharyngeal secretions of individuals carrying the organisms. The extreme sensitivity of the organism to adverse physical conditions such as heat and low humidity means that intimate contact between two individuals is necessary for its spread.

The clinical disease occurs both sporadically and in epidemics (Hirsch 1886). The latter show some evidence of cyclical occurrences (Gover and Jackson 1946; Hedrich 1952) with peaks of high prevalence occurring at 8 to 12 year intervals. The incidence is usually highest in the late winter and early spring months. Summer and autumn show a significantly lower incidence of cases. Young children are particularly at risk with some evidence suggesting a higher incidence in males than in females. The case fatality rates are highest among the young and the aged.

The identification of the causative organism, the discovery of the multiplicity of antigenic types and the development of effective

laboratory methods for the isolation and the identification of the organism have increased our knowledge of the epidemiology of meningococcal infections. Inapparent or subclinical cases far outnumber clinically recognizable cases. Healthy carriers are fairly common in both interepidemic and epidemic periods yet even in the latter relatively few of the "carriers" develop clinically recognizable disease. A positive correlation between the carrier rate and the incidence of clinical cases has long been postulated but careful analyses carried out in World War II (Phair and Schoenbach 1944, Aycock and Mueller 1950) have shown that no such relationship exists.

The vast majority of epidemic outbreaks of meningococcal meningitis are due to Group A strains although small outbreaks due to Group C strains have been reported. Sporadic cases of the clinical disease are usually due to Group B or C strains. Cases due to Group D strains are so rare that the data are inconclusive. These facts are reflected in the carrier rates. In interepidemic periods Group B strains represent the predominating organism isolated from carriers in actual fact. Group A strains are marked by their rarity. However in epidemic periods strains belonging to this latter group may furnish a significant proportion of the organisms isolated from apparently healthy individuals.

The clinical disease has long been associated with military camps and barracks and in these recruits have appeared to suffer far more than seasoned troops. Immunologic inexperience and susceptibility to excessive fatigue consequent upon the hardening process of the raw recruit have been given as factors influencing this difference of incidence but convincing evidence is lacking. No doubt overcrowding a situation often found among military and civilian groups during wartime conditions favors the spread of the organism from one individual to another (Hirsch 1886). However even during the course of an epidemic in a closed group it is difficult to find evidence of spread from one clinical case to another. The epidemiology of meningococcemia and meningococcal meningitis will not be clear until some understanding and recognition are obtained of those factors in the host which permit or

favor the development of the clinically inapparent carrier state into a full blown case of a dramatic and dangerous disease.

## PREVENTION

The extreme degree of sensitivity of the meningococci to the action of the sulfonamide compounds has rendered chemoprophylaxis the most effective method of preventing clinical cases of meningococcal infection in the past. The efficacy of small doses of sulfadiazine in clearing the carrier state was demonstrated early in World War II and the knowledge was quickly applied to the institution of chemoprophylactic measures on a large scale with gratifying results. While small doses resulted in the prompt disappearance of meningococci from the nasopharynx there was a general tendency for the organisms to reappear after an interval of a few days. Larger prophylactic doses resulted in the disappearance of the organisms for appreciably longer periods of time. The results of continuous prophylaxis (1 Gm of sulfadiazine per day over a period of months) may be illustrated by the experience of United States naval recruits in World War II. Although the primary object of chemoprophylaxis was the reduction of infections due to beta hemolytic streptococci the virtual elimination of meningococcal meningitis in the recruits during an epidemic period was the most impressive result.

In the light of these results it seems wise to give close contacts of frank cases of meningococcal disease brief courses of chemoprophylaxis with sulfisoxazole or other soluble sulfonamide compounds. This is particularly important if (1) the close contacts are children and (2) exposure occurs during an epidemic period. In the case of hypersensitivity to these compounds penicillin provides an adequate substitute. Presumably the administration of a longer course of chemoprophylaxis to the members of a closed community would result in an appreciable period of freedom from these infections. Such a program should not be initiated without due consideration for the potential complications arising from the emergence of drug resistant strains not only of meningococci but of other bacterial pathogens as well in

the disease Sulfisoxazole (Gantrisin) has been the preferred drug because of its relatively low toxicity. The equally effective sulfadiazine entails the risk of crystalluria particularly when administered parenterally although this hazard may be markedly reduced by alkalization of the urine and maintenance of an adequate renal output. The average uncomplicated case responds promptly to the administration of either of these sulfonamides when treatment is initiated early in the course of the disease. If the patient is conscious oral administration of the drug will usually suffice although frequently a priming dose of parenterally administered drug is given at the onset of treatment in order to build up adequate levels in the blood as soon as possible. In the unconscious or critically ill patient the drug must be administered parenterally. Specific therapy must be maintained for several days after the patient's clinical course has returned to normal.

Until recently primary sulfonamide resistant strains of meningococci were unknown and the emergence of drug resistant strains during therapy was not a problem. In 1963 relatively high meningococcal carrier rates due to sulfonamide resistant strains of Group B were detected in 3 military installations in the United States (Millar 1963). This has led to a careful re-examination of the whole problem including the testing of many strains of the organism for sulfonamide sensitivity. With one exception all strains of Group C have shown exquisite sensitivity to these drugs in the absence of recent outbreaks due to Group A organisms. No new strains of this type have been available for testing. Many but not all Group B strains have shown a slight but definite degree of resistance in the 3 instances described above. Resistance to sulfonamides was complete. Further studies are required in order to determine if Group B meningococci are distinguished by their latent ability to develop resistance to the sulfonamide series of drugs. The practical implication of these recent findings is that the critically ill patient or the one who fails to respond promptly and dramatically to sulfonamide therapy should be treated with a combination of agents. Since excellent therapeutic results have been obtained with penicillin this is usually the drug of choice for

combination with sulfisoxazole or sulfadiazine. The broad spectrum antibiotics (notably chloramphenicol) are also effective. Resistance to these agents or to penicillin has not been reported as yet.

The occurrence of acute meningococcemia accompanied by vascular collapse (the Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome) calls for heroic measures including chemotherapy with both sulfisoxazole and penicillin and intravenous fluids (physiologic saline with 10% glucose) to combat shock. Norepinephrine and cortisone (or hydrocortisone) have been given traditionally to relieve presumed adrenal insufficiency but the advisability of this procedure has been questioned recently (Margaretten and McAdams 1958; May 1960). Acute congestive failure due primarily to acute interstitial myocarditis is an important complication and the case fatality rate is high even in the presence of vigorous and sustained treatment.

## EPIDEMIOLOGY

Man represents the only recognized reservoir of the meningococcus. The portal of entry and exit is the upper respiratory tract and the means of spread is essentially person to person via air borne droplets or by inanimate objects which are contaminated by the nasopharyngeal secretions of individuals carrying the organisms. The extreme sensitivity of the organism to adverse physical conditions such as heat and low humidity means that intimate contact between two individuals is necessary for its spread.

The clinical disease occurs both sporadically and in epidemics (Hirsch 1886). The latter show some evidence of cyclical occurrences (Gover and Jackson 1946; Hedrich 1952) with peaks of high prevalence occurring at 8 to 12 year intervals. The incidence is usually highest in the late winter and early spring months. Summer and autumn show a significantly lower incidence of cases. Young children are particularly at risk with some evidence suggesting a higher incidence in males than in females. The case fatality rates are highest among the young and the aged.

The identification of the causative organism, the discovery of the multiplicity of antigenic types and the development of effective

J D THAYER PH D

*Venereal Disease Research Laboratory  
Venereal Disease Branch Communicable Disease Center \*  
Atlanta Georgia*

WARFIELD GARSON, M D , M P H

*Career Development Division of Office of Personnel  
U S Public Health Service \*  
Washington D C*

## 19

# The Gonococcus

### INTRODUCTION

The gonococcus (*Neisseria gonorrhoeae*) is a gram negative diplococcus a species of the genus *Neisseria* to which belong also the meningococcus and several nonpathogenic inhabitants of mucous membrane including the anaerobic *Veillonella* (family *Neisseriaceae*)

The gonococcus is the cause of a number of contagious infections of human columnar and transitional epithelium Hence urethritis cervicitis salpingitis and other complications in adults vulvovaginitis in children and ophthalmia in the newborn and in adults are contagious inflammatory conditions all caused by the gonococcus The commonest is gonorrhea known in the vernacular as clap or strain

### HISTORY

While most authors suggest that gonorrhea is a disease of great antiquity there is

The opinions or assertions contained herein are those of the authors and are not to be construed as official or reflecting the views of the Department of Health Education and Welfare or the U S Public Health Service

no conclusive proof to support this contention Ancient Egyptian prescriptions early Chinese and Japanese writings Biblical and Vedic references are suggestive but all of them are so vague that it is impossible to determine whether the writers had in mind a specific contagious urethritis or not The clearest descriptions of the progress do not suggest any inflammatory component or contagious character of the urethritides described Galen A D 130 first employed the term gonorrhea which may be translated as flow of seed As Vertue (1953) suggests Galen's own definition and description of gonorrhea is equivalent to what today is termed spermatorrhoea Support of this contention may be found in the contemporary writings of independent physicians such as Aretaeus the Cappadocian and Celsus of the first century A D From Hippocrates to Galen and still later the medical profession showed no general recognition of venereal disease When a contagious urethritis began to appear a place for it consistent with Galen had to be found Quite logically the term gonorrhea was chosen to carry the burden Gulielmus de Saliceto a 13th century physician of Placenza presumably dealt with this disease and was aware of its venereal origin

the course of prolonged chemoprophylaxis (Cheever 1945) If sulfonamide resistant strains of meningococci appear in significant numbers (Feldman 1963) this form of chemoprophylaxis will be sharply limited in value

As in the case of other air borne infections characterized by a high carrier rate attempts to prevent the spread of the causative organism by isolation and environmental control measures have met with little success No vaccine is available

### REFERENCES

- Alexander H E and Redman W 1953 Transformation of type specificity of meningococci change in heritable type induced by type specific extracts containing deoxyribonucleic acid *J Exp Med* 97 797 806
- Aycock W L and Mueller J H 1950 Meningococcus carrier rates and meningitis incidence *Bact Rev* 14 115 160
- Branham S E 1953 Serological relationships among meningococci *Bact Rev* 17 175 188
- 1958 Reference strains for the serologic groups of meningococcus (*Neisseria meningitidis*) *Internat Bull Bact Nomenclature and Taxonomy* 8 1 16
- Cheever F S 1945 The control of meningococcal meningitis by mass chemoprophylaxis with sulfadiazine *Am J Med Sci* 209 74 75
- Ferguson J H and Chapman O D 1948 Fulminating meningococcal infections and the so-called Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome *Am J Path* 24 763 795
- Flexner S 1913 The results of the serum treatment in thirteen hundred cases of epidemic meningitis *J Exp Med* 17 553 576
- Goeters W 1954 Die Meningokokkeninfektion *Ergebn Hyg Bakt* 28 1 122
- Gordon M H and Murray E G 1915 Identification of the meningococcus *J Roy Army Med Corps* 25 411-423
- Hedrich A W 1952 Recent trends in meningococcal disease *Pub Health Rep* 67 411 420
- Hirsch A 1886 Epidemic cerebro spinal meningitis in Hirsch A *Handbook of Geographical and Historical Pathology* vol 3 pp 547 594 London New Sydenham Society
- Kabat E A Miller C P Kaiser H and Foster A Z 1945 Chemical studies on bacterial agglutination VII A quantitative study of the type specific and group specific antibodies in antimeningococcal sera of various species and their relation to mouse protection *J Exp Med* 81 1 8
- Macchiavello A Omar W El Sayed M A and Rahman K A 1954 Control of cerebrospinal meningitis epidemics with sulfadimidine and penicillin Report on an experiment in mass chemoprophylaxis in the Sudan *Bull WHO* 10 1 34
- Margaretten W and McAdams A J 1958 An appraisal of fulminant meningococcaemia with reference to the Schwartzman phenomenon *Am J Med* 25 868 876
- May C D 1960 Circulatory failure (shock) in fulminant meningococcal infection An enquiry into the pathogenesis as an approach to rational therapy *Pediatrics* 25 316 328
- Miller J W Siess E E Feldman H A Silverman C and Frank A 1963 In vivo and in vitro resistance to sulfadiazine in strains of *Neisseria meningitidis* *JAMA* 186 139 141
- Miller C P 1933 Experimental meningococcal infection in mice *Science* 78 340 341
- Murray E G D 1929 The Meningococcus London His Majesty's Stat Off (Great Britain Medical Research Council Special report series no 124) 142 pp
- Scherp H W 1955 *Neisseria* and neisserial infections *Ann Rev Microbiol* 9 319 334
- Sub Committee on the Family Neisseriaceae 1954 Preliminary report 1950 Interim report 1953 *Int Bull Bact Nomenclature and Taxonomy* 4 95 105
- Watson H G Marmetti G V and Scherp H W 1958 The specific haptens of Group C (Group II a) *Meningococcus* II *Chemical Nature J Immun* 81 337 344

J D THAYER PH D

Venereal Disease Research Laboratory  
Venereal Disease Branch Communicable Disease Center \*  
Atlanta Georgia

WARFIELD GARSON M D , M P H

Career Development Division of Office of Personnel  
U S Public Health Service \*  
Washington D C

## 19

# The Gonococcus

### INTRODUCTION

The gonococcus (*Neisseria gonorrhoeae*) is a gram negative diplococcus a species of the genus *Neisseria* to which belong also the meningococcus and several nonpathogenic inhabitants of mucous membrane including the anaerobic *Veillonella* (family *Neisseriaceae*)

The gonococcus is the cause of a number of contagious infections of human columnar and transitional epithelium Hence urethritis cervicitis salpingitis and other complications in adults vulvovaginitis in children and ophthalmia in the newborn and in adults are contagious inflammatory conditions all caused by the gonococcus The commonest is gonorrhea known in the vernacular as clap or strain

### HISTORY

While most authors suggest that gonorrhea is a disease of great antiquity there is

\* The opinions or assertions contained herein are those of the authors and are not to be construed as official or reflecting the views of the Department of Health Education and Welfare or the U S Public Health Service

no conclusive proof to support this contention Ancient Egyptian prescriptions early Chinese and Japanese writings Biblical and Vedic references are suggestive but all of them are so vague that it is impossible to determine whether the writers had in mind a specific contagious urethritis or not The clearest descriptions of the progress do not suggest any inflammatory component or contagious character of the urethritides described Galen A D 130 first employed the term gonorrhea which may be translated as flow of seed As Verue (1953) suggests Galen's own definition and description of gonorrhea is equivalent to what today is termed spermatorrhoea Support of this contention may be found in the contemporary writings of independent physicians such as Aretaeus the Cappadocian and Celsus of the first century A D From Hippocrates to Galen and still later the medical profession showed no general recognition of venereal disease When a contagious urethritis began to appear a place for it consistent with Galen had to be found Quite logically the term gonorrhea was chosen to carry the burden Guilielmus de Saliceto a 13th century physician of Placenza presumably dealt with this disease and was aware of its venereal origin



He attributed the affliction to impurities retained under the male prepuce after exposure to an unclean female and was the first to suggest prophylaxis by washing. In a manuscript of 1376 by John of Arderne (John Arden) who was surgeon to Richard II and Henry IV, he found one of the first recorded descriptions of contagious urethritis comparable with contemporary gonorrhea. In the following 3 centuries it is obvious that the initiated were well aware that this entity was a venereal contagion. However, a division arose in medical thinking as to whether gonorrhea was a separate disease or a manifestation of syphilis. The history of gonorrhea began merging with syphilis on the appearance of the latter as a recognized entity in Western Europe at the close of the 15th century. As early as 1530 Paracelsus taught that gonorrhea was an initial symptom of syphilis. Indeed in those times the observed relationship was probably correct more often than not. The concept that gonorrhea was a manifestation of syphilis reached its pinnacle of acceptance after the classic error of John Hunter who in 1767 misinterpreted the syphilis infection which resulted from self-inoculation with pus from the urethra of a patient supposedly infected with gonorrhea. Hunter's work so dominated medical thought that in spite of the excellent work of Hill in 1790 and Benjamin Bell in 1792, clearly differentiating gonorrhea from syphilis, it remained for Philippe Ricord in work extending from 1831 to 1860 to delineate the 2 diseases clearly and finally Noeggerath in 1872 published one of the first works discussing the prevalence of gonorrhea especially in women, its resistance to therapy, its highly infectious nature, the insidious tendency to remain latent for prolonged periods and the serious nature of complications and sequelae. In 1879 Neisser identified the causative organism of this disease which he called the gonococcus. Subsequent to its discovery the gonococcus was first cultivated by Leistikow and Loeffler in 1882 but was more satisfactorily grown and studied by Bumm in 1885. The identification of the organism was simplified generally but not specifically by the introduction of the gram stain by Hans Gram in 1884. Finger, Ghon and Schlagen-

hauser in 1894 published a description of the histopathology of the disease based on the study of postmortem material obtained from patients artificially infected in the terminal stage of other diseases. Muller and Oppenheim in 1906 applied the principles of complement fixation successfully to the diagnosis of gonorrhea. Diagnostic techniques in general improved little beyond this point until the recent observation that the fluorescent antibody technic was adaptable to the identification of *N. gonorrhoeae*. Treatment was advanced from the era of sandalwood oil by the introduction of potassium permanganate solutions for urethral irrigations by Janet in 1892. For over 4 decades only minor modifications of this basic technic were introduced in the treatment of the disease. With the advent of the sulfonamides, specific therapy seemed to be at hand but within a few years the optimism concerning these drugs was blasted by the ability of the gonococcus to become resistant to these drugs. However, the very striking susceptibility of *N. gonorrhoeae* to penicillin was demonstrated in 1943. Confidence in the penicillin treatment of gonorrhea led to complacency, not only concerning the ease of treatment of this disease but also in relation to curability and the complications which were less and less frequently seen in hospitals and clinical practice. With the advent of penicillin many assumed that gonorrhea would be brought under control readily. That this has not occurred can be demonstrated by reference to our national morbidity statistics. The fallacy of the supposition that any disease can be controlled by treatment alone without due consideration of other aspects of its epidemiology is beautifully borne out by our experience with gonorrhea to date. Until recently, about all that had been gained in the control of this disease during the little more than 85 years since the discovery of the gonococcus were some minor improvements in diagnosis, a highly effective therapeutic agent which may have been squandered by our ignorance, and an almost total prevention of serious complications of the disease in males. Gonorrhea remains the largest and most challenging venereal disease problem in the western world.

## MORPHOLOGY

The gonococcus appears in the exudate of acute gonorrhea as a diplococcus with contiguous sides flattened or slightly concave resembling a pair of kidney beans and measuring from 0.6 to 1.0 micron in diameter. In these exudates many polymorphonuclear leukocytes contain no ingested organisms while others display from a few to large numbers. The gonococcus does not possess spores, true capsules or flagella. It is stained readily by aniline dyes and is gram negative. Ordinary optical methods do not reveal any intracellular differentiation.

Cells growing in laboratory media differ somewhat in appearance from those seen in pathologic material. Cultures consist predominantly of diplococci but may also contain single cocci and clumps. Older cultures frequently exhibit irregular staining, giant forms. Cellular morphology is altered progressively by contact with penicillin both in vitro and in vivo. Smears of exudate taken during the first 4 or 5 hours of penicillin therapy show gonococcal forms that progressively enlarge and decrease in stainability until none can be detected.

## CULTIVATION AND CHARACTERISTICS

Primary cultivation of the gonococcus on laboratory media is difficult not only because the organism is fastidious in its growth requirements but also because it is exceedingly susceptible to the toxic effect of a variety of substances commonly present in ordinary media. The organism grows best under aerobic conditions at pH 7.2 to 7.6 at a temperature of 35 to 36°C. Some strains do not grow satisfactorily at 37.5°C and in general growth stops below 30°C or above 38.5°C. Most strains require an atmosphere containing from 2 to 10 per cent CO<sub>2</sub> to initiate development. Although gonococci grow well on the moist surface of solid media containing 10 to 15 per cent agar, excessive moisture as produced by syneresis of the agar is undesirable especially for primary isolation because it favors other bacteria especially spreaders which readily overgrow the

more slowly growing gonococcus. Satisfactory growth is obtained on agar media consisting of meat infusion, peptones, glucose, buffered with phosphate and enriched with plasma and hemoglobin or whole blood. Increased yields can result from the addition to the media of yeast or liver concentrate which supply glutamine and co-carboxylase, shown by Lankford *et al.* (1943, 1946) to be essential for 10 to 15 per cent of gonococcus strains. Kellogg *et al.* (1963) have shown that hemoglobin solution or blood may be replaced by adding ferric nitrate to Lankford's supplement of glutathione, co-carboxylase and glucose. As mentioned earlier, many components of media exert an inhibiting effect on the growth of gonococci. Thus certain amino acids occur in peptones in concentration sufficient to be somewhat toxic but this effect can be reduced markedly or abolished by heating the medium after addition of blood (chocolate agar). Ley and Mueller (1946) have shown that agar containing excessive amounts of fatty acids also can exert an inhibiting effect on the growth of certain strains of gonococci and that the effect can be counteracted by charcoal or starch. Advantage has been taken of all these facts in certain commercial media which are convenient for the isolation of gonococci from pathologic material. The bacterial flora of urethral and cervical secretions contain organisms that grow very much more rapidly on artificial media than does the gonococcus. Such overgrowth prevents the detection of gonococcus colonies. Attempts to prepare a selective medium by the use of Nile Blue A or crystal violet were not very successful because these dyes were toxic to some gonococcal strains. Recently an effective selective medium for the cultivation of *N. gonorrhoeae* or *N. meningitidis* has been developed by Thayer and Martin (1963). It has selective properties that permit cultivation of pathogenic *Neisseria* while greatly inhibiting or completely suppressing saprophytic species such as *N. sicca*, *N. catarrhalis*, *N. flava* and others. Overgrowth of gonococcal colonies by bacterial contaminants encountered in cervical, vaginal and even rectal specimens is almost totally prevented and the diagnostically confusing *M. polymorpha* var. *oxi*

*dans* ■ microorganism sometimes confused with gonococci fails to grow. Thus, false positive cultural diagnosis of gonorrhea due to oxidase positive *Mima* and saprophytic *Neisseria* is almost totally prevented. Presumptive cultural testing (oxidase positive colonies of gram negative diplococci unconfirmed by sugar fermentation reaction) therefore becomes a more acceptable diagnostic procedure when definitive measures cannot be taken. The Thayer Martin (TM) selective medium is of particular value for diagnosing the meningococcal carrier state. Bacteria of the pharyngeal region including saprophytic *N. catarrhalis*, *N. sicca* and others are almost totally inhibited, allowing meningococci to grow and be picked from primary isolation plates for typing with group sera without the necessity of purification procedures. The selective properties of the medium are due to the action of polymyxin B (25 units/ml) against the gram negative bacterial flora and to the inhibition of the gram positive bacterial flora by ristocetin (10 mcg/ml). In the concentrations used, gonococcal growth is slightly inhibited during the first 24 hours of incubation but not after 48 hours. After 48 hours incubation the primary gonococcus colony appears translucent, raised, finely granular and slightly convex with lobate margins. It is usually mucoid and varies in size from punctiform to 5 mm in diameter depending on the medium and the crowding of the plate. Although ordinary agar cultures die within 3 to 4 days unless transferred, agar-slant cultures remain viable at 35° C for a considerable period of time if covered with sterile paraffin oil. Cultures may also be kept for years if quickly frozen and stored at -70° C.

Glucose is the only sugar fermented by the gonococcus with the production of acid but no gas. Other members of the genus *Neisseria* are encountered occasionally in specimens from the genital tract. Fermentation reactions differentiate these species from the gonococcus. Some gonococcal strains fail to grow on media lacking adequate nutrients and a few isolates fail to ferment glucose initially (White *et al.* 1964). Thus some so-called infections thought to be due to *N. catarrhalis* may have been caused by non-glucose fermenting gono-

cocci. Differentiation of such strains should include immunofluorescent studies (Gonococcus 1962).

The fact that the gonococcus produces an oxidase has been utilized for the recognition of gonococcal colonies on agar medium. When 1 per cent aqueous solution of dimethyl p-phenylenediamine monohydrochloride is added to an agar growth, the colonies turn pink then purple. The reagent kills the organisms within a few minutes but does not modify their morphology or staining by Gram's or the fluorescent antibody method. The oxidase reaction is often negative in media containing 1 per cent glucose due to inhibition of the enzyme by acid neutralization with sodium bicarbonate results in a positive oxidase test (Bucca, Thayer and Schubert, 1947). All members of the genus *Neisseria* give positive reactions, so do *Mima polymorpha* var. *oxidans*, some *Pseudomonas* and *Aeromonas*. Variable results are given by *Bordetella haemophilus* and some *Pasteurella* and yeasts (Steel 1961). These microorganisms may confuse the laboratory identification if adequate measures are not taken. Nevertheless, a positive oxidase reaction coupled with typical colonial characteristics and the presence of diplococci resembling the gonococcus constitutes presumptive cultural evidence which should be confirmed by sugar fermentation and/or fluorescent antibody procedures.

As mentioned under ordinary conditions the gonococcus dies rapidly in agar cultures. It is killed quickly by drying, sunlight and ultraviolet light. Moist heat at 55° C kills it in a few minutes. Phenol, dichloride of mercury and silver compounds are very effective disinfectants. The gonococcus is more soluble than the meningococcus in dilute NaOH (within 1 minute) whereas other *Neisseria* are less soluble in this reagent. Although the gonococcus is susceptible to sulfonamides, the range may vary from complete resistance of certain strains which can synthesize para-aminobenzoic acid to susceptibility to drug concentration readily obtained in the blood. Gonococcal strains formerly highly resistant to sulfonamide have again become sensitive during the era of penicillin therapy (Love and Finland, 1955).

Thayer Field and Garson 1959) Resist-  
ance to sulfonamides and streptomycin is  
rapidly acquired in vitro

For almost a decade it appeared that the  
gonococcus would not become resistant to  
penicillin as it had to sulfonamides. From  
1945 to 1954 susceptibility studies in this  
country and abroad showed that of 771 cul-  
tures all but 5 strains were sensitive to 0.05  
u/ml or less (Guthe 1961). In trying  
to explain the high failure rate of females  
treated with 600,000 units of procaine peni-  
cillin Thayer *et al* (1957a) found that 22  
per cent of the patients' cultures required  
0.1 to 0.2 u/ml to inhibit in vitro growth.  
Surveillance studies of treatment failure cases  
since that time have shown that the range of  
penicillin resistance is slowly expanding. To-  
day some isolates require over 1.0 u/ml for  
in vitro inhibition (Thayer 1963). Of the  
semisynthetic penicillins tested only ampi-  
cillin is as potent as benzyl penicillin G  
for sensitive and relatively resistant gono-  
cocci (Thayer and Axnick 1963b). In tis-  
sue culture intracellular gonococci may be  
protected against many times the minimal  
inhibitory concentration of penicillin, chlor-  
amphenicol, erythromycin, novobiocin and  
the tetracyclines (Thayer *et al* 1957b, c).

The gonococcus causes infection only in  
man; numerous attempts to reproduce the  
disease in animals have failed. However,  
under certain conditions growth of minimal  
numbers of gonococci has occurred in em-  
bryonated eggs in the anterior chamber of  
the eye of the rabbit and in the mouse by in-  
traperitoneal injection of gonococci sus-  
pended in mucin (Hill 1944). Kellogg and  
co-workers (1963) have found that gono-  
cocci can be maintained virulent in culture.  
Four morphologically distinct colonial types  
have been observed. Type 1 is of most in-  
terest since it is found predominantly in the  
purulent exudate from acute gonorrhea of  
the male. Other colonial types appear rap-  
idly on subculturing the primary isolate,  
probably due to genetic instability of the  
type 1 cells in vitro. After 69 passages on  
suitable culture media, type 4 cells, typical  
of so-called laboratory strains, were no longer  
virulent for male volunteers, whereas type 1  
cells readily produced gonococcal urethritis.

In the past studies in serodiagnosis and im-  
munity have been performed with avirulent  
cultures.

The toxicity of the gonococcus appears to  
be due entirely to a lipopolysaccharide endo-  
toxin (Tauber and Garson 1959). The in-  
jection of heat-killed gonococci results in  
toxemia and death similar to that produced  
by living cocci. So far, other chemical com-  
ponents separated from the gonococcus have  
not proved to be useful in the development  
of diagnostic tests. Failure to detect signifi-  
cant levels of antibodies consistently by ag-  
glutination, precipitation, bactericidal com-  
plement fixation and allergy tests has been  
related to the fact that the infection stimu-  
lates little antibody formation because of its  
local character. Genetic instability of the  
virulent culture also may have resulted in the  
preparation of nonspecific antigens (Reising  
and Kellogg 1963). However, in controlled  
experiments volunteers displaying a positive  
gonococcus complement fixation test prior  
to inoculation did not develop disease with  
the same frequency as those recorded as hav-  
ing a negative test (Mahoney 1946).

## CLINICAL COURSE

The usual incubation period of the natu-  
ral infection is from 2 to 8 days and varies  
from 1 to 31 days with a mean of from 3 to  
5 days in the experimental disease (Mahoney  
*et al* 1946). These experimental observa-  
tions closely parallel clinical observations  
(Garson 1953; Haro and Patiala 1957).

The typical onset is sudden. Usual symp-  
toms consist of frequent, urgent and painful  
urination and a profuse mucopurulent dis-  
charge. The gonococcus is unable to pene-  
trate stratified squamous epithelium, how-  
ever in the male the urethra with its  
stratified columnar epithelium is favorable  
for its penetration (Harkness 1948). Penetration  
takes place through the intercellular spaces,  
the organism being observed to reach the  
subepithelial connective tissue on the 3rd or  
the 4th day. Polymorphonuclear leukocytes,  
lymphocytes, plasma and mast cells soon ap-  
pear beneath the columnar epithelium, being  
particularly numerous in the region of Litter's  
glands and ducts and the lacunae of Mor-

gagni. Large numbers of leukocytes carrying gonococci find their way from the acutely inflamed area into the lumen of the urethra and form with serum the profuse yellow discharge characteristic of the disease. The ducts of Littre's glands may become obstructed by leukocytes and desquamated epithelial cells resulting in the formation of retention cysts or abscesses. Spread of the disease takes place by continuity from the subepithelial connective tissue and also directly into lymphatic vessels resulting in prostatitis and epididymitis. Extension of pathology to subepithelial tissues and subsequent healing allows for contraction which in annular structures may cause narrowing and stricture. During healing stratified squamous epithelium appears over the granulating surface of denuded areas and may compress and destroy any underlying columnar epithelium.

In the female the cervical glands, Skene's glands and Bartholin's glands are usual sites of primary infection. The rectum is frequently the site of secondary infection and occasionally the primary site. Histologic pathology is similar to that described for the male urethra. Involvement of cervical glands as for Littre's glands usually is confined to the ducts giving rise to a mucopurulent discharge of a degree ranging from mild to very severe.

Progression to the fallopian tubes results in salpingitis usually bilateral. There is a tendency for the tubes to close and form pyosalpinx and pelvic inflammatory disease. Residual pathology in the tubal structures may require surgical correction after the inflammatory process has been brought under control. In the glands of Bartholin unilateral inflammation is confined to the ducts and the periglandular tissue.

The incidence of proctitis determined with the TM selective medium is found in 40 per cent of urogenital female gonorrhea. An additional 5 per cent occurs at the rectal site only. Among patients with proctitis gonococci are also found at the perianal site in 50 per cent of the cases (Schroeter and Yobs 1964).

*N. gonorrhoeae* can be responsible for ophthalmia neonatorum, an inflammation of the eye of the newborn resulting primarily from infection during passage through the birth canal. The condition, which appears

several days after birth is always serious and frequently destructive to the ocular structures and before the use of silver nitrate prophylaxis was credited with being responsible for 12 per cent of all blindness. Today the recorded incidence is less than 0.3 per cent where standard techniques of prophylaxis are used. That silver nitrate prophylaxis does not entirely prevent gonococcal ophthalmia was found by Pearson (1957) who observed 40 cases in 67,200 live births during a period of 10 years. The ease with which gonococcal ophthalmia responds to antibiotic treatment has led to a relaxation of prophylactic measures in areas where postnatal supervision is satisfactory. The risk of chemical conjunctivitis from silver nitrate may be avoided by antibiotic prophylaxis (penicillin, erythromycin, oxytetracycline, bacitracin ointment and sulfathiazole). However such measures have not proved to be entirely satisfactory and in view of the increased incidence of gonorrhea there has been a return to silver nitrate prophylaxis.

Gonococcal vulvovaginitis is an inflammation of the urogenital tract of prepubescent females and must be differentiated by bacteriologic means from that due to a variety of other infectious agents. The disease is transmitted by intimate direct contact with infected adults and infrequently by contact with contaminated moist articles. Cohn *et al* (1940) believe that epidemics rarely occur.

## DIAGNOSIS

Gram negative intracellular diplococci in the stained exudate from a suspected gonococcal infection strongly suggests gonorrhea. The intracellular position of the gonococcus is a common finding in acute gonorrhea but in very early or chronic infection the organisms may be found only extracellularly, frequently as a single coccus. In men a diagnosis based on the characteristic clinical symptoms usually can be confirmed by the finding of intracellular gram negative diplococci in pus cells in the urethral discharge. Preferably such presumptive evidence of *N. gonorrhoeae* should be confirmed by culture methods including identification by sugar fermentation.

An outstanding diagnostic advance is the

immunofluorescent method for the detection and the identification of gonococci in exudate. The procedure developed by Deacon *et al* (1959 1961) employs an immediate direct fluorescent antibody (FA) method and a delayed FA technique. In the former complete identification as *N gonorrhoeae* may be obtained within 1 hour. The delayed FA method which is more effective than the immediate direct method for diagnosing the asymptomatic female (Brown *et al* 1962) requires a 16 to 20 hour preliminary cultivation of exudate to accumulate gonococci in sufficient numbers for detection by fluorescent microscopy. The chief advantages of the delayed FA procedure over the conventional clinical culture method are the time required to make a definitive diagnosis—16 to 20 hours against 2 to 10 days respectively—and the greater sensitivity of the technique in most laboratories. In a field evaluation of the FA method by public health and university laboratories (Price 1964) over 85 000 specimens from urethral cervical and vaginal sites of 9 483 females were examined. Using immediate direct and delayed FA methods and the classic culture method gonococci were detected by culture in 22 per cent by delayed FA in 37 per cent and by direct FA in 15 per cent. When female contacts of persons having gonorrhea were studied the culture was positive in 59 per cent immediate direct FA 43 per cent and delayed FA in 79 per cent of 1 782 patients. Some workers (Moore *et al* 1963) feel that the FA procedure occasionally gives a false positive result. Peacock (1961) has greatly reduced the likelihood of false positive staining of staphylococci by applying the one step inhibition technique for blocking antistaphylococcal antibodies present in normal rabbit serum. Peacock (1964) has also controlled background and polymorphonuclear cell staining with Flazo Orange. With the use of this dye or Evans Blue (White and Kellogg 1964) counterstained direct FA smears prepared on a small defined area of the slide with a bacteriologic loopful of specimen increases the sensitivity of the procedure.

Trauma or the introduction of mechanical and chemical irritants into the urethra may give rise to an inflammatory process which has some of the characteristics of gonorrhea

but can be differentiated by negative bacteriologic findings. Similarly a condition designated as nongonococcal urethritis or nonspecific urethritis is encountered. Instead of a burning sensation during urination as with gonorrhea an itching sensation of the urethral canal and pain referred to the glands occurs independent of urination. The discharge is thinner gray to white in color and usually less profuse than gonorrhea. The presence of *N gonorrhoeae* or *Trichomonas vaginalis* must be ruled out.

Mistakes in the microscopic diagnosis of gonorrhea may be made when gram positive cocci are overly destained or gram negative diplo bacilli are wrongly identified as gonococci. Also the morphology of the *Mima Herella* group of organisms is quite similar to gonococci especially in exudates and from growth on enriched media. Differentiation is easily made on meat extract agar unenriched broth or eosin methylene blue agar media on which *Mima* and *Herella* assume their rodlike form and on which the gonococcus does not grow. Where gonococcal FA procedures are available differentiation is rapidly made. Other than a single outbreak of a gonorrhealike syndrome caused by *Mimeae* in Italy (Svhus *et al* 1961) no microbial agent other than *N gonorrhoeae* has the capacity to produce acute infectious urethritis consistently in the human.

Gonorrhea of the female may be signless and symptomless. Thus laboratory diagnosis is more difficult than in men. Stained smears are of value in early infections when typical intracellular organisms may be found in material from the urethra or the cervix. As the age of the infection advances the value of the smear decreases while that of the culture and the delayed FA methods increases. Fortunately the use of immunofluorescent methods and selective culture media has improved diagnosis but these procedures still fail to diagnose 20 to 40 per cent of female contacts of persons having gonorrhea (Price 1964). It should be pointed out in this connection that in chronic untreated gonorrhea culture findings may reverse spontaneously from positive to negative without any accompanying change in the clinical status of the infection. Furthermore sporadic positive cultures may appear after a relatively

long series of negative cultures (Mahoney *et al* 1942)

Serodiagnosis using present methods of complement fixation (gonoreaction) are not sufficiently reliable to identify active disease in males or asymptomatic females (Van Slyke *et al* 1942 Nøgaard 1956 Brown, 1963) Such a tool is urgently needed for the epidemiologic control of gonorrhea

Schubert *et al* (1947) showed that gonorrheal exudate inoculated directly on the agar surface in the clinic and incubated shortly thereafter gave the greatest yield of positive cultures When this is not possible the swab containing the exudate should be placed in a small amount of broth and taken to the laboratory Difficulties inherent in the isolation of the gonococcus are increased when the clinician fails to exercise care in securing suitable exudates for cultivation The demonstration of gonococci in cervical exudate is said to be most favorable during the post-menstrual phase However other workers prefer the premenstrual phase and some even choose the menstrual period Putkonen (1950) studied this problem in 343 patients hospitalized for gonorrheal cervicitis in whom menstruation was known in relation to 1119 examinations He found no significant variation of positive cultures in relation to the day of the menstrual cycle

The transportation of suspected secretions from the patient to a distant laboratory for cultural diagnosis has not been very successful An ideal transport medium must preserve the viability of the gonococcus and at the same time prevent overgrowth of contaminating bacteria Stuart (1954) uses a buffered nonnutrient agar medium to which thioglycollate is added In theory viable gonococci are preserved and contaminants fail to grow for lack of nutrients Specimens of blood synovial fluid and spinal fluid are cultivated best in shallow layers of ascitic fluid broth in an atmosphere containing from 2 to 10 per cent CO<sub>2</sub> after incubation for 2 to 7 days the organisms grow as a mucoid sediment on the bottom of the flask Urine preferably the first morning specimen should be centrifuged and the sediment inoculated on agar medium Prostatic fluid may be inoculated directly on agar or centrifuged in a small amount of urine the sediment being

inoculated on agar For more detailed information concerning the collection of specimens and the culture method see

*Gonococcus—Procedures for Isolation and Identification* (1962)

In general, because of the characteristic clinical signs and symptoms, presumptive cultural evidence of gonococcal infection (unconfirmed by sugar fermentation) is more acceptable for diagnosis of gonorrhea in the male than in the female In the female in whom clinical evidence is of little value a negative smear report coupled with presumptive cultural evidence has led to as high as 16 per cent false positive diagnoses (Thayer 1958) Such results are unlikely to occur, as already mentioned, if the TM selective medium is used (see Cultivation)

## TREATMENT

The advent of chemotherapy in 1935 rapidly reduced such practices as the local application of antiseptic and astringent solutions by means of injection irrigations and instillations and of attempts to alkalinize the urine All of these methods are of questionable efficacy and may have added to the complications of gonorrhea Sera vaccines and culture filtrates have also proved to be of very limited if any value Artificial hyperpyrexia based on the marked heat lability of the gonococcus is no longer practiced When the sulfonamide compounds and subsequently penicillin became available the therapy of gonorrhea passed from the province of urology and to a lesser extent, gynecology to that of chemotherapy largely in the hands of the general practitioner

Although the past recommended practice of employing 600 000 units of a repository penicillin in a single intramuscular injection for the routine treatment of uncomplicated gonorrhea has given excellent results in males Preston and Dunsworth (1957), Hookings and Graves (1956 57) and others have demonstrated at least a 13 to 15 per cent failure rate in females in clinic populations In general it has been alleged that as much as 2 to 5 per cent of males and 10 to 20 per cent of females failed to be cured by the single intramuscular injection of 600 000 units of repository penicillin The reason for such

treatment failures in the face of the once rather remarkable susceptibility of the gonococcus to penicillin has been explored by Thayer *et al* (1957a 1962). Other than failures related to (1) misdiagnosis including nongonococcal urethritis, other causes include (2) reinfection on return to the original infecting sexual environment, (3) the use of drugs in inadequate doses or of drugs rendered useless by prior mishandling or deterioration, (4) factors such as the effect of penicillinase producing staphylococci on male urethritis (Kjellander and Finland 1963) and the persistence of female proctitis (Bang 1954) and (5) the relative resistance of certain strains of *N. gonorrhoeae* to penicillin (Thayer *et al* 1961).

The increasing incidence of treatment failure has led to modification of the recommended drug therapy regimen. In place of the one shot treatment the following procedures are now recommended.

Uncomplicated gonorrhea in men: aqueous procaine penicillin G, procaine penicillin G in oil with 2 per cent aluminum mono-stearate (PAM) 2 400 000 units in 1 intramuscular injection.

Uncomplicated gonorrhea in women: aqueous procaine penicillin G or PAM 4 800 000 units intramuscularly in 2 injection sites at one visit. In view of the increased resistance of gonococcal strains to penicillin, long acting penicillins which produce low blood concentrations such as benzathine penicillin G are no longer indicated in the management of most gonorrheal infections.

Gonorrhea with severe complications generally should be treated with aqueous crystalline penicillin G 4 800 000 to 10 000 000 units per day intramuscularly given at 2 to 4 hour intervals or equivalent amounts of a penicillin producing a high blood level until signs and symptoms have subsided and cultures if obtainable are negative. The management of most complications is more appropriately handled in the hospital where resources of consultation and special laboratory procedures are more readily and rapidly available.

Retreatment usually is indicated if on the exclusion of the likelihood of reinfection the discharge persists for 3 days or more after

initial treatment and smear culture or TA diagnosis is still positive. In general the re-treatment dose consists of a doubling of the original schedule at a single session or equally divided injections of the increased dose over a period of 3 to 5 days until the total dosage is achieved and signs and symptoms have subsided.

The need for local therapy, prostatic massage or artificial hyperpyrexia is seldom if ever encountered. So-called prophylactic or epidemiologic treatment should be given to all sexual contacts of a positively diagnosed case of gonorrhea. The recommended treatment for such contacts is as given for uncomplicated gonorrhea above.

While there is no evidence of absolute or rapidly increasing resistance of *N. gonorrhoeae* to penicillin, studies of gonococcal strains in this country since 1955 show a relentless expansion of the susceptibility range varying today from 0.005 to 1.20 units per ml (Thayer and Moore 1964). The relatively resistant strains of the organism in cases of presumed treatment failure on routine dosage schedules usually will respond satisfactorily to increased dosage.

Approximately 15 commercially available antibiotics are as effective as penicillin G at the 1.2 mega unit dose. Indeed a single (1.5 Gm) oral dose of phosphate potentiated tetracycline was observed to have a failure rate in acute gonorrhea of males of 5.7 per cent as compared to 4 per cent with 1.2 mega units of aqueous procaine penicillin G given by intramuscular injection (Tiedemann 1962). Among the newer injectable antibiotics, actinospectacin in a single intramuscular dose (1.5 to 2.0 Gm) has been observed to fail in between 4.3 and 7.9 per cent of cases; however resistance to this drug has been reported (Laird 1962, Willcox 1962). Few of the newer antibiotics are serious competitors of penicillin in the treatment of gonorrhea when one considers such factors as mode of administration, dose, toxicity, side-effects and cost. They should be considered only in the treatment of patients known to be sensitive to penicillin.

Brown (1961b) in a re-evaluation of reactions to penicillin studied 35 494 patients treated in venereal disease clinics and found that an average of 9.71 patients per 1 000



long series of negative cultures (Mahoney *et al* 1942)

Serodiagnosis using present methods of complement fixation (gonoreaction) are not sufficiently reliable to identify active disease in males or asymptomatic females (Van Slyke *et al* 1942 Nøgaard 1956 Brown 1963) Such a tool is urgently needed for the epidemiologic control of gonorrhea

Schubert *et al* (1947) showed that gonorrheal exudate inoculated directly on the agar surface in the clinic and incubated shortly thereafter gave the greatest yield of positive cultures When this is not possible the swab containing the exudate should be placed in a small amount of broth and taken to the laboratory Difficulties inherent in the isolation of the gonococcus are increased when the clinician fails to exercise care in securing suitable exudates for cultivation The demonstration of gonococci in cervical exudate is said to be most favorable during the post menstrual phase However other workers prefer the premenstrual phase, and some even choose the menstrual period Putkonen (1950) studied this problem in 343 patients hospitalized for gonorrheal cervicitis in whom menstruation was known in relation to 1,119 examinations He found no significant variation of positive cultures in relation to the day of the menstrual cycle

The transportation of suspected secretions from the patient to a distant laboratory for cultural diagnosis has not been very successful An ideal transport medium must preserve the viability of the gonococcus and at the same time prevent overgrowth of contaminating bacteria Stuart (1954) uses a buffered nonnutrient agar medium to which thioglycollate is added In theory viable gonococci are preserved and contaminants fail to grow for lack of nutrients Specimens of blood synovial fluid and spinal fluid are cultivated best in shallow layers of ascitic fluid broth in an atmosphere containing from 2 to 10 per cent CO<sub>2</sub> after incubation for 2 to 7 days the organisms grow as a mucoid sediment on the bottom of the flask Urine preferably the first morning specimen should be centrifuged and the sediment inoculated on agar medium Prostatic fluid may be inoculated directly on agar or centrifuged in a small amount of urine the sediment being

inoculated on agar For more detailed information concerning the collection of specimens and the culture method see

Gonococcus—Procedures for Isolation and Identification (1962)

In general because of the characteristic clinical signs and symptoms presumptive cultural evidence of gonococcal infection (unconfirmed by sugar fermentation) is more acceptable for diagnosis of gonorrhea in the male than in the female In the female in whom clinical evidence is of little value a negative smear report coupled with presumptive cultural evidence has led to as high as 16 per cent false positive diagnoses (Thayer 1958) Such results are unlikely to occur as already mentioned if the TM selective medium is used (see Cultivation)

## TREATMENT

The advent of chemotherapy in 1935 rapidly reduced such practices as the local application of antiseptic and astringent solutions by means of injection irrigations and instillations and of attempts to alkalinize the urine All of these methods are of questionable efficacy and may have added to the complications of gonorrhea Sera, vaccines and culture filtrates have also proved to be of very limited if any value Artificial hyperpyrexia based on the marked heat lability of the gonococcus is no longer practiced When the sulfonamide compounds and subsequently penicillin became available the therapy of gonorrhea passed from the province of urology and to a lesser extent gynecology to that of chemotherapy largely in the hands of the general practitioner

Although the past recommended practice of employing 600 000 units of a repository penicillin in a single intramuscular injection for the routine treatment of uncomplicated gonorrhea has given excellent results in males Preston and Dunsworth (1957) Hookings and Graves (1956 57) and others have demonstrated at least a 13 to 15 per cent failure rate in females in clinic populations In general it has been alleged that as much as 2 to 5 per cent of males and 10 to 20 per cent of females failed to be cured by the single intramuscular injection of 600 000 units of repository penicillin The reason for such

available on incidence and prevalence none theless there remain tantalizing unknowns and inconsistencies. The long known relationship of the social and behavioral patterns of promiscuity, sexual freedom and irresponsibility to the continued presence of this disease is well established. Gonococcal infection is maintained by the continued presence of the venereal form which in turn is maintained by indiscriminate sexual behavior.

The distribution and the occurrence of gonorrhea is world wide. Available data would suggest that it is more common among persons of lower socio-economic status but it is not restricted to this group. It affects both sexes and practically all ages but particularly the age groups of greatest sexual activity. In the United States the highest incidence is found in the age group 20 to 24 years. Many states indicate that 25 per cent of the gonorrhea reported occurs among teenagers. Studies of the U.S. Public Health Service have indicated that 50 per cent and more of the individuals involved in epidemics of gonorrhea are in the teenage group. It has been estimated that in the United States a teenager is infected with venereal disease every 11 minutes. The source of infection is exudate from mucous membranes of infected persons and man is the only known reservoir. Asymptomatic carriers have been reported recently from England and the United States. Although the number of such individuals is relatively small they are nevertheless important for the control of the disease. The mode of transmission is almost wholly by sexual intercourse with the exception of the ophthalmic infection acquired by the newborn during passage through an infected birth canal. Intimate contact on the proper type of mucous membrane is absolutely essential for the transmission of this disease and the role of intermediary objects in transmission seems to be inconsequential. As indicated elsewhere the incubation period has wide variation while the period of communicability may be from months to years unless interrupted by adequate therapy which ends communicability within hours or days. Susceptibility is general and instances of racial immunity have not been recognized. The popular belief that an infection contracted from a member of a certain race or

in a certain geographic area is more severe or more resistant to treatment than others has no factual basis. Spontaneous recovery of the anterior urethritis in men is usual eventually in the absence of excessive sexual activity or reinfection. Ricord's statement over a century ago is still applicable to recovery in women. We know when gonorrhea begins but God alone knows when it will end. Acquired immunity has not been demonstrated and one attack does not protect against subsequent infection.

Males vary greatly in their resistance to experimental infection. Mahoney *et al* (1946) inoculated a large number of male volunteers by instillation of massive doses of cultures into the urethral canal. In a total of 245 experimental exposures typical clinical disease with confirmatory laboratory findings was produced in only 83 or 33 per cent. In the remainder a train of irritative symptoms of varying severity that persisted for periods ranging from several hours to 2 days was followed by a return to normal. More recently Kellogg *et al* (1963) and Thayer (1964b) have been able to infect male volunteers in 95 per cent of the trials by using gonococcal cultures of type 1 clones. The relatively low incidence of the infection among prostitutes may possibly be the expression of such natural resistance although it is known that the well initiated among this group practice a wide variety of empiric prophylactic techniques in the process of scrubbing the decks aimed at professional self preservation.

In culture studies carried out over several years Van Slyke *et al* (1942) found approximately 20 per cent of incarcerated prostitutes and other sex offenders to be infected. A similar percentage has been found among female jail inmates studied by the delayed FA test (Harris *et al* 1962). National morbidity statistics in the past two decades indicate a decline and then a rise in reported cases of gonorrhea. From 1947 to 1956 there was a 40 per cent decrease in reported cases and a 47 per cent decrease in the rate. Any optimism concerning this favorable trend in morbidity should have been tempered by the fact that during this period simplified antibiotic treatment was developed and more and more cases were seen by private physicians who failed to report

showed penicillin sensitivity, ranging from mild signs to severe anaphylactic reactions. The prospect of having to handle the sudden emergency of penicillin anaphylaxis makes it essential that no physician or clinic under take penicillin treatment without the proper equipment, drugs and professional competence.

*Cure in men implies complete freedom* from clinical evidence of the disease; however, an asymptomatic persistent infection can develop (Pariser 1964). Examination for evidence of residual gonococcal infection may be done about 7 days after the completion of therapy. The test of cure should consist of culture and FA procedures. The material for culture should be obtained from the urethra with a platinum loop and from sedimented urine. Expression of the urethral glands by gentle massage of the canal and prostatic massage has been employed. Instrumentation as an aid in determining the presence of gonococci is not necessary and is not advised. In general, a test of cure is considered to be unnecessary in males in the absence of signs or symptoms of gonorrhea; however, evidence of the infection in sexual partners in the absence of signs and symptoms should be sought. In this regard, the male homosexual presents a special problem. While the tendency of the infection to produce asymptomatic carrier states is greater than previously thought, most patients harboring the gonococcus will display sooner or later clinical evidence of infection.

*In women, repeated cultures and FA procedures* of carefully selected material from the cervix, Skene's glands, Bartholin's glands, the vagina and the rectum offer the only available means for detecting residual infection. At least one culture should be obtained from these sites from 7 to 10 days after treatment. If prolonged acting penicillin has been used, penicillinase must be incorporated in the culture medium. As a precautionary measure in both men and women, unprotected sexual exposure should be interdicted until the criteria of cure have been satisfied. Relapse, if it occurs, will be seen most commonly in the first week after treatment. Occasionally, it is found that what appears to be a relapse or treatment failure is a reinfection contracted from a regular sex partner

who has not been given treatment or is undiscovered for lack of proper epidemiologic studies.

An exceptional circumstance is presented when gonorrhea and syphilis or other venereal diseases are contracted concurrently. This is by no means a rare occurrence. Some 3 per cent of the patients attending VD clinics have acquired syphilis and gonorrhea simultaneously. In these instances, the gonococcal infection because of its short incubation period becomes evident while the syphilitic infection is still in the preclinical or incubation stage. Penicillin therapy directed toward the cure of gonorrhea, if in the amount and the type of preparation suggested previously, will allow for the aborting of an oncoming syphilitic infection in practically all instances. Garson (1963) has proposed a single injection treatment for all acute gonorrhea predicated on the penicillin curative dose for all forms of early syphilis. In effect, then, the treatment of gonorrhea truly becomes a major element in the control of syphilis. The occurrence of chills or fever (Herxheimer reaction) accompanying penicillin therapy of gonorrhea is strong presumptive evidence of the coexistence of syphilis as shown by By Fromer *et al* (1946). Hence, all patients who are to receive penicillin treatment for gonorrhea should have a serologic test for syphilis prior to or at the time of treatment and monthly for 4 months after the completion of treatment. The same precautions should be observed in patients receiving prophylactic treatment and treatment with other antibiotics.

## EPIDEMIOLOGY

Reliable information on the incidence and the prevalence of the disease depends on faithful reporting of diagnosed cases. As previously indicated, it is extremely difficult to diagnose some cases of gonorrhea particularly in the female. This fact plus the inadequacy of reporting cases makes it practically impossible to accumulate any reliable data on prevalence. As a consequence, figures concerning incidence represent only a portion of the true picture. Although knowledge of the natural history and the course of this disease is considerably better than information

argument but the further assumption that these factors alone would greatly modify the epidemiology of gonorrhea and bring about a marked decline in the prevalence of the disease is not valid. The solution of one facet of the problem led to and was largely offset by the increased opportunity for reinfection. Because of the short incubation period an increase in the number of reinfections in a given period of time will greatly swell the morbidity statistics and tend to maintain the disease in society. Thus the hoped for decline in the prevalence and the incidence of gonorrhea following the introduction of effective antimicrobial agents has not occurred; indeed reported cases of gonorrhea have shown a consistent significant upward trend since 1958.

Becoming aware of the limitations of gonorrhea control programs the U S Public Health Service in 1952 with the cooperation of State Health Departments and selected large cities in the United States initiated the first major attempt to incorporate known epidemiologic information into a new methodology. The technic was called speed zone epidemiology (peppy epi). It is an attempt to apply specialized technics in gonorrhea case finding: interviewing and investigation of contacts as well as patient education which will exploit the characteristics of this disease. Mahoney *et al* (1946) had demonstrated that the incubation period of experimentally acquired gonorrhea in males has a 31-day range but that 85 per cent of the infections produced clinical symptoms within 6 days. Presumably then the bulk of case finding could be narrowed down in at least 85 per cent of all cases to the epidemiologic investigation of sex contacts of gonorrhea patients for the period beginning 6 to 7 days prior to the onset of clinical symptoms and ending at the time of appearance at the clinic. If valid information were obtained at interview of the patient with gonorrhea the source case and the spread or contact cases would be identified and hopefully located and brought in for treatment thereby breaking the chain of infection surrounding the particular patient. Since at that time penicillin in aluminum monostearate was the longest acting penicillin available and presumably protected the

patient from reinfection for at least 72 hours and since reinfection from the same sources without such protection was known to be common and since developed interviewing technics had been proved to be highly effective in identifying contacts investigation of the patient's contacts had to be accomplished within the treated patient's penicillin protective period i.e. 72 hours. Rapid investigation is therefore essential for breaking the chains of infection and protecting the patient from reinfection. The most commonly employed technics to bring sex contacts to clinic observation within the 72 hour period were (1) a telegram to the contact requesting immediate appearance at the health department (2) an immediate telephone call to the contact (3) the immediate assignment of the contact not having an adequate address or telephone number or not responding to these technics to a venereal disease investigator and (4) having the informant bring in his contacts within 24 hours of the informant's treatment.

Only male patients with diagnosed gonorrhea were interviewed for sex contacts. Most well run large clinics had observed that the stimulus supplied to the patient by gonococcal urethritis was sufficient to attain excellent volunteer reporting by males. As the females in most instances were completely unaware or belatedly aware of their gonococcal involvement female volunteering could not be depended on. Hence adequate case finding among females depended on male cooperation in the identification of sex contacts. Occasionally local circumstances will dictate the need for interviewing female cases for contacts. The recent successful application of a modification of the syphilis control procedure termed cluster technic has been reported by Brown (1961a). The next essential is the immediate treatment of all sexual contacts brought to the observation of the clinic whether they are diagnosed on observation as gonorrhea or not.

Utilizing this technic in a large mid Southern city over a 1 year period it was possible to obtain an index of 1.7 sex contacts per patient interviewed and to bring approximately 85 per cent of the sex contacts to clinic observation and treatment within 72 hours with 50 to 75 per cent of

them There was an almost inconsequential decrease in the rate and the number of cases reported during the 5 years from 1952 to 1956 Beginning in 1957 there has been a continual yearly increase in gonorrhea It has been estimated that the actual incidence of gonorrhea is between 5 and 10 times the number of cases reported (Curtis 1963)

## PROPHYLAXIS

Mechanical prophylaxis by means of a condom offers the only type of protection on which any reasonable reliance can be placed In the male transmission of the disease is effected by the contamination of the very distal portion of the urethral mucosa On hypothetical grounds any chemical agent capable of destroying *N gonorrhoeae* while the organisms occupy a vulnerable position on the surface of the mucous membrane should serve as an effective prophylactic However there is no acceptable evidence that the commercial chemical prophylactic preparations or those used in military or organizations have any appreciable degree of effectiveness In women mechanical cleansing with soap and water or with mild anti septic solution offers a theoretical but unconfirmed mode of protection The prophylactic use of penicillin has been explored by the Armed Forces in high incidence areas The utilization of a single oral benzathine penicillin G tablet (250 000 units) is employed in the following ways either on embarking for short term leave or on return from leave 1 penicillin tablet is given to all personnel similarly a tablet may be given on reporting exposure The employment of such a technic on all personnel while indicated under certain circumstances, has been criticized from the standpoint of initiating penicillin hypersensitivity in a certain proportion of the personnel and because of the rather large cost of such a program per gonorrhea case prevented In a well-disciplined group it would appear that the best utilization of this technic would be based on personnel reporting exposure In any event this measure is considerably more effective in the prevention of gonorrhea than the chemical prophylaxis formerly utilized by the Armed Forces

All contacts of patients with gonorrhea should be identified located and treated as soon as possible Of course such contacts should be examined to determine their diagnostic status but regardless of whether the examination indicates the presence of gonorrhea or not all such contacts should be treated because of delays and difficulties in diagnosis particularly in females and the practical fact that sexual exposure usually continues despite advice to the contrary under such circumstances Every effort should be made to include all sexual contacts of the 6 to 10 days prior to the onset of the clinical infection as well as those contacts occurring from the time of onset until the patient is first seen

## CONTROL MEASURES

The control of communicable diseases is based upon 4 major principles namely quarantine immunization eradication of the intermediate host, and specific treatment When we attempt to apply these principles to gonorrhea we become more fully aware of the difficulties in the control of this disease The success of the quarantine of cases and contacts depends in large measure on the capacity and the resources available to diagnose cases and find contacts The admitted deficiencies in ability to diagnose this disease particularly among females and the staggering job of attempting to find and process properly and handle perhaps 2 000 000 of our population make quarantine both impractical as well as politically unfeasible We have no means of artificial immunization for this disease and to worsen the situation no effective natural immunity is acquired by having the disease Man is the only known reservoir of gonorrhea and there is no intermediate host to eradicate A special treatment is available but specific therapy alone given to diagnosed cases without the aid of one or more of the other principles of control cannot control a social disease of this nature

It has been assumed that the general use of penicillin therapy would both reduce the period of infectiousness and decrease opportunities for transmission That these assumptions are correct there can be no

argument but the further assumption that these factors alone would greatly modify the epidemiology of gonorrhea and bring about a marked decline in the prevalence of the disease is not valid. The solution of one facet of the problem led to and was largely offset by the increased opportunity for reinfection. Because of the short incubation period an increase in the number of reinfections in a given period of time will greatly swell the morbidity statistics and tend to maintain the disease in society. Thus the hoped for decline in the prevalence and the incidence of gonorrhea following the introduction of effective antimicrobial agents has not occurred; indeed reported cases of gonorrhea have shown a consistent significant upward trend since 1958.

Becoming aware of the limitations of gonorrhea control programs the U.S. Public Health Service in 1952 with the cooperation of State Health Departments and selected large cities in the United States initiated the first major attempt to incorporate known epidemiologic information into a new methodology. The technic was called "speed zone epidemiology" (peppy epi). It is an attempt to apply specialized technics in gonorrhea case finding, interviewing and investigation of contacts as well as patient education which will exploit the characteristics of this disease. Mahoney *et al.* (1946) had demonstrated that the incubation period of experimentally acquired gonorrhea in males has a 31-day range but that 85 per cent of the infections produced clinical symptoms within 6 days. Presumably then the bulk of case finding could be narrowed down in at least 85 per cent of all cases to the epidemiologic investigation of sex contacts of gonorrhea patients for the period beginning 6 to 7 days prior to the onset of clinical symptoms and ending at the time of appearance at the clinic. If valid information were obtained at interview of the patient with gonorrhea the source case and the spread or contact cases would be identified and hopefully located and brought in for treatment thereby breaking the chain of infection surrounding the particular patient. Since at that time penicillin in aluminum monostearate was the longest acting penicillin available and presumably protected the

patient from reinfection for at least 72 hours and since reinfection from the same sources without such protection was known to be common and since developed interviewing technics had been proved to be highly effective in identifying contacts, investigation of the patient's contacts had to be accomplished within the treated patient's penicillin protective period i.e. 72 hours. Rapid investigation is therefore essential for breaking the chains of infection and protecting the patient from reinfection. The most commonly employed technics to bring sex contacts to clinic observation within the 72 hour period were (1) a telegram to the contact requesting immediate appearance at the health department, (2) an immediate telephone call to the contact, (3) the immediate assignment of the contact not having an adequate address or telephone number or not responding to these technics to a venereal disease investigator and (4) having the informant bring in his contacts within 24 hours of the informant's treatment.

Only male patients with diagnosed gonorrhea were interviewed for sex contacts. Most well run large clinics had observed that the stimulus supplied to the patient by gonococcal urethritis was sufficient to attain excellent volunteer reporting by males. As the females in most instances were completely unaware or belatedly aware of their gonococcal involvement, female volunteering could not be depended on. Hence adequate case finding among females depended on male cooperation in the identification of sex contacts. Occasionally local circumstances will dictate the need for interviewing female cases for contacts. The recent successful application of a modification of the syphilis control procedure termed "cluster technic" has been reported by Brown (1961a). The next essential is the immediate treatment of all sexual contacts brought to the observation of the clinic whether they are diagnosed on observation as gonorrhea or not.

Utilizing this technic in a large mid-Southern city over a 1 year period it was possible to obtain an index of 1.7 sex contacts per patient interviewed and to bring approximately 85 per cent of the sex contacts to clinic observation and treatment within 72 hours with 50 to 75 per cent of

them There was an almost inconsequential decrease in the rate and the number of cases reported during the 5 years from 1952 to 1956 Beginning in 1957 there has been a continual yearly increase in gonorrhea It has been estimated that the actual incidence of gonorrhea is between 5 and 10 times the number of cases reported (Curtis 1963)

### PROPHYLAXIS

Mechanical prophylaxis by means of a condom offers the only type of protection on which any reasonable reliance can be placed In the male transmission of the disease is effected by the contamination of the very distal portion of the urethral mucosa On hypothetical grounds any chemical agent capable of destroying *N gonorrhoeae* while the organisms occupy a vulnerable position on the surface of the mucous membrane should serve as an effective prophylactic However there is no acceptable evidence that the commercial chemical prophylactic preparations or those used in military organizations have any appreciable degree of effectiveness In women mechanical cleansing with soap and water or with mild antiseptic solution offers a theoretical but unconfirmed mode of protection The prophylactic use of penicillin has been explored by the Armed Forces in high incidence areas The utilization of a single oral benzathine penicillin G tablet (250 000 units) is employed in the following ways either on embarking for short term leave or on return from leave 1 penicillin tablet is given to all personnel similarly a tablet may be given on reporting exposure The employment of such a technic on all personnel while indicated under certain circumstances has been criticized from the standpoint of inducing penicillin hypersensitivity in a certain proportion of the personnel and because of the rather large cost of such a program per gonorrhea case prevented In a well-disciplined group it would appear that the best utilization of this technic would be based on personnel reporting exposure In any event this measure is considerably more effective in the prevention of gonorrhea than the chemical prophylaxis formerly utilized by the Armed Forces

All contacts of patients with gonorrhea should be identified located and treated as soon as possible Of course such contacts should be examined to determine their diagnostic status but regardless of whether the examination indicates the presence of gonorrhea or not, all such contacts should be treated because of delays and difficulties in diagnosis, particularly in females and the practical fact that sexual exposure usually continues despite advice to the contrary under such circumstances Every effort should be made to include all sexual contacts of the 6 to 10 days prior to the onset of the clinical infection as well as those contacts occurring from the time of onset until the patient is first seen

### CONTROL MEASURES

The control of communicable diseases is based upon 4 major principles namely quarantine immunization eradication of the intermediate host and specific treatment When we attempt to apply these principles to gonorrhea we become more fully aware of the difficulties in the control of this disease The success of the quarantine of cases and contacts depends in large measure on the capacity and the resources available to diagnose cases and find contacts The admitted deficiencies in ability to diagnose this disease particularly among females and the staggering job of attempting to find and process properly and handle perhaps 2 000 000 of our population make quarantine both impractical as well as politically unfeasible We have no means of artificial immunization for this disease and to worsen the situation no effective natural immunity is acquired by having the disease Man is the only known reservoir of gonorrhea and there is no intermediate host to eradicate A special treatment is available but specific therapy alone given to diagnosed cases without the aid of one or more of the other principles of control cannot control a social disease of this nature

It has been assumed that the general use of penicillin therapy would both reduce the period of infectiousness and decrease opportunities for transmission That these assumptions are correct there can be no

Disease Program, U S Public Health Service is still timely

Venereal disease is unique among the communicable infections in that it is not wholly a clinical problem. Its roots lie in the socially unacceptable environment in social maladjustment. The venereal disease control program deals with the dilemma that is apparent that is the presence of a venereal disease. Our services are specific: we treat the infected individual and try to give him enough information so that he will not become reinfected or if he does that he will know what to do about it. However, we only skirt the edges when we look at the clinical aspects of the disease and do not deal with the deeper social causes or remote origin of the person's present difficulties.

## REFERENCES

- Anderson D O and Nelson A J 1954 Observations on the applied epidemiology of gonorrhoea. *Canad J Pub Health* 45 381-391
- Bang J 1954 Demonstration of gonococci in rectal cultures. *Acta dermat venereol* 34 4-10
- Brown B C 1964 The serodiagnosis of gonorrhea utilizing a new antigen. *J Clin Lab Invest* in press
- Brown L, Copeloff M B and Peacock W L Jr 1962 Study of gonorrhea in treated and untreated asymptomatic women as determined by fluorescent antibody and culture methods. II. Teen age and young adults confined. *Am J Obst Gynec* 84 753-757
- Brown W J 1961a Cluster testing—a new development in syphilis case finding. *Am J Pub Health* 51 1043-1048
- Brown W J, Simpson W G and Price E V 1961b Reevaluation of reactions to penicillin in venereal disease clinic patients. *Pub Health Rep* 76 189-198
- Bucca, M A, Thayer J D and Schubert, J H 1947 Observations on the direct oxidase test as applied to gonococcal colonies grown in certain mediums. *J Ven Dis Inform* 28 40-45
- Cohn A, Steer A and Adler E L 1940 Gonococcal vaginitis. *J Ven Dis Inform* 21 208-220
- Curtis A C 1963 National survey of venereal disease treatment. *JAMA* 186 46-49
- Deacon W E 1961 Fluorescent antibody methods for *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* identification. *Bull WHO* 24 349-355
- Deacon W E, Peacock W L Jr, Freeman E M and Harris A 1959 Identification of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* by means of fluorescent antibodies. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 101 322-325
- Fromer S, Cutler J C and Levitan S 1946 Masking of early syphilis by penicillin therapy in gonorrhea. *J Ven Dis Inform* 27 174-177
- Garson W 1953 Summary report of gonorrhea speed zone program in Memphis. *Tenn U S Dept of Health Education and Welfare Public Health Service Publication* pp 6-10 May
- 1963 *Gonorrhea Current Therapy—1963*. Philadelphia: Saunders p 375
- Gonococcus—Procedures for Isolation and Identification. U S Dept of Health Education and Welfare. *Public Health Service Publication* No 499 revised 1962
- Guthe T 1961 Failure to control gonorrhoea. *Bull WHO* 24 297-306
- Harkness A H 1948 The pathology of gonorrhea. *Brit J Ven Dis* 24 137-147
- Haro A S and Patiala R 1957 Epidemiology of gonorrhoea in Finland from 1953 to 1955. *Brit J Ven Dis* 33 70-77
- Harris A, Deacon W E, Tiedemann J and Peacock W L Jr 1961 Fluorescent antibody method of detecting gonorrhea in asymptomatic females. *Pub Health Rep* 76 93-96
- Hill J H 1944 Experimental infection with *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*. II. Animal inoculations. *Am J Syph Gonorr Ven Dis* 28 334-378, 471-510
- Hookings C E and Graves L M 1956 Speed zone epidemiology. A preliminary report on benzathine penicillin G for gonorrhea in women. *Pub Health Rep* 71 1142-1143
- 1957 Benzathine penicillin G in the control of gonorrhoea. *Brit J Ven Dis* 33 40-42
- Kellogg D S Jr, Peacock W L Jr, Deacon W E, Brown L and Pirkle C I 1963 *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*. I. Virulence genetically linked to clonal variation. *J Bact* 85 1275
- Kjellander J O and Finland M 1963 Penicillin treatment of gonorrheal urethritis. Effects of penicillin susceptibility of causative organism and concomitant presence of penicillinase producing bacteria on results. *New Eng J Med* 269 834-836
- Laird S M and Taylor G 1962 Treatment of gonorrhoea with actinospectacin. *Brit J Ven Dis* 38 60-63



the contacts being treated within 24 hours it allowed for a significant reduction in morbidity over the previous year. Although not universally successful, these programs demonstrate the possibility of rapid investigation and stimulate new and better epidemiologic techniques for more practical and economic control.

Excellent results of the use of this technique in Canada have been reported by Anderson and Nelson (1954) and Nelson (1957). A most worthwhile and interesting by-product of speed zone epidemiology programs has been the rather dramatic reduction in syphilis in the same population groups with no effort being expended other than the usual techniques which were in vogue prior to the addition of the gonorrhea program. Presumably the significant reduction in syphilis was due to the aborting of incubation or preclinical syphilis as a result of penicillin treatment on a fairly continuous basis.

As indicated, speed zone epidemiology as a technique for gonorrhea control is hardly a panacea. This is understandable when one considers that such programs allow that at least 15 per cent of the contacts named within the jurisdiction of the health department are not located and brought to treatment. Other limitations are the occasional failure at interview to obtain any contacts from the patient with gonorrhea, contacts outside the jurisdiction of the health agency, misinformation given by the informant to cover up his real contacts, the undetermined number of unknown cases of gonorrhea in the population at any one time, through the failure of the infected individual to seek ethical medical aid.

The observations of Hookings (1956-57) on the utilization of combined penicillin aluminum monostearate and benzathine penicillin G in the gonorrhea speed zone project in Memphis, Tenn., represents perhaps the first breakthrough in increasing the effectiveness of such control programs since their initiation in 1952. On January 1, 1956, the Memphis clinic began to treat female contacts and patients with 600,000 units of penicillin aluminum monostearate plus 1,200,000 units of benzathine penicillin G. At the same time the records of all female

contacts were tagged so that any repeat visit to the clinic would be readily recognized. By the end of 60 days the repeat rate which had been 15 per cent in 1955 had dropped to 1.7 per cent. A decline was seen in the weekly male attendance at the clinic when compared with the previous 2-year period. On April 1, 1956, males as well as females began to receive the combined treatment. Since that time there has been an increasingly marked decline in male as well as female attendance at the clinic. Careful scrutiny of all other factors which could account for such a decline were made and no factor other than the change in the treatment schedules utilized in the speed zone program could be detected. Continuation of this approach for the remainder of 1956 allowed for a decrease in morbidity of approximately 1,100 cases over the previous year and also a reduction in total reported syphilis of approximately 50 per cent in 1957.

Health department practice calls for

1. Efficient case reporting in order that health organizations may be informed of the trends of prevalence, incidence, and distribution of the disease.

2. Adequate facilities for interviewing prophylactic or diagnostic treatment and newer laboratory diagnostic procedures available freely to the medical resources of the community.

3. The rapid investigation of all sources of infection with the bringing to clinic observation during the period of penicillin protection from reinfection of the patient of individuals sexually exposed to a known infected person.

4. Informational, educational, and health promotional efforts both as regards the disease itself and along the broader lines of social hygiene, sex education, and family living.

5. The stimulation of and cooperation with other resources and social agencies within the community whose programs can be effectively brought to bear on the problem.

Until the above practices are utilized widely and faithfully we may expect that gonorrhea will continue to be ubiquitous in our society. The following statement by Dr. C. A. Smith, formerly Chief of the Venereal

Disease Program, U S Public Health Service is still timely

Venereal disease is unique among the communicable infections in that it is not wholly a clinical problem. Its roots lie in the socially unacceptable environment in social maladjustment. The venereal disease control program deals with the dilemma that is apparent that is the presence of a venereal disease. Our services are specific: we treat the infected individual and try to give him enough information so that he will not become reinfected or if he does that he will know what to do about it. However we only skirt the edges when we look at the clinical aspects of the disease and do not deal with the deeper social causes or remote origin of the person's present difficulties.

## REFERENCES

- Anderson D O and Nelson A J 1954 Observations on the applied epidemiology of gonorrhoea, *Canad J Pub Health* 45 381-391
- Bang J 1954 Demonstration of gonococci in rectal cultures *Acta dermat venerol* 34 4-10
- Brown B C 1964 The serodiagnosis of gonorrhea utilizing a new antigen *J Clin Lab Invest* in press
- Brown L Copeloff M H and Peacock W L Jr 1962 Study of gonorrhea in treated and untreated asymptomatic women as determined by fluorescent antibody and culture methods. II. Teen age and young adults confined *Am J Obst Gynec* 84 753-757
- Brown W J 1961a Cluster testing—a new development in syphilis case finding *Am J Pub Health* 51 1043-1048
- Brown W J Simpson W G and Price E V 1961b Reevaluation of reactions to penicillin in venereal disease clinic patients *Pub Health Rep* 76 189-198
- Bucca, M A Thayer J H and Schubert J H 1947 Observations on the direct oxidase test as applied to gonococcal colonies grown in certain mediums *J Ven Dis Inform* 28 40-45
- Cohn A Steer A and Adler E L 1940 Gonococcal vaginitis *J Ven Dis Inform* 21 208-220
- Curtis A C 1963 National survey of venereal disease treatment *JAMA* 186 46-49
- Deacon W E 1961 Fluorescent antibody methods for *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* identification *Bull WHO* 24 349-355
- Deacon W E Peacock W L Jr Freeman E M and Harris A 1959 Identification of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* by means of fluorescent antibodies *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 101 322-325
- Fromer M Cutler J C and Levitan M 1946 Masking of early syphilis by penicillin therapy in gonorrhea *J Ven Dis Inform* 27 174-177
- Garson W 1953 Summary report of gonorrhea speed zone program in Memphis Tenn. U S Dept of Health Education and Welfare Public Health Service Publication pp 6-10 May
- 1963 *Gonorrhea Current Therapy—1963* Philadelphia Saunders p 375
- Gonococcus—Procedures for Isolation and Identification U S Dept of Health Education and Welfare Public Health Service Publication No 499 revised 1962
- Guthe T 1961 Failure to control gonorrhoea *Bull WHO* 24 297-306
- Harkness A H 1948 The pathology of gonorrhea *Brit J Ven Dis* 24 137-147
- Haro A S and Patiala R 1957 Epidemiology of gonorrhoea in Finland from 1953 to 1955 *Brit J Ven Dis* 33 70-77
- Harris A Deacon W E Tiedemann J and Peacock W L Jr 1961 Fluorescent antibody method of detecting gonorrhea in asymptomatic females *Pub Health Rep* 76 93-96
- Hill J H 1944 Experimental infection with *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*. II. Animal inoculations *Am J Syph Gonorr Ven Dis* 28 334-378 471-510
- Hookings C E and Graves L M 1956 Speed zone epidemiology. A preliminary report on benzathine penicillin G for gonorrhea in women *Pub Health Rep* 71 1142-1143
- 1957 Benzathine penicillin G in the control of gonorrhoea *Brit J Ven Dis* 33 40-42
- Kellogg D S Jr Peacock W L Jr Deacon W E Brown L and Pirkle C I 1963 *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*. I. Virulence genetically linked to clonal variation *J Bact* 85 1275
- Kjellander J O and Finland M 1963 Penicillin treatment of gonorrheal urethritis. Effects of penicillin susceptibility of causative organism and concomitant presence of penicillinase producing bacteria on results *New Eng J Med* 269 834-836
- Laird S M and Taylor G 1962 Treatment of gonorrhoea with actinospectacin *Brit J Ven Dis* 38 60-63

## 20

## The Diphtheria Bacilli and the Diphtheroid

## CORYNEBACTERIUM DIPHThERIAE

Wilson and Miles (1955a) define this group of microorganisms as follows

Gram positive rod like forms arranged usually in a palisade Not acid fast Often with club shaped swellings at the poles generally with irregularly staining segments or granules Nonmotile nonsporing Growing aerobically or under microaerophilic conditions but often capable of anaerobic cultivation Never forming gas in carbohydrate media in which they may or may not produce acidity They may or may not liquefy gelatin or serum Some species produce a powerful exotoxin Type species *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*

Although representatives of the coryne bacteria are widely distributed in nature many strains appear to be associated with the body surfaces and tissues of animals and man Certain species are of significance in veterinary pathology but in human disease the group of closely related forms known collectively as the diphtheria bacilli (*C. diph*

*theriae*) occupy a position of outstanding and unique importance

In many respects diphtheria represents the disease in which the bacteriologist may feel the pride of maximal achievement Most of the facts regarding it—etiology mode of transmission mechanism of pathogenesis therapy and prevention—have been thoroughly elucidated Diphtheria once the leading cause of death among children has virtually disappeared as a disease from civilized communities As stated by Burnet (1953) Other diseases are more important causes of death and some have been just as carefully and extensively studied as diphtheria but no other common disease has been so successfully studied Difficulties in application of our knowledge as well as some remaining lacunae in the facts themselves nevertheless permit the disease to continue in certain regions and occasionally to assume formidable proportions

To a considerable degree the success realized in the understanding and the control of diphtheria results from the circumstance that it is primarily a toxic disorder uncomplicated by any generalized invasion of the tissues by the microorganism It may be considered as providing the pattern for the understanding of a group of diseases such as tetanus and botulism, which closely resemble it in mechanism of pathogenesis and of a further group including scarlet fever and gas gangrene in which specific toxins are responsible for an important ele

\* This chapter was originally written by the late J. Howard Mueller. It is doubtful whether the problems connected with cultivation of the diphtheria bacillus and diagnosis of diphtheria have ever been described so succinctly and so critically and these sections have been left largely as he wrote them. It is well to recall that Mueller's pioneer studies on nutrition and toxin production of *C. diphtheriae* represented the first truly successful and complete identification of the factors required for growth of a fastidious microorganism and led to studies in the metabolism of pathogenic bacteria that had been virtually impossible previous to his work.

ment of the disease process. For these reasons it seems appropriate to select diphtheria as the first of the infectious diseases to receive detailed consideration.

### HISTORY

Although not established as a distinct clinical entity until the 19th century diphtheria in epidemic form has without question existed since the earliest times. Undoubtedly it was often confused with other pathologic conditions affecting the throat, the mouth and adjacent tissues streptococcal or fungal infections. Vincent's angina nutritional disturbances such as scurvy and others alone or superimposed on diphtheritic infection must have presented extraordinarily perplexing problems in diagnosis to the early physician. In spite of these difficulties certain symptoms uniquely characteristic of diphtheria especially the paralysis of the soft palate with resulting regurgitation of fluid through the nose in attempting to swallow indicate clearly that the disease existed in the 6th century and probably even then had been known for hundreds of years. During the years 1735 to 1740 for example New England and the Middle Atlantic states were ravaged by a throat distemper which from its description was almost certainly diphtheria and may well have caused the death of more than 20 per cent of the entire population under 15 years of age in those regions where it occurred (Caulfield 1939). However it was not until 1826 that the French physician Bretonneau of Tours placed the specific clinical diagnosis of diphtheria on a reasonably firm basis and recognized its infectious nature. The diphtheria bacillus was seen and described by Klebs in 1883 in smears from pseudomembranes from the throats of patients with the disease. However it was Loeffler who a year later established the diphtheria bacillus as the etiologic agent and reproduced a similar disease in animals using the bacterium grown in artificial culture. For this reason the diphtheria bacillus has often been referred to as the Klebs Loeffler or K L bacillus. Loeffler made the important observation that both in fatal human cases and in laboratory animals the organisms could rarely if ever be demonstrated except in the local lesion of

the mucous membrane. Although tissue damage occurred in many remote organisms such as adrenals liver and heart these in variably proved to be sterile. This led Loeffler to postulate the formation of a diffusible poison by the organisms. His prediction was verified in 1888 when Roux and Yersin announced the discovery of diphtheria toxin. Roux and Yersin demonstrated that injection of sterile culture filtrates of the diphtheria bacillus into laboratory animals caused a fatal disease with lesions similar to those produced by living organisms. Two years later von Behring and Kitasato found that repeated sublethal doses of toxin partially detoxified with iodine trichloride caused animals to elaborate a substance antitoxin which was capable of specifically neutralizing the toxin. By 1891 sera from immunized animals were being used in the treatment of diphtheria. Thus the foundation was laid for a half century of specific serum therapy and prophylaxis not only of diphtheria but also of a variety of other infectious diseases.

The methods for controlling diphtheria in populations by mass immunization followed logically from these early observations and from the development of quantitative methods for bio-assay of toxin and antitoxin by Paul Ehrlich.

Suggested by Theobald Smith in 1909 toxin neutralized by antitoxin was shown by Behring in 1913 to induce immunity safely in both animals and man and was applied on a large scale by Park (1922) for the protection of children. A simple test for immunity by the intracutaneous injection of minute amounts of toxin was developed in 1913 by Schick making it possible to define more accurately the need for and the results of artificial immunization. Finally Ramon in 1923 showed that formalin treated toxin anatoxin (now commonly called toxoid) possessed certain advantages as an immunizing agent over toxin antitoxin mixtures and this material in one form or another has been used for wholesale immunization especially of children in many communities. Thus the knowledge and the tools appear to be at hand for eradicating diphtheria and indeed the disease has already become uncommon in most civilized countries.

The most recent chapter in the history of diphtheria was opened by Freeman's discovery in 1951 that only those bacterial strains growing in close association with a particular temperate bacteriophage are capable of producing diphtheria toxin. Strains which do not carry the virus are nontoxicogenic.

### MORPHOLOGY

The characteristic feature of the coryne bacteria from which they derive their name is their varying diameter, often broader at one end than the other resulting in a club shape. A further characteristic depends on the nonuniform absorption of certain dyes resulting in a beaded or barred appearance of the organisms when suitably stained. This may be particularly noticeable in the case of certain strains of the diphtheria bacillus often accentuated by growth on special media and leading to the appearance of well defined polar bodies. These deeply staining bands and beads have been variously named metachromatic granules, Babes-Ernst bodies, etc., and are composed mainly of high molecular weight polyphosphates (Ebel 1952). Corynebacteria are gram positive, non-spore bearing rods without flagella or capsules, which vary in size from 2 to several micra in length and from 0.5 to 1.0 micron in diameter. Evidently because following cell division the two resulting bacteria break apart sharply, the distribution of organisms in a stained smear is relatively characteristic. The individual bacilli form sharp angles with each other and have been variously compared with piles of matches,

Chinese letters or cuneiform characters in which the frequent wedge shape of the cell lends further suggestion. The occasional occurrence of true branching which has been observed in the growth of *C. diphtheriae* together with the irregularities of protoplasmic distribution previously mentioned have been interpreted by some bacteriologists as tending to separate this group of organisms from the true bacteria and place it somewhat above them in the organizational scale.

The keynote of microscopic morphology of the Corynebacteria is variability, not only between strains but even within a given strain grown under different conditions. Nevertheless, the microscopic appearance of this group of organisms is sufficiently distinctive to render them among the most easily recognized of all the human pathogens (see Fig. 1).

While morphology can aid the bacteriologist in the laboratory diagnosis of diphtheria and in the detection of carriers, final identification always must rest on further characterization of cultural and biologic properties of the organisms. The existence of non-toxinogenic diphtheria bacilli which are morphologically and culturally identical with toxinogenic strains serves to underline the limitations of morphologic criteria in diagnosis.

For many years it has been known that potassium tellurite in amounts that inhibit the growth of most bacteria has little effect on *C. diphtheriae*. For this reason, an agar medium containing tellurite provides the bacteriologist with a reasonably selective means for isolation and diagnosis. Using tellurite



FIG. 1. Three different strains of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* stained with Loeffler's methylene blue ( $\times 760$ ).

agar Anderson *et al* (1931) were able to differentiate clearly between two colonial types of *C. diphtheriae* which they isolated from humans during an unusually severe outbreak of diphtheria that occurred in England

The two main types give rise to rough and smooth colonies. In general the rough forms are the largest tend to be flat slate gray to black in color with a dull or matt surface. Smooth colonies are usually blacker convex with a smooth glossy surface and some what smaller. It was thought at first that the rough strains were associated with a more severe form of diphtheria with a higher death rate than that caused by smooth strains. For this reason the types were originally named *gravis* and *mitis*. It now seems certain that no simple relationship exists between colonial morphology and clinical severity for example strains can be isolated which are rough with typical *gravis* morphology yet produce no toxin at all. Therefore it seems best to abandon the older terminology and simply refer to the two main types as rough and smooth. A third type giving rise to dwarf colonies which may be either smooth or rough has been termed *minimus* (Frobisher 1940) or *intermedius* (McLeod 1943). It produces minute pinpoint colonies that vary from gray to black depending on the particular formula of tellurite medium used. It now seems certain that the various types can be derived from one another by mutation. Colonies of *C. hoemannii* and some strains of staphylococci resemble the smooth type of *C. diphtheriae* in size and color but are usually sufficiently different to permit recognition by the experienced bacteriologist.

In broth rough strains of *C. diphtheriae* tend to grow in a pellicle on the surface of the medium whereas smooth strains grow more diffusely. The dwarf or *minimus* strains develop as a finely granular turbidity in broth settling to leave a clear supernatant.

Diphtheria bacilli may be divided into groups according to their antigenic composition. Doubtless because toxigenicity is by far the most important factor concerned in pathogenicity serologic classification of this group of organisms has not received intensive study. Up to the present no clear-cut

relationship of immunologic properties to the main mutant types has been found.

It is evident from the above that the nature of growth to be expected of a diphtheria bacillus in the usual bacteriologic bouillon the agar slope or plate blood agar plates etc will vary with the type of the organism and that no further attempt at detailed description would be profitable.

### CULTIVATION

*C. diphtheriae* is primarily an aerobic organism and multiplies poorly if at all under strict anaerobic conditions. It grows readily on most of the usual laboratory media containing peptones and tissue extractives. On liquid medium most strains tend to grow as a waxy pellicle or veil on the surface. The nutritional requirements have been thoroughly investigated by Mueller (1940) who has shown that most strains require a variable number of specific amino acids and a carbon or energy source which may be glucose or some other sugar an organic acid or alcohol. In addition most strains are deficient in their ability to synthesize biotin nicotinic acid and pantothenic acid. Under the optimal conditions of oxygen supply pH control etc used in toxin production growth equivalent to 20 or more Gm dry weight can be attained per liter of liquid medium.

For initiating growth from minute inocula for example on agar plates traces of oleic acid and some additional unidentified substance have been shown to be necessary (Cohen and Mueller 1941).

For primary isolation of the diphtheria bacillus a number of tellurite-containing agar media have been proposed as mentioned in the preceding section (Mueller and Miller 1946). The classic medium still used in bacteriologic diagnosis is the coagulated blood serum slant first described by Loeffler. The belief has arisen that Loeffler's medium possesses selective growth promoting properties for the diphtheria bacillus enabling it to outgrow other bacteria occurring in the throat and giving it a normal and typical morphology. While there is no question of the utility of Loeffler's medium for diagnostic purposes it seems in the light of present knowledge that its success is due largely to

the fact that it is a relatively poor medium on which the diphtheria bacillus grows reasonably well but is not quite good enough for the average streptococcus or pneumococcus. Perhaps it is worth noting that rather widely divergent results will be obtained on Loeffler's medium both as regards excellence of growth and morphology depending on the species of serum used in its preparation. Beef serum is most commonly employed.

### BACTERIOLOGIC DIAGNOSIS

Current views tend to place the responsibility for diagnosing diphtheria on the clinician leaving for the laboratory the task of bacteriologic confirmation. This practice has been adopted because of the risk to the patient of delay in the administration of antitoxin. It is safer to err on the side of an occasional needless serum treatment than to lose time which can make the difference between recovery and death. To a degree therefore the necessity for a very rapid diagnosis need no longer be felt by the bacteriologist although the diagnostic method employed should be no more time-consuming than is consistent with accuracy. The method to be selected must also be readily applicable to recognition of the diphtheria bacillus in the convalescent case and the healthy carrier as well as from the occasional unusual source such as the conjunctiva, a skin lesion or wound diphtheria.

The diagnosis depends on the recognition of a diphtheria bacillus in material taken from the site of infection usually the throat. It is important that the specimen be obtained carefully and that it represent material from the membrane if present and from the area of inflammation. It should be taken by the physician with good illumination of the area and sent to the laboratory with the least possible delay. While the diphtheria bacilli are not especially delicate and may survive for many hours on a cotton swab they die out progressively and the interval between taking the culture and its examination should be no greater than necessary. In the laboratory a Loeffler slant, a blood plate and a tellurite plate are inoculated with the swab and a smear is prepared which may be stained with dilute

fuchsin and examined for the organisms of Vincent's angina. It is not recommended that any attempt be made to identify *C. diphtheriae* in the direct smear. Except in the hands of a bacteriologist of long experience in such diagnosis, the chance of error in either direction is too great. After 15 to 24 hours incubation the cultures may be examined—the blood plate for hemolytic streptococci and the tellurite plate for the gray or black colonies of diphtheria bacilli. Frequently no growth whatever will be found on the tellurite plate. Provided that the blood plate has shown the presence of viable bacteria on the swab this furnishes strong presumptive evidence that no diphtheria bacilli are present but the plate should be reincubated for 24 hours more and again examined before being reported finally as negative. In examining the tellurite plate one must keep in mind the different appearance of the types of *C. diphtheriae* and especially the relatively inconspicuous nature of *intermedius* or *minimus* growth. If colonies are present which suggest any of the types, a smear stained with methylene blue will enable one to determine promptly whether or not they are corynebacteria of some sort. If so their morphology together with the colony appearance will frequently make identification quite certain. In case of doubt the somewhat different morphology of the organism on the Loeffler slant may be of assistance. *C. hojmanni* for example is sufficiently characteristic to make recognition relatively easy.

Where considerable numbers of cases of infection due to a single type (i.e. rough, smooth or dwarf) of *C. diphtheriae* are occurring in a community the matter need be carried no further; the bacteriologist will readily identify the strain and a final report may be made covering the presence of the diphtheria bacillus, the hemolytic streptococcus and Vincent's angina.

Organisms from the suspected individual case, the possible carrier (except during an epidemic of a known type) perhaps the occasional refractory convalescent carrier and from any other unusual source such as a skin lesion should be isolated for further identification and a test for toxinogeny carried out.

It is usually desirable to restreak a second tellurite or blood agar plate from the growth on the initial tellurite plate and then to isolate the culture from a single colony to a Loeffler slant or other suitable medium. The pure culture thus obtained is used to inoculate tubes of Hiss serum water to check the fermentative properties. Ordinarily glucose, maltose and sucrose will be found to be sufficient for this purpose. Failure to ferment a sugar should be recorded only when demonstrable growth has occurred. Table 1 summarizes the fermentation reactions of *C. diphtheriae* and of certain related corynebacteria frequently encountered in the nasopharynx or the throat of man.

The test for toxigeny (so called virulence test) may be carried out in the following manner:

The growth on Loeffler slants is emulsified with broth to give slightly turbid bacterial suspensions. From 0.1 to 0.2 ml of each suspension is injected intradermally into one (shaved) side of a guinea pig. Then the suspensions are placed in the refrigerator. After 4 hours 500 units of antitoxin is administered intraperitoneally and 30 minutes later the test suspensions are injected into corresponding sites on the other side of the guinea pig. Inflammatory reactions may occur at both sites within 24 to 48 hours but only sites injected with a toxigenic strain before antitoxin was administered go on to develop characteristic necrotic lesions at 48 to 72 hours. This method of testing for toxigeny has the advantage that lesions caused by a single bacterial suspension before and after injection of antitoxin may be compared in the same animal. In case it is necessary to test many isolates rabbits may be used and are equally satisfactory.

Some nontoxigenic strains are capable of causing pyogenic local skin lesions which resemble staphylococcal infections in rabbits and guinea pigs. Similar lesions may be observed with certain toxigenic strains even in control animals previously given antitoxin. However such pyogenic lesions are easily differentiated from the larger hemorrhagic and necrotic lesions produced by toxigenic strains in the test animals.

A convenient in vitro method of testing for toxigeny was described by Elek

TABLE 1

	GLUCOSE	MALTOSE	SUCROSE
<i>C. diphtheriae</i> (most strains)	+	+	-
<i>C. diphtheriae</i> (some strains)	+	+	+
<i>C. hofmannii</i>	-	-	-
<i>C. xerosis</i>	+	-	+

(1948) based on Ochterlony's technic for detecting precipitin reactions by double diffusion in agar gels. More recent modifications of the method by Hermann *et al.* (1958) and Liu (1961) permit the reaction to be carried out on microscopic slides on which positive reactions develop within 12 to 18 hours.

#### PATHOGENESIS

Diphtheria is the classic example of an infectious disease in which the causative organism is capable of only limited invasion of superficial tissue and in which almost all of the severe damage to cells may be attributed to a soluble toxin released by the bacteria and carried to remote organs by the bloodstream. In man the site of the local lesion is most commonly the throat or the nasopharynx. It is true that certain non-toxin producing strains of *C. diphtheriae* are capable of producing a mild sore throat and fever of short duration in human subjects (Edward and Allison 1951). Such strains may produce purulent local lesions when injected intradermally into rabbits. However the classic severe disease is always caused by toxigenic strains. To understand the pathogenesis of diphtheria we must (1) explain how the organisms become established in the local lesion, (2) describe conditions under which toxin is synthesized and released by the diphtheria bacillus and finally (3) elucidate the nature of the toxin molecule and the mechanism by which it kills the susceptible host.

The capacity of the diphtheria bacillus to cause disease evidently arose through a number of improbable mutational events. Thus only those strains of *C. diphtheriae* that are lysogenic for the bacteriophage  $\beta$  or for certain mutants of  $\beta$  are toxigenic. Nonlyso-



genic strains are nontoxinogenic and therefore incapable of causing typical diphtheria. Moreover, even in the presence of  $\beta$  prophage synthesis and release of toxin occurs only under particular abnormal conditions in which the bacterial iron content and complement of iron-containing respiratory enzymes is being depleted.

**Toxinogeny and Lysogeny** It was shown by Freeman (1951) that when nontoxinogenic strains of *C. diphtheriae* are treated with a particular bacteriophage, a certain proportion of the resistant survivors on plating give rise to colonies of toxinogenic bacteria. These survivors are lysogenic; they carry a latent virus—the prophage  $\beta$ . In cultures of the converted toxinogenic organisms a small proportion (about 1 in 50 000 cells) spontaneously lyses to release mature  $\beta$  phage which can then infect and convert new sensitive cells to toxinogeny and lysogeny. Following irradiation of a lysogenic culture with ultraviolet light, multiplication of vegetative phage is induced, and after about two generation times most of the bacteria lyse with release of about 30 phage particles per bacterium.

When the temperate phage  $\beta$  is added to a sensitive culture and its DNA is injected into a cell, one of three things may happen: (1) The injected DNA fails to integrate with the host genome, does not replicate, and is lost on cell division. The progeny once more become sensitive. (2) The DNA replicates, vegetative phage is synthesized, and the cell bursts with release of 30  $\beta$  particles per cell. (3) The injected DNA becomes integrated with the host genome, and the cell and its progeny become toxinogenic and lysogenic. The studies of Groman (1953) and of Barksdale and Pappenheimer (1954) suggest that all toxinogenic diphtheria bacilli are lysogenic for  $\beta$  phage or one of its mutants.

Groman (1955) has shown that cured diphtheria bacilli from which  $\beta$  prophage has been eliminated are no longer able to produce toxin. The cured strains are again sensitive to  $\beta$  phage, and lysogenization of them again results in toxinogeny. This type of alteration of a bacterial genome brought about by the mere presence of a particular prophage is known as *lysogenic conversion*. This phenomenon differs from *transduction* where the

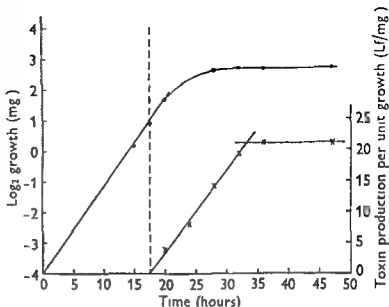
bacterial genome becomes altered by the introduction of new bacterial genetic material through the agency of phage. The acquired property in the case of transduction is controlled by bacterial genes, whereas in lysogenic conversion the new attribute is apparently under the control of prophage.

Other diphtherial phages exist which are capable of lysogenizing without converting sensitive strains to toxinogeny. Groman *et al.* (1958) have formed doubly lysogenic strains which carry both toxinogenic and nontoxinogenic prophages  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  respectively. Following induction of such doubly lysogenic organisms, they succeeded in isolating recombinant phages  $\beta$  which had lost its ability to convert sensitive bacteria to toxinogeny, and  $\gamma$  which had acquired this property. The host ranges of  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  remained the same as those of the parental  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  phages. Thus not all mutants of  $\beta$  phage are capable of converting to toxinogeny.

Although the capacity of a given strain of *C. diphtheriae* to produce toxin requires the presence of a suitable mutant of  $\beta$  phage, whether or not toxin is actually synthesized and in what yield are determined by the host bacterium's own metabolism. As will be discussed in the following section, even when  $\beta$  phage is present in a given organism, toxin is produced only under certain unfavorable conditions of growth. Little or no toxin is synthesized by toxinogenic lysogenic strains during normal exponential growth.

**Production and Properties of Diphtheria Toxin** Since the clinical injury caused by *C. diphtheriae* is almost entirely accounted for by the toxin which it forms, and since control of the disease depends on obtaining high yields of toxin for conversion to toxoid, the production and the properties of this substance have practical as well as theoretic interest. In order to obtain high yields of toxin in artificial media, it is first essential to select a suitable lysogenic strain. In 1898 Park and Williams isolated from a mild case of diphtheria an atypical slow-growing strain which they found produced an exceptionally potent toxin. In fact, no other strain has ever been isolated that is capable of producing such high yields of diphtheria toxin as the PW8 strain. Under suitable conditions, the differential rate of synthesis of toxin by this strain

FIG 2 Toxin production and growth of the PW8 strain of *C. diphtheriae* as a function of time. Crosses: toxin production per unit growth (Pappenheimer A. M. Jr 1955 in *Mechanisms of Microbial Pathogenicity*, Cambridge University Press).



is equivalent to 5 per cent or more of the total bacterial protein. For this reason the PW8 strain is used in almost all laboratories throughout the world for the routine production of toxin.

The conditions for obtaining maximal growth of the PW8 strain, a necessary prerequisite for obtaining high yields of toxin, were worked out by Mueller and Miller (1940) and Drew and Mueller (1951). More recently toxin has been obtained in unusually high yields by growth in submerged cultures in which temperature, pH and aeration are continuously controlled (Linggood *et al.* 1955). Up to 20 Gm per liter dry weight bacteria can be harvested and the culture filtrates contain up to 300 Lf/ml toxin (equivalent to nearly 1 gram per liter of toxic protein).

The most important single factor controlling toxin production is the iron content of the culture medium (Pappenheimer and Johnson 1936). As shown in Figure 2, no toxin is formed in well-aerated shake cultures during exponential growth. Only after the iron content of the medium has become exhausted is toxin formed in significant amounts. Its release continues at a linear rate until bacterial growth ceases. In the case of the PW8 strain, the bacterial mass increases 4 to 6 fold during toxin production. At the

same time the cellular content of iron-containing respiratory enzymes (cytochromes) falls to  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{6}$  and equivalent amounts of free coproporphyrin III and toxin are liberated into the culture medium. At no time are more than traces found in or on the cells. The unusually high yield of toxin produced by the PW8 strain appears to be related to its ability to grow at a reduced cellular iron content and not to any peculiarity in the prophage which it carries. Recent studies (Pappenheimer, Howland and Miller 1962) have shown that, in contrast with most naturally occurring diphtheria bacilli, the PW8 strain contains a defective and incomplete cytochrome system and uses flavoprotein rather than cytochrome as terminal oxidase. Other strains of the diphtheria bacillus, although they contain a complete cytochrome system, are unable to grow once their iron content has been reduced by more than 30 to 40 per cent (compared with 80 to 85% for PW8) and the maximum yields of toxin are correspondingly reduced.

Diphtheria toxin was first isolated in crystalline form by Pope and Stevens (1958) (see Fig. 3). It is a heat-labile protein of molecular weight 72,000 and is homogeneous by all of the usual physicochemical criteria. Chemical analysis of the crystalline protein has revealed no groupings other than

the usual amino acids. The most active preparations are lethal for susceptible animals in doses of less than 0.1 mcg/Kg.

The relationship between lysogeny and toxinogeny has remained obscure. Studies on the kinetics of toxin synthesis by bacteria labeled with radioactive amino acids have shown that the toxic protein is synthesized *de novo* by cells of decreasing iron content and that its release is not accompanied by lysis of any significant number of cells (Pappenheimer, Miller and Yoneda 1962). Indeed during its production toxin may account for 75 per cent or more of the total extracellular protein. There is no convincing evidence that phage multiplication is involved in toxin production.

In summary then, although diphtheria toxin has been characterized as a protein and the kinetics of its synthesis and release by lysogenic strains of decreasing iron content are reasonably well understood, we still do not know what toxin is or why it is formed by bacteria. Because of the close quantitative relationships between toxin and coproporphyrin III release on the one hand and bacterial iron and cytochrome contents on the other, the suggestion was made (Pappenheimer and Hendee 1947; Pappenheimer

1955) that the toxin may be related structurally to the protein moiety of a cytochrome *b*, the major respiratory pigment of the PW8 strain.

**Pathogenicity of *C. diphtheriae* for Animals and the Mode of Action of Diphtheria Toxin.** Natural infection of the lower animals with *C. diphtheriae* appears not to occur. However, a variety of experimental animals are susceptible to the effects of its toxin and it has been possible to establish with the organism experimental infections which simulate the human disease. Thus Loeffler in his early experiments was able, by intratracheal inoculation, so to infect rabbits and pigeons as to obtain typical diphtheritic pseudomembranes at the site of injury.

Injection of diphtheria toxin subcutaneously into an animal such as the guinea pig is followed in 10 to 12 hours by local swelling and apparent tenderness. Death ensues within 12 hours to several days, depending on the amount of toxin given. With suitably gauged sublethal doses, late paralysis may occur resembling those seen in man during convalescence from diphtheria. Examination at autopsy following death from a fatal dose reveals intense edema of the subcutaneous tissue at the site of injection, often hemorrhagic in character. Beyond this, the most

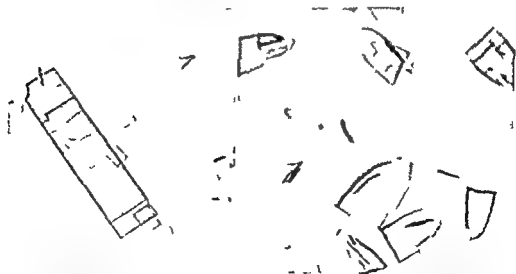


FIG. 3. Diphtheria toxin (left) recrystallized from phosphate buffer (right) recrystallized from ammonium sulfate (Pope, C. G. and Stevens, M. 1958, Brit. J. Exp. Path. 39, 142).

constant and striking pathologic picture is the marked congestion of the adrenal cortices frequently accompanied by hemorrhage. Occasionally hemorrhage in the pericardium or the diaphragm occurs and the heart muscle the liver and the kidneys may show fatty degenerative changes. By definition a minimum lethal dose (M.L.D.) is that amount of diphtheria toxin that will kill a 250 Gm guinea pig on the 4th or the 5th day following subcutaneous injection.

If cultures of virulent diphtheria bacilli are injected rather than toxin itself the chain of events and the pathologic findings follow closely those observed after the administration of the toxin. The bacilli themselves as Loeffler recognized remain localized and in general are found at autopsy only in the vicinity of the site of inoculation. Positive cultures occasionally obtained from the viscera appear to be due to terminal or post mortem invasion rather than attributable to any active invasive ability on the part of the organism.

In the diphtheria bacillus therefore we have an organism possessing in some degree the ability to survive and to establish itself in the healthy tissues of a susceptible animal to an extent sufficient for the elaboration of an amount of toxin which is capable of causing death of the animal through specific and distant action on certain kinds of tissue.

Within any single given species in the absence of specific antitoxic immunity there is a remarkable uniformity in sensitivity to diphtheria toxin from one individual to the next. However different species may vary enormously in their sensitivity. Thus although susceptible human beings, monkeys, rabbits, guinea pigs and even pigeons all appear to be equally sensitive when toxicity is expressed as lethal doses per unit weight, rats and mice are several thousand times more resistant. The resistance of rats and mice cannot be due to the presence of substances that neutralize or inactivate toxin, since the serum of rats injected with diphtheria toxin remains toxic for guinea pigs for several days. It is possible that some kind of permeability effect may account for the resistance of rat and mouse cells, since the same type of tissue damage occurs as in guinea pigs provided that a sufficiently high dose of toxin is given.

A similar explanation may account for the fact that cold blooded vertebrates such as amphibia and reptiles are resistant to toxin at lower temperatures but become susceptible when their body temperature is raised above 25 or 30° C (Grasset and Zonderdyk 1931).

For many years it was thought that only vertebrates were susceptible to the action of diphtheria toxin. However as will be discussed below it was shown by Pappenheimer and Williams (1952) that insects such as the cecropia silkworm are extremely sensitive to the toxin at certain stages in their metamorphosis. Other lower forms such as protozoa, yeasts and plants appear to be wholly resistant.

Recently mammalian cell lines growing in tissue culture have been used as experimental animals. The so-called spinner cultures of sensitive established lines such as HeLa cells have proved to be particularly useful in studies on the mode of action of the toxin because they provide a uniform population of cells growing in suspension. It is of interest that cell lines derived from mouse and rat tissues are resistant to the toxin whereas those of human, monkey or guinea pig origin are highly sensitive (Lennox and Kaplan 1957, Gablik and Solotorofsky 1962). Thus the sensitivities of the cells in culture reflect those of the animal from which they were derived.

In attempts to discover the mode of action of diphtheria toxin it has proved to be difficult to distinguish between primary and secondary toxic effects. Even when large doses of toxin are injected into animals there is a latent period of several hours during which no symptoms or evidence for morphologic or biochemical damage can be detected. Changes that cannot be observed until after the latent period are likely to prove to be secondary to some earlier and more subtle injury. Very few molecules of the toxic protein are required to kill a cell. In fact it can be calculated from the studies of Lennox and Kaplan and Gablik and Solotorofsky that highly sensitive mammalian cells are killed when the tissue culture medium in which they are grown contains a total of only 200 to 300 molecules of toxin per cell. At such low concentrations (about  $10^{-10}$  M) there is a latent

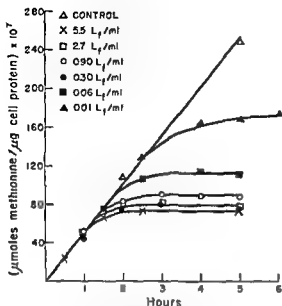


FIG 4 Effect of increasing concentrations of purified diphtheria toxin on the incorporation of methionine into protein by growing HeLa cells (Strauss N and Hendee E D J Exp Med 109 145)

period of 48 hours or more before the first signs of morphologic damage can be detected. A similar prolonged latent period is observed when small doses are injected into animals. Such extreme toxicity seems to preclude the likelihood of injury by direct fixation of toxin to a stable cell component and suggests that the toxin must act catalytically to activate or to inactivate some vital enzyme or other cell catalyst.

In the preceding section evidence suggesting a possible relation between toxin and diphtherial cytochrome was discussed. This hypothesis led in turn to speculation that toxin might interfere in some manner with cytochrome linked energy metabolism in the susceptible animal. At first experiments appeared to be in keeping with such a hypothesis. Thus Pinchot and Bloom (1950) demonstrated a depletion of phosphocreatine and decreased muscle organic phosphate in intoxicated guinea pigs. In their studies on the cecropia silkworm Pappenheimer and Williams (1952) found that only those tissues containing a complete succinoxidase and cytochrome system were sensitive to the ac-

tion of the toxin. During the pupal diapause of this insect protein synthesis is minimal and a complete cytochrome system is present and functioning only in a small group of intersegmental muscle tissues. Despite the destruction of these muscles within a few days, the animal as a whole is not killed by large doses of toxin. On the other hand adult development is a process that involves rapid synthesis of new protein and a high energy metabolism is brought to a prompt stand still by injection of small amounts of toxin and at this stage the intoxicated insect succumbs within a few days.

The most recent studies on the mode of action of diphtheria toxin have used established mammalian cell lines as an experimental tool. Strauss and Hendee (1959) found that one or more saturating doses" (0.5 mcg/ml or greater) of toxin completely arrest growth and protein synthesis in cultures of HeLa cells within 1.5 to 2 hours at 37° C although morphologic damage does not become evident until several hours later. Far smaller concentrations of toxin cause a similar effect after a more prolonged latent period of normal cell growth. Figure 4 shows that incorporation of  $S^{35}$  methionine into HeLa cell protein ceases within 2 hours in the presence of toxin concentrations of 0.3 Lf per ml (about 1 mcg/ml or greater). The effect may be prevented by antitoxin added within the first hour. The studies of Strauss and Hendee and more recently of Collier and Pappenheimer (1964) have shown that protein synthesis does not come to a halt because of a derangement in the energy metabolism of the cell. Even after 5 to 6 hours when morphologic damage first becomes detectable the ATP and the high energy content remain normal in intoxicated cells. Moreover it has been shown that very low concentrations of toxin ( $\geq 0.5$  mcg/ml) block incorporation of amino acids into protein by cell free extracts of HeLa cells provided with an ATP generating system and containing ribosomes, soluble enzymes and cofactors.

We may conclude that while some progress has been made toward the elucidation of the mode of action of diphtheria toxin, the molecular level much remains to be learned.

It is certain that toxin in low concentration rapidly arrests protein synthesis and growth of susceptible cells. However the exact mechanism by which toxin interferes with amino acid incorporation into protein remains to be solved and indeed it is still uncertain at present whether the inhibition of protein synthesis is a primary or a secondary effect of the toxin.

### DIPHTHERIA IN MAN

The diphtheria bacillus occurs in nature so far as is known only in lesions of the specific disease in man and in the throats and the noses of the normal human carrier. From one of these two sources a virulent diphtheria bacillus reaches more or less directly—by droplet contact or fomites—the throat of a susceptible individual. Growth presumably is initiated in a superficial layer of mucus and desquamated epithelial cells and small amounts of toxin are elaborated. This toxin absorbed into adjoining living cells destroys them in a few hours through its local necrotizing action. The nidus of necrotic tissue supplies favorable conditions for further growth of the organisms; more toxin is formed and the process extends both laterally and more deeply into the tissue.

Meanwhile there is an inflammatory reaction on the part of the body; capillaries engorge, leukocytes enter, red cells become extravasated and a layer of exudate begins to form which is composed of all these various elements. At first this is grayish and inconspicuous but as the process continues it soon becomes thicker and tough, forming a dull white layer or pseudomembrane covering the area. The initial lesion may cover a tonsil or a portion of the posterior pharynx. In some cases it is limited to the posterior nares or the trachea and thus may elude observation. At this stage of the disease the patient has typically a moderately sore throat lacking the acutely inflamed appearance, swelling and pain of a streptococcus infection and a relatively low fever of from 100 to 102° F. However he usually manifests a degree of prostration out of all proportion to the fever and the visible difficulty in the throat. The membrane may spread with considerable rapidity over the tonsils, the uvula and the posterior pharynx. The dull white color gives

place to a dirty gray and later to brown or in some instances black as a result of hemorrhage. Separation of the membrane by mechanical means during the early stages uncovers bleeding points and is rapidly followed by the formation of fresh exudate.

The cervical glands early become swollen and tender and in the severe or bullneck variety there is massive edema of the tissue of the neck and the chest. If the membrane developed initially in the larynx or if it extends to that site and continues further into the trachea, death may result from mechanical stoppage of the air passage unless promptly relieved by intubation or tracheotomy. Excluding such mechanical termination of the infection and in the absence of antitoxin treatment the patient will run the natural course of the disease and die during the acute stage as a result of general toxic effect, succumb after a somewhat longer time as a result of cardiac damage by the toxin or recover after perhaps showing evidence of neurotoxic injury such as paralysis of the soft palate, the ciliary muscles of the eye or the extremities. The membrane separates after a few days and is eliminated leaving as a rule very little ulceration of the underlying tissues.

The infection may occur initially in the ear or in the anterior nares and in the latter site particularly is likely to be relatively mild though prolonged. We have seen a fatal case in a child whom the membrane was located in the umbilicus. Rarely the conjunctiva may become the site of extremely severe and destructive diphtheritic lesion.

Skin or wound diphtheria is rarely seen under ordinary conditions in temperate climates. In the tropics however it is apparently not uncommon and indeed presented the armed forces with a rather serious problem in Africa and in portions of the Pacific theater during World War II. The infection appears usually at the site of some relatively minor injury, a bruise, a scratch or a blister and develops as an ulcer showing little tendency to heal with sharply demarcated edges and a dirty grayish slough or membrane covering the base. Such infections may last for weeks or months and cover areas of several centimeters diameter. Their nature may be unsuspected because of the rarity of the con-

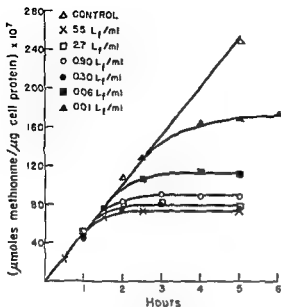


FIG. 4 Effect of increasing concentrations of purified diphtheria toxin on the incorporation of methionine into protein by growing HeLa cells (Strauss N and Hendee E D J Exp Med 109 145)

period of 48 hours or more before the first signs of morphologic damage can be detected. A similar prolonged latent period is observed when small doses are injected into animals. Such extreme toxicity seems to preclude the likelihood of injury by direct fixation of toxin to a stable cell component and suggests that the toxin must act catalytically to activate or to inactivate some vital enzyme or other cell catalyst.

In the preceding section evidence suggesting a possible relation between toxin and diphtherial cytochrome was discussed. This hypothesis led in turn to speculation that toxin might interfere in some manner with cytochrome linked energy metabolism in the susceptible animal. At first experiments appeared to be in keeping with such a hypothesis. Thus Pinchot and Bloom (1950) demonstrated a depletion of phosphocreatine and decreased muscle organic phosphate in intoxicated guinea pigs. In their studies on the cecropia silkworm Pappenheimer and Williams (1952) found that only those tissues containing a complete succinoxidase and cytochrome system were sensitive to the ac-

tion of the toxin. During the pupal diapause of this insect protein synthesis is minimal and a complete cytochrome system is present and functioning only in a small group of intersegmental muscle tissues. Despite the destruction of these muscles within a few days the animal as a whole is not killed by large doses of toxin. On the other hand adult development is a process that involves rapid synthesis of new protein and a high energy metabolism is brought to a prompt stand still by injection of small amounts of toxin and at this stage the intoxicated insect succumbs within a few days.

The most recent studies on the mode of action of diphtheria toxin have used established mammalian cell lines as an experimental tool. Strauss and Hendee (1959) found that one or more saturating doses (0.5 mcg/ml or greater) of toxin completely arrest growth and protein synthesis in cultures of HeLa cells within 1.5 to 2 hours at 37° C although morphologic damage does not become evident until several hours later. Far smaller concentrations of toxin cause a similar effect after a more prolonged latent period of normal cell growth. Figure 4 shows that incorporation of  $^{35}$ S-methionine into HeLa cell protein ceases within 2 hours in the presence of toxin concentrations of 0.3 Lf per ml (about 1 mcg/ml or greater). The effect may be prevented by antitoxin added within the first hour. The studies of Strauss and Hendee and more recently of Collier and Pappenheimer (1964) have shown that protein synthesis does not come to a halt because of a derangement in the energy metabolism of the cell. Even after 5 to 6 hours when morphologic damage first becomes detectable the ATP and the high energy content remain normal in intoxicated cells. Moreover it has been shown that very low concentrations of toxin ( $\geq 0.5$  mcg/ml) block incorporation of amino acids into protein by cell free extracts of HeLa cells provided with an ATP generating system and containing ribosomes, soluble enzymes and cofactors.

We may conclude that while some progress has been made toward the elucidation of the mode of action of diphtheria toxin at the molecular level much remains to be learned.

theria would be 100 per cent. Since 1 unit of antitoxin will neutralize (in the test tube) about 30 M L D it might appear that from 100 to 1 000 units would be more than adequate to obtain the desired effect. However since it is known from experiments such as those mentioned above that within limits increasing the antitoxin will save life even after contact of the toxin with the tissue there is a reasonable basis for the current practice of treating diphtheria with relatively large doses of serum. The objective should be to counteract as much as possible of the injury already done and to prevent further absorption of toxin. Antitoxin is eliminated slowly so that a large single dose raising the blood level as high as possible will assure the maximum immediate therapeutic effect and provide a level in the blood for many days which will be adequate to cope with further toxin as it is absorbed slowly from the local process in the throat.

Various figures for the recommended unit age of antitoxin are to be found in the literature. Perhaps one may state the general average as suggesting 100 units per pound body weight in mild cases up to 5 times that amount in the severe forms as adequate therapy. It should be administered in a single dose intravenously except in the very mild case where intramuscular injection is satisfactory. Of course skin tests for sensitivity to the protein of the antitoxin preparation must be carried out and where necessary desensitization must be undertaken.

While the diphtheria bacillus is highly sensitive to the action of penicillin and other antibiotics chemotherapy is probably of little therapeutic value provided that antitoxin has been administered. Once the patient has received antitoxin production of additional toxin by the organisms can probably do no further harm. However it is possible that early administration of antibiotics might shorten the duration of the carrier state that almost invariably follows recovery from clinical diphtheria.

#### THE DIPHTHERIA CARRIER

Patients convalescing from diphtheria continue to harbor the organisms in the nose or the throat for a variable length of time following recovery. The accompanying table

TABLE 3 PERCENTAGE OF CLINICAL CASES CARRYING DIPHTHERIA BACILLI DURING WEEKS OF CONVALESCENCE

WEEK OF CONVALESCENCE	NOSE OR NOSE AND THROAT (1 240 CASES)	THROAT (1 726 CASES)
0	100	100
2	76.0	50.1
3	63.1	35.3
4	48.3	20.6
5	24.6	7.6
8	12.6	2.6
10	4.8	0.7

modified from Russell (1943) shows that diphtheria bacilli can be isolated from the nose or from the nose and the throat in nearly 50 per cent of the cases during the 4th week of convalescence and that the bacilli are still present in a significant proportion during the 10th week. The table suggests that an appreciable number of carriers will be missed if only throat cultures are tested for diphtheria bacilli.

The treatment and the disposition of these chronic carriers becomes then a most troublesome problem both scientifically and administratively and one for which no satisfactory solution has been found. In many communities the health regulations require a continuation of quarantine of the individual until negative throat cultures are obtained on 3 consecutive days as a result considerable hardship is suffered by the patient and the hospital also may find itself in a difficult situation. Experience has shown that surgical correction of nose and throat abnormalities tonsillectomy etc. will result in some instances in clearing up the condition. At present evidence is accumulating that combined treatment of the case with antitoxin and penicillin in which the administration of the latter is continued for a time into convalescence leads to a much more rapid disappearance of positive cultures than was formerly true. Opposed to this is the fact that some observers find diphtheria bacilli reappearing in the throat within a few days after interrupting the penicillin therapy. It is therefore still premature to assume that a permanent cure for the convalescent carrier problem has been achieved.



TABLE 2

ANTITOXIN GIVEN ON	CASES	CASE FATALITY
1st day of disease	225	0
2nd day of disease	1 441	4 2
3rd day of disease	1 600	11 1
4th day of disease	1 276	17 3
5th day of disease and upward	1 645	18 7

dition under normal circumstances and in temperate climates

It is well recognized that some strains of *C. diphtheriae* are capable of causing a more severe disease in man than are other strains. In the most severe form of the disease the bacteria presumably produce a relatively large amount of toxin within a short time and death may occur within 24 to 48 hours after the onset of symptoms.

#### TREATMENT

Since diphtheria is essentially a toxemia with very little invasion of the tissues by the organisms themselves it appears that prompt recovery should follow administration of the specifically neutralizing antitoxin. Unfortunately the problem is not quite so simple. Diphtheria toxin in the test tube it is true, is neutralized promptly completely and multiple for multiple by antitoxin. Although it can be shown that the toxin is not actually destroyed the union is a relatively firm one and dissociation apparently does not occur to a significant degree if the complex is injected into the animal body. However free toxin injected into the circulation is rapidly taken up by body cells and can no longer be neutralized by antitoxin. The train of events which the toxin is capable of initiating continues even in the presence of a considerable excess of antitoxin in the circulation. Thus if a series of animals be injected with similar quantities of diphtheria toxin the animals being divided into groups and varying amounts of antitoxin administered immediately to one group after 5 minutes to a second group and so on it is found that the amount of antitoxin necessary to save life increases very rapidly with the time interval. The following tabulation cited by Zinsser

*et al* (1939) shows the amounts of antitoxin necessary to prevent death in rabbits at various intervals after the administration of 10 fatal doses of toxin. It is evident that after a delay of 90 minutes no amount of antitoxin will save the animals.

Given after 10 minutes	5 units antitoxin
Given after 20 minutes	200 units antitoxin
Given after 30 minutes	2 000 units antitoxin
Given after 45 minutes	4 000 units antitoxin
Given after 60 minutes	5,000 units antitoxin
Given after 90 minutes	No amount

Observations of a very similar nature were made by Strauss and Hendee (1959) on HeLa cells growing in tissue culture. After addition of toxin to the culture antitoxin is capable of reversing or preventing its action only if added within 30 to 60 minutes.

The immediate fate of injected toxin which soon renders it unavailable for neutralization by antitoxin is not clearly understood. Whatever the explanation the fact itself supplies the guiding principle which must be applied in antitoxin therapy. *Treatment must be prompt and adequate.*

The physician seeing a patient whose throat suggests the reasonable probability of diphtheritic infection should send a culture to the laboratory but should administer antitoxin at once. The laboratory report will later confirm or refute the diagnosis but far less damage will be done by the administration of an occasional unnecessary dose of antitoxin than by delay in its use when it is required. The following tabulation of fatality according to the day of the disease on which antitoxin was administered is quoted by Russell (1943).

It is important that no chemotherapy be administered before taking the culture. Failure to observe this precaution may lead to false negative results or prolonged delay in growth of the organisms.

No definite rules can be laid down for the amount of antitoxin required for adequate therapy. The actual amount of toxin which has gained entrance to the tissues on the 1st or the 2nd day of the disease is frequently less than a human lethal dose and probably could be expressed in terms of a relatively few guinea pig minimal lethal doses. Were this not so the mortality in untreated diph

to add to the immunization program two or more recall or booster injections in later years in order to avoid future difficulty

The importance of recall injections of toxin was clearly demonstrated during World War II. Prior to the war mass immunization against diphtheria had not been introduced into Germany and the carrier rate remained high. In Holland on the other hand artificial immunization of infants had been practiced on a large scale for a number of years. Within a year following the German occupation the incidence of diphtheria among the Dutch population as a whole rose 80 fold despite the fact that the diphtheria rate in children under 4 years of age continued to decline. A similar increased age incidence of diphtheria has occurred in all other countries where mass immunization of children has been introduced.

It is evident from the above discussion that within a population in which diphtheria is prevalent it is incorrect to think of the existence of two simple groups the susceptible and the immune since the one merges into the other through a series of gradations. Those with no previous contact will constitute one fairly sharp group of high susceptibility whose blood on examination would show no antitoxin. Exactly the same laboratory findings would be manifested by others whose previous contacts with the diphtheria though definite were minimal and by others with more extensive contact who because of lapse of time or personal idiosyncrasy had either lost or failed to produce antitoxin. The majority of individuals would possess measurable amounts of antitoxin i.e. more than 0.001 unit per ml and extending upward possibly to many units especially if artificial immunization had been employed. Clearly then the result of exposure of an individual to infection within such a group would depend on a balance among several factors including at least the virulence of the organism the degree of exposure (size of dose) and most important the immune status of the individual.

During recent years outbreaks of diphtheria have occurred in Denmark and Great Britain among immunized populations. The studies of Ipsen (1946) and of Edward and Allison (1951) demonstrated that on the

1st or the 2nd day of disease a number of cases showed serum antitoxin levels well above 0.01 to 0.03 units per ml. This level has generally been assumed to give complete protection from the toxic manifestations of the infection. The disease in immunized persons is usually mild and differs clinically from diphtheria in the completely susceptible individual in that there is less edema associated with the local lesion other effects attributable to toxin such as myocarditis and late paralysis do not occur. Serum taken several weeks after recovery showed in almost every instance a striking increase in antitoxin titer. Edward and Allison reported that nontoxigenic strains of *C. diphtheriae* are capable of causing a similar disease but that in this case no rise in serum antitoxin level occurs. Similar observations have been made in this country by Frobisher *et al.* (1947).

#### THE SCHICK TEST

In 1913 Schick described a test based on the fact that when a minute amount of diphtheria toxin is introduced intradermally it exerts a local destructive or necrotic effect on the cells of the skin and the underlying tissue. If the blood passing through the tissue contains antitoxin it will neutralize the toxin and no injury will occur otherwise a visible reaction develops over a period of days the extent and the severity of which parallel the amount of toxin injected. Some individuals (usually immune) may show delayed inflammatory reactions to diphtheria toxin itself to other materials present in toxic filtrates or to peptones used to stabilize the diluted toxin. Because these allergic reactions may be confused with reactions due to the primary toxicity of the toxic protein it is customary to include a control in carrying out the Schick test. Until recently this control consisted of crude toxin heated to 65°C for 15 minutes a procedure said to destroy the toxic component without affecting the immunologic reactivity of other proteins concerned in producing the allergic reaction. Since it has been shown that even highly purified toxin is capable of eliciting allergic reactions in certain immune individuals (Pappenheimer 1958) toxoid would seem to be more suitable for use as a control than heated toxin. The following Schick test materials have

It is clear that circulating antitoxin does not prevent the establishment of the carrier state. While avirulent *nontoxinogenic* bacilli have been isolated from the throats of susceptible (Schick positive) persons, the serum of healthy carriers of *toxinogenic* strains has been shown invariably to contain an appreciable titer of antitoxin. During the 1920's the carrier rate for diphtheria bacilli in a large city such as London was estimated to be from 2 to 5 per cent and in institutions the rate was often found to be even higher (Russell 1943). It was predicted that with the advent of widespread immunization the carrier rate would rise still further. Actually the reverse occurred and the almost universal immunization of urban children with toxoid has been accompanied by almost complete disappearance of the diphtheria bacillus and of the carrier state.

#### IMMUNITY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

In its basic features immunity to diphtheria is probably the simplest concept in the whole field of the study of specific resistance to disease. Unfortunately in certain details of theory as well as of application difficulties are encountered.

Before World War I and before the present practice of universal immunization of children with toxoid became established surveys showed that a high proportion of the population especially in the larger cities had acquired an immunity to diphtheria by natural means. Their blood serum contained readily demonstrable circulating antitoxin. Indeed, Schick's first survey of Viennese children in 1913 showed that 93 per cent of them were immune at birth. He found that the proportion of children with sufficient circulating antitoxin to give a negative skin test with toxin fell to a low of about 37 per cent between the ages of 2 and 5 and then rose again to over 50 per cent of all children between 5 and 15. How was this natural immunity acquired? It has already been mentioned that the carrier rate among urban populations was high in cities where diphtheria was endemic. Therefore the chance that a given individual might avoid contact with a toxinogenic diphtheria bacillus for any prolonged period must have been correspondingly slight. It is probable that brief en-

counters with virulent organisms by children who still possessed some antitoxin derived from the mother by placental transfer were common and provided a primary antigenic stimulus. Even after the mother's antitoxin had disappeared, such 'conditioned' children would show a secondary type of antitoxin response following a later infection. They might suffer a relatively mild form of the disease or even an inapparent infection that would be followed by a measurable antitoxin response. It is quite possible too that completely susceptible individuals may recover from diphtheria following infection with a small dose of a diphtherial strain of relatively low virulence. Thus, before the advent of active immunization diphtheria was primarily a disease of young children and there was a fairly effective level of immunity among older children and the adult population which in crowded areas was maintained by relatively frequent encounters with toxinogenic diphtheria bacilli through exposures to cases of the disease and to healthy carriers.

With the introduction of universal artificial immunization the situation changed. A primary immunization of infants with 2 or 3 injections of toxoid will quickly induce the formation of a protective level of antitoxin. This antitoxin will persist for a variable period depending on factors in the child which cannot yet be defined. Duration of the immunity may be only a few months but in most instances it will be a few years. In the absence of further artificial stimulus to immunity natural factors again become operative and the immunity may be expected to continue if diphtheria bacilli are abundantly present in the environment. However when the number of cases of diphtheria in the community becomes sharply reduced through immunization the dissemination of toxinogenic organisms from case to contacts will cease. There will be a substantial reduction in the prevalence of diphtheria bacilli. Today in many large communities the organisms seem to have disappeared entirely. Hence, the more successful the campaign to stamp out diphtheria the more certain it becomes that a susceptible adult population will develop if one depends on immunization only during infancy. Clearly it is imperative

of children against diphtheria with highly purified toxoid has now become almost universal practice in this country. The purified toxoid is usually injected as an alum precipitate or adsorbed on aluminum phosphate gel as adjuvant. Purified toxoid combined with tetanus toxoid and pertussis vaccine is commonly administered to infants and young children.

Toxoid is prepared by treating a sterile toxic filtrate of the diphtheria bacillus with 0.3 to 0.5 per cent formalin. The formalinized toxin is incubated at 37°C and maintained at slightly alkaline pH (about pH 8) until all traces of toxicity have disappeared. Then the toxoid protein is purified by alcohol fractionation at low temperatures or by ammonium sulfate fractionation followed by dialysis. The final product, either alum precipitated or adsorbed on aluminum phosphate gel, is diluted so as to contain 10 to 20 Lf per immunizing dose of 0.5 or 1.0 ml and 1:10,000 merthiolate is added as preservative. Two doses given 1 month apart are usually adequate for primary immunization, followed by a booster dose 1 year later.

As a result of the almost universal immunization of children with toxoid, diphtheria has become an uncommon disease in almost every civilized country throughout the world. Active immunization of infants with diphtheria toxoid combined with tetanus toxoid and pertussis vaccine should be done at the age of a few months.

A first booster dose of triple antigen should be administered 1 year after the primary immunization and a second booster dose of diphtheria and tetanus toxoid combined should be given at school age. These immunizations should be universal and no Schick testing need be done. They should result in a reasonably immune population up to adolescence. In older children and adults the situation becomes more complex because hypersensitivity reactions to diphtheria toxoid and/or other diphtherial proteins occur in an increasing proportion of the population. The frequency of undesirable reactions to diphtheria toxoid increases with age and is greatest in those communities where diphtheria is prevalent and the carrier rate is high. While reactions to toxoid among older children and adults are probably never fatal they may be sufficiently intense to prevent

any wholesale immunization of the adult population. The reactions are usually of the delayed tuberculin type and may vary in severity from local tenderness and swelling at the injection site to severe generalized illness with fever and complete incapacitation lasting for several days (Pappenheimer *et al* 1950). Reactions of the immediate anaphylactic type are extremely rare, although 1 or 2 such cases have been reported in the literature (Kuhns and Pappenheimer 1952).

It is probably best to handle immunization of adults with diphtheria toxoid on an individual basis wherever possible and to carry out preliminary screening by means of the Schick test. Individuals reacting to the Schick control toxoid should not be immunized further. Experience has shown that such individuals respond to the test itself with a rapid and relatively high antitoxin response. In large adult groups, such as in military personnel where Schick testing is not feasible, the current practice in this country and in Canada is to immunize with tetanus toxoid containing a small amount of diphtheria toxoid (0.5 to 1 Lf per immunizing dose). The small amount of diphtheria toxoid is insufficient to produce severe reactions except in a very few highly sensitive individuals but is sufficient to induce antitoxin production in all but a minor proportion of the population.

#### DIPHTHERIA ANTITOXIN

Treatment of diphtheria with antitoxin is still the only specific therapy available. Antitoxin is generally produced by immunization of horses with toxoid incorporated in adjuvant. Once a horse has developed a sufficiently high antitoxin titer (generally 1,000 units or more per ml serum), bleedings are taken and the antitoxic plasma or serum is fractionated with ammonium sulfate and by dialysis to remove serum albumin and water-soluble globulins. Horse antitoxin is generally found in the fast-moving gamma 1 (or T fraction) of the water-soluble or pseudo-globulin fraction. Further purification and at least partial despeciation is achieved by digestion with pepsin (Pope 1939). The peptic digestion not only causes a decrease in species specificity (Levine *et al* 1952) but also causes a splitting in half of the antitoxin molecule (Peterman and Pappenheimer 1941).

been used in recent years by the Massachusetts Department of Health

1 Highly purified diphtheria toxin so diluted in buffered human serum albumin that 1/50 MLD is contained in 0.1 ml of the solution

2 Highly purified diphtheria toxoid diluted in the same diluent so as to contain 0.01 Lf toxoid in 0.1 ml

By using purified materials in the Schick test the number of persons showing allergic reactions is reduced and restricted almost entirely to the immune fraction of the population. Because both toxin and toxoid in dilute solution are highly sensitive to surface denaturation it is necessary to add a stabilizing agent to the diluent. Human serum albumin is now used for this purpose since the commercial peptones employed in the past as stabilizing agents not infrequently gave rise to severe local and even general allergic reactions in certain sensitive individuals.

The test is carried out by a careful intradermal injection of exactly 0.1 ml Schick toxin into the flexor surface of the forearm. A similar injection of the toxoid control is made in the opposite forearm. The injected areas should be inspected at 24 or 48 hours and again between the 4th and the 7th days. The following types of reaction can be distinguished:

**Positive.** At the site of toxin injection an area of redness begins to appear at about 24 hours and becomes progressively more pronounced until it reaches a maximum in about a week. At this time it covers an area up to 3 cm. or somewhat more in diameter and may show moderate swelling and slight tenderness. There is usually a smaller more deeply colored central area 1.0 to 1.5 cm. in diameter dark red in color which a few days later turns brown and eventually desquamates sometimes leaving a slightly pigmented surface which may persist for some time. The control arm remains completely negative throughout. Such a positive test indicates very little or no circulating antitoxin and probable susceptibility to diphtheria.

**Negative.** Both arms remain without reaction of any sort. Antitoxin is present in reasonable amount sufficient to supply immunity to an ordinary exposure to diphtheria. Observations indicate that this level is between  $\frac{1}{50}$  and  $\frac{1}{100}$  of a unit per ml.

**Pseudoreaction.** Inflammatory reactions appear within 12 to 18 hours at the sites of injection of both Schick toxin and control. The reactions reach a maximum within 48 hours (occasionally as late as 72 hours) and then fade in contrast with a true positive Schick reaction which persists for many days. Individuals who show pseudoreactions are almost invariably immune to diphtheria but are hypersensitive to toxin (and toxoid) or other associated substances present in the solution. Almost without exception pseudoreactors show a booster type antitoxin response due to the antigenic stimulation of the Schick test itself.

**Combined Reaction.** Commencing like the pseudoreaction delayed reactions develop on both arms. After the allergic inflammation has subsided the reaction at the toxin site persists as a positive reaction. True combined reactions are seldom observed when purified Schick materials are used in the test. They indicate a delayed sensitivity to either toxin or protein impurities present in the preparations and that circulating antitoxin is either absent or present in very low titer. Such individuals almost invariably respond to the Schick test by antitoxin formation and prove to be negative or pseudoreactors on retest. Combined reactions are observed more frequently when commercial peptones are present in the diluent and when crude culture filtrates are used to prepare the test materials.

The pseudoreactions observed in the Schick test are of the delayed tuberculin type of inflammatory reaction and are probably the result of previous infections usually inapparent with the diphtheria bacillus. Delayed reactions to Schick test materials are seldom observed in young children; their frequency increases with age and is highest among populations that have not been actively immunized and where diphtheria is prevalent.

#### ARTIFICIAL IMMUNIZATION

When diphtheria toxin is treated with dilute formalin under suitable conditions its toxicity is lost. The detoxified protein is called *toxoid*. Toxoid retains all of the immunologic specificity of toxin; its injection into animals and man gives rise to the formation of diphtheria antitoxin. Immunization

other than *C. diphtheriae* itself have rarely been implicated in human disease a number of them may cause disease in animals Of the latter *C. ovis* is perhaps the most interesting This strain has been shown to cause severe suppurative lesions in sheep horses and cattle a disease known as pseudotuberculosis Morphologically *C. ovis* is a pleomorphic bacillus with metachromatic staining resembling the diphtheria bacillus Colonies are frequently yellow in color Carne (1941) has shown that *C. ovis* produces a potent toxin that is antigenically distinct from diphtheria toxin

For the bacteriologist concerned primarily with human disease corynebacteria other than *C. diphtheriae* are important chiefly to the extent that they may confuse the diagnosis of diphtheria

#### C. HOFMANNII

This organism is often found in the throat either healthy or diseased where it lives as a harmless saprophyte It grows readily on the usual laboratory media including Loeffler's medium and tellurite agar Because of the frequency with which it occurs it is the most troublesome of the diphtheroids in connection with the diagnosis of diphtheria As seen in stained smears the Hofmann bacillus is usually somewhat shorter and more plump than *C. diphtheriae* and exhibits a tendency to bipolar staining without the appearance of metachromatic granules The trained observer usually recognizes it without difficulty but assurance comes only with extensive experience On the tellurite plate colonies of *C. hofmannii* may resemble closely those of *mutis* strains of the diphtheria bacillus Here also experience aids in differentiation the saprophyte often forming a colony with a rather wide grayish or white margin and a dark central portion whereas the pathogen tends to produce a more uniformly dark or black colony Since there are known to be various serologic types of Hofmann as well as atypical varieties of the diphtheria bacillus it follows that complete certainty must depend on the isolation of the strain and examination of its fermentative properties and its toxigenicity *C. hofmannii* fails to ferment glucose and of course lacks the ability to form toxin.

#### C. XEROSIS

Isolated originally from cases of xerosis conjunctivae this organism was shortly found to be present in many normal conjunctivae and probably is without pathologic significance It is occasionally present in the throat though much less commonly than the Hofmann bacillus Morphologically it is probably indistinguishable from *C. diphtheriae* Its growth on artificial media tends to be less vigorous than that of the diphtheria bacillus and the colonies on tellurite plates are somewhat smaller than those of either the *mutis* or the *gravis* strains but larger than those of *intermedius* diphtheria Here again in case of doubt one must resort to isolation fermentation and virulence tests

For a description of other varieties of corynebacteria from both human and animal sources the reader should consult one of the larger handbooks of medical and veterinary bacteriology

#### REFERENCES

- Anderson J S Haggold F C McLeod J W and Thomson J G 1931 On the existence of two forms of diphtheria bacillus—*B. diphtheriae gravis* and *B. diphtheriae mutis*—and a new medium for their differentiation and the bacteriological diagnosis of diphtheria *J Path Bact* 34 667 681
- Barksdale W L Li K Cummins S C and Harris II 1957 The mutation of *C. pyogenes* to *C. hemolyticum* *J Gen Microbiol* 16 749 758
- Barksdale W L and Pappenheimer A M Jr 1954 Phage host relationships in non-toxicogenic and toxigenic diphtheria bacilli *J Bact* 67 220 231
- von Behring E 1913 Ueber ein neues Diphtherie-Schutzmittel *Deutsch med Wschr* 39 873 876
- Burnet F M 1962 The Natural History of Infectious Disease ed 3 New York Cambridge Univ Press
- Carne H R 1941 The toxin of *C. ovis* *J Path Bact* 51 199 212
- Caulfield E 1939 A true history of the terrible epidemic vulgarly called The Throat Distemper which occurred in His Majesty's New England colonies between 1735 and 1740 *Yale J Biol Med* 11 219 272 277 335
- Cohen S and Mueller J H 1940 Oleic acid

TABLE 4

UNIT OF ACTIVITY	APPROXIMATE MICROGRAMS SPECIFIC PROTEIN PER UNIT
1 unit antitoxin (horse)	10
1 unit antitoxin (horse pepsin treated)	5
1 unit antitoxin (human)	15
1 Lf toxin or toxoid	2.5
1 Minimum lethal dose (M L D) toxin	0.005
1 Schick test dose toxin	0.001

#### ASSAY OF DIPHTHERIA TOXIN TOXOID AND ANTITOXIN

Precise methods for the assay of diphtheria toxin and antitoxin were worked out initially by Paul Ehrlich. They furnished a basis for the development of general immunochemical methods for assay of biologically active antigens and their corresponding antibodies in terms of relative combining units. Within certain limits and with certain qualifications (Maaloe and Jerne 1952) the specific activities of both pure diphtheria toxin and antitoxin have been determined so that relative units can now be translated directly into absolute quantities.

Ehrlich early recognized the advantage of using antitoxin rather than toxin as a reference standard because of the former's greater stability. By assigning arbitrary units to his reference standard, Ehrlich was able to measure the unit potency of other antitoxins by determining their capacity to neutralize a given amount of toxin relative to the standard. In 1922 an international standard diphtheria antitoxin was set up and has been maintained at the State Serum Institute in Copenhagen, Denmark, which periodically distributes samples to control laboratories throughout the world for checking their own standards.

A few of the methods for estimating the potency of an unknown antitoxin are outlined briefly below. By using antitoxins of known unitage the same methods can be modified for determining the specific combining power of diphtheria toxin preparations.

1 By definition one unit of antitoxin

when mixed with a quantity of diphtheria toxin called an L + dose (L = limes or threshold) and injected subcutaneously into a 250 Gm guinea pig will cause death of the animal within 4 to 5 days. The L + dose of a given toxin is determined against a standard antitoxin and then is mixed with dilutions of the unknown serum and injected into guinea pigs.

2 The ability of the unknown serum to neutralize a given toxic preparation may be compared with that of an antitoxin of known potency by titration in the skin of rabbits or guinea pigs (see Fraser, 1931 for details). Provided that one is dealing with antitoxins of high avidity (Maaloe and Jerne 1952) the antitoxin content of an unknown serum can be estimated with an accuracy of  $\pm 10$  per cent or better by rabbit intracutaneous test. The method is one of the most sensitive known for determining antibody and as little as 0.001 unit (Ca 0.01 mcg antitoxin protein) can be detected.

3 The Ramon flocculation reaction provides an *in vitro* method for determining the potency of an unknown serum provided that sufficient flocculating antitoxin is present. This method is essentially an optimal proportions precipitin test. It has been found that when increasing amounts of antitoxin are added to a constant amount of toxin the most rapidly flocculating mixture usually contains an amount of antitoxin just sufficient to combine with and neutralize the toxin. When a flocculating antitoxin of known unitage is employed the method can also be used to determine the combining power of either toxin or toxoid in Lf units. The flocculation reaction, although accurate, is considerably less sensitive than the *in vivo* methods. By determining the amount of specifically precipitable protein in the Ramon flocculation test and from the specific activities of highly purified toxin and toxoid the amount of specifically active protein contained in the various units can be estimated and are summarized in Table 4.

#### OTHER CORYNEBACTERIA

The corynebacteria are widely distributed in nature and the natural habitat of many strains appears to be the soil. While strains

- nosis of diphtheria *J Bact* 51 734 750
- Pappenheimer A M Jr 1955 *Mechanisms of Microbial Pathogenicity* pp 40 53 New York Cambridge Univ Press
- 1958 The Schick test 1913 1958 *Int Arch Allerg* 12 35-41
- Pappenheimer A M Jr Howland J L and Miller P A 1962 Electron transport systems in *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* *Biochim biophys acta* 64 229 242
- Pappenheimer A M Jr and Johnson S J 1936 Studies in diphtheria toxin production I The effect of iron and copper *Brit J Exp Path* 17 335 341
- Pappenheimer A M Jr Miller P A and Yoneda M 1962 Kinetics of diphtheria toxin formation *J Gen Microbiol* 28 531 539
- Pappenheimer A M Jr and Williams C M 1952 The effects of diphtheria toxin on the cecropia silkworm *J Gen Physiol* 35 727 740
- Park W H 1922 Toxin antitoxin immunization against diphtheria *JAMA* 79 1584 1591
- Peterman M L and Pappenheimer A M Jr 1941 The ultracentrifugal analysis of diphtherial proteins *J Phys Chem* 45 19
- Pinchot G H and Bloom W L 1950 Alterations in the level of muscle phosphocreatine of guinea pigs produced by the injection of diphtheria toxin *J Biol Chem* 184 9
- Pope C G 1939 The action of proteolytic enzymes on the antitoxins and proteins in immune sera II Heat denaturation after partial enzyme action *Brit J Exp Path* 20 201 212
- Pope C G and Stevens M F 1958 The purification of diphtheria toxin and the isolation of crystalline toxin protein *Brit J Exp Path* 39 139 149
- Ramon G 1923 Sur le pouvoir flocculant et sur les propriétés immunisantes d'une toxine diphtherique rendue anatoxique (anatoxine) *Compt rend acad sci* 117 1338 1340
- Roux E and Yersin A 1888 Contribution à l'étude de la diphthérie *Ann Inst Pasteur* 2 629 661
- Russell W T 1943 The epidemiology of diphtheria during the last forty years *Med Res Counc Spec Rep* (London) No 247
- Schick B 1913 Die Diphtherietoxin Hautreaktion des Menschen als Vorprobe der prophylaktischen Diphtherieheilseruminjektion *München med Wschr* 60 2608 2610
- Smith T 1909 Active immunity produced by so-called balanced or neutral mixtures of diphtheria toxin and antitoxin *J Exp Med* 11 241 256
- Strauss N and Hendee E D 1959 The effect of diphtheria toxin on the metabolism of HeLa cells *J Exp Med* 109 145 163
- Wilson G S and Miles A A 1955a in Topley and Wilson *Principles of Bacteriology and Immunity* ed 4 p 536 Baltimore Williams & Wilkins
- 1955b *ibid* p 1564
- Zinsser H Enders J F and Fothergill L D 1939 *Immunity Principles and Applications in Medicine and Public Health* New York Macmillan p 504



- in colony development of *C diphtheriae* Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 45 244 245
- Collier R J and Pappenheimer A M Jr 1964 Studies on the mode of action of diphtheria toxin I Phosphorylated intermediates in normal and intoxicated HeLa cells II Effect of toxin on amino acid incorporation in cell free systems J Exp Med 120 1007 1018 1018 1039
- Drew R M and Mueller J H 1951 A chemically defined medium suitable for the production of high titer diphtherial toxin J Bact 62 549 559
- Ebel J P 1952 Recherches sur les polyphosphates contenus dans diverses cellules vivantes III Recherche et dosage des polyphosphates dans les cellules de divers microorganismes et animaux supérieurs Bull soc chim biol 34 491-497
- Edward D G and Allison V D 1951 Diphtheria in immunized persons with observations on a diphtheria like disease associated with non toxigenic *C diphtheriae* J Hyg 49 205 219
- Ehrlich P 1957 Assay of the activity of diphtheria curative serum and its theoretical basis in Collected Works vol 2 New York Pergamon Press
- Flek S D 1948 The recognition of toxigenic bacterial strains in vitro Brit Med J 1 493 496
- Fraser D T 1931 The technic of a method for quantitative determination of diphtheria antitoxin by a skin test in rabbits Tr Roy Soc Canad Sec No 5 25 175
- Freeman V J 1951 Studies on the virulence of bacteriophage infected strains of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* J Bact 61 675 688
- Frobisher M, Jr 1940 Strains of *C diphtheriae* in various parts of the United States Am J Pub Health 30 No 3 suppl 28 35
- Frobisher M, Parson E I and Updyke E 1947 The correlation of laboratory and clinical evidence of virulence of *C diphtheriae* Am J Pub Health 37 543 548
- Gablits J and Solotorofsky M 1962 Cell culture reactivity to diphtheria staphylococcal tetanus and *Escherichia coli* toxins J Immun 88 505 512
- Grasset E and Zontendyk A 1931 Immunological studies in reptiles and their relation to aspects of immunity in higher animals Pub S Afr Inst Med Res 4 377
- Groman N B 1953 Evidence for the induced nature of the change from non toxigenicity to toxigenicity as a result of exposure to specific bacteriophage J Bact 66 184 191
- 1955 Evidence for the active role of bacteriophage in the conversion of non toxigenic *C diphtheriae* to toxin production J Bact 69 9 15
- Groman N B, Eaton M and Booher Z K 1958 Studies of mono and polylysogenic *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* J Bact 75 320 325
- Hermann G J, Moore M S and Parsons E I 1958 A substitute for serum in the diphtheria *in vitro* toxigenicity test Am J Clin Path 29 181 183
- Ipsen J 1946 Circulating antitoxin at the onset of diphtheria in 425 patients J Immunol 54 325 347
- Klebs E 1883 Ueber Diphtherie Verh Cong inn Med 2 139 154
- Kuhns W J and Pappenheimer A M Jr 1952 Relationship of skin sensitivity to purified diphtheria toxoid to the presence of circulating non precipitating antitoxin J Exp Med 95 363 374
- Lennox E S and Kaplan A S 1957 Action of diphtheria toxin on cells cultivated *in vitro* Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 95 700 702
- Levine L, Wyman L, Chen B L and Murphy J 1952 The quantitative determination of the extent of despeciation of modified equine antitoxin J Immunol 69 627 637
- Linggood F V, Matthews A C, Pinfield S, Pope C G and Sharland T R 1955 Production of diphtheria toxin in submerged culture Nature 176 1128
- Liu P V 1961 A modification of Elek's technic to be performed on microscope slides Am J Clin Path 36 471-473
- Loeffler F 1884 Untersuchungen über die Bedeutung der Mikroorganismen für die Entstehung der Diphtherie beim Menschen bei der Taube und beim kalbe Mitt klin Gesdtsamte (Berlin) 2 421 499
- McLeod J W 1943 The types mitis inter medius and gravis of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* Bact Rev 7 1-41
- Maaloe O and Jerne N K 1952 The standardization of immunological substances Ann Rev Microbiol 6 349 366
- Mueller J H 1940 Nutrition of the diphtheria bacillus Bact Rev 4 97 134
- Mueller J H and Miller M A 1940 Production of high potency diphtheria toxin (100 Lf) on a reproducible medium J Immun 40 21 32
- 1946 A new tellurite plating medium and some comments on the laboratory diag

tions for 24 hours in aqueous alkaline methylene blue solutions Ehrlich in 1882 showed that the tubercle bacilli can be stained with basic dyes in the presence of aniline oil and remain stained after treatment with strong nitric acid which decolorizes other microorganisms. The acid fast staining method in common use today was developed by Ziehl in 1882 and subsequently slightly modified by Neelsen. More recently it has been found possible to stain with basic fuchsin without heating the specimen by incorporating various surfactants in the staining mixture (Aubert 1950).

In animal lesions tubercle bacilli occur as rod shaped microorganisms. On artificial cultivation they vary from coccoid to long filamentous forms depending on the type (bovine human avian etc.) the particular strain, the age of the culture and environmental conditions. The typical rods are straight or somewhat bent with parallel sides and rounded ends. In the animal body they vary in length from 1 to 4 microns and from 0.3 to 0.6 micron in diameter. No definite capsule has been demonstrated either in susceptible hosts or in culture media.

Ethanol containing 3 per cent hydrochloric acid (acid alcohol) will decolorize all rod forms of other bacteria within a few minutes but pathogenic mycobacteria including the tubercle bacilli will resist this treatment for many hours. Young cells are somewhat less acid fast than older cells until autolysis occurs. The acid fastness of tubercle bacilli is dependent not only on their chemical constitution but also on the integrity of their cellular structure since physical trauma is sufficient to render them non acid fast and readily stainable by an aniline dye (Yegian and Vanderlinde 1947).

Many nonpathogenic mycobacteria are less acid fast than tubercle bacilli but are nevertheless difficult to decolorize with alcohol alone therefore they are more properly designated as alcohol fast.

Mycobacteria cannot be classified as gram positive or gram negative by the Gram staining technic because once they have been stained by basic dyes they cannot be decolorized by alcohol regardless of whether or not they have been treated with iodine.

It has been claimed that tubercle bacilli have a life cycle including a very small viable granular form which can pass through ordinary bacteriologic filters. These claims are as yet unsubstantiated.

### CULTIVATION

The mycobacteria are strictly aerobic. They can use for growth a multiplicity of simple carbon compounds as source of energy and ammonia or amino acids as source of nitrogen. As yet there is no evidence that they require any of the known vitamins as essential growth factors except biotin under certain circumstances (Schaefer et al 1955) and mycobactin for *M. paratuberculosis* (Francis et al 1953). They need CO<sub>2</sub> for initiation of growth, some strains requiring for optimal growth concentrations higher than is available in ordinary air especially on media of acid reaction (Cohn et al 1960). The culturable mycobacteria grow most rapidly between pH 6.0 and 8.0 with an optimum around 6.5 to 6.8 for the pathogenic types. They exhibit wide variation in optimal temperature for growth but strains pathogenic for warm blooded animals with two prominent exceptions (see *Mycobacterium ulcerans* and *balnei*) multiply most rapidly between 35°C and 40°C. *M. avium* being especially tolerant of higher temperatures consistent with the higher body temperature of their natural hosts.

Growth of most mycobacteria is slow compared with that of common bacterial species most strikingly so in the case of the human, the bovine and the murine types of tubercle bacilli. The fastest reported division rate in artificial media corresponds to approximately 18 hours. Growth of avian and certain atypical strains of pathogenic tubercle bacilli is more rapid particularly in media containing adequate amounts of fatty acids or fatty acid esters.

Three different types of media are in general use for the cultivation of tubercle bacilli. Simple synthetic media containing an abundant supply of minerals, some simple source of nitrogen such as ammonia, glutamate or asparagine and glucose or glycerine are capable of supporting the synthesis of large amounts of bacterial protoplasm.

## 21

## The Mycobacteria

The mycobacteria are classified as a genus (*Mycobacterium*) of the family *Mycobacteriaceae* of the order *Actinomycetales*. All mycobacteria which have been intimately associated with disease of man or animals exhibiting intracellular parasitism, are stained with dyes only with difficulty and once stained resist decolorization by strong mineral acids. Thus they are strongly acid fast. The pathogenic mycobacteria include the tubercle bacilli: human type (*Mycobacterium tuberculosis* var *hominis*), bovine type (*M. bovis*) and avian type (*M. avium*), Hansen's bacilli (*M. leprae*), John's bacilli (*M. paratuberculosis*), *M. ulcerans*, *M. balnei*, *M. kansasii*, *M. fortuitum* and

Battley and other strains of nonchromogenic and scotochromogenic mycobacteria which are not yet formally classified. There are many species of nonpathogenic mycobacteria for example the smegma bacilli (*Mycobacterium smegmatis*) found on man, the timothy bacilli (*Mycobacterium phlei*), the butter bacilli (*Mycobacterium butyricum*) and many others found in the soil (for review of taxonomic relationships see Gordon and Smith 1953). The property of acid fastness is also possessed but only to a moderate extent by a number of types of pathogenic nocardia and by certain bacterial spores.

The pathogenic mycobacteria cause chronic diseases with lesions of the infectious granuloma type. The fully developed lesions of tuberculosis, leprosy and John's

disease have in common certain histologic characteristics: collections of epithelioid and giant cells are conspicuous but the type of necrosis called caseation occurs only in tuberculosis.

## MYCOBACTERIUM TUBERCULOSIS

## HISTORY

The tubercle bacilli cause such a wide variety of lesions and clinical symptoms in man and animals that before their discovery the pathologist and the clinician were unaware that diseases such as miliary tuberculosis, tuberculous caseous pneumonia, tuberculosis of cervical lymph nodes (scrofula) and lupus vulgaris (tuberculosis of the skin) had a common etiology. Modern knowledge of tuberculosis began with Laennec who in 1819 described some of the prominent macroscopic aspects of tuberculous lesions and recognized the essential unity of early semitransparent tubercle and of the caseous tuberculous lesions. Villemin in 1865, demonstrated that material from the human tuberculous lung could produce tuberculosis in the rabbit; later he transmitted tuberculosis from cattle to rabbits.

The discovery of tubercle bacilli by Robert Koch in 1882 was preceded by the discovery of the leprosy bacilli by G. A. Hansen in 1878. These discoveries were made without knowledge of the acid fast tinctorial properties of these microbes staining being done by immersing the prepara-

tions for 24 hours in aqueous alkaline methylene blue solutions Ehrlich in 1882 showed that the tubercle bacilli can be stained with basic dyes in the presence of aniline oil and remain stained after treatment with strong nitric acid which decolorizes other microorganisms. The acid fast staining method in common use today was developed by Ziehl in 1882 and subsequently slightly modified by Neelsen. More recently it has been found possible to stain with basic fuchsin without heating the specimen by incorporating various surfactants in the staining mixture (Aubert, 1950).

In animal lesions tubercle bacilli occur as rod shaped microorganisms. On artificial cultivation they vary from coccoid to long filamentous forms depending on the type (bovine human avian etc.) the particular strain, the age of the culture and environmental conditions. The typical rods are straight or somewhat bent with parallel sides and rounded ends. In the animal body they vary in length from 1 to 4 microns and from 0.3 to 0.6 micron in diameter. No definitive capsule has been demonstrated either in susceptible hosts or in culture media.

Ethanol containing 3 per cent hydrochloric acid (acid alcohol) will decolorize all rod forms of other bacteria within a few minutes but pathogenic mycobacteria including the tubercle bacilli will resist this treatment for many hours. Young cells are somewhat less acid fast than older cells until autolysis occurs. The acid fastness of tubercle bacilli is dependent not only on their chemical constitution but also on the integrity of their cellular structure since physical trauma is sufficient to render them non acid fast and readily stainable by an aniline dye (Yegian and Vanderlinde 1947).

Many nonpathogenic mycobacteria are less acid fast than tubercle bacilli but are nevertheless difficult to decolorize with alcohol alone therefore they are more properly designated as alcohol fast.

Mycobacteria cannot be classified as gram positive or gram negative by the Gram staining technique because once they have been stained by basic dyes they cannot be decolorized by alcohol regardless of whether or not they have been treated with iodine.

It has been claimed that tubercle bacilli have a life cycle including a very small viable granular form which can pass through ordinary bacteriologic filters. These claims are as yet unsubstantiated.

### CULTIVATION

The mycobacteria are strictly aerobic. They can use for growth a multiplicity of simple carbon compounds as source of energy and ammonia or amino acids as source of nitrogen. As yet there is no evidence that they require any of the known vitamins as essential growth factors except biotin under certain circumstances (Schaefer *et al* 1955) and mycobactin for *M. paratuberculosis* (Francis *et al* 1953). They need CO<sub>2</sub> for initiation of growth, some strains requiring for optimal growth concentrations higher than is available in ordinary air especially on media of acid reaction (Cohn *et al* 1960). The cultivable mycobacteria grow most rapidly between pH 6.0 and 8.0 with an optimum around 6.5 to 6.8 for the pathogenic types. They exhibit wide variation in optimal temperature for growth but strains pathogenic for warm blooded animals with two prominent exceptions (see *Mycobacterium ulcerans* and *baileyi*) multiply most rapidly between 35° C and 40° C. *M. avium* being especially tolerant of higher temperatures consistent with the higher body temperature of their natural hosts.

Growth of most mycobacteria is slow compared with that of common bacterial species most strikingly so in the case of the human, the bovine and the murine types of tubercle bacilli. The fastest reported division rate in artificial media corresponds to approximately 18 hours. Growth of avian and certain atypical strains of pathogenic tubercle bacilli is more rapid particularly in media containing adequate amounts of fatty acids or fatty acid esters.

Three different types of media are in general use for the cultivation of tubercle bacilli. Simple synthetic media containing an abundant supply of minerals some simple source of nitrogen such as ammonia, glutamate or asparagine and glucose or glycerine are capable of supporting the synthesis of large amounts of bacterial protoplasm.

yielding upward of 25 Gm (dry weight) per liter within 3 to 5 weeks of incubation

These results can be obtained only by inoculating such media with billions of cells and providing for intensive aeration for example by violent shaking during incubation. On the other hand growth of small inocula of many strains often of single cells can be obtained in a variety of media containing complex organic materials—animal serum egg yolk potato extract charcoal starch etc. It is this second type of medium which has been used most extensively for diagnosis and for counting single cells. The failure of development of small inocula in the simple synthetic media is due primarily to the presence in the latter of substances which exert an inhibitory effect on growth and exist as impurities in the reagents or on the glassware. Traces of toxic lipids and of other surface active agents are probably the most common offenders. The growth inhibitory effect of many toxic agents particularly of long chain fatty acids can be neutralized by the addition of adequate amounts of animal serum (Youmans 1944) or of the albumin fraction of serum (Dubos and Davis 1946).

Indeed far from being inhibitory certain fatty acids (the C14 to C18 acids) stimulate the growth of many strains of tubercle bacilli in synthetic media to which serum albumin or other fatty acid binding substances have been added. These observations have led to the development of a third better defined type of culture media for pathogenic mycobacteria. They consist of synthetic nutrient mixtures to which are added serum albumin and either certain fatty acids usually oleic or a synthetic nontoxic water soluble ester of one of these fatty acids (Dubos and Middlebrook 1947). In the oleic acid-albumin medium as in the classic media most strains of tubercle bacilli characteristically grow in the form of large clumps, pellicles or heaped masses due to the hydrophobic character of the bacterial surface. The water soluble esters of fatty acids commercially known as the Tweens are capable of wetting the surface of tubercle bacilli and thus allowing them to grow more dispersed in a liquid medium. This manner of growth has found a very useful application in experimental work

whenever dispersed growth of these organisms is desired.

For primary isolation of tubercle bacilli from pathologic materials an oleic acid-albumin medium has been shown to be as effective as the classic complex organic media containing egg yolk, etc (Middlebrook and Cohn 1958). Microscopic examination of the surface of transparent agar oleic acid-albumin medium permits earlier detection of mycobacterial colonies than is possible with the classic complex media and certain other tests such as the catalase test can be applied directly on the colonies.

None of the known biochemical activities of tubercle bacilli is sufficiently characteristic to be useful in defining the group. All degrees of variation exist between the various types. The saprophytic strains of mycobacteria grow well on most media and their growth is in general more rapid; they can often be distinguished by this character alone. Moreover on complex media colonies of most strains of saprophytic mycobacteria manifest more pigmentation in the dark (usually yellow or orange) than the parasitic forms and most important the individual bacilli are less acid fast than are virulent human, bovine and avian tubercle bacilli.

#### RESISTANCE TO PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL AGENTS

Tubercle bacilli are as susceptible to desiccation, heat, radiation and physical agents as other nonsporulating bacteria. However they are sometimes regarded as possessing unusual resistance to antiseptics and chemotherapeutic agents. The fact that many tubercle bacilli survive exposure to acids and alkalis for prolonged periods of time is made use of in the isolation of these organisms from pathologic material. However it must be emphasized that many tubercle bacilli die during this treatment and that on the other hand many other bacterial species, gram positive cocci in particular, can survive and grow unless inhibited by more specific means.

It is probable that the hydrophobic character of the cell wall accounts in part for the resistance of tubercle bacilli to certain toxic agents. It is of interest that Tween 80 in

Fig 1 Photomicrograph of microcolony of strain H37Rv (fully pathogenic) showing serpentine cord formation characteristic of virulent human or bovine tubercle bacilli ( $\times 400$ )



creases their susceptibility to a number of antibacterial agents penicillin for example probably by wetting the bacterial surface (Kirby and Dubos 1947). The resistance of tubercle bacilli to toxic agents has been somewhat exaggerated. Nevertheless in practice they are less affected than other species by ordinary antiseptic agents (mineral acids alkali quaternary ammonium compounds). It is possible to add to culture media used in diagnostic work concentrations of penicillin or of malachite green which do not inhibit the growth of pathogenic mycobacteria but prevent the multiplication of gram positive cocci which have resisted preliminary treatment with alkali acid or quaternary ammonium salts (Hirsch 1954).

Tubercle bacilli can survive for long periods of time in the dried state in sputa and excreta. Disinfection of such materials can be effected by exposure to various anionic detergents.

#### VARIATION AND VIRULENCE

It has long been recognized that cultures of virulent tubercle bacilli may become attenuated during prolonged repeated subcultivation on artificial media. Variation in the gross morphologic appearance of cultures of mammalian tubercle bacilli has also been noted (Oatway and Steenken 1937).

However the unstable and uncontrollable physical and chemical characteristics of the

commonly employed solid egg media led to much confusion in description and terminology of colony morphology.

Virulent strains of human and eugonic\* bovine tubercle bacilli† form microscopic 'serpentine cords' of varying thickness and length consisting of strongly acid fast bacilli oriented in parallel with the long axis of the cords (Fig 1). The formation of cords appears to be an important factor in conditioning the ability of virulent cultures to spread on the surface of liquid and solid media. On the other hand those eugonic variant strains of mammalian tubercle bacilli which fail to form cords growing in a more or less nonoriented fashion are avirulent (Middlebrook *et al* 1947).

Certain strains of tubercle bacilli possess relatively stable characteristics which are intermediate between those of the fully virulent cord forming strains and the completely avirulent non-cord forming variants. Strains of BCG (bacillus of Calmette and Guérin) fall into this group (see Immunization). Furthermore studies (Suter and Dubos 1951 Dubos *et al* 1957) of the relative virulence of colonial variants of 3 different

\* See section on characteristics of the different types of *M. tuberculosis*.

† Nearly all such cultures on primary isolation have uniform high pathogenicity for guinea pigs except cultures from cases of lupus vulgaris (tuberculosis of the skin) and from patients treated with isoniazid which often have diminished pathogenicity.

TABLE 1 CHARACTERISTICS OF CULTURABLE MYCOBACTERIA CAUSING DISEASE IN MAN

SPECIES OF MYCOBACTERIA	COLONY DESCRIPTION	DRUG SUSCEPTIBILITY OR RESISTANCE										ANIMAL PATHOGENICITY							
		PIGMENTATION		GROWTH RATE (MINIMAL INOCULUM)			NEUTRAL RED TEST		NICOTINIC ACID TEST		ISONIAZID		STREPTOMYCIN		CATALASE	ANIMAL PATHOGENICITY			
		GROWN IN	EXPOSED TO	30 C	37 C	45 C	RED	TEST	TEST	0.2 mg/ml	2 mg/ml	2 mg/ml	3 mg/ml	GUINEA PIG		CHICKEN	RABBIT	MOUSE	
<i>M. tuberculosis</i>	Dry friable	None	None	0	2-4 wks	0	+	+	+	S	S	S	S	+++	+++	0	±	+++	+++
<i>M. bovis</i>	Dry friable	None	None	0	2-4 wks	0	+	0	0	R	S	S	S	0 to +++	±	0	0	+++	+++
<i>M. avium</i> *	Small thin or droplike	None	None	0	3-4 wks	2-3 wks	+	0	0	R	R	R	R	+++	0	+++	+++	+++	+++
<i>M. ulcerans</i>	Like <i>M. avium</i>	None	None	3-5 wks	0	0	+	0	0	R	R	R	R	+++	0	0	0	0‡	0‡
<i>M. balnei</i> *	Smooth butyrous (rarely rough)	None	Yellow	1-2 wks	0	0	0	0	0	R	R	R	R	++++	0	0	0	0‡	0‡
<i>M. kansasii</i> * (Group I)†	Smooth butyrous (rarely rough)	None	Yellow	2-3 wks	2-3 wks	0	0	0	0	R‡	R	R	R	++++	0	0	0	+++	+++
Unclassified* (Group II)† (Scotochromogens)	Smooth butyrous	Yellow to orange	Yellow to orange	2-3 wks	2-3 wks	0	0	0	0	R	S or R	R	R	++++	0	0	0	0	0
Unclassified* (Group III)† (Baitty strains)	Small thin or droplike	None	None	2-3 wks	3-4 wks	0	0	0	0	R	R	R	R	+++	0	0	0	0 or +++	+++
Unclassified* (Group IV)† Rapid Growers and <i>M. fortuitum</i>	Rough or smooth	Usually buff	Usually buff	2-4 days	2-4 days	0 or 2-4 days	0	0	0	R	S or R	R	R	++++	0	0	0	0 or +++	+++

\* Three species are distinguishable serologically

† According to Tinsley and Runyon 1954

‡ Produces lesions in foot pads

§ Sensitive to 1 mcg./ml

BCG strains have indicated that as was to be expected virulence is a function of other as yet unidentified properties of the bacterial cells. Cord formation is a necessary but not sufficient condition for virulence of human and bovine types of tubercle bacilli.

Strains of tubercle bacilli which produce cords in artificial media are able to bind the dye neutral red in the form of its red salt in alkaline aqueous media; on the other hand the non-cord forming variants of tubercle bacilli and nearly all saprophytic strains do not stain red under the same conditions (Dubos and Middlebrook 1948) (see Pathogenesis).

#### CHARACTERISTICS OF MYCOBACTERIA CAUSING DISEASE IN MAN

In Table 1 are summarized the various characteristics including experimental animal pathogenicity of the cultivable mycobacteria which can cause disease in man. Infection tests in the rabbit and the guinea pig will usually suffice to differentiate between human, bovine and avian strains freshly isolated from diseased hosts. The human type has high pathogenicity for the guinea pig and low pathogenicity for the rabbit. The avian type has high pathogenicity for the rabbit in addition to pathogenicity for fowl, usually producing in the rabbit the so-called Yersin type\* of disease and has very low pathogenicity for the guinea pig. A fully virulent bovine culture has high pathogenicity for both the guinea pig and the rabbit†. Strains of bovine tubercle bacilli which are somewhat attenuated may have high pathogenicity for the guinea pig but low pathogenicity for the rabbit and therefore can be confused with human strains.

Mammalian strains of tubercle bacilli (human and bovine) can usually be distinguished on primary isolation by cultural characteristics. On primary isolation bovine strains grow poorly on the usual solid egg

media and are inhibited by concentrations of glycerine above 0.75 per cent; such cultures are called dysgonic. Human type strains on the other hand usually grow more luxuriantly on the solid egg media and are more resistant to glycerine which indeed favors their growth at least as far as the potential yield is concerned; they are termed eugonic. Dysgonic cultures produce small smooth flat or hemispherical colonies with even entire edges on egg media; eugonic cultures grow in the form of rougher usually more spreading colonies with thin uneven edges on egg media. However, some dysgonic cultures have human type pathogenicity and generally such distinctions between bovine and human cultures are not reliable for conclusive type determination. After repeated transfers on artificial media many dysgonic bovine cultures assume the eugonic characteristics of human cultures without change in pathogenicity or virulence.

Avian type bacilli on primary isolation from diseased fowl or swine grow readily in the form of smooth hemispherical colonies on egg media. They tend to grow somewhat more dispersed than do mammalian strains in the depth of liquid media. Dissociation of avian cultures to variants similar in colony morphology to those of human strains has been described. These changes may or may not be associated with a change in virulence but they never are accompanied by a change in specific host pathogenicity; that is, such cultures never become pathogenic for the guinea pig (Feldman 1938).

*M. avium* is distinguishable from the mammalian strains by serologic methods (Furth 1926). The former possesses an antigen or antigens absent in the latter and in tuberculins prepared from yellow bacilli. *M. fortuitum*, *M. ulcerans* and *M. balnei*. Avian strain tuberculin is also distinguishable from mammalian strain tuberculin by quantitative skin tests. Human and bovine strain tuberculins are so similar as to be considered identical in skin tests although differences between protein fractions of these strains can be recognized by serologic methods (Schaefer 1947).

Since 1948 an increasing number of distinctly different mycobacteria have been un-

\* The intravenous injection of large numbers of bovine or avian tubercle bacilli into the rabbit causes a rapidly fatal septicemia with the formation of tubercles of microscopic size.

† R. Koch maintained that there is only one type of mammalian *M. tuberculosis*. The credit for distinguishing the human and the bovine types is due to Theobald Smith 1898.



equivocally identified with granulomatous lesions in man (principally pulmonary cutaneous and lymphatic). The characteristics of *M. ulcerans* and *M. balnei* are described in Table 1. The so called yellow bacilli now identified as *M. kansasii* constitute a well-defined group of strongly acid fast bacilli larger than human or bovine bacilli and causing pulmonary lesions in man. They form either smooth or rough colonies on oleic acid-albumin solid agar media and are characteristically photochromogenic synthesizing a bright yellow pigment only after exposure to visible light (Buhler and Pollack 1953).

The other cultivatable mycobacteria which can cause disease in man have been tentatively classified (Timpe and Runyon, 1954) into scotochromogens (Group II).

Battey \* strains (Group III) and the so called rapid growers (Group IV) including *M. fortuitum*. These strains of non chromogenic and variably scotochromogenic mycobacteria are all easily cultivated in vitro at 37° C. They are difficult to distinguish from each other except by growth rate and certain biochemical reactions but they appear to be serologically classifiable into distinct groups (Schaefer 1963). The scotochromogens have been associated with disease of cervical lymph nodes in children while the Battey strains are most commonly agents of pulmonary disease (Runyon 1959). The rapid growers (*M. fortuitum* etc.) are rarely implicated in disease of man and are often distinguished by their virulence for mice infected with massive numbers of these organisms by the intravenous route (Gordon and Smith 1955, Wells et al 1955, Kushner et al 1957).

Volets suffering from natural tuberculosis yield strains of acid fast bacilli which differ sufficiently from the other types to be referred to as the murine type (*M. microti*). This type has low pathogenicity for the guinea pig and the rabbit but is pathogenic for the mouse (Wells 1946).

Murine strains grow more slowly on egg

\* Named after Battey State Hospital Rome Ga where the first series of patients with pulmonary disease associated with these organisms was observed.

*M. kansasii* constitutes Group I of Timpe and Runyon

media than do other tubercle bacilli their growth is inhibited by glycerine. They are not distinguishable serologically from the human and the bovine strains (Wells 1946). *M. microti* is not pathogenic for man and has been employed for purposes of vaccination (see Immunization).

Bacteriophages active against saprophytic and pathogenic mycobacteria have been found (Gardner and Weiser 1947, Froman et al 1954, Sellers et al 1957, Redmond 1963). Phages have been suggested for possible use in classification of mycobacteria (Froman, 1953).

#### PATHOGENIC PROPERTIES OF THE DIFFERENT MYCOBACTERIA FOR MAN

The human and the bovine types are the principal agents of tuberculosis in man. The human type is usually found in cases of pulmonary tuberculosis. In countries where bovine tuberculosis is not uncommon the bovine type is often the agent of bone and joint tuberculosis and tuberculous cervical lymphadenitis which occur most often in children. This apparent difference in organ specificity of the two principal mammalian types is due in reality to the fact that the route of primary infection determines in large measure the predominant organ pattern of tuberculous disease. Infection by inhalation tends to produce pulmonary disease whereas primary infection by the gastrointestinal tract (as from ingestion of unpasteurized milk) tends to result in the extrapulmonary patterns of disease. In rural areas where cattle tuberculosis is widespread (few in the United States) the bovine type is not an uncommon agent of pulmonary tuberculosis. The human type is not more pathogenic for man than the bovine type.

Although there have been described a few well authenticated cases of progressive tuberculosis in man due to the avian type of tubercle bacilli (Feldman 1938, Bradbury and Young 1946) they are very rare. The other less commonly encountered pathogenic mycobacteria appear to follow the general pattern already established for *M. tuberculosis* and *M. bovis*. However, their epidemiology is obscure and factors related to depression of host resistance locally in the lungs, or generally appear to play a

most prominent role in disease associated with these organisms (Corpe *et al* 1963)

#### CHEMICAL CONSTITUENTS OF MYCOBACTERIA

The relationships between chemical constituents and pathogenicity or virulence of mycobacteria are poorly understood. The chemical constituents of these organisms can vary qualitatively and quantitatively depending on the method of cultivation. Nevertheless the following information is available as to the chemical constituents of mycobacteria and their relationship to the immunology and the pathology of tuberculosis (Long 1958).

The proteins synthesized by tubercle bacilli are of special significance because they elicit the tuberculin reaction. It appears that all of the protein fractions of any particular type of tubercle bacilli can evoke the tuberculin reaction in an animal such as the guinea pig sensitized with the homologous type. No information is available as to whether one or several specific polypeptide or protein configurations are responsible for tuberculin activity. Certain protein fractions isolated from tubercle bacilli (and other mycobacteria) can induce the formation of precipitins, agglutinins and complement fixing antibodies as well as anaphylactic sensitization. However injection of these proteins into normal animals does not induce the delayed type of sensitivity responsible for the tuberculin reaction. The proteins of human and bovine types cannot be distinguished from one another by skin sensitization. The proteins of avian tubercle bacilli, *Johnes* bacilli, leprosy bacilli and saprophytic mycobacteria can be distinguished readily from those of mammalian tubercle bacilli by serologic means and by quantitative skin tests in hypersensitive individuals but there are cross reactions throughout the genus *Mycobacterium*. This cross reactivity does not interfere with the practical usefulness of the tuberculin test in strongly hypersensitive individuals (see Tuberculin). Extensive studies have been made on the separation and the purification of the proteins of mycobacteria (Seibert 1950).

Tubercle bacilli contain serologically active and inactive polysaccharides of high

molecular weight including glycogen (Heidelberger and Menzel 1937, Stacey 1955). The mammalian tubercle bacilli appear to contain at least two serologically distinct polysaccharides. Tuberculous hosts may become hypersensitive to homologous polysaccharides; this sensitization is of the anaphylactic type—distinct from the tuberculin type (Einders 1929) (see Allergy). The roles of the polysaccharides of tubercle bacilli in the immunity and the pathogenesis of tuberculosis have not been established.

The mycobacteria have long been known to be very rich in lipids. The systematic investigations of Anderson and his associates (Anderson 1939, 1940) revealed a great variety of complex lipids: branched fatty acids, waxes and higher alcohols. Many of the lipids are probably bound to proteins and polysaccharides in the bacterial cell, some more firmly than others. As the lipids are not easily dissolved or digested in the animal tissues they are probably responsible for certain aspects of the cellular reactions to tubercle bacilli (Sabin 1941). A cellular response resembling the tubercle (see Lesions Caused by Tubercle Bacilli) can be produced by crude phospholipid fractions isolated from tubercle bacilli grown *in vitro*. Certain other lipid fractions obtained from tubercle bacilli or saprophytic mycobacteria or from unrelated sources provoke similar reactions. However even when these lipids of tubercle bacilli are used, relatively large quantities are required to produce tubercle-like lesions or caseation necrosis. There are qualitative and quantitative differences in the fatty acids of the lipids extractable from different types of mycobacteria (mammalian, avian, saprophytic) cultivated on the same medium and they vary with changes in the chemical composition of the medium and with the age of the cultures (Cason *et al* 1956, Asselineau 1956).

Recent studies of the wax fractions of mycobacteria have given more precise knowledge of the structure of the high molecular weight  $\alpha$ -branched chain  $\beta$ -hydroxy fatty acids (mycolic acids) which occur free and esterified to glycerol oligosaccharides and polysaccharides in these organisms. Unesterified mycolic acids are the only lipids from tubercle bacilli which are

equivocally identified with granulomatous lesions in man (principally pulmonary cutaneous and lymphatic). The characteristics of *M. ulcerans* and *M. balnei* are described in Table 1. The so called yellow bacilli, now identified as *M. kansasii* constitute a well-defined group of strongly acid fast bacilli larger than human or bovine bacilli and causing pulmonary lesions in man. They form either smooth or rough colonies on oleic acid-albumin solid agar media and are characteristically photochromogenic synthesizing a bright yellow pigment only after exposure to visible light (Buhler and Pollack 1953).

The other cultivatable mycobacteria which can cause disease in man have been tentatively classified (Timpe and Runyon 1954) into scotochromogens (Group II).

Battey \* strains (Group III) and the so called rapid growers (Group IV) including *M. fortuitum*. These strains of non chromogenic and variably scotochromogenic mycobacteria are all easily cultivated in vitro at 37° C. They are difficult to distinguish from each other except by growth rate and certain biochemical reactions but they appear to be serologically classifiable into distinct groups (Schaefer 1963). The scotochromogens have been associated with disease of cervical lymph nodes in children while the Battey strains are most commonly agents of pulmonary disease (Runyon 1959). The rapid growers (*M. fortuitum* etc.) are rarely implicated in disease of man and are often distinguished by their virulence for mice infected with massive numbers of these organisms by the intravenous route (Gordon and Smith 1955, Wells et al 1955, Kushner et al 1957).

Voles suffering from natural tuberculosis yield strains of acid fast bacilli which differ sufficiently from the other types to be referred to as the murine type (*M. microti*). This type has low pathogenicity for the guinea pig and the rabbit but is pathogenic for the mouse (Wells 1946).

Murine strains grow more slowly on egg

\* Named after Battey State Hospital Rome Ga where the first series of patients with pulmonary disease associated with these organisms was observed.

*M. kansasii* constitutes Group I of Timpe and Runyon

media than do other tubercle bacilli their growth is inhibited by glycerine. They are not distinguishable serologically from the human and the bovine strains (Wells 1946). *M. microti* is not pathogenic for man and has been employed for purposes of vaccination (see Immunization).

Bacteriophages active against saprophytic and pathogenic mycobacteria have been found (Gardner and Weiser, 1947, Froman et al 1954, Sellers et al 1957, Redmond 1963). Phages have been suggested for possible use in classification of mycobacteria (Froman 1953).

#### PATHOGENIC PROPERTIES OF THE DIFFERENT MYCOBACTERIA FOR MAN

The human and the bovine types are the principal agents of tuberculosis in man. The human type is usually found in cases of pulmonary tuberculosis. In countries where bovine tuberculosis is not uncommon the bovine type is often the agent of bone and joint tuberculosis and tuberculous cervical lymphadenitis which occur most often in children. This apparent difference in organ specificity of the two principal mammalian types is due in reality to the fact that the route of primary infection determines in large measure the predominant organ pattern of tuberculous disease. Infection by inhalation tends to produce pulmonary disease whereas primary infection by the gastrointestinal tract (as from ingestion of unpasteurized milk) tends to result in the extrapulmonary patterns of disease. In rural areas where cattle tuberculosis is widespread (few in the United States) the bovine type is not an uncommon agent of pulmonary tuberculosis. The human type is not more pathogenic for man than the bovine type.

Although there have been described a few well authenticated cases of progressive tuberculosis in man due to the avian type of tubercle bacilli (Feldman 1938, Bradbury and Young 1946) they are very rare. The other less commonly encountered pathogenic mycobacteria appear to follow the general pattern already established for *M. tuberculosis* and *M. bovis*. However their epidemiology is obscure and factors related to depression of host resistance locally in the lungs or generally appear to play a

most prominent role in disease associated with these organisms (Corpe *et al* 1963)

#### CHEMICAL CONSTITUENTS OF MYCOBACTERIA

The relationships between chemical constituents and pathogenicity or virulence of mycobacteria are poorly understood. The chemical constituents of these organisms can vary qualitatively and quantitatively depending on the method of cultivation. Nevertheless the following information is available as to the chemical constituents of mycobacteria and their relationship to the immunology and the pathology of tuberculosis (Long 1958)

The proteins synthesized by tubercle bacilli are of special significance because they elicit the tuberculin reaction. It appears that all of the protein fractions of any particular type of tubercle bacilli can evoke the tuberculin reaction in an animal such as the guinea pig sensitized with the homologous type. No information is available as to whether one or several specific polypeptide or protein configurations are responsible for tuberculin activity. Certain protein fractions isolated from tubercle bacilli (and other mycobacteria) can induce the formation of precipitins, agglutinins and complement fixing antibodies as well as anaphylactic sensitization. However injection of these proteins into normal animals does not induce the delayed type of sensitivity response for the tuberculin reaction. The proteins of human and bovine types cannot be distinguished from one another by skin sensitization. The proteins of avian tubercle bacilli, John's bacilli, leprosy bacilli and saprophytic mycobacteria can be distinguished readily from those of mammalian tubercle bacilli by serologic means and by quantitative skin tests in hypersensitive individuals but there are cross reactions throughout the genus *Mycobacterium*. This cross reactivity does not interfere with the practical usefulness of the tuberculin test in strongly hypersensitive individuals (see Tuberculin). Extensive studies have been made on the separation and the purification of the proteins of mycobacteria (Seibert 1950).

Tubercle bacilli contain serologically active and inactive polysaccharides of high

molecular weight including glycogen (Heldberger and Menzel 1937, Stacey 1955). The mammalian tubercle bacilli appear to contain at least two serologically distinct polysaccharides. Tuberculous hosts may become hypersensitive to homologous polysaccharides; this sensitization is of the anaphylactic type—distinct from the tuberculin type (Enders 1929) (see Allergy). The roles of the polysaccharides of tubercle bacilli in the immunity and the pathogenesis of tuberculosis have not been established.

The mycobacteria have long been known to be very rich in lipids. The systematic investigations of Anderson and his associates (Anderson 1939, 1940) revealed a great variety of complex lipids, branched fatty acids, waxes and higher alcohols. Many of the lipids are probably bound to proteins and polysaccharides in the bacterial cell, some more firmly than others. As the lipids are not easily dissolved or digested in the animal tissues they are probably responsible for certain aspects of the cellular reactions to tubercle bacilli (Sabin 1941). A cellular response resembling the tubercle (see Lesions Caused by Tubercle Bacilli) can be produced by crude phosphate fractions isolated from tubercle bacilli grown *in vitro*. Certain other lipid fractions obtained from tubercle bacilli or saprophytic mycobacteria or from unrelated sources provoke similar reactions. However even when these lipids of tubercle bacilli are used in relatively large quantities are required to produce tubercle-like lesions or caseation necrosis. There are qualitative and quantitative differences in the fatty acids of the lipids extractable from different types of mycobacteria (mammalian, avian, saprophytic) cultivated on the same medium and they vary with changes in the chemical composition of the medium and with the age of the cultures (Cason *et al* 1956, Asselineau 1956).

Recent studies of the wax fractions of mycobacteria have given more precise knowledge of the structure of the high molecular weight  $\alpha$ -branched chain  $\beta$ -hydroxy fatty acids (mycolic acids) which occur free and esterified to glycerol oligosaccharides and polysaccharides in these organisms. Unesterified mycolic acids are the only lipids from tubercle bacilli which are

acid fast per se. An antigenic 'lipopolysaccharide', first obtained from tubercle bacilli by Choucrour, has been shown to contain in addition to mycolic acids and a serologically active polysaccharide, 3 amino acids, including diaminopimelic acid (Asselineau 1952).

A toxic glycolipid first extracted from living virulent tubercle bacilli by petroleum ether (Bloch 1950) has been identified as trehalose 6,6'-dimycolate (Noll *et al.*, 1956) (see Pathogenesis).

Another lipid sulfolipid was first extracted from moist living bacterial cells of a virulent strain of tubercle bacilli with petroleum ether containing a small amount of an aliphatic amine (Middlebrook *et al.* 1959). This substance obtained in large yield only from virulent strains of *M. tuberculosis* strongly fixes the dye neutral red and appears to be responsible for this characteristic of virulent strains of tubercle bacilli (Gangadharam *et al.*, 1963). Its complete structure has not been elucidated but the sulfur is present in the form of a sulfonic acid ester of trehalose.

The probable role of the complex lipids in the staining properties of mycobacteria has not been clearly established but it is known that the cells remain acid fast after treatment with neutral fat solvents and that treatment with 1 per cent hydrochloric acid in ether alcohol solution destroys their acid fastness. This acid treatment allows extraction of certain firmly bound lipids which are otherwise not extractable from the cells with neutral fat solvents such as alcohol ether or chloroform. However there is no doubt that acid fastness is not due merely to free mycolic acids.

### TUBERCULOSIS

The host-parasite relationship is of such a nature in tuberculosis that the immunology and the pathology of the disease cannot be discussed separately. During the course of the infection the character of the cellular response of the host changes and the parasites find modified conditions for their multiplication and dissemination. The relationship between specific antigenic components

of mycobacteria and mechanisms of host protection has not been elucidated. In tuberculosis, acquired specific resistance, i.e., immunity, can be approached as yet only by description of events during the course of infection as seen in its morphologic pathology. Therefore the pathologic aspects of tuberculosis will be emphasized here.

### PATHOGENESIS

Until recently there was no evidence implicating any particular properties of virulent tubercle bacilli to virulence. Correlation between morphologic patterns of growth and virulence led to the hypothesis that cord formation is the consequence of the accumulation of lipid material about the bacilli binding them together and surrounding them with one or more substances assumed to play a part in pathogenicity (Middlebrook, 1950a). Indeed it was shown subsequently that living or killed cells of virulent tubercle bacilli can inhibit the migration of leukocytes of normal susceptible hosts *in vitro* as well as *in vivo* (Allgower and Bloch 1949, Martin *et al.*, 1950). Virulent tubercle bacilli and certain of their culture filtrates also exert a primary toxic effect on phagocytic leukocytes, resulting in leukocytic degeneration after various periods of time (Suter, 1952, Fong *et al.* 1957). Under the same experimental conditions, non-cord-forming avirulent variants of these organisms and some cord-forming attenuated strains appear to be much less active in these respects. Finally Hussein and Elberg (1952) have observed that phthienoic an alpha-beta unsaturated trimethylated  $C_{27}$  fatty acid from virulent tubercle bacilli is very active in inhibiting the migration of leukocytes *in vitro*.

Extraction of living cultures of virulent tubercle bacilli with petrol ether as solvent which disperses virulent bacilli from their characteristic orientation, yields a complex mixture of substances which inhibits leukocytic migration as do the whole bacilli (Bloch, 1950). Because this fraction was extracted from the bacilli by a solvent which disrupts the characteristic cords of virulent strains it has been called cord factor. Subsequent fractionation of the petroleum

ether extracts has yielded the toxic lipid trehalose 6- $\mu$ -dimycolate\*. The possible correlation of these findings with those of Choucrour and Asselineau and the recent isolation of a toxic lipid material from tubercle bacilli by Spitznagel and Dubos (1955) is not yet clear (Bloch *et al* 1957).

It seems likely that some substance or substances accounting for the characteristic serpentine cord formation and neutral red binding capacity of cultures of virulent tubercle bacilli play a significant part in the pathogenesis of tuberculosis. It is tempting to postulate that the recently isolated sulfolipid is this substance because it appears to have the appropriate properties but its chemical nature and the mechanism by which it may operate as a virulence factor still remain to be clarified. It is significant that none of the toxic lipid fractions mentioned above binds neutral red in salt form.

In addition to the subtle primary effect of virulent tubercle bacilli on the normal physiologic activity of phagocytes there develops during infection an allergic hypersensitivity to tuberculoproteins—and possibly to other components of the bacteria. The early appearance of hypersensitivity modifies the host-parasite relationship in very complex fashion and is an inseparable part of natural tuberculous infection. The clinical symptoms of general toxicity in this disease are probably in large part a consequence of acquired systemic hypersensitivity to metabolic products of the parasite.

In many of the typical acute infectious diseases due to bacteria the pathogenic agents multiply uninterruptedly until the host recovers or dies as in uncomplicated lobar pneumonia or diphtheria. In tuberculosis however the infectious agent at first multiplies unopposed and later due to the development of some degree of acquired resistance multiplication becomes restricted but rarely are all the living parasites completely eliminated from the host. Indeed a

few viable tubercle bacilli may survive in the primary lesions and even after many years may originate newly progressive disease. Thus there is usually established a delicate equilibrium between the host and the parasite which can shift in favor of the host or the parasite with a recurrent cycle of progressive and quiescent disease. It is characteristic for tuberculosis that even in the same organ healing and progressing lesions may coexist. In other words it appears that in every focus of infection a process goes on influenced in part by systemic and in part by local factors.

Many studies have shown that the administration of cortisone promotes tuberculous infection in certain experimental animals. In man the usual therapeutic doses of ACTH or cortisone decrease the signs and the symptoms of clinical disease at least temporarily (LeMaistre *et al* 1951; Cocchi 1956). On the other hand these hormones can enhance the infectious process in man as well as in rabbits (Lurie 1955). Cortisone depresses but does not completely abolish hypersensitivity to tuberculin.

Today tuberculous infection in man takes place almost exclusively by means of inhalation of a single tubercle bacillus or at most a few bacilli in a droplet nucleus of sputum which is deposited deep in the airways of the respiratory tract beyond the origin of the ciliated epithelium (Jensen 1960). It is seldom that more than one primary focus results. The tubercle bacillus so deposited is promptly taken up by a fixed mononuclear phagocyte in the alveolar duct where it starts its intracellular multiplication.

By histologic and bacteriologic examination of the lungs the mediastinal lymph nodes and the spleens of guinea pigs at different intervals of time after aerogenic infection with living virulent tubercle bacilli one can observe in this experimental model what probably happens under natural conditions in human beings. This is possible at least during the first few weeks after implantation. In the previously uninfected individual a long time elapses before a local process general processes or symptoms arise. The tubercle bacilli multiply in the original host phagocyte which is immobi-

Repeated injection into mice of very small amounts of paraffin oil solution of this substance brings about hemorrhagic pulmonary lesions and death after a period of days. The same fraction is much less toxic for mice when injected as a single dose even in much larger amounts.

lized near the site of implantation. When the number of intracellular bacteria becomes excessive the phagocyte bursts and new phagocytes beginning to accumulate in the lesion share the burden of the logarithmically increasing numbers of organisms. In the guinea pig even with the most virulent strains no lesions are visible to the unaided eye earlier than the 14th day. The tubercle bacilli in the numbers formed before host responsiveness develops appear to be relatively nontoxic for the previously uninfected animal. However sufficient antigen is released to sensitize the host to tuberculo protein within 3 to 4 weeks. With the development of host responsiveness an acute inflammatory process followed by central necrosis appears at the site of the primary focus which now contains very large numbers of bacilli approximately 1 000 000 bacilli per lesion at this time in the guinea pig.

During the preallergic phase a few of the bacilli escape or are carried by phagocytes from the primary focus through lymphatic channels to the regional lymph nodes where there are also large numbers of bacilli by the time host responsiveness develops. Somewhat later still at about the time of the development of host responsiveness some of the bacterial cells have found their way probably by a hematogenous route to the spleen. Thus begins the whole process of tuberculous infection in disease. In the guinea pig the average incubation period before the development of hypersensitivity is about 21 days in man about 40 days. The subsequent fate of the tubercle bacilli and the host lesions is different in different species and in different individuals within the species apparently depending on the rate of host responsiveness as emphasized by Lurie in his studies of genetically different races of inbred rabbits (Lurie 1955).

It is important to note that silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) dust locally decreases host resistance to tuberculosis and other mycobacterioses both in experimental animals and in human beings (Vighani and Pernis 1963). No satisfactory explanation has been given so far for this phenomenon though it would appear that the silica so injures immune mononuclear phagocytes as to interfere with their

ability to inhibit intracellular multiplication of the bacteria.

#### LESIONS CAUSED BY TUBERCLE BACILLI

Human beings respond to tubercle bacilli and their products with two types of lesions in general. One type is called exudative the other, productive or proliferative. The exudative type resembles lesions caused by pyogenic bacteria at least in some respects. In the lungs, there is an exudate in the alveolar spaces and the elements of the normal tissue are included. This lesion in the hypersensitive host may be microscopic or it may involve an entire lobe—most often seen when large numbers of bacilli reach an undiseased part of the lung by aspiration from another part of the cavity. It may heal by resolution that is bacillary multiplication is inhibited most of the bacilli are destroyed and tissue healing may take place with a minimum of scarring. It may undergo early necrosis sometimes involving a whole lobe and lead to massive sloughing of necrotic tissue and gross ulceration with cavity formation. Or it may develop into the productive type of lesion.

The productive type is classified as an infectious granuloma because it resembles both granulation tissue and a tumor. Because tuberculosis usually has a chronic character with cyclic periods of activity and quiescence with healing the productive lesion is the one most frequently observed in tuberculosis. It presumably develops from the exudative type in the following manner (Canetti 1955). After the diminution in exudate and the appearance of mononuclear phagocytes cells of a different type, epithelioid cells appear and increase in number. This cell has a pale cytoplasm and a large elongated nucleus. The faintly outlined epithelioid cells are of irregular form and are usually arranged side by side. At this time acid fast bacilli can be found in these cells but it is noteworthy that only a few cells contain stainable bacilli. After 2 or 3 weeks if the lesion does not spread too rapidly a zone of proliferating fibroblasts mingled with lymphocytes appears at the periphery and in the center of the older lesions giant cells may be found. These cells are characterized by their large size being up to a few hun-

dred micra in diameter and by their numerous dark staining nuclei situated at the periphery of the cytoplasm they also may contain stainable tubercle bacilli. The typical lesion now has 3 zones ■ central giant cell or zone of giant cells a midzone of epithelioid cells arranged radially and ■ peripheral zone of fibroblasts lymphocytes monocytes and plasma cells supported by a newly formed reticulum

The cellular response just described is characteristic of the productive type of tuberculous lesion and is defined as the microscopic tubercle. In human disease it is seen microscopically as ■ barely visible grayish translucent nodule it may become larger opaque and yellowish as necrosis occurs in the center of the lesion. Such a macroscopic tubercle often consists of a coalesced group of microscopic tubercles. Thus the tubercle may grow in size by extension or by fusion with other tubercles and become necrotic. The necrotic material has the consistency and the appearance of cheese therefore the process is called caseation necrosis. The biochemical factors in the production of this peculiar type of necrosis are not clear but



FIG 2 Polymorphonuclear alveolitis. The alveoli are filled with polymorphonuclear nuclei, more or less modified. Occasional macrophages and little or no fibrin. This lesion can be distinguished from nontuberculous suppurative pneumonia only by the presence of bacilli ( $\times 140$ ) (Canetti G. *The Tubercle Bacillus in the Pulmonary Lesion of Man* p 39 Springer New York)

FIG 3 Bacilli in polymorphonuclear alveolitis. Bacilli are more numerous than in any other tuberculous exudate (Ziehl  $\times 800$ ) (Canetti G. *The Tubercle Bacillus in the Pulmonary Lesion of Man* p 39 Springer New York)





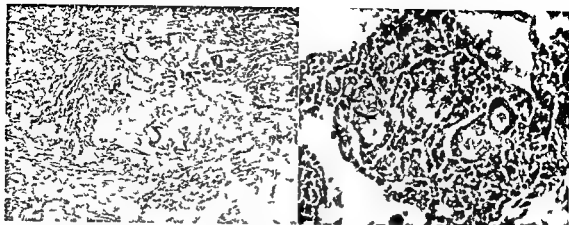


FIG 4 (Left) Productive lesion of lung. In the center is a giant cell of enormous dimensions. Assuming it to be spherical, it would contain about 1 000 nuclei. No bacilli by Ziehl stain. Ordinary Langhans type giant cell beside it ( $\times 80$ ).

FIG 5 (Right) Same case. Accumulation of numerous giant-cells, predominantly of the Langhans type. No bacilli by Ziehl stain ( $\times 340$ ) (Canetti G. The Tubercle Bacilli in the Pulmonary Lesion of Man, p. 163. Springer, New York).

it is assumed that certain autolytic enzymes of the host which normally effect liquefaction to pus are inhibited. A caseous tubercle, small or large, may break into a bronchiole or a bronchus and empty its contents; this results in cavity formation. On the other hand, calcium salts may be deposited in the caseous material of the walled-off tubercle. The older tubercles may become surrounded by a thick layer of fibrocytes in the form of a capsule, and fibrous tissue with vascularization may penetrate and replace the tubercle. Calcification and even ossification of healed pulmonary tubercles occur frequently in infancy and childhood.

Of importance for the fate of the early exudative lesion are the initial number of tubercle bacilli, their rate of multiplication in the particular host, and the degree of hypersensitivity of the host. A small number of bacilli with little multiplication presumably leads to resolution and disappearance of the lesion, sometimes without typical tubercle formation. A large initial number of tubercle bacilli or their rapid multiplication (in a host with low resistance), especially in a highly hypersensitive host, leads to early and widespread necrosis, even at sites where presumably the typical tubercle has no opportunity to form (caseous and gelatinous pneumonia). Slow multiplication of tubercle bacilli, continuous or discontinuous, results

in the proliferative (or productive) type of lesion.

The accompanying illustrations (Figs 2 to 5) show the principal characteristics of the two predominant types of tuberculous lesions. It must be remembered that both the productive and the exudative types of lesions are usually present in chronic progressive tuberculosis in man; they may be anatomically contiguous, and lesions intermediate between the two types are frequently evident (Canetti, 1955).

#### SPREAD OF TUBERCLE BACILLI IN THE HOST

Although tubercle bacilli multiply readily in artificial media in the absence of tissue cells, they are primarily intracellular in the infected host. However, they also multiply extracellularly in ulcerated lesions such as pulmonary cavities and an extracellular phase has to be assumed in the progressive spreading infection even in nonulcerated lesions. They may spread by contiguity, by lymphatic drainage, by the bloodstream, and by tubular means.

Like other microscopic particulate matter, tubercle bacilli usually reach the nearest regional lymph node by lymphatic dissemination. There, multiplication may take place, and the bacterial cells may pass to other lymph nodes. Thus, a chain of lymph nodes

may be infected and occasionally passage through the thoracic duct into the blood stream can result in systemic dissemination and miliary tuberculosis. When a host is infected for the first time (regardless of whether the portal of entry is pulmonary or intestinal) gross lesions almost always develop in the draining lymph nodes. For this reason the tuberculous foci of the hilar lymph nodes were called by Parrot in 1816 *mirours des poudrons*. Tuberculous infection contracted by ingestion results in the involvement of mesenteric lymph nodes. While the infection of the draining lymph nodes occurs with the regularity of biologic law during the first infection, lymphatic spread is almost always absent or inconspicuous after reinfection.

**Hematogenous dissemination** of tubercle bacilli occurs most frequently during the progress of first infection, tuberculosis and originates as a rule either in a caseous mediastinal lymph node or by the penetration of a vein by a growing tubercle. The uniform distribution of tubercles in the lung as seen by roentgenograms may allow a diagnosis at this stage. Rarely tubercle bacilli may be cultured from the blood. Tuberculous meningitis probably a result of bacteraemia, occurs more frequently in children following first infection than in adults who have miliary tuberculosis.

The outcome of hematogenous distribution depends on organ susceptibility. The thyroid gland, the pancreas, the heart and the voluntary muscles almost never are the sites of miliary blood borne tubercles. In parts of the lung compressed because of effusion or pneumothorax there may be fewer and smaller tubercles than elsewhere in the lung. However this may be due merely to diminished blood supply.

Hematogenous miliary tuberculosis may not be associated with recognizable tubercles in susceptible organs other than the lungs such as the spleen, the liver or the kidneys. Following hematogenous dissemination the tubercles in the lungs may be exudative or productive or the central part exudative surrounded by a productive zone. In other organs they are as a rule of the productive type. Hematogenous spread may occur repeatedly.

Tuberculosis of kidney liver spleen

bone testes ovaries and other organs as a consequence of blood invasion. Occasionally at necropsy of persons dying of causes other than tuberculosis minute tuberculous lesions mostly calcified are found in the kidneys, the liver or the spleen.

**Tubular Dissemination** In tubular dissemination the contents of a discharging cavity reach the bronchi with subsequent aspiration into the parenchyma of the lung initiating new pulmonary lesions. Tuberculous laryngitis, tonsillitis and enteritis can also result from such a spread. Similarly tuberculosis of the kidney may lead to tuberculous cystitis. The tubular spread of tubercle bacilli plays a conspicuous part in adult pulmonary tuberculosis. For example, a cavity in the upper lobe discharges its contents into a bronchus. Particularly if the discharge material is liquid it may be aspirated into other portions of the same or the opposite lung and there initiate new foci of disease. Tuberculous caseous bronchopneumonia is apt to occur following hemoptysis by aspiration of blood containing viable tubercle bacilli.

It can be shown in experimental animals that while the lesions of first infection continue to progress contiguously, bacilli introduced into normal parts of the same organ often fail to initiate other progressive foci. This experimental observation finds its clinical counterpart in the fact that progressive cavitory disease of the lungs associated with large numbers of tubercle bacilli in the bronchial secretions is not invariably followed by extensive new foci of disease. Thus the resistance of individuals with active tuberculous infection is often sufficient to cope with many small local infective units of reinfection while insufficient to cope with the enormous bacillary population in the gross established lesion. This fact serves as a rational basis for surgical removal of extensive areas of disease in individuals who even after surgery continue to shed some bacilli from smaller lesions in other parts of the lungs.

#### PRIMARY (FIRST INFECTION) AND POSTPRIMARY (REINFECTION) TYPES OF TUBERCULOSIS

Under the epidemiologic conditions which prevailed until recently most of the first tuberculous infections occurred in childhood.

This led to the use of the term *childhood tuberculosis for the primary, first infection* type of disease and *adult type for the post primary or reinfection type of disease*. In reality the clinicopathologic character of tuberculosis in any individual is determined by the degree of immunity and hypersensitivity of the individual at the time of examination and not necessarily by his age. Race and previous immunologic experience with tubercle bacilli and other antigenically related mycobacteria as well as many other factors are at least as important as age in determining the degree of resistance and hence the type of disease.

Therefore the term *primary* and *post primary* are used here and defined as clinicopathologic types of disease without any necessary implications as to the age of the individual or the times of first infection or reinfection.

An illuminating analogy of the primary and the postprimary types of tuberculosis can be recognized in experimental animals (see Immunity Koch Phenomenon). When living virulent tubercle bacilli are deposited in the skin or the lungs of a guinea pig the draining lymph nodes are soon involved and progressive disease rapidly ensues. If the same guinea pig is infected subsequently in the same way again but at another site on the opposite leg or in another part of the lungs for instance the tubercle bacilli remain entirely or almost entirely localized; they may multiply locally but do not or only in small numbers invade the draining lymph nodes. This prevention of lymphatic spread is concomitant with the development of some degree of acquired resistance to the disease.

In the United States primary tuberculosis is almost always the result of inhalation of the human type of tubercle bacilli in the form of a minute droplet nucleus less than 8 microns in diameter and containing one or very few living bacilli. In countries where unpasteurized milk contaminated with bovine type tubercle bacilli is consumed the primary infection arises in the cervical lymph nodes and the intestines in an appreciable number of cases.

Primary pulmonary tuberculosis differs in many respects from the postprimary type (Ghon 1916 Opie 1917). Whereas the

location of the gross lesion of the primary type may be in any part of the lung and no more frequently in the apex than elsewhere the prominent postprimary lesion almost always makes its appearance near the apex. A significant involvement of a hilar lymph node is present with the primary type but is not associated with the postprimary type of disease. Indeed in the primary type an inconspicuous parenchymal lesion is often associated with massive caseation of the draining lymph node \* whereas in the post primary type the hilar nodes rarely contain caseous lesions even if whole lobes are diseased. The primary type of tuberculosis is an acute disease, healing or progressing in a relatively short time; the postprimary type by contrast is more chronic because it is associated with a significant—albeit inadequate—degree of resistance. The primary type of pulmonary tuberculosis can progress so rapidly that death occurs before cavities develop, while in the postprimary type fibrosis is conspicuous and cavity formation is the rule; the disease usually beginning near the apex of a lobe and progressing downward clearly through tubular routes.

There are histologic differences between the progressive primary and the postprimary types of parenchymal pulmonary lesions. The progressive primary type is almost always exudative; the postprimary type is predominantly productive with only occasionally exudative foci, usually the result of recent tubular spread. The primary type often heals by resolution or may undergo caseation and calcification (without ulceration). Healing by resolution is rare in the postprimary type of disease except under the influence of effective chemotherapy.

The primary type of disease most commonly seen in infants and children may be observed in adults who have escaped earlier infection. On the other hand adults acquiring their first infection as indicated by previous negative tuberculin tests may manifest the postprimary type of disease passing through a primary phase which remains unrecognized because of the rapid development

The primary pulmonary complex Ghon complex consists of the primary parenchymal lesion ("Ghon tubercle") and the involved regional hilar lymphatic tissue.

of acquired resistance In the United States the rapidly progressive primary type is seen more often in young adult Negroes than in white adults

The postprimary reinfection type of tuberculosis may be caused by—seeded with—tubercle bacilli newly inhaled from without (exogenous reinfection) or by organisms which were present and had survived in the primary lesions (endogenous reinfection) The distinction between endogenous and exogenous reinfection is epidemiologically important but it is often impossible in individual cases to ascertain the origin of the bacilli causing the postprimary disease

The healing of disease of first infection and the appearance of postprimary disease may be separated by an interval of many years The question arises as to how the relative immunity is maintained Do the tubercle bacilli in the healed primary lesion survive and thus maintain the immunologic status of the host? Are they dead but their antigens not completely destroyed and eliminated? Careful studies of healed lesions of primary type disease have shown that in most cases they contain no viable tubercle bacilli on the other hand epidemiologic data show that tuberculin sensitivity once developed is sometimes lasting The explanation in such instances may be that casual contacts with small numbers of tubercle bacilli which multiply briefly are enough to maintain tuberculin hypersensitivity and immunity without causing lesions large enough to be roentgenographically demonstrable This opinion is supported by observations on the persistence and even an increase of tuberculin hypersensitivity in American Indians long after vaccination with BCG (Aronson 1948) It may be added that the primary type of tuberculosis has been observed at autopsy in persons whose lungs had sustained a healed primary complex—healed parenchymal and hilar lymph node lesions (Terplan 1940) It is reasonable to assume that in these persons the complete healing of the first infection lesions was followed years later by complete loss of acquired resistance

#### IMMUNITY

The term immunity is used here in a restricted sense meaning specific acquired

resistance to infection or disease Humoral antibodies appear not to play a role in immunity against tuberculosis The sera of actively immunized animals agglutinate tubercle bacilli in vitro they fix complement in the presence of tubercle bacilli and certain of their antigenic components they form precipitates with protein and carbohydrate fractions of tubercle bacilli and they promote phagocytosis by polymorphonuclear leukocytes and monocytes in vitro Yet such sera even in the presence of complement have no bactericidal or lytic effects on tubercle bacilli

In many pathogenic species of bacteria the virulent variants possess surface antigens which are essential for virulence and antibodies against these confer specific resistance None of the known antigenic substances of tubercle bacilli has been shown to be related to virulence Attempts at passive transfer of acquired resistance to tuberculosis by serum transfer in experimental animals have thus far failed (Raffel 1956)

Infection with tubercle bacilli enhances the host response to antigens not related to tubercle bacilli Antibody formation is non-specifically increased and sensitization is altered (Dienes and Schoenheit 1927) The addition of paraffin oil to killed tubercle bacilli increases and prolongs antibody formation and sensitization to the antigens of tubercle bacilli The antigenic effect of certain other antigens incorporated in paraffin oil with killed tubercle bacilli is also greatly increased and prolonged (Freund 1956) Thus it is paradoxical that protective humoral antibodies have not been shown to play a role in specific acquired resistance to tuberculosis

In addition to the formation of humoral antibodies the tuberculous host develops another type of immune process namely an altered tissue reactivity to tubercle bacilli and their components called *allergy* It has long been customary to describe the reaction known as the *Koch phenomenon* as illustrating certain aspects of host responsiveness and immunity in tuberculosis

When a guinea pig is injected in the subcutaneous tissue of the thigh with living virulent tubercle bacilli the puncture wound heals within 2 days From 10 to 14 days later a nodule appears at the site of injection It

This led to the use of the term childhood tuberculosis for the primary, first infection type of disease and adult type for the post primary or reinfection type of disease. In reality the clinicopathologic character of tuberculosis in any individual is determined by the degree of immunity and hypersensitivity of the individual at the time of examination and not necessarily by his age. Race and previous immunologic experience with tubercle bacilli and other antigenically related mycobacteria as well as many other factors are at least as important as age in determining the degree of resistance and, hence, the type of disease.

Therefore the term primary and post primary are used here and defined as clinicopathologic types of disease without any necessary implications as to the age of the individual or the times of first infection or reinfection.

An illuminating analogy of the primary and the postprimary types of tuberculosis can be recognized in experimental animals (see Immunity Koch Phenomenon). When living virulent tubercle bacilli are deposited in the skin or the lungs of a guinea pig the draining lymph nodes are soon involved and progressive disease rapidly ensues. If the same guinea pig is infected subsequently in the same way again but at another site on the opposite leg or in another part of the lungs for instance the tubercle bacilli remain entirely or almost entirely localized; they may multiply locally but do not or only in small numbers invade the draining lymph nodes. This prevention of lymphatic spread is concomitant with the development of some degree of acquired resistance to the disease.

In the United States primary tuberculosis is almost always the result of inhalation of the human type of tubercle bacilli in the form of a minute droplet nucleus less than 8 microns in diameter and containing one or very few living bacilli. In countries where unpasteurized milk contaminated with bovine type tubercle bacilli is consumed the primary infection arises in the cervical lymph nodes and the intestines in an appreciable number of cases.

Primary pulmonary tuberculosis differs in many respects from the postprimary type (Ghon 1916; Opie 1917). Whereas the

location of the gross lesion of the primary type may be in any part of the lung and no more frequently in the apex than elsewhere the prominent postprimary lesion almost always makes its appearance near the apex. A significant involvement of a hilar lymph node is present with the primary type but is not associated with the postprimary type of disease. Indeed in the primary type an inconspicuous parenchymal lesion is often associated with massive caseation of the draining lymph node,\* whereas in the post primary type the hilar nodes rarely contain caseous lesions even if whole lobes are diseased. The primary type of tuberculosis is an acute disease healing or progressing in a relatively short time; the postprimary type by contrast is more chronic because it is associated with a significant—albeit inadequate—degree of resistance. The primary type of pulmonary tuberculosis can progress so rapidly that death occurs before cavities develop while in the postprimary type fibrosis is conspicuous and cavity formation is the rule; the disease usually beginning near the apex of a lobe and progressing downward clearly through tubular routes.

There are histologic differences between the progressive primary and the postprimary types of parenchymal pulmonary lesions. The progressive primary type is almost always exudative; the postprimary type is predominantly productive with only occasionally exudative foci usually the result of recent tubular spread. The primary type often heals by resolution or may undergo caseation and calcification (without ulceration). Healing by resolution is rare in the postprimary type of disease except under the influence of effective chemotherapy.

The primary type of disease most commonly seen in infants and children may be observed in adults who have escaped earlier infection. On the other hand adults acquiring their first infection as indicated by previous negative tuberculin tests may manifest the postprimary type of disease passing through a primary phase which remains unrecognized because of the rapid development

\* The primary pulmonary complex "Ghon complex" consists of the primary parenchymal lesion ("Ghon tubercle") and the involved regional hilar lymphatic tissue.

losis operates by an as yet undemonstrated cellular mechanism unlike any hitherto known to exist in other infectious diseases and dependent on neither humoral antibodies nor hypersensitivity to tuberculin

First let it be made clear that many students of this problem find the available experimental evidence insufficient to warrant a decision as to which one of the above viewpoints is correct. Indeed it seems probable that the many and various phases and forms of tuberculous infection and disease which occur under natural conditions or can be produced experimentally will require a more complex answer to this problem than any one of the above mentioned views indicates. For example there is little doubt that the amount of caseation necrosis which can be produced by any specific number of tubercle bacilli is determined in large measure by the degree of hypersensitivity of the host and as has been pointed out above spread of bacilli by tubular routes in the lungs is dependent on previous necrosis sloughing of the necrotic tissue and ultimate cavity formation. Thus with respect to this most significant aspect of phthisis hypersensitivity is an unfavorable concomitant of tuberculous disease. On the other hand the same focal necrotizing effect of hypersensitivity probably results in decreased local multiplication of tubercle bacilli by creation of an environment which is physiochemically unfavorable for their growth (Dubos 1950 Sever and Youmans 1957) particularly since tubercle bacilli are strict aerobes.

It has not been possible experimentally to confer a high degree of specific acquired resistance with fractions of tubercle bacilli without the concomitance of tuberculin hypersensitivity though some increase in resistance to infection can be conferred without allergy by certain methanol extracts of tubercle bacilli (Negre 1956 Weiss and Dubos 1955) whether or not this increase in resistance is due to specific acquired immunity has not yet been established. Efforts have been made to study the relationship of allergy and immunity by desensitizing immune allergic guinea pigs during the course of experimental reinfection. Local and general desensitization to tuberculin can be accomplished by the repeated injection of

properly spaced increasing amounts of tuberculin into hypersensitive hosts (including man). Such experiments are difficult to perform. Repeated injections of large amounts of tuberculin are toxic for normal animals and dramatic focal and general deleterious effects can be produced in tuberculous hosts particularly when too large amounts of tuberculin are injected into individuals who have not yet reached the proper degree of desensitization. These investigations have been discussed at length by Rich (1951). The results of desensitization experiments strongly suggest that acquired resistance is not necessarily dependent on cutaneous or systemic hypersensitivity to tuberculin.

On the other hand passive serum transfer studies as pointed out earlier have failed to demonstrate that the specificity of acquired resistance is mediated by a humoral mechanism.

Lune (1942) studied this problem in another way. He studied the multiplication of tubercle bacilli in monocytes from normal and immune rabbits in the presence of normal and immune serum in the anterior chamber of the rabbit eye. His results have been interpreted as evidence for a strictly cellular mechanism of acquired resistance independent of humoral antibodies. This is probably unjustified in view of the observation that humoral antibody may appear locally at the site of transfer of washed mononuclear cells\* from immunized donors to normal animals (Chase 1951). Suter (1953) Mackaness (1954) and Berthrong (1959) have studied the multiplication of tubercle bacilli in monocyte cultures in vitro suppressing extracellular multiplication of the parasites by streptomycin. The results of their studies can be summarized as follows:

- 1 When the number of virulent tubercle bacilli taken up by mononuclear phagocytes in vitro is small (no more than 5 to 10 cells per phagocyte) the phagocytes from immunized guinea pigs suppress intracellular multiplication while those of normal animals do not.

- 2 This suppression of intracellular mul-

\* Mononuclear cells include all leukocyte types phagocytic and nonphagocytic except polymorphonuclear leukocytes.

ulcerates and the ulcer usually does not heal. The regional lymph nodes develop tubercles and caseate. In contrast with this the already tuberculous guinea pig reacts differently to superinfection. When after a period of a few weeks the infected animal is superinfected in the same way in the opposite thigh a dark colored induration develops within 2 days at the site of injection. The skin over the indurated area undergoes necrosis and soon a superficial ulcer appears. However this ulcer often heals quickly. Infection of regional lymph nodes is retarded or fails to develop. In other words the infection has brought about two changes: the host has become hypersensitive to tubercle bacilli and it has acquired the capacity to localize the superinfection. Acquired resistance to infection can best be shown by infecting guinea pigs first with a strain of low virulence (BCG for example) and later with a small number of virulent bacilli. The progress of the virulent superinfection is much retarded but rarely entirely inhibited.

Koch found that tuberculous guinea pigs react with inflammation not only to living but also to killed tubercle bacilli as well as to their protein fractions (Tuberculin). Later it was established that the Koch phenomenon can be demonstrated in guinea pigs sensitized by killed as well as by living tubercle bacilli. Attempts to induce tuberculin sensitization of the delayed type with tuberculo-protein alone have been unsuccessful. However it appears that the chloroform soluble wax fraction of tubercle bacilli which contains bound protein (or peptide) can confer the delayed type of tuberculin allergy on guinea pigs (Raffel 1948).

It would seem that the cells present in the tubercle play an essential role in the development of allergy to protein components of tubercle bacilli. Certain aspects of this subject are dealt with in Chapter 11 particularly the difference between the tuberculin type and other types of hypersensitive ness.

The Koch phenomenon has usually been considered a useful paradigm of immunity experiments because it takes place in the skin and is accessible to direct observation. It has been assumed that the same events occur when tubercle bacilli are introduced into the

lung by inhalation. However it should be pointed out and emphasized that it is necessary to employ large numbers of living or killed tubercle bacilli to elicit the prompt inflammatory reaction and necrosis with ulcer formation which are seen in the classic Koch phenomenon. Such reactions certainly do not take place under natural conditions of aerogenic infection with tubercle bacilli in experimental animals or in man. Indeed there is no evidence of the killing effect of host resistance or hypersensitivity when the local infective (or reinfective) unit consists of one or a very few bacterial cells. Under such conditions specific acquired resistance manifests itself only as a retardation partial or complete of the multiplication of the newly introduced tubercle bacilli.

The tubercle, its monocytes and epithelioid cells and the accelerated formation of tubercles have commonly been viewed as the means of defense of the host against the parasite but it would seem less prejudicial to look on them merely as anatomic evidence that changed reactivity of the host brings about conditions which limit local multiplication of the parasite.

The significance of the role of allergy in immunity against tuberculosis has long been the subject of intense controversy. At least 5 different viewpoints have been held on this complex problem.

1 Specific acquired resistance to tuberculosis is a consequence of hypersensitivity to tuberculin and does not involve the participation of humoral antibodies against antigens of tubercle bacilli.

2 Specific acquired resistance is due to humoral antibodies against one or more unidentified antigens of tubercle bacilli and is not in any way dependent on hypersensitivity to tuberculin.

3 Specific acquired resistance is due to humoral antibodies and tuberculin hypersensitivity is an undesirable accompaniment of infection tending to interfere with the protective effect of humoral antibodies.

4 Specific acquired resistance is due to humoral antibodies; tuberculin hypersensitivity tends to have a favorable adjuvant effect on the operation of the specific humoral mechanism.

5 Specific acquired resistance in tubercu-

losis operates by an as yet undemonstrated cellular mechanism unlike any hitherto known to exist in other infectious diseases and dependent on neither humoral antibodies nor hypersensitivity to tuberculin

First let it be made clear that many students of this problem find the available experimental evidence insufficient to warrant a decision as to which one of the above viewpoints is correct. Indeed it seems probable that the many and various phases and forms of tuberculous infection and disease which occur under natural conditions or can be produced experimentally will require a more complex answer to this problem than any one of the above mentioned views indicates. For example there is little doubt that the amount of caseation necrosis which can be produced by any specific number of tubercle bacilli is determined in large measure by the degree of hypersensitivity of the host and as has been pointed out above spread of bacilli by tubular routes in the lungs is dependent on previous necrosis sloughing of the necrotic tissue and ultimate cavity formation. Thus with respect to this most significant aspect of phthisis hypersensitivity is an unfavorable concomitant of tuberculous disease. On the other hand the same focal necrotizing effect of hypersensitiveness probably results in decreased local multiplication of tubercle bacilli by creation of an environment which is physiochemically unfavorable for their growth (Dubos 1950 Sever and Youmans 1957) particularly since tubercle bacilli are strict aerobes.

It has not been possible experimentally to confer a high degree of specific acquired resistance with fractions of tubercle bacilli without the concomitance of tuberculin hypersensitivity though some increase in resistance to infection can be conferred without allergy by certain methanol extracts of tubercle bacilli (Negre 1956 Weiss and Dubos 1955) whether or not this increase in resistance is due to specific acquired immunity has not yet been established. Efforts have been made to study the relationship of allergy and immunity by desensitizing immune allergic guinea pigs during the course of experimental reinfection. Local and general desensitization to tuberculin can be accomplished by the repeated injection of

properly spaced increasing amounts of tuberculin into hypersensitive hosts (including man). Such experiments are difficult to perform. Repeated injections of large amounts of tuberculin are toxic for normal animals and dramatic focal and general deleterious effects can be produced in tuberculous hosts particularly when too large amounts of tuberculin are injected into individuals who have not yet reached the proper degree of desensitization. These investigations have been discussed at length by Rich (1951). The results of desensitization experiments strongly suggest that acquired resistance is not necessarily dependent on cutaneous or systemic hypersensitivity to tuberculin.

On the other hand passive serum transfer studies as pointed out earlier have failed to demonstrate that the specificity of acquired resistance is mediated by a humoral mechanism.

Lurie (1942) studied this problem in another way. He studied the multiplication of tubercle bacilli in monocytes from normal and immune rabbits in the presence of normal and immune serum in the anterior chamber of the rabbit eye. His results have been interpreted as evidence for a strictly cellular mechanism of acquired resistance independent of humoral antibodies. This is probably unjustified in view of the observation that humoral antibody may appear locally at the site of transfer of washed mononuclear cells\* from immunized donors to normal animals (Chase 1951). Suter (1953) Mackaness (1954) and Berthrong (1959) have studied the multiplication of tubercle bacilli in monocyte cultures in vitro suppressing extracellular multiplication of the parasites by streptomycin. The results of their studies can be summarized as follows:

- 1 When the number of virulent tubercle bacilli taken up by mononuclear phagocytes in vitro is small (no more than 5 to 10 cells per phagocyte) the phagocytes from immunized guinea pigs suppress intracellular multiplication while those of normal animals do not.

- 2 This suppression of intracellular mul

Mononuclear cells include all leukocyte types phagocytic and nonphagocytic except polymorphonuclear leukocytes.



tiplication by the immune phagocytes does not require the presence of serum from the immunized animal either before or after phagocytosis

Fong *et al* (1957) have observed that monocytes from immunized guinea pigs especially when cultivated in the presence of specific immune serum are protected against the primary cytotoxic effect of virulent tubercle bacilli which otherwise can be observed within 10 hours after intracellular infection. However the degree of immunologic specificity of this protective function and its bearing on immunity as it manifested *in vivo* are undefined (Elberg *et al*, 1957). Equally difficult to interpret are the observations of Sever (1960) demonstrating prolongation of the survival time of mice infected with large numbers of tubercle bacilli by the intravenous route after passive transfer of monocytes from immunized mice. Indeed some experiments of Dubos and Schaedler (1956) indicate that some phenomena which have been interpreted as evidence of specific acquired immunity involve nonspecific tolerance mechanisms (as following injections of endotoxins).

It seems best to reserve further judgment on the subject of the specific and the non-specific mechanism of acquired resistance to tuberculosis until further experimental data are available.

In a highly infectious tuberculous environment the chance of contracting progressive clinical tuberculosis is higher in tuberculin-negative persons than in those who are already tuberculin positive (Ferguson 1946). This has been observed repeatedly among student nurses and in other groups. Particularly convincing are the observations made in a hospital for the insane where the exposure was high and considerable numbers of inmates were tuberculin negative when admitted (Flahiff 1939). Such observations in man and immunization experiments in animals have encouraged the study of prophylactic active immunization of man. On the other hand where the incidence of new infections is very low as in most parts of western Europe and America today the new cases of clinically active tuberculosis occur predominantly among those older individuals in the population who are already

hypersensitive to tuberculin (Palmer and Shaw 1953).

### IMMUNIZATION

In several species of experimental animals injection of killed tubercle bacilli moderately increases resistance to tuberculous disease. This is clearly shown for example in rabbits (Opie and Freund 1937). With very small infective doses some of the immunized animals may escape the disease entirely the majority develop tuberculosis with a course slower than in the nonimmunized controls. The observed degree of acquired resistance attainable with killed bacilli depends on many as yet ill-defined factors with regard to both the immunizing antigen and the mode of subsequent challenge. There appears to be no strain specificity for the acquired resistance and bovine and human strains are able to cross immunize. There is no evidence that the increase in resistance elicited by killed tubercle bacilli is qualitatively different from that which can be achieved by living attenuated organisms. Indeed under some experimental conditions killed bacilli have been observed to be as effective as living attenuated organisms (Dubos *et al* 1953). Nevertheless living attenuated bacilli are more regularly effective than are killed bacterial cells. The question of the relative duration of acquired resistance induced by killed bacilli compared with living bacilli as well as chemical fractions thereof has not been adequately investigated.

The immunizing effect of heat killed tubercle bacilli in man was studied in a hospital for the insane by inoculating tuberculin negative patients within 2 weeks after admission (Opie *et al* 1939)\*. The morbidity and mortality rates during the subsequent 18 months were significantly lower in the vaccinated than in the unvaccinated group.

There is convincing evidence that vaccination with living strains of attenuated tubercle bacilli derived from the original attenuated strain of Calmette and Guérin (BCG) can confer some protection against

\* Only tuberculin negative individuals are vaccinated with living or dead tubercle bacilli because of the Koch phenomenon which occurs in individuals who are already tuberculin positive.

naturally acquired tuberculous disease in man (Aronson 1948 H<sub>3</sub>ge 1956) The degree of protection afforded by BCG vaccination can be estimated from the report of Dahlstrom and Difs (1951) on Swedish soldiers with a moderate exposure to infection and from a recent report of the British Medical Research Council The evidence derived from the latter study indicates that BCG vaccination can confer significant protection not only against primary tuberculosis but also against the postprimary or reinfection type of disease (Med Res Council 1963)

Striking differences in invasiveness and immunizing capacity exist among the various BCG strains derived from the original culture (Jacox and Meade 1949 Suter and Dubos 1951 Dubos *et al* 1956) Several groups of investigators claimed in the early years of its use that BCG could dissociate back to a virulent variant but there is no authenticated case of progressive and fatal tuberculosis in human beings attributable to such a spontaneous mutation of the vaccine On the other hand at least 4 well authenticated cases of progressive tuberculosis in man attributable to BCG have been reported in individuals with peculiarly inadequate ability to develop or maintain resistance to tuberculous infection (Ustvedt 1956) That BCG strains are usually less attenuated than the completely non cord forming variants of tubercle bacilli (e.g. H37Ra) is evident from the fact that at least 2 BCG strains have been found to cause progressive and fatal tuberculosis in silicotic guinea pigs (Vorwald *et al* 1950) whereas certain still more attenuated strains are unable to cause disease under these conditions

No basically novel technic has been introduced in practice to improve on Calmette's original method of preparing the vaccine in spite of the fact that large variations in activity occur from one preparation to another (Fenner 1951 Centre International de l'Enfance 1955) However a technic of aerosol infection has been employed to bring out striking differences in the infectivity of various daughter strains of BCG (Middlebrook 1961) Furthermore these studies have shown that infection with as few as 10 viable units of one BCG strain by inhalation

sufficed to provide as much immunity as 1 000 000 bacterial cells of the same strain introduced by the cutaneous route in guinea pigs

It is possible that not only the living but also the dead bacterial cells in a BCG vaccine contribute to the development of tuberculin hypersensitivity and perhaps also to the resistance conferred by BCG vaccination

Active immunization with BCG or with other attenuated strains (for example the vole bacillus) or killed bacilli has some usefulness in protecting tuberculin negative individuals However it should be recalled that persons with healed tuberculous lesions can acquire new exogenous reinfection and progressive disease Artificial immunization with the vaccines thus far offered is not likely to be more effective than previous infection with virulent tubercle bacilli Nonetheless it is desirable to have available a prophylactic vaccine such as BCG where its use is indicated (Rosenthal 1957) More than 200 000 000 persons have been tuberculin tested and 75 000 000 vaccinated with BCG under the auspices of the World Health Organization

The vole bacillus is capable of inducing in guinea pigs a degree of active immunity comparable with that produced by BCG Experimental immunization of human beings with vole bacilli has been undertaken by the British Medical Research Council in the belief that a spontaneous change in pathogenicity of this type of tubercle bacillus for man is less likely than a spontaneous increase in virulence of the attenuated BCG strains (Wells 1946) A reasonable degree of acquired resistance to clinical tuberculosis has been observed comparable with that provided by BCG

#### CHEMOTHERAPY

The antimicrobial drug treatment of ulcerated tuberculosis has provided an unparalleled opportunity to study a host drug parasite relationship in clinical medicine It presents most of the problems encountered in general in chemotherapy of infectious processes and yet the response to treatment is in slow motion as it were in contrast with the situation in the acute infectious processes caused by more rapidly multiplying parasites

Three chemotherapeutic agents are in common clinical use at the present time for the treatment of tuberculosis streptomycin para aminosalicylic acid (PAS) and isoniazid (INH). Streptomycin exerts its therapeutic effect by bacteriostatic activity at low concentrations and bactericidal activity at higher concentrations. Therapeutic benefit can be achieved with this drug alone in pulmonary tuberculosis genitourinary tuberculosis, military tuberculosis tuberculous meningoencephalitis and in the preparation of patients for thoracic surgery. The degree of benefit is dependent on many factors too complex to recount here. Suffice it to state that the results attainable are conditioned by the extent of ulceration of the tuberculous lesions (e.g. number and size of pulmonary cavities) and the speed with which necrosis is occurring at the time of initiation of chemotherapy. Thus the factors which determine the effectiveness of chemotherapy with streptomycin in tuberculosis are similar to those involved in chemotherapy of other infections in which tissue necrosis is a significant part of the disease process (McDermott, 1949). The acute exudative lesion often responds dramatically while the large necrotic or partially necrotic lesions are controlled less readily and may persist to form the basis for further extensions of the disease after the cessation of chemotherapy.

Tubercle bacilli like other susceptible bacteria tend to mutate to individuals resistant to streptomycin both in artificial cultures and in the tuberculous host. Since in tuberculosis, one is often coping with very large populations of parasites streptomycin fastness is a conspicuous problem. Furthermore it has been observed that streptomycin resistant tubercle bacilli can infect other persons. This factor, as well as the toxicity of streptomycin for the vestibular and the auditory functions has placed marked limitations on the usefulness of this drug alone in the chemotherapy of tuberculosis.

PAS exerts a bacteriostatic but little or no bactericidal effect on tubercle bacilli in vitro and has limited but recognizable chemotherapeutic activity in human disease (Therapeutic Trials Committee 1950). It is much more active against the mammalian types of tubercle bacilli than against any other microbes

thus far tested. Its antibacterial activity is competitively antagonized by low concentrations of para aminobenzoic acid.

In 1952 the third drug of the triumvirate isonicotinic acid hydrazide (isoniazid), was discovered to have potent antimicrobial activity against tubercle bacilli in vitro in experimental animals and in man. Subsequently this compound has been found to have properties which clearly make it the most important antimicrobial chemotherapeutic agent for tuberculosis. Its activity is strictly limited to tubercle bacilli; it is much less active against other mycobacteria—probably useless in leprosy for example. Isoniazid is active in vitro against over 99 per cent of strains of typical tubercle bacilli at levels of 0.02 to 0.2 mcg./ml. and against one of the commonest types of atypical tubercle bacilli the yellow bacilli at 0.2 to 1.0 mcg./ml. Claims have been made that some wild strains of typical tubercle bacilli are more resistant than this but such strains must be exceedingly rare.

Isoniazid unlike streptomycin and PAS is active against intracellular tubercle bacilli. Whereas streptomycin has some sterilizing activity for tubercle bacilli provided with a carbon source but no nitrogen source or no oxygen isoniazid in contrast is sterilizing for these organisms only when they are actually multiplying.

In addition to the first line drugs streptomycin, PAS and isoniazid certain other antimicrobial agents also are used in treatment particularly of patients whose bacterial populations are already resistant to the first line drugs. Among these second line drugs are pyrazinamide cycloserine ethionamide kanamycin viomycin and capreomycin. Pyrazinamide exerts its sterilizing antibacterial effects only in acidic environments in artificial media (McDermott and Tompsett 1954) and in monocyte cultures (Mackness 1956). The combination pyrazinamide and isoniazid exerts the greatest chemotherapeutic activity of any of the drug combinations thus far studied in experimental infections of mice (McCune *et al.* 1956).

As with streptomycin the mutation rate of tubercle bacilli to isoniazid resistance is high enough so that in nearly 50 per cent of isoniazid treated tuberculous patients with

ulcerative tuberculosis of the lungs isoniazid resistant mutants make their appearance in large numbers in the sputum if this drug is used alone. In fact over 90 per cent of patients who remain bacteriologically positive after 4 months of treatment with high dosage of isoniazid (8 to 16 mg/Kg/day) excrete bacilli of which a great proportion are highly resistant to the drug (to 10 or more mcg isoniazid/ml).

Two distinct types of isoniazid resistant mutants have been recognized: catalase positive and catalase negative. All isoniazid-susceptible human and bovine strains of tubercle bacilli have catalase activity varying quantitatively over a fairly narrow range. Catalase positive isoniazid resistant mutants can be isolated from most isoniazid susceptible populations when these are exposed to concentrations of isoniazid just above the minimal antibacterial concentration of this drug. One step mutation to resistance to higher concentrations of isoniazid (1 or more mcg/ml) without complete loss of catalase is a very rare event. On the other hand one step mutation to high resistance to isoniazid (10 or more mcg/ml) with complete loss of catalase is common. The prevalence of such mutants is  $1$  in  $10^4$  to  $1$  in  $10^6$  in most populations of tubercle bacilli (Middlebrook 1956).

Isoniazid is metabolically altered in the human body to chemical derivatives which have little or no antimicrobial activity (Hughes 1953) and this biochemical alteration the first step of which is probably acetylation occurs at widely different rates in different individuals though this rate remains relatively constant in any one person over long periods of time. A correlation has been established between the rate of metabolic inactivation of isoniazid as determined by microbiologic assay of serum levels of the antimicrobially active drug and the types of resistant mutants—catalase positive or catalase negative—which emerge in patients with pulmonary tuberculosis under treatment with isoniazid (Mandel *et al.* 1957). Thus serum assay for isoniazid may be used to estimate the concentrations of drug delivered to the multiplying tubercle bacilli in open tuberculous cavities and there is some evidence to suggest that success of chemotherapy with

this drug depends in part on the serum level of active drug and hence on the dose administered to the individual patient.

The biochemical implications of loss of catalase activity for the mechanism of loss of isoniazid susceptibility are not clear. However it has been established that catalase deficiency almost always results in decreased pathogenicity of tubercle bacilli. While very large doses of catalase negative isoniazid resistant mutants can multiply sufficiently during the first few weeks of primary infection to cause death, small inocula are unable to cause the inexorably progressive disease characteristic of virulent isoniazid susceptible strains. Thus catalase negative strain can be highly infective in spite of their diminished pathogenicity.

Catalase-deficiency is also accompanied by increased susceptibility of the bacilli to the toxic effects of exogenous  $H_2O_2$  although one anomalous catalase negative strain has been found to be quite resistant to  $H_2O_2$  and interestingly enough fully pathogenic. Thus it has been observed that the diminished pathogenicity of isoniazid resistant strains is intimately related to their  $H_2O_2$  hypersusceptibility. Therefore it has been suggested that the concentration of hydroperoxides in phagocytic cells increases during the development of host responsiveness in tuberculous infection (Middlebrook 1956).

**Combined Drug Therapy.** It was early observed that the simultaneous presence of streptomycin and another unrelated antibacterial agent in culture media prevented the appearance of streptomycin resistant mutants of tubercle bacilli *in vitro* (Middlebrook and Yegian 1946). It has also been established that clinical use of streptomycin or PAS along with isoniazid usually prevents the appearance of drug resistant tubercle bacilli in treated patients (Tuberculosis Chemotherapy Trials Committee 1955; U.S. Veterans Administration—Armed Forces 1957). Thus it has become common practice to use simultaneously at least 2 drugs on initiation of treatment of clinically active tuberculosis.

For the best chemotherapeutic result it is necessary that the population of tubercle bacilli be characterized as to its susceptibility to the antibacterial drugs which may be used.

Three chemotherapeutic agents are in common clinical use at the present time for the treatment of tuberculosis streptomycin para aminosalicylic acid (PAS) and isoniazid (INH). Streptomycin exerts its therapeutic effect by bacteriostatic activity at low concentrations and bactericidal activity at higher concentrations. Therapeutic benefit can be achieved with this drug alone in pulmonary tuberculosis genitourinary tuberculosis miliary tuberculosis tuberculous meningo-encephalitis and in the preparation of patients for thoracic surgery. The degree of benefit is dependent on many factors too complex to recount here. Suffice it to state that the results attainable are conditioned by the extent of ulceration of the tuberculous lesions (e.g. number and size of pulmonary cavities) and the speed with which necrosis is occurring at the time of initiation of chemotherapy. Thus the factors which determine the effectiveness of chemotherapy with streptomycin in tuberculosis are similar to those involved in chemotherapy of other infections in which tissue necrosis is a significant part of the disease process (McDermott, 1949). The acute exudative lesion often responds dramatically, while the large necrotic or partially necrotic lesions are controlled less readily and may persist to form the basis for further extensions of the disease after the cessation of chemotherapy.

Tubercle bacilli like other susceptible bacteria, tend to mutate to individuals resistant to streptomycin both in artificial cultures and in the tuberculous host. Since in tuberculosis one is often coping with very large populations of parasites streptomycin fastness is a conspicuous problem. Furthermore it has been observed that streptomycin resistant tubercle bacilli can infect other persons. This factor as well as the toxicity of streptomycin for the vestibular and the auditory functions has placed marked limitations on the usefulness of this drug alone in the chemotherapy of tuberculosis.

PAS exerts a bacteriostatic but little or no bactericidal effect on tubercle bacilli in vitro and has limited but recognizable chemotherapeutic activity in human disease (Therapeutic Trials Committee 1950). It is much more active against the mammalian types of tubercle bacilli than against any other microbes

thus far tested. Its antibacterial activity is competitively antagonized by low concentrations of para aminobenzoic acid.

In 1952 the third drug of the triumvirate isonicotinic acid hydrazide (isoniazid), was discovered to have potent antimicrobial activity against tubercle bacilli in vitro in experimental animals and in man. Subsequently this compound has been found to have properties which clearly make it the most important antimicrobial chemotherapeutic agent for tuberculosis. Its activity is strictly limited to tubercle bacilli; it is much less active against other mycobacteria—probably useless in leprosy for example. Isoniazid is active in vitro against over 99 per cent of strains of typical tubercle bacilli at levels of 0.02 to 0.2 mcg/ml and against one of the commonest types of atypical tubercle bacilli the yellow bacilli at 0.2 to 1.0 mcg/ml. Claims have been made that some wild strains of typical tubercle bacilli are more resistant than this but such strains must be exceedingly rare.

Isoniazid unlike streptomycin and PAS is active against intracellular tubercle bacilli. Whereas streptomycin has some sterilizing activity for tubercle bacilli provided with a carbon source but no nitrogen source or no oxygen isoniazid in contrast is sterilizing for these organisms only when they are actually multiplying.

In addition to the first line drugs streptomycin PAS and isoniazid certain other antimicrobial agents also are used in treatment particularly of patients whose bacterial populations are already resistant to the first line drugs. Among these second line drugs are pyrazinamide cycloserine ethionamide kanamycin viomycin and capreomycin. Pyrazinamide exerts its sterilizing antibacterial effects only in acidic environments in artificial media (McDermott and Tompsett 1954) and in monocyte cultures (Mackness 1956). The combination pyrazinamide and isoniazid exerts the greatest chemotherapeutic activity of any of the drug combinations thus far studied in experimental infections of mice (McCune *et al.* 1956).

As with streptomycin the mutation rate of tubercle bacilli to isoniazid resistance is high enough so that in nearly 50 per cent of isoniazid treated tuberculous patients with

ulcerative tuberculosis of the lungs isoniazid resistant mutants make their appearance in large numbers in the sputum if this drug is used alone. In fact over 90 per cent of patients who remain bacteriologically positive after 4 months of treatment with high dosage of isoniazid (8 to 16 mg/Kg/day) excrete bacilli of which a great proportion are highly resistant to the drug (to 10 or more mcg isoniazid/ml).

Two distinct types of isoniazid resistant mutants have been recognized: catalase positive and catalase negative. All isoniazid susceptible human and bovine strains of tubercle bacilli have catalase activity varying quantitatively over a fairly narrow range. Catalase positive isoniazid resistant mutants can be isolated from most isoniazid susceptible populations when these are exposed to concentrations of isoniazid just above the minimal antibacterial concentration of this drug. One step mutation to resistance to higher concentrations of isoniazid (1 or more mcg/ml) without complete loss of catalase is a very rare event. On the other hand one step mutation to high resistance to isoniazid (10 or more mcg/ml) with complete loss of catalase is common. The prevalence of such mutants is 1 in  $10^4$  to 1 in  $10^6$  in most populations of tubercle bacilli (Middlebrook 1956).

Isoniazid is metabolically altered in the human body to chemical derivatives which have little or no antimicrobial activity (Hughes 1953) and this biochemical alteration the first step of which is probably acetylation occurs at widely different rates in different individuals though this rate remains relatively constant in any one person over long periods of time. A correlation has been established between the rate of metabolic inactivation of isoniazid as determined by microbiologic assay of serum levels of the antimicrobially active drug and the types of resistant mutants—catalase positive or catalase negative—which emerge in patients with pulmonary tuberculosis under treatment with isoniazid (Mandel et al. 1957). Thus serum assay for isoniazid may be used to estimate the concentrations of drug delivered to the multiplying tubercle bacilli in open tuberculous cavities and there is some evidence to suggest that success of chemotherapy with

this drug depends in part on the serum level of active drug and hence on the dose administered to the individual patient.

The biochemical implications of loss of catalase activity for the mechanism of loss of isoniazid susceptibility are not clear. However it has been established that catalase deficiency almost always results in decreased pathogenicity of tubercle bacilli. While very large doses of catalase negative isoniazid resistant mutants can multiply sufficiently during the first few weeks of primary infection to cause death, small inocula are unable to cause the inexorably progressive disease characteristic of virulent isoniazid susceptible strains. Thus catalase negative strains can be highly infective in spite of their diminished pathogenicity.

Catalase-deficiency is also accompanied by increased susceptibility of the bacilli to the toxic effects of exogenous  $H_2O_2$  although one anomalous catalase negative strain has been found to be quite resistant to  $H_2O_2$  and interestingly enough fully pathogenic. Thus it has been observed that the diminished pathogenicity of isoniazid resistant strains is intimately related to their  $H_2O_2$  hypersusceptibility. Therefore it has been suggested that the concentration of hydroperoxides in phagocytic cells increases during the development of host responsiveness in tuberculous infection (Middlebrook 1956).

**Combined Drug Therapy.** It was early observed that the simultaneous presence of streptomycin and another unrelated antibacterial agent in culture media prevented the appearance of streptomycin resistant mutants of tubercle bacilli in vitro (Middlebrook and Yegian 1946). It has also been established that clinical use of streptomycin or PAS along with isoniazid usually prevents the appearance of drug resistant tubercle bacilli in treated patients (Tuberculosis Chemotherapy Trials Committee 1955, U.S. Veterans Administration—Armed Forces 1957). Thus it has become common practice to use simultaneously at least 2 drugs on initiation of treatment of clinically active tuberculosis.

For the best chemotherapeutic results it is necessary that the population of tubercle bacilli be characterized as to its susceptibility to the antibacterial drugs which may be used.

Three chemotherapeutic agents are in common clinical use at the present time for the treatment of tuberculosis streptomycin para aminosalicylic acid (PAS) and isoniazid (INH). Streptomycin exerts its therapeutic effect by bacteriostatic activity at low concentrations and bactericidal activity at higher concentrations. Therapeutic benefit can be achieved with this drug alone in pulmonary tuberculosis, genitourinary tuberculosis, miliary tuberculosis, tuberculous meningitis, encephalitis and in the preparation of patients for thoracic surgery. The degree of benefit is dependent on many factors too complex to recount here. Suffice it to state that the results attainable are conditioned by the extent of ulceration of the tuberculous lesions (e.g. number and size of pulmonary cavities) and the speed with which necrosis is occurring at the time of initiation of chemotherapy. Thus the factors which determine the effectiveness of chemotherapy with streptomycin in tuberculosis are similar to those involved in chemotherapy of other infections in which tissue necrosis is a significant part of the disease process (McDermott 1949). The acute exudative lesion often responds dramatically, while the large necrotic or partially necrotic lesions are controlled less readily and may persist to form the basis for further extensions of the disease after the cessation of chemotherapy.

Tubercle bacilli like other susceptible bacteria tend to mutate to individuals resistant to streptomycin both in artificial cultures and in the tuberculous host. Since in tuberculosis one is often coping with very large populations of parasites, streptomycin fastness is a conspicuous problem. Furthermore it has been observed that streptomycin resistant tubercle bacilli can infect other persons. This factor as well as the toxicity of streptomycin for the vestibular and the auditory functions has placed marked limitations on the usefulness of this drug alone in the chemotherapy of tuberculosis.

PAS exerts a bacteriostatic but little or no bactericidal effect on tubercle bacilli in vitro and has limited but recognizable chemotherapeutic activity in human disease (Therapeutic Trials Committee 1950). It is much more active against the mammalian types of tubercle bacilli than against any other microbes

thus far tested. Its antibacterial activity is competitively antagonized by low concentrations of para aminobenzoic acid.

In 1952 the third drug of the triumvirate isonicotinic acid hydrazide (isoniazid) was discovered to have potent antimicrobial activity against tubercle bacilli in vitro in experimental animals and in man. Subsequently this compound has been found to have properties which clearly make it the most important antimicrobial chemotherapeutic agent for tuberculosis. Its activity is strictly limited to tubercle bacilli; it is much less active against other mycobacteria—probably useless in leprosy for example. Isoniazid is active in vitro against over 99 per cent of strains of typical tubercle bacilli at levels of 0.02 to 0.2 mcg/ml and against one of the commonest types of atypical tubercle bacilli, the yellow bacilli, at 0.2 to 1.0 mcg/ml. Claims have been made that some wild strains of typical tubercle bacilli are more resistant than this but such strains must be exceedingly rare.

Isoniazid unlike streptomycin and PAS is active against intracellular tubercle bacilli. Whereas streptomycin has some sterilizing activity for tubercle bacilli provided with a carbon source but no nitrogen source or no oxygen, isoniazid in contrast, is sterilizing for these organisms only when they are actually multiplying.

In addition to the first line drugs streptomycin, PAS and isoniazid, certain other antimicrobial agents also are used in treatment particularly of patients whose bacterial populations are already resistant to the first line drugs. Among these 'second line' drugs are pyrazinamide, cycloserine, ethionamide, kanamycin, viomycin and capreomycin. Pyrazinamide exerts its sterilizing antibacterial effects only in acidic environments in artificial media (McDermott and Tompsett 1954) and in monocyte cultures (Mackness 1956). The combination pyrazinamide and isoniazid exerts the greatest chemotherapeutic activity of any of the drug combinations thus far studied in experimental infections of mice (McCune *et al.* 1956).

As with streptomycin, the mutation rate of tubercle bacilli to isoniazid resistance is high enough so that in nearly 50 per cent of isoniazid treated tuberculous patients with

cult to evaluate because of the differences in living conditions. It is usually assumed that the higher resistance in certain races is the result of a selection pressure occasioned by many years of endemic infection (Ferguson 1955). It is noteworthy in this connection that in experimental animals great differences in susceptibility within the species can be demonstrated by breeding experiments with out a natural selective effect of tuberculous infection (Lurie *et al* 1952, Pierce *et al* 1947).

Curiously enough there is no striking evidence in experimental animals that age has an influence on the progress of the infection but in man it is undoubtedly true that primary tuberculosis in infants has a worse prognosis than in children or adults. The death rate varies with sex and age. Tuberculosis in all race sex groups in the United States is becoming a disease of the older people. Nevertheless for the United States as a whole half of the newly reported active cases in 1956 were under 43 years of age. The differences between men and women can be due both to basic physiologic differences associated with sex and to different degrees of exposure and living conditions.

Physiologic factors undoubtedly play a major role. Sex differences in susceptibility have also been observed in mice especially after BCG immunization (Hoyt *et al* 1957).

It is generally believed that malnutrition increases susceptibility to tuberculosis. The increase in morbidity and mortality rates during wars in some countries has been attributed to concurrent malnutrition. Overcrowding and other factors were also present and their relative significance is difficult to evaluate (Dubos and Dubos 1952). It has not yet been convincingly shown that known vitamins or caloric intake have an influence on tuberculous infection in man or experimental animals. However some nutritional and metabolic factors have recently been found to affect the course of tuberculous infection in mice (Dubos 1955) and in mice and hamsters at least protein intake is of great importance (Schaedler and Dubos 1956, Ratcliffe and Merrick 1957).

The course of tuberculous infection is influenced by occupation. Exposure to tubercle bacilli is frequent in the nursing and the medical professions. Inhalation of dust containing silica (silicon dioxide) in certain trades such as granite-cutting and certain types of

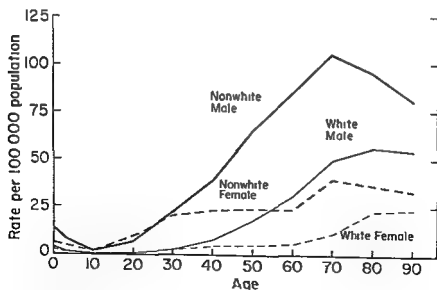


FIG 6 Age specific tuberculosis death rates by race and sex for the United States in 1956 (From 1957 Tuberculosis Chart Series U.S. Dept of Health Education and Welfare Division of Special Health Services)



This is particularly important if there is any possibility that the patient has been treated previously with one or more of these drugs or has been exposed to individuals excreting drug resistant mutants

In practice if more than 1 per cent of the population of tubercle bacilli available for drug susceptibility testing are resistant to 2 to 5 mcg of streptomycin per ml of culture medium this drug is not likely to be fully effective. The analogous concentration for isoniazid is 0.2 to 1.0 mcg and for para-aminosalicylic acid 1 to 5 mcg per ml. On the other hand if the population of tubercle bacilli harbored by a patient is susceptible to both streptomycin and isoniazid and these two drugs are given simultaneously and uninterrupted in adequate dosage for a sufficient period of time there is every reason to anticipate a successful chemotherapeutic response in over 98 per cent of cases (Russell and Middlebrook 1961). A final evaluation of intensive combined drug approach to chemotherapy of tuberculosis cannot be anticipated in view of the possible obstacle posed by the resting tubercle bacilli—so called persistors—which escape sterilization because of their phenotypic insusceptibility to drug action. Thus there is no evidence that any chemotherapeutic regimen thus far devised for tuberculosis is truly eradicated except under uncommon circumstances.

In recent years there have been many reports of a rising incidence of primary infection with drug resistant strains. Information available at present especially with regard to isoniazid resistance does not allow any conclusions about the magnitude of this problem or its possible significance for the epidemiology and the therapy of tuberculosis in the future (Mitchison 1962).

Prophylactic use of chemotherapy has been suggested for (1) preventing primary infection and (2) preventing latent infection from evolving into manifest disease. The administration of antimicrobial drugs for either of these separate purposes is beset by many practical problems not the least of which is motivating a healthy human being to take medications for many weeks or months. Nevertheless there is evidence that the administration of isoniazid can prevent

a primary infection from taking under certain experimental conditions (Cohn *et al* 1962), and there is clinical evidence that antimicrobial treatment of primary infection in the highly susceptible infant is effective in preventing the early complications of the primary complex (Robinson and Meyer 1956 Ferebee and Mount 1962). However the fact that isoniazid the agent which might practically be applied in prophylactic chemotherapy is unable to sterilize resting tubercle bacilli presents an obstacle the significance of which can be defined only by experience (Mitchison 1957). Cooperative investigations of this problem are already under way in France and in the United States (Debre 1956 Ferebee 1956). In any case programs of control of tuberculosis by chemotherapy cannot be considered to exclude immunization because the wide variations in the exposure rate in the world today provide room for either approach depending on many factors including the epidemiologic and the ecologic situation of the individual or group.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Within several species of animals certain experimentally inbred families are consistently more susceptible than others (Lewis and Loomis 1928 Lurie 1941). The physiologic factors manifesting these genetic differences have been studied but not yet clarified.

In man the role of genetic factors in susceptibility is illustrated best in the study of tuberculosis in homozygotic and heterozygotic twins (Kallmann and Reisner 1943). If one homozygotic twin has clinical tuberculosis the other twin has 3 chances in 4 of being affected also whereas if one heterozygotic twin has the disease the other has only 1 chance in 3 of developing clinical tuberculosis. Studies aimed at the demonstration of familial differences in susceptibility (Puffer 1944) are difficult to interpret because of the complicating variable of amount of exposure.

The incidence and the type of disease are different in the American Indian, the Negro and the white races, the former two appearing to be more susceptible (Opie *et al* 1936) (Fig. 6). These differences are diffi-

cult to evaluate because of the differences in living conditions. It is usually assumed that the higher resistance in certain races is the result of a selection pressure occasioned by many years of endemic infection (Ferguson 1955). It is noteworthy in this connection that in experimental animals great differences in susceptibility within the species can be demonstrated by breeding experiments with out a natural selective effect of tuberculous infection (Lurie *et al* 1952 Pierce *et al* 1947).

Curiously enough there is no striking evidence in experimental animals that age has an influence on the progress of the infection but in man it is undoubtedly true that primary tuberculosis in infants has a worse prognosis than in children or adults. The death rate varies with sex and age. Tuberculosis in all race sex groups in the United States is becoming a disease of the older people. Nevertheless for the United States as a whole half of the newly reported active cases in 1956 were under 43 years of age. The differences between men and women can be due both to basic physiologic differences associated with sex and to different degrees of exposure and living conditions.

Physiologic factors undoubtedly play a major role. Sex differences in susceptibility have also been observed in mice especially after BCG immunization (Hoyt *et al* 1957).

It is generally believed that malnutrition increases susceptibility to tuberculosis. The increase in morbidity and mortality rates during wars in some countries has been attributed to concurrent malnutrition. Overcrowding and other factors were also present and their relative significance is difficult to evaluate (Dubos and Dubos 1952). It has not yet been convincingly shown that known vitamins or caloric intake have an influence on tuberculous infection in man or experimental animals. However some nutritional and metabolic factors have recently been found to affect the course of tuberculous infection in mice (Dubos 1955) and in mice and hamsters at least protein intake is of great importance (Schaedler and Dubos 1956 Ratcliffe and Merrick 1957).

The course of tuberculous infection is influenced by occupation. Exposure to tubercle bacilli is frequent in the nursing and the medical professions. Inhalation of dust containing silica (silicon dioxide) in certain trades such as granite-cutting and certain types of

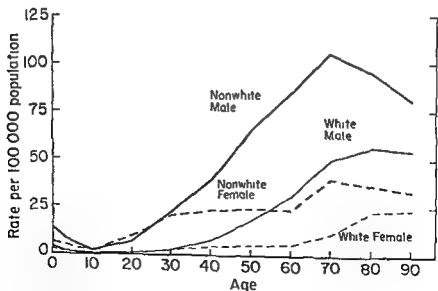


FIG 5 Age specific tuberculosis death rates by race and sex for the United States in 1956 (From 1957 Tuberculosis Chart Series U S Dept of Health Education and Welfare Division of Special Health Services)

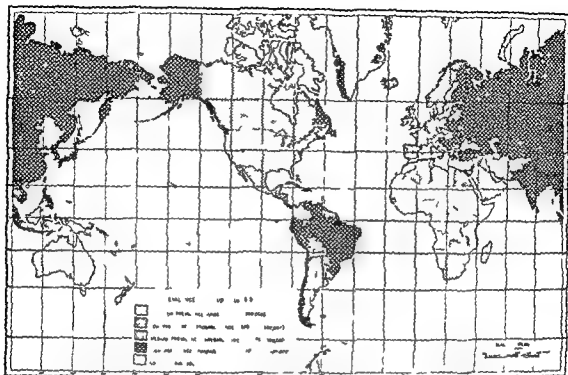


FIG 7 Prevalence of tuberculosis as estimated from the probable death rates from all forms of tuberculosis in the various countries of the world (Yelton S F 1946 Tuberculosis throughout the world Pub Health Rep 61 1144-1160)

mining increases the susceptibility to progressive pulmonary disease. This is an important industrial health problem. In experimental animals the pathologic changes induced by silica accelerate the disease in pulmonary and extrapulmonary sites wherever silica and tubercle bacilli are associated. Silica has no direct effect on the parasite; its local toxic action on the tissue of the host in some way promotes the disease.

The distinction between infection and disease is very significant in the epidemiology of tuberculosis. The infection is more widespread in urban than in rural populations. The risk of infection has been declining in all parts of the United States and is now estimated to be less than 5 new infections per 1 000 young adults per year at the present time; in some areas it is higher and in others it is less than 1 new infection per 1 000 young adults per annum. Still in 1962 there were estimated to be at least 35 million living Americans who had been infected with tubercle bacilli. At the end of the calendar year 1960 there were 58 000 hospitalized

cases of tuberculosis and 62 000 unhospitalized cases in the United States with an additional 50 000 other persons under drug therapy (USPHS 1963). Thus disease at any given time in the clinically progressive form is present only in a small percentage of persons infected with tubercle bacilli. Chronic tuberculosis in individuals over the age of 50 is often not recognized before necropsy.

Tubercle bacilli of human type are transmitted from person to person almost exclusively by airborne droplet nuclei of sputum. Bacilli of the bovine type reach man usually by way of unpasteurized milk from the tuberculous cow; they also can be transmitted by the same route as the human type. Important aspects of the infection essential for the understanding of the epidemiology of the disease are:

- 1 Infectious droplet nuclei containing tubercle bacilli originate from persons with ulcerated tuberculous lesions of the airways; however small such ulcers or cavities may be.

- 2 Not all infections result in disease.

recognizable by roentgenograms or other clinical means Household contact is an important factor in infection

3 The disease may have an acute sublethal onset followed many months or years later by excavation of necrotic pulmonary tissue cavitation and chronic phthisis

4 In some individuals it may be fairly advanced with cavity formation and large numbers of tubercle bacilli in the sputum and produce scant if any specific clinical symptoms As carriers these individuals spread the infection

5 The progress and the type of infection are influenced by many factors such as age and previous exposure Recovery from one attack of clinical disease does not result in solid immunity

6 The reinfection type of tuberculosis commonly seen in adults is sometimes exogenous (see Pathology)

7 Microepidemics in schoolrooms and school buses are becoming increasingly recognized as important epidemiologic patterns of tuberculous infection (Mahady 1961)

Tuberculosis has been known in urban civilization since the beginning of recorded history In western civilization the death rate has been declining since 1870 i.e. before the discovery of the parasite While no longer among the leading causes of death in the United States tuberculosis is still the most frequent cause of death between the ages of 15 and 45 years and probably the principal cause of death in the world The fact that many individuals young and old are incapacitated for long periods of time by tuberculosis although they may not die of it gives it great social and economic significance The ratio of newly discovered active cases to deaths per year in the United States is about 6 to 1 The decrease in mortality rate from tuberculosis has not been paralleled by an equal decrease in morbidity and prevalence of infection It appears likely that the present rate of decline in mortality will continue as a result of chemotherapy but morbidity will surely decline more slowly In the Orient in Central and South America in Africa and in Asia both morbidity and mortality rates are still very high (Fig 7)

## CONTROL MEASURES

McPhedran and Opie (1935) wrote The spread of tuberculosis occurs in large part by long drawn-out family or household epidemics in which the disease is slowly transmitted from one generation to the next For many decades this observation served as a basis for most of the measures used in the control of tuberculosis However during the past decade it has become increasingly recognized that the ecology of tuberculosis has changed It has changed in three ways The epidemics are no longer long and drawn-out Family and household contacts still account for the major proportion of new infections in children However in adults new infections are not so commonly familial as they were some years ago And finally the expression the disease is slowly transmitted is inconsistent with contemporary knowledge of the epidemiology of tuberculous infection and disease

Perhaps the most important single aspect of the infection (which must always precede the disease) is the fact that it is initiated today by a single droplet nucleus directly from the nebulizing respiratory tract of an individual who has large numbers of tubercle bacilli in the sputum If nebulization is ineffective—lack of sufficiently forceful cough or sneeze—or if there are few or no tubercle bacilli in the sputum a new infection will not be established in another individual Other variables are involved too such as the nature and the quantity of ventilation of the environment which influence the behavior of the potentially infectious droplet nucleus

Although the reasons for carrying out certain measures in the control of tuberculosis have changed nevertheless the measures themselves have changed only quantitatively This applies to the control of tuberculous infection and disease in populations in general and especially to so-called captive populations such as schools hospitals military personnel industrial personnel and government employees The following are the important steps in control of tuberculosis

- 1 Prevent infection.

- 2 If infection does occur detect it and its source as certainly and as early as possible

3 Treat the young infection with one or more antimicrobial drugs

4 If infection has been initiated at some unknown time more than one year prior to its first being detected look for and continue to monitor for active disease

5 Treat active disease effectively with the aim of complete rehabilitation

These theoretic ideal goals are not and perhaps, cannot be perfectly achieved in practice. However it will be useful for the continuation and the development of operational procedures to analyze practical approaches with these goals in mind.

The first goal—prevention of infection—is approached practically from two standpoints: control of potential sources of infection on the one hand and on the other protection of the exposed individual. The isolation of the actual or the potential spreader was the first widely applied public health measure after the discovery of tubercle bacilli by Robert Koch. In practice however even today isolation means different things to different people. Recent studies of Riley *et al* (O'Grady and Riley 1963) at Johns Hopkins re-emphasize the importance of airborne droplet nucleus directly from the individual with large numbers of tubercle bacilli in the sputum as the sole source of the infectious agents of tuberculosis in modern civilization. And they re-establish the improbability of contact infection clearly distinguishing the mode of transmission of tuberculous infection from the commonly accepted mode of transmission of enteric infections.

Preoccupation with the careful disposal of physical articles in the environment of the patient, sterilization of eating utensils and disinfection of articles which may be contaminated by fomites containing tubercle bacilli seem to be unjustified in the context of what is presently known concerning the mode of transmission and introduction of tubercle bacilli to the susceptible locus in the human subject. The susceptible locus seems to be the pulmonary spaces proximal to the ciliary mucous escalator. Unlike potentially infectious droplet nuclei with aerodynamic dimension less than 5 microns in diameter dust particles from fomites appear to be non-infectious simply by virtue of the fact that their size is very rarely as small.

With regard to the protection of exposed individuals, the advisability of the use of vaccination or other immunization procedures deserves to be seriously considered. There seems to be no doubt that vaccination with BCG, under the best conditions provides up to 80 per cent protection against tuberculous disease. Data from experimental animal studies as well as from clinical observations on human beings would appear to indicate that vaccination with BCG does not protect against infection under natural conditions with virulent tubercle bacilli. Many authorities have expressed the opinion that in the United States the advantages of the vaccination are outweighed by the disadvantages of obscuring the usefulness of the tuberculin test for continued epidemiologic monitoring especially in the face of the relative effectiveness of chemoprophylaxis of young infections and multiple drug treatment of established active disease.

With regard to the detection of infection the tuberculin skin test still has great merit in spite of the interfering effect of the consequences of infection with mycobacteria other than *M. tuberculosis*. Detection plays the major role in present day programs of control of tuberculosis where the incidence of infection is low as is the case now in the general population of the United States.

It now seems feasible and economical to test with tuberculin school children and as many individuals in other population groups as possible and to repeat skin testing in connection with the normal cycling of other general medical and immunologic procedures permitting continued monitoring of the epidemiologic situation.

In microepidemics the source should be vigorously sought and it is usually not difficult to find. On the other hand sources of new infections contracted in high incidence areas of the United States or of the world are usually very difficult to identify.

Finally it seems important to stress treatment or prophylaxis of infection aimed at preventing infection from becoming overt disease. The United States Public Health Service studies have clearly shown that this is possible. Furthermore the use of one drug normally isoniazid seems sufficient especially in consideration of the disadvantages and the expense of using more than this.

drug alone for such purpose. The customary period of recommended administration of isoniazid for chemoprophylaxis is one year in a single dose per day. Some authorities do not believe that it need be so long but information is insufficient to define the minimum effective period. The principal difficulty encountered in this area is in deciding whether or not to treat an individual with clearly positive tuberculin hypersensitivity when the duration of time between the contraction of infection and the observation of tuberculin hypersensitivity is unknown but more than a year or so. This matter is controversial and is likely to remain so.

Some authorities administer isoniazid to individuals who are predisposed to the development of tuberculous disease such as diabetics, individuals receiving steroids, genetically predisposed individuals, etc., reasoning that possible benefits of isoniazid outweigh the risk of toxicity.

The ideal program of tuberculosis control must always emphasize continued training of physicians, nurses, bacteriologists, pathologists, radiologists and technicians. The extrapolation of curves now available in regard to the changes in the incidence of new infections and of active disease suggests a much slower disappearance of tuberculosis than was originally foreseen following introduction of effective therapy.

It is difficult to evaluate the comparative effectiveness of the conscious public health measures of the last 60 years and the rise in the standard of living in combating tuberculosis in the United States and Europe. It seems probable that improved economic status, with less crowding in households, better ventilation, better nutrition and better education as to personal hygiene during this century has had a very large share in diminishing the prevalence of tuberculous infection and disease.

#### TUBERCULIN

Old Tuberculin (OT) is prepared in the following manner. Tubercle bacilli are grown on a glycerine broth or a completely synthetic medium for 4 to 6 weeks, the cultures are steamed at 100°C for a few hours and then evaporated to one tenth of the original volume and passed through a filter to remove the bacteria. The order of evap-

orating and filtering may be reversed. It is possible to obtain fractions of the culture filtrates of tubercle bacilli possessing higher tuberculin activity per unit of dry weight than such crude preparations. Tuberculin activity is associated with the protein fractions of tubercle bacilli (see Chemical Constituents of *Mycobacteria*). Now widely used are fractions of culture filtrates of tubercle bacilli called PPD (purified protein derivative) obtained either by trichloroacetic acid or half saturated ammonia sulfate precipitation. No preparations of tuberculo-proteins have been obtained free of polysaccharide and nucleic acid. Both the old tuberculin and PPD preparations have to be standardized in guinea pigs or man since biologic activity varies with different lots.\*

Tuberculins made with human or bovine strains and from *M. kansasii* and *M. balnei* cannot be distinguished from each other but are quite different from avian tuberculin. PPD preparations from Battey strains as well as from pathogenic scotochromogenic strains are sufficiently different from similar preparations from tubercle bacilli to permit their use in clinical differentiation of these infections (Edwards and Edwards 1960).

For the Mantoux or intradermal skin test one tenth of a milliliter of a high dilution of tuberculin is injected into the skin over the forearm. When active tuberculous disease is definitely suspected it is customary to use first a small dose 0.01 mg (0.1 ml of 1:10,000 dilution) and then if there is no reaction a larger dose namely 1 mg (0.1 ml of 1:100 dilution). The PPD preparation is used in amounts which produce reactions corresponding in intensity to 0.01 mg (first strength), 0.05 or 0.1 mg (intermediate strength) and 1 mg OT (second strength). The intermediate strength is commonly recommended for mass surveys today. It is the equivalent of 5 or 10 international tuberculin units (TU). The tuberculin reaction is characterized by delayed appearance and relatively long duration. It usually appears several hours after injection and the maximum response may be seen in 1 or 2 days. The reaction is considered as definitely positive if there is an induration more than 10 mm in diameter.

\* One standardized lot of PPD is commercially available for clinical use at the present time.

erythema is usually present but is not considered in judging the size of the reaction in white persons it is commonly graded according to the longest diameter of the area indurated. A papule or vesicle may develop in the central part of the indurated area and necrosis may occur here. Weak reactions may appear and disappear faster than the stronger reactions; they may be missed if the skin test is not read on the day following injection. No control is necessary for the intracutaneous tuberculin test.

Other forms of skin testing have been suggested to avoid the use of injections. The oldest is the von Pirquet scratch test which consists of rubbing tuberculin into a scratched area; tuberculin may be incorporated into an ointment or used as a patch test (Vollmer patch). More recently the Heaf gun (Andersen and Smith 1960) and the tine technic (Rosenthal 1961; Badger *et al.* 1963) have been introduced; particularly for convenience and economy in mass tuberculin testing surveys. These methods of skin testing are less quantitative than the intracutaneous test.

A positive tuberculin test indicates that the reactor has been infected but it does not necessarily indicate disease. It is often positive in the absence of lesions recognizable by roentgenograms. Lack of reaction indicates absence of infection with the following qualifications: the person may be in the pre-allergic state during the early stage of first infection (a period not exceeding a month) or he may have lost allergy due to overwhelming tuberculous infection or to unrelated infections, especially measles. The latter is uncommon. In general persons with active lesions and those exposed recently and often (household contacts) react to smaller doses of tuberculin than others (Furcolow *et al.* 1941). Furthermore the intensity of a positive reaction in an individual who presents no additional evidence of active disease has some prognostic significance since it has been observed that those who react more strongly are more likely to develop clinically demonstrable disease in the future. The tuberculin test is of great value in excluding tuberculosis and also in epidemiologic studies to indicate the prevalence of infection. Loss of tuberculin sensitiv-

ity in persons with healed tuberculosis of first infection has been observed repeatedly in recent years, and it can be induced in experimental animals by chemotherapy. Casual contacts with tubercle bacilli are becoming less frequent. Thus one factor in conditioning the maintenance of tuberculin allergy is becoming less prevalent. Tuberculin skin sensitivity is often lost in persons who develop Boeck's sarcoid (Reisner 1944).

False positive reactions to the larger doses of tuberculin (50 to 250 TU) occur in certain geographic areas notably across the southern part of the United States in Egypt and in certain parts of India (Palmer 1953). It seems probable that the great majority of weak positive reactions given by persons residing in the southeastern part of the United States are attributable to infection with Battey strains (Edwards *et al.* 1959). The existence of such false positive reactions to tuberculin must be recognized if a true picture of the epidemiology of tuberculosis is to be obtained.

When a large amount of tuberculin (0.5 ml of undiluted OT for instance) is injected into a tuberculous guinea pig a systemic reaction ensues quite gradually; the tubercles and the surrounding tissues become congested and often hemorrhagic exudate appears in the peritoneal and the pleural cavities and the animal may die in 24 to 72 hours. What relationship this reaction bears to tuberculin allergy of the skin is not clear. Anaphylactic symptoms usually fail to appear. Systemic tuberculin reactions may also be produced in hypersensitive human beings and untoward effects may be produced with excessive doses in ocular tuberculosis and tuberculous cervical adenitis but the previously disastrous consequence of such reactions can be controlled by cortisone and antimicrobial chemotherapy.

As already discussed hypersensitivity of the skin to tuberculin indicates infection but not necessarily disease. A negative test usually rules out infection. A positive tuberculin reaction in an infant indicates progressive disease requiring antimicrobial chemotherapy because of their high susceptibility. Conversion from negative to positive signifies recent exposure and infection; frequent examinations of such cases are indicated, especially

because chemotherapy with isoniazid may prevent the subsequent development of clinical disease (see Chemotherapy)

## LABORATORY PROCEDURES

### *Bacteriologic Methods*

The bacteriologic diagnosis of tuberculosis rests on the demonstration of tubercle bacilli in the sputum or other pathologic material from a patient. A few years ago the laboratory diagnosis of tuberculosis could be made on the basis of the finding of acid fast bacilli in a suitably stained smear of the material submitted to the laboratory. Today it is desirable if not essential to culture routinely all specimens submitted for examination for acid fast bacilli. With adequate culture methods the more expensive procedure of animal inoculation is rarely needed for diagnostic purposes. In addition to being a much more sensitive method for detecting acid fast organisms than either direct or concentrated smear the culture technic provides essential information on the properties of the infecting organism which are relevant to therapy.

At this time approximately 98 per cent of human pulmonary mycobacterioses in the United States are caused by the classic human type tubercle bacillus. The remaining 2 per cent of human infections have been shown recently to be caused by other species of mycobacteria. In some areas of this country the incidence of infections caused by these unclassified acid fast organisms may be as high as 10 per cent.

It is necessary for these infectious agents to be identified precisely in the laboratory because the prognosis and the response to drug therapy differ greatly for infections caused by each individual type of mycobacterium. All mycobacteria are acid fast and it is usually not possible to differentiate typical tubercle bacilli from the other unclassified mycobacteria on the basis of a Ziehl-Neelsen stain alone. In Table I are shown some of the differential characteristics of the more frequently encountered mycobacterial species associated with pulmonary disease. With use of these cultural differences and the appropriate laboratory procedures most mycobacteria can be iden-

tified precisely within 3 to 4 weeks after submission of the specimen to the laboratory (Middlebrook and Cohn 1958, Veterans Administration 1962).

In addition to routine cultures the clinician treating tuberculosis today should have drug susceptibility studies made on the acid fast organisms isolated from the patient. A few years ago it was customary to obtain this information by first isolating the mycobacteria on egg medium then emulsifying or subculturing the growth and finally inoculating a series of tubes of suitable culture medium containing graded concentrations of selected antituberculosis drugs. This so-called indirect drug susceptibility test required 6 to 10 weeks from the time the original sputum specimen was submitted to the laboratory. It is practical to inoculate decontaminated clinical material submitted for culture directly on medium containing clinically useful concentrations of primary drugs (isoniazid, streptomycin and para-aminosalicylic acid). This is done conveniently by the use of Felsen quadrant petri dishes and 7H 10 medium (Russell and Middlebrook 1961). This direct method routinely provides culture reports and primary drug susceptibility results in 3 weeks.

The widespread use of the primary antituberculosis drugs during the past 15 years has caused the selection of isoniazid and/or streptomycin resistant strains of tubercle bacilli in many patients who were improperly treated with these drugs. Obviously primary chemotherapy regimens no longer will help these patients. However appropriate combinations of two or more of the available secondary antituberculosis drugs usually can provide effective treatment. The direct method can be used to test for bacterial susceptibility to selected concentrations of these secondary drugs as well.

One of the earliest indications of a satisfactory chemotherapeutic response in a patient is the disappearance of acid fast bacilli from his excretions. Sputum conversion usually precedes roentgenographic evidence of the regression of tuberculous lesions. Frequent cultures i.e. at intervals of 2 to 4 weeks will provide the clinician with one of the best and most rapid qualitative measures of response to treatment. In those rare in-



stances in which relapse or failure does occur these detailed bacteriologic studies can provide a retrospective understanding of the factors involved and provide guidance for treatment.

Properly used contemporary laboratory methods can provide an earlier definitive diagnosis, more rapid selection of appropriate and adequate drug regimens and a resulting reduction in the total hospitalization period for patients with tuberculosis. The money saved through decreased hospitalization greatly exceeds that used to upgrade the available bacteriology services to provide the new and rapid laboratory tests needed for the modern treatment of tuberculosis.

**Concentration, Stained Smear and Culture** Morning sputum or a collection of sputa over a period of 24 hours can be liquefied enzymatically or by any of various agents (sodium hydroxide, sulfuric acid, oxalic acid, trisodium phosphate,  $\alpha$ -acetyl cysteine in sodium hydroxide) which are bactericidal for many contaminating microorganisms but less so for tubercle bacilli (Kubica *et al.* 1963). The liquefied sputum is centrifuged, the sediment is washed and then planted on appropriate media. Some laboratories plant two different dilutions of the final sediment for two purposes: (1) to avoid the toxic effect of some sputum sediments which is occasionally encountered in practice and (2) to control the size of the inoculum in direct drug susceptibility testing so as not to obscure a high proportion of drug susceptible members of the population by overgrowth of drug resistant mutants on medium containing drug.

**Animal Inoculation** In some laboratories a portion of the material prepared for culture is inoculated into the groin of young guinea pigs. The animals are tested with tuberculin at intervals of a few weeks and examined for tuberculosis when the reaction becomes positive. The relative values of the cultural and the animal inoculation methods vary in different laboratories. The cultural method is to be preferred under nearly all circumstances.

The general technics described above for sputum examination are also applicable to the examination of gastric contents (in chil-

dren or when the patient cannot raise sputum), pleural fluid, urine (smegma bacilli; frequently may be found in stained films of urine sediments) and spinal fluid. The fibrin web which forms after brief incubation of spinal fluid may be transferred directly to a slide and examined and cultured. Biopsy material may be frozen, then macerated and subjected to the above procedures.

Positive findings are proportional to the frequency of examinations. One or two negative findings do not rule out tuberculosis or other mycobacterioses.

### Serologic Methods

Many attempts have been made to devise a serologic test to aid in the diagnosis of tuberculosis. The most widely studied serologic methods have been complement fixation reactions. Such serologic tests have given too high a percentage of "false positive" reactions with human sera to warrant their routine clinical use.

New types of serologic reactions have been devised recently which involve the phenomenon of adsorption of antigens of tubercle bacilli onto erythrocytes. When red cells so sensitized are exposed to sera containing antibodies against the adsorbed antigens, the red cells are agglutinated (Middlebrook and Dubos 1948; Boyden 1951). If complement is added to the mixture of sensitized red cells and specific antiserum, the red cells are lysed (Middlebrook 1950b). A third hemagglutination method in which tuberculin (PPD) is linked to formalized erythrocytes by bis diazotized benzidine, has been described (Cole and Farrell 1955). Methods for eliminating a serum fraction which appears to be unrelated to tuberculous infection or disease by column chromatography in DEAE cellulose or by treatment of the serum with mercaptoethanol suggest that the incidence of false positive reactions may be reduced, but the limits of diagnostic usefulness of such tests involving hemagglutination or hemolysis have not yet been defined (Turlette *et al.* 1963).

An agar gel double-diffusion precipitate test is currently under study for the diagnosis of tuberculosis (Parlett and Youmans, 1959).

## TUBERCULOSIS IN ANIMALS

The host range of tubercle bacilli is almost unlimited. The mammalian types can infect wild animals in captivity especially primates and domestic animals including dogs and cats (Hawthorne *et al* 1957). Avian tubercle bacilli infect—besides fowl—swine and rarely cattle, sheep and horses. In aquaria fishes and turtles occasionally suffer from progressive tuberculosis caused by mycobacteria pathogenic for poikilothermic animals.

Large numbers of cattle are infected with the bovine type of tubercle bacilli and many have progressive disease. Tubercle bacilli are often present in the milk of infected cows even if tubercles are not demonstrable in the udder\*. Most infected cattle in the United States have no gross pulmonary tuberculosis but only infected lymph nodes. Generalized tuberculosis is not frequent. The infection is diagnosed by the subcutaneous tuberculin test (local inflammatory reaction often associated with fever). The demonstration of tubercle bacilli in the milk is rarely used for diagnosis. For the eradication of cattle tuberculosis in the United States herds are tuberculin tested periodically and the reactors are slaughtered. The rate of infection in the United States was reduced from about 5 per cent in 1917 to 0.1 per cent in 1963. In other countries less expensive methods are used such as slaughtering grossly tuberculous cows and segregating the reactors.

Tuberculosis in the chicken is most conspicuous in the liver but the spleen, the intestines, the lungs and other organs are also affected. Avian tubercle bacilli may be present in hens' eggs. The infection can be diagnosed by injection of avian tuberculin into the wattle. In the United States between 1925 and 1963 about 4.1 per cent of chicken flocks were estimated to be infected with avian tubercle bacilli.

Pigs are infected usually with bovine or avian tubercle bacilli and rarely with the human type. Infection results from ingestion of contaminated milk or maternal contamination.

\* In the milk of tuberculous women tubercle bacilli are very rarely found unless there are tubercles in the mammary glands and this is most uncommon.

nated with feces of tuberculous fowl. The infection in pigs is usually localized in lymph nodes of the alimentary canal.

## MYCOBACTERIUM ULCERANS AND MYCOBACTERIUM BALNEI

*Mycobacterium ulcerans* (MacCallum *et al* 1948) is the primary etiologic agent of a chronic or subacute type of ulceration involving both cutis and adjacent subcutaneous tissues on either the upper or the lower extremities of human beings. Direct films of the exudate of such lesions reveal many acid fast rods separately in bundles or in short cords indistinguishable morphologically from mammalian tubercle bacilli. Visceral lesions have not been observed. The epidemiology of the disease is obscure; the numbers of individuals affected are small; they live in rural areas and show no suggestively significant geographic distribution. Cases have been reported from Australia, West Africa and Mexico.

The bacilli can be cultivated on any of the usual media suitable for tubercle bacilli provided that the temperature of incubation is maintained within the limits of 25 to 35°C. Their rate of multiplication approximates that of the bovine and the human types of tubercle bacilli. They are pathogenic for rats, mice and guinea pigs but progressive lesions occur only in those anatomic parts which normally have a temperature lower than 37°C such as the extremities, the tip of the nose, the tail and the testes. There is little doubt that the anatomic localization of lesions is attributable to the odd temperature requirements of this mycobacterium. Of some interest from a bacteriologic as well as an epidemiologic standpoint is the fact that no other qualitative differences between this organism and the classic mammalian strains of tubercle bacilli have been observed either in serologic or in tuberculin tests.

*Mycobacterium balnei* (Norden and Linell 1951) is another species of pathogenic mycobacteria which causes granulomatous lesions of the extremities and is unable to multiply at temperatures above 35°C. Swimming pools appear to be the principal source of infection with these organisms.

Aquariums and tropical fish tanks can also be the source. Indeed *M. balnei* is identical with *M. marinum* first isolated and named by Aronson (1926). These organisms differ from *M. ulcerans* in their much more rapid multiplication in vitro and in vivo (in the footpad of the mouse and in chick embryos) at 33° C. and in the photochromogenic yellow color of their colonies.

Heterologous immunity has been demonstrated in mice between *M. ulcerans* and *M. balnei*. BCG also induces a high degree of protection against challenge infection with both species. In contrast *M. ulcerans* and *M. balnei* appear to be much less effective in eliciting immunity to virulent bovine tubercle bacilli (Larson and Wicht, 1963).

### JOHNE'S DISEASE

This is a specific enteritis of cattle, sheep and deer caused by acid fast bacilli called Johne's bacilli (*M. paratuberculosis*). The disease has a long incubation period and runs a very chronic course characterized by intermittent diarrhea and progressive emaciation without fever. In certain countries it causes serious economic loss in cattle. It is not pathogenic for man.

*M. paratuberculosis* is a short thick rod which is acid fast and does not form spores. On primary isolation it can be cultivated only on media containing an as yet unidentified substance or substances present in acid fast bacilli or in alcoholic extracts of certain plants (Twort and Ingram, 1912). Recently a crystalline growth factor for *M. paratuberculosis* named mycobactin has been isolated from *M. phlei*. This substance effectively substitutes for extracts of *M. phlei* as a growth factor for *M. paratuberculosis* but the lag phase for growth of the latter on egg media to which mycobactin is added is still remarkably long (Rose and Snow, 1955).

The lesions are characterized by gross thickening of the mucosa of the small intestine and enlargement of the mesenteric lymph nodes without ulceration. The cellular reaction about the bacilli which may be intracellular or extracellular is diffuse not localized as in tuberculosis. Lymphoid and epithelioid cells are present, giant cells are rare, caseation and calcification do not occur. A skin test with johnin analogous to tuber-

culin, is used as an aid in the diagnosis of this disease.

### LEPROSY

Since it is characteristically present in leprosy lesions *M. leprae* (Hansen's bacillus) has been accepted as the etiologic agent of leprosy, although no cultures have been obtained that produce the disease in experimental animals. Several strains of acid fast organisms have been cultivated from leprosy lesions but those which appear to be especially significant have not been propagated in successive cultures. Sera of patients with leprosy do not react specifically with the so-called *M. leprae* cultures.

Shepard has recently observed that *M. leprae* can be isolated and cultivated regularly in the footpads of mice (1963). It has long been known that the sites that seem to be most severely involved in human leprosy are those of the coolest tissues. The mouse footpad is uniquely cool, closer to the temperature of human skin and nasal mucous membrane than any other readily available tissue in the laboratory. In footpads the generation time during the logarithmic growth phase was 12 to 13 days.

In histologic sections leprosy bacilli are from 1.5 to 4 microns long and from 0.2 to 0.5 micron in diameter. They are straight or slightly curved and often occur in globular masses known as globi and in groups arranged as parallel rods. As a rule leprosy bacilli are stained uniformly red with carbol fuchsin but occasionally granules can be seen. Lepromin, somewhat analogous to tuberculin, is the name given to a suspension of lepromatous tissue rich in bacilli. Mitsuda used it in skin tests as early as 1916.

The disease occurs in nodular (cutaneous) and neural (anesthetic) forms. Both are often present in the same patient. Either of these forms may be manifested by lepromatous, tuberculoid or rarely intermediate types of lesions. In the lepromatous type the lesions contain many bacilli, the lepromin skin test is negative and the prognosis is poor. In the tuberculoid type there are few bacilli in the lesions, the lepromin test is positive at 24 to 48 hours and again at 2 to 4 weeks, and the prognosis is good.

The tuberculin test is not affected by the

presence or the absence of leprosy. On the other hand patients with active tuberculosis often give a positive reaction to lepromin and BCG vaccination usually produces lepromin as well as tuberculin conversions. It may be assumed from these observations that there is little or no immunologic cross reactivity between the proteins of *M. tuberculosis* and *M. leprae* but these two organisms possess some common antigens. Indeed the sera of patients with lepromatous lesions usually contain large amounts of antibodies against one or more components of tuberculin which are adsorbable onto red cells in the hemagglutination test. In nonlepromatous cases the positives are fewer and the titres lower in spite of the fact that such individuals have a better prognosis (Lowe 1955; Cochrane 1955).

It would appear that immunization of mice with heat killed human tubercle bacilli or with BCG vaccine effects a definite but partial degree of suppression of multiplication of *M. leprae* in the footpad (Shepard 1963). BCG is being studied as a possible agent for immunization against leprosy.

In nodular leprosy the skin is raised over firm nodules (lepromata) which are most frequently present on exposed parts such as the face and the extremities. The skin often ulcerates and secondary infections may set in. The neural form affects peripheral particularly sensory nerves producing anesthesia. Due to lack of sensation the affected hands and feet are likely to be injured leading to mutilation of these parts. Lesions may develop in almost all organs except voluntary muscle. The cartilage of the nose is often destroyed the mucous membranes of the mouth and the nose, the eye and the testes are frequently affected. Lesions are common in lymph nodes. They are characterized by granulation tissue well supplied with blood vessels and lymph ducts. There are many large mononuclear cells containing numerous acid fast bacilli and fat globules. Multinucleated giant cells are often present. Most of the acid fast bacilli are in the endothelial cells of the lymph ducts and the blood vessels. In the neural lesions the bacilli are in the perineural and the epineural tissue producing extensive formation of granulation tissue. The nerve fibers degenerate with loss of motor function as well as sensation. There

fore the hands and the feet may undergo atrophy.

The disease usually progresses very slowly the neural type is particularly insidious. Remissions often occur. This fact has made evaluation of possible therapeutic measures very difficult. Chaulmoogra oil and its derivatives have been used for many decades in the treatment of leprosy but not until the advent of the sulfonamide-like compounds have unequivocal chemotherapeutic effects been demonstrable. The sulfones are the drugs of choice in the treatment of certain forms of leprosy (Bushby 1958). Isoniazid is ineffective in dosage of 3 to 5 mg/Kg/day. However in footpads of mice isoniazid and para-aminosalicylic acid in adequate dosage suppressed bacillary multiplication completely (Shepard 1963). This combination of drugs has not yet been given adequate clinical trial in leprosy.

The bacteriologic diagnosis is most often made by finding acid fast bacilli in scrapings of the nasal mucosa and in the tissue fluid expressed after superficial incisions of the skin in certain areas. There is no serologic test of value. It may be noted that a large percentage of leprosy patients who have neither syphilis nor yaws are Wassermann positive.

The disease is believed to have originated in Central Africa whence it spread to all parts of Europe and subsequently to the rest of the world. It is widely disseminated in the Orient. It is estimated that there are 3 million lepers in the world about 750 in the United States and over 30 000 in Central and South America.

All human races are susceptible to the disease and it is said that susceptibility has a genetic basis. This opinion is based on the greater incidence of the disease in siblings than in their parents in the same household. However this conclusion may not be valid. Susceptibility is greatest in childhood. The ratio of the incidence of the disease in males to the incidence in females is approximately 2 to 1.

The incubation period varies from a few months to many years, most commonly from 2 to 4 years. The ulcers of the skin and the nasal discharge are probably the most important sources of infection. The disease is not highly contagious and probably is ac-

quired by infecting superficial abrasions of the skin. It is likely that persons can acquire the infection without developing manifest disease. It has not been shown that animal vectors spread the infection. The most effective prevention in endemic areas is the segregation of patients in leprosanaria while patients in temperate climes need not be segregated. The removal of children from leprosy parents has proved to be a useful prophylactic measure.

Unlike the tubercle bacillus *M. leprae* of man does not produce progressive infection in animals. But rats in many countries have a disease called rat leprosy which is characterized by nodular skin lesions containing acid fast bacilli (*M. leprae murium*) difficult to cultivate and nonpathogenic for other species of animals. There is no evidence that rat leprosy can be transmitted to man or that the rat plays any role as vector for human leprosy.

It is interesting to compare *M. tuberculosis* and *M. leprae*. Tubercle bacilli have many types and their host range is almost unlimited; they can be cultivated on artificial media. There are only 2 known types of *M. leprae* and they are exclusively pathogenic either for man or for rats, mice and hamsters. *M. leprae* has not been cultivated in vitro (Hanks and Gray 1956). Tuberculosis has been the disease of urban civilization and occurs in domestic animals. Leprosy is prevalent in the tropics among people who live under rural conditions. After its introduction to Europe from the Near East the disease became endemic until the 16th century and then disappeared.

## REFERENCES

- Allgower M. and Bloch H. 1949 The effect of tubercle bacilli on the migration of phagocytes in vitro. *Am Rev Tuberc* 59 562-566.
- Andersen N. R. and Smith M. H. D. 1960 The Heaf multiple puncture tuberculin test. *A M A J Dis Child* 99 764-769.
- Anderson R. J. 1940 The chemistry of the lipids of tubercle bacilli. *Harvey Lect Ser* 35 (1939-1940) pp 271-313.
- Aronson I. D. 1926 Spontaneous tuberculosis in salt water fish. *J Infect Dis* 39, 315-320.
- 1948 Protective vaccination against tuberculosis with special reference to BCG vaccination. *Am Rev Tuberc* 58 255-261.
- Asselmeau J. 1952 Lipides du bacille tuberculeux. *Adv Tuberc Res* 5 1-44.
- 1956 Sur les lipides de la souche humaine avirulente H37Ra de *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. *Bull Soc chim biol* 38 1397-1412.
- Aubert E. 1950 Cold stain for acid fast bacteria. *Canad J Pub Health* 41 31-32.
- Badger T. L., Breitwieser E. R. and Muench H. 1963 Tuberculin tine test: multiple puncture intradermal technique compared with PPD-S intermediate strength (5 TU). *Am Rev Resp Dis* 87 338-353.
- Berthrong M. and Hamilton M. A. 1959 Tissue culture studies on resistance in tuberculosis II. Monocytes from normal and immunized guinea pigs infected with virulent human tubercle bacilli. *Am Rev Tuberc* 79 221-231.
- Bloch H. 1950 Studies on the virulence of tubercle bacilli. Isolation and biological properties of a constituent of virulent organisms. *J Exp Med* 91 197-218.
- Bloch H., Defaye J., Lederer E. and Noll H. 1957 Constituents of a toxic lipid obtained from *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. *Biochim biophys acta* 23 312-321.
- Boyden S. V. 1951 The adsorption of proteins on erythrocytes treated with tannic acid and subsequent hemagglutination by antiprotein sera. *J Exp Med* 93 107-120.
- Bradbury F. C. S. and Young J. A. 1946 Human pulmonary tuberculosis due to avian tubercle bacilli. Report of a case. *Lancet* I 89-91.
- Buhler V. B. and Pollak A. 1953 Human infection with atypical acid fast organisms. *Am J Clin Path* 23 363-374.
- Bushby S. R. 1958 The chemotherapy of leprosy. *Pharmacol Rev* 10 1-42.
- Canetti G. 1955 The Tubercle Bacillus in the Pulmonary Lesion of Man. New York: Springer.
- Cason J., Allen C. F., DeAcetis W. and Fonken G. J. 1956 Fatty acids from the lipids of nonvirulent strains of the tubercle bacillus. *J Biol Chem* 220 893-904.
- Centre International de l'Enfance. 1955 Sur les critères d'activité du BCG. *Rev Immunol* 19 117-261.
- Chase M. W. 1951 Development of antibody following transfer of cells taken from lymph nodes of sensitized or immunized animals. *Fed Proc* 10 404-405.

- Cocchi C 1956 Cortisone and corticotropin in the treatment of tuberculosis in infancy and childhood *Am Rev Tuberc (Supp)* 74 209 216
- Cochrane R G 1955 The reaction of the host tissue in relation to *Mycobacterium leprae* in CIBA Foundation Symposium Experimental Tuberculosis London Churchill
- Cohn M L, Davis C L and Middlebrook G 1962 Chemoprophylaxis with isoniazid against aerogenic tuberculous infection in the guinea pig *Am Rev Resp Dis* 86 95 97
- Cohn M L, Russell W F Jr and Middlebrook G 1960 Effects of carbon dioxide and daylight in culturing tubercle bacilli *Am Rev Resp Dis* 82 579 580
- Cole L R and Farrell V R 1955 A method for coupling protein antigens to erythrocytes I Description of method *J Exp Med* 102 631 645
- Corpe R F, Runyon E H and Lester W 1963 Status of disease due to unclassified mycobacteria *Am Rev Resp Dis* 87 459 461
- Dahlstrom G and Difs H 1951 The efficacy of BCG vaccination a study on vaccinated and tuberculin negative nonvaccinated conscripts *Acta tuberc scand Supp* 27 pp 1 113
- Debre R 1956 Systematic treatment of tuberculosis *Am Rev Tuberc (Supp)* 74 191 196
- Dienes L and Schoenheit E W 1927 Local hypersensitiveness I Sensitization of tuberculous guinea pigs with eggwhite and timothy pollen *J Immunol* 14 9 42
- Dubos R J 1950 Biologic and immunologic properties of tubercle bacilli *Am J Med* 9 573 590
- 1955 Effect of metabolic factors on the susceptibility of albino mice to experimental tuberculosis *J Exp Med* 101 59 84
- Dubos R J and Davis B D 1946 Factors affecting the growth of tubercle bacilli in liquid media *J Exp Med* 83 409-423
- Dubos R J and Dubos J 1952 *The White Plague Tuberculosis Man and Society* Boston Little
- Dubos R J and Middlebrook G 1947 Media for tubercle bacilli *Am Rev Tuberc* 56 334 345
- 1948 Cytochemical reaction of virulent tubercle bacilli *Am Rev Tuberc* 58 698 699
- Dubos R J and Pierce C H 1957 Tice strain of BCG *Am Rev Resp Dis* 75 692
- Dubos R J, Pierce C H and Schaefer W H 1956 Differential characteristics *in vitro* and *in vivo* of several substrains of BCG *Am Rev Tuberc* 74 655 717
- Dubos R J and Schaedler H W 1956 Reversible changes in the susceptibility of mice to bacterial infections I Changes brought about by injection of pertussis vaccine or of bacterial endotoxins *J Exp Med* 104 53 65
- Dubos R J, Schaefer W H and Pierce C H 1953 Antituberculous immunity in mice vaccinated with killed tubercle bacilli *J Exp Med* 97 221 233
- Edwards L B, Edwards P Q and Palmer C E 1959 Sources of tuberculin sensitivity in human populations A summing up of recent epidemiologic research *Acta tuberc scand Supp* 47 pp 77 97
- Edwards P Q and Edwards L B 1960 Story of tuberculin test from an epidemiological viewpoint *Am Rev Resp Dis* 81 no 1 pt 2 1 47
- Elberg S S, Schneider P and Fong J 1957 Cross immunity between *Brucella melitensis* and *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* Intracellular behavior of *Brucella melitensis* in monocytes from vaccinated animals *J Exp Med* 106 545 554
- Enders J F 1929 Anaphylactic shock with the partial antigen of the tubercle bacillus *J Exp Med* 50 777 786
- Feldman W H 1938 *Avian Tuberculosis Infections* pp 357-410 Baltimore Williams & Wilkins
- Fenner F 1951 Bacteriological and immunological aspects of BCG vaccination *Adv Tuberc Res* 4 112 186
- Ferebee S 1956 (Discussion during a symposium) *Am Rev Tuberc (Supp)* 74 302 303
- Ferebee S H and Mount F W 1962 Tuberculosis morbidity in a controlled trial of the prophylactic use of isoniazid among household contacts *Am Rev Resp Dis* 85 490 510
- Ferguson R G 1946 BCG vaccination in hospitals and sanatoria of Saskatchewan a study carried out by the National Research Council of Canada *Am Rev Tuberc* 54 325 339
- 1955 *Studies in Tuberculosis* Toronto Univ Toronto Press
- Flahiff E W 1939 The occurrence of tuberculosis in persons who failed to react to tuberculin and in persons with positive

quired by infecting superficial abrasions of the skin. It is likely that persons can acquire the infection without developing manifest disease. It has not been shown that animal vectors spread the infection. The most effective prevention in endemic areas is the segregation of patients in leprosanaria while patients in temperate climates need not be segregated. The removal of children from leprosy parents has proved to be a useful prophylactic measure.

Unlike the tubercle bacillus *M. leprae* of man does not produce progressive infection in animals. But rats in many countries have a disease called rat leprosy which is characterized by nodular skin lesions containing acid fast bacilli (*M. leprae murium*) difficult to cultivate and nonpathogenic for other species of animals. There is no evidence that rat leprosy can be transmitted to man or that the rat plays any role as vector for human leprosy.

It is interesting to compare *M. tuberculosis* and *M. leprae*. Tubercle bacilli have many types and their host range is almost unlimited; they can be cultivated on artificial media. There are only 2 known types of *M. leprae* and they are exclusively pathogenic either for man or for rats, mice and hamsters. *M. leprae* has not been cultivated in vitro (Hanks and Gray 1956). Tuberculosis has been the disease of urban civilization and occurs in domestic animals. Leprosy is prevalent in the tropics among people who live under rural conditions. After its introduction to Europe from the Near East the disease became endemic until the 16th century and then disappeared.

## REFERENCES

- Allgower M. and Bloch H. 1949 The effect of tubercle bacilli on the migration of phagocytes in vitro. *Am Rev Tuberc* 59 562-566.
- Andersen S. R. and Smith M. H. D. 1960 The Heaf multiple puncture tuberculin test. *A M A J Dis Child* 99 764-769.
- Anderson R. J. 1940 The chemistry of the lipids of tubercle bacilli. *Harvey Lect. Ser* 35 (1939-1940) pp 271-313.
- Aronson J. H. 1926 Spontaneous tuberculosis in salt water fish. *J Infect Dis* 39 315-320.
- 1948 Protective vaccination against tuberculosis with special reference to BCG vaccination. *Am Rev Tuberc* 58 255-261.
- Asselineau J. 1952 Lipides du bacille tuberculeux. *Adv Tuberc Res* 5 1-44.
- 1956 Sur les lipides de la souche humaine avirulente H37Ra de *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. *Bull Soc chim biol* 38 1397-1412.
- Aubert E. 1950 Cold stain for acid fast bacteria. *Canad J Pub Health* 41 31-32.
- Badger T. L., Breitwieser E. R. and Muench H. 1963 Tuberculin tine test: multiple puncture intradermal technique compared with PPD-S intermediate strength (5 TU). *Am Rev Resp Dis* 87 338-353.
- Berthrong M. and Hamilton M. A. 1959 Tissue culture studies on resistance in tuberculosis. II. Monocytes from normal and immunized guinea pigs infected with virulent human tubercle bacilli. *Am Rev Tuberc* 79 221-231.
- Bloch H. 1950 Studies on the virulence of tubercle bacilli. Isolation and biological properties of a constituent of virulent organisms. *J Exp Med* 91 197-218.
- Bloch H., Defaye J., Lederer E. and Noll H. 1957 Constituents of a toxic lipid obtained from *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. *Biochim biophys acta* 23 312-321.
- Boydens S. V. 1951 The adsorption of proteins on erythrocytes treated with tannic acid and subsequent hemagglutination by antiprotein sera. *J Exp Med* 93 107-120.
- Bradbury F. C. S. and Young J. A. 1946 Human pulmonary tuberculosis due to avian tubercle bacilli. Report of a case. *Lancet* 1 89-91.
- Buhler V. B. and Pollak A. 1953 Human infection with atypical acid fast organisms. *Am J Clin Path* 23 363-374.
- Bushby S. H. 1958 The chemotherapy of leprosy. *Pharmacol Rev* 10 1-42.
- Canetti G. 1955 The Tubercle Bacillus in the Pulmonary Lesion of Man. New York: Springer.
- Cason J., Allen C. F., DeAcetis W. and Fonken G. J. 1956 Fatty acids from the lipids of nonvirulent strains of the tubercle bacillus. *J Biol Chem* 220 893-904.
- Centre International de l'Enfance. 1955 Sur les critères d'activité du BCG. *Rev im munol* 19 117-261.
- Chase M. W. 1951 Development of antibody following transfer of cells taken from lymph nodes of sensitized or immunized animals. *Fed Proc* 10 404-405.

- LeMaistre C A Tompsett R Muschenheim C Moore J A and McDermott W 1951 Effects of adrenocorticotrophic hormone and cortisone in patients with tuberculosis *J Clin Invest* 30 445-456
- Lewis P A and Loomis D 1928 Ulcerative types as determined by inheritance and as related to natural resistance against tuberculosis an experimental study on inbred guinea pigs *J Exp Med* 47 449-468
- Long E R 1958 *The Chemistry and Chemotherapy of Tuberculosis* ed 3 Baltimore Williams & Wilkins
- Lowe J 1955 The leprosy bacillus and the host reaction to it in CIBA Foundation Symposium *Experimental Tuberculosis* pp 344-354 London Churchill
- Lurie M B 1941 Heredity constitution and tuberculosis an experimental study *Am Rev Tuberc* 44 No 3 (Supp.) pp 1-125
- 1942 Studies on the mechanism of immunity in tuberculosis The fate of tubercle bacilli ingested by mononuclear phagocytes derived from normal and immunized animals *J Exp Med* 75 247-268
- 1955 On the role of hormones in experimental tuberculosis *Adv Tuberc Res* 6 18-48
- Lurie M B Abramson S and Heppleston A G 1952 On the response of genetically resistant and susceptible rabbits to the quantitative inhalation of human type tubercle bacilli and the nature of resistance to tuberculosis *J Exp Med* 95 119-134
- Lurie M B Zappasodi P and Tickner C 1955 On the nature of genetic resistance to tuberculosis in the light of the host-parasite relationships in natively resistant and susceptible rabbits *Am Rev Tuberc* 72 297-329
- MacCallum M Tolhurst J C Buckle G and Sissons H A 1948 A new mycobacterial infection in man *J Path Bact* 60 93-122
- McCune R M Jr Tompsett R and McDermott W 1956 The fate of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in mouse tissues as determined by the microbial enumeration technique II The conversion of tuberculous infection to the latent state by the administration of pyrazinamide and a companion drug *J Exp Med* 104 763-802
- McDermott W 1949 The nature of the lesion and the response to antimicrobial therapy Evaluation of Chemotherapeutic Agents Symposium II N Y Academy of Medicine Section on Microbiology edited by Colin M Macleod N Y Columbia University Press pp 92-102
- McDermott W and Tompsett R 1954 Activation of pyrazinamide and nicotinamide in acidic environments in vitro *Am Rev Tuberc* 70 748-754
- Mackness G H 1954 The growth of tubercle bacilli in monocytes from normal and vaccinated rabbits *Am Rev Tuberc* 69 495-504
- 1956 the intracellular activation of pyrazinamide and nicotinamide *Am Rev Tuberc* 74 718-728
- McPhedran F M and Opie E L 1935 The spread of tuberculosis in families *Am J Hyg* 22 565-643
- Mahady S C 1961 An outbreak of primary tuberculosis in school children *Clinical aspects* *Am Rev Resp Dis* 84 348-358
- Mandel W Cohn M L Russell W F Jr and Middlebrook G 1957 Serum isoniazid levels and catalase activities of tubercle bacilli from isoniazid treated patients *Am J M Sc* 233 66-68
- Martin S P Pierce C H Middlebrook G and Dubos R J 1950 The effect of tubercle bacilli on the polymorphonuclear leucocytes of normal animals *J Exp Med* 91 381-392
- Medical Research Council 1963 BCG and vole research vaccines in the prevention of tuberculosis in adolescence and early adult life *Brit M J* 1 973
- Middlebrook G 1950a The experimental analysis of virulence of tubercle bacilli *Bull New York Acad Med* 26 498-506
- 1950b A hemolytic modification of the hemagglutination test for antibodies against tubercle bacillus antigens *J Clin Invest* 29 1480-1485
- 1956 Diagnostic and biological problems of isoniazid resistant tubercle bacilli *Bull Internat Union Against Tuberc* 26 179-205
- 1961 Immunological aspects of airborne infection Reactions to inhaled antigens *Bact Rev* 25 331-346
- Middlebrook G and Cohn M L 1958 Bacteriology of tuberculosis Laboratory methods *Am J Pub Health* 48 844-853
- Middlebrook G Coleman C M and Schaefer W H 1959 Sulfalipid from virulent tubercle bacilli *Proc Nat Acad Sci USA* 45 1801-1804
- Middlebrook G and Dubos R J 1948 Specific serum agglutination of erythrocytes sensitized with extracts of tubercle bacilli *J Exp Med* 88 521-528



- tuberculin reaction *Am J Hyg* 30 Sect II 69 74
- Fong J Schneider P and Elberg S S 1957 Studies on tubercle bacillus monocyte relationship II Induction of monocyte degeneration by bacteria and culture filtrate Specificity of serum and monocyte effects on resistance to degeneration *J Exp Med* 105 25 37
- Francis J Macturk H M Madinaveitia J and Snow G A 1953 Mycobactin a growth factor for *Mycobacterium johnes* I Isolation from *Mycobacterium phlei* *Biochem J* 55 596 607
- Freund J 1956 The mode of action of immunologic adjuvants *Adv Tuberc Res* 7 130 148
- Froman S and Bogen E 1953 Mycobacteriophage *Trans 49th Annual Meeting National Tuberculosis Association* 76
- Froman S Will D W and Bogen E 1954 Bacteriophage active against virulent *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* I Isolation and activity *Am J Pub Health* 44 1326 1333
- Furcolow M L Hewell B Nelson W E and Palmer C E 1941 Quantitative studies of the tuberculin reaction I Titration of tuberculin sensitivity and its relation to tuberculous infection *Pub Health Rep* 56 1082 1100
- Furth J 1926 On the serological relationship of acid fast bacteria *J Immunol* 12 273 292
- Gangadharam P R J Cohn M L and Middlebrook G 1963 Infectivity pathogenicity and sulpholipid fraction of some Indian and British strains of tubercle bacilli *Tubercle* 44 452-455
- Gardner G M and Weiser R S 1947 A bacteriophage for *Mycobacterium smegmatis* *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 66 205 206
- Ghou A 1916 The Primary Lung Focus of Tuberculosis in Children London Churchill
- Gordon R E and Smith M M 1953 Rapidly growing acid fast bacteria I Species description of *Mycobacterium phlei* Lehmann and Neumann and *Mycobacterium smegmatis* (Trevisan) Lehmann and Neumann *J Bact* 66 41-48
- 1955 Rapidly growing acid fast bacteria II Species description of *Mycobacterium fortuitum* Cruz *J Bact* 69 502 507
- Hanks I H and Gray C T 1956 The metabolic properties of mycobacteria and the pathogenesis of mycobacterial disease *Adv Tuberc Res* 7 1 16
- Hawthorne V M Jarrett W F H Lauder I Martin W H and Roberts G B S 1957 Tuberculosis in man dog and cat *Brit M J* 2, 675 678
- Heidelberger M and Menzel A E O 1937 Specific and non specific cell polysaccharides of a human strain of tubercle bacillus *H 37 J Biol Chem* 118 79 100
- Hirsch J G 1954 The resistance of tubercle bacilli to the bactericidal action of benzalkonium chloride (Zephiran®) *Am Rev Tuberc* 70 312 319
- Hoyt A Moore F J Knowles R G and Smith R C 1957, Sex differences of normal and immunized mice in resistance to experimental tuberculosis *Am Rev Tuberc* 75 618 623
- Hughes H B 1953 On the metabolic fate of isoniazid *J Pharmacol Exper Therap* 109 444-452
- Hussein H and Elberg S 1952 Cellular reactions to phthienoic acid and related branched-chain acids *Am Rev Tuberc* 65 655 672
- Hyge T V 1956 The efficacy of BCG vaccination epidemic of tuberculosis in a state school with an observation period of 12 years *Acta tuberc scand* 32 89 107
- Jacot R F and Meade G M 1949 Variation in the duration of tuberculin skin sensitivity produced by two strains of BCG *Am Rev Tuberc* 60 541 546
- Jensen K A 1960 Remarks concerning BCG vaccination and prophylactic treatment with isoniazid *Acta tuberc scand* 38 179 194
- Kallmann F J and Reisner D 1943 Twin studies on the significance of genetic factors in tuberculosis *Am Rev Tuberc* 47 549 574
- Kirby W M M and Dubos R J 1947 Effect of penicillin on the tubercle bacillus *in vitro* *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 66 120 123
- Kubica G P Dye W E Cohn M L and Middlebrook G 1963 Sputum digestion and decontamination with N acetyl L cysteine sodium hydroxide for culture of mycobacteria *Am Rev Resp Dis* 87 775 779
- Kushner D S McMillen S and Sender M 1957 Atypical acid fast bacilli II *Mycobacterium fortuitum* Bacteriologic characteristics and pathogenicity for laboratory animals *Am Rev Tuberc* 76 108 122
- Larson C L and Wicht W C 1963 Resistance to infection with virulent tubercle bacilli in mice immunized with viable *Mycobacterium balnei* and unclassified mycobacteria administered aerogenically *Am Rev Resp Dis* 88 456-461

- to bacterial infections II Changes brought about by nutritional disturbances J Exp Med 104 67 84
- Schaefer W 1947 Identification serologique des bacilles tuberculeux du type bovin Ann Inst Pasteur 73 1157 1158
- Schaefer W II 1964 Serological identification and classification of the unclassified mycobacteria by their agglutination paper presented III International conference on mycobacterial and fungal antigens held at Airbe House Warrenton Virginia April 13 1963
- Schaefer W II Cohn M L and Middlebrook G 1955 The roles of biotin and carbon dioxide in the cultivation of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* J Bact 69 706 712
- Seibert F B 1950 Progress in the chemistry of tuberculin Adv Tuberc Res 3 1 29
- Sellers M I Tokuyasu K Price Z and Froman S 1957 Electron microscopic studies of mycobacteriophages Am Rev Tuberc 76 964 969
- Sever J L 1960 Passive transfer of resistance to tuberculosis through use of monocytes Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 103 326 329
- Sever J L and Youmans G II 1957 The relation of oxygen tension to virulence of tubercle bacilli and to acquired resistance in tuberculosis J Infect Dis 101 193 202
- Shepard C C 1963 Leprosy bacilli in mouse foot pads in The Pathogenesis of Leprosy Ciba Foundation Study Group No 15 Boston Little pp 80 88
- Spitznagel J K and Dubos R J 1955 A fraction of tubercle bacilli possessing primary toxicity J Exp Med 101 291 311
- Stacey M 1955 *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* polysaccharides Adv Tuberc Res 6 7 17
- Suter E 1952 The multiplication of tubercle bacilli within normal phagocytes in tissue culture J Exp Med 96 137 150
- 1953 Multiplication of tubercle bacilli within mononuclear phagocytes in tissue cultures derived from normal animals and animals vaccinated with BCG J Exp Med 97 235 245
- Suter W E and Dubos R J 1951 Variability of BCG strains (*Bacillus Calmette Guérin*) J Exp Med 93 559 572
- Terpian K 1940 Anatomical studies on human tuberculosis Am Rev Tuberc 42 No 2 (Supp.) pp 1 176
- Therapeutic Trials Committee of the Swedish National Association against Tuberculosis 1950 Para-aminosalicylic acid treatment in pulmonary tuberculosis Am Rev Tuberc 61 597 612
- Timpe A and Runyon E H 1954 The relationship of atypical acid fast bacteria to human disease a preliminary report J Lab Clin Med 44 202 209
- Tuberculosis Chemotherapy Trials Committee Medical Research Council 1955 Seventh Report Various combinations of isoniazid with streptomycin or with PAS in the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis Brit M J 1 435 445
- Turcotte R Freedman II O and Schon A II 1963 A new hemagglutination procedure for the diagnosis of active tuberculosis Am Rev Resp Dis 88 725 728
- Twort F W and Ingram G L Y 1912 A method for isolating and cultivating the *Mycobacterium enteritidis chronicae pseudo tuberculosis bovis* John and some experiments on the preparation of a diagnostic vaccine for pseudo tuberculous enteritis of bovines Proc Roy Soc London Series B 84 517 542
- USPHS 1963 Tuberculosis in the United States Status of the disease in the early sixties Washington D C U S Govt Print Off PHS Publication No 1036
- U S Veterans Administration Armed Forces 1957 Tr 16th Conference on the Chemotherapy of Tuberculosis Washington II C U S Govt Print Off
- Ustvedt H J 1956 Usual and unusual reactions to BCG inoculation in children Am Rev Tuberc (Supp.) 74 32-42
- Veterans Administration 1962 Handbook of tuberculosis laboratory methods Washington D C U S Govt Print Off
- Vigliani E C and Pernis B 1963 Immunological aspects of silicosis Adv Tuberc Res 12 230 279
- Vorwald A J Dworski M Pratt P C and Delahant A B 1950 BCG vaccination in silicosis Am Rev Tuberc 62 455-474
- Weiss D W and Dubos R J 1955 Anti-tuberculous immunity induced in mice by vaccination with killed tubercle bacilli or with a soluble bacillary extract J Exp Med 101 313 330
- Wells A Q 1946 The murine type of tubercle bacillus (the Vole acid fast bacillus) Med Res Council Sp Rep Series No 259 London Her Majesty's Stat Off
- Wells A Q Angus E and Smith N 1955 *Mycobacterium fortuitum* Am Rev Tuberc 72 53 63
- Yegian D and Vanderlinde R J 1947 The nature of acid fastness J Bact 54 777 783
- Youmans G P 1944 Subsurface growth of virulent human tubercle bacilli in a synthetic medium Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 57 122 124

- Middlebrook G Dubos R J and Pierce C 1947 Virulence and morphological characteristics of mammalian tubercle bacilli J Exp Med 86 175 184
- Middlebrook G and Yegian D 1946 Certain effects of streptomycin on mycobacteria in vitro Am Rev Tuberc 54 553 558
- Mitchison D A 1957 Prophylactic chemotherapy Adv Tuberc Res 8 304 316
- 1962 Primary Drug Resistance Bull Internat Union Against Tuberc 32 81 99
- Nègre L 1956 Prevention et traitement spécifiques de la tuberculose par le BCG et par l'antigène méthylé etude de leurs modes d'administration et de leurs mécanismes d'action Paris Masson
- Noll H Bloch H Asselineau J and Lederer E 1956 The chemical structure of the cord factor of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* Biochim biophys acta 20 299 309
- Norden A and Linell F 1951 A new type of pathogenic mycobacterium Nature 168 826
- Oatway W H Jr and Steenken W Jr 1937 The dissociation of tubercle bacilli Am Rev Tuberc 35 354 364
- O'Grady F and Riley R L 1963 Experimental airborne tuberculosis Adv Tuberc Res 12 150 190
- Opie E L 1917 The focal pulmonary tuberculosis of children and adults J Exp Med 25 855 876
- Opie E L Flahiff E W and Smith H H 1939 Protective inoculation against human tuberculosis with heat killed tubercle bacilli Am J Hyg Sect II 29 155 164
- Opie E L and Freund J 1937 An experimental study of protective inoculation with heat killed tubercle bacilli J Exp Med 66 761 788
- Opie E L McPhedran F M and Putnam P 1936 The relative frequency of clinically manifest tuberculosis open tuberculosis asymptomatic lesions and deaths in white and Negro persons Am J Hyg 23 530 538
- Palmer C E 1953 Tuberculin sensitivity and contact with tuberculosis further evidence of nonspecific sensitivity Am Rev Tuberc 68 678 694
- Palmer C E and Shaw, L W 1953 Present status of BCG studies Am Rev Tuberc 68 462-466
- Parlett R C and Youmans G P, 1959 An evaluation of the specificity and sensitivity of a gel double diffusion test for tuberculosis A double blind study Am Rev Resp Dis 80 153 166
- Pierce C Dubos R J and Middlebrook G 1947 Infection of mice with mammalian tubercle bacilli grown in Tween albumin liquid medium J Exp Med 86 159 174
- Puffer R R 1944 Familial Susceptibility to Tuberculosis Its Importance as a Public Health Problem Cambridge Mass Harvard
- Raffel S 1948 The components of the tubercle bacillus responsible for the delayed type of infectious allergy J Infect Dis 82 267 293
- Raffel S 1956 Immunopathology of tuberculosis Am Rev Tuberc (Supp) 74 60 74
- Ratcliffe H L, and Merrick John V 1957 Tuberculosis induced by droplet nuclei in ffection Its developmental pattern in hamsters in relation to levels of dietary protein Am J Path 33 107 129
- Redmond W B 1963 Bacteriophages of the mycobacteria A review Adv Tuberc Res 12 191 229
- Reisner D 1944 Boeck's sarcoid and systemic sarcoidosis (Besnier Boeck Schaumann disease) A study of thirty five cases Part I Clinical observations I and II Am Rev Tuberc 49 289 307 437-462
- Rich A R 1951 The Pathogenesis of Tuberculosis ed 2 pp 330-452 Springfield Ill Thomas
- Robinson A and Meyer M 1956 The effect of specific therapy in primary tuberculosis of the child J Pediat 48 705 709
- Rose F L and Snow G A 1955 Mycobactin a growth factor for acid fast bacilli in CIBA Foundation Symposium Experimental Tuberculosis pp 41 54 London Churchill
- Rosenthal S R 1957 BCG vaccination against tuberculosis with sections by C Guérin II Weill Halle A Wallgren Boston Little
- Rosenthal S R 1961 The disk tube tuberculin test (dried tuberculin disposable unit) JAMA 177 452-454
- Runyon E II 1955 Veterans Administration National Tuberculosis Association cooperative study of mycobacteria Am Rev Tuberc 72 866 868
- 1959 Anonymous mycobacteria in pulmonary disease Med Clin N Amer 43 273 290
- Russell W F Jr and Middlebrook G 1961 Chemotherapy of Tuberculosis Springfield Ill Thomas
- Sabin F R 1941 Cellular reactions to fractions from tubercle bacilli Am Rev Tuberc 44 415-423
- Schaeffler R W and Dubos R J 1956 Reversible changes in the susceptibility of mice

- to bacterial infections II Changes brought about by nutritional disturbances J Exp Med 104 67 84
- Schaefer W 1947 Identification serologique des bacilles tuberculeux du type bovin Ann Inst Pasteur 73 1157 1158
- Schaefer W H 1964 Serological identification and classification of the unclassified mycobacteria by their agglutination paper presented at International conference on mycobacterial and fungal antigens held at Airline House Warrenton Virginia April 13 1963
- Schaefer W H Cohn M L and Middlebrook G 1955 The roles of biotin and carbon dioxide in the cultivation of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* J Bact 69 706 712
- Seibert F B 1950 Progress in the chemistry of tuberculin Adv Tuberc Res 3 1 29
- Sellers M I Tokuyasu K Price Z and Froman S 1957 Electron microscopic studies of mycobacteriophages Am Rev Tuberc 76 964 969
- Sever J L 1960 Passive transfer of resistance to tuberculosis through use of monocytes Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 103 326 329
- Sever J L and Youmans G P 1957 The relation of oxygen tension to virulence of tubercle bacilli and to acquired resistance in tuberculosis J Infect Dis 101 193 202
- Shepard C C 1963 Leprosy bacilli in mouse foot pads in The Pathogenesis of Leprosy Ciba Foundation Study Group No 15 Boston Little pp 80 88
- Spitznagel J K and Dubos R J 1955 A fraction of tubercle bacilli possessing primary toxicity J Exp Med 101 291 311
- Stacey M 1955 *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* polysaccharides Adv Tuberc Res 6 7 17
- Suter E 1952 The multiplication of tubercle bacilli within normal phagocytes in tissue culture J Exp Med 96 137 150
- 1953 Multiplication of tubercle bacilli within mononuclear phagocytes in tissue cultures derived from normal animals and animals vaccinated with BCG J Exp Med 97 235 245
- Suter W E and Dubos R J 1951 Variability of BCG strains (*Bacillus Calmette Guérin*) J Exp Med 93 559 572
- Terplan K 1940 Anatomical studies on human tuberculosis Am Rev Tuberc 42 No 2 (Supp) pp 1 176
- Therapeutic Trials Committee of the Swedish National Association against Tuberculosis 1950 Para aminosalicylic acid treatment in pulmonary tuberculosis Am Rev Tuberc 61 597 612
- Timpe A and Runyon E H 1954 The relationship of atypical acid fast bacteria to human disease a preliminary report J Lab Clin Med 44 202 209
- Tuberculosis Chemotherapy Trials Committee Medical Research Council 1955 Seventh Report Various combinations of isoniazid with streptomycin or with PAS in the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis Brit M J 1 435 445
- Turcotte R Freedman S O and Schon A H 1963 A new hemagglutination procedure for the diagnosis of active tuberculosis Am Rev Resp Dis 88 725 728
- Twort F W and Ingram G L Y 1912 A method for isolating and cultivating the *Mycobacterium enteritidis chronicae pseudo tuberculosis* bovis Johne and some experiments on the preparation of a diagnostic vaccine for pseudo tuberculous enteritis of bovines Proc Roy Soc London Series B 84 517 542
- USPHS 1963 Tuberculosis in the United States Status of the disease in the early sixties Washington D C U S Govt Print Off PHS Publication No 1036
- U S Veterans Administration Armed Forces 1957 Tr 16th Conference on the Chemotherapy of Tuberculosis Washington D C U S Govt Print Off
- Ustvedt H J 1956 Usual and unusual reactions to BCG inoculation in children Am Rev Tuberc (Supp) 74 32 42
- Veterans Administration 1962 Handbook of tuberculosis laboratory methods Washington D C U S Govt Print Off
- Vigiant E C and Pernis B 1963 Immunological aspects of silicosis Adv Tuberc Res 12 230 279
- Vorwald A J Dworski M Pratt P C and Delahant A H 1950 BCG vaccination in silicosis Am Rev Tuberc 62 455-474
- Weiss D W and Dubos R J 1955 Anti tuberculous immunity induced in mice by vaccination with killed tubercle bacilli or with a soluble bacillary extract J Exp Med 101 313 330
- Wells A Q 1946 The murine type of tubercle bacillus (the Vole acid fast bacillus) Med Res Council Sp Rep Series No 259 London Her Majesty's Stat Off
- Wells A Q Agus E and Smith N 1955 *Mycobacterium fortuitum* Am Rev Tuberc 72 53 63
- Yegian D and Vanderlinde R J 1947 The nature of acid fastness J Bact 54 777 783
- Youmans G P 1944 Subsurface growth of virulent human tubercle bacilli in a synthetic medium, Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 57 122 124

# 22

## The Anthrax Bacillus

Anthrax is primarily an acute infectious disease of domestic herbivorous animals. The disease in man is contracted by contact with infected animals or contaminated animal products. *Bacillus anthracis*, the causative agent, is a large gram positive rod shaped organism which forms resistant spores. The organism is heavily encapsulated in vivo and under appropriate cultural conditions in vitro.

### HISTORY

The disease has been known from antiquity and satisfactory descriptions of the typical lesions in animals and man have been available for about 200 years. *B. anthracis* was the first microorganism to be established as the etiologic agent of a disease. It was discovered in the blood of infected sheep by Rayer in 1850 and experimental transmission of the disease was demonstrated by Davaine in 1863. Koch (1877) described the isolation and the cultivation of the organism, the formation of spores, the production of the disease in experimental animals and the recovery of the organism from the experimental infection. These classic experiments represented a major advance in the understanding of anthrax and provided the basic concepts and methods for the rapid expansion of medical bacteriology. Immunization of animals with attenuated living vaccines was introduced by Pasteur and a field trial at Pouilly le Fort in 1881 established the effectiveness of the procedure. The subsequent introduction of

the vaccines into general use provided a major stimulus for early investigations in immunology.

### MORPHOLOGY AND CULTURAL CHARACTERISTICS

*Bacillus anthracis* is a large gram positive, spore forming rod 1 to 1.5 microns in width and 4 to 8 microns in length. Large capsules are formed in vivo and under appropriate cultural conditions in vitro. Spores are not formed in the living animal. In smears from an infected host the organisms lie singly or in short chains; capsules are formed and may be demonstrated by Giemsa or similar methods of staining. The appearance of organisms in artificial media is considerably different. In young cultures on nutrient agar the bacilli are nonencapsulated rods with square ends arranged in strands of long chains. Under aerobic conditions sporulation begins toward the end of logarithmic growth and is usually well advanced after 48 hours of incubation. Spores are oval in shape and are formed equatorially. They are liberated by autolysis of the vegetative cells; pairs or short chains of spores may remain connected by linkages which are evidently extensions of the spore coat (Roth et al 1956). The organism is nonmotile; strains described as motile probably were erroneously identified (Sterne and Proom 1957).

Typical colonies of virulent, wild type strains that have grown 24 hours on a medium such as nutrient agar are flat, dull

gray and medusa head in appearance. The last characteristic is caused by outgrowths which radiate from the margin of the colony and then curve back toward it so that the colony appears to be spinning. The organism is nonhemolytic or only slightly hemolytic on blood agar and this characteristic serves to differentiate it from many saprophytic bacilli. When grown in the presence of carbon dioxide the organisms are encapsulated and produce colonies that are round and mucoid (Thorne 1960).

The organism grows well on nutrient agar and other general media. In chemically defined media the requirements for rapid growth are rather complex and include thiamine and a considerable number of amino acids in addition to inorganic salts (Proom and Knight 1955). Complex interrelationships with respect to amino acid requirements now recognized in many organisms were first demonstrated with *B. anthracis* (Gladstone 1939). Purines and pyrimidines stimulate growth of many strains. Although molecular oxygen is necessary for sporulation, germination of spores occurs under anaerobic as well as aerobic conditions (Roth and Lively 1956). Rapid germination of spores occurs in the presence of adenosine, L-alanine and L-tyrosine (Hills 1950). The organism grows best aerobically but growth also occurs under



FIG 1 Typical lesion of cutaneous anthrax 3 to 4 days old. The black center is surrounded by a ring of vesicles; painless edema encircles the lesion (Gold 1955).

strict anaerobic conditions. Acid without gas is produced in the presence of glucose, levulose, sucrose, maltose, trehalose, and dextrin. Mannose and the pentoses are not fermented. The organism produces a typical heterolactic fermentation of glucose; acetic, succinic, lactic, and formic are the principal acids formed (Puziss and Rittenberg 1957).



FIG 2 Colony of virulent *B. anthracis* grown on nutrient agar and stained with methylene blue. (A) The whole colony ( $\times 45$ ). (B, C, D) Border of the same colony ( $\times 145$ ,  $\times 400$ , and  $\times 1600$  respectively). Note parallel arrangement of the bacterial filaments (Stein 1947).



FIG 3 Colonies of virulent *B. anthracis* and of an avirulent nonencapsulated mutant grown on bicarbonate containing medium in the presence of carbon dioxide. The round mucoid colonies of the virulent strain are readily distinguished from the irregular white colonies of the mutant (K. L. Burdon).

The fermentation is not unlike that carried out by saprophytic members of the genus. *Acetymethylcarbinol*, glycerol and 2,3 butylene glycol are produced, nitrates are reduced to nitrites and gelatin is slowly liquefied. Protease, amylase, catalase, lecithinase, collagenase and D- and L-amino acid transaminase may be demonstrated in whole cells, homogenates or culture filtrates. Certain strains become susceptible to the action of lysozyme when grown in the presence of carbon dioxide (Gladstone and Johnston 1955).

### VARIATION

The foregoing description is applicable to typical virulent strains as isolated from the field. Variation occurs among wild type strains in characteristics such as virulence, nutritional requirements and sensitivity to

antibiotics, bacteriophage and lysozyme. In addition, mutants are obtained readily under appropriate conditions of cultivation in the laboratory. Serial transfer in laboratory media, particularly at elevated temperature, leads to a gradual decrease in virulence. Use of strains attenuated in this manner as living vaccines was introduced by Pasteur. The colonies of the attenuated vaccine strains are smoother and more dome shaped than are those of virulent strains and the characteristic marginal projections are absent. The attenuated strains have acquired the ability to form capsular material when grown in air on nutrient agar. Overgrowth of virulent cells by avirulent mutants occurs slowly and attenuation is a gradual process (Preis 1911). Nonsporulating mutants may appear particularly during cultivation in the presence of relatively high concentrations of calcium salts which inhibit sporulation and favor the emergence of nonsporulating mutants (Renaux 1952). Nonsporulating strains may be virulent or avirulent, indicating that sporulation and virulence are independent characteristics. Transduction of sporogenesis in recently isolated nonsporulating strains has been described (Stamatidis 1959).

The colonies of virulent strains are rough when grown on nutrient agar and the relatively smooth growth of the attenuated strains has led to the misconception that *B. anthracis* represents an exception to the rule that loss of virulence accompanies the S→R variation. However, the fully virulent organisms form large capsules *in vivo* and also during growth *in vitro* in the presence of carbon dioxide. Under the latter conditions the colonies are mucoid in appearance, indicating that the fully virulent strains are not rough if cultivated under appropriate nutritional conditions. After about 48 hours of incubation, small rough outgrowths appear on the margin of the colonies and careful selection from these areas yields avirulent mutants that are rough under all conditions of cultivation and have lost the ability to synthesize the capsular polypeptide (Sterne 1937, Thorne 1960). Nonencapsulated mutants also arise *in vivo* and may represent the predominant form in animals that survive for a sufficient time after infection (Beck *et al.* 1960). Although encapsulation is essential in the initial es-

establishment of infection it evidently is unnecessary and is selected against after certain defense mechanisms of the host have been overcome. Reversion of nonencapsulated strains to the encapsulated virulent form occurs with detectable frequency in about half the strains studied (Meynell 1963). Stable nonencapsulated mutants have come into general use as viable vaccines for immunization of animals.

Additional colonial variants that arise in old cultures include avirulent mucoid mutants that are heavily encapsulated when grown on nutrient agar in air. Several types of smooth colonies and phantom colonies that grow as a thin film on the surface of the medium (Nungester 1929). Nonproteolytic mutants occur with appreciable frequency in a variety of cultures. Loss of the protease has no effect on virulence (Wright *et al* 1962).

## ISOLATION AND IDENTIFICATION

Isolation of *B anthracis* presents no problem if the specimen contains an appreciable number of the organisms and is fresh and not excessively contaminated. Nutrient agar, blood agar and egg yolk agar have been recommended for primary isolation. Blood agar has the advantage that many colonies otherwise resembling those of *B anthracis* may be excluded by their strong hemolytic activity. Typical colonies may be selected and identified by cultural methods and virulence tests. The organism is rapidly killed by putrefactive processes and cultural methods may yield negative results with specimens from decomposed carcasses. Inoculation of mice or guinea pigs may allow primary isolation when cultural methods are unsuccessful but contaminating organisms, particularly clostridia, may cause rapid death of the animals. In these cases superficial inoculation by application of the suspension to the scarified skin may prove to be successful. Isolation of spores from heavily contaminated samples such as soil, manure, bone or hair may be more difficult, and methods must be selected for each specimen. Best results in isolation from goat hair and related samples are obtained by suspension of the material in a detergent solution, treatment at 70°C, concentration by centrifugation and inocula-

tion of mice (Biegeleisen *et al* 1961). Media containing selective inhibitors for the more troublesome contaminating organisms may facilitate primary cultural isolation of *B anthracis* (Pearce and Powell 1951; Morris 1955; Gillesen and Scholz 1961).

Identification of *B anthracis* involves primarily differentiation from other members of the genus *Bacillus* and particularly from *B cereus*. For tentative identification, reliance may be placed on colonial and microscopic morphology, the virtual absence of hemolytic activity on sheep blood agar and the absence of motility. Supporting evidence may consist of sensitivity to 10 units/ml of penicillin, ability to form capsules on bicarbonate agar in the presence of 20 per cent carbon dioxide but not on nutrient agar in air, and susceptibility to bacteriophage A1, though motility is sufficient to disqualify a culture as *B anthracis* because the absence of motility is only indicative because nonmotile strains of *B cereus* although uncommon have been described (Ivanovics and Foldes 1958). Most investigators have concluded that susceptibility to the gamma phage of Brown and Cherry (1955) represents a highly specific test for *B anthracis*. However, recent studies with gamma and other phages indicate that no one phage is capable of lysing all strains of *B anthracis* (Buck *et al* 1963). Further study will be required to establish the significance of negative phage susceptibility tests.

Final identification of virulent *B anthracis* is usually based on demonstration of pathogenicity for mice or guinea pigs with appearance of encapsulated organisms in the blood and the tissues at death. Small inocula should be used for pathogenicity tests because saprophytic members of the genus may produce fatal infection or intoxication if inoculated in large numbers, especially intraperitoneally. The fluorescent antibody technique using appropriate antisera appears to be useful for detection and tentative identification of *B anthracis* in tissue sections and smears (Cherry and Freeman 1959). Strains possessing little or no pathogenicity but typical of *B anthracis* in other respects may represent attenuated or avirulent mutants. Slow or negligible fermentation of salicin, slow reduction of methylene blue and slow liquefaction of gelatin are addi-



tional characteristics of *B. anthracis* that may aid in identification (Stein 1944). Contamination of cultures with *B. cereus* represents a potential basis for confusion in identification of isolates in evaluation of methods of identification and in study of taxonomic relationships (Burdon and Wende 1960).

### PATHOGENICITY

Virtually all animals are susceptible in some degree to infection with *B. anthracis*. In nature or under the conditions of normal animal husbandry infections have occurred in cattle, sheep, horses, goats, buffaloes, water buffaloes, minks, swine, deer, ostriches and elephants. Outbreaks occur occasionally in zoos and many species of carnivorous animals and birds have been infected under these circumstances by ingestion of contaminated meat (Stein and Van Ness 1955). Experimental infections have been produced in mice, rats, guinea pigs, rabbits and many wild rodents, monkeys, chimpanzees and even frogs and fish. Susceptibility varies greatly among different species and strains. Of the common laboratory animals, mice and guinea pigs are the most susceptible to challenge by the cutaneous route ( $LD_{50}$  less than 5 spores). Rabbits, monkeys, goats and sheep are also highly susceptible. White rats, cats, dogs, cattle and swine are much less susceptible and usually survive subcutaneous injection of  $10^8$  spores, although a localized infection may occur at the site of inoculation. The  $LD_{50}$  of anthrax spores for the white rat was found to increase by a factor of  $10^5$  during the first 5 weeks of the life of the animal; germ-free animals remained highly susceptible at 5 weeks of age (Taylor *et al.* 1961). The susceptibility of a species may be altered experimentally by changes in body temperature, by administration of certain hormones or by pre-existing infection with unrelated organisms.

Cutaneous anthrax or malignant pustule is the most common form of the disease in man. Frequently the infection develops at the site of a scratch or a minor abrasion. The organism is apparently unable to penetrate the intact skin. Cutaneous lesions occur almost exclusively on exposed portions of the body; more than 95 per cent occur

on the head, the neck and the upper extremity. The evolution of the cutaneous lesion is described in the section on diagnosis. Before the advent of antibiotic therapy the mortality of cutaneous anthrax over a 20 year period in the United States was 21 per cent of the 1 683 reported cases (Smyth 1941). However, the true mortality of untreated human anthrax is difficult to estimate because failure to report less severe cases tends to raise the apparent mortality and therapeutic measures doubtless reduce the mortality. It is evident that in the absence of therapy an appreciable proportion of cutaneous infections in man would progress to generalized infection and death.

Infection may occur not only by the cutaneous route but also via the respiratory and the alimentary tracts and experimentally via the intramuscular, the intraperitoneal and the intravenous routes of inoculation. Although there is no evidence that the respiratory route is of importance in pathogenesis of the natural disease in animals, experimental inhalation anthrax has received considerable study since the original investigations of Buchner in 1888. In the guinea pig, spores deposited in the alveoli are taken up by alveolar phagocytes and carried to the tracheobronchial lymph glands. Here the bacilli, that escape destruction by the normal defensive mechanisms of the host, multiply rapidly; the infection spreads via the efferent lymphatics to the circulation (Ross 1957). The respiratory  $LD_{50}$  of anthrax spores for susceptible animals such as guinea pigs and monkeys is approximately 20 000 organisms; the size of the dose suggests that the clearing mechanisms of the lung are usually effective and only the occasional spore is able to initiate progressive infection. Many of the spores deposited in the lung have been found to remain inactive for long periods. Viable spores can be detected in the lungs of immunized monkeys 100 days after respiratory challenge (Henderson *et al.* 1956).

The infectivity of aerosols for guinea pigs and monkeys is influenced markedly by particle size. The  $LD_{50}$  increases markedly as the particle size is increased from 1 to 12 microns (Drvett *et al.* 1953). Particles less than 5 microns in diameter are much more

likely to penetrate into the alveoli and be deposited on the alveolar wall (Harper and Morton 1953). Infectivity of the aerosol may be increased by addition of certain detergents and other substances to the spore suspension prior to aerosolization (Young and Zelle 1946 Barnes 1947).

Inhalation anthrax of man (woolsorter's disease) was formerly relatively common. Improvements in working conditions in industries that deal with contaminated hair and hides have reduced the exposure of workers to spore bearing dust and presumably for this reason the incidence of inhalation anthrax has declined. However exposure to airborne spores has not been eliminated and the disease has not disappeared. Scattered cases are diagnosed periodically and an outbreak of 5 cases with 4 deaths occurred in 1957 among employees of a textile factory in New Hampshire (Plotkin *et al* 1960 Brachman *et al* 1961). The mortality of diagnosed cases is 80 per cent or more although it is possible that non-fatal cases escape diagnosis. Occurrence of subclinical infections in occupationally exposed textile workers has been postulated on the basis of serologic studies (Norman *et al* 1960). Development of the disease in man resembles that of the experimental disease in the guinea pig. The principal lesions are acute mediastinitis, septicemia and widespread toxic effects referable to septicemia. Pneumonic lesions are usually minimal or absent (Albrink 1961).

Fatal infection of cattle and severe infection of swine may be produced by the oral route although these animals are resistant to cutaneous challenge (Schlingman *et al* 1956). Dogs, sheep and many other animals may be infected by feeding; however guinea pigs and rabbits are not infected by oral administration of  $10^8$  spores (Druett *et al* 1953). It is evident that susceptibility by different routes of infection may vary independently and that the infective dose by one route of challenge gives no indication of susceptibility by another route. Human infection by the oral route is of negligible importance in civilized countries but significant outbreaks with high mortality occur in primitive societies in which meat from infected animals is used for human food. Additional information is needed in regard

to the infective dose and mortality in such outbreaks. Meningitis due to *B. anthracis* is a relatively rare and almost invariably fatal manifestation of human anthrax and is usually a complication of primary infection elsewhere (Haight, 1952).

No direct information is available in regard to the infective dose for man by the various routes and estimates of human susceptibility must be inferred from indirect evidence. The significant mortality of cutaneous anthrax indicates that man is more susceptible than white rats, cattle and swine. The tissue reaction to infection and the occurrence of spontaneous recovery from cutaneous infection suggest that man is less susceptible than the guinea pig, the rabbit and the monkey. Susceptibility by the respiratory route is even more difficult to estimate. There is no evidence that man is less susceptible to small particle aerosols than are the guinea pig and the monkey.

## FACTORS IN INFECTION AND RESISTANCE

Anthrax has occupied an important position as a model infection for investigation of mechanisms of infection and resistance. This has resulted from the acute course of the infection with its dramatic terminal bacteremia, the wide variation in the susceptibility of different species and the economic and medical importance of the disease. Early investigations have been reviewed by Sobernheim (1931) and Eurich and Hewlett (1930) and more recent work by Smith and Keppie (1955) and by Sterne (1959). Organisms injected into highly susceptible animals become encapsulated and proliferate freely. Few leukocytes accumulate and rapid generalization of the infection occurs. In less susceptible animals the course of the infection is similar for the first few hours. After this period, however, large numbers of leukocytes appear in the lesion and the organisms lose their capsules and disintegrate without conspicuous phagocytosis (Cromartie *et al* 1947). During growth *in vivo* the organism produces aggressins which act to overcome the normal defensive mechanisms of the host. These substances inhibit the bactericidal or phagocytic activities of the host and permit progressive in

tional characteristics of *B. anthracis* that may aid in identification (Stein 1944). Contamination of cultures with *B. cereus* represents a potential basis for confusion in identification of isolates in evaluation of methods of identification and in study of taxonomic relationships (Burdon and Wende 1960).

### PATHOGENICITY

Virtually all animals are susceptible in some degree to infection with *B. anthracis*. In nature or under the conditions of normal animal husbandry infections have occurred in cattle, sheep, horses, goats, buffaloes, water buffaloes, minks, swine, deer, ostriches and elephants. Outbreaks occur occasionally in zoos and many species of carnivorous animals and birds have been infected under these circumstances by ingestion of contaminated meat (Stein and Van Ness 1955). Experimental infections have been produced in mice, rats, guinea pigs, rabbits and many wild rodents, monkeys, chimpanzees and even frogs and fish. Susceptibility varies greatly among different species and strains. Of the common laboratory animals, mice and guinea pigs are the most susceptible to challenge by the cutaneous route ( $LD_{50}$  less than 5 spores). Rabbits, monkeys, goats and sheep are also highly susceptible. White rats, cats, dogs, cattle and swine are much less susceptible and usually survive subcutaneous injection of  $10^6$  spores, although a localized infection may occur at the site of inoculation. The  $LD_{50}$  of anthrax spores for the white rat was found to increase by a factor of  $10^3$  during the first 5 weeks of the life of the animal; germ-free animals remained highly susceptible at 5 weeks of age (Taylor *et al.* 1961). The susceptibility of a species may be altered experimentally by changes in body temperature, by administration of certain hormones or by pre-existing infection with unrelated organisms.

Cutaneous anthrax or malignant pustule is the most common form of the disease in man. Frequently the infection develops at the site of a scratch or a minor abrasion. The organism is apparently unable to penetrate the intact skin. Cutaneous lesions occur almost exclusively on exposed portions of the body; more than 95 per cent occur

on the head, the neck and the upper extremity. The evolution of the cutaneous lesion is described in the section on diagnosis. Before the advent of antibiotic therapy the mortality of cutaneous anthrax over a 20-year period in the United States was 21 per cent of the 1 683 reported cases (Smyth 1941). However, the true mortality of untreated human anthrax is difficult to estimate because failure to report less severe cases tends to raise the apparent mortality, and therapeutic measures doubtless reduce the mortality. It is evident that in the absence of therapy an appreciable proportion of cutaneous infections in man would progress to generalized infection and death.

Infection may occur not only by the cutaneous route but also via the respiratory and the alimentary tracts and experimentally via the intramuscular, the intraperitoneal and the intravenous routes of inoculation. Although there is no evidence that the respiratory route is of importance in pathogenesis of the natural disease in animals, experimental inhalation anthrax has received considerable study since the original investigations of Buchner in 1888. In the guinea pig, spores deposited in the alveoli are taken up by alveolar phagocytes and carried to the tracheobronchial lymph glands. Here the bacilli that escape destruction by the normal defensive mechanisms of the host multiply rapidly; the infection spreads via the efferent lymphatics to the circulation (Ross 1957). The respiratory  $LD_{50}$  of anthrax spores for susceptible animals such as guinea pigs and monkeys is approximately 20 000 organisms; the size of the dose suggests that the clearing mechanisms of the lung are usually effective and only the occasional spore is able to initiate progressive infection. Many of the spores deposited in the lung have been found to remain inactive for long periods. Viable spores can be detected in the lungs of immunized monkeys 100 days after respiratory challenge (Henderson *et al.* 1956).

The infectivity of aerosols for guinea pigs and monkeys is influenced markedly by particle size. The  $LD_{50}$  increases markedly as the particle size is increased from 1 to 12 microns (Druett *et al.* 1953). Particles less than 5 microns in diameter are much more

likely to penetrate into the alveoli and be deposited on the alveolar wall (Harper and Morton 1953). Infectivity of the aerosol may be increased by addition of certain detergents and other substances to the spore suspension prior to aerosolization (Young and Zelle 1946 Barnes 1947).

Inhalation anthrax of man (woolsorter's disease) was formerly relatively common. Improvements in working conditions in industries that deal with contaminated hair and hides have reduced the exposure of workers to spore bearing dust and presumably for this reason the incidence of inhalation anthrax has declined. However exposure to airborne spores has not been eliminated and the disease has not disappeared. Scattered cases are diagnosed periodically and an outbreak of 5 cases with 4 deaths occurred in 1957 among employees of a textile factory in New Hampshire (Plotkin *et al* 1960 Brachman *et al* 1961). The mortality of diagnosed cases is 80 per cent or more although it is possible that non-fatal cases escape diagnosis. Occurrence of subclinical infections in occupationally exposed textile workers has been postulated on the basis of serologic studies (Norman *et al* 1960). Development of the disease in man resembles that of the experimental disease in the guinea pig. The principal lesions are acute mediastinitis, septicemia and widespread toxic effects referable to septicemia. Pneumonic lesions are usually minimal or absent (Albrink 1961).

Fatal infection of cattle and severe infection of swine may be produced by the oral route although these animals are resistant to cutaneous challenge (Schlingman *et al* 1956). Dogs, sheep and many other animals may be infected by feeding; however guinea pigs and rabbits are not infected by oral administration of  $10^8$  spores (Druett *et al* 1953). It is evident that susceptibility by different routes of infection may vary independently and that the infective dose by one route of challenge gives no indication of susceptibility by another route. Human infection by the oral route is of negligible importance in civilized countries but significant outbreaks with high mortality occur in primitive societies in which meat from infected animals is used for human food. Additional information is needed in regard

to the infective dose and mortality in such outbreaks. Meningitis due to *B. anthracis* is a relatively rare and almost invariably fatal manifestation of human anthrax and is usually a complication of primary infection elsewhere (Haight 1952).

No direct information is available in regard to the infective dose for man by the various routes and estimates of human susceptibility must be inferred from indirect evidence. The significant mortality of cutaneous anthrax indicates that man is more susceptible than white rats, cattle and swine. The tissue reaction to infection and the occurrence of spontaneous recovery from cutaneous infection suggest that man is less susceptible than the guinea pig, the rabbit and the monkey. Susceptibility by the respiratory route is even more difficult to estimate. There is no evidence that man is less susceptible to small particle aerosols than are the guinea pig and the monkey.

## FACTORS IN INFECTION AND RESISTANCE

Anthrax has occupied an important position as a model infection for investigation of mechanisms of infection and resistance. This has resulted from the acute course of the infection with its dramatic terminal bacteremia, the wide variation in the susceptibility of different species and the economic and medical importance of the disease. Early investigations have been reviewed by Sobernheim (1931) and Eurich and Hewlett (1930) and more recent work by Smith and Keppie (1955) and by Sterne (1959). Organisms injected into highly susceptible animals become encapsulated and proliferate freely. Few leukocytes accumulate and rapid generalization of the infection occurs. In less susceptible animals the course of the infection is similar for the first few hours. After this period however large numbers of leukocytes appear in the lesion and the organisms lose their capsules and disintegrate without conspicuous phagocytosis (Cromartie *et al* 1947). During growth *in vivo* the organism produces agglutinins which act to overcome the normal defensive mechanisms of the host. These substances inhibit the bactericidal or phagocytic activities of the host and permit progressive in

fection Fractionation of infected tissue or of organisms grown *in vivo* reveals 3 substances that appear to be capable of contributing to *in vivo* aggressin activity the glutamyl polypeptide of the capsule the anthrax toxin and an intracellular anticomplementary protein The glutamyl polypeptide evidently acts by protecting the organism against opsonization by normal serum, the toxin by direct harmful effect on phagocytes The significance of the intracellular protein has not been established (Keppie *et al* 1963) The bactericidal activity of serum leukocytes and tissue extracts is evidently due to the presence of basic polypeptides containing lysine The polypeptide causes a rapid inhibition of oxygen uptake *in vitro* by suspensions of *B anthracis* presumably its protective activity *in vivo* is exerted in a similar manner (Bloom and Prigmore 1952) The course of the infection is influenced by the relative abilities of the organism to elaborate aggressins and of the host to mobilize bactericidal substances The encapsulated bacilli are resistant to the phagocytic cells of relatively resistant as well as susceptible animals and it is probable that phagocytosis is of minor importance in natural immunity to infection with virulent strains

The mechanism of death in anthrax has aroused the interest of investigators for many years Sterile extracts of infected tissue have edema producing activity in the skin of normal animals but lethal activity cannot be demonstrated Culture filtrates organisms grown *in vitro* or *in vivo* and killed in various ways and extracts of such organisms likewise exhibit no significant toxic activity It seemed to be possible that the massive terminal bacteremia that occurs in the guinea pig and certain other species is directly responsible for death Blockage of capillaries or exhaustion of oxygen or of essential host nutrients have been suggested as basic mechanisms of death in the infection These theories were rendered untenable and the problem was greatly clarified by the investigations of Smith Keppie and associates (see Smith and Keppie 1955) Treatment of infected guinea pigs with streptomycin promptly terminates the infection even when the drug is administered a few hours before death would otherwise

have occurred Multiplication of the organisms ceases and the bacteremia rapidly disappears However when the bacteremia exceeds  $3 \times 10^4$  chains of organisms per ml of blood the animals die of anthrax in spite of complete clearance of organisms from the circulation The critical stage is reached at a point only 1/300th of the level of the bacteremia at death in untreated animals These experiments demonstrate that a factor other than the physical presence of the organisms in the circulation is of critical importance and have again directed attention to other mechanisms and to search for a lethal toxin

Detailed study of infected guinea pigs revealed that, in the terminal phases the animals present a classic syndrome of secondary shock The manifestations include reduced blood volume and pressure hemoconcentration the presence of edema and hemorrhage and fall in body temperature Disturbances in electrolyte balance and in phosphate and carbohydrate metabolism are prominent and there is evidence of acute renal failure A renewed search for the factor responsible for these effects led to the finding that sterile heparinized plasma of guinea pigs dying or near death from anthrax is capable of producing extensive edema in the skin of normal guinea pigs and is lethal to mice and guinea pigs when injected intravenously or intraperitoneally The toxicity is specifically neutralized by anthrax antiserum Presumably the plasma toxin is closely related to the tissue damaging factor detected in extracts of anthrax lesions

Initially the plasma toxin was separated by ultracentrifugation into 2 fractions both of which were necessary for activity, and one of which Factor II could be replaced by protective antigen produced *in vitro* (Smith *et al* 1956a) The other component Factor I was subsequently produced *in vitro* and purified by chromatographic methods (Thorne *et al* 1960 Sargeant *et al* 1960) Factor I is a protein with a strong chelating action for metal ions it forms a specific line of precipitation with appropriate anthrax antisera in Ouchterlony plates When combined with Factor II it produces edema in the rabbit skin although the lethal activity in mice and rats is low, relative to the edema producing activity

Factor III or rat lethal factor has been detected and partially purified this factor in combination with protective antigen is evidently responsible for the lethality of plasma toxin (Stanley and Smith 1961 Beall *et al* 1962) Negative results have thus far been obtained in attempts to demonstrate enzymatic activity in a mixture of the three purified factors of the toxin and the biochemical basis of the toxicity remains unknown (Stanley and Smith 1963) Intravenous injection of crude toxin leads to liberation into the blood of alkaline phosphatase However this effect is produced by factors related to phospholipase and not by the anthrax toxin (Slein and Logan 1962)

### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

Three antigens of the organism have been recognized for many years and extensively studied the protective antigen (Factor II of the anthrax toxin) the capsular polypeptide and the somatic polysaccharide In addition Factors I and III of the toxin are evidently antigenic proteins (Stanley and Smith 1961 Beall *et al* 1962) Protective antigen is the substance primarily responsible for development of immunity to infection in most animals Bail in 1904 demonstrated this antigen in edema fluid of anthrax lesions and these observations have been confirmed and extended by subsequent investigators Attempts to produce protective antigen in vitro were unsuccessful until Gladstone (1946) demonstrated elaboration of the antigen during growth of the organism in whole serum under critical conditions Subsequently Wright *et al* (1954) obtained elaboration of protective antigen in chemically defined nonprotein media and these observations have been confirmed and extended (Belton and Strange 1954 Thorne and Belton 1957 Wright *et al* 1962) The antigen is a protein which is elaborated into the culture medium only under particular cultural conditions one of the most consistent nutritional requirements is for bicarbonate ion Bicarbonate evidently alters the permeability of the bacterial cell so that protective antigen is elaborated into the medium in its absence antigen accumulates intracellularly (Puziss and Howard, 1963)

Protective antigen can be detected and

measured by means of its immunizing activity in rabbits or guinea pigs Recently more precise and convenient methods for estimation of protective antigen have been proposed The role of protective antigen in the anthrax toxin discussed above provides the basis for a procedure for its estimation in vivo (Belton and Henderson 1956) The antigen fixes complement in the presence of appropriate antisera and titrations utilizing this property correlate significantly with activity in immunization of guinea pigs (McGann *et al* 1961) Even more useful however has been the association of protective antigen with a line of precipitation demonstrable by the method of Ouchterlony (Thorne and Belton 1957) This association has provided a basis for detection and estimation of the antigen and its antibody and for study of their biologic activities

The principal component of the capsule is a polypeptide of glutamic acid This substance plays a major role in virulence of the organism since nonencapsulated mutants which do not elaborate polypeptide are avirulent The polypeptide has agglutinating activity and because of its concentration around the organism it probably exerts a considerable effect in preventing phagocytosis (Smith and Keppie 1955) Antisera reactive with the isolated polypeptide in precipitation and complement fixation reactions may be prepared by immunizing animals with large numbers of encapsulated organisms However recent studies indicate that the reactive substance in such antisera is not antibody but rather a basic protein similar to serum lysozyme Thus the antigenicity of this polypeptide must be considered uncertain pending further study (Leonard and Thorne 1961)

Polypeptides similar chemically to that of *B. anthracis* are elaborated by *B. subtilis* and by certain other *Bacillus* species The *B. anthracis* polypeptide is composed of D-glutamic acid in gamma linkage (Thorne 1960) whereas the polypeptide elaborated by *B. subtilis* contains also L-glutamic acid the proportion varying with cultural conditions

The somatic polysaccharide contains equimolar quantities of D-glucosamine D-galactose and acetic acid (Ivanovics 1940a) A small peptide moiety containing  $\alpha$ -D-diamino

nomipelic acid is closely associated with the polysaccharide and the complex appears to form part of the cell wall (Smith *et al.*, 1956b). The polysaccharide is present in all strains of *B. anthracis* thus far studied and also in some strains of *B. cereus* (Ivánovics and Foldes 1958). The polysaccharide reacts in high dilution with antianthrax serum and cross reacts with the polysaccharide of type 14 pneumococcus and with partially hydrolyzed blood group A substance (Ivánovics 1940b). The polysaccharide is devoid of agglutinin activity and evidently plays no important role in virulence. Polyglycerophosphate an antigen common to many gram positive organisms has been detected in extracts of *B. anthracis* (McCarty 1959). Immunoelectrophoretic studies of culture filtrates and cell homogenates reveal numerous uncharacterized antigens.

### ACQUIRED RESISTANCE AND IMMUNIZATION

The observation that animals that survive anthrax become resistant to reinfection has been amply confirmed since the initial report of Chauveau in 1880. Second attacks of human anthrax are rare but apparently authentic instances have been reported. Vaccines composed of suspensions of killed organisms produce no significant increase in resistance. Pasteur introduced the use of attenuated strains for vaccination of domestic animals in 1881 and this method with subsequent modifications and improvements has been widely used where anthrax is a significant problem. Originally the organism was attenuated by growth at 42° to 43° C and 2 vaccines of different degrees of attenuation were used: the first was virulent for mice but avirulent for guinea pigs and rabbits and the second was virulent for guinea pigs and some rabbits. The use of 2 vaccines was gradually discarded and a single vaccine virulent for guinea pigs but not for rabbits came into general use. Sapoin is usually added and in proper concentration it increases the antigenicity of the preparation.

In practice it has proved to be difficult to maintain the virulence of the Pasteurian vaccines at the proper level. If the vaccine is too virulent excessive losses occur among

vaccinated animals. If the virulence is insufficient the vaccine is unable to produce the degree of infection that is necessary for development of immunity. This difficulty has been overcome by the introduction of nonencapsulated spore vaccines by Sterne (1939). The nonencapsulated mutants have lost the ability to form the glutamyl polypeptide and are essentially avirulent. They sporulate well and vaccines are readily prepared on a large scale. These vaccines produce smaller losses among vaccinated animals than do Pasteurian vaccines and a single preparation is suitable for all species of animals. They were first introduced and used on a large scale in South Africa and have largely replaced the Pasteurian vaccines elsewhere. None of the living spore vaccines is generally considered safe for immunization of man although large scale trials in man of vaccines of the Stern type have been reported from the USSR. The vaccines have been administered by the respiratory as well as by the cutaneous route apparently no significant untoward reactions were encountered (Aleksandrov *et al.* 1961).

For many years attempts have been made to develop effective nonviable antigens but until recently none of the preparations has afforded significant immunity to infection. The development by Gladstone and subsequent investigators of conditions for elaboration of protective antigen *in vitro* has been described above. This antigen combined with alum or aluminum hydroxide is highly effective in immunization of guinea pigs, rabbits, monkeys, sheep and cattle (Schlingman *et al.* 1956; Darlow *et al.* 1956; Puziss and Wright 1963). The antigen is well tolerated in man and when it was tested in occupationally exposed textile workers it reduced the incidence of anthrax more than 90 per cent (Brachman *et al.* 1962).

### DIAGNOSIS

Prompt and accurate diagnosis of cutaneous anthrax in man usually presents no serious difficulty. The characteristic lesion begins as a small red macule which enlarges and local edema of varying extent gradually develops in the surrounding tissue. A vesicle filled with clear fluid occupies a central

position and is soon followed by satellite vesicles. The organism may be easily demonstrated in the early lesion by cultural methods and frequently may be detected in stained smears. Fluid and scrapings from the base of a previously unopened vesicle should be used for preparation of slides and of cultures on nutrient or blood agar. Microscopic examination of Gram or Giemsa stained films will frequently reveal the organism and permit a rapid tentative diagnosis. The lesion gradually becomes necrotic with evolution of the black eschar characteristic of anthrax. At this stage demonstration of the organism is less certain and secondary infection may complicate the bacteriologic diagnosis. Occasionally inoculation of mice or guinea pigs will allow isolation of the organism when direct cultural methods fail. Antibiotic therapy usually causes rapid disappearance of the organism even though evolution of the local lesion continues. Therefore specimens for bacteriologic study should be obtained before therapy is initiated.

Extension to the regional lymph nodes and to the blood occurs in progressive infections. Blood cultures may be positive in advanced infections and in untreated cases are invariably positive at death. The cutaneous lesion is not painful but tenderness of the regional lymph nodes does occur. A history of occupational exposure to anthrax is of great assistance in the diagnosis particularly in areas such as the United States where the disease is uncommon. Conventional serologic procedures have been of little value in diagnosis.

Diagnosis of respiratory anthrax is a much more difficult problem because of the mild and nonspecific nature of the early symptoms and the fulminating course of the advanced disease which may resemble cardiac failure or cerebrovascular accident. Mediastinal widening demonstrable by roentgenography is suggestive of the disease and gram stained smears of blood, sputum or cerebrospinal fluid may reveal the organism (Plotkin *et al* 1960). Textbooks of veterinary pathology may be consulted for descriptions and diagnostic procedures applicable to the disease in animals (Hutyra *et al* 1946; Sterne 1959). The Ascoli thermoprecipitin reaction is of value in post-

mortem diagnosis. Infected tissue is ground in saline, heated for 5 minutes and filtered and the filtrate is layered over appropriate antianthrax serum. In positive reactions a ring of precipitate is formed at the interface between the two fluids.

## THERAPY

Antisera prepared by hyperimmunization of animals with living cultures were used for many years in treatment of anthrax. It seems that such antisera alone or in combination with neoarsphenamine produced a considerable reduction in the mortality of cutaneous anthrax. With the advent of the sulfonamides a further reduction in mortality was obtained. These drugs in their turn have been superseded by the antibiotics and the mortality of promptly diagnosed and adequately treated cases of cutaneous anthrax is now essentially zero. The anthrax bacillus is susceptible to penicillin, streptomycin, tetracyclines and erythromycin but many strains are relatively resistant to chloramphenicol (Plotkin and Brachman 1964). Experimental infections in animals and many cases of human cutaneous anthrax have been treated satisfactorily with penicillin and this drug is generally considered to be most effective. Tetracyclines and erythromycin are also effective and may be preferred under some circumstances (Gold 1955). Emergence of antibiotic resistance has not been a significant problem in therapy although virulent antibiotic resistant strains may be obtained by selection in the laboratory. Antibiotics rapidly halt the extension of the disease and sterilize the tissues but they do not reverse the toxic processes initiated by the infection. The primary lesion usually progresses to formation of the typical eschar despite early therapy. The death of infected guinea pigs that had received doses of streptomycin sufficient to destroy all viable organisms has been discussed previously.

Little information is available regarding antibiotic therapy of respiratory anthrax in man. The early symptoms are mild and nonspecific and the existence of acute disease is seldom recognized until terminal symptoms appear. Treatment has usually been initiated late in the disease and the unfavor-



nopimelic acid is closely associated with the polysaccharide and the complex appears to form part of the cell wall (Smith *et al* 1956b). The polysaccharide is present in all strains of *B anthracis* thus far studied and also in some strains of *B cereus* (Ivánovics and Foldes 1958). The polysaccharide reacts in high dilution with antianthrax serum and cross reacts with the polysaccharide of type 14 pneumococcus and with partially hydrolyzed blood group A substance (Ivánovics 1940b). The polysaccharide is devoid of agglutinin activity and evidently plays no important role in virulence. Polyglycero phosphate, an antigen common to many gram positive organisms, has been detected in extracts of *B anthracis* (McCarty 1959). Immunoelectrophoretic studies of culture filtrates and cell homogenates reveal numerous uncharacterized antigens.

#### ACQUIRED RESISTANCE AND IMMUNIZATION

The observation that animals that survive anthrax become resistant to reinfection has been amply confirmed since the initial report of Chauveau in 1880. Second attacks of human anthrax are rare but apparently authentic instances have been reported. Vaccines composed of suspensions of killed organisms produce no significant increase in resistance. Pasteur introduced the use of attenuated strains for vaccination of domestic animals in 1881 and this method with subsequent modifications and improvements has been widely used where anthrax is a significant problem. Originally the organism was attenuated by growth at 42° to 43° C and 2 vaccines of different degrees of attenuation were used: the first was virulent for mice but avirulent for guinea pigs and rabbits and the second was virulent for guinea pigs and some rabbits. The use of 2 vaccines was gradually discarded and a single vaccine virulent for guinea pigs but not for rabbits came into general use. Saponin is usually added and in proper concentration it increases the antigenicity of the preparation.

In practice it has proved to be difficult to maintain the virulence of the Pasteurian vaccines at the proper level. If the vaccine is too virulent excessive losses occur among

vaccinated animals. If the virulence is insufficient the vaccine is unable to produce the degree of infection that is necessary for development of immunity. This difficulty has been overcome by the introduction of nonencapsulated spore vaccines by Sterne (1939). The nonencapsulated mutants have lost the ability to form the glutamyl polypeptide and are essentially avirulent. They sporulate well and vaccines are readily prepared on a large scale. These vaccines produce smaller losses among vaccinated animals than do Pasteurian vaccines and a single preparation is suitable for all species of animals. They were first introduced and used on a large scale in South Africa and have largely replaced the Pasteurian vaccines elsewhere. None of the living spore vaccines is generally considered safe for immunization of man although large scale trials in man of vaccines of the Stern type have been reported from the USSR. The vaccines have been administered by the respiratory as well as by the cutaneous route apparently no significant untoward reactions were encountered (Aleksandrov *et al* 1961).

For many years attempts have been made to develop effective nonviable antigens but until recently none of the preparations has afforded significant immunity to infection. The development by Gladstone and subsequent investigators of conditions for elaboration of protective antigen *in vitro* has been described above. This antigen combined with alum or aluminum hydroxide is highly effective in immunization of guinea pigs, rabbits, monkeys, sheep and cattle (Schlingman *et al* 1956; Darlow *et al* 1956; Purziss and Wright 1963). The antigen is well tolerated in man and when it was tested in occupationally exposed textile workers it reduced the incidence of anthrax more than 90 per cent (Brachman *et al* 1962).

#### DIAGNOSIS

Prompt and accurate diagnosis of cutaneous anthrax in man usually presents no serious difficulty. The characteristic lesion begins as a small red macule which enlarges and local edema of varying extent gradually develops in the surrounding tissue. A vesicle filled with clear fluid occupies a central

## CONTROL MEASURES

Major emphasis in the control of human anthrax is placed on minimizing contact of man with infected animals or contaminated animal products. The world wide problem is complex and the most appropriate measures vary in different areas and with different groups. Economic and sociologic factors are interwoven with the purely medical and veterinary aspects of the problem. Obviously the most satisfactory measure would be the elimination of the disease in animals. Modern methods of immunization are capable of producing a marked reduction in incidence. The organisms have been shown to remain viable in soil for many years and many agricultural areas are heavily contaminated. The extent to which the disease can be eliminated by an effective program of immunization will doubtless vary with soil and climatic conditions. Mass immunization has virtually eliminated the disease in South Africa (Sterne 1959). In colder countries in which the disease is sporadic outbreaks of animal anthrax have frequently been traced to imported foodstuffs particularly bone meal. This material may be rendered safe by proper steam treatment during processing.

When outbreaks of animal anthrax occur prompt diagnosis, isolation of sick animals and suitable disposal of the carcasses are essential to limit the spread of the disease. Prompt vaccination of healthy animals on the premises may also be indicated (Stein 1947). It is axiomatic that when anthrax is suspected autopsies should not be performed in the field so that further contamination of the area and sporulation of the organisms in the carcass may be avoided. Disposal of carcasses by complete cremation or deep burial is imperative. Proper disinfection of the surroundings represents a difficult problem since most of the disinfectants that are effective with vegetative organisms are without action on anthrax spores. Strong hypochlorite solutions are the reagents of choice.

Measures for the control of industrial anthrax include disinfection of animal products such as hides and hair that originate

in areas in which the disease is widespread. These materials may be heavily contaminated and economically feasible methods of disinfection that may be applied routinely without damage to the material are not easy to devise. Observations on sterilization by heat have been reviewed by Schneider and Kolb (1948). Washing with soap and exposure to warm formaldehyde are effective with hair and wool. Introduction of detergents is potentially hazardous because many of these substances increase the respiratory infectivity of spores (Barnes 1947). Recently developed preparations of antigen are well tolerated and appear to be highly effective in man; it is probable that the incidence of industrial anthrax can be greatly reduced by immunization of occupationally exposed workers (Brachman *et al* 1962).

## REFERENCES

- Albrink W S 1961 Pathogenesis of inhalation anthrax. *Bact Rev* 25: 268-273.
- Aleksandrov N I, Gefen N, Gapochko K G, Garin N S, Sergeyev V M, Lazareva E S, Mishchenko V V and Shlyakhov E N 1961 Aerosol immunization with dried live vaccines and toxoids. VI. A study of post vaccination reactions and immunological efficacy of aerosol immunization with aerosol brucellosis, tularemia, anthrax and plague vaccines in man. *J Microbiol Epidemiol Immunobiol* 32: 1245-1252.
- Barnes J M 1947 The development of anthrax following the administration of spores by inhalation. *Brit J Exp Path* 28: 385-394.
- Beall F A, Taylor M J and Thorne C B 1962 Rapid lethal effect in rats of a third component found upon fractionating the toxin of *Bacillus anthracis*. *J Bact* 83: 1274-1280.
- Beck E S, Gorelick M K and Shimanuki H 1960 Variation of *Bacillus anthracis* in vivo. *Bact Proc* p 43.
- Belton F C and Henderson D W 1956 A method for assaying anthrax immunising antigen and antibody. *Brit J Exp Path* 37: 156-160.
- Belton F C and Strange R E 1954 Studies on a protective antigen produced in vitro from *Bacillus anthracis*. Medium and methods of production. *Brit J Exp Path* 35: 144-152.

able results provide no basis for estimating the possible effectiveness of earlier therapy. Experimental respiratory infection in monkeys may be suppressed by daily administration of penicillin, but the animals die of anthrax if the penicillin is discontinued after 10 days. If active immunization is carried out while the infection is suppressed by penicillin the animals survive (Henderson *et al* 1956).

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Although anthrax is primarily a disease of cattle, sheep, horses and goats, virtually all animals show some susceptibility and the disease has been detected in nearly every country. It is particularly common in the Mediterranean region, in Africa and in Asia. Epizootics with heavy loss of livestock occur at intervals in enzootic areas. In Iran during 1945, for example, 1 million of 15 million sheep were reported to have died of anthrax (Delpy and Kaweh 1946).

Occasional outbreaks are recorded in most sections of the United States, but the disease is not a continuing problem except in certain areas. During the period 1945 to 1954, 3 447 outbreaks were reported from 39 states, with loss of 17 600 head of livestock (Stein and Van Ness 1955). The 3 important endemic areas are the Gulf Coast region of Louisiana and Texas, a portion of eastern South Dakota and Nebraska and an area in central California. The disease was introduced during early settlement and cases in animals and man were recorded as early as 1824 (Hanson 1959). The nature of the soil and the climatic conditions evidently determine the establishment of the disease in certain areas and the periodic occurrence of epizootics (Minett 1952, Van Ness and Stein 1956).

In animals the disease is transmitted primarily by ingestion of contaminated forage or the carcasses of infected animals. The bacilli in the unopened carcass are killed rapidly by putrefactive processes, but sporulation may occur rapidly if the bacilli are exposed to air. Spores may be disseminated over wide areas by surface water, animals, birds and insects. Contaminated foods are

frequently responsible for introduction of anthrax into new areas. Imported bone meal was the cause of the extensive outbreak in the midwestern United States in 1952 (Stein and Stoner, 1953). It is not clear what importance should be ascribed to saprophytic growth of the organism in favoring persistence of the disease in certain areas. The spores may remain viable for many years in soil and some authorities consider that the epidemiology of the disease can be accounted for without postulating saprophytic growth of the organism. However, *B. anthracis* grows readily on ordinary laboratory media and its growth requirements are no more complex than those of typical saprophytic members of the genus (Proom and Knight 1955). There would appear to be no reason why the organism should not grow saprophytically under favorable conditions, although antibiotics elaborated by other microbes may limit its proliferation in soil (McCloy 1951).

The average number of cases of human anthrax reported annually in the United States during the period 1951 to 1960 was 33. Additional unreported cases also occur. However, the incidence is much greater in many countries and it has been estimated that from 20 000 to 100 000 human cases occur annually in the world (Glassman 1958). Man is infected by contact with infected animals (agricultural anthrax) or contaminated animal products (industrial anthrax). Agricultural anthrax occurs in farmers, veterinarians and slaughterhouse workers. Industrial anthrax occurs primarily in persons whose work brings them in contact with contaminated hair, wool or hides, although other products have been responsible for scattered outbreaks. Occasionally dock workers are infected while handling contaminated cargoes. Industrial anthrax in the United States occurs predominantly among workers in textile mills that process goat hair imported from the Middle East (Brachman and Fekety 1958). Outbreaks of intestinal anthrax are reported from primitive areas in which meat from animals that have died of the disease is used as food and it is probable that such outbreaks are not uncommon (Nihonoh 1960).

- concerning the phylogenesis of *Bacillus anthracis* Acta microbiol acad sci hung 5 89 109
- Keppie J Harris Smith P W and Smith II 1963 The chemical basis of the virulence of *Bacillus anthracis* IX Its aggressins and their mode of action Brit J Exp Path 44 446-453
- Koch R 1887 Die Aetologie der Milzbrand Krankheit begründet auf die Entwicklungsgeschichte des *Bacillus anthracis* Bestr Biol Pflanzen 2 277 310 Translated in Medical Classics 2 787 820 1938
- Leonard C G and Thorne C B 1961 Studies on the nonspecific precipitation of basic serum proteins with  $\gamma$  glutamyl polypeptides J Immunol 87 175 188
- McCarty M 1959 The occurrence of poly glycerophosphate as an antigenic component of various Gram positive bacterial species J Exp Med 109 361 378
- McCloy E W 1951 Studies on a lysogenic *Bacillus* strain I A bacteriophage specific for *Bacillus anthracis* J Hyg 49 114 125
- McGann V G Stearman R L and Wright G 1961 Studies on immunity in anthrax VIII Relationship of complement fixing activity to protective activity of culture filtrates J Immun 86 458-464
- Meynell E W 1963 Reverting and non reverting rough variants of *Bacillus anthracis* J Gen Microbiol 32 55 60
- Minett F C 1952 The annual and seasonal incidence of anthrax in various countries Climatic effects and sources of infection Bull Off Int Epizoot 37 238 300
- Morris E J 1955 A selective medium for *Bacillus anthracis* J Gen Microbiol 13 456-460
- Nhonoli A M 1960 Cutaneous anthrax in Moshi District II Afr Med J 37 37-43
- Norman P S Ray J G Jr Brachman P S Plotkin S A and Pagano J S 1960 Sero logic testing for anthrax antibodies in workers in a goat hair processing mill Am J Hyg 72 32 37
- Nungester W J 1929 Dissociation of *B anthracis* J Infect Dis 44 73 125
- Pearce T W and Powell E O 1951 A selective medium for *Bacillus anthracis* J Gen Microbiol 5 387 390
- Plotkin S A and Brachman P S 1964 Antibiotic sensitivities of strains of *Bacillus anthracis* pathogenic for man (To be published)
- Plotkin S A Brachman P Utell M Bumford F H and Atchison M M 1960 An epidemic of inhalation anthrax the first in the twentieth century I Clinical features Am J Med 29 992 1001
- Preis H 1911 Studien über des Varieren und des Wesen der Abschwachung des Milz brandbacillus II Bakt Abt I (Orig) 58 510-565
- Proom II and Knight II C J G 1955 The minimal nutritional requirements of some species in the genus *Bacillus* J Gen Microbiol 13 474-480
- Puziss M and Howard M B 1963 Studies on Immunity in Anthrax XI Control of cellular permeability by bicarbonate ion in relation to protective antigen elaboration J Bact 85 237 243
- Puziss M and Rittenberg S C 1957 Studies on the anaerobic metabolism of *Bacillus anthracis* and *Bacillus cereus* J Bact 73 48 51
- Puziss M and Wright G G 1963 Studies on immunity in anthrax X Gel adsorbed protective antigen for immunization of man J Bact 85 230-236
- Renaux E 1952 Culture de *Bacillus anthracis* en milieu calcique et en milieu oxalate Ann Inst Pasteur 83 38-45
- Ross J M 1957 The pathogenesis of anthrax following the administration of spores by the respiratory route J Path Bact 73 485-494
- Roth N G and Lavelly D H 1956 Germination of spores of certain aerobic bacilli under anaerobic conditions J Bact 71 162 166
- Roth N G Wolfe V L and Marcus L 1956 Studies on the plasmodesm like linkage between spores of *Bacillus anthracis* J Bact 72 344 348
- Sargeant K Stanley J L and Smith H 1960 The serological relationship between purified preparations of factors I and II of the anthrax toxin produced *in vivo* and *in vitro* J Gen Microbiol 22 219 228
- Schlingman A S Devlin H B Wright G G Maine R J and Manning M C 1956 Immunizing activity of alum precipitated protective antigen of *Bacillus anthracis* in cattle sheep and swine Am J Vet. Res 17 256 261
- Schneider R. and Kolb R W 1948 Heat resistance studies with spores of *Bacillus anthracis* and related aerobic bacilli in hair and bristles Pub Health Repts Suppl No 207 Washington D C U S Gov Printing Off 24 pp
- Slein M W and Logan G F Jr 1962 Mechanism of action of the toxin of *Bacillus anthracis* II Alkaline phosphatemia produced by culture filtrates of various bacilli J Bact 83 359 369
- Smith H and Keppie J 1955 Studies on the

- Biegeleisen J Z Jr Cherry W II Skalyi P and Moody M D 1962 The demonstration of *Bacillus anthracis* in environmental specimens by conventional and fluorescent antibody techniques *Am J Hyg* 75 230 239
- Bloom W L and Prigmore J R. 1952 A method for preparation of antibacterial basic proteins of normal tissues *J Bact* 64 855 858
- Brachman P S and Fekety F R 1958 In dustrial anthrax *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 70 574 584
- Brachman P S Gold H Plotkin S A Fekety F R Werrin M and Ingraham N R 1962 Field evaluation of a human anthrax vaccine *Am J Pub Health* 52 632 645
- Brachman P S Pagano J S and Albrink W B 1961 Two cases of fatal inhalation anthrax one associated with sarcoidosis *New Eng J Med* 265 203 208
- Brown E R and Cherry W B 1955 Specific identification of *Bacillus anthracis* by means of a variant bacteriophage *J Infect Dis* 96 34 39
- Buck C A Anacker H L Newman F S and Eisenstark A 1963 Phage isolated from lysogenic *Bacillus anthracis* *J Bact* 85 1423 1430
- Burdon K L and Wende R D 1960 On the differentiation of anthrax bacilli from *Bacillus cereus* *J Infect Dis* 107 224 234
- Cherry W II and Freeman E M 1959 Staining bacterial smears with fluorescent antibody V The rapid identification of *Bacillus anthracis* in culture and in human and murine tissues *Zbl Bakt* 175 582 604
- Cromartie W J Bloom W L and Watson D W 1947 Studies on infection with *Bacillus anthracis* I A histopathological study of skin lesions produced by *B anthracis* in susceptible and resistant animal species *J Infect Dis* 80 1 13
- Darlow H M Belton F C and Henderson D W 1956 The use of anthrax antigen to immunise man and monkey *Lancet* 2 476-479
- Delpy L P and Kawehi M 1946 L'infection charbonneuse des animaux et de l'homme en Iran Conditions de preparation et d'utilisation d'un vaccin sporulé et stabilisé *Arch Inst d'Hessarek* 2 3 48
- Druett H A Henderson D W Packman L and Peacock S 1953 Studies of respiratory infection I The influence of particle size on respiratory infection with anthrax spores *J Hyg* 51 359 371
- Eurich F W and Hewlett R T 1930 *Bacillus anthracis* Great Britain Medical Research Council a System of Bacteriology in Relation to Medicine vol 5 pp 439-478 London His Majesty's Stat Off
- Gillesen G and Scholz H G 1961 Die Selektion von Milzbrandbazillen aus Flüssigkeiten mit starker Verunreinigung durch *E coli* *Z Bakt Abt I (Orig)* 182 232 237
- Gladstone G P 1939 Inter relationships between amino acids in the nutrition of *B anthracis* *Brit J Exp Path* 20 189 200
- 1946 Immunity to anthrax protective antigen present in cell free culture filtrates *Brit J Exp Path* 27 394-418
- Gladstone G P and Johnston H H 1955 The effect of cultural conditions on the susceptibility of *Bacillus anthracis* to lysozyme *Brit J Exp Path* 36 363 372
- Glassman H N 1958 World incidence of anthrax in man *Pub Health Rep* 73 22 24
- Gold H 1955 Anthrax A report of one hundred seventeen cases *Arch Intern Med* 96 387 396
- Haight T H 1952 Anthrax meningitis Review of literature and report of two cases with autopsies *Am J Med Sci* 224 57 69
- Hanson R P 1959 The earliest account of anthrax in man and animals in North America *J Am Vet Med Ass* 135 463-465
- Harper G J and Morton J D 1953 The respiratory retention of bacterial aerosols experiments with radioactive spores *J Hyg* 51 372 385
- Henderson D W Peacock S and Belton F C 1956 Observations on the prophylaxis of experimental pulmonary anthrax in the monkey *J Hyg* 54 28 36
- Hills G M 1950 Chemical factors in the germination of spore bearing aerobes Observations on the influence of species strain and conditions of growth *J Gen Microbiol* 4 38-47
- Hutyra F Marek J and Manninger R 1946 Special pathology and therapeutics of the diseases of domestic animals 5th English edition vol 1 pp 1 35 Chicago Alexander Eger
- Ivanovics G 1940a Untersuchungen über das Polysaccharid der Milzbrandbazillen *Z Immunitätsforsch* 97 402-423
- 1940b Die immunbiologische Verwandtschaft zwischen dem Anthrax Polysaccharid der *Pneumokokklus* Typus XIV Kapselfsubstanz und der spezifischen Substanz der menschlichen roten Blutkörper Gruppe A *Z Immunitätsforsch* 98 373 386
- Ivánovics G and Foldes J 1958 Problems

- concerning the phylogenesis of *Bacillus anthracis* Acta microbiol acad sci hung 5 89 109
- Keppie J Harris Smith P W and Smith H 1963 The chemical basis of the virulence of *Bacillus anthracis* IX Its aggressiveness and their mode of action Brit J Exp Path 44 446 453
- Koch R 1887 Die Aetologie der Milzbrand Krankheit begründet auf die Entwicklungsgeschichte des *Bacillus anthracis* Beitr Biol Pflanzen 2 277 310 Translated in Medical Classics 2 787 820 1938
- Leonard C G and Thorne C B 1961 Studies on the nonspecific precipitation of basic serum proteins with  $\gamma$  glutamyl polypeptides J Immunol 87 175 188
- McCarthy M 1959 The occurrence of poly glycerophosphate as an antigenic component of various Gram positive bacterial species J Exp Med 109 361 378
- McCloy E W 1951 Studies on a lysogenic *Bacillus* strain I A bacteriophage specific for *Bacillus anthracis* J Hyg 49 114 125
- McGann V G Stearman R L and Wright G G 1961 Studies on immunity in anthrax VIII Relationship of complement fixing activity to protective activity of culture filtrates J Immun 86 458 464
- Meynell W 1963 Reverting and non reverting rough variants of *Bacillus anthracis* J Gen Microbiol 32 55 60
- Minnett F C 1952 The annual and seasonal incidence of anthrax in various countries Climatic effects and sources of infection Bull Off Int Epizoot 37 238 300
- Morris E J 1955 A selective medium for *Bacillus anthracis* J Gen Microbiol 13 456 460
- Nhono A M 1960 Cutaneous anthrax in Moshi District E Afr Med J 37 37 43
- Norman P S Ray J G Jr Brachman P S Plotkin S A and Pagano J S 1960 Serologic testing for anthrax antibodies in workers in a goat hair processing mill Am J Hyg 72 32 37
- Nungester W J 1929 Dissociation of *B anthracis* J Infect Dis 44 73 125
- Pearce T W and Powell E O 1951 A selective medium for *Bacillus anthracis* J Gen Microbiol 5 387 390
- Plotkin S A and Brachman P S 1964 Antibiotic sensitivities of strains of *Bacillus anthracis* pathogenic for man (To be published)
- Plotkin S A Brachman P S Utell M Bumford F H and Atchison M M 1960 An epidemic of inhalation anthrax the first in the twentieth century I Clinical features Am J Med 29 992 1001
- Preis H 1911 Studien über des Variieren und des Wesen der Abschwächung des Milz brandbacillus Z Bakt Abt I (Orig) 58 510 565
- Proom H and Knight B C J G 1955 The minimal nutritional requirements of some species in the genus *Bacillus* J Gen Microbiol 13 474 480
- Puziss M and Howard M B 1963 Studies on Immunity in Anthrax XI Control of cellular permeability by bicarbonate ion in relation to protective antigen elaboration J Bact 85 237 243
- Puziss M and Rittenberg B C 1957 Studies on the anaerobic metabolism of *Bacillus anthracis* and *Bacillus cereus* J Bact 73 48 51
- Puziss M and Wright G G 1963 Studies on immunity in anthrax X Gel adsorbed protective antigen for immunization of man J Bact 85 230 236
- Renaux E 1952 Culture de *Bacillus anthracis* en milieu calcique et en milieu oxalate Ann Inst Past 83 38 45
- Ross J M 1957 The pathogenesis of anthrax following the administration of spores by the respiratory route J Path Bact 73 485 494
- Roth N G and Lively D H 1956 Germination of spores of certain aerobic bacilli under anaerobic conditions J Bact 71 162 166
- Roth N G Wolfe V L and Marcus L 1956 Studies on the plasmodium like linkage between spores of *Bacillus anthracis* J Bact 72 344 348
- Sargeant K Stanley J L and Smith H 1960 The serological relationship between purified preparations of factors I and II of the anthrax toxin produced *in vivo* and *in vitro* J Gen Microbiol 22 219 228
- Schlingman A S Devlin H B Wright G G Maine R J and Manning M C 1956 Immunizing activity of alum precipitated protective antigen of *Bacillus anthracis* in cattle sheep and swine Am J Vet Res 17 256 261
- Schneider R and Kolb E W 1948 Heat resistance studies with spores of *Bacillus anthracis* and related aerobic bacilli in hair and bristles Pub Health Repts Suppl No 207 Washington D C U S Gov Printing Off 24 pp
- Slein M W and Logan G F Jr 1962 Mechanism of action of the toxin of *Bacillus anthracis* II Alkaline phosphatemia produced by culture filtrates of various bacilli J Bact 83 359 369
- Smith H and Keppie J 1955 Studies on the

- chemical basis of the pathogenicity of *Bacillus anthracis* using organisms grown *in vivo* in Society for General Microbiology Symposium No 5 pp 126 151 Cambridge Univ Press
- Smith H Tempest D W Stanley J L Harris-Smith P W and Gallop R C 1956a The chemical basis of the virulence of *Bacillus anthracis* VII Two components of the anthrax toxin their relationship to known immunising aggressins Brit J Exp Path 37 263 271
- Smith H Strange R E and Zwartouw H T 1956b  $\alpha$ -diaminopimelic acid in the peptide moiety of the cell wall polysaccharide of *Bacillus anthracis* Nature (London) 178 865 866
- Smyth H F 1941 A twenty year survey of anthrax in the United States in Symposium on Anthrax Department of Health Commonwealth of Pennsylvania
- Sobernheim G 1931 Miltzbrand in Kolle W Fraus R and Uhlenhuth P (eds) Handbuch der pathogenen Mikroorganismen ed 3 vol 3 pp 1041 1174 Jena Fischer
- Stamatin N 1959 Transduction phagique de la sporogenese chez *B. anthracis* Ann Inst Past 96 502 505
- Stanley J L and Smith H 1961 Purification of Factor I and recognition of a third factor of the anthrax toxin With a note by H Smith K Sargeant and J L Stanley about serological precipitation in gels as a criterion of purity of antigens J Gen Microbiol 26 49 66
- 1963 The three factors of anthrax toxin their immunogenicity and lack of demonstrable enzymic activity J Gen Microbiol 31 329 337
- Stein C D 1944 Differentiation of *Bacillus anthracis* from nonpathogenic aerobic spore forming bacilli Am J Vet Res 5 38 54
- 1947 Anthrax in animals and its relationship to the disease in man Ann NY Acad Sci 48 507 534
- Stein C D and Stoner M G Anthrax outbreaks in livestock during 1952 Vet Med 48 257 262
- Stein C D and Van Ness G B 1955 A ten year survey of anthrax in livestock with special reference to outbreaks in 1954 Vet Med 50 579 588
- Sterne M 1937 Variation in *Bacillus anthracis* Onderstepoort J Vet Sci 8 271 349
- 1939 The use of anthrax vaccines prepared from avirulent (uncapsulated) variants of *Bacillus anthracis* Onderstepoort J Vet Sci 13 307 312
- 1959 Anthrax in Infectious Diseases of Animals Stableforth A W and Gallo way I A (eds) London Butterworths Scientific Publications New York Acad Press
- Sterne M and Proom H 1957 Induction of motility and capsulation in *Bacillus anthracis* J Bact 74 541 542
- Taylor M J Rooney J R and Blundell G P 1961 Experimental anthrax in the rat II The relative lack of natural resistance in germ free (Lobund) hosts Am J Path 38 625 638
- Thorne C H 1960 Biochemical properties of virulent and avirulent strains of *Bacillus anthracis* Ann NY Acad Sci 88 1024 1033
- Thorne C B and Belton F C 1957 An agar diffusion method for titrating *Bacillus anthracis* immunizing antigen and its application to a study of antigen production J Gen Microbiol 17 505 516
- Thorne C H Molnar D M and Strange R E 1960 Production of toxin *in vitro* by *Bacillus anthracis* and its separation into two components J Bact 79 450-455
- Van Ness G and Stein C D 1956 Soils of the United States favorable for anthrax J Am Vet M A 128 79
- Wright G G Green T W and Kanode R G Jr 1954 Studies on immunity in anthrax V Immunizing activity of alum precipitated protective antigen J Immunol 73 387 391
- Wright G G Puziss M and Neely W B 1962 Studies on immunity in anthrax IX Effect of variations in cultural conditions on elaboration of protective antigen by strains of *Bacillus anthracis* J Bact 83 515 522
- Young G A Jr and Zelle M R 1946 Respiratory pathogenicity of *Bacillus anthracis* spores IV Chemical biological synergisms J Infect Dis 79 266 271

## 23

## The Clostridia

Organisms of the genus *Clostridium* are anaerobic or micro aerophilic gram positive rods producing endospores which in many species are wider than the rods from which they arise. A number of species decompose proteins or ferment carbohydrates. Several are pathogenic and a number produce toxins. Clostridia are always present in soils and in the intestinal tracts of animals and man. The majority are saprophytic and actively decompose organic matter in the soil. Some of these (*C. acetobutylicum*) are used in industry for the production of chemicals such as acetone and butanol.

The pathogenic clostridia include (1) the virtually noninvasive saprophyte *C. botulinum* which is dangerous because of the potent toxin it produces in foods, (2) *C. tetani* which has slight invasive powers but produces so potent a toxin that even slight lodgement in the host is dangerous and (3) frankly invasive clostridia which cause gas gangrene and enterotoxemias in man and animals.

## MORPHOLOGY

All species consist of relatively large gram positive rods. Some (e.g. *C. tetani*) are easily decolorized and retain the stain only when young. The pathogenic clostridia vary in size from the large rods of *C. novyi* Type II ( $10 - 18 \times 8 - 12$  microns) to the more slender *C. tetani* ( $0.3 - 0.8 \times 4 - 8$  microns). Cultures may show a great diversity of shapes and pleomorphic forms including filaments, ovals and citrons are

characteristic of species such as *C. septicum* and *C. chauvoei*. All clostridia form spores which are usually of greater diameter than the rods from which they arise. The shapes and the positions of the spores vary considerably from species to species and these differences are of great assistance in identification and classification. Prevot (1948) goes so far as to define orders on the basis of spore position. Some species form spores freely in the media usually available while others rarely sporulate. This is due to variations in reaction to the nutritional environment rather than to inherent differences in ability to sporulate because media can be devised in which even *C. perfringens* will produce dense crops of spores. Most clostridia possess peritrichous flagellae and are actively motile. However *C. perfringens* is consistently nonflagellated and nonmotile. A few species (e.g. *C. perfringens*) form capsules.

Bacteriologists familiar with aerobic organisms will be struck by the confusing pleomorphism of the clostridia. Not only may a variety of forms appear in a particular culture but also their frequency may vary from culture to culture, from medium to medium and from strain to strain of the same species. However variations in form in a culture should not be dismissed too lightly as manifestations of pleomorphism. It has often happened that cultures submitted for typing or identification because of some unusual features could be resolved into mixtures of two or even more species or types.



- chemical basis of the pathogenicity of *Bacillus anthracis* using organisms grown *in vivo* in Society for General Microbiology Symposium No 5 pp 126 151 Cambridge Univ Press
- Smith H Tempest D W Stanley J L Harris-Smith P W and Gallop R C 1956a The chemical basis of the virulence of *Bacillus anthracis* VII Two components of the anthrax toxin their relationship to known immunising aggressins Brit J Exp Path 37 263 271
- Smith H Strange R E and Zwartouw H T 1956b  $\alpha$ - $\epsilon$ -diaminopimelic acid in the peptide moiety of the cell wall polysaccharide of *Bacillus anthracis* Nature (London) 178 865 866
- Smyth H F 1941 A twenty year survey of anthrax in the United States in Symposium on Anthrax Department of Health Commonwealth of Pennsylvania
- Sobernheim G 1931 Milzbrand in Kolle W Fraus R and Uhlenhuth P (eds) Handbuch der pathogenen Mikroorganismen ed 3 vol 3 pp 1041 1174 Jena Fischer
- Stamatin N 1959 Transduction phagique de la sporogenese chez *B anthracis* Ann Inst Past 96 502 505
- Stanley J L and Smith H 1961 Purification of Factor I and recognition of a third factor of the anthrax toxin With a note by H Smith K Sargeant and J L Stanley about serological precipitation in gels as a criterion of purity of antigens J Gen Microbiol 26 49 66
- 1963 The three factors of anthrax toxin their immunogenicity and lack of demonstrable enzymic activity J Gen Microbiol 31 329 337
- Stein C D 1944 Differentiation of *Bacillus anthracis* from nonpathogenic aerobic spore forming bacilli Am J Vet Res 5 38 54
- 1947 Anthrax in animals and its relationship to the disease in man Ann NY Acad Sci 48 507 534
- Stein C D and Stoner M G Anthrax outbreaks in livestock during 1952 Vet Med 48 257 262
- Stein C D and Van Ness G B 1955 A ten year survey of anthrax in livestock with special reference to outbreaks in 1954 Vet Med 50 579 588
- Sterne M 1937 Variation in *Bacillus anthracis* Onderstepoort J Vet Sci 8 271 349
- 1939 The use of anthrax vaccines prepared from avirulent (uncapsulated) variants of *Bacillus anthracis* Onderstepoort J Vet Sci 13 307 312
- 1959 Anthrax in Infectious Diseases of Animals Stableforth A W and Gallo-way I A (eds) London Butterworths Scientific Publications New York Acad Press
- Sterne M and Proom H 1957 Induction of motility and capsulation in *Bacillus anthracis* J Bact 74 541 542
- Taylor M J Rooney J R and Blundell G P 1961 Experimental anthrax in the rat II The relative lack of natural resistance in germ free (Lobund) hosts Am J Path 38 625 638
- Thorne C B 1960 Biochemical properties of virulent and avirulent strains of *Bacillus anthracis* Ann NY Acad Sci 88 1024 1033
- Thorne C B and Belton F C 1957 An agar diffusion method for titrating *Bacillus anthracis* immunizing antigen and its application to a study of antigen production J Gen Microbiol 17 505 516
- Thorne C B Molnar D M and Strange R E 1960 Production of toxin *in vitro* by *Bacillus anthracis* and its separation into two components J Bact 79 450 455
- Van Ness G and Stein C D 1956 Soils of the United States favorable for anthrax J Am Vet M A 128 79
- Wright G G Green T W and Kanode R G Jr 1954 Studies on immunity in anthrax V Immunizing activity of alum precipitated protective antigen J Immunol 73 387 391
- Wright G G Puziss M and Neely W B 1962 Studies on immunity in anthrax IX Effect of variations in cultural conditions on elaboration of protective antigen by strains of *Bacillus anthracis* J Bact 83 515 522
- Young G A Jr and Zelle M R 1946 Respiratory pathogenicity of *Bacillus anthracis* spores IV Chemical biological synergisms J Infect Dis 79 266 271

## CULTIVATION

Clostridia are by definition anaerobic or micro aerophilic. The extent to which free oxygen inhibits growth varies with the species. *C. tetani* will not form surface colonies if the air pressure exceeds 4.5 mm of Hg while *C. perfringens* will tolerate up to 90 mm (McLeod 1930). *C. histolyticum*, *C. tertium* and *C. carnis* are able to produce visible colonies on aerobic blood agar plates.

The reasons why clostridia cannot tolerate appreciable amounts of free oxygen are not clear. It is known that their metabolic activities require a low oxidation-reduction potential (Eh) and that they can achieve this only if the concentration of free oxygen is low. It has also been suggested that the deficiency of peroxidases and catalase in clostridia could lead to the formation of lethal quantities of peroxides in the presence of free oxygen (McLeod and Gordon 1925; Gordon, Holman and McLeod 1953; Holman 1955). Indeed it might be significant that *C. novyi* which forms considerable amounts of peroxide on exposure to air dies rapidly under aerobic conditions. According to this very plausible hypothesis it should be possible to protect anaerobes from the effects of peroxides with pyruvate or with enzymes such as peroxidase or catalase. However such additions have not in general afforded the expected protection. The catalase used successfully by Holman (1955) was a crude extract of fresh ox liver so that its growth-promoting effect could well have been attributed to other substances. It is remarkable that the gross difference in the reactions of aerobic and anaerobic organisms to oxygen should still remain virtually unexplained.

When the Eh of a liquid medium has been reduced to the level where growth can start the growing organism will keep its milieu reduced and multiplication will occur readily provided that the medium is adequate in other respects. The reducing conditions necessary are easily obtained in liquid media if the exposed surface is small in relation to the volume and if the medium is deaerated immediately before inoculation by boiling for about 10 minutes. More exacting anaerobes may require the addition of a reducing sugar (glucose 0.2 to 1%) or reduced iron. More efficient reductants such as cysteine (0.01 to

0.1%) sodium thioglycollate (0.01 to 0.1%) or sodium formaldehyde sulfoxylate (0.01 to 0.05%) may be used to provide suitably reduced conditions for the most fastidious clostridia. However it must be remembered that the higher concentrations of the thiol-containing reductants, especially if heat sterilized, are inhibitory to some strains. Any of the pathogenic clostridia will grow in nutritionally adequate media to which chopped meat or brain have been added. The reducing systems involved are discussed by Lepper and Martin (1929) and Hewitt (1962).

For studying colonial morphology or for purifying mixed cultures growth on or in solid medium is necessary. Separate colonies of any clostridium can be obtained in deep agar shake cultures or in Veillon tubes. However such cultures may be difficult to purify and for this and other reasons growth on surface plates is usually preferable, even though conditions suitable for fastidious strains are more difficult to obtain. A number of methods have been described for obtaining anaerobiosis for surface growth. The simplest, most efficient and most widely used is incubation in a MacIntosh and Miles anaerobic jar or its modification, the Brewer jar. In these the air is displaced by hydrogen and any residual oxygen is removed by combination with the hydrogen. This reaction is catalyzed by palladinized or platinumized asbestos contained in an electrically heated gauze cage within the jar. Palladinized alumina catalysts (Deoxy) have now become available which are sufficiently active in the cold to obviate the need for a heating coil. Jars\* fitted with cold catalysts are simpler to use and safer than the conventional jars. The growth of many clostridia is improved by the addition of about 5 per cent CO<sub>2</sub> to the hydrogen.

All the clostridia described as being pathogenic to man will grow on the surface of blood agar plates incubated in an anaerobic jar (see Fig. 1). Some clostridia such as *C. novyi* Type II and *C. hemolyticum* (which are mainly of veterinary interest) are more exacting than those usually considered pathogenic for man and may require special media to ensure surface growth. It may help to pour a thin layer of agar over the surface of an inoculated plate or to add peptones contain-

Obtainable from Baird and Tatlock, London.

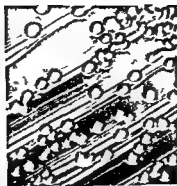
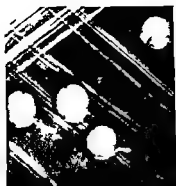
TABLE 1 MORPHOLOGY COLONIAL APPEARANCES AND SOME TYPICAL REACTIONS OF PATHOGENIC AND RELATED CLOSTRIDIA\*

ORGANISMS	COLONIAL APPEARANCES				MORPHOLOGY										PRECIPITATE ON EGG AGAR				Pathogenicity Man											
	Smooth to	Intermediate	Rough	F <sup>+</sup> Rhizoidal	Coarsely Rhizoidal	Swarming	Somewhat Motile	Diameter				VEGETATIVE CELLS																		
								1 mm	3 mm	6 mm	Pleomorphic	Conspicuous	Motility	Frequency	Well defined	Subterminal	Spherical	Bivalve		Cylindrical	Opalescence	Indescent Layer	Microaerophilic							
<b>Toxigenic Group</b>																														
<i>C. botulinum</i> A B F	X	X	X	X	X	(X)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	(X)
<i>C. botulinum</i> D C E		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. tetani</i>		X	X	X	X	(X)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<b>Gas gangrene Group</b>																														
<i>C. chauvoei</i>	X	X	X	X	X	(X)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. histolyticum</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. novyi</i> A	X	X	X	X	X	(X)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. novyi</i> B	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. novyi</i> C	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. novyi</i> D	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. perfringens</i> A	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. perfringens</i> B	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. perfringens</i> C	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. perfringens</i> D	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. perfringens</i> E	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. septicum</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. sordidum</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<b>Associated Species</b>																														
<i>C. bifementans</i>	X	X	X	X	X	(X)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. butyricum</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. fallax</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. sporogenes</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. ferrii</i> n	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<b>Rare Species</b>																														
<i>C. capillosa</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. caeni</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. cochlearium</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. difficile</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. sphenoides</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X
<i>C. tetanomorphum</i>	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	++	X	++	++	X	X	X	X	++	X	0	X	X	X

X The organism possesses the particular appearance and morphology.

X The organism possesses the particular property indicated (X) The property in question is possessed by very few strains or possessed to a slight degree 0 The particular property indicated is invariably absent, + + + + The degree to which a particular property is present (+) Rarely present or present to a slight extent only. The descriptions of the different character types must be regarded as approximate since it is impossible in such a table to indicate the conditions of culture or the mode of culture which will be encountered.

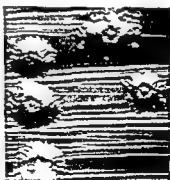
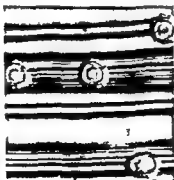
† Cuneiform when sporulating.



*C. perfringens* blood agar 48 hrs

*C. histolyticum* blood agar 48 hrs

*C. ternum* blood agar 24 hrs



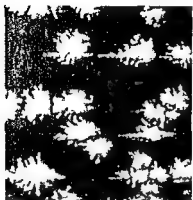
*C. septicum* blood agar 24 hrs

*C. chauvoei* blood agar 48 hrs

*C. novyi* Type A stiff blood agar 48 hrs

FIG 1 (Continued)

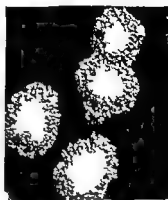
ing high molecular weight polypeptides. Fresh batches of medium should be tested with an exacting species such as *C. hemolyticum* to make certain that they will support the growth of any pathogenic clostridium which might be encountered.



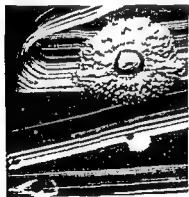
*C. sordei* stiff blood agar 24 hrs



*C. histolyticum* blood agar 48 hrs



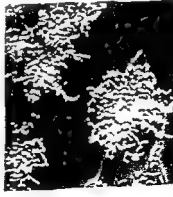
*C. sporogenes* blood agar 48 hrs



*C. botulinum* Type B (ovolytic) stiff blood agar 48 hrs



*C. botulinum* Type E (non-ovolytic) stiff blood agar 48 hrs



*C. tetani* stiff blood agar 48 hrs



FIG 1 All colonies  $\times$  all organisms  $\times$  2 500

## ISOLATION AND IDENTIFICATION

As the constitution of media available in different laboratories varies widely the list given here should be considered as indicating broadly the type of reagents needed. Most are procurable commercially or can be made up from commercially available ingredients.

**Chopped Meat Medium** This consists of infusion broth to which have been added meat particles prepared by extracting lean minced heart with water. The infusion broth is filled into tubes to a depth of about 2 inches and about one third by volume of the meat particles is added. The pH is adjusted so that it will be about 7.4 after autoclaving. Glucose, reducing agents, growth factors, etc. may be added if required.

**Fermentation Reactions** To 2 per cent proteose peptone and 0.5 per cent NaCl add agar and sodium thioglycollate to 0.1 per cent, adjust pH and autoclave. Before inoculation add sugars sterilized by filtration. As heat sterilized sodium thioglycollate may be inhibitory it is often advisable to add this before inoculation as a filtered solution. The indicator (bromthymol blue) is added when the tests are read.

**Production of Indol** The fermentation medium plus 0.2 per cent sodium phosphate and 0.1 per cent dextrose can be used. It can also be used for the vanillin violet reaction, particularly if extra tryptophan is supplied.

**Reduction of Nitrate** The fermentation medium with 0.1 per cent potassium nitrate.

**Liquefaction of Gelatin** The fermentation medium plus 5 per cent gelatin.

**Protein Digestion** Add 5 to 8 per cent fresh egg white or 10 per cent serum to infusion broth. Mix in a blender, dispense in tubes after the foam has subsided. Autoclave.

**Milk** Add 5 per cent skim milk to infusion broth, adjust pH to 6.8, dispense in deep tubes with reduced iron or iron strips. Autoclave.

**Blood Agar Plates** Add 5 per cent fresh defibrinated blood to a suitable agar base. The species of blood added has a significant effect on certain hemolytic reactions. Double strength agar may be used for preparing stiff antiswarming plates.

**Egg Plates for Lecithinase Action** Collect the yolk of an egg aseptically and mix with an equal volume of physiologic saline. Add to

a suitable agar base in the proportion of 1 to 10. Kaufman and Weaver (1960a) described methods for the rapid performance of biochemical and fermentation tests and also stated (1960b) that colonies of clostridia fluoresced when grown on media incorporating neutral red so that they could be distinguished from colonies of facultative and of nonsporing anaerobes even on heavily contaminated plates. Ingenious combinations of reagents have been used by Willis and Hobbs (1958, 1959) to prepare discriminating and selective media. For example, lecithinase, lipolytic, proteolytic, and saccharolytic properties could be determined on the same plate. The often recommended addition of antibiotics to suppress nonclostridial concomitants has its attractions, but some inhibition of the development of clostridial colonies, especially of field strains, may occur.

**Specific Antitoxic Sera** It is virtually impossible to characterize the pathogenic clostridia completely without using antisera. The minimum requirements are antisera against *C. perfringens* Type A, *C. novyi* Types A or B, *C. septicum*, *C. tetani*, and *C. botulinum* (all types). If possible, antisera against *C. perfringens*  $\beta$ ,  $\epsilon$ , and  $\iota$  toxins, *C. novyi*  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  lecithinases, and *C. histolyticum* should also be obtained.

Specific anticlostridial sera coupled with fluorescent dyes have recently become available and are invaluable aids to the recognition and the differentiation of clostridial species and types.

## ISOLATION

The decision as to whether or not a particular clostridium caused a particular condition is ultimately a clinical one. However, the bacteriologist should attempt to assess the number and the significance of the organisms present in order to provide the clinician with information that will help his decision. A bald report that a number of specified clostridia were present is of limited value. For this reason, there are disadvantages in transporting clinical material in inoculated bottles of holding medium (Wetzler *et al.* 1956) since the relative numbers of organisms found in these cultures may differ significantly from those of the original material.

Material submitted for examination will

TABLE 2 BIOCHEMICAL REACTIONS OF PATHOGENIC AND RELATED SPECIES OF CLOSTRIDIUM

SPECIES	MILK	DEXTRSE	MALTOSE	LACTOSE	SALICIN	SUCROSE	GELATIN			INDOL	VANILLIN VIOLET	
							LIQUE	FACTION	NITRATE REDUCTION			
<i>C. butyricum</i>	ACGS	+	+	+	+	+	-	+	-	-	-	
<i>C. perfringens</i>	ACGS	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	-	-	
<i>C. botulinum</i> (non ovolytic Types B C D E)	A	+	+	-	+	+	+	+	-	-	-	Carbohydrates variable
<i>C. carnis</i>	AG	+	+	+	+	+	-	+	-	-	-	Micro aerophilic
<i>C. capitoale</i>	AC	+	-	+	+	+	+	+	-	-	-	
<i>C. fallax</i>	ACG	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	-	-	-	
<i>C. chauvoei</i>	ACG	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	-	-	
<i>C. paraputrificum</i>	ACG	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	-	-	
<i>C. septicum</i>	ACG	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	-	-	
<i>C. sphenoides</i>	ACG	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	-	-	
<i>C. tertium</i>	ACG	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	-	-	
<i>C. botulinum</i> (ovolytic Types A B F)	AD	+	+	+	+	+	-	+	-	-	+	Micro aerophilic Carbohydrates variable
<i>C. bifermentans</i>	CD	+	+	-	+	-	+	+	-	+	-	Urease - sorbitol + Micro aerophilic
<i>C. histolyticum</i>	CD	-	+	-	-	-	+	+	-	-	-	Fastidious
<i>C. novyi</i> Type B	D	+	+	-	-	-	+	+	-	+	-	Urease + sorbitol - Nitrates rapidly reduced but no nitrites produced
<i>C. sordellii</i>	CD	+	+	-	-	-	+	+	+	-	+	
<i>C. sporogenes</i>	D	+	+	-	-	-	+	+	+	-	-	Nitrates rapidly reduced Nitrites absent
<i>C. novyi</i> Type A	CG	+	+	-	-	-	+	+	+	-	-	
<i>C. tetani</i>	C	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
<i>C. cochlearium</i>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
<i>C. difficile</i>	-	+	+	-	+	-	-	-	-	-	-	
<i>C. tetanomorphum</i>	-	+	+	-	-	-	+	+	-	-	-	

Norr: A acid C clot D digestion G gas S stormy fermentation  
 No attempt has been made to indicate the intensity of the reactions  
 + positive - negative ± usually positive ≠ usually negative

## ISOLATION AND IDENTIFICATION

As the constitution of media available in different laboratories varies widely the list given here should be considered as indicating broadly the type of reagents needed. Most are procurable commercially or can be made up from commercially available ingredients.

**Chopped Meat Medium** This consists of infusion broth to which have been added meat particles prepared by extracting lean minced heart with water. The infusion broth is filled into tubes to a depth of about 2 inches and about one third by volume of the meat particles is added. The pH is adjusted so that it will be about 7.4 after autoclaving. Glucose, reducing agents, growth factors, etc. may be added if required.

**Fermentation Reactions** To 2 per cent proteose peptone and 0.5 per cent NaCl add agar and sodium thioglycollate to 0.1 per cent, adjust pH and autoclave. Before inoculation add sugars sterilized by filtration. As heat sterilized sodium thioglycollate may be inhibitory it is often advisable to add this before inoculation as a filtered solution. The indicator (bromthymol blue) is added when the tests are read.

**Production of Indol** The fermentation medium plus 0.2 per cent sodium phosphate and 0.1 per cent dextrose can be used. It can also be used for the vanillin violet reaction particularly if extra tryptophan is supplied.

**Reduction of Nitrate** The fermentation medium with 0.1 per cent potassium nitrate.

**Liquefaction of Gelatin** The fermentation medium plus 5 per cent gelatin.

**Protein Digestion** Add 5 to 8 per cent fresh egg white or 10 per cent serum to infusion broth. Mix in a blender, dispense in tubes after the foam has subsided. Autoclave.

**Milk** Add 5 per cent skim milk to infusion broth, adjust pH to 6.8, dispense in deep tubes with reduced iron or iron strips. Autoclave.

**Blood Agar Plates** Add 5 per cent fresh defibrinated blood to a suitable agar base. The species of blood added has a significant effect on certain hemolytic reactions. Double strength agar may be used for preparing stiff antiswarming plates.

**Egg Plates for Lecithinase Action** Collect the yolk of an egg aseptically and mix with an equal volume of physiologic saline. Add to

a suitable agar base in the proportion of 1 to 10 Kaufman and Weaver (1960a) described methods for the rapid performance of biochemical and fermentation tests and also stated (1960b) that colonies of *Clostridia* fluoresced when grown on media incorporating neutral red so that they could be distinguished from colonies of facultative and of nonsporing anaerobes even on heavily contaminated plates. Ingenious combinations of reagents have been used by Willis and Hobbs (1958, 1959) to prepare discriminating and selective media. For example, lecithinase, lipolytic, proteolytic and saccharolytic properties could be determined on the same plate. The often recommended addition of antibiotics to suppress nonclostridial concomitants has its attractions but some inhibition of the development of clostridial colonies, especially of field strains, may occur.

**Specific Antitoxic Sera** It is virtually impossible to characterize the pathogenic *Clostridia* completely without using antisera. The minimum requirements are antisera against *C. perfringens* Type A, *C. novyi* Types A or B, *C. septicum*, *C. tetani*, and *C. botulinum* (all types). If possible, antisera against *C. perfringens*  $\beta$ ,  $\epsilon$ , and  $\iota$  toxins, *C. novyi*  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  lecithinases and *C. histolyticum* should also be obtained.

Specific anticlostridial sera coupled with fluorescent dyes have recently become available and are invaluable aids to the recognition and the differentiation of clostridial species and types.

## ISOLATION

The decision as to whether or not a particular clostridium caused a particular condition is ultimately a clinical one. However, the bacteriologist should attempt to assess the number and the significance of the organisms present in order to provide the clinician with information that will help his decision. A bald report that a number of specified clostridia were present is of limited value. For this reason there are disadvantages in transporting clinical material in inoculated bottles of holding medium (Wetzler *et al.* 1956) since the relative numbers of organisms found in these cultures may differ significantly from those of the original material.

Material submitted for examination will



TABLE 2 BIOCHEMICAL REACTIONS OF PATHOGENIC AND RELATED SPECIES OF CLOSTRIDIUM

SPECIES	MILK	DEXTRSE	MALTOSE	LACTOSE	SALICIN	SUCROSE	GELATIN LIQUE		NITRATE REDUCTION	INDOL	VANILLIN	
							FACIATION	FACTION			INDOL	VIOLET
<i>C. butyricum</i>	ACGS	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
<i>C. perfringens</i>	ACGS	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
<i>C. botulinum</i>	A	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
(non ovolytic Types B C D E)												
<i>C. carnis</i>	AG	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
<i>C. capitolale</i>	AC	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
<i>C. fallax</i>	ACG	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
<i>C. chauvoei</i>	ACG	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
<i>C. paraputrificum</i>	ACG	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
<i>C. septicum</i>	ACG	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
<i>C. sphenoides</i>	ACG	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
<i>C. tertium</i>	ACG	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
<i>C. botulinum</i> (ovolytic Types A B F)	AD	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
<i>C. bifermentans</i>	CD	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
<i>C. histolyticum</i>	CD	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
<i>C. novy</i> , Type B	D	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
<i>C. sordellii</i>	CD	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
<i>C. sporogenes</i>	D	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
<i>C. novy</i> , Type A	CG	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
<i>C. tetani</i>	C	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
<i>C. cochlearium</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>C. difficile</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>C. tetanomorphum</i>	—	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+

NOTE. A acid C clot D digestion G gas S stormy fermentation  
No attempt has been made to indicate the intensity of the reactions

positive — negative ± usually positive ± usually negative

Carbohydrates variable

Micro aerophilic

Micro aerophilic  
Carbohydrates variable

Urease — sorbitol +  
Micro aerophilic

Fastidious

Urease + sorbitol —  
Nitrates rapidly reduced  
but no nitrites produced

Nitrates rapidly reduced  
Nitrites absent

TABLE 3 CLOSTRIDIAL FLORA OF GAS GANGRENE

ORGANISM	PER CENT OF CASES			
	1943 MacLennan (146 Cases)	1944 MacLennan (17 Cases)	1944 Stock (25 Cases)	1946 Smith and George (110 Cases)
<i>C. perfringens</i>	56	83	80	39
<i>C. novyi</i>	37	47	48	32
<i>C. septicum</i>	19	24	4	
<i>C. histolyticum</i>	6	6		
<i>C. tetani</i>	13		11	4
<i>C. bifermentans</i>	4	35	20	54
<i>C. sporogenes</i>	37	50	72	54
<i>C. tertium</i>	30	59	8	3
<i>C. multifermentans</i>				5
<i>C. butyricum</i>	13		4	3
<i>C. capisovale</i>	5			3
<i>C. fallax</i>	1		4	3
<i>C. cochlearium</i>	9		4	2
<i>C. putrificum</i>	19			2
<i>C. regulare</i>				2
<i>C. sphenoides</i>	3			2
<i>C. paraputrificum</i>				1
<i>C. hastiforme</i>	3			
<i>C. tetanomorphum</i>	2			

Smith (1955) and Willis (1960) should be consulted for more comprehensive reviews of diagnostic and other clinical procedures.

### DISEASES CAUSED BY CLOSTRIDIA

Except during wars clostridia play a relatively minor role as agents of disease in man. They are found mainly in wound infections (gas gangrene and tetanus) in enterotoxemia (*C. perfringens* Types C and F) and in food poisoning (*C. perfringens* Type A and *C. botulinum*). Most clostridial infections of man are complications of wounds in which vascular damage has favored the development of anoxic conditions suitable for anaerobic growth. Outbreaks of food poisoning occur as a result of exceptionally favorable conditions for certain clostridia. These outbreaks are self limiting and the affected persons do not act as foci of further infections. This is in sharp contrast with the situation among domestic animals in which diseases caused by clostridia are well-defined clinical entities causing constant and serious losses unless combated by the conventional methods of disease control.

A greater awareness of the existence of

well-defined ecologic groups of pathogenic clostridia within different species might result in further types being found which were capable of provoking specific clinical syndromes in man—such as the food poisoning caused by heat resistant *C. perfringens* Type A and enteritis necroticans caused by *C. perfringens* Types C and F. The finding of *C. perfringens* Type D in man and the detection of antibody to the iota toxin of *C. perfringens* Type E in soldiers in Korea may indicate a possible pathogenic role for these organisms also.

The epidemiologic and epizootologic characteristics of pathogenic clostridia are correlated with the type of toxin they produce. Because of this more attention has been paid to the study of toxins than to the study of the less obviously important antigens such as agglutinogens. A number of workers (Moussa 1959; Meisel and Rymkiewicz 1959; Walker and Batty 1962) have shown that the various species of clostridia can be subdivided into types based on differences in somatic, flagellar, capsular and spore antigens. Further work on such antigens would extend our knowledge of intra-specific differences in clostridia and would also throw more light on interspecific group

usually be from patients (e.g. exudates, tissues) or articles such as clothing or dressings or suture material suspected of being sources of tetanus or gas gangrene and foodstuffs suspected of causing botulism or other food poisoning. The methods of isolation described below apply mainly to clinical material.

1 Gram stained films should be made from different parts of the specimen in order to gain an impression of the distribution and the relative numbers of the organisms present. In clostridial myositis, films and cultures should be made from the affected muscle rather than from exudate or edema as some highly toxigenic species may not be very apparent unless the actual infected focus in the muscle has been located and filmed.

2 Plate directly onto blood stiff blood (antiswarming) and egg yolk agar plates and incubate anaerobically and aerobically for 48 hours. The jar should not be opened at 24 hours since even a short exposure to air may inhibit further development of microcolonies of some organisms (e.g. *C. novyi*). A separate jar should be put up for examining at 24 hours if this is considered essential.

3 Inoculate several tubes of chopped meat medium. Heat some at 80°C for 10 minutes; incubate for 24 hours and plate from these cultures as in (2). These plates will not reflect the relative numbers of the different clostridia present in the original material as the chopped meat medium will select the more aggressive species.

Plates from (2) and (3) should be examined in detail with a colony microscope and films of putative clostridial colonies should be stained. Table 23.2 summarizes the colonial and the microscopic appearances and the reactions on blood and egg agar of the clostridia most likely to be encountered. It should be remembered that colonial morphology on stiff agar plates is usually atypical. It may be possible to fish selected colonies directly into chopped meat medium but it is always advisable to restreak the selected colony onto a plate in case the one fished into meat broth is impure. Several streakings may be necessary before purity is assured.

4 Inoculation of laboratory animals—usually guinea pigs—with clinical material triturated with 1 per cent of  $\text{CaCl}_2$  will assist considerably in detecting and isolating patho-

genic clostridia especially when the postmortem appearances point to a particular infecting organism. Specific antiserum can be used to block one organism or another in a mixed infection. The heart's blood and the local lesion of dying or recently dead experimental animals should be cultured as shown in (1), (2) and (3). It should not be assumed that a particular clostridium is pathogenic because it is isolated in large numbers from the heart's blood. For example, a guinea pig inoculated with a mixture of *C. novyi* and *C. bifermentans* will die of a *C. novyi* infection although the circulation may contain mainly *C. bifermentans*.

5 The examination of dressings, soils, etc. is carried out in a way basically similar to that used for clinical material; the chief differences being in the methods used for obtaining representative samples of the specimen for culturing and animal inoculation. Foodstuffs should be examined for the presence of toxins as soon as possible since delay may result in destruction of toxin and the loss of a chance of demonstrating conclusively the role of the food.

6 When pure cultures of clostridia have been isolated, a tentative recognition can be attempted from the results of reactions in various media (see Table 2). Final identification depends on the production and the identification of toxins and the demonstration of pathogenicity in laboratory animals. It must be emphasized again that the presence of known pathogens in tissue or in food is presumptive, but not conclusive evidence of clinical infection.

The more general provision of anticlostridial sera labeled with fluorescent dyes will profoundly modify the force of much that has been written above. Such reagents make possible the recognition of clostridia in pathologic material (films, sections, clothing, etc.) and can indicate the distribution and the numerical relationships of different organisms. For many purposes nothing more will be required. Batty and Walker (1963a, 1963b) have prepared coupled antisera against *C. chauvoei*, *C. septicum*, *C. novyi*, *C. tetani* and *C. botulinum*. It is difficult to overemphasize the simplification that such reagents can bring into diagnosis and their importance in studies on pathogenesis and epizootology.

reactions Smith (1955) should be consulted for discussions of important earlier work on this subject

## GAS GANGRENE

About 30 per cent of war wounds become contaminated with clostridia. If the contamination is confined to the surfaces of the injured parts little toxin is formed and the results are usually no more than a slight retarding of the rate of healing. Anaerobic cellulitis—a spreading infection of the fascial planes—is rather more serious. This results in a varying usually slight degree of toxemia but the infection has little tendency to invade healthy tissue and is as a rule self-limiting and easily treated. In 5 per cent or less of wounds contaminated with clostridia true gas gangrene develops. The organisms colonize injured muscle especially where damage to the blood supply has occurred. The damaged anoxic muscle provides favorable conditions for multiplication and toxin production and a rapid invasion and destruction of neighboring healthy muscle follows. Since the host reaction in the muscle is negligible this condition is more correctly described as a myonecrosis than a myositis. The prognosis is serious and speedy and energetic treatment is essential. It should be clearly understood that gas gangrene is not synonymous with clostridial wound infection so that detection of clostridia in a wound is not diagnostic of gas gangrene and not necessarily prognostic of a serious outcome. Table 3 (from Smith 1949) summarizes the findings of several investigators on the clostridial flora of gas gangrene.

*C. perfringens*, *C. novyi* and *C. septicum* are recognized as the organisms mainly concerned in provoking gas gangrene. There are almost certainly in these species intraspecific differences that influence or determine invasiveness and other qualities pertinent to pathogenicity. Characteristic toxins and enzymes are produced which play roles of varying significance in invasiveness, pathogenicity and virulence.

The relation of other clostridia to gas gangrene is somewhat doubtful. The toxigenic *C. histolyticum* has been found very occa-

sionally in gas gangrene usually in association with other clostridia. *C. sordellii* (also a toxin producer) has been found as the sole cause of fatal postoperative infections. *C. sporogenes* and *C. bifermentans* are found in the majority of anaerobic wound infections. Neither is pathogenic for laboratory animals in pure culture except insofar as occasional strains of *C. bifermentans* will markedly digest tissues around the inoculation site and cause lesions resembling those produced by *C. histolyticum* but not accompanied by toxemia or followed by death. Other clostridia found occasionally in wounds are not considered to be of much significance with the exception of *C. tetani* which will be discussed separately. See Reed and Orr (1943), Smith and George (1946), Smith (1949, 1955), Oakley (1954) and MacLennan (1962).

## CLOSTRIDIUM PERFRINGENS

This is the species most frequently associated with anaerobic cellulitis and gas gangrene in man. It is divided into Types A, B, C, D and E according to the main lethal toxin produced while Type F (the cause of enteritis necroticans in man) was separated on account of its heat resistance, morphologic peculiarities and differences in minor antigens. The main lethal toxins of the various *C. perfringens* Types are shown in Table 4. A tabulation of the major and the minor toxins (based largely on Oakley and Warrack 1953) and of the ecologic relationships of types and subtypes of *C. perfringens* is given by Brooks *et al.* (1957) and Sterne and Warrack (1964). Up to the present, only Type A has been found in anaerobic wound infection of man. This type is probably not homogeneous and there is little doubt that it will be possible one day to distinguish subgroups or varieties of epidemiologic significance.

## Toxins and Enzymes

**$\alpha$  TOXIN** A culture of *C. perfringens* Type A grown under optimal conditions for toxin production may contain up to 600 mouse LD<sub>50</sub> per ml (Adams and Hendee 1945). This toxicity is due mainly to the lethal hemolytic and necrotizing  $\alpha$  toxin although several other toxins and enzymes notably  $\theta$

TABLE 4 THE DISTRIBUTION OF ANTIGENS AND HEAT RESISTANCE AMONG THE DIFFERENT TYPES OF CLOSTRIDIUM PERFRINGENS

TYPE	OCCURRENCE AND COUNTRY WHERE FIRST DESCRIBED	MAJOR ANTIGENS*					MINOR ANTIGENS†						
		α	β	ε	ζ	η	γ	δ	θ	κ	λ	μ	ν
		Lethal Necrotizing L. c. in man and animals	Lethal Necrotizing L. c. in man and animals	Lethal Necrotizing L. c. in man and animals	Lethal Necrotizing L. c. in man and animals	Lethal Necrotizing L. c. in man and animals	Lethal Necrotizing L. c. in man and animals	Lethal Necrotizing L. c. in man and animals	Lethal Necrotizing L. c. in man and animals	Lethal Necrotizing L. c. in man and animals	Lethal Necrotizing L. c. in man and animals	Lethal Necrotizing L. c. in man and animals	Lethal Necrotizing L. c. in man and animals
A	Gas gangrene in man and animals	+++	0	0	0	0	0	0	++	++	0	++	++
	Intestinal commensal in man and animals	+++	0	0	0	0	0	0	++	++	0	++	++
	Putrefactive processes in soil etc (United States)	+++	0	0	0	0	0	0	++	++	0	++	++
	Food poisoning (Britain)	+++	0	0	0	0	0	0	++	++	0	++	++
B	Lamb dysentery	+++	+++	+++	0	0	++	0†	++	0	+++	+++	++
	Enterotoxemia in foals (Britain)	+++	+++	+++	0	0	++	0†	++	0	+++	+++	++
	Enterotoxemia in sheep and goats (Iran)	+++	+++	+++	0	0	++	0	++	+++	0	0	++
C	Enterotoxemia (Struck) of sheep (Britain)	+++	+++	0	0	0	++	+++	++	+++	0	0	++
	Enterotoxemia in calves and lambs (United States)	+++	+++	0	0	0	++	0	++	+++	0	0	++
	Enterotoxemia in piglets (Britain)	+++	+++	0	0	0	++	0	++	+++	0	0	++
	Necrotic enteritis in man (formerly Type F)‡ (Germany)	+++	+++	0	0	0	++	0	++	+++	0	0	++
	Necrotic enteritis in man (Papua — New Guinea)	+++	+++	0	0	0	++	0	++	+++	0	0	++
D	Enterotoxemia in sheep lambs goats bovines and possibly man (Australia)	+++	0	+++	0	0	++	0	++	++	0	++	++
E	Sheep and cattle pathogenicity doubtful (Britain)	+++	0	0	+++	0	++	0	++	++	0	++	++
	Produced by most strains	+++	0	0	+++	0	++	0	++	++	0	++	++

† The major antigens are those defining the type and predominantly responsible for pathogenicity

‡ Occasionally the presence of this antigen must be assumed from the production of the appropriate antitoxin by hyper immunized horses

§ Type F has been abandoned and the strains comprising it transferred here

|| From J Path Bact 88 281 1964

TABLE 5 TOXINS AND ENZYMES OF THE DIFFERENT TYPES OF *Clostridium novyi*

TYPE	DISTRIBUTION	TOXINS AND ENZYMES					
		Lethal necrotizing	Lecithinase hemolytic necrotizing Lethal	Lecithinase hemolytic necrotizing	O labile hemolysin	Irides- cence	Hemolysin
		$\alpha$	$\beta$	$\gamma$	$\delta$	$\epsilon$	$\zeta$
A	Human gas gangrene	+++	—	+	+	+	?—
B	Black disease (necrotic hepatitis of sheep)	+++	+	—	—	—	+
C	Osteomyelitis of buffalo	—	—	?+	—	—	—
D	Hemoglobinurea of cattle	—	+++	—	—	—	—

enzyme is much less toxic than  $\kappa$  toxin. In addition to the lecithinase, the collagenase and the hyaluronidase *C. perfringens* Type A culture filtrates contain a fibrinolysin (which may be a protease), a desoxyribonuclease ( $\nu$  toxin), a neuraminidase (which destroys the influenza virus receptor on red blood cells) and a small amount of an enzyme which inactivates the blood group A substance.

#### CLOSTRIDIUM NOVYI

*C. novyi* is divided into 4 types. Table 5, modified from Oakley *et al.* (1947) and Oakley (1955) summarizes our present knowledge of these. Types A and B are distinguished by differences in the lecithinases which they produce (see Table 5) although the factor probably responsible for toxemia and death ( $\alpha$  toxin) is the same in both. Type A is commonly isolated from human gas gangrene while B is usually regarded as an animal pathogen. However, the latter is more difficult to cultivate than A and could be overlooked more easily. Smith and Claus (1957) found that all proteolytic strains of *C. novyi* which they examined were Type B so that this type may have been isolated from man more frequently than is generally thought. In animals *C. novyi* causes well defined diseases such as necrotic hepatitis of sheep (Type B), osteomyelitis of buffalo (Type C) and hemoglobinurea of cattle (Type D). A heat-stable agglutinin is common to the vegetative cells of all four types (Batty and Walker 1963b).

**Toxins and Enzymes.** Cultures of *C. novyi* Types A or B grown under optimal conditions for toxin production may contain 100 000 mouse LD<sub>50</sub> per ml. This toxicity is almost entirely due to the lethal and necrotizing  $\alpha$  toxin, about which little further is known. The other toxins produced by Types A and B make only a small contribution to the total toxicity. They are the  $\gamma$  and  $\beta$  lecithinases (which distinguish Types A and B immunologically), the  $\delta$  and the  $\zeta$  hemolysins produced only by Type A and  $\epsilon$  toxin which is responsible for the iridescence shown by Type A strains on egg yolk agar (see Table 1). In the case of Type D (*C. hemolyticum*) the  $\beta$  lecithinase is produced in very large amounts and becomes of overriding importance as the characteristic lethal toxin of this type. The  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  lecithinases are similar to the lecithinase of *C. perfringens* differing from it and from each other immunologically and in the species of red cells which they attack. Nothing further is known about the  $\delta$ , the  $\epsilon$  and the  $\zeta$  toxins. Oakley *et al.* (1947) should be consulted for a fuller discussion of the toxins of *C. novyi*.

#### CLOSTRIDIUM SEPTICUM

*C. septicum* produces a potent  $\alpha$  toxin which is lethal, necrotizing and lytic for human and horse red cells. According to Bernheimer (1944) a single toxin is responsible for all three manifestations. Other workers have not found the same close correspondence between hemolysis and other activities but this could well be due as

$\kappa$ - and  $\mu$  toxins, may also be present (see Table 4). The  $\alpha$  toxin is the most important (pathologically considered) of the toxins of *C. perfringens* Type A and is one of the few bacterial toxins of which the mode of action can be described in chemical terms. It is an enzyme (phospholipase or lecithinase C) which catalyzes the hydrolysis of phosphate bonds with the liberation of phosphorylcholine from the phosphatides lecithin, cephalin and sphingomyelin (Macfarlane and Knight 1941; de Gier *et al.* 1961). It requires calcium for its activity and is therefore inactive in the presence of ions such as phosphate, citrate and fluoride which sequester this metal. The lecithinase activity of the  $\alpha$  toxin is responsible for the opalescence and the turbidity produced when filtrates of *C. perfringens* cultures (all types) are incubated together with a solution of egg yolk or when cultures are grown on the surface of egg yolk agar. This opalescence is presumably due to the breakdown of the egg yolk lipoproteins lecithovitellin and lecithovitellin. Lecithinases are also produced by other clostridia e.g. *C. novyi*, *C. hemolyticum*, *C. bifermentans* and by certain bacilli e.g. *B. cereus*. All lecithinases except that produced by *C. bifermentans* are immunologically distinct from the  $\alpha$  toxin of *C. perfringens*. Since lecithin is widespread throughout the body the opportunities for attack by the toxin are numerous. The hemolysis of red cells is doubtless due to the breakdown of lipoproteins but other factors must also be concerned since the red cells of different species are not equally susceptible to hemolysis although the phospholipids isolated from these cells are equally susceptible to hydrolysis (Macfarlane 1950). Other evidence which shows that the ability to attack lecithin is not the only factor determining toxicity is the fact that the lecithinases of *C. bifermentans* show considerably less toxicity per unit of enzyme activity than does the immunologically related *C. perfringens* lecithinase (Miles and Miles 1950).

The action of the lecithinase in tissues results not only in generalized necrosis but also, specifically in the inactivation of enzyme systems that are dependent on lecithin in one way or another. These include the magnesium activated adenosinetriphos-

phatase of muscle which has a lecithin prosthetic group (Kielley and Meyerhof 1950) and the succinic dehydrogenase system which requires intact lecithin particles possibly for reasons of spatial configuration (Macfarlane and Datta 1954).

The best partially purified preparations contain about 10 000 mouse LD<sub>50</sub> per mg (van Heyningen and Bidwell, 1948; Roth and Pillemer 1953).

**$\theta$  TOXIN** The  $\theta$  toxin is lethal, hemolytic, necrotizing and cardiotoxic and is produced by all types of *C. perfringens* except Type F and the food poisoning varieties of Type A. It is inactivated by mild oxidizing conditions such as standing in air and is reactivated by reducing agents such as cysteine and thioglycolic acid. It is inactivated by cholesterol and its production is inhibited in media containing fat so that little or none will be found in cultures grown in chopped meat media. Thus  $\theta$  toxin resembles the oxygen labile cardiotoxic hemolysins of *C. tetani*, *Streptococcus pyogenes*, *Diplococcus pneumoniae* and possibly also the  $\delta$  toxin of *C. novyi*. Moreover, it is related to these hemolysins immunologically since antibody to any one of them will neutralize any other. The relatively high anti  $\theta$  titers of many normal horse sera are probably the result of early exposure of these animals to one or more producers of O labile hemolysins. The toxin has been purified by Roth and Pillemer (1955).

**$\kappa$ -TOXIN** This is a proteolytic enzyme which appears specifically to attack collagen (and its breakdown product gelatin) and no other protein. Such extreme specificity in proteolytic enzymes is perhaps unique. A partially purified preparation of this enzyme made by Bidwell and van Heyningen (1948) contained 500 mouse LD<sub>50</sub> per mg. The toxin can be distinguished readily from the other active products of *C. perfringens* by immunologic techniques (Oakley *et al.* 1946).

**$\mu$  TOXIN** This is an enzyme, a hyaluronidase which hydrolyzes hyaluronic acid, the intercellular cementing ground substance of tissue. As a result of its action on the intercellular cement, the toxin spreads rapidly through the skin and substances injected together with it will also be disseminated rapidly. Although referred to as  $\mu$  toxin this

TABLE 5 TOXINS AND ENZYMES OF THE DIFFERENT TYPES OF *Clostridium novyi*

TYPE	DISTRIBUTION	TOXINS AND ENZYMES					
		Lethal necrotizing $\alpha$	Lecithinase hemolytic necrotizing		O labile hemolysin $\delta$	Indes- cence $\epsilon$	Hemolysin $\zeta$
			Lethal $\beta$	Lecithinase hemolytic necrotizing $\gamma$			
A	Human gas gangrene	+++	-	+	+	+	?
B	Black disease (necrotic hepatitis of sheep)	+++	+	-	-	-	+
C	Osteomyelitis of buffalo	-	-	++	-	-	-
D	Hemoglobinuria of cattle	-	+++	-	-	-	-

enzyme is much less toxic than  $\alpha$  toxin. In addition to the lecithinase, the collagenase and the hyaluronidase *C. perfringens* Type A culture filtrates contain a fibrinolysin (which may be a protease), a desoxyribonuclease ( $\nu$  toxin), a neuraminidase (which destroys the influenza virus receptor on red blood cells) and a small amount of an enzyme which inactivates the blood group A substance.

#### CLOSTRIDIUM NOVYI

*C. novyi* is divided into 4 types. Table 5 modified from Oakley *et al.* (1947) and Oakley (1955) summarizes our present knowledge of these Types A and B are distinguished by differences in the lecithinases which they produce (see Table 5) although the factor probably responsible for toxemia and death ( $\alpha$  toxin) is the same in both. Type A is commonly isolated from human gas gangrene while B is usually regarded as an animal pathogen. However the latter is more difficult to cultivate than A and could be overlooked more easily. Smith and Claus (1957) found that all proteolytic strains of *C. novyi* which they examined were Type B so that this type may have been isolated from man more frequently than is generally thought. In animals *C. novyi* causes well defined diseases such as necrotic hepatitis of sheep (Type B), osteomyelitis of buffalo (Type C) and hemoglobinuria of cattle (Type D). A heat-stable agglutinin is common to the vegetative cells of all four types (Batty and Walker 1963b).

**Toxins and Enzymes.** Cultures of *C. novyi* Types A or B grown under optimal conditions for toxin production may contain 100 000 mouse LD<sub>50</sub> per ml. This toxicity is almost entirely due to the lethal and necrotizing  $\alpha$  toxin about which little further is known. The other toxins produced by Types A and B make only a small contribution to the total toxicity. They are the  $\gamma$  and  $\beta$  lecithinases (which distinguish Types A and B immunologically), the  $\delta$  and the  $\zeta$  hemolysins produced only by Type A, and  $\epsilon$  toxin which is responsible for the indescence shown by Type A strains on egg yolk agar (see Table 1). In the case of Type D (*C. hemolyticum*) the  $\beta$  lecithinase is produced in very large amounts and becomes of overriding importance as the characteristic lethal toxin of this type. The  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  lecithinases are similar to the lecithinase of *C. perfringens* differing from it and from each other immunologically and in the species of red cells which they attack. Nothing further is known about the  $\delta$ , the  $\epsilon$  and the  $\zeta$  toxins. Oakley *et al.* (1947) should be consulted for a fuller discussion of the toxins of *C. novyi*.

#### CLOSTRIDIUM SEPTICUM

*C. septicum* produces a potent  $\alpha$  toxin which is lethal, necrotizing and lytic for human and horse red cells. According to Bernheimer (1944) a single toxin is responsible for all three manifestations. Other workers have not found the same close correspondence between hemolysis and other activities but this could well be due to as



Bernheimer suggested to the presence of other hemolysins. Further work is necessary to resolve existing contradictions. This organism also produces a deoxyribonuclease ( $\beta$  toxin) described by Warrack *et al* (1951).

Moussa (1959) showed that *C. septicum* strains could be divided into two types on serologic differences in the heat stable agglutinin. This has been confirmed by Walker (Batty and Walker 1963a). Strains vary widely in toxin production, pathogenicity and virulence, and more intensive investigations would almost certainly reveal important epidemiologic subdivisions. Guillaume *et al* (1953) showed that horses hyperimmunized with *C. septicum* filtrates produced antibody to *C. histolyticum*  $\alpha$  toxin as well as to *C. septicum*  $\alpha$  toxin and vice versa. This ability of the antisera to neutralize both toxins was due not to separate antitoxins but to the capability of individual antitoxin molecules to attach either toxin (Guillaume *et al* 1954; Sterne and Warrack 1962).

#### CLOSTRIDIUM HISTOLYTICUM CLOSTRIDIUM SPOROGENES CLOSTRIDIUM BIFERMENTANS

*C. histolyticum* although wide spread in nature is not often found in wound infections. In MacLennan's (1943) series it was found in 10 of 143 cases but only once in pure culture. All 10 cases ended fatally. Hall (1945) considers that this organism is frequently overlooked in routine examinations and points out that it is more easily isolated on aerobic than on anaerobic media. Smooth strains are pathogenic for laboratory animals. The  $\alpha$  toxin (Oakley and Warrack 1950) is lethal and necrotizing and the  $\beta$  toxin is a very active collagenase. These are both distinct from the hemolysin.

Filtrates of *C. histolyticum* cultures contain a variety of proteinases. It is possible that their remarkable ability to break down tissue could be used for the débridement of eschars in the treatment of burns (Altemeier *et al* 1951; Berman *et al* 1961).

*C. sordelli* has caused fatal postoperative infections in man (Sordelli 1922) and has also occasionally been responsible for post inoculation accidents in cattle and wound infections of sheep (Smith *et al* 1962). Stewart (1938) concluded that *C. sordelli* was a pathogenic variety of *C. bifermentans* a

view which became generally accepted in the English language literature. However French workers maintained that they were distinct species (Prevot and Cordier 1941; Tataki and Huet, 1953). A comprehensive study by Brooks, M. E. and Epps (1959) confirmed the French view that *C. sordelli* differed from *C. bifermentans* in producing urease and showed that this property was correlated with consistent differences in colonial morphology and fermentation reactions. The urease positive strains (*C. sordelli*) could be toxigenic or nontoxigenic whereas the urease negative strains (*C. bifermentans*) were never toxigenic. Only the latter conformed in properties and appearance to the type strain of *C. bifermentans* of Tissier and Martelly. Pathogenic strains of *C. sordelli* produce one—and possibly more than one—powerful lethal toxin which provokes the appearance of a remarkably extensive clear thick edema when injected into laboratory animals. Natural cases of *C. sordelli* infection are similarly characterized and may resemble infection produced by *C. novyi*.

*C. sporogenes* and *C. bifermentans* are often found associated with other clostridia in anaerobic wound infections. Their role in the pathogenesis of gas gangrene is uncertain. They cause no toxemia and it is doubtful whether they provoke gas gangrene although they may exacerbate infections by other clostridia. On occasion *C. sporogenes* has been isolated as the only clostridium in a wound infection. However it grows so easily that it would be comparatively easy to overlook an admixture with a fastidious organism such as *C. novyi*.

#### PATHOGENESIS

Gas gangrene is rapidly spreading myonecrosis of healthy muscle following infection by pathogenic clostridia of severely injured muscle particularly when the blood supply to the muscle has been interrupted. The anoxia and the consequent anaerobic glycolysis result in a fall of the Eh to levels permitting multiplication and toxin production by the clostridia. A further result is an accumulation of lactic acid and a fall in pH which favors the activity of the catheptic enzymes in the muscle. Amino acids thus become available for the clostridia and enable them to grow at a higher Eh than would

otherwise be possible (see Oakley, 1954; MacLennan, 1962).

Once the anaerobes have gained a foothold in the damaged muscle they are aided by their extracellular toxins and enzymes in colonizing it and attacking undamaged muscle. This is seen most clearly in the case of *C. perfringens* Type A which has been the most extensively studied. The  $\alpha$  toxin breaks down cells containing lecithin and interferes with their metabolism. It renders capillaries more permeable to fluid and protein so that the resulting extravasation increases pressure within the muscle, thus exacerbating the anoxia. By breaking down cells it not only exposes them to attack but also provides more nutrient for the organism. Since the production of  $\theta$  toxin is inhibited in the presence of meat, it is unlikely that this toxin plays an important part in the pathology of infection. The  $\kappa$  toxin (collagenase) breaks down collagen barriers to the spread of the organism and the destruction of reticulin around capillaries may lead to further interference with the blood supply of the muscle. The muscle is disintegrated by the destruction of its reticulin and collagen scaffolding and exposed to the action of catheptic enzymes and bacterial proteases. The hyaluronidase ( $\mu$  toxin) assists the spread of the organism by breaking down the interstitial ground substance and thus providing fermentable carbohydrate in the form of breakdown products of hyaluronic acid.

However, it appears likely that only the  $\alpha$  toxin is essential for the initiation (at least) of the pathologic processes induced by *C. perfringens*. Evans (1943a, 1943b, 1947) showed that guinea pigs in which gas gangrene had been produced by injecting *C. perfringens* could be saved with  $\alpha$  antitoxin while  $\theta$  and  $\mu$  antitoxins were ineffective alone and did not enhance the effect of  $\alpha$  antitoxin when administered together with it. It is still possible that the minor toxins may contribute to the development of the pathologic process once this has started. However, the amounts of  $\alpha$  and other toxins which different strains produce in vitro are not directly related to their virulence (Keppie and Robertson, 1944; Evans, 1945).

The ability of organisms to destroy tissues by means of extracellular enzymes does not

necessarily connote a high degree of pathogenicity. Some strains of the very proteolytic species *C. sporogenes* and *C. bifermentans* readily digest living tissue but the infections they cause on injection into experimental animals tend to be self-limiting and unaccompanied by toxemia. In wound infections the presence of these and other relatively non-pathogenic organisms alters the gross pathologic appearance of the lesion elicited by the frankly pathogenic clostridia and may increase the severity of the infection.

Infections with *C. perfringens* have short incubation periods (9 to 48 hours). The muscle is soft and pulpy and there is little edema. Fat droplets may be seen on the surface of the fluid exudate surrounding the affected muscle. Erythrocytes are lysed and leukocytes are degenerated. There is no putrefactive odor. Experimental infection of guinea pigs causes a pink soggy appearance of the muscle. On cutting into the lesion a pink stained fatty fluid exudes. There is a moderate amount of gas and with some strains quite a marked digestion of the tissues. The amount of edema varies considerably with the infecting strain. There is little smell of putrefaction. Infections with *C. novyi* have longer incubation periods (about 5 days) and a higher mortality rate than those with *C. perfringens*. There is a very marked edema and a profuse serous discharge from the wound (MacLennan, 1943). There is little gas and little odor unless other proteolytic clostridia are present. In the experimentally infected guinea pig the abdominal wall and the subcutaneous tissues are infiltrated with a transparent colorless or pale pink edema which may be nearly a centimeter thick. This edema surrounds the leg in which the injection was given. The area immediately around the injection site may be hemorrhagic. Small gas bubbles may be present and there is no putrefactive smell. Organisms can be seen readily near the site of injection but there are relatively few in the extensive edema. *C. septicum* is not infrequently associated with gas gangrene in man and may be the only organism present. The incubation period is 2 to 3 days. There is little gas and considerably less serous exudate than with *C. novyi*. In guinea pigs death usually occurs within 24 hours. The affected muscles are dark red, sometimes almost

black in color with some gas at the inoculation site and small bubbles of gas in the flank and along the abdominal wall. A bloody edema may extend along the abdominal wall but is not nearly so prominent as that due to *C. novyi*. The liver is often pale and films made from it show large numbers of organisms. Impression films made from the liver surface shortly after death show long chains and filaments of clostridia. The mucous membrane of the intestine especially the small intestine is often markedly hemorrhagic and with some strains the lumen may be filled with lysed blood. The cadaver has a characteristic rancid smell that is almost diagnostic of *C. septicum* or *C. chauvoei* infection.

While it is clear that the  $\alpha$  toxin is largely responsible for the pathogenicity of *C. perfringens* and that the gas gangrene induced by this organism is characterized by a profound toxemia, it is by no means certain that this toxin is directly responsible for the toxemia even though many lethal doses of toxin may be produced in the infected muscle. These doubts arise largely from the work of Macfarlane and MacLennan (1945) and MacLennan (1962). They suggested that the toxemia and the anemia of gas gangrene might be due not to  $\alpha$  toxin but to some toxic substance liberated by its action (or by some other action of *C. perfringens*) on muscle. They showed that intravenous injection of  $\alpha$  toxin into rabbits led to intravascular hemolysis, but that there was no intravascular hemolysis and no toxin detectable in the circulation after a lethal intramuscular injection. Furthermore they were unable to recover  $\alpha$  toxin from the muscle of injected animals or from gangrenous human muscle. They suggested therefore that the toxin remained adsorbed to muscle and that no significant amount entered the circulation to cause systemic poisoning.

It could be argued that if the toxin were released slowly into the circulation it would be undetectable and would be too dilute to cause intravascular hemolysis but would yet be sufficient to allow for a lethal accumulation at the susceptible sites in the body. However this concept is unlikely in view of the observation that patients could suffer from acute toxemia in spite of high concentrations

of antitoxin in the blood. That this might have been the result of an irreversible attachment of toxin to susceptible sites before antitoxin administration was improbable because surgical excision of the affected muscle resulted in a dramatic amelioration of the toxemia. Therefore, it would seem more likely that a toxemia-producing substance passed from the affected muscle to the circulation but that this substance was not  $\alpha$  toxin—since it was not neutralizable by specific antitoxin or detectable by any test for  $\alpha$  toxin—but a substance produced by the action of  $\alpha$  toxin. No such substance has yet been isolated.

#### PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Potent antitoxins can be prepared by hyperimmunization of horses with toxic filtrates of *C. perfringens*, *C. novyi*, *C. septicum* and *C. histolyticum*. In experimental animals a high degree of protection can be achieved by a preceding inoculation with the specific antitoxin. In man it is customary to give 10 000 units of *C. perfringens*, 10 000 of *C. novyi*, and 5 000 of *C. septicum*  $\alpha$  antitoxins prophylactically and about 3 times these amounts every 4 to 6 hours for therapy. Treatment with antiserum appears to be of benefit provided that and only provided that adequate surgery has been carried out (see Macfarlane 1943; MacLennan and Macfarlane 1944). Necrotic muscle must be removed as early and as radically as possible. If all damaged muscle can be excised the source of toxemia-producing substances and the bulk of the infecting organisms will be removed with it and the Eh of adequately vascularized muscle will be too high for the remaining clostridia to multiply in it. Moreover early removal of devascularized muscle will prevent the fall in pH and consequent proteolysis which results in conditions suitable for clostridial multiplication (Oakley 1954).

However, Brummelkamp *et al.* (1963) concluded that surgical intervention could be virtually dispensed with if the patient was allowed to breathe oxygen while under 3 atmospheres of air pressure in a compression chamber. The consequent high pressure of oxygen in the tissues was considered to inhibit the spread of clostridia to healthy

muscle. It should be noted that the only pathogenic anaerobe isolated by Brummelkamp *et al* in their series of 26 cases was *C. perfringens* and this was indeed the only clostridium isolated in 24 of the cases. Therefore the effects of high pressure oxygen on gas gangrene caused by other clostridia should be investigated before surgery is—perhaps prematurely—abandoned.

There is little evidence of the usefulness of chemotherapy of gas gangrene of man. At best it may supplement but not displace surgical treatment. The successful active immunization of humans against diphtheria and tetanus (see below) by means of appropriate toxoids naturally encouraged hopes of similar immunization of persons exposed to risk of gas gangrene. Work on these lines was initiated by British and American workers during the World War II and it was found that an appreciable antibody response could be elicited in man and animals by the use of aluminum adsorbed formal toxoids (Alte-meier *et al* 1952; Robertson and Keppie 1943; Barr *et al* 1945). There are no data on the effects of such active immunization on the subsequent exposure of man to gas gangrene. However immunization of domestic animals with *C. perfringens*, *C. septicum* and *C. novyi* vaccines is of demonstrable value against diseases caused by these organisms.

## TETANUS

Tetanus is a toxemia due to infection of an injury (which may be quite insignificant) with *C. tetani*. It may also be associated with burns, puerperal infections, infections of the umbilical stump (tetanus neonatorum) and various surgical procedures in which the infection may originate from contaminated suture materials, dressings, plaster, etc. Although tetanus is usually regarded as typically a complication of war injuries, the incidence in civil life is not negligible. In Great Britain the mortalities in civil life distributed by age show two maxima: the first during childhood and the second in later middle life.

The incubation period in man is usually between 5 and 10 days, which allows for spore germination, growth and toxin production and development of evident symptoms

of toxemia. These are characterized by convulsive tonic contraction of voluntary muscles. In man the first symptoms are generally muscular spasms in the region of the local infection followed by trismus which rapidly increases to fixation. In some cases the symptoms remain localized near the site of infection.

## CLOSTRIDIUM TETANI

The tetanus bacillus is widely distributed in soils (20 to 47% of samples) and in animal feces (up to 30%). Therefore wounds contaminated with soil may result in tetanus although this is by no means an invariable consequence of the presence of *C. tetani* in a wound. Tulloch (1919) for example isolated the organisms from 19 out of 100 wounds in which there was no evidence of tetanus. On the other hand it has been reported that spores may be phagocytosed and remain dormant for several months and then initiate a fatal infection if they happen to be deposited in an injured area (contused wounds, sites of injection of irritant substances). See Smith (1955).

Young actively growing organisms are gram positive but most cultures are completely gram negative by 48 hours and very often by 24 hours. The spores are terminal and round when completely ripe but usually appear slightly oval. Surface colonies may be surrounded by an area of swarming and this habit can be utilized for the isolation of *C. tetani* from mixed cultures (Fildes 1929). Deep colonies are semitransparent and woolly. *C. tetani* is not as easily grown on the surface as *C. perfringens* but is less ex-acting than *C. novyi*. It can be divided into 10 agglutinating types on the basis of specific flagellar antigens. Batty and Walker (1963b) examined 26 strains from 8 countries and found that all possessed a common heat stable antigen. Therefore an antiserum prepared against this could be coupled with a fluorescent dye to provide a specific reagent for the recognition of any strain of tetanus. All types produce a neurotoxin neutralized by one antitoxin.

**Toxin.** A culture of *C. tetani* grown under optimal conditions for toxin production may contain up to 2 million LD<sub>50</sub> per ml (Muel-ler and Miller 1954) but toxin production

black in color, with some gas at the inoculation site and small bubbles of gas in the flank and along the abdominal wall. A bloody edema may extend along the abdominal wall but is not nearly so prominent as that due to *C. novyi*. The liver is often pale and films made from it show large numbers of organisms. Impression films made from the liver surface shortly after death show long chains and filaments of clostridia. The mucous membrane of the intestine especially the small intestine is often markedly hemorrhagic and with some strains the lumen may be filled with lysed blood. The cadaver has a characteristic rancid smell that is almost diagnostic of *C. septicum* or *C. chauvoei* infection.

While it is clear that the  $\alpha$  toxin is largely responsible for the pathogenicity of *C. perfringens* and that the gas gangrene induced by this organism is characterized by a profound toxemia, it is by no means certain that this toxin is directly responsible for the toxemia even though many lethal doses of toxin may be produced in the infected muscle. These doubts arise largely from the work of Macfarlane and MacLennan (1945) and MacLennan (1962). They suggested that the toxemia and the anemia of gas gangrene might be due not to  $\alpha$  toxin but to some toxic substance liberated by its action (or by some other action of *C. perfringens*) on muscle. They showed that intravenous injection of  $\alpha$  toxin into rabbits led to intravascular hemolysis but that there was no intravascular hemolysis and no toxin detectable in the circulation after a lethal intramuscular injection. Furthermore they were unable to recover  $\alpha$  toxin from the muscle of injected animals or from gangrenous human muscle. They suggested therefore that the toxin remained adsorbed to muscle and that no significant amount entered the circulation to cause systemic poisoning.

It could be argued that if the toxin were released slowly into the circulation it would be undetectable and would be too dilute to cause intravascular hemolysis but would yet be sufficient to allow for a lethal accumulation at the susceptible sites in the body. However this concept is unlikely in view of the observation that patients could suffer from acute toxemia in spite of high concentrations

of antitoxin in the blood. That this might have been the result of an irreversible attachment of toxin to susceptible sites before antitoxin administration was improbable because surgical excision of the affected muscle resulted in a dramatic amelioration of the toxemia. Therefore it would seem more likely that a toxemia producing substance passed from the affected muscle to the circulation but that this substance was not a toxin—since it was not neutralizable by specific antitoxin or detectable by any test for  $\alpha$  toxin—but a substance produced by the action of  $\alpha$  toxin. No such substance has yet been isolated.

#### PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Potent antitoxins can be prepared by hyperimmunization of horses with toxic filtrates of *C. perfringens*, *C. novyi*, *C. septicum* and *C. histolyticum*. In experimental animals a high degree of protection can be achieved by a preceding inoculation with the specific antitoxin. In man it is customary to give 10 000 units of *C. perfringens*, 10 000 of *C. novyi* and 5 000 of *C. septicum*  $\alpha$  antitoxins prophylactically and about 3 times these amounts every 4 to 6 hours for therapy. Treatment with antisera appears to be of benefit provided that and only provided that adequate surgery has been carried out (see Macfarlane 1943; MacLennan and Macfarlane 1944). Necrotic muscle must be removed as early and as radically as possible. If all damaged muscle can be excised the source of toxemia provoking substances and the bulk of the infecting organisms will be removed with it, and the risk of adequately vascularized muscle will be too high for the remaining clostridia to multiply in it. Moreover early removal of devascularized muscle will prevent the fall in pH and consequent proteolysis which results in conditions suitable for clostridial multiplication (Oakley 1954).

However Brummelkamp *et al.* (1963) concluded that surgical intervention could be virtually dispensed with if the patient was allowed to breathe oxygen while under 3 atmospheres of air pressure in a compression chamber. The consequent high pressure of oxygen in the tissues was considered to inhibit the spread of clostridia to healthy

intramuscularly. However, that same intramuscular dose of toxin failed to kill if the regional motor nerves to the injected muscle had been divided previously. Thus it is clear that toxin injected into the muscles reaches the central nervous system by a route sheltered from circulating antitoxin in all probability via the motor nerves.

A small dose of toxin injected into the hind limb of an animal is absorbed by the motor nerves and travels up the nerve trunk and results in ascending tetanus which affects first the muscles in the injected leg then those of the opposite leg then those of the back and the abdomen. When a large dose of toxin is injected into a site from which direct absorption by motor nerves is not possible it first appears in the lymph from the area injected and thence passes into the blood stream from which it is absorbed by all the peripheral motor nerves. This leads to descending tetanus where the muscles first affected are those of the head and the neck, followed by those of the arms the trunk and the legs.

#### PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Experience with troops during World War I showed clearly the value of prophylactic passive immunization with antitoxic horse serum. Experience in World War II showed equally convincingly that tetanus could be eliminated by active immunization of troops with toxoid (see Fig 2). The incidence in World War II was only a tenth of that in the first 35 cases in the British army (15 in nonimmunized soldiers) and only 12 in the American army. On the other hand tetanus was relatively frequent and accompanied by a high mortality in the German and the Japanese armies in which active immunization was not practiced.

In civilian practice injured persons are usually given prophylactic hyperimmune serum and thus confers a high degree of resistance to tetanus for a limited time. A complication is that spores of *C. tetani* may germinate late in almost healed wounds by which time passive protection may have fallen below the safe limit. A further difficulty is that persons who have had previous inoculations of serum may have become immune to it and will eliminate a subsequent

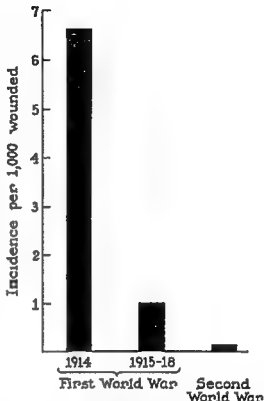


FIG 2 Incidence of tetanus in the British Army in two world wars. Prophylactic passive immunization against the toxin was introduced toward the end of 1914; active immunization before World War II (van Heyningen W E 1955 Cambridge University Press).

injection of antitetanic serum so rapidly that it may prove to be ineffective. The success of active immunization of soldiers suggested the desirability of immunizing civilians similarly. In 1943 active immunization of young children against both tetanus and diphtheria was made compulsory at Lyons. Since then the practice has become almost universal. At present a combination of pertussis, diphtheria, poliomyelitis and tetanus vaccines is widely favored.

The results obtained in the treatment of tetanus with antiserum have been poor because it is not possible to dissociate the complex of toxin and the susceptible moiety of nervous tissue. Nevertheless antiserum should be given to neutralize toxin which is being formed and has not yet been fixed.

varies widely with the strain. Although tetanus toxin was the classic example of an exotoxin, it is now known that the young bacilli contain most of the toxin subsequently found in the medium (Raynaud 1947). Tetanus toxin was one of the first to be obtained in a highly purified crystalline state (Pillemer *et al.* 1946, 1948). It is a simple protein, with a molecular weight of 67,000 containing 70 000 000 mouse LD<sub>50</sub> per mg. Thus tetanus botulinum and dysentery toxins are the most poisonous substances known. In the highly purified state the toxin rapidly and spontaneously loses its toxicity but not its antigenicity (i.e. it toxoids) and at the same time its molecular weight appears to double (Pillemer and Moor 1948). In dilute solution the toxin whether crude or purified is highly susceptible to surface denaturation like many active proteins, and should be protected by the addition of gelatin or broth to the diluent. In contradistinction to this inactivation by dilution a number of workers have reported an increase of toxicity (potentiation activation) in solutions of the toxins in diluents containing broth, serum, organ extracts, acetates, citrates or proteolytic enzymes (Traub *et al.* 1946). Potentiation appears to be demonstrable in some animals but not in others which suggests that the effect may be not on the toxin alone but on its interaction with the host. However this work awaits confirmation since the control experiments designed to show that the potentiation was not merely a protection against denaturation do not appear to be conclusive.

The toxin is specifically and avidly fixed by the gray matter of nervous tissue (Wassermann Takaki phenomenon). The substance responsible for this fixation is a ganglioside, a water soluble lipid containing residues of stearic acid, sphingosine, glucose, galactose, N-acetylgalactosamine and N-acetylneuraminic acid (van Heyningen and Miller 1960). The part that this fixation plays in the lethal action of the toxin has not yet been determined.

The main action of the toxin is on the neural elements of the central nervous system where it appears like strychnine to diminish or abolish synaptic inhibition (Brooks, V. B. *et al.* 1957). When injected

into the anterior chamber of the rabbit's eye it acts on the cholinergic motor nerve of the sphincter pupillae of the iris and paralyzes the muscle (Ambache *et al.* 1948). Botulinum toxin exerts a similar action (Ambache 1951) possibly by preventing the release of acetylcholine from the motor nerve endings. However the actions of these two toxins differ, for tetanus toxin is extremely lethal when injected into the medulla oblongata whereas botulinum toxin has no comparable effect (see Wright 1955).

In addition to the neurotoxin *C. tetani* also produces small amounts of an oxygen labile hemolysin which like the other oxygen labile bacterial hemolysins is necrotizing and cardiotoxic.

#### PATHOGENESIS

*C. tetani* has limited powers of invasion which are not reinforced by the neurotoxin since this has no general histotoxic effect. The hemolysin which is necrotizing may possibly play a supporting role. Only a slight degree of local tissue destruction is needed for initiating infection and establishing the lowered Eh necessary for germination of the spores (Fildes 1929). Once multiplication has started toxin is formed rapidly and is so potent that quite small amounts will result in a fatal outcome. The harmful effects of *C. tetani* infections are entirely due to the neurotoxin.

The mechanism by which toxin spreads from the site of injection to the susceptible sites in the central nervous system has been the subject of controversy for many years but it now seems certain that toxin travels first up the motor nerve trunks and then up the spinal cord. This is essentially the route proposed originally by Meyer and Ransom (1903). Their views were opposed vigorously by Abel (see Wright 1955) who contended that the toxin was carried to the central nervous system exclusively in the blood stream. More recent evidence supports the earlier workers. For example, different workers have shown in different ways (Friedemann *et al.* 1941, D'Antona 1951) that an intravenous dose of antitoxin which could protect against a given dose of toxin administered intravenously failed completely to protect against a similar dose administered

resemble loose balls of cotton wool. Types A, B and F are far more proteolytic than the virtually nonproteolytic C, D and E. Smith (1955) should be consulted for a more complete discussion of the cultural and biochemical characteristics of this species.

Man is affected mainly by Types A and E, less frequently by Type B and never (with one possible exception) by C or D. There is a single recorded incident of intoxication with Type F (Møller and Scheibel 1960). These differences almost certainly reflect variation in human susceptibility to the different types of toxin as much as in degree of exposure to one or another of them. For example, there is a much lower case mortality (20% or less) in Type B than in Type A (70%) intoxications, and recovery from Types B and E has occurred even when appreciable amounts of toxin could be demonstrated in the blood. In some areas (e.g. South Africa) where there is considerable exposure to C and D toxin, no human cases of intoxication have occurred. Only Types C and D have been found in herbivores in nature.

The relatively high resistance of the spores of *C. botulinum* to physical and chemical agencies set a problem for the canning industry where sterilization in bulk is necessary and where excess heating is deleterious to the product. The safety record of commercial canned food is evidence that the problem has been largely solved (Smith 1955, Tanner and McCrea 1923). However, an outbreak of botulism caused by commercially canned tuna fish (Johnston *et al.* 1963) emphasized that slipshod processing remains a hazard. Generally speaking, spores may survive several hours at 100 °C and up to 10 minutes at 120 °C. The spores of Type B are much less resistant than those of the other types. As with other clostridia and with bacilli, great variation in resistance is found in different strains and in different cultures of the same strain.

**Toxins.** Cultures of *C. botulinum* grown in the ordinary way under optimal conditions for toxin production may contain 2 000 000 mouse LD<sub>50</sub> per ml, and when grown in cellophane sacs suspended in culture medium yields as high as 200 000 000 LD<sub>50</sub> per ml have been obtained (Sterne and Wentzel 1950). Toxin appears to be formed within

the organisms and released on autolysis. Production does not seem to depend on active multiplication, since toxin is formed rapidly in resting cells (Kindler *et al.* 1956).

Each Type of *C. botulinum* is characterized by a toxin immunologically distinct from that of any other type. While hyperimmune sera to Types A and B are monospecific antisera to Type C usually contain a small amount of D antitoxin and considerably less E antitoxin. Similarly, antisera to Type D may contain a little antitoxin to Type C and less to Type E. Antiserum to Type E may contain some antitoxin to Type D. These cross-neutralizations are probably due to possession of moieties of the heterologous toxins by Types C, D and E (Mason and Robinson 1935, Bowmer 1962). Although the toxins are immunologically distinct, their pharmacologic effects are identical and are effected through injury to the peripheral nervous system. They act at the myoneural junction, apparently by preventing the release of acetylcholine from the demyelinated ends of the cholinergic motor nerves. There is no effect on the peripheral adrenergic nerves. It is not known how the release of acetylcholine is inhibited, but the evidence suggests that the nerve impulse is stopped in the demyelinated nerve endings somewhere near the point of terminal arborization (Brooks & B 1954). There does not appear to be any destruction of acetylcholine by the toxin or any interference with the enzymes breaking down the transmitter (See Wright 1955 for a comprehensive and stimulating review of the pharmacology of botulinus and tetanus neurotoxins).

Although the different types of botulinum toxin have the same pharmacologic action, they differ greatly in their relative pathogenicities for different animal species. For example, the ratio of the lethal doses for mice and fowls are 1:15 for Type A, 1:2 000 for Type C, 1:100 000 for Type D and 1:25 for Type E. Moreover, there is considerable variation in the ratio of oral to parenteral toxicity among the different types and for different animals. These differences are almost certainly of major epidemiologic significance.

The botulinum toxins that have been purified all contained about 30 000 000 mouse LD<sub>50</sub> per mg. Type A was first purified and



Death following injury caused to nerve tissue by tetanus toxin is usually the result of respiratory failure or of starvation due to difficulty in swallowing. If these sequelae can be staved off by artificial respiration and feeding and by the administration of relaxant and tranquilizing drugs the patient may recover completely because the injury to nerve tissue is reversible. Gratifyingly high cure rates have been achieved when such therapy has been applied by skilled teams (Smith *et al* 1956 Smythe 1963, Anonymous 1963).

### BOTULISM

Botulism is not an infectious disease but a poisoning caused by eating food in which *C. botulinum* has grown and produced toxin. In man symptoms appear after periods varying from less than a day to several days after ingestion of the toxin depending on the amount taken. They include vomiting, constipation, thirst, double vision, difficulty in swallowing and speaking, and respiratory paralysis. In survivors convalescence is slow and partial paralysis may persist for several months.

A few cases of botulism due to wound infection have been reported (Davis *et al*, 1951 for example) but for all practical purposes the organism may be considered as noninvasive. Outbreaks of botulism among humans are sporadic and rare and would be regarded as insignificant were it not for the high fatality rate. From 1899 to 1947 there were 462 outbreaks in the United States and Canada with 1 253 cases and 815 deaths. In the United Kingdom only 4 outbreaks have been recorded. In animals botulism occurs far more frequently than in man and may be so prevalent in some areas that husbandry becomes virtually impossible unless measures are taken to control the disease.

Human cases result from the eating of smoked, salted, spiced or canned foods which have been allowed to stand for a period and eaten without being cooked. In Europe most cases have been due to sausages (Latin *botulus* whence botulism), ham, spiced meats, game pastes, potted meats and in Russia salt fish. In the United States most cases have been due to canned, especially home-canned, vegetables and fruits such as olives, string beans, corn and peas. Affected meats may

appear obviously spoiled but the growth of *C. botulinum* in canned vegetables may be slight and apparently insignificant, although dangerous amounts of toxin may be formed. Dack (1949), Tanner and Tanner (1953) should be consulted for further detail.

### CLOSTRIDIUM BOTULINUM

The natural habitat of the organism is the soil. It is rather more prevalent in virgin soil than in cultivated, manured or pasture lands. In the United States it appears to be more common in the Rocky Mountain system and west of it. It occurs less frequently in the states on the Atlantic seaboard and rarely in the Great Plains or the Mississippi River Valley (Meyer and Dubovsky 1922a). Type A (see below) is more common than Type B in the United States while the latter is more usual in Europe (Meyer and Dubovsky 1922b). The frequency with which *C. botulinum* occurs in virgin soils and in vegetable matter of various kinds suggests that it is not, as was once thought, primarily an intestinal parasite. It can be found in the feces of domestic animals in areas where botulism is enzootic but it has almost never been isolated from human feces. Similarly Type E is the dominant type in, for example, the Baltic catchment area. The frequency with which it can be isolated from the peel of stored potatoes is a strong indication of its telluric origin (Johannsen 1963).

Botulinum organisms are divided into two species: the strongly proteolytic (ovolytic) *C. parbotulinum* and the less proteolytic (nonovolytic) *C. botulinum*. They are also divisible into Types A, B, C, D, E and F according to the immunologic specificities of the toxins they produce. There is a considerable diversity of cultural and biochemical behavior within these types so that it is possible to have representatives of both *C. botulinum* and *C. parbotulinum* in Type B. However, the immunologic differences in the toxins are constant and clear-cut and since these characteristics are of definitive epidemiologic significance it is now customary to refer to all organisms producing botulinum toxin as *C. botulinum* and to subdivide these into Types as recommended at the 6th International Congress of Microbiology (1953). Deep colonies of Types A and B may be round or lenticular while those of C and D

intoxication in which recovery has occurred even after toxin has been demonstrated in the circulation. It is rational to think that benefit would result from the neutralization of such circulating toxin. Dolman and Iida (1963) strongly recommended treating Type E intoxication with antitoxin. As in tetanus the lesion caused by botulinum toxin may regress and the paralyses and other clinical manifestations of the disease gradually disappear. For this reason artificial respiration should be maintained for long periods by mechanical means if necessary (Legroux *et al.* 1944; Mouquin *et al.* 1944).

## MISCELLANEOUS INFECTIONS

### CLOSTRIDIUM PERFRINGENS TYPE A

McClung (1945) and Hobbs *et al.* (1953) isolated *C. perfringens* Type A from cases of food poisoning and from food suspected of causing food poisoning in circumstances which strongly incriminated this organism. It has since been found to be associated with a number of similar outbreaks in different parts of the world. The characters of the strains isolated are such as to suggest that they form a well-defined ecologic subdivision of Type A. It is heat resistant, produces little  $\alpha$  toxin and no  $\theta$  toxin.

### CLOSTRIDIUM PERFRINGENS TYPE C

Recently Murrell and Roth (1963) in Papua New Guinea described cases, some fatal of necrotic enteritis in man caused by *C. perfringens*. From these a number of strains were isolated by Egerton and typed by Warrack and Walker (Egerton and Walker 1964) and shown to produce  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  toxins. In this they resembled Zeissler's isolates. However they lacked heat resistance, the definitive character of Type F and also differed from this in producing  $\theta$  hemolysin, traces of  $\kappa$  collagenase and hyaluronidase. Hence the Murrell and Roth strains must be placed in Type C (Table 23-4). While from the epidemiologic and the pathologic standpoints it would be tempting to group the Papua New Guinea strains with Zeissler's strains in Type F, this would be taxonomically inadmissible. This difficulty strengthens the already weighty arguments for abandoning Type F and trans-

ferring Zeissler's strains to Type C (Sterne and Warrack 1964). The similarities of the antigenic spectra of the Papua-New Guinea strains and the strains isolated by Field and Gibson from piglets in Britain are worth noting (Table 4).

### CLOSTRIDIUM PERFRINGENS TYPE D

This organism which produces  $\epsilon$  toxin and is the cause of pulpy kidney disease in sheep has been isolated from man twice (Glendon White and Bullen 1955; Kohn and Warrack 1955). Its significance in man is not known.

### CLOSTRIDIUM PERFRINGENS TYPE E

Marshall and Anslow (1955) examined sera from a number of cases of epidemic hemorrhagic fever from Korea and found that several of these had antibody to the  $\epsilon$  toxin of *C. perfringens* (the main lethal toxin of Type E). It was not suggested that Type E stood in any etiologic relationship to epidemic hemorrhagic fever. *C. perfringens* Type E was not isolated from any of these cases so that the reason for the ability of these sera to neutralize  $\epsilon$  toxin is as yet obscure.

### CLOSTRIDIUM PERFRINGENS TYPE F

In 1949 Zeissler and Rassfeld-Sternberg described an outbreak in Northern Germany in which a number of fatalities occurred of an enterotoxemic disease of man characterized by a sloughing necrotic enteritis. This disease is analogous to the specific clostridial enterotoxemias of animals and was shown to be caused by a *C. perfringens* which produced large amounts of  $\beta$  toxin (Oakley 1949). Because the strain was markedly heat resistant and showed some morphologic peculiarities and because it lacked most of the perfringens minor toxins it was classified as a new type, Type F, rather than Type C in which its production of  $\beta$  toxin would naturally have placed it. In view of the heterogeneity now known to exist in Type C it might be as well to transfer Type F to this group (Brooks, M. E. *et al.* 1957; Sterne and Warrack 1964).

## REFERENCES

- Abrams, A., Kegeles, G. and Hottel, G. A.  
1946 The purification of toxin from *Clos*

crystallized by Lamanna *et al* (1946) and Abrams *et al* (1946) and Type II was obtained in a highly purified but amorphous condition by Lamanna and Glassman (1947), while an improved procedure was described by Duff *et al* (1957). Type D toxin appears to be more lethal for mice than A or B because unpurified filtrates of cultures grown in cellophane (Sterne and Wentzel 1950) showed a toxicity little less than that of crystalline A toxin. A purified Type D preparation (Wentzel *et al* 1950) showed potentiation in acid gelatin phosphite to about 20 000 times the toxicity of Type A toxin. It would be most interesting to obtain confirmation of this remarkable but as yet isolated observation.

The molecular structure of botulinum toxins appears to be unstable. Purified Type A toxin was shown to be a protein of a molecular weight of about 1 000 000 (Putnam *et al* 1948) but Wagman and Bateman (1951, 1953, Wagman, 1954) have shown that under certain conditions, the molecule may dissociate into fragments of molecular weight of approximately 70 000, some of which are inert and others more toxic than the original molecule. Types B and D also seem to occur in forms with different molecular weights (Lamanna and Glassman 1947, Wentzel *et al*, 1950, Wagman and Bateman 1951, Duff *et al* 1957). Indeed Wagman (1963) has recently obtained dialyzable specific toxic fragments of botulinum toxin. Thus botulinum toxin molecules do not appear to be fixed entities but structures capable of dissociating and re polymerizing in various ways. Such changes may account for differences in the behavior of various types and preparations and possibly also for the ability of the toxin to pass from the gut into the circulation. Indeed Type E toxin must be activated by proteolytic enzymes to reveal its full toxicity (Duff *et al* 1956).

In addition to the neurotoxins *C. botulinum* also produces small amounts of a hemagglutinin, an O labile hemolysin and a hemolytic lecithinase (see Wright 1955).

#### PATHOGENESIS

The disease is entirely toxemic and can be exactly simulated by parenteral or oral administration of the isolated toxin, although it

must be remembered that purification separates toxin from factors promoting gut permeability (Coleman 1954). It is one of the few toxins (and the only one of such formidable potency) that is not destroyed and indeed may be activated by the acid conditions and by proteolytic enzymes in the gut (Boroff *et al* 1952, Duff *et al*, 1956). It is unstable in the alkaline conditions prevalent in the greater part of the small intestine and, although it can survive the action of proteolytic enzymes *in vivo* Halliwell (1954) observed that it could be inactivated by several proteolytic enzymes *in vitro* but that no proteolytic digestion took place during the inactivation. The toxin can be absorbed through the respiratory mucous membranes (an additional hazard to laboratory personnel working with dried toxin) as well as the gut walls. The fact that the gut wall is slightly permeable to large molecules has been known for some time (Bullen and Batty 1956, Heckley *et al* 1960) and the special ability of botulinum toxin to act *per os* probably depends on its resistance to the acid of the stomach and on its great toxicity which enables the little that passes through the wall to kill. The disaggregation already discussed may also play a part. After absorption from the gut toxin can be found in the blood whence it is presumably absorbed by the peripheral nervous system.

#### PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Since the toxins of the different types of *C. botulinum* are serologically distinct antisera that are used prophylactically should either be specific or be polyvalent to the extent of containing antibodies to A, B and E, the types to which man is naturally susceptible. Antisera should be given to all persons suspected of having partaken of contaminated food. Since the risk from botulism is ordinarily so slight there is no reason for active immunization with toxoid on a large scale, although it is advisable to protect laboratory workers at special risk.

Treatment with antitoxin has proved to be of little use in Type A intoxications, probably because of the virtual irreversibility of the combination of toxin with nerve tissue and possibly because too little serum of too poor a quality was used. It is more difficult to assess the value of serum in Types B and F

intoxication in which recovery has occurred even after toxin has been demonstrated in the circulation. It is rational to think that benefit would result from the neutralization of such circulating toxin. Dolman and Iida (1963) strongly recommended treating Type E intoxication with antitoxin. As in tetanus the lesion caused by botulinum toxin may regress and the paralyses and other clinical manifestations of the disease gradually disappear. For this reason artificial respiration should be maintained for long periods by mechanical means if necessary (Legroux *et al.* 1944; Mouquin *et al.* 1944).

## MISCELLANEOUS INFECTIONS

### CLOSTRIDIUM PERFRINGENS TYPE A

McClung (1945) and Hobbs *et al.* (1953) isolated *C. perfringens* Type A from cases of food poisoning and from food suspected of causing food poisoning in circumstances which strongly incriminated this organism. It has since been found to be associated with a number of similar outbreaks in different parts of the world. The characters of the strains isolated are such as to suggest that they form a well-defined ecologic subdivision of Type A. It is heat resistant, produces little  $\alpha$  toxin and no  $\theta$  toxin.

### CLOSTRIDIUM PERFRINGENS TYPE C

Recently Murrell and Roth (1963) in Papua New Guinea described cases some fatal of necrotic enteritis in man caused by *C. perfringens*. From these a number of strains were isolated by Egerton and typed by Warrack and Walker (Egerton and Walker 1964) and shown to produce  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  toxins. In this they resembled Zeissler's isolates. However they lacked heat resistance, the definitive character of Type F and also differed from this in producing  $\theta$  hemolysin, traces of collagenase and hyaluronidase. Hence the Murrell and Roth strains must be placed in Type C (Table 23-4). While from the epidemiologic and the pathologic standpoints it would be tempting to group the Papua New Guinea strains with Zeissler's strains in Type F, this would be taxonomically inadmissible. This difficulty strengthens the already weighty arguments for abandoning Type F and trans-

ferring Zeissler's strains to Type C (Sterne and Warrack 1964). The similarities of the antigenic spectra of the Papua-New Guinea strains and the strains isolated by Field and Gibson from piglets in Britain is worth noting (Table 4).

### CLOSTRIDIUM PERFRINGENS TYPE D

This organism which produces  $\epsilon$  toxin and is the cause of pulpy kidney disease in sheep has been isolated from man twice (Gleeson, White and Bullen 1955; Kohn and Warrack 1955). Its significance in man is not known.

### CLOSTRIDIUM PERFRINGENS TYPE E

Marshall and Anslow (1955) examined sera from a number of cases of epidemic hemorrhagic fever from Korra and found that several of these had antibody to the  $\epsilon$  toxin of *C. perfringens* (the main lethal toxin of Type E). It was not suggested that Type E stood in any etiologic relationship to epidemic hemorrhagic fever. *C. perfringens* Type E was not isolated from any of these cases so that the reason for the ability of these sera to neutralize  $\epsilon$  toxin is as yet obscure.

### CLOSTRIDIUM PERFRINGENS TYPE F

In 1949 Zeissler and Rassfeld Sternberg described an outbreak in Northern Germany in which a number of fatalities occurred of an enterotoxemic disease of man characterized by a sloughing necrotic enteritis. This disease is analogous to the specific clostridial enterotoxemias of animals and was shown to be caused by a *C. perfringens* which produced large amounts of  $\beta$  toxin (Oakley 1949). Because the strain was markedly heat resistant and showed some morphologic peculiarities and because it lacked most of the *perfringens* minor toxins it was classified as a new type, Type F, rather than Type C in which its production of  $\beta$  toxin would naturally have placed it. In view of the heterogeneity now known to exist in Type C it might be as well to transfer Type F to this group (Brooks, M. E. *et al.* 1957; Sterne and Warrack 1964).

## REFERENCES

- Abrams, A., Kegeles, G. and Hottel, G. A.  
1946 The purification of toxin from *Clostridium*

- iridium botulinum* type A J Biol Chem 164 63 79
- Adams M H and Hendee E D 1945 Methods for the production of the alpha and theta toxins of *Clostridium welchii* J Immun 51 249 256
- Altmeier W A Corth R Culbertson W and Tytell A 1951 Enzymatic debridement of burns Ann Surg 134 581 583
- Altmeier W A Corth E Sherman R Logan M A and Tytell A 1952 Toxoid immunization of experimental gas gangrene further studies AMA Arch Surg 65 633 640
- Ambache N 1951 A further survey of the action of *Clostridium botulinum* toxin upon different types of autonomic nerve fibre J Physiol 113 1 17
- Ambache N Morgan R S and Wright G P 1948 The action of tetanus toxin on the rabbit's iris J Physiol 107 45 53
- Anonymous 1963 Treatment of tetanus Brit Med J 1 558 559
- Barr M, Glenny A T Knight B C J G Parish H J Strickland A and van Heyningen W E 1945 Preliminary report on tetanus and gas gangrene prophylaxis with combined tetanus Welch Oedematis toxins (TWET) Report AS31 to the Medical Research Council (not published)
- Batty I and Walker P D 1963a Differentiation of *Clostridium septicum* and *Clostridium chauvoei* by the use of fluorescent labelled antibodies J Path Bact 85 517 521
- 1963b Fluorescent labelled clostridial antisera as specific stains Bull Off Int Epiz 59 1499 1513
- Berman S Lowenthal J P Webster M E Altieri P L and Gochenour R B 1961 Factors affecting the elaboration by *Clostridium histolyticum* of proteinases capable of debriding third degree burn eschars on guinea pigs J Bact 87 582 588
- Bernheimer A W 1944 Parallelism in lethal and hemolytic activity of the toxin of *Clostridium septicum* J Exp Med 80 309 320
- Bidwell H and van Heyningen W E 1948 The biochemistry of the gas gangrene toxins 5 The  $\kappa$  toxin (collagenase) of *Clostridium welchii* Biochem J 42 140 151
- Boroff D A Raynaud M and Prevot A R 1952 Studies of toxin of *Clostridium botulinum* type D J Immun 68 503 511
- Bowmer E J 1962 Antitoxins of *Clostridium botulinum* Types A B C D and E preparation and assay of proposed international standards Thesis University of Liverpool England 108 pp
- Brooks M E and Epps H B G 1959 Taxonomic studies of the genus *Clostridium* *Clostridium bifermentans* and *C. sordelli* J Gen Microbiol 21 144 155
- Brooks M E Sterne M and Warrack G H 1957 A re assessment of the criteria used for type differentiation of *Clostridium perfringens* J Path Bact 74 185 195
- Brooks V H 1954 The action of botulinum toxin on motor nerve filaments J Physiol 123 501 515
- Brooks V B Curtis D R and Eccles J C 1957 The action of tetanus toxin on the inhibition of motoneurons J Physiol 135 655 672
- Brummelkamp W H Boerema I and Hoogendyk L 1963 Treatment of clostridial infections with hyperbaric oxygen drenching A report on 26 cases Lancet 1 235 238
- Bullen J J and Batty I 1956 The effect of *Clostridium welchii* type D culture filtrates on the permeability of the mouse intestine J Path Bact 71 311 323
- Coleman I W 1954 Studies on the oral toxicity of *Clostridium botulinum* toxin type A Canad J Biochem Physiol 32 27 34
- Conklin D A Webster M E Altieri P L Berman S Lowenthal J P and Gochenour R B 1961 Large scale purification of proteinases from *Clostridium histolyticum* filtrates J Bact 82 589 594
- Dack G M 1949 Food Poisoning Chicago Univ Chicago Press 184 pp
- D'Antona D 1951 Le tétanos synthèse théorique et pratique de nos principales connaissances Rev Immun 15 93 157
- Davis J B Mattman L H and Wiley M 1951 *Clostridium botulinum* in a fatal wound infection JAMA 146 646 648
- de Gier J de Haas G H and van Deenen L M M 1961 Action of phospholipases from *Clostridium welchii* and *Bacillus cereus* on red cell membranes Biochem J 81 33 34
- Dolman C E and Iida H 1963 Type E Botulism Its Epidemiology Prevention and Specific Treatment Canad J Pub Health 54 293 308
- Duff J T Klerer J Bibler R H Moore D E Gutfried C and Wright G G 1957 Studies on immunity to toxins of *Clostridium botulinum* II Production and purification of type B toxin for toxoid J Bact 73 597 601
- Duff J T Wright G G and Yarinsky A 1956 Activation of *Clostridium botulinum* type E toxin by trypsin J Bact 72 455-460
- Egerton J R and Walker P D 1964 The isolation of *Clostridium perfringens* type C

- from necrotic enteritis of man in Papua New Guinea *J Path Bact* 88 275 278
- Evans D G 1943a The protective properties of the alpha antitoxin and antihyaluronidase occurring in *Cl welchu* type A antiserum *J Path Bact* 55 427-434
- 1943b The protective properties of the alpha antitoxin and theta antihæmolyisin occurring in *Cl welchu* type A antiserum *Brit J Exp Path* 24 81 88
- 1945 The *in vitro* production of  $\alpha$ -toxin  $\theta$  hæmolyisin and hyaluronidase by strains of *Cl welchu* type A and the relationship of *in vitro* properties to virulence for guinea pigs *J Path Bact* 57 75 85
- 1947 Anticollagenase in immunity to *Cl welchu* type A infection *Brit J Exp Path* 28 24 30
- Fildes P 1929 *Bacillus tetani* Great Britain Medical Research Council A System of Bacteriology in Relation to Medicine London His Majesty's Stat Off vol 3 pp 298 372
- Friedemann U Hollander A and Tarlov I M 1941 Investigations on the pathogenesis of tetanus III *J Immun.* 40 325 364
- Gleeson White M H and Bullen J J 1955 *Clostridium welchu* epsilon toxin in the intestinal contents of man *Lancet* i 384 385
- Gordon J Holman R A and McLeod J W 1953 Further observations on the production of hydrogen peroxide by anaerobic bacteria *J Path Bact* 66 527 537
- Guillaumie M Kreguer A and Geoffroy M 1954 Nouvelles recherches sur l'évaluation de l'activité anti *histolyticum* et anti *septicum* de divers sérums *Ann Inst Pasteur* 86 38 52
- Guillaumie M Kreguer A Geoffroy M and Reade G 1953 Étude sur les propriétés des sérums anti *septicum* et anti *histolyticum* *Ann Inst Past* 84 516-528
- Hall I C 1945 The occurrence of *Bacillus histolyticus* in accidental wounds without recognized specific infection *Surgery* 18 369 377
- Hallwell G 1954 The action of proteolytic enzymes on *Clostridium botulinum* type A toxin *Biochem J* 58 4 8
- Heckly R J Hildebrand G J and Lamanna C 1960 On the size of the toxic particle passing the intestinal barrier in botulism *J Exp Med* 111 745 759
- Hewitt L F 1952 Oxidation reduction Potentials in Bacteriology and Biochemistry London Livingstone pp 130
- Hobbs B C Smith M E Oakley C L Warrack G H and Cruickshank J C 1953 *Clostridium welchu* food poisoning *J Hyg* 51 75 101
- Holman R A 1955 The use of catalase in the growth of anaerobes *J Path Bact* 70 195 204
- Johannsen A 1963 *Clostridium botulinum* in Sweden and the adjacent waters *J Appl Bact* 26 43-47
- Johnston R W Feldman J and Sullivan R 1963 Botulism from canned tuna fish *Public Health Rep* 78 561 564
- Kaufman L and Weaver R H 1960a Rapid methods for the identification of clostridia *J Bact* 79 119 121
- 1960b Use of natural red fluorescence for the identification of colonies of clostridia *J Bact* 79 292 294
- Keppie J and Robertson M 1944 The *in vitro* toxigenicity and other characters of strains of *Cl welchu* type A from various sources *J Path Bact* 56 123 132
- Kielley W W and Meyerhof O 1950 Studies on adenosinetriphosphatase of muscle III The lipoprotein nature of the magnesium activated adenosinetriphosphatase *J Biol Chem* 183 391-401
- Kindler S H Mager J and Grossowicz N 1956 Toxin production by *Clostridium para botulinum* type A *J Gen Microbiol* 15 394-403
- Kohn J and Warrack G H 1955 Recovery of *Clostridium welchu* type D from man *Lancet* i 385
- Lamanna C and Glassman H N 1947 The isolation of type B botulinum toxin *J Bact* 54 575 584
- Lamanna, C McElroy O E and Eklund H W 1946 The purification and crystallization of *Clostridium botulinum* type A toxin *Science* 103 613 614
- Legroux R Jeramec C and Levadite J C 1944 Traitement du botulisme aigu expérimental au moyen de la sérothérapie et du poumon d'acier *Bull soc med hop Paris* 60 432-433
- Lepper E and Martin C J 1929 The chemical mechanisms exploited in the use of meat media for the cultivation of anaerobes *Brit J Exp Path* 10 327 334
- Macfarlane M G 1943 The therapeutic value of gas gangrene antitoxin *Brit Med J* 2 636 640
- 1950 The biochemistry of bacterial toxins 5 Variation in hæmolytic activity of immunologically distinct lecithinases towards erythrocytes from different species *Biochem J* 47 270-279
- Macfarlane M G and Datta N 1954 Observations on the immunological and biochemical properties of liver mitochondria

- with reference to the action of *Clostridium welchii* toxin Brit J Exp Path 35 191 202
- Macfarlane M G, and Knight B C J G 1941 The biochemistry of bacterial toxins I The lecithinase activity of *Cl welchii* toxins Biochem J 35 884 902
- Macfarlane R G and MacLennan J D 1945 The toxæmia of gas gangrene Lancet 2 328 331
- MacLennan J D 1943 Anaerobic infections of war wounds in the Middle East Lancet 2 94 99
- 1944 Anaerobic infections in Tripoli and Tunisia Lancet 1 203 207
- 1962 The histotoxic clostridial infections of man Bact Rev 26 177 276
- MacLennan J D and Macfarlane M G 1944 Treatment of gas gangrene Brit Med J 1 683 685
- McClung L S 1945 Human food poisoning due to growth of *Clostridium perfringens* (*C welchii*) in freshly cooked chicken preliminary note J Bact 50 229 231
- McLeod J W and Gordon J 1925 Further indirect evidence that anaerobes tend to produce peroxide in the presence of oxygen J Path Bact 28 147 153
- McLeod J W 1930 Variations in the periods of exposure to air and oxygen necessary to kill anaerobic bacteria Acta path microbiol scand (suppl.) 3 255 267
- Marshall J D and Anslow R O 1955 *Clostridium perfringens* iota antitoxin levels in convalescent sera from hemorrhagic fever patients Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 90 265 267
- Mason J H and Robinson E M 1935 The antigenic components of the toxins of *Cl botulinum* types C and D Onderstepoort J Vet Sc & Animal Ind 5 65 75
- Meisel H and Rymkiewicz D 1959 Antygeny zarodnikowe W klasyfikacji proteolitycznych clostridia (spore antigens in the classification of proteolytic clostridia) Med Doswiad Mikrobiol 11 1 12
- Meyer H and Ranson F 1903 Untersuchungen ueber den Tetanus Arch exp Path Pharmacol 49 369-416
- Meyer K F and Dubovsky H J 1922a The distribution of the spores of *B botulinus* in the United States IV J Infect Dis 31 559 594
- 1922b The occurrence of the spores of *B botulinus* in Belgium Denmark England the Netherlands and Switzerland VI J Infect Dis 31 600 609
- Miles E M and Miles A A 1950 The relation of toxicity and enzyme activity in the lecithinases of *Clostridium bifermentans* and *Clostridium welchii* J Gen Microbiol 4 22 35
- Møller V and Schetbel I 1960 Preliminary report on the isolation of an apparently new type of *Cl botulinum* Acta path microbiol scand 48 80
- Mouquim Bastin and Lefevre 1944 Un cas de guérison de botulisme aigu grave traité par la respiration artificielle (poumon d'acier) Bull soc méd hop Paris 60 430-432
- Moussa R S 1959 Antigenic formulae for *Clostridium septicum* and *Clostridium chauvoei* J Path Bact 77 341 350
- Mueller J H and Miller P A 1954 Variable factors influencing the production of tetanus toxin J Bact 67 271 277
- Murrell T G G and Roth L 1963 Necrotizing jejunitis a newly discovered disease in the highlands of New Guinea Med J Aust 1 62 69
- Oakley C L 1949 The toxins of *Cl welchii* type F Brit M J 1 269 270
- 1954 Gas gangrene Brit M Bull 10 52 58 160
- 1955 Bacterial toxins and classification J Gen Microbiol 12 344 347
- Oakley C L and Warrack G H 1950 The alpha beta and gamma antigens of *Clostridium histolyticum* (Weinberg and Séguin 1916) J Gen Microbiol 4 365 373
- 1953 Routine typing of *Clostridium welchii* J Hyg 51 102 107
- Oakley C L Warrack G H and Clarke P H 1947 The toxins of *Clostridium oedematis* (*Cl novyi*) J Gen Microbiol 1 91 107
- Oakley C L Warrack G H and van Heyningen W E 1946 The collagenase (α toxin) of *Cl welchii* type A J Path Bact 58 229 235
- Pillemer L and Moore D H 1948 The spontaneous conversion of crystalline tetanal toxin to a flocculating atoxic dimer J Biol Chem 173 427-428
- Pillemer L Wittler R G Burrell J I and Grossberg D B 1948 The immunochemistry of toxins and toxoids VI The crystallization and characterization of tetanal toxin J Exp Med 88 205 221
- Pillemer L Wittler R and Grossberg D B 1946 The isolation and crystallization of tetanal toxin Science 103 615 616
- Prevot A R 1948 Manuel de classification et de détermination des bactéries anaérobies ed 2 Paris Masson 290 pp
- Prévot A R and Cordier P 1941 Recher

- ches biochimiques comparees sur *Cl bifermentans* *Cl sordelli* et *Cl aerofoetidum* Ann Inst Pasteur 67 473 476
- Putnam F W Lamanna C and Sharp D G 1948 Physicochemical properties of crystal line *Clostridium botulinum* type A toxin J Biol Chem 176 401-412
- Raynaud M 1947 Extraction de la toxine tetanique et de la toxine de *Clostridium sordelli* a partir des corps bacteriens Compt rend acad sc 225 543 544
- Reed G H and Orr J H 1943 Gas gangrene Am J Med Sci 206 379 399
- Robertson M and Keppie J 1943 Gas gangrene active immunisation by means of concentrated toxoids Lancet 2 311 314
- Roth F H and Pillemer L 1953 The separation of alpha toxin (lecithinase) from filtrates of *Clostridium welchii* J Immun 70 533 537
- 1955 Purification and some properties of *Clostridium welchii* type A theta toxin J Immun 75 50 56
- Smith A C Hull E E and Hopson J A 1956 Treatment of severe tetanus with dibucocurarine chloride and intermittent positive pressure respiration Lancet 2 550 552
- Smith L D 1949 *Clostridia* in gas gangrene Bact Rev 13 233 254
- 1955 Introduction to the Pathogenic Anaerobes Chicago Univ Chicago Press 253 pp
- Smith L D and Claus A D 1957 Toxin production and proteolytic properties of *Clostridium novyi* J Bact 73 445 446
- Smith L D and George R L 1946 The anaerobic bacterial flora of clostridial myositis J Bact 51 271 279
- Smith L D Safford J W and Hawkins W W 1962 *Clostridium sordelli* infection in sheep Cornell Vet 52 62 68
- Smythe P M 1963 Studies on neonatal tetanus and on pulmonary compliance of the totally relaxed infant Brit Med J 1 565 571
- Sordelli A 1922 Un anaerobie agent de gangrene gazeuse Compt Rend Soc Biol 87 838 840
- Sterne M and Warrack H G 1962 The interactions between *Clostridium septicum* and *Clostridium histolyticum* toxins and anti toxins J Path Bact 84 277 288
- Sterne M and Warrack H G 1964 The types of *Clostridium perfringens* J Path Bact 88 279 283
- Sterne M and Wentzel L M 1950 A new method for the large scale production of high titre botulinum formol toxoid types C and D J Immun 65 175 183
- Stewart S E 1938 The titration of *bifermentans* antitoxin and the relationship between *Clostridium bifermentans* and *Clostridium sordelli* J Bact 35 13 14
- Stock A H 1944 Anaerobic spore bearing flora of gas gangrene Italy Med Bull Mediterranean Theater of Operations 2 159 162
- Tanner F W and McCrea F H 1923 *Clostridium botulinum* IV Resistance of spores to moist heat J Bact 8 269 276
- Tanner F W and Tanner L P 1953 Food borne Infections and Intoxications Garrard Press Champaign Ill
- Tataki H and Huet M 1953 Valeur du test de l'uréase pour la differenciation de *Cl sordelli* et *Cl bifermentans* Ann Inst Pasteur 84 890 894
- Traub F H Hollander A and Friedemann U 1946 The potentiation of tetanus toxin by broth and serum J Bact 52 169 177
- Tulloch W J 1919 Report of bacteriological investigation of tetanus carried out on behalf of the War Office Committee for the Study of Tetanus J Hyg 18 103 202
- van Heyningen W E 1955 The role of toxins in pathology Society of General Microbiology Symposium no 5 pp 17 39 Cambridge University Press
- van Heyningen W E and Bidwell E 1948 The biochemistry of the gas gangrene toxins IV The reaction between the  $\alpha$  toxin (lecithinase) of *Clostridium welchii* and its anti toxin Biochem J 42 130 140
- van Heyningen W E and Miller P A 1960 The fixation of tetanus toxin by ganglioside J Gen Microbiol 24 107 119
- Wagman J 1954 Isolation and sedimentation study of low molecular weight forms of type A botulinus toxin Arch Biochem 50 104 112
- 1963 Low molecular weight forms of type A botulinum toxin II Action of pepsin on intact and dissociated toxin Arch Biochem Biophys 100 414 421
- Wagman J and Bateman J B 1951 The behavior of the botulinus toxins in the ultracentrifuge Arch Biochem 31 424-430
- 1953 Botulinum type A toxin Properties of a toxic dissociation product Arch Biochem 45 375 383
- Walker P D and Batty I 1962 The use of fluorescent antibodies to discriminate between species of *Clostridia* J Appl Bact 25 vii
- Warrack G H Bidwell E and Oakley C L



- 1951 The beta toxin (deoxyribonuclease) of *Cl. septicum* J Path Bact 63 293 302
- Wentzel L M Sterne M and Polson A 1950 High toxicity of pure botulinum type D toxin Nature (London) 166 739 740
- Wetzler T F Marshall J D Jr and Cardella M A 1956 Rapid isolation of Clostridia by selective inhibition of aerobic flora II A systematic method as applied to surveys of Clostridia in Korea Am J Clin Path 26 345 351
- Willis A T 1960 Anaerobic Bacteriology in Clinical Medicine London Butterworth
- Willis A T and Hobbs G 1958 A medium for the identification of clostridia producing opalescence in egg yolk emulsions J Path Bact 75 299 305
- 1959 Some new media for the isolation and identification of clostridia J Path Bact 77 511 521
- Wright G P 1955 The neurotoxins of *Clostridium botulinum* and *Clostridium tetani* Pharmacol Rev 7 413-465
- Zeissler J and Rassfeld Sternberg L 1949 Enteritis necroticans due to *Clostridium welchii* type F Brit Med J 1 267 269

# 24

## The Spirochetes

### INTRODUCTION

The order *Spirochaetales* includes diverse groups of spiral and actively motile microorganisms the majority of which divide by transverse fission. Classification of the spirochetes has been principally on morphologic grounds, and within each subgroup there are both pathogenic and nonpathogenic species. There has been a tendency to attribute relationships among these diverse groups merely because of their spiral form when in fact other and perhaps more important biologic relationships are lacking. As is the case in many other groups of bacteria, the particular biologic properties that confer to one species and not to another the ability to produce disease in man or animals are often obscure; however, it is probable that the active motility of these organisms plays a significant role in their disease-producing proclivities. The spirochetes historically and still today account for a substantial segment of human disease.

The *Spirochaetales* have been divided into 2 families and 6 genera. The family *Spirochaetaceae* comprises 3 genera nonpathogenic for man: *Spirochaeta*, *Saprosira*, and *Cristispira*. All are large, flexible and undulating spiral organisms measuring from 30 to 500  $\mu$  in length; the genera are distinguished by certain morphologic characteristics. *Spirochaeta* are found principally in sewage and contaminated water; *Saprosira* in mud and sand; and *Cristispira* in oysters

and other molluscs. All grow best at approximately 20°C.

The *Treponemataceae* comprise 3 genera, each of which contains species pathogenic for man: the *Treponema* to which belong the causative organisms of syphilis, yaws, pinta, and the other treponematoses; the *Borrelia*, which comprises the large group of relapsing fever spirochetes; and the *Leptospira* to which belong various species causing leptospirosis. It is well to keep these 3 large groups of pathogenic spirochetes clearly separated for they have little in common except a spiral form which, however, is distinctive for each genus. Interesting speculations concerning the evolutionary development of the spiral microorganisms have been made by Cockburn (1961), but conclusive evidence is lacking. It should be noted too that each group contains species that are pathogenic for man, others that are pathogenic for animals but not for man, and still others that appear to be only saprophytic for man or animals. In general, their pathogenicity is not indicated by any morphologic characteristic and usually can be determined only by animal inoculation.

The foregoing classification, while useful and biologically justifiable, has not been adopted universally, and much confusion has been caused by the use of the term "spirochete" and the generic classification *Spirochaeta* for any spiral organism. For example, the terms *Spirochaeta pallida* and *Treponema pallidum* are used almost interchangeably.

*Borrelia recurrentis* is frequently referred to as *Spirochaeta recurrentis* and even at times as *Treponema recurrentis* or *Spironema recurrentis*

## TREPONEMA AND THE TREPONEMATOSES

The treponematoses are a group of clinical and epidemiologic syndromes which have many features in common including (1) etiologic agent belonging to the *Treponema* group of spirochetes (2) subacute and chronic course with intervals of clinical quiescence and relapse (3) lesions of the skin and the bones (4) presence of the same type of serum antibodies (5) prompt response to penicillin therapy and (6) occurrence predominantly among individuals living under poor hygienic conditions

The treponema are slender spiral organisms which are readily distinguishable on morphologic grounds from the *Borrelia* and the *Leptospira* the morphologic characteristics will be described under *Treponema pallidum* which is the type species of this genera. A good working classification is the following, although this arrangement has no standing in more formal taxonomic circles

### 1 Human Pathogens Primarily

A *T. pallidum* The causative agent of syphilis

B *T. pertenue* The causative agent of yaws

C *T. carateum* The causative agent of pinta

D Treponemes that cause other human treponematoses such as bejel and other nonvenereal syndromes

### 2 Animal Pathogens Primarily

*T. cuniculi* The causative agent of rabbit syphilis

3 Human or Animal Saprophytes Primarily Included in this group are spirochetes showing the general morphology of treponemes occurring in the oral cavity about the gum margins and about the anus and in fecal material. The designations *T. microdentium* and *T. macrodentium* depending on their size have been applied to these organisms. In contradistinction to those in categories 1 and 2 above these organisms can be cultivated on artificial media

and a number of strains so cultivated have been given distinguishing names such as the Reiter the Noguchi the Kazan and the Nichols strains

Since syphilis and its causative organism, *T. pallidum* have been the most extensively studied the fundamental biology of this disease will be described at some length. In considering the other treponemal syndromes particular attention will be directed to pointing out either differences between them and syphilis or limitations in our knowledge of that particular entity

The question of the biologic relationship within the *Treponema* group of spirochetes has been studied by Turner and his associates (Turner and Hollander, 1957) among others and will be summarized briefly in the final section of *Treponema* and the Treponematoses

## TREPONEMA PALLIDUM AND SYPHILIS

### HISTORY

Syphilis became epidemic in western Europe in 1492 and the immediately succeeding years. It is generally believed to have been acquired by Columbus' crew in the West Indies and brought by them to Europe but only meager evidence supports this hypothesis. It appears more likely that syphilis and related treponematoses were endemic in Africa and Europe centuries before and reached epidemic proportions during the mass movements of armies and populations at the end of the 15th and the beginning of the 16th centuries. The extraordinary virulence of the disease at that time appears clearly in some of the early descriptions. It is not known whether the present relatively mild course of the disease in its early stages reflects a change in the organism or a gradual development of resistance in the human host. The causative organism was identified in 1905 when Schaudinn and Hoffman demonstrated its presence in the primary lesion and in the adjacent lymph glands of syphilitic patients. Noguchi and Moore subsequently found the organisms in the cerebral cortex of patients dying with general paresis thus they proved that syndrome to



micron and the distance between them about 1 micron. In this medium the organism has a fairly rapid rotary motion with little or no translation and while difficult to describe both its morphology and its type of movement are distinctive and serve to differentiate the treponema from the borrelia and the leptospira.

However in a more viscid medium such as the mucoid material of the early syphilitic lesion the organism may have a more elongated appearance as though a coiled spring were overstretched and its motion may be writhing undulating and snakelike in character with considerable movement of translation. Both morphology and motility can be altered artificially by changing the density of the medium.

As demonstrated by electron microscopy *T. pallidum* in common with most spiral microorganisms has an axial filament about which the specially shaped protoplasm is wound and the protoplasm is encased in a thin periplast. Winding around the protoplasm probably within the periplast are a number of fibrils which usually run the entire length of the structure (Bradfield and Cater 1952 Ryter and Pilot 1963 Swan 1955 Molbert 1956). Some investigators have demonstrated flagellalike tufts at the ends or the sides of treponemes (Wile and Kearney 1943 Mudd Polevitzky and Anderson 1943) but studies of cultivable spirochetes suggest that these flagella may be the above mentioned fibrils from treponemes in process of degeneration (Listgarten Loesche and Socransky 1963).

The presence of capsular material probably mucoid in character has been postulated largely on the basis of indirect evidence rather than by visualization (Swan, 1955 Turner and Hollander 1957). A mucopolysaccharide splitting enzyme lysozyme has been found to accelerate immobilization of *T. pallidum* by specific immune serum (Metzger Hardy and Nell 1961).

Treponemes stain readily with many different dyes but because the mass of protoplasm is so slight contrast is not achieved therefore from a practical point of view staining methods are unsatisfactory (Campbell and Rosahn 1950). The silver staining method of Levaditi with its many modifica-

FIG 1 (Top) Congenital syphilis of the lung. *Treponema pallidum* demonstrated by Levaditi's method (Smith L W and Gault E S 1942 Essentials of Pathology ed 2 New York Appleton)

FIG 2 (Bottom) *T. pertenue* of the skin secondary yaw. Oil immersion photomicrograph stained by Levaditi's method. The organisms appear as irregularly twisted spirals lacking the tight corkscrew appearance of the *Treponema pallidum* (Smith L W and Gault E S 1942 Essentials of Pathology ed 2 New York Appleton)

be as has long been suspected a late manifestation of syphilitic infection.

#### CHARACTERISTICS OF THE TREPONEME

**Morphology** *Treponema pallidum* is a fine spiral organism measuring 5 to 20 microns in length and about 0.1 to 0.2 micron in thickness. It is difficult to see in the ordinary light microscope hence the derivation of its present name—a pale fine thread. When suspended in serum the spirals are regular and angular from 4 to 14 in number with the depths of the spirals being from 0.5 to 1

tions are based on the deposition of metallic silver on the surface of the treponeme thereby increasing the contrast. Due to its regular deposition of silver in fixed tissue sections this stain gives variable and unpredictable results.

**Cultivation** *T. pallidum* and other pathogenic species of treponemes have not been grown *in vitro* despite isolated reports from time to time of successful cultivation. In direct evidence suggests that the pathogenic treponemes are obligatory anaerobes. Attempts to grow the pathogenic organism in fertile eggs or in tissue culture have failed (See Cultivable Treponemes).

**Resistance to Physical and Chemical Agents** The survival time of *T. pallidum* *in vitro* is affected by a number of factors. Suspensions of organisms adequately freed of serum and tissue extractives and resuspended under anaerobic conditions in a fluid containing crystallized serum albumin dissolved CO either cysteine or glutathione pyruvic acid and a serum ultrafiltrate factor, may remain actively motile for 4 to 7 days at 25° C and for 1 to 2 days at 37° C (Nelson 1948, Rice and Nelson, 1951). Although supplementation with a number of additional factors further prolongs survival, there has

been no evidence of multiplication (Weber 1960).

When frozen at the temperature of dry ice (approximately -70° C) a significant proportion of the organisms remains motile and infectious for years (Turner and Fleming 1939, Turner and Hollander, 1957). The proportion of treponemes that survive the freezing and thawing process is considerably enhanced by the addition of 15 per cent glycerol to the suspending medium (Hollander and Nell, 1954). In plasma whole blood or serum stored at refrigerator temperatures the organisms remain viable for 24 hours but not for 48 (Ravitch and Chambers 1942), a fact of importance in relation to the problem of transfusion syphilis. The organisms do not survive desiccation by freezing and drying techniques customarily employed in the preservation of viruses. However, Hampp (1951) reported survival for as long as 66 days in desiccated minced testicular syphilomas from rabbits. In the tissues after death, the treponemes may remain infectious for 1 to 5 days. In infected animals *T. pallidum* apparently may be killed by elevating the body temperature to 41.5 to 42° C and the treponemocidal action of both the arsenicals and penicillin *in vivo* is enhanced at



FIG. 3 (Left) Kazan strain of cultured spirochete. Multispirochetal cyst showing development of spirochetes from individual granules. (Right) Nichols strain of cultured spirochete. Late stage in emergence from unispirochetal cyst (Delamater E. D. et al. Am. J. Syph. 35: 164-216).

those higher temperatures Whether the demonstrated therapeutic action of malaria in cases of neurosyphilis is due solely to the treponemicidal action of the higher temperatures whether the body's natural defense mechanisms are enhanced at those higher temperatures and whether antibodies are elaborated in the course of malarial infection which cross react with *T pallidum* remain open questions

The organisms are immobilized rapidly by trivalent arsenicals bismuth and mercurials There is reason to believe that these compounds are treponemicidal by virtue of their common affinity for -SH groups in the organism and probably because they block essential -SH groups in enzyme proteins vital to the cellular economy

Penicillin is directly treponemicidal both for the pathogenic *T pallidum* and for the cultivated saprophytes *T pallidum* is one of the most sensitive organisms yet studied in terms of the minimal effective concentrations of penicillin both in vivo and in vitro Paradoxically it is also one of the most resistant organisms in terms of the rate of the treponemicidal effect (Eagle Fleischman and Musselman 1950)

**Cultivable Treponemes** Oral spirochetes were first cultivated on artificial media by Muhlens and Hartman in 1906 and by numerous investigators since that period (see review of literature in Hardy Lee and Nell 1963a) Many of these organisms may be classified morphologically as treponemes Cultivable treponemes are consistently nonpathogenic for experimental animals and presumably for man except for surface infection of mucous membranes They are generally regarded as being not closely related to pathogenic treponemes However they do possess certain antigenic fractions in common with virulent *T pallidum* (D'Alessandro and Dardanoni 1953)

The Reiter strain has been especially well studied largely in the hope that leads would be obtained concerning cultivation of virulent *T pallidum* although in the latter connection the results thus far have been disappointing It is clear too that requirements differ somewhat from one species of cultivable spirochete to another

Good growth of the Reiter strain is ob-

tained in anaerobic broth or thioglycollate media provided that serum is added more detailed requirements have been delineated by Steinman and Eagle (1950) and Hardy Lee and Nell (1963a) among others The latter investigators have also reported the growth of numerous strains on solid media and find consistent differences in colonial morphology which may have taxonomic significance Using media with low agar concentration (0.7%) both surface and deep colonies were observed and stable colonial variants were produced Some strains were hemolytic In certain types of colonies the spirochetes presented variable and often bizarre forms some of which were not spiral while in other types of colonies the spirochetes commonly presented the characteristic spiral form observed in broth cultures

Many cultivable spirochetes have been isolated as mixed cultures Hardy Lee and Nell (1963b) found that certain mouth spirochetes would grow on artificial media only in the presence of contaminating bacteria isolated usually from the oral cavity of the same person Further a filtrate of some of these bacteria produced a similar enhancing effect

Various developmental phases in the growth of the Reiter and other nonpathogenic spirochetes have been observed (Gelperin 1949 Hampp 1951 DeLamater Haanes Wiggall and Pillsbury 1951) Gelperin found that when this organism is maintained in culture for 2 or 3 weeks under adverse conditions balloonlike transparent spheres which contain small round translucent bodies appear at one end of nonmotile spirochetes It has been suggested that these balloons represent an encystment stage but Hardy and Nell (1961) observed that these changes could be induced by alteration of the osmotic pressure of the media and tended to view the spheres as simply degenerative forms of the spirochete

#### HOST RANGE AND PATHOGENESIS

*T pallidum* is the etiologic agent of syphilis and in nature is confined to its human host It has proved to be infectious for rabbits and monkeys in which it causes infections which resemble the human disease in

tions is based on the deposition of metallic silver on the surface of the treponeme, thereby increasing the contrast. Due to irregular deposition of silver in fixed tissue sections this stain gives variable and unpredictable results.

**Cultivation** *T. pallidum* and other pathogenic species of treponemes have not been grown in vitro despite isolated reports from time to time of successful cultivation. In direct evidence suggests that the pathogenic treponemes are obligatory anaerobes. Attempts to grow the pathogenic organism in fertile eggs or in tissue culture have failed (See Cultivable Treponemes).

**Resistance to Physical and Chemical Agents** The survival time of *T. pallidum* in vitro is affected by a number of factors. Suspensions of organisms adequately freed of serum and tissue extractives and resuspended under anaerobic conditions in a fluid containing crystallized serum albumin dissolved CO either cysteine or glutathione pyruvic acid and a serum ultrafiltrate factor may remain actively motile for 4 to 7 days at 25° C and for 1 to 2 days at 37° C (Nelson 1948; Rice and Nelson, 1951). Although supplementation with a number of additional factors further prolongs survival, there has

been no evidence of multiplication (Weber 1960).

When frozen at the temperature of dry ice (approximately -70° C) a significant proportion of the organisms remains motile and infectious for years (Turner and Fleming 1939; Turner and Hollander 1957). The proportion of treponemes that survive the freezing and thawing process is considerably enhanced by the addition of 15 per cent glycerol to the suspending medium (Hollander and Nell 1954). In plasma, whole blood or serum stored at refrigerator temperatures the organisms remain viable for 24 hours but not for 48 (Ravitch and Chambers 1942), a fact of importance in relation to the problem of transfusion syphilis. The organisms do not survive desiccation by freezing and drying techniques customarily employed in the preservation of viruses. However, Hampp (1951) reported survival for as long as 66 days in desiccated minced testicular syphilomas from rabbits. In the tissues after death the treponemes may remain infectious for 1 to 5 days. In infected animals *T. pallidum* apparently may be killed by elevating the body temperature to 41.5° to 42° C and the treponemucidal action of both the arsenicals and penicillin in vivo is enhanced in



FIG 3 (Left) Kazan strain of cultured spirochete. Multispirochetal cyst showing development of spirochetes from individual granules. (Right) Nichols strain of cultured spirochete. Late stage in emergence from unispirochetal cyst (Delamater E D, et al. Am J Syph 35:164-216).

proportion to the number of organisms demonstrable either by darkfield examination or by animal inoculation strongly suggesting that the tissues have become sensitized to the products of the organisms

In rabbits the disease in its initial stage differs in no important respect from the disease in man. Animals may be infected via various routes including the eye, the skin, the testis or the scrotum, and intravenously. One spirochete (as statistically determined) inoculated intratesticularly is infectious and 4 organisms inoculated intradermally cause infection in half the animals (Magnuson, Eagle and Fleischman 1948). The time required for the development of a macroscopic inflammatory lesion at the site of inoculation varies with the size of the inoculum with an average linear decrement of 4 days for each 10-fold increase in the number of spirochetes inoculated in the range 1 to 1 million. Inoculation of 500 organisms intradermally yields an incubation period of approximately 17 days. This suggests a division time *in vivo* of approximately 30 hours (Magnuson, Eagle and Fleischman 1948; Cumberland and Turner 1949; Hollander, Turner and Neil 1952). The slow rate at which the organisms multiply *in vivo* in both man and rabbit is further indicated by the months which may elapse between the completion of inadequate treatment for early syphilis and the appearance of relapsing lesions.

There are conflicting reports concerning the speed with which the organism leaves the site of inoculation and invades the regional lymph nodes and the circulation in the experimental infection, but most observations place the time as a matter of minutes or hours. The rate of migration probably varies with the animal species, the particular tissue involved, its vascularity and lymphatic drainage and the degree of tissue damage incidental to the inoculation.

The rabbit infection differs from that of man in several important respects. In man a certain proportion of the cases apparently undergoes spontaneous cure in a biologic sense and the lymph nodes even in untreated patients remain infectious in only a small number of instances. However, the rabbit apparently remains infected for the

rest of its natural life. Organisms persist in lymph nodes, the spleen and bone marrow and can be demonstrated by inoculating those tissues into normal animals. Frazier and his co-workers have shown that transient spirochetemia occurs in infected rabbits for a number of years after all overt signs of infection have disappeared—and possibly at intervals throughout the animal's life (Frazier, Bensen and Keuper 1950, 1952). In rabbits, once the early stages of the disease have healed, there is only a minor microscopic inflammatory reaction even in tissues known to harbor the organisms. Although skin, bone and the eyes may be involved in the early inflammatory process, late visceral manifestations (heart, liver and central nervous system) have been described only rarely.

Monkeys and chimpanzees are susceptible to inoculation with *T. pallidum* (Metchnikoff and Roux 1903). The early course of the disease parallels that in man and in the rabbit, but it is not known whether the animals develop late complications resembling those seen in the human infection. Mice and rats were shown by Kolle and Schlossberger (1926) to harbor the organisms for long periods without developing gross lesions, and a variety of rodents have been found to undergo a similar asymptomatic infection (Bessemans and de Moor 1939; Wile and Johnson 1945). A small proportion of infected hamsters and guinea pigs develops a lesion at the site of inoculation of *T. pallidum* (Turner and Hollander 1957).

Evolution of the experimental disease is influenced by a number of factors aside from those associated with specific immunity. Among the most important of these so-called nonspecific factors are trauma, temperature and certain hormonal influences.

In both experimental and human infections *T. pallidum* has been shown to have a special predilection for inflamed or traumatized areas; the underlying mechanisms involved are not understood (Chesney, Turner and Halley 1928).

There is considerable indirect evidence that in rabbits *T. pallidum* multiplies best at a temperature approximating 35°C rather than at body temperature, which is normally 38°C or slightly higher. In rabbits



many respects but with important differences. In mice and many other rodents, the organisms multiply only poorly without producing a significant tissue reaction but are demonstrable by subinoculation into rabbits. No mammalian species has been found to be wholly resistant to infection with *T pallidum*.

The human infection is usually transmitted by sexual contact. In men the organisms are often present in lesions on the penis but they may originate anywhere in the genito-urinary tract and be discharged with the seminal fluid. In women organisms may derive from mucocutaneous perineal lesions, cervical lesions or mucous patches on the vaginal wall. In approximately 10 per cent of cases the infection may be extragenital, usually caused by a chancre or a mucous patch on the lip or the tonsil. It is doubtful that the organisms can penetrate the intact skin; however, it is possible that they can penetrate the thinner epidermal layer of the mucous membranes and it is probable that in many persons they gain access through a break, perhaps only microscopic, in the epidermal layer. Although some of the organisms move away from the site of inoculation to reach the adjacent lymph nodes and thence cause a systemic infection within a period of hours to days, most apparently remain at the site of infection.

Specific tissue changes characterized by accumulations of mononuclear cells around blood vessels and at foci of treponemes begin within 48 hours after injection of treponemes (Ferris and Turner 1938). In the experimental infection the rapidity with which these tissue changes develop is a direct function of the number of treponemes in the original inoculum (Cumberland and Turner 1949), and this is probably also true of the human infection. Eventually a characteristic inflammatory response known as the primary lesion or chancre becomes clinically recognizable within 10 to 60 days. This lesion—wherever it is located—is firm and often quite hard due to the presence of intense cellular infiltration and mucoid and serum accumulations in connective tissue cells; hence the old clinical designation, hard chancre, to distinguish it from lesions due to certain bacterial infections—especially *B*

*ducreyi*, which gives rise to chancroid or so-called soft chancre.

An almost constant accompaniment of the initial lesion of syphilis and an important diagnostic sign is significant enlargement of the lymph node draining the local area. This 'satellite bubo' is characteristically firm and painless. From 2 to 12 weeks later a generalized skin rash appears in most patients, with treponemes demonstrable in the lesions. This rash exhibits lesions of varying size, morphology and distribution and may be so slight and evanescent as to go unnoticed by the infected individual. When syphilis was first recognized around the turn of the 16th century this rash was so extensive and severe that it received the appellation of the Great Pox, as distinguished from smallpox, and even within the present generation an occasional case of this nature has been observed.

In this secondary stage syphilitic lesions may involve the mucous membranes, the eyes, the bones and the joints and the central nervous system, reflecting generalized dissemination of organisms and their multiplication at countless foci.

The evolution and the extent of the generalized lesions represent an interplay between host and parasite; specific antibodies begin to develop and the immunity mechanism of the host comes into play. Even in the absence of specific treatment the generalized lesions usually heal and the disease enters a stage of clinical latency.

The subsequent course of the disease is extraordinarily varied. Presumably in most untreated persons foci of treponemes remain although the studies of Bruusgaard (1929), Gjestland (1955), Clark and Danbolt (1955) and others indicate that approximately 25 per cent of infected persons proceed to apparent spontaneous biologic cure and an equal proportion never again have symptoms referable to the disease even without specific treatment. Approximately half of those infected develop late complications, varying in severity and prognosis from the relatively benign gummas of the skin and the bone to the prognostically serious cardiovascular or central nervous system involvement. In the late skin lesions the intensity of the cellular reaction is out of all

immunity is interrupted and remains feeble. On the other hand when curative treatment is delayed until the third month immunity to challenge inoculation is maintained at a high level for months and even years.

**Serum Antibodies** Concomitant with the early evolution of the initial syphilitic lesion the experimental animal (and man too) develops serum antibodies which may be regarded as specific for treponemal infections although some qualification of this statement will appear below. These antibodies are of several kinds and in the light of limited knowledge appear to be induced by antigenic stimuli provided by the infecting treponeme. Serum antibodies in syphilis and the serologic tests by which these antibodies are demonstrated can be divided from a biologic as well as a historical standpoint into 2 large groups which may be designated for lack of better terms Wassermann antibody and treponemal antibody.

**Wassermann Antibody** In 1906 Wassermann, Neisser and Bruck using complement fixation techniques developed by Bordet and Gengou (1901) discovered what has become known as Wassermann antibody. Since fetal liver rich in *T. pallidum* was the first antigen used in the Wassermann test the complement fixing antibody which is commonly present in high titers in patients with early syphilis was regarded as an antibody specific for that organism. However soon it was discovered that this antibody could just as readily be demonstrated by using normal liver as antigen and later it was demonstrated that alcoholic extracts of a wide variety of human or animal tissue could serve as the antigen in the Wassermann test. The antigen commonly used at present is a highly purified lipid extract of beef heart the so-called cardiolipin to which lecithin and cholesterol have been added (Pangborn 1945).

Much speculation and investigative work have been devoted to the question of whether this antibody regularly present in most human beings and animals which have had a treponemal disease is a true antibody to a component of the treponemal organisms or whether it represents a response to some abnormal tissue lipid component developed during the course of treponemal infection.

No attempt will be made here to summarize the evidence bearing on this question suffice it to say that the author inclines to the first point of view while equally well informed colleagues favor the second.

At any rate for 35 years tests based on the demonstration of Wasserman antibody (or reagin as it is sometimes called) constituted the principal laboratory aid to the clinician in the diagnosis of syphilis and related diseases and indeed so they remain today. During that period a large number of laboratory tests were developed for the serologic diagnosis of syphilis each usually being denoted by the name of the originator. In general two kinds of tests were devised one being based on the principle of complement fixation as indicated above and another utilizing the principle of aggregation of particles in the presence of specific antibody or flocculation as it is generally known. Originally this latter technique was developed by Michaelis (1907).

Thus in common use today are complement fixation tests designated Boerner, Lukens, Eagle, Kolmer, Wassermann and flocculation tests known as Davies, Eagle, Hinton, Kahn, Kline, Meinicke, Muller, Mazzoni, Rein, Bossak, VDRL and others. (It is historically ironic that the names of Bordet and Gengou and of Michaelis have been almost wholly lost in these relationships.) Since these tests represent modifications of the same basic principle and detect the same antibody it has become the practice in many places to include them all under the designation serologic tests for syphilis or STS for short.

However in the past few years there has been a growing awareness that some individuals who never have had syphilis or any other treponemal disease nevertheless have Wassermann antibody in significant amounts in their serum as demonstrated by positive complement fixation or flocculation tests for syphilis. Such transient biologic false positive serologic tests for syphilis are not uncommon during the course of many acute illnesses or immediately following certain vaccination procedures. More confusing from both a clinical and a biologic standpoint are individuals who carry significant amounts of Wassermann antibody in their

the incubation period of the initial lesion following inoculation of *T pallidum* into the shaved skin is shorter and the resulting lesions are much larger when the animal is maintained at a cool environmental temperature (18 to 21 °C) than at a warm temperature (29 to 31 °C) at the latter temperature lesions develop poorly or not at all. These differences apparently are not due to changes in the internal body temperature of the animal. The same phenomenon is observed in hamsters. In both these species there are indications that localization of syphilitic lesions may be influenced considerably by local tissue temperature in rabbits generalized lesions of skin and bone occur principally on the extremities and about the nose the ears and the tail where the local temperature may be 1 to 3 ° lower than in internal body temperature (Bessemans, 1938; Hollander and Turner 1954).

Hormonal factors likewise have been shown to be influential in experimental infections of the rabbit. Estrogens tend to make the disease milder and androgens more extensive (Kemp Shaw and Fitzgerald 1939; Hu 1939). However the most dramatic effect is produced by the administration of cortisone. Given during the early phases of the disease cortisone in doses of 3 to 6 mg per Kg of body weight per day causes the syphiloma to become softer and more mucoid and to contain tremendous numbers of motile treponemes. Withdrawal of cortisone usually results in a rebound phenomenon in which the syphilitic lesions increase rapidly in number and size to produce extensive disease. These changes appear to be due primarily not to the effect of cortisone on the production of antibody but to some alteration in the local tissue-parasite relationship. It is postulated that the treponeme itself is the source of the great overproduction of mucoid material which has been identified as being mainly hyaluronic acid (Turner and Hollander 1952). To what extent these phenomena occur in human infection is not known.

#### IMMUNITY PHENOMENA IN SYPHILIS

Once a patient has been through the stages of early syphilis he is unlikely again to have primary or secondary syphilis even

in the face of repeated exposure to infection. Reinfection in syphilis may occur, but it is usually symptomless except in patients who were given specific treatment in the early stages of the first infection. Clinical and experimental observations indicate that these results can be explained on an immunologic basis.

For many years it was believed that immunity in syphilis because of its slow development and its limited effectiveness was qualitatively different from the immunity mechanisms involved in most other infectious processes. The extensive studies of Chesney, Uhlenhuth, Tanu, Magnuson, Turner, Nelson and Hardy and their respective co-workers provide a body of evidence supporting the conclusion that immunity in syphilis is qualitatively similar to that in most other infections although to be sure knowledge in many areas is deficient. Especially does the whole phenomenon of latency in treponemal infection—and indeed in many other infections—remain obscure as to its basic mechanism.

**Host Reaction.** In experimental syphilis in the rabbit beginning resistance to a second infection becomes evident about 3 weeks after the appearance of the initial lesion although the rapidity of development and the degree of immunity is clearly related to the number of treponemes in the host (and probably the antigenic mass) as manifested by the number and the extent of the initial lesions. The evolution of the immune process may be interrupted at any time by penicillin treatment of the animal. Asymptomatic syphilitic infection is not capable of inducing immunity but once immunity is fully developed latent infection may play a role in its maintenance (Magnuson, Thompson and Rosenau 1950; Hollander, Turner and Nell 1952).

In the normal evolution of the experimental disease resistance to challenge inoculation reaches its height 2 to 3 months after the beginning of the first infection. In the absence of specific treatment it is then maintained at a high level for the remainder of the animal's life. Contrary to the course of immunologic events in untreated syphilis when curative treatment is given early during the first infection the development of

1955) and particulate adhesion of the Rick enberg type (Lamanna and Hollander 1956) None of these technics has been subjected to sufficient clinical evaluation to permit assessment of their clinical or biologic merit although in general the results of these tests show a close parallelism with those of the treponemal immobilization test How ever there are indications as pointed out below that these tests may not be measuring the same antibody even though ordinarily the antibodies in question may occur together in nature

More recently fluorescent antibody tech nics utilizing methods originally developed by Coons and his co-workers (Coons and Kaplan 1950 Coons 1954 1960) have been applied as a diagnostic aid in syphilis While their clinical role has not yet been clearly evaluated these so-called FTA tests appear to have some promise *T pallidum* harvested from rabbits testes used fresh or from the frozen state or the frozen and dried state are customarily employed as antigen After appropriate fixing the human serum to be tested is brought into contact with the antigen followed by fluorescein labeled anti body to human serum Results of the clinical use of the test have been reported by Deacon and his associates and by Neilson and Idsoe among others (Deacon and Freeman 1960 Neilson II A and Idsoe O 1963) Considerable cross reactions between pathogenic *T pallidum* and the cultivable varieties have been reported (Deacon and Hunter 1962) which may limit the value of this test in diagnostic serology

**Antigenic Fractions of Treponemes** Reflecting a somewhat different approach application of modern immunochemical methods to the study of fractions of trepo nemes has revealed the antigenic complexity of these organisms it is probable that knowl edge in this area will be extended considerably in the next few years For example Hardy and Nell (1957) working with ag glutination technics have described both a heat labile and a heat stable fraction of path ogenic treponemes each of which is capable of inducing its own specific antibody which appears to differ in specificity from the other and from both immobilizing and Wassermann antibody Likewise Portnoy and Magnuson

(1955) have prepared by desoxycholate ex traction fractions of virulent *T pallidum* which react specifically with syphilitic serum The antibody thus detected appears to par allel fairly closely the occurrence both of immobilizing and of agglutinating antibody but its exact relationship to these has not been determined Still another area of in vestigation which may prove to be of prac tical as well as theoretical value has been pursued by D Alessandro and Dardanoni (1953) These investigators have found 4 serologically active components of the non pathogenic Reiter cultivable treponeme One of the components was considered to be a soluble protein and this fraction has been used in the Reiter Protein Complement Fix ation Test (RPCF) However it appears that by current methods of extraction various batches of antigen vary in their chemical and antigenic composition (Cannefax 1963) and as pointed out by DeBrujn (1962) and Bekker (1962) there are inherent limitations in the use of this test as indeed in the use of all serologic tests for syphilis

However it should be noted that although the repeated injection of rabbits with whole killed *T pallidum* or one of its fractions and with large quantities of the Reiter cultivable treponeme or one of its fractions may give rise to a variety of antibodies including Was sermann antibody depending on how the treponeme suspension has been treated it has not yet been possible to induce the de velopment of treponemal immobilizing anti bodies except in very low titer This leads to the speculation that both specific immunity and immobilizing antibody are induced by some highly labile antigenic component or components of pathogenic treponemes a fraction possibly associated with the mucoid slime layer of the organism

Suspensions of killed washed and concen trated *T pallidum* have also been used in an intradermal test after the fashion of in berculim (Marshak and Rothman 1951 Csonka, 1955) Positive tests are observed most commonly in patients with late syphilis but neither the immunologic nor the clinical significance of these observations has been demonstrated conclusively

**Antibodies in Other Tissues** Antibodies in syphilis are like other antibodies associ

serum over periods of months or years and yet according to convincing evidence never have had a treponemal infection. Some evidence has been adduced by Moore and Mohr (1952) that the presence of such antibody may indicate the existence of one of the collagen diseases in either an overt or an asymptomatic form. The possibility that current infection with spirochetes of the Reiter group may produce such antibodies has never been definitively explored (However see Deacon and Hunter 1962).

**Treponemal Antibodies** When syphilitic serum is mixed with suspensions of viable *T. pallidum* and these mixtures are then inoculated into rabbits the production of lesions is either delayed or prevented (Tanu and Ogiuti 1936 Turner 1939 Turner *et al* 1948). Further when tissue containing *T. pallidum* is implanted into the skin of an immune rabbit there is progressive death of the organisms in the implant; treponemes are not demonstrable in the adjacent lymph nodes and the implant loses its infectivity after 2 days. However, in normal animals the treponemes readily penetrate into the lymphatics to cause generalized infection and remain viable in the implant for at least 2 weeks (Tanu and Asikawa 1937 Reynolds 1941).

In 1949 Nelson and Mayer produced convincing evidence of the existence in human beings and animals with syphilis of an antibody that reacts specifically with *T. pallidum* and closely related treponemes and is separate and distinct from Wassermann antibody. Demonstration of this antibody was accomplished through immobilization of *T. pallidum* in the presence of complement and has since become known as the Treponemal Immobilization Test or TPI test. Its discovery was facilitated by the earlier development by Nelson (see p. 576) of methods for the prolonged maintenance of pathogenic treponemes *in vitro*. Simple in principle but difficult of execution, the TPI test utilizes a concentrated suspension of motile *T. pallidum* extracted from syphilomas of rabbits, testes, the human or animal serum to be tested and fresh guinea pig serum containing complement. An appropriate mixture of these materials is incubated anaerobically for 18 hours and the test is read by determining

under the darkfield microscope the proportion of treponemes which have been immobilized (i.e. which have lost motility and presumably, have been killed) as contrasted with the proportion still motile in tubes containing known normal serum. Syphilitic serum repeatedly absorbed with cardiolipin antigen until it no longer contains demonstrable Wassermann antibody will continue to immobilize treponemes in essentially undiminished titer.

Although technical difficulties have limited the wide use of the TPI test in practice, a large number of clinical and laboratory studies have demonstrated its high degree of reliability in reflecting the presence or the absence of prior infection with *T. pallidum* or closely related treponemes.

During the course of the natural infection in man and the experimental infection in rabbits immobilizing antibody along with Wassermann antibody can be detected in the blood serum about 1 to 3 weeks after the appearance of the primary syphilitic lesion. The titer of immobilizing antibody continues to rise over the next few weeks or months and remains at a high level in untreated persons and animals for many years and probably for life. There are some data suggesting that immobilizing antibody tends roughly to parallel immunity to reinfection in syphilis but the evidence on this point is by no means conclusive. However it is clear that the titer of Wassermann antibody at least in the experimental animal does not parallel the immune state but rather is correlated with the number and the extent of active lesions. For example rabbits 8 months after initial infection commonly show no evidence of active disease and Wassermann antibody is low in titer or undetectable yet these same animals almost invariably show a high degree of immunity to challenge in oculation and immobilizing antibodies in high titer.

Demonstration of immobilizing antibody stimulated the application of other techniques for the detection of this or related antibodies. Among such techniques described have been immune adherence (Nelson 1953), treponemal agglutination (McLeod and Magnuson, 1953; Hardy and Nell 1955), complement fixation (Portnoy and Magnuson

specimens for evidence of treponemal disease

At the present time tests for treponemal antibody—TPI agglutination complement fixation—are of greatest practical value as an aid in identifying patients with biologic false positive tests for Wassermann antibody. Persons who show positive tests for Wassermann antibody in the absence of clinical or epidemiologic evidence suggesting syphilis should have their serum tested for the presence of treponemal antibody before a diagnosis of syphilis or other treponemal disease is established.

Serologic tests have been used traditionally as a guide to therapy in syphilis and related diseases but their interpretation is fraught with difficulty. It is a moot question whether antibody production continues for long after the antigenic stimulus provided by the treponeme has been eliminated. Data from experimental animals with well-established infections indicate that following curative treatment Wassermann antibody declines fairly rapidly but treponemal antibody remains present for long periods although declining gradually in titer.

There is some evidence suggesting that the same phenomena occur in human beings on an extended time scale but the data are not conclusive. Following successful treatment of early syphilis both Wassermann antibody and treponemal antibody decline over a period of months; the former more rapidly than the latter so that eventually most of such patients show negative serologic tests. In more long-standing cases the decline in both types of antibody is much more gradual. In many patients tests for Wassermann antibody eventually become negative whereas in most individuals tests for treponemal antibody remain positive. It can be argued that the persistence of these antibodies reflects persistence of infection but clinical and immunologic evidence does not indicate that this is necessarily true. There is much indirect evidence suggesting that, just as tetanus toxoid induces specific antibodies that persist for many years, both Wassermann and treponemal antibody also may persist for many years after elimination of all treponemes by penicillin therapy.

Therefore in the present state of our knowledge it would be unwise to assume that individuals who have received what is regarded as adequate treatment for syphilis and still show the presence of these antibodies are still infected. Perhaps the best serologic guide to adequate therapy is evidence of some decline in titer of these various antibodies recognizing that such a decline may be detectable only over a period of years and not necessarily over a period of weeks or months.

**Spinal Fluid Tests** Under normal circumstances the serum antibody does not pass into the spinal fluid even in syphilitic patients with a high serum titer. In patients with central nervous system syphilis the antibody appears in the cerebrospinal fluid either because of damage to the blood-brain barrier or through local elaboration. Therefore the presence of a positive test for Wassermann or treponemal antibody in the spinal fluid is usually indicative of involvement of the central nervous system. The antibody titer of the fluid coupled with its cell content and protein content and their response to antisyphilitic treatment provide information of diagnostic and prognostic value. Tests for treponemal antibody have had less thorough clinical evaluation than have tests for Wassermann antibody.

## TREATMENT

Until the discovery and the development of penicillin the arsenicals, notably arsphenamine and its derivatives in conjunction with bismuth, were the drugs of choice in the treatment of syphilis. Now these have been entirely superseded by penicillin which has been shown to be far more active as a treponemicidal agent as well as much less toxic for the patient.

Penicillin was first shown to be effective against *T. pallidum* by Mahoney, Arnold and Harris (1943); its use has revolutionized the therapy of syphilis and other treponemal diseases. Instead of months and often years of therapy with arsenicals and heavy metals, all of which were inherently toxic to the patient, therapy is now accomplished in most patients within a period of 2 weeks, although much longer periods of observation are desirable.

ated with the globulin fraction of serum and may be found wherever serum globulins abound. For example, such antibodies enter the fetal circulation and may be found in cord blood and in the infant for a number of months after birth. These antibodies may also be found in the cerebrospinal fluid of syphilitic patients particularly if the blood-brain barrier is sufficiently altered to permit easy passage of serum globulins. Indirect evidence suggests that active syphilitic disease of the central nervous system may also induce the local formation of these antibodies.

### DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of syphilis in its numerous manifestations rests on (1) clinical observation, (2) the demonstration of *T. pallidum* usually by darkfield examination of the exudate from an open or abraded primary or secondary lesion, and (3) serologic changes in the blood and the spinal fluid.

The diagnostic use of the darkfield examination is complicated by the fact that exudates from nonsyphilitic lesions may contain spiral organisms. Although most of these can be differentiated readily from *T. pallidum* by their larger size, coarser spirals, and different type of motility, a few may be difficult to distinguish with certainty. On the other hand, a negative darkfield does not necessarily exclude syphilitic infection. In the late stages of the disease, the number of spirochetes is extraordinarily small in relation to the degree of the inflammatory reaction, and the demonstration of treponemes, whether by staining, darkfield examination, or even animal inoculation, is rarely successful. Even in the early lesions, failure to detect the organisms in the exudate does not exclude their presence in large numbers. Thus, if a drop measuring 0.01 ml is placed under a coverslip 22 mm square and examined at a magnification of 900 $\times$ , each field represents approximately  $10^{-6}$  ml of fluid. The presence of 1 organism per field then implies the presence of  $10^6$  organisms per ml, but conversely, the absence of visible treponemes in even 100 microscopic fields is compatible with the presence of as many as 10,000 treponemes per ml of fluid. Fortunately, the number of organisms in

the exudate of early lesions is usually so large that 1 or 2 preparations suffice to detect them, when few in numbers the organisms usually can be found by repeated darkfield examinations of the exudate over a period of several days, avoiding the use of local antiseptics.

Serologic tests constitute the most frequently used method by which a diagnosis of syphilis is made or confirmed. Some of the problems and the limitations in the serologic diagnosis of syphilis and related diseases have been indicated in the foregoing section. By and large, these tests when used singly or in combination do provide the clinician with reliable and valuable diagnostic evidence; however, their use as guides in the therapeutic management of the patient have greater limitations.

During the incubation period of syphilis and for the first 1 to 3 weeks after development of the chancre or the initial lesion, all serologic tests are commonly negative. Thenceforth, however, with extremely few exceptions, patients with clinically overt syphilitic disease show positive serologic tests for syphilis, both those that detect Wassermann antibody and those that show the presence of so-called specific treponemal antibody.

Patients with latent syphilis, i.e., no physical signs of the disease, as a rule also have positive serologic tests; indeed, in the final analysis, a diagnosis of latent syphilis is based solely on such tests. However, it is known that a small proportion of patients may have negative tests for Wassermann antibody but positive tests for treponemal antibody; it is in such cases that the TPI and related tests are valuable. Because of the technical difficulties inherent in the TPI test, it is not feasible at the present time to test for treponemal antibody; all blood specimens which show a negative test for Wassermann antibody. In practice, therefore, it is customary to test for treponemal antibody specimens from patients in whom the presence of syphilis is suspected on clinical or epidemiologic grounds. Improvements in technique and further evaluation of some of the tests for treponemal antibody may eventually permit their substitution for the Wassermann tests in the routine examination of serum.

specimens for evidence of treponemal disease

At the present time tests for treponemal antibody—TPI agglutination, complement fixation—are of greatest practical value as an aid in identifying patients with biologic false positive tests for Wassermann antibody. Persons who show positive tests for Wassermann antibody in the absence of clinical or epidemiologic evidence suggesting syphilis should have their serum tested for the presence of treponemal antibody before a diagnosis of syphilis or other treponemal disease is established.

Serologic tests have been used traditionally as a guide to therapy in syphilis and related diseases but their interpretation is fraught with difficulty. It is a moot question whether antibody production continues for long after the antigenic stimulus provided by the treponeme has been eliminated. Data from experimental animals with well-established infections indicate that following curative treatment Wassermann antibody declines fairly rapidly but treponemal antibody remains present for long periods although declining gradually in titer.

There is some evidence suggesting that the same phenomena occur in human beings on an extended time scale but the data are not conclusive. Following successful treatment of early syphilis both Wassermann antibody and treponemal antibody decline over a period of months the former more rapidly than the latter so that eventually most of such patients show negative serologic tests. In more long-standing cases the decline in both types of antibody is much more gradual in many patients tests for Wassermann antibody eventually become negative whereas in most individuals tests for treponemal antibody remain positive. It can be argued that the persistence of these antibodies reflects persistence of infection but clinical and immunologic evidence does not indicate that this is necessarily true. There is much indirect evidence suggesting that, just as tetanus toxoid induces specific antibodies that persist for many years both Wassermann and treponemal antibody also may persist for many years after elimination of all treponemes by penicillin therapy.

Therefore in the present state of our knowledge it would be unwise to assume that individuals who have received what is regarded as adequate treatment for syphilis and still show the presence of these antibodies are still infected. Perhaps the best serologic guide to adequate therapy is evidence of some decline in titer of these various antibodies recognizing that such a decline may be detectable only over a period of years and not necessarily over a period of weeks or months.

**Spinal Fluid Tests** Under normal circumstances the serum antibody does not pass into the spinal fluid even in syphilitic patients with a high serum titer. In patients with central nervous system syphilis the antibody appears in the cerebrospinal fluid either because of damage to the blood brain barrier or through local elaboration. Therefore the presence of a positive test for Wassermann or treponemal antibody in the spinal fluid is usually indicative of involvement of the central nervous system. The antibody titer of the fluid coupled with its cell content and protein content, and their response to antisyphilitic treatment provide information of diagnostic and prognostic value. Tests for treponemal antibody have had less thorough clinical evaluation than have tests for Wassermann antibody.

## TREATMENT

Until the discovery and the development of penicillin the arsenicals notably arsphenamine and its derivatives in conjunction with bismuth were the drugs of choice in the treatment of syphilis. Now these have been entirely superseded by penicillin which has been shown to be far more active as a treponemocidal agent as well as much less toxic for the patient.

Penicillin was first shown to be effective against *T. pallidum* by Mahoney, Arnold and Harris (1943). Its use has revolutionized the therapy of syphilis and other treponemal diseases. Instead of months and often years of therapy with arsenicals and heavy metals all of which were inherently toxic to the patient therapy is now accomplished in most patients within a period of 2 weeks although much longer periods of observation are desirable.



Patients with early or latent syphilis are treated with 2 doses of a long lasting penicillin 2.4 million units in each dose given intramuscularly 2 weeks apart. Benzathine penicillin G fortified with procaine is the preparation of choice, although procaine penicillin in oil containing 2 per cent of aluminum monostearate in the same dosage is satisfactory. For children the dose of penicillin should be adjusted to 50 000 units per Kg. of body weight.

In patients with central nervous system syphilis or other forms of late syphilis it is customary to give a total of 4 doses of 2.4 million units each although evidence for the necessity of this increased amount is not altogether convincing (Hahn *et al.* 1956 1959).

Tetracycline drugs have some treponemicidal action but are far less effective than penicillin. These drugs should be used when penicillin is contraindicated because of hypersensitivity rather than the more toxic arsenicals and the less effective bismuth (Olansky and Garson 1958).

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY AND CONTROL

Syphilis is acquired principally by sexual contact. Extragenital infection accounts for less than 10 per cent of the total. Primary and secondary syphilis in which there are open lesions discharging millions of organisms are the most infectious stages but patients may be infectious for months and occasionally for several years after most of the secondary lesions have disappeared spontaneously.

Infection may be transmitted to the fetus in utero years after initial infection of the mother. It is not known whether infection of the fetus occurs through transient spirochetemia in the mother or direct passage of treponemes through the uterine wall.

The control of syphilis is made particularly difficult because many infected individuals are not aware that they have the disease. This is particularly the case in females in whom the early lesions may be entirely within the genital tract and largely symptomless. Infected prostitutes and other promiscuous women constitute especially important sources of infection because of the large number of individuals whom they may expose to infection.

The widespread availability of penicillin has placed a potent weapon in the hands of physicians and public health officials in the control of syphilis. Control methods which were applied intensively during and following World War II, led to a marked reduction of syphilis in most developed countries. Concomitant with relaxation of intensive application of these control methods there has been clear indication of resurgence of syphilis as an endemic disease. The next generation may well see more of this problem than the present one (Joint Statement, 1963). An important factor in control is the early and adequate treatment of the syphilitic patient in order to minimize the length of time during which he remains infectious thereby reducing the number of persons to whom he can transmit the disease. Each case is potentially the source of a small outbreak and not infrequently 10, 20 or even more cases may be traced through several generations of infection to a single individual. The sources of infection should be traced to bring under treatment the infected individual from whom the patient acquired his disease, who often is the focal point for many other actual and potential infections. The contacts to whom the patient may have transmitted the disease should also be found and followed both clinically and serologically. Many will have clinical evidence of the disease by the time they can be brought in for examination. Obviously their early and adequate treatment will prevent them from transmitting the infection to others. Those contacts who are clinically and serologically normal at the time of the first examination may develop the disease subsequently and should be kept under observation for several months. In such persons treatment with a relatively small amount of penicillin may effectively abort an infection that is not evident at the time of the first examination.

Methods of prophylaxis applicable principally to males have likewise been developed as a control measure. Calomel ointment applied to the genitalia after sexual exposure has been used for many years. Various other prophylactic measures include thorough washing of the genitalia with soap and water, mechanical protection by use of the condom during exposure and the ad-

ministration of penicillin by mouth or injection. It is probable that each of these measures either alone or in combination with one or more of the others is effective in many instances but fails in others. Since the infecting treponeme probably moves beyond the point of inoculation within 1 or 2 hours local prophylaxis must be applied promptly after exposure. Perhaps the greatest limiting factor in the efficacy of prophylactic measures is failure of the individual to use them properly because of lack of knowledge—or simply neglect to use them at all. The striking increase in the incidence of venereal disease in the Armed Forces immediately after the end of World Wars I and II affords adequate evidence of the practical limitations of prophylaxis.

Although penicillin has been used successfully to prevent the development of infection in the sex contacts of proved cases of early syphilis its routine prophylactic use (e.g. in the Armed Forces as a substitute for local chemical prophylaxis) is not practicable. The limiting factor is the slow rate at which *T. pallidum* is killed by penicillin. The single oral dose which suffices to prevent gonorrhea would be ineffective here and repeated dosages by mouth or parenteral administration would be difficult to employ as a prophylactic procedure.

## TREPONEMA PERTENUE AND YAWS (Synonyms Frambesia Pian)

### HISTORY

Yaws has been recognized as a clinical entity for centuries. *Treponema pertenu* the causative organism was first identified in the lesions of yaws by Castellani soon after the discovery of *T. pallidum*. It is not known whether the disease was brought to the West Indies by infected African slaves or was indigenous to both parts of the world. Yaws is largely confined to the tropics.

### BIOLOGIC PROPERTIES OF *T. PERTENUE*

The organism is indistinguishable from *T. pallidum* in many of its characteristics including morphology, motility, staining properties, ability to induce Wassermann and treponemal antibodies in man and experimental animals, and susceptibility to arsenical drugs and penicillin. Like *T. pallidum*

*T. pertenu* has not been cultivated on artificial media, it can be maintained on Nelson's medium (see p. 576) for several days and virulence is maintained for years when frozen at the temperature of dry ice (approximately  $-70^{\circ}\text{C}$ ). It does not survive freezing and desiccation.

*T. pertenu* has the same host range as *T. pallidum* and the evolution of the experimental disease in the animal host follows much the same pattern as experimental syphilis. However, the character of the lesions tends to differ from those of syphilis particularly in that the yaws lesions in general are much less indurated, the collections of round cells are more focal, and there is strikingly less mucoid material in the lesions. In rabbits, for example, intratesticular inoculation of yaws treponemes commonly gives rise to multiple small focal lesions in the visceral tunic of the testis, the so-called granular periorchitis, which while it does occur occasionally after the inoculation of *T. pallidum* is rare in experimental syphilis. Similarly, in hamsters the intracutaneous inoculation of *T. pertenu* gives rise to a local lesion at the site of injection in the great majority of animals, at the same time treponemes are demonstrable in the regional lymph nodes, whereas following intradermal inoculation of *T. pallidum* the organisms are regularly found in the regional lymph nodes but lesions at the site of injection are uncommon (Turner and Hollander, 1957). The basis of these differences is not clear, although it may be related in some as yet undefinable way to the observed difference in the amount of hyaluronic acid in the lesions of the two infections (see further discussion of this subject in the section Biologic Relationships Within the *Treponema* Group). Infection with *T. pertenu* leads to the induction of both Wassermann and treponemal immobilizing antibodies in experimental animals and man. Generalized lesions in rabbits are less common in yaws than in syphilitic infections. The basis for these differences is obscure.

### THE DISEASE IN MAN

In man the initial lesion or mother yaw appears 3 to 4 weeks after exposure as a painless yellow-red papule (framboise or raspberry) surrounded by an inflammatory zone. This gradually increases in size, erodes

and ulcerates the dried exudate forming a dark crust. From 6 weeks to 3 months later, sometimes after the mother yw has healed completely, generalized secondary lesions develop which differ in no important respect from the primary lesion. When they localize in mucocutaneous junctions (mouth, nose, perineum) the lesions are moist and resemble syphilitic condyloma. Successive crops may appear over a period of several months to several years. Plantar papules and hyperkeratosis of the soles of the feet—the so called crab yaws—are among the most common and the most incapacitating lesions.

The late sequelae of yaws are generally restricted to skin and bone. Gummatous nodules and deep chronic ulcerations or crippling bone and joint lesions may develop. A destructive ulcerative mutilation of the rhinopharynx (gangosa), a proliferative exostosis of the upper maxilla (goundou) and juxta articular nodules are also ascribed to yaws. Visceral complications are rare. Although aortic and central nervous system involvement have been described, most workers agree that such complications are rare and certainly much less frequent than in syphilitic infection. Congenital yaws is believed not to occur.

### IMMUNITY

In both animals and man, one attack of yaws may confer protection against a second attack. Immunity develops slowly; thus, reinoculation in man in the first 3 years of the infection may result in a modified attack, but most infected persons are refractory to reinfection after 10 years. There is considerable evidence that yaws confers a measure of protection against syphilitic infection. In man, almost all observers have commented on the relatively small number of cases of syphilis seen in population groups heavily infected with yaws. Findlay and Wilcox (1945) produced a syphilitic infection by the subcutaneous inoculation of *T. pallidum* into a subject with a clear history of yaws 10 years previously.

Likewise, there is evidence that human beings who have had syphilis have some degree of immunity to yaws. Janel and Lange (1928) and Strong (1942) could not induce yaws lesions in persons with general paresis.

Turner (1936) found that of 10 individuals who presumably had latent syphilis all were refractory to inoculation with yaws treponemes, as were 9 of 10 other individuals who had yaws in the remote past, while darkfield positive lesions were induced by the same inoculum in 9 of 10 patients who had had recent yaws infection.

There is also a large body of evidence indicating the existence of a degree of cross immunity in the experimental infections. When rabbits are infected with *T. pallidum* and the disease is permitted to evolve to the point of latency, a majority of the animals develop no lesion on challenge inoculation of yaws treponemes. Likewise, yaws infected animals which have had the disease 3 months or longer commonly show some degree of immunity on challenge inoculation with *T. pallidum*. On the whole, syphilis animals exhibit evidences of a higher degree of immunity to yaws than yaws animals to syphilis, while the results vary according to the experimental methods employed. Taken as a whole, published data provide incontrovertible evidence of a reciprocal cross immunity between yaws and syphilis. For a review of pertinent experiments, see Turner and Hollander (1957). Treponemal antibodies occur during yaws infection in both man and animals, have the capacity to immobilize syphilis treponemes, and serum from syphilitic animals and man regularly immobilizes yaws treponemes (Khan, Nelson and Turner 1951).

### DIAGNOSIS

As in syphilis, the diagnosis of yaws depends on (1) the appearance of the lesions, (2) demonstration of treponemes in early lesions by darkfield examination, and (3) serologic tests. The florid skin lesions of yaws and the plantar lesions can scarcely be confused with any other disease. Darkfield examination and serologic tests assist in differentiating yaws from nontreponemal disease but not of course from syphilis or other treponematoses.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Yaws is virtually limited to tropical areas and occurs principally where the rainfall is high. In some areas, fully 75 per cent of all

individuals have had yaws by age 20. Areas of high endemicity frequently lie within a few miles of communities in which yaws is uncommon. The disease occurs principally among the lower socioeconomic groups of the population living under poor hygienic conditions but in areas of high endemicity well to do families may be affected.

The disease is spread by direct contact with an open lesion that is discharging treponemes. The organism apparently cannot pass through the intact epithelium and a cut or an abrasion perhaps only microscopic probably serves as a portal of entry. The role of flies as a vector has been suggested by Kumm and Turner (1936) who found that a fly (*Hippelates pallipes*) widely distributed in the West Indies fed in large numbers on the open ulcerative lesions and that *T. pertenue* could then be found in the foregut or the stomach where it remained viable for about 7 hours. The regurgitation of infective material on a breached area of the skin has been shown to cause infection in rabbits. *T. pertenue* has also been reported to pass through the intestinal canal of certain species of African flies and mosquitoes in viable form. Although man can be infected at any age more than two thirds of the infections occur before the age of puberty and males are infected more commonly than females. There is no convincing evidence of variation in susceptibility according to race.

#### TREATMENT AND CONTROL

Yaws responds to the same therapeutic agents as syphilis. There is some clinical evidence to indicate that smaller amounts of these drugs are required in yaws than in syphilis but there are no carefully controlled clinical or experimental studies to support this view. The trivalent arsenicals, the heavy metals such as bismuth and mercury and various antibiotic drugs including penicillin, tetracycline and oxytetracycline all have therapeutic action. Penicillin is by far the most effective of all known therapeutic agents and is the drug of choice in treatment.

Based on experience gained in many campaigns the WHO Expert Committee on Venereal Infections and Treponematoses recommends a single injection of 1.2 million units of procaine penicillin in oil with 2 per

cent aluminum monostearate (PAM) for adults with active yaws. This dose is reduced proportionately for younger age groups for patients with latent yaws and for contacts of infectious cases. In some campaigns lower doses have been used with apparent success. Benzathine penicillin G, a longer acting preparation may prove to be even more effective.

Because yaws occurs principally among peoples of rural tropical areas where there is limited access to medical facilities, attempts at control usually have taken the form of a mass campaign. Too often these have been one shot campaigns based entirely on mass treatment without adequate preliminary survey or organized follow up. As originally developed by the Jamaica Yaws Commission (Turner *et al.* 1935) to be effective control campaigns should consist of (1) survey of a given area by sanitary inspectors for the purpose of detecting all infectious cases, (2) treatment of these cases to render them noninfectious and (3) close observation of the community by paramedical personnel in order to discover and treat new infectious cases as soon as they occur. An educational program pitched at an appropriate level should be conducted as an integral part of the campaign (Hackett and Guthe 1956).

#### TREPONEMA CARATEUM AND PINTA

(Synonyms: Mal del pinto, Carate)

Pinta is a disease characterized in its later stages by the presence of coalescing depigmented and mottled areas on the wrists, the hands, the ankles, the feet and the scalp and hyperkeratoses of the palms and the soles. It is prevalent in Mexico and Columbia is encountered in most of the American tropics and recently has been reported from the Philippines, Africa, India and the islands of the South Pacific. The number of cases in Central and South America is now estimated at approximately a million. Originally considered a fungus infection, its treponemal origin was indicated in 1938 by Saenz, Triana and Alfonso who demonstrated the organism in exudates from lesions and in fluid expressed from the adjacent lymph nodes.

The organism is morphologically indistinguishable from *T. pallidum*. Already a con

and ulcerates, the dried exudate forming a dark crust. From 6 weeks to 3 months later, sometimes after the mother yaw has healed completely, generalized secondary lesions develop which differ in no important respect from the primary lesion. When they localize in mucocutaneous junctions (mouth, nose, perineum) the lesions are moist and resemble syphilitic condyloma. Successive crops may appear over a period of several months to several years. Plantar papules and hyperkeratosis of the soles of the feet—the so called crab yaws—are among the most common and the most incapacitating lesions.

The late sequelae of yaws are generally restricted to skin and bone. Gummatous nodules and deep chronic ulcerations or crippling bone and joint lesions may develop. A destructive ulcerative mutilation of the rhinopharynx (gangosa), a proliferative exostosis of the upper maxilla (goundou) and juxta articular nodules are also ascribed to yaws. Visceral complications are rare. Although aortic and central nervous system involvement have been described, most workers agree that such complications are rare and certainly much less frequent than in syphilitic infection. Congenital yaws is believed not to occur.

### IMMUNITY

In both animals and man one attack of yaws may confer protection against a second attack. Immunity develops slowly; thus reinoculation in man in the first 3 years of the infection may result in a modified attack, but most infected persons are refractory to reinfection after 10 years. There is considerable evidence that yaws confers a measure of protection against syphilitic infection. In man almost all observers have commented on the relatively small number of cases of syphilis seen in population groups heavily infected with yaws. Findlay and Wilcox (1945) produced a syphilitic infection by the subcutaneous inoculation of *T. pallidum* into a subject with a clear history of yaws 10 years previously.

Likewise, there is evidence that human beings who have had syphilis have some degree of immunity to yaws. Jahnke and Lange (1928) and Strong (1942) could not induce yaws lesions in persons with general paresis.

Turner (1936) found that of 10 individuals who presumably had latent syphilis all were refractory to inoculation with yaws treponemes, as were 9 of 10 other individuals who had yaws in the remote past while darkfield positive lesions were induced by the same inoculum in 9 of 10 patients who had had recent yaws infection.

There is also a large body of evidence indicating the existence of a degree of cross immunity in the experimental infections. When rabbits are infected with *T. pallidum* and the disease is permitted to evolve to the point of latency, a majority of the animals develop no lesion on challenge inoculation of yaws treponemes. Likewise yaws infected animals which have had the disease 3 months or longer commonly show some degree of immunity on challenge inoculation with *T. pallidum*. On the whole syphilis animals exhibit evidences of a higher degree of immunity to yaws than yaws animals to syphilis while the results vary according to the experimental methods employed. Taken as a whole published data provide incontrovertible evidence of a reciprocal cross immunity between yaws and syphilis. For a review of pertinent experiments see Turner and Hollander (1957). Treponemal antibodies occurring during yaws infection in both man and animals have the capacity to immobilize syphilis treponemes and serum from syphilitic animals and man regularly immobilize yaws treponemes (Khan, Nelson and Turner 1951).

### DIAGNOSIS

As in syphilis the diagnosis of yaws depends on (1) the appearance of the lesions, (2) demonstration of treponemes in early lesions by darkfield examination and (3) serologic tests. The florid skin lesions of yaws and the plantar lesions can scarcely be confused with any other disease. Darkfield examination and serologic tests assist in differentiating yaws from nontreponemal disease but not of course, from syphilis or other treponematoses.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Yaws is virtually limited to tropical areas and occurs principally where the rainfall is high. In some areas fully 75 per cent of all

demie among nomadic tribes siti in British West Africa dichuchwa in Bechuanaland njovera in Southern Rhodesia and endemic syphilis in certain sections of the Balkans While the clinical and epidemiologic patterns of these syndromes differ somewhat, from the standpoint of causative treponemes serologic tests and response to therapy they cannot be distinguished from one another or from yaws and syphilis

## BIOLOGIC RELATIONSHIPS WITHIN THE TREPONEMA GROUP

On the basis of comparative studies in vitro and in vivo of 70 strains of treponemes derived from human beings with various treponemal syndromes in many parts of the world Turner and Hollander (1957) concluded that all strains were closely related in their essential biologic characteristics in the disease picture they induced in man and in experimental animals in their immunologic features and in their reaction to antibiotics However certain relatively stable differences were observed particularly in the lesions in rabbits the disease picture in hamsters and certain immunologic patterns as determined by challenge inoculation of rabbits

On the basis of these criteria strains of treponemes from various parts of the world were placed into one of three categories (1) syphilislike (2) yawslike and (3) an intermediate group which partook of some of the characteristics of both syphilis and yaws Most of the strains from the nonvenereal treponematoses including some of the yaws strains belonged to this intermediate group

These groupings were believed to reflect fundamental biologic differences in the strains of treponemes and it was postulated that the differences resided in the character and the amount of capsular mucopolysaccharide that each strain produced Six strains of *T. cuniculi* did not clearly fit into any of the above three categories and may perhaps be regarded as a fourth group

## THE BORRELIA

### INTRODUCTION

The genus *Borrelia* comprises several species of spirochetes which are morphologically similar but exhibit widely different patho-

genic proclivities and host range The most important members of the group from a medical standpoint are those causing relapsing fever in man closely related organisms cause a somewhat similar spirochetosis in fowls These organisms are primarily blood parasites Another large and perhaps heterogeneous subgroup are the borrelia associated with ulcerative conditions of the oral cavity and the genitalia they are also found in lung abscesses and in so-called tropical ulcers of the lower legs and the feet although here their etiologic role is not clear

The borrelia group of spirochetes are distinguished from treponema and leptospira by being longer as a rule with the spirals deeper more loosely wound and more flexible These organisms stain well with ordinary aniline dyes but are not readily cultivable on artificial media The type species of the human relapsing fever spirochetes is *Borrelia recurrentis* many other species that affect man have been identified and named but, as pointed out below it is questionable whether these should be regarded as separate species or as variants of the one type species *B. gallinarum* is the type species of the fowl spirochetoses and *B. vincenti* of the spirochetes that occur in debilitated tissue lesions of human beings

## BORRELIA RECURRENTIS AND RELAPSING FEVER

### HISTORY

In the 18th century relapsing fever was often confused with typhus fever but the two were clearly distinguished by Henderson in 1843 The spiral organism causing the disease *B. recurrentis* (obermeieri) was first seen in the peripheral blood of a human patient by Obermeier in 1868 and the disease was reproduced in man by the injection of infected blood in 1874 In 1904 Ross and Milne showed that so-called African tick fever was also caused by a spiral organism demonstrable in the blood and they indicated its probable identity with relapsing fever Shortly thereafter it was shown that as had been suspected the body louse could also act as a vector (Moursund 1942)

### MORPHOLOGY

*B. recurrentis* is a highly flexible spiral or

fusing multiplicity of names has been applied to it among them *T. carateum*, *T. herrejoni*, *T. pictor*, *T. pintae* and *T. americanum*. Although it has not yet been cultivated on artificial media, its regular presence in the lesions and the successful transfer of the disease from man to man (Leon Blanco 1939) with the recovery of the same organism from the induced lesions seems to establish its causal relationship. A rabbit is said to have been inoculated successfully with organisms from a human lesion although 4 rabbits subinoculated from that animal did not develop a lesion. A human subject simultaneously inoculated did develop a typical darkfield positive primary lesion in 47 days (Leon Blanco and Otéiza 1945).

Numerous other attempts to infect rabbits and hamsters have failed although in a few instances motile treponemes have been recovered from the regional lymph nodes of hamsters several weeks after inoculation. Infected human beings develop both Wassermann antibody and treponemal antibody that immobilize *T. pallidum* (Varela and Olarte 1950). Although *T. carateum* undoubtedly belongs to the group of treponemal organisms, the limits of its biologic relationship to *T. pallidum* and *T. pertenue* are still vague.

The disease may be contracted at any age and is first evidenced by a nonulcerating primary lesion. This is followed in 5 to 18 months by the appearance of successive crops of flat erythematous and hyperpigmented lesions (pintid). After several years one observes the characteristic late depigmentation and hyperkeratoses. Although late visceral complications have been reported, definitive evidence is lacking.

Human beings have been successfully inoculated with the exudates from the lesions but reinfection does not succeed in the late cases. Syphilitic subjects have been successfully inoculated with *pinta* and subjects with *pinta* may contract syphilis (Gonzalez Herrejon 1940) indicating at least some immunologic differentiation between the two infections.

Transmission is not venereal but usually occurs by person to person contact. Flies (*Hippelates*) allowed to feed on serous fluid containing the treponemes have been shown to be capable of transmitting the disease to

man (Leon Blanco and Soberon Parra 1941).

The disease responds to treatment with arsenicals, bismuth and penicillin as do yaws and syphilis. Penicillin is the drug of choice administered in the same dose and in the same manner as for syphilis.

### TREPONEMA CUNICULI AND RABBIT SYPHILIS

*Treponema cuniculi* was identified by Bayon in 1913 as the cause of a natural infection of rabbits. The organism is morphologically indistinguishable from *T. pallidum* which it resembles also in its susceptibility to arsenicals and penicillin. The natural lesion consists of superficial scaly, eroded lesions on the genitalia and the adjacent perineal region. Inoculation into the skin of that area reproduces the disease and intratesticular inoculation causes in 14 to 28 days an inflammatory reaction resembling that caused by syphilis but less extensive, lacking the induration characteristic of the latter and consisting largely of fine nodules in the parietal layer of the tunica vaginalis without marked enlargement of the testis (McLeod and Turner 1946). In the following 1 to 6 months metastatic lesions may be seen in the testis, the scrotum, the anus, the prepuce and the glans and secondary lesions in the skin and the mucocutaneous borders of the eyes, the nose and the mouth. Wassermann antibody develops in the same proportion and to the same degree as in rabbits infected with *T. pallidum* and *T. pertenue*. Treponemal antibody to *T. pallidum* also develops but apparently in lower titer than to *T. cuniculi* (Khan et al 1951).

### OTHER TREPONEMATOSES OF MAN

In many geographic areas of the world, particularly where the majority of people are economically depressed and live under unhygienic conditions, endemic treponemal infections are observed. Transmission is commonly nonvenereal, occurring through direct bodily contact or through the medium of common eating and drinking utensils. These nonvenereal treponematoses have often been given local names such as bejel in Syria and adjacent areas where it is en-

toneally Guinea pigs are susceptible to the tick borne strains the organisms surviving in the brain for more than 3 years (Sergeant 1945) while louse borne strains are only rarely infectious on direct inoculation into this species (Coghill and Gambles 1948). Rabbits cats and dogs are not susceptible. Monkeys show the characteristic relapsing course of the human disease. Organisms appear in the blood in 24 to 48 hours and disappear spontaneously in 2 to 5 days. In young rats (40 to 80 Gm) they may appear in the blood in huge numbers within 24 to 72 hours and disappear with extraordinary rapidity within a few hours. Even in these animals however the disease is rarely fatal. Consistent with the demonstration of the organisms in the cerebrospinal fluid and the brain in human cases there is some evidence that in rats mice and guinea pigs the brain may serve as a reservoir of infection after the apparent disappearance of organisms from the circulating blood (Heronimus 1928, Anderson 1946, Schuhardt and Hemphill 1946).

### IMMUNITY

Serum agglutinins and bactericidal antibodies are readily demonstrable in both the experimental and the human disease and the termination of the individual febrile attacks as well as the eventual cure may be related to their appearance. It is significant that the organisms which appear during a febrile relapse often differ in their serologic reactivity from those present in the immediately preceding attack (Cunningham, Theodore and Fraser 1934). In rats a protein deficient diet has been found to cause a significant increase in the severity of infection and mortality (Guggenheim, Buechler-Czaczkes and Halevy 1951). In squirrels inoculated with a single human strain Meleney (1928) isolated 6 serologically distinct strains during a series of relapses. There is no fixed order in which the mutant strains appear in the course of a single infection but there is an indication that the organisms in alternate relapses may be more closely related in their antigenic structure than is the intervening mutant. Therefore the development of mutant strains not susceptible to the antibody previously elaborated may be the actual cause

of the relapse and final cure may reflect an increasingly broad immunity afforded by the multiple mutant strains. The antigenic variation in successive relapses has been observed even after single-cell inoculation (Schuhardt and Wilkerson 1951). However it must be noted that Ashbel (1942) has observed relapses without demonstrable changes in immunologic reactivity and Stein (1944) has furnished evidence of a common antigen in a number of supposedly different strains isolated from both animals and man.

Recovered patients have been found to resist reinfection from 2 to 5 years later. However other workers have found that patients remained immune only so long as the organisms persisted in the tissues. Attempts to immunize animals with killed spirochetes have been unsuccessful and it has not yet been possible to characterize and differentiate strains on the basis of their antigenic reactivity. There is evidence of cross protection between tick borne and louse borne strains. Monkeys infected with the tick borne California strain proved to be resistant to reinfection with a louse borne Chinese strain and in hamsters when the order of inoculation was reversed the second infection consisted of a single short attack, with no relapses (Chen, Zia and Anderson 1945).

### DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis rests primarily on the demonstration of the organism in the blood by direct darkfield observation, by the examination of stained blood films or by animal inoculation. Young white rats weighing from 30 to 80 Gm are particularly susceptible to organisms appearing in the blood in large numbers in 24 to 72 hours. When one centrifuges the blood of infected animals or man the organisms tend to concentrate in the white blood cell layer facilitating their detection by darkfield examination or stain. In louse borne infections *Proteus OXK* agglutinins in high titer appear in a substantial proportion of the cases (Zarofonetus *et al* 1946, Davis 1948).

### TREATMENT

The trivalent arsenical drugs particularly neoarsphenamine were used for many years but now have been superseded by penicillin.



ganism, varying in length from 8 to 30 microns and in thickness from 0.2 to 0.5 micron with 5 to 10 irregular and loosely wound spirals which average 1 to 2 microns in depth and 3 microns in width. The organisms are actively motile, with both rotational and translational movement. However the latter is not always progressive, and in blood preparations the organisms may move back and forth within the same microscopic field. Unlike *T. pallidum* *B. recurrentis* stains well with the usual bacterial stains as well as with Wright's, Giemsa and other stains containing the aniline dyes. The electron microscopic studies of Swain (1955) show a central axial filament with a surrounding sheath of protoplasm. On washing in distilled water this sheath disappears and numerous fibrils resembling flagellae are seen. These fibrils may arise from the axial filament or be the remains of the sheathlike envelopes. Division is believed to be by transverse fission.

#### CULTIVATION AND BIOLOGIC PROPERTIES

Despite reports from time to time of cultivation of virulent relapsing fever organisms on artificial media, cultivation is not regularly successful. The organisms do grow well in the chick embryo (Oag 1940) and direct isolation from the blood of patients has been accomplished by this method (Bohls *et al.* 1940; Chen 1941). Inoculation can be made onto the chorioallantoic membrane or into the body of the embryo. When planted on media containing blood serum or ascitic fluid and maintained at refrigerator temperature, relapsing fever spirochetes may remain motile and infective for many months (Wolman and Wolman 1945). Their virulence is maintained for long periods at the temperature of dry ice (Turner and Fleming 1939).

The widespread distribution of the disease and the several modes of transmission have led to the isolation of a large number of strains differentiated primarily on the basis of the area of isolation or the vector concerned in their transmission rather than by inherent biologic differences in the organisms. Although some strains apparently will grow preferentially in certain species of ticks, this may not reflect a genetic difference.

Louse borne strains have been shown to be infective for ticks, which then can transmit the disease to man and naturally tick borne strains have been similarly transferred to lice but there is a question concerning the epidemiologic importance of the unnatural vector.

Although agglutinins and other antibodies can be produced in high titer, the serologic differentiation of the various strains is complicated by the fact that their antigenic structure apparently changes repeatedly during a single infection.

#### PATHOGENESIS

The louse and tick borne infections can not be distinguished with certainty on the basis of their clinical manifestations. The disease in man usually begins with an acute febrile onset from 3 to 10 days after infection. In this initial febrile stage there are usually large numbers of organisms in the blood; they may be found in the urine in approximately a fourth of the cases and by animal inoculation sometimes spirochetes can be demonstrated in the cerebrospinal fluid. After an average of 4 days the fever declines coincident with the disappearance of organisms from the blood. As the number of organisms decreases, they become less motile, tend to assume bizarre forms and may agglutinate in rosettes. During the afebrile period the blood is not infectious for lice. The afebrile period may last from 3 to 10 days and is followed by a second febrile attack during which organisms reappear in the blood but in smaller numbers. There may be from 3 to 10 such recurring febrile attacks. The mortality in the endemic infection varies between 2 and 5 per cent but in epidemics it may be 50 per cent or even higher. In fatal cases organisms are found in sections of the spleen and the liver and are particularly numerous in the malpighian bodies of the spleen which show milium necrotic lesions. Hemorrhagic lesions may be found in the gastrointestinal tract and in the kidney. There have been occasional reports of relapsing fever in the offspring of infected mothers presumably caused by transplacental inoculation.

Monkeys, mice and rats can be inoculated subcutaneously, intravenously or intraperi-

toneally Guinea pigs are susceptible to the tick borne strains the organisms surviving in the brain for more than 3 years (Sergeant 1945) while louse borne strains are only rarely infectious on direct inoculation into this species (Coghill and Gambles 1948). Rabbits cats and dogs are not susceptible. Monkeys show the characteristic relapsing course of the human disease. Organisms appear in the blood in 24 to 48 hours and disappear spontaneously in 2 to 5 days. In young rats (40 to 80 Gm.) they may appear in the blood in huge numbers within 24 to 72 hours and disappear with extraordinary rapidity within a few hours. Even in these animals however the disease is rarely fatal. Consistent with the demonstration of the organisms in the cerebrospinal fluid and the brain in human cases there is some evidence that in rats mice and guinea pigs the brain may serve as a reservoir of infection after the apparent disappearance of organisms from the circulating blood (Heronimus 1928, Anderson 1946, Schuhardt and Hemphill 1946).

### IMMUNITY

Serum agglutinins and bactericidal antibodies are readily demonstrable in both the experimental and the human disease and the termination of the individual febrile attacks as well as the eventual cure may be related to their appearance. It is significant that the organisms which appear during a febrile relapse often differ in their serologic reactivity from those present in the immediately preceding attack (Cunningham Theodore and Fraser 1934). In rats a protein-deficient diet has been found to cause a significant increase in the severity of infection and mortality (Guggenheim Buechler-Czaczkes and Halevy 1951). In squirrels inoculated with a single human strain Meleney (1928) isolated 6 serologically distinct strains during a series of relapses. There is no fixed order in which the mutant strains appear in the course of a single infection but there is an indication that the organisms in alternate relapses may be more closely related in their antigenic structure than is the intervening mutant. Therefore the development of mutant strains not susceptible to the antibody previously elaborated may be the actual cause

of the relapse and final cure may reflect an increasingly broad immunity afforded by the multiple mutant strains. The antigenic variation in successive relapses has been observed even after single-cell inoculation (Schuhardt and Wilkerson 1951). However it must be noted that Ashbel (1942) has observed relapses without demonstrable changes in immunologic reactivity and Stein (1944) has furnished evidence of a common antigen in a number of supposedly different strains isolated from both animals and man.

Recovered patients have been found to resist reinfection from 2 to 5 years later. However other workers have found that patients remained immune only so long as the organisms persisted in the tissues. Attempts to immunize animals with killed spirochetes have been unsuccessful and it has not yet been possible to characterize and differentiate strains on the basis of their antigenic reactivity. There is evidence of cross protection between tick borne and louse borne strains. Monkeys infected with the tick borne California strain proved to be resistant to reinfection with a louse borne Chinese strain and in hamsters when the order of inoculation was reversed the second infection consisted of a single short attack with no relapses (Chen Zia and Anderson 1945).

### DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis rests primarily on the demonstration of the organism in the blood by direct darkfield observation, by the examination of stained blood films or by animal inoculation. Young white rats weighing from 30 to 80 Gm are particularly susceptible or organisms appearing in the blood in large numbers in 24 to 72 hours. When one centrifuges the blood of infected animals or man the organisms tend to concentrate in the white blood cell layer facilitating their detection by darkfield examination or stain. In louse borne infections *Proteus OX* agglutinins in high titer appear in a substantial proportion of the cases (Zarofonetus *et al* 1946, Davis 1948).

### TREATMENT

The trivalent arsenical drugs particularly neoarsphenamine were used for many years but now have been superseded by penicillin

ganism varying in length from 8 to 30 microns and in thickness from 0.2 to 0.5 micron with 5 to 10 irregular and loosely wound spirals which average 1 to 2 microns in depth and 3 microns in width. The organisms are actively motile with both rotational and transitional movement. However, the latter is not always progressive and in blood preparations the organisms may move back and forth within the same microscopic field. Unlike *T. pallidum*, *B. recurrentis* stains well with the usual bacterial stains as well as with Wright's, Giemsa and other stains containing the aniline dyes. The electron microscopic studies of Swain (1955) show a central axial filament with a surrounding sheath of protoplasm. On washing in distilled water this sheath disappears and numerous fibrils resembling flagellae are seen. These fibrils may arise from the axial filament or be the remains of the sheathlike envelopes. Division is believed to be by transverse fission.

#### CULTIVATION AND BIOLOGIC PROPERTIES

Despite reports from time to time of cultivation of virulent relapsing fever organisms on artificial media, cultivation is not regularly successful. The organisms do grow well in the chick embryo (Oag 1940) and direct isolation from the blood of patients has been accomplished by this method (Bohls *et al.* 1940; Chen 1941). Inoculation can be made onto the chorioallantoic membrane or into the body of the embryo. When planted on media containing blood serum or ascitic fluid and maintained at refrigerator temperature, relapsing fever spirochetes may remain motile and infective for many months (Wolman and Wolman 1945). Their virulence is maintained for long periods at the temperature of dry ice (Turner and Fleming 1939).

The widespread distribution of the disease and the several modes of transmission have led to the isolation of a large number of strains differentiated primarily on the basis of the area of isolation or the vector concerned in their transmission rather than by inherent biologic differences in the organisms. Although some strains apparently will grow preferentially in certain species of ticks, this may not reflect a genetic difference.

Louse borne strains have been shown to be infective for ticks which then can transmit the disease to man and naturally tick borne strains have been similarly transferred to lice but there is a question concerning the epidemiologic importance of the unnatural vector.

Although agglutinins and other antibodies can be produced in high titer, the serologic differentiation of the various strains is complicated by the fact that their antigenic structure apparently changes repeatedly during a single infection.

#### PATHOGENESIS

The louse and tick borne infections can not be distinguished with certainty on the basis of their clinical manifestations. The disease in man usually begins with an acute febrile onset from 3 to 10 days after infection. In this initial febrile stage there are usually large numbers of organisms in the blood; they may be found in the urine in approximately a fourth of the cases and by animal inoculation sometimes spirochetes can be demonstrated in the cerebrospinal fluid. After an average of 4 days the fever declines coincident with the disappearance of organisms from the blood. As the number of organisms decreases they become less motile, tend to assume bizarre forms and may agglutinate in rosettes. During the afebrile period the blood is not infectious for lice. The afebrile period may last from 3 to 10 days and is followed by a second febrile attack during which organisms reappear in the blood but in smaller numbers. There may be from 3 to 10 such recurring febrile attacks. The mortality in the endemic infection varies between 2 and 5 per cent but in epidemics it may be 50 per cent or even higher. In fatal cases organisms are found in sections of the spleen and the liver and are particularly numerous in the malpighian bodies of the spleen which show miliary necrotic lesions. Hemorrhagic lesions may be found in the gastrointestinal tract and in the kidney. There have been occasional reports of relapsing fever in the offspring of infected mothers presumably caused by transplacental inoculation.

Monkeys, mice and rats can be inoculated subcutaneously, intravenously or intraperi-

TABLE 1 GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF VARIOUS SPECIES OF *Borrelia* RESPONSIBLE FOR RELAPSING FEVER AND THEIR VECTORS

	SPECIES OF <i>Borrelia</i> *	MODE OF TRANSMISSION	
		LOUSE BORNE ( <i>Pediculus humanus</i> )	TICK BORNE ( <i>Ornithodoros</i> )
Europe	<i>recurrentis</i> <i>obermeieri</i> <i>hispanica</i>	+	<i>O erraticus (maroccanus)</i> <i>O verrucosus</i>
Africa	<i>duttoni (crociduri)</i> <i>kochi</i> <i>rusi</i> <i>berbera</i> <i>aegyptica</i> <i>turicatae</i> <i>marocana</i> <i>sogdiana</i>	+	<i>O moubata</i> <i>O erraticus (maroccanus)</i> <i>O turicata</i>
Middle East	<i>persica</i>		<i>O savignyi</i> <i>O papillipes (tholomani)</i> <i>O asperus</i> <i>O lahorensis</i>
India	<i>carteri</i>	+	<i>O tholomani</i> <i>O crossi</i> <i>O lahorensis</i>
Russia	<i>latyshevi</i>		<i>O verrucosus</i> <i>O neerensis</i> <i>O tartakovskyi</i> <i>O tholomani</i>
North America	<i>novyi</i> <i>turicatae</i> <i>parkeri</i> <i>hermsi</i>		<i>O turicata</i> <i>O parkeri</i> <i>O hermsi</i>
Central and South America	<i>dugesi</i> <i>venezuelense</i> <i>neotropicalis</i> <i>turicatae</i>		<i>O dugesi</i> <i>O venezuelensis (rudis)</i> <i>O talaje</i> <i>O turicata</i>

Validity of identification as separate species questionable

Montana Idaho Texas Kansas California Colorado Arizona Utah Florida New Mexico and Oklahoma) Ground squirrel and prairie dog burrows are sometimes heavily infested with ticks with a high incidence of spirochetes suggesting that these and other rodents may serve as natural reservoirs of infection

Although the causative organisms cannot pass through the intact skin they can penetrate the mucous membrane (e.g. conjunctiva) and transplacental infection may also occur The possible role of the bedbug in transmission has been suggested No effective

vaccine is available and chemoprophylactic measures are not practicable In louse borne epidemics the isolation of patients large scale treatment and the mass delousing of the population as with DDT are effective procedures However DDT resistant strains of lice have developed in many areas and this form of control is now less dependable

In endemic areas reduction of the tick population by periodic spraying of living quarters with benzene hexachloride a chemical long used in tick control of cattle has been reported to effect a major reduction in the morbidity of the disease (Holmes 1953)

and the tetracyclines. However, few well controlled clinical or experimental studies have been made with these drugs.

Penicillin appears to be effective when given in large doses—1,000,000 units of crystalline penicillin per day in aqueous solution in divided doses every 3 hours for at least 5 days. Failures have been attributed to inadequate dosage. However, the treatment of choice is chlortetracycline in doses of 0.5 Gm every 6 hours for 5 days then 1.0 Gm twice daily for another 5 days. Children under 10 should be given half this dose. Oxytetracycline in approximately the same dosage as chlortetracycline seems to be equally effective on the basis of limited trials. Streptomycin also seems to have some therapeutic value. Exacerbation of symptoms (Herxheimerlike reaction) frequently occurs immediately following the initiation of drug therapy (Cherry 1955).

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY AND PREVENTION

Human borrelia infections have been reported from all parts of the world except Australia, New Zealand and Oceania. Relapsing fever is transmitted from man to man from animal to animal and from animal to man entirely by insect vectors. While many arthropod insects are capable of natural infection transmission to man is primarily by the body louse and by a variety of ticks and the epidemic pattern is determined largely by the prevalence of these vectors and opportunities for man to be parasitized by them. Thus great epidemics of louse borne relapsing fever have occurred one of the most recent being the great epidemic wave that swept over North Africa in 1942-44 in which an estimated 1 million persons became ill of whom 50,000 died (Gaud and Morgan 1947). Louse borne relapsing fever may occur concomitantly with louse borne typhus fever leading to considerable diagnostic confusion. Tick borne relapsing fever is largely endemic in occurrence, although its prevalence in some areas notably central Africa has reached almost epidemic proportions at times.

In northern and western Africa in Europe and in parts of Asia the disease is spread primarily by the body louse *Pediculus hu-*

*manus* which becomes infectious 4 to 5 days after the ingestion of infected blood and remains infectious for 2 to 3 weeks. The infection in lice is not transmitted to the second generation (Wolman and Wolman 1945). The disease apparently is transmitted when lice are crushed near a bite or scratch which provides a portal of entry for the organism. It is the louse borne infection which may become epidemic under conditions which lower the host resistance and favor the rapid multiplication and the wide dissemination of the insect vector. Thus epidemics generally have occurred in malnourished overcrowded populations with poor personal hygiene and often have been incidental to famine and war. The seasonal incidence, with increased spread in cold weather, probably reflects the heavier louse infestation and the crowding together, for warmth of thickly clothed persons.

In the endemic areas of Central and South Africa over a wide area of Asia and in the Americas the disease is tick borne. The disease is by no means uncommon in the United States. In Texas alone 100 cases were diagnosed during the period June 1942 to May 1949 and it seems likely that many additional cases escaped detection. The most important vector is the genus *Ornithodoros*, many species of which have been shown to be infected in nature (Table 1). There appears to be a remarkable species specificity in this host-parasite relationship. There is some evidence that rodents may serve as natural reservoirs of infection for the tick. Organisms are found in all parts of the infected tick, may persist for years and are transmitted to the ova for many generations, their infectivity for mice remaining unchanged. However, the percentage of transovarian transmission varies widely in different tick species (Davis 1939, 1948). Some tick species appear to transmit infection to man through the coxal fluid while others introduce the organisms directly by a bite. The tick borne disease is not usually epidemic and the seasonal incidence probably is related to the prevalence of the vector. Infected ticks (*O. turicata*, *O. hermsi*, *O. parkeri* and *O. talaje*) have been found over a wide area of the United States (Wyoming

found to be leptospiral rather than viral infections (Beeson and Hankey 1952 Gault *et al* 1952). A recent addition to this list and one of the most unexpected is Fort Bragg fever or pretibial fever first encountered at Fort Bragg North Carolina (Bowdoin 1942 Daniels and Gremm 1943). It was then thought to be a self limiting virus infection but following several years of serial passage through guinea pigs and hamsters it was discovered by Gochenour and his associates (1952) that the infectious agent so propagated was not a virus but a strain of *leptospira* not previously encountered in the United States. This strain differs serologically from *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* and *L. canicola* but resembles *L. autumnalis* originally isolated in the Far East.

The continuing identification of *leptospira* as the etiologic agent in a number of obscure infections coupled with the protean and often minimal clinical aspects of the disease indicate that human leptospirosis already known to be world wide in distribution is probably far more common than has hitherto been suspected and that the possibility of its presence should be duly considered in infections of obscure etiology. At least 7 antigenically distinct strains are known to exist in North America. All have been isolated from cases of human infection as well as from the animal species which seems to be its more usual host. See also the recent review of Alston (1961).

#### MORPHOLOGY AND CULTIVATION

All the pathogenic *leptospira* are indistinguishable morphologically and in most other biologic characteristics except antigenic structure. The description which follows will refer specifically to the type species *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* but applies to other species unless otherwise noted.

*L. icterohaemorrhagiae* is characterized by its extraordinarily fine spirals so closely wound and so short that they may be visible on darkfield examination only as a series of small dots and usually are not distinguished in stained films. The length of the organism varies from 4 to 20 microns. It is approximately 0.1 to 0.2 micron in width and moves by the active rotation of one end of the organism bent into a hook. Both ends may be

motile in which case the actively rotating organism has no translational motion. Considerable confusion and mistaken diagnoses in the past originated in the strands which under in vitro conditions frequently extend from the surface of red blood cells and break off to float free in the plasma. While not actually spiral in form they are extremely difficult to distinguish under the dark field microscope from *leptospira* even in expert hands therefore identification of *leptospira* in human blood specimens is unreliable and probably never should serve as the basis for diagnosis of the disease.

Electron microscope studies (Czekalowski and Eaves 1955 Simpson and White 1961) show a central cylindrical core containing focal areas of increased density which may be nuclei. This core is wound in helical fashion around a much smaller but more rigid axis. There is also an external sheath of poor electron density bound by a thin external membrane. Knoblike structures often occur at the ends of the axis but it is not known whether these have any function in the reproductive process. It is believed that division is usually by transverse fission. No structural differences have been noted among various serotypes.

*Leptospira* are aerobic and grow best at 28 to 30 °C. Various media have been described most of which consist of serum saline enriched with peptone or meat infusion base in 0.2 per cent agar. Chang (1947) recommends the addition of a small amount of an emulsion of fresh guinea pig liver to maintain virulence. *Leptospira* will also grow in simple media consisting of salts, thiamine, asparagine and rabbit serum albumin (Schneiderman *et al* 1953 Johnson and Gary 1962 Vogel and Hutner 1961). More recently isolated colonies have been obtained on semisolid media (Cox and Larson 1957 Armstrong and Goldberg 1960). Growth is also obtained on the chorio allantoic membrane of the chick embryo (Morrow *et al* 1938 Chabaud 1939).

#### SPECIES OF LEPTOSPIRA

In Table 2 are shown the principal antigenic types of *leptospira* together with

## BORRELIA VINCENTI AND ULCERATIVE LESIONS OF THE OROPHARYNX THE GENITALIA AND THE EXTREMITIES

In a diverse group of infections (tropical ulcer Vincent's angina or ulcerative stomatitis pulmonary spirochetosis ulcerative lesions of the genitalia), one finds large numbers of a delicate short (5 to 10 microns), actively motile spiral organism with a variable number of shallow irregular turns. It is usually present in association with a coarse, thick gram negative rod with tapered ends which is often banded or beaded in stained preparations (*Bacillus fusiformis*). There is no agreement as to whether these two organisms are the actual cause of the necrotic lesions or only secondary invaders. Thus the infection has been ascribed by some to a herpeslike virus (Black, 1942) and by others to a predisposing vitamin or other dietary deficiency which would permit the invasion of the tissues by normally harmless organisms of the surface of the mucous membranes. It should be noted that these same organisms can be recovered from about the gingival margins of almost all healthy adult human beings sometimes in large numbers in which case there is usually an associated pyorrhea (Thomson 1956 Ngu 1960).

These organisms appear to respond satisfactorily to the broad spectrum antibiotics particularly chloramphenicol and oxytetracycline (Ampofo and Findlay 1951). Skin grafting may be necessary (Nelson and Semambo, 1956).

## LEPTOSPIRA AND THE LEPTOSPIROSES

### INTRODUCTION

The genus *Leptospira* comprises a group of spiral organisms which in morphology, biologic characteristics and antigenic structure have little in common with either the *Treponema* or the *Borrelia* group of spirochetes. Unlike the *Borrelia* and the pathogenic *Treponema* they can be cultivated readily on artificial media. A number of species of *Leptospira* have been identified each with fairly distinctive characteristics in respect of antigenic structure and often

their host range but all the leptospira cause an acute illness in man which, while it may vary in severity, is similar in its general pattern regardless of the species involved. It appears, too, that wild rodents are the natural hosts and the essential reservoirs of all the pathogenic leptospiral organisms. Spirochetes with the morphology of leptospira may rarely be found about the gingival margins and in other chronic ulcerative lesions and leptospira (*L. biflexa*) have been cultured from tap water but little is known about the antigenic structure of these presumably non-pathogenic varieties.

The historical association of jaundice with leptospiral infection stemming from the classic description of the disease by Weil and designation of the first pathogenic species isolated as *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* probably has contributed to the tardy recognition in the United States at least, of the true prevalence of leptospiral infections. Jaundice while a prominent clinical sign in many severe cases, is present in less than half of all recognized cases of leptospirosis.

### HISTORY

Spirochetal fever (also termed spirochetal jaundice or Weil's disease) was first described in 1886 as a febrile disease associated with jaundice and characterized by involvement of the kidney and the spleen. The causative organism was isolated in 1915 by Inada and his co-workers who also demonstrated the role of rats as natural vectors. Inoculated guinea pigs from infected rats and demonstrated the organism in each stage of that cycle.

It has since developed that there are many different leptospiral species, which vary in their geographic distribution, host range and antigenic structure. Many and perhaps all of these are pathogenic for man and over the past 2 decades a number of previously obscure infections have been identified as leptospiral in origin. The marsh or field fever of central Europe (*L. grippityphosa*) the 7-day fever of Japan (*L. hebdomadis*) and swineherd's disease first seen in Australia and since recognized in both Europe and the United States (*L. pomona*) are cases in point. A significant proportion of cases of so-called aseptic meningitis have also been

found to be leptospiral rather than viral infections (Beeson and Hankey 1952 Gauld *et al* 1952). A recent addition to this list, and one of the most unexpected is Fort Bragg fever or pretibial fever first encountered at Fort Bragg North Carolina (Bowdoin 1942 Daniels and Grennan 1943). It was then thought to be a self limiting virus infection but following several years of serial passage through guinea pigs and hamsters it was discovered by Gochenour and his associates (1952) that the infectious agent so propagated was not a virus but a strain of leptospira not previously encountered in the United States. This strain differs serologically from *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* and *L. canicola* but resembles *L. autumnalis* originally isolated in the Far East.

The continuing identification of leptospira as the etiologic agent in a number of obscure infections coupled with the protean and often minimal clinical aspects of the disease indicate that human leptospirosis already known to be world wide in distribution is probably far more common than has hitherto been suspected and that the possibility of its presence should be duly considered in infections of obscure etiology. At least 7 antigenically distinct strains are known to exist in North America. All have been isolated from cases of human infection as well as from the animal species which seems to be its more usual host. See also the recent review of Alston (1961).

#### MORPHOLOGY AND CULTIVATION

All the pathogenic leptospira are indistinguishable morphologically and in most other biologic characteristics except antigenic structure. The description which follows will refer specifically to the type species *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* but applies to other species unless otherwise noted.

*L. icterohaemorrhagiae* is characterized by its extraordinarily fine spirals so closely wound and so short that they may be visible on darkfield examination only as a series of small dots and usually are not distinguished in stained films. The length of the organism varies from 4 to 20 microns. It is approximately 0.1 to 0.2 micron in width and moves by the active rotation of one end of the organism bent into a hook. Both ends may be

motile, in which case the actively rotating organism has no translational motion. Considerable confusion and mistaken diagnoses in the past originated in the strands which under in vitro conditions frequently extend from the surface of red blood cells and break off to float free in the plasma. While not actually spiral in form they are extremely difficult to distinguish under the dark field microscope from leptospira even in expert hands therefore identification of leptospira in human blood specimens is unreliable and probably never should serve as the basis for diagnosis of the disease.

Electron microscope studies (Czekalowski and Eaves 1955 Simpson and White 1961) show a central cylindrical core containing focal areas of increased density which may be nuclei. This core is wound in helical fashion around a much smaller but more rigid axis. There is also an external sheath of poor electron density bound by a thin external membrane. Knoblike structures often occur at the ends of the axis but it is not known whether these have any function in the reproductive process. It is believed that division is usually by transverse fission. No structural differences have been noted among various serotypes.

Leptospira are aerobic and grow best at 28 to 30°C. Various media have been described most of which consist of serum saline enriched with peptone or meat in fusion base in 0.2 per cent agar. Chang (1947) recommends the addition of a small amount of an emulsion of fresh guinea pig liver to maintain virulence. Leptospira will also grow in simple media consisting of salts, thiamine, asparagine and rabbit serum albumin (Schneiderman *et al* 1953 Johnson and Gary 1962 Vogel and Hutner 1961). More recently isolated colonies have been obtained on semisolid media (Cox and Larson 1957 Armstrong and Goldberg 1960). Growth is also obtained on the chorioallantoic membrane of the chick embryo (Morrow *et al* 1938 Chabaud 1939).

#### SPECIES OF LEPTOSPIRA

In Table 2 are shown the principal antigenic types of leptospira together with



TABLE 2 SEROLOGIC CLASSIFICATION OF SOME OF THE LEPTOSPIRAL SPECIES PATHOGENIC FOR MAN\*

SEROGROUPS	IMMUNOLOGICALLY RELATED SPECIES	ISOLATED		RECOVERED FROM	KNOWN DISTRIBUTION
		Year	Country		
† <i>L. ictero haemorrhagiae</i>		1914	Japan	Rats mice other rodents swine foxes apes dogs cats opossum horses poultry calves muskrat	World wide
† <i>L. canicola</i>		1931	Holland	Dogs golden hamsters	World wide
	<i>L. salinam</i>	1923	Dutch East Indies	Rats guinea pigs	Southeast Asia
	<i>L. ballum</i>	1943	Denmark	Mice white rats rabbit guinea pigs opossum raccoon skunk fox wildcat	North America, Denmark France
<i>L. hebdomadis</i>		1918	Japan	Field mice dogs opossum raccoon skunk	Japan Eastern Asia Indonesia Europe North America
	<i>L. sejroe</i>	1937	Denmark	Field mice	Central Europe Indonesia
	<i>L. sarkoebing</i>	1942	Denmark	White rats field mice	Central Europe
<i>L. pomona</i>		1937	Australia (Queensland)	Swine cattle dogs raccoon skunk wildcat	Australia Indonesia Middle East Central Europe North and South America
	<i>L. bovis</i>	1948	USA	Cattle goats sheep	USA Europe Israel
<i>L. grippotyphosa</i>		1928	Russia	Field mice other rodents raccoon skunk	South and East Europe Africa Israel Southeast Asia USA
	<i>L. bovis (palestinense)</i>	1947	Palestine	Cattle goats sheep field mice chickens	USA Europe Israel
	<i>L. gesseni</i>	1950	Israel	Goats cattle voles mice	Israel
<i>L. autumnalis</i>		1925	Japan	Field mice rats dogs guinea pigs	Japan Southeast Asia Indonesia USA Switzerland
	Fort Bragg Strain	1952 (1943)	USA	Opossum raccoon	USA
<i>L. australis</i>		1937	Australia (Queensland)	Field rats shrew dogs swine guinea pigs opossum raccoon	Australia Southeast Asia Japan Central Europe
	<i>L. pyrogenes</i>	1922	Indonesia	Field rats guinea pigs bandicoot swine	Australia Southeast Asia Italy North America
<i>L. mitis</i>		1940	Australia (Queensland)	Cattle swine	Switzerland Italy Australia
	<i>L. hyos</i>	1944	Argentina	Swine cattle horses opossum raccoon skunk wildcat	Argentina France North America
<i>L. batavia</i>		1926	Netherlands East Indies	Rats cats field mice guinea pigs swine dogs	Indonesia Malaya Europe Central Africa

\* Compiled largely from Schlossberger and Brandis 1954  
 † These two subgroups are closely related serologically

certain related historical and epidemiologic data (Walch Sordrager 1939 Wolff 1953 Schlossberger and Brandis 1954) but the classification given is far from definitive. Wolff (1953) for instance gives somewhat different relationships in a more complicated scheme. As our knowledge increases doubtless both the geographic and the natural host ranges of these species will be found to be more extensive. All the pathogenic species seem to be distinct from the nonpathogenic *L. biflexa* found the world over in small streams, lakes and stagnant water but even these two groups have certain antigens in common. The differentiation of the pathogenic strains is complicated by the marked degree of cross reactivity indicative of a considerable overlapping in antigenic structure and necessitating quantitative serologic tests and in particular careful antibody absorption studies. Fractionation studies indicate that a somatic antigen probably a lipopolysaccharide is genus specific while a surface antigen is species specific. The latter is yet chemically undefined but may be recovered from culture supernates as well as from the organisms themselves (Rothstein 1957).

Therefore the division of this group of organisms into species and subspecies is made on a rather arbitrary basis and the studies of Bessemans and his associates (1947) and Pike and Schulze (1958) in which exposure to specific antisera led to antigenic variants suggest that similar antigenic instability might occur in nature. About 60 serotypes have been distinguished.

Antibody studies have been carried out principally with agglutination lysis and complement fixation techniques using whole cultured organisms as antigens. Soluble antigens have also been used in complement fixation and precipitation tests. The agglutination lysis test using living organisms as antigen is the test that is used most frequently although organisms killed by heat or formalin have also been employed. It is unfortunate that more definitive studies on killed antigens or antigenic fractions have not been made since the lack of readily available living cultures of various species of *leptospira* has greatly limited the use of tests for leptospiral antibody in clinical and epidemiologic practice.

Other techniques have been proposed but their uses and limitations have not been clearly defined. Among these are the complement fixation test employing sonically disrupted leptospiral antigens (Randall Wetmore and Warner 1949), hemagglutination of human O or sheep erythrocytes following sensitization with extracts of *leptospira* (Chang and McComb 1954 Cox 1955) and the use of infrared spectrophotometry for the differentiation of leptospiral species (Schneider and McLaughlin 1955). Alexander and his associates (1956) have recently demonstrated a soluble thermolabile oxygen stable hemolysin in certain species which is highly toxic for experimental animals (Sleight and Langham 1962).

#### HOST RANGE AND PATHOGENESIS

It is probable that wild rodents constitute the natural reservoir of all leptospiral species although some species have not yet been recovered from these animals. In the United States several studies have shown that from 40 to 60 per cent of wild rats are naturally infected with *leptospira* (Li and Davis 1952). In most of these studies the infecting organism has been considered to be *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* but only limited studies have been made to ascertain whether this is the only species of *leptospira* commonly carried by rats. As indicated in Table 2 several species of *leptospira* have been recovered from mice, field rats and other small rodents. Many species of wild and domesticated animals also have been found to be naturally infected but like man these are probably aberrant hosts rather than important reservoirs of infection (Alston 1961 Gorman *et al.* 1962 Evans *et al.* 1962).

Of the common experimental animals the guinea pig and the Syrian hamster are the most susceptible; the young of each species being much more susceptible than the adult animal. Some species of *leptospira*, notably *L. icterohaemorrhagiae*, appear to produce a more severe disease in guinea pigs and hamsters than others but it is not certain that this constitutes a reliable differential point for some strains of all species induce a mild and largely symptomless infection in these animals while an occasional strain of many species induces a more severe infection.

Packchianian (1940) found 26 species and subspecies of American rodents to be susceptible to *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* infection death occurring in 3 to 13 days usually preceded by jaundice. Following intraperitoneal intramuscular or subcutaneous inoculation of infective material young (3 to 6 weeks old) guinea pigs and hamsters develop fever and loss of weight within 3 to 5 days, followed by jaundice and multiple hemorrhages in the skin the subcutaneous tissue and the muscles. *Leptospira* can be demonstrated readily in the blood the peritoneal fluid or the homogenates of the liver or the spleen. In mild infections recovery is rapid, and *leptospira* can be recovered only early in the infection.

Wild rats and other small rodents cannot be used experimentally because of the likelihood of natural infection and even laboratory stocks have been found to be infected. Infection is rarely fatal in these animals and it is probable that they remain infected for life. There is frequently an extensive and long lasting kidney involvement which can be demonstrated readily by darkfield examination culture or guinea pig inoculation and the animal may excrete *leptospira* in the urine during the rest of its life. Water and food contaminated by the urine of infected rodents appear to be the principal means of spread to other animals and man.

It is not known whether the initial site of multiplication of *leptospira* in infected animals and man is the blood or one or more of the internal organs but early in the disease *leptospira* can be recovered from the blood often the urine and from the liver the spleen the muscles and the serous surfaces including the meninges and the cerebrospinal fluid. The liver and the spleen enlarge and an obstructive type of jaundice develops. Petechial hemorrhages in the muscles, the skin the sclerae etc. are among the most common manifestations of the disease in both man and animals (Stavitsky 1945).

#### LEPTOSPIROSIS IN MAN

Various clinical syndromes have become associated in the literature with a particular species of *leptospira* but as time goes on these syndromes appear less and less to be specific to any one species (Edwards and Domm, 1960) a possible exception may be

pretibial fever. Regardless of the species of *leptospira* involved, the disease in man is characterized by an acute febrile illness muscle pains and headache, albuminuria and the occurrence of multiple small hemorrhages which may be particularly noticeable in the sclerae. In the classic Weil's disease originally believed to be due only to *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* jaundice was a prominent sign, but it is now known that many individuals infected with this species of *leptospira* do not have jaundice while some patients infected with the other types do present this sign. In general perhaps *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* and *L. canicola* tend to give rise to a more severe type of human disease than do the other species although undoubtedly many mild cases of all types go undiagnosed evidenced by the occurrence of high titer agglutinins in individuals who have had no illness especially suggestive of leptospirosis (Ward and Turner 1942, Miller 1961). There is probably some degree of meningeal involvement in most cases and a not insignificant proportion of cases of aseptic meningitis have been found to be due to leptospirosis.

Even in cases which can reasonably be attributed to a single species the disease in man has all degrees of severity varying from infections so mild as scarcely to attract the attention of the patient and recognizable only by serologic test to serious sometimes fatal illnesses with deep jaundice and profound prostration. It usually begins after an incubation period of 10 to 15 days as an acute febrile illness which runs an irregular course some patients relapsing after an afebrile interval. Conjunctivitis (episcleral injection) is a prominent and almost pathognomonic symptom. The central nervous system may be involved with the appearance of the organism in the cerebrospinal fluid. Meningeal involvement is particularly common in infections with *L. icterohaemorrhagiae*, *L. grippotyphosa*, *L. canicola* and *L. pomona* and several outbreaks of leptospiral meningitis have been described (Gauld *et al.* 1952, Beeson and Hankey 1952). It seems clear that not only the severity of the disease but also its manifestations may vary widely in different areas and in different outbreaks and that the care used in looking for the

disease affects the number of relatively mild cases discovered. The febrile illness subsides by lysis after 3 to 10 days and may be followed by a second bout of fever. In fatal cases there are hemorrhagic lesions in the kidney, the liver, the skin, the muscles or the central nervous system. The mortality is extremely variable, ranging from 4 to 50 per cent in different outbreaks, with an average of 5 to 10 per cent.

#### DIAGNOSIS

Definitive diagnosis rests on demonstration of *leptospira* or the appearance of specific antibodies in the serum. Early in the disease the organisms may be demonstrated in the blood by animal inoculation or by growth in culture; the use of both methods concurrently yields a greater number of positive results than either method alone. Young guinea pigs or hamsters are inoculated intraperitoneally with 0.5 ml of citrated whole blood or blood plasma after light centrifugation; the weight of the animal is taken daily and when the animal ceases to gain or loses weight it is sacrificed and peritoneal fluid, blood or suspensions of liver are examined under the darkfield for *leptospira*. Subculture of the test animal's blood will also yield a few positive isolations that otherwise would be missed. Direct examination of the patient's blood is unreliable because of the difficulty of differentiating *leptospira* from red cell strands (Wolff 1954; Babudieri 1961).

The proportion of patients with demonstrable *leptospira* in the blood declines sharply during the second and the third weeks of illness, but at this time the organisms may be recovered from the urine. It is necessary to alkalinize the urine, since *leptospira* rapidly disintegrate in an acid medium.

Antibodies to the specific type of *leptospira* appear from the 7th to the 14th day of disease and rise sharply, as demonstrated by the agglutination lysis or the complement fixation test; the former test is regarded as the more reliable. A significant rise in antibody is particularly convincing. Cross reactions between species of *leptospira* occur, but it is desirable to use antigens prepared from several species. In the United States antigens prepared from *L. icterohaemorrhagiae*

and *L. pomona* and *L. autumnalis* should be used for ordinary diagnostic studies; there is usually considerable serologic crossing between *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* and *L. canicola*.

#### IMMUNITY

The decrease in the number of organisms after the first 7 to 10 days probably reflects the development of specific antibodies. The serum of convalescent patients protects guinea pigs and mice against an otherwise fatal inoculum and will cause lysis of the *leptospira* both in vitro and in vivo. Agglutinating antibodies have been found to persist in the blood of recovered patients for many years. Hyperimmune rabbit antiserum may have agglutination titers of 1:10 000 000 and 0.3 ml of such serum administered even 72 hours after inoculation may cure the infection in white mice.

Artificial immunization has been carried out in animals and in human beings in a few areas. Reactions in man tend to be severe and on the whole active immunization is not recommended. However, Wan (1933) claimed reduction in the incidence of Weil's disease following vaccination of coal miners in Japan with killed *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* and numerous workers have demonstrated satisfactory rises in leptospiral antibodies following vaccination with heat-killed organisms (Borg Peteresen 1953; Babudieri *et al.* 1955; Parnas *et al.* 1959). Animals both experimental and domestic have been immunized with heat-killed and formalin-killed organisms with what appear to be successful results (Alston and Broom 1958; Alston 1961).

#### TREATMENT

No specific treatment yields dramatically effective results (Kocen 1962). Specific antiserum therapy and the use of the sulfonamides have been discarded. While favorable results with one or another antibiotic have been reported, the results of carefully controlled experiments have been disappointing. Penicillin is the drug of choice.

Penicillin in amounts as small as 0.4 units per ml (about 0.25 mcg per ml) will inhibit the growth of *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* in culture (Alston and Broom 1958) but the

drug is not leptospiricidal even in large amounts. The tetracyclines also inhibit growth in vitro in rather small amounts (0.2 to 20 mcg per ml) but leptospiricidal levels are far higher than those clinically attainable in man (500 to 700 mcg per ml).

In a controlled series of 79 patients treated with various antibiotics reported by Smadel (1953) no clear-cut response to the drugs could be demonstrated. In a more recent series Kocin (1962) treated 28 patients with penicillin and compared the results with those in 33 patients treated in the same hospital without antibiotics. Penicillin significantly reduced the duration of pyrexia and may have otherwise beneficially affected the course of the disease. In this series soluble penicillin 600,000 units was given intramuscularly at 4-hour intervals for 24 hours, then at 6-hour intervals for 4 days for a total of 13.2 million units.

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY AND PREVENTIVE MEASURES

Leptospirosis is primarily a zoonosis and man is an aberrant host. Wild rodents appear to be the principal reservoirs; it is not clear whether certain domestic animals known to be frequently infected with leptospira should be regarded as primary or secondary reservoirs. The organisms are communicated to man either directly or indirectly by way of water or soil, although leptospira do not survive long in nature outside an animal host. The organism presumably enters the body through small breaks in the skin or through intact mucous membranes, particularly the conjunctiva (Stavitsky 1945).

Many more animal species can be infected experimentally than have been found infected in nature. For example leptospira have been transmitted experimentally to ticks (*O. moubata*) which then became capable of infecting guinea pigs, although neither of these species has been found infected in nature.

In general, leptospiral infection in rodents is symptomless, but experience in the laboratory with hamsters suggests that the young of the species may be more susceptible.

Leptospiral infection of domestic animals has become associated with certain serotypes, but the more that infection is recognized the more are exceptions to the general rule discovered. Thus infections in dogs usu-

ally have been with *L. canicola* or *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* but most other species have been recovered occasionally (Alexander *et al.*, 1957). Cattle and horses also have been found infected with almost all species of leptospira.

The similarity of the clinical syndrome in man caused by different species of leptospira has already been referred to and it is probable that epidemiologic syndromes also are no more specific but merely reflect opportunities for infection. The commonest epidemiologic pattern presents a situation in which man comes into frequent contact with water contaminated by leptospira-containing urine of infected rodents or domestic animals (Wolff and Ruys, 1953). The opportunities for this occurrence are countless and the wonder is that human beings are not infected more often. Thus the risk is comparatively great among sewer and mine workers, soldiers in trench warfare, bathers in swimming holes and canals, workers in cane and rice fields, and poultry dressers. For example, it has been shown that the sudden outbreak of human cases in the rice fields of northern Italy corresponds to the invasion of these fields by mice early in July. During this period great numbers of young mice are born so that the surface water is contaminated with urine containing leptospira (Mino 1942). Likewise Kathe (1951) demonstrated that epidemics of swamp fever occurred in Silesia only when (1) abundant rainfall was coincident with an epizootic in field mice, (2) agricultural areas were covered by flood water, and (3) the mean daily temperature was not lower than 18 to 19°C. On the other hand, domestic animals may cause leptospirosis in man independent of conditions of the climate and the soil. Infection may occur through contact with infected animals, urine, or by handling the flesh of diseased animals. Bernkopf and his associates (1947) have shown that refrigerated meat of bovine carriers may remain infective for 33 hours after slaughtering. The incidence of leptospirosis in man may change in any region according to changing conditions of animal husbandry.

Leptospirosis can occur at all seasons in all age groups and in both sexes, however, for the reasons given above it is a disease primarily of warm weather, with highest in-

cidence among young male adults and certain occupational groups. Preventive measures vary according to (1) the ecology of the carrier host (2) the mode of transmission of infection and (3) the population endangered and they must be developed to meet the different epidemiologic patterns encountered. Elimination of rat infestation in eating establishments and dwellings will prevent a small proportion of cases. Infections from bathing in public pools can be prevented by denying access to rats through proper sanitation and screening (Walch Sorgdrager 1939). Little can be done to reduce the risk of bathing in natural streams and stagnant pools except to warn individuals of the risk (Gawld *et al* 1952). The risk of infection among sewer workers and swineherds is greatest for those who go bare foot. Wearing strong boots is therefore a preventive measure. Leptospirosis has been controlled among poultry dressers and fish mongers by correction of unsanitary conditions in which offal rats and standing water provided opportunities for the spread of infection (Davidson and Smith 1939; Ward *et al* 1942). A marked reduction in the incidence of canefield fever has been obtained by burning the dry leaves of standing cane which grows in low lying areas. Burning is done just before cutting and does not damage the canes; it drives out rats and evaporates rat urine and small pools of surface water (Broom 1953). Protection of the hands by heavy gloves has been recommended for butchers and other workers who handle potentially infected meat.

Of the three links in the chain of transmission—the carrier, the leptospira outside the body of the carrier, and the susceptible host—preventive measures have been directed most often against the center link by ratproofing or by the wearing of protective clothing. Vaccines have probably not reached a stage of practical efficacy although promising results have been reported in man and in animal (Alston and Broom 1958; Alston 1961).

## REFERENCES

- Alexander A D, Gleiser C A, Malnati P and Yoder H 1957 Observations on the prevalence of leptospirosis in canine populations of the United States. *Am J Hyg* 65: 43-56.
- Alexander A D, Smith O H, Hiatt C W and Gleiser C A 1956 Presence of hemolysin in cultures of pathogenic leptospires. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 91: 205-211.
- Alston J M 1961 Recent developments in leptospirosis. *Proc Roy Soc Med* 54: 61-67.
- Alston J M and Broom J C 1958 *Leptospirosis in Man and Animals*. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore.
- Ampofo O and Findlay G M 1951 Terramycin in the treatment of yaws and tropical ulcer. *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med Hyg* 45: 261-263.
- Anderson E H 1946 Penicillin in the treatment of experimental relapsing fever in rats. *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med Hyg* 40: 93-100.
- Armstrong J C and Goldberg H H 1960 Observations on the colonial morphology of leptospires. *Am J Vet Res* 21: 311-315.
- Ashbel R 1942 Observations on some strains of *Spirochaeta persica* in Palestine. *Ann Trop Med Parasit* 36: 97-101.
- Babudieri B 1958 Animal reservoirs of leptospires. *Ann NY Acad Sci* 70: 393-413.
- 1961 Laboratory diagnosis of leptospirosis. *Bull WHO* 24: 45-58.
- Babudieri B *et al* 1955 *Rev san e hig pub* 29: 161-166. (Cited by Alston 1961).
- Bayon H 1913 A new species of *Treponema* found in the genital sores of rabbits. *Brit Med J* 2: 1159.
- Beeson P B and Hunkey D D 1952 Leptospirosis meningitis. *Arch Intern Med* 89: 575-583.
- Bekker J H 1962 Limitations of the Rexter protein complement fixation (RPLF) test. *Brit J Vener Dis* 38: 131-133.
- Bernkopf H, Olitzki L and Stuczynski L A 1947 Studies on bovine and human leptospirosis. *J Infect Dis* 80: 53-63.
- Bessemans A 1938 Temperatures tissulaires generales chez le lapin normal. *Ann physiol physio chim biol* 14: 941-970.
- Bessemans A and duMoore A 1939 Receptivite des petits animaux du laboratoire a la syphilis et a la paludisme. *Ann Inst Pasteur* 63: 569-591.
- Bessemans A and Derom R 1947 Nouvelle transformation antigenique d'une souche leptospirienne. *Bull Acad Roy Med Belg* 12: 236-245.
- Black W C 1942 The etiology of acute infectious gingivostomatitis (Vincent's stomatitis). *J Pediatr* 20: 145-160.
- Böhl S W, Irons J V and De Shazo T

Alexander A D, Gleiser C A, Malnati P and Yoder H 1957 Observations on the prevalence of leptospirosis in canine popula-

- 1940 Cultivation of relapsing fever spirochetes in embryonic chick Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 45 375 377
- Bordet J and Gengou O 1901, Sur l'existence de substances sensibilisatrices dans la plupart des serums antimicrobiens Ann Inst Pasteur 15 289 302
- Borg Petersen C, and Erbebo Knudsen E O 1953 On vaccination of man against Weil's disease Nord hyg tidskr 34 109 118
- Bowdoin C D 1942 A new disease entity (?) J Med Ass Georgia 31 437 438
- Bradfield J R G and Cater D B 1952 Electron microscopic evidence on the structure of spirochaetes Nature 169 944 946
- Broom J C 1953 Leptospirosis in tropical countries A review Trans Roy Soc Trop Med Hyg 47 273 286
- Bruusgaard E 1929 Ueber das Schicksal der nicht spezifisch behandelten Luetiker Arch Dermat Syph 157 309
- Campbell R E and Rosahn P D 1950 The morphology and staining characteristics of the *Treponema pallidum* Review of the literature and description of a new technique for staining the organism in tissues Yale J Biol Med 22 527 543
- Cannefax G R 1963 Reiter protein antigen I Relationship of some physical and chemical characteristics to serological activity Brit J Vener Dis 39 121 127
- Chabaud A 1939 Infection de l'embryon de poule par *Spirochaeta duttoni* et *Spirochaeta icterohaemorrhagiae* Bull soc path exot 32 483 485
- Chang R S M and McComb D E 1954 Erythrocyte sensitizing substances from five strains of leptospirae Am J Trop Med Hyg 3 481-489
- Chang M L 1947 Studies on *Leptospira icterohaemorrhagiae* I Two new mediums for growing *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* *L. canicola* and *L. biflexor* and a method for maintaining the virulence of *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* in culture J Infect Dis 81 28 34
- Chen K 1941 Growth of louse borne relapsing fever spirochetes in chick embryo Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 46 638 639
- Chen Y P Zia S H and Anderson H H 1945 Immunity reactions in experimental relapsing fever Am J Trop Med 25 115 127
- Cherry J K T 1955 The prevention and treatment of tick borne relapsing fever with special reference to aureomycin and terramycin Tr Roy Soc Trop Med Hyg 49 563 573
- Chesney A M 1931 Acquired immunity in syphilis The Harvey Lectures 1929 30 Ser 25 103 128
- Chesney A M Turner T W and Halley C R L 1928 Studies in experimental syphilis VIII On the localization of syphilitic lesions in inflamed areas Bull J Hopkins Hosp 42 319 334
- Clark E G and Danbolt N 1955 The Oslo study of the natural history of untreated syphilis An epidemiologic investigation based on a restudy of the Boeck Bruusgaard Material A review and appraisal J Chronic Dis 2 311 344
- Cockburn T A 1961 The origin of the treponematoses Bull WHO 24 221 228
- Coghill N F and Gambles R M 1948 Discussion of methods for differentiating tick from louse borne relapsing fever spirochaetes Ann Trop Med Parasit 42 113 117
- Coons A H 1960 Immunofluorescence Public Health Rep 75 937 943
- Labelled antigens and antibodies Ann. Rev Microbiol 8 333 352
- Coons A H and Kaplan M H 1950 Localization of antigen in tissue cells II Improvements in a method for the detection of antigen by means of fluorescent antibody J Exp Med 91 1 13
- Cox C D 1955 Hemolysis of sheep erythrocytes sensitized with leptospiral extracts Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 90 610-615
- Cox C D and Larson A D 1957 Colonial growth of *Leptospirae* J Bact 73 587 589
- Csonka G 1955 Skin testing in syphilis using *Treponema pallidum* agglutination (TPA) antigen a preliminary report (Unpublished working document WHO/VDT/136)
- Cumberland M C and Turner T B 1949 The rate of multiplication of *T. pallidum* in normal and immune rabbits Am J Syph 33 201
- Cunningham J Theodore J H and Fraser A G L 1934 Further observations on Indian relapsing fever I Types of spirochaetes found in experimental infections Indian J Med Res 22 105 155
- Czekalowski J W and Eaves G 1955 The structure of *Leptospirae* as revealed by electron microscopy J Path Bact 69 129 132
- D'Alessandro G and Dardanoni L 1953 Isolation and purification of the protein antigen of the Reiter treponeme Am J Syph 37 137
- Daniels W B and Grennan H A 1943 Prettib fever an obscure disease JAMA 122 361
- Davidson L S P and Smith J 1939 Weil's

- disease in the North East of Scotland An account of 104 cases *Brit Med J* 2 753
- Davis G E 1939 *Ornithodoros parkeri* distribution and host data spontaneous infection with relapsing fever spirochetes *Public Health Rep* 54 1345 1349
- 1948 The Spirochetes *Ann Rev Microbiol* 2 305 334
- Deacon W E and Freeman E M 1960 Fluorescent treponemal antibody studies *J Invest Derm* 34 249 253
- Deacon W E and Hunter E F 1962 Treponemal antigens as related to identification and syphilis serology *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 110 352 356
- DeBruijn J H 1962 Reiter treponeme in syphilis serology *Brit J Vener Dis* 38 126 130
- DeLamater E D Haanes M Wiggall R H and Pillsbury D M 1951 Studies on the life cycle of spirochetes VIII Summary and comparison of observations on various organisms *J Invest Derm* 16 231 256
- Eagle II Fleischman R and Musselman A H 1950 The effective concentrations of penicillin in vitro and in vivo for streptococci pneumococci and *Treponema pallidum* *J Bact* 59 625 643
- Edwards G A and Domm B M 1960 Human leptospirosis *Medicine* 39 117 156
- Evans L B Wood G E Flyger V Alexander A D Yager R H and Rubin H L 1962 Natural occurrence of *Leptospira icterohaemorrhagiae* in an opossum *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 110 113 115
- Ferris H W and Turner T B 1938 Comparison of cutaneous lesions produced in rabbits by intracutaneous inoculation of spirochetes from yaws and syphilis *Arch Path (Chicago)* 26 491 500
- Findlay G M and Wilcox R R 1945 A human experiment on the relationship of yaws and syphilis *Brit Med Bull* 3 197
- Frazier C N Bense A. and Keuper C S 1952 Further observations on the duration of spirochetemia in rabbits with asymptomatic syphilis *Am J Syph* 36 167
- Frazier C N Bense A. and Keuper C S 1950 Phenomena of disease in rabbits fed cholesterol and inoculated with *Treponema pallidum* II Infectivity of blood *Amer J Syph* 34 453-459
- Galton M M Menges R W and Steele J H 1958 Epidemiological patterns of leptospirosis *Ann NY Acad Sci* 70 427 444
- Gaud M and Morgan M T 1947 Epidemiological Study of Relapsing Fever in North Africa (1943 1945) *Bull WHO* 1 69 92
- Gauld R L Crouch W L Kaminsky A L Hullinghorst R L Gochenour W S Jr and Yager R H 1952 Leptospiral meningitis report of outbreak among American troops in Okinawa *JAMA* 149 228 231
- Gelperin A 1949 Morphology cultural characteristics and a method for mass cultivation of the Reiter spirochete *Amer J Syph* 33 101
- Gjertland T 1955 The Oslo study of untreated syphilis An epidemiologic investigation of the natural course of untreated syphilitic infection based upon a re study of the Boeck Bruusgaard material *Acta Dermatovener (Stockh)* 35 Supplementum 34
- Gochenour W S Jr Gleiser C A and Ward M K 1958 Laboratory diagnosis of leptospirosis *Ann NY Acad Sci* 70 421 426
- Gochenour W S Jr Smadel J E Jackson E B Evans L B and Yager R H 1952 Leptospiral etiology of Fort Bragg fever *Pub Health Rep* 67 811 813
- González Herrejon S 1940 Un nueva espiroquetosis *Proc 8th Am Scient Cong* 6 185 193
- Gorman G W McKeever S and Grimes R D 1962 Leptospirosis in wild mammals from southwestern Georgia *Am J Trop Med and Hyg* 11 518 524
- Guggenheim K Buechler Czaczkes E and Halevy S 1951 Effect of protein deficiency on resistance of rats to infection with spirochetes of relapsing fever *J Infect Dis* 88 105 108
- Hackett C J and Guthe T 1956 Some important aspects of yaws eradication *Bull World Health Organ* 15 869 896
- Hahn R D *et al* 1956 Penicillin treatment of asymptomatic central nervous system syphilis I Probability of progression to symptomatic neurosyphilis *Arch Derm* 74 355 366
- Hahn R D *et al* 1956 Penicillin treatment of asymptomatic central nervous system syphilis II Results of therapy as measured by laboratory findings *Arch Derm* 74 367 377
- Hahn R D *et al* 1959 Penicillin treatment of general paresis (Dementia paralytica) Results of treatment in 1086 patients the majority of whom were followed for more than five years *Arch Neurol* 81 557 590
- Hampp E G 1951 Further studies on the significance of spirochetal granules *J Bact* 62 347 349



- 1951 Preservation of viability and pathogenicity of *Treponema pallidum* by freeze drying Public Health Rep 66 501 506
- Hardy P H Jr Lee Y C and Nell E E 1963a Colonial growth of anaerobic spirochetes on solid media J Bact 86 616 626
- 1963b Personal communication
- Hardy P H Jr and Nell E E 1955 Specific agglutination of *Treponema pallidum* by sera from rabbits and human beings with treponemal infections J Exp Med 101 367 382
- 1957 Study of the antigenic structure of *Treponema pallidum* by specific agglutination Am J Hyg 66 160 172
- 1961 Influence of osmotic pressure on the morphology of the Reiter treponeme J Bact 82 967 978
- Heronimus E S 1928 Beitrage zur Kenntnis der Immunitat bei Rekurrens Zbl Bakt (Orig) 105 394 402
- Hollander D H and Nell E E 1954 Improved preservation of *Treponema pallidum* and other bacteria by freezing with glycerol Appl Microbiol 2 164 170
- Hollander D H and Turner T B 1954 The role of temperature in experimental treponemal infections Am J Syph 38 489
- Hollander D H Turner T B and Nell E E 1952 The effect of long continued subcurative doses of penicillin during the incubation period of experimental syphilis Bull J Hopkins Hosp 90 105 120
- Holmes J W E 1953 Tick control and relapsing fever J Royal San Inst 73 262 265
- Hu C K 1939 Lowered resistance to syphilitic infection in ovariectomized rabbits Am J Syph 23 446-452
- Inada R Ido Y Hoki R Kaneko H and Ito H 1916 The etiology mode of infection and specific therapy of Weil's disease (Spirochaetosis icterohaemorrhagica) J Exp Med 23 377-402
- Jahnel F and Lange J 1928 Syphilis und Framboesie im Lichte neuerer experimenteller Untersuchungen Klin Wschr 7 2133 2140
- Johnson R C and Gary N D 1962 Nutrition of *Leptospira pomona* I A chemically defined substitute for rabbit serum ultrafiltrate J Bact 83 668 672
- Joint Statement 1963 Today's VD Problem Joint Statement by The Association of State and Territorial Health Officers The American Venereal Disease Association and The American Social Health Association Distributed by The American Social Health Association New York NY
- Katze J 1945 Witterungsverhältnisse und Mäuse in ihrer Bedeutung für die Epidemiologie des Schlamms oder Feldfiebers Zbl Bakt (orig) 151 481-489
- Kemp J E Shaw C and Fitzgerald E M 1939 The effect of testosterone propionate on the course of experimental rabbit syphilis Am J Syph 23 430-445
- Khan A S Nelson R A Jr and Turner T B 1951 Immunological relationships among species and strains of virulent treponemes as determined with the treponemal immobilization test Am J Hyg 53 296 316
- Kocen R S 1962 Leptospirosis A comparison of symptomatic and penicillin therapy Brit Med J 1 1181 1183
- Kolle W and Schlossberger H 1926 Experimentelle Studien ueber Syphilis und Rekurrensspirochaetose V Ueber symptomlose Infektion von Mäusen und Ratten sowie symptomlose Superinfektionen syphilitischer Kaninchen mit *S. pallida* Deutsch med Wschr 52 1245 1247
- Kumm H W and Turner T B 1936 The transmission of yaws from man to rabbits by an insect vector *Hippelates pallipes* Loew Am J Trop Med 16 245 271
- Lamanna C and Hollander D H 1956 Demonstration of particulate adhesion of the Rieckenberg type with the spirochete of syphilis Science 123 989 990
- Leon Y Blanco F 1939 Estudios sobre la etiología del mal del pinto la transmisión experimental del mal del pinto de persona a persona nota preliminar Medicina (Mex) 19 17 22
- Leon Y Blanco F and Oteiza A 1945 The experimental transmission of pinta mal del pinto or carate to the rabbit Science 101 309 311
- Leon Y Blanco F and Soberon y Parra G 1941 Nota sobre la transmisión experimental del mal del pinto por medio de una mosca del genero *hippelates* Gac med Mex 71 534 539
- Li H Y and Davis D E 1952 The prevalence of carriers of *Leptospira* and *Sulmonella* in Norway rats of Baltimore Am J Hyg 56 90 100
- Listgarten M A Loesche W J and Socrany S S 1963 Morphology of *Treponema Microdentium* as revealed by electron microscopy of ultrathin sections J Bact 85 932 939
- Magnuson H J Eagle H and Fleischman

- R 1948 The minimal infectious inoculum of *Spirochaeta pallida* (Nichols strain) and a consideration of its rate of multiplication in vivo *Am J Syph* 32 1 18
- Magnuson H J Rosenau B J and Clark J W 1949 The duration of acquired immunity in experimental syphilis *Am J Syph* 33 297
- Magnuson H J and Thomas E W Olan sky S Kaplan H J de Mello L and Cutler J C 1956 Inoculation syphilis in human volunteers *Medicine* 35 33 82
- Magnuson H J Thompson F A Jr and McLeod C P 1951 Relationship between treponemal immobilizing antibodies and acquired immunity in experimental syphilis *J Immun* 67 41-48
- Magnuson H J Thompson F A and Rosenau B J 1950 The effect of subcurative penicillin therapy upon the rate of development of acquired immunity in experimental syphilis *Am J Syph* 34 219 226
- Mahoney J F Arnold R C and Harris A 1943 Penicillin treatment of early syphilis Preliminary report *Ven Dis Inform* 24 355 357
- Martin D S 1958 Introduction Symposium Animal disease and human health III Leptospirosis: a contemporary problem *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 70 391 392
- Marshall L C and Rothman S 1951 Skin testing with a purified suspension of *Treponema pallidum* *Am J Syph* 35 35
- McLeod C P and Magnuson H J 1953 Agglutination of *Treponema pallidum* in syphilitic sera *Public Health Rep* 68 747 755
- McLeod C P and Turner T B 1946 Studies on the biologic relationship between the causative agents of syphilis yaws and venereal spirochetosis of rabbits I. Observations on *T. cuniculi* infection in rabbits II Comparison of the experimental disease produced in rabbits *Am J Syph* 30 442 462
- Meleney H E 1928 Relapse phenomena of *Spironema recurrentis* *J Exp Med* 48 65 112
- Metchnikoff E and Roux E 1903 Etudes expérimentales sur la syphilis *Ann Inst Pasteur* 17 809 821 1904 18 1 6 657 671 1905 19 673 698
- Metchnikoff E and Roux E 1906 Etudes expérimentales sur la syphilis *Ann Inst Pasteur* 20 785 800
- Metzger M Hardy P H Jr and Nell E E 1961 Influence of lysozyme upon the treponeme immobilization reaction *Am J Hyg* 73 236-244
- Michaels L 1907 Präcipitinreaktion bei Syphilis *Klin Wschr* 44 1477
- Miller N G 1961 A serologic investigation of leptospiral infections in dairy farmers and cattle ranchers *Am J Hyg* 74 203 208
- Mino P 1942 Zur Epidemiologie der Leptospirosen *Klin Wschr* 21 337
- Molbert E 1956 Vergleichende elektronenmikroskopische Untersuchungen zur Morphologie von *Treponema pallidum* *Treponema pertenue* und *Reiterspirochäten* *Z Hyg* 142 510 515
- Moore J E and Mohr C F 1952 Biologically false positive serologic tests for syphilis type incidence and cause *JAMA* 150 467
- Morrow G Syverton J T Stiles W W and Berry G P 1938 Growth of *Leptospira icterohemorrhagiae* on the chorio-allantoic membrane of the chick embryo *Science* 88 384 385
- Moursund W H 1942 Historical introduction of the symposium on relapsing fever in A Symposium on Relapsing Fever in the Americas Chap 1 Publication 18 Washington D C American Association for the Advancement of Science
- Mudd S Polevitzky K and Anderson T F 1943 Bacterial morphology as shown by the electron microscope V *Treponema pallidum* T. macrodentia and T. microdentia *J Bact* 46 15 24
- Nelson R A Jr 1948 Factors affecting the survival of *Treponema pallidum* in vitro *Am J Hyg* 48 120 132
- 1953 The immune adherence phenomenon *Science* 118 733
- Nelson R A Jr and Diesendruck J A 1951 Studies on treponemal immobilizing antibodies in syphilis I Techniques of measurement and factors influencing immobilization *J Immun* 66 667 685
- Nelson R A Jr and Mayer M M 1949 Immobilization of *Treponema pallidum* in vitro by antibody produced in syphilitic infection *J Exp Med* 89 369 393
- Nelson G S and Semambo Y B 1956 The treatment of tropical ulcer in the West Nile District of Uganda with special reference to an easily organized itinerant skin grafting team *J Afr Med J* 33 189
- Ngu V A 1960 Tropical ulcers in Ibadan *W Afr Med J* 9 247
- Nelson H A and Idsoe O 1963 Evaluation of the fluorescent treponemal antibody

- test (FTA) Acta path microbiol scand 57 331 342
- Noguchi H and Moore J W 1913 A demonstration of *Treponema pallidum* in the brain in cases of general paralysis J Exp Med 17 232 238
- Oag R L 1940 The comparative susceptibility of the chick embryo and the chick to infection with *Borrelia duttoni* J Path Bact 51, 127 136
- Olansky S and Garson W 1958 The treatment of syphilis with antibiotics other than penicillin Arch Derm 77 648 650
- Packchianian A 1940 Susceptibility and resistance of certain species of American deer mice genus *Peromyscus* and other rodents to *Leptospira icterohaemorrhagiae* Pub Health Rep 55 1389 1402
- Pangborn M C 1945 A simplified preparation of cardiolipin with a note on purification of lecithin for serologic use J Biol Chem 161 71 82
- Parnas J Lazuga A Dabrowski T and Kos Lak A 1959 Etologie de la leptospirose en Pologne et vaccinations humaines Rev Immun (Paris) 23 145 167
- Pike R M and Schulze M L 1958 Serologic variants of *Leptospira* types resulting from growth in immune serum J Immun 81 172 175
- Portnoy J and Magnuson H J 1955 Immunologic studies with fractions of virulent *Treponema pallidum* I Preparation of an antigen by desoxycholate extraction and its use in complement fixation J Immun 75 348 355
- Randall R Wetmore P W and Warner A R Jr 1949 Sonic vibrated leptospirae as antigens in the complement fixation test for the diagnosis of leptospirosis J Lab Clin Med 34 1411 1415
- Ravitch M M and Chambers J W 1942 Spirochaetal survival in frozen plasma Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 71 299 303
- Reynolds F W 1941 The fate of *Treponema pallidum* inoculated subcutaneously into immune rabbits Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 69 53 60
- Rice F A H and Nelson R. A. Jr 1951 The isolation from beef serum of a survival factor for *Treponema pallidum* J Biol Chem 191 35-41
- Ross P H and Milne A D 1904 Tick fever Brit Med J 2 1453 1454
- Rothstein N 1957 Studies on the immunology of leptospires II Heterogenic relationship between leptospires and other micro-organisms J Immun 79 276 280
- Ryter A and Pilot J 1963 Etude au microscope électronique de la structure externe et interne du treponème Reiter Ann Inst Pasteur 104 496 501
- Saenz B Grau Triana J and Armenteros A J 1938 Demonstration de un treponema en el borde activo de un caso de pinto en las manos y pies y en la linfa de ganglios superficiales (reporte preliminar) Arch med intern 4 112 117
- Schaudinn F and Hoffmann E 1905 Ueber Spirochaetenbefunde in Lymphdrüsensaft Syphilitischer Deutsch med Wschr 31 711
- Schlossberger H and Brandis H 1954 *Leptospira* Ann Rev Microbiol 8 133 152
- Schneider M D and McLaughlin J Jr 1955 Infrared spectrophotometry of cellular constituents of leptospires J Bact 70 87 91
- Schneiderman A Greene M R Schieler L McClure L E and Dunn M S 1953 Nutrition of *Leptospira canicola* III Utilization of vitamins and amino acids Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 82 53 56
- Schuhardt V T and Hemphill M C 1946 Brain involvement as a possible cause of relapse after treatment in spirochetal relapsing fever Science 103 422 423
- Schuhardt V T and Wilkerson M 1951 Relapse phenomena in rats infected with single spirochetes (*Borrelia recurrentis* var *turicatae*) J Bact 62 215 219
- Sergeant E 1945 Persistence de *Spirochaeta hispanica* pendant trois ans dans le cerveau d'un cobaye Arch Inst Pasteur d'Algérie 23 245 248
- Simpson C F and White F H 1961 Electron microscope studies and staining reactions of leptospires J Infect Dis 109 243 250
- Sleight S D and Langham R F 1962 The effects of *Leptospira pomona* hemolysin on pregnant ewes cows and sows J Infect Dis 111 63 77
- Smadel J E 1953 The therapy of leptospirosis in Symposium on the Leptospiroses 1952 Washington D C Army Medical Service Graduate School Walter Reed Army Medical Center p 202
- Stavitsky A. H 1945 Studies on the pathogenesis of leptospirosis J Infect Dis 76 179 192
- Stem G J 1944 The serological diagnosis of relapsing fever J Exp Med 79 115 128
- Steinman H G and Eagle H 1950 Nutritional requirements of treponemata II Pantothenic acid glutamine and phenylalanine as additional growth promoting factors for the Reiter treponeme J Bact 60 57 68

- Stockard J L and Woodward T E 1958 Leptospirosis infections in man *Ann NY Acad Sci* 70 414-420
- Strong R P (ed.) 1942 *Stitt's Diagnosis Prevention and Treatment of Tropical Diseases* Ed 6 vols 1 and 2 NY Blakiston
- Swan R H A 1955 Electron microscopic studies of the morphology of pathogenic spirochaetes *J Path Bact* 69 117-128
- Symposium 1958 Animal disease and human health Part III Leptospirosis A contemporary problem *Ann NY Acad Sci* 70 391-444
- Tani T and Aikawa S 1937 Das Wesen der Syphilisimmunität IV Ueber die Pathogenese der symptomlosen Reinfektion *Jap J Exp Med* 15 303-314
- Tani T and Ogiuti K 1936 Das Wesen der Syphilisimmunität II Die spirochatozide Fähigkeit des Syphilissérums *Jap J Exp Med* 14 457-464
- Thomson I G 1956 The pathogenesis of tropical ulcer amongst the Hausas of Northern Nigeria *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med Hyg* 50 485-495
- Turner T B 1936 The resistance of yaws and syphilis patients to reinoculation with yaws spirochetes *Am J Hyg* 23 431-448
- Protective antibodies in the serum of syphilitic rabbits *J Exp Med* 69 867-890
- Turner T B and Fleming W L 1939 Prolonged maintenance of spirochetes and ill-travelling viruses in the frozen state *J Exp Med* 70 629-637
- Turner T B and Hollander D H 1952 Studies on the mechanism of action of cortisone in experimental syphilis New York (New York Academy of Medicine Symposia of the Section of Microbiology No 6) (Reprinted in *Am J Syph* 1954 38 371)
- 1957 *Biology of Treponematoses* Geneva W H O monograph ser no 35 278 pp
- Turner T B, Kluth F C, McLeod C and Winsor C P 1948 Protective antibodies in the serum of syphilitic patients *Am J Hyg* 48 173-181
- Turner T B and Nelson R A Jr 1950 The relationship of treponemal immobilizing antibody to immunity in syphilis *Trans Ass Am Physicians* 64 112-117
- Turner T B, Saunders G M and Johnston H M Jr 1935 Yaws in Jamaica II A plan of control based upon treatment *Am J Hyg* 21 522-539
- Uhlenhuth P and Grossmann H 1928 Zur Frage der Immunität bei Syphilis mit besonderer Berücksichtigung experimenteller Untersuchungen am Kaninchen *Z Immunitätsforsch* 55 380-402
- Varela G and Olarte J 1950 Anticuerpos contra el *Treponema carateum* del "Mal del Pinto" en el suero sanguíneo de pacientes de esta enfermedad *Medicina Mex* 30 316-317
- Vogel H and Hutner B H 1961, Growth of leptospira in defined media *J Gen Microbiol* 26 223-230
- Walch-Sorgdrager B 1939 Leptospiroses *Bull Health Organ League of Nations* 8 143-186
- Wan H 1933 Ueber die Prophylaxe der Spirochaetosis icterohaemorrhagica Inada (Weilsche Krankheit) durch Schutzimpfung *Z Immunitätsforsch* 79 1-26
- Ward T G and Turner T B 1942 Study of certain epidemiological features of leptospiral jaundice in Baltimore *Am J Hyg* 35 122-133
- Wassermann A, Neisser A and Bruck C 1906 Eine seradiagnostische Reaktion bei Syphilis *Deutsch Med Wschr* 32 745
- Weber M M 1960 Factors influencing the in vitro survival of *Treponema pallidum* *Am J Hyg* 71 401-417
- Wile U J and Johnson S A M 1945 Experimental syphilis in different species of native American mice *Am J Syph* 29 416-418
- 1945 Experimental syphilis in the golden hamster *Am J Syph* 29 418-422
- Wile U J and Kearney 1943 The morphology of *Treponema pallidum* in the electron microscope demonstration of flagella *JAMA* 122 167-168
- Wolff J W 1953 The classification of pathogenic leptospiroses in Symposium on the Leptospiroses 1952 Washington D C Army Medical Service Graduate School Walter Reed Army Medical Center p 174
- 1954 *The Laboratory Diagnosis of Leptospirosis* Thomas Springfield Illinois
- Wolff J W and Ruys A C 1953 Changes in the frequency of Weil's disease in Amsterdam during the last eighteen years *Docum med geog trop* 5 247-252
- Wolman H and Wolman M 1945 Studies of the biological properties of *Spirochaeta recurrentis* in the Ethiopian high plateau *Ann Trop Med Parasit* 39 82-93
- Zarafonitis C J, Ingraham H S and Berry J F 1946 Weil-Felix and typhus complement fixation tests in relapsing fever with special reference to *B. proteus* OX K agglutination *J Immun* 52 189-199

- test (FTA) Acta path microbiol scand 57 331 342
- Noguchi H and Moore J W 1913 A demonstration of *Treponema pallidum* in the brain in cases of general paralysis J Exp Med 17 232 238
- Oag R K 1940 The comparative susceptibility of the chick embryo and the chick to infection with *Borrelia duttoni* J Path Bact 51 127 136
- Olansky S and Garson W 1958 The treatment of syphilis with antibiotics other than penicillin Arch Derm 77, 648 650
- Packchamian A 1940 Susceptibility and resistance of certain species of American deer mice genus *Peromyscus* and other rodents to *Leptospira icterohaemorrhagiae* Pub Health Rep 55 1389 1402
- Pangborn M C 1945 A simplified preparation of cardiolipin with a note on purification of lecithin for serologic use J Biol Chem 161 71 74
- Parnas J Lazuga K Dabrowski T and Kos Lak A 1959 Etologie de la leptospirose en Pologne et vaccinations humaines Rev Immun (Paris) 23 145 167
- Pike R M and Schulze M L 1958 Serologic variants of *Leptospira* types resulting from growth in immune serum J Immun 81 172 175
- Portnoy J and Magnuson H J 1955 Immunologic studies with fractions of virulent *Treponema pallidum* I Preparation of an antigen by desoxycholate extraction and its use in complement fixation J Immun 75 348 355
- Randall R Wetmore P W and Warner A R Jr 1949 Sonic vibrated leptospirae as antigens in the complement fixation test for the diagnosis of leptospirosis J Lab Clin Med 34 1411 1415
- Ravitch M M and Chambers J W 1942 Spirochaetal survival in frozen plasma Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 71 299 303
- Reynolds F W 1941 The fate of *Treponema pallidum* inoculated subcutaneously into immune rabbits Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 69 53 60
- Rice F A II and Nelson R A Jr 1951 The isolation from beef serum of a survival factor for *Treponema pallidum* J Biol Chem 191 35 41
- Ross P H and Milne A D 1904 Tick fever Brit Med J 2 1453 1454
- Rothstein N 1957 Studies on the immunology of leptospires II Heterogenic relationship between leptospires and other micro-organisms J Immun 79 276 280
- Ryter A and Pillot J 1963 Etude au microscope électronique de la structure externe et interne du treponème Reiter Ann Inst Pasteur 104 496-501
- Saenz II Grau Triana J and Armenteros A J 1938 Demonstración de un treponema en el borde activo de un caso de pinto en las manos y pies y en la linfa de ganglios superficiales (reporte preliminar) Arch med intern. 4 112 117
- Schaudinn F and Hoffmann E 1905 Ueber Spirochätenbefunde in Lymphdrüsensaft Syphilitischer Deutsch med Wschr 31 711
- Schlossberger H and Brandis II 1954 *Leptospira* Ann Rev Microbiol 8 133 152
- Schneider M D and McLaughlin J Jr 1955 Infrared spectrophotometry of cellular constituents of leptospires J Bact 70 87 91
- Schneiderman A Greene M R Schieler L McClure L E and Dunn M S 1953 Nutrition of *Leptospira canicola* III Utilization of vitamins and amino acids Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 82 53 56
- Schuhardt V T and Hemphill E C 1946 Brain involvement as a possible cause of relapse after treatment in spirochetal relapsing fever Science 103 422-423
- Schuhardt V T and Wilkerson M 1951 Relapse phenomena in rats infected with single spirochetes (*Borrelia recurrentis* var *truncatae*) J Bact 62 215 219
- Sergeant E 1945 Persistence de *Spirochaeta hispanica* pendant trois ans dans le cerveau d'un cobaye Arch Inst Pasteur d'Algérie 23 245 248
- Simpson C F and White F H 1961 Electron microscope studies and staining reactions of leptospires J Infect Dis 109 243 250
- Sleight S D and Langham R F 1962 The effects of *Leptospira pomona* hemolysis on pregnant ewes cows and sows J Infect Dis 111 63 77
- Smadel J E 1953 The therapy of leptospirosis in Symposium on the Leptospiroses 1952 Washington D C Army Medical Service Graduate School Walter Reed Army Medical Center p 202
- Stavitsky A. II 1945 Studies on the pathogenesis of leptospirosis J Infect Dis 76 179 192
- Stein G J 1944 The serological diagnosis of relapsing fever J Exp Med 79 115 128
- Steinman H G and Eagle H 1950 Nutritional requirements of treponemata II Pantothenic acid glutamine and phenylalanine as additional growth promoting factors for the Reiter treponeme J Bact 60 57 68

days Their habitat is the intestinal tract of man and animals where for the most part they have no significance as causative agents of gastrointestinal disease The paracolon bacilli will be discussed as to their relationship to other enteric bacilli *Klebsiella pneumoniae* is encapsulated and nonmotile and a saprophyte of the intestinal and the upper respiratory tracts but may cause inflammatory lesions in the lower respiratory tract and elsewhere *Donovania granulomatis* will be described as a relative of the *Klebsiella* These coliform organisms and those of the *Proteus* and the *Pseudomonas* groups have assumed increasing importance as causative agents of disease since the introduction of antibiotics as therapeutic agents particularly in persons already affected by other diseases (Finland *et al* 1959) This seems to have been due to alterations in the bacterial flora of the host with predominance of these enteric bacilli particularly those which are naturally resistant to commonly used antibiotics or readily become so due to the selection of resistant mutants when the antibiotics are employed in therapy

The *Salmonella* include the causative agents of typhoid fever paratyphoid and other enteric fevers gastroenteritis various types of septicemic infections and certain diseases of the lower animals as well Characteristically they fail to ferment lactose and *Salmonella typhosa* and a few other salmonella organisms including *Salmonella galinarum* do not produce gas in the fermentation of any sugars

The *Shigella* include the causative agents of bacillary dysentery in man In contrast with those of other groups these organisms are nonmotile and with one important exception fail to ferment lactose and are separated into two groups on the basis of the fermentation of mannitol All dysentery bacilli fail to produce gas from fermented sugars

The *Proteus* group is comprised of organisms widely distributed in nature Although they are frequently found in the intestinal tract of man their causal relationship to enteric disease is with one exception doubtful Elsewhere in the body they may cause primary or secondary infections especially in the genitourinary tract They are actively

motile decompose urea and fail to ferment lactose

For the sake of convenience *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Alkaligenes fecalis* will be considered at the end of this chapter

The biochemical reactions of the enteric bacteria are presented in Table 1

## THE COLIFORM BACILLI

The coliform group includes the following gram negative bacilli *Escherichia coli* *Aerobacter aerogenes* the paracolon bacilli and *Klebsiella pneumoniae* The first two are often referred to as the colon aerogenes group *E coli* is a normal inhabitant of the intestinal tract of man and animals *A aerogenes* is found most frequently on grains and plants but also occurs in the feces of man and animals Because of its predominantly intestinal origin *E coli* is used as an indication of pollution of water with fecal material whereas the presence in water of other bacteria which like *A aerogenes* have other natural habitats does not necessarily indicate fecal pollution

Organisms of the colon aerogenes group cause infections in man which are primarily of a localized nature often involving the genitourinary tract or organs having an anatomic relationship to the intestinal tract e.g. gallbladder peritoneum and appendix

### ESCHERICHIA COLI

*E coli* (synonym *Bacterium coli*) was isolated from feces by Escherich in 1885 It is found universally in the intestinal tract of man and animals and being the predominant organism in the colon is commonly referred to as the colon bacillus

*E coli* is a gram negative bacillus which commonly occurs as short rods from 2 to 3 microns long and about 0.6 micron in breadth and may form chains Occasionally very long filamentous forms are seen Most strains are motile *E coli* does not produce spores Some strains possess a definite capsule and growth at low temperatures favors the demonstration of this structure (Morgan and Beckwith 1939) which may be identified by specific serologic reactions (e.g. capsular swelling)

*E coli* is facultatively anaerobic and

## 25

## The Enteric Bacteria

## INTRODUCTION

The enteric group of bacteria (*Enterobacteriaceae*) includes a large number of species of gram negative nonsporulating rods whose natural habitat in most instances is the gastrointestinal tract of man and other animals. However, this designation fails to acknowledge that other groups of organisms such as bacteroides, enterococci and clostridia also are found in the gut and actually outnumber the so-called enteric bacteria. Some of the enteric bacteria are pathogenic for man and cause various types of gastrointestinal diseases such as typhoid and other enteric fevers, gastroenteritis (*Salmonella*) or dysentery (*Shigella*). Others (e.g. the *Escherichia*) appear to lead a saprophytic existence in the intestinal tract but may cause pathologic processes in other parts of the body such as the genitourinary and the respiratory systems. In nature the *Aerobacter* group occurs most commonly in soil and on grain though often it is isolated from the gut. There are no simple differential criteria for these enteric organisms and classification is based on morphologic characteristics, biochemical reactions, antigenic properties and ecologic considerations. Even when all these criteria are invoked some organisms fail to exhibit all the characteristics of a single group, appearing to occupy an intermediate position between the main groupings. The discovery that characteristics of one enteric bacillus can be transferred

to related organisms by transduction with bacteriophage and recombination probably accounts for the presence of these intermediate organisms. Because of these intermediate organisms it is difficult to classify enteric bacilli into definitive taxonomic groups. However, the organisms can be separated into general groups which have practical usefulness in the understanding of these organisms and their relationship to disease.

As a general rule the enteric bacilli grow readily on ordinary media. They are aerobes or facultative anaerobes and characteristically ferment a wide range of carbohydrates. Many are actively motile and at least one group commonly possesses easily demonstrable capsules. Their antigenic structure forms a complex mosaic which often results in serologic interrelationships between different genera and species.

The enteric bacteria will be considered under the following groups:

The coliform group is characterized by the prompt fermentation of lactose, usually with the production of acid and gas. *Escherichia coli* is a common inhabitant of the intestinal canal but frequently causes infections of the urinary tract and other organs. The closely related organism *Aerobacter aerogenes* is found most frequently in soil and on grain. Certain other closely related bacilli are usually classified with these organisms. The paracolonic bacilli ferment lactose slowly frequently only after incubation for several

days Their habitat is the intestinal tract of man and animals where for the most part they have no significance as causative agents of gastrointestinal disease The paracolon bacilli will be discussed as to their relationship to other enteric bacilli *Klebsiella pneumoniae* is encapsulated and nonmotile and a saprophyte of the intestinal and the upper respiratory tracts but may cause inflammatory lesions in the lower respiratory tract and elsewhere *Donovania granulomatis* will be described as a relative of the *Klebsiella* These coliform organisms and those of the *Proteus* and the *Pseudomonas* groups have assumed increasing importance as causative agents of disease since the introduction of antibiotics as therapeutic agents particularly in persons already affected by other diseases (Finland *et al* 1959) This seems to have been due to alterations in the bacterial flora of the host with predominance of these enteric bacilli particularly those which are naturally resistant to commonly used antibiotics or readily become so due to the selection of resistant mutants when the antibiotics are employed in therapy

The *Salmonella* include the causative agents of typhoid fever paratyphoid and other enteric fevers gastroenteritis various types of septicemic infections and certain diseases of the lower animals as well Characteristically they fail to ferment lactose and *Salmonella typhosa* and a few other salmonella organisms including *Salmonella galinarum* do not produce gas in the fermentation of any sugars

The *Shigella* include the causative agents of bacillary dysentery in man In contrast with those of other groups these organisms are nonmotile and with one important exception fail to ferment lactose and are separated into two groups on the basis of the fermentation of mannitol All dysentery bacilli fail to produce gas from fermented sugars

The *Proteus* group is comprised of organisms widely distributed in nature Although they are frequently found in the intestinal tract of man their causal relationship to enteric disease is with one exception doubtful Elsewhere in the body they may cause primary or secondary infections especially in the genitourinary tract They are actively

motile decompose urea and fail to ferment lactose

For the sake of convenience *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Alkaligenes fecalis* will be considered at the end of this chapter

The biochemical reactions of the enteric bacteria are presented in Table 1

## THE COLIFORM BACILLI

The coliform group includes the following gram negative bacilli *Escherichia coli* *Aerobacter aerogenes* the paracolon bacilli and *Klebsiella pneumoniae* The first two are often referred to as the colon aerogenes group *E coli* is a normal inhabitant of the intestinal tract of man and animals *Aerobacter* is found most frequently on grains and plants but also occurs in the feces of man and animals Because of its predominantly intestinal origin *E coli* is used as an indication of pollution of water with fecal material whereas the presence in water of other bacteria which like *Aerobacter* have other natural habitats does not necessarily indicate fecal pollution

Organisms of the colon aerogenes group cause infections in man which are primarily of a localized nature often involving the genitourinary tract or organs having an anatomical relationship to the intestinal tract e.g. gallbladder peritoneum and appendix

### ESCHERICHIA COLI

*E coli* (synonym *Bacterium coli*) was isolated from feces by Escherich in 1885 It is found universally in the intestinal tract of man and animals and being the predominant organism in the colon is commonly referred to as the colon bacillus

*E coli* is a gram negative bacillus which commonly occurs as short rods from 2 to 3 microns long and about 0.6 micron in breadth and may form chains Occasionally very long filamentous forms are seen Most strains are motile *E coli* does not produce spores Some strains possess a definite capsule and growth at low temperatures favors the demonstration of this structure (Morgan and Beckwith 1939) which may be identified by specific serologic reactions (e.g. capsular swelling)

*E coli* is facultatively anaerobic and



grows on all ordinary laboratory media. The optimum incubation temperature is about 37° C. On beef extract agar it usually forms circular convex smooth colorless colonies with regular edges but some colonies, which probably represent rough dissociants, may have an irregular surface and edge. By transmitted light the growth has a granular appearance. On blood agar some strains produce hemolysis. Growth in broth produces uniform turbidity with some sediment, the cultures have a characteristic fecid odor.

*E. coli* ferments a variety of carbohydrates including dextrose, lactose, maltose, mannitol and xylose but not dextrin or starch with the production of acid and gas. Sucrose, salicin and raffinose are attacked by some strains but not by others. Colon bacilli form indol and do not liquefy gelatin. H<sub>2</sub>S is not produced.

Colon bacilli are killed at a temperature of 60° C for 30 minutes. They are more susceptible than the salmonella to the inhibitory action of such compounds as brilliant green dye and sodium desoxycholate. The composition of certain differential media which are designed for the isolation of salmonella from the feces is based on these differences in susceptibility.

*E. coli* is serologically heterogeneous and the antigenic pattern of the various species has been studied by Kauffmann (1951) who has established a diagnostic antigenic schema analogous to that available for the salmonella group. He has divided them into O groups which are numbered 1 to 139. Besides the traditional O and H antigens, capsular or envelope (K) antigens are recognized; these are further subdivided into thermolabile (L and B) and thermostable (A) antigens. The former are chiefly envelope antigens corresponding to the V<sub>1</sub> antigens of salmonella. In contrast the A antigens are usually of the visible capsular type. Strains containing K antigens are more toxic and more resistant to the normal defense mechanisms of the host than are other strains. Strains of *E. coli* are classified on the basis of their O antigens and clinical evidence suggests that some of these O groups are more likely to be found in appendicitis, peritonitis and infections of the genitourinary tract than are other strains.

suggesting a correlation between pathogenicity and antigenic structure. Some strains of *E. coli* have somatic antigens which are serologically identical with those occurring in certain members of the salmonella group.

*E. coli* undergoes dissociation to give rough and smooth colonial types. The smooth round translucent colonies of the S form contrast with the irregular colonies of the R form which have a dull surface and opaque character. Mucoid forms occur and appear more frequently when cultures are grown at low temperatures.

Whereas *E. coli* is generally a harmless and perhaps useful inhabitant of the intestines of man and animals under certain conditions it may assume the role of a pathogen especially in the invasion of organs anatomically related to the intestinal tract such as the appendix, gallbladder, peritoneal cavity, kidneys and bladder. In appendicitis and peritonitis the colon bacillus commonly occurs in the tissues along with a variety of other organisms. It is one of the most common invaders of the peritoneum following perforation of some part of the intestinal tract. *E. coli* appears to be the predominant organism in many cases of the suppurative form of cholecystitis. Acute infections of the urinary tract including pyelitis, pyelonephritis and cystitis are caused most frequently by *E. coli*. Along with the other organisms that may occur on the skin *E. coli* is also found in wound infections but much less frequently than streptococci or staphylococci except when the wound has been contaminated with urine or feces. Colon bacilli may gain access to the bloodstream particularly in infants in the agonal stages of diseases and immediately after death. Furthermore with the use of antibiotics such as penicillin which have their most pronounced action on gram positive organisms, gram negative organisms such as *E. coli* may become predominant in the upper respiratory tract and cause pneumonia.

Recent investigations have demonstrated that certain strains of *E. coli* cause infantile diarrhea and gastroenteritis. Bray (1945), Giles and Sangster (1948) and Taylor, Powell and Wright (1949) have independently isolated a serologically distinct strain of the colon bacillus (O111) from the feces of

TABLE 1 BIOCHEMICAL REACTIONS OF ENTERIC BACTERIA

ORGANISM	MOTILITY	GLUCOSE	LACTOSE	SUCROSE	MANNITOL	SALICIN	RHAMNOSSE	DULCITOL	INOSITOL	SORBITOL	ARABINOSSE	XYLOSE	INDOL	HYDROGEN SULFIDE	GELATIN LIQUEFACTION	RUSSELL'S DOUBLE SUGAR		CITRATE UTILIZATION	ACETYL METHYL CARBINOL (VP)	METHYL RED	TRYPTICAN
																Slant	Butt				
<i>E. coli</i>	+	AG	AG	V	AG	V	AG	V	—	AG	AG	AG	+	—	—	A	AG	+	+	+	+
<i>A. aerogenes</i>	V	AG	AG	AG	AG	AG	AG	V	AG	AG	AG	AG	V	—	—	A	AG	+	+	+	+
<i>A. cloacae</i>	+	AG	AG	AG	AG	AG	AG	V	—	AG	AG	AG	—	—	—	A	AG	+	+	+	+
Paracolon Group																					
Belheda Bacterium	+	AG	(V)	V	+	V	+	V	—	—	+	+	—	+	+	—	—	+	+	+	+
Arizona	+	AG	(V)	(AG)	AG	—	AG	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Providence	+	AG	AG	AG	AG	AG	AG	AG	V	AG	AG	AG	+	+	+	—	—	+	+	+	+
<i>A. pneumoniae</i>	+	AG	AG	—	AG	—	AG	—	—	AG	AG	AG	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+
<i>S. typhosa</i>	+	A	—	—	A	—	AG	—	—	AG	AG	V	—	—	—	Alk	AG	—	—	—	—
<i>S. paratyphi</i>	+	AG	—	—	AG	—	AG	—	—	AG	AG	AG	—	—	—	Alk	AG	—	—	—	—
<i>S. schottmulleri</i>	+	AG	—	—	AG	—	AG	—	—	AG	AG	AG	—	—	—	Alk	AG	—	—	—	—
<i>S. iwaschewskyi</i>	+	AG	—	—	AG	—	AG	—	—	AG	AG	V	—	—	—	Alk	AG	—	—	—	—
<i>S. typhimurium</i>	+	AG	—	—	AG	—	AG	—	—	AG	AG	AG	—	—	—	Alk	AG	—	—	—	—
<i>S. choleraesuis</i>	+	AG	—	—	AG	—	AG	—	—	AG	AG	AG	—	—	—	Alk	AG	—	—	—	—
<i>S. enteritidis</i>	+	AG	—	—	AG	—	AG	—	—	AG	AG	AG	—	—	—	Alk	AG	—	—	—	—
<i>S. gallinarum</i>	—	A	—	—	A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Alk	A	—	—	—	—
<i>S. dysenteriae</i> Type 1	—	A	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Alk	A	—	—	—	—
<i>S. dysenteriae</i> Type 2	—	A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Alk	A	—	—	—	—
<i>S. dysenteriae</i> Types 3 & 7	—	A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Alk	A	—	—	—	—
<i>S. flexneri</i>	—	A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Alk	A	—	—	—	—
<i>S. boydii</i>	—	A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Alk	A	—	—	—	—
<i>S. sonnei</i>	—	A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Alk	A	—	—	—	—
<i>P. citri</i> & <i>vulgaris</i>	+	A	(A)	(A)	—	AG	—	—	—	—	—	AG	+	+	+	Alk	AG	+	+	+	+
<i>Proteus morganii</i>	+	AG	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Alk	AG	+	+	+	+
<i>Pa. aeruginosa</i>	+	A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Alk	AG	+	+	+	+
<i>Alcaligenes faecalis</i>	+	A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Alk	—	+	+	+	+

A = Acid AG = Acid and gas Alk = Alkaline + = Positive — = Negative V = Variable ( ) = Delayed

\* = A few strains fail to ferment mannitol

† = A few strains are late lactose fermenters

drates with production of acid and gas. They are closely related to the aerobacter group. They are found in the nose, the mouth and the intestinal tract of normal persons, in the lungs of patients with pneumonia and other respiratory diseases and in suppurative infections in other parts of the body.

*Klebsiella pneumoniae* is the most important member of the group. It was discovered in 1883 by Friedländer in the lungs of patients dying with pneumonia and is now known to cause a small proportion of the bacterial pneumonias.

### MORPHOLOGY

In infected tissues *Kl. pneumoniae* usually occurs as an ovoid rod from 2 to 5  $\mu$  long and 0.5  $\mu$  thick, often in pairs. In cultures it shows pleomorphism with curved rods, long filaments and other forms. It occurs naturally in the mucoid phase with a capsule which is usually visible even in an ordinary Gram stain and is particularly striking when the organisms are grown on media rich in carbohydrate. A profuse mucoid growth of a tenacious character is produced on solid media. It is luxuriant and viscous in broth. After repeated subculture *Kl. pneumoniae* tends to lose its mucoid character and dissociates to give smooth colonies made up of organisms which do not produce the characteristic large capsules. Reversion to the mucoid form may occur on further subculture.

### BIOLOGIC CHARACTERISTICS

*Kl. pneumoniae* is facultatively anaerobic and grows best at 37° C with a range from 15° to 40° C. Growth is luxuriant on ordinary nutrient media. The organisms are killed by moist heat at 55° C in 30 minutes.

The biochemical reactions are variable from strain to strain. These variations may occur within a single serologic type and increase the difficulty of classification. *Kl. pneumoniae* ferments glucose, maltose, lactose, sucrose, mannitol and salicin with the production of acid; some strains fail to produce gas. Indol is not produced. The organism is usually MR<sup>-</sup>, VP<sup>+</sup> and does not produce H<sub>2</sub>S.

The morphologic and the biochemical properties of *Kl. pneumoniae* show that it

is closely related to *E. coli* from which it is differentiated chiefly by its respiratory habitat, its etiologic role in certain cases of primary pneumonia in man and its characteristic easily visible capsule. As noted previously it cannot be distinguished from *A. aerogenes* and becomes indistinguishable from other coliform organisms when it undergoes dissociation from the mucoid to the smooth form and thereby loses its large capsule (Ostermann and Rettger 1941).

The antigenic structure of *Kl. pneumoniae* has been studied by Julianelle (1926) who found that the capsule contains a type-specific polysaccharide. He described 3 serologic types, A, B and C and a fourth heterogeneous group X. The specific polysaccharide of the type B organism shows an immunologic relationship to that of the type 2 pneumococcus. A nucleoprotein which is common to all types is found in the body of the bacterial cell.

In more recent studies Kauffmann (1949) has identified somatic (O) antigens in *Kl. pneumoniae* which permit the classification of this organism into 3 principal antigenic O groups. These O antigens also occur in *A. aerogenes*, indicating again the close relationship between *Klebsiella* and *Aerobacter* species. In addition Kauffmann has extended the studies of the capsular K antigens to describe a total of 14 types. The same capsular antigen may be found in different O groups.

### PATHOGENICITY

*Kl. pneumoniae* is found in the respiratory tract of about 5 per cent of normal individuals (Bloomfield 1921) and frequently occurs as a secondary invader in the lungs of patients with bronchiectasis, influenza and tuberculosis. It is the primary cause of pneumonia in less than 3 per cent of all bacterial pneumonias (Hyde and Hyde 1943). It has been isolated from patients with pleurisy, appendicitis, cystitis and pyelonephritis and from the feces of about 5 per cent of normal individuals (Baehr *et al.* 1937). It occurs frequently in abdominal infections though its presence is often overlooked in the bacteriologic studies.

In animals *Kl. pneumoniae* has been isolated from spontaneous respiratory diseases

of mice and in a metritis occurring in mares. Types A and B are highly pathogenic for mice by intraperitoneal injection, while guinea pigs and rabbits show a higher degree of resistance. Type C appears to be relatively avirulent for animals.

In pneumonic infections in man *Kl pneumoniae* is notable for its destructive action on the tissues producing abscesses and cavities. Julianelle (1941) found Type A in 64 per cent, Type II in 14 per cent, Type C in 7 per cent, and Group X types in 15 per cent of a series of cases of pneumonia. The mortality of untreated cases is high and may reach 90 per cent in those with bacteremia. Chronic Friedlander bacillus infections of the lung may follow the acute pneumonia with production of cavities and thus require surgical intervention.

Sulfadiazine and streptomycin have proved to be of value in therapy as well as chloramphenicol, chlortetracycline and oxytetracycline. Two or more drugs are usually employed for maximal therapeutic effectiveness.

Two other encapsulated mucoid gram-negative bacilli resembling *Kl pneumoniae* and occurring characteristically in the mucoid phase have been isolated from disease conditions of the upper respiratory tract of man. Frisch in 1882 isolated an encapsulated organism from the granulomatous nasal lesions of patients with rhinoscleroma, and a similar organism was isolated by Loewenberg in 1894 from the nasal secretions of individuals with ozena, a fetid catarrhal condition of the nose. The capsular antigen of the rhinoscleroma organism is similar to that of Type C Friedlander's bacillus, but *Kl ozenae* may be easily differentiated from *Kl pneumoniae* and *Kl rhinoscleromatis* by serologic tests.

#### DONOVANIA GRANULOMATIS AND GRANULOMA INGUINALE

From a venereal disease associated with chronic ulcerative lesions of the genital region in which smears of the lesions reveal short bacilli (Donovan bodies) within mononuclear cells. Anderson *et al* (1945) isolated in chick embryos a short encapsulated gram-negative rod *Donovania granulomatis* which was later cultivated on artificial media

and found to resemble Friedlander's bacillus with which it has antigenic relationships. On subsequent study no evidence has been obtained that this disease is transmitted primarily by sexual contact and since it occurs only in individuals with a low standard of cleanliness it is more prevalent in areas of poor economic status.

### THE PROTEUS GROUP

The proteus group consists of pleomorphic gram-negative bacilli which do not ferment lactose and are characterized by their active motility and spreading growth on solid media. They are commonly found in soil, water, sewage and manure and occur in normal human stools. They are not usually pathogenic for man, though they cause infections of the genitourinary and the gastrointestinal tracts. The two commonest pathogenic species are *Proteus vulgaris* and *Proteus morganii*; other strains are of medical importance because of their antigenic relationships to certain rickettsiae.

#### PROTEUS VULGARIS

*Proteus vulgaris* is a motile gram-negative rod-shaped organism with great variation in size and shape. The more typical forms in agar cultures average from 1 to 3 microns long and from 0.4 to 0.6 micron wide, but short coccobacillary forms are also seen. The rods occur singly, in pairs and frequently in long chains. Young cultures which show swarming are particularly pleomorphic and may include long filamentous forms.

The organism is a facultative anaerobe with an optimum growth range from 34° to 37° C but able to grow well at 20° C on solid moist media. It spreads rapidly from the initial colonies over the entire surface by a process called 'swarming' which is due to its very active motility. Swarming can be prevented by increasing the agar content of the media to 6 per cent. In broth the organism gives a moderate uniform turbidity with some deposit.

*P. vulgaris* produces acid and gas in glucose, sucrose and galactose. Some strains ferment maltose. The maltose fermenting strains which form indole are VP negative and usually fail to grow on citrate agar, while

drates with production of acid and gas. They are closely related to the aerobacter group. They are found in the nose, the mouth and the intestinal tract of normal persons, in the lungs of patients with pneumonia and other respiratory diseases, and in suppurative infections in other parts of the body.

*Klebsiella pneumoniae* is the most important member of the group. It was discovered in 1883 by Friedlander in the lungs of patients dying with pneumonia and is now known to cause a small proportion of the bacterial pneumonias.

### MORPHOLOGY

In infected tissues *Kl. pneumoniae* usually occurs as an ovoid rod from 2 to 5  $\mu$  long and 0.5  $\mu$  thick, often in pairs. In cultures it shows pleomorphism with curved rods, long filaments, and other forms. It occurs naturally in the mucoid phase with a capsule which is usually visible even in an ordinary Gram stain and is particularly striking when the organisms are grown on media rich in carbohydrate. A profuse mucoid growth of a tenacious character is produced on solid media. It is luxuriant and viscous in broth. After repeated subculture *Kl. pneumoniae* tends to lose its mucoid character and dissociates to give smooth colonies made up of organisms which do not produce the characteristic large capsules. Reversion to the mucoid form may occur on further subculture.

### BIOLOGIC CHARACTERISTICS

*Kl. pneumoniae* is facultatively anaerobic and grows best at 37° C with a range from 15° to 40° C. Growth is luxuriant on ordinary nutrient media. The organisms are killed by moist heat at 55° C in 30 minutes.

The biochemical reactions are variable from strain to strain. These variations may occur within a single serologic type and increase the difficulty of classification. *Kl. pneumoniae* ferments glucose, maltose, lactose, sucrose, mannitol, and salicin with the production of acid; some strains fail to produce gas. Indol is not produced. The organism is usually MR<sup>-</sup>, VP<sup>+</sup>, and does not produce H<sub>2</sub>S.

The morphologic and the biochemical properties of *Kl. pneumoniae* show that it

is closely related to *E. coli* from which it is differentiated chiefly by its respiratory habitat, its etiologic role in certain cases of primary pneumonia in man and its characteristic, easily visible capsule. As noted previously, it cannot be distinguished from *A. aerogenes* and becomes indistinguishable from other coliform organisms when it undergoes dissociation from the mucoid to the smooth form and thereby loses its large capsule (Ostermann and Rettger 1941).

The antigenic structure of *Kl. pneumoniae* has been studied by Julianelle (1926) who found that the capsule contains a type-specific polysaccharide. He described 3 serologic types A, B, and C, and a fourth heterogeneous group X. The specific polysaccharide of the type II organism shows an immunologic relationship to that of the type 2 pneumococcus. A nucleoprotein which is common to all types is found in the body of the bacterial cell.

In more recent studies Kauffmann (1949) has identified somatic (O) antigens in *Kl. pneumoniae* which permit the classification of this organism into 3 principal antigenic O groups. These O antigens also occur in *A. aerogenes*, indicating again the close relationship between *Klebsiella* and *Aerobacter* species. In addition Kauffmann has extended the studies of the capsular K antigens to describe a total of 14 types. The same capsular antigen may be found in different O groups.

### PATHOGENICITY

*Kl. pneumoniae* is found in the respiratory tract of about 5 per cent of normal individuals (Bloomfield 1921) and frequently occurs as a secondary invader in the lungs of patients with bronchiectasis, influenza, and tuberculosis. It is the primary cause of pneumonia in less than 3 per cent of all bacterial pneumonias (Hyde and Hyde 1943). It has been isolated from patients with pleurisy, appendicitis, cystitis, and pyelonephritis and from the feces of about 5 per cent of normal individuals (Baehr *et al.* 1937). It occurs frequently in abdominal infections, though its presence is often overlooked in the bacteriologic studies.

In animals *Kl. pneumoniae* has been isolated from spontaneous respiratory diseases

soil. Some species are pathogenic and the type species *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (*Pseudomonas pyocyanea* *Bacillus pyocyaneus*) occurs in human feces and in wound and urinary tract infections in man.

Gessard in 1882 isolated *Ps. aeruginosa* from the blue pus found in some wound infections. This organism is closely related to about 30 other species of *Pseudomonas* which occur principally in soil water and sewage although some produce disease in animals and plants. *Ps. fluorescens* is one of the most common of these other species.

*Ps. aeruginosa* is a gram negative motile rod measuring from 1.5 to 3.0 microns by about 0.5 micron. It is not encapsulated and forms no spores. It grows readily on all ordinary culture media and has a sweetish odor. On agar it forms round smooth moist glistening colonies which have a fluorescent yellowish green color although most of the pigment diffuses into the medium coloring it bluish green. The organism is aerobic and grows best at 30° to 37° C. It is killed at 55° C for 1 hour.

It is not an active fermenter of carbohydrates and produces acid but no gas in glucose. It actively liquefies gelatin, produces ammonia and grows on citrate medium. *Ps. aeruginosa* does not produce indole, methyl red and Voges-Proskauer negative; it fails to produce hydrogen sulfide and to reduce nitrates.

The bluish green color produced by *Ps. aeruginosa* consists of two substances: pyocyanin, a bluish green pigment soluble in chloroform and water and fluorescein, which is greenish yellow, fluorescent and soluble in water but not in chloroform. The closely related organism *Ps. fluorescens* forms only fluorescein. These pigments are antibacterial for certain other organisms.

*Ps. aeruginosa* is the only member of this group which is pathogenic for man. It is found occasionally in the human intestine and on the skin as well as in water and sewage. It may produce local suppurative lesions especially skin and wound infections and otitis media. It may occur in infections of the genitourinary tract, the respiratory tract, the joints and the eye. Meningitis due to it has been observed to follow a lumbar puncture or operative exposure of the men-

inges. In some outbreaks of a dysentery-like enteric infection *Ps. aeruginosa* has been isolated under circumstances which suggest an etiologic role.

With the more frequent use of antibiotics that eliminate many of the pathogens in respiratory and urinary tract infections, *Ps. aeruginosa* has assumed more importance etiologically since it emerges as the dominant organism when the more susceptible species disappear. *Ps. aeruginosa* may cause pneumonia in debilitated individuals receiving prophylactic penicillin or may appear as the causative agent in chronic pyelonephritis when other organisms have been eliminated by proper therapy. It may also become the predominant organism on the injured skin of a burned patient receiving antibiotic therapy and give a blue green color to the surface exudate.

It produces fatal infections when injected subcutaneously or intravenously into guinea pigs or rabbits.

Streptomycin, chlorotetracycline and chloramphenicol have proved to be of some value in treating infections by *Ps. aeruginosa* but polymyxin B and colistin generally exert greater therapeutic activity against this organism.

#### ALCALIGENES FAECALIS

*Alcaligenes faecalis* is a gram negative rod which is found in human feces and can be confused with *Salmonella typhosa* since it does not ferment lactose and therefore produces similar colonies on the usual differential media used for the isolation of enteric pathogens. It is readily distinguished from other gram negative organisms by its failure to ferment glucose as well as most other carbohydrates. In rare instances it may cause enteric infections in man and is not uncommon as a cause of inflammation in the urinary tract.

#### THE SALMONELLA SALMONELLOSIS AND TYPHOID FEVER

The salmonella are gram negative non-spore forming, motile bacilli which are easily cultivated on ordinary media; they characteristically fail to ferment lactose and sucrose. The different species are closely

those which do not ferment maltose are indol negative, usually VP positive and usually grow on citrate agar. *P. vulgaris* exhibits active proteolytic action and liquefies gelatin, digests casein and decomposes urea. It produces  $H_2S$  and  $NH_3$  and reduces nitrates.

The antigenic structure of *P. vulgaris* has received considerable attention because of the use of certain strains designated by the letter X in the Weil-Felix reaction for the diagnosis of typhus fever and of other rickettsial diseases. The group is antigenically heterogeneous with differences in both H and O antigens. On the basis of their serologic relationships to certain rickettsia the O antigens of the X strains have been divided into 3 types: OX2, OX19 and OXK. Castaneda (1934) reported the isolation from *Proteus* OX19 of a soluble specific polysaccharide which seems to be present also in *Rickettsia prowazekii* and to be responsible for the serologic reaction utilized in the Weil-Felix test in epidemic typhus fever.

Organisms of the proteus group are widely distributed in nature. They are found in water and soil and form an important part of the flora of decomposing animal and vegetable matter in manure and sewage. They occur in the feces of man and animals but in large numbers only when some abnormal condition exists. They become more prominent when stool specimens are incubated in the enrichment media tetrathionate broth or selenite F used for suppressing *E. coli* in the isolation of enteric pathogens. In addition to its saprophytic existence *P. vulgaris* may be isolated in pure or mixed cultures in urinary tract infections from abscesses or wounds and in peritonitis. It causes up to 13 per cent of human urinary tract infections (Pierson and Honke 1941) and often appears in patients who have been treated successfully with various antibacterial agents for infections caused by other genitourinary pathogens. It appears in large numbers on infected wounds after antibiotic therapy by reason of its ability to develop drug resistance and thus to overgrow the drug sensitive species. *P. vulgaris* has been isolated from cases of gastroenteritis where it appeared to play an etiologic role (Cooper *et al.* 1941). Isolation of the X strains of proteus from the urine and the feces of patients with typhus

fever led to the study of the possible (now discounted) etiologic relationship to typhus and to the discovery and the use of the Weil-Felix reaction.

The intraperitoneal inoculation of *P. vulgaris* into mice, rats, guinea pigs or rabbits often causes death of these animals, but strains vary greatly in pathogenicity.

The sulfonamides are of limited value in the treatment of infections caused by *P. vulgaris*. Streptomycin has proved to be useful in some cases but these organisms readily become resistant to it. Chloramphenicol is effective in certain cases.

### PROTEUS MORGANI

*Proteus morganii* (Morgan's bacillus) was isolated by Morgan in 1906 from the stools of patients with diarrhea. Most strains show the swarming characteristics of the proteus group, usually at lower incubation temperature e.g., 20° C but tend to lose this property on cultivation. Likewise motility is pronounced at room temperature but it decreases or is lost at 37° C. Although Morgan's bacillus is related to *P. vulgaris* as shown by its ability to swarm and to decompose urea, it does not liquefy gelatin or produce  $H_2S$ . It produces indol and ferments for the most part only monosaccharides.

*P. morganii* has been isolated on a number of occasions from outbreaks of infantile diarrhea (Neter and Farrar 1943) where it seemed to play an etiologic role, but it is difficult to assess the significance of these findings since it has also been isolated from the stools of normal persons. It can cause genitourinary tract infections in man and rarely, purulent lesions of other areas. Its role as a potential cause of enteric fever in man has been suspected but not clearly proved. Spontaneous epidemics of enteritis due to it have been observed in mice.

### MISCELLANEOUS GRAM NEGATIVE BACILLI

#### PSEUDOMONAS AERUGINOSA

The pseudomonas group is composed of gram negative rod-shaped mobile organisms which characteristically produce a water soluble pigment which diffuses through the medium. They occur widely in water and

soil. Some species are pathogenic and the type species *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (*Pseudomonas pyocyanea* *Bacillus pyocyaneus*) occurs in human feces and in wound and urinary tract infections in man.

Gessard in 1882 isolated *Ps. aeruginosa* from the blue pus found in some wound infections. This organism is closely related to about 30 other species of *Pseudomonas* which occur principally in soil, water and sewage, although some produce disease in animals and plants. *Ps. fluorescens* is one of the most common of these other species.

*Ps. aeruginosa* is a gram negative motile rod measuring from 1.5 to 3.0 microns by about 0.5 micron. It is not encapsulated and forms no spores. It grows readily on all ordinary culture media and has a sweetish odor. On agar it forms round, smooth, moist, glistening colonies which have a fluorescent yellowish green color, although most of the pigment diffuses into the medium, coloring it bluish green. The organism is aerobic and grows best at 30° to 37° C. It is killed at 55° C. for 1 hour.

It is not an active fermenter of carbohydrates and produces acid but no gas in glucose. It actively liquefies gelatin, produces ammonia and grows on citrate medium. *Ps. aeruginosa* does not produce indole, is methyl red and Voges-Proskauer negative, it fails to produce hydrogen sulfide and to reduce nitrates.

The bluish green color produced by *Ps. aeruginosa* consists of two substances, pyocyanin, a bluish green pigment soluble in chloroform and water, and fluorescein, which is greenish yellow, fluorescent and soluble in water but not in chloroform. The closely related organism *Ps. fluorescens* forms only fluorescein. These pigments are antibacterial for certain other organisms.

*Ps. aeruginosa* is the only member of this group which is pathogenic for man. It is found occasionally in the human intestine and on the skin, as well as in water and sewage. It may produce local suppurative lesions, especially skin and wound infections and otitis media. It may occur in infections of the genitourinary tract, the respiratory tract, the joints and the eye. Meningitis due to it has been observed to follow a lumbar puncture or operative exposure of the men-

inges. In some outbreaks of a dysenterylike enteric infection *Ps. aeruginosa* has been isolated under circumstances which suggest an etiologic role.

With the more frequent use of antibiotics that eliminate many of the pathogens in respiratory and urinary tract infections, *Ps. aeruginosa* has assumed more importance etiologically since it emerges as the dominant organism when the more susceptible species disappear. *Ps. aeruginosa* may cause pneumonia in debilitated individuals receiving prophylactic penicillin or may appear as the causative agent in chronic pyelonephritis when other organisms have been eliminated by proper therapy. It may also become the predominant organism on the injured skin of a burned patient receiving antibiotic therapy and give a blue green color to the surface exudate.

It produces fatal infections when injected subcutaneously or intravenously into guinea pigs or rabbits.

Streptomycin, chlortetracycline and chloramphenicol have proved to be of some value in treating infections by *Ps. aeruginosa*, but polymyxin B and colistin generally exert greater therapeutic activity against this organism.

#### ALCALIGENES FAECALIS

*Alcaligenes faecalis* is a gram negative rod which is found in human feces and can be confused with *Salmonella typhosa* since it does not ferment lactose and therefore produces similar colonies on the usual differential media used for the isolation of enteric pathogens. It is readily distinguished from other gram negative organisms by its failure to ferment glucose as well as most other carbohydrates. In rare instances it may cause enteric infections in man and is not uncommon as a cause of inflammation in the urinary tract.

#### THE SALMONELLA SALMONELLOSIS AND TYPHOID FEVER

The salmonella are gram negative, non-spore forming, motile bacilli which are easily cultivated on ordinary media; they characteristically fail to ferment lactose and sucrose. The different species are closely



related antigenically and these relationships are used as the main criteria in classification. All are pathogenic for man or animals and usually for both *Salmonella typhosa* the cause of typhoid fever is pathogenic only for man while the other salmonella produce disease in man and animals.

### HISTORY

Before the development of modern bacteriology and the isolation of the typhoid bacillus William Budd in 1856 made a strikingly accurate study of typhoid fever outbreaks which led him to believe that the disease was contagious and that the infectious agent was excreted in the feces of patients. He believed that contaminated milk and water played a role in the spread of the disease. In 1880 Eberth described the typhoid bacillus in tissues of patients and the organism was isolated by Gaffky in 1884. Following this other salmonella were isolated from patients with typhoidlike fevers and it became obvious that a clinical syndrome similar to typhoid fever might be caused by a variety of closely related organisms.

Gaertner in 1888 isolated *Salmonella enteritidis* from a patient who died following the consumption of meat contaminated with this organism and shortly afterward Durham and de Noële described another organism *S. typhimurium* isolated from patients suffering with gastroenteritis following ingestion of infected meat. Further studies rapidly increased the numbers of organisms identified as having the typical properties of members of the salmonella group.

### MORPHOLOGY

*Salmonella* average from about 2 to 3 microns in length and about 0.6 micron in width but may vary in size under different environmental conditions. Young cultures on agar may present a predominance of coccobacillary organisms while filamentous forms are occasionally seen especially in cultures in liquid media. With the exception of *S. gallinarum pullorum* all strains are motile with peritrichal flagella. *Salmonella* do not ordinarily form capsules when grown at 37° C but most species may give rise to mucoid colonies composed of encapsulated bacilli espe-

cially when incubated at temperatures of 20° C or lower. Encapsulated strains of *S. typhosa* have been described.

### CULTIVATION AND BIOCHEMICAL REACTIONS

*Salmonella* grow readily on ordinary culture media producing in 24 to 48 hours colonies which average 2 to 3 mm in diameter and are indistinguishable from those of the coliform bacteria. The colonies may be circular with a smooth surface and an even edge or flat with an uneven surface and serrated edge. On plates incubated at 37° C and then allowed to stand at room temperature they may show a secondary growth of mucoid character around the original colony margin. *Salmonella* in the smooth phase produce a uniform turbidity in broth with a deposit which readily resuspends on shaking. They may produce heavy growth under anaerobic conditions. The temperature range of growth is from about 10° to 42° C with an optimum at 37° C.

The biochemical reactions serve to define the salmonella as a group and also provide an aid in the differentiation of certain species (Table 1). By definition these bacteria do not ferment lactose, sucrose or salicin while glucose, mannitol, maltose and dextrin are fermented with the production of acid and gas except in the case of *S. typhosa* and *S. gallinarum pullorum* which do not form gas. Arabinose, xylose, trehalose and inositol are useful in the differentiation of certain species and varieties. e.g. *S. paratyphi* does not ferment xylose while *S. schottmuelleri* does. The fermentation of tartrate varies with different species while almost all attack citrate. Indol is not produced and gelatin is not liquefied since there are very few exceptions to these two metabolic activities they serve along with the failure to ferment lactose as the most reliable biochemical differential characters.

### EFFECTS OF PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL AGENTS

Most of the salmonella are killed at a temperature of 60° C in from 15 to 20 minutes. They may persist under natural conditions for long periods of time as demon-

strated in soil and water pollution studies in which typhoid bacilli have been found to survive through an entire winter in frozen soil and for as long as 7 days in well water. The resistance of salmonella to certain dyes and chemicals is important since some of these compounds selectively inhibit the coliform organisms while allowing growth of the salmonella. Brilliant green in particular inhibits coliform and dysentery bacilli while the typhoid bacillus and other salmonella are resistant to its action. Sodium desoxycholate and selenium compounds also inhibit the growth of colon bacilli but not the salmonella under certain conditions. Sodium tetrathionate and sodium citrate favor the growth of salmonella over colon bacilli. The selective action of these compounds is used to advantage in the preparation of media for the isolation of salmonella from feces.

#### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

The antigenic structure of the salmonella has been studied in great detail by Kauffmann (1937) and White (1926). As a result of their work the various known antigenic components in the cell body and the flagella now constitute the basis of classification. The H or flagellar antigens and the O or somatic antigens were described originally as the heat labile and the heat stable antigenic components respectively. In general the species of salmonella are divided into groups on the basis of likeness with respect to O or somatic antigens and the species within a group are often differentiated on the basis of differences between their H or flagellar antigens (Kauffmann 1950). Some of these species also possess an envelope antigen called Vi (for virulence) which inhibits agglutination by O antibody.

**H Antigens and Phase Variation** The H antigens are found only in the flagella. They are inactivated by temperatures over 60°C and also by alcohol and acids. They are probably of a protein nature. For serologic testing H antigens are best prepared by adding formalin to young motile broth cultures. This procedure probably fixes the flagella over the surface of the cell in such a way that the somatic antigens are no longer exposed. As a result agglutination is dependent on the anti H antibodies and does

not occur or only to a slight degree in anti O sera. In sera containing the appropriate anti H antibodies H antigens characteristically flocculate in about 2 hours at 55°C in the form of large fluffy clumps which are easily dispersed.

A single species may contain two types of H antigens either of which may predominate in a given instance. One of these types is referred to as the specific phase or phase 1 flagellar antigen and the other as the group phase or phase 2 flagellar antigen. The former is shared with only a few other species or varieties of salmonella. In contrast the latter may be more widely distributed among several species. Either phase 1 or phase 2 may contain one or more flagellar antigenic components. Any one culture may consist of organisms entirely of one phase or of organisms in both flagellar phases. Any monophasic culture usually tends to maintain this characteristic for a number of transfers but is always capable of giving rise to organisms of the other phase especially if the culture is allowed to grow longer than 24 hours. This antigen alteration is spoken of as phase variation. The transformation from one phase to another in a culture may be induced by growth in a serum containing antibodies against the homologous phase. Since the specific phase antigens are not entirely limited to one salmonella species but may occur in several the terms phase 1 for the so-called specific phase and phase 2 for the group phase have now been adopted. Phase variation can be detected only by serologic tests using sera prepared against organisms in phase 1 or phase 2.

**O Antigens** The somatic (O) antigens do not exhibit phase variation and therefore constitute a more dependable basis for classification than the flagellar components (Kauffmann White schema). Somatic antigens occur at the surface of the cell body (soma) in both motile and nonmotile organisms as an integral part of the cell wall. They are resistant to prolonged heating at 100°C and are not destroyed by alcohol or dilute acid. When mixed with sera containing appropriate anti O agglutinins O (somatic) antigens (prepared from nonmotile bacilli or from bacilli treated with heat or alcohol) are clumped only after long periods of incu-

bation e.g. 6 to 12 hours at 55° C. The bacterial aggregates so formed appear as granular masses which cannot be dispersed by shaking.

In an antiserum prepared with a motile organism as immunizing agent the anti H and the anti O agglutinins behave independently and the H antibody titer is usually much higher than the O.

These O antigens are the endotoxins of the salmonella bacilli and their antigenic specificity is determined by their polysaccharide fraction. The major O antigenic components of a given organism are relatively stable but they are related to the presence of temperate bacteriophages and thus are phenomena of lysogenic conversion. In recent studies Robbins and Uchida (1962) were able to relate the O antigenic determinants to the presence of specific temperate phages and to show that several phages were specifically associated with the presence of individual hexoses which were antigenic determinants of the polysaccharide complex of the O antigen.

Earlier studies (Zinder and Lederberg 1952; Kauffmann 1953) showed that not only O antigens but also H antigens could be transferred from one species to another by transduction with temperate bacteriophages.

**V<sub>i</sub> Antigens** Recently isolated strains of typhoid bacilli often fail to agglutinate in usual antiserum. Felix and Pitt (1934) showed that this inagglutinability is due to a special somatic component called the V<sub>i</sub> or virulence antigen since cultures possessing it were more virulent for mice than ordinary O organisms. V<sub>i</sub> antigen is thought to be present at the extreme periphery of the cell as an envelope antigen and thus prevents access of anti O agglutinins to their homologous somatic antigens. However it is itself a good antigen and V<sub>i</sub> antibodies readily cause agglutination of V<sub>i</sub> strains. It differs from the ordinary O antigens in that its antigenic activity is destroyed at 60° C in 1 hour and by dilute alkali and phenol. Following subculture on ordinary media bacilli lose their V<sub>i</sub> antigen and become agglutinable in anti O serum. A V<sub>i</sub> antigen apparently identical with that found in *S. typhosa* has also been recognized in *S.*

*hirschfeldii*, a member of the Bethesda-Ballerup group formerly known as *S. ballerup*, and certain strains of *E. coli*. Other salmonella such as *S. schottmuelleri* possess other V<sub>i</sub> antigens specific for the species.

In 1938, Craigie and Yen discovered bacteriophages active against cultures of the typhoid bacillus containing V<sub>i</sub> antigen. These agents exhibit an unusual adaptability to the strains of bacteria on which they are propagated resulting in the development of an extraordinary specificity for the particular strain of *S. typhosa*. Specific V<sub>i</sub> phages have thus provided valuable tools for classifying typhoid bacilli and have aided etiologic studies of typhoid fever. Later Anderson and Felix (1953) presented evidence that the phage type is an expression of resistance to infection with the typing phages caused by latent phages in the bacteria being tested. Strain specific bacteriophages have also been adapted for use in identifying strains of *S. schottmuelleri*.

Thus another important characteristic of salmonella in addition to their antigenic structure is their content of bacteriophages.

#### DISSOCIATION

In addition to the flagellar phase variations salmonella can undergo a number of alterations related to various antigenic components. Motile strains may become non-motile by losing their flagellar (H) antigens. The typical smooth to rough variation occurs frequently and results in the loss of the somatic O antigen and the appearance at the surface of the cell of another antigen which is much less specific and causes the organism to agglutinate spontaneously in saline. The smooth to rough change may occur without loss of the V<sub>i</sub> or flagellar antigens.

The V<sub>i</sub> antigen content of any strain of *S. typhosa* may vary without affecting its O or H antigens. Kauffmann (1935) has described 3 forms in which these organisms may be found: (1) the V form which possesses a full quota of V<sub>i</sub> antigen and is inagglutinable in O antiserum; (2) the VW form in which some V<sub>i</sub> antigen may be detected, but which will agglutinate in O antiserum; and (3) the W form which contains no V<sub>i</sub> antigen. Since the H, the O and the V<sub>i</sub>

TABLE 3 ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE OF SOME OF THE MORE COMMON ENTERIC ORGANISMS

GROUP	TYPE	O ANTIGENS	H ANTIGENS	
			Phase 1	Phase 2
A	<i>S. paratyphosa</i>	(I) II XII	a	
B	<i>S. schottmuelleri</i>	(I) IV (V) XII	b	1 2
	<i>S. typhimurium</i>	(I) IV (V) XII	i	1 2
C <sub>1</sub>	<i>S. hirschfeldii</i>	VI VII (Vi)	e	1 5
	<i>S. choleraesuis</i>	VI VII	c	1 5
	<i>S. oranienburg</i>	VI VII	m t	
	<i>S. montevideo</i>	VI VII	g m s	
C	<i>S. newport</i>	VI VIII	e h	1 2
D	<i>S. typhosa</i>	IX XII (Vi)	d	
	<i>S. enteritidis</i>	(I) IX XII	g m	
	<i>S. gallinarum pullorum</i>	I IX XII		
E	<i>S. anatum</i>	III X	e h	1 6

( ) indicate that antigen may be absent

antigens vary independently many dissociant forms can occur

As previously mentioned some salmonella also show a tendency to produce mucoid colonies especially when incubated at temperatures of from 10 to 20 C

#### KAUFFMANN WHITE CLASSIFICATION

The studies of the salmonella antigens by White and Kauffmann have made it possible to devise a system of classification based on antigenic patterns. The species and the varieties have been arranged in groups designated A B C etc. according to similarities in content of O antigens and one or more antigenic components are selected as essential for inclusion in each group. Each component of the O antigen is designated by the use of a Roman numeral. Specific sera to identify O antigens are prepared by absorption techniques. Table 3 shows how the more important representative salmonella are classified according to the Kauffmann White scheme. The members of the various groups based on the O antigen content are further differentiated into species and varieties on the basis of the components of their flagellar antigens. The flagellar antigens of phase 1 are noted by small letters and the antigens of phase 2 by arabic numerals.

The Kauffmann White system now includes well over 500 varieties many of

which are listed as distinct species but it is questionable whether many warrant such recognition since some of the antigenic differences are minor and are now known to be due in many instances to the presence of a variety of temperate bacteriophages in the bacilli. Thus most of the closely related organisms might better be considered serologic variants of a single species as has been the practice with serotypes of *Diplococcus pneumoniae*. The romance of the salmonella species derived from the association of names with interesting cities famous bacteriologists etc. would thus be lost but the classification would be simplified while still retaining its epidemiologic usefulness. In this connection it should be pointed out that differences in the ability to ferment one or more carbohydrates exist between strains which apparently are antigenically identical. These are designated as fermentative varieties.

The scheme of classification based on antigenic analysis is complex but it permits the accurate etiologic diagnosis of enteric infections and facilitates epidemiologic studies.

#### DISTRIBUTION AND RANGE OF PATHOGENICITY

Salmonella fall into 3 groups with respect to their distribution and relationship to human disease.

The first group contains those which are

primarily human pathogens and includes *S. typhosa*, *S. paratyphi*, *S. schottmuelleri* and *S. hirschfeldii*. Of these *S. typhosa* is the most important. In the United States *S. schottmuelleri* is the most common (Seligmann *et al.* 1946) occasionally *S. paratyphi* is isolated and *S. hirschfeldii* is very rare. *S. schottmuelleri* is also found rarely in animals.

The second group is made up of organisms which are primarily pathogenic for animals including birds but occasionally may cause disease in man. It contains the majority of the salmonella. The relative incidence of these species in human infections varies in different geographic areas. Frequently, they are named to designate the area or the city where they were first isolated or to indicate their principal animal host. In the United States the following organisms have been most commonly isolated from patients: *S. typhimurium*, *S. choleraesuis*, *S. oranienburg*, *S. montevideo*, *S. newport*, *S. enteritidis*, *S. panama* and *S. anatum* (Bornstein 1943). The relative incidence of infections due to any one species among the reported cases depends in large part on the number of persons involved in the outbreaks studied.

In the third group are found those which are known to be pathogenic only for animals or birds. This group has rapidly become smaller as more of these species have been found to cause disease in man. *S. gallinarum*, *S. pullorum* is one of the most important organisms in this group.

*Salmonella typhosa* (*S. typhi*, *Eberthella typhosa*, *Bacillus typhosa*, *Bact. typhosum*, typhoid bacillus) is found only in man and is the cause of classic typhoid fever. In animals by the oral route it will infect only chimpanzees. By the intravenous or the intraperitoneal route *S. typhosa* in large doses will kill mice but the size of the dose indicates that its invasive powers are not marked and that death in this host is mainly a result of the toxic action of the organisms injected. The addition of mucin to the suspension of bacteria enhances the ability of the bacillus to multiply in the mouse and makes it possible to produce death with much smaller numbers of organ-

*typhi*. *A. Bacillus paratyphosus A*, *Bacterium paratyphosum A* (paratyphoid A bacillus) is found only in man and is one cause of paratyphoid fever.

*Salmonella schottmuelleri* (*Salmonella paratyphi B*, *Bacillus paratyphosus B*, *Bacterium paratyphosum B*, paratyphoid B bacillus) is also a cause of paratyphoid fever in man and in addition produces gastroenteritis. Although occasionally it has been isolated from animals it does not cause disease in them under natural conditions.

*Salmonella hirschfeldii* (*Salmonella paratyphi C*) is a common cause of enteric fevers or gastroenteritis in man in Eastern Europe and Asia but is rarely found in the United States. It is not known to be a natural pathogen of animals.

*Salmonella typhimurium* (*Salmonella aertrycke*, *Bacterium aertrycke*) is a natural pathogen of rodents causing in mice a typhoidlike disease which has a high mortality. It usually produces an acute gastroenteritis in man.

*Salmonella choleraesuis* (*Bacterium suispestifer*) though a natural pathogen for animals may cause an enteric fever or gastroenteritis in man but usually produces localizing processes with or without a septicemia. *S. choleraesuis* also occurs in the intestine of normal hogs and occasionally in cattle and sheep. It is a prominent secondary invader in hog cholera and was once considered to be the etiologic agent until the real cause a filterable virus was isolated. Contaminated meat may be a source of infection.

*Salmonella oranienburg* occurs naturally as a cause of epizootics in quail and chickens and frequently is isolated from dried-egg products. In man it may produce gastroenteritis, enteric fever or septicemia.

*Salmonella montevideo* is found in various animals and fowls (monkeys, pigs, turkeys, chickens, etc.) and also is isolated from dried-egg products. In man it may cause gastroenteritis, enteric fever or septicemia.

*Salmonella newport* is isolated from rats, pigs, chickens and turkeys as well as from meat and dried eggs. It causes gastroenteritis, enteric fever or septicemia in man.

*Salmonella enteritidis* (*Bacterium enteritidis*) which resembles *S. typhimurium* in many properties was one of the first salmo-

nella identified as the cause of disease in man by Gaertner in 1888. It includes several fermentative varieties which sometimes are given separate designations such as *S. enteritidis* var. *gärtner danyz* or *essen*. Some relationship between these varieties and a specific natural host seems to exist. Strains have been isolated from horses, hogs, mice, rats, ducks, and duck eggs. In man it causes gastroenteritis more often than other types of clinical manifestations.

*Salmonella anatum* isolated on several occasions from ducks, chickens, turkeys, and dried eggs, has also been found in normal pigs and silver foxes. In man it usually produces a gastroenteritis.

*Salmonella derby* is found most commonly in turkeys but also occurs in chickens and pigs. It is one of the 10 most common salmonella organisms causing gastroenteritis in the United States.

*Salmonella gallinarum* is the cause of fowl typhoid and differs from other salmonella in being nonmotile. An important fermentative variant, *S. pullorum*, is the cause of bacillary white diarrhea in chickens and is found in dried egg products. These organisms are commonly regarded as nonpathogenic for man, though recent evidence has shown that sometimes *S. pullorum* may cause gastroenteritis when ingested in large numbers.

From this abridged list of representative salmonella it is apparent that most of the strains that are natural pathogens of animals can also produce disease in man. Animal products such as meat, milk, or eggs are often the vehicles involved in transmission to man. These foods may come from infected animal sources or be contaminated by infected animals or man before ingestion.

#### TOXINS

The endotoxins of the salmonella are components closely associated with the bacterial body which are released into solution only with autolysis of the cell. They are identical with the somatic O antigens of the cell. They are heat stable and their toxic effects are neutralized only to a slight degree by immune sera. The studies of Bovin *et al* (1933a, b) and Henderson (1938) first revealed that these endotoxins are polysac-

charide protein lipid complexes. The somatic antigens isolated from the various species of *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, and *Escherichia* are similar in chemical nature. The polysaccharide is responsible for the serologic type specificity of the antigen, whereas the protein seems to be antigenically identical in the various salmonella and shigella. The component responsible for the toxicity has not been clearly identified, though toxic lipids (Westphal and Ludentz 1954) and polysaccharides (Ribi *et al* 1961) have been isolated from the complete complex.

The purified somatic antigen complexes elicit the production of O agglutinins, bactericidal antibodies, and mouse protective antibodies when injected in minute amounts into rabbits or man (Morgan 1941, Favorite and Morgan 1942).

Somatic antigens are highly toxic for animals and man. Doses of less than a microgram administered intravenously in man produce a marked febrile response. This toxic effect is not completely neutralized by specific immune serum (Morgan 1941) but repeated injection of small quantities leads to an increase in resistance to the toxic effects in animals and man which is non-specific in that it is effective against endotoxins that are not antigenically related (Morgan 1948a). This resistance has been called tolerance (Morgan and Favorite 1942). Intradermal inoculation into rabbits and man produces local edema and erythema followed by necrosis. Intravenous injection into rabbits produces congestion, hemorrhagic extravasation, and necrosis in various organs, particularly the liver and the bone marrow. The latter contains few polymorphonuclear leukocytes. The vascular endothelium is damaged and widespread thrombosis similar to the type characteristic of severe typhoid fever in man is produced (Morgan 1943). The changes in the bone marrow and the focal necrosis in the liver are also similar to those observed in fatal cases of typhoid fever. Following the intravenous injection in man of minute amounts of the purified somatic antigens, the individual develops a chill, fever, headache, malaise, and a polymorphonuclear leukopenia. These symptoms and the leukopenia are common manifestations of typhoid

primarily human pathogens and includes *S. typhosa*, *S. paratyphi*, *S. schottmuelleri* and *S. hirschfeldii*. Of these *S. typhosa* is the most important. In the United States *S. schottmuelleri* is the most common (Seligmann *et al.* 1946) occasionally *S. paratyphi* is isolated and *S. hirschfeldii* is very rare. *S. schottmuelleri* is also found rarely in animals.

The second group is made up of organisms which are primarily pathogenic for animals including birds but occasionally may cause disease in man. It contains the majority of the salmonella. The relative incidence of these species in human infections varies in different geographic areas. Frequently they are named to designate the area or the city where they were first isolated or to indicate their principal animal host. In the United States the following organisms have been most commonly isolated from patients: *S. typhimurium*, *S. choleraesuis*, *S. oranienburg*, *S. montevideo*, *S. newport*, *S. enteritidis*, *S. panama* and *S. anatum* (Bornstein 1943). The relative incidence of infections due to any one species among the reported cases depends in large part on the number of persons involved in the outbreaks studied.

In the third group are found those which are known to be pathogenic only for animals or birds. This group has rapidly become smaller as more of these species have been found to cause disease in man. *S. gallinarum*, *S. pullorum* is one of the most important organisms in this group.

*Salmonella typhosa* (*S. typhi*, *Eberthella typhosa*, *Bacillus typhosa*, *Bact. typhosum*, typhoid bacillus) The typhoid bacillus is found only in man and is the cause of classic typhoid fever. In animals by the oral route it will infect only chimpanzees. By the intra-venous or the intraperitoneal route *S. typhosa* in large doses will kill mice but the size of the dose indicates that its invasive powers are not marked and that death in this host is mainly a result of the toxic action of the organisms injected. The addition of mucin to the suspension of bacteria enhances the ability of the bacillus to multiply in the mouse and makes it possible to produce death with much smaller numbers of organisms.

*Salmonella paratyphi* (*Salmonella para-*

*typhi* A, *Bacillus paratyphosus* A, *Bacterium paratyphosum* A, paratyphoid A bacillus) is found only in man and is one cause of paratyphoid fever.

*Salmonella schottmuelleri* (*Salmonella paratyphi* B, *Bacillus paratyphosus* B, *Bacterium paratyphosum* B, paratyphoid B bacillus) is also a cause of paratyphoid fever in man and in addition produces gastroenteritis. Although occasionally it has been isolated from animals it does not cause disease in them under natural conditions.

*Salmonella hirschfeldii* (*Salmonella paratyphi* C) is a common cause of enteric fevers or gastroenteritis in man in Eastern Europe and Asia but is rarely found in the United States. It is not known to be a natural pathogen of animals.

*Salmonella typhimurium* (*Salmonella aertrycke*, *Bacterium aertrycke*) is a natural pathogen of rodents causing in mice a typhoidlike disease which has a high mortality. It usually produces an acute gastroenteritis in man.

*Salmonella choleraesuis* (*Bacterium suispestifer*), though a natural pathogen for animals may cause an enteric fever or gastroenteritis in man but usually produces localizing processes with or without a septicemia. *S. choleraesuis* also occurs in the intestine of normal hogs and occasionally in cattle and sheep. It is a prominent secondary invader in hog cholera and was once considered to be the etiologic agent until the real cause, a filterable virus, was isolated. Contaminated meat may be a source of infection.

*Salmonella oranienburg* occurs naturally as a cause of epizootics in quail and chickens and frequently is isolated from dried-egg products. In man it may produce gastroenteritis, enteric fever or septicemia.

*Salmonella montevideo* is found in various animals and fowls (monkeys, pigs, turkeys, chickens, etc.) and also is isolated from dried-egg products. In man it may cause gastroenteritis, enteric fever or septicemia.

*Salmonella newport* is isolated from rats, pigs, chickens and turkeys as well as from meat and dried eggs. It causes gastroenteritis, enteric fever or septicemia in man.

*Salmonella enteritidis* (*Bacterium enteritidis*), which resembles *S. typhimurium* in many properties, was one of the first salmo-

of the organism may account for the persistence of the infection in the presence of bactericidal antibodies in the blood serum and for the failure of therapeutic immune serum to alter appreciably the clinical course of the disease. It is probable that the bacilli enter the bloodstream from these cells at the end of the incubation period via the lymphatics and the thoracic duct. Then the endotoxins are released in the bloodstream as the bacterial cells are lysed, producing some of the symptoms of typhoid fever. There is some evidence that the somatic antigens are present in the blood of patients during the acute phase of the disease (Dennis and Saigh 1946).

Typhoid bacilli are found frequently in the spleen and bone marrow, and the gallbladder is invariably infected. The organisms appear to multiply in the biliary system, and the majority of those which are found in the stool at certain stages of the disease, particularly in convalescence, probably are carried there with the biliary secretions. The periodicity of the discharge of the biliary contents into the intestine may account in part for the irregular results in the isolation of *S. typhosa* from the feces of any given patient over a period of time.

Relapses occur in about 10 per cent of the cases and probably represent a reinvansion of the bloodstream from the local areas of multiplication of the organisms in the lymphoid tissue, bone marrow, the spleen, and the biliary system. The mortality rate in typhoid fever in untreated patients is about 10 per cent, and death is due to the complications of intestinal hemorrhage or perforation in about 75 per cent of the fatal cases.

On postmortem examination the small intestine usually shows extensive areas of ulceration, particularly in the area of Peyer's patches, and hyperplasia of lymphoid tissue in the intestinal wall. Many organisms are present in the lymphoid tissue, some within plasma cells. The spleen is enlarged. The liver shows areas of focal necrosis, and organisms are almost always present in the gallbladder. Other organs may be involved, such as the periosteum, bone marrow, joints, and lungs. In patients with signs of meningitis, occasionally *S. typhosa* has been isolated from the spinal fluid.

Recent studies on experimental typhoid

fever in man (Greisman *et al.*, 1961) have added considerably to our understanding of human infection. It was discovered that it was necessary to administer  $5 \times 10^8$  organisms to the volunteers by mouth to ensure infection, though the severity of the illness produced varied from person to person. Such subjects developed tolerance to the toxic effects of endotoxin early in convalescence, but this resistant state disappeared after 3 months. Following recovery, several volunteers had relapses of their infection with bacteremia at times when they had high titers of circulating antibodies for *S. typhosa*.

It has also been possible to infect chimpanzees by mouth with several billion typhoid bacilli, with the production of a febrile illness resembling mild typhoid fever in man, and in which the pathologic findings were essentially indistinguishable from those seen in man (Edsall *et al.* 1960).

#### OTHER ENTERIC FEVERS

Enteric fevers caused by salmonella other than *S. typhosa* have a shorter incubation period, from 1 to 10 days, and, with the exception of some of the cases due to *S. paratyphi*, *S. schottmuelleri*, and *S. hirschfeldii*, are milder and less typical than typhoid fever. Fever and malaise are the dominating symptoms and last from 1 to 3 weeks. Blood cultures are often positive early in the disease, while stool cultures may be negative for 1 or 2 weeks. Rose spots are rare. The postmortem findings may or may not be similar to those of mild typhoid fever. *S. schottmuelleri* is a common cause of enteric fever in the United States.

#### GASTROENTERITIS

Following the consumption of contaminated food, gastroenteritis caused by salmonella occurs after an incubation period of from 1 to 48 hours. This short interval suggests that large numbers of the organisms are usually ingested. The onset is nearly always sudden and may be characterized by headache, chills, and often abdominal pain. Nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea follow with a rise in temperature. Prostration develops, which lasts from 1 to 4 days. The disease is more severe in infants and young children. Blood cultures are usually negative, but frequently organisms can be isolated from the



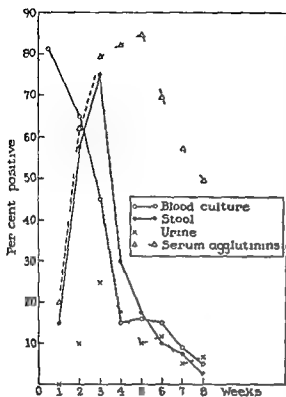


FIG 1 Results of serum agglutination test and of blood stool and urine cultures of patients during the course of typhoid fever

fever in man and it is likely that they are produced by the release of the endotoxins from the typhoid bacilli present in the infected subject

A local intradermal injection of the somatic antigens followed after an interval by an intravenous injection results in the local hemorrhagic changes in the skin characteristic of the Shwartzman reaction

#### PATHIOGENESIS

Salmonella infection is almost always due to the ingestion of contaminated materials the organisms enter the tissues from the intestine via the lymphatics. Since the number of organisms ingested may affect the length of the incubation period the latter may vary considerably in different individuals

There are 3 main types of clinical manifestations of salmonella infection namely enteric fever, gastroenteritis and a localizing type with foci in one or more organs accompanied by septicaemia

#### TYPHOID FEVER

Among the enteric fevers the classic is typhoid fever. The typhoid organism unlike other salmonella produces this clinical manifestation only in the human host and in the chimpanzee. The incubation period extends from about 7 to 14 days. The onset is insidious often beginning gradually with malaise, anorexia and a headache. This is usually followed by the appearance of a fever which rises in a step-like manner to an average of  $104^{\circ}\text{F}$ , with a pulse rate that tends to be slow in comparison with the height of the fever. Nosebleeds may occur at this stage of the disease. During the first week the patient usually is prostrate and may have diarrhea though constipation is even more common and either is usually accompanied by abdominal tenderness and distension. At this time the patient may also have a cough and bronchitis. In the first or the second week rose spots frequently appear. Splenomegaly is common and the temperature remains elevated. In the more severe cases, as time passes the patient may become delirious and show the so-called typhoid state for which the disease was named. After the 3rd week the temperature curve shows morning remissions and returns to a normal level by a gradual lysis. A leukopenia is present in most cases characterized by a relative decrease in the number of polymorphonuclear leukocytes and an absence of eosinophils.

Blood cultures are often positive in the 1st and the 2nd weeks and less frequently during the 3rd week. Stool cultures may be positive from the beginning and often remain positive until convalescence has been completed. Organisms are often found in the urine during the second and the third week and may be excreted for a considerable period after convalescence (Fig 1). Cultures of the bone marrow may show typhoid bacilli when blood cultures are negative. Organisms may also be found in the rose spots.

The typhoid bacillus gains access to the body through the alimentary tract where it probably multiplies during the incubation period in the lymphoid tissue of the wall of the small intestine and the regional lymph nodes. Later organisms are often found here in the plasma cells. The intracellular position

the blood but that the bacilli which are known to occur intracellularly in the spleen the gallbladder bone marrow and the lymphoid tissue of the intestine are protected from their action. These bacilli multiply within the cells and release the somatic endotoxins which seem to produce tissue damage and the symptoms of general toxemia. Since the toxicity of these substances is only reduced and not completely neutralized by antibodies they may produce their injurious effects in the presence of circulating antibody (Morgan 1941). Therefore humoral antibodies appear to have a limited role in immunity to typhoid fever and the decisive factor in recovery may be the development of an increased capacity of the fixed phagocytic cells to destroy the bacteria. The persistence of resistance after antibodies have disappeared from the blood tends to support this hypothesis.

Another factor of possible importance in recovery from the disease may be the development of an increased tolerance to the toxic effects of the somatic antigens not dependent on the presence of antibodies (Neva and Morgan 1950). In man increasing doses of typhoid somatic antigen may be given intravenously without corresponding increases in the severity of successive reactions (Favonte and Morgan 1942). This tolerance does not seem to be correlated with antibody titer since relatively small amounts of toxin may produce toxic effects in the presence of high levels of circulating antibody. Furthermore tolerance disappears fairly rapidly after the injections of toxin are discontinued while the antibody levels remain elevated for much longer periods. This type of tolerance may involve a change in the functional activity of the reticuloendothelial system, providing for a more rapid disposal of foreign material (Beeson 1946). It is not specific for a particular somatic antigen but appears to extend to the chemically and toxicologically related but immunologically distinct endotoxins of other gram negative organisms (Morgan 1948a b).

In addition to the earlier observations (Neva and Morgan 1950) regarding the development of tolerance to endotoxins in natural enteric fevers caused by salmonella the studies on experimental typhoid fever

TABLE 4 MORTALITY FROM TYPHOID FEVER

PERIOD	UNITED STATES (Rates per 100 000)	UNITED STATES ARMY (Rates per 100 000)
		93 CITIES\$ IN THE UNITED STATES
1906-1910	25.6	26.37
1911-1915	16.6	3.24*
1916-1920	11.1	5.08†
1921-1925	7.6	0.4
1926-1930	5.1	1.19
1931-1935	3.5	0.59
		UNITED STATES ARMY IN THE EUROPEAN THEATER‡
1942-1945	0.25	0.06

1911—Compulsory immunization introduced into U.S. Army

† 1916—Mexican Border Service 1917-1919 World War I

‡ Total population of 38 060 662.

\$ Army had maximum strength of 3 064 562 in this theater

have shown clearly that significant tolerance is present during convalescence from these carefully studied infections in human volunteers (Greisman *et al.* 1961).

#### IMMUNIZATION

Within a few years after the isolation of *S. typhosa* suspensions of killed bacilli were injected into human beings for the purpose of immunization. Adoption of this procedure in military personnel was accompanied by a marked decrease in mortality due to typhoid fever (Table 4). Although available data tend to support the view that vaccination significantly reduces the incidence of this infection it is often difficult to assess the results since general conditions of sanitation began to improve both in military and civil practice at about the same time that vaccination was introduced. In consequence the use of the comparative incidence of typhoid fever during consecutive periods of years as an indication of the efficacy of vaccination is invalid unless the sanitary conditions are known to be identical in these successive periods. For this reason a strictly controlled field trial was organized recently in Yugoslavia by the World Health Organization and it was

feces and occasionally from the vomitus *S. typhimurium* is the organism most commonly isolated from cases with salmonella gastroenteritis in the United States

### SEPTICEMIAS

In the septicemias caused by salmonella the invasion of the bloodstream is evidenced by the high remittent fever and positive blood cultures. Intestinal involvement is usually absent in adults, although in children the septicemia may occur as a complication of gastroenteritis. Organisms may localize in any tissue of the body and may produce local abscesses in the perineal and the pelvic regions, cholecystitis, pyelonephritis, endocarditis, pericarditis, meningitis, arthritis or pneumonia. *S. choleraesuis* is one of the most common organisms found in this particular type of infection. The mortality in salmonella septicemia averages about 5 per cent but may reach 20 per cent in infections with *S. choleraesuis* (Seligman *et al.* 1946).

Every *Salmonella* strain is potentially capable of producing any of these 3 clinical types of infection, though *S. paratyphi* and *S. schottmuelleri* tend more frequently to cause the enteric fever picture. This potentiality may be manifested in the clinical course of disease in a single patient, such as onset of illness as acute gastroenteritis and after temporary improvement the development of an enteric fever due to the same organism (e.g. *S. schottmuelleri*). *S. typhimurium* and *S. enteritidis* are found predominantly in acute gastroenteritis, while *S. choleraesuis* is found mostly in the septicemic type of infection. In all instances infections produced by salmonella are more severe in infants and children than in adults. Subclinical infections in which symptoms are absent or so mild as to cause no disability often occur with salmonella other than *S. typhosa* and organisms are found in the feces. In some instances, especially in gastroenteritis, more than one species of salmonella may be isolated from the stool of a single patient (Saphra and Winter 1957).

The organisms are frequently excreted in the feces during convalescence from salmonella infections or after subclinical infections and occasionally for months thereafter. When the infection is due to *S. schottmuelleri* 20

per cent of the patients show positive fecal cultures 3 months after the disease. The proportion of patients with positive cultures begins to drop off rather rapidly after this to reach a level as low as 5 per cent at the end of the fourth month, though a few become chronic carriers.

### CARRIERS

In some instances the salmonella may establish themselves in the tissue of the host to produce a more or less permanent carrier state after the recovery from an acute infection. This is most likely to occur following typhoid fever, where about 3 per cent of the cases are found to be excreting *S. typhosa* in their stools over a year after recovery from the disease. In this instance typhoid bacilli are present in the gallbladder or, less frequently, in the kidney tissue where they multiply, they reach the feces or urine sporadically.

The carrier state in human beings is observed less frequently with *S. paratyphi* and *S. schottmuelleri* than with *S. typhosa* and its duration is much shorter. In a study of a large number of healthy carriers (Seligman *et al.* 1946) 28 different salmonella types were isolated with *S. schottmuelleri*, *S. typhimurium*, *S. oranienburg*, *S. montevideo*, *S. newport*, *S. panama* and *S. anatum* being the most common. Many of these carriers were contacts of cases and had exhibited no clinical symptoms of infection.

### IMMUNITY

An attack of typhoid fever usually confers immunity, though second attacks have been reported. Recovery from the disease is associated with the appearance in the blood of agglutinins and bactericidal antibodies for *S. typhosa*. These antibodies reach appreciable levels during the second and the third weeks of the disease at a time when the typhoid bacilli are known to disappear from the bloodstream. However, antibodies may be present during the acute phase of the disease in relapses and at the time of progression to fatal termination (Gay 1918). These facts strongly suggest that known antibodies are not the sole factor in recovery. It seems probable that the circulating antibodies clear the extracellular organisms from

to 90 per cent of cases during the first week (Fig 1) Blood cultures are usually negative in salmonella gastroenteritis

Organisms may be isolated from the feces in typhoid fever or in salmonella gastroenteritis during the acute stage of the disease and for a variable period thereafter In typhoid fever the number of positive fecal cultures may increase during the second week Organisms may also be isolated from the vomitus or from the contaminated food ingested in gastroenteritis In *S typhosa* infection as many as 25 per cent of the cases have positive urine cultures in the later stages of the disease Salmonella may be found in the urine of patients with the septicemic type of infection when the organisms have localized in the kidney

It has been found that several different species of salmonella may be isolated from the stools of patients involved in a single outbreak of salmonellosis and that 2 or 3 species may be found in the same patient (Saphra and Winter 1957)

Isolation of salmonella from the feces presents a special problem because of the huge number of normal fecal organisms (It is important to culture the fecal specimen as soon as possible to prevent overgrowth by the normal fecal flora a direct rectal swab may be a useful adjunct in obtaining a fresh specimen) A variety of materials have been added to special media to aid in the isolation of intestinal pathogens They fall into several categories (1) agents which inhibit the growth of normal intestinal bacteria e.g. dyes like brilliant green selenium salts and bile salts (2) agents which favor the growth of salmonella over the coliform organisms e.g. sodium tetrathionate and sodium citrate (3) substances which give to salmonella colonies distinguishing characteristics e.g. lactose with necessary dye indicators to color the fermenting colonies of the coliform group or sulfite which is reduced to sulfide by many salmonella and gives a black color to the colony in the presence of iron salts

The fresh stool specimen should be streaked immediately on a selective medium e.g. SS agar or sodium desoxycholate citrate agar and on a nonselective medium such as EMB or MacConkey The nonselective medium is included to pick up the un-

usual species of salmonella that do not grow on the highly selective SS medium. For use in the isolation of *S typhosa* the bismuth sulfite selective medium is of particular value At the same time the specimen should be inoculated into an enrichment medium which allows the pathogens to multiply and inhibits *E coli* e.g. tetrathionate or selenite broth After incubation for 8 to 12 hours this enrichment culture is streaked on selective and nonselective agar media Suspected colonies are subcultured and identified by biochemical reactions and by agglutination tests with specific absorbed sera Further species identification of salmonella can be obtained by sending the culture to one of the Salmonella Centers

**Serologic Diagnosis** Agglutinins for the causative organisms usually can be demonstrated in the circulating blood of patients from 1 to 2 weeks after the onset of typhoid and enteric fever septicemia or gastroenteritis of the more severe types In mild diarrheas the agglutination reaction may not become positive until after the symptoms have subsided or in some instances it may remain negative Tests should be carried out for both O and H agglutinins but O agglutinins appear to be of more significance since some cases fail to develop H agglutinins Moreover O agglutinins are of more diagnostic value because they disappear more rapidly than H agglutinins following vaccination Finally O antigen relationships among the various salmonella broaden the range of the test for the initial detection of infection

The antigens used in the agglutination test should be so composed as to give an adequate coverage for all of the principal salmonella groups occurring in the particular geographic area e.g. O antigens of groups B C and D and A where indicated After this preliminary screening further testing can be carried out to give definite diagnosis of the species involved In the United States *S typhosa* *S schottmuelleri* and *S choleraesuis* are commonly used for screening agglutination tests It is not necessary to include a Vi antigen for the diagnosis of typhoid fever since Vi agglutinins rarely appear in the blood of patients in the absence of H or O agglutinins Also Vi agglu-

shown that a phenolized vaccine containing O but not Vi antigen was effective in reducing the rate of infection thus demonstrating the effectiveness of immunization but raising the question of the role of the Vi antigen in protection against typhoid fever (Cvijetanovic 1957). However recent tests have shown that a vaccine with a high content of Vi antigen may be more effective than one containing predominantly O antigen. In another study by Callender and Luippold (1943) in which a standard vaccine had been used for the immunization of a group of men who subsequently were exposed to a common contaminated water supply, the incidence of typhoid fever among the nonimmunized group was 7 per cent as compared with 1.1 per cent in the vaccinated group. These results suggest that the protection conferred by vaccination is only relative since cases did occur in immunized groups. Since the infecting dose may be very large in some instances the immune mechanism may be overwhelmed thus explaining the failure of the vaccine to give complete protection under all conditions (Syvertsen *et al.* 1946).

In experimental typhoid fever in chimpanzees bacterial vaccines were found to be effective in protecting against infection whereas purified Vi antigen produced some immunity and purified O antigen induced no discernible protection (Gaines *et al.* 1961). Thus the use of purified antigens for immunization requires further study and the relative importance of Vi and O antigens needs to be clearly elucidated.

The vaccine commonly used consists of a saline suspension of typhoid organisms in the smooth phase killed by heating for 1 hour at 56° C. The suspension is standardized to contain 1 billion organisms per ml. Tricresol or an organic mercurial is added as a preservative.

Grinnel (1932) studied the immunizing potency of the various dissociants of the typhoid bacillus and found that vaccines prepared from rough strains had little value. This was confirmed by the findings (Felton and Wakeman 1937) that the O somatic antigens which are lost in the S → R dissociation are the essential immunizing constituents of salmonella. Recently recognition

that the Vi antigen is destroyed by heating has led to the use of an alcohol inactivated vaccine in which the Vi antigen is preserved. However as mentioned above it has not yet been demonstrated that the Vi antigen plays an essential role in protection.

Since the O antigens can now be prepared in relatively pure form they have been used in experimental immunization in man. In very small amounts, they produce somewhat higher circulating antibody titers than the equivalent quantity of whole bacterial vaccines with less unpleasant toxic reactions (Morgan, 1945).

During periods when sanitation breaks down a wider range of protection may be desired, and typhoid vaccine is often supplemented by the addition of suspensions of heat killed *S. paratyphi* and *S. schottmuelleri* to form TAB vaccine. In certain geographic areas this vaccine includes *S. hirschfeldii* (TABC vaccine). These vaccines are given in the form of 3 injections of 0.5 to 1.0 ml subcutaneously and reinoculation with 0.5 ml every 3 years. The administration of 0.1 ml intracutaneously as a booster dose produces less fever and undesirable reactions yet it appears to give adequate antibody titers. It has been suggested that the intracutaneous route might be used also for primary immunization. Administration of vaccines by the oral route has not been shown to elicit an adequate antibody response.

The value of antityphoid immune serum used prophylactically in individuals known to have been exposed to typhoid fever has not yet been established.

### DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of salmonella infection depends on isolation and identification of the causative agent (e.g. from blood, feces or urine) or on the demonstration of a rise in titer of specific circulating antibodies for a given organism.

Isolation of the organism from the circulating blood is the most conclusive method of bacteriologic diagnosis. It is most likely to be successful in the earliest phases of the disease and in the enteric fever or septicemic types of clinical disease. In typhoid fever positive blood cultures are obtained in 80

contaminated food in which the organisms often multiply before ingestion

Water may be contaminated with infected feces by cross connections between water and sewage pipes seepage of surface water into wells or surface contamination of shallow wells. Epidemic outbreaks of typhoid fever involving entire communities may follow a breakdown of the water purification system during a flood for example. Outbreaks involving fewer individuals may be caused by contaminated milk not pasteurized or more rarely contaminated after pasteurization. In these instances the distribution of cases parallels that of the delivery of the milk. Oysters and shell fish may also cause smaller outbreaks when taken from water contaminated with sewage.

Endemic typhoid fever and infections with other salmonella are now much more common than epidemic typhoid fever in parts of the world where sanitary measures are applied to protect water and food supplies. In these instances infection usually is due to contamination of food by a human being or an animal excreting the organisms or to the ingestion of the improperly cooked meat of an infected animal or of foods containing contaminated egg products. In some instances flies carry infected excreta to the food or even become infected themselves with the bacilli and deposit them on the food. Milk and dairy products such as cream, custard, ice cream and cheese have been involved in the spread of typhoid fever and other salmonella infections. The bacilli can grow in foodstuffs at warm temperatures without producing any detectable changes in appearance or taste to reveal their presence. Among foods prepared from tissues of animals infected with salmonella bacilli are meat products like sausage and luncheon meats which are often insufficiently cooked. Eggs are often implicated and positive salmonella cultures have been obtained in as many as 30 per cent of a series of preparations of powdered eggs most of which contained *S. pullorum* although *S. oranienburg*, *S. typhimurium* and *S. montevideo* were also found. Ducks are known to harbor *S. typhimurium* and *S. enteritidis* which have been found in their eggs.

Less than 5 per cent of recognized clinical

cases of typhoid fever become chronic carriers and continue to excrete *S. typhosa* in their stools and in some instances in their urine for years. They constitute the main source of infection in this disease although ambulant cases also spread the organisms. Since over 90 per cent of typhoid carriers show Vi agglutinins in their serum this provides a valuable screening test for their detection. Once proved to shed bacilli in their urine or feces these persons must be isolated and kept under medical supervision until rid of the carrier state by procedures such as cholecystectomy or drug therapy. Disappearance of Vi agglutinins suggests that the carrier state has been eradicated but this is proved only by repeated negative fecal and urine cultures. As the incidence of typhoid decreases the number of carriers is reduced sharply thus drying up the reservoir of infection.

Chronic carriers who excrete organisms for over a year are found much less often with *S. paratyphi* and *S. schottmuelleri* and even more rarely with other organisms such as *S. typhimurium*. With other salmonella the most important sources of infection are the temporary convalescent carriers who may continue to excrete the bacilli for from 4 to 16 weeks after their illness and the ambulant, subclinical cases who excrete the organisms in their stools. In any outbreak there may be a large number of these apparently normal contacts who are excreting the bacilli and therefore spreading the infection.

#### CONTROL MEASURES

The control of salmonella infections is directed at (1) the detection and the elimination of the modes and the vehicles of transmission (2) the elimination of the sources of infection and (3) measures to increase the resistance of the susceptible host. The first two aspects of control are the most important and usually are relied on entirely except under circumstances in which control of the environmental factors become more difficult as in time of war when the third aspect may assume a more critical role.

In the case of typhoid fever elimination of sources of infection is largely a question of detection and supervision of the chronic human carrier. This measure is also valuable

tinins may not be detectable in the serum of patients known to have typhoid fever. The detection of agglutinins in the feces of patients (Harrison and Banvard, 1947) has been suggested as a diagnostic method.

In the Widal or agglutination test, the demonstration of a rising titer of specific agglutinins is accepted as definite evidence of infection with the particular salmonella strain. However, if only a single specimen is available, an O agglutinin titer of more than 1:50 during the first 10 days of illness is considered strong presumptive evidence if the patient has not been vaccinated within 2 years. In a patient with a history of previous inoculation with typhoid vaccine, the fact that H agglutinins tend to persist for a number of years following immunization, while O agglutinins fall in 6 months and usually disappear in about a year, makes the O agglutinin titer more valuable in diagnosis. The common concept that such agglutinins will rise in titer during any febrile illness due to a nonspecific anamnestic reaction has been found to be erroneous (Koomen and Morgan, 1954). However, several other factors should be considered in the interpretation of a single agglutination titer. The level of agglutinins in the serum of normal persons in the particular geographic area is important and in all instances the stage of the disease at which the serum specimen was taken should be noted. Since antigen preparations differ in their sensitivity to the agglutinating action of sera, the activity of each new antigen should be evaluated with a standard serum. The test for O agglutinins can be made much more sensitive by adsorbing O antigens to the surface of human type O erythrocytes. These red cells when added to serum containing the anti-O antibodies agglutinate to high titer (Neter *et al.* 1956).

#### TREATMENT

The treatment formerly used in typhoid fever or other salmonella infections was mainly supportive and aimed at maintaining the fluid balance and the nutritional state of the patient. More recently several specific therapeutic agents have been employed. The sulfonamide drugs apparently have had some beneficial effect on certain salmonella infections but their use in typhoid fever has been

disappointing. Combined therapy using sulfonamides with larger than ordinary doses of penicillin has given some evidence of therapeutic value. Streptomycin has had a limited trial in typhoid fever and in other salmonella infections without any clearly beneficial results, in spite of the fact that the organisms are sensitive to the action of the drug *in vitro* (Keefer, 1946). Streptomycin given orally markedly reduces the number of typhoid bacilli as well as of coliform organisms in the stools. However, the bacteria reappear when the therapy is discontinued.

Chloramphenicol is effective in the treatment of typhoid fever (McDermott, Knight and Ruiz Sanchez, 1949), though patients do not become afebrile until about the fourth day after treatment is started and may become carriers in spite of adequate therapy. However, chloramphenicol therapy of other salmonella infections has been less successful.

The intracellular location of the typhoid organisms is also thought to account for the relatively slow response of this infection to antibiotic therapy. In a model system *in vitro* where *S. typhosa* bacilli were studied inside mouse fibroblasts, chloramphenicol promptly inhibited their multiplication but viable bacilli remained within the cells for several weeks (Showacre *et al.* 1961; Hopps *et al.* 1961).

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY

The source of all salmonella infection is the reservoir of organisms living in the tissues of human beings or animals. Infection occurs through food, milk or water contaminated with infected feces or urine or by the actual ingestion of the infected animal tissues. The hosts which harbor the organisms may be clinically recognized cases or sick animals, subclinical cases or carriers. The two latter groups are the most important, since they are usually unrecognized. Infection with most salmonella apparently requires the ingestion of large numbers of organisms but in the case of *S. typhosa* relatively few bacilli are sufficient to cause typhoid fever. This difference in infectivity probably accounts for the fact that lightly contaminated material like water or shellfish can be the source of typhoid infection while most other salmonella infections are caused by heavily

dysentery The clinical and epidemiologic descriptions furnished by Hippocrates in the same century suggest that the disease was well known in Greece and that the bulk of it was probably of bacillary rather than amebic origin Until the recent advent of effective sanitation the conditions associated with military operations have been particularly conducive to the spread of enteric disease and it is not surprising that outbreaks of dysentery have been a frequent accompaniment of military campaigns In recent years the Gallipoli campaign of World War I, the operations in the Mediterranean and the Pacific Theaters of World War II and the experiences in prisoner-of-war camps during the Korean War have furnished invaluable clinical laboratory and epidemiologic data to students of the disease In civil life jails and asylums have long been notorious for outbreaks of dysentery overcrowding poor sanitary facilities and low standards of personal hygiene appear to have been the common factors

In spite of the many excellent clinical accounts of dysentery which have been published since the time of Herodotus it was not until the closing years of the 19th century that the bacillary and the amebic varieties were separated on clinical epidemiologic and etiologic grounds The latter disease occurs sporadically rather than in epidemics pursues a chronic rather than an acute course is frequently complicated by hepatic abscesses if specific therapy is not instituted promptly and presents the typical pathologic findings of shallow undermining ulcers in the large bowel and an intestinal exudate which is mononuclear in character The causative agent *Entamoeba histolytica* probably was discovered as early as 1859 and by 1890 it was firmly established as one of the etiologic agents of the disease syndrome

The first successful attempt to incriminate a specific bacterial agent as a cause of dysentery resulted from the work of Shiga in connection with an outbreak of dysentery in Japan in 1896 He isolated the organism now known as *Sh dysenteriae* type 1 from the feces and the intestinal walls of patients suffering from clinical dysentery Further proof was furnished by the finding of specific agglutinins against the organism in the

blood of patients suffering convalescing or recently recovered from the disease but not in the blood of healthy individuals (Shiga 1898) Two years later the first type of *Sh flexneri* was isolated by Flexner in the Philippines in similar fashion from the feces of patients suffering from dysentery The first adequate description of *Sh sonnei* was given by Sonne of Denmark in 1915 *Sh dysenteriae* type 2 was isolated by Schmitz in a Roumanian prisoner-of-war camp during an outbreak of dysentery in 1917 Boyd isolated the first strain of *Sh boydii* in India about 1930 *Sh dysenteriae* types 3 through 7 represent the so-called Large Sachs group of dysentery bacilli Although the existence of such a group was suspected as early as 1919 much of our information concerning them comes from the more recent work of Sachs and others in India

#### MORPHOLOGIC AND BIOCHEMICAL CHARACTERISTICS

The shigella organisms are slender gram negative rods approximately  $1 \mu$  by  $0.5 \mu$ . They resemble other enteric bacteria but are frequently so short on primary isolation as to resemble coccobacilli They are nonmotile and nonsporulating and no true capsule has been identified

*Shigella bacilli* are aerobes and facultative anaerobes like other enteric bacilli and grow best at a temperature of approximately  $37^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Their nutritional requirements while not completely defined are relatively simple and the ordinary culture media will support their growth Their ability to grow in the presence of various bile salts in contrast with some strains of coliform bacilli is made use of in the design of selective media (e.g. SS agar) for their isolation from the gastrointestinal tract They do not liquefy gelatin or produce hydrogen sulfide they are not able to utilize citrate All members of the group fail to produce acetyl methyl carbinol but are able to reduce nitrates to nitrites Some species produce indol There is evidence that in the case of *Sh flexneri* 3 at least the tricarboxylic acid cycle may function as the pathway of terminal respiration (Pan et al 1957)

As in the case of other nonsporulating organisms their resistance to physical and



in the prevention or the spread of other salmonella infections. In all instances the infected patient must be recognized, isolated, and his excreta carefully disposed of. Bacteriologic examinations should be made of the stools in all cases of diarrhea, and all salmonella infections should be reported. The detection and the isolation of the ambulant cases in an outbreak is a valuable adjunct in control when this procedure is feasible. Ideally, any individual yielding positive cultures of feces or urine should be isolated until several successive negative cultures have been obtained.

Adequate inspection of animals slaughtered for meat is of value in limiting the consumption of meat from sick animals. However, if the disease is not active, the detection of infected animals may be very difficult. Inspection and supervision of other animal food products also serve to reduce contamination.

Spread of the infection can be halted by methods directed at the vehicles and the modes of transmission. Modern sanitation methods, such as proper sewage disposal, selection of unpolluted sources of water supply, with its subsequent filtration and chlorination, and the pasteurization of milk, have been largely responsible for the dramatic decrease in the incidence of typhoid fever.

The contamination of food may be prevented by the exclusion as food handlers of persons with diarrheas and by the elimination of rodents and flies from premises where food is prepared. Careful handling of food after preparation, adequate refrigeration of uncooked foods, adequate cooking of meats, eggs, and egg products, all serve to reduce salmonella infection.

Active immunization with appropriate vaccines should be regarded as an emergency measure to be used under conditions of great exposure, for example, among the staffs of contagious disease hospitals, among soldiers or travelers in countries where the diseases are still endemic due to lack of sanitary developments, or when sanitation breaks down as in catastrophes or periods of war. Vaccination is a poor substitute for sanitary control, since there is no evidence that it alone can stamp out intestinal diseases, though it seems to reduce the incidence and

the fatality of salmonella infections. Cases do occur among vaccinated individuals (Syvertsen *et al.* 1946), especially when the infective dose is large. In the prisoner of war camps in World War II, vaccination apparently was effective in aiding in the control of disease until the camps became severely overcrowded. Prophylactic vaccination during an epidemic is of value mainly in preventing secondary cases among contacts of infected individuals. If the outbreak is explosive as in the case of a waterborne epidemic of typhoid fever where the source can be discovered and controlled early, immunization of the entire community is not necessary, since it can have no effect on individuals in the incubation period of the disease and is unnecessary for those who have escaped infection, with the exception of those in direct contact with the patients (Topley 1938).

## THE SHIGELLA AND BACILLARY DYSENTERY

The shigella organisms are nonencapsulated, nonmotile, slender, gram-negative rods which are facultative anaerobes growing best under aerobic conditions. They ferment various carbohydrates without the production of gas and vary in the fermentation of mannitol, which is used as an important characteristic in their classification. One species (*Shigella sonnei*) ferments lactose after incubation for 2 days or more. Some of the shigella share antigens in common with other genera of the family *Enterobacteriaceae* and also possess distinctive antigens which are useful in their classification. In contrast with the widespread distribution of salmonella and coliform organisms, the shigella are found only in the gastrointestinal tracts of primates, and thus the only important source of infection in man is the human host. In man, these organisms cause bacillary dysentery.

## HISTORY

The clinical entity of bloody or mucous diarrhea accompanied by straining and tenesmus was recognized as long ago as the 4th century B.C. Herodotus ascribes the defeat of the Persian Army in 380 B.C. in part to

**dysentery** The clinical and epidemiologic descriptions furnished by Hippocrates in the same century suggest that the disease was well known in Greece and that the bulk of it was probably of bacillary rather than amebic origin. Until the recent advent of effective sanitation, the conditions associated with military operations have been particularly conducive to the spread of enteric disease and it is not surprising that outbreaks of dysentery have been a frequent accompaniment of military campaigns. In recent years the Gallipoli campaign of World War I, the operations in the Mediterranean and the Pacific Theaters of World War II and the experiences in prisoner-of-war camps during the Korean War have furnished invaluable clinical laboratory and epidemiologic data to students of the disease. In civil life jails and asylums have long been notorious for outbreaks of dysentery, overcrowding, poor sanitary facilities and low standards of personal hygiene appear to have been the common factors.

In spite of the many excellent clinical accounts of dysentery which have been published since the time of Herodotus, it was not until the closing years of the 19th century that the bacillary and the amebic varieties were separated on clinical, epidemiologic and etiologic grounds. The latter disease occurs sporadically rather than in epidemics, pursues a chronic rather than an acute course, is frequently complicated by hepatic abscesses, if specific therapy is not instituted promptly and presents the typical pathologic findings of shallow undermining ulcers in the large bowel and an intestinal exudate which is mononuclear in character. The causative agent *Entamoeba histolytica* probably was discovered as early as 1859 and by 1890 it was firmly established as one of the etiologic agents of the disease syndrome.

The first successful attempt to incriminate a specific bacterial agent as a cause of dysentery resulted from the work of Shiga in connection with an outbreak of dysentery in Japan in 1896. He isolated the organism now known as *Sh. dysenteriae* type 1 from the feces and the intestinal walls of patients suffering from clinical dysentery. Further proof was furnished by the finding of specific agglutinins against the organism in the

blood of patients suffering convalescing or recently recovered from the disease but not in the blood of healthy individuals (Shiga 1898). Two years later the first type of *Sh. flexneri* was isolated by Flexner in the Philippines in similar fashion from the feces of patients suffering from dysentery. The first adequate description of *Sh. sonnei* was given by Sonne of Denmark in 1915. *Sh. dysenteriae* type 2 was isolated by Schmitz in a Roumanian prisoner of war camp during an outbreak of dysentery in 1917. Boyd isolated the first strain of *Sh. boydii* in India about 1930. *Sh. dysenteriae* types 3 through 7 represent the so-called Large-Sachs group of dysentery bacilli. Although the existence of such a group was suspected as early as 1919, much of our information concerning them comes from the more recent work of Sachs and others in India.

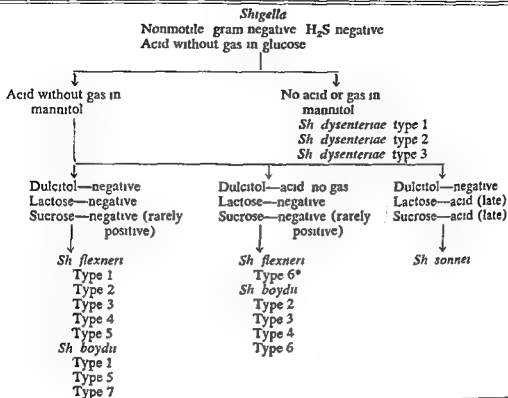
#### MORPHOLOGIC AND BIOCHEMICAL CHARACTERISTICS

The *shigella* organisms are slender, gram-negative rods approximately  $1 \mu$  by  $0.5 \mu$ . They resemble other enteric bacteria, but are frequently so short on primary isolation as to resemble coccobacilli. They are nonmotile and nonsporulating and no true capsule has been identified.

*Shigella* bacilli are aerobes and facultative anaerobes like other enteric bacilli and grow best at a temperature of approximately 37°C. Their nutritional requirements, while not completely defined, are relatively simple and the ordinary culture media will support their growth. Their ability to grow in the presence of various bile salts in contrast with some strains of coliform bacilli is made use of in the design of selective media (e.g., SS agar) for their isolation from the gastrointestinal tract. They do not liquefy gelatin or produce hydrogen sulfide; they are not able to utilize citrate. All members of the group fail to produce acetyl methyl carbinol but are able to reduce nitrates to nitrites. Some species produce indole. There is evidence that in the case of *Sh. flexneri* 3 at least the tricarboxylic acid cycle may function as the pathway of terminal respiration (Pan *et al.* 1957).

As in the case of other nonsporulating organisms, their resistance to physical and

TABLE 5 BIOCHEMICAL SCHEMA OF THE SHIGELLA



\* Occasional strains of this type have been recovered which produce acid and gas in mannitol and glucose

chemical agents is not remarkable. A temperature of  $55^{\circ} C$  sustained for 1 hour will kill them as will exposure to 1 per cent phenol for 30 minutes. However they may survive in sea water for at least 3 days and for a considerably longer period in the dry state particularly if they are kept in the dark. Under natural conditions in the stool their survival appears to be short presumably due to bacteriophage action or because of their sensitivity to the acidity produced by the growth of other organisms. Thus it is important to culture stool samples as promptly as possible.

Individual species of *shigella* ferment a variable number of carbohydrates with the production of acid but with two exceptions no gas. Although some variation in this ability occurs among strains of a given type or species, the fermentation reactions are sufficiently constant and characteristic to be of use in their identification and classification. All ferment glucose and none salicin, adonitol or inositol. On the basis of their ability

to ferment mannitol they may be divided into 2 primary groups: (1) *Sh sonnei*, *Sh boydii* and *Sh flexneri* (with the exception of a few strains belonging to type 6) ferment mannitol; (2) in the non-mannitol fermenting group fall all 7 types of *Sh dysenteriae*. Lactose is fermented by *Sh sonnei* and rare strains of *Sh dysenteriae* 1, however, the fermentation is characteristically slow and is not apparent for several days. In the case of *Sh sonnei* at least this property is due to the development of lactose fermenting papillae on the original lactose negative colonies grown out on primary isolation (Glynn and Starkey, 1939). With the exception of these species, the members of the genus *Shigella* resemble the other enteric pathogens in their inability to ferment lactose. Two strains of *Sh flexneri* form exceptions to the rule that dysentery bacilli are anaerogenic. The so-called Newcastle strain may produce a small quantity of gas in both glucose and dulcitol while the closely related Manchester strain may produce gas in man

nitrol as well. A useful point in the differentiation of *Sh. dysenteriae* 1 and 2 is the ability of the latter to produce indole as compared with the failure of the former to do so. Of the less common types of *Sh. dysenteriae* 5 and 7 produce indole while 3, 4 and 6 do not. While these various biochemical reactions are of considerable usefulness in the tentative differentiation and identification of species and types, the final identification of the various shigella depends on the study of the antigenic structure.

The biochemical reactions are summarized in Table 5.

### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

The antigenic pattern of the shigella is complex. Most species tend to be antigenically heterogeneous, some much more so than others. Serologic overlapping between different species occurs because of the presence of common group antigens. Further, more certain of these group antigens are found in other enteric bacilli. The fact that some strains of shigella may be rendered more agglutinable by boiling or other processes suggests that in addition to group- and type-specific antigens these organisms may contain K (or envelope) antigens as well. An additional source of trouble is the occasional instance in which there is a lack of correlation between serologic and biochemical characteristics. In such a case antigenic structure usually is accepted as the final criterion for the purposes of classification.

*Sh. dysenteriae* 1 (originally isolated by Shiga) and 2 (originally isolated by Schmutz) are antigenically homogeneous. That is, an antiserum prepared against a strain of a given type will agglutinate all other strains of the same type to approximately the same titer but will not agglutinate strains belonging to other types or species. *Sh. dysenteriae* 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7, comprising the so-called Large-Sachs group, all possess type-specific antigens by which they may be identified. Some sharing of group antigens with certain coliform organisms has been reported, and the fact that boiled cultures usually produce stronger agglutination reactions suggests the presence of K antigens.

*Sh. flexneri* presents a complicated picture which has given rise to several confusing sys-

tems of classification and terminology. Madson (1949) reviewed the work of earlier investigators and reported the results of his own extensive observations. Six type-specific antigens (comprising types 1 to 6) have been recognized by means of absorbed sera. In addition to the type-specific antigen limited to the type in question, each type contains 1 or more group antigens which may be present in other types as well. At least 4 of these group antigens responsible for the numerous cross reactions characteristic of this group have been identified. They permit the division of the individual types comprising this group into subtypes. In the case of 2 well-known strains (X and Y) no type-specific antigen has been identified. Therefore these strains are usually considered to be degraded variants which have lost the type-specific antigen.

The 11 types belonging to *Sh. boydii* present a simpler antigenic pattern in that no significant group antigen or antigens have been recognized. In his pioneer work, Boyd (1940) recognized 6 specific types on the basis of distinctive type antigens, while a 7th type was identified by several independent investigators during World War II. Four additional serotypes have been recognized more recently (Edwards and Ewing 1955). The absence of group antigens largely eliminates confusing cross reactions and the typing of the individual members of this group can be carried out with unabsorbed sera.

*Sh. sonnei* is essentially antigenically homogeneous, although the regular occurrence of a phase variation characterized by the formation of smooth and rough forms of the organism gives rise to some confusion. Both the S and the R forms are characterized by the possession of serologically distinct antigens which can be demonstrated by means of cross-absorption tests. In usual laboratory practice, typing sera are employed which contain antibodies against both antigens.

The chemical nature of the somatic antigens of the shigella group has been studied most fully in *Sh. dysenteriae* by W. J. T. Morgan *et al.* (1949) and in various members of the *Sh. flexneri* group by Goebel and his co-workers (1945) and by Cluff (1954). The former used diethyleneglycol for the extraction of the organisms, while the latter

two employed aqueous pyridine. Although the toxic and antigenic properties of the various components isolated varied with the method of extraction the fractions themselves were of the same general nature. The somatic antigen appeared to consist of a protein-polysaccharide-phospholipid complex thus resembling the classic Boivin antigen. In general the carbohydrate was present in the form of a nontoxic polysaccharide which acted as a haptene to confer serologic specificity on the smooth organism; this material was not found in the rough variant. The lipid fraction was nontoxic and nonantigenic. The protein fraction was represented by a nonantigenic-conjugated protein, which in the case of *Sh dysenteriae* 1 was identical with that present in *S typhi*. The polysaccharide-conjugated protein complex derived from the former organism is highly antigenic and apparently represents the simplest unit which will act as a complete antigen. In their work with *Sh flexneri* 3 Tal and Goebel (1950) have presented evidence suggesting that the toxic factor of the somatic antigen is an entity distinct from the known protein-lipid and carbohydrate components of the antigen complex.

### TOXINS

The somatic antigens of the shigella as noted are chemically similar to those isolated from salmonella and coliform organisms and exhibit the same pharmacologic and physiologic properties as these analogous antigens of the other enteric bacilli. In fact as discussed earlier the development of tolerance to any one of these endotoxins in man or animals by repeated injections renders the subject resistant to any endotoxin whether derived from an escherichia, a salmonella, or a shigella organism. When shigella or other endotoxins are injected into rabbits or guinea pigs they cause diarrhea, weight loss, and inflammation and necrosis of the intestine. These pathologic lesions closely resemble those found in clinical dysentery in man and it would seem reasonable to suppose that the symptoms and the pathologic changes seen in the natural disease in man are due in part at least to the release of endotoxin from the organisms in the gut. However, this theory fails to account for the fact that

coliform and other enteric bacilli possessing similar endotoxins are present in the intestine in large numbers without producing similar effects. This would appear to indicate that some other local effect is produced by shigella bacilli which allows their toxic components to penetrate the surface tissues where they can exert their effects. *Sh flexneri* 2a synthesizes a mucinolytic enzyme which has been suggested as a possible mechanism for local penetration of organisms and toxic products (Formal and Lowenthal 1956).

In addition to these heat-stable endotoxins which are identical with the somatic antigens, *Sh dysenteriae* type 1 but not other shigella organisms produce another toxin. Both smooth and rough forms of this organism elaborate a specific thermolabile toxin which is fully antigenic and highly toxic for mice, rabbits, and guinea pigs. Since this material may be separated easily from cell bodies it is usually referred to as Shiga exotoxin, although there is no evidence that it is actually excreted by the living bacterial cells. In general methods favoring the autolysis of cells give the highest yield. Several methods for rapid production of this toxin have been described (Dubos and Geiger 1946) as well as the role of iron and related metals (van Heyningen 1955) and of carbohydrate metabolism and pH (Engley 1952) on the production of this substance. It is protein in nature of the approximate molecular weight of 75,000 and relatively heat labile. Injected into rabbits, mice, or guinea pigs it causes paralysis of the limbs, diarrhea, and death, and because of the neurologic symptoms is sometimes referred to as the Shiga neurotoxin. It is highly antigenic, elicits the production of an antitoxin, and may be converted to an antigenic toxoid by formalin (Farrell and Ferguson 1943), ultraviolet radiation (Branham and Habel 1946), and other means (Engley 1952). This toxoid produced local and systemic reactions similar to those caused by typhoid vaccine (Farrell 1944) in human volunteers. In spite of its potency and profound toxic properties the possible role of this toxin in the pathogenesis of dysentery in man caused by *Sh dysenteriae* type 1 is unknown. There is no convincing evidence that other species of shigella produce similar toxins.

### VARIATION

Arkwright (1921) described smooth and rough forms of *Sh. dysenteriae*. The observations have been confirmed and extended to other members of the genus by Waaler (1935) and Boyd (1938). The S to R variation resembles closely that described for other gram negative organisms. It is associated with a change in colony formation and with the loss of the so-called endotoxin, the toxic factor associated with the somatic antigen. At the same time the type specific antigen disappears partially or completely. Strains isolated from human cases of clinical dysentery are usually in the smooth phase. The ability of rough forms to cause clinical disease remains undetermined.

Among shigella the occurrence of phase 1 and phase 2 forms of *Sh. sonnei* corresponding to smooth and rough forms has been described already. Wheeler and Mickle (1945) felt that both these variants are essentially smooth in character although they might be distinguished by their characteristic colonial morphology and antigenic analysis. However, Kauffmann (1951) feels that this variation is a true S to R one. In addition, old laboratory strains frequently show a 3rd colonial variant which may be regarded as an extreme R form. Boyd (1938) has described an unusual type group variation among strains of *Sh. flexneri*. Two types of colonies were noted on subculture of a given strain. The 1st contained a type specific and a group specific antigen while the 2nd contained only the latter although it did give rise to a colony which still retained some of the characteristics associated with smooth strains. Once the type specific antigen was lost there was no tendency to regain it. Freshly isolated strains usually contained both the type specific and the group specific antigens.

Shigella organisms exhibit antigenic variations which are related to the presence of specific temperate bacteriophages. Lysogenic conversion can be effected in different strains of *Sh. flexneri* and this alters their antigenic identity (Ischikawa and Hamano 1959).

### BACTERIOPHAGE

The gram negative bacteria inhabiting the gastrointestinal tract of man are usually sus-

ceptible to bacteriophage action as was first shown by d'Herelle and in keeping with this specific phages effective against most members of the genus *Shigella* have been isolated. In the case of *Sh. flexneri* Burnet and McKie (1930) have shown that the various serologic types of this organism exhibit characteristic differences in their phage sensitivity. Antigenically similar strains show practically identical reactions toward the series of phages tested. Similar observations have been made in the case of *Sh. sonnei* by Miller and Goebel (1949) and by Hammarstrom (1949) who was able to divide 1834 strains of this organism into 68 types and subtypes by means of bacteriophage susceptibility. In spite of its potential value for epidemiologic studies, bacteriophage typing has yet to prove its usefulness in the identification of types and strains of dysentery bacilli.

### NATURAL HABITAT AND RANGE OF PATHOGENICITY

The natural habitat of the shigella is the gut of higher primates, notably man. Other mammals such as dogs have rarely been found to be infected. The naturally occurring disease is limited to man and perhaps apes and monkeys kept in captivity and these are the only species that develop recognizable clinical manifestations following the oral introduction of the specific organisms. Of course, contamination of food and water by human fecal discharges derived from carriers of these organisms may lead to the isolation of dysentery bacilli from these sources.

### CLASSIFICATION

As is common with most genera making up the family *Enterobacteriaceae*, the classification of the shigella is neither easy nor entirely satisfactory. The difficulties caused by the different nomenclatures used by American, British and Continental workers is illustrated and discussed in the monograph by Kauffmann (1954). The most practical criteria of classification at present appear to be a combination of biochemical and antigenic characteristics. Assuming the relative stability of serologic and biochemical characteristics of a given organism, a useful classification is that proposed by the Shigella

Commission of the International Enterobacteriaceae Sub Committee (1954) The following classification follows the compromise scheme proposed by Cowan (1956) based on the report of this Sub Committee *Sh. alkalescens* and *Sh. dispar* are discussed briefly in a separate section at the end of this chapter since their membership in the genus *Shigella* is questioned by most authorities

#### CLASSIFICATION OF SHIGELLA

SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME
<i>Sh. dysenteriae</i> Type 1	Shiga's bacillus
Type 2	Schmitz's bacillus
Types 3-7	Large Sacks bacilli
<i>Sh. flexneri</i> Types 1-6 plus 2 variants	Flexner's bacilli
<i>Sh. boydii</i> Types 1-11	Boyd's bacilli
<i>Sh. sonnei</i>	Sonne's bacillus

#### PATHOGENESIS

Dysentery bacilli usually reach the gastrointestinal tract via the oral portal of entry through the medium of infected fingers, food or water. In direct contrast with the enteric fevers no bacteremic phase occurs and the organisms remain limited to the gut wall. The essential pathologic process is an inflammatory one which always involves the large bowel and occasionally the terminal ileum as well. Inflammation of the mucous membrane of the bowel wall is followed by necrosis which in more severe cases goes on to actual ulceration penetrating as deeply as the muscularis mucosa. In contrast with amebic dysentery, the edges of the ulcers remain sharp and undermining does not occur. In all but mild cases some degree of hemorrhage takes place. The intervening mucosa is inflamed and edematous and microscopic examination of the bowel wall shows it to be infiltrated with polymorphonuclear cells. As the process subsides granulation tissue replaces the ulcerative lesions and in severe cases scar tissue may develop.

It must be admitted that the mechanisms responsible for these pathologic changes have not been clarified. It is believed by some that the pathologic changes follow the local irritative action of the heat stable endotoxin

released by the autolysis of the bacterial cells which are found in large numbers on the floor of the ulcers and frequently in the inflamed mucosa as well. Direct experimental proof of this is lacking although the parenteral injection of large amounts of dysentery bacilli autolysates into laboratory animals gives rise to somewhat similar lesions. Furthermore there is no clear-cut evidence bearing on what factors govern the severity of a given infection which may run all the way from an inapparent affair to a severe, rapidly fatal attack of dysentery.

The classic clinical picture of bacillary dysentery is dominated by diarrhea, abdominal pain and fever. The incubation period is variable but may be as short as 24 hours. Abdominal discomfort and cramps (often described as "gripping") are the first symptoms and usually come on suddenly. They are followed shortly by diarrhea, which in all but the milder cases is accompanied by straining and tenesmus. The stools are liquid almost from the start, large amounts of mucus are passed and in the more severe cases blood as well. The diarrhea and the abdominal cramps reflect the acute inflammation of the large bowel; straining and tenesmus furnish evidence that the process involves the rectum. The fever which accompanies the typical severe case presumably is due to the absorption of toxic products from the gut and to dehydration. The disease tends to be self-limited and uncomplicated recovery is the general rule. Cases of chronic relapsing dysentery are usually of amebic origin. Complications are rare. A small proportion of recovered patients become chronic carriers of dysentery bacilli for varying periods of time. These and even more so the individuals with inapparent infections constitute a major problem in the control of the disease.

The clinical severity of a given case of bacillary dysentery is modified by nonspecific factors such as the age and the general condition of the patient and the opportunities for supportive therapy. Some correlation exists between the species involved and the severity of clinical manifestations inasmuch as *Sh. dysenteriae* 1 in general causes a more serious form of the disease than do other types or species.

### IMMUNITY

The mechanism of spontaneous recovery from bacillary dysentery is not understood and attempts to elucidate the role played by various immune mechanisms have been much handicapped by the absence of a suitable laboratory animal in which a gastroenteritis may be established by the natural route of infection. Although humoral antibodies appear in response to infection there is no evidence that they affect the recovery process directly nor is there a correlation between their presence or absence and the occurrence of relapses and second attacks. Coproantibody has been detected in the intestinal discharges of individuals suffering from bacillary dysentery (Barksdale and Ghoda 1951) and it is possible that this type of antibody may have a more significant relationship with the mechanisms of recovery and immunity in this disease. The local tissue response may be a factor in this process: the exudate in bacillary dysentery is rich in polymorphonuclear leukocytes and it is plausible that the presence of coproantibodies against the somatic antigen may enhance the opsonization and subsequent phagocytosis of the infecting organisms. The use of the indirect bacterial hemagglutination or hemolysis techniques for the demonstration of small amounts of antibody may be the means whereby the role of these antibodies can be determined (Neter 1956). As in other enteric infections there is no evidence that bacteriophage plays a decisive role.

Although relapses and second attacks of bacillary dysentery do occur it is common experience in the tropics that individuals settled in areas where the disease is endemic tend to become immune to frank clinical attacks. The nature of this clinical immunity is not clear and careful bacteriologic and immunologic studies will be necessary to determine if it is species specific only or perhaps broader, giving some protection against other members of the genus as well.

Although the injection of killed dysentery bacilli into human or animal subjects stimulates the production of antibodies which confer considerable protection on mice against the intraperitoneal inoculation of the homologous organism, the results of controlled ex-

periments in which human volunteers were first vaccinated and then challenged by the oral route with the same type have shown no evidence of significant protection against infection (Shaughnessy *et al.* 1946). Field trials (Hardy *et al.* 1948, Higgins *et al.* 1955a) have yielded similar results. Inasmuch as the disease process is limited to the intestinal mucosa and there is no tendency to invade the bloodstream, one would not expect humoral antibodies alone to be effective in the prevention of the disease. Studies of the formation of coproantibody following immunization have yielded inconclusive results.

### DIAGNOSIS

The laboratory diagnosis of bacillary dysentery is made most satisfactorily by the isolation and the identification of the specific causative organism. During the acute phase of the disease the organisms are excreted in large numbers in the feces and fresh stool cultures frequently give positive results, particularly if the sample contains mucus as the bacteria are found in greatest numbers in this exudate (Boyd 1940). Since dysentery bacilli tend to die out rapidly the stool must be cultured as soon as possible after being voided. The suspension of fecal material in a preservative such as buffered glycerol saline solution is of some use if delay is unavoidable. The rectal swab technique as first employed by Hardy *et al.* (1942) offers practical advantages in the collection of specimens and their prompt plating on suitable media at the bedside but has the disadvantage of not permitting the microscopic examination of the stool for ova, parasites and type of exudate. During the acute phase of the disease there is little choice between this method and that of examining freshly passed stools as regards the percentage of positive isolations. Sigmoidoscopy with culturing of the actual ulcerations of the intestinal wall under direct observation (Ferris and Fortune 1944) yields the best results and is the method of choice in chronic stages of the disease when the organisms are relatively sparse.

Mucus or faeces of this fecal material is emulsified in saline before streaking. At the same time the type of cellular exudate may



be determined by examination of a simple stained smear. A predominance of polymorphonuclear cells suggests dysentery of bacterial origin while a predominance of mononuclear cells favors colitis due to *Entamoeba histolytica*. Swabs are plated out directly. As in the case of other enteric infections selective media are of the greatest advantage in primary isolation work.

All these contain lactose and an indicator such as neutral red which will detect any fermentation of this sugar. Such media permit rapid differentiation between prompt lactose fermenting organisms such as the coliform bacilli and late or non lactose fermenting bacteria such as the dysentery bacilli. It is best to use 2 media one relatively noninhibitory such as MacConkey's agar and the other an inhibitory one such as shigella-salmonella-thiosulfate-citrate bile agar which largely suppresses the growth of coliform bacilli as well as that of gram positive organisms. Selenite broth and other enrichment media are of limited usefulness in the isolation of shigella. Suspicious colonies are fished and inoculated into Kligler's iron agar. Those cultures showing an alkaline slant and acid butt without the formation of hydrogen sulfide or other gas are inoculated into carbohydrate broths (lactose glucose mannitol xylose sucrose salicin and dulcitol) for the detection of characteristic fermentation reactions into peptone water for the determination of indole formation into semisolid agar for the determination of motility and on urea agar for the detection of urease activity. In connection with fermentation reactions it must be remembered that *Sh. sonnei* is a late lactose fermenter which rarely attacks this sugar before 48 hours and usually later.

Once an organism has been grouped provisionally by means of these biochemical reactions its final identification should be carried out by the use of specific typing antisera employing the method of slide agglutination.

Since as was first shown by Shiga in 1896 agglutinins appear in the bloodstream during the course of the disease it is theoretically possible to make a serologic diagnosis by the demonstration of the formation of specific antibodies against a given organism during the course of illness. At best this furnishes a

retrospective diagnosis and in actual fact this technic is relatively unsatisfactory, since these antibodies develop irregularly, and the multiplicity of species and types capable of causing the disease necessitates the setting up of the agglutination test against a large number of bacterial suspensions.

### SPECIFIC TREATMENT

Antimicrobial therapy with the broad spectrum drugs (tetracyclines and chloramphenicol) has been markedly effective in the treatment of bacillary dysentery. As the result of extensive field trials carried out in the prisoner-of-war camps in Korea Hardy and his associates (1952, 1963) demonstrated that the administration of any of these drugs in relatively small amounts over a period as short as 24 hours resulted in the prompt disappearance of the clinical manifestations in nearly all cases. This clinical improvement was paralleled during the same time period by a rapid conversion from positive to negative cultures. As yet the emergence of drug resistant organisms and the occurrence of relapses have not constituted significant problems. This stands in marked contrast with earlier experience with sulfonamide drugs. During World War II many of these agents were shown to exert a bacteriostatic effect on members of the genus *Shigella* in vitro and at first clinical trials with both the soluble compounds (e.g. sulfadiazine) and the insoluble ones (e.g. sulfaguanidine) yielded markedly favorable results. However the rapid emergence of drug resistant strains (particularly *Sh. flexneri* 3 and *Sh. sonnei*) has sharply limited the usefulness of these agents and today the broad spectrum antibiotics mentioned above are the drugs of choice.

Serotherapy has been disappointing and today finds little use. Convincing proof of the efficacy of high titer antitoxin against the so-called exotoxin of *Sh. dysenteriae* 1 in modifying the course of disease caused by this organism is lacking. A polyvalent antiserum has been used in the treatment of infections due to the various types of *Sh. flexneri* with little or no success. As in the case with other enteric infections the results obtained with bacteriophage have been disappointing. The carefully controlled experi-

ments which Boyd and Portnoy (1944) carried out in North Africa during World War II may be cited as an example of a field trial in which no evidence of therapeutic or prophylactic efficacy on the part of the bacteriophage preparations employed was obtained

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Bacillary dysentery is traditionally regarded as a disease of the tropics however in actual fact it has a world wide distribution *Sh. flexneri* and *Sh. sonnei* present a particularly wide distribution *Sh. dysenteriae* 1 usually associated with a clinically severe form of the disease has been found in significant numbers only in the Far East in recent years and even here its importance as a causative organism of the disease appears to be on the wane *Sh. sonnei* is encountered most frequently in the United States

The source of infection is essentially man. The shigella are strict parasites and no natural animal reservoirs have been detected. Their natural habitat is the gastrointestinal tract of man. Here they may cause a fulminating case of classic dysentery, a mild diarrhea or perhaps most frequently, an inapparent or subclinical infection. Because of this wide variation in severity of clinical symptoms the term shigellosis is often applied to infections (apparent and inapparent) caused by this group of organisms. It is well recognized that the organisms are excreted in large numbers during the acute phase of clinical dysentery. It is not so well recognized that the patient with a mild diarrhea or with no symptoms whatsoever may also be acting as an excretor of the organism. As the patient recovers from the clinical attack of the disease the organisms tend to disappear concomitantly from the stools although in some instances they may persist during convalescence or even longer. The development of a true carrier state is of rare occurrence perhaps due to the fact that dysentery bacilli show no tendency to invade the biliary tract. Clinical attack rates are higher in children as compared with adults in the same community. Presumably the development of a specific immunity plays some part in this finding.

The spread from man to man may take place by a variety of methods. The contamination of human fingers with fecal material containing dysentery bacilli is the first step in the direct transfer of organisms from one individual to another (Hutchinson 1956). The contamination of inanimate objects such as toilet seats, door handles, toys, pottery and glassware which are used in common by many people represents an intermediate step in the process. Outbreaks occurring in institutions such as asylums or enclosed military groups are usually due to this type of spread as a general rule. As standards of personal hygiene improve the incidence of shigella infections diminishes. As Watt (1956) has emphasized a high prevalence of these infections in a given community usually is associated with the more or less direct transfer of infected human feces from one individual to another. The effect of water availability on the prevalence of shigella infections has been studied by Hollister (1955) and others. In general infection rates were found to be highest in areas where water was least available for personal hygiene.

Spread from man to man may occur more indirectly through the medium of contaminated food or water supplies. Foodstuffs are usually infected by the dirty fingers of food handlers or by flies which have access to fecal material containing dysentery bacilli. Genuine water borne outbreaks have been comparatively rare and usually occur through the medium of faulty plumbing or lack of protection of the source of supply. In warm areas where there is usually a large fly population these insects may play a major role in the spread of these organisms if they are permitted to feed indiscriminately on human feces and food. It should be emphasized that the transmission of shigella by these insects is primarily a mechanical one as there is little evidence that multiplication takes place to any extent in the gut of the fly. The low standards of environmental sanitation frequently found in the tropics and the presence of a large fly population are important factors in the high prevalence of clinical dysentery in these areas.

As noted earlier bacillary dysentery still occurs in areas with high standards of sanitation and outbreaks caused by *Sh. sonnei*

be determined by examination of a simple stained smear. A predominance of polymorphonuclear cells suggests dysentery of bacterial origin, while a predominance of mononuclear cells favors a colitis due to *Entamoeba histolytica*. Swabs are plated out directly. As in the case of other enteric infections, selective media are of the greatest advantage in primary isolation work.

All these contain lactose and an indicator such as neutral red which will detect any fermentation of this sugar. Such media permit rapid differentiation between prompt lactose fermenting organisms such as the coliform bacilli and late or non lactose fermenting bacteria such as the dysentery bacilli. It is best to use 2 media, one relatively noninhibitory such as MacConkey's agar and the other an inhibitory one such as shigella-salmonella-thiosulfate-citrate bile agar which largely suppresses the growth of coliform bacilli as well as that of gram positive organisms. Selenite broth and other enrichment media are of limited usefulness in the isolation of shigella. Suspicious colonies are picked and inoculated into Kligler's iron agar. Those cultures showing an alkaline slant and acid butt without the formation of hydrogen sulfide or other gas are inoculated into carbohydrate broths (lactose, glucose, mannitol, xylose, sucrose, salicin and dulcitol) for the detection of characteristic fermentation reactions, into peptone water for the determination of indole formation, into semisolid agar for the determination of motility and on urea agar for the detection of urease activity. In connection with fermentation reactions it must be remembered that *Sh. sonnei* is a late lactose fermenter which rarely attacks this sugar before 48 hours and usually later.

Once an organism has been grouped provisionally by means of these biochemical reactions, its final identification should be carried out by the use of specific typing antisera employing the method of slide agglutination.

Since, as was first shown by Shiga in 1896, agglutinins appear in the bloodstream during the course of the disease, it is theoretically possible to make a serologic diagnosis by the demonstration of the formation of specific antibodies against a given organism during the course of illness. At best this furnishes a

retrospective diagnosis and in actual fact this technic is relatively unsatisfactory, since these antibodies develop irregularly and the multiplicity of species and types capable of causing the disease necessitates the setting up of the agglutination test against a large number of bacterial suspensions.

### SPECIFIC TREATMENT

Antimicrobial therapy with the broad spectrum drugs (tetracyclines and chloramphenicol) has been markedly effective in the treatment of bacillary dysentery. As the result of extensive field trials carried out in the prisoner-of-war camps in Korea, Hardy and his associates (1952, 1963) demonstrated that the administration of any of these drugs in relatively small amounts over a period as short as 24 hours resulted in the prompt disappearance of the clinical manifestations in nearly all cases. This clinical improvement was paralleled during the same time period by a rapid conversion from positive to negative cultures. As yet the emergence of drug resistant organisms and the occurrence of relapses have not constituted significant problems. This stands in marked contrast with earlier experience with sulfonamide drugs. During World War II many of these agents were shown to exert a bacteriostatic effect on members of the genus *Shigella* in vitro and at first clinical trials with both the soluble compounds (e.g., sulfadiazine) and the insoluble ones (e.g., sulfaguanidine) yielded markedly favorable results. However, the rapid emergence of drug resistant strains (particularly *Sh. flexneri* 3 and *Sh. sonnei*) has sharply limited the usefulness of these agents and today the broad spectrum antibiotics mentioned above are the drugs of choice.

Serotherapy has been disappointing and today finds little use. Convincing proof of the efficacy of high titer antitoxin against the so-called exotoxin of *Sh. dysenteriae* 1 in modifying the course of disease caused by this organism is lacking. A polyvalent antiserum has been used in the treatment of infections due to the various types of *Sh. flexneri* with little or no success. As in the case with other enteric infections, the results obtained with bacteriophage have been disappointing. The carefully controlled experi-

formerly classified with the shigella. When studied in greater detail both biochemical and antigenic properties reveal that they are coliform organisms (Stuart *et al.* 1943). Though they have been isolated from patients with dysentery their etiologic role in this disease is questionable but like other coliform organisms they do cause urinary tract infections.

## REFERENCES

- Anderson E S and Felix A 1953 The Vi type-determining phages carried by *Salmonella typhi* J Gen Microbiol 9 65-88
- Anderson K, DeMonbreun W A and Good pasture E W 1945 An etiologic consideration of *Donovania granulomatis* cultivated from granuloma inguinale (three cases) in embryonic yolk J Exp Med 81 25-40
- Arkwright J A 1921 Variation in bacteria in relation to agglutination both by salts and by specific serum J Path Bact 24 36-60
- Barksdale W L and Ghoda A 1951 Agglutinating antibodies in serum and feces J Immun 66 395-401
- Beeson P B 1946 Development of tolerance to typhoid bacterial pyrogen and its abolition by reticulo-endothelial blockade Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 61 248-250
- Borvin A, Mesrobian I and Mesrobian L 1933a Technique pour la preparation des polysaccharides microbiens specifiques Compt rend soc biol 113 490-492
- 1933b Extraction d'un complete toxique et antigenique a partir du bacille d'aertrycke Compt rend soc biol 114 307-310
- Boyd J S K 1938 The antigenic structure of the mannitol fermenting group of dysentery bacilli J Hyg 38 477-499
- 1940 The laboratory diagnosis of bacillary dysentery Tr Roy Soc Trop Med Hyg 33 553-571
- Boyd J S K and Portnoy H 1944 Bacteriophage therapy in bacillary dysentery Tr Roy Soc Trop Med Hyg 37 243-262
- Branham E and Habel K 1946 Preparation and evaluation of an irradiated toxoid from the toxin of *Shigella dysenteriae* J Immun 54 305-314
- Bray J 1945 Isolation of antigenically homogeneous strains of *Bact. coli neapolitanum* from summer diarrhoea of infants J Path Bact 57 239-247
- Burnet F M and McKie M 1930 Bacteriophage reactions of Flexner dysentery strains J Path Bact 33 637-646
- Castaneda N R 1934 The antigenic relationship between *Proteus* X 19 and typhus rickettsia II A study of the common antigenic factor J Exp Med 60 119-125
- Cluff L E 1954 Immunochemical study of a bacterial endotoxin *Shigella flexneri* Type 2 J Exp Med 100 391-404
- Cowan S T 1956 Taxonomic rank of *Enterobacteriaceae* groups J Gen Microbiol 15 345-358
- Craigie J and Yen C H 1938 The demonstration of types of *B. typhosus* by means of preparations of Type II Vi phage Canad J Pub Health 29 448-484-496
- Cvijetanovic B H 1957 Field trial of typhoid vaccines Am J Pub Health 47 578-581
- Dubos R J and Geiger J W 1946 Preparation and properties of Shiga toxin and toxoid J Exp Med 84 143-156
- Edsall G, Gaines M, Landy M, Tigertt W D, Sprunz H, Trapani R J, Mandel A D and Benenson A S 1960 Studies on infection and immunity in experimental typhoid fever I Typhoid fever in chimpanzees orally infected with *Salmonella typhosa* J Exp Med 112 143-166
- Edwards P R and Ewing W H 1955 Identification of *Enterobacteriaceae* p 118 Minneapolis Burgess
- Edwards P R and Fife M A 1955 Studies on the *Klebsiella Aerobacter* group of bacteria J Bact 70 382-390
- Edwards P R, Fife M A and Ramsey C H 1959 Studies on the Arizona group of *Enterobacteriaceae* Bact Rev 23 155-174
- Engley F B Jr 1952 The neurotoxin of *Shigella dysenteriae* (Shiga) Bact Rev 16 153-178
- Enterobacteriaceae* Sub Committee of the Nomenclature Committee of the Society of the International Association of Bacteriologists 1954 Reports on the groups *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, *Arizona*, *Bethesda*, *Escherichia*, *Klebsiella* (*Aerogenes*, *Aerobacter*) Providence (2911 of Stuart *et al.*) in Rome September 1953 Internat Bull Bact Nomenclature and Taxonomy 4 47-94
- Ewing W H, Tanner K E and Dennard H A 1954 The Providence group: An intermediate group of enteric bacteria J Infect Dis 94 134-140
- Farrell L and Ferguson H 1943 Shiga toxoid Canad J Pub Health 34 130-139
- Farrell L, Fraser H T and Ferguson H 1944 Trial of dysentery toxoid (Shiga) in human volunteers Canad J Pub Health 35 311-316

are seen in which the family unit may maintain the infection with subclinical infection for weeks with various members and contacts developing clinical disease at intervals (Neter 1962)

Bacillary dysentery spreads easily within the hospital unless careful precautions are taken outbreaks of *Sh sonnei* infections are frequently reported

#### CONTROL MEASURES

The logical control of bacillary dysentery falls under 4 headings (1) elimination of sources of infection (2) prevention of spread (3) increasing individual resistance and (4) chemoprophylaxis Of the 4 the second i.e. prevention of spread has played through the application of a variety of community and individual measures the dominant role in reducing the prevalence of the disease Since man represents the only recognized host of the shigella the elimination of these organisms from man should remove the great reservoir of the disease At present this is an unattainable goal since the detection and the isolation of clinically mild and of inapparent infections still present insuperable problems As pointed out previously, inapparent infections probably outnumber clinical cases of the disease by a considerable margin These facts limit the extent to which the elimination of the source of infection can be carried (Philbrook *et al* 1948) The intermittent shedding of organisms by convalescent patients and healthy carriers presents a further complication Nonetheless rigid precautions should be taken with the excreta of patients suffering from recognized infections and these individuals should not be released from isolation until stool or rectal swab cultures are negative on 3 or more successive days

The spread of organisms from one infected individual to another can be reduced by measures falling into 2 large groups On the individual basis high standards of personal hygiene will do much to prevent direct spread from one individual to another The so-called asylum dysentery found both in the United States and Western Europe is a case in point Bacillary dysentery is often endemic in large mental asylums and in orphanages where overcrowding and poor sanitary habits of mentally defective youthful inmates gives

every opportunity for the transfer of fecal material from one individual to another The thorough washing of hands, particularly after defecation and before meals, is one of the simplest and most effective methods in reducing this type of spread On a community basis those sanitary measures aimed at providing a safe supply of water milk and food to the community are all important, as is the operation of an adequate sewage disposal system As has been demonstrated by Watt and Lindsay (1948) effective fly control is often a potent factor in reducing the prevalence of the disease in communities where both food and human excrement are not protected from these insects

Attempts to increase the resistance of the individual by active immunization have not been successful to date The toxicity of available vaccine preparations and the multiplicity of potential etiologic agents are factors which have handicapped trials of this method As yet no significant relationship has been proved between protection against the clinical disease and the presence of humoral or coproantibodies

The efficacy of certain antimicrobial agents in eradicating infections with dysentery bacilli has given hope that their use in chemoprophylaxis may exert a significant effect on the prevalence of disease During World War II mass chemoprophylaxis with relatively small amounts of sulfadiazine was reported to be effective in checking outbreaks of the disease However the emergence of drug resistant strains soon made this type of chemoprophylaxis ineffective The demonstration of the effectiveness of the tetracycline drugs in the treatment of these infections renders it logical to employ these agents in chemoprophylaxis as well Although the reported experience of Higgins *et al* (1955b) in Egypt was not encouraging further field trials under controlled conditions are indicated in order that the potential efficacy of this means of prophylaxis may be evaluated

#### THE ALKALESCENS DISPAR ORGANISMS

These organisms which are nonmotile fail to ferment lactose do not form gas from other carbohydrates and behave like shigella organisms in carbohydrate reactions were

- Salmonella Types Springfield III Thomas  
 — 1951 The Differentiation of *Escherichia* and *Klebsiella* Types Springfield III Thomas  
 — 1951 *Enterobacteriaceae* ed 1 p 187 Copenhagen, Munksgaard  
 — 1953 On the transduction of serological properties in the *Salmonella* group *Acta path micro scand* 33 409-420  
 — 1954 *Enterobacteriaceae* ed 2 p 382 Copenhagen, Munksgaard
- Koomen J Jr and Morgan H R 1954 An evaluation of the anamnestic serum reaction in certain febrile illnesses *Am J Med Sci* 228 520-524
- Madsen S 1949 On the Classification of the *Shigella* Types With Special Reference to the Flexner Group Copenhagen Munksgaard
- Miller E M and Goebel W F 1949 Studies on bacteriophage I The relationship between the somatic antigens of *Shigella sonnei* and their susceptibility to bacterial viruses *J Exp Med* 90 255-265
- Morgan H R 1941 Immunologic properties of an antigenic material isolated from *Eberthella typhosa* *J Immun* 41 161-180  
 — 1943 Pathologic changes produced in rabbits by a toxic somatic antigen derived from *Eberthella typhosa* *Am J Path* 19 135-145  
 — 1945 Active immunization with purified somatic antigens of *Eberthella typhosa*, *Salmonella paratyphi* and *Salmonella schott muelleri* *Am J Pub Health* 35 614-620  
 — 1948a Tolerance to the toxic action of somatic antigens of enteric bacteria *J Immun* 59 129-134  
 — 1948b Resistance to action of endotoxins of enteric bacilli in man *J Clin Invest* 27 706-709
- Morgan H R and Beckwith T D 1939 Mucoid dissociation in the colon typhoid salmonella group *J Infect Dis* 65 113-124
- Morgan W T J 1949 The surface structure of *Shigella shigae* as revealed by antigenic analysis Society for General Microbiology Symposium No 1 p 9 Oxford Blackwell
- Neter E 1956 Bacterial hemagglutination and hemolysis *Bact Rev* 20 166-188  
 — 1962 Epidemiologic and immunologic studies of *Shigella sonnei* dysentery *Am J Pub Health* 52 61-67
- Neter E R and Farrar R H 1943 *Proteus vulgaris* and *Proteus morgani* in diarrheal disease of infants *Am J Dig Dis* 10 344-347
- Neter E Gorzynski E A Gino R M Westphal O and Luderitz H 1956 The enterobacterial hemagglutination test and its diagnostic potentialities *Canad J Microbiol* 2 232-244
- Neter E and Shumway C N 1950 *E coli* serotype D433 occurrence in intestinal and respiratory tracts cultural characteristics pathogenicity sensitivity to antibiotics *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 75 504-507
- Neva F A and Morgan H R 1950 Tolerance to the action of endotoxins of enteric bacilli in patients convalescent from typhoid and paratyphoid fevers *J Lab Clin Med* 35 911-922
- Osterman E and Rettger L F 1941 A comparative study of organisms of the Friedlander and coli aerogenes groups II Pathogenicity biochemical reactions and serological relationships *J Bact* 42 721-743
- Pan S F Yee R and Gezon H M 1957 Studies on the metabolism of *Shigella* I The occurrence of a tricarboxylic acid cycle in *Shigella flexneri* *J Bact* 73 402-409
- Philbrook F R Barnes L A McCann W J Jr and Harrison H R 1948 Prolonged laboratory observations on clinical cases and carriers of *Shigella flexneri* III following an epidemic *U S Nav Med Bull* 48 405-414
- Ribi E Haskins W T Landy M and Vidner A C 1961 Symposium on bacterial endotoxins I Relationship of chemical composition to biological activity *Bact Rev* 25 427-436
- Robbins P W and Uchida T 1962 Determinants of specificity in *Salmonella* Changes in antigenic structure mediated by bacteriophage *Fed Proc* 21 702-710
- Saphra I and Winter J W 1957 Clinical manifestations of salmonellosis in man An evaluation of 7779 human infections identified at the New York Salmonella Center *New Eng J Med* 256 1128-1134
- Shaugnessy H J Olsson R C Bass A Frierer F and Levinson S O 1946 Experimental human bacillary dysentery Polyvalent dysentery vaccine in its prevention *JAMA* 132 362-368
- Shiga K 1898 Ueber den Dysenteriebacillus (*Bacillus dysenteriae*) *Zbl Bakt (Abt 1)* 24 817-828 870-874 913-918
- Showacre J L Hopps H E Du Buy H G and Smadel J E 1961 Effect of antibiotics on intracellular *Salmonella typhosa* I Demonstration by phase microscopy of

- Favorite G O and Morgan H R 1942 Effects produced by the intravenous injection in man of a toxic antigenic material derived from *Eberthella typhosa*—clinical hematological, chemical and serological studies *J Clin Invest* 21, 589-599
- Felix A 1943 Experiences with typing of typhoid bacilli by means of V<sub>1</sub> bacteriophage *Brit Med J* 1 435-438
- Felix A and Pitt R M 1934 A new antigen of *B typhosus* Its relation to virulence and to active and passive immunisation *Lancet* 2 186-191
- Ferguson W W and June R C 1952 Experiments on feeding adult volunteers with *Escherichia coli* 111 B4 a coliform organism associated with infant diarrhea *Am J Hyg* 55 155-169
- Ferris A A and Fortune C 1944 The bacteriological diagnosis of bacillary dysentery by means of rectal swabs *Med J Austr* 2 430-433
- Finland M Jones W F Jr and Barnes M W 1959 Occurrence of serious bacterial infections since introduction of anti bacterial agents *JAMA* 170 2188-2197
- Formal S B and Lowenthal J F 1956 Distribution of mucinolytic activity in strains of *Shigella* *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 92 10-12
- Gaines S Landy M Edsall G Mandel A D Trapani R J and Benenson A S 1961 Studies on infection and immunity in experimental typhoid fever III Effect of prophylactic immunization *J Exp Med* 114 327-342
- Giles C Sangster G and Smith J 1949 Epidemic gastro enteritis of infants in Aberdeen during 1947 *Arch Dis Child* 24 45-53
- Goebel W F Binkley F and Perlman E 1945 Studies on the Flexner group of dysentery bacilli I The specific antigens of *Shigella paradyserteriae* (Flexner) *J Exp Med* 81 315-330
- Greisman S E Woodward T E Hornick R H Snyder M J and Carozza F A Jr 1961, Typhoid fever: a study of pathogenesis and physiologic abnormalities *Trans Am Clin Climat Assn* 73 146-161
- Hammarstrom E, 1949, Phage typing of *Shigella sonnei* *Acta med scand* (Supp 223) 133 9-132
- Hardy A. V DeCapito T and Halbert S P 1948 Studies of the acute diarrheal diseases XIX Immunization in shigellosis *Pub Health Rep* 63 685-688
- Hardy A V Mason, R P and Martin G A 1952 The antibiotics in acute bacillary dysentery *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 55 1070-1074
- Hardy A V Watt J and DeCapito T 1942 Studies of the acute diarrheal diseases VI New procedures in bacteriological diagnosis *Pub Health Rep* 57 521-524
- Hardy A V Mason R P Frye, W W Brooke M M and Schlessmann D J 1963 Epidemic enteric infections among prisoners of war in Korea *Monograph 4 Florida State Board of Health*
- Harrison P E and Banvard J 1947 Copro-antibody excretion during enteric infections *Science* 106 188-189
- Henderson D W and Morgan W T J 1938 The isolation of antigenic substances from strains of *Bact typhosum* *Brit J Exp Path* 19 82-94
- Higgins A R Floyd T M and Kader M A 1955a Studies in shigellosis III A controlled evaluation of a monovalent *Shigella* vaccine in a highly endemic environment *Am J Trop Med* 4 281-288
- 1955b Studies on shigellosis IV A controlled trial of sulfadiazine dihydro streptomycin and oxytetracycline in long term prophylaxis agents in a highly endemic environment for shigellosis *Am J Trop Med* 4 289-300
- Hollister A C Jr Beck M D Gittelsohn A M and Hemphill E C 1955 Influence of water availability on *Shigella* prevalence in children of farm labor families *Am J Pub Health* 45 354-362
- Hopps H E Smadel J E Bernheim H C Danauskas J X and Jackson, E B 1961 Effect of antibiotics on intracellular *Salmonella typhosa* II Elimination of infection by prolonged treatment *J Immun* 87 162-174
- Hutchinson R E 1956 Some observations on the method of spread of Sonne dysentery *Month Bull Minist Health (London)* 15 110
- Iseki S and Hamano S 1959 Conversion of type antigen IV in *Shigella flexneri* by bacteriophage *Proc Japan Acad Sci* 35 407-408
- Jukanella L A 1941 The pneumonia of Friedlander's bacillus *Ann Intern Med* 15 190-206
- June R C Ferguson W W and Worfel M T 1953 Experiments on feeding adult volunteers with *Escherichia coli* 55 B<sub>3</sub> a coliform organism associated with infant diarrhea *Am J Hyg* 57 222-236
- Kauffmann F 1950 The Diagnosis of

## 26

## The Vibrios—Cholera

Vibrios are polymorphic gram negative bacteria which under optimal conditions of cultivation appear in fixed smears as curved rods. Most strains are highly motile and are facultative aerobes.

The word *vibrio* is used in both a morphologic and a generic sense. With the exception of a few highly specialized species all vibrios are at present included in the genus *Vibrio*.

Vibrios comprise a vast subcontinent of the microbial world, a region only superficially explored. Attention has been so concentrated on *Vibrio cholerae* that the dimensions of the genus are frequently overlooked. It includes strains isolated from serious infections in mammals, birds, fish, reptiles, amphibians, and insects. Vibrios are readily found in water, soil, and decaying vegetable matter. There are halophiles, thermophiles, pigment producers, aerobes, and anaerobes. Some strains have highly specific substrate requirements, but many adapt themselves to a wide variety of substrates with the greatest facility. It is somewhat paradoxical that although the generic classification is morphologic, many vibrios will assume morphology varying through a wide range depending on environment. The genus *Vibrio* is not only complex, it is often regarded as chaotic. Because of the enormity of the field, no completely acceptable taxonomic system has been achieved.

## MORPHOLOGY

Under optimum conditions of cultivation vibrios appear as curved rods 1 to 5 microns

long and 0.25 to 0.35 micron broad. Usually only about half of the organisms in a given smear appear curved, this being a matter of position on fixation. The typical shape is that of the German comma. In any preparation there may be a considerable variation of morphology, and each strain is broadly characterized in this sense. Thus some show many S-shaped forms, whereas others show only stubby slightly curved forms.

All vibrios autolyse readily. Under most conditions the disintegration gives rise to small dense granules. These are believed to be reproductive units (in part at least) and account for the fact that old style porcelain filters do not give sterile filtrates with vibrios. It is sometimes possible to use this fact for separation of vibrios from other species.

Under conditions not too favorable for multiplication (as with small amounts of penicillin) vibrios may evolve as structures quite long and without curvature. These have been referred to as mycoid. If large amounts of penicillin are employed, the cell walls are lost and the organisms appear as round bodies of various sizes. Although spheroidal, these forms maintain directional motility.

Long spirillar forms were demonstrated by Koch in the rice water stools of cholera patients. Although these forms can be demonstrated readily under such circumstances, they have not as yet been produced in vitro. The term *fish-in-stream* was used by some workers to describe their findings in cholera stools, but it is probable that these represented early autolysis of the spirillar form due to delay in making the smears.



- prompt inhibition of intracellular multiplication *J Immun* 87 153 161
- Stuart C A Rustigian R Zimmerman A and Corrigan F V, 1943 Pathogenicity antigenic relationships and evolutionary trends of *Shigella alkalescens* *J Immun* 47 425 437
- Stuart C A Wheeler K M and McGann V 1946 Further studies on one anacrogenic paracolon organism Type 29911 *J Bact* 52 431-438
- Stuart C A Wheeler K M Rustigian R and Zimmerman A 1943 Biochemical and antigenic relationships of the paracolon bacteria *J Bact* 45 101 119
- Syvertsen J T Ching R E Cheever F S and Smith A H 1946 Typhoid and paratyphoid A in immunized military personnel *JAMA* 131 507 514
- Tal C and Goebel W F 1950 On the nature of the toxic component of the somatic antigen of *Shigella paradysenteriae* Type Z (Flexner) *J Exp Med* 92 25 34
- Taylor J Powell B W and Wright J 1949 Infantile diarrhoea and vomiting a clinical and bacteriological investigation *Brit Med J* 2 117 125
- van Heyningen W E 1955 The neurotoxin of *Shigella shigae* 5 The effect of iron and related metals on the growth respiration and toxin production of *Shigella shigae* and related organisms *Brit J Exp Path* 36 373 380
- Waaler E 1935 Studies on the dissociation of the dysentery bacilli *Skrifter Norske Videnskaps Akad Oslo 1 Mat Naturo Klasse No 2*
- Watt J 1956 *Shigellosis in Maxcy K F Rosenau Preventive Medicine and Public Health* ed 8, p 225 New York Appleton
- Watt J and Lindsay D M 1940 Diarrheal disease control studies I Effect of fly control in a high morbidity area *Pub Health Rep* 63 1319 1334
- West M G and Edwards P R 1954 The Bethesda-Ballerup group of paracolon bacteria U S P H S Monogr No 22
- Westphal O and Ludentz O 1954 *Chemische Erforschung von Lipopolysacchariden gramnegativer Bakterien*, *Angew Chem* 66 407-417
- Wheeler K M and Mickle F L 1945 Antigens of *Shigella sonnei* *J Immun* 51 257 267
- Zinder N D and Lederberg J 1952 Genetic exchange in *Salmonella* *J Bact* 64 679 699

Certain precautions are necessary since some vibrios utilize nitrites as well as nitrates. Hence if a negative result is obtained a test with zinc dust should be done to demonstrate that nitrate remains. A second precaution is that the concentration of nitrate should not exceed 0.005 per cent if the same medium is to be used for indole detection. Nitrites inhibit indole formation. The cholera red test applies rather generally to organisms which form indole and reduce nitrates but it has no real value in classification.

Carbohydrate fermentation is a most useful feature for purposes of general classification. This system was devised by Heiberg and utilizes sucrose, arabinose and mannose. Although 8 combinations are possible only 6 are required to describe cultures in present collections.

GROUP	I	II	III	IV	V	VI
Sucrose	A	A	A	A	—	—
Arabinose	—	—	A	A	—	—
Mannose	A	—	A	—	A	—

All fermentation cultures of this type are essentially competitive affairs. Acid is formed from carbohydrates but alkaline products result from peptone utilization. With many cultures there is something of a race, the final pH being the result of the particular preferences involved or the relative amounts of substrates presented. Not infrequently the surface of the broth will be alkaline and the butt acid. Fermentation of mannose at least should be carried out under a layer of sterile paraffin oil.

The use of these 2 schemes gives 48 combinations but is far from definitive of species. These combinations are merely broad group descriptions and can be indicated as a I, b, IV, etc.

Some vibrios produce soluble hemolysins in broth cultures. The original demonstration was with organisms grown in alkaline peptone water for 3 days at 37° C. Such hemolysin is produced by the original El Tor strains and is quite stable. A second type of hemolysin is found with many other organisms at 24 hours in low titer but usually disappears completely by the 3rd day.

## RESISTANCE

Vibrios in general are very sensitive to acid, the usual chemical antiseptics and to many aniline dyes. They are destroyed at 55° C in 15 minutes. Drying is regarded as an adverse influence but some features are not easily explained. In the laboratory cultures do not tolerate refrigeration well.

## VIBRIOPHAGES

Many lines of bacteriophage active against vibrios have been recovered from a variety of sources. The possibilities of this approach to taxonomy and to epidemiology are almost unlimited. Most of the findings relate to *V. cholerae* and will be discussed under that heading.

## ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

Flagellar antigens (H) are found in all motile vibrios. The addition of anti H serum to suspensions of homologous vibrios gives a flaky or flocculent result. A number of flagellar antigens have been postulated but this subject is not yet clarified. The flagellar substances of vibrios do not appear to be highly antigenic.

Somatic antigens (O) are quite dominant as antibody producers with all vibrios. Burrows has clearly demonstrated that some strains of *V. cholerae* possess as many as 6 differing somatic antigens. He recognized a total of 14 such antigens in various strains of *V. cholerae*. With a single injection of living cholera vibrios animals give antibody response to not more than 3 antigens. *V. cholerae* generally gives response to 2. One of these (usually designated as A) is dominant and is found in all cholera vibrios. With repeated injections over a period of time antibodies develop to other presumably minor antigens.

An unfortunate terminology has come into use namely that vibrios other than the cholera vibrio are called nonagglutinable (NAG). The fact is that all smooth vibrios are agglutinable by the proper reagents. It is more useful to use the phrase noncholera vibrios (NCV). Gardner and Ventkatraman pointed out that a serologic classification of

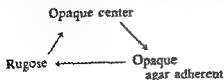
Vibrios are readily stained with aniline dyes and are gram negative

Most vibrios are motile. They usually possess a single polar flagellum

## GROWTH REQUIREMENTS AND CULTIVATION

Most vibrios can be grown on synthetic media containing asparagin and a suitable mixture of mineral salts. They grow well on ordinary laboratory media except for some dye-containing media used in enteric work. The optimum temperature for most vibrios is near 32° C but growth is possible between 10° and 39° C. Anaerobic growth is usually rather slow. The optimum pH for the enteric vibrios is near 7.5 but growth will occur with alkalinity as high as pH 9.5. On the other hand vibrios are rather sensitive to acid. Growth usually cannot be initiated if the pH is 6.2 or lower. In the presence of a fermentable carbohydrate vibrio cultures undergo autosterilization due to the acid formed.

On any good peptone agar the colonies of vibrios are somewhat varied. No general description applies since colonies may be clear, semitransparent or opaque. As the colony develops the term opaque-center is frequently applicable especially with the type species *V. cholerae*. On enriched media such as brain heart infusion agar any given culture is apt to display some variation quite characteristic of that strain. Two such types of variation are found in cultures of *V. cholerae*. The first is the opaque  $\longleftrightarrow$  transparent colony system. This is usually associated with nonpelliculate strains. The second is



This is frequently found with pellicle forming strains.

Although a wide variety of pigments have been observed with vibrios those isolated from mammalian infections are usually regarded as non pigment formers. Actually

there is a small amount of tan to brownish pigment but this gives little contrast to the color of the medium save in older cultures. Some cultures give colonies with a slight iridescence in oblique light.

Colonial morphology does not clearly reflect the S  $\longleftrightarrow$  R system of variation. Isolates regarded as rough because of granular growth in broth and which lack the antigenic attributes of smooth forms usually give colonies with rather smooth surfaces.

All smooth vibrio forms give an initial even turbidity in broth. The rate of development of turbidity (not entirely related to the number of viable forms) is characteristic of any given strain and indeed this simple description often applies to all strains from a given cholera epidemic. Some strains characteristically form a pellicle which adheres firmly to glass and has a tendency to climb. The nature of the pellicle is not understood; it does not appear to be simply a collection of oxygen loving organisms.

One of the more sensitive areas of growth requirements is in the matter of salt. Even those vibrios isolated from fresh water sources do not thrive unless furnished NaCl at levels of 0.5 to 1.0 per cent. Levels of 10 per cent are often required for isolates from sea water.

## BIOCHEMICAL ACTIVITIES

Most vibrios are far from fastidious and will tend to adapt to available nutrients. This requires standardization of approach if reproducible results are to be obtained.

The earliest biochemical work had to do with the separation of cholera vibrios from all others (then called water vibrios). This involved the liquefaction of gelatin, the production of indole and the reduction of nitrates to nitrites. This system still serves as an excellent beginning toward division of the vibrios into large groups. Thus

GROUP	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h
Gelatinase	+	+	+	+	-	-	-	-
Indole	+	+	-	-	-	+	+	-
Nitrite	+	-	-	+	+	+	-	-

All of these combinations exist. All cholera vibrios belong to Group a.

been used to improve circulation but these are probably quite ineffective during the period of collapse. Unfortunately the proper management of therapy is not always feasible in the rather remote regions where the disease is most disastrous.

**Etiology** It is usually stated that Asiatic cholera is a specific disease entity in which the etiologic agent is *V. cholerae*. This statement can be debated at almost every point. It is very difficult to give more than a broad definition to the disease entity for the usual description applies only to those patients who are seriously ill. No one can be quite certain of the extent of mild cholera, a disease state resembling diarrheas due to many causes. The position of *V. cholerae* as an etiologic agent *per se* is even more tenuous. Although *V. cholerae* is regularly isolated from feces of these severe diarrheas it has never been possible to obtain proof of etiology since an identical disease entity has not been regularly reproduced in man or animals. Indeed the failure to develop cholera following laboratory misadventure and the lack of secondary cases in hospitals have often been cited as evidence against the idea of specific etiology. The specific etiologic hypothesis rests largely on the fact that specific antibodies against *V. cholerae* develop in the course of convalescence.

Although *V. cholerae* is isolated from feces of every severely ill patient other vibrios have been isolated (1) from the same individuals late in the disease and (2) from milder choleralike states frequently as the only bacterial form present. These isolates of noncholera vibrios represent about 75 immunologic types and include strains in biochemical categories all, al, aV, dIII, eII and aIV. The relationship of the noncholera vibrios to cholera vibrios can be the subject of much speculation. It is altogether possible that some sort of phase variation is fundamental to the cholera problem. Noncholera vibrios have been isolated from well established clones of cholera vibrios and clearly identified. The reverse is also true but the factors or forces operative are completely unknown.

The actual process of pathogenesis of cholera is unknown. It is assumed that the vibrios are acquired in water or food and that they somehow pass safely through the

adverse acid environment of the stomach and then multiply enormously and bring on diarrhea. Much of this hypothesis presents difficulty for vibrios are extraordinarily sensitive to acid; they generally multiply rather slowly under the reducing conditions prevalent in the gut and they do not thrive well in the face of competitive intestinal flora. However the initial diarrheal samples are loaded with vibrios; the numbers tend to diminish rather rapidly. Rice water stool itself constitutes a very poor culture medium.

There is no evidence of parenteral invasion during the disease. Vibrios have been isolated from various organs and tissues postmortem but positive blood cultures are unknown. However the vibrios or their products must find their way to antibody producing cells for convalescent antibody titers can be quite high.

The species *V. cholerae* includes a considerable variety of microorganisms. All strains have the biochemical formula of a 1 that is all liquefy gelatin, form indol, reduce nitrates, ferment sucrose and mannose but not arabinose. All possess a common group somatic antigen (A). All possess in addition a second strong somatic antigen either Ogawa (B) or Inaba (C). There are descriptions of organisms having the somatic formula ABC (Hikojima) but there is confusion as to this point. Although the foregoing may be taken as the present species definition the description includes a large group of vibrio lines. These lines have meaning in epidemiology and may have meaning with reference to severity of infection. Some examples of possible subclassification may be offered.

**A Morphology** Some strains differ markedly from others but a firm classification is not yet possible. Nonmotile strains of *V. cholerae* have been isolated from feces but the significance is not known.

**B Immunologic Characteristics** The subtypes Ogawa and Inaba are readily identified with properly absorbed antisera. It is usual that any outbreak is characterized by the dominance of one type. However it is not unusual that the other will make its appearance late in any series. In stock cultures subtypes are quite stable.

**C Biochemical Characteristics** All strains ferment dextrin, galactose, glucose, levulose.

noncholera vibrios was entirely feasible. The number of recognized serologic types now known amounts to something over 100 but it is probable that any final array will be almost as extensive as with the *Salmonella*. The type specific O antigens often correspond exactly to some found in *Escherichia*, *Proteus* and *Salmonella*.

As applied to the total taxonomic problem it should be pointed out that the three systems of classification (basic biochemical, carbohydrate fermentation and immunologic) are quite independent. Even definition with all three systems is not necessarily sufficient for the definition of a species. It is probable that this 3 fold description plus description of special features of irregular nature should form an adequate species characterization at this time.

### INFECTIONS ASSOCIATED WITH VIBRIOS

As understood at present, vibrios may be associated with human disease states in three categories: (1) the enteric vibrioses, (2) infectious states derived indirectly from vibriotic epizootic diseases, and (3) opportunistic occurrence in various disease states.

#### THE ENTERIC VIBRIOSES (ASIATIC CHOLERA)

Asiatic cholera is an acute infectious disease characterized by abrupt onset vomiting, extraordinary diarrhea, muscular cramps and other signs of dehydration, subnormal temperatures, fall of blood pressure, suppression of urine, and rapid collapse. It is associated with the presence of vibrios in the rice water stools, these usually being identified as *V. cholerae*.

**History.** Cholera has been endemic in the delta of the Ganges and the Brahmaputra (India and East Pakistan) since remote times. During the 19th century there were repeated pandemics involving most of the world. The United States was invaded in 5 of these waves but has not experienced the disease since 1873. From the chief endemic focus in Bengal (and perhaps a minor focus in China) the disease has shown repeated extensions. At the present time cholera appears to be well seeded in India, Pakistan, China, Malaysia, the East Indies, the Philip-

pines, etc. Its present northern reach is Korea. Its easterly march has come to New Guinea. A large proportion of the world's population is at risk of exposure.

**Clinical Course.** The incubation period is not clearly established but probably varies from a matter of hours up to 5 days. There are usually no clinical events preceding the abrupt vomiting and diarrhea. The loss of fluid is acute, often a matter of liters within the first 5 hours. There are cramps of great severity in the legs and the feet. The patient sinks into a condition of collapse; the features are sunken, the skin is wrinkled and clammy, the temperature falls, the blood pressure falls, the pulse is extremely feeble and flickering, and the patient becomes stuporous. The first feces are yellowish but quickly become watery with whitish particles (rice water). With recovery there is first the appearance of biliverdin in the stools and then with the re-establishment of the normal flora the familiar brown color reappears. The symptomatology corresponds in degree to the amount of fluid lost in the feces. During the worst of the collapse, urine flow is slight and may cease altogether. Death may occur during the period of initial collapse or at a somewhat later time due to failure of kidney function. The death rate in untreated cholera has sometimes been quoted as high as 40 per cent, but this figure is relative to the number of severe cases and without great meaning. Recovery often occurs quite rapidly and there appears to be no residuum.

Cholera shows no characteristic postmortem pathology aside from evidences of dehydration. Older descriptions of changes in the mucosa of the lower ileum and the ascending colon are now recognized as related to postmortem events. Physiologic studies in cholera have demonstrated the enormous fecal losses of water and of bicarbonate, sodium, potassium and chloride ions. Therapy is based on orderly replacement of these losses. Since the diarrheal loss is primarily isotonic, the physiologic replacement is primarily isotonic saline by the intravenous route. Acidosis may need corrective attention after initial rehydration has been accomplished. The use of broad spectrum antibiotics such as tetracycline has been advocated. These may perhaps shorten the period of diarrhea. Many drugs have

been used to improve circulation but these are probably quite ineffective during the period of collapse. Unfortunately the proper management of therapy is not always feasible in the rather remote regions where the disease is most disastrous.

**Etiology** It is usually stated that Asiatic cholera is a specific disease entity in which the etiologic agent is *V. cholerae*. This statement can be debated at almost every point. It is very difficult to give more than a broad definition to the disease entity for the usual description applies only to those patients who are seriously ill. No one can be quite certain of the extent of mild cholera, a disease state resembling diarrheas due to many causes. The position of *V. cholerae* as an etiologic agent *per se* is even more tenuous. Although *V. cholerae* is regularly isolated from feces of these severe diarrheas it has never been possible to obtain proof of etiology since an identical disease entity has not been regularly reproduced in man or animals. Indeed the failure to develop cholera following laboratory misadventure and the lack of secondary cases in hospitals have often been cited as evidence against the idea of specific etiology. The specific etiologic hypothesis rests largely on the fact that specific antibodies against *V. cholerae* develop in the course of convalescence.

Although *V. cholerae* is isolated from feces of every severely ill patient, other vibrios have been isolated (1) from the same individuals late in the disease and (2) from milder choleralike states frequently as the only bacterial form present. These isolates of noncholera vibrios represent about 75 immunologic types and include strains in biochemical categories all, al, aV, dIII, eII, and aIV. The relationship of the noncholera vibrios to cholera vibrios can be the subject of much speculation. It is altogether possible that some sort of phase variation is fundamental to the cholera problem. Noncholera vibrios have been isolated from well established clones of cholera vibrios and clearly identified. The reverse is also true but the factors or forces operative are completely unknown.

The actual process of pathogenesis of cholera is unknown. It is assumed that the vibrios are acquired in water or food and that they somehow pass safely through the

adverse acid environment of the stomach and then multiply enormously and bring on diarrhea. Much of this hypothesis presents difficulty for vibrios are extraordinarily sensitive to acid; they generally multiply rather slowly under the reducing conditions prevalent in the gut and they do not thrive well in the face of competitive intestinal flora. However the initial diarrheal samples are loaded with vibrios; the numbers tend to diminish rather rapidly. Rice water stool itself constitutes a very poor culture medium.

There is no evidence of parenteral invasion during the disease. Vibrios have been isolated from various organs and tissues postmortem but positive blood cultures are unknown. However the vibrios or their products must find their way to antibody producing cells for convalescent antibody titers can be quite high.

The species *V. cholerae* includes a considerable variety of microorganisms. All strains have the biochemical formula of a 1 that is all liquefy gelatin, form indol, reduce nitrates, ferment sucrose and mannose but not arabinose. All possess a common group somatic antigen (A). All possess in addition a second strong somatic antigen either Ogawa (B) or Inaba (C). There are descriptions of organisms having the somatic formula ABC (Hikojima) but there is confusion as to this point. Although the foregoing may be taken as the present species definition the description includes a large group of vibrio lines. These lines have meaning in epidemiology and may have meaning with reference to severity of infection. Some examples of possible subclassification may be offered.

**A Morphology** Some strains differ markedly from others but a firm classification is not yet possible. Nonmotile strains of *V. cholerae* have been isolated from feces but the significance is not known.

**B Immunologic Characteristics** The subtypes Ogawa and Inaba are readily identified with properly absorbed antisera. It is usual that any outbreak is characterized by the dominance of one type. However it is not unusual that the other will make its appearance late in any series. In stock cultures subtypes are quite stable.

**C Biochemical Characteristics** All strains ferment dextrin, galactose, glucose, levulose

noncholera vibrios was entirely feasible. The number of recognized serologic types now known amounts to something over 100 but it is probable that any final array will be almost as extensive as with the *Salmonella*. The type specific O antigens often correspond exactly to some found in *Escherichia*, *Proteus* and *Salmonella*.

As applied to the total taxonomic problem it should be pointed out that the three systems of classification (basic biochemical, carbohydrate fermentation and immunologic) are quite independent. Even definition with all three systems is not necessarily sufficient for the definition of a species. It is probable that this 3 fold description plus description of special features of irregular nature should form an adequate species characterization at this time.

### INFECTIONS ASSOCIATED WITH VIBRIOS

As understood at present vibrios may be associated with human disease states in three categories: (1) the enteric vibrioses, (2) infectious states derived indirectly from vibriotic epizootic diseases, and (3) opportunistic occurrence in various disease states.

#### THE ENTERIC VIBRIOSES (ASIATIC CHOLERA)

Asiatic cholera is an acute infectious disease characterized by abrupt onset, vomiting, extraordinary diarrhea, muscular cramps and other signs of dehydration, subnormal temperatures, fall of blood pressure, suppression of urine and rapid collapse. It is associated with the presence of vibrios in the rice water stools, these usually being identified as *V. cholerae*.

**History.** Cholera has been endemic in the delta of the Ganges and the Brahmaputra (India and East Pakistan) since remote times. During the 19th century there were repeated pandemics involving most of the world. The United States was invaded in 5 of these waves but has not experienced the disease since 1873. From the chief endemic focus in Bengal (and perhaps a minor focus in China) the disease has shown repeated extensions. At the present time cholera appears to be well seeded in India, Pakistan, China, Malaysia, the East Indies, the Philip-

pines, etc. Its present northern reach is Korea. Its easterly march has come to New Guinea. A large proportion of the world's population is at risk of exposure.

**Clinical Course.** The incubation period is not clearly established but probably varies from a matter of hours up to 5 days. There are usually no clinical events preceding the abrupt vomiting and diarrhea. The loss of fluid is acute, often a matter of liters within the first 5 hours. There are cramps of great severity in the legs and the feet. The patient sinks into a condition of collapse; the features are sunken, the skin is wrinkled and clammy, the temperature falls, the blood pressure falls, the pulse is extremely feeble and flickering and the patient becomes stuporous. The first feces are yellowish but quickly become watery with whitish particles (rice water). With recovery there is first the appearance of biliverdin in the stools and then, with the re-establishment of the normal flora, the familiar brown color reappears. The symptomatology corresponds in degree to the amount of fluid lost in the feces. During the worst of the collapse, urine flow is slight and may cease altogether. Death may occur during the period of initial collapse or at a somewhat later time due to failure of kidney function. The death rate in untreated cholera has sometimes been quoted as high as 40 per cent but this figure is relative to the number of severe cases and without great meaning. Recovery often occurs quite rapidly and there appears to be no residuum.

Cholera shows no characteristic post-mortem pathology aside from evidences of dehydration. Older descriptions of changes in the mucosa of the lower ileum and the ascending colon are now recognized as related to post-mortem events. Physiologic studies in cholera have demonstrated the enormous fecal losses of water and of bicarbonate, sodium, potassium and chloride ions. Therapy is based on orderly replacement of these losses. Since the diarrheal loss is primarily isotonic, the physiologic replacement is primarily isotonic saline by the intravenous route. Acidosis may need corrective attention after initial rehydration has been accomplished. The use of broad spectrum antibiotics such as tetracycline has been advocated. These may perhaps shorten the period of diarrhea. Many drugs have

tive transport of sodium. The blocking agent has not been precisely identified but it behaves as an anion of low molecular weight (perhaps a few hundred) which is stable to heat and to weak acids and alkalis. It is not removed with liquid solvents. This blocking agent has been demonstrated in culture filtrates and in fecal samples from cholera patients. It has probably been present as a contaminant of various preparations of toxins, mucinases, etc.

If this inhibitor exists in free form it is most unlikely that it would be antigenic, perhaps it actually exists as the effector grouping of a larger molecule.

The toxin theory of cholera has a long history. The subject is confused by the number of toxins isolated and by the fact that some of these have been isolated from non-cholera vibrios. The confusion in this problem has been well reviewed by Jenkin and Rowley. The relationships between the various toxins remains obscure. Their toxic effect in mice is never accompanied by diarrhea. The participation of toxins in the disease is thus uncertain.

The only experimental infection with reasonable resemblance to cholera is the infection of infant rabbits as developed by Dutta and Habbu (1955). After gastric lavage rabbits 8 to 10 days old are starved for 18 hours. After a second lavage the animal is fed with culture. This is followed regularly by diarrhea in 6 to 30 hours. The animals lose more than 10 per cent of body weight, the skin is cold, the hair rough, and the underside of the body smeared with liquid feces. Death occurs in 10 to 48 hours. At death the large intestine is full of fluid and the small intestine shows a moderate degree of congestion. Liver, spleen and kidneys are generally normal. This result can be produced with cultures with culture filtrates and with cholera fecal filtrates. It was originally ascribed to an endotoxin. Unfortunately this experimental infection is not suitable for immunologic exploration.

There have been many experiments in which cultures or culture filtrates introduced into isolated intestinal loops have produced an inflow of fluid so that the loops become distended. These results have been variously

interpreted as related to mucinase or to endotoxin.

## IMMUNOLOGIC FEATURES

The finding of strong antibody response with cholera casts some doubt on the usual theory that there is no invasive process in this disease. By the 5th to the 7th day there is a sharp rise of specific serum antibody titers. This does not correspond to the time of recovery. It has been shown that a number of patients on admission have serum antibody directed against the group somatic antigen (A) but none has shown antibodies against the type antigens (B, C). In convalescence most patients show marked antibody rise against both group and type antigens.

It should be pointed out that serum antibody does not necessarily correspond to coproantibody. The latter may indeed appear and exert effects earlier than the serum antibody. Upon artificial immunization coproantibody diminishes much more rapidly than serum antibody.

There is no convincing evidence of acquisition of permanent immunity on recovery from an attack of cholera. Much that is advanced is untenable because it involves clinical diagnosis, a matter of much difficulty since during epidemics almost any severe diarrhea is called cholera.

## EPIDEMIOLOGY

Some epidemic situations in Europe in the 19th century were shown to be water borne. It had been widely recognized that the disease spread from one community to another on a rather deliberate schedule and it was thought to be carried by persons or by fomites. With the passage of time the matter of epidemiology has not been resolved especially in the endemic regions. The inter-epidemic reservoir is unknown.

In the Bengal region the disease shows two waves each year. In the fall there are usually sharp outbreaks in various communities but the number of cases is comparatively low. In the late spring there is usually a major wave in which many communities are struck



maltose, mannose, ribose sucrose and trehalose Negative results are obtained with adonitol arabinose cellobiose dulcitol erythritol inositol inulin melibiose raffinose rhamnose salacin sorbitol and xylose Most strains ferment mannitol but others are characteristically mannitol negative

**D Growth Characteristics in Broth** A sharp division between pelliculate and non pelliculate strains exists Growth patterns (based on turbidity) differ widely and appear to be rather constant characteristics of given strains

**E Hemolytic Activity** The original El Tor vibrios produced a stable hemolysin as determined in filtrates of 3 day broth cultures (37° C) These organisms were recovered from normal persons and were regarded as nonpathogenic In earliest usage the term El Tor was applied to all vibrios producing this stable lysin, whether cholera vibrios or not Later the term was restricted to cholera vibrios The term is now being applied also to cholera vibrios which give some hemolysin at 24 hours (None is usually found at 3 days) Although the associated disease is clearly cholera the terms

El Tor enteritis or choleraform enteritis have come into vogue Some strains in these epidemics fail to produce any hemolysin These are designated as nonhemolytic El Tor Considerable confusion arises as a result of such evasive terminology

**F Bacteriophage Typing** As a result of study of a large number of phage lines against a long series of microorganisms Mukerjee has provided an important tool for the sub classification of *V. cholerae* Four phage lines well defined are used for this classification At the present time while the total range of possibilities is under exploration it seems best to describe the actual results rather than to categorize with numbers Bacteriophage typing is probably one of the most sensitive tools available at this time but it requires expert handling

## LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Smears of rice water stools generally reveal the spirillar forms described by Koch but much experience is required with this

method since there is little staining contrast with background material

Many schemes have been developed for the cultural isolation of enteric vibrios Success is related to familiarity with the given method A simple and satisfactory system employs an agar medium containing 3 U per cent gelatin 10 per cent trypticase 10 per cent sodium chloride and 0.1 per cent yeast extract After 15 to 18 hours enteric vibrios give colonies surrounded by sharp zones of clouding (Other proteolytic organisms give fainter zones of clouding by 48 hours) Serologic typing (by slide agglutination) can be made directly from these colonies Monsur has modified this medium by the addition of tellurite enteric vibrios give grey to black colonies with a halo

Without question the most satisfactory results are those obtained by immediate streaking of culture medium with feces or with material obtained by rectal swab The preservation of samples is never completely satisfactory but the preservation medium of Monsur is recommended

The isolation of *V. cholerae* (or other vibrios) supports a clinical diagnosis of cholera For more definitive work it is preferable to demonstrate a 4 fold rise of antibody titer between acute and convalescent sera

The significance of noncholera vibrios cannot be assessed yet It is not unusual to find these organisms exclusively in fecal cultures At other times they are found along with *V. cholerae*

## PATHOGENICITY

The most probable explanation of the diarrhea of cholera is that *V. cholerae* produces a substance of low molecular weight which inhibits or blocks sodium transport in the terminal ileum and the ascending colon This possibility has been demonstrated by the frog skin technique by Fuhrman and Fuhrman by Phillips and Huber and by Fuhrman Fuhrman and Burrows One scheme of thinking holds that large volumes of fluids are almost constantly introduced into the intestinal tract and that the resorption of this water is largely an accompaniment to ac

measures if they understand the reasons involved

## OTHER VIBRIOSES OF MAN

There are a large number of vibriotic infections in domestic animals e.g. contagious abortion in cattle (*V fetus*) swine dysentery (*V coli*) and vibriotic diarrhea of calves (*V jejuni*). Many of these vibrios are microaerophilic grow very slowly and are difficult to characterize. Most have been incriminated as infectious agents in man. Usually direct contact has been involved. The human infections have been varied presumably depending on the portal of entry. The number of such infections is unknown since the organisms may not be recovered by routine procedures. Antibiotic treatment is effective in these human infections.

Both aerobic and anaerobic vibrios have been recovered from the mouth in nutritional disorders but are not believed to have a primary role. A vibrio that produces black pigment (*V niger*) has been isolated at times in otitis media but its significance is not known. Aerobic vibrios have been isolated from the female genital tract usually associated with cervical erosion but there is no evidence implicating venereal transmission such as is probable in domestic animals.

## REFERENCES

### General Review

Pollitzer R 1959 Cholera Geneva World Health Organization (It has been said that the literature on cholera consists of thousands of pages of speculation supported at times by well selected observations. As against this handicap Pollitzer has produced a masterful review. This review is a proper background for reading in the more active topics listed below.)

### Experimental Infections

Dutta N K and Habbu M K 1955 Experimental cholera in infant rabbits. A method for chemotherapeutic investigation. *Brit J Pharmacol* 10 153 159

Finkelstein R A and Ransom J P 1960 Non specific resistance to experimental cholera in embryonated eggs. *J Exp Med* 112 315 328

Formal S B Kundel D Schneider H

Kunev N and Sprinz H 1961 Studies with *Vibrio cholerae* in the ligated loop of the rabbit intestine. *Brit J Exp Path* 42 504 510

Jenkin C R and Rowley D 1960 The importance of antibody in the prevention of experimental cholera in rabbits. *Brit J Exp Path.* 41 24-30

### Pathogenesis

De S N Ghose M L and Sen A 1960 Activities of bacteria free preparations from *Vibrio cholerae*. *J Path Bact* 79 373 380

Freter R Smith H L Jr and Sweeney F J Jr 1961 An evaluation of intestinal fluids in the pathogenesis of cholera. *J Infect Dis* 109 35 42

Fuhrman G J and Fuhrman F A 1960 Inhibition of active sodium transport by cholera toxin. *Nature* 188 71 72

Fuhrman F A, Fuhrman G J and Burrows W 1962 Action and properties of an inhibitor of active transport of sodium produced by cholera vibrios. *J Infect. Dis* 111 225 232

Gangarosa E J Beisel W R Benyavati C Sprinz H and Piyaatn P 1960 The nature of the gastrointestinal lesion in Asiatic cholera and its relation to pathogenesis. A biopsy study. *Am J Trop Med* 9 125 135

Jenkin C R and Rowley D 1959 Toxic proteins from *Vibrio cholerae* and water vibrios which are lethal for mice. *J Gen Microbiol* 21 191 202

Lam G T Mandle R J and Goodner K 1955 The effect of *Vibrio comma* mucinase upon the permeability of mouse intestine. *J Infect Dis* 97 268 273

### Bacteriophage

Mukerjee S Guha D K and Guha Roy U K 1957 Studies on typing of cholera by bacteriophage. I. Phage typing of *Vibrio cholerae* from Calcutta epidemics. *Ann Biochem Exp Med* 17 161 176

Mukerjee S 1961 Diagnostic uses of cholera bacteriophages. *J Hyg* 59 109 115

— 1962 Characterization of cholera typing phages. IV. Phage resistant mutants of *Vibrio cholerae*. *Ann Biochem Exp Med* 22 1-4

### Laboratory Diagnosis

Feeley J C 1962 Isolation of cholera vibrios by positive recognition plating procedures. *J Bact* 84 866 867

Finkelstein R A and LaBrec E H 1959

sharply and all communities show some cases. This wave usually terminates with the monsoon. In other areas now involved in cholera the time schedule is less regular.

It is not uncommon that two or more persons in a given household will develop cholera. Usually others in the same household excrete *V. cholerae* but do not develop the disease. It is frequently impossible to trace these episodes to contact with the disease. It must be surmised that either an isolated water source or food may have a significant role. It is curious that the rates frequently rise sharply after any feast day (including Sundays).

All individuals convalescent from cholera show vibrios in feces for a variable period of time up to about 3 weeks. There is no solid evidence to indicate that convalescent carriers are sources of new infections. Individuals from households in which cholera occurs are frequently healthy carriers. Inapparent carriers have not been incriminated as sources of other infections, but this seems to be a most likely possibility. Permanent carriers are as yet unknown.

In most of the cholera areas, noncholera vibrios exist in abundance but there is no evidence to support the conjecture that these undergo conversion into cholera vibrios.

The epidemiology of cholera is thus completely unresolved. In recent decades cholera has confined itself generally to individuals who exist under the lowest economic circumstances. Yet in these regions there are many such who seem never to be caught. Who then is the target individual? What constitutional or environmental circumstances put him in line for this tragic physiologic upheaval?

## CONTROL OF CHOLERA

**Immunization** It is common practice to give an injection of cholera vaccine in the face of an epidemic. Persons entering cholera areas usually receive at least two injections. Although all observers have much faith in this approach there is no acceptable proof of the virtue of immunization against cholera. However, wide use of vaccine has been followed by a cessation of an epidemic so frequently that it must be accepted as the primary weapon. In a broad sense, it is

probably not too effective unless 80 per cent of the population can be brought into the program.

**Cholera vaccine** is a suspension of killed vibrios in phenolized saline. It should contain approximately 8 000 million vibrios per ml, this being made up of equal quantities of Ogawa and Inaba strains. Actually the vaccines are prepared on a turbidometric basis. In the United States the vaccines are evaluated on the basis of a mouse protection test using a mucin system similar to the procedure employed with typhoid vaccine. This method is quite impractical in many of the cholera areas where cholera vaccine is often prepared locally and is not evaluated. There have been a number of misfortunes related to this matter since in a number of places there has not even been identification of the microorganisms employed. The term cholera vaccine has covered many things. This lack of international definition of quality and potency standards may well be the greatest stumbling block in any program directed toward definitive evaluation of cholera vaccine and its possible use in a worldwide control program.

**Sanitary Measures** It is the custom to make every effort to provide sterile household water but this is almost impossible in some regions. Despite health education procedures such as boiling of water, proper disposal of excreta, etc. are not always accepted and practiced.

**Quarantine Measures** Restrictions are usually imposed on the movement of people and their goods and against shipment of various foodstuffs. These regulations are based on very old ideas and there is some question as to their effectiveness. Perhaps in the day of movement by ship these points were valuable.

In some recent outbreaks all persons of cholera households and all known contacts of cases have been put under observational arrest. Then the proved carriers have received antibiotic treatment.

**Public Information** The most successful programs of control in recent years have involved the enlistment of the public in all efforts. A cholera epidemic is almost beyond the resources of any official group. The people will support even the strongest police

measures if they understand the reasons involved

## OTHER VIBRIOSES OF MAN

There are a large number of vibriotic infections in domestic animals e.g. contagious abortion in cattle (*V fetus*), swine dysentery (*V coli*) and vibriotic diarrhea of calves (*V jejuni*). Many of these vibrios are microaerophilic grow very slowly and are difficult to characterize. Most have been incriminated as infectious agents in man. Usually direct contact has been involved. The human infections have been varied presumably depending on the portal of entry. The number of such infections is unknown since the organisms may not be recovered by routine procedures. Antibiotic treatment is effective in these human infections.

Both aerobic and anaerobic vibrios have been recovered from the mouth in nutritional disorders but are not believed to have a primary role. A vibrio that produces black pigment (*V niger*) has been isolated at times in otitis media but its significance is not known. Aerobic vibrios have been isolated from the female genital tract usually associated with cervical erosion but there is no evidence implicating venereal transmission such as is probable in domestic animals.

## REFERENCES

### General Review

Pollitzer R. 1959 Cholera. Geneva: World Health Organization. (It has been said that the literature on cholera consists of thousands of pages of speculation supported at times by well selected observations. As against this handicap Pollitzer has produced a masterful review. This review is a proper background for reading in the more active topics listed below.)

### Experimental Infections

Dutta N. K. and Habbu M. K. 1955 Experimental cholera in infant rabbits. A method for chemotherapeutic investigation. *Brit J Pharmacol* 10: 153-159.

Finkelstein R. A. and Ransom J. P. 1960 Non-specific resistance to experimental cholera in embryonated eggs. *J Exp Med* 112: 315-328.

Formal S. H., Kundel H., Schneider H.

Kunev N. and Sprinz H. 1961 Studies with *Vibrio cholerae* in the ligated loop of the rabbit intestine. *Brit J Exp Path* 42: 504-510.

Jenkin C. R. and Rowley H. 1960 The importance of antibody in the prevention of experimental cholera in rabbits. *Brit J Exp Path* 41: 24-30.

### Pathogenesis

De S. N. Ghose M. L. and Sen A. 1960 Activities of bacteria free preparations from *Vibrio cholerae*. *J Path Bact* 79: 373-380.

Freter R., Smith H. L. Jr. and Sweeney F. J. Jr. 1961 An evaluation of intestinal fluids in the pathogenesis of cholera. *J Infect Dis* 109: 35-42.

Fuhrman G. J. and Fuhrman F. A. 1960 Inhibition of active sodium transport by cholera toxin. *Nature* 188: 71-72.

Fuhrman F. A., Fuhrman G. J. and Burrows W. 1962 Action and properties of an inhibitor of active transport of sodium produced by cholera vibrios. *J Infect Dis* 111: 225-232.

Gangarosa E. J., Beisel W. R., Benyajati C., Sprinz H. and Piyaratn P. 1960 The nature of the gastrointestinal lesion in Asiatic cholera and its relation to pathogenesis. A biopsy study. *Am J Trop Med* 9: 125-135.

Jenkin C. R. and Rowley D. 1959 Toxic proteins from *Vibrio cholerae* and water vibrios which are lethal for mice. *J Gen Microbiol* 21: 191-202.

Lam G. T., Mandle R. J. and Goodner K. 1955 The effect of *Vibrio comma* mucinase upon the permeability of mouse intestine. *J Infect Dis* 97: 268-273.

### Bacteriophage

Mukerjee S., Guha D. K. and Guha Roy U. K. 1957 Studies on typing of cholera by bacteriophage. I. Phage typing of *Vibrio cholerae* from Calcutta epidemics. *Ann Biochem Exp Med* 17: 161-176.

Mukerjee S. 1961 Diagnostic uses of cholera bacteriophages. *J Hyg* 59: 109-115.

——— 1962 Characterization of cholera typing phages. IV. Phage resistant mutants of *Vibrio cholerae*. *Ann Biochem Exp Med* 22: 1-4.

### Laboratory Diagnosis

Feeley J. C. 1962 Isolation of cholera vibrios by positive recognition plating procedures. *J Bact* 84: 866-867.

Finkelstein R. A. and LaBrec E. H. 1959

that fowl cholera, rabbit septicemia Wild seuche (a fatal disease of deer) and cattle swine and buffalo plague were caused by bacilli which because they stain deeply at their poles were designated *Bacillus bipolaris septicus*. However the early descriptions of the organism and the disease it causes are not necessarily of *Pasteurella multocida* as now defined. The innumerable strains composing the group fluctuate easily and continuously in pathogenicity antigenic structure and fermentation capacity. They are parasites of domestic and wild mammals, birds and man. They may exist on the mucous membranes with little or no pathogenicity. The first bacteriologically proved human infection was reported in 1913 by Brugnattelli.

### MORPHOLOGY

*P. multocida* varies from small short oval forms to coccobacilli with convex sides and rounded ends. Their length ranges from 0.3 to 1.25 microns, their diameters from 0.15 to 0.25 micron and they appear singly in pairs, chains or clusters. Healthy organisms from cultures stain easily and diffusely with aniline dyes and are gram negative in animal tissues and fluids the ends of the rod stain more intensely than the central portion does. The bipolar staining corresponds to the location of the chromatin bodies or of reserve substances surrounding the chromatin granules. Pleomorphism is not common but filamentous granular or barred bacilli without bipolar staining may be seen in preparations from rough colonies. The organisms do not form spores and are not motile.

Capsules when present can be shown in counterstained India ink or Gramsa-stained preparations one of the most useful methods is to make a smear in a loopful of 10 per cent serum and after drying and fixation stain with carbol fuchsin diluted 1:4 with water (method of Jassin 1945 modified). Bacteria and background stain red while the capsules remain colorless.

### CULTIVATION AND BIOCHEMICAL ACTIVITIES

Nicotinamide pantothenic acid and aneurin are essential growth factors and cystine is apparently the only essential amino acid

(Jordan, 1952b). Lactic acid or sucrose provides an adequate carbon source and improves capsule production. Growth from small inocula is often inhibited by the presence of peroxides in the medium hence the usefulness of adding blood hematin catalase or sodium sulfite (Jordan 1952a) or of incubating anaerobically. Practical media have been described by Namioka and Murata (1961). Colonies of smooth strains reach 1 to 1.5 mm in diameter after 24 hours at 37° C. No hemolysis occurs but most strains discolor blood agar brown. Cultures on solid media have a faint but distinctive smell. Broth cultures of smooth or mucoid strains are evenly turbid rough strains produce a floccular or granular deposit. The optimal growth temperature is 37° C but many strains also grow at 42° C. Drying sunlight, heating above 50° C 0.5 per cent phenol and 0.1 per cent formalin are lethal in 15 minutes and cultures tend to die after a week or two on the bench or in the refrigerator.

Four principal colonial variants are recognized (Carter and Bain 1960). Mucoid (M) strains produce the largest colonies reaching 2 to 3 mm in diameter after 24 hours and preponderate in freshly isolated cultures of the serologic type A. They possess a thick capsule containing a hyaluronic acid and hyaluronidase produces decapsulation (Carter 1958). The mouse pathogenicity of mucoid strains varies greatly. Smooth capsulated (S) variants produce smaller colonies and have a less marked capsule. They are almost always highly mouse pathogenic and cultures on transparent solid media such as serum agar usually show iridescent colors including green and blue in obliquely transmitted light this is believed to be a diffraction effect due to capsular material (Smith 1958). Smooth noncapsulated (S<sup>n</sup>) variants resemble these but capsule and colony iridescence are slight or absent. Their mouse pathogenicity varies and many strains are highly pathogenic in the absence of any demonstrable capsule or iridescence. Rough (R) colonies resemble S<sup>n</sup> but are difficult to suspend in saline and produce a deposit in broth cultures whereas the other three types produce even turbidity. They are low in virulence for mice. Strains are usually iso

lated in the M or the S phase and the usual dissociation sequence  $M \rightleftharpoons S \rightarrow S^R \rightarrow R$  or  $M \rightarrow S^R \rightarrow R$

Inocula do not grow on MacConkey's agar and litmus milk is unchanged. Catalase, oxidase, phosphatase,  $NH_3$ ,  $H_2S$  (trace) and indole are formed in suitable media. Nitrates and methylene blue are reduced. Acid is produced in peptone or tryptone media containing glucose, mannose, galactose, fructose and sucrose but not as a rule in rhamnose, lactose, raffinose, melzitose, starch, dextrin, glycogen, inulin or dulcitol. Glycerol may be fermented late. Xylose, sorbitol and mannitol are fermented by most strains except those from dogs which instead often ferment maltose and trehalose (Smith 1958). Arabinose may be fermented especially by strains from birds.

#### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

Many attempts have been made to classify *P. multocida* by serologic methods. Results using ordinary agglutination tests are complicated by the common somatic antigens and the method is not now in use. Four main groups designated I, II, III and IV have been identified using cross-protection tests in mice (Roberts 1947) but the method is laborious and can be used only with mouse pathogenic strains. Soluble type-specific capsular antigens can be extracted by heating suspensions to 56°C (Carter 1952) and can be adsorbed onto human type O erythrocytes which then become specifically agglutinable by homologous antisera (Carter 1955). The immunologic basis of this reaction is by no means clear since agar gel precipitation tests show that the extracts usually contain a multiplicity of antigens; nevertheless 5 serotypes A, B, C, D and E have been thus detected. Type A strains, many of which are in the M (mucoid) phase when first isolated, derive chiefly from cattle, fowl and pigs and are world-wide in distribution; they are the principal cause of fowl cholera. Type B consists almost exclusively of strains from hemorrhagic septicemia in cattle and buffaloes in Asia. Cultures belonging to type C occur so infrequently that generalizations as to source cannot be made. Type D cultures said to be recognizable by the characteristic coarse agglutination of suspensions

when treated with acriflavine (Carter 1957) have been found chiefly in pigs but both host range and geographic distribution are believed to be wide. Type E is recently added group (Carter 1961) was obtained in cases of hemorrhagic septicemia in Africa. Types A and D have been isolated from disease in human beings. A slide agglutination technique using young (6 hour) cultures has given similar results (Namioka and Murata 1961). Satisfactory typing sera are difficult to prepare and only strains producing capsular antigen can be typed; nevertheless noncapsulated strains may be mouse pathogenic and then may be typed by Roberts' method. Carter's types A and B correspond to Roberts' II and I respectively.

The type-specific substances appear to be lipopolysaccharide-protein complexes (Carter and Annau 1953; Bain 1955; Carter and Bain 1960) and are toxic and pyrogenic (Bain 1959). Hyaluronic acid is produced by some strains, particularly mucoid type A cultures (Carter 1958); it renders a culture inagglutinable by homologous antisera and may also inhibit its antigenicity. Nonmucoid capsulated strains are agglutinable to low titer by appropriate antisera but decapsulation by heating to 56°C allows somatic agglutination to a high titer.

#### DISTRIBUTION AND RANGE OF PATHOGENICITY

*P. multocida* has a wide host range. It inhabits the upper respiratory tract of healthy mammals and birds of many species and is especially common in dogs, cats and rats; it may be found infrequently in the throats of healthy humans (Smith 1959). In cattle in the tropics and the subtropics *P. multocida* causes epizootic pasteurellosis or hemorrhagic septicemia and in temperate countries shipping fever or stockyard fever in which it shares an etiologic role with *P. haemolytica*; it is common in pneumonia of calves and adult cattle and can cause bovine mastitis. It is a frequent secondary invader in the lesions of viral pneumonia in young pigs and is the causal organism of fowl cholera. It has been found also in a variety of other diseases in mammals and birds and occasionally causes disease in human beings. An outbreak of pasteurellosis in one animal

that fowl cholera rabbit septicemia Wild seuche (a fatal disease of deer) and cattle swine and buffalo plague were caused by bacilli which because they stain deeply at their poles were designated *Bacillus bipolaris septicus*. However, the early descriptions of the organism and the disease it causes are not necessarily of *Pasteurella multocida* as now defined. The innumerable strains composing the group fluctuate easily and continuously in pathogenicity antigenic structure and fermentation capacity. They are parasites of domestic and wild mammals birds and man. They may exist on the mucous membranes with little or no pathogenicity. The first bacteriologically proved human infection was reported in 1913 by Brungnatelli.

#### MORPHOLOGY

*P. multocida* varies from small short oval forms to coccobacilli with convex sides and rounded ends. Their length ranges from 0.3 to 1.25 microns, their diameters from 0.15 to 0.25 micron and they appear singly in pairs chains or clusters. Healthy organisms from cultures stain easily and diffusely with aniline dyes and are gram negative in animal tissues and fluids the ends of the rod stain more intensely than the central portion does. The bipolar staining corresponds to the location of the chromatin bodies or of reserve substances surrounding the chromatin granules. Pleomorphism is not common but filamentous granular or barred bacilli without bipolar staining may be seen in preparations from rough colonies. The organisms do not form spores and are not motile.

Capsules when present can be shown in counterstained India ink or Giemsa stained preparations one of the most useful methods is to make a smear in a loopful of 10 per cent serum and after drying and fixation stain with carbol fuchsin diluted 1:4 with water (method of Jasnun 1945 modified). Bacteria and background stain red while the capsules remain colorless.

#### CULTIVATION AND BIOCHEMICAL ACTIVITIES

Nicotinamide pantothenic acid and alanine are essential growth factors and cystine is apparently the only essential amino acid

(Jordan 1952b). Lactic acid or sucrose provides an adequate carbon source and improves capsule production. Growth from small inocula is often inhibited by the presence of peroxides in the medium hence the usefulness of adding blood hematin catalase or sodium sulfite (Jordan 1952a) or of incubating anaerobically. Practical media have been described by Namioka and Murata (1961). Colonies of smooth strains reach 1 to 1.5 mm in diameter after 24 hours at 37° C. No hemolysis occurs but most strains discolor blood agar brown. Cultures on solid media have a faint but distinctive smell. Broth cultures of smooth or mucoid strains are evenly turbid rough strains produce a floccular or granular deposit. The optimal growth temperature is 37° C but many strains also grow at 42° C. Drying sunlight heating above 50° C 0.5 per cent phenol and 0.1 per cent formalin are lethal in 15 minutes and cultures tend to die after a week or two on the bench or in the refrigerator.

Four principal colonial variants are recognized (Carter and Bam 1960). Mucoid (M) strains produce the largest colonies reaching 2 to 3 mm in diameter after 24 hours and preponderate in freshly isolated cultures of the serologic type A. They possess a thick capsule containing a hyaluronic acid and hyaluronidase produces decapsulation (Carter 1958). The mouse pathogenicity of mucoid strains varies greatly. Smooth capsulated (S) variants produce smaller colonies and have a less marked capsule. They are almost always highly mouse pathogenic and cultures on transparent solid media such as serum agar usually show iridescent colors including green and blue in obliquely transmitted light this is believed to be a diffraction effect due to capsular material (Smith 1958). Smooth noncapsulated (S<sup>n</sup>) variants resemble these but capsule and colony iridescence are slight or absent. Their mouse pathogenicity varies and many strains are highly pathogenic in the absence of any demonstrable capsule or iridescence. Rough (R) colonies resemble S<sup>n</sup> but are difficult to suspend in saline and produce a deposit in broth cultures whereas the other three types produce even turbidity. They are low in virulence for mice. Strains are usually no

lated in the M or the S phase and the usual dissociation sequence is  $M \rightleftharpoons S \rightarrow S^R \rightarrow R$  or  $M \rightarrow S^R \rightarrow R$ .

Inocula do not grow on MacConkey's agar and litmus milk is unchanged. Catalase oxidase phosphatase  $NH_3$  H<sub>2</sub>S (trace) and indole are formed in suitable media. Nitrates and methylene blue are reduced. Acid is produced in peptone or tryptone media containing glucose mannose galactose fructose and sucrose but not as a rule in rhamnose lactose raffinose melezitose starch dextrin glycogen inulin or dulcitol. Glycerol may be fermented late. Xylose sorbitol and mannitol are fermented by most strains except those from dogs which instead often ferment maltose and trehalose (Smith 1958). Arabinose may be fermented especially by strains from birds.

#### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

Many attempts have been made to classify *P. multocida* by serologic methods. Results using ordinary agglutination tests are complicated by the common somatic antigens and the method is not now in use. Four main groups designated I II III and IV have been identified using cross protection tests in mice (Roberts 1947) but the method is laborious and can be used only with mouse pathogenic strains. Soluble type specific capsular antigens can be extracted by heating suspensions to 56 °C (Carter 1952) and can be adsorbed onto human type O erythrocytes which then become specifically agglutinable by homologous antisera (Carter 1955). The immunologic basis of this reaction is by no means clear since agar gel precipitation tests show that the extracts usually contain a multiplicity of antigens nevertheless 5 serotypes A II C D and E have been thus detected. Type A strains many of which are in the M (mucoid) phase when first isolated derive chiefly from cattle fowl and pigs and are world wide in distribution they are the principal cause of fowl cholera. Type II consists almost exclusively of strains from hemorrhagic septicemia in cattle and buffaloes in Asia. Cultures belonging to type C occur so infrequently that generalizations as to source cannot be made. Type D cultures said to be recognizable by the characteristic coarse agglutination of suspensions

when treated with acriflavine (Carter 1957) have been found chiefly in pigs but both host range and geographic distribution are believed to be wide. Type E a recently added group (Carter 1961) was obtained in cases of hemorrhagic septicemia in Africa. Types A and D have been isolated from disease in human beings. A slide agglutination technique using young (6 hour) cultures has given similar results (Namioka and Murata 1961). Satisfactory typing sera are difficult to prepare and only strains producing capsular antigen can be typed nevertheless noncapsulated strains may be mouse pathogenic and then may be typed by Roberts' method. Carter's types A and B correspond to Roberts' II and I respectively.

The type specific substances appear to be lipopolysaccharide protein complexes (Carter and Annau 1953 Bain 1955 Carter and Bain 1960) and are toxic and pyrogenic (Bain 1959). Hyaluronic acid is produced by some strains particularly mucoid type A cultures (Carter 1958). It renders a culture inagglutinable by homologous antisera and may also inhibit its antigenicity. Nonmucoid capsulated strains are agglutinable to low titer by appropriate antisera but decapsulation by heating to 56 °C allows somatic agglutination to a high titer.

#### DISTRIBUTION AND RANGE OF PATHOGENICITY

*P. multocida* has a wide host range. It inhabits the upper respiratory tract of healthy mammals and birds of many species and is especially common in dogs cats and rats. It may be found infrequently in the throats of healthy humans (Smith 1959). In cattle in the tropics and the subtropics *P. multocida* causes epizootic pasteurellosis or hemorrhagic septicemia and in temperate countries shipping fever or stockyard fever in which it shares an etiologic role with *P. haemolytica*. It is common in pneumonia of calves and adult cattle and can cause bovine mastitis. It is a frequent secondary invader in the lesions of viral pneumonia in young pigs and is the causal organism of fowl cholera. It has been found also in a variety of other diseases in mammals and birds and occasionally causes disease in human beings. An outbreak of pasteurellosis in one animal



species is not usually transmitted to other species

### **PATHOGENESIS**

Under conditions of stress or devitalization of the host a benignly parasitic strain may penetrate beneath the mucous membranes on which it is normally carried and may invade rapidly if transmission to other susceptible individuals takes place pathogenicity may be further increased by passage resulting in an outbreak of disease. When a highly virulent strain infects an individual whose resistance is slight as in the acute form of hemorrhagic septicemia in cattle the clinical picture is that of a septicemia with high fever cardiac weakness prostration toxemia and anorexia death ensues in 12 to 36 hours. The organisms are in the blood autopsy findings may be few or petechial hemorrhages may be found beneath serous and mucous membranes and in subcutaneous connective tissue the lymph nodes are swollen and sometimes hemorrhagic. In less acute forms the organisms may produce a pneumonia characterized by serofibrinous exudate in the interlobular septa of the lungs and in the pleural cavity and pericardial sac or a hemorrhagic gastroenteritis. Subacute and chronic infections also occur usually when a strain of low pathogenicity invades a lesion produced by some other cause for example the lesions of viral pneumonia in the lungs of swine.

### **IMMUNITY**

Immunization of domestic mammals and birds against pasteurellosis is practiced frequently. In North America vaccines are used to protect cattle from shipping fever in India cattle and buffaloes are given hemorrhagic septicemia vaccines where fowl cholera is present as in Central and Eastern European countries poultry are vaccinated. These vaccines consist of bacterial suspensions killed with formalin and usually resuspended in a liquid paraffin lanoline base (Bain 1954a, b 1956 1959). Their efficacy depends on correct selection of prevalent antigenic types or subtypes. The rarity of human infections has made it unnecessary to develop methods for immunizing man. Hyperimmune serum prepared in horses

or cattle is also available for protection of animals but its popularity has waned in recent years.

### **DIAGNOSIS**

Painful, local inflammation or abscess formation following bites inflicted on human beings by cats and other animals deserve careful examination for *P. multocida* the possibility that the organisms are present in infections should always be borne in mind especially in persons in contact with animals. Five per cent blood agar is usually adequate for isolation when the material is discharged from infected wounds or sinuses, sputum pleural or cerebrospinal fluid and autopsy specimens. Selective media have been devised for heavily contaminated material (Morris 1958). Inoculation of mice is also recommended as a simple method of isolation (Smith 1959).

Pure cultures of the organism are identified by appearance lack of motility at 37° C and 22° C, inability to grow on MacConkey's agar or to change litmus milk fermentation production of indole sensitivity to penicillin unusual for a gram negative rod and as a rule high pathogenicity for mice.

Agglutinins may be present in the serum of infected persons (Ludlam 1944 Emson 1957) a higher titer seems to result from internal infections rather than from bite wounds. If the homologous strain is not available for the preparation of suspensions several strains of different origin and if possible different serotypes should be used.

### **CHEMOTHERAPY**

Most strains are susceptible in vitro to penicillin erythromycin chloramphenicol the tetracyclines carbomycin polymyxin B cathomycin novobiocin and oleandomycin streptomycin and neomycin are less active and bacitracin and viomycin are ineffective. The nitrofurans and certain sulfonamides also produce in vitro inhibition.

Penicillin has proved to be adequate for the treatment of most cases of suppurative infection of the respiratory tract in humans due to *P. multocida* (Olsen and Needham 1952) and is also successful in the treatment of bite wounds. The prophylactic use of

penicillin in patients with such wounds especially in those cases where suturing is necessary usually prevents the development of infection (Lee and Buhr 1960) In veterinary practice penicillin and the tetracyclines particularly chlortetracycline are employed as well as the sulfonamides

#### EPIZOOTIOLOGY AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Outbreaks of pasteurellosis in animals or birds may follow the introduction of an individual carrying a virulent strain into a susceptible herd or flock or may result when unfavorable environmental factors such as poor sanitation extreme weather or shipping lower the resistance of carrier animals *P. multocida* can survive only for short periods outside the animal and the reservoir of infection is the healthy carrier

Human infections are usually acquired from animals In some cases they result from the bites of cats and dogs in others there may be a history of contact with animals but the mode of infection is obscure Most strains from the latter type of case are of serotypes A and D the most prevalent among farm livestock The organism is known to occur occasionally in the throats of healthy persons exposed to animals (Smith 1959) and may remain there for long periods later to assume pathogenic properties There is no evidence that animals suffering from pasteurellosis are a more potent source of infection for human beings than are healthy carriers

#### PASTEURELLOSIS IN MAN

Human infections are rare but are being recorded more frequently due perhaps to increasing familiarity with the species Three principal types are recognized The first consists of bites inflicted by cats less frequently dogs and occasionally other animals Soon after the bite the area becomes painful red tender and markedly oedematous with an ascending lymphangitis and lymphadenitis (Lee and Buhr 1960) In the absence of antibiotic therapy an abscess almost always develops (Byrne *et al* 1956) Complications include necrotizing tenosynovitis and osteomyelitis (Allott *et al* 1944 Reilly and Tournier 1954 Ericson and Juhlin 1959) and in rare cases other tissues such

as the meninges may become infected (Talbot and Sneath 1960) septicemia following dog bite has been reported (Williams 1960 Lee and Buhr 1960)

In the second group meningitis or brain abscess follows a head injury a nasal operation sinusitis or mastoiditis presumably in an individual carrying the organism in his nasal passages and the organism may be isolated from cerebrospinal fluid

The third category consists of infections of the respiratory tract chiefly infected bronchiectasis but also facial sinusitis pleurisy empyema bronchitis and pneumonia (Bartley and Hunter 1947 Bezjak and Mimica 1952 Olsen and Needham, 1952 Cawson and Talbot 1955 Bartley 1960) Other organs such as the heart the appendix and the kidney may also be affected In humans unlike other animals *P. multocida* infection almost always results in suppuration apart from this general description no not possible symptoms and lesions varying according to the organ infected

#### CONTROL MEASURES

Human infections probably will continue sporadically because it is improbable that infection will be eliminated from the wide spread animal reservoirs Vaccination though used to a varying extent in the control of fowl cholera hemorrhagic septicemia and shipping fever of cattle and pasteurellosis of swine does not affect the carrier state and thus is unlikely to influence the incidence of human pasteurellosis Proper feeding and sanitary management are more effective and economical than treatment or biologic prophylaxis A more radical measure restocking with artificially reared pathogen free pigs now is being practiced in some farms in an attempt to eradicate certain pathogens including *P. multocida*

#### PLAGUE

##### *Pasteurella pestis*

Plague bacilli are large gram negative elongated rods with rounded ends that stain at both poles in the parasitic stage coccus like round filamentous or other pleomorphic forms are common These nonmotile organisms grow on media containing bile

salts ferment carbohydrates only slightly (saccharose not at all) produce neither indole nor H<sub>2</sub>S are milk neutral and require no accessory growth factors

*P. pestis* causes an infection primarily of wild rodents particularly rats maintained by an insect vector the flea Man becomes a victim of the bubonic form as an aberrant interruption of the rat flea rat sequence or by handling infected wild rodents If the bubonic form becomes generalized and the lungs are secondarily affected man-to-man infection leading to primary pneumonic plague ensues without intervention of the flea

### HISTORY

The history of plague can be traced back almost uninterruptedly to the 3rd century before the Christian era when Dionysius told of it as a fatal disease in Libya Egypt and Syria The pandemics and the epidemics of history have been described in the works of Simpson Stricker Hurst (1953) and Politzer (1954) For centuries the Black Death found a highly susceptible population living in poverty congestion and ignorance in Europe and took an appalling toll justifying all of its somber aliases and the awe in which it has always been held After the large outbreaks in Milan (1630) London (1665) and Marseilles (1721) higher sanitary standards better housing and legalized prophylactic measures contributed to its retrogression rampant epidemic plague had disappeared from Europe Asia Minor Syria and Palestine by 1843 The last pandemic originated in Yunnan on the Burma border of China reached Canton early in 1894 from there was carried by steamer to Hong Kong and thence to Bombay within 2 years In the next 20 years India was the victim of devastating epidemics Since vessels moved in and out of Hong Kong unrestrictedly this became the focus from which plague was disseminated to seaports throughout the world It was in Hong Kong that the causal organism was discovered by a Swiss Alexander Yersin on June 20 1894 (Ogata 1955) On July 7 1894 Kitasato announced finding an organism in plague cases but the one he described was gram positive and slightly motile

After Yersin's discovery of the bacillus India became the most fruitful center of plague work The epidemics there increased in severity and the British the German and the Russian governments sent commissions to Bombay Their reports did much to further knowledge of the disease Many observers had noted that rats began to die before human beings were affected and that rodent and human outbreaks were somehow related Ogata in 1897 suggested tentatively that the flea might play a part in transmission and then a little later Paul Louis Simond working in Bombay set down the main facts about transmission epidemiology and control His hypotheses played an important role in the success of the antip plague experiment in San Francisco in 1903 when the U S Public Health Service put them to a test The actual part played by the rat was made clear in the reports of the British Plague Research Commission (1906 1917) physical contact with commensal rats is not followed by plague if fleas are excluded healthy rats can be kept in contact with live infected rats and with rats dead of plague without contracting the infection

That rats are not the only animals to suffer from the disease became apparent when marmotlike animals the tarabagans (*Arctomys bobac*) were found to be infected in Transbaikalia and Mongolia in 1895 plague ridden squirrels appeared in India in 1898 the South African striped mouse (*Rattus pumilio*) was found to be infected in 1906 and the ground squirrel (*Citellus beecheyi*) in 1908 Today the number of rodents known to harbor plague is over 220 and the transition from wild to domestic species has attracted due attention in Russia South Africa the United States on the Peru Ecuador frontier and in the Argentine

Plague transmission from rats to man and among rats was studied by Ogata who injected crushed fleas from an infected rat into mice and thereby produced plague The British Plague Research Commission working in Bombay (1905 1906) showed that the rat flea *Xenopsylla cheopis* transmits plague from rat to rat How the bacilli multiply in the stomach of the flea and are then regurgitated during the sucking act of the

insect was worked out by Bacot and Martin. More recently contributions to the study of fleas in plague have been made by workers in the U. S. Public Health Service and in the USSR (Eskey and Haas 1940 Kartman *et al.* 1958 Fenyuk 1960).

Immunization with killed organisms was initiated by Haffkine in 1896 and improved by Sokhey. Vaccination with live avirulent cultures was introduced by Otten in Java and has been improved and put into practice in Madagascar (by Girard). South Africa and the USSR. Antiplague serum has been used in therapy since the time of Yersin and the potency was improved at the Haffkine Institute. The therapeutic value of sulfonamides streptomycin chlortetracycline and chloramphenicol in bubonic and pneumonic plague has been established in field tests in India and Madagascar.

#### MORPHOLOGY

*P. pestis* appear in vivo as short round coccoid or large ovoid safety pin shaped bacilli 1.5 to 2.0 microns long and 0.5 to 0.8 micron wide. They are gram negative and the typical bipolar staining contrasts with the uniform color of the spherical partly autolyzed bacterial bodies. In cultures bipolar staining is usually not so well seen. Chainlets and larger rods are common particularly in liquid media. The stain usually recommended is 1 per cent carbothionin Wayson's dye mixture (methylene blue with carbolfuchsin) or modifications of Romanovsky's or Giemsa's solutions. Peculiar mold like and yeastlike serpentine forms and feebly staining irregular bladder and ring types are involution forms in environments unsuitable for growth viz spinal fluid of patients with chronic plague meningitis decomposed carcasses of infected animals or 3 per cent sodium chloride agar.

*P. pestis* is surrounded by an envelope particularly when cultured at 37°C. It has been thought that the envelope is actually a bacterial capsule. But electron microscope studies of colonies grown on collodion films over agar have shown a layer of structurally undifferentiated material of lower electron density than the bacterial cell. This material lying between and among the cells in colonies is easily removed by suspending the

bacilli in distilled water or by emulsifying them in saline solution before mounting them. This material more abundant in virulent than in avirulent colonies is considered to be a soluble envelope or slime layer to which the nonsomatic antigens are related. A structurally differentiated capsule has not been seen on *P. pestis* cultured in vitro. It may be incorrect to assume that the envelope observed in India ink preparations of organisms grown in vivo is in all respects identical with that synthesized in vitro (Crocker *et al.* 1956).

Plague bacilli do not have flagella and are not motile.

#### NUTRITION AND CULTIVATION

The growth of *P. pestis* is slower than that of enteric bacilli. Under ideal conditions the average time required for cell division is about 4 hours. The lag phase can be reduced by adding the filtrate of a several day culture to the broth.

Even very small inocula grow well on ordinary agar autoclaved at pH 6 with or without blood or in fluid neutral or weakly alkaline aerated media. On solid agar with 0.1 per cent blood colonies appear in from 24 to 48 hours. As a rule they are slimy and viscous.

Smooth and rough colonies can be detected on tryptose agar to which glucose and yeast extract have been added either in obliquely transmitted light or with the aid of triphenyl tetrazolium. In broth the smooth colony type produces uniform turbidity the rough brittle type accumulates as a coarse granular sediment with a completely clear supernatant.

Media containing casein hydrolysate (2.5%) potassium phosphate magnesium sodium and iron sulfate with appropriate carbon sources such as xylose mannitol glucose and glycerol yield as high as  $1 \times 10^{11}$  viable cells per ml at 27°C. By increasing the amount of magnesium sulfate and substituting cysteine hydrochloride for sodium thiosulfate and reinforcing the medium with glycine calcium pantothenate thiamine hydrochloride and biotin good yields can be obtained at 37°C (Higuchi and Carlin 1957). The minimal growth requirements are satisfied by media containing relatively

few amino acids and no added accessory growth factors (Hills and Spurr 1952 Silberman *et al.*, 1954, Domaradsky, 1957) Virulent cultures grow well in the basal synthetic medium of Domaradsky and Ivanov (1957) if 0.002 to 0.004 M calcium is added they remain fully virulent for mice when injected pentoneally (Kupferberg and Higuchi 1958) Loss of virulence in aerated liquid media at 37° C is prevented by the presence of calcium or strontium and zinc salts (Higuchi *et al.* 1959) or by replacing glucose by xylose, galactose or mannose (Brownlow and Wessman 1960) Avirulent strains grow without added calcium Adding magnesium oxalate to blood agar favors the growth of avirulent cells (Higuchi and Smith 1961)

#### BIOCHEMICAL ACTIVITIES

The over all fermentation pattern of glucose reveals that *P. pestis* contains enzymes of both the Embden Meyerhof and the hexose monophosphate shunt pathway the latter operates during growth The CO produced during fermentation arises from pyruvate (Santer and Aji 1954 1955)

*P. pestis* was long considered a homogeneous species but 3 biologic varieties of some epidemiologic significance have been distinguished Berlin and Borzenkov first separated 2 types The one oceanic is glycerol negative The other continental is glycerol positive and contains 2 subtypes according to whether or not it reduces nitrates to nitrites Devignat (1954) has proposed the following classification

##### *Pasteurella pestis*

var orientalis	glycerol -	nitrite +
var antiqua	glycerol +	nitrite +
var mediaevalis	glycerol +	nitrite -

The stability of *P. pestis* with respect to glycerol is incontestable but the constancy of results of tests for reduction of nitrates to nitrites cannot be accepted without reservation The biochemical properties essential for classification are stable not being modified either in the laboratory or through passage from one host to another in nature (Girard 1954)

No other fundamental differences between glycerol positive and glycerol negative strains

have been found and the test is primarily valuable to nosogeographers The Oriental variety (oceanic type) is found in India Burma South China Europe the United States South America Ceylon Egypt Java North Africa Senegal Sumatra Thailand and Madagascar It provoked the modern pandemic which originated in Yunnan in 1894 and spread overseas into the 5 continents The antiqua variety (continental type) seems to have been the cause in the ancient centers of pestilence in southeast Russia Central Asia Mongolia Manchuria Transbaikalia and Central Africa The mediaeval variety is found south of the Caspian Sea lower Volga region in the Iranian Kurdistan Turkey and Iraq

Catalase activity has been recommended (Herbert, 1949 Rockenmacher, 1949) for determining virulence of plague strains Although the mean values are different—2.23 for virulent strains 3.27 for avirulent strains—the catalase activity of each strain varies under different extrinsic conditions (Zaplatina and Borodina 1956)

*P. pestis* produces neither H<sub>2</sub>S nor indole and does not change milk Reduction of methylene blue and Janus green is distinct Broth cultures become alkaline and may reach pH 8 at the end of 9 weeks Hemolysis does not occur on blood plates

#### RESISTANCE OF THE ORGANISM

The plague bacillus in pus or sputum spread in thin layers on glass slides is killed by sunlight in 3 to 4 hours Suspensions if shaken require at least 1 hour at 65° C to be inactivated but are killed much more rapidly by acetone phenol or alcohol (Pollitzer 1954) Chloramphenicol streptomycin tetracycline or kanamycin are rapidly bactericidal in vitro In agar medium selective for *P. pestis* novobiocin neomycin erythrocyan and potassium tellurite allow its growth but inhibit gram negative bacteria (Morns 1958) Certain streptococci especially *Str. sanguis* and *Str. mitis* prevent multiplication of *P. pestis* and other pasteurellae and may be responsible for its progressive disappearance from buboes as observed in human plague

*P. pestis* remains viable in dried sputum for at least 3 months and in dry flea feces held at room temperature for 5 weeks

(Eskey and Haas 1940) Cultures and organs held in the refrigerator have retained their virulence for up to 25 years. Dry ice can be used to preserve and ship specimens (Quan *et al* 1963). Suspensions of *P. pestis* at pH 7.6 lyophilized rapidly with sucrose or lactose and stored at 10° C remain viable for 5 years (Heckly *et al* 1958). Virulent strains can be preserved by cultivating on 5 per cent rabbit blood agar at 37° C for 3 days sealing and storing at 4° C.

#### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

The first antigens recognized were the molable envelope and somatic factors identified by serologic absorption and precipitin tests (Schutze 1932). The envelope antigen develops best at 37° C and withstands boiling for five minutes.

The following properties characterize the most important antigens.

**Fraction I (FI)** This material generally considered to be present in the diffusable envelope and in the capsular structure (Seal 1960) is synthesized *in vitro* in any medium at 37° C but not at 28° C (Heppie *et al* 1958, 1960). Quantitative precipitation tests are favored for antigen estimation; the hemagglutination test is also useful and the complement fixation test less so. The antiserum must be absolutely specific; purified FI is used as antigen. The agar diffusion technique is finding increasing application in antigen analysis (Chen *et al* 1952).

**Toxin** Fresh suspensions of live virulent plague bacilli ( $2 \times 10^8$  in 0.5 ml) injected intravenously into mice are fatal within 4 to 12 hours. Supernatants of autolyzed cultures or saline extracts of acetone-dried organisms yield by fractional purification a product with a mouse LD<sub>50</sub> of 0.1 to 0.3 mcg (Ajl *et al* 1958, Spivack and Karler 1958). This preparation is relatively free from Fraction I but immunodiffusion tests show the presence of 1 to 3 contaminating antigens. About 0.05 per cent of the weight of plague organisms is toxin. The purified material has a molecular weight of 74 000 and yields on hydrolysis 18 amino acids and calcium, sodium and magnesium but no unusual components (Bent *et al* 1957). Incubation for 4 hours at 56° C partially destroys it; the destruction is complete at 75°

C for 5 minutes. It is stable over ranges of pH from 5 to 8. Formalin (0.1%) converts it into a toxoid that retains its antigenicity.

Purified toxin sensitizes tannic acid treated erythrocytes and thus provides a useful procedure for determining serum antitoxin levels. This can be done also by complement fixation.

The toxin is highly lethal for mice and rats but not for guinea pigs, rabbits or primates. Hyperimmunization of rabbits and monkeys with living virulent or avirulent plague bacilli gives rise to antibodies. 10 LD<sub>50</sub> of toxin can be neutralized by 0.01 to 0.0025 ml of serum when tested by the intraperitoneal route. The neutralizing antibodies react quantitatively with the pure toxin in flocculation systems but the antibody-toxin complex is not stable. On intravenous administration, dissociation occurs. Antitoxic serum devoid of envelope antibodies does not influence infection with toxic virulent strains in mice nor does it protect the vascular system against the toxin released in the course of infection. Prolonged immunization of mice with partially purified toxin may confer some protection against *P. pestis* infection; however, complement fixing and hemagglutinating antibodies against envelope antigen are commonly found in the animal after such treatment.

The toxin acts mainly on the peripheral vascular system, causing hemoconcentration, shock and parenchymal injury in the liver and the kidneys. On intradermal administration, local edema is often followed by tissue necrosis. Observation that the toxin molecule can inhibit mitochondrial respiration prompted Ajl and Rust (1960) to test its effects on the heart. Electrocardiograms revealed changes before detectable alterations in blood pressure or hematocrits. However, rats succumbing to infection after injection of a low dose ( $10^2$  organisms per rat) failed to show cardiac changes at any stage from infection to death (Rust *et al* 1960).

Other toxic substances or complexes have been isolated from *P. pestis*. A lipopolysaccharide lethal for mice and guinea pigs in relatively large doses was extracted in hot 45 per cent phenol from acetone-dried virulent or avirulent organisms (Davies 1956). The LD<sub>50</sub> of this material for mice, guinea

pigs and rabbits was 10.2 and 5 mg respectively. Seven mcg per kg was pyrogenic in rabbits raising body temperature to 40.6° C in 2 hours. Active or passive immunization with this substance did not protect mice or guinea pigs against plague infection.

Another toxic protein isolated from cells grown *in vivo* or for 2 to 3 hours *in vitro* at pH 6 and 37° C is highly dermatotoxic for rabbits and cytotoxic for monocytes (Bichowsky-Slomnicki and Ben Efraim 1963). It is unstable and disappears from killed cells after storage for a few days. Like the lipopolysaccharide antigen it is produced by both avirulent and virulent strains. All efforts to demonstrate a toxin produced *in vivo* similar to that in anthrax have failed.

**Other Antigens.** V and W antigens are found when virulent plague bacilli are grown in tryptose digest of meat broth in tubes rotated slowly at 37° C, but not at 28° C for 3 hours. When organisms so prepared are tested in gel diffusion plates against homologous antiserum absorbed with avirulent strain TS similarly prepared a single line of precipitation is formed. Since this line is given by all virulent strains and is the only antigenic difference detectable between these and avirulent strains it has been designated V<sub>1</sub> antigen. If organisms are incubated under the same conditions for 5 or more hours a second antigen is produced by all strains capable of producing V<sub>1</sub> antigen. The two antigens are designated V and W (Burrows and Bacon 1954, 1956; Burrows 1963). The conditions for producing these antigens are very critical. Glucanate may improve the yield (Lawton *et al.* 1960). V antigen is not detectable in the unconcentrated supernatant but is in the sedimented organisms. V antigen is a protein with a molecular weight of 90,000. W is a lipoprotein with a molecular weight of 145,000. Both are destroyed in 10 minutes at 80° C and inactivated by treatment with trypsin but resist the action of periodate. The use of rabbit antiserum containing only V antibody or only W antibody has shown that V antibody but not W can protect mice against plague (Lawton *et al.* 1963). High resolution diffusion plates reveal that the apparent single V and W lines in reality consist of double lines suggesting that each may consist of 2 components (Burrows 1963).

Investigation of the change in electrophoretic mobility under particular conditions of pH and temperature of *P. pestis* culture has revealed a new antigenic component called pH 6 antigen (Ben Efraim *et al.* 1961). This pH 6 antigen is synthesized *in vivo* in rabbits and mice, and the rate of mortality is increased in groups of mice inoculated with virulent *P. pestis* containing the pH 6 antigen (Ben Efraim *et al.*, 1961), suggesting that the pH 6 antigen may be involved in the pathogenesis of plague. The well known damage to tissues induced by whole *P. pestis* may well be attributable to pH 6 antigen.

**Polysaccharides.** Polysaccharides are found in 4 to 7 day-old cultures of *P. pestis*. Girard and Sandor failed to obtain from plague bacilli a glucolipoid complex similar to that of other gram negative microorganisms. However, extraction of dried *P. pestis* with saline to remove the soluble protein followed by aqueous phenol extraction and ethanol precipitation yields a lipopolysaccharide (1.6% N and 2.2% P) (Chen 1952; Chen and Meyer 1954).

**Pesticin.** *P. pestis* produces a bacteriocin like substance of protein nature called pestin (Ben Gurion and Hertman 1958). Pesticin production and bacterial growth inhibition is highest near 37° C. Pesticin sensitivity is restricted to strains of *P. pseudotuberculosis* belonging to the serologic Group A (Burrows and Bacon 1960). In a survey of many strains of *P. pestis* 3 of them (TRU A<sub>12</sub> Java) failed to produce pestin but did form another pestin called pestin II (Brubaker and Surgalla 1962). Many other strains produced neither pestin I nor II (Smith and Burrows 1962). The complex pattern of pestin production and sensitivity so far described is further complicated by a metabolic product inhibiting pestin I. Pesticins may be involved in certain growth suppression selective for either virulent or avirulent cells.

#### DISTRIBUTION, VIRULENCE AND PATHOGENICITY

In bubonic plague in man *P. pestis* can be cultured or seen in smears of fluid from primary vesicles and in the gelatinous edema fluid surrounding or within lymph nodes. Bacteremia—the rule even in mild bubonic infection—may disappear as early as the 2nd

day or it may persist for 10 days in severe infections. At autopsy *P. pestis* is regularly found in heart blood, lymph nodes or spleen but especially in bone marrow and secondary pneumonic lesions. In primary pneumonic plague the bacilli are in sputum before they can be detected in the blood.

Over 200 species of wild rodents are now known to be naturally infected or are strongly incriminated hosts for *P. pestis* (Pollitzer and Meyer 1961). The cosmopolitan rats (*Rattus norvegicus* *R. rattus* subsp.) and commensal mice (*Mus musculus*) are equally important hosts. Other mammals are suspected to be naturally susceptible. Cats and dogs are moderately susceptible (Pollitzer 1954); chickens are not absolutely resistant to massive experimental infection (Hoessly 1954). It has been claimed that sheep and camels can be infected (Fedorov 1960).

The rodents usually used in experimental work—guinea pigs, white mice, marmoset monkeys, cotton rats, rabbits, rats—are all susceptible to plague. Experimental plague can be produced in guinea pigs by any route. A few virulent organisms can establish infection in most of these animals but there may be seasonal and genetic variations. Guinea pigs are desirable subjects for diagnostic work because the lesions that develop are so characteristic. White rats are not as susceptible as other *Muridae* and lesions produced in them are not as characteristic as those in the guinea pig.

**Virulence.** This term is used to denote the ability of different strains or isolates to produce death from plague, measured in LD<sub>50</sub>. The virulence of most of the tested strains freshly isolated from human or rodent infection has been high. Barber found that 6 of 9 guinea pigs and 2 of 12 monkeys receiving 1 freshly isolated virulent plague bacillus died of plague. Some strains that have lost their virulence as the result of cultivation on inadequate media will regain it on passage through susceptible animals. Avirulent strains with qualities that recommended them for use in vaccines have been isolated from cultures held in deep agar slants for 5 to 6 years at 0° ± 4° C.

In chick embryos highly virulent plague strains proliferate freely; avirulent strains sparingly. The former in small numbers kill

the embryo; the latter in sublethal doses persist in embryo organs until hatching and sometimes for 3 to 4 days after (Buddingh and Womack 1941; Jawetz and Meyer 1944b).

Virulence is associated with specific antigens. According to Burrows and Bacon (1955, 1956) and Burrows (1963), fully virulent strains must have the ability (1) to elaborate envelope antigen, (2) to develop resistance to phagocytosis (mouse polymorphonuclear cells) in the absence of visible capsulation, (3) to synthesize antigens V and W, (4) to produce pigmented colonies on a defined medium containing hemin, (5) to synthesize purines and (6) to be highly toxic.

Fraction I, a surface antigen, protects *in vivo* grown organisms against phagocytosis. The envelope seems to be required for full virulence but certain noncapsulated strains that still produce V and W antigens retain considerable virulence (Burrows and Bacon 1958). The F± (so-called noncapsulated) *P. pestis* of reduced pathogenicity does not produce fatal infection in the guinea pig by the intraperitoneal route but infects this rodent by the intradermal route. As few as 10 cells induce skin lesions, bubo and fever but all animals survive even following infection with 4,500 cells. By contrast a single bacterium of the fully virulent encapsulated FI+ strain causes lethal infection in the guinea pig after intradermal injection. The capsule seems much more essential for lethality than for infectivity (Donovan *et al.* 1961).

The resistance to phagocytosis associated with the FI and VW antigens in virulent *P. pestis* at 37° C does not prevent their ingestion by fixed macrophages of the reticulo-endothelial system (Fukui *et al.* 1962). Evidence presented by Janssen (1963) strongly suggests that the ability to survive and multiply within the phagocytic cell is the major determinant of its virulence, not the ability to resist phagocytosis.

Antigens other than FI and other factors are involved in virulence. The consistency of the findings that all virulent strains tested are VW+ and that no VW- strains have proved to be virulent is presumptive evidence that the character VW+ plays a part in the ability of *P. pestis* to survive and multiply in



phagocytes Since the antigens designated 4 and pH 6 contribute to the survival of *P. pestis* in vivo, they may also be factors in virulence

Virulent strains grown on a particular defined medium containing hemin form dark brown colonies (Burrows 1955) (P+) others produce whitish or straw-colored colonies in the same medium (P-) The pigmentation results from the absorption of hemin from the medium Loss of the determinant P+ decreases virulence for the guinea pig more than for the mouse Simultaneous injection of iron salts restores full virulence for mice but not for guinea pigs (Jackson and Burrows 1956) Not only does injected iron reduce the LD<sub>50</sub> to the level of that of virulent strains but it also permits the production in vivo of the large bacillary populations characteristic of virulent infections Whether the character P+ is directly concerned in virulence or more likely is associated with some other property it is in practice a useful and easily scored character for following population changes resulting from loss of virulence and for characterization of strains in the laboratory For example if a strain scores as P- it will be of low virulence regardless of any other determinant The well known avirulent strain E V 76 used safely in large scale immunization of man in Madagascar is FI+ and VW+ but P-

Various nutritional factors differentiate virulent from avirulent *P. pestis* Purine dependent mutants of virulent strains fail to produce disease because of the lack of free purine in the host but do so when purine is injected into the mice simultaneously with the bacilli (Burrows 1955)

All fully virulent strains are toxic (T+) but most avirulent strains also produce a protein that is very toxic for mice and rats less so for monkeys and rabbits and almost nontoxic for guinea pigs Laboratory strains thus far recognized as T- are deficient in one or more other virulence factors

**Pathogenesis** Essential for the development of bubonic plague in man is the primary rat flea rat transmission cycle The flea becomes infected by taking blood from a plague infected rat in the terminal bacteremia rat blood may contain 10<sup>7</sup> bacilli

per cu mm (Douglas and Wheeler 1943) These bacilli multiply in the midgut of the flea and massive infection develops in the proventriculus, blocking the pharynx and the esophagus When the flea attempts to take its next blood meal from 25 000 to 100 000 bacilli are regurgitated via the insect's proboscis into the skin or the capillaries of the new mammalian host Other rodents may replace the rat in this cycle

The infection of man is an offshoot rarely are there enough bacilli in human blood to infect fleas Fleas ordinarily infesting man are usually not good plague transmitters but under certain circumstances human fleas can transmit bubonic plague from man to man directly or indirectly when the infestation is extremely heavy (Swellengrebel 1953)

When plague bacilli become localized in the lungs and produce pneumonia droplets from the respiratory tract are highly infectious Then primary pneumonic plague may spread readily from man to man and a true epidemic occurs There are several other less probable means of infection—inhaleation of dust or of infected flea feces and eating of undercooked plague infected marmots (in Manchuria)

*P. pestis* may enter the body via the blood the skin the conjunctiva or mucous membranes of the respiratory or the digestive tracts

The plague bacillus injected into the skin may be held up at the site the local vesicle or pustule represents the first line of defense This symptomless form reflects considerable immunity Observations among people in plague areas of Madagascar (Payne *et al* 1956) in Ovamboland and Peru (Meyer 1964) and surveys of rodents in endemic plague areas in the United States (Hudson 1963 Randall 1963) suggest that this form may be more common than it had been thought to be

If *P. pestis* passes the skin barrier it next reaches lymph nodes which enlarge and are embedded in a gelatinous periglandular inflammatory edema The infection may be arrested at this stage with only mild constitutional symptoms (pestis minor) If the bacilli pass this second line they reach the secondary lymph nodes draining the area

of inflammation and small numbers pass into the bloodstream and from there to the spleen the liver and other lymph nodes. An interplay between antibodies and fixed tissue leukocytes and possibly other factors may limit this bacteremia to showers of organisms. Nevertheless generalized infection in many parts of the body creates grave constitutional symptoms. If the immunity is inadequate or has been damaged by toxins plague bacilli not only multiply intravascularly but are constantly washed into the circulation from the spleen and bone marrow causing septicemic plague. In the course of bacteremia bacilli may localize secondarily in the skin the lungs and various other organs. Wherever plague bacilli multiply to enormous numbers coagulation necrosis occurs. These abscesses undergo slow resolution and may contain viable bacilli for many weeks.

The LD<sub>50</sub> is much greater when tested by the respiratory route than by the subcutaneous. Two types of plague can develop in the respiratory tract of mice or guinea pigs depending on the size of the particle introduced. Small particles initiate bronchopneumonia which leads to septicaemia and death with pulmonary edema. Large particles establish septicaemia, and death results more quickly without pneumonia (Druett *et al.* 1956). The portal of entry may be the lymphatic tissues of the oropharynx; in man this type of infection has been described as tonsillar plague (Meyer and Larson 1960). Primary fatal pneumonic infection in monkeys can be brought about by intratracheal instillation of 100 virulent *P. pestis*. Inhalation of about 20 000 cells induces a chronic pneumonic process in which virulent bacilli are recoverable for 40 days (Ransom and Krueger 1954). The pathogenesis of secondary lung involvement after bubonic infection is not clearly understood. It may be that emboli from focal lesions in lymph nodes liver or spleen lodge in the pulmonary capillaries (Meyer 1957).

#### IMMUNITY

The immunity that follows infection is relative. Patrick Russel recorded 28 reinfections in 4 400 cases.

Resistance of wild rats or squirrels to ex-

perimental plague depends on the extent of endemic disease in the localities they have inhabited (Meyer, 1942). In India where plague had been prevalent only 7.9 per cent of several hundred rats tested were susceptible to experimental plague (Sokhey and Chitre 1937). But in Madras City where the rodent population had not been exposed 91.7 per cent were susceptible.

Serum plasma and other body fluids of animals that have recovered from plague or been immunized contain a variety of antibodies but they can neither lyse nor destroy *P. pestis* in vitro or in vivo in the absence of phagocytic cells. Whole blood of immune animals destroys many more plague bacilli than does that of normal animals. Immune animals fix the bulk of bacilli at the site of injection however the protection does not depend on lymphatic blockage and deposition of fibrin network. In the animal with an acquired immunity the bacilli are readily phagocytized and lysed within polymorphonuclear leukocytes. Excessive soluble antigen may block the action of the antibodies and endotoxins liberated by the lysed organisms may paralyze the immunity (Meyer 1950 Cavanaugh and Randall 1959).

In mice only Fraction I and VW antibodies acting together have protected effectively against virulent organisms. Guinea pigs have been protected against virulent challenge with formalized whole organisms with low doses of Fraction I (1 to 50 mcg) in adjuvant and with living *P. pseudotuberculosis* (Spivack *et al.* 1958 Lawton *et al.* 1960). Alum and oil adjuvants greatly increase the potency of bacillary suspensions or extracted purified Fraction I and later booster inoculations.

Prevention of plague by vaccination has been studied ever since Haffkine in 1896 made extensive animal and human experiments with heat killed broth culture antigens. The attack rate was not impressively reduced after administration of one dose of Haffkine antigen. But in sulfa treated patients the mortality rate of those immunized with Haffkine broth was less than half that of the unimmunized group (Patel and Rebello 1948).

Experiments in guinea pigs and certain commensal rats led French and Dutch work-

ers to conclude that vaccination with killed organisms would not protect man. In contrast field tests in Java and Madagascar with vaccines composed of living avirulent bacilli have shown promise. In endemic areas where the native populations are heavily exposed at times, a preparation that can be given in a single dose has administrative and economic advantages. The annual reports of the Pasteur Institute at Tananarive, Madagascar, have shown a striking decline in the number of cases—from 3 035 in 1935 to 14 in 1954–1955 under the impact of 600 000 to 800 000 annual vaccinations with living avirulent plague vaccine.

Living vaccines which contain all permissible antigenic components and which produce hyperplasia in the reticuloendothelial system confer the highest protection against natural infection (Korobkova and Samoilova 1962). Unfortunately they may cause unpleasant reactions at the usual dose ( $1 \times 10^8$  organisms). The systemic reactions are severe following intramuscular injection. Subcutaneous injection causes local infiltrations and pustules which may last up to 7 days (Koslov *et al.* 1960). A single inoculation of the living attenuated strain EV76 elicits demonstrable envelope antibody and anti-toxin in relatively few persons, but annual inoculation progressively enhances the immune response (Girard 1955). A single subcutaneous inoculation with live or killed vaccine does not protect against aerogenic infection. Some persons who have been vaccinated repeatedly have died of plague.

In the United States attention has been focused on the development of immunogens consisting of killed bacilli. At first Fraction I was tried but in the few trials on volunteers and experiments on animals a suspension of virulent plague bacilli killed with formalin to convert toxin to toxoid produced milder local and systemic reactions. Adjuvants enhance the immunogenicity of killed vaccines but since oil adjuvants are regarded with disfavor by the medical profession alum-coated preparations are being studied. An adequate dose of formalin killed alum-coated suspensions of virulent *P. pestis* (1 and 0.5 ml or  $2.5$  and  $1.25 \times 10^8$  *P. pestis*) in 2 doses 1 month apart increases resistance without causing more than occasional local or sys-

temic reactions. Booster doses are required to raise the mouse protective antibodies to levels similar to those in the serum of patients who have recovered from plague. Reinoculation every 3 to 6 months is essential to maintain immunity in man. Low hemagglutinin titers persist up to 10 years after the initial immunization. A booster inoculation with a very small dose of killed vaccine (0.2 ml or  $5 \times 10^8$ ) is sufficient to bring complement fixing antibodies and hemagglutinins to the level found in plague convalescents.

Whether the envelope antigen in adjuvant or killed vaccines is as protective as live attenuated vaccines cannot be answered directly. Natural exposure is becoming increasingly rare because the disease is receding. Measurement of the antibody response is therefore the only known way to evaluate immunization.

Yersin and his colleagues were the first to demonstrate that serum from rabbits immunized with inactivated cultures protects other animals against infection. These results established the principle of passive immunization and gave hope for serum prophylaxis and serum therapy. The effectiveness of serum has been proved repeatedly; the mortality rate among the treated in one series was about 28 per cent in contrast with a rate of 58 per cent in the untreated patients.

### DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is likely to be missed in sporadic cases. Early diagnosis is of vital importance to the patient and the attending staff as well as to his family and community. A typical case of severe bubonic or septicemic plague presents a characteristic picture: sudden onset, high temperature, rapid pulse, white coating of the tongue, nervous symptoms varying from restlessness to great prostration and fatigue, bloated appearance and conjunctival suffusion, slurred speech and staggering gait, apathy and mental confusion. Eventually there is pain in the groin, the armpit or the neck where the bubo appears. Intense pain directs the patient's attention to the inflamed node which may remain small, hard and tense but more frequently enlarges to the size of a walnut or a goose

egg and is embedded in boggy edema. In the septic variety nervous and cerebral symptoms supervene with striking rapidity although the temperature is rarely above 100 F. epistaxis, hematuria and involuntary evacuation appear in rapid succession. Pneumonic plague begins with rigor, malaise, severe headache, nausea, vomiting and general pain. Temperature of 102° to 105° F. difficult and hurried breathing, cough and expectoration. The sputum watery and frothy becomes blood tinged but is rarely viscid or rusty as it would be in acute pneumonia. Diagnosis requires laboratory assistance. The specimens should be collected before streptomycin or tetracycline treatment is begun.

**Laboratory Diagnosis.** This subject has been well covered by an international group of plague workers (Baltazard *et al.* 1956, American Public Health Association 1964).

The bubo should be punctured in its early stages with an 18 gauge needle mounted on a well fitted 5 to 10 ml. syringe and a little gelatinous edema fluid aspirated. The person taking the specimen should wear rubber gloves and mask. The skin over the bubo is painted with iodine and the puncture wound is disinfected with alcohol. Care must be taken in expelling the few drops of fluid for culture or staining, not to spray bacilli into the atmosphere. Diagnosis can be made from the characteristic polychromatic stain and from the small delicate colonies which develop at 30° C in 24 to 48 hours. However, contaminants such as *E. coli* or salmonella can also give a bipolar stain. The culture can be identified quickly by specific bacteriophage agglutination tests and preferably by fluorescent antiplague globulin on smears fixed by heat (Winter and Moody 1959).

For agglutination tests the bacterial growth is emulsified and maintained in a 0.45 per cent saline solution containing 1 per cent formalin for 30 minutes to 2 hours at 37° C. When the suspension free from precipitates is added to the serum flocculent agglutination usually appears within 2 hours at 37° C.

Final identification is made by biochemical tests and guinea pig inoculations. Infection can be accomplished by rubbing some of the culture intracutaneously or by injecting

subcutaneously into mice or guinea pigs a few drops of a heavy suspension. The animals usually die within 3 to 8 days with characteristic local and general lesions.

Blood cultures must be made from at least 5 ml of citrated blood. Part of the blood is placed in enriched cystine broth and the rest is distributed on several blood agar slants or plates. More than 10 colonies indicate severe bacteremia.

Sputum should be examined both microscopically and culturally on blood gentian violet (1:70,000) plates or the selective medium developed by Morris (1958). There is usually no difficulty in recognizing the plague bacilli which are present in great numbers.

Every state in the U.S. authorizes physicians or health officers to demand an autopsy if plague is suspected. Plague infected material must be shipped in properly prepared containers with double screwtops. The material should include heart blood, portions of bubo, spleen and bone marrow. The precipitin test or a modification with fluorescent antibody can be used to examine decayed or mummified carcasses during field investigations of suspected plague outbreaks among wild rodents (Hudson *et al.* 1962). The local or state health officer must be notified the moment the diagnosis is suspected.

#### TREATMENT

Treatment has progressed from almost useless to highly successful within the last decade. Chemotherapy has displaced serum and bacteriophage therapy. Reduction in mortality rate, moderate cost and oral route of administration highly recommend sulfonamides and extensive field trials in India give preference to sulfadiazine. Their value in preventing contagious primary pneumonic plague is not known. Combined use of sulfonamides and specific plague antiserum gives results superior to those produced by either agent alone.

Penicillin is useless. Streptomycin is the best therapeutic agent thus far tested. It may cure mild infections within 48 hours but should be continued if the clinical course warrants. Chlorotetracycline and chloramphenicol therapy is complicated by relapse if not continued for 7 to 10 days. In India

ers to conclude that vaccination with killed organisms would not protect man. In contrast field tests in Java and Madagascar with vaccines composed of living avirulent bacilli have shown promise. In endemic areas where the native populations are heavily exposed at times a preparation that can be given in a single dose has administrative and economic advantages. The annual reports of the Pasteur Institute at Tananarive Madagascar have shown a striking decline in the number of cases—from 3,035 in 1935 to 14 in 1954–1955 under the impact of 600,000 to 800,000 annual vaccinations with living avirulent plague vaccine.

Living vaccines which contain all permissable antigenic components and which produce hyperplasia in the reticuloendothelial system confer the highest protection against natural infection (Korobkova and Samoilova 1962). Unfortunately they may cause unpleasant reactions at the usual dose ( $1 \times 10^8$  organisms). The systemic reactions are severe following intramuscular injection. Subcutaneous injection causes local infiltrations and pustules which may last up to 7 days (Koslov *et al.* 1960). A single inoculation of the living attenuated strain EV76 elicits demonstrable envelope antibody and antitoxin in relatively few persons, but annual inoculation progressively enhances the immune response (Girard 1955). A single subcutaneous inoculation with live or killed vaccine does not protect against aerogenic infection. Some persons who have been vaccinated repeatedly have died of plague.

In the United States attention has been focused on the development of immunogens consisting of killed bacilli. At first Fraction I was tried but in the few trials on volunteers and experiments on animals a suspension of virulent plague bacilli killed with formalin to convert toxin to toxoid produced milder local and systemic reactions. Adjuvants enhance the immunogenicity of killed vaccines but since oil adjuvants are regarded with disfavor by the medical profession alum-coated preparations are being studied. An adequate dose of formalin killed alum coated suspensions of virulent *P. pestis* (1 and 0.5 ml or  $2.5$  and  $1.25 \times 10^8$  *P. pestis*) in 2 doses 1 month apart increases resistance without causing more than occasional local or sys-

temic reactions. Booster doses are required to raise the mouse-protective antibodies to levels similar to those in the serum of patients who have recovered from plague. Reinoculation every 3 to 6 months is essential to maintain immunity in man. Low hemagglutinin titers persist up to 10 years after the initial immunization. A booster inoculation with a very small dose of killed vaccine (0.2 ml or  $5 \times 10^8$ ) is sufficient to bring complement fixing antibodies and hemagglutinins to the level found in plague convalescents.

Whether the envelope antigen in adjuvant or killed vaccines is as protective as live attenuated vaccines cannot be answered directly. Natural exposure is becoming increasingly rare because the disease is receding. Measurement of the antibody response is therefore the only known way to evaluate immunization.

Yersin and his colleagues were the first to demonstrate that serum from rabbits immunized with inactivated cultures protects other animals against infection. These results established the principle of passive immunization and gave hope for serum prophylaxis and serum therapy. The effectiveness of serum has been proved repeatedly; the mortality rate among the treated in one series was about 28 per cent in contrast with a rate of 58 per cent in the untreated patients.

## DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is likely to be missed in sporadic cases. Early diagnosis is of vital importance to the patient and the attending staff as well as to his family and community. A typical case of severe bubonic or septicemic plague presents a characteristic picture: sudden onset, high temperature, rapid pulse, white coating of the tongue, nervous symptoms varying from restlessness to great prostration and fatigue, bloated appearance and conjunctival suffusion, slurred speech and staggering gait, apathy and mental confusion. Eventually there is pain in the groin, the armpit or the neck where the bubo appears. Intense pain directs the patient's attention to the inflamed node which may remain small, hard and tense but more frequently enlarges to the size of a walnut or a goose

builds his homes so that rats cannot nest or obtain food (3) In certain environments more frequently in cold countries inter human parasitism as pneumonic plague spreads by droplet infection and causes explosive epidemics as it did in Manchuria in 1910 to 1911 and 1920 to 1921 (60 000 and 1 502 victims respectively) (Pollitzer 1954 Hirst 1953) This form of parasitism may also appear as bubonic plague for example in the rural regions of Morocco and the Valley of the Kurdistan Mountains where the human flea acts as the vector

The seasonal spread is influenced by temperature and humidity The disease tends to occur during summer months in cooler climates and in the spring months in the hot dry climates of the subtropics in tropical countries where the temperature is fairly constant throughout the year the incidence follows the humidity curve

As the rodent population in urban areas is reduced by a rampant epizootic and the fleas seek new hosts persons of all ages and both sexes may contract bubonic plague There does not seem to be any racial predilection Doctors and nurses who care for patients with pneumonic plague and other contacts including funeral attendants are liable to contract the pneumonic form Strains of *P. pestis* recovered from man rats wild rodents and fleas from every corner of the earth are biologically identical and remarkably homogeneous in virulence and infectiousness Variations in the severity of pneumonic epidemics are not attributable to a specific pneumotopism

Endemic plague foci maintained by burrowing hibernating rodents such as tarabagans *Citellus* varieties *spermophilus* and mice are found in the bush the deserts and the mountains of Manchuria the Burial Mongol Republic Transcaucasia and South eastern Russia foci exists in South Africa among gerbils and multimammate mice (Davis 1953) in Argentina among *Microcavia graomys* and in squirrels along the Peruvian Ecuadorian frontier In the United States rural plague was discovered in 1908 and since 1934 epizootics have broken out among squirrels prairie dogs rabbits and pack rats in 15 western states Enzootic and epizootic plague exists among at least 50

rodent species Interest has shifted from the large colonial rodents such as ground squirrels to the small inconspicuous native field voles and mice such as *Microtus* and *Peromyscus* Co-existence of these small rodents with domestic rats in the security of human habitations and the prevalence of unrecognized enzootic plague in the wild rodent populations pose a continuous potential threat (Kartman *et al* 1962) Intimate association of cottontail rabbits with wood rats white footed mice and other permanent hosts of plague led to the exchange of the parasite and then to man (Kartman 1960) Epizootics among the large gray rats (*Rattus norvegicus*) the black domestic rats (*Rattus rattus alexandrinus*) and occasionally others such as house rats (*Rattus griseus venter*) and field rats (*Rattus diardii* in Java and *Rattus hawaiiensis* in Hawaii) are influenced by natural and acquired susceptibility the density of the rat population and the circumstances which bring the species into close association with man

Plague may be introduced into a rat population by spread from one section of a city to another by spread at a distance through transportation of rats and rat fleas along lines of communication with merchandise or by partial migration of rodents as in India (Sharif 1951) Unless there is a considerable population of infected *Rattus rattus* plague is never transmitted to man to any serious extent In San Francisco in 1907 27 (2.69%) of 1 002 live rats examined were infected 56 human cases of plague with 25 deaths were reported during that time By January after a rigorous control campaign despite an incidence of 1.11 per cent among another tested group of rats of the city only 2 cases of human plague were listed Rats surviving the epizootics have acquired resistance to infection High immunity rates for example over 50 per cent in San Francisco and over 90 per cent in Bombay limit the spread and may even lead to the eventual disappearance of plague Epizootics cannot arise until a new generation of susceptible rats has grown up

Plague in order to maintain itself in focal rural areas requires resistant wild rodents to survive epizootics They probably per-

streptomycin dramatically reduced mortality rates from 50 to 10 per cent in both bubonic and septicemic plague. The most spectacular effect is seen in pneumonic plague formerly irremediable (McCrumb *et al.* 1953). About 10 hours after the beginning of treatment virulent *P. pestis* disappear from the sputum and the risk of contamination of the attendant staff and those associated with the sick person is thus reduced. Very rarely strains develop resistance to streptomycin within 48 hours after treatment of bubonic and pneumonic plague. Chloramphenicol is an excellent alternate. In the treatment of the bacteremic stage with massive doses of streptomycin the rapid destruction of *P. pestis* may release large quantities of toxin thus causing sudden death. The recommended treatment schedule for streptomycin is an initial injection of 2 Gm followed by 1 Gm per day for 10 days or longer (Meyer 1957).

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY AND ECOLOGY

Plague is endemic in certain parts of India, Kurdistan, Burma, Java, China, Madagascar and South Central and East Africa. It occurs sporadically in Egypt, North Africa (Tunis), Iraq, Iran, Siam and Indo-China (Pollitzer 1954). The following number of cases have been reported by WHO in 1962: Europe 1, Americas—Ecuador 326, Brazil 36, Venezuela 1, Africa—Central Africa 5, South West Africa 80, Cape Provinces 4, Madagascar 28, Asia—India 697, Burma 49, Viet Nam 29. Local rat epizootics, occasionally accompanied by a few human cases, have been noted in European seaports from time to time; the most recent ones being on Malta and Sardinia.

The plague foci in America constitute a potential source of epidemic plague. The United States has known rat and human plague since the beginning of the century. San Francisco (1900 and 1907), the Gulf States—Louisiana, Texas and Florida (1914 to 1920)—and Los Angeles (1924 to 1932) were affected in turn. After a 20 year hiatus the rat disease erupted in Tacoma, Washington in 1943 and 1944. Rural endemic murine foci seem to have disappeared from Maui and Hawaii. Pockets of enzootic and epizootic plague have been recognized in

ground squirrels, chipmunks, prairie dogs, wood rats and harvest mice as far east as Kansas, Oklahoma and Texas. Since 1908 70 cases (45 deaths) have been traced to wild rodents in these areas (Link, 1955; Kartman *et al.* 1958).

Differences in the race and the sex in incidence of bubonic plague cases as well as occasionally observed increased incidence of the disease among certain occupational groups (e.g. dock workers, grain handlers) are due merely to differences in exposure. Plague has been said to be rare in young children but of 2 994 bubonic and septicemic cases in Madagascar 104 (3.1%) were in children up to 2 years of age.

The modern trends of epidemiology deal with the ecology of plague rather than with the epidemiology of the disease (Pollitzer and Meyer 1961). Two fundamentally different forms of the ecology of plague must be considered: (1) bubonic or zootic plague produced usually by the bite of plague-infected insect vectors, mainly rodent fleas, and (2) primary pneumonic or demic plague due to spread from man to man. The basic prerequisite for the single cases, outbreaks or epidemics is maintenance in the rodent population. Periodic epizootics terminating a variable proportion of the rodents offer opportunity for man to become infected either directly or, more often, through fleas.

The usual life of the plague bacillus as that of a parasite of wild rodents in the areas never touched by man. Swellengrebel recognizes 3 classes: (1) Wild parasitism, sylvatic plague, plague of wild rodents or rural plague. In this milieu human infections occur rarely and only among persons such as hunters exposed to rodent bites and occasionally to fleas. Through exchange of ectoparasites the plague bacillus can extend its range to commensal rodents, particularly rats and mice. (2) Domestic parasitism or urban plague, eminently suited for passing the plague bacillus to man through fleas, giving rise to bubonic plague. It occurs in densely populated unsanitary areas, spreads along overland routes and crosses oceans in ship cargos. Primarily bubonic, it tenaciously fixes itself to human habitations and spreads as outbreaks but it disappears when man

and in some the disease has ceased to be manifest for the present. History teaches that plague has often shown a spontaneous decline but has flared up again. The present low incidence might really reflect natural periodicity of the infection. The possibility of future pandemics cannot be excluded therefore the disease should be given continued attention by those interested in global public health.

### PASTEURELLA PSEUDOTUBERCULOSIS\*

The large gram negative elongated *P. pseudotuberculosis* organisms are pleomorphic sometimes occurring in chains. Biopolar staining is inconstant. Motility when they are cultivated at 18 to 22 °C is due to 1 or 2 parapolar or rarely 3 to 6 peritrichous flagella. The organisms grow in media containing bile salts and in amino acid solutions in the absence of accessory growth factors; they produce no gas in carbohydrate and no indole and litmus milk eventually becomes alkaline. The antigenic relationship to salmonella suggests classification with the *Enterobacteriaceae* rather than the *Parvobacteriaceae*.

Human infections may take a typhoidal or an enteric form. The recent addition of nearly 400 infections of the latter type to the previous list of only 16 reported cases places pseudotuberculosis in a more important position as an infection of man. *P. pseudotuberculosis* can also infect rodents and birds.

Synonyms are *Streptobacillus pseudotuberculosis rodentium* (Preisz), *Bacterium pseudotuberculosis rodentium* (Lehman and Neumann), *Bacillus parapestis* (Lerche), *Bacterium pseudotuberculosis rodentium* Preisz (Schutze), *Malleomyces pseudotuberculosis rodentium* (Pribaum).

#### HISTORY

The organism was first isolated by Malassez and Vignal in 1883 on inoculation of guinea pigs with material from a subcutaneous tubercular lesion on the forearm of a child who had died of meningitis. The

animals developed nodules which though histologically similar to those in tuberculosis contained masses of coccobacilli. The agent is encountered in epizootics among barnyard fowl, cage birds, cats and monkeys.

#### MORPHOLOGY

*P. pseudotuberculosis* varies in shape and size according to conditions of growth. It may be coccoid or ovoid, less than 1 µ long or it may form rods 0.5 micron by 1.5 to 5.0 microns with rounded ends, either singly in short chains or filaments. It is gram negative and seldom takes bipolar stain in contrast with *P. pestis*. At room temperature even in repeated transfers all typical strains are motile and swarm. Examination by light and electron microscopy reveals 1 or 2 mostly parapolarly located flagella, 4 or 5 times longer than the bacterium. Single rods occasionally show peritrichous flagella. Smooth and motile colonies develop best at temperatures between 20 and 30 °C (Knapp 1956). Neither spores nor definite capsules are formed though at 22 °C a viscous layer (envelope) may be seen in India ink preparations.

#### CULTIVATION AND BIOCHEMICAL ACTIVITIES

*P. pseudotuberculosis* grows aerobically in ordinary media. Cultivation at 37 °C accelerates dissociation. Growth occurs from pH 6 to 8 but acidity favors R dissociation. The smooth to slimy, light transparent colonies reach a diameter of 2 to 3 mm on the 2nd day on an agar medium with or without serum or blood. At 37 °C the colonies from some strains are thin, dry and irregular with rough edges. In broth growth is diffuse at 22 °C clumped masses and occasionally ring and pellicle formation are seen. The organism does not liquefy gelatin. Blood, glucose and adequate aeration increase the yield of cultures. Isolation of *P. pseudotuberculosis* from heavily contaminated material is facilitated by Endo Agar, desoxycholate citrate agar or the selective medium of Morris (1958).

Milk is not coagulated but is alkalinized slowly. The following carbohydrates and alcohols are fermented without gas production: glucose, maltose, mannitol, galac-

\* Revised with the assistance of Professor W. Knapp, Tübingen.



petuate the infection, and their fleas may spread it to commensal rodents

The indispensability of the flea vector in the rodent flea cycle is well known. Only a comparatively few fleas feeding on an infected rodent with severe bacteremia become infected and fewer still become infective. The numbers of fleas that become infective are conditioned by species' feeding habits whether zoophilic (as are many wild rodent fleas) or anthropophilic and the efficiency as a transmitter which varies with species and is greatly influenced by climate. The longevity of fleas is very important for the carry over from one season to another. The climate and the size of the rat population control the density of the flea population in urban situations; density is measured by the flea index, the average number of fleas on each trapped rat. A Cheopis index of at least 3 appears to prevail during epizootics. The most important and efficient vector of rat plague throughout the world is *Xenopsylla cheopis*. The common squirrel flea (*Dipentulus montanus*) is not very efficient. In wild rodent plague, flea transmission from rodent to man apparently represents a weak link accounting for few transmissions to man. Far more threatening is the introduction of plague by squirrel fleas into rat populations in rural and possibly urban areas (Meyer and Holdenried 1949).

When a person ill with bubonic plague develops plague pneumonia of metastatic origin, he then may transmit the agent through droplets of sputum. *P. pestis* can be projected for several feet from the face of the patient when he coughs; those exposed to this aerosol may then develop primary pneumonic plague. This means of direct spread, along with overcrowding in badly ventilated buildings, low temperature and undesirable social habits and customs, helps to bring plague to epidemic proportions (Meyer 1961).

#### PREVENTION AND CONTROL

Immunization against plague is too slow and unreliable for immediate prophylaxis. Chemoprophylaxis of bubonic or pneumonic plague can be achieved with sulfonamides or antibiotics, even though man cannot be made totally infection proof. As long as the reser-

voirs remain untouched the threat persists. Systematic warfare against rodents is the fundamental approach in an effective anti-plague program. The potent, quick-acting rodenticides—1080 (sodium fluoroacetate) and antu (Pollitzer 1954, 1960)—should be used by experienced persons to free cities of rats and to establish rodent-free belts around towns and villages exposed to plague. Zinc phosphide, red squill and arsenious oxide are still popular. Anticoagulants cause no bait shyness because they kill the rodents gradually and therefore can be used continuously until the animals have been exterminated (Steiniger 1956). As natural plague foci are affected by improvements in civilization and farming and as the methods for enzootic plague control are improved, the elimination of enzootics may ultimately become practical (Fenyuk 1960).

Remarkable success against fleas has been achieved with residual insecticides DDT (5% in kaolin powder) dusted in and around houses supplemented by treatment of clothing, bedding, furniture, rat runs and harborage. This has been invariably effective. In fact, a threatening epidemic of bubonic plague was aborted in Haifa with this insecticide alone.

Treatment of epidemic plague victims can now be handled by mobile teams. Therapy can be begun earlier, and patients need not be transported for long distances. Physicians and nurses attending pneumonic or suspected pneumonic infections must wear hoods, masks with goggles, overalls and gloves. Contacts and suspected contacts first are disinfected and segregated; their temperatures are taken and chemoprophylaxis or chemotherapy is instituted. The administration of sulfonamides (3 Gm per day for a week) appears to reduce the number of cases of pneumonic plague among those exposed. The overall program for epidemic control requires the guidance of trained personnel—physicians, entomologists, mammalogists, laboratory workers and sanitarians. In this connection, it is well to remember the words of Aubert Roche: "La civilisation seule a détruit la peste en Europe; seule elle l'a écartée en Orient."

In many countries the incidence of plague has decreased markedly within recent years.

by intraperitoneal or subcutaneous injection feeding or inhalation guinea pigs rabbits sparrows and canaries are quite susceptible white rats usually are refractory to atoxic strains

The organism has been recovered from soil dust water fodder and milk (Schutze 1929)

### **PATHOGENESIS**

The organism can gain entrance to susceptible animals through any of several different portals As a rule the abdominal viscera are primarily diseased Breaks in the skin can also serve as portals Young inadequately fed animals are more susceptible than well fed adults Guinea pigs in particular are very susceptible mice and rabbits less so Parenteral introduction of pure cultures is fatal to guinea pigs in 15 to 45 days at autopsy one finds local abscesses enlarged regional lymph nodes with caseous centers and white gray spots studding the spleen the liver the lungs and bone marrow When bacilli are ingested small necrotic nodules appear in the Peyer's patches of the ileum and the cecum, and there is caseous necrosis in the mesenteric lymph nodes and the omentum.

In the course of epizootics guinea pigs may exhibit 1 of 3 types of clinical manifestations septicemia fatal in 24 to 48 hours classic pseudotuberculosis in which there is emaciation diarrhea and death in from 3 to 4 weeks the glandular form with lesions of the cervical and the thoracic nodes probably transmitted through bites In any of these forms the bacillus may be in the blood stream Severe septicemia is usually rapidly fatal and at autopsy there are acute splenic tumor severe hemorrhagic enteritis and accumulation of clear fluid in serous cavities Characteristic are the whitish nodules in the liver the spleen and occasionally in the lungs They represent focal necrosis—coagulated cells granular debris and fragmenting polynuclear leukocytes many surrounded by foam reticulum cells but rarely by epithelioid cells Giant cells are absent The necrotic center may contain blood vessels plugged with bacterial emboli (Knapp and Maschoff 1954) Chronic lesions show extensive fibroblast and epithelioid cell pro-

liferations some of which become granulomatous but never calcify Bacilli are numerous in such lesions

### **IMMUNITY**

Immunization against this infection has been of interest because of the cross immunity with *P. pestis* known long before the common somatic antigens were discovered Chloroform killed heat killed or formalin killed suspensions of *P. pseudotuberculosis* protect guinea pigs and rats against infection with *P. pestis* However the envelope antigen of the plague bacillus confers no immunity against *P. pseudotuberculosis* and guinea pigs resistant to plague are still susceptible to pseudotuberculosis Antiplague sera usually agglutinate a variety of strains of *P. pseudotuberculosis* to about the same titer Antipseudotuberculosis R sera react with *P. pestis* strains (Thal 1956) Anti pseudotuberculosis or antiplague sera do not confer passive immunity to guinea pigs

Guinea pigs that have recovered from the disease possibly remain latently infected and are immune to reinfection Active immunity may be produced in experimental animals through inoculation with avirulent living cultures (Thal 1954 1956 1962 Van Dorsen 1955 Sachdeva et al 1956) A solid immunity of over 5 months duration has been induced with the avirulent type IV strain (32) The resistance is anti infectious it protects against challenge with nontoxic strains and subtoxic doses of cultures of toxic strains but it does not protect against the exotoxin Antitoxic immunity can be produced with toxoid

### **DIAGNOSIS**

The disease in man cannot be distinguished clinically from typhoid paratyphoid tularemia cat scratch disease lymphogranuloma inguinale or certain viral infections *P. pseudotuberculosis* is usually isolated on or from ordinary media without difficulty from the blood during life or from pathologic lesions at death Differentiation from *P. pestis* in laboratory animals injected with plague-suspect material and from salmonella which produce no gas may be difficult Different media have been used but none is absolutely diagnostic With the selective medium

tose arabinose, glycerol isodulcitol, levulose rhamnose, trehalose, aesculin and xylose. Acid is not formed in amygdalin, dulcitol, erythritol, inositol, inulin, lactose, raffinose or saccharose. Variations in fermentation of sorbitol, salicin and dextrin, both at 22° and 37° C have been described (Thal 1954, Knapp 1959). *P. pseudotuberculosis* breaks down urea, forms no indole and gives a positive methyl red and  $\beta$  galactosidase reaction (Mollaret and LeMinor 1962). Nitrates and methylene blue are reduced rapidly. A little H<sub>2</sub>S is formed. The catalase test is positive.

#### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

A multiplicity of different antigens has been recognized in *P. pseudotuberculosis* namely 2 different thermostable H antigens, 5 type specific thermostable O antigens defining 5 serologic types. The subtypes IA, III, IIA, IIB, IVA and IVB have been separated by absorption agglutination from types I, II and IV (Thal 1954, Knapp 1955, Girard and Chevalier 1955). At least 1 thermostable antigen occurs in all types and seems to be very similar to an antigen present in *P. pestis* (Schutze 1929, Kauffmann 1932, Thal 1954, Knapp 1960).

Extensive immunologic analysis has revealed that of the 16 antigens distinguishable in *P. pestis*, 13 are also found in *P. pseudotuberculosis* (Bhagavan *et al.* 1956).

Glycolipid antigens have also been isolated (Davies *et al.*, 1958; Westphal *et al.*, 1959).

Live cultures of avirulent strains of *P. pseudotuberculosis* produce a solid immunity against virulent strains and also against *P. pestis* in the guinea pig. Lawton and Sargalla (1963) have isolated from an avirulent *P. pseudotuberculosis* a protein lipopolysaccharide complex PF, protective factor which can protect guinea pigs against plague as early as 1 day after vaccination. But the relation of this PF antigen to plague and pseudotuberculosis immunity is still uncertain.

On the other hand, the antigenic relationship between *P. pseudotuberculosis* type II and factors 4 and 27 of the salmonella B group and between *P. pseudotuberculosis* type IV and factors 9 and 46 of the salmonella D group, lends support to the con-

cept that the bacterium is related to the *Enterobacteriaceae* (Kauffmann 1932, Knapp, 1960).

Lysates and filtrates of certain toxic strains are lethal for mice, guinea pigs, rats and rabbits (Lazarus and Nozawa, 1948, Girard 1950, Thal 1954). The pathophysiological effects of the pseudotuberculosis toxin are strikingly different from those of the murine plague toxin with respect to blood pressure changes, hemoconcentration and local necrosis.

A strain of *P. pestis* phage lyses *P. pseudotuberculosis* at 37° C. This phage adapted to *P. pseudotuberculosis* may lyse certain strains of Shiga Flexner, Sonne and Schmitz dysentery bacilli. Claims that *P. pestis* spontaneously transmutates to *P. pseudotuberculosis* need more experimental confirmation.

#### RESISTANCE

Suspensions of *P. pseudotuberculosis* in saline may survive 60° C for 3 hours but are inactivated within 5 to 10 minutes at 70° to 80° C. One per cent phenol kills in 5 to 30 minutes, formalin 5 to 10 minutes, 0.001 per cent mercury bichloride or silver nitrate in 120 minutes, 60 per cent alcohol in ½ to 5 minutes (Knapp 1959). Drugs in the following concentrations stop multiplication: neomycin 0.1 to 2.5 mcg/ml, oxytetracycline, chlortetracycline, tetracycline HCl, 0.25 to 2.5, chloramphenicol 0.5 to 6.25, streptomycin 1.25 to 10, penicillin 1 to 12.5, erythromycin 125 to 500, sulfonamides 12.5 to 60 mg (Knapp 1955). Lyophilized cultures or cultures on blood medium in sealed tubes remain viable for years.

#### DISTRIBUTION AND RANGE OF PATHOGENICITY

Pseudotuberculosis is a fairly common epizootic and enzootic disease in Europe. Sporadic infections have been observed in North and South America, England, Japan and India. Infections among guinea pigs and turkeys are epizootic; they are enzootic in rabbits and hares, cats, chickens, pigeons, swans, canaries, sparrows, blackbirds, monkeys, sheep, hogs, horses, lions, foxes, goats and doubtless other untested animals.

The experimental disease can be produced

attention Masshoff and Dolle (1953) reported infection with the clinical symptoms of an acute or subacute appendicitis occasionally accompanied by enteritis associated with enlargement of the regional lymph nodes. They described this disease as an abscess forming lymphadenitis. Clinical and surgical findings were uniform. An acute onset with temperatures of 100 to 104° F and pain in the middle or the right lower abdominal quadrant aroused the suspicion of appendicitis. Laparotomy revealed a considerable amount of clear serous exudate and in most instances a normal looking appendix but the wall of the ileum and the cecum showed glassy rigid swelling due to infiltration. In the mesentery particularly the ileocecal angle single enlarged lymph nodes or packets of enlarged lymph nodes were always present. Knapp (1954) and Knapp and Masshoff (1954) identified this form of mesenteric lymphadenitis to be an infection with *P. pseudotuberculosis*. Since 1954 Knapp has fully proved the nature of the infection either through isolation of the bacterium or serologic tests and histologic investigations. This form of pseudotuberculosis in children and young adults is by no means rare in Europe (Knapp 1963). Its course is usually benign with or without appendectomy. In most cases the acute symptoms subside rapidly without complications or the use of antimicrobial therapy.

Diagnosis is assured by isolation of the organisms from the lymph nodes, feces (Daniels 1962) or blood and by microscopic examination of the nodes. In the sera of acutely ill patients antibodies have been detected by means of the agglutination test with live smooth strains of types I to V of *P. pseudotuberculosis* (Knapp 1956). Titers of 1:80 to 1:10,240 have been recorded. Apparently the titer does not fall until the infection has been completely removed from the mesenteric nodes; it may rise, fall or remain stationary independently of clinical symptoms. Complement fixing antibodies have been found less frequently and in lower titers (Knapp and Steuer 1956). Antibodies in most patients' sera can be detected with living bacteria or bacteria killed by formalin or phenol but not with boiled bacteria.

In order to determine the prevalence of pseudotuberculosis in man the proper serologic tests should be carried out in cases in which mesenteric lymphadenitis is suspected or other intestinal disorders are not readily identified. If agglutination with type II or IV of *P. pseudotuberculosis* occurs, cross absorption tests with the related salmonella strains B and D are mandatory. Recently Daniels (1961, 1962) succeeded in isolating *P. pseudotuberculosis* from the feces of a child and his canary.

## TULAREMIA

### *Francisella tularensis*

*Bacterium tularensis* (so named by McCoy and Chapin) causes a specific infectious disease of wild mammals and ancillary hosts in which it is maintained as a heterogeneous infection. Insects act as perennial reservoirs and vectors. Man enters into the chain on contacting infected tissues or body fluids of certain mammals, birds or insects. Tularemia in man is an acute, moderately severe febrile disease with a tendency to pneumonic complications; the clinical picture varies considerably according to the mode of entry of the agent.

The organism causing tularemia has been placed in several bacterial genera; it is termed *Pasteurella tularensis* (McCoy and Chapin) in *Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology* (ed. 7, 1957). In a judicious study Philip and Owen (1961) recommended that it be considered as the type species *Francisella tularensis* (McCoy and Chapin) in the *Brucellaceae*. This revision will be adopted in the next edition of *Bergey's manual*.

## HISTORY

Tularemia is not a new disease. Its adaptation to rodent ectoparasites suggests that it is of considerable antiquity and has been probably long endemic in the Americas and Asia.

In 1910 G. W. McCoy, in his studies on plague, discovered among ground squirrels a disease characterized by lesions similar to those of plague. This disease was encountered in rodents shot or found dead in Tulare County, California, and McCoy and Chapin

developed by Morns (1958) *P. pseudotuberculosis* can be isolated readily from the feces of rodents and man (Paterson and Cook 1963)

Freshly isolated strains exhibit the following differentiating characters (1) *P. pseudotuberculosis* grows more rapidly and more luxuriantly than *P. pestis* on artificial media (2) Its motility is always absent at 37° C and must be tested after repeated transplants at 22° to 30° C (3) It acidifies media containing rhamnose, glycerine and melibiose (4) Urea is broken down by *P. pseudotuberculosis* but not by *P. pestis* (5) *P. pestis* is virulent for the white rat, nontoxic *P. pseudotuberculosis* is not (6) Polyvalent anti-serum with antibodies against types I to V as a rule agglutinates *P. pseudotuberculosis* but not *P. pestis* According to Thal (1954) and Goyon (1956) type I is found most frequently, types II and III occasionally and types IV and V rarely. The sera of patients suffering from pseudotuberculosis may agglutinate bacilli isolated from the blood or the tissues in dilution of 1:80 to 1:10,240 (Knapp 1958) (7) A *P. pestis* phage used in critical test dilutions at 20° C does not lyse *P. pseudotuberculosis* (Gunnison *et al.* 1951). The *P. pseudotuberculosis* phages PST 87, 102, 103 and 105 (Girard 1943) lyse all strains of type I to V. The use of this phage for the routine diagnosis of *P. pseudotuberculosis* strains is recommended (Knapp 1962, 1963) since it rapidly differentiates members of the *Pasteurella* group.

#### TREATMENT

Little is known about the effect of anti-microbial drugs on pseudotuberculosis. Two patients with the septicemic form who were treated with sulfonamides and antibiotics recovered (Snyder and Vogel 1943, Buri, anek *et al.* 1949). 2 others died despite treatment (Hassig *et al.* 1949). The benign enteral form requires no specific treatment; recovery is uneventful (Knapp 1959, Daniels 1962).

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY, EPIZOOTIOLOGY AND CONTROL

The vast animal reservoir with its carriers and shedders is probably the source of most human infections. Single sporadic cases of

the septicemic form have been attributed to contact with cats and to ingestion of infected meat (Moss and Battle, 1941) or contaminated drinking water and food (Knapp 1958). Nothing is known about spread from one person to another.

Sporadic and epizootic outbreaks during cold wet weather attest to the importance of predisposing factors. Nothing definite is known about the portal of entry or the mode of transmission among animals, but the nearly constant involvement of the abdominal organs incriminates the oral route. Fleas cannot transmit the infection. Field mice, deer, otters and birds may serve as reservoirs (Borg and Thal 1961).

#### PSUDOTUBERCULOSIS IN MAN

Until 1953 the medical literature contained only a few references to this infection in man (Hassig *et al.* 1949, Knapp and Thal 1963). The clinical picture is dominated by a severe typhoidal course that ends fatally in many cases. Vague prodromal malaise is followed by abrupt febrile onset with severe headache, chills, general pains and anorexia and occasional catarrhal symptoms. The fever of the irregular or septicemic type at times reaches 105° F. Anorexia, abdominal tenderness, constipation or diarrhea and variable degrees of leukocytosis are usual. Within a few days after onset the liver and the spleen become palpable and tender. Other manifestations include septicemia, effusions into serous cavities, bronchitis, pulmonary engorgement and edema and changes in the parenchyma of the liver, the kidneys and the myocardium. Death is usually preceded by icterus, toxemia and stupor. It occurs usually between the 10th and the 24th day.

Diagnosis may be established by cultures from blood or organ specimens and can be supported by a test for specific antibodies. The characteristic findings at autopsy are nodular caseous or abscessed necrotic foci from 1 to 10 mm in diameter in the enlarged liver and spleen and occasionally the mesenteric lymph nodes and the pancreas.

In contrast with the severe septicemic form, the more frequent infections with a benign course in children and young people noted by Albrecht and Piechaud deserve

cytoplasm the growth pattern is influenced by the type and the amount of serum in the extracellular medium and by the nutrients in the medium (Merriott *et al* 1961)

Glucose maltose and mannose are fermented without gas production fermentation of glycerol levulose and dextrin is irregular (Francis 1942) The highly virulent American variety ferments glycerol All strains possess glutaminase and asparaginase only virulent strains degrade citrulline to CO<sub>2</sub> NH<sub>3</sub> and ornithine (Marchette and Nicholes 1961) The cytochrome content is higher in virulent than avirulent strains (Mizuhara and Yamanaka 1961)

#### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE AND VARIATION

Several strains studied by agglutination absorption tests seem to be antigenically uniform A serum prepared against *F. tularensis* agglutinates *Brucella melitensis* and *Br. abortus* to about 1/4 to 1/6 of the original titer (Francis and Evans) However neither organism absorbs the homologous agglutinins from the tularensis serum Similarly *F. tularensis* is agglutinated to a low titer by anti-melitensis and antiabortus sera but does not absorb the homologous agglutinins from these sera The heat labile antigen extracted from the plague bacillus does not precipitate with tularensis antiserum but an extract of *F. tularensis* does precipitate to a low titer with an antip plague serum (Larson *et al* 1951) There is no cross immunity with *P. pestis* or *P. pseudotuberculosis*

Ethyl ether releases from virulent or avirulent *F. tularensis* an antigenic fraction not sedimentable by prolonged centrifugation at 4 500 rpm This ether soluble antigen is highly immunogenic in rats and mice (Larson, 1945a; Bell *et al* 1952) Purification by salt precipitation differential centrifugation and dialysis yields a product of uniform immunogenicity Electron micrographs have shown that the product includes cell wall material

Ouchterlony diffusion tests of the ether extract have shown at least 4 and possibly 6 antigenic components the original aqueous supernatant of the extract contains 9 precipitation zones common to virulent and avirulent strains The carbohydrate content is high in the cell wall of low virulence

strains (over 30%) but low (about 5%) in highly virulent strains (Guss *et al* 1962)

The ether soluble antigen consists of a polysaccharide and amino acid complex containing organic phosphorus Its serologic and immunogenic activity is very high 38 to 77 mcg is sufficient to immunize mice the degree of protection being proportional to the precipitation titer (Ormsbee *et al* 1955 Ormsbee and Larson 1955) Phenol extraction yields several crude antigenic fractions (Alexander 1950 Girard and Gallut 1951) acetone extraction of peptone broth cultures gives a protein or a protein-carbohydrate fraction (Downs *et al* 1947)

Virulent and avirulent strains can be differentiated by injection into mice guinea pigs and rabbits of varying susceptibility and by calculating the number of organisms of a given strain necessary to cause death (Owen *et al* 1955) Highly virulent strains in doses of 1 to 100 bacterial cells cause the death of all animals and numerous necrotic nodules are found in the spleen the liver and the lungs The less virulent strains are lethal to laboratory rabbits only in a dose of 10<sup>8</sup> bacilli

A relationship between virulence and immunogenicity has not been established conclusively As a rule cultures with an LD<sub>50</sub> of 2 × 10<sup>5</sup> or more organisms in mice are not smooth the organisms multiply little or not at all in the tissues and are not immunogenic It is surmised that some as yet unidentified antigen may be responsible for the ability of a strain to multiply and to immunize (Moody and Downs 1955 Downs and Moody 1955 Moody 1955) Virulent and relatively avirulent strains do not differ significantly in yield of antigen or in immunogenicity (Owen *et al* 1955) The lower yield of antigen from the well studied avirulent strain 38 is attributable to its slower growth and the lower quantity of soluble cell wall antigens

Although live and killed vaccines produce agglutinins only virulent or the more immunogenic live vaccines stimulate precipitins detectable by agar diffusion technic (Tulis and Eigelsbach 1961)

Living virulent and avirulent strains injected intraperitoneally into mice in doses of 10<sup>8</sup> organisms cause death within less than

(1912) named the causative organism *Bacterium tularense*. Wherry and Lamb diagnosed the first infection in man and recognized the hare to be an important source. Francis in 1919 and 1920 investigated rabbit fever in Utah and discovered that the blood of an infected rancher bitten on the neck by a deer fly produced a plague-like disease in guinea pigs. In rapid succession Francis reported the isolation of *Bact. tularense* from jack rabbits, the transmission of the infection by bites of the deer fly and the rabbit louse, the cultivation of the organism on a new medium and the means for sero-diagnosis.

The importance of ticks as reservoirs and vectors has been elucidated by Parker, Spencer and his co-workers and by Calhoun. Much of what is known about tularemia was learned through the extensive field laboratory and clinical investigations of Francis and his colleagues in the U. S. Public Health Service. The cytotropism of the bacterium was first recognized by Francis and its significance was established by Budington and Womack (1941). Since 1926 murine enzootic and epizootic followed by water-borne outbreaks have assumed importance in Russia (Tigertt 1962) and the United States (Parker *et al.* 1951). It has spread as an epizootic from West Siberia through Southeast Russia to the dry climate areas of Northern Central and Southern Europe where it is now an autochthonous disease (Jusatz, 1961). Antitularemia prophylaxis with live vaccine is used with success in the Soviet Union (Tigertt 1962).

#### MORPHOLOGY

The shapes of *F. tularense* are diverse—large and small coccoid and bacillary, oval, minute filamentous, bean-shaped, dumbbell-shaped, bizarre and so-called involution forms. Small units are filterable. It has an extremely delicate structure of very low electron density which may account in part for its low survival rate when lyophilized (Shepard *et al.* 1955). It has no capsules or flagella and is not motile (Hesselbrock and Foshay 1945). Dilute carbol fuchsin, gentian violet or polychromatic eosin-methylene blue preparations will stain the bacterium in smears and sections.

#### CULTIVATION AND BIOCHEMICAL ACTIVITIES

*F. tularense* is rather fastidious in its growth requirements. It grows readily on a semisolid medium such as gelatinized yolk of hens' eggs (McCoy and Chapin) or on tryptose, thiamine, cysteine, sodium glycolate, glucose and 5 per cent defibrinated rabbit blood agar (Gaspar *et al.*, 1961). A chemically defined medium of 13 amino acids (high histidine content), spermidine phosphate, thiamine, salts and glucose may yield from  $18$  to  $55 \times 10^8$  cells per ml after incubation for 16 to 24 hours at  $37^\circ\text{C}$ . Strains of reduced virulence require the addition of calcium pantothenate or uracil, adenine and guanine for maximal growth (Nagle *et al.* 1960). Thiamine is an absolute requirement for all strains. Blood may be replaced by plasma and catalase (Hood 1961). The clear peptic digest plasma is claimed to be superior for recovery of *F. tularense* from aerosols (Levin *et al.* 1962).

The bacterium forms minute, transparent, droplet-like colonies that are mucoid and easily emulsified. Variations in colony types are claimed to be associated with differences in virulence and immunogenicity. Media inoculated with infective tissue may show discrete growth in from 2 to 7 days, but in subcultures confluent growth appears in 24 to 48 hours. Routine blood cultures may be made on Rhamy's hemoglobin-cysteine agar or thio glycolate heart infusion agar. Fully virulent cells grow luxuriantly in consecutive transfers on a variety of media if the inocula are large.

For large scale cultivation, liquid media composed of protein hydrolysates with extracts of blood cells are of value. Decreased oxygen tension or large inocula are required to initiate growth. Growth is optimum at  $37^\circ\text{C}$  and at pH 7.6.

Strong buffers are essential to counteract the tendency of *F. tularense* to produce excessive ammonia from amino acids. The bacterium finds a suitable environment within cells, either of mammals or of embryonated eggs (Downs *et al.* 1947). Multiplication of *F. tularense* in the cytoplasm of the H strain of mouse fibroblasts maintained in Scherer's solution containing 10 per cent horse serum causes slight changes in the

cytoplasm the growth pattern is influenced by the type and the amount of serum in the extracellular medium and by the nutrients in the medium (Merriott *et al* 1961)

Glucose maltose and mannose are fermented without gas production fermentation of glycerol levulose and dextrin is irregular (Francis 1942) The highly virulent American variety ferments glycerol All strains possess glutaminase and asparaginase only virulent strains degrade citrulline to  $\text{CO}_2$   $\text{NH}_3$  and ornithine (Marchette and Nicholes 1961) The cytochrome content is higher in virulent than avirulent strains (Mizuhara and Yamanaka 1961)

#### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE AND VARIATION

Several strains studied by agglutination absorption tests seem to be antigenically uniform A serum prepared against *F. tularensis* agglutinates *Brucella melitensis* and *Br. abortus* to about  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{6}$  of the original titer (Francis and Evans) However neither organism absorbs the homologous agglutinins from the tularensis serum Similarly *F. tularensis* is agglutinated to a low titer by anti-melitensis and antiabortus sera but does not absorb the homologous agglutinins from these sera The heat labile antigen extracted from the plague bacillus does not precipitate with tularensis antiserum but an extract of *F. tularensis* does precipitate to a low titer with an antiplague serum (Larson *et al* 1951) There is no cross immunity with *P. pestis* or *P. pseudotuberculosis*

Ethyl ether releases from virulent or avirulent *F. tularensis* an antigenic fraction not sedimentable by prolonged centrifugation at 4500 rpm. This ether soluble antigen is highly immunogenic in rats and mice (Larson 1945a Bell *et al* 1952) Purification by salt precipitation differential centrifugation and dialysis yields a product of uniform immunogenicity Electron micrographs have shown that the product includes cell wall material

Ouchterlony diffusion tests of the ether extract have shown at least 4 and possibly 6 antigenic components the original aqueous supernatant of the extract contains 9 precipitation zones common to virulent and avirulent strains The carbohydrate content is high in the cell wall of low virulence

strains (over 30%) but low (about 5%) in highly virulent strains (Guss *et al* 1962)

The ether soluble antigen consists of a polysaccharide and amino acid complex containing organic phosphorus Its serologic and immunogenic activity is very high 38 to 77 mcg is sufficient to immunize mice the degree of protection being proportional to the precipitation titer (Ormsbee *et al* 1955 Ormsbee and Larson 1955) Phenol extraction yields several crude antigenic fractions (Alexander 1950 Girard and Gallut 1951) acetone extraction of peptone broth cultures gives a protein or a protein-carbohydrate fraction (Downs *et al* 1947)

Virulent and avirulent strains can be differentiated by injection into mice guinea pigs and rabbits of varying susceptibility and by calculating the number of organisms of a given strain necessary to cause death (Owen *et al* 1955) Highly virulent strains in doses of 1 to 100 bacterial cells cause the death of all animals and numerous necrotic nodules are found in the spleen the liver and the lungs The less virulent strains are lethal to laboratory rabbits only in a dose of  $10^2$  bacilli

A relationship between virulence and immunogenicity has not been established conclusively As a rule cultures with an LD<sub>50</sub> of  $2 \times 10^4$  or more organisms in mice are not smooth the organisms multiply little or not at all in the tissues and are not immunogenic It is surmised that some as yet unidentified antigen may be responsible for the ability of a strain to multiply and to immunize (Moody and Downs 1955 Downs and Moody 1955 Moody 1955) Virulent and relatively avirulent strains do not differ significantly in yield of antigen or in immunogenicity (Owen *et al* 1955) The lower yield of antigen from the well studied avirulent strain 38 is attributable to its slower growth and the lower quantity of soluble cell wall antigens

Although live and killed vaccines produce agglutinins only virulent or the more immunogenic live vaccines stimulate precipitins detectable by agar diffusion technic (Tulis and Eigelsbach 1961)

Living virulent and avirulent strains injected intraperitoneally into mice in doses of  $10^6$  organisms cause death within less than



2 days however killed organisms are not toxic (Moody and Downs 1955) It has been reported that *F. tularensis* yields both a toxic filtrate and an endotoxin Suspensions of formalized bacteria contain a heat stable antigenic fraction unrelated to virulence that causes characteristic dermal reactions in rabbits, this fraction can be neutralized with antiserum and its effect is partially inhibited by previous vaccination (Larson 1946) Treatment with ether removes this dermo-necrotic activity Lipopolysaccharides isolated from virulent or live vaccine strains are nontoxic but stimulate agglutinin production (Stefanye 1961)

#### RESISTANCE OF THE ORGANISM

This organism has survived in cultures for 22 years at 10° C without transfer in carcasses for 133 days in hides for 40 days in water for up to 3 months in pure glycerin at -14° C for 2 years and at -70° C for months Virulent organisms have survived in the muscle of refrigerated infected rabbit carcasses for 4 months Dried in vacuo and held at room temperature it remains viable for several years Heating of cultures at from 55° to 60° C for 10 minutes kills the organism tricresol (1% 0.1 per cent for malin and 1.0 ppm of chlorine inactivate it 0.5 mg per ml of methylene blue is inhibitive in vitro but not in vivo (Yamv and Avi Dor 1952) The bacteriostatic level against 10<sup>8</sup> cells per ml in a suitable medium is 2.5 mcg per ml for either chlortetracycline or chloramphenicol

#### RANGE OF PARASITISM

Burroughs and his co workers (1945) listed 48 different species found infected with tularemia including cottontails jack rabbits and snowshoe rabbits In North America the cottontail rabbit is the source of over 70 per cent of all human cases of tularemia (Jellison and Parker 1945) Other animal sources are the gray squirrel fox squirrel opossum woodchuck muskrat skunk, coyote fox cat sheep deer vole and bull snake Several epizootics have occurred among field mice in cultivated areas of Nevada Oregon and northern California contamination by mice of streams wells and mud during the winter favors the spread of the infection (Kartman

*et al* 1959) Epizootics among muskrats have contaminated mud and stagnant water (Fyvie *et al* 1959) Epizootics among continental voles and water rats have caused explosive outbreaks in southern Russia followed by westward invasion of tularemia into middle and western Europe Beginning in 1948 field mice then rabbits hares, hamsters and lemmings underwent mass mortalities creating firmly established foci in the indigenous fauna of central Europe (Gelman 1961 Jusatz, 1961) Squirrels chipmunks calves and dogs have been found to be naturally infected but so far have not been known to cause human disease

Game birds and domestic chickens are among the avian sources The organism has been isolated from two species of grouse the sage hen and the horned owl but human infections have not been traced to them

Epizootic tularemia in pen raised beavers was conveyed by the water supply from a drainage ditch later found to be contaminated (Bell *et al* 1962)

Certain species of ticks are important arthropod reservoirs (Gelman 1961) Survival in at least 54 arthropods has been reported The ticks known to be capable of transmitting the infection to man are the Rocky Mountain and the western wood ticks the common eastern dog tick the Lone Star tick one species of deer fly and the mosquito

*F. tularensis* has been isolated from various rabbit and other rodent fleas but they do not transmit the disease to man Attempts to infect fleas by feeding them on infected hosts were largely successful however the fleas did not transmit the infection to mice or guinea pigs (Parker and Johnson 1957) Body lice and their feces kept at low humidity and temperature have remained infected for 53 days (Price 1954)

During the period from 1931 to 1940 in ecologic studies in the U S S R the frequent occurrence of outbreaks in man of tularemia was proved to be due to use of water contaminated during rodent epizootics

#### PATHOGENICITY AND PATHOGENESIS

In man *F. tularensis* can be recovered during the first week of disease by inoculating guinea pigs or by direct culture on suitable media Pus taken from suppurating

lymph nodes early in the disease contains viable bacteria but later the lymph nodes do not. Difficulties in isolating *F. tularensis* are probably associated with the small number of bacteria in the tissues and their low viability. At autopsy in man and animals the acute necrotic lesions in the liver, the spleen, the lungs and bone marrow readily yield positive cultures. Inoculation of guinea pigs with tissues from field mice occasionally has revealed the infective agent when latent disease was not anatomically visible (Bourroughs *et al.* 1945).

Susceptibility appears to be in decreasing order: mice, hamsters, guinea pigs, rabbits, rats, monkeys, dogs and 9 day old chicks. Rats are 1 000 times more resistant than white mice. Even cold blooded animals (e.g. reptiles and catfish) are susceptible. The sheep is the only large animal in the United States in which tularemia has occurred in true epizootics; it can serve as an important source of infection in humans (Jellison and Kohls 1955).

The histogenesis of the typical lesions is characterized by a rapid accumulation of mononuclear wandering cells, principally macrophages, polymorphonuclear cells play little part in the reaction. The reaction may lead to necrosis or to granuloma formation. Vascular changes, though conspicuous in advanced lesions, are not responsible for the necrosis nor is anoxemia (Lille and Francis 1936). Of significance are the capacity of *F. tularensis* to multiply within hepatic and endothelial cells of guinea pigs and its selective affinity for thin ectodermal cells (Budington and Womack 1941).

*F. tularensis* is a facultative intracellular parasite that may persist for years in the organs (Foshay and Mayer 1936, Carr and Kadull 1957). According to Francis (1937) man can be infected with *F. tularensis* in at least 20 ways. The most important are contact with infected vertebrates and discharges of arthropods, bites of mammals (particularly carnivores) or arthropods, ingestion of infected water or partially cooked infected meat of vertebrates, inhalation of air containing material from cultures, infected laboratory animals and fecal droplets of ticks. When the bacteria penetrate the skin or the mucosa in about 10 per cent of the human

infections a papular primary lesion develops and soon ulcerates. The lesion of the ulceroglandular form of tularemia usually appears on the hands, the arms, the face or in the conjunctiva. In some patients the disease takes the septicemic form at onset and may cause death in 4 to 12 days.

From the site of inoculation the bacteria spread along the superficial and the deep lymphatics leading to dermal lymphangitic nodules, lymphadenitis and bubo formation in more than 90 per cent of human infections. In the absence of discoverable primary lesions lymphangitic invasion is rare. The bacteremia gives rise to diffusely scattered foci of necrosis in the spleen, the liver, the lungs, lymph nodes, bone marrow and possibly other tissues and organs. With the appearance of antibodies bacteremia disappears but new lesions may develop by lymphatic extension. A second and invariably fatal invasion may occur which usually disperses bacteria through both the systemic and the pulmonary circulatory systems resulting in miliary and submiliary necrosis in nearly every organ.

Ingestion of infected animal tissue or water giving rise to the enteric form of tularemia causes local reactions, necrotizing pharyngitis, abscesses in the roof of the mouth, enlargement of the submaxillary and the cervical lymph nodes and ulcers, hemorrhages and minute necrotic lesions in the gastrointestinal tract. The resulting infection and febrile disease resembles typhoid fever with gastrointestinal signs and toxemia. It is likely to be fulminant and fatal unless recognized and treated properly.

Pulmonary involvement in tularemia is extremely common. The incidence of tularemia pneumonia without ulceroglandular lesions is much greater than is generally thought. Parenchymal involvement with or without enlargement of the hilar lymph nodes or pleural effusion occurs. Confluent lobular pneumonia similar to caseous tuberculous pneumonia followed by gangrene and abscess formation has been reported (Ivie 1955). Primary tularemic pneumonia also occurs. The high incidence of pneumonia in what appears clinically to be typhoidal tularemia suggests that the organism frequently gains access to the body through the respira-

tory tract. Man can be infected readily by as few as 25 organisms when exposed to an aerosol composed of 1- $\mu$  particles (McCrumb 1961).

Following ocular infection, the typical primary lesion is an ulcerated papule on the lower eyelid followed by general infection of the conjunctival sac characterized by congestion of the vessels, lacrimation, damage to the eye and involvement of the lymphatics.

### IMMUNITY

An attack of tularemia confers a relative immunity. Butchers having suffered one attack are not known to experience others despite probable frequent exposure. Reinfection in laboratory workers produces illnesses of varying severity, from small local lesions and no constitutional reactions to acute febrile illness followed by mild prolonged systemic complaints (Green and Eigelsbach 1950).

The *in vitro* bactericidal activity of normal plasma is highest in the cow, the dog and the sheep, lower in the guinea pig, the monkey, the human, the rabbit, the rat and the mouse. This correlates to some degree with susceptibility to experimental infection (Stanziale 1957).

Heat or formalin killed vaccines provoke severe local and constitutional reactions. Vaccines detoxified with sodium nitrite and acetic acid (Foshay) administered annually do not confer complete resistance but modify favorably the course of the disease. Similar results have been obtained with phenolized or acetone extracted vaccines (Kadull *et al.* 1950).

Considerable resistance has been produced in rabbits and rats (Larson 1945a, Downs *et al.* 1947) with killed organisms or lysates but the same vaccines protect only a small proportion of mice against as few as 2 to 5 LD<sub>50</sub> of organisms. The two vaccines that completely protect 40-day old mice are the ether-extracted vaccine of Larson and the purified antigen preparation derived from the cell wall (Larson *et al.* 1954, Ormsbee and Larson 1955). It is believed that the dosage and the virulence of the challenge strain (425) are much higher than that ordinarily met under natural conditions in human infections. In the rodent disease the

mortality rate is nearly 100 per cent, whereas in the human disease the rate is 75 per cent in untreated cases.

Early claims of Soviet and Turkish workers that live strains of low virulence were superior to a killed virulent culture for vaccination of guinea pigs are now supported by American studies and have been extended to mice and man. An attenuated hypovirulent strain of *F. tularensis* designated LVS (live vaccine strain), selected from a Russian vaccine and brought to the United States in 1956, has been used in animals and man (Eigelsbach and Downs 1961). Inoculation of 100 000 viable cells of this strain intracutaneously or 270 000 aerogenically into monkeys leads to multiplication locally and in the regional lymph nodes, the liver and the spleen. Antitularensis gamma globulin appears in the plasma, cells of regional nodes as early as the 3rd day after infection (McGavran *et al.*, 1962).

The first human trial with a living avirulent strain administered intradermally induced local and general reactions in 72 per cent, with prolonged moderate disability in some and fairly severe disability in a few (Kosmachevskiy, 1944). In a more recent test lyophilized vaccine was applied cutaneously by scarification to exposed groups—slaughterhouse and agricultural workers. There were local skin reactions accompanied by enlargement of the regional lymph nodes; systemic reactions were relatively few, allergic reactions developed in persons who had had tularemia or had been immunized successfully. The protection was reported to be effective in 90 to 96 per cent of cases and lasted for at least 6 years. The use of avirulent living vaccine is now part of tularemia control in the Soviet Union (Tigertt 1962). In tests in human volunteers in the United States the living attenuated vaccine protected 10 of 14, whereas the cell wall antigen of Larson or the Foshay killed vaccine protected few or none against intracutaneous or respiratory challenge (McCrumb 1961, Saslaw *et al.* 1961).

Agglutination or hemagglutination tests or immunodiffusion precipitation lines in prechallenge sera did not permit a prediction of whether or not an individual would become ill after challenge (Saslaw *et al.* 1962).

Available evidence suggests that acquired immunity to virulent *F. tularensis* develops only after natural infection or vaccination with hypovirulent strains. Immunity produced by immunization with nonviable antigens protects only against strains of less than full virulence.

Allen (1962) succeeded in passively transferring resistance to fully virulent strains of *F. tularensis* to normal mice by viable spleen cells or peritoneal leukocytes from donors recovered from infection with an attenuated strain of *F. tularensis*. The degree of passively transferred resistance depended on the number of viable immune cells and the resistance persisted only as long as the transferred tissues were compatible with the tissues of the recipients. These results and those of Stansberry and Woodward (1962) in rats support the hypothesis that immunity to fully virulent strains is associated in some way with an altered state of the tissues.

It is generally agreed that a tuberculin type hypersensitivity follows previous exposure to *F. tularensis* and therefore constitutes a reliable test for the diagnosis of abortive or asymptomatic forms of the infection (Ljung 1958). In animals the delayed hypersensitive and the immune responses are independent manifestations and a tularin reaction does not always imply immunity (Gordon 1963).

#### DIAGNOSIS

When a patient has killed, skinned and cleaned rabbits or has been bitten by deer flies, other arthropods or by a mammal in an endemic area, tularemia should be suspected. In many cases, however, the mode of infection is obscure. Clinical findings that may suggest the diagnosis include a febrile, influenza-like attack with initial severe fever, a temporary remission and a further febrile bout of 2 weeks' duration followed shortly by a local lesion, possibly conjunctivitis and tender enlarged lymph nodes. The pneumonic type, particularly difficult to diagnose clinically, is an atypical pneumonia. A correct diagnosis is usually made by a combination of clinical, epidemiologic, bacteriologic and serologic methods. Contrary to views that *F. tularensis* is rarely recovered, it can be isolated from sputum, pharyngeal

or gastric washings with relative ease when the use of guinea pigs and the newer artificial media are combined (Larson 1945; Overholt *et al.* 1961). The ultimate identification is made by specific staining using the fluorescent antibody technique with high titer sera produced in fowl and absorbed with *Pseudomonas* to eliminate cross reactions (Yager *et al.* 1960).

Specific diagnosis has centered around the agglutination reaction. Agglutinins appear not before the 7th day and sometimes not until late in the 3rd week of the illness; a 4-fold rise is observed on the average on the 19th day of illness and the mean peak titer is reached some time during the 2nd and the 3rd months of the disease. Thereafter the agglutinins decline slowly but they may remain detectable as long as 28 years or perhaps for life (Pullen and Stuart 1945). Agglutinins elicited by vaccination behave similarly to those in natural infection if a vaccinee contracts tularemia; the rise of the agglutinins is no more prompt than in a nonvaccinated person who acquired the infection. Cross reactions with *Br. abortus* immune sera occur but do not cause diagnostic difficulties.

The hemagglutination test using type O human red cells sensitized with tularensis polysaccharide has been used in an attempt to obtain earlier results (Wright and Feinberg 1952). Hemagglutinins reach diagnostic levels on the 11th day (according to Knothe and Havemeister 1961 on the 5th day) and reach a mean peak titer of 1:10,240 during the 2nd month; they persist in the serum for years at somewhat higher levels than agglutinins. Hemagglutination titers rise more rapidly than agglutination titers in tularemia just as they do in plague and salmonellosis (Charles 1959).

Foshay (1950) reported 2 types of intradermal tests—one with killed bacteria and the other with hyperimmune goat serum. Positive reactions to both tests during the 1st week of illness were given by 99 of 108 patients and the other 9 became positive during the succeeding week. The tests with killed bacteria have the disadvantage of requiring 48 hours before they could be read, whereas hyperimmune goat serum gives an immediate wheal and flare. To date this is

tory tract Man can be infected readily by as few as 25 organisms when exposed to an aerosol composed of 1- $\mu$  particles (McCrumb, 1961)

Following ocular infection the typical primary lesion is an ulcerated papule on the lower eyelid followed by general infection of the conjunctival sac characterized by congestion of the vessels lacrimation damage to the eye and involvement of the lymphatics

### IMMUNITY

An attack of tularemia confers a relative immunity Butchers having suffered one attack are not known to experience others despite probable frequent exposure Reinfection in laboratory workers produces illnesses of varying severity from small local lesions and no constitutional reactions to acute febrile illness followed by mild prolonged systemic complaints (Green and Eigelsbach 1950)

The in vitro bactericidal activity of normal plasma is highest in the cow the dog and the sheep lower in the guinea pig the monkey the human the rabbit the rat and the mouse This correlates to some degree with susceptibility to experimental infection (Stanziale 1957)

Heat or formalin killed vaccines provoke severe local and constitutional reactions Vaccines detoxified with sodium nitrite and acetic acid (Foshay) administered annually do not confer complete resistance but modify favorably the course of the disease Similar results have been obtained with phenolized or acetone-extracted vaccines (Kadull *et al* 1950)

Considerable resistance has been produced in rabbits and rats (Larson 1945a Downs *et al* 1947) with killed organisms or lysates but the same vaccines protect only a small proportion of mice against as few as 2 to 5 LD<sub>50</sub> of organisms The two vaccines that completely protect 40 day old mice are the ether-extracted vaccine of Larson and the purified antigen preparation derived from the cell wall (Larson *et al* 1954 Ormsbee and Larson 1955) It is believed that the dosage and the virulence of the challenge strain (425) are much higher than that ordinarily met under natural conditions in human infections In the rodent disease the

mortality rate is nearly 100 per cent whereas in the human disease the rate is 7.5 per cent in untreated cases

Early claims of Soviet and Turkish workers that live strains of low virulence were superior to a killed virulent culture for vaccination of guinea pigs are now supported by American studies and have been extended to mice and man An attenuated hypovirulent strain of *F. tularensis* designated LVS (live vaccine strain), selected from a Russian vaccine and brought to the United States in 1956 has been used in animals and man (Eigelsbach and Downs 1961) Inoculation of 100 000 viable cells of this strain intracutaneously or 270 000 aerogenically into monkeys leads to multiplication locally and in the regional lymph nodes the liver and the spleen Antitularensis gamma globulin appears in the plasma cells of regional nodes as early as the 3rd day after infection (McGavran *et al*, 1962)

The first human trial with a living avirulent strain administered intradermally induced local and general reactions in 72 per cent with prolonged moderate disability in some and fairly severe disability in a few (Kosmachevskiy 1944) In a more recent test lyophilized vaccine was applied cutaneously by scarification to exposed groups—slaughterhouse and agricultural workers There were local skin reactions accompanied by enlargement of the regional lymph nodes systemic reactions were relatively few allergic reactions developed in persons who had had tularemia or had been immunized successfully The protection was reported to be effective in 90 to 96 per cent of cases and lasted for at least 6 years The use of avirulent living vaccine is now part of tularemia control in the Soviet Union (Tigerit 1962) In tests in human volunteers in the United States the living attenuated vaccine protected 10 of 14 whereas the cell wall antigen of Larson or the Foshay killed vaccine protected few or none against intracutaneous or respiratory challenge (McCrumb 1961 Saslaw *et al* 1961)

Agglutination or hemagglutination titers or immunodiffusion precipitation lines in prechallenge sera did not permit a prediction of whether or not an individual would become ill after challenge (Saslaw *et al* 1962)

Men and women of all races and all ages are susceptible. The incidence reflects exposure. In the United States the highest annual incidence on record is 261 cases in 1939. The mortality rate in 15 525 cases reported from 1915 to 1942 was 6.9 per cent (Francis). The lowering of the death rate in recent years is attributable to the use of streptomycin. However the mortality rate in one series of 53 cases of typhoidal tularemia was 19 per cent despite the use of antimicrobial drugs.

The key factors in the transmission are ticks, lice and mites which keep the infection alive in vertebrates. For its propagation in nature *F. tularensis* depends on the wood tick and the dog tick which feed on rabbits and other rodents. The Lone Star tick together with the dog tick are the common reservoir and vector (Cathoun 1954). Of the many animals found infected in nature probably only a few serve as key reservoirs in any environment. Human disease usually does not take place unless at least 1 per cent of the rodents in the region are infected. The chain of infection is efficiently maintained: ticks in all stages from larvae to adults are transmitters; adult females pass it to succeeding generations transovarially. The multiple factors affecting the bionomics and the ecology of the insect and the rodent reservoirs vary from region to region and from country to country creating a complex ecologic picture that has been sketched only in its broadest outlines. Importing wild rabbits from regions of known endemicity into a tick ridden area creates new geographic reservoirs as experienced in Massachusetts (Ayres and Feemster 1948).

#### CONTROL

Endemic tularemia of rodents cannot be eradicated. An increased incidence in human beings always coincides with an increase in the infected rodent reservoir. Under certain circumstances supervised field rodent poisoning campaigns are indicated. Incidence probably would be reduced somewhat if interstate shipments of wild hares and their sale for food in markets and restaurants were supervised. Sportsmen, butchers and those

who live in regions where the infection prevails must be educated to the dangers of this disease. To render meat of rabbits harmless thorough cooking is necessary. Rubber gloves should be worn while dressing rabbits. Drinking water from streams in endemic regions should be avoided. Laboratory workers should be protected by vaccination, face masks and rubber gloves. Isolation of patients is not necessary but discharges from suppurating focal lesions must be disinfected.

While in the past the tularemia enzootics and epizootics in the Soviet Union invariably led to manifestation of the disease in man it has now become possible to prevent such infections by prophylactic measures in agricultural practices and by poisoning campaigns directed against rodents as well as through wholesale antitularemia vaccination with living strains (Olsufjev and Rudnev 1960).

#### REFERENCES

##### PASTEURILLOSIS

- Bartley E. O. 1960. *Pasteurella septica* in chronic nasal sinusitis. *Lancet* 2: 581-582.
- Bartley E. O. and Hunter K. 1947. Penicillin in surgical treatment of *Pasteurella sinusitis*. *Lancet* 1: 908-909.
- Bezyak V. and Mimica M. 1952. Two human infections due to *Pasteurella multocida*. *Brit. M. J.* 2: 757-758.
- Carter G. R. 1961. A new serological type of *Pasteurella multocida* from Central Africa. *Vet. Rec.* 73: 1052.
- Carter G. R. 1962. Animal serotypes of *Pasteurella multocida* from human infections. *Canad. J. Pub. Health* 53: 158-161.
- Carter G. R. and Bairo R. V. S. 1960. Pasteurellosis (*Pasteurella multocida*). A review stressing recent developments. *Vet. Rev. Annot.* 6: 105-128.
- Cawson R. A. and Talbot J. M. 1955. Occurrence of *Pasteurella septica* (syn. *multocida*) in bronchiectasis. *J. Clin. Path.* 8: 49-51.
- de Lavergne E., Briquet P., Burdin J. C. and Schmitt J. 1961. Pasteurelloses humaines: aspect peu connu, les formes par infection seconde. *Presse med.* 69: 1591-1593.
- Emson H. E. 1957. Local infection with *Pas*

the only method of making a positive diagnosis on the 1st day of illness. Unfortunately it is difficult to obtain normal commercial goat serum for control and the use of the test in vaccinated persons is limited by the persistently positive reaction obtained up to 1 year after vaccination (Foshay and Mayer 1936; Friedewald and Hunt 1939).

An accelerated slide agglutination test which makes use of the reaction of tularemia antiserum with an antigen prepared from the spleen of a rodent suspected dead of tularemia (Verenikova *et al* 1962) is probably a modification of the Ascoli thermoprecipitin test developed by Larson (1951) and used very successfully in field surveys (Bell *et al* 1959; McDowell *et al* 1964).

#### TREATMENT

Streptomycin is bactericidal and is rapidly curative if administered in daily doses of 0.5 to 1 Gm. It should be given for 5 to 8 days. The broad spectrum antimicrobial drugs are also effective but less so than streptomycin. The sensitivity of *F. tularensis* to erythromycin varies greatly (Biegeleisen and Moody 1960). The tetracyclines or chloramphenicol given orally in an initial dose of 25 mg/Kg of body weight and then in doses of 0.5 to 0.75 Gm every 6 to 8 hours are also recommended (Ransmeier *et al* 1949). The effect of the drugs is dramatic in acutely ill patients treated early. Strains resistant to streptomycin but not to chloramphenicol or tetracycline have been encountered.

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Tularemia has been reported from many parts of the United States. There were from 11 to 25 cases per 100 000 population in Arkansas during the period from 1937 to 1951. In 5 New England states only 20 cases have been observed since the discovery of the disease and in Vermont none at all. In the United States between 1924 and 1950 there were 25 294 cases (Olsufjev and Rudnev, 1960) and between 1944 and 1955 the United States Public Health Service received reports of 10 865 cases. Contact with cottontail rabbits was responsible for 65.5 per cent (Jellison and Parker 1945). In California 81 per cent were attributed to contact with

wild jack rabbits (Simons *et al* 1953). Tularemia has been reported from Alaska (Philip *et al* 1962), Canada, Venezuela, Mexico and Japan and since 1926 epizootic waves have spread from Siberia to Turkey, Iran and Israel and over most of Europe. Cases have been reported from Africa (Gelman 1961).

It is an essentially sporadic disease. It may become epidemic when a number of persons take an infected meal (Amoss and Sprunt 1936) when contaminated drinking water is consumed (Schmidt 1947; Parker *et al* 1951) or when deer flies are particularly infective (Hillman and Morgan 1937). No other infection has such a variety of modes of transmission but human to human infection has not been recorded. Numerous reports re-emphasize the well known risk of laboratory infection (Overholt *et al* 1961).

The most common clinical ulceroglandular or glandular types may be attributable to direct contact with infected animals for example in skinning or eviscerating through a break in the skin or through conveyance of the organism into the conjunctival sac. Intermediate contact through infected blood-sucking arthropods, chiefly ticks, biting flies and even mosquitoes may cause any of the 4 clinical types. In typhoidal tularemia contracted by heavily exposed laboratory workers it is usually difficult or impossible to determine the portal of entry. The virulence of the invading strain may partly determine which clinical type will develop.

Seasonal occurrence with its peaks in summer is associated with rabbit hunting and arthropod vector activity in the Western United States. Ticks are particularly dangerous from March to August, deer flies from June to September. Jack rabbits are hunted particularly from April to October and are a threat at the time. In the East cottontail rabbits are hunted from November to January, the months during which the human infections occur. The periodic floods in the Don Delta of the USSR favor migration, concentration and mixing of the populations of water voles which facilitate epizootics and tularemia in human beings far from the usual habitat of the rodents. Prophylactic measures are thus greatly handicapped (Lukyanenko *et al* 1961).

- Buckland F E and Treadwell R H 1961 A comparison of plague vaccines by the mouse protection test *J Hyg* 59 49 56
- Burrows T W 1955 The basis of virulence for mice of *Pasteurella pestis* in Mechanisms of Microbial Pathogenicity pp 152 175 Cambridge Univ Press
- 1963 Virulence of *Pasteurella pestis* and immunity to plague *Ergebn Mikrobiol Immunitätsforsch* 37 59
- Burrows T W and Bacon G A 1958 The effects of loss of different virulence determinants on the virulence and immunogenicity of strains of *Pasteurella pestis* *Brit J Exp Path* 39 278 291
- Cavanaugh D C and Randall R 1959 The role of multiplication of *Pasteurella pestis* in mononuclear phagocytes in the pathogenesis of flea borne plague *J Immun* 83 348 363
- Chen T H 1952 Studies on immunization against plague IV The method of the hemagglutination test and some observations on the antigen *J Immun* 69 587 596
- Chen T H and Meyer K F 1954 Studies on immunization against plague VII A hemagglutination test with the protein fraction of *Pasteurella pestis* A serologic comparison of virulent and avirulent strains with observations on the structure of the bacterial cells and its relationship to infection and immunity *J Immun* 72 282 298
- Chen T H, Quan S F and Meyer K F 1952 Studies on immunization against plague Complement fixation test *J Immun* 68 147 158
- Cocking E C, Keppie J, Witt K and Smith H 1960 The chemical basis of the virulence of *Pasteurella pestis* II The toxicity for guinea pigs and mice of products of *Past pestis* *Brit J Exp Path* 41 460 471
- Crompton M J and Davies D A L 1956 An antigenic analysis of *Pasteurella pestis* by diffusion of antigens and antibodies in agar *Proc Roy Soc (Biol)* Ser B 145 109 134
- Davies D A L 1956 A specific polysaccharide of *Pasteurella pestis* *Biochem J* 63 105 116
- Domaradsky I V 1957 Concerning the problem of the metabolism of sulfur containing amino-acids in cultures of plague bacillus *Zh Mikrobiol* 28 54
- Donovan J E, Ham B, Fukui G M and Surgalla M J 1961 Role of the capsule of *Pasteurella pestis* in bubonic plague in the guinea pig *J Infect Dis* 109 154 157
- Druett H A, Robinson J M, Henderson H W, Packman L and Peacock E 1956 Studies on respiratory infection II The influence of aerosol particle size on infection of the guinea pig with *Pasteurella pestis* *J Hyg* 54 37-48
- Fedorov V N 1960 Plague in camels and its prevention in the USSR *Bull WHO* 23 275 281
- Fenyuk, B K 1960 Experience in the eradication of enzootic plague in the North West part of the Caspian region of the USSR *Bull WHO* 23 263 273
- Fox E N and Higuchi K 1958 Synthesis of the fraction I antigenic protein by *Pasteurella pestis* *J Bact* 75 209 216
- Fukui G M, Delwiche E A, Mortlock R P and Surgalla M J 1962 Oxidative metabolism of *Pasteurella pestis* grown in vitro and in vivo *J Infect Dis* 110 143 146
- Fukui G M, Ogg J E, Wessman G E and Surgalla M J 1957 Studies on the relation of cultural conditions and virulence of *Pasteurella pestis* *J Bact* 74 714 717
- Girard G 1954 Le virus vaccin EV confère une protection égale vis à vis de l'infection pesteuse expérimentale provoquée par les trois variétés de *Pasteurella pestis* *Bull Soc path exot* 47 475 478
- 1955 Plague *Ann Rev Microbiol* 9 253 276
- Heckly R J, Anderson A W and Rockenmacher M 1958 Lyophilisation of *Pasteurella pestis* *Appl Microbiol* 11 255
- Higuchi K and Carlin C E 1957 Studies on the nutrition and physiology of *Pasteurella pestis* I A casein hydrolyzate medium for the growth of *Pasteurella pestis* *J Bact* 73 122 129
- Higuchi K, Kupferberg L L and Smith J L 1959 Studies on the nutrition and physiology of *Pasteurella pestis* III Effects of calcium ions on the growth of virulent and avirulent strains of *Pasteurella pestis* *J Bact* 77 317 321
- Higuchi K and Smith J L 1961 Studies on the nutrition and physiology of *Pasteurella pestis* VI A differential plating medium for the estimation of the mutation rate to avirulence *J Bact* 81 605 608
- Hoessly G F 1954 Studies on immunization against plague XII Natural resistance of chickens and pigeons *Schweiz Ztschr allg Path* 17 720
- Hirst L F 1953 The Conquest of Plague A Study of the Evolution of Epidemiology 478 pp Oxford Clarendon



- teurella septica* after a dog bite J Clin Path 10, 187 190
- Ericson C and Juhlin I 1959 A case of *Pasteurella multocida* infection after cat bite Acta path microbiol scand 46 47 50
- Lee M L H and Buhr A J 1960 Dog bites and local infection with *Pasteurella septica* Brit M J 1 168 171
- Ludlam G H 1944 Isolation of *Pasteurella septica* from appendicular abscess J Path Bact 56 307 313
- Namioka S and Murata M 1961 Serological studies on *Pasteurella multocida* I A simplified method for capsule typing of the organism Cornell Vet 51 498 507
- 1961 Serological studies on *Pasteurella multocida* III O antigenic analysis of cultures isolated from various animals Cornell Vet 51 522 528
- Olsen A M and Needham G M 1952 *Pasteurella multocida* in suppurative diseases of the respiratory tract Am J Med Sci 224 77 81
- Reilly J and Tourner P 1954 Les pasteurelloses humaines Rev prat 4 1929 1937
- Roberts R S 1947 An immunological study of *Pasteurella septica* J Comp Path 57 261 278
- Smith J E 1958 Studies on *Pasteurella septica* II Some cultural and biochemical properties of strains from different host species J Comp Path 68 315 323
- 1959 Studies on *Pasteurella septica* III Strains from human beings J Comp Path 69 231 235
- Swartz M N, and Kunz L J 1959 *Pasteurella multocida* infections in man Report of two cases—meningitis and infected cat bite New Eng J Med 261 889 893
- Talbot J M and Sneath P H A, 1960 A taxonomic study of *Pasteurella septica* especially of strains isolated from human sources J Gen Microbiol 22 303 311
- Williams E 1960 Septicaemia caused by an organism resembling *Pasteurella septica* after a dog bite Brit Med J 2 1926 1929
- PLAGUE**
- Ajl S I and Rust J 1960 The biochemistry and physiology of the plague murine toxin Ann NY Acad Sci 88 1152
- Ajl S J Rust J Jr Woebke J and Hunter D H 1956 Action of plague toxin on diphosphopyridine nucleotide Fed. Proc 15 581
- Ajl S J Rust J Jr Hunter D Woebke J and Bent D F 1958 Preparation of serologically homogeneous plague murine toxin and its reactions with physical chemical and enzymatic agents J Immun 80 435-440
- Aleksandrov N I 1962 (Aerosol immunization with dry pulverized anatoxins and vaccines VIII Studies on a method of aerosol immunization of large numbers of men with pulverized anti plague vaccine) Zh Mikrobiol 33 46
- Aleksandrov N I Gefen, N H Gapochko K G Garin N S Sergeyev V M Lazareva E S Mushchenko V V and Shlyakhov E N 1961 Aerosol immunization with dried live vaccines and toxoids VI A study of postvaccination reactions and immunological efficacy of aerosol immunization with aerosol brucellosis tularemia anthrax and plague vaccines in man Zh Mikrobiol (Eng) 32 1245
- American Public Health Association Diagnostic Procedures (in press)
- Baltazard M Davis D H S Deviat R Girard G Gohar, M A Kartman L Meyer K F Parker M T Pollitzer R Prince F M Quan, S F and Wagle P 1956 Recommended laboratory methods for the diagnosis of plague Bull WHO 14 457 509
- Ben Efraim S Aronson M and Bichowsky Slomnicki L 1961 New antigenic component of *Pasteurella pestis* formed under specified conditions of pH and temperature J Bact 81 704 714
- Ben Gutron R and Hertman I 1958 Bacteriocin like material produced by *Pasteurella pestis* J Gen Microbiol 19 289 297
- Bent D F, Rosen H Levenson S M Lindberg R B and Ajl S J 1957 Elemental and amino acid composition of purified plague toxin Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 95 178 181
- Berendt R F 1958 Some physiological and immunological properties of *Pasteurella pestis* recovered from aerosols J Bact 75 217 223
- Bichowsky-Slomnicki L and Ben Efraim S 1963 Biological activities in extracts of *Pasteurella pestis* and their relation to the pH<sup>6</sup> antigen J Bact 86 101 111
- Brownlow W J and Wessman G E 1960 Nutrition of *Pasteurella pestis* in chemically defined media at temperatures of 36 to 38 C J Bact 79 299 304
- Brubaker R R and Surgalla M J 1962 Genotypic alterations associated with avirulence in streptomycin resistant *Pasteurella pestis* J Bact 84 615 624

- Buckland F E and Treadwell, R H 1961 A comparison of plague vaccines by the mouse protection test *J Hyg* 59 49 56
- Burrows T W 1955 The basis of virulence for mice of *Pasteurella pestis* in Mechanisms of Microbial Pathogenicity pp 152 175 Cambridge Univ Press
- 1963 Virulence of *Pasteurella pestis* and immunity to plague *Ergebn Mikrobiol Immunitätsforsch* 37 59
- Burrows T W and Bacon G A 1958 The effects of loss of different virulence determinants on the virulence and immunogenicity of strains of *Pasteurella pestis* *Brit J Exp Path* 39 278 291
- Cavanaugh D C and Randall R 1959 The role of multiplication of *Pasteurella pestis* in mononuclear phagocytes in the pathogenesis of flea borne plague *J Immun* 83 348 363
- Chen T H 1952 Studies on immunization against plague IV The method of the hemagglutination test and some observations on the antigen *J Immun* 69 587 596
- Chen T H and Meyer K F 1954 Studies on immunization against plague VII A hemagglutination test with the protein fraction of *Pasteurella pestis* A serologic comparison of virulent and avirulent strains with observations on the structure of the bacterial cells and its relationship to infection and immunity *J Immun* 72 282 298
- Chen T H, Quan S F and Meyer K F 1952 Studies on immunization against plague Complement fixation test *J Immun* 68 147 158
- Cocking E C, Keppie J, Witt K and Smith H 1960 The chemical basis of the virulence of *Pasteurella pestis* II The toxicity for guinea pigs and mice of products of *Past pestis* *Brit J Exp Path* 41 460 471
- Crompton M J and Davies D A L 1956 An antigenic analysis of *Pasteurella pestis* by diffusion of antigens and antibodies in agar *Proc Roy Soc (Biol)* Ser B 145 109 134
- Davies D A L 1956 A specific polysaccharide of *Pasteurella pestis* *Biochem J* 63 105 116
- Domaradsky I V 1957 Concerning the problem of the metabolism of sulfur-containing amino acids in cultures of plague bacillus *Zh Mikrobiol* 28 54
- Donavan J E, Ham D, Fukui G M and Surgalla M J 1961 Role of the capsule of *Pasteurella pestis* in bubonic plague in the guinea pig, *J Infect Dis* 109 154 157
- Druett H A, Robinson, J M, Henderson I W, Packman L and Peacock E 1956 Studies on respiratory infection II The influence of aerosol particle size on infection of the guinea pig with *Pasteurella pestis* *J Hyg* 54 37-48
- Fedorov V N 1960 Plague in camels and its prevention in the USSR *Bull WHO* 23 275 281
- Fenyuk II K 1960 Experience in the eradication of enzootic plague in the North West part of the Caspian region of the USSR *Bull WHO* 23 263 273
- Fox E N and Higuchi K 1958 Synthesis of the fraction I antigenic protein by *Pasteurella pestis* *J Bact* 75 209 216
- Fukui G M, Delwiche II A, Mortlock, R P and Surgalla M J 1962 Oxidative metabolism of *Pasteurella pestis* grown in vitro and in vivo *J Infect Dis* 110 143 146
- Fukui G M, Ogg J E, Wessman G E and Surgalla M J 1957 Studies on the relation of cultural conditions and virulence of *Pasteurella pestis* *J Bact* 74 714 717
- Girard G 1954 Le virus vaccin EV confère une protection égale vis à vis de l'infection pesteuse expérimentale provoquée par les trois variétés de *Pasteurella pestis* *Bull Soc path exot* 47 475-478
- 1955 Plague *Ann Rev Microbiol* 9 253 276
- Heckly R J, Anderson A W and Rockenmacher M 1958 Lyophilisation of *Pasteurella pestis* *Appl Microbiol* 6 255
- Higuchi K and Carlin C E 1957 Studies on the nutrition and physiology of *Pasteurella pestis* I A casein hydrolyzate medium for the growth of *Pasteurella pestis* *J Bact* 73 122 129
- Higuchi K, Kupferberg L L and Smith J L 1959 Studies on the nutrition and physiology of *Pasteurella pestis* III Effects of calcium ions on the growth of virulent and avirulent strains of *Pasteurella pestis* *J Bact* 77 317 321
- Higuchi K and Smith J L 1961 Studies on the nutrition and physiology of *Pasteurella pestis* VI A differential plating medium for the estimation of the mutation rate to avirulence *J Bact* 81 605 608
- Hoessly G F 1954 Studies on immunization against plague XII Natural resistance of chickens and pigeons *Schweiz Ztschr allg Path* 17 720
- Hurst L F 1963 The Conquest of Plague A Study of the Evolution of Epidemiology 478 pp Oxford Clarendon

- Hudson II W 1963 Personal communication
- Hudson II W Quan S F and Kartman L 1962 Efficacy of fluorescent antibody methods for detection of *Pasteurella pestis* in carcasses of albino laboratory mice stored for various periods *J Hyg* 60 443 450
- Janssen W A Beesley E D and Surgalla M J 1963 The relationship between the plague bacillus and the phagocytic defense system of the host *Bact Proc Abstract* M101 p 80
- Kartman L 1954 Studies on *Pasteurella pestis* in fleas I An apparatus for the experimental feeding of fleas *Exp Parasit* 3 525 537
- 1960 The role of rabbits in sylvatic plague epidemiology with special attention to human cases in New Mexico and use of the fluorescent antibody technique for detection of *Pasteurella pestis* in held specimens *Zoonoses Research* 1 1
- Kartman L Quan S F and Lechleitner R R 1962 Die off of a Gunnison's prairie dog colony in central Colorado II Retrospective determination of plague infection in flea vectors rodents and man *Zoonoses Research* 1 201
- Kartman L Quan S F and Stark H E 1962 Ecological studies of wild rodent plague in the San Francisco Bay Area of California VII Effects of plague in nature on *Microtus californicus* and other wild rodents *Zoonoses Research* 1 99
- Kartman L Prince F M Quan S F and Stark H E 1958 New knowledge on the ecology of sylvatic plague *Ann NY Acad Sci* 70 668
- Keppie J Cocking E C and Smith H 1958 A non toxic complex from *Pasteurella pestis* which immunises both guinea pigs and mice *Lancet* 1 246 247
- Keppie J Cocking E C Witt K and Smith H 1960 The chemical basis of the virulence of *Pasteurella pestis* III An immunogenic product obtained from *Pasteurella pestis* which protects both guinea pigs and mice *Brit J Exp Path* 41 577 585
- Korobkova E I and Samoilova L V 1962 (On the problem of the nature of immunity against plague) *Zh Mikrobiol* 33 76
- Koslov M P Lemekhova A E and Norov D 1960 (Relation between vaccinal and allergic reactions in individuals inoculated with plague vaccine) *Zh Mikrobiol* 31 102
- Kupferberg L L and Higuchi K 1958 Role of calcium ions in the stimulation of growth of virulent strains of *P. pestis* *J Bact* 76 120
- Lawton W D Erdman R L and Surgalla M J 1963 Biosynthesis and purification of V and W antigen in *Pasteurella pestis* *J Immun* 91 179 184
- Lawton W D, Fukui G M and Surgalla M J 1960 Studies on the antigens of *Pasteurella pestis* and *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* *J Immun* 84 475 479
- 1962 Studies on the antigens of *Pasteurella pestis* and *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* *J Immun* 84 475 479
- Leshkovich L I 1958 The effect of x rays on the virulence and immunogenic properties of the plague bacillus *Zh Mikrobiol* 29 34
- McCrumb F R Jr Mercier S Robic J Bouillat M Smadel J E Woodward T E and Goodner K 1953 Chloramphenicol and Terramycin in the treatment of pneumonic plague *Am J Med* 14 284 293
- Meyer K F 1950 Immunity in plague A critical consideration of some recent studies *J Immun* 64 139 163
- 1957 The natural history of plague and psittacosis *Pub Health Rep* 72 705 719
- 1961 Pneumonic plague *Bact Rev* 25 249 261
- 1964 Serological tests for the confirmation of plague infections A Preliminary Communication *Bull WHO* 30 750 751
- Meyer K F and Larson A 1960 The pathogenesis of cervical septicemic plague developing after exposure to pneumonic plague produced by intratracheal infection in primates *Proc Symp Diamond Jubilee Haffkine Inst* 1959 p 1
- Moody M D and Winter C C 1959 Rapid identification of *Pasteurella pestis* with fluorescent antibody III Staining *Pasteurella pestis* in tissue impression smears *J Infect Dis* 104 288 294
- Payne F E Smadel J E and Courduner J 1956 Immunologic studies on persons residing in a plague endemic area *J Immun* 77 24 33
- Part J Thackeray E J and Harris Smith R 1961 The influence of environment on antigen production by *Pasteurella pestis* studied by means of the continuous flow culture technique *J Gen Microbiol* 25 119 130
- Pollitzer R 1954 Plague Geneva WHO 698 pp

- 1960 A review of recent literature on plague Bull WHO 23 313-400
- Pollitzer R and Meyer K F 1961 The ecology of plague in May J M (ed) Studies in Disease Ecology p 433 New York Hafner
- Quan S F, Goldenberg M I, Kartman L. and Prince F M 1963 The survival of *Pasteurella pestis* in materials preserved by dry ice Bact Proc 421 p 6
- Quan S F and Kartman L 1962 Ecological studies of wild rodent plague in the San Francisco Bay Area of California VIII Susceptibility of wild rodents to experimental plague infection Zoonoses Research 1 121
- Quan S F, Bahmanyar M, Chen T H and Meyer K F 1962 Comparison of cutaneous routes for infecting mice and guinea pigs with *Pasteurella pestis* Bact Proc M131 p 95
- Randall R 1963 Personal communication
- Ransom J P and Krueger A P 1954 Chronic pneumonic plague in *Momoca mulatta* Am J Trop Med 3 1040-1054
- Rust J H Jr, Goley A F, Randall R, Aji S J and Cavanaugh H C 1960 Murine toxin in plague infection Bact Proc M69 p 108
- Seal S C 1960 Recent developments in the study of antigenic structure of plague bacillus and the necessity for evolving a standard means of isolation of the antigens Indian J Med Sci 14 765
- Silverman M S, Chin P H, Greenman V and Young J C 1954 The cause of increased susceptibility of mice to avirulent *Pasteurella pestis* after exposure to a sublethal dose of X irradiation J Infect Dis 94 47-52
- Silverman S J, Higuchi K and Meyers E 1954 Production of protective antigens by *Pasteurella pestis* in a synthetic medium Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 86 112-114
- Smith D A and Burrows T W 1962 Phage and bacteriocin studies on *Pasteurella pestis* and other bacteria Nature (London) 193 397
- Spivack M L and Katler A 1958 Purification of the toxin of *Pasteurella pestis* by continuous flow paper electrophoresis J Immun 80 441-445
- Spivack M L, Foster L, Larson A, Chen T H, Baker E E and Meyer K F 1958 The immune response of the guinea pig to the antigens of *Pasteurella pestis* J Immun 80 132-141
- Srikantan T N, Krishna Murti C R and Shrivastava D L 1958 Studies on the enzyme make up of *Pasteurella pestis* Part VI Aldolase activity of virulent and avirulent strains Indian J Med Res 46 18
- Surgalla M J 1960 Properties of virulent and avirulent strains of *Pasteurella pestis* Ann NY Acad Sci 88 1136
- Swellengrebel N H 1953 Researches on ectoparasites of man in the vicinity of Marrakech (Morocco) Docum med geog et trop 5 151-156
- Winter C C, Cherry W H and Moody M D 1960 An unusual strain of *Pasteurella pestis* isolated from a fatal human case of plague Bull WHO 23 408-409
- Winter C C and Moody M D 1959 Rapid identification of *Pasteurella pestis* with fluorescent antibody I Production of specific antiserum with whole cell *Pasteurella pestis* antigen J Infect Dis 104 274-280
- 1959 Rapid identification of *Pasteurella pestis* with fluorescent antibody II Specific identification of *Pasteurella pestis* in dried smears J Infect Dis 104 281-287
- Zaplata S I and Borodina O A 1956 Investigations of the catalase activity of plague and pseudotuberculosis Coll Papers Anti plague Inst Rostov on Don 10 106

## PSEUDOTUBERCULOSIS

- Bhagavan N V, Chen, T H and Meyer K F 1956 Further studies of antigenic structure of *Pasteurella pestis* in gels Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 91 353-356
- Borg A and Thal E 1961 Pseudotuberculosis (*Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis*) som zoonos Svensk lakartidn 58 1923
- Burtanek J, Málková J and Tion F 1949 Případ sepsie způsobené *Pasteurellou pseudotuberculosis* Casopis Lekarů Českých 88 775-777
- Burrows T W and Bacon G A 1960 V and W antigens in strains of *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* Brit J Exp Path 41 38-44
- Daniels J J 1961 Enteric infection with *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* Isolation of the organism from human faeces Brit Med J 11 997
- Daniels J J 1962 Enteric infection with *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* Internat Coll Surg 38 397
- Daniels J J Thesis Rotterdam (in press)
- Davies D A L 1958 The smooth and rough somatic antigens of *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* J Gen Microbiol 18 118-128
- Davies D A L, Staub A M, Fromme J

- Hudson B W 1963 Personal communication
- Hudson B W, Quan S F and Kartman L 1962 Efficacy of fluorescent antibody methods for detection of *Pasteurella pestis* in carcasses of albino laboratory mice stored for various periods J Hyg 60 443-450
- Janssen W A, Beesley E D and Surgalla M J 1963 The relationship between the plague bacillus and the phagocytic defense system of the host Bact Proc Abstract M101 p 80
- Kartman L 1954 Studies on *Pasteurella pestis* in fleas I An apparatus for the experimental feeding of fleas Exp Parasit 3 525-537
- 1960 The role of rabbits in sylvatic plague epidemiology with special attention to human cases in New Mexico and use of the fluorescent antibody technique for detection of *Pasteurella pestis* in field specimens Zoonoses Research 1 1
- Kartman L, Quan S F and Lechlester R R 1962 Die-off of a Gunnison's prairie dog colony in central Colorado II Retrospective determination of plague infection in flea vectors, rodents and man Zoonoses Research 1 201
- Kartman L, Quan S F and Stark H E 1962 Ecological studies of wild rodent plague in the San Francisco Bay Area of California VII Effects of plague in nature on *Microtus californicus* and other wild rodents Zoonoses Research 1 99
- Kartman L, Prince F M, Quan S F and Stark H E 1958 New knowledge on the ecology of sylvatic plague Ann NY Acad Sci 70 668
- Keppie J, Cocking E C and Smith H 1958 A non toxic complex from *Pasteurella pestis* which immunises both guinea pigs and mice Lancet 1 246-247
- Keppie J, Cocking E C, Witt K and Smith H 1960 The chemical basis of the virulence of *Pasteurella pestis* III An immunogenic product obtained from *Pasteurella pestis* which protects both guinea pigs and mice Brit J Exp Path 41 577-585
- Korobkova E I and Samoilova L V 1962 (On the problem of the nature of immunity against plague) Zh Mikrobiol 33 76
- Koslov M P, Lemekhova A E and Norov D 1960 (Relation between vaccinal and allergic reactions in individuals inoculated with plague vaccine) Zh Mikrobiol 31 102
- Kupferberg L L and Higuchi K 1958 Role of calcium ions in the stimulation of growth of virulent strains of *P. pestis* J Bact 76 120
- Lawton W D, Erdman R L and Surgalla M J 1963 Biosynthesis and purification of V and W antigen in *Pasteurella pestis* J Immun 91 179-184
- Lawton W D, Fukui G M and Surgalla M J 1960 Studies on the antigens of *Pasteurella pestis* and *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* J Immun 84 475-479
- 1962 Studies on the antigens of *Pasteurella pestis* and *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* J Immun 84 475-479
- Leshkovich L I 1958 The effect of x rays on the virulence and immunogenic properties of the plague bacillus Zh Mikrobiol 29 34
- McCrumb F R Jr, Mercier S, Robie J, Bouillat M, Smadel J E, Woodward T E and Goodner K 1953 Chloramphenicol and Terramycin in the treatment of pneumonic plague Am J Med 14 284-293
- Meyer K F 1950 Immunity in plague A critical consideration of some recent studies J Immun 64 139-163
- 1957 The natural history of plague and psittacosis Pub Health Rep 72 705-719
- 1961 Pneumonic plague Bact Rev 25 249-261
- 1964 Serological tests for the confirmation of plague infections A Preliminary Communication Bull WHO 30 750-751
- Meyer K F and Larson A 1960 The pathogenesis of cervical septicemic plague developing after exposure to pneumonic plague produced by intratracheal infection in primates Proc Symp Diamond Jubilee Haffkine Inst 1959 p 1
- Moody M D and Winter C C 1959 Rapid identification of *Pasteurella pestis* with fluorescent antibody III Staining *Pasteurella pestis* in tissue impression smears J Infect Dis 104 288-294
- Payne F E, Smadel J E and Courduner J 1956 Immunologic studies on persons residing in a plague endemic area J Immun 77 24-33
- Pirt S J, Thackeray E J and Harris-Smith R 1961 The influence of environment on antigen production by *Pasteurella pestis* studied by means of the continuous flow culture technique J Gen Microbiol 25 119-130
- Pollitzer R 1954 Plague Geneva WHO 698 pp

- of immune tissues *J Exp Med* 115 411
- Bell J F Larson C L Wicht W C and Ritter S S 1952 Studies on the immunization of white mice against infections with *Bacterium tularensis* *J Immun* 69 515 524
- Bell J F Jellison W L Owen C R and Larson C L 1959 Applicability of the Ascoli test to epizootic tularemia in wild rodents *J Wildlife Management* 23 238
- Bell J F Owen C R Jellison W L Moore G J and Buker E O 1962 Epizootic tularemia in pen raised beavers and field trials of vaccines *Am J Vet Res* 23 884
- Bjergelsen J Z Jr and Moody M D 1960 Sensitivity *in vitro* of eighteen strains of *Pasteurella tularensis* to erythromycin *J Bact* 79 155 156
- Breed R S Murray E G D and Smith N R 1957 *Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology* ed 7 pp 395 400 Baltimore Williams & Wilkins
- Burgdorfer W and Owen C R 1956 Experimental studies on argasid ticks as possible vectors of tularemia *J Infect Dis* 98 67 74
- Carlisle H N Hinchliffe V and Saslaw S 1962 Immunodiffusion studies with *Pasteurella tularensis* antigen rabbit antibody systems *J Immun* 89 638 644
- Carr E A Jr and Kadull P J 1957 Persistence of *Bacterium tularensis* in man in the absence of serious clinical illness *Arch Path* 64 382 384
- Charles N D 1959 Hemagglutination test in tularemia Results in 56 vaccinated persons with laboratory acquired infection *J Immun* 83 213 220
- DeArmon I A Jr Orlando M D Rosenwald A J Klein F Fernelius A L Lincoln R E and Middaugh P R 1962 Viability and estimation of shelf life of bacterial populations *Appl Microbiol* 10 422 427
- Downs C M Coriell L L Chapman S S and Klauber A 1947 Cultivation of *Bacterium tularensis* in embryonated eggs *J Bact* 53 89 100
- Eigelsbach H T and Downs C M 1961 Prophylactic effectiveness of live and killed tularemia vaccines I Production of vaccine and evaluation in the white mouse and guinea pig *J Immun* 87 415-425
- Fellman J H and Mills R C 1960 Sucinoxidase system of *Pasteurella tularensis* *J Bact* 79 800-806
- Foshay L 1950 Tularemia *Ann Rev Microbiol* 4 313 330
- Friedewald W F and Hunt G A 1939 The diagnosis of tularemia *Am J Med Sci* 197 493 502
- Fyvie A Ross W G and Labzoffsky N A 1959 Tularemia among muskrats on Walpole Island Lake St Clair Ontario *Canad J Comp Med* 23 153 156
- Gaspar A J Tresselt H B and Ward M K 1961 New solid medium for enhanced growth of *Pasteurella tularensis* *J Bact* 82 564 569
- Gelman A C 1961 The ecology of tularemia in May J M (ed) *Studies in Disease Ecology* p 89 New York Hafner
- Girard G and Gallit J 1951 Sur la structure antigenique de *Pasteurella tularensis* *Ann Inst Pasteur* 80 557 559
- Gordon M 1963 Studies on the relationship of delayed hypersensitivity to immunity in tularemia *J Immun* 90 209 216
- Green T W and Eigelsbach H T 1950 Immunity in tularemia Report of two cases of proved reinfection *Arch Int Med* 85 777 782
- Guss M L 1962 Cell wall studies of *Pasteurella tularensis* *Bact Proc M122* p 93
- Hood A M 1961 Infectivity of *Pasteurella tularensis* clouds *J Hyg* 59 497 504
- Jellison W L and Kohls G M 1955 Tularemia in sheep and sheep industry workers *Pub Health Monogr* No 28 17 pp
- Jusatz H J 1961 Dritter Bericht über das Vordringen der Tularamie nach Mittel und Westeuropa über den Zeitraum von 1950 bis 1960 *Ztschr Hyg Infektionskr* 148 69 93
- Kartman L Prince F M and Quan F 1959 Epizootologic aspects in the Oregon Meadow mouse irruption of 1957 1958 *Corvallis Federal Extension Serv* p 43
- Knothe H and Havemeister G 1961 [A contribution to the serology of tularemia (Hemagglutination agglutination para agglutination and agglutinin absorption)] *Zbl Bakt (Orig)* 181 80 102
- Kosmachevskiy V V 1944 First clinical tests of Gayskys living tularemia vaccine *Klin med* 22 60 68
- Larson C L 1945 The relative value of liquid media glucose cystine blood agar and mouse inoculation in the titration of *Pasteurella tularensis* *Pub Health Rep* 60 863 868
- Levin M A Trupin J S and Cabelli V J 1962 Clear media for the recovery of *Pasteurella tularensis* *Appl Microbiol* 10 407-412

- Luderitz O, and Westphal O 1958 Contribution of deoxymethylpentoses to the serological specificity of some bacterial polysaccharides and the recognition of a new sugar paratose *Nature* 181 822-823
- Girard G 1943 Sensibilité des bacilles pesteux et pseudotuberculeux d'une part des germes du groupe coli-dysentérique d'autre part aux bactériophages homologues *Ann Inst Past* 69 52
- Kauffmann F 1932 Comparative studies of pseudotuberculosis paratyphoid *Pasteurella* and plague bacilli *Z Hyg Infectiönskr* 114 97-105
- Knapp W 1954 *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* als Erreger einer mesenterialen Lymphadenitis beim Menschen *Zbl Bakt I Abt (Orig)* 161 422-424
- 1954 Mesenterial lymphadenitis caused by *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* *JAMA* 156 195
- 1958 Mesenteric adenitis due to *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* in young people *New Eng J Med* 259 776-778
- 1959 *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* unter besonderer Berücksichtigung ihrer humanmedizinischen Bedeutung *Ergbn Mikrobiol Immunitätsforsch* 32 196-269
- 1959 Das appendicitische Krankheitsbild bei Kindern nach Infektionen mit *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* *Langenbecks Archiv* 292 437
- 1960 Ueber weitere antigenetische Beziehungen zwischen *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* und der *Salmonella* Gruppe *Z f Hyg* 146 315-330
- 1960 Die Laboratoriumsdiagnose von Infektionen mit *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* *Arzt Laboratorium* 6 197
- 1962 Untersuchungen mit *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* und *Pasteurella pestis* Phagen *Z Hyg Infectiönskr* 148 375-382
- 1963 Klinisch bakteriologische und epidemiologische Befunde bei der Pseudotuberkulose des Menschen *Arch Hyg Bakt* 147 369-380
- Knapp W and Thal E 1963 Biochemische serologische und immunbiologische Untersuchungen mit einer vorläufig *Pasteurella X* benannten Bakterienart *Zbl Bakt* 190 472-484
- Lawton W D, Fukui G M and Surgalla M J 1960 Studies on the antigens of *Pasteurella pestis* and *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* *J Immun* 84 475-479
- Lawton W D and Surgalla M J 1963 Immunization against plague by a specific fraction of *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* *J Infect Dis* 113 39-42
- Masshoff W 1962 Die Pseudotuberkulose des Menschen *Deutsch med Wschr* 87 915-920
- Mollaret H 1960 L'adénite mésentérique aiguë = *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* A propos de 30 observations *Presse med* 68 1375
- Mollaret H and Le Minor L 1962 Recherche de la  $\beta$  galactosidase chez les différents *Pasteurella* et conséquences quant à leur taxinomie *Ann Inst Pasteur* 107 649-652
- Mollaret H H 1961 Contribution à l'étude des caractères biochimiques de *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* (Bacille de Malassez et Vignal) *Ann Inst Pasteur* 100 685-690
- Morris E J 1958 Selective media for some *Pasteurella* species *J Gen Microbiol* 19 305-311
- Paterson J S and Cook R 1963 A method for the recovery of *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* from faeces *J Path Bact* 85 241-242
- Sachdeva L D, Kalra S L and Taneja B L 1956 A case of human infection with *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* rodentium in India *Indian J Med Sci* 10 114-121
- Schar M and Thal E 1955 Comparative studies on toxins of *Pasteurella pestis* and *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 88 39-42
- Snyder G A C and Vogel N J 1943 Human infection by *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* Report of case with recovery *North west Med* 42 14-15
- Thal E 1955 Immunisierung gegen *Pasteurella pestis* mit einem avirulenten Stamm der *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* *Nord veterinar med* 7 151
- 1962 Oral immunization of guinea pigs with avirulent *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* *Nature* 194 490
- Westphal O 1959 Die Struktur der Antigene und das Wesen der immunologischen Spezifität *Naturwissenschaften* 46 50
- Westphal O, Luderitz O, Staub A M and Tinelli H 1959 Vorkommen und immunologische Differenzierung zweier optischer Antipoden—Abequose und Colitose (3-Desoxy D und L Fucose)—als determinante Endgruppen in *Salmonella* O Antigen *Zbl Bakt (Orig)* 174 307

## TULAREMIA

- Allen W P 1962 Immunity against tularemia passive protection of mice by transfer

- Wilson H E and Carhart S 1961 Tularemia vaccine study II Respiratory challenge Arch Int Med 107 702-714
- Saslaw S, Carlisle H N and Hinchliffe V 1962 Studies with tularemia vaccines in volunteers V Immunodiffusion studies with *Pasteurella tularensis* antigen human antibody systems Am J Med Sci 244 175-185
- Stansberry M H and Woodward J M 1962 Cellular defenses of white rats in immunity to tularemia Bact Proc M127 p 94
- Stanziale W G 1957 *In vitro* bactericidal activity of blood for *Pasteurella tularensis* J Immun 78 156-159
- Stefanye D 1961 Lipopolysaccharides of *Pasteurella tularensis* Bact Proc M110 p 129
- Tigertt W D 1962 Soviet viable *Pasteurella tularensis* vaccines A review of selected articles Bact Rev 26 354
- Tulis J J and Eigelsbach H T 1961 The use of double diffusion in agar for the study of *Pasteurella tularensis* antigens and precipitins Bact Proc M146 p 138
- Vereninova N K, Kalacheva N F and Tsareva S A 1962 On the problem of the acceleration of the diagnosis of tularemia I Detection of tularemia in dead rodents Zh Mikrobiol 33 107
- Vosti K L, Ward M K and Tigertt W D 1962 Agar gel precipitin analyses in laboratory acquired tularemia J Clin Invest 41 1436-1445
- Weinstein I, Guss M L and Altenbern R A 1962 Pyruvate oxidation by *Pasteurella tularensis* strains of graded virulence J Bact 83 1010-1016
- Woodward J M and Miraglia G J 1961 Influence of *Pasteurella tularensis* on enzymes involved in energy metabolism in tissues of rats Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 106 333-335
- Wright G G and Feinberg R J 1952 Hemagglutination by tularemia antisera further observations on agglutination of polysaccharide treated erythrocytes and its inhibition by polysaccharide J Immun 68 65-71
- Yager R H, Spertzel R O, Jaeger R F and Tigertt W D 1960 Domestic fowl source of high titer *P. tularensis* serum for the fluorescent antibody technic Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 105 651-654



- Lillie R D and Francis E 1936 I The pathology of tularemia in man (*Homo sapiens*) Nat Inst Health Bull No 167 p 1
- Ljung O 1958 The intradermal test in tularemia With particular reference to the reaction elicited in regions of different incidence of the disease Acta med scand 160 135 147
- Lukyanchenko A A Badalov M E and Koirichidi E K 1961 The effect of south west winds on the occurrence and spread of tularemia in the Don Delta focus Zh Mikrobiol 32 845
- McCrum F R Jr 1961 Aerosol infection of man with *Pasteurella tularensis* Bact Rev 25 262 267
- McDowell J W Scott H G Stojanovich C J and Weinburgh H B 1964 Tularemia U S Dept of Health Education and Welfare Public Health Service Communicable Disease Center Training Branch Atlanta Georgia pp 82
- McGavran M H White J D Eigelsbach H T and Kerpach R W 1962 Morphologic and immunohistochemical studies of the pathogenesis of infection and antibody formation subsequent to vaccination of Macaca virus with an attenuated strain of *Pasteurella tularensis* I Intracutaneous vaccination Am J Path 41 259 271
- Marchette N J and Nicholes P S 1961 Virulence and citrulline ureidase activity of *Pasteurella tularensis* J Bact 82 26 32
- Merriott J Shoemaker A and Downs C M 1961 Growth of *Pasteurella tularensis* in cultured cells J Infect Dis 108 136 150
- Mizuhara M and Yamanaka M 1961 The cytochrome of *Pasteurella tularensis* Nature 190 1024
- Moody M D and Downs C M 1955 Studies on tularemia I The relation between certain pathogenic and immunogenic properties of variants of *Pasteurella tularensis* J Bact 70 297 304
- Nagle S C Jr Anderson R E and Gary N D 1960 Chemically defined medium for the growth of *Pasteurella tularensis* J Bact 79 566 571
- Olsufjev N G and Emelyanova O S 1962 Further studies of strains of tularemia bacteria of the old and new world J Hyg Epidem Praha 6 193
- Olsufjev N G and Rudnev G P (eds) 1960 Tularemia Moscow
- Overholt E L Tigertt W D Kadull F J Ward M K Charles N D Rene R M Salzman T E and Stephens M, 1961 An analysis of forty two cases of laboratory acquired tularemia Treatment with broad spectrum antibiotics Am J Med 30 785 806
- Owen C R Bell I F Larson C L and Ormsbee R A 1955 Virulence of *Bacterium tularensis* II Evaluation of criteria of virulence of *Bacterium tularensis* J Infect Dis 97 167 176
- Parker D D and Johnson E 1957 Experimental transmission of *Pasteurella tularensis* by the flea *Orchopeus leucopus* (Baker) J Infect Dis 101 69 72
- Parker R R Steinhilber E A Kohls G M and Jellison W L 1951 Contamination of natural waters and mud with *Pasteurella tularensis* and tularemia in beavers and muskrats in the northwestern United States Nat Inst Health Bull No 193 61 pp
- Philip C B and Owen C R 1961 Comments on the nomenclature of the causative agent of tularemia Internat Bull Bact Nomenclature 11 67
- Philip R N Huntley B Lackman D B and Comstock G W 1962 Serologic and skin test evidence of tularemia infection among Alaskan Eskimos Indians and Aleuts J Infect Dis 110 220-230
- Pollitzer R 1963 A review of selected problems of tularemia in the Soviet Union Part I History and recent incidence of the disease Inst Contemp Russ Studies Fordham Univ 115 pp
- Pullen R L and Stuart H M 1945 Tularemia Analysis of 225 cases J A M A 129 495 500
- Puntigam F 1960 Erkrankungen an Tularemia bei Bediensteten in Zuckerfabriken Wiener tierarztl Mschr 47 401
- 1960 Erkrankungen an thorakalen Formen der Tularemie bei Arbeitnehmern in Zuckerfabriken Z Hyg Infektionskr 147 162 168
- Robinson D A and Mills R C 1961 Oxidation of reduced pyridine nucleotides in *Pasteurella tularensis* I Distribution of diaphorases and transhydrogenases Biochim biophys acta 48 77
- 1961 Oxidation of reduced nucleotides in *Pasteurella tularensis* II Separation of diaphorases and transhydrogenases Biochim biophys acta 48 85
- Sislaw S Eigelsbach H T Wilson H E Prior J A and Carhart E 1961 Tularemia vaccine study I: Intracutaneous challenge Arch Int Med 107 689 701
- Sislaw S Eigelsbach H T Prior J A

TABLE 1 MAJOR SPECIES OF BRUCELLA

SPECIES	CO REQUIREMENT	H.S. REQUIREMENT	GROWTH		AGGLUTINATION IN MONOSPECIFIC	
			ON THIONIN	ON BASIC FUCHSIN	ABORTUS SERA	MELITENSIS SERA
<i>Br melitensis</i>	—	—	+	+	—	+
<i>Br abortus</i>	+	+ 4 days	—	+	+	—
<i>Br suis</i>	—	++ 5 days	+	—	+	—

tween the abortus and the melitensis organisms were found by Evans (1918 1923) during studies of pathogenic bacteria in milk. Feuster and Meyer (1920) recommended that the three species be placed in a newly created genus *Brucella* because of similarities in their bacteriologic and serologic features and similarities in the infections produced by them in guinea pigs and monkeys.

After a period marked by extreme controversy infectivity of *Br abortus* for man was accepted due in large measure to the identification of *Br abortus* in milk known to have been ingested by patients and to the identification of *Br abortus* as the etiologic agent of undulant fever in Rhodesia as well as of a similar case in the United States (Orpen 1924). *Br abortus* differs from the other species in its reduced ability to cause disease in man. Epidemiologic and clinical data point to the fact that large numbers of *Br abortus* may be ingested over a long period of time via contaminated milk without producing severe illness in many of those exposed. Under other circumstances especially via other routes of infection *Br abortus* may cause severe and even fatal infections.

An agent for vaccination against bovine brucellosis became available through the isolation of an attenuated strain of *Br abortus* by Buck in 1923. Designated as strain 19 it is so attenuated as not to be excreted in milk from vaccinated animals. Despite its safety in cattle it is still capable of causing disease in other animals including man under certain conditions.

#### CLASSIFICATION OF BRUCELLA SPECIES

The tests used most widely for classification of brucella strains are

- 1 Requirement for increased CO concentration in the environment a quality which carries weight especially when used to study cells obtained on primary isolation from the host.

- 2 The production of H S for a continuous period of 4 to 5 days.

- 3 Bacteriostatic action of basic fuchsin and thionin incorporated in solid media and

- 4 Agglutination in monospecific sera. This allows separation of *Br abortus* and *Br suis* from *Br melitensis*.

The differences between the species are quantitative and no single test suffices for certain identification.

With the four tests the major biotypes or species segregate themselves as shown in Table 1.

Strains deviating from this standard pattern may also show an unusual geographic incidence (Cruckshank and Madge 1954; Pickett and Nelson 1955). The fermentative and oxidative metabolism of the various brucella biotypes is also used for classification (Meyer and Cameron 1961; Meyer 1961). For example some cultures behave biochemically and serologically like *Br melitensis* (Great Britain Germany Uganda) but react oxidatively like *Br abortus* and strains that react serologically like *Br abortus* show the oxidative pattern typical of *Br melitensis* (Wundt 1962).

The earliest suggestion of the existence of bacteriophages for brucella species was given by the work of Pickett and Nelson (1950 1951). The actual isolation of brucellaphages in the USSR by Popkhadze and Abashidze (1955) and by Parnas in Poland contributed a reagent active against *Br abortus* and when used in much larger amounts also active against *Br suis*. Comprehensive studies have been made of the lytic action of the existing phages against

## 28

## The Brucellae

## INTRODUCTION

The brucellae are aerobic small, gram negative coccobacilli which are nonmotile and nonsporulating. Capsules when present are small. Some strains require added carbon dioxide for growth on laboratory media. The organisms grow poorly on ordinary media and growth does not occur under strictly anaerobic conditions. There is little fermentation of carbohydrates in usual media or oxidative action on various substrates is of value in classification. Urea is hydrolyzed to a variable extent and catalase activity is high. The organisms are classified on the basis of dye tolerance, H<sub>2</sub>S production, CO<sub>2</sub> requirement, agglutination in mono specific serum, oxidation of glutamic acid, ornithine, ribose and lysine, and susceptibility to specific bacteriophage. They are characterized by an intracellular existence in the host. In animals such as cattle, sheep, goats and pigs, genital and mammary gland infection is a common event and placentitis occurs with premature expulsion of the fetus. Brucellosis in man produces a wide range of illnesses.

Many names have been used to describe various forms of the disease: undulant fever, Mediterranean gastric remittent fever, Neapolitan disease, Malta fever, Texas fever, Rio Grande fever, and Bang's disease. In animals, brucellosis is also known as Bang's disease, infectious abortion or epizootic abortion.

## HISTORY

Precise information concerning brucellosis began with the description of the clinical signs by Marston (1861), writing on gastric intermittent fever. *Brucella melitensis* type species of the genus and the etiologic agent of the disease as it occurred on Malta was isolated from the spleen of a human case at necropsy by Bruce (1887) who named the organism *Micrococcus melitensis*. Because of the high incidence of this disease in military and naval personnel stationed on Malta, the British government created the Mediterranean Fever Commission in 1904, the responsibility of which was to determine the source of the disease and means for its control. The work of this group was rewarded by the isolation of the organism from milk and urine of apparently healthy goats following the detection of brucellar agglutinins in their sera (Zammit 1905). The source of human Malta fever was thus clarified at once and when the consumption of raw goat's milk was stopped, the incidence of the disease among military and naval personnel declined markedly.

*Brucella abortus* was isolated by Bang (1897) from cases of bovine infection and a third species, *Brucella suis*, was isolated by Traub (1914) from the fetus of a sow (see Hayes and Traub 1920).

The three organisms were regarded as members of distinct genera until the close bacteriologic and serologic relationships be-

TABLE 1 MAJOR SPECIES OF BRUCELLA

SPECIES	CO REQUIREMENT	H S REQUIREMENT	GROWTH		AGGLUTINATION IN MONOSPECIFIC	
			ON THIONIN	ON BASIC FUCHSIN	ABORTUS SERA	MELITENSIS SERA
<i>Br melitensis</i>	—	—	+	+	—	+
<i>Br abortus</i>	+	+ 4 days	—	+	+	—
<i>Br suis</i>	—	++ 5 days	+	—	+	—

tween the abortus and the melitensis organisms were found by Evans (1918, 1923) during studies of pathogenic bacteria in milk. Feusier and Meyer (1920) recommended that the three species be placed in a newly created genus *Brucella* because of similarities in their bacteriologic and serologic features and similarities in the infections produced by them in guinea pigs and monkeys.

After a period marked by extreme controversy infectivity of *Br abortus* for man was accepted due in large measure to the identification of *Br abortus* in milk known to have been ingested by patients and to the identification of *Br abortus* as the etiologic agent of undulant fever in Rhodesia as well as of a similar case in the United States (Orpen 1924). *Br abortus* differs from the other species in its reduced ability to cause disease in man. Epidemiologic and clinical data point to the fact that large numbers of *Br abortus* may be ingested over a long period of time via contaminated milk without producing severe illness in many of those exposed. Under other circumstances especially via other routes of infection *Br abortus* may cause severe and even fatal infections.

An agent for vaccination against bovine brucellosis became available through the isolation of an attenuated strain of *Br abortus* by Buck in 1923. Designated as strain 19 it is so attenuated as not to be excreted in milk from vaccinated animals. Despite its safety in cattle it is still capable of causing disease in other animals including man under certain conditions.

#### CLASSIFICATION OF BRUCELLA SPECIES

The tests used most widely for classification of brucella strains are

1 Requirement for increased CO concentration in the environment — quality which carries weight especially when used to study cells obtained on primary isolation from the host

2 The production of H S for a continuous period of 4 to 5 days

3 Bacteriostatic action of basic fuchsin and thionin incorporated in solid media and

4 Agglutination in monospecific sera. Thus allows separation of *Br abortus* and *Br suis* from *Br melitensis*.

The differences between the species are quantitative and no single test suffices for certain identification.

With the four tests the major biotypes or species segregate themselves as shown in Table I.

Strains deviating from this standard pattern may also show an unusual geographic incidence (Cruickshank and Madge 1954; Pickett and Nelson 1955). The fermentative and oxidative metabolism of the various brucella biotypes is also used for classification (Meyer and Cameron 1961; Meyer 1961). For example some cultures behave biochemically and serologically like *Br melitensis* (Great Britain, Germany, Uganda) but react oxidatively like *Br abortus* and strains that react serologically like *Br abortus* show the oxidative pattern typical of *Br melitensis* (Wundt 1962).

The earliest suggestion of the existence of bacteriophages for brucella species was given by the work of Pickett and Nelson (1950, 1951). The actual isolation of brucellaphages in the USSR by Popkhadze and Abashidze (1955) and by Parnas in Poland contributed a reagent active against *Br abortus* and when used in much larger amounts also active against *Br suis*. Comprehensive studies have been made of the lytic action of the existing phages against

the brucella biotypes (Brinley Morgan, 1962 cf Parnas 1963) The limited range of lytic activity of the brucellaphages limits their suitability for use in classification and epidemiologic studies (Jones 1960, Jablonski 1962 Van Drimmelen 1960)

The combined use of classic tests, oxidative metabolic rate analyses and phage susceptibilities has led to a provisional description of the major species of brucella as follows

*Brucella melitensis*: Aerobic Produce no H<sub>2</sub>S or no more than a trace of H<sub>2</sub>S on ordinary media Usually grow in the presence of basic fuchsin and thionin M antigen usually predominant Oxidize L alanine D alanine, L asparagine and L glutamic acid Do not oxidize L arabinose D galactose D ribose D xylose, L arginine DL citrulline DL ornithine or L lysine Not lysed by brucella phage Tbilisi (Tb) at routine test dilution Usually pathogenic for goats and sheep but can also affect other species including cattle and man

*Brucella abortus*: Usually require added CO for growth especially on primary isolation Usually produce moderate amounts of H<sub>2</sub>S but may be negative Usually grow in presence of basic fuchsin but inhibited by thionin A antigen usually predominant Oxidize L alanine, D alanine L asparagine L glutamic acid L arabinose D galactose and D ribose do not oxidize D xylose L arginine DL-citrulline DL-ornithine or L lysine Cultures in the smooth or smooth intermediate phase are lysed by brucella phage Tb at routine test dilution Usually pathogenic for cattle causing abortion but can also affect other species including man

*Brucella suis*: Aerobic Produce large amounts of H<sub>2</sub>S or none at all Grow in the presence of thionin but usually inhibited by basic fuchsin A antigen usually predominant Oxidize L alanine D alanine L glutamic acid L arabinose D galactose D ribose D xylose L-arginine DL citrulline DL-ornithine and L lysine Do not oxidize L asparagine Not lysed by brucella phage Tb at routine test dilution Usually pathogenic for pigs but can also affect hares and other species including man

The provisional biotypes are described in Table 2

New biotypes given the designation *Br neotomae* and *Br ovis* are still under discussion *Br neotomae* isolated from the desert wood rat resembles *Br suis* and *Br abortus* but retains distinctive dye sensitivities and the ability to ferment xylose arabinose, glucose, levulose and galactose This fermentative activity is not shared by existing accepted brucella biotypes (Stoener and Lackman 1957)

*Br ovis* the etiologic agent of ram epididymitis (Simmons and Hall 1953 Buddle 1953), has been observed only in the non smooth colonial phase and is not agglutinated by sera prepared against smooth brucella strains Antisera prepared against a suspension of *Br melitensis* containing smooth and nonsmooth colonial phases agglutinate the ovine strains as well as suspensions of rough or mucoid cells of *Br abortus* *Br ovis* ferments glucose maltose mannose and trehalose in Pickett and Nelson's method (1955) It is of considerable interest that ram epididymitis is strikingly controlled in nature by immunization with strain Rev 1 of *Br melitensis* (Van Drimmelen 1960 Van Heerden and Rensburg 1962)

*Brucella* strains isolated from northeastern Siberian reindeer have been described as a new species *Br rangiferis* (Pingin and Petukhova, 1962 Cherchenko and Bakaeva 1962) although the findings suggest that it should be included in the *Br melitensis* group (Reviews on the classification problems are found in Renoux *et al* 1955 Wundt 1961 Biberstein and Cameron 1961 the latter providing critical appraisal of the entire family *Brucellaceae*)

## MORPHOLOGY AND PHYSIOLOGY

The pleomorphism of these very small bacteria is a function of the age of the culture and the environmental conditions in the medium Although the organisms are typically rod shaped very short rods with pointed ends coccil forms and coccobacillary forms may predominate In an analysis of more than 300 strains it was shown that only 6 per cent of the *melitensis* strains and 46 per cent of the *abortus* strains were predominantly rod shaped The coccil forms of *melitensis* predominate in primary cultures

TABLE 2 DIFFERENTIAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE THREE SPECIES OF THE GENUS *Brucella* AND THEIR BIOTYPES<sup>1</sup>

SPECIES	Type	GROWTH ON DYES*										AGGLUTINA				METABOLIC TEST†				MOST COMMON HOST RESERVOIR	ROSTER STAIN	STAMP STAIN																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																													
		CO REQUIREMENT 5-10	H S PRODUCTION	THIONIN						MONO-SPECIFIC SERA	PHAGE TITR	GLUTAMIC ACID	ORNITHINE	RIBOSE	LYSINE	COMMON HOST RESERVOIR	ROSTER STAIN	STAMP STAIN																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																	
				a	b	c	FUCISIN	BASIC	A										M				RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	RTD	

Species differentiation is obtained on albumin or tryptose agar with the following graded concentrations of dyes from National Aniline Division Allied Chemical and Dye Co. New York 1% 0.000 (a) 1:50,000 (b) 1:100,000 (c) thionin and 1:50,000 (b) 1:100,000 (c) basic fuchsin. Other concentrations may be preferable with other growth media. Interpretation of results should be controlled with the reference strains of the species (*Br. melitensis* 16M *Br. abortus* 544 *Br. suis* 1330).

† Four substrates that provide for differentiation of the three species are given in the table. It is recommended however that all substrates be used for examining atypical strains.

‡ Usually positive negative varieties occur.

§ r<sup>+</sup> (rough) antigen present in all *Brucella* strains.

<sup>1</sup> Modified from Report of Special Committee on Taxonomy of *Brucella*.

from animal tissues or exudates, whereas the bacillary form of *suis* and *abortus* prevail under the same conditions. The organisms are variable in length 0.3 to 2.3 microns.

The detection of brucellae in heavily infected material such as placental specimens and tissues at necropsy can be carried out by the modified Kæster stain\* and the modified Ziehl-Neelsen method†. The brucellae, often located inside of cells, retain the primary stain.

Morphology of the organisms in their intracellular location in phagocytic cells may be observed in cell culture preparations by the above staining methods after thinly overlaying the preparation on the slide with agar which preserves the morphology of the host cell.

The brucellae are aerobic and grow more abundantly when liquid media are thoroughly aerated by shaking or sparging (Glassman and Elberg, 1946). Heavy suspensions of cells can be obtained by laboratory devices such as vigorous agitation or growth in a cellophane sac containing medium which in turn is immersed in simple isotonic fluid containing an adsorbent such as charcoal (Sterne, 1958). Such devices allow high yields even from small inocula. However, additional aeration is not required for primary isolation from infected material. In fact when the inoculum contains only a few organisms, initiation of growth is achieved most satisfactorily under conditions of reduced air supply (Gerhardt, 1958).

*Br. abortus* usually requires for primary isolation 5 per cent carbon dioxide in the gaseous environment, whereas *Br. suis* and *Br. melitensis* will grow without this supplement (Wilson, 1931). Although the major products of CO<sub>2</sub> fixation by *abortus* strains are pyrimidines, glycine and alanine, there is no direct explanation of the CO<sub>2</sub> requirement other than the suggestion that pyrimidine biosynthesis from CO<sub>2</sub> may be more

vital in those brucella strains requiring additional CO<sub>2</sub> than is the case for example of *E. coli* which also fixes CO<sub>2</sub> but does not require added CO (Newton, Marr and Wilson, 1954).

Culture media containing commercial peptones such as trypticase soy<sup>1</sup> and album support growth of the various species and strains. Growth can be obtained in meat infusion or potato infusion media supplemented by 10 per cent serum. Synthetic media have been devised but will not support the growth of all strains. Nutritional requirements have been reviewed by Gerhardt (1958) and Wundt (1961).

Primary isolation from animal or human tissues is sometimes complicated by the contamination of the specimen with other types of microbes. The crystal violet medium of Kuzdas and Morse (1953) has been of great value in the isolation of brucellae from such contaminated specimens. This medium is inhibitory for some strains but this may be overcome by omitting the crystal violet. The technique of Castaneda (1947) employing the biphasic broth agar system, is almost ideal for culturing small numbers of brucellae from blood specimens. Antibrucellar toxicity of peptones caused by elemental sulfur arising from the degradation of sulfur-containing amino acids (Schuhardt, Rode, Oglesby and Lankford, 1950) has caused much difficulty in the past. The addition of charcoal or the use of semisolid broths seems to help in neutralizing this toxicity. Newer methods of peptone production have all but eliminated the problem.

As mentioned above, the oxidative activity of strains on various substrates is now widely used to supplement fermentation tests in classifying brucella strains. The pattern of oxidation of amino acid and carbohydrate substrates seems to be sufficiently typical of species and their biotypes to characterize the strain irrespective of discrepant serologic and biochemical reactions (Meyer, 1961; Meyer and Cameron, 1961). *Br. suis* differs qualitatively from the other two species in that it also oxidizes the 4 amino acids of the urea cycle. *Br. suis* also consistently displays the highest rates of utilization of the carbohydrate substrates. The production of H<sub>2</sub>S from sulfur-containing amino

\*After heat fixation stain for 1 minute with newly prepared mixture of 2 parts saturated safranin and 5 parts normal KOH solution, wash, decolorize with 0.1 per cent of H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> for 10 to 20 sec., wash and counterstain with methylene blue solution.

†After heat fixation stain 10 minutes with 1:10 Ziehl-Neelsen carbol fuchsin, wash, treat with 0.5 per cent acetic acid for 30 sec., wash and stain with methylene blue.

acids in peptones is also a useful taxonomic quality *Br suis* (type I) varieties are active in this respect continuing to produce H<sub>2</sub>S on solid media for at least 4 days the 3 types of *Br abortus* are next in H<sub>2</sub>S productivity Occasionally a strain of *Br melitensis* will produce some H<sub>2</sub>S but for at most 1 day (This determination is usually made by daily placement of lead acetate impregnated filter paper in the air space over the agar slant) The pH range of urease activity expressed in terms of pH threshold (range pH 2 to 7) has been studied by Van Drum melen (1961) with apparently useful results on South African strains

## MUTATION

*Brucellae* undergo population changes during growth on laboratory media producing colonies of the smooth the intermediate the mucoid and the rough varieties (Marshall and Jared 1931) These colonial types as viewed by oblique reflected light (Henry 1933) appear as typically smooth transparent entire blue green tinted colonies (S) an intermediate (I) and/or mucoid (M) form of diminished virulence (Jones and Berman 1951) and the rough type (R) of minimal virulence The progressive changes S→R show increasing degrees of opacity and tinctorial trends to a brownish yellow The smoothness of the colonial phases can be tested on glucose glycerol or serum dextrose agar and by the application of the dyes crystal violet and 2,3,5 triphenyltetrazolium to the colonies (White and Wilson 1951 Huddleson Richardson Warner and Baltzer 1952) The tinctorial character of the colony is a direct function of the antigenic composition of the organisms and the reaction of the surface antigens with the dyes Antigenically nonsmooth cells are detected by their ready agglutinability in a drop of 1/1 000 acridavine solution performed as a slide agglutination test True smooth colonies (S) remain as a uniformly turbid suspension in the drop intermediate types (I) give varying results rough (R) colonies flocculate and mucoid (M) colonies show a slimy and threadlike flocculation So-called smooth R types (S<sup>R</sup>) and smooth M types (S<sup>M</sup>) give the reaction char

acteristic of R and M colonies respectively

Metabolites accumulating in the medium have long been thought to influence the colonial variation of the organisms The selective ability attributed to accumulation of D alanine as expressed in the culture by predominance of nonsmooth variants is suppressed by hydrogen acceptors such as nitrate ion methylene blue and resazurin reducing the iron content of the medium to trace amounts causes the predominance of highly virulent smooth types This is probably due to suppressed synthesis of heme enzymes (Altenberg *et al* 1957 Waring *et al* 1953 Reusse 1961) Conversely incubation of smooth cultures under reduced atmospheric tension gives predominance of rough types (Braun *et al* 1956) The metabolic pathway leading to the predominance of one or another colonial and antigenic type is not susceptible to single factor analysis and is clearly far more complex than the experimental designs would indicate

The complexity of the causes of smooth→ nonsmooth colonial changes is further reflected in similarly directing actions of pH Eh temperature and penicillin besides those mentioned above Conversely degradation products of deoxyribonucleic acid favor selection of smooth virulent types (Braun 1956)

Certain mutants compete successfully with the parent strain in the tissues of the guinea pig The ability of colonial variants to establish themselves in the host in competition with the smooth type depends on the duration of the S type infection in the later periods of S-type infection the hypersensitivity reactions operate less efficiently against nonsmooth mutants thereby increasing the ability of the latter to survive in competition with the smooth mutants The fact that less virulent nonsmooth types are able to persist in localized abscesses may be a result of the protection afforded such organisms against the tissue sterilizing mechanisms or of the local accumulation of metabolites or of an oxia favoring the selection of these mutants Accumulation of necrotic material containing deoxyribonucleic acid degradation products would tend to maintain some population of virulent cells also The phenomenon of *in vivo* selection of mutants is most complex



from animal tissues or exudates, whereas the bacillary form of *sus* and *abortus* prevail under the same conditions. The organisms are variable in length 0.3 to 2.3 microns.

The detection of brucellae in heavily infected material such as placental specimens and tissues at necropsy can be carried out by the modified Kpöster stain\* and the modified Ziehl-Neelsen method†. The brucellae often located inside of cells retain the primary stain.

Morphology of the organisms in their intracellular location in phagocytic cells may be observed in cell culture preparations by the above staining methods after thinly overlaying the preparation on the slide with agar which preserves the morphology of the host cell.

The brucellae are aerobic and grow more abundantly when liquid media are thoroughly aerated by shaking or sparging (Glassman and Elberg 1946). Heavy suspensions of cells can be obtained by laboratory devices such as vigorous agitation or growth in a cellophane sac containing medium which in turn is immersed in simple isotonic fluid containing an adsorbent such as charcoal (Sterne 1958). Such devices allow high yields even from small inocula. However, additional aeration is not required for primary isolation from infected material. In fact when the inoculum contains only a few organisms initiation of growth is achieved most satisfactorily under conditions of reduced air supply (Gerhardt 1958).

*Br. abortus* usually requires for primary isolation 5 per cent carbon dioxide in the gaseous environment whereas *Br. sus* and *Br. melitensis* will grow without this supplement (Wilson 1931). Although the major products of  $\text{CO}_2$  fixation by *abortus* strains are pyrimidines, glycine and alanine, there is no direct explanation of the  $\text{CO}_2$  requirement other than the suggestion that pyrimidine biosynthesis from  $\text{CO}_2$  may be more

vital in those brucella strains requiring additional  $\text{CO}_2$  than is the case for example, of *E. coli*, which also fixes  $\text{CO}_2$  but does not require added  $\text{CO}_2$  (Newton, Marr and Wilson 1954).

Culture media containing commercial peptones such as trypticase soy and "albumin" support growth of the various species and strains. Growth can be obtained in meat infusion or potato infusion media supplemented by 10 per cent serum. Synthetic media have been devised but will not support the growth of all strains. Nutritional requirements have been reviewed by Gerhardt (1958) and Wundt (1961).

Primary isolation from animal or human tissues is sometimes complicated by the contamination of the specimen with other types of microbes. The crystal violet medium of Kuzdas and Morse (1953) has been of great value in the isolation of brucellae from such contaminated specimens. This medium is inhibitory for some strains, but this may be overcome by omitting the crystal violet. The technique of Castaneda (1947) employing the biphasic broth agar system is almost ideal for culturing small numbers of brucellae from blood specimens. Antibrucellar toxicity of peptones caused by elemental sulfur arising from the degradation of sulfur-containing amino acids (Schuhardt, Rode, Oglesby and Lankford 1950) has caused much difficulty in the past. The addition of charcoal or the use of semisolid broths seems to help in neutralizing this toxicity. Newer methods of peptone production have all but eliminated the problem.

As mentioned above, the oxidative activity of strains on various substrates is now widely used to supplement fermentation tests in classifying brucella strains. The pattern of oxidation of amino acid and carbohydrate substrates seems to be sufficiently typical of species and their biotypes to characterize the strain irrespective of discrepant serologic and biochemical reactions (Meyer 1961, Meyer and Cameron 1961). *Br. sus* differs qualitatively from the other two species in that it also oxidizes the 4 amino acids of the urea cycle. *Br. sus* also consistently displays the highest rates of utilization of the carbohydrate substrates. The production of  $\text{H}_2\text{S}$  from sulfur-containing amino

\*After heat fixation stain for 1 minute with newly prepared mixture of 2 parts saturated safranin and 5 parts normal KOH solution, wash, decolorize with 0.1 per cent of  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  for 10 to 20 seconds, wash and counterstain with methylene blue solution.

†After heat fixation stain 10 minutes with 1:10 Ziehl-Neelsen carbol fuchsin, wash, treat with 0.5 per cent acetic acid for 30 seconds, wash and stain with methylene blue.

cysteine hydrochloride (ZøBell and ZøBell 1932) thus permitting dilutions for making viable cell counts

Destruction of brucellae by pasteurization occurs easily even if the milk is heavily contaminated. They are also quickly destroyed by hypochlorites, phenol, formaldehyde and the quaternary nitrogen compounds are disinfection is accomplished readily with quaternary compounds such as Roccal or Zephuran.

No loss of viability, immunogenicity or colonial variation occurs during storage for at least 225 days at 0°C after lyophilization (Heckly *et al.* 1961, Hutton *et al.* 1951, Van Drimmelen and Steyn 1958). Aging of the cells before the freeze drying process improves their survival. This has been shown to be due to the accumulation in the culture fluid of a waxlike substance of a lecithin nature (Bergman *et al.* 1957). Exposure of *Br. abortus* to 2 curies per liter of broth medium fails to sterilize the culture although stimulation of polymorphism and temporary inhibition of growth occurs (Ryagrizov and Litvinov 1960). Exposure of suspensions of *Br. abortus* containing from  $10^8$  to  $10^{10}$  cells per ml to x irradiation ranging from 750 to 1500 kiloroentgens completely inactivates the suspensions (Beutel 1962).

## ANTIGENIC COMPOSITION

Antisera prepared against the smooth form of any one of the 3 species agglutinate homologous and heterologous strains equally. Sera absorbed with a heterologous antigenic suspension act monospecifically on the homologous antigen albeit with some loss of activity (Evans 1923). Such monospecific sera serve as important diagnostic reagents. However, it is not possible with such methods to prepare a monospecific *Br. suis* anti-serum because the serologic relation of *Br. suis* and *Br. abortus* is too close. Some indication that antigenic individuality exists in *Br. suis* has come from gel diffusion patterns in which a particular band of diffusing antigen appears to be limited to strains of *Br. suis*. Antisera can be exhausted of agglutinins by absorption with large doses of heterologous suspensions; smaller doses leave the

agglutinins specific for the homologous suspension. In studying the kinetics of the agglutination test Miles (1933) showed the existence of two optimal ratios indicating the existence of at least two antigens on the surface of the cells.

A monospecific antimelitensis serum agglutinates only *Br. melitensis* due to its M antigen content yet fails to agglutinate *Br. abortus* which also possesses some M antigen. The M antigen on *Br. abortus* is apparently insufficient in amount or distribution for agglutination to occur. The agglutination of *Br. abortus* by an unabsorbed antimelitensis serum is presumably due to the abortus system of antigens. Miles (1933) postulated that the brucellae contain the two antigens A and M in different proportions characteristic of the two major antigenic species: *abortus* and *melitensis*; the abortus surface would be characterized by an A:M antigen ratio of 20:1. Quantitative precipitation reactions support these claims (Pennell and Huddleson 1938, Silverman and Elberg 1950) but also suggest the existence of additional antigens as was indicated by the behavior of the native antigen of *Br. suis* prepared by Miles and Pirie (1939).

Gel diffusion studies on soluble antigens distinguish the main antigenic varieties (Redfearn and Berman 1960). As many as 36 precipitinogens have been detected in preparations from *Br. melitensis* (Glenchur *et al.* 1962). Such bands are distributed among strains in quantitatively different ways so that a particular antigen might be easily detected in virulent strains but not detected in attenuated strains but the method thus far has contributed little information of taxonomic value. Cell wall preparations of *Br. suis* remove agglutinating activity in parallel with the removal of mouse protective activity from rabbit sera. Protective ability of a serum was measured by its ability to eliminate the brucellae from the spleens of mice within a week or two after infection.

The cell walls are more effective immunizing agents for mice and guinea pigs than the corresponding whole cells as measured by the numbers of brucellae in the

because of the large number of variables involved (Braun *et al* 1951)

Variations in brucellae may also be due to the action of bacteriophage Pickett and Nelson (1951) first described the isolation of phages active against brucella during their studies on the production of L forms in blood cultures and stressed the importance of these forms in pathogenesis. Using phages isolated in the USSR Ostrowskaya and others observed that the antigenic activity of phage resistant attenuated variants of *Br abortus* strain 146 is weaker than that of the parent strains. The variant strains contain more polysaccharide and less DNA and proteins proportionally than do parent strains. The polysaccharides are composed of more uronic acid and sugars than in the parent strain and the mutants acquire arabinose and xylose in their make up (Dubrovskaya, Ostrovskaya and Glubokina 1958; Dubrovskaya and Ostrovskaya, 1960). Cells carrying phage are extremely mucoid in colonial appearance (Jones, McDuff and Wilson 1962) are reduced in their urease activity and H<sub>2</sub>S production and are much less virulent for guinea pigs but retain their original dye sensitivities. It is not yet clear whether true lysogeny occurs. The strange geographic distribution of phages and of lysogenic strains of brucellae may parallel the geographic distribution of the species themselves (Jones, McDuff and Wilson, 1962).

Species transformations *in vitro* have been looked for in culture collections for many years. Huddleson (1961) studied the possibility of changing in the laboratory the biochemical and the antigenic characteristics used in speciation but could find no evidence for it. However cells of the various species could develop resistance to dyes formerly inhibitory to them. Earlier experiments on parabiosis by Lisbonne *et al* (1938) later developed by Lederberg in transduction experiments purported to show compatibilities and incompatibilities between the growth of two species of brucellae separated only by parolodion membranes. Lisbonne claimed also to have demonstrated the induction of H<sub>2</sub>S production in *Br melitensis* growing parabolically with *Br suis* initially the only sulfide producer of the pair. These results

bear re examination in the light of the advances in methods and concepts of the last decade.

## STERILIZATION

Brucellae are killed by direct sunlight but are easily protected from ultraviolet wave lengths by the common vehicles in which they are discharged from the host. In pastures and barnyards they have survived from 65 days to 182 or more days in dead fetuses and fetal membranes (Bosworth 1934/35).

In dry soil and protected from sunlight *Br melitensis* has survived up to 69 days. *Br abortus* survive freezing temperature over 824 days in bovine urine, lake water, tap water, raw milk, bovine feces and soil. At temperatures of 18 to 22° C an initial population of 500 million cells per ml of *Br melitensis* in unsterile water fell in 60 days to 10 000 per ml (Ogarkov 1962).

In cheeses made from contaminated milk of goats and sheep by rennet coagulation *Br melitensis* survive more than 2 months but less than 3 months as demonstrated by inoculation into guinea pigs (Gargam 1952). Goat and sheep cheeses are most serious sources of infection when unpasteurized because they may contain enormous numbers of virulent *melitensis* organisms. In countries of the Middle East they are responsible for epidemics of human brucellosis in the spring when the flocks are brought down from the hills and the accumulated stores of cheeses are distributed in the towns and villages. Brucellae from contaminated milk are killed within a few days during the aging process in cheese but survive up to 11 days in butter.

Under experimental conditions 45 per cent of the organisms survive from the aerosol state for 24 hours at 20° C and 12 per cent relative humidity. The brucellae will survive 6 months or longer with little loss if the cell suspensions are added to ascorbic acid gelatin mixtures or dextrin solution whereas they begin to die off 10 minutes after being suspended in phosphate solutions and in physiologic fluids such as Ringer-Locke and Tyrode. In contrast they survive in a mixture of inorganic salts and

in the uterus the genitalia skeletal structures and in the reticuloendothelial system with the occurrence of abscesses for example in the spleen. The Danish strain of *Br suis* does not appear to be a human pathogen.

In cattle infection by *Br abortus* produces widespread necrosis and exudation in the placenta and uterine carunculae. Death of the fetus results possibly from interference with fetal circulation by the inflammatory process and abortion occurs after necrosis and separation of cotyledons. Localization in the supramammary lymph nodes leads to excretion of organisms in the milk.

The disease of sheep produced by *Br ovis* is characterized by lesions of the epididymes, the tunicae vaginales and the testes in the ram and by placentitis in the ewe with abortion or neonatal death of lambs.

Brucellosis in the reindeer of northern Siberia and the transpolar region appears to have been introduced by cattle. Abortions, fever, depression and death may follow infection of reindeer by all of the brucella species. Joint and ligamental lesions, bursitis, mastitis and metritis, orchitis and epididymitis were also reported by Cherchenko (1961). However, bacteremia is not frequent. Apparently only animals over 6 to 12 months of age are susceptible to the clinical disease, although young animals are probably infected within the first 3 to 4 months of life. The disease is most prevalent in the autumn and the spring. The strain responsible for this animal disease seems not to be highly pathogenic for man.

Experimental infections are easily induced by many different routes in the guinea pig, the rabbit, the mouse, the monkey, the cotton rat and the hamster. The guinea pig is the most susceptible in terms of minimal numbers of bacilli required for infection by the subcutaneous route. Differentiation of species by the lesions they produce in the various animal species has been claimed, but the great variation in virulence among strains and the variation in susceptibility among individual animals makes this a questionable procedure.

Granted that the picture in the guinea pig varies with the strain, the species and the dose injected, one usually observes—4 to 5 weeks after subcutaneous injection—swollen lymph nodes draining the injection site, en-

larged and engorged spleen and some scattered grayish foci in the liver. Testicular lesions may be observed. The spleen and/or the lymph nodes often are the only sites from which the organisms can be recovered in the guinea pig. *Br melitensis* infections are most virulent for guinea pigs, often leading to death.

The hare has received much attention during the past several years because it acts as a reservoir of infection in nature (Bouvier *et al.* 1954). Bendtsen *et al.* (1956) presented evidence that infection of swine in Denmark is maintained by hares which carry *Br suis* in necrotizing lesions of the testicles, the uterus, the mammary glands, the spleen, the lungs and the liver as the principal organs of localization. Taran *et al.* (1962) failed to isolate brucellae from 200 gerbils (*Meriones meridianus*) collected under natural conditions, confirming thereby the improbability that this rodent constitutes a natural reservoir.

The role of ticks in the spread of brucellosis is widely discussed. Rementsova (1962) has summarized the world wide studies on brucellosis of wild animals and has claimed that arthropods and insects transfer the infection to wild rodents which act as permanent reservoirs. However, studies on ticks, fleas, flies, etc. for carriage and transmitting ability have yielded conflicting results. The view that farm animals are in fact the main spreaders of their own infection still retains the greatest plausibility (Taran 1960). The role of ticks seems improbable in the light of their ability to eliminate brucellae from their tissues despite their infectiousness during metamorphosis. Their role, if any, is probably mechanical rather than biologic (Gudoshnik 1955).

## PATHOGENESIS

Although the infectious process undoubtedly involves complex pathways, it is possible to derive a few general principles from the picture of brucella infection in the various host species. *Br abortus* infection in the pregnant bovine is perhaps most thoroughly studied and serves as a model for the genus. The description is based on the elegant work of Payne (1959).

Following a conjunctival infection (not

spleens of immunized animals 7 days after challenge (Foster and Ribí 1962, Markenson Sulitzeanu and Oltzki 1962) Furthermore the cell walls of organisms obtained from infected animals seem to contain materials which contribute to intracellular survival and growth these materials may be important immunogens but have not yet been produced in vitro (Smith and Fitzgeorge, 1964)

Glenchur *et al* (1963) found that the soluble constituents of brucella induce antibodies active in agglutination precipitation blocking reactions and cutaneous hypersensitivity The antigens obtained by phenol extraction (Miles and Pirie 1939 Plescia *et al* 1961) or by trichloroacetic acid precipitation (Dubrovskaya 1951 1954) contain phospholipids, carbohydrate a formyl derivative of an amino polyhydroxy compound which may be an amino sugar and a DNA-rich fraction The polysaccharides obtained by Dubrovskaya (1951) are composed of glucose galactose glucosamine and hexuronic acids there is at present no evidence that these polysaccharides account for species specificity

In addition to the major antigenic constituents of the smooth forms mucoid and rough variants possess antigens dominant for the respective phases these antigens seem to be deeply situated in smooth cells However these do not interfere with the A and M antigens when the latter are dominant as in the smooth phase

*Pasteurella*, *Salmonella*, *Vibrio* and *Brucella* spp seem to possess certain antigenic determinant groups in common a fact which may account for a certain amount of cross reaction when sera from fevers of undetermined origin are being studied for etiologic identification Proper use of the agglutination absorption test will readily identify these co-reacting antibodies

## INFECTION SPECTRUM

Brucellosis is primarily a zoonosis a disease of animals transmissible to man but not transmissible from man to man in nature The most pathogenic species for man are *Br melitensis* and *Br suis* although many strains of *Br abortus* also have high human

virulence Each species contains strains expressing the full range of virulence avirulence for both animals and man In view of the fact that the transmission of brucellae from one animal species to another and from one geographical area to another is in an active stage of evolution, it is unwise to describe the spectra of infection for each brucella species too narrowly and it is important to realize that the catalogue of natural hosts is still evolving

*Br melitensis* infection is the most important cause of brucella infection throughout the world in goats sheep and reindeer This species has also been isolated from camels (Africa) cattle swine wild hares fowl and wild guinea pigs

*Br abortus* is the principal cause of infection in cattle camels (USSR) gazelles (Egypt) water buffaloes and horses It has also been isolated from dogs swine wild hares wild rats chamois wild deer elk moose ground squirrels field mice and bison

*Br suis* is the principal cause of brucella infection of swine and wild hares It has also been isolated from horses wild rats cattle jack rabbits and dogs

In the goat infected with *Br melitensis* the febrile period begins 3 to 4 days after infection and the bacteremic phase occurs within the first week There are very few signs of continuing infection regular enough to serve diagnostically Abortion following a primary attack may occur throughout the flock in subsequent years abortions are observed infrequently Such signs as roughness of the coat lameness and mastitis may occur but the infection more frequently may be clinically silent as it progresses through the flock yet the infection remains active and organisms are shed in milk urine feces and vaginal secretions Principal sites of brucella localization in the infected animal are the lymph nodes the mammary glands the pregnant uterus and the kidneys Man becomes infected via skin contact with the infected tissues or discharges from the animal consumption of raw milk and other unpasteurized dairy products inhalation of contaminated dust and contact of the mucous membrane with infected materials such as manure feed and residues (Renoux 1957)

*Br suis* infections are frequently localized

in the uterus the genitalia skeletal structures and in the reticuloendothelial system with the occurrence of abscesses for example in the spleen The Danish strain of *Br suis* does not appear to be a human pathogen

In cattle infection by *Br abortus* produces widespread necrosis and exudation in the placenta and uterine carunculae Death of the fetus results possibly from interference with fetal circulation by the inflammatory process and abortion occurs after necrosis and separation of cotyledons Localized in the supramammary lymph nodes leads to excretion of organisms in the milk

The disease of sheep produced by *Br ovis* is characterized by lesions of the epididymis the tunicae vaginales and the testes in the ram and by placentitis in the ewe with abortion or neonatal death of lambs

Brucellosis in the reindeer of northern Siberia and the transpolar region appears to have been introduced by cattle Abortions fever depression and death may follow in infection of reindeer by all of the brucella species Joint and ligamentary lesions bursitis mastitis and metritis orchitis and epididymitis were also reported by Cherenko (1961) However bacteremia is not frequent Apparently only animals over 6 to 12 months of age are susceptible to the clinical disease although young animals are probably infected within the first 3 to 4 months of life The disease is most prevalent in the autumn and the spring The strain responsible for this animal disease seems not to be highly pathogenic for man

Experimental infections are easily induced by many different routes in the guinea pig the rabbit the mouse the monkey the cotton rat and the hamster The guinea pig is the most susceptible in terms of minimal numbers of bacilli required for infection by the subcutaneous route Differentiation of species by the lesions they produce in the various animal species has been claimed but the great variation in virulence among strains and the variation in susceptibility among individual animals makes this a questionable procedure

Granted that the picture in the guinea pig varies with the strain the species and the dose injected one usually observes—4 to 5 weeks after subcutaneous injection—swollen lymph nodes draining the injection site en-

larged and engorged spleen and some scattered grayish foci in the liver Testicular lesions may be observed The spleen and/or the lymph nodes often are the only sites from which the organisms can be recovered in the guinea pig *Br melitensis* infections are most virulent for guinea pigs often leading to death

The hare has received much attention during the past several years because it acts as a reservoir of infection in nature (Bouvier *et al* 1954) Bendtsen *et al* (1956) presented evidence that infection of swine in Denmark is maintained by hares which carry *Br suis* in necrotizing lesions of the testicles the uterus the mammary glands the spleen the lungs and the liver as the principal organs of localization Taran *et al* (1962) failed to isolate brucellae from 200 gerbils (*Meriones meridianus*) collected under natural conditions confirming thereby the improbability that this rodent constitutes a natural reservoir

The role of ticks in the spread of brucellosis is widely discussed Rementsova (1962) has summarized the world wide studies on brucellosis of wild animals and has claimed that arthropods and insects transfer the infection to wild rodents which act as permanent reservoirs However studies on ticks fleas flies etc for carriage and transmitting ability have yielded conflicting results The view that farm animals are in fact the main spreaders of their own infection still retains the greatest plausibility (Taran 1960) The role of ticks seems improbable in the light of their ability to eliminate brucellae from their tissues despite their infectiousness during metamorphosis Their role if any is probably mechanical rather than biologic (Gudoshnik 1955)

## PATHOGENESIS

Although the infectious process undoubtedly involves complex pathways it is possible to derive a few general principles from the picture of brucella infection in the various host species *Br abortus* infection in the pregnant bovine is perhaps most thoroughly studied and serves as a model for the genus The description is based on the elegant work of Payne (1959)

Following a conjunctival infection (not

unlikely in nature) bacterial proliferation occurs within 1 week in the regional lymph glands. Passage of organisms through the lymphatic system to the bloodstream is followed by splenic infection and spread to other organs such as supramammary nodes and uterus. Within a month of infection *Br. abortus* localizes in the interstitial connective tissue in the uterine wall then from the uterine lymphatics progresses to the lumen of the uterus with striking bacillary multiplication in the pregnant uterus. From the uterine lumen the organisms gain access to the area between the placental masses of blood vessel plexuses (the cotyledons) and the allantochorionic membrane the bacilli multiplying enormously in the chorionic trophoblast cells and in the placental tissue. This intracellular proliferation of brucellae probably leads to production of bacterial endotoxins which in turn may cause the abortion (Urbaschek 1961). The actual selective multiplication in fetal tissue has been attributed to the presence of erythritol a polyalcohol which stimulates growth of brucellae (Williams *et al.* 1962). This hypothesis is strongly supported by isolation of erythritol from tissues in amounts correlating with their susceptibility and by its ability to enhance systemic calfhood infections by brucellae.

The chorio-allantoic connective tissues and the fetal blood vessels are invaded next then the placental fluids and the fetal spleen. Fetal stomach and lungs are infected at or near the time of abortion.

This picture of initial lymphatic infection spreading to lymphoid tissue with further extension via the blood constitutes the central theme of pathogenesis with several variations observed in the individual host species.

The pregnant but not the nonpregnant uterus is selectively invaded in both bovine and rabbit (Payne 1959). However progesterone does not seem to be a factor in the increased susceptibility of the uterus (Payne 1960) although it does enhance systemic invasion and multiplication in the pregnant bovine and rabbit (Kniazeff and Elberg 1964).

The tissue response is proliferative. The basic lesion is a granuloma composed of epithelioid cells and lymphocytes it is in

dependent of the existence of hypersensitivity for its formation. Giant cells of the Langhans and the foreign body variety may also be included in the lesions of the lymphatics the spleen the liver bone marrow and other areas of localization. The histopathologic response to brucellar infection with the exception of the reaction at the injection site remains qualitatively the same despite the size of the inoculum and heals in about the same time again independently of the infecting dose. However the extent and the severity of the response is a function of dose. (For description of the genesis of these reactions see von Albertini and Lieberherr 1937 Braude 1951 Elberg *et al.* 1955 McCamish and Elberg 1962).

Brucellae are intracytoplasmic during a large period of the infection localizing in the mesenchymal and the ectodermal tissues (Meyer 1943). They are abundant within macrophages fibroblasts endothelial and reticular cells interstitial cells of the testes and alveolar cells.

When cell cultures of histiocytes of the inflamed peritoneum or from the pulmonary tree are infected virulent strains multiply intracellularly in normal histiocytes but not in immune histiocytes (Pomales Lebron and Sunebring 1957 Elberg *et al.* 1957). When the rabbit histiocyte (peritoneal or alveolar) is employed under conditions which promote growth and multiplication of the cells immune serum is necessary in the culture fluid for resistance to the cytotoxic action of the brucellae and for suppression of bacterial growth. Under other culture conditions and using other peritoneal inflammatory stimulants which affect the function of the histiocytes (Elberg *et al.* 1960) the serum appears not to be required (Holland and Pickett 1958).

The intracellular events which take place during inhibition of brucella growth by histiocytes have been explored only recently (reviewed by Elberg 1960). Histiocytes contain a lysozymelike substance which acts on the cell wall. Living brucellae are extremely resistant to this material but are rendered susceptible to it when first treated with glycine. Histiocyte extract glycine brucella systems cause lysis and death of the brucellae (Ralston and Elberg 1961).

Glycine action in histocytes may be enhanced by the addition of specific immune serum. The susceptibility of strains to this intracellular killing is correlated inversely with their virulence. These studies do not prove that histocytic lysozyme is involved in the destruction of brucellae in infectious processes; however, the fact that a simple amino acid such as glycine can render the cells susceptible suggests that other metabolites may alter wall structure and consequently resistance to tissue enzyme(s) (Stuebner 1962). Ultimately the demonstration of a role for lysozyme, if any does exist, will depend on the reconstruction *in vitro* of a multiplicity of factors, each of which might be important in potentiating stepwise degradations of the bacterial surface (Ralston, Baer and Elberg 1961).

The brucella endotoxin operates in the causation of illness in a manner similar to that of other gram-negative endotoxins (Spink 1956). Clinical complications such as vascular collapse and secondary shock following treatment with antibacterial drugs would appear to result from endotoxin liberation.

Spink (1957) regards the symptomatology of brucellosis as conditioned in large measure by the development of hypersensitivity to the bacterial products and by allergic inflammatory reactions locally and systemically. In his view the incubation period reflects the time required for hypersensitivity to develop. When this hypersensitivity is present from a prior exposure, reinfection leads to an incubation period measured in hours rather than days, due probably to the accelerated lysis of the organisms intracellularly and the liberation of endotoxins which trigger further allergic and toxic reactions. Absence of hypersensitivity may provoke prolonged intracellular parasitism in the reticuloendothelial system without much disturbance of these cells or too rapid a release of endotoxins, thus encouraging a more or less symptomless infection.

### CLINICAL PICTURE

The disease ranges from a completely symptomless state to a fulminating fatal malady. More than 150 different symptoms

are on record making differential diagnosis extremely difficult at times. The incubation period ranges from a few days to a few months, averaging between 8 and 30 days; the variation apparently depending on the size of the infecting dose and the previous history of sensitization to the organism.

The onset of the disease may be either abrupt with chills and fever or insidious. Chills, weakness, fatigue, exhaustion, severe frontal headache and backache are frequently encountered. At night profuse sweats and generalized aching of joints occur, especially in the back of the neck and the lumbosacral area. Fever of 101° to 105° F may be reached during the first week, rising in the late afternoon and the early morning hours and concluded by drenching perspiration of characteristic odor. Bronchitis may occur following direct inhalation infection (Meyer and Eddie 1949).

Frequently abdominal pain is present, probably due to mesenteric lymphadenitis or accompanying enlargement of liver and spleen. According to Janbon and Bertrand (1956), alterations in the liver are a regular feature of septicemic brucellosis. Aspiration biopsy of an enlarged and tender liver may reveal a simple hepatitis. Capillary congestion, Kupffer cell reaction and beginning granulomas characterize the microscopic picture. Spontaneous recovery is usual but failing this the changes evolve toward hemorrhagic subacute splenohepatitis with well-developed granulomas. In the malignant form hepatic necrosis may occur. Chronic infection of bile ducts commonly occurs, resulting in pain or jaundice.

As the illness progresses, anorexia, nausea, vomiting and mental depression may be present. Following hematogenous spread, secondary areas of localization may lead to endocarditis (Peery and Belten 1960), renal necrosis and pyelonephritis (Greene *et al.* 1952), various forms of nervous system brucellosis such as meningoencephalitis, subarachnoid hemorrhage, myelitis, myelopathy and neuritis (cranial and peripheral), as well as psychiatric changes (Fincham *et al.* 1963). Skeletal localizations such as spondylitis and osteomyelitis (Kelly *et al.* 1960) support the idea that no organ system is immune from infection. Personality



changes and anxiety states occur commonly in protracted disease. Abortion may occur in the human, although localization of the organism in the uterus is a much rarer event in pregnancy of the human than in other susceptible host species (For further discussion of the clinical aspects of brucellosis see Spink 1956 Dalrymple Champneys 1958).

The infection in humans usually subsides gradually and recovery sets in. There are often residual manifestations of an allergic like nature and other irreversible changes such as bone and joint lesions and impaired liver function (Naumov 1962).

Chronic brucella infection presenting as fever of undetermined origin occurs frequently following *Br. suis* infection and it may be difficult to confirm the diagnosis even when careful bacteriologic serologic or pathologic examinations are made. Recurrent chills and fever may extend over many years with localization of organisms in calcified necrotic lesions.

In summary Persons with a bacteremic type of infection are usually acutely and severely ill. Those who develop only rising serologic titers and from whom no organisms can be isolated show acute or subacute systemic manifestations (Bothwell 1962). In the experience of Martin *et al.* (1961) this group numbers three times as many patients as are to be found in the bacteremic group. Those who develop a localized type of disease yield positive cultures only when specific tissue is cultured. Their sera may be negative or give only low titers. Finally there may be latent completely symptomless infection.

### LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The only definitive diagnosis for brucellosis is the isolation of the causative organism. This is accomplished most frequently from the blood although cultures may also be obtained from sputum biopsy or aspirated material from bone marrow lymph nodes or other tissues urine and occasionally bile cerebrospinal fluid and stools. Since the organisms may only occur sporadically in the blood many successive specimens may have to be studied before culture is suc-

cessful. Blood cultures should be made in pairs with one set incubated at 37° C in the presence of 5 to 10 per cent additional CO<sub>2</sub> for several weeks. Subculture should be made frequently onto solid medium to isolate the typical smooth circular translucent, smooth-edged colonies which appear blue green and granular of surface when observed by oblique reflected light.

Fluorescent labeled brucella antiserum and labeled anti human gamma globulin have helped the direct visualization of the organism in human clinical specimens (Biegel *et al.*, 1962a). When a specimen is examined after treatment with labeled anti brucella serum or with unlabeled anti brucella serum followed by labeled anti human gamma globulin, the fluorescent bacterial cell walls can be seen under ultraviolet illumination. This procedure is especially useful in examination of impression smears of tissues (Biegeleisen *et al.* 1962b).

The tube agglutination test is the best standardized serologic procedure. Dilutions of test serum from 1:10 to 1:5120 reveal the agglutinating antibody in the overwhelming number of cases. The tests should be run against control positive sera calibrated against standard sera and cultures obtainable from brucella reference laboratories designated by the World Health Organization. Only organisms proved to be in the smooth phase should be employed as agglutinating antigens. Sera for tests should be taken before not after a skin test has been given in order to avoid the complication of possible antibody formation by an antigenic skin test reagent.

Tests should be made for the presence of incomplete or blocking type antibodies in cases with a strong presumptive clinical diagnosis of brucellosis despite a negative tube agglutination. This can be done by (1) performing the test in a diluent of 5 per cent sodium chloride instead of 0.85 per cent (2) using a protein diluent such as plasma albumin in place of saline (3) adding to all tubes in the series an equal volume of a dilution of positive serum which is known to agglutinate at that dilution (4) developing a positive test by adding the Coombs reagent (anti human gamma globulin serum) to

the nonagglutinating preparations and (5) centrifuging the tubes before making the reading.

Since a positive serum is a matter of titer determination attention must be paid to the level of agglutinins in the population of the area in general. Usually titers of 1:160 or higher are indicative of infection and more respect is accorded to sera the titers of which are in the higher ranges (Castaneda 1961).

The agglutination pattern in a group of 60 cases of acute brucellosis studied by Cluff *et al* (1957) revealed three distinct patterns of antibody response. One showed an abrupt rise in titer with the acute infection followed by a fall to below 1:100. The second showed a rising titer with the development of acute disease and a maintenance of the titer (over 1:100) during subsequent years. The third showed multiple elevations with intervening periods of depressed titer; the secondary elevations often accompanied by symptomatic relapse, secondary localizations and abscess formation.

Modifications of the agglutination test have been developed for the detection of animal infections. Sensitive antigens, plate tests and incubation at various temperatures all have been incorporated in various systems to make the tests more specific and to adapt them for mass screening surveys (Stableforth 1953). Cross reactions can be resolved and the primary agent identified by appropriate cross absorptions of the sera.

The prozone phenomenon wherein no agglutination occurs in the higher concentrations of serum antibody has been ascribed in part to the presence of blocking type antibody which is often present in chronic infections (Zinneman *et al* 1959). Agglutinating antibodies are distributed between the gamma and the beta globulins; blocking type antibodies occur first in the gamma fraction and then in the beta globulins later in the infection. They belong to the 4S to 5.6S whereas the agglutinins are 6.5S globulins (Aznar Reig and Lopez, 1960; Zinneman *et al* 1961). In serum of immune pigs agglutinins against *Br. suis* are in the gamma and the beta globulin fractions. These agglutinins belong to both 7S and

18S types, the 7S type being stable at pH 2.5 to 3 at which 18S type brucella antibody is destroyed (Frank *et al* 1962). *Br. abortus* agglutinins of hyperimmune rabbits are also in the light component, none being detectable in the macroglobulin (Hemmings and Jones 1962).

Sera of patients with chronic type abscesses also show precipitins which are usually absent in acute case sera (Glenchur and Seal 1962). Patients infected for less than 6 months usually have agglutinating type antibody rather than complement fixing type antibodies in their serum, a relation which seems to reverse itself after 6 months of infection (Foz and Garnga 1954). Blocking type antibodies can participate in the complement fixation reaction which may help to explain the higher fixation activity of sera later in the course of the infection.

The complement fixation test has been most useful in bovine and sheep brucellosis. Blagobetschenskaya (1954) and Yuskovets (1954) reported that they could distinguish the serologic reactions of vaccinated animals from those of naturally infected animals. Hill (1963) has confirmed this finding thereby allowing much greater freedom in the study of prevention and control measures previously regarded as unacceptable if they led to persistently positive agglutination reactions. For the diagnosis of animal brucellosis, modifications of the agglutination test which reveal the presence of agglutinins in milk samples have been used widely and include the milk ring test, the plate agglutination test and whey agglutination tests (McDiarmid 1958). (A review of diagnostic tests for bovine brucellosis has been presented by Hill 1963.)

An intracutaneous test with brucella preparations provides information on the allergic state in 24 to 72 hours. A positive reaction in brucellosis like a positive tuberculin reaction indicates that the host has had at some time an experience with the antigenic components of the brucellae. However, it does not indicate the current status of infection. Several preparations are available for the study of cutaneous hypersensitivity. They are composed either of heat-killed brucellae or of culture filtrates or of

partially purified cell extracts. When adequately purified they are not antigenic, are active in very high dilution and reveal the hypersensitive state very early after infection.

A comparative study based on response to dosage was carried out in the guinea pig with several preparations to determine the sensitivity and the antigenicity of the reagents. The reagents prepared by Benedict (1953a, b), Fust *et al.* (1949) and Ottosen and Plum (1949) were devoid of antigenicity and highly reactive indicators of sensitivity. (The subject is reviewed by Burki, 1961.)

Studies on the correlation between skin test sensitivity and other tests for sensitivity employing cells and tissues maintained under *in vitro* culture conditions suggest that the latter tests may be much more sensitive as indicators of hypersensitivity (Stenebring *et al.* 1958).

## TREATMENT

The current status of therapy has been summarized by Spink (1960). Supportive measures such as minimal physical activity, bed rest, symptomatic relief of pains and headaches, and sedatives during the acute phase are utilized. Antibiotics suppress the infection and thereby lowers the chances of secondary localizations and the development of excessive hypersensitivity. The tetracycline drugs are preferred, the optimal regimen being 500 mg orally every 6 hours for 21 days. This schedule may be repeated if relapse occurs in 6 to 8 weeks. In severe infections 1 to 2 Gm of streptomycin daily for 14 days is administered intramuscularly in addition to the tetracycline therapy. Peripheral vascular collapse may occur following the first course of antibiotics, apparently due to liberation of endotoxin in an already hypersensitive person. The use of corticosteroids or glucocorticoids with the antibiotic prevents or minimizes these toxic reactions (Abernathy and Spink, 1952; Halberg *et al.* 1956). Intramuscular injections of corticotropin in a dose of 40 mg every 3 hours or oral prednisone in dose of 20 mg 3 times daily, will help in causing the subsidence of toxemia and fever.

Antibrucella vaccines have been used for therapy in countries other than the United

States without agreement as to their value. They are often avoided because of the dangers of creating conditions such as high antibody levels, which are favorable for accelerated lysis of the brucellae and consequently acute hypersensitivity reactions and vascular collapse.

## EPIDEMIOLOGY

Brucellae are transmitted to man from the natural reservoirs in domestic animals. Data on insect transmission and the isolation of brucellae from wild rodents suggest the existence of secondary cycles which influence the natural history of human and animal infection. Transmission to man occurs by contact, ingestion, accidental inoculation and inhalation (Reviewed by Renouf, 1959). Contact with infected animals or their tissues or fluids allows brucellae to invade microscopic abrasions of the skin and the mucous membranes. Ingestion of contaminated milk, cream, cheese or other dairy products made from raw milk containing brucellae is the second major source of infection. Pickled meats and other uncooked foods contaminated by excretions of infected animals have also been incriminated. Studies of laboratory acquired brucellosis of humans and animals suggest that invasion may occur via the respiratory route.

Brucellosis is a significant occupational hazard among veterinarians, meat packing house and rendering plant workers, farmers, butchers, stock buyers, stock handlers and laboratory workers (Reviewed by Sadler, 1960). In humans the overall incidence is considerably higher in males than in females. However, the incidence is essentially the same in the two sexes where infection is due to use of unpasteurized dairy products, indicating that differences where they occur are due not to unequal susceptibility of the sexes but to extent of exposure (Hardy *et al.* 1931).

The geographic distribution of brucellosis has been presented in map and tabular form for Europe, 1922 to 1955, by Wundt (1956). No European country except Denmark is free of the disease. Human infection parallels animal infection and differences between adjacent areas are due to the differences in control of the animal disease. Most

important it is suspected that inadequate performance of diagnostic procedures to detect brucellosis in domestic animals has led to the exportation of infected animals into otherwise clean areas

Swine brucellosis has remained localized because of its self limiting nature and because there is less opposition to slaughter of infected swine than to slaughter of other animals Wundt states that in Hungary and northern Rumania a focus exists which has progressed in single outbreaks into Austria and Yugoslavia (the latter country now having almost eradicated the disease by rigorous measures) and has spread gradually over larger areas of Czechoslovakia The Alps separate Central Europe from the endemic area of *melitensis* infection in Southern Europe Migrating flocks of sheep bring it to the plains and along the coast (a method of spread also observed in the Middle Eastern countries such as Iran) *Melitensis* infection was spread into Western Germany after World War II by migrating flocks of sheep from France

Studies carried out on goats in the province of Cordoba Spain using the serum agglutination test the milk ring test and culture of milk sediment showed that about 16 to 29 per cent of 1538 animals studied in 118 herds could be considered infected Of the 118 herds 111 contained infected animals (Elberg 1959) on the basis of having 40 International Agglutinating Units per ml of serum In Latin America the highest prevalence is among dairy animals swine and goats are second in incidence and sheep third (Szyfres *et al* 1959)

In the United States fewer than 600 human cases were reported in 1961 The disease has been maintained in large part by the persistence of the infection in swine about 5 per cent of herds are infected Iowa Kansas and Illinois report the greatest number of cases Certain states according to Steele report more human cases than would have been predicted from the rate of elimination of bovine brucellosis they include Tennessee Georgia New York Nebraska South Dakota and Minnesota The remaining high incidence states are Virginia Arkansas Louisiana Texas and California Figures for human incidence are probably one fifth or less of the actual infections which occur in humans

Diagnostic difficulties the biology of the disease which includes symptomless and mild unrecognized cases and finally poor reporting contribute to the unreliability of the reported figures

In the U S S R human brucellosis is most closely related to sheep brucellosis whereas bovine brucellosis is of no great importance as a source of human infection About 3 000 human cases occur annually in the U S S R about 15 per cent of the disease incidence in 1952 The improvement is due partly to the annual human immunization of 5 million persons occupationally exposed and to the excellent but short term effectiveness of the massive immunization of 11 million sheep with strain 19 of *Br abortus* Dermal route revaccination of humans is practiced 2 to 3 months before the lambing season or before the main slaughter of sheep Where vaccination of sheep is not customary as in the Ukrainian Republic brucellosis has been controlled by the slaughter of entire flocks which contained reactors to the serologic tests

## CONTROL

It is accepted in most of the western countries that the problem of human infection will be solved with the control of infection in the animal reservoir Measures to accomplish this are based on regulations governing interstate movement of infected animals a program designed to immunize young animals segregate and/or slaughter serologically positive animals improve environmental sanitation and educate the public concerning the disease With regard to serologic detection by the routine agglutination test the gradual decrease of the infection in certain areas means that reactor animals will become more difficult to find The application of the Coombs test for blocking type antibody plus the complement fixation test then may be used to improve the detection of weak reactor animals

## RESISTANCE TO INFECTION

Epidemiologic data as well as experiments on human volunteers suggest that from 50 to 80 per cent of human beings are susceptible to infection by *Br melitensis* Under

severe exposure, 40 to 75 per cent of those infected exhibit either frank or abortive clinical attacks (Morales-Otero, 1929, Spink *et al.*, 1962). In general, a lower proportion of *abortus* infections leads to clinically apparent disease than in the case with the *suis* and the *melitensis* infections. In the United States, not more than 50 per cent of the human population is susceptible to *Br. abortus*. These figures correspond to natural outbreaks of the disease in limited groups acquiring the infection primarily from contaminated milk, it may be higher for other portals of entry.

Young animals are more resistant to infection than adults with the exception of swine. The great majority of human cases occur between the ages of 12 and 60. When the disease occurs in an undernourished population brucellae will infect all age groups and children respond as severely as adults (Bothwell 1962).

The existence of partial immunologic tolerance is suggested from studies on young lambs in which the newborns were exposed daily to *Br. abortus* for the first 65 days of life. When re-exposed to the infection as young adults the animals either failed to produce agglutinins or showed a lag phase as contrasted with the controls. In the test animals the proportion of blocking type antibodies was increased. Furthermore, the agglutinins persisted for a shorter period in the test group. However, no effect was observed on the complement fixing antibodies (Nagy 1963).

So-called nonspecific factors are of major importance in susceptibility and recovery. Macrophages derived from animals immunized against brucella are able to resist not only the cytotoxic action of brucella but also that of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (Elberg, Schneider and Fong 1957). Similarly, macrophages from animals vaccinated with BCG also resist the cytotoxic action of brucellae. The cross resistance phenomenon has been observed in guinea pigs by Pullinger (1936) and Henderson *et al.* (1956) and in the mouse by Sultzeanu *et al.* (1962). Hellman (1962) has extended the range of cross resistance in the guinea pig to include *Listeria monocytogenes*. The general principle appears to involve cellular immunity and intra-

cellular parasitism. Thus far, only organisms which lead an intracellular existence in their host induce the kind of cross resistance described above. The serum factor required for the demonstration of the macrophage immune reaction appears to be nonspecific; a variety of unrelated antisera will potentiate cellular immunity equally well (Elberg *et al.*, 1958).

Immunity following natural infection or vaccination with strains of attenuated virulence is relative in the sense that it can be overcome by strains of exceptional virulence or by massive exposures. Evidence of reinfection in humans is available. The development of immunity appears to occur in two phases. The first or superinfection immunity phase (Pollack *et al.*, 1952) occupies the time during which the original infecting organisms are still present in the tissues and during which the host shows a marked rise in resistance to reinfection. The second or sterile phase covers that period after the disappearance of the organisms of the primary (immunizing) infection.

The only clear-cut examples of a protective role of antibodies comes from the studies on monospecific sera and classical colostrum immunity. Sultzeanu (1958) has shown a correlation between agglutinating activity of the serum and its ability to enhance the removal of the bacilli from the spleen.

Many preparations have been tried for vaccination against brucellosis in cattle including virulent and avirulent living suspensions, killed vaccines and fractions of cultures. Repeated tests have proved that the strain 19 of *Br. abortus* isolated by Buck in the United States in 1923 is an efficient immunizing agent when given subcutaneously, intradermally or intracaudally. It is not ordinarily excreted in the milk and its biologic properties are stable during field use. It is highly agglutinogenic in the adult animal but when used during calthood (Haring *et al.* 1947) the agglutinin response is temporary and eventually weakens sufficiently not to confuse later tests due to field infections. Strain 19 is virulent when used on pregnant animals or when accidentally inoculated into man. It may reduce milk yields temporarily and rarely may also be fatal to calves (Roberts *et al.* 1962).

However it does reduce the abortion rate to a level of about 2 per cent (McDiarmid 1960)—a level perhaps due to other abortion inducing conditions. About 80 per cent protection is induced by strain 19 against relatively light challenges and about 50 per cent protection against 10 fold higher challenge infections. The calfhood protection induced by a single inoculation of strain 19 lasts until about the fifth pregnancy and possibly longer (Goode *et al.* 1957).

In an attempt to avoid living vaccines or agglutinin preparations studies have been conducted with heat killed organisms and adjuvant substances (such as Falba in conjunction with mineral oil) using smooth mucoid and rough strains (Berman and Irwin 1954). *Br. abortus* strain 45/20 gave almost as good protection in laboratory animals and cattle as strain 19 with the added advantage over the latter of being non agglutinin. However the fact that it requires two doses to be effective against relatively mild infection (McDiarmid and Sutherland 1957, McEwen and Samuel 1955) is a disadvantage which far outweighs the relative efficacy of the preparations (McDiarmid 1961). The mucoid strain developed by Huddleson (1947) has not proved to be useful.

Major advances have been made in the effort to produce effective immunizing agents for sheep and goats since 1957 mainly as a result of coordinated experimentation sponsored by the World Health Organization and the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. Renoux (1959) utilized a formalin killed strain of *Br. melitensis* mixed with Arlacel (mannide monooleate) and mineral oil. Effective in protecting pregnant goats this vaccine had the disadvantage of causing persistent local reactions at the site of inoculation and prolonged serologic reactions. An alternate line of approach (Herzberg and Elberg 1955) employed an attenuated streptomycin independent strain designated Rev I isolated from a streptomycin-dependent population of *Br. melitensis* (earlier proved to be too attenuated for practical use) which was able to confer solid immunity on pregnant goats (Elberg and Faunce 1957). A comparison

of two vaccines (Rev I vs adjuvant killed cells) revealed little difference as far as resistance to a 50 per cent infection dose but greater ability of Rev I to induce tissue clearance of the challenge infection (Jones *et al.* 1958a, b). The ability of Rev I vaccine to protect pregnant goats against natural exposure was confirmed in controlled experiments in Malta (Alton 1959, 1961a, b, 1962), Iran (Jones *et al.* 1963) and Israel (Neeman *et al.* 1963).

The Rev I strain confers striking protection against brucella epididymitis in young rams. Laboratory and field trials comparing strain 19 of *Br. abortus* and Rev I demonstrated long lasting immunity to severe natural infection as a result of Rev I vaccination and relatively poor protection by strain 19 (van Heerden and Rensburg 1962, Van Drimelen 1960). Mixtures of vaccine strains did not improve protection. Solid and complete immunity was induced by the Rev I strain alone whereas only poor protection was conferred on yearling rams by killed *Br. ovis* cells alone (Biberstein *et al.* 1962). Further trials on pregnant sheep comparing strain 19 and Rev I have confirmed the solid immunity induced by the Rev I strain against severe natural infection (Jones *et al.* 1963, Ivanov and Karilov 1962).

Excretion of Rev I in the milk of occasional goats and sheep has been reported. The deliberate serial passage of the vaccine strain by various routes through pregnant goats failed to bring about alterations in bacteriologic properties or virulence (Elberg and Faunce 1962). The strain is extremely stable in all of its characteristics and is readily differentiated from virulent field strains of *Br. melitensis* by rate of growth and antibiotic sensitivity pattern. It is agglutininogenic in all animals but may be distinguished by the complement fixation test from naturally infected animals. If given to pregnant animals the vaccine may induce abortion when injected 35 days after mating. When given before breeding it does not induce abortion (Elberg and Meyer 1958).

Other approaches toward immunization of sheep and goats include (1) vaccines containing a living smooth avirulent *Br. abortus* strain 112 mixed with a killed culture of a virulent strain (Lafenetre and Carrere

severe exposure, 40 to 75 per cent of those infected exhibit either frank or abortive clinical attacks (Morales-Otero, 1929, Spink *et al.*, 1962). In general, a lower proportion of *abortus* infections leads to clinically apparent disease than is the case with the *suis* and the *melitensis* infections. In the United States not more than 50 per cent of the human population is susceptible to *Br. abortus*. These figures correspond to natural outbreaks of the disease in limited groups acquiring the infection primarily from contaminated milk. It may be higher for other portals of entry.

Young animals are more resistant to infection than adults with the exception of swine. The great majority of human cases occur between the ages of 12 and 60. When the disease occurs in an undernourished population, brucellae will infect all age groups, and children respond as severely as adults (Bothwell 1962).

The existence of partial immunologic tolerance is suggested from studies on young lambs in which the newborns were exposed daily to *Br. abortus* for the first 65 days of life. When re-exposed to the infection as young adults the animals either failed to produce agglutinins or showed a lag phase as contrasted with the controls. In the test animals the proportion of blocking type antibodies was increased. Furthermore, the agglutinins persisted for a shorter period in the test group. However, no effect was observed on the complement fixing antibodies (Nagy 1963).

So-called nonspecific factors are of major importance in susceptibility and recovery. Macrophages derived from animals immunized against brucella are able to resist not only the cytotoxic action of brucella but also that of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (Elberg, Schneider and Fong 1957). Similarly, macrophages from animals vaccinated with BCG also resist the cytotoxic action of brucellae. The cross resistance phenomenon has been observed in guinea pigs by Pullinger (1936) and Henderson *et al.* (1956) and in the mouse by Sulitzeanu *et al.* (1962). Hellman (1962) has extended the range of cross resistance in the guinea pig to include *Listeria monocytogenes*. The general principle appears to involve cellular immunity and intra-

cellular parasitism. Thus far, only organisms which lead an intracellular existence in their host induce the kind of cross resistance described above. The serum factor required for the demonstration of the macrophage immune reaction appears to be nonspecific; a variety of unrelated antisera will potentiate cellular immunity equally well (Elberg *et al.*, 1958).

Immunity following natural infection or vaccination with strains of attenuated virulence is relative in the sense that it can be overcome by strains of exceptional virulence or by massive exposures. Evidence of reinfection in humans is available. The development of immunity appears to occur in two phases. The first or superinfection immunity phase (Pollack *et al.* 1952) occupies the time during which the original infecting organisms are still present in the tissues and during which the host shows a marked rise in resistance to reinfection. The second or sterile phase covers that period after the disappearance of the organisms of the primary (immunizing) infection.

The only clear-cut examples of a protective role of antibodies comes from the studies on monospecific sera and classic colostral immunity. Sulitzeanu (1958) has shown a correlation between agglutinating activity of the serum and its ability to enhance the removal of the bacilli from the spleen.

Many preparations have been tried for vaccination against brucellosis in cattle including virulent and avirulent living suspensions, killed vaccines and fractions of cultures. Repeated tests have proved that the strain 19 of *Br. abortus* isolated by Buck in the United States in 1923 is an efficient immunizing agent when given subcutaneously, intradermally or intracaudally. It is not ordinarily excreted in the milk and its biological properties are stable during field use. It is highly agglutinogenic in the adult animal but when used during calthood (Haring *et al.* 1947) the agglutinin response is temporary and eventually weakens sufficiently not to confuse later titers due to field infections. Strain 19 is virulent when used on pregnant animals or when accidentally inoculated into man. It may reduce milk yields temporarily and rarely may also be fatal to calves (Roberts *et al.* 1962).

- istics of a factor protecting the viability of lyophilized *Brucella abortus* cells J Bact 74 101 105
- Berman D T and Irwin M R 1954 The immunogenicity for cattle of *Brucella abortus* strain 19 and M vaccine (Huddleston) J Am Vet Med Ass 125 401-405
- Beutel H 1962 Versuche zur Inaktivierung pathogener Bakterien mit Röntgenstrahlen Zbl Bakt (Orig) 186 179 188
- Biberstein E L and Cameron H S 1961 The family Brucellaceae in veterinary research Ann Rev Microbiol 15 93 118
- Biberstein E L McGowan B Jr Robinson E A and Harrold D R 1962 Epididymitis in rams Studies on immunity Cornell Vet 52 214-227
- Biegeleisen J Z Jr Moody M D Marcus B B and Flynt J W 1962 The use of fluorescein labeled anti *Brucella suis* globulin for demonstrating *Brucella* antigen in animal tissues Am J Vet Res 23 592 595
- Biegeleisen J Z Jr Bradshaw B R and Moody M D 1962 Demonstration of *Brucella* antibodies in human serum A comparison of the fluorescent antibody and agglutination techniques J Immun 88 109 112
- Blagobetschenskaya O S 1954 Experiences in eradication of brucellosis in Gorka area Veterinariya 31 29
- Borodko S L and Sansonovich L G 1963 Duration of immunity in guinea pigs inoculated with combined live vaccine against plague tularaemia brucellosis and anthrax J Microbiol 2 25
- Bosworth T J 1934 Persistence of *Brucella* on the aborted foetus and its membranes Inst Anim Path Emb 4 65
- Bothwell P W 1962 Brucellosis in children Arch Dis Child 37 628 639
- Bouvier G Burgisser H and Schneider P A 1954 Monographie des maladies du lievre en Suisse p 44 Lausanne Service veterinaire cantonal et Institut Galli Valerio
- Braude A I 1951 Studies in the pathology and pathogenesis of experimental brucellosis I A comparison of the pathogenicity of *Br abortus* *Br suis* and *Br melitensis* II The formation of the hepatic granuloma and its evolution J Infect Dis 89 76-86 87 94
- Braun W 1956 Cellular products affecting the establishment of bacteria of different virulence Ann NY Acad Sci 66 348 355
- Braun W Altenbern R Kelsh J and Sandoval H 1956 Anoxia as a major factor causing population changes in antiserum containing cultures J Bact 71 417 420
- Braun W Gorchick A N Kraft M and Mead D D 1951 Studies on the in vivo fate of *Brucella* variants with different virulence J Infect Dis 89 286 295
- Bruce D 1887 Note on the discovery of a microorganism in Malta fever Practitioner 39 161 170
- Buddle M H and Boyes H W 1953 A *Brucella* mutant causing genital disease of sheep in New Zealand Aust Vet J 29 145 153
- Burki F 1961 Über die *Brucella* Polysaccharide Berlin Med 12 8
- Castaneda M R 1947 A practical method for routine blood cultures in brucellosis Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 64 114-115
- 1961 Laboratory diagnosis of brucellosis in man Bull WHO 24 73 84
- Cherchenko I I 1961 Brucellosis in the far north I Brucellosis in reindeer Zh Mikrobiol 32 135
- Cherchenko I I and Bakaeva O A 1962 Brucellosis in conditions of the Arctic region IV On the study of *Brucella* cultures isolated from reindeer Zh Mikrobiol 33 69
- Cluff L Trever R and Peeler R 1957 Personal communication
- Cruickshank J C and Madge B 1954 Observations on *Brucella* species based on the examination of 800 strains J Hyg 52 105 118
- Dalrymple Champneys Sir W 1960 *Brucella* Infection and Undulant Fever in Man London Oxford Univ Press
- Dubrovskaya I I 1951 Hydrolysis of the *Brucella suis* antigen complex and the chemical nature of the components Biokhimiya 16 41
- 1954 Comparative chemical studies of the antigen complexes of *Brucella* types Biokhimiya 19 137 143 (in Russian)
- Dubrovskaya I I and Ostrovskaya N N 1960 Changes in the process of preservation of the chemical composition of a variant of *Brucella* obtained under the influence of bacteriophage Biokhimiya 25 511 516 (in Russian)
- Dubrovskaya I Ostrovskaya N and Glukhina A 1958 Change in chemical composition of *Brucellae* induced by phage Biokhimiya 23 523
- Elberg S S 1959 Immunization against *Brucella* infection 7 Immunological and epidemiological studies in Cordoba Spain Bull WHO 20 1033 1052



1956) and (2) attenuated strains such as strain BA 19 of *Br abortus* used in the USSR (Orlov 1960)

Human immunization of those occupation ally exposed with a derivative of *Br abortus* strain BA 19, by the subcutaneous route has been carried out on a large scale in the USSR in view of the probability that control of the animal infections will not come for many years (Vershilova *et al* 1961) The massive vaccination campaign according to Vershilova and colleagues has resulted in a major reduction in the incidence of human brucellosis without undue risk of clinical complications due to immunization The report of Spink *et al* (1962) suggests a more conservative viewpoint of the safety of the Soviet strain BA 19 vaccine Despite such reservations the Soviet vaccine has received intensive field trials and is a licensed biologic product for use there The useful introduction of the dermal vaccination method was carried out by Smirnov *et al* (1958)

The Rev I and BA 19 strains were studied in humans by Spink *et al* (1962) Using 250 million cells of Rev I clinical disease was produced in 11 of 16 subjects Two of the 16 receiving BA 19 developed acute brucellosis Further studies carried out on cynomolgus monkeys have shown that as few as 260 cells of Rev I given subcutaneously induce a 1 000 to 10 000 fold increase in resistance over that of nonimmunized animals against respiratory challenge (Elberg and Faunce 1964)

Cell wall products have been tested by several groups for their immunizing effectiveness (Markenson *et al* 1959 Allen 1961 Smith *et al* 1962 Foster and Ribí 1962) Killed whole cell vaccines were prepared by ultrasonic inactivation by Gargani (1961) All of these preparations give encouraging results in the mouse and the guinea pig but further study is needed before their value against naturally acquired infection can be established

The use of immunizing mixtures made up of several bacterial species such as anthrax brucella tularemia and plague has led to controversial results Where the experiments have been carried out rigorously actual interference with immunity to brucella is characteristically the end result of the mixed

prophylactic reagents (Borodko and Sanonovich 1963)

## REFERENCES

- Abernathy R and Spink W W 1952 The influence of cortisone and adrenocorticotrophic hormone on brucellosis I Cortisone in experimentally infected animals *J Clin Invest* 31 947 957
- 1952 The influence of cortisone and adrenocorticotrophic hormone on brucellosis II Adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) in acute and chronic human brucellosis *J Clin Invest* 31 958 968
- Allen R C 1961 Studies on an immunogenic agent against *Brucella abortus* I Preliminary studies of an immunologically active soluble agglutinin *Am J Vet Res* 22 558 563
- Altenbern R A Williams D E Kelsch J M and Mauzy W L 1957 Metabolism and population changes in *Brucella abortus* II Terminal oxidation on oxygen tension in population changes *J Bact* 73 679 707
- Alton G G 1959 Brucellosis in Malta *Brit Vet J* 115 96 99
- 1961a Comparison under natural conditions of two vaccines for the immunization of goats against *Brucella melitensis* infection *Res Vet Sci* 2 232 239
- 1961b Vaccination of goats in the fields with the living attenuated *Brucella melitensis* vaccine (Rev I) Document Bruc/219 WHO
- 1962 The reaction of goats naturally infected with *Brucella melitensis* to vaccination with a living attenuated vaccine *Res Vet Sci* 3 326 333
- Aznar Reig A and Lopez A 1960 The protean aspect of the evolution of brucellosis *Rev clin esp* 79 388 395
- Bang II 1897 Die Aetologie des seuchenhaften Verwerfens *Z tiermed NF* 1 1
- Bendtsen H Christensen M and Thomsen A 1956 *Brucella suis* infection in hares as the cause of enzootic brucellosis in pigs *Nord veterinær med* 8 1 34
- Benedict A A and Elberg S 1953a Cutaneous hypersensitivity in brucellosis I Characterization of an antigen for detection of cutaneous hypersensitivity in brucellosis *J Immun* 70 152 164
- 1953b Cutaneous hypersensitivity in brucellosis II Chromatographic studies on the skin test antigen *J Immun* 70 165 170
- Bergmann D E Halleck F E Mechalis B J and Tenney R I 1957 Character

- istics of a factor protecting the viability of lyophilized *Brucella abortus* cells *J Bact* 74 101-105
- Berman D T and Irwin M R 1954 The immunogenicity for cattle of *Brucella abortus* strain 19 and M vaccine (Huddleson) *J Am Vet Med Ass* 125 401-405
- Beutel H 1962 Versuche zur Inaktivierung pathogener Bakterien mit Röntgenstrahlen *Zbl Bakt (Orig)* 186 179-188
- Biberstein E L and Cameron H H 1961 The family Brucellaceae in veterinary research *Ann Rev Microbiol* 15 93-118
- Biberstein E L McGowan, B Jr Robinson E A and Harrold D H 1962 Epididymitis in rams Studies on immunity *Cornell Vet* 52 214-227
- Biegeleisen J Z Jr Moody M D Marcus B H and Flynt J W 1962 The use of fluorescein labeled anti *Brucella suis* globulin for demonstrating *Brucella* antigen in animal tissues *Am J Vet Res* 23 592-595
- Biegeleisen J Z Jr Bradshaw B R and Moody M D 1962 Demonstration of *Brucella* antibodies in human serum A comparison of the fluorescent antibody and agglutination techniques *J Immunol* 88 109-112
- Blagobetschenskaya O S 1954 Experiences in eradication of brucellosis in Gorka area *Veterinariya* 31 29
- Borodko S L and Sansonovich L G 1963 Duration of immunity in guinea pigs inoculated with combined live vaccine against plague tularemia brucellosis and anthrax *J Microbiol* 2 25
- Bosworth T J 1934 Persistence of *Brucella* on the aborted foetus and its membranes *Inst Anim Path Emb* 4 65
- Bothwell P W 1962 Brucellosis in children *Arch Dis Child* 37 628-639
- Bouvier G Burgisser H and Schneider P A 1954 Monographie des maladies du bœuf en Suisse p 44 Lausanne Service vétérinaire cantonal et Institut Galli Valerio
- Braude A I 1951 Studies in the pathology and pathogenesis of experimental brucellosis I A comparison of the pathogenicity of *Br abortus* *Br suis* and *Br melitensis* II The formation of the hepatic granuloma and its evolution *J Infect Dis* 89 76-86 87-94
- Braun W 1956 Cellular products affecting the establishment of bacteria of different virulence *Ann NY Acad Sci* 66 348-355
- Braun W Altenbern R Kelsb J and Sandoval H 1956 Anoxia as a major factor causing population changes in antiserum containing cultures *J Bact* 71 417-420
- Braun W Gorelick A N Kraft M and Mead D D 1951 Studies on the in vivo fate of *Brucella* variants with different virulence *J Infect Dis* 89 286-295
- Bruce D 1887 Note on the discovery of a microorganism in Malta fever *Practitioner* 39 161-170
- Buddle M H and Boyes H W 1953 A *Brucella* mutant causing genital disease of sheep in New Zealand *Aust Vet J* 29 145-153
- Burki F 1961 Über die *Brucella* Polysaccharide *Berlin Med* 12 8
- Castaneda M R 1947 A practical method for routine blood cultures in brucellosis *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 64 114-115
- 1961 Laboratory diagnosis of brucellosis in man *Bull WHO* 24 73-84
- Cherchenko I I 1961 Brucellosis in the far north I Brucellosis in reindeer *Zh Mikrobiol* 32 135
- Cherchenko I I and Bakaeva O A 1962 Brucellosis in conditions of the Arctic region IV On the study of *Brucella* cultures isolated from reindeer *Zh Mikrobiol* 33 69
- Cluff L Trever R and Peeler H 1957 Personal communication
- Cruickshank J C and Madge B 1954 Observations on *Brucella* species based on the examination of 800 strains *J Hyg* 52 105-118
- Dalrymple-Champneys Sir W 1960 *Brucella* Infection and Undulant Fever in Man London Oxford Univ Press
- Dubrovskaya I I 1951 Hydrolysis of the *Brucella suis* antigen complex and the chemical nature of the components *Biokhimiya* 16 41
- 1954 Comparative chemical studies of the antigen complexes of *Brucella* types *Biokhimiya* 19 137-143 (in Russian)
- Dubrovskaya I I and Ostrovskaya N N 1960 Changes in the process of preservation of the chemical composition of a variant of *Brucella* obtained under the influence of bacteriophage *Biokhimiya* 25 511-516 (in Russian)
- Dubrovskaya I Ostrovskaya N and Gluolen A 1958 Change in chemical composition of *Brucellae* induced by phage *Biokhimiya* 23 523
- Elberg S S 1959 Immunization against *Brucella* infection 7 Immunological and epidemiological studies in Cordoba Spain *Bull WHO* 20 1033-1052

- 1960 Cellular immunity Bact Rev 24 67 95
- Elberg S and Faunce W K 1957 Immunization against Brucella infection VI Immunity conferred on goats by a nondependent mutant from a streptomycin dependent mutant strain of *Brucella melitensis* J Bact 73 211 217
- Elberg S S and Faunce W K 1962 Response of *Cynomolgus philippinensis* guinea pigs and pregnant goats to infection by the Rev I strain of *Brucella melitensis* Bull WHO 26 421 436
- Elberg S S and Faunce W K 1964 Immunogenicity of *Br abortus* strain BA 19 and *Br melitensis* strain Rev I in *Cynomolgus philippinensis* Bull WHO 30 693 699
- Elberg S S and Meyer K F 1958 Caprine immunization against brucellosis Bull WHO 19 711 724
- Elberg S S Steiner P E and Doll J P 1955 Immunization against Brucella infection V Histopathologic appraisal of immunity induced in mice by a streptomycin dependent mutant of *Brucella melitensis* Am J Path 31 1065 1075
- Elberg S S Schneider P and Fong J 1957 Cross immunity between *Brucella melitensis* and *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* intracellular behavior of *Brucella melitensis* in monocytes from vaccinated animals J Exp Med 106 545 554
- Elberg S S Mascarenhas P and Fong J 1960 Response of peritoneal exudate cells to *Brucella melitensis* Influence of nature of inflammatory irritant Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 104 295 297
- Evans A C 1918 Further studies on *Bacterium abortus* and related bacteria II A comparison of *Bacterium abortus* with *Bacterium bronchisepticus* and with the organism which causes Malta fever J Infect Dis 22 580-593
- 1923 The serological classification of *Brucella melitensis* from human bovine caprine porcine and equine sources Public Health Rep 38 1948 1963
- Feusler M L and Meyer K F 1920 Principles in serologic grouping of *B abortus* and *B melitensis* Correlation between absorption and agglutination tests Studies on the genus *Brucella* nov Gen II J Infect Dis 27 185 206
- Fincham R W Saks A L and Joynt R J 1963 Protean manifestations of nervous system brucellosis JAMA 184 269 275
- Fong J Chin D and Elberg S S 1961 Studies on tubercle bacillus monocyte relationship IV Effects of passage in normal and immune systems upon virulent bacilli J Exp Med 114 75 87
- Foster J W and Ribí E 1962 Immunological role of *Brucella abortus* cell walls, J Bact 84 258 268
- Foz A and Garriga S 1954 Relation entre la fixation du complement et les "anticorps incomplets" (test de Coombs) dans la brucellose humaine Rev immun (Paris) 18 288 298
- Franek F Jouja V and Kostka J 1962 The nature of pig antibodies against *Brucella suis* Folia Microbiol (Praha) 7 1 11
- Fust B Löffler H Mosimann W and Schoch M A 1949 Kutanreaktionen mit einem Polysaccharid Allergen aus *Brucella abortus* Bang Schweiz Z Path Bakt 17 484-488
- Gargani G 1961 Esperienze su vaccini anti brucellari uccisi Ann Sclavo Siena 3 723
- 1952 Persistence of live *Brucella* in cheese made from goat milk Report Bruc 73 WHO Geneva
- Gargani G and Aleandri M 1959 Complement fixation test in the diagnosis of brucellosis Ann Sclavo Siena 1 327
- Gerhardt P 1958 The nutrition of Brucellae Bact Rev 22 81 98
- Glassman H N and Elberg S 1946 The growth of *Brucella* in aerated liquid cultures J Bact 52 423 430
- Glenchur H Seal U S Zinneman H H and Hall W H 1962 Serum precipitins in human and experimental brucellosis J Lab Clin Med 59 220-230
- 1963 Antigenicity of some *Brucella melitensis* cell fractions J Bact 85 363 368
- Goode E R Jr Manther C A and Amerault T E 1957 Further studies on duration of immunity to brucellosis induced in calf vaccinated cattle with Strain 19 vaccine Proc 60th Ann Meeting US Live stock Sanitary Ass Chicago 1956 pp 89 96
- Greene L F Weed L A and Albers D D 1952 Brucellosis of urinary tract J Urol 67 765 772
- Gudoshnik A N 1955 (Study of the role of ixodid ticks in the circulation of the causal agent of brucellosis) In Natural foci of human diseases and regional epidemiology Leningrad Medgiz (in Russian) (Abst in Rev Appl Ent Ser B 44 149 1956)
- Halberg F Spink W W and Bittner J J 1956 Protection by aldosterone and 11 17

- oxycorticoids against effects of *Brucella* somatic antigens in adrenalectomized mice *Endocrinology* 59 380 383
- Hardy A V Jordan C F Borts I H and Hardy G C 1930 Undulant fever with special reference to a study of *Brucella* infection in Iowa N I H Bull No 158
- Haring C M Traum J and Maderious W E 1947 Vaccination against brucellosis *J Am Vet Med Ass* 110 103 107
- Hayes F M and Traum J 1920 Preliminary report on abortion in swine North American Veterinarian Evanston Ill Vol 1 No 2
- Heckly R J Faunce W K Jr and Elberg S S 1960 Lyophilization of *Brucella melitensis* *Appl Microbiol* 8 52 54
- Hellman E 1962 Specific immunity in brucellosis *Berl Munch Tierarztl Wschr* 75 168
- Hemmings W A and Jones K E 1962 The occurrence of macroglobulin antibodies in maternal and foetal sera of rabbits as determined by gradient centrifugation *Proc Roy Soc (London) Ser B* 157 27 32
- Henderson D W Lancaster M C Packman L and Peacock S 1956 The influence of a pre existing respiratory infection in the course of another superimposed by the respiratory route *Brit J Exp Path* 37 597 611
- Henry B E 1933 Dissociation in the genus *Brucella* *J Infect Dis* 52 374 402
- Herzberg M and Elberg S S 1955 Immunization against brucella infection III Response of mice and guinea pigs to infection of viable and nonviable suspensions of a streptomycin dependent mutant of *Brucella melitensis* *J Bact* 69 432 435
- Hill W 1963 Comparison of several serological procedures in diagnosis of brucellosis *Zentr veterinar Medizin B* 10 127
- Holland J J and Pickett M J 1958 A cellular basis of immunity in experimental *Brucella* infection *J Exp Med* 108 343 360
- Huddleson I F 1943 *Brucellosis in Man and Animals* New York Commonwealth Fund
- 1947 The immunization of guinea pigs with mucoid phases of *Brucella* *Am J Vet Res* 8 374 379
- 1961 Emergence during growth of *Brucella* strains in dye agar media of cells that show changes in sulfur metabolism *Bull WHO* 24 91 102
- Huddleson I F Richardson M A Warner J and Baltzer B 1952 Studies in brucellosis III Michigan Agricultural Experiment Station Memoir No 6 114 pp
- Hutton R S Hilmoe R J and Roberts J L 1951 Some physical factors that influence the survival of *Brucella abortus* during freeze drying *J Bact* 61 309 319
- Ivanov M M and Kirillov 1962 Intensity of immunity against brucellosis *Trudy Nauchno Kontrol Inst Vet Prep* 10 136 144
- Jablonski L 1962 Variability of *Brucella* phages *Nature* 193 703 704
- Janbon M and Bertrand L 1957 Liver in brucellosis *Rev Int Hepat* 7 197
- Jones L 1962 Speciation in genus *Brucella* Document Bruc/225 WHO
- Jones L Entessar F and Ardalan A 1964 Comparison of Rev 1 and Strain 19 in producing immunity against natural infection in sheep and goats in Iran *J Comp Path Therap* 74 17 30
- Jones L M McDuff C R and Wilson J B 1962 Phenotypic alterations in the colonial morphology of *Brucella abortus* due to a bacteriophage carrier state *J Bact* 83 860 866
- Jones L M Thomson P M and Alton G G 1958a Production of immunity against experimental *Br melitensis* infection in goats *J Comp Path Therap* 68 275 287
- 1958b Immunity against *Brucella* infection in guinea pigs produced by three different vaccines *J Comp Path Therap* 68 416 427
- Kelly P J Martin W J Schirger A and Weed L A 1960 Brucellosis of the bones and joints Experience with thirty six patients *JAMA* 174 347 353
- Kniazeff A and Elberg S 1960 Experimental brucellosis in the pseudopregnant rabbit *J Comp Path Ther* 74 141 150
- Kurdina D 1961 A study of *Br melitensis* Rev I vaccine strain *Zh Mikrobiol* 11 99
- Kuzdas C D and Morse E V 1953 A selective medium for the isolation of brucellae from contaminated materials *J Bact* 66 502 504
- Lafenetre H and Carrere L 1956 Etat actuel de la vaccination contre les brucelloses ovines et caprines *Rev path gen* 56 104
- Laurence W E 1961 Ovine brucellosis *Brit Vet J* 117 435
- Lisbonne M Nigre L Roman G and Serigneum R 1938 Microbial interactions studied by method of parabiosis *Ass Mi*

- crobiol de Langue Francaise 1st Meet pp 36
- Live I 1958 Immunization studies on human volunteers with ether killed *Brucella abortus* preliminary report Bull WHO 19 197 199
- Löffler W Moroni D and Frei W 1955 Die Brucellose als Anthroponose Springer Berlin 191 pp
- McCamish J and Elberg S S 1962 Immunization against *Brucella* infection IX The response of the guinea pig to the immunizing strain (Rev 1) of *Brucella melitensis* Am J Path 40 77 93
- McDiarmid A 1960 Prophylaxis of brucellosis in cattle Vet Rec 72 917
- 1949 A comparison of the immunizing value in cattle of dead antigens and S 19 *Br abortus* vaccine Vet Rec 61 305 308
- McDiarmid A and Sutherland F H 1957 A comparison of the immunity produced in guinea pigs by the inoculation of living heat killed and adjuvant vaccines prepared from *Br abortus* Strains 45/20 and S 19 Vet Rec 69 1067 1068 1069
- McDiarmid A Findlay H T Jameson J E Phaease R N Walther J H C Jones L M and Ogonowski K 1958 Ring and plate milk agglutination tests for brucellosis in cattle—a report from the Agricultural Research Council's Field Station at Compton the Public Health Laboratory Service and the Ministry of Agriculture's Veterinary Laboratory at Weybridge on a combined testing programme employing cattle of known history Brit Vet J 114 83 95
- Markenson J Sulitzeanu D and Olitzki A L 1962 Immunogenic activity of *Brucella* cell wall Brit J Exp Path 43 67 76
- Marshall M S and Jared D 1931 Microbic dissociation in the *Brucella* group J Infect Dis 49 318 336
- Marston J A 1861 Report on fever Great Britain Army Med Dept Rept 3 486
- Martin W J Nichols B R and Beahrs O H 1961 Chronic localized brucellosis with recurrent constitutional manifestations Arch Intern Med 107 75 80
- Meyer K F and Eddie B 1949 The isolation of *Brucella suis* from the sputum Scritti Medici (Rome) p 8
- Meyer M E and Morgan W J B 1962 Metabolic characterization of *Brucella* strains that show conflicting identity by biochemical and serological methods Bull WHO 26 823 827
- Meyer M E 1961 Metabolic characterization of the genus *Brucella* III Oxidative metabolism of the strains that show anomalous characteristics by conventional determinative methods J Bact 87 401-410
- Meyer M E and Cameron H S 1961 Metabolic characterization of the genus *Brucella* I Statistical evaluation of the oxidative rates by which Type I of each species can be identified J Bact 82 387 395
- 1961 Metabolic characterization of the genus *Brucella* II Oxidative metabolic patterns of the described biotypes J Bact 82 396-400
- Miles A A 1933 Optimal proportions in agglutination With reference to the antigenic analysis of the *Brucella* group of organisms Brit J Exp Path 14 43 56
- Miles A A and Pirie N W 1939 The properties of antigenic preparations from *Brucella melitensis* I Chemical and physical properties of bacterial fractions Brit J Exp Path 20 83 98
- Morales Otero P 1929 Experimental infection of *Brucella abortus* in man preliminary report Puerto Rico J Pub Health 5 144 157
- Morgan W J 1962 Examination of *Brucella* cultures lysis by phage Document Bruc/ 224 WHO
- Nagy L K 1963 Effect of *Brucella* infection of young lambs on their serological responsiveness to the same antigens later in life Immunology 6 48
- Neeman L 1963 Refuah Vet 20 134 140
- Nelson E L and Pickett M J 1951 The recovery of L forms of *Brucella* and their relation to *Brucella* phage J Infect Dis 89 226 232
- Newton J W Marr A G and Wilson J H 1954 Fixation of  $C^{14}O$  into nucleic acid constituents by *Brucella abortus* J Bact 67 233 236
- Ogarkov V I 1962 Infectiousness of various objects and materials contaminated with *Brucella* J Microbiol (Moscow) 4 88
- Olitzki A L 1959 Studies on the antigenic structure of virulent and nonvirulent brucellae with the aid of the agar gel precipitation technique Brit J Exp Path 40 432 440
- Orlov B S 1960 The problem of the cattle and sheep brucellosis in the U.S.S.R J Microbiol 31 367 369
- Orpen L J J 1924 The connection between undulant (Malta) fever and contagious abortion Trans Roy Soc Trop Med Hyg 17 521 524
- Ostrovskaya N N 1961 Stability of proper

- ties in *Brucella* variants obtained as a result of phage action Zh Mikrobiol 32 1522
- Ottosen H L and Plum N 1949 A non antigenic allergic agent for intradermal brucellosis tests Am J Vet Res 10 5 11
- Parnas J 1963 Brucellaphages (in English) Zbl Bakt (Orig) 187 601
- Payne J M 1959 The pathogenesis of experimental brucellosis in the pregnant cow J Path Bact 78 447-463
- 1960 The pathogenesis of experimental brucellosis in virgin heifers with and without continuous progesterone treatment J Endocrinol 20 345 354
- Peery T M and Belter L F 1960 Brucellosis and heart disease II Fatal brucellosis a review of the literature and report of new cases Am J Path 36 673 697
- Pennell R H and Huddleson I F 1938 Quantitative studies of *Brucella* precipitin systems I Precipitation of homologous antisera by *Brucella* endoantigens J Exp Med 68 73 81
- 1938 Quantitative studies of *Brucella* precipitin systems II The precipitation of heterologous antisera by *Brucella* endoantigens J Exp Med 68 83 93
- Pickett M J and Nelson E L 1955 Speciation within the genus *Brucella* IV Fermentation of carbohydrates J Bact 69 333 336
- Pingun A F and Petukhova O S 1962 Characteristics of strains of *Brucella* isolated from reindeer J Microbiol 33 76
- Plescia O J, Noval J J, Palczuk N C and Braun W 1961 Fractionation and immunological properties of a DNA rich preparation from *Brucella abortus* Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 106 748 752
- Pollack A D, Kelly E H, Gorelick A N, Braun W and Victor J 1952 Superinfection in experimental brucellosis of guinea pigs J Infect Dis 90 267 272
- Pomales Lebron A and Sunebring W R 1957 Intracellular multiplication of *Brucella abortus* in normal and immune mononuclear phagocytes Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 94 78
- Popkhadze M and Abashidze T 1955 Characteristics of the *Brucella* bacteriophage Tb Sbornik Trudov Mezhdunarodnogo Tbilisi 5 31
- Pullinger E J 1936 The influence of tuberculous upon the development of *Brucella abortus* infection J Hyg 36 456-466
- Ralston D J and Elberg S S 1961 Intramonocytic destruction of *Brucella* potentiating effect of glycine on intracellular lysozyme activity J Infect Dis 109 71 80
- Ralston D J, Baer B M and Elberg S S 1961 Lysis of brucellae by the combined action of glycine and a lysozyme like agent from rabbit monocytes J Bact 82 342 353
- Redfearn M S and Berman D T 1960 Application of the gel diffusion technique for typing brucellae Bull WHO 23 133 134
- Redfearn M S, Simon E M and Berman D T 1956 The establishment of colonial variants in guinea pigs infected with smooth *Brucella suis* J Infect Dis 99 234 240
- Rementsova M M 1962 Brucellosis of Wild Animals Alma Ata Akademiya Nauk Kazakhskoi SSR 272 pp
- Renoux G 1953 Aspects of human brucellosis Advances in the control of Zoonoses WHO Monogr 19 61
- 1957 Brucellosis in goats and sheep Adv Vet Med 3 242
- 1959a Transmission de la brucellose à l'homme Arch Inst Pasteur Tunis 36 77 121
- 1959b Études sur la Brucellose ovine et caprine XXII Vaccination contre la Brucellose de chèvres soumises aux conditions naturelles de l'infection Arch Inst Pasteur Tunis 36 143 155
- Renoux G, Amarasinghe A and Sacquet E 1955 Sur la classification des *Brucella* Arch Inst Pasteur Tunis 32 375-406
- Reusse U 1961 Untersuchungen zur Dissoziation induzierenden Wirkung des Alanins bei Brucellen Z Hyg Infektionskr 148 131 134
- Roberts J J, Squire R A and Gilman H L 1962 Death in two calves following vaccination with *Brucella abortus* strain 19 vaccine Cornell Vet 52 592 595
- Ryaguzov V S and Litvinov V M 1960 Influence of beta irradiation on *Brucella* Trudy Novosibirsksk zootekh vet Inst 12 57
- Sadler W W 1960 Present evidence on the role of meat in epidemiology of human brucellosis Am J Pub Health 50 504 514
- Schubardt V T, Rode I J, Oglesby G and Lankford C F 1950 The development of peptone toxicity for brucellae with aging and the correlation of this toxicity with the probable oxidation of cystine J Bact 60 655 660
- Silich V A and Shevtsova Z V 1962 Simultaneous immunization against brucellosis and Q fever J Microbiol 7 66
- Silverman S J and Elberg S S 1950 The

- crobiol de Langue Francaise 1st Meet pp 36
- Live I 1958 Immunization studies on human volunteers with ether killed *Brucella abortus* preliminary report Bull WHO 19 197 199
- Löffler W Moroni D and Frei W 1955 Die Brucellose als Anthroponose Springer Berlin 191 pp
- McCamush J and Elberg S S 1962 Immunization against *Brucella* infection IX The response of the guinea pig to the immunizing strain (Rev I) of *Brucella melitensis* Am J Path 40 77 93
- McDiarmid A 1960 Prophylaxis of brucellosis in cattle Vet Rec 72 917
- 1949 A comparison of the immunising value in cattle of dead antigens and S 19 *Br abortus* vaccine Vet Rec 61 305 308
- McDiarmid A and Sutherland F B 1957 A comparison of the immunity produced in guinea pigs by the inoculation of living heat killed and adjuvant vaccines prepared from *Br abortus* Strains 45/20 and S 19 Vet Rec 69 1067 1068 1069
- McDiarmid A Findlay H T Jameson J E Phaease R N Walther J H C Jones L M and Ogonowski K 1958 Ring and plate milk agglutination tests for brucellosis in cattle—a report from the Agricultural Research Council's Field Station at Compton the Public Health Laboratory Service and the Ministry of Agriculture's Veterinary Laboratory at Weybridge on a combined testing programme employing cattle of known history Brit Vet J 114 83 95
- Markenson J Sulitzeanu D and Olitzki A L 1962 Immunogenic activity of *Brucella* cell wall Brit J Exp Path 43 67 76
- Marshall M S and Jared D 1931 Microbic dissociation in the *Brucella* group J Infect Dis 49 318 336
- Marston J A 1861 Report on fever Great Britain Army Med Dept Rept. 3 486
- Martin W J Nichols D R and Beahrs O H 1961 Chronic localized brucellosis with recurrent constitutional manifestations Arch Intern Med 107 75 80
- Meyer K F and Eddie B 1949 The isolation of *Brucella suis* from the sputum Scritti Medici (Rome) p 8
- Meyer M E and Morgan W J II 1962 Metabolic characterization of *Brucella* strains that show conflicting identity by biochemical and serological methods Bull WHO 26 823 827
- Meyer M E 1961 Metabolic characterization of the genus *Brucella* III Oxidative metabolism of the strains that show anomalous characteristics by conventional determinative methods J Bact 82 401-410
- Meyer M E and Cameron H II 1961 Metabolic characterization of the genus *Brucella* I Statistical evaluation of the oxidative rates by which Type I of each species can be identified J Bact 82 387 395
- 1961 Metabolic characterization of the genus *Brucella* II Oxidative metabolic patterns of the described biotypes J Bact 82 396-400
- Miles A A 1933 Optimal proportions in agglutination With reference to the antigenic analysis of the *Brucella* group of organisms Brit J Exp Path 14 43 56
- Miles A A and Pirie N W 1939 The properties of antigenic preparations from *Brucella melitensis* I Chemical and physical properties of bacterial fractions Brit J Exp Path 20 83 98
- Morales Otero P 1929 Experimental infection of *Brucella abortus* in man preliminary report Puerto Rico J Pub Health 5 144 157
- Morgan W J 1962 Examination of *Brucella* cultures lysis by phage Document Bruc/ 224 WHO
- Nagy L K 1963 Effect of *Brucella* infection of young lambs on their serological responsiveness to the same antigens later in life Immunology 6 48
- Neeman L 1963 Refuah Vet 20 134 140
- Nelson E L and Pickett M J 1951 The recovery of L forms of *Brucella* and their relation to *Brucella* phage J Infect Dis 89 226 232
- Newton J W Marr A G and Wilson J II 1954 Fixation of  $C^{14}O$  into nucleic acid constituents by *Brucella abortus* J Bact 67 233 236
- Ogarkov V I 1962 Infectiousness of various objects and materials contaminated with *Brucella* J Microbiol (Moscow) 4 88
- Olitzki A L 1959 Studies on the antigenic structure of virulent and nonvirulent brucellae with the aid of the agar gel precipitation technique Brit J Exp Path 40 432 440
- Orlov E S 1960 The problem of the cattle and sheep brucellosis in the USSR J Microbiol 31 367 369
- Orpen L J J 1924 The connection between undulant (Malta) fever and contagious abortion Trans Roy Soc Trop Med Hyg 17 521 524
- Ostrovskaya N N 1961 Stability of proper

- ties in *Brucella* variants obtained as a result of phage action Zh Mikrobiol 32 1522
- Ottosen H E and Plum N 1949 A non antigenic allergic agent for intradermal brucellosis tests Am J Vet Res 10 511
- Parnas J 1963 Brucellaphages (in English) Zbl Bakt (Orig) 187 601
- Payne J M 1959 The pathogenesis of experimental brucellosis in the pregnant cow J Path Bact 78 447-463
- 1960 The pathogenesis of experimental brucellosis in virgin heifers with and without continuous progesterone treatment J Endocrinol 20 345-354
- Peery T M and Belter L F 1960 Brucellosis and heart disease. II Fatal brucellosis: a review of the literature and report of new cases Am J Path 36 673-697
- Pennell R B and Huddleson I F 1938 Quantitative studies of *Brucella* precipitin systems I Precipitation of homologous antisera by *Brucella* endoantigens J Exp Med 68 73-81
- 1938 Quantitative studies of *Brucella* precipitin systems II The precipitation of heterologous antisera by *Brucella* endoantigens J Exp Med 68 83-93
- Pickett, M J and Nelson E L 1955 Speciation within the genus *Brucella* IV Fermentation of carbohydrates J Bact 69 333-336
- Pisgin A F and Petukhova O S 1962 Characteristics of strains of *Brucella* isolated from reindeer J Microbiol 33 76
- Plescia O J, Noval J J, Palczuk N C and Braun, W 1961 Fractionation and immunological properties of a DNA rich preparation from *Brucella abortus* Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 106 748-752
- Pollack A D, Kelly E H, Gorelick A N, Braun W and Victor J 1952 Superinfection in experimental brucellosis of guinea pigs J Infect Dis 90 267-272
- Pomales Lebron A and Stinebring W R 1957 Intracellular multiplication of *Brucella abortus* in normal and immune mononuclear phagocytes Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 94 78-81
- Popkhadze M and Abashidze T 1955 Characteristics of the *Brucella* bacteriophage Tb Sbornik Trudov Mezhdunar. Konf. Tbilisi 5 31
- Pullinger H J 1936 The influence of tuberculosis upon the development of *Brucella abortus* infection J Hyg 36 456-466
- Ralston D J and Elberg S S 1961 Intracellular monocytic destruction of *Brucella* potentiating effect of glycine on intracellular lysozyme activity J Infect Dis 109 71-80
- Ralston D J, Baer B S and Elberg S S 1961 Lysis of brucellae by the combined action of glycine and a lysozyme like agent from rabbit monocytes J Bact 82 342-353
- Redfearn M S and Berman D T 1960 Application of the gel diffusion technique for typing brucellae Bull WHO 23 133-134
- Redfearn M S, Simon E M and Berman D T 1956 The establishment of colonial variants in guinea pigs infected with smooth *Brucella suis* J Infect Dis 99 234-240
- Rementsova, M M 1962 Brucellosis of Wild Animals Alma Ata Akademiya Nauk Kazakhskoi SSR 272 pp
- Renoux G 1953 Aspects of human brucellosis Advances in the control of Zoonoses WHO Monogr 19 61
- 1957 Brucellosis in goats and sheep Adv Vet Med 3 242
- 1959a Transmission de la brucellose à l'homme Arch Inst Pasteur Tunis 36 77-121
- 1959b Etudes sur la Brucellose ovine et caprine XXII Vaccination contre la Brucellose de chèvres soumises aux conditions naturelles de l'infection Arch Inst Pasteur Tunis 36 143-155
- Renoux G, Amarasinghe A and Sacquet H 1955 Sur la classification des *Brucella* Arch Inst Pasteur Tunis 32 375-406
- Reusse U 1961 Untersuchungen zur diskordanz-induzierenden Wirkung des Alantins bei Brucellen Z Hyg Infektionskr 148 131-134
- Roberts S J, Squire H A and Gilman H L 1962 Death in two calves following vaccination with *Brucella abortus* strain 19 vaccine Cornell Vet 52 592-595
- Ryaguzov V S and Litvinov V M 1960 Influence of beta irradiation on *Brucella* Trudy Novocherkassk zootekh vet Inst 12 57
- Sadler W W 1960 Present evidence on the role of meat in epidemiology of human brucellosis Am J Pub Health 50 504-514
- Schubardt V T, Rode L J, Oglesby G and Lankford C E 1950 The development of peptone toxicity for brucellae with aging and the correlation of this toxicity with the probable oxidation of cystine J Bact 60 655-660
- Silich V A and Shevtsova Z V 1962 Simultaneous immunization against brucellosis and Q fever J Microbiol 7 66
- Silverman S J and Elberg S S 1950 The



- crobiol de Langue Francaise 1st Meet pp 3 6
- Live I 1958 Immunization studies on human volunteers with ether killed *Brucella abortus* preliminary report Bull WHO 19 197 199
- Löffler W Moroni D and Frei W 1955 Die Brucellose als Anthropozoonose Springer Berlin 191 pp
- McCamish J and Elberg S S 1962 Immunization against *Brucella* infection IX The response of the guinea pig to the immunizing strain (Rev I) of *Brucella melitensis* Am J Path 40 77 93
- McDiarmid A 1960 Prophylaxis of brucellosis in cattle Vet Rec 72 917
- 1949 A comparison of the immunising value in cattle of dead antigens and S 19 *Br abortus* vaccine Vet Rec 61 305 308
- McDiarmid A and Sutherland F H 1957 A comparison of the immunity produced in guinea pigs by the inoculation of living heat killed and adjuvant vaccines prepared from *Br abortus* Strains 45/20 and S 19 Vet Rec 69 1067 1068 1069
- McDiarmid A Findlay H T Jameson J E Phae R N Walther J H C Jones L M and Ogonowski K 1958 Ring and plate milk agglutination tests for brucellosis in cattle—a report from the Agricultural Research Council's Field Station at Compton the Public Health Laboratory Service and the Ministry of Agriculture's Veterinary Laboratory at Weybridge on a combined testing programme employing cattle of known history Brit Vet J 114 83 95
- Markenson J Sultzeanu D and Oltzki A L 1962 Immunogenic activity of *Brucella* cell wall Brit J Exp Path 43 67 76
- Marshall M S and Jared D 1931 Microbic dissociation in the *Brucella* group J Infect Dis 49 318 336
- Marston J A 1861 Report on fever Great Britain Army Med Dept Rept 3 486
- Martin W J Nichols D R and Beahrs O H 1961 Chronic localized brucellosis with recurrent constitutional manifestations Arch Intern Med 107 75 80
- Meyer K F and Eddie B 1949 The isolation of *Brucella suis* from the sputum Scritti Medici (Rome) p 8
- Meyer M E and Morgan W J B 1962 Metabolic characterization of *Brucella* strains that show conflicting identity by biochemical and serological methods Bull WHO 26 823 827
- Meyer M E 1961 Metabolic characterization of the genus *Brucella* III Oxidative metabolism of the strains that show anomalous characteristics by conventional determinative methods J Bact 82 401 410
- Meyer M E and Cameron H S 1961 Metabolic characterization of the genus *Brucella* I Statistical evaluation of the oxidative rates by which Type I of each species can be identified J Bact 82 387 395
- 1961 Metabolic characterization of the genus *Brucella* II Oxidative metabolic patterns of the described biotypes J Bact 82 396 400
- Miles A A 1933 Optimal proportions in agglutination With reference to the antigenic analysis of the *Brucella* group of organisms Brit J Exp Path 14 43 56
- Miles A A and Pirie N W 1939 The properties of antigenic preparations from *Brucella melitensis* I Chemical and physical properties of bacterial fractions Brit J Exp Path 20 83 98
- Morales Otero P 1929 Experimental infection of *Brucella abortus* in man preliminary report Puerto Rico J Pub Health 5 144 157
- Morgan W J 1962 Examination of *Brucella* cultures lysis by phage Document Bruc/ 224 WHO
- Nagy L K 1963 Effect of *Brucella* infection of young lambs on their serological responsiveness to the same antigens later in life Immunology 6 48
- Neeman L 1963 Refuah Vet 70 134 140
- Nelson E L and Pickett M J 1951 The recovery of L forms of *Brucella* and their relation to *Brucella* phage J Infect Dis 89 226 232
- Newton J W Marr A G and Wilson J H 1954 Fixation of  $C^{14}O$  into nucleic acid constituents by *Brucella abortus* J Bact 67 233 236
- Ogarkov V I 1962 Infectiousness of various objects and materials contaminated with *Brucella* J Microbiol (Moscow) 4 88
- Oltzki A L 1959 Studies on the antigenic structure of virulent and nonvirulent brucellae with the aid of the agar gel precipitation technique Brit J Exp Path 40 432 440
- Orlov E S 1960 The problem of the cattle and sheep brucellosis in the USSR J Microbiol 37 367 369
- Orpen L J J 1924 The connection between undulant (Malta) fever and contagious abortion Trans Roy Soc Trop Med Hyg 17 521 524
- Ostrovskaya N N 1961 Stability of proper

- ship between organisms of the *Brucella* group on the one hand and of the *Pasteurella*, *Pfeifferella* and *Proteus* groups on the other *J Hyg* 34 361 371
- Wundt W 1956 in *World Atlas of Epidemic Diseases* Part III Falk Verlag Hamburg
- 1961 *Die Biochemie und Serologie der Brucellen* *Ergebn Mikrobiol Immunol* 34 120-179
- 1962 The differentiation of *Brucellae* by examination of the metabolism of resting cells *Abstr 8th Int Congr Microbiol* Montreal
- Yuskovets M K 1956 Eradication de la brucellose en USSR *Bull Off Int Epizoot* 46 366 374
- Zammitt T 1906 The reaction of goat's milk to *M. melitensis* *Repts Medit Fever Comm* Part 4 p 97 London Harrison
- Zinneman H H, Glenchur H and Hall W H 1959 The nature of blocking antibodies in human brucellosis *J Immun* 83 206 212
- 1961 Chronic renal brucellosis: report of a case with studies of blocking antibodies and precipitins *New Eng J Med* 265 872 875
- ZøBell C E and ZøBell M H 1932 Metabolism studies on the *Brucella* group III Viability in aqueous solutions *J Inf Dis* 50 538 541

- antigenic relationships of native antigens of species of *Brucella* J Immun 65, 163 174
- Simmons G C and Hall W T K 1953 Epididymitis of rams Preliminary studies on the occurrence and pathogenicity of a brucella like organism Aust Vet J 29 33 40
- Smirnov S M 1958 Dermal vaccination against brucellosis J Microbiol 11 4
- Smith H and Fitzgeorge R B 1964 Basis of intracellular survival and growth in bovine phagocytes Brit J Exp Path 45 174 186
- Smith H, Keppie J, Pearce J and Witt K 1962 The chemical basis of the virulence of *Brucella abortus* IV Immunogenic products from *Brucella abortus* grown in vivo and in vitro Brit J Exp Path 43 538 548
- Spink W 1956 The Nature of Brucellosis Minneapolis Univ of Minn Press 464 pp
- 1957 The significance of bacterial hypersensitivity in human brucellosis Studies on infection due to strain 19 *Brucella abortus* Ann Int Med 47 861 874
- 1960 Current status of the therapy of brucellosis in human beings, JAMA 172 697 698
- Spink W W, Hall J W III, Finstad J and Mallet E., 1962 Immunization with viable *Brucella* organisms Results of a safety test in humans Bull WHO 26 409-419
- Stableforth A W 1953 Advances in the control of zoonoses WHO Monogr 19 71 89
- Sterne M 1958 The growth of *Brucella abortus* strain 19 in aerated dialysed media J Gen Microbiol 18 747 750
- Stinebrang W R 1962 Characteristics of intracellularly grown *Brucella abortus* J Infect Dis 111 17 24
- Stinebrang W R, Flick J A and Pomales Lebron A 1958 Lack of correlation between skin test and tissue sensitivities in guinea pigs infected with *Brucella abortus* Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 97 21 23
- Stoerner H G and Lackman D B 1957 A new species of *Brucella* isolated from the desert wood rat *Neotoma lepida* Thomas Am J Vet Res 18 947 951
- Sulitzeanu D, Bekierkust, A, Groto L. and Loebel I 1962 Studies on the mechanism of non specific resistance to *Brucella* induced in mice by vaccination with BCG Immunology 5 116 128
- Szyfres H, Blood H and Moya V 1959 Estado actual de la Brucelosis en la America Latina, Bol Ofic Sanit Panamer 46 48
- Taran I F, 1961 Significance of wild fauna in solving problem of brucellosis eradication in Soviet Union J Microbiol 37 65
- Taran I F, Rudnev M M and Miroschnichenko V A 1962 Role of *Meriones meridianus* and *M. tamariscinus* as reservoirs and sources of *Brucella melitensis* J Microbiol 33 127 132 (In Russian Summary in English)
- Thomsen A 1934 *Brucella* infection in swine Studies from an epizootic in Denmark, 1929 1932 Acta path. microbiol scand Suppl 21
- Urbaschek H, Baurle H and Kotowski H 1961 Immunologische Studien an *Brucellen* III Die Schultz Dalesche Versuchsanordnung bei *Brucella abortus* Bang Z. Immunitätsforsch 122 358 367
- van Drimmelen G C 1960 Control of brucellosis in sheep and goats by means of vaccination J S Afr Vet Med Ass 31 129 138
- 1961 A urease test for characterizing *Brucella* strains Document Bruc/207 WHO
- van Drimmelen G C and Steyn H S 1958 The keeping quality of freeze-dried *Brucella abortus* strain 19 vaccine J Gen Microbiol 19 324-329
- Van Heerden, K. M. and Van Rensburg S W 1963 The immunization of rams against ovine brucellosis by Rev 1 J S Afr Vet. Med Ass 33 143
- von Albertini A and Lieberherr W, 1937 Beiträge zur pathologischen Anatomie der Febris undulans Bang Frankfurt Z. Path 51 69 97
- Vershilova P A. 1961 The use of live vaccine for vaccination of human beings against brucellosis in the USSR Bull WHO 24 85 89
- Waring W S, Elberg S S, Schneider P and Green W 1953 The role of iron in the biology of *Brucella suis* I Growth and virulence J Bact 66 82 91
- White P G and Wilson J B 1951 Differentiation of smooth and nonsmooth colonies of *Brucellae* J Bact 61 239 240
- Williams A, Keppie J and Smith H 1962 The chemical basis of the virulence of *Brucella abortus* III Foetal erythritol a cause of the localisation of *Brucella abortus* in pregnant cows Brit. J Exp Path 43 530 537
- Wilson G S 1931 The gaseous requirements of *Br. abortus* (bovine type) Brit J Exp Path 12 88 92
- 1934 The reputed antigenic relation

TABLE 1 DIFFERENTIAL CHARACTERISTICS OF INFLUENZA BACILLUS GROUP

	GROWTH FACTORS		IRIDESCENCE	CAPSULES	HEMOLYSIS
	X	V			
<i>H. influenzae</i>					
Typable a f	+	+	+	+	0
Nontypable	+	+	0	0	0
<i>H. aegyptius</i>	+	+	0	0	0
<i>H. parainfluenzae</i>					
Typable	0	+	+	+	0
Nontypable	0	+	0	0	0
<i>H. hemolyticus</i>	+	+	?	?	+
<i>H. parahemolyticus</i>	0	+	?	?	+
<i>H. suis</i>					
Typable	?	?	+	+	0
Nontypable	?	?	0	0	0
<i>H. paravisus</i>					
Typable	0	+	+	+	0
Nontypable	0	+	0	0	0
<i>H. hemoglobinophilus</i>	+	0	?	?	0

? = Not determined

forms known to be widely distributed in the normal nasopharynx. Nor had methods then been developed for distinguishing the true influenza bacillus from closely allied species.

However, certain facts were learned from the extensive bacteriologic investigations carried out during the pandemic of 1918. Davis (1917, 1924), Thjotta and Avery (1921), Fildes (1921), and Rivers and Poole (1921) extended our knowledge of bacterial growth factors and standardized procedures for the use of X and V factor requirements as a diagnostic aid. In brief, they showed that whole blood contained both factors. Their action could be separated by exposing whole blood extracts to 250° F. V factor was thus destroyed. A yeast extract sterilized by filtration served as a good source of V factor.

A study of the nutritional requirements of strains diagnosed as influenza bacilli during the pandemic of 1918 led to the discovery of some new organisms. Pritchett and Stillman (1919) reported an organism which they labeled X bacillus, a beta type of hemolysis appeared following the growth of this organism on blood agar and X factor was not needed for growth. Rivers (1922) described strains which he named *H. parainfluenzae*; they differed from true *H. influenzae* only in their ability to grow in the absence of X factor. Hemolytic strains requiring both X

and V factors have been reported by both Fildes (1924) and Valentine and Rivers (1927).

Search for evidence of a filtrable virus in patients with influenza also met with failure as outlined by Jordan (1927) and Scott (1929). Techniques for the isolation and the identification of viruses were just beginning to be explored. It is believed that the choice of patients too late in their disease to yield the virus and the use of immune individuals as recipients were responsible for the failure to transmit the virus to human beings. Nonetheless, the view was held by a number of investigators of the 1918 pandemic that its unprecedented severity reflected the concurrent interplay of a virus and the influenza bacillus. This thesis was strengthened by the recovery of a virus from swine influenza (Shope, 1931) and by the demonstration that the synergistic effect of an influenza bacillus, *H. suis*, and swine influenza virus is essential for both the natural and the experimental disease. The importance of this contribution deserves emphasis; it illustrates the enhancement of injury caused by the combined effect of a bacterial and a viral infection.

The investigations of Shope (1931, 1944) raise the question whether the facts disclosed for swine influenza also hold true for human pandemic influenza. Since the swine

# 29

## The Hemophilus Group

### HEMOPHILUS INFLUENZAE

*Hemophilus influenzae* the type species of the hemophilus group has played two important roles in human infections (1) a secondary role in pandemic virus influenza and (2) a primary role producing pyogenic infections the latter occur infrequently in adults in children on the other hand *H. influenzae* is one of the more frequent causes of serious pyogenic infections

The members of the hemophilus group are gram negative nonmotile nonsporebearing aerobic bacilli and lead a strictly parasitic existence they possess poorly developed enzyme systems therefore all of them require enriched media Their nutritional needs yet imperfectly defined display certain differences within the genus which have a limited but useful application in identification The hemophilic bacteria have been classified as in Table 1 on the basis of their needs for two growth factors X and V and other biologic traits

#### ROLE OF *H. Influenzae* IN PANDEMIC INFLUENZA

During the pandemic of influenza of 1890 Pfeiffer (1892, 1893) isolated from the nasopharynx of most of those suffering from the disease small straight gram negative bacilli tending to occur in clumps they stained with difficulty by ordinary dyes Loefler's methylene blue revealed polar granules Growth in pure culture required substances present in whole blood, the growth stimulating sub-

stances were associated with the iron-containing portion of hemoglobin Blood agar plates sparsely seeded yielded small transparent colonies which produced no change in the surrounding medium

The frequency of occurrence of this organism in patients with influenza and its alleged virtual absence in normal individuals led to the erroneous conclusion that *H. influenzae* was the cause of the influenza pandemic of 1890 thus this organism was named the influenza bacillus and in 1923 was designated *H. influenzae* by The American Society of Bacteriologists Those who have objected to this terminology have continued to use the name Pfeiffer's bacillus

Investigations on the role of this organism in epidemics from 1892 to 1920 are reviewed in Kristensen (1922) Scott (1929) and Jordan (1927) The results cast doubt on the primary agency of the influenza bacillus in pandemic influenza

During the 1918 influenza pandemic extensive bacteriologic investigations were carried out to determine the role of the influenza bacillus The results are reviewed by Jordan (1927) and Scott (1929) There is no doubt that most investigators who studied this special problem and therefore had special interest in looking for *H. influenzae* found a very high incidence not only in the nasopharynx but also in postmortem lung cultures Unfortunately the methods then available could not differentiate between the encapsulated and thus potentially pathogenic influenza bacilli and the nonencapsulated

TABLE 1 DIFFERENTIAL CHARACTERISTICS OF INFLUENZA BACILLUS GROUP

	GROWTH FACTORS		IRIDESCENCE	CAPSULES	HEMOLYSIS
	$\lambda$	V			
<i>H. influenzae</i>					
Typable a/f	+	+	+	+	0
Nontypable	+	+	0	0	0
<i>H. aegyptius</i>	+	+	0	0	0
<i>H. parainfluenzae</i>					
Typable	0	+	+	+	0
Nontypable	0	+	0	0	0
<i>H. hemolyticus</i>	+	+	?	?	+
<i>H. parahemolyticus</i>	0	+	?	?	+
<i>H. suis</i>					
Typable	?	?	+	+	0
Nontypable	?	?	0	0	0
<i>H. parasuis</i>					
Typable	0	+	+	+	0
Nontypable	0	+	0	0	0
<i>H. hemoglobinophilus</i>	+	0	?	?	0

? = Not determined

forms known to be widely distributed in the normal nasopharynx. Nor had methods then been developed for distinguishing the true influenza bacillus from closely allied species.

However, certain facts were learned from the extensive bacteriologic investigations carried out during the pandemic of 1918. Davis (1917, 1924), Thjotta and Avery (1921), Fildes (1921), and Rivers and Poole (1921) extended our knowledge of bacterial growth factors and standardized procedures for the use of  $\lambda$  and V factor requirements as a diagnostic aid. In brief, they showed that whole blood contained both factors. Their action could be separated by exposing whole blood extracts to 250° F. V factor was thus destroyed. A yeast extract sterilized by filtration served as a good source of V factor.

A study of the nutritional requirements of strains diagnosed as influenza bacilli during the pandemic of 1918 led to the discovery of some new organisms. Pritchett and Stillman (1919) reported an organism which they labeled X bacillus, a beta type of hemolysis appeared following the growth of this organism on blood agar and  $\lambda$  factor was not needed for growth. Rivers (1922) described strains which he named *B. parainfluenzae*; they differed from true *H. influenzae* only in their ability to grow in the absence of  $\lambda$  factor. Hemolytic strains requiring both  $\lambda$

and V factors have been reported by both Fildes (1924) and Valentine and Rivers (1927).

Search for evidence of a filtrable virus in patients with influenza also met with failure as outlined by Jordan (1927) and Scott (1929). Techniques for the isolation and the identification of viruses were just beginning to be explored. It is believed that the choice of patients too late in their disease to yield the virus and the use of immune individuals as recipients were responsible for the failure to transmit the virus to human beings. Nonetheless, the view was held by a number of investigators of the 1918 pandemic that its unprecedented severity reflected the concurrent interplay of a virus and the influenza bacillus. This thesis was strengthened by the recovery of a virus from swine influenza (Shope 1931) and by the demonstration that the synergistic effect of an influenza bacillus, *H. suis*, and swine influenza virus is essential for both the natural and the experimental disease. The importance of this contribution deserves emphasis; it illustrates the enhancement of injury caused by the combined effect of a bacterial and a viral infection.

The investigations of Shope (1931, 1944) raise the question whether the facts disclosed for swine influenza also hold true for human pandemic influenza. Since the swine epidem-

ics appeared for the first time concurrently with the human influenza pandemic of 1918 Shope suggests that the latter disease originated in swine. A study of the epidemiology of the swine disease demonstrated that the virus lies dormant in lung worms which appear to live in symbiotic relationship in the swine lungs. Under appropriate climatic conditions *H suis* is found in increasing numbers in the nasopharynx of the experimental animals. The virus ceases to lie dormant and epidemics of swine influenza are launched.

The clinical and pathologic similarities of swine and human influenza have led several investigators to explore the synergistic action of human influenza viruses and *H influenzae*; the conflicting results have been reviewed and extended by Bang (1943).

The effect of *H influenzae* on both human and swine virus deserves re-examination in light of current concepts concerning the biology of *H influenzae*. However, it is evident from our present knowledge that the human and the swine influenza viruses as well as the two varieties of *Hemophilus influenzae* and *suis* possess fundamental differences. Even if it could be shown that the swine virus had been the primary cause of the 1918 human pandemic, subsequent epidemics of influenza have clearly been the results of different viruses. Evaluation of the importance of synergism between an influenza virus and a bacillus in determining the severity of human pandemics must await additional study.

The contributions of Pittman (1931) clarified some of the controversial issues. Strains of *H influenzae* prevalent in the healthy human respiratory tract were shown to differ from those isolated from persons with *H influenzae* infections. It was confirmed that strains cultivated from patients with meningitis, bacteremia and pneumonia could be differentiated from nonpathogenic forms by their iridescent growth on Levinthal agar; capsules could be demonstrated by special techniques. Six different types of *H influenzae* were identified by precipitation and agglutination tests; the former method demonstrated the presence of the specific soluble substance by its precipitation with homologous diagnostic typing antiserum. The 6 types were designated a, b, c, d, e and f; type a specific substance was shown to be a polysaccharide.

Virtually all of the meningitic strains were type b. Dried alcoholic precipitates of the cultures of 2 of the strains reported by Rivers (1921) were also identified as type b.

#### ROLE OF *H influenzae* AS A PRIMARY PYOGENIC AGENT

**Clinical Patterns.** The important role of *H influenzae* in pyogenic disease is well documented in infants and children; this organism is one of the most frequent causes of serious bacterial infection. The clinical patterns in which type b *H influenzae* plays an important role are described below.

**UPPER RESPIRATORY TRACT INFECTION.** Nasopharyngeal infection can be shown to precede all the clinical patterns of localized *H influenzae* pyogenic infection; for example, meningitis, pyarthrosis, epiglottitis, as well as pneumonia, sinusitis and otitis media. There is reason to believe that most patients are febrile initially but recover spontaneously without serious disease as a result of their immune response. The clinical features of *H influenzae* nasopharyngitis cannot be distinguished from those caused by other frequently occurring bacterial infections; for example, in patients suffering from group A hemolytic streptococcus or pneumococcus infections. Moreover, the simple laboratory procedures—total white blood cell count and erythrocyte sedimentation rate—show similar responses in all of these varieties of pyogenic bacterial infections. In view of the widespread custom of using penicillin alone as treatment for patients sick with respiratory infections of unknown etiology, it is important to emphasize that *H influenzae* is not susceptible to this antibiotic in the dosage in general use. Treatment will be discussed later.

Pediatricians are very aware of the potentiality of *H influenzae* for invasion of the blood during nasopharyngitis and the possibility of subsequent localization in a number of areas with development of clinical patterns to be described. We have also seen spontaneous subsidence of bacteremia with out localization.

**PATTERNS CAUSED BY DIRECT SPREAD IN THE RESPIRATORY TRACT.** *Otitis Media.* The frequency of *H influenzae* otitis media in childhood was reported by Mortimer and

Watterson in 1956 about one third of their patients showed *H. influenzae* when examined carefully for the etiologic agent. There are no features which distinguish *H. influenzae* otitis media from other varieties. Examination of exudate when the tympanic membrane ruptures spontaneously is clearly indicated for etiologic diagnosis and best treatment. A method providing immediate identification of typable *hemophilus* will be described under Identification.

**Sinusitis.** Maxillary sinusitis appears to be frequent following type b *H. influenzae* nasopharyngitis and may persist over many months in a chronic form when untreated. However, infection of the ethmoid sinuses is characteristically very acute. Nowadays older infants and children who after a short febrile illness suddenly develop in either one or both eyes periorbital cellulitis with edema which closes the eye are most likely to have *H. influenzae* ethmoiditis. Confirmation of type b *H. influenzae* as the etiologic agent when found in the respiratory tract is obtained by growth of the organism from the blood in most patients.

**Pneumonia.** Clinically *H. influenzae* pneumonia can not be differentiated from pneumococcus pneumonia. There is reason to believe that bacteremia is more frequent in the former. When growth occurs in the blood cultures of patients with pneumonia the etiology is clearly defined. When type b *H. influenzae* is identified only in cultures of the nasopharynx in a patient with pyogenic pneumonia in the absence of other bacterial pathogens its etiologic role in the pneumonia is further supported by the patient's agglutinin response within 2 weeks. In young infants *H. influenzae* pneumonia is usually associated with bacteremia and frequently with empyema; the frequency of meningitis in association with empyema and the difficulty in detecting meningeal inflammation by the usual clinical signs lead most pediatricians to examine the spinal fluid of young infants with *H. influenzae* pneumonia and empyema.

**Epiglottitis.** The only clinical pattern caused by *H. influenzae* localization associated with bacteremia in which the clinical signs are pathognomonic for this infectious agent is epiglottitis or obstructive laryngitis.

There is an age predilection: virtually all patients are older than 2 years. The first report of this clinical syndrome by Lemierre *et al.* (1936) described adults with this disease. Characteristically dyspnea develops suddenly after signs of a mild respiratory infection with little fever; progression of obstruction is so rapid that most patients are admitted to the hospital within several hours of onset requiring tracheotomy for relief of obstruction. Constitutional signs of overwhelming infection develop at a comparable rate. In spite of these alarming signs phonation is efficient. On physical examination the only other constant sign found is the one which has proved to be pathognomonic of *hemophilus* obstructive laryngitis: an enlarged misshapen epiglottis easily seen when the tongue is depressed. In patients who exhibit these signs immediate relief of obstruction by tracheotomy is mandatory. The risk of sudden death from respiratory and cardiac arrest is so great that most pediatricians prepare for tracheotomy before examining the epiglottis. Specimens of nasopharyngeal mucus and blood are obtained for culture only after tracheotomy. The signs of overwhelming infection are explained by the presence of bacteremia in virtually all untreated patients. Direct laryngoscopy shows the obstruction to be entirely supraglottic; the competence of phonation is thus explained. These patients are hospitalized for relief of obstruction so soon after onset that there is not time for the development of purulent foci. Since the development of a number of effective therapeutic agents against *H. influenzae* we have not seen a single patient with any additional localized infection.

**Meningitis** is a frequent consequence of *H. influenzae* bacteremia. In infants and children type b *H. influenzae* is the commonest cause of meningitis. The first authentic case of influenza meningitis was reported in 1899. The importance of this organism as a cause of meningitis was emphasized by Rivers in 1922. Prior to 1938 the mortality from this disease was virtually 100 per cent.

There are no clinical signs which distinguish *hemophilus* from other varieties of pyogenic bacterial meningitis. The findings on physical examination depend more on the





FIG 1 Gram stain of purulent spinal fluid infected with *H influenzae* type b  $\times 800$

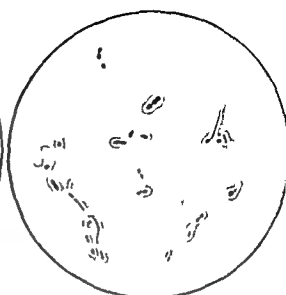


FIG 2 Typing of *H influenzae* by capsular swelling with diagnostic typing sera  $\times 1050$  (Alexander H E 1934 Treatment of *Haemophilus influenzae* infections and of meningococcus and pneumococcus meningitis American Journal of Diseases of Children 66 172 187)

age of the patient the duration and the severity of infection and whether some specific treatment has been given than on the bacterial agent which causes meningitis. Examination of spinal fluid provides immediate information in most patients. When pyogenic bacterial infection is present the cellular response is almost entirely polymorphonuclear and the concentration of sugar reflects the degree of severity the lower the concentration of sugar the more severe the infection. In most patients a Gram stain of the spinal fluid directly or of sediment after concentration will reveal organisms. When gram negative bacilli of the morphology shown in Figure 1 are seen immediate identification can be made by demonstration of capsular swelling by type specific antibody when *H influenzae* is the cause of the infection, as shown in Figure 2. Details of these examinations will be described later.

The evolution of the meningeal infection during the first 24 hours prior to treatment varies greatly. Most patients seen within 24 hours of onset exhibit signs of relatively mild meningitis. Only signs of meningeal inflammation are seen the sensorium is clear. There are no signs of generalized encephalitis or of localized cerebral cell damage. The spinal fluid findings are consistent with mild

meningitis—few organisms and little if any reduction in the spinal fluid sugar. These patients recover completely under optimal therapy.

A significant number of patients have already developed serious disease by the time they are seen. Even though there are a variety of clinical patterns in this group with early severe disease they all appear to have in common clinical signs of encephalitis. Marked depression of the sensorium is characteristic of almost all. The extent and the reversibility of the encephalitic lesions determine whether these patients recover completely survive but have persistent cerebral cell damage or die despite all measures known. A particularly fulminating form of central nervous system disease was seen during 1957 when Asian influenza was widespread. The disease was characterized by sudden onset of respiratory failure at times before it was recognized that meningitis was present. Several patients followed similar courses. Type b *H influenzae* was isolated from all. All patients died despite heroic therapeutic measures. The occurrence of this

syndrome during the Asian influenza epidemic suggests a possible influence of the virus disease on the host-parasite relationship of the *hemophilus* infection. A description of clinical features can be found in Cooke (1964).

**Pyarthrosis and Osteomyelitis** During the past decade when all bacterial infection of the bones and the joints has greatly decreased in incidence *H. influenzae* has been one of the more commonly occurring varieties. Most patients show primarily a pyarthrosis when involvement of bone can be demonstrated; it is usually an epiphysitis. Osteomyelitis is rare. The joint inflammation occurs in the large joints characteristically most commonly the elbow and the knee. In infants hip joint pyarthrosis is difficult to diagnose; the lesion is frequently far advanced and the damage irreversible. Bacteremia is demonstrable in most patients. We have been impressed by persistence of joint swelling and tenderness along with fever up to 3 weeks even though the organism has been eliminated by effective treatment after 1 week.

**NONTYPABLE *H. influenzae* AND OTHER INFLUENZA BACILLI** It is seldom possible to assign a primary pathogenic role to nonencapsulated *H. influenzae* in any age group. In young infants meningitis and pneumonia accompanied by bacteremia are occasionally caused by these organisms. Epidemic conjunctivitis has been ascribed to an organism labeled previously Koch-Weeks bacillus, a member of the influenza bacillus group (Koch 1887 and Weeks 1887) but now classified *H. aegyptius*; it is indistinguishable by ordinary criteria from nontypable *H. influenzae*. Recent genetic studies suggest that *H. aegyptius* is a variant of *H. influenzae* (Leidy 1959). Subacute bacterial endocarditis associated with brain abscess at times is caused by *H. influenzae* and *H. parainfluenzae* both in children and adults (Rose 1941). The role which this organism plays in chronic lung infections and in some acute lung infections when the blood cultures are sterile and no other bacterial pathogens are demonstrable is controversial. According to some opinions the influenza bacillus has a destructive action on bronchial epithelium (Zinneman 1943).

## IDENTIFICATION OF HEMOPHILUS SPECIES

When organisms are sufficiently numerous in biologic fluids to be seen on stained smear, species and type may be identified by capsular swelling (Fig. 2) or precipitin test within a few minutes. The capsular swelling test is the simpler procedure.

A 3 mm loopful of diagnostic typing antiserum is mixed on a cover slip with an equal quantity of pathologic fluid. Enough methylene blue is added to color the drop lightly and the preparation is inverted on a hollow ground slide and sealed with oil. The cover slip may be inverted on a flat slide.

The precipitin test can also provide immediate diagnosis when organisms are numerous when the infection is so mild that bacteria cannot be demonstrated microscopically; this procedure is seldom positive. The technique is as follows:

In a small precipitin tube (50 × 6 mm) a 1-cm column of fluid to be tested is carefully layered by a fine capillary pipette on an equal column of diagnostic rabbit antiserum. A precipitate in the form of a white ring at the interface represents a positive test. The antiserum used and the pathologic fluid must be perfectly clear. Speed of formation of the ring varies with the concentration of specific soluble substance in the fluid; immediate appearance of the ring denotes high concentration. This time factor may be used as an index of severity of infection of the blood or the spinal fluid.

These procedures may be used for immediate diagnosis of *H. influenzae* in spinal fluid, middle ear or joint exudate or empyema fluid, a concentrated suspension of nasopharyngeal mucus from patients with obstructive laryngitis or pneumonia due to this organism may reveal its presence when swelling of the capsule is demonstrated. The specimen of mucus is collected on a small cotton swab (Alexander *et al.* 1941) passed through the nares to the posterior pharyngeal wall where it is allowed to remain for several seconds to collect mucus at the bedside; the swab is placed in a small tube containing 0.2 ml of sterile broth.

Identification of encapsulated *H. influenzae* in cultures from the blood or other fluid may be made after incubation usually for 18 hours by capsular swelling with

type specific diagnostic antiserum. When the latter test is negative Levinthal agar is inoculated to test for iridescence of growth. The importance of a gram stained smear deserves emphasis otherwise serologic crossing between certain types of *H. influenzae* and pneumococci will lead to errors in diagnosis. (See Antigenic Structure.)

If neither capsular swelling nor iridescent quality of growth is demonstrable diagnosis of *H. influenzae* must depend on requirements for both X (hemin) and V (diphosphopyridine nucleotide) factors for growth.

#### Classification of Influenza Bacillus Group According to X and V Factor Requirements

##### REQUIRE X AND V FACTORS FOR GROWTH

###### 1 *H. influenzae*

A Typable potentially pathogenic strains are encapsulated. They are classifiable into 6 specific types by swelling of the capsule or precipitation of the soluble specific substance by specific antibody. A characteristic iridescent growth is produced on Levinthal agar.

B Nontypable noniridescent nonencapsulated seldom pathogenic organisms cannot be differentiated from encapsulated *H. influenzae* on blood agar by morphology of individual members or their colonies. Moreover they also require X and V factors. Their failure to produce iridescent growth on Levinthal agar identifies them as non-typable nonencapsulated variety.

2 *H. hemolyticus* Production of beta hemolysis in blood agar distinguishes this organism from *H. influenzae*. Except for its rare occurrence as a cause of subacute bacterial endocarditis no pathogenic role is recognized. It is found frequently in the normal nasopharynx.

##### V FACTOR BUT NOT X IS REQUIRED FOR GROWTH

1 *H. parainfluenzae* Human pathogenicity appears to be limited to subacute bacterial endocarditis. It is considered as a normal inhabitant of the human nasopharynx. Individual organisms are morphologically similar to *H. influenzae* except for greater regularity of form and less evidence of autolysis. Colonies on blood agar are indistinguishable from those of *H. influenzae*. This class includes two groups.

A Encapsulated *H. parainfluenzae* (Lenert and Alexander unpublished) Cap-

sular swelling can be demonstrated with type specific rabbit antiserum and iridescent growth can be demonstrated on Levinthal agar. There appears to be more than one type.

B Nonencapsulated *H. parainfluenzae*. Growth is noniridescent, and capsular swelling cannot be demonstrated.

2 *H. parahemolyticus* Production of beta hemolysis distinguishes this organism from *H. parainfluenzae*. Human pathogenicity is not unlike that described for *H. hemolyticus* which requires both X and V factors.

*H. suis* Essential growth needs have not been defined. This organism reacts synergistically with the virus of swine influenza in the natural and experimental disease of hogs. Human pathogenicity is unknown. Morphologically this organism does not differ significantly from *H. influenzae* and *H. parainfluenzae*. While Levinthal broth and chocolate agar provide better growth than blood agar growth of most strains on these media is poor. Shope reported that X and V factors are essential for growth but study of a number of strains obtained from Dr. Shope shows that some do not require X factor. In our experience the best growth has been obtained on a modified Levinthal agar with the addition of 5 per cent horse plasma or 10 per cent yeast extract (fresh).

Study of 8 strains revealed 2 different groups.

1 Those producing iridescent growth on modified Levinthal medium. Capsular swelling occurs on exposure to homologous rabbit antibody. Use of antisera produced against 3 iridescent strains failed to reveal immunologic differences among 5 strains. No immunologic relationship was demonstrated between the type specific antigens of *H. suis* and *H. influenzae*.

2 Those showing noniridescent growth demonstrated no type specific characteristics.

##### REQUIRE X FACTOR AND NOT V

*H. hemoglobinophilus* is the only known representative of this group. Human pathogenicity has not been recognized. Friedberger (1903) first described *H. hemoglobinophilus* in chronic purulent exudate from the preputial sac in dogs.

Examination of X and V Factor Requirements of Unknown Organisms. For this purpose media must be available for testing.

the separate and combined action of X and V factors

**X FACTOR MEDIUM** Equal parts of Levinthal stock (used in Levinthal agar) autoclaved 15 minutes at 20 pounds pressure and melted Proteose Agar No 3 (Difco) (45 Gm per liter plus Bacto Agar 15 Gm per liter) X factor is stable and can withstand this treatment V factor is destroyed

**V FACTOR MEDIUM** One part of yeast extract to 9 parts of melted Proteose No 3 Agar (Difco) Yeast extract can be prepared by the following method modified from Thjotta and Avery (1921) Emulsify 100 Gm of powdered brewer's yeast in 400 ml of distilled water Adjust pH to about 4.6 boil for 10 minutes Filter emulsion through filter paper adjust filtrate to pH 7.0 and filter through Seitz filter to sterilize Transfer to a sterile container fitted with a glass stopper and seal with sterile petroleum jelly

**COMBINED X AND V FACTORS** One part of yeast extract to 9 parts of X factor medium

Media are distributed in 3 ml quantities in tubes (100 × 13 mm) and slanted

Cultures to be tested are grown on Levinthal agar a loopful is suspended in 0.2 ml physiologic saline just before inoculating the separate factor media

Pure hemin and coenzyme I may also be used as X and V factors

Pickett and Stewart (1953) report that *H. influenzae* and *H. parainfluenzae* can be distinguished by their satellite formation about growth of catalase positive and catalase negative organisms

Table 1 shows the differential characteristics of the influenza bacillus group

As will be discussed later results of transformation studies using DNA from hemophilus strains may provide a genetic criterion for classification

#### CULTIVATION AND BIOCHEMICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Growth from pathologic fluids may be obtained on blood agar or broth at pH 7.6 somewhat better on chocolate agar Optimal growth takes place in media in which the contents of the red cells are liberated either by heat as in Levinthal (1922) or by peptic digestion as in Fildes (1920) Both of these media have the additional advantage

of transparency and therefore are more suitable for the study of the characteristics of individual colonies The presence or the absence of iridescence can be studied also by viewing the growth on the surface of Levinthal or Fildes agar in obliquely transmitted light Growth on these media is influenced by pH and availability of oxygen The optimal pH is 7.6 Increased aeration by frequent agitation or by use of shallow layers of broth enhances growth

The broth we have found most satisfactory is a further modification of the Pittman (1931) changes in Levinthal broth It is made by mixing 1 part of Levinthal stock with 3 parts of neopeptone broth (Lenert and Hobby 1947) Levinthal stock is prepared as follows brain heart infusion broth (Difco) made according to directions on the bottle is heated to vigorous boiling and sterile defibrinated horse blood is added to make a final concentration of 10 per cent The mixture is filtered through Whatman filter paper No 12 and the clear filtrate is sterilized by Seitz filtration

Levinthal agar is made by adding 1 part of sterile Levinthal stock to 1 part of melted agar [45 Gm Proteose agar No 3 (Difco) plus 15 Gm Bacto agar per liter of water]

Khnstensen (1922) reported that *H. influenzae* produced acid from proteins He suggested that this fact might be responsible for the diversity of opinion concerning the ability of this organism to ferment carbohydrates In his opinion evidence for fermentation of carbohydrates was lacking There is general agreement in any event that this function is of no differential value

Most strains of *H. influenzae* produce indole This is true of a larger fraction of encapsulated strains than of the nonencapsulated There are strains in each group which show no indole production it has proved to be too variable a characteristic to aid in the classification of these organisms

One of the most consistent characteristics of *H. influenzae* is its ability to reduce nitrates to nitrites Hoagland (1942) used quantitation of this action for measuring growth of *H. influenzae*

The solubility of *H. influenzae* in bile first described by Sellards and Sturm (1919) and confirmed by Pittman (1931) offers another

point of similarity to pneumococci. This trait is characteristic of both pathogenic and non pathogenic varieties of *H. influenzae* and therefore is of no differential value.

### MORPHOLOGY

Any description of morphology must be related to the source of the organisms. In pathologic fluids, spinal (Fig. 1), synovial or pleural, the organisms are usually predominantly coccobacillary, simulating diplococci; an erroneous diagnosis of pneumococcus is often made when Gram staining is unsatisfactory. At times the bacilli occur in short chains and are so short that they are mistaken for streptococci. Along with these forms it is virtually always possible to find definite bacilli, some quite long at one end of some there is seen a spherical body stained only at the periphery. Occasionally, the predominant shapes are very bizarre, long slender forms occurring together with thick bacilli which assume the contour of a club, an elbow or other irregular outlines. The possibility that these are variants which favor the emergence of a rough strain is suggested, but demonstration of their capsules makes such an interpretation unlikely.

In cultures the composition of the medium and the age of the culture determine to a great extent the morphology of *H. influenzae*. When Levinthal agar is seeded with 0.5 ml of Levinthal broth culture and incubated 2 to 4 hours, most of the organisms are clearly bacillus shaped. There are also thick forms, irregular in outline, as if the protoplasm were distributed irregularly and chain formation is common. After 6 to 8 hours in cubation the short bacilli and the coccobacilli predominate and the long forms are in the minority. Regularity of morphology is characteristic. Cultures which have been growing for 24 hours contain a large amount of amorphous debris and the predominant recognizable form is the minute, short, poorly stained coccobacillus, giving the impression that only a part of the organism takes the stain. Evidence of autolysis becomes increasingly apparent after 12 hours. At first the organisms take the stain less readily; later amorphous debris is prominent, indicating that the organisms have disintegrated. Inoculation of Levinthal agar plate with

0.5 ml of an 18 hour Levinthal broth culture results in growth in 3 to 4 hours. Iridescence is visible by obliquely transmitted light within 4 to 6 hours, this quality becomes more striking during the next 2 hours and subsequently starts to decrease. After 24 hours the iridescent quality is absent. Paralleling this phenomenon the capsules disappear, and the organisms disintegrate. There is reason to believe that these 3 changes which occur simultaneously are the result of liberation of enzymes by the bacteria. When a much smaller inoculum is used to seed Levinthal agar (a 2 mm loop of 18 hour Levinthal broth culture) maximum iridescence is seen in 18 hours; the capsules are well preserved and evidence of autolysis of organisms is absent at that time. Apparently a longer period is required for this smaller population to produce sufficient autolyzing enzymes. In Levinthal broth the changes in morphology are similar, but less pleomorphic is seen and autolysis proceeds more slowly.

### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

The antigenic pattern of encapsulated pathogenic varieties of *H. influenzae*, types *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e* and *f*, is determined by specific soluble substances produced by each type and concentrated in the capsule. Goebel (reported by Pittman, 1931) concluded that type *a* specific substance is a polysaccharide. Dingle and Fothergill (1939) reported the polysaccharide nature of type *b* specific substance. MacPherson *et al.* (1946) agreed on the polysaccharide nature of types *a* and *b* and reported this to be true for types *c*, *d* and *f* as well. The substance responsible for type specificity in types *a*, *b*, *c* and *f* has been shown by Zamenhof and Leidy (1954) to be a polysugarphosphate. Type *b* substance is a polyribophosphate (Zamenhof *et al.* 1953). In 2 types *d* and *e* the type specific substances are polysaccharides which do not contain phosphorus or sulfur. Only type *b* a polyribophosphate contains a pentose as its sugar moiety (Zamenhof *et al.* 1953). The other type specific substances contain hexoses or hexosamines (Rosenberg *et al.* 1961). The type of a given strain of *H. influenzae* may be established by capsular swelling, agglutination of organisms of pre-

cipitation of the specific soluble substance with diagnostic typing serum. The type specific antigen is responsible for these 3 reactions and also for stimulating the production of protective antibody as well.

It is of great interest that 3 types of *H. influenzae* are related immunologically to certain types of pneumococci (Chapman and Osborne 1942; Alexander *et al.* 1946). Table 2 shows the cross reactions as evidenced by capsular swelling between the type specific antigens of *H. influenzae* and pneumococci.

The characteristics of the somatic antigens are less well known. Platt (1939) isolated 2 proteins: a P substance making up the mass of the protein which requires destruction of the organism for its liberation and an M substance which is labile, small in amount and apparently a surface antigen since it is freed from the intact organism by washing with saline. The M substance is toxic for animals and is common to all strains, whereas P substance is nontoxic and differs among strains. Dubos (1941) obtained from an R derivative of type b *H. influenzae* which had high toxigenic power an antigen lethal for rabbits in 0.1 mg. doses. Immunization of rabbits resulted in resistance to 50 M.L.D. of this substance. The toxic substance is believed to be an endotoxin.

Studies on the somatic antigens of the influenza bacillus group by immunologic procedures suggest the presence of a common antigen in all types of encapsulated *H. influenzae* and in some nontypable varieties. However, recent investigations using transformation techniques suggest important biologic differences.

The agglutination reaction when incubated at 37° C for 2 hours showed the same degree of specificity as the precipitation test. However, when agglutination was carried out at 55° C for 4 hours (the conventional procedure) there were marked cross reactions among the different types. This fact probably explains the failure of the agglutination test, in the hands of earlier observers, to identify specific types which must have been present in a part of the population. More recent studies have shown that the somatic antigens of all 6 types as well as some nonencap-

TABLE 2. CROSS REACTIONS BETWEEN POLYSACCHARIDES OF PNEUMOCOCCI AND TYPE SPECIFIC ANTIGENS OF INFLUENZA BACILLI\*

PNEUMOCOCCUS	<i>H. influenzae</i>
6 Sub group	Type a
6 Sub group	Type b
11 †	Type c
15 A †	Type b
29 Sub group	Type b
35 B †	Type b

\* Alexander, H. E., Leidy, G. and MacPherson, C. 1946. Production of types a, b, c, d, e and f *H. influenzae* antibody for diagnostic and therapeutic purposes. *Journal of Immunology* 54: 207.

† Not hitherto recorded.

sulated strains exhibit immunologic cross reactions. Exposure to the higher temperature apparently releases some somatic components. The labile capsules of *H. influenzae* cannot be identified after such treatment. Pittman's study of variation of colonial forms of *H. influenzae* demonstrated the process whereby an S strain under artificial cultivation becomes rough; the changes observed explained earlier controversies on morphology and some of the failures to identify specific types. It is apparent, as emphasized by Pittman, that the immunologic behavior of the influenza bacillus parallels in a number of respects that of the pneumococcus.

As mentioned earlier, encapsulated forms of *H. influenzae* can be differentiated into types by capsular swelling (Alexander 1939). This procedure is also useful for detecting changes in the state of the capsule. Study of type b *H. influenzae* through all phases of the growth cycle in Levinthal broth and agar reveals that the capsules are much more labile than those of pneumococci. When large inocula are grown for 7 hours they begin to show deterioration and in 24 hours it is difficult to identify them. Degeneration of the capsules is more delayed when the inoculum is small; for this reason the vaccine used to produce rabbit antibody is prepared from 6-hour cultures of *H. influenzae* on Levinthal agar. The organisms if washed from the plate with 0.5 per cent formalinized saline and immediately iced exhibit good preservation of capsules for as

long as a few weeks. However degeneration of capsules occurs even in the presence of 0.5 per cent formalin if the suspensions are allowed to stand at room temperature for as short a period as 2 hours.

Antibody to *H. influenzae* can be measured quantitatively in rabbit antiserum (Alexander and Heidelberger 1940).

#### TOXINS AND HOST RANGE

A number of authors (Jordan 1927 and Scott 1929) working with strains of *H. influenzae* cultivated from patients with influenza during the pandemic of 1918 reported that the injection of some strains into animals was followed by lethal toxic injury. However the size of the lethal dose suggests that the toxic effect was due to an endotoxin and not an exotoxin.

There is no evidence that *H. influenzae* produces a true exotoxin. On the other hand the injurious effect caused by what are probably endotoxins may play a significant role in the pathogenesis of severe infections. Whether or not the different pathologic potentialities described for some strains depend on their capacity to produce this material cannot be answered. Nor do we have any evidence that antibody to these toxic substances is important in recovery from *H. influenzae* infections. On the other hand the antigenic importance of the toxic fractions isolated by Platt (1939) and Dubos (1941) warrants further exploration.

*H. influenzae* is not naturally pathogenic for any of the smaller animals. Multiplication with invasion of the blood does occur in mice injected intraperitoneally with organisms suspended in mucin (Fothergill *et al.* 1937) or when suspensions in brain are introduced intracerebrally (De Torregrossa and Francis 1941). These tests serve a useful purpose for testing efficacy of antibacterial agents but are not adequate for differentiation between pathogenic and nonpathogenic strains.

In monkeys Blake and Cecil (1920) reported bronchiolitis and hemorrhagic bronchopneumonia following intratracheal introduction of a culture of a pathogenic influenza bacillus. Wollstein (1911) produced meningitis in monkeys by intrathecal inoculation of *H. influenzae*.

Wright and Ward (1932) described an *in vitro* test which could distinguish between strains cultivated from spinal fluid and those found in the respiratory tract of many normal subjects; the former were uninfluenced by normal rabbit blood, the latter were killed. All strains which were well preserved in rabbit blood produced a type specific soluble substance.

Fothergill *et al.* (1937) provided an *in vivo* method for evaluating the influence of some therapeutic agents on this organism. In our experience (Alexander and Leidy 1943a) 2 to 200 organisms of type b *H. influenzae* strains isolated from patients with *H. influenzae* infections when suspended in mucin as first described by Miller (1933) are lethal for at least 50 per cent of mice infected by the intraperitoneal route. Mouse protection tests can be used to check the validity of the quantitative chemical methods for determining potency of type b rabbit antiserum. The protective element in the antiserum is polynitrobenzene phosphate antibody (Alexander *et al.* 1944).

#### PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Even though there is a significant incidence of *H. influenzae* meningitis, pneumonia and epiglottitis in adults which is not generally appreciated, hemophilus infections are a major problem only in the pediatric age group. The report of Ward and Fothergill in 1931 suggesting that this difference is the result of the bactericidal property of the blood in most adults—a property which is lacking in most infants and children—has been generally accepted as the explanation for this difference. It is true that the age incidence of *H. influenzae* meningitis seems to correlate with bactericidal power of blood according to tests carried out in small samples of individuals. The protective factor in specific antiserum (Alexander *et al.* 1942, 1944) is antibody against the specific soluble substance; this antibody apparently promotes phagocytosis. In other words the defense mechanisms against hemophilus infections show a striking similarity to those effective against pneumococci.

Recent knowledge on the role of complement in inflammation in general (Lepow 1960) suggests its participation in a non

specific way in the defenses against *H influenzae* also even though complement induced bacteriolysis may not be the specific mechanism of action

Of equal interest in the fields of pathogenesis and immunity are the factors which determine whether a child after invasion by *H influenzae* develops only a febrile upper respiratory infection or a severe disease. A chronic respiratory infection with typable *H influenzae* may persist in some children for several months without emergence of a severe infection. It is known that children develop type specific agglutinins within about 2 weeks after such an experience. There is reason to believe that antibody response to typable *H influenzae* plays a role in susceptibility to severe infection. It is not known whether the early development of severe infection is a reflection of inefficient antibody production, the large size of the infecting dose or whether it represents depression of defense mechanisms by nonspecific forces such as stress, cold, nutritional depletion by starvation or by another infectious agent for example a virus. In the 1957 Asian influenza epidemic we encountered not only a new clinical pattern of fulminating *H influenzae* infection of the central nervous system but also an increased incidence of severe infections. During one week of January 1957, 7 patients with *H influenzae* epiglottitis were admitted to Babies Hospital, a few more than we usually see during 1 year.

### VIRULENCE

Potential virulence is related to the encapsulated state of *H influenzae* and to the quantity of specific soluble substance elaborated. During the 30 year period since Pittman's contributions on differentiation of disease producing strains and those which inhabit the nasopharynx of the majority of normal individuals the evidence has become even more convincing that *H influenzae* pyogenic disease is caused virtually always by type specific encapsulated strains. The exceptions have been described.

The distinctive ability of type *b H influenzae* to produce severe pyogenic disease with a high incidence of bacteremia may be due to the quality or quantity of its type

specific substance, a polyribophosphate or to other antigens or virulence factors.

Mouse protection tests have been of some value for testing virulence but the need for suspension in mucin makes the infection unnatural and limits interpretation. However, virulence of nonencapsulated strains tested under these circumstances is lower than virulence of encapsulated type specific *H influenzae*. On the other hand it has not been possible to show by this technique that type *b* has a higher virulence for the mouse than do the other specific types *a*, *c*, *d*, *e* and *f*.

### ECOLOGY

Many studies have demonstrated the presence of nontypable *H influenzae* in the nasopharynx of the majority of normal individuals in most age groups. The relationship of typable potentially pathogenic hemophilus to the widely disseminated nontypable strains has assumed great interest and importance since the demonstration of in vitro DNA mediated genetic transfer from one organism to another. Genetic traits of type *b H influenzae* indistinguishable from naturally occurring strains can be induced in vitro in nontypable *H influenzae* or in *H influenzae* organisms of different type specificity as a result of exposure to DNA isolated from type *b H influenzae*.

When cultures of encapsulated strains of *H influenzae* are sparsely seeded on a transparent medium (Levinthal or Fildes agar), 2 kinds of colonies appear as first reported by Pittman (1931). Almost all of the colonies are opaque and large after 18 hours growth. When viewed in obliquely transmitted light they show a characteristic iridescence. At times there are present at least one or more colonies which fail to show iridescence; they are smaller, bluish and transparent. Transfer of one of the latter colonies to Levinthal broth yields a culture with characteristics differing from the original; no specific soluble substance is detectable by the usual criteria; capsular swelling can not be demonstrated and when the broth inoculum is again seeded on Levinthal agar no indescendent colonies are seen. These variants arise spontaneously under what are deemed to be optimal conditions of artificial cultivation. Under certain less favorable con-



ditions the culture is made up predominantly of these variants and the culture is said to have passed from the smooth to the rough phase

The emergence of R cells from type *b H influenzae* has also been demonstrated in the nasopharynx of patients following recovery from influenzal meningitis. Evidence that the R cells can be derived from type *b* organisms has in some cases been provided by a genetic marker in the R cells: the inherited streptomycin resistant trait which the type *b H influenzae* cells grown from the spinal fluid and the nasopharynx also exhibited following treatment of a patient with meningitis by streptomycin alone.

There is reason to believe that most children recover from type *b H influenzae* respiratory infections without specific therapy and develop immunity as a result. The most rewarding group for study of the ecology of type *b H influenzae* are members of families in which one child has developed meningitis (Good *et al.* 1943): all of the siblings will show type *b H influenzae* in the nasopharyngeal mucus, some with respiratory tract signs and symptoms. The mother usually shows this organism too from time to time, whereas in the children it is persistent over long periods whenever they are cultured, yet serious disease in more than one member is unusual. Type *b H influenzae* may spread among patients on a hospital ward, not unlike pneumococci (Johnson and Fousek 1953).

#### TRANSFORMATION

There are at least 2 kinds of phenomena which are exerting forces responsible for changes in heritable traits of hemophilus as well as other populations. (1) selection of spontaneously occurring mutants which is so well exemplified by emergence of resistance of *H influenzae* to streptomycin (Alexander and Leidy 1947a, b) and (2) induction of new traits by exposure to a DNA derived from cells possessing the character to be introduced. When nontypable *H influenzae* populations derived from types *a*, *b*, *d* or *e* but lacking capsules and ability to produce specific soluble substance and indolent growth on Levinthal agar are exposed to DNA-containing extracts of type *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e* or *f*, certain genetic traits of the donors

of the DNA will appear in the recipient populations. Type-specific populations can be changed to a new type by exposure to DNA from a heterologous type. Therefore absence of type specificity is not a prerequisite for induction of a genetic change (Alexander and Leidy, 1951b). In populations of either typable or nontypable *H influenzae* which are sensitive to streptomycin (Leidy, Hahn and Alexander 1953), resistance of a high degree (1,000 mcg per ml) can be induced by DNA derived from populations which show the latter degree of resistance to streptomycin. When type *b H influenzae* was exposed to DNA extract of type *a* cells an interesting phenomenon occurred: type *a* and type *b* antigens could be demonstrated within the same cell designated Sab (Alexander and Leidy, 1953b). The DNA extract of Sab cells could induce the ab trait in R cells derived from type *d* and individual type *a* and type *b* traits in other cells. These data have been interpreted as evidence of linkage of the heredity determinants of types *a* and *b*. Thus the DNAs of *H influenzae* have been shown to function as heredity determinants *in vitro*.

Whether this phenomenon occurs *in vivo* is not known at present. If it can be shown to operate *in vivo*, the large reservoir of non-typable *H influenzae* found in the respiratory tracts of individuals of all ages may prove to be of greater significance than is now appreciated.

In the hemophilus system in populations known to contain susceptible cells the reaction between the recipient cell and DNA is virtually immediate and does not require growth. However, even under the best conditions according to our present knowledge only a very small proportion of the population exposed is susceptible to induction of a genetic change. The factors which influence the susceptibility or the competence of cells have assumed great significance.

The evidence suggests that in a given population the size of the proportion of cells susceptible to different heredity determinants is the same (Alexander and Leidy 1954). When a population is exposed to mixtures of two different DNAs, 75 per cent of the type *b* DNA and 25 per cent of DNA of type *c*, 75 per cent of the transformed cells will be

type *b* and 25 per cent type *c*. Moreover the action of one DNA previously can completely exclude a DNA added within 15 minutes.

A number of factors have been shown to influence the proportion of a population transformed (Alexander *et al.* 1954).

**Type of Origin of Recipient Cells.** Type *a* exhibits the lowest frequency about 1/10 000 000 and type *d* the highest approximately 1 to 5 per 100 cells exposed. This type specific property which controls the frequency of susceptible cells is an inherited trait repeated change to a heterologous type shows no influence on their incidence.

**Concentration of DNA.** Within certain limits increase in the concentration of DNA controlling streptomycin resistance can increase the size of the proportion of cells in which streptomycin resistance can be induced. This result is to be expected if a single unit or molecule is the cause of transformation. However 100 fold increases in concentrations greater than  $10^{-1}$  µg per ml have not induced streptomycin resistance in a higher proportion of cells.

**Phase of Growth Cycle.** Predictable fluctuations in frequency of induced heritable changes have been demonstrated in *Ra*, *Rb*, *Rd* and *Re* populations during growth in stationary Levinthal broth. These fluctuations reflect physiologic changes in the cells. Susceptible cells emerge in all experiments when the population reaches the end of the logarithmic period and a density of 2 to  $4 \times 10^8$  cells per ml. In the early logarithmic phase it is difficult to demonstrate the presence of any susceptible cells. The peak frequency of cells susceptible to transformation to streptomycin resistance 0.1 per cent occurs in the early stationary phase of the growth cycle. Thereafter the decline in frequency is gradual.

Goodgal and Herriott (1961) have shown that the proportion of competent (transformable to streptomycin resistance) cells in *Rd* *H. influenzae* populations may be increased to 1 per cent or more if the population is aerated during exponential growth and then after a period of incubation with reduced aeration is diluted 1/20 into a medium containing DNA and then incubated for 30

minutes. Some unknown factor(s) in the culture medium appeared to be essential for the high degree of competence of the diluted population in our experience dilution of even 1/100 in saline leads to a marked decrease in the transformability of the population. This dilution effect was used as a tool for the development of a chemically defined medium in which a high degree of competence emerges even in dilution by a factor of  $10^4$  in 3 species of hemophilus *H. influenzae*, *H. aegyptius* and *H. parainfluenzae*. The results suggest that 2 amino acids L aspartic and L glutamic play a significant role. The process required for emergence of competence in the defined medium is temperature dependent and is inhibited by chloramphenicol (Leidy *et al.* 1962).

**Genetic Relationship of Recipient and Donor Cells.** DNA mediated resistance to streptomycin is induced in the highest proportion of a sensitive population of hemophilus when the donor of the DNA belongs to the same species as the recipient cells. The ratio

$$\frac{\text{cells transformed by heterologous DNA}}{\text{cells transformed by homologous DNA}}$$

is a reflection of the degree of kinship or homology of genes of the recipient and the donor cells. Our own work and that of others has suggested that the degree of reactivity of the DNA's of recipient and donor cells might be used as a taxonomic guide (Leidy *et al.* 1956, Schaeffer 1958, Marumur 1963). This principle has been applied to a species of hemophilus previously known as Koch-Weeks bacillus but reclassified as a new species *H. aegyptius* the size of the ratio of transformants induced in an *H. influenzae* population by DNA from *H. aegyptius* suggests that *H. aegyptius* is a variant of *H. influenzae* (Leidy *et al.* 1959). However differences between *H. influenzae* and *H. aegyptius* are well recognized. Recent experiments in our laboratory designed to explore these differences have used 2 genetic markers resistance to streptomycin and resistance to novobiocin. The greater sensitivity of *H. aegyptius* to novobiocin is associated with a lower degree of resistance of the organisms emerging as a result of a single mutational step. On the other hand the degree of genetic homology is clearly

demonstrated by the use of the 2 markers streptomycin and novobiocin resistance which are linked in each species (Leidy *et al* 1964)

**Unknown Factors** Recent reports indicated that the environment in which the population reaches the end of the logarithmic phase plays a role (Goodgal and Herriott 1961) For example, if rapid growth is promoted by increased oxygenation followed by decreased oxygenation and DNA exposure occurs in the presence of 0.15 M NaCl in 1:10 dilution the highest proportion of cells is transformed As the dilution is increased in saline this proportion decreases This decrease on dilution in saline can be prevented by the presence of 2 amino acids (Leidy *et al* 1962) The results suggest that certain metabolic reactions are necessary for completion of the transformation started in the salt environment

#### TREATMENT

Prior to 1938 the mortality in patients with influenzal meningitis was close to 100 per cent Today there are a number of effective therapeutic agents type specific rabbit antiserum (Alexander *et al* 1942) streptomycin erythromycin ampicillin the tetracyclines chloramphenicol and polymyxin The location the duration and the severity of infection govern the selection of agents in a given patient In febrile upper respiratory tract infection with early otitis media or sinusitis in obstructive epiglottitis and in pneumonia prompt recovery has occurred following use of sulfonamides alone However the risk of therapeutic failure is virtually eliminated by the use of an additional agent tetracyclines or chloramphenicol In the more serious infections meningitis pyarthrosis with or without osteomyelitis empyema or pericarditis the use of two agents is clearly indicated

Sufficient data are now available for a comparison of 3 different therapeutic programs in meningitis (1) type specific rabbit antiserum and sulfonamides (2) streptomycin and sulfadiazine and (3) chloramphenicol and sulfadiazine (Alexander 1956) Any of the 3 can be expected to cure virtually 100 per cent of the patients who are treated early in the course of the disease

#### Type Specific Rabbit Antibody Therapy

This form of therapy is of interest today primarily because of its historic aspects and because it exemplifies a number of important principles in microbiology

Type *b H influenzae* rabbit antibody was the first therapeutic agent which made it possible to cure most patients suffering from type *b H influenzae* meningitis Horse antibody made in two other institutions had failed Whether the greater efficacy of rabbit antibody is explained by the qualitative differences between antibody produced in the rabbit and that made in the horse or whether our regimen for use of rabbit antibody satisfied the quantitative needs more effectively is not known The rabbit antibody which proved to be successful was measured quantitatively in terms of mg of agglutinin nitrogen per ml the size of the therapeutic dose in children differed with the severity of the infection the total amount judged to be necessary was administered at one time and after administration the adequacy of the dose used for a given patient was checked by examining the serum for its capacity to cause capsular swelling of young cultures of type *b H influenzae* (Alexander *et al* 1942) Horse antiserum had not been used according to these principles Moreover there is reason to believe that the chemical nature of the antigen used to produce rabbit antibody was more representative of the organism causing the infection and that therefore the rabbit antibody was a more specific therapeutic agent

Today other treatments are at least as effective for most patients with influenzal meningitis they are simpler to use are less expensive and do not have the disadvantage of causing serum sickness There is only a small proportion of patients with influenzal meningitis in whom there is a rationale for using specific rabbit antibody in addition to other agents mainly those who run a fulminating course and exhibit signs of widespread encephalitis during the first several hours after onset and young infants who exhibit signs of severe disease

**Streptomycin** Streptomycin as a single therapeutic agent is seriously limited in its capacity to eliminate *H influenzae* in central nervous system infection when the patient exhibits signs of severe infection—in other words when the bacterial population is suf

ficiently large. Under this circumstance mutants resistant to high concentrations of streptomycin emerge rapidly. This deficiency can be eliminated by using a sulfonamide in conjunction with streptomycin.

Two other disadvantages of streptomycin deserve consideration in our experience. (1) Optimal concentrations of streptomycin can be attained at the site of infection only by intrathecal administration of streptomycin. Today intrathecal treatment can be eliminated in most patients with meningitis by choice of an appropriate therapeutic regimen. (2) Damage to the vestibular branch of the 8th nerve and to the auditory branch are hazards of streptomycin treatment which no longer need to be accepted.

**Chloramphenicol and Sulfonamides** There is general agreement that chloramphenicol in conjunction with a sulfonamide is now the program of choice. Both agents are found in the spinal fluids in optimal concentrations promptly following parenteral administration; the levels are approximately two thirds of the concentrations found in the blood. Therefore intrathecal treatment is unnecessary. The concentration of chloramphenicol found in the spinal fluid is bactericidal. In the more than 10 years during which chloramphenicol and a sulfonamide have been used for treating patients with influenzal meningitis the spinal fluid after a 24 hour treatment has been sterile and we have encountered no recrudescences. Our program is as follows: chloramphenicol in a dose of 100 mg/kg daily (not to exceed 2 G) and sulfisoxazole in a dose sufficient to maintain a concentration of 10 mg per cent are given intravenously for the first 24 hours along with 5 per cent dextrose and enough physiologic saline and water to satisfy requirements of the individual.

## REFERENCES

- Alexander H E 1939 Type B<sup>+</sup> anti influenzal rabbit serum for therapeutic purposes. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 40 313-314.
- 1943a Experimental basis for treatment of *Haemophilus influenzae* infections. *Am J Dis Child* 66 160-171.
- 1943b Treatment of *Haemophilus influenzae* infections and of meningococcal and pneumococcal meningitis. *Am J Dis Child* 66 172-187.
- 1956 Treatment of pyogenic meningitis in Neurology and Psychiatry in Childhood vol 34 Chap 1. *Proc Ass Res Nerv Ment Dis* Baltimore Williams & Wilkins.
- Alexander H E, Craig H R, Shirley R G and Ellis C 1941 Validity of etiological diagnosis of pneumonia in children by rapid typing from nasopharyngeal mucus. *J Pediatr* 18 31-35.
- Alexander H E, Ellis C and Leidy G 1942 Treatment of type specific *Hemophilus influenzae* infections in infancy and childhood. *J Pediatr* 20 673-698.
- Alexander H E and Heidelberger M 1940 Chemical studies on bacterial agglutination. V. Agglutinin and precipitin content of antisera to *Haemophilus influenzae* type B. *J Exp Med* 71 1-11.
- Alexander H E, Heidelberger M and Leidy G 1944 The protective or curative element in type B *H. influenzae* rabbit serum. *Yale J Biol Med* 16 425-434.
- Alexander H E and Leidy G 1947a Mode of action of streptomycin on type b *H. influenzae*. I. Origin of resistant organisms. *J Exp Med* 85 329-338.
- 1947b Mode of action of streptomycin on type b *Hemophilus influenzae*. II. Nature of resistant variants. *J Exp Med* 85 607-621.
- 1951 Induction of heritable new type in type specific strains of *H. influenzae*. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 78 625-626.
- 1953 Induction of streptomycin resistance in sensitive *Hemophilus influenzae* by extracts containing desoxyribonucleic acid from resistant *Hemophilus influenzae*. *J Exp Med* 97 17-31.
- Alexander H E, Leidy G and Hahn E 1954 Studies on the nature of *Hemophilus influenzae* cells susceptible to heritable changes by desoxyribonucleic acids. *J Exp Med* 99 505-533.
- Alexander H E, Leidy G and MacPherson C 1946 Production of types a, b, c, d and f *H. influenzae* antibody for diagnostic and therapeutic purposes. *J Immunol* 54 207-211.
- Bang F B 1943 Synergistic action of *Hemophilus influenzae* and the swine influenza virus on the chick embryo. *J Exp Med* 77 7-20.
- Blake F G and Cecil R L 1920 Production of an acute respiratory disease by inoculation with bacillus influenzae. *JAMA* 74 170.
- Chapman O D and Osborne W 1942 Serological relationships between *Diplococcus*

- pneumoniae and *Hemophilus influenzae* J Bact 44 620 621
- Cooke R E (ed) 1964 Biologic Basis of Pediatric Practice New York McGraw Hill
- Davis D J 1917 Food accessory factors (vitamins) in bacterial culture with especial reference to hemophilic bacilli J Infect Dis 21 392-403
- 1921 The accessory factors in bacterial growth IV The satellite or symbiosis phenomenon of Pfeiffer's bacillus (*B influenzae*) J Infect Dis 29 178 186
- De Torregrasa M V and Francis T Jr 1941 The intracerebral infection of mice with *Hemophilus influenzae* as an index of strain virulence and the protective value of immune serum J Infect Dis 68 59 66
- Dingle J H and Fothergill L D 1939 The isolation and properties of the specific polysaccharide of type b *Hemophilus influenzae* J Immun 37 53 63
- Dubos R J 1942 A soluble toxin produced by *Hemophilus influenzae* Abs Proc 43rd annual meeting Soc Am Bact Dec 1941 J Bact 43 77 78
- Fildes P 1921 The nature of the effect of blood pigment upon the growth of *B influenzae* Brit J Exp Path 2 16 25
- Fildes P 1924 The growth requirements of haemolytic influenzae bacilli and the bearing of these upon the classification of related organisms Brit J Exp Path 5 69 74
- Fothergill L D Dingle J H and Chandler C A 1937 Studies on *Haemophilus influenzae* I Infection of mice with mucin suspensions of the organism J Exp Med 65 721 734
- Good P G Fousek M D Grossman M P and Boisvert P L 1943 A study of the familial spread of *Hemophilus influenzae* type b Yale J Biol Med 15 913 918
- Goodgal S H and Herriott R M 1961 Studies on transformations of *Hemophilus influenzae* I Competence J Gen Physiol 44 1201 1227
- Griffith F 1928 The significance of pneumococcal types J Hyg 27 113 159
- Hoagland C L Ward S M Gilder H and Shank R E 1942 Studies on the nutrition of *Hemophilus influenzae* I The relationship between the utilization of coenzyme and hemin and the reduction of nitrate J Exp Med 76 241 252
- Jordan, E. O 1927 Epidemic influenzae Chicago American Medical Association
- Kristensen M 1922 Investigation into the occurrence and classification of the haemoglobinophilic bacteria Copenhagen
- Leidy G Hahn E and Alexander H E 1956 On the specificity of the desoxyribonucleic acid which induces streptomycin resistance in *Hemophilus* J Exp Med 104 305 320
- Leidy G Hahn E and Alexander H E 1953 *In vitro* production of new types of *Hemophilus influenzae* J Exp Med 97 467 482
- 1959 Interspecific transformation in *Hemophilus* A possible index of relationship between *H. influenzae* and *H. aegyptius* Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 102 86 88
- Leidy G Jaffee I and Alexander H E 1962 Emergence of competence (for transformation) of three *Hemophilus* species in a chemically defined environment Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 111 725 731
- Leidy G Jaffee I and Alexander H E 1964 Use of deoxyribonucleic acid mediated transformation to define relationships among species of *Hemophilus* (To be published)
- Lemierre A Meyer A and Laplane R 1936 Les septicémies à bacille de Pfeiffer Ann. med 39 97 119
- Lenert T F and Hobby G L 1947 Observations on the action of streptomycin *in vitro* I II Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 65 235 249
- Lepow I H 1960 Interaction of serum inhibitor of C<sub>1</sub> Esterase with intermediate complexes of the immune hemolytic system J Immun 5 222 224
- Levinthal W and Fernbach H 1922 Morphologische Studien an Influenzabacillen und das etiologische Grippeproblem Z Hyg Infektionskr 96 456 519
- MacPherson C F C Heidelberger M Alexander H E and Leidy G 1946 The specific polysaccharides of types a b c d and f *Hemophilus influenzae* J Immun 52 207 219
- Marmur J Falkow S and Mandel M 1963 New approaches to bacterial taxonomy in Ann Rev Microbiol 17 329 372
- Miller C P 1933 Experimental meningococcal infection in mice Science 78 340 341
- Pfeiffer R 1893 Die Aetologie der Influenza Z Hyg Infektionskr 13 357 386
- Pickett M J and Stewart M A 1953 Identification of hemophilic bacilli by means of the satellite phenomenon Am J Clin Path 23 713 715

- Pittman M 1931 Variation and type specificity in the bacterial species *Hemophilus influenzae* J Exp Med 53 471-492
- Pittman M and Davis D J 1950 Identification of the Koch Weeks bacillus (*Hemophilus aegyptius*) J Bact 59 413-426
- Platt A E 1939 A serological study of *Haemophilus influenzae* 2 Two serologically active protein fractions isolated from Pfeiffer's bacillus Aust J Exp Biol Med Sc 17 19 24
- Pritchett I W and Stillman E G 1919 The occurrence of *Bacillus influenzae* in throats and saliva J Exp Med 29 259 266
- Rivers T M 1922 Bacterial nutrition growth of a hemophilic bacillus on media containing only an autoclave stable substance as an accessory factor Johns Hopkins Hosp Bull 33 149 151
- 1922 Influenza like bacilli growth of influenza like bacilli on media containing only an autoclave labile substance as an accessory food factor Johns Hopkins Hosp Bull 33 429-431
- 1922 Influenzal meningitis Am J Dis Child 24 102 124
- Rivers T M and Poole A K 1921 Growth requirements of influenza bacilli Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 32 202 204
- Rosenberg E Leidy G Jaffee I and Zamenhof S 1961 Studies on type specific substances of *Hemophilus influenzae* types e and f J Biol Chem 236 2841 2844
- Schaeffer P 1958 Interspecific reactions in bacterial transformation Symp Soc Exp Biol 12 60 74
- Scott W M 1929 The influenza group of bacteria in A System of Bacteriology in Relation to Medicine vol 2 pp 326 387 Medical Research Council London His Majesty's Stationery Office
- Sellards A W and Sturm E 1919 The occurrence of the Pfeiffer bacillus in measles Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 30 331 337
- Shope R E 1931 Swine influenza I Experimental transmission and pathology J Exp Med 54 349 359
- 1931 Swine influenza III Filtration experiments and etiology J Exp Med 54 373 385
- 1944 Old intermediate and contemporary contributions to our knowledge of pandemic influenza Medicine 23 415 455
- Thyotta T and Avery O T 1921 Studies on bacterial nutrition II Growth accessory substances in the cultivation of hemophilic bacilli J Exp Med 34 97 114
- Turk D C 1963 Nasopharyngeal carriage of *Haemophilus influenzae* type II J Hyg 61 247 256
- Valentine I C O and Rivers T M 1927 Further observations concerning growth requirements of hemophilic bacilli J Exp Med 45 993 1002
- Ward H K and Fothergill L D 1932 Influenzal meningitis treated with specific anti serum and complement Report of 5 cases Am J Dis Child 43 873 881
- Weeks J E 1887 The pathogenic microbe of acute catarrhal conjunctivitis Med Rec (NY) 31 571
- Wollstein M 1915 An immunological study of *bacillus influenzae* J Exp Med 22 445 456
- Wright J and Ward H K 1932 Studies on influenzal meningitis II *B influenzae*—the problem of virulence and resistance J Exp Med 55 235 246
- Zamenhof S and Leidy G 1954 Further studies on polyribophosphate and other poly sugarphosphates Fed Proc 13 327
- Zamenhof S Leidy G Fitzgerald P L Alexander H E and Chargaff E 1953 Polyribophosphate the type specific substance of *Hemophilus influenzae* type b J Biol Chem 203 695 704

# 30

## The Bordetella Group

### BORDETELLA PERTUSSIS

*Bordetella* is a newly created genus which includes *B. pertussis*, *B. parapertussis* and *B. bronchiseptica* all formerly included in the genus *Hemophilus*. The separate genus was proposed because these organisms do not always require the growth factors found in blood and because they are antigenically related.

*B. pertussis* is the cause of whooping cough, a highly communicable acute infection of the respiratory tract. It is prevalent among infants and children and may cause serious pulmonary and cerebral complications and even death, especially in young infants.

### HISTORY

Little is known about whooping cough until the Middle Ages when Moulton described drugs used in the treatment of the "kink," a Scottish colloquialism synonymous with fit or paroxysm. It was also known as "chincough," derived from the Teutonic word *kindhoest*, meaning child's cough. DeBailieu (1578) is credited with the first classic description of the disease (an epidemic in Paris which was called *coqueluche*).

One of the earliest American descriptions was that by Benjamin Waterhouse (1822). A comprehensive account of the disease may be found in Lapin's *Whooping Cough* (1943).

The causative organism *B. pertussis* was first observed and isolated from an infant by Bordet and Gengou (1906). Chlevitz and

Meyer (1916) introduced the cough plate method for bacteriologic diagnosis. A more practicable and efficient method, now in general use, is the nasopharyngeal swab technique (Bradford, Day and Berry, 1946).

The early ineffectiveness of pertussis vaccine was explained by Leslie and Gardner (1931) whose work stressed the changes in antigenic phases that occur during artificial cultivation of the organism.

Although the dual etiologic role of a virus was suggested by certain investigators, it is now clear that *B. pertussis* alone can produce the disease in laboratory animals (Shibley, 1934) as well as in man (MacDonald and MacDonald, 1933).

### MORPHOLOGY

*B. pertussis*, when first isolated, is a small nonmotile ovoid bacillus. Its mean length like that of *B. parapertussis* or *B. bronchiseptica* is 0.5 micron. Cells of original cultures are uniform in size, but on subculture become pleomorphic, longer and thread-shaped. In liquid media aropy mucoid mass results from the growth of old cultures. Electron micrographs of the organism reveal a central mass of dense material surrounded by a wide, clearer zone which is said to contain antigen.

The organism is gram negative, staining best when the counterstain is left on for 2 minutes. Capsules may be demonstrated by special technique, and bipolar metachromatic granules, said to represent uneven distribution of cell lipids, can be shown by staining.

with toluidine blue as suggested by Bordet (Sauer 1957)

#### CULTIVATION AND BIOCHEMICAL REACTIONS

Primary isolation is obtained best on complex media such as that originally used by Bordet and Gengou consisting of a potato blood agar glycerol mixture or some modification of it. It should contain at least 15 per cent blood. Charcoal may be used to replace blood in certain agar media (Pollock 1947) because it like albumin neutralizes toxic fatty acids which inhibit growth. The optimal temperature for growth is from 35° to 37° C.

A solid medium which has proved to be satisfactory is prepared as follows:

1. Bordet Gengou Agar Base dehydrated Bacto (Prepared by the Difco Laboratories Inc. Detroit.) This base contains the following ingredients per liter:

Potato infusion from	125 Gm
NaCl	5.5 Gm
Proteose peptone Difco	10.0 Gm
Bacto-agar	20.0 Gm

2. Solution of 1 per cent glycerol in distilled water

3. Freshly withdrawn (not over 6 hours) defibrinated sheep's blood

A. Suspend 4 Gm of the dehydrated agar base in 100 ml of 1 per cent solution of glycerol in distilled water. Heat to boiling to dissolve the medium completely. Sterilize in autoclave at 15 lbs pressure (121° C) for 20 minutes. This base may be stored in 100 ml Erlenmeyer flasks in the refrigerator.

B. To prepare the final medium heat the base prepared as described above in a water bath until completely liquefied. Cool to from 45° to 50° C by placing the flask in a water bath and add the blood to make a concentration of from 20 to 25 per cent and pour plates. Use plates for cultures which have been prepared within 72 hours.

Satisfactory fluid media have been described by Cohen and Wheeler (1946) by Verwey (1949) and by Sutherland and Wilkerson (1961).

*B. pertussis* produces no gas and does not attack carbohydrates. It neither forms indole nor reduces nitrates. In litmus milk alkalinity results in 10 to 14 days as compared with 1

to 4 days in the case of *B. parapertussis* or *B. bronchiseptica*. About 70 per cent of the strains are catalase positive compared with nearly all strains of *B. parapertussis*. Citrate is not utilized and urea is not split whereas *B. parapertussis* can utilize citrate as the sole source of carbon and readily splits urea.

#### ANTIGENIC RELATIONSHIP

Bordet and Sleswyk (1910) observed that all recently isolated strains of *B. pertussis* agglutinated in a serum prepared against any one of them thus suggesting a single antigenic type. Subsequent workers have generally confirmed this observation. However when such strains of the organism are maintained on nutrient agar variant forms occur. Leslie and Gardner (1931) from a study of 32 apparently smooth strains described 4 different antigenic phases: I the virulent S form, IV the completely avirulent form, and II and III intermediate serologic variants. Of 20 recently isolated strains 18 were found to be in Phase I.

Some investigators regarded these variations as an antigenic relationship as simply changes in the S → R forms in which varying amounts of Phase I antigens remained on the surface of the bacteria. Others believed that qualitative differences existed with the various phases as did Leslie and Gardner.

The nature of the change in the surface antigens of Phase I organisms during subculture is not clear. A rearrangement in the proportion of the different antigens, a modification of these antigens, or the appearance of new ones have all been suggested.

Several antigenic components of the S form are now recognized: agglutinin for heat labile and heat stable, hemagglutinins and protective antigen.

The agglutinin (Flosdorf et al. 1940; Smolens and Mudd 1943) is water soluble and can be liberated from the cell by sonic vibration and by acid extraction. Injected into rabbits it elicits a high titer of agglutinin. It removes this antibody from such serum by absorption. It is nontoxic.

Andersen (1953) by observing the resistance of various strains to heating at 100° C described 2 antigens: one thermostable (O) the other thermolabile (K). He found that all strains of *B. pertussis* had a



## WILLIAM L. BRADFORD

University of Rochester School of Medicine and Dentistry

# 30

## The Bordetella Group

### BORDETELLA PERTUSSIS

*Bordetella* is a newly created genus which includes *B. pertussis*, *B. parapertussis* and *B. bronchiseptica* all formerly included in the genus *Hemophilus*. The separate genus was proposed because these organisms do not always require the growth factors found in blood and because they are antigenically related.

*B. pertussis* is the cause of whooping cough, a highly communicable acute infection of the respiratory tract. It is prevalent among infants and children and may cause serious pulmonary and cerebral complications and even death, especially in young infants.

### HISTORY

Little is known about whooping cough until the Middle Ages when Moulton described drugs used in the treatment of the Kink, a Scottish colloquialism synonymous with fit or paroxysm. It was also known as chun cough, derived from the Teutonic word *Kindhoest* meaning child's cough. DeBaillet, 1578, is credited with the first classic description of the disease (an epidemic in Paris which was called *coqueluche*).

One of the earliest American descriptions was that by Benjamin Waterhouse, 1822. A comprehensive account of the disease may be found in Lapin's *Whooping Cough*, 1943.

The causative organism *B. pertussis* was first observed and isolated from an infant by Bordet and Gengou (1906). Chervitz and

Meyer (1916) introduced the cough plate method for bacteriologic diagnosis. A more practicable and efficient method, now in general use, is the nasopharyngeal swab technique (Bradford Day and Berry, 1946).

The early ineffectiveness of pertussis vaccine was explained by Leslie and Gardner (1931) whose work stressed the changes in antigenic phases that occur during artificial cultivation of the organism.

Although the dual etiologic role of a virus was suggested by certain investigators, it is now clear that *B. pertussis* alone can produce the disease in laboratory animals (Shibley, 1934) as well as in man (MacDonald and MacDonald, 1933).

### MORPHOLOGY

*B. pertussis* when first isolated is a small, nonmotile, ovoid bacillus. Its mean length is like that of *B. parapertussis* or *B. bronchiseptica*, 0.5 micron. Cells of original cultures are uniform in size, but on subculture become pleomorphic, longer and thread-shaped. In liquid media aropy mucoid mass results from the growth of old cultures. Electron micrographs of the organism reveal a central mass of dense material surrounded by a wide, clearer zone which is said to contain antigen.

The organism is gram negative, staining best when the counterstain is left on for 2 minutes. Capsules may be demonstrated by special technique, and bipolar metachromatic granules, said to represent uneven distribution of cell lipids, can be shown by staining

vades by continuity the bloodstream and even the middle ear are seldom involved. However the latter often becomes infected with other organisms.

Experimental infection can be produced in a number of species including the chimpanzee, monkey, puppy, rabbit, rat, mouse, ferret and chick embryo.

From experimental infection it is clear that when Phase I and II *B. pertussis* is introduced intra-abdominally (rabbit or guinea pig) the results are more toxic than invasive (Leslie and Gardner 1931). More avirulent forms (Phase III or IV) are from 20 to 30 times less toxic.

The intranasal instillation into mice gives rise to a characteristic patchy interstitial pneumonia with leukocyte infiltration, proliferation of bronchial epithelium and other changes not unlike those seen in the human disease (Burnett and Timmins 1937; Bradford 1938). This type of experimental infection has made available a useful method for immunologic study (Cooper 1952; Bradford 1956).

The intracerebral route of infection was introduced by Kendrick *et al.* (1947) as a means of testing degrees of immunization in mice. Comparative virulence tests according to the route of infection in the mouse were reported by Standfast (1951) as follows:

ROUTE OF INFECTION	RANGE OF I.D.50 IN MILLIONS OF BACTERIA
Intraperitoneal	280-800
Intranasal	0.26-15.5
Intracerebral	0.18-2.5

It is perhaps significant that Andersen (1952) found a nontoxic variant after intracerebral inoculation which was highly virulent for mice producing septicemia.

Study of toxic preparations may be carried out by intradermal injection into rabbits and 10-day-old mice (Katsampes *et al.* 1942; Andersen 1953).

In man the infection is variable in its course but 3 stages may be observed: the catarrhal, the paroxysmal and the convalescent, each lasting approximately 2 weeks. The catarrhal stage begins with coryza, sneezing and a mild progressive cough about 10 to 14 days after exposure. The organism multiplies rapidly on the mucus membranes

of the respiratory tract and soon produces necrosis of the basilar and the midzonal portions of the bronchial epithelium with infiltration of leukocytes. As the infection extends to the deeper structures peribronchitis and interstitial pneumonia results. Intra-alveolar and localized suppurative lesions are usually caused by secondary invading organisms. Edema and hemorrhage often occur in the lung parenchyma.

Obstruction of lower airways by mucous plugs causes atelectasis which along with interstitial pneumonia interferes with oxygenation of the blood and leads to acidosis. The resulting anoxia is said to be an important cause of convulsions. The exact mechanism responsible for postpertussis encephalitis is not known although there is experimental evidence to support an allergic factor.

Experimental encephalomyelitis has been produced by substituting *B. pertussis* for *M. tuberculosis* in the Freund antigen (Weiner, Tinker and Bradford 1959).

The heat-labile toxin may be responsible for lymphocytosis, early necrosis of the bronchial epithelium and certain hemorrhagic manifestations.

The possible role of allergy in the pathogenesis of the disease has been suggested by Toomey (1938). Parfentjev (1947) showed that mice and guinea pigs injected with *B. pertussis* antigens developed sensitivity to the nucleoprotein complex of the organism. Pittman (1951) found that mice infected intranasally with the organism exhibited a high degree of sensitivity to histamine. Ehrlich *et al.* (1942) showed that injection of a sonic extract of the organism into rabbits resulted in leukocytosis which was almost exclusively a lymphocytosis. However when mice recovering from the intranasal infection were injected with a whole sonic extract or with such an extract from which agglutinin had been removed by absorption, leukocytosis resulted due chiefly to a polymorphonuclear increase (Bradford, Scherp and Tinker 1956).

### IMMUNITY

Permanent immunity appears to follow the natural disease. Bacteriologically proved instances of second attacks have been noted but are rare. Little or no maternal immunity

TABLE 1 TENTATIVE ANALYSIS OF ANTIGENIC FACTORS OF BORDETELLA CULTURES\*

CULTURE	FACTORS				
<i>B. pertussis</i>					
5373	7	1	3	6	13
5374	7	1	2	5	6 13
5375	7	1	2	4	13
<i>B. parapertussis</i>					
17 903	7	8	9	10	14
<i>B. bronchiseptica</i>					
5376	7	8	9	12	13
214	7	9	12	13	
899	7	8	10	11	12

\* From Eldering *et al.* (1962) J Bact 83 745 9

All *B. pertussis* cultures have factor 1 Factor 12 is species specific for *B. bronchiseptica* and factor 14 for *B. parapertussis* Factors 2 3 and 5 are major *B. pertussis* antigens and serologic differences among *B. pertussis* cultures may be explained by the presence or the absence in various combinations of these factors Factors 4 and 6 are minor *B. pertussis* antigens Factors 8 9 10 and 11 distinguish different *B. bronchiseptica* cultures and all of these except 11 are also possessed by all *B. parapertussis* cultures A minor factor 13 explains certain serologic relationships between *B. pertussis* and *B. bronchiseptica* This antigen is lacking in *B. parapertussis*

common O antigen but differed in their content and number of K antigen Further more Andersen concluded that *B. pertussis*, *B. parapertussis* and *B. bronchiseptica* have common O antigens and produce similar hemorrhagic toxins but may possess common as well as species specific K antigens *B. pertussis* apparently possesses more antigens in common with *B. bronchiseptica* than it does with *B. parapertussis*

Eldering Eveland and Kendrick (1957 1962) have confirmed and expanded Andersen's findings and propose hypothetical factors concerning the antigenic structure of the *Bordetella* group (Table 1)

The toxin (Evans and Matland 1937) when injected intradermally into rabbits produces necrosis and is lethal for guinea pigs It is not stable and is destroyed by heating at 55° C When formalinized it is antigenic and its antitoxin neutralizes the toxins of *B. pertussis*, *B. parapertussis* and *B. bronchiseptica* While produced by all phases of *B. pertussis* toxin is most abundant in Phase I organisms and only one tenth as

abundant in avirulent strains (Flosdorf and McGuinness 1942) Disruption of the organism gives the best yield of toxin but an appreciable amount is contained in the surface washings of the freshly isolated organisms (Katsampes *et al.* 1942) Purified heat labile toxin is chiefly protein (Banerjee and Munoz 1962)

The heat stable toxin probably of intracellular origin is only partially destroyed by heating at 100° C for 60 minutes Little is known of its nature and properties

Hemagglutinin (Keogh North and Warburton 1947) can be extracted from the freshly isolated organism Antisera to these extracts specifically neutralize their hemagglutinin effect Keogh found that resistance to infection parallels antihemagglutinin production but Masry (1952) reported that purified hemagglutinin was not protective and Standfast (1951) found no correlation between virulence and hemagglutinin

Protective antigens have been described and are the subject of controversial opinion Cruickshank and Freeman (1937) and Eldering (1942) isolated carbohydrate antigens that protected mice while Flosdorf and Kimball (1940) and Smolens and Mudd (1943) considered the protective effect to be associated with the agglutinin Capsular material of *B. pertussis* has no significant protective value (Evans and Adams 1942) Robbins and Pillemer (1950) isolated a purified protective antigen from a watery extract of the bacillus which was not carbohydrate agglutinin toxin or hemagglutinin It appears to be generally agreed that the protective antigen is associated with the smooth forms of the organism and is more abundant in young rather than old cultures

#### HOST RANGE AND PATHOGENESIS

*B. pertussis* is an obligate parasite which survives only a short time outside the human host It survives only a few hours in dried sputum and is killed in 30 minutes by a temperature of from 50° to 55° C It is very sensitive to ultraviolet light and to chemical antiseptics

Transmission is by droplet infection and the human carrier plays a minor role While the organism multiplies rapidly in the mucus membranes of the respiratory tract and in

colonies well formed in 48 hours with a darker area of discoloration about them

The application of fluorescent antibody technic (Donaldson and Whitaker 1960 Kendrick Elderling and Eveland 1961) offers promise but requires further refinement.

Agglutinins (often 1:160 or higher) appear during the 3rd week of infection and may persist for several months. Because they appear so late they are of little practical value in diagnosis.

Skin testing with purified agglutinin often results in a positive reaction in the immune which is said to correlate with complement fixing antibody titer and with the agglutinative titer. So far this skin test has not received wide acceptance.

Clinically a history of exposure, a progressive cough that becomes paroxysmal and often ends in vomiting or a forced inspiration (the whoop) are highly indicative of pertussis. The total white blood cell count usually increases during the end of the catarrhal stage. The leukocytes may number 15,000 to 30,000 per ml, reflecting a relative and absolute predominance of lymphocytes.

Other conditions which resemble pertussis are spasmodic coughs resulting from infected adenoids or sinuses, allergic bronchitis, bronchopneumonia, atypical viral pneumonia, mucoviscidosis and mediastinal lesions. Parapertussis resembles mild pertussis and can be differentiated only by culture. Infections caused by *B. bronchiseptica*, *H. influenzae* and *Brucella abortus* have been mistaken for pertussis.

#### TREATMENT

Mild and moderately severe pertussis requires only supportive measures, but severe cases require the best of professional care, usually in a hospital. Hyperimmune human serum (McGuinness 1944) injected intramuscularly in doses of from 20 to 40 ml or the gamma globulin produced from it result in humoral antibody levels which compare favorably with those observed in convalescence from the natural disease. An injection of vaccine during the incubation period or the early catarrhal stage of the disease may have a beneficial anamnestic response.

In vitro various drugs inhibit growth of

*B. pertussis* according to Wells *et al.* (1950). In micrograms per ml the range of concentrations is: streptomycin 0.8 to 80, polymyxin 0.08 to 1.0, chlortetracycline 0.16 to 12.5, chloramphenicol 0.16 to 80, and oxytetracycline 0.2 to 12.5.

From clinical trial Booher *et al.* (1951) concluded that chloramphenicol and the tetracyclines are of about equal value when given in dosages of 50 mg per kg of body weight.

In another clinical trial Ames *et al.* (1953) tested streptomycin, chloramphenicol, anti-pertussis rabbit serum and hyperimmune human serum. Each agent showed some modifying effect but none was of convincing therapeutic value. Chloramphenicol appeared to be the agent of choice. Rabbit antiserum gave the most rapid clearance of the organism from the nasopharynx. Penicillin is effective only against susceptible secondary invaders.

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Pertussis exists sporadically and endemically throughout most of the world. In the United States epidemics tend to occur at intervals of from 2 to 4 years. Although it occurs at all seasons, most cases are observed during the early winter months in the Northern States and during the spring months in the South. The communicability rate in family exposure is about 90 per cent, in schoolroom exposure about 25 to 50 per cent. This is high for a bacterial disease and is approximately that of such viral diseases as measles and chickenpox.

From 1920 to 1959 the mortality from pertussis in the United States decreased from 12.5 to 0.2 per 100,000 population and has been below 1 during the past 12 years. The death rate is higher in rural than in urban areas and is highest in early infancy.

The disease occurs at all ages. About one half of those infected are under 4 years of age, about 10 per cent are under 1 year. Sixty-four per cent of the deaths are under 1 year of age, while 40 per cent occur during the first 5 months of life.

Pertussis is unique in that its incidence is significantly greater among females, especially in the later years of childhood. Mortality also is higher among females.

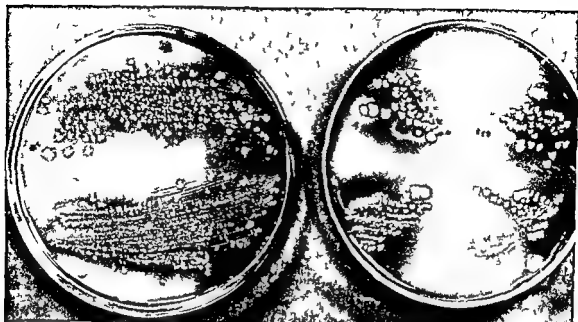


FIG 1 Nasal culture method showing the inhibiting effect of penicillin on the growth of contaminating organisms (right) to facilitate the identification of *Hemophilus pertussis* colonies on the surface of Bordet's medium. The control plate is shown on the left (Bradford W L, Day E and Berry G P 1946 Improvement of the nasopharyngeal swab method of diagnosis in pertussis by use of penicillin *Am J Pub Health* 36 468)

is passively transferred to the newborn. In deep early infancy is a period of great susceptibility and of highest mortality.

The relative importance of humoral and cellular immunity is not known. Humoral antibodies, as measured by complement fixation, agglutination, opsonocytaphagic and mouse protective tests, appear during convalescence from an attack and as a result of immunization and persist for several months. Sako (1947) observed immunized infants subsequently subjected to family exposures and compared the attack rate with their humoral agglutination titers. The results indicated a positive correlation as follows:

SERUM TITERS	NUMBER OF CASES	PERCENTAGE ATTACKED
1:320	149	0
1:160	53	11.3
1:40	91	18.7
0	27	33.3

Among the nonimmunized controls with 0 titers the attack rate was 89.7 per cent.

When tested intradermally with purified agglutinin the reaction is usually negative

in susceptibles and positive in immunes. There appears to be a certain agreement between positive skin tests to this agent and significant humoral agglutination titers.

#### DIAGNOSIS

Bacteriologic diagnosis can be made by the cough plate culture or by the nasal swab method (Fig 1). The cough plate is prepared by holding it about 6 inches from the mouth of the patient while he coughs. The nasal swab is passed through the nasal aperture until it touches the posterior pharyngeal wall. Upon withdrawal it is passed through a drop of penicillin previously placed on the surface of Bordet medium and the inoculation is streaked with a flexible platinum loop. After incubation for 2 to 3 days at 36° C the characteristic colonies of *H. pertussis* are readily apparent, especially in the area where the contaminants are inhibited by the penicillin. The organism is identified by staining and by agglutination reactions with specific antiserum.

*B. parapertussis* by this technic gives larger

plain agar and in liquid media suitable for the latter organism

Practically all strains produce catalase (Lautrop 1954). It does not produce indol or hydrogen sulfide nor does it reduce nitrates. Milk is made alkaline more readily and to a greater degree than by *B. pertussis*. All strains examined by Lautrop (1954) split urea while none of more than 500 strains of *B. pertussis* did.

*B. paraptussis* possesses common antigenic fractions with both *B. pertussis* and *B. bronchiseptica* but is identical with neither (Fig 2). Cross agglutination between *B. paraptussis* and *B. pertussis* is caused by a common minor antigen (Flosdorf 1942). Each of these 3 species has its own thermostable surface antigens but all have a common thermostable O antigen (Andersen 1953). *B. paraptussis* produces a toxin similar to but less potent than that of *B. pertussis* (Bruckner and Evans 1937).

Experimental infection is easily produced in mice by intranasal inoculation and is characterized by moderate leukocytosis and pulmonary lesions resembling those produced by *B. pertussis* (Bradford and Wold 1939).

The incubation period in man is from 11 to 15 days. The onset is similar to that in whooping cough but may be more abrupt. The cough is less severe, frequently spasmodic and sometimes it resembles that in tracheitis. The duration of illness is usually from 1 to 3 weeks and complications are rare although fatal pneumonia has been reported (Zuelzer and Wheeler 1946).

The mildness or the absence of symptoms in certain subjects harboring the organism led Lautrop (1954) to suspect the frequent existence of carriers.

Reciprocal immunity with pertussis does not exist and there is no evidence that immunization with pertussis vaccine protects against paraptussis. It is not known that an attack of the disease confers lasting immunity although second attacks have not been reported.

Treatment is symptomatic. The organism is susceptible although to a less degree than *B. pertussis* to chloramphenicol and the tetracyclines (Day and Bradford 1952) and one of these agents should be used for therapeutic purposes. Because of the usual

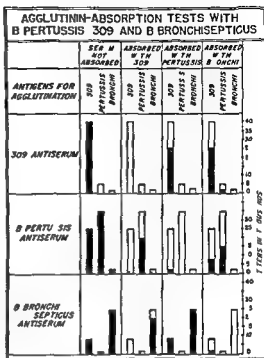


FIG 2 The antigenic relationship of *H. paraptussis* (309) with *H. pertussis* and with *Brucella bronchiseptica* (Eldering G and Hendrick P 1938 *Bacillus paraptussis* A species resembling both *Bacillus pertussis* and *Bacillus bronchiseptica* but identical with neither J Bact 35: 561-572).

mildness of the disease active immunization has not as yet been regarded as necessary.

## BORDETELLA BRONCHISEPTICA

*Bordetella bronchiseptica* was first isolated from dogs with distemper (Ferry 1911; McGowan 1911) in which it is now regarded as a secondary invader. It causes infection of laboratory animals (guinea pigs, rabbits, etc. but not mice). In man particularly those individuals in contact with infected animals it occasionally causes a respiratory infection resembling pertussis (Brown 1926; Kristensen and Lautrop 1962).

*B. bronchiseptica* is a small (1 to 3  $\mu$ ) motile gram-negative and non-spore-producing bacillus. It does not require X and V

## CONTROL MEASURES

Effective control of whooping cough requires early diagnosis proper management of the case and contacts and an adequate program for active immunization. Because of the insidious onset and variable course diagnosis is delayed longer than in most other common communicable diseases. Early recognition is important because the patient is most infective in the initial stage of the disease. Culture facilities should be more widely available and used for this purpose.

The patient should be isolated for a period of from 4 to 6 weeks and ideally should show a negative culture before release. Susceptible exposed subjects should be isolated for 2 weeks. These especially infants should receive passive protection (gamma globulin produced from hypimmune human serum) injected intramuscularly in doses of 2 to 5 ml. The previously vaccinated exposed subjects should be given an additional injection of vaccine which gives an anamnestic response in from 4 to 6 days.

An adequate program of active immunization should include all infants. The initial course of vaccine is usually started at 3 months of age (or earlier) and consists of 3 or 4 monthly injections of vaccine totaling 12 antigenic units. This vaccine is usually combined with diphtheria and tetanus toxoids and apparently is effective in a multiple antigen to which poliomyelitis vaccine is added. Booster injections (2 to 3 units each) should be given 1, 3 and 5 years after the initial course.

Encephalopathy following injection of pertussis vaccine has been reported (Byers and Moll 1948) and some 60 instances have been observed. This complication though serious should not prevent the routine immunization of infants. Caution should be observed during immunization of one who gives a history of frequent convulsions particularly following a previous injection of vaccine. Such individuals should receive the vaccine in small doses.

## BORDETELLA PARAPERTUSSIS

*Bordetella parapertussis* is a short ovoid gram negative, nonmobile bacillus which in many respects resembles *B. pertussis*. It is

the cause of parapertussis, an acute respiratory infection resembling mild pertussis, from which it can be distinguished only by bacteriologic methods.

The organism was first described independently by Elderling and Kendrick (1937) and by Bradford and Slavin (1937). In each instance it was isolated from cases of suspected whooping cough. A few strains, later recognized as *B. parapertussis*, were observed in Denmark in 1933 according to Miller. The name *Bacillus parapertussis* was suggested by Kendrick (1938) who objected to its inclusion in the hemophilic group.

*B. parapertussis* was encountered originally (Bradford and Slavin 1937) in 5 per cent of a consecutive series of positive cultures for *B. pertussis*. From more than 22,000 diagnostic cultures (1935-1950) Elderling and Kendrick reported (1952) that 19.8 per cent revealed *B. pertussis* and 0.5 per cent were positive for *B. parapertussis*. In Copenhagen Lautrop (1954) found 5 per cent of all cultures taken (representing 16% of all positive ones) positive for *B. parapertussis*. He observed 256 cases between November 1950 and March 1952.

The demonstration of specific humoral antibodies among children in California (Miller) and in Philadelphia (Flösdorf) indicates the infection to be rather common and easily overlooked. In a random sample of routine hospital admissions (531 infants and children in Rochester) 7.1 per cent revealed agglutinins against *B. parapertussis* in titers of 1:320 or greater while 34.4 per cent had similar titers against *B. pertussis* (Scherp *et al.* 1954).

In schools, day nurseries and camps local outbreaks have been observed sometimes occurring with pertussis. In family exposures Lautrop (1954) observed the following incidence according to age: 0 to 7 years 85 per cent, 7 to 17 years 35 per cent, adults 10 per cent.

*B. parapertussis* on primary isolation grows readily on Bordet medium; the colonies appearing within 24 to 48 hours. They are smooth, round and glistening and are surrounded by zones of dark discoloration. No report of its primary isolation in bloodless media is as yet available. On subcultures it grows more readily than does *B. pertussis* on

- A new growth medium for virulent *Bordetella pertussis* J Path Bact 82 431 438
- Toomey J A 1938 Mechanism of whooping cough Am J Dis Child 56 469-470
- Topley W W C and Wilson G S 1955 Principles of Bacteriology and Immunology 4 vol 1 chap 33 pp 896 925 Baltimore Williams & Wilkins
- Verwey W F Thiele C H Sage D N and Schuchardt L F 1949 A simplified liquid culture medium for the growth of *Hemophilus pertussis* J Bact 58 127 134
- Wiener S L Tinker M and Bradford W L 1959 Experimental meningoencephalomyelitis produced by *Hemophilus pertussis* Arch Path 67 694 699
- B PARAPERTUSSIS**
- Andersen E K 1953 Serological studies on *H. pertussis* II parapertussis and *H. bronchisepticus* Acta path microbiol scand 33 202 224
- Bradford W L and Slavin B 1937 An organism resembling *Hemophilus pertussis* with special reference to color changes produced by its growth upon certain media Am J Pub Health 27 1277 1282
- Bradford W L and Wold M 1949 Experimental infection in mouse produced by intratracheal inoculation with atypical pertussis organism J Infect Dis 64 118 122
- Davies M and Bradford W L 1952 Susceptibility of *Hemophilus parapertussis* to certain antibiotics Pediatrics 9 320 326
- Eldering G and Kendrick P L 1938 *Bacillus parapertussis* A species resembling both *Bacillus pertussis* and *Bacillus bronchisepticus* but identical with neither J Bact 35 561 572
- Eldering G and Kendrick P L 1952 Incidence of parapertussis in the Grand Rapids area as indicated by 16 years experience with diagnostic cultures Am J Pub Health 42 27 31
- Flosdorf F W Bondi A Felton H and McGinniss A C 1942 Studies with *Hemophilus pertussis* X Comparative antigenic analysis of *Bacillus parapertussis* and *Hemophilus pertussis* phase I with consideration of clinical significance J Pediatr 21 625 634
- Lautrop H 1954 Parapertussis Bakteriologiske, Epidemiologiske og Kliniske undersøgelser (with an English summary) København Munksgaard
- Scherp H W Bradford W L Wixom E Day E and Allen P M 1954 Humoral antibodies and intradermal reactions to chemical fractions of *Hemophilus parapertussis* Am J Dis Child 87 724 730
- B BRONCHISEPTICA**
- Kristensen K H and Lautrop H 1962 A family epidemic caused by the whooping cough bacterium *Bordetella bronchiseptica* Ugeskr Laeg 124 303 308
- MacLennan A P 1960 Specific lipopolysaccharides of *Bordetella* Biochem J 74 398 409



factors but does require niacin for growth. The colonies are small, round and have a glistening smooth surface. Some strains are hemolytic. It ferments no sugars, reduces nitrates, splits urea easily and produces catalase.

*B. bronchiseptica* possesses common antigens with *B. pertussis* and *B. parapertussis* (Table 301), and with *Brucella abortus*. Its specific toxin is neutralized by the antitoxin of *B. pertussis*. The specific lipopolysaccharide (MacLennan 1960) is antigenic and resembles those of *B. pertussis* and *B. parapertussis* in composition.

## REFERENCES

### II PERTUSSIS

- Ames R G, Cohen S M, Fischer A E, Kohn J, McPherson A Z, Marlow J, Rutzky J and Alexander H E 1953 Comparison of the therapeutic efficacy of four agents in pertussis. *Pediatrics* 11 323-337.
- Andersen E K 1953 Serological studies on *H. pertussis*, *H. parapertussis* and *H. bronchiseptica*. *Acta path microbiol scandinav* 33 202-224.
- Banerjee A and Munoz J 1962 Antigens of *Bordetella pertussis*. II purification of Heat labile toxin. *J Bact* 84 269-274.
- Bordet J and Gengou O 1906 Le microbe de la coqueluche. *Ann Inst Pasteur* 20 731-741.
- Bradford W L 1938 Experimental infection in the mouse produced by intratracheal inoculation with *Hemophilus pertussis*. *Am J Path* 14 377-384.
- Bradford W L, Day E and Berry G P 1946 Improvement of the nasopharyngeal swab method of diagnosis in pertussis by use of penicillin. *Am J Pub Health* 36 468-470.
- Bradford W L, Scherp H W and Tinker M R 1956 Effect of extracts of *Hemophilus pertussis* on leukocyte counts in normal and sensitized mice. *Pediatrics* 18 64-71.
- Byers R K and Moll F C 1948 Encephalopathies following prophylactic pertussis vaccine. *Pediatrics* 1 437-457.
- Cooper G N 1952 Active immunity in mice following the intranasal injection of sublethal doses of living *Haemophilus pertussis*. *J Path Bact* 64 65-74.
- Cruickshank J C and Freeman G G 1937 Immunising fractions isolated from *Haemophilus pertussis*. *Lancet* 2 567-570.
- Donaldson P and Whitaker J A 1960 Diagnosis of pertussis by fluorescent antibody staining of nasopharyngeal smears. *Am J Dis Child* 99 423-427.
- Ehrich W E, Bondi A Jr, Mudd S and Flosdorf E W 1942 The tolerance of rabbits for the agglutinin and the toxins of *Hemophilus pertussis*. *Am J Med Sci* 204 530-539.
- Eldering G 1942 A study of the antigenic properties of *Hemophilus pertussis* and related organisms. *Am J Hyg* 36 294-302.
- Eldering G, Eveland, W C and Kendrick P L 1962 Fluorescent antibody staining and agglutination reactions in *Bordetella pertussis* cultures. *J Bact* 83 745-749.
- Evans D G and Adams M O 1952 The inability of the capsular material of *Haemophilus pertussis* to produce protective antisera. *J Gen Microbiol* 7 169-174.
- Evans D G and Maitland H B 1937 The preparation of the toxin of *H. pertussis*: its properties and relation to immunity. *J Path Bact* 45 715-731.
- Flosdorf E W and McGuinness A C 1942 Studies with *Haemophilus pertussis*. VIII The antigenic structure of *Haemophilus pertussis* and its clinical significance. *Am J Dis Child* 64 43-50.
- Kendrick P L, Eldering G and Eveland W C 1961 Fluorescent antibody techniques. Method for identification of *Bordetella pertussis*. *Am J Dis Child* 101 149-154.
- Keogh E V, North E A and Warburton M F 1947 Haemagglutinins of the *Haemophilus* group. *Nature London* 160 63.
- Masry F L G 1952, Production, extraction and purification of the haemagglutinin of *Haemophilus pertussis*. *J Gen Microbiol* 7 201-210.
- Pollock M R 1947 The growth of *H. pertussis* on media without blood. *Brit J Exp Path* 28 295-307.
- Robbins K C and Pillemer L 1950 The separation of a protective antigen from a toxin-producing strain of *Hemophilus pertussis*. *J Immun* 65 393-406.
- Sauer L W 1957 Whooping cough. In *Practice of Pediatrics* Brennenmann vol 2 chap 34 p 5 Hagerstown Md W P Prior.
- Standfast A F III 1951 The phase I of *Haemophilus pertussis*. *J Gen Microbiol* 5 531-545.
- Sutherland I W and Wilkinson J F 1961

- A new growth medium for virulent *Bordetella pertussis* J Path Bact 82 431 438
- Toomey J A 1938 Mechanism of whooping cough Am J Dis Child 56 469-470
- Topley W W C and Wilson G S 1955 Principles of Bacteriology and Immunity ed 4 vol 1 chap 33 pp 896 925 Baltimore Williams & Wilkins
- Verwey W F Thiele E H Sage D N and Schuchardt L F 1949 A simplified liquid culture medium for the growth of *Hemophilus pertussis* J Bact 58 127 134
- Wiener S L Tinker M and Bradford W L 1959 Experimental meningoencephalomyelitis produced by *Hemophilus pertussis* Arch Path 67 694 699
- II PARAPERTUSSIS**
- Andersen E A 1953 Serological studies on *H. pertussis*, *H. parapertussis* and *H. bronchisepticus* Acta path microbiol scand 33 202 224
- Bradford W L and Slavin B 1937 An organism resembling *Hemophilus pertussis* with special reference to color changes produced by its growth upon certain media Am J Pub Health 27 1277 1282
- Bradford W L and Wold M 1939 Experimental infection in mouse produced by intratracheal inoculation with atypical pertussis organism J Infect Dis 64 118 122
- Day E and Bradford W L 1952 Susceptibility of *Hemophilus parapertussis* to certain antibiotics Pediatrics 9 320 326
- Eldering G and Kendrick P L 1938 *Bacillus parapertussis* A species resembling both *Bacillus pertussis* and *Bacillus bronchisepticus* but identical with neither J Bact 35 561 572
- Eldering G and Kendrick P L 1952 Incidence of parapertussis in the Grand Rapids area as indicated by 16 years' experience with diagnostic cultures Am J Pub Health 42 27 31
- Floresdorf E W Bondi A Felton H and McGinness A C 1942 Studies with *Hemophilus pertussis* X Comparative antigenic analysis of *Bacillus parapertussis* and *Hemophilus pertussis*: phase I with consideration of clinical significance J Pediatr 21 625 634
- Lautrop H 1954 Parapertussis Bakteriologiske Epidemiologiske og Kliniske undersøgelser (with an English summary) København Munksgaard
- Scherp H W Bradford W L Wixom E Day E and Allen R M 1954 Humoral antibodies and intradermal reactions to chemical fractions of *Hemophilus parapertussis* Am J Dis Child 87 724 730
- B BRONCHISEPTICA**
- Kristensen K H and Lautrop H 1962 A family epidemic caused by the whooping cough bacterium *Bordetella bronchiseptica* Ugeskr Laeg 124 303 308
- MacLennan A P 1960 Specific lipopolysaccharides of *Bordetella* Biochem J 74 398 409

# 31

## Listeria and Erysipelothrix

*Listeria* and *erysipelo*thrix are gram positive rod shaped nonsporulating aerobic bacteria of the family *Corynebacteriaceae* which are pathogenic for a wide variety of mammals and birds. While the disease entities produced by the two organisms are not similar the bacterial species appear to be related taxonomically. Some authorities place them in the same genus although there is disagreement on this point.

### LISTERIA MONOCYTOGENES

#### HISTORY

*Listeria monocytogenes* is associated with sporadic cases of meningitis and granulomatosis infantiseptica in man and with a number of clinical syndromes in mammals and birds. The organism was first isolated by Murray Webb and Swann (1926) from an epizootic among stock rabbits and guinea pigs and described by them under the name *Bacterium monocytogenes* in view of the mononuclear leukocytosis observed in these animals. Pirie isolated an identical organism in 1927 from an epizootic of wild rodents in South Africa and created the generic name *Listerella*. Later this was shown to be a homonym and the name *Listeria* was proposed by Pirie (1940). It seems probable that the same organism was isolated from the spinal fluid of patients with meningitis much earlier by Atkinson in 1917 and Dick in 1920. In recent years there has been a renewal of interest in both human and animal

infections due to *L. monocytogenes*, which have a widespread geographic distribution. There is a much greater awareness of the possibility of such infections on the part of physicians, veterinarians and bacteriologists alike. A recent monograph by Seeliger (1961) lists 600 references to listeria.

#### MORPHOLOGY AND CULTIVATION

*L. monocytogenes* is a gram positive facultatively anaerobic rod approximately 0.5 micron in width by 1 to 3 microns in length. The organism occurs in both a smooth and a rough form. Small rods with rounded ends showing palisade formation and short chains predominate in the smooth phase. Metachromatic granules are never observed. Young cultures in the rough phase consist almost entirely of filaments up to 60 microns in length while older cultures contain many pleomorphic forms. Young broth cultures show a characteristic sluggish tumbling end-over-end motility. Cultures grown at 37° C contain both nonflagellated and monotrichous organisms while those grown at room temperature are peritrichous with up to 4 flagellae. *L. monocytogenes* was considered to be acapsular until the demonstration by Smith and Metzger (1962) by phase microscopy of a mucopolysaccharide capsule in broth cultures containing 10 per cent rabbit serum and 5 per cent glucose.

The organism grows best in a neutral or slightly alkaline environment. It will not tolerate acidity below pH 5.6 but good

growth occurs in fluid media up to pH 9.6. *L. monocytogenes* grows well on most simple media although growth is improved markedly by the addition of ascitic fluid or blood. Welshimer (1963) has shown that riboflavin, biotin, thiamine and thioctic acid are required for growth. Colonies in the smooth phase on nutrient agar are up to 0.8 mm in diameter after 24 hours at 37° C and are almost transparent by transmitted light. Those in the rough phase are slightly larger with a granular center. Both smooth and rough phase colonies may be up to 2 mm in diameter on horse, rabbit or human blood agar and most strains show a narrow zone of beta hemolysis. On tellurite medium colonies are black, smooth, circular and 0.25 to 0.5 mm in diameter after 48 hours. No growth occurs on MacConkey's agar. Good growth occurs in infusion broth in which the smooth phase produces an even turbidity while the rough form gives a threadlike granular growth which does not disperse readily. The biochemical reactions of *L. monocytogenes* are rather variable. Production of acid without gas in 24 hours from glucose, levulose, trehalose and salicin is most constant and reliable (Gray 1962). The catalase reaction is positive in contrast with the negative test always given by *E. rhusiopathiae*.

#### RESISTANCE

Listeria is less susceptible to heat than many pathogens since it has been shown to survive 5 minutes at 80° C (Murray 1955). Carefully controlled pasteurization of milk containing more than 1 000 bacteria per ml does not effectively destroy listeria (Bearn and Girard 1958). Listeria will survive without loss of virulence for 3 to 4 years at 4° C either on culture media (Murray 1955) or in brain suspensions (Gray *et al.* 1948). It will remain viable and virulent after 8 weeks in 20 per cent NaCl at 40° C and will grow well in 10 per cent NaCl but survival is short in normal saline or distilled water. Listeria added to food pellets, straw and wood shavings will survive up to 26 weeks in the dry state and there is evidence that it persists for at least 2 weeks in animal pens and bedding straw (Gray *et al.* 1956).

The organism resembles most pathogenic bacteria in its susceptibility to the chemical

agents ordinarily used as disinfectants. McBride and Girard (1960) found that a medium containing 1/100 000 furacin while not providing complete inhibition of other organisms was a useful initial enrichment procedure for some types of specimens.

#### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

Agglutination and agglutinin absorption techniques have been used extensively to study the antigenic structure of *L. monocytogenes*. Paterson (1940) recognized 3 somatic antigens and a complex of flagellar antigens on the basis of which he established 4 serologic types. These results were confirmed by Seeliger and Lutzenmeier (1953) who also demonstrated 2 subtypes in Paterson type 4. Types 1 and 4 appear to be world wide in distribution whereas type 3 is found mainly in Eastern Germany and Denmark and type 2 mainly in Great Britain (Seeliger 1961). Biotypes are recognized within types 1 and 4 based on their ability or lack of ability to ferment melizitose. Some antigenic components of *L. monocytogenes* are common with those of other pathogens particularly *Staphylococcus pyogenes* and *Streptococcus faecalis* (Seeliger and Sulzbacher 1956; Neter *et al.* 1960). The recently discovered capsule is antigenic and may further complicate the serologic picture. Bacteriophages have been isolated from listeria from both human and animal sources by Sword and Pickett (1961) who found the phage types to be very closely related to serologic types.

There is at present no clear evidence that an exotoxin plays a role in the pathogenesis of listeric infection. *L. monocytogenes* contains a nonantigenic lipid which enhances antibody formation in animals immunized with other bacteria (Stanley 1949). More recently protein preparations obtained from lysates (Patočka *et al.* 1959) and sonically disrupted (Silverman *et al.* 1961) listeria have been shown to reduce the resistance of laboratory animals to listeria and to other organisms. A soluble antigenic hemolysin has been described in some detail by Girard *et al.* (1963). It has been noted by Fuzi and Pillis (1962) that listeria produces opacity in media containing native egg yolk and that the degree of opacity parallels the degree of hemolysis on blood agar. The

exact relationship of these substances to one another and to the pathogenicity of *L. monocytogenes* remains to be determined. Sheep can be protected against large challenge doses of listeria by prior subcutaneous inoculation of live virulent culture (Osebold and Sawyer 1955) or of living attenuated listeria (Asahi, 1963a).

#### DISTRIBUTION AND RANGE OF PATHOGENICITY

Spontaneous infection of a wide variety of animal species including man, has been reported from many parts of the world. *L. monocytogenes* has been isolated and identified from many kinds of mammals, fowls, fish, crustaceans and from 2 species of tick; its presence has been established in stream water, sewage and silage (Gray, 1962). The majority of infections occur in domestic or captive animals and there also exists an abundant reservoir among wild species, some of which are predatory and many of which are migratory. *L. monocytogenes* has been reported from nearly 30 countries ranging from the arctic to the tropics. In view of the increasing number of infections in man and in livestock and poultry, listeriosis is receiving increasing attention.

#### PATHOGENESIS AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY

*L. monocytogenes* infections produce many different symptoms depending on the animal species and the portal of entry.

In cattle, sheep and goats, meningoencephalitis of the brain stem is common, producing frequently a flaccid paralysis of various muscle groups. The lesions may extend to the spinal cord with resulting unilateral ataxia. The head and the neck are turned to one side and the animal tends to move in circles, hence the common name of circling disease. Asahi (1963b) has demonstrated invasion of the trigeminal nerve as a route to the brain in encephalitis. Septicemia and monocytosis are uncommon in ruminants. A generalized infection occurs in rabbits and guinea pigs with focal necrosis particularly in the liver and the adrenal glands; the disease is usually accompanied by marked monocytosis. The mononuclear response in rabbits is apparently due to a

nonantigenic lipid which can be extracted from listeria (Stanley, 1949; Girard and Murray, 1954). The natural disease in rabbits is accompanied by marked edema and extensive serous exudates, while in guinea pigs there is usually massive myocardial necrosis. In the dog and the fox, listeriosis produces a distemperlike disease. In the lemming, it appears as a generalized infection not accompanied by any obvious lesions although it is fatal.

Abortion due to listeria has been described in sheep, goats, swine, rabbits and cattle. In many instances the fetus shows extensive necrosis similar to that seen in newborn human infants. In some of these cases the organism can be isolated from the aborted fetus, the placental membranes, or the vaginal discharge of the female. In the chicken, listeriosis is a septicemic disease often accompanied by massive myocardial degeneration and necrosis. *Listeria* produces keratoconjunctivitis following conjunctival inoculation in rabbits, guinea pigs and hamsters. Cutaneous lesions have been reported in veterinarians after handling bovine fetuses infected with listeria (Gray, 1962).

Human listeriosis was once thought to be a rare disease and reviews of a decade ago listed only some 40 cases. There is no evidence that its actual incidence is greater today but the number of laboratory diagnosed cases is now over 1,500 of which 1/3 have been recorded in the past 5 years (Gray, 1962). It is probably much more common than is realized since diagnosis depends on isolation and identification of the organism which is not always easy. The various types of human listeriosis fall approximately into the following categories: 33 per cent meningitis or encephalitis, 29 per cent granulomatous infantiseptica, 21 per cent septicemia, 8 per cent mononucleosis, 6 per cent conjunctivitis (Murray 1955). *Listeria* meningitis is the most prevalent form of the infection in North America and has a fatality rate up to 70 per cent. Clinically it resembles other purulent meningitides and the cellular response is mononuclear or polymorphonuclear in nature. Although listeria is usually a primary cause of meningitis in adults it may sometimes be

superimposed on advanced neoplastic diseases diabetes or other terminal illnesses or may follow the administration of cortisone. Septicemic cases occur under a variety of circumstances. Listeriosis of the central nervous system is believed not to leave sequelae but Josephson (1963) has reported a well documented case in a 5 week-old infant which left residual spastic weakness and foot deformity. The organism was once thought to play a role in the etiology of infectious mononucleosis but this view is no longer held.

Granulomatous infant sepsis appears to be more prevalent in Europe than in North America (Seeliger 1961). The disease is a generalized intra uterine infection occurring usually in the 3rd trimester with a high mortality rate for the fetus or child which is stillborn or born acutely ill. It is characterized by extensive focal necrosis especially of the liver and the spleen more rarely of the lungs and the intestines. Reiss *et al* (1951) first studied this form of the disease in Germany and since then over 200 cases have been seen in that country. Meningitis occurs frequently in these cases. In severe cases listeria can be isolated without difficulty from blood cerebrospinal fluid urine and other secretions. Potel (1951) has observed that the meconium is generally positive perhaps due to swallowing of infected amniotic fluid. Infants dying 2 or 3 days after birth often show a generalized petechial rash not unlike that of meningococcal septicemia.

The pathogenesis of granulomatous infant sepsis is not clearly understood but frequently listeria has been isolated post partum and sometimes antepartum from the mother's vagina and occasionally from her urine or blood. Some of the mothers had noted at different times before delivery minor febrile illnesses on one or more occasions but none became seriously ill and most had a normal postpartum course. Thus the mothers may have an inapparent infection manifested only by a rising agglutination titer. Rapaport *et al* (1960) found that listeria infections were common among habitual aborters in one area of Israel but their findings have not been confirmed (Seeliger



FIG 1 *Listeria* keratoconjunctivitis 9 days after instillation of *L. monocytogenes* showing edema corneal opacity and purulent exudate (After Gray Singh and Thorp Jr. Abortion stillbirth early death of young in rabbits by *Listeria monocytogenes* 1. Ocular instillation Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 89 163 169)

1963 Potel 1963) Cohen (1963) examined vaginal swabs from 561 pregnant women including 37 habitual aborters throughout pregnancy with completely negative results. The consensus is that listeria is rarely concerned with habitual abortion in man.

#### DIAGNOSIS

The only absolute diagnosis depends on isolation and identification of the organism from a suspected case. Cultures should be made from blood cerebrospinal fluid urine meconium placenta lochia milk or exudates at autopsies cultures should be made from all organs. Tissues should be macerated in a few ml of sterile distilled water or nutrient broth not saline. A portion of fluid specimen or macerated tissue should be

plated on tryptose or blood agar or on modified McBride's agar and the remainder stored at 4° C to be subcultured from time to time. Girard and Sbarra (1963) have found phenylethanol agar with 0.05 per cent LiCl and 1 per cent glycine to be an adequately sensitive and selective medium. After incubation for 24 hours at 37° C plates are examined using a hand lens or a scanning microscope using obliquely transmitted illumination. Under these conditions colonies of *L. monocytogenes* show a distinctive blue-green color. Care must be taken that colonies on blood agar are not confused with hemolytic streptococci or mistakenly discarded as diphtheroids because they grow on media containing potassium tellurite. Examination of hanging drops for tumbling motility should be done. Production of keratoconjunctivitis in the rabbit eye is of great value in identification. The inoculation of experimental animals otherwise is not too reliable since most laboratory animals are susceptible to the natural disease. Immuno-fluorescence has been used with varying success to demonstrate the presence of *Listeria* in tissues.

Serologic methods may be used as an aid to the diagnosis of listeriosis in man, but since the agglutination titer decreases rapidly after recovery it cannot serve reliably for late diagnosis. One must also consider the fact that *Listeria* has antigens in common with other pathogens, especially staphylococci. There is no bacteriologic evidence that antibody titers in normal healthy individuals or normal animals results from *Listeria* infections. These facts must be considered when utilizing the agglutination test as an aid to diagnosis. The test should be done with H and O antigens of the 4 serotypes of *L. monocytogenes* and with the autogenous strain. Titers of over 1/200 are significant but a rising titer on consecutive serum samples is even more significant. The serology of *Listeria* infections has been reviewed by Seeliger (1961).

#### SPECIFIC THERAPY

In vitro studies by Linzenmeier and Seeliger (1954) indicate that, as a rule, *Listeria* is sensitive to penicillin, streptomycin,

chloramphenicol, the tetracyclines and erythromycin but is resistant to sulfadiazine, polymyxin and bacitracin. These findings are borne out to some extent in the treatment of clinical listeriosis. Sulfonamides have proved to be of little value. Streptomycin is of limited value and the organisms may develop resistance to this antibiotic rather rapidly. Cases have been treated successfully with combined penicillin and streptomycin and with tetracycline. The present view is that tetracycline is the drug of choice. Most cases of granulomatosis infantiseptica are fatal regardless of treatment and there have been so few reported cases of meningitis and septicemia that it is difficult, if not impossible to assess the claims made for various methods of treatment. In all cases the strain isolated should be tested in vitro for its sensitivity to antibiotics.

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Listeriosis is a disease with a very wide spread distribution involving many unrelated and varied hosts with widely different food and living requirements, under every climatic condition from arctic to tropical. The clinical, pathologic and bacteriologic characteristics of listeriosis vary from one host to another, but there is no indication that this is due to difference in host species or in type of infecting bacteria. The specific characters of strains of *Listeria* isolated from all hosts in every country appear to be homogeneous apart from the fact that the 4 different serotypes differ in frequency in different regions. No serotype is restricted to any particular host. In fact, strains isolated from cases not showing monocytosis as in cattle and generally in man nonetheless cause a characteristic monocytosis in rabbits.

It is commonly assumed that human listeriosis is a disease with a low incidence and a high mortality rate. This belief may be misleading because of the difficulty of isolating *Listeria* whether from the sick or the normal individual. Because of its widespread geographic distribution and its variety of hosts the organism in all probability has a high transmission rate and is able to persist for long periods of time in many individuals. It

would appear that individual susceptibility or resistance is the principal determinant of disease, since animal experiments have shown that susceptibility to listeriosis can be altered by environment and general state of health.

Ingestion of contaminated silage appears to play a role in animal outbreaks which have been studied by Palsson (1963) and Gray (1963). In addition Gray *et al.* (1955b) have demonstrated that the addition of listeria to the drinking water of pregnant rabbits will result in abortion whereas nonpregnant or male animals are completely refractory to this method of exposure. These findings are similar to those made in Germany where ingestion of contaminated cow's milk by a pregnant woman was associated with premature delivery of twins with granulomatosis from whom listeria was isolated (Potel 1953).

The oral route is not the only portal of entry since Gray *et al.* (1955a) have reported intra uterine infection of rabbits following ocular instillation. The genital route has been suspected as a source of infection of the human fetus but in many surveys of cervical or vaginal cultures *L. monocytogenes* has never been demonstrated in normal women and in relatively few cases of abortion. Listeriosis occurs as a venereal infection since the organism has been isolated from male urethral exudates by Wenkeback (1953) and more recently by Toaff *et al.* (1962) from the semen of the male partners of several habitual aborters. Respiratory exposure may also play a role particularly in encephalitis of ruminants and in septicemia and meningitis in man. The organism has been isolated from throats of normal and encephalitic sheep but only twice from over 3 500 swabs of the human upper respiratory tract by Stanley (1950).

It is possible then that in naturally occurring human and animal listeriosis infection may result from ingestion, inhalation or genital contamination. Considerable evidence has accumulated in recent years which supports the first two hypotheses. As brought out in the Second Symposium on Listeria Infection (1963) our knowledge of the epidemiology and the pathogenesis of listeriosis

is very meager indeed. In man the brunt of an outbreak may fall on the young in terms of both morbidity and mortality but the infection or carrier rate in children and adults remains unknown.

## ERYSIPELOTHRIX RHUSIOPATHIAE

### HISTORY

*Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* is the etiologic agent of erysipeloid, a not uncommon cutaneous infection in man which on occasion may be confused with streptococcal erysipelas. *Erysipelothrix* infections also occur commonly in swine and are referred to as swine erysipelas. A similar infection may occur in various fowl and is of some economic importance in turkey flocks. The first member of this group was isolated by Koch in 1880 from the blood of mice and in 1886 by Loeffler from the cutaneous blood vessels of pigs that had died of swine erysipelas. Rosenbach (1909) isolated *E. rhusiopathiae* from human infections in 1886 and was the first to use the term erysipeloid for this disease in man. While at one time strains of human, porcine and murine origin were considered separately, it is now generally held that these are almost identical variants of the single species *E. rhusiopathiae*.

There are some similarities between *E. rhusiopathiae* and *L. monocytogenes* which have led to both organisms being placed in the genus *Erysipelothrix*. However this proposal is not widely accepted in North America since there are differences in both motility and pathogenicity between the two organisms and since there appears to be no antigenic relationship between them. Woodbine (1950) has reviewed the bacteriology and the chemotherapy of erysipelothe

### MORPHOLOGY AND CULTIVATION

*E. rhusiopathiae* is a gram positive non-sporulating rod in which no capsule has been demonstrated. It is micro-aerophilic but will grow either aerobically or anaerobically. Like listeria it occurs in a smooth and a rough form but differs from listeria in being nonmotile. Smooth phase cells are small, straight or slightly curved rods with rounded ends measuring 0.8 to 2.5 microns in length.



and 0.3 micron in width and arranged singly, in small clusters or in short chains. In the rough form long filaments of up to 60 microns or more in length predominate and long chains of bacilli may also be seen.

*E. rhusiopathiae* grows poorly on simple media but growth is improved by the addition of glucose and serum. Smooth forms grow better at 33° C while at 37° C growth of the rough variant is favored. After incubation for 24 hours at 37° C smooth phase colonies are round, glistening, water clear and up to 0.1 mm in diameter. On further incubation the colonies show little or no increase in size. In the rough form the colonies are larger and flatter with a matte surface and a fimbriate edge which make them not unlike minute anthrax colonies. The formation of a lateral outgrowth in gelatin stab cultures gives rise to the characteristic lamp brush appearance which when present is a diagnostic feature although it is not a consistent finding. Gelatin is not liquefied. Most smooth strains of *erysipelo*thrix produce partial or alpha hemolysis around deep colonies in blood agar but a soluble hemolysis is not formed.

*Erysipelothrix* is considerably less active biochemically than *Listeria*. It usually forms acid from lactose, glucose, galactose and fructose while mannose and maltose give inconsistent results (Byrne *et al* 1952). There is considerable variation in the fermentation pattern depending on the medium and the indicator used. White and Schuman (1961) have found Andrade's base serum medium most dependable. *Erysipelothrix* does not ferment rhamnose, mannitol, sucrose, dextrin or salicin. The reactions for indole, methyl red, Voges-Proskauer and catalase are all negative. Fuzi (1963) found that *Listeria* strains are regularly very sensitive to neomycin while the *erysipelo*thrix strains tested were all highly resistant.

#### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

*Erysipelothrix* and *Listeria* are antigenically distinct. Watts (1940) recognized 2 distinct antigenic types of *erysipelo*thrix. He found that each group possesses a heat stable specific antigen and 2 heat labile antigens present in different proportions in the 2 groups and responsible for cross agglutination. Gledhill (1945) found both heat-stable and heat

labile antigens, the former allowing 4 antigenic types to be distinguished. Recent studies indicate that the heat stable fraction is a polypeptide (White and Kalf 1961). Both polypeptides and nucleoproteins were found by Truszczyński (1961) to be type specific antigens while species specific antigens were mainly nucleoproteins. Two bacteriophages isolated by Brill and Politynska (1961) are specific for strains of serotype A which are all sensitive. Ultraviolet irradiation revealed latent infection with Type A phages in the type B strains studied.

#### RESISTANCE

Exposure to moist heat for 15 minutes at 55° C will kill most strains of *erysipelo*thrix. The organism is resistant to salting, pickling and smoking surviving in such treated meat for 1 to 3 months. It may also remain viable and virulent for months in putrifying infected carcasses although it is very susceptible to drying. The organism will survive for 4 or 5 days in drinking water and for 12 to 14 days in sewage.

#### DISTRIBUTION AND RANGE OF PATHOGENICITY

*E. rhusiopathiae* has a wide range of pathogenicity for animals under natural conditions and has a world wide distribution. Natural infections have been reported in man, swine, sheep, mice, cattle, horses and various species of domestic fowl. Mice and pigeons are highly susceptible to experimental infection but not guinea pigs, although the latter are susceptible to *Listeria*.

#### PATHOGENESIS AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY

While *erysipelo*thrix can produce a generalized septicemia with focal necrosis of liver and spleen in susceptible animals, it differs from *Listeria* in manifesting a predilection for the skin, the endocardium and joints.

Infection in swine is commonly seen in 3 different forms: a mild form known as red fever, diamond skin disease or swine erysipelas in which skin involvement predominates; an acute severe form of septicemia; and a chronic form characterized by arthritic symptoms. The skin appears to be the preferred site for primary invasion in swine (Spencer, 1954). Experimentally

only oral administration has been successful in producing the symptoms of natural infection. Recovered animals could not be reinfectd (Rowse 1955). Erysipelothrix infections of swine are often serious and fatal and may have considerable economic importance. Infection of commercial turkey or chicken flocks is characterized primarily by involvement of the long bones from which positive cultures may be obtained. The mortality rate in such flocks is a potential epidemic threat can be reduced materially by vaccination.

The disease in man usually takes the form of a localized cutaneous infection known as Rosenbach's erysipeloid although septicemia with endocarditis and joint involvement may occur. Interest in erysipeloid in North America dates from a report of Gilchrist (1904) in which 329 cases were seen in Baltimore. 232 were individuals who had suffered abrasions while handling crabs. The infection characteristically develops following an abrasion suffered while handling organic matter especially fish shellfish meat or poultry (Klauder 1938). Erysipeloid commonly appears as a mild cutaneous infection 1 to 7 days after inoculation usually in a finger or a thumb. A small red sharply defined and slightly elevated spot appears at the site of inoculation and gradually spreads outward while the central area fades and takes on a purplish hue. This is accompanied by edema and erythema and is followed by throbbing or tingling in the involved area. A mild headache and malaise may be present. Suppuration does not occur and lymphangitis and lymphadenitis are irregular. In about 6 per cent of patients arthritis may involve the injured area or adjacent joints. Very rarely infection may become systemic and develop into an erysipelotheix septicemia which can be fatal. In such an event there is seen a generalized purpuric and petechial rash resembling the rash of meningococcal septicemia. A single attack apparently does not confer complete immunity in man as reports of reinfections are common.

#### DIAGNOSIS

A specific diagnosis of erysipeloid is based in part on clinical findings. Characteristic appearance of the localized infection which almost invariably is on the hand and the ab-

sence of suppuration leukocytosis and systemic involvement all aid in differentiating human erysipeloid from cellulitis and streptococcal erysipelas. However final diagnosis rests on the isolation of *E. rhusiopathiae* from lesions. Positive cultures are rarely obtained from material collected from swabs of a local lesion. Biopsies should be taken and cultured for 24 hours in glucose broth followed by subculture on blood agar plates. Rowse (1958) held inoculated broth for 5 weeks at 5° C prior to plating a technique similar to that used for listeria. Intraperitoneal injection of white mice with a suspension of biopsy material will yield a pure culture of erysipelotheix from heart's blood in 24 hours. The organisms can be differentiated from listeria by biochemical reactions and by the fact that on instillation into the conjunctival sac of a rabbit listeria produces a severe keratoconjunctivitis whereas erysipelotheix causes a very mild conjunctivitis without keratitis. In suspected cases of septicemia repeated blood cultures should be done. No information is available regarding the positive diagnostic value of agglutination tests in man although in swine such tests have been used in diagnosis of chronic infection.

#### TREATMENT

The evaluation of therapy in erysipelotheix infections is complicated by the fact that the disease is usually self limiting and runs a variable course with an average duration of about 3 weeks. Both experimental and clinical studies have demonstrated that penicillin is the antibiotic of choice (Woodbine 1950). Streptomycin and sulfonamides alone have little effect. Moynihan and Stovell (1954) found that penicillin tetracycline or a combination of penicillin and streptomycin were effective in turkeys experimentally infected.

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Erysipeloid in man is primarily an occupational disease seen in individuals handling meat fish poultry or shellfish. King (1946) summarized 115 cases treated at a London hospital and found that 85 of these were directly attributed to an animal source. Abattoir workers and fish handlers predominated in a group of 100 cases studied by Klauder

and 0.3 micron in width and arranged singly in small clusters or in short chains. In the rough form long filaments of up to 60 microns or more in length predominate and long chains of bacilli may also be seen.

*E. rhusiopathiae* grows poorly on simple media but growth is improved by the addition of glucose and serum. Smooth forms grow better at 33° C while at 37° C growth of the rough variant is favored. After incubation for 24 hours at 37° C smooth phase colonies are round, glistening, water clear and up to 0.1 mm in diameter. On further incubation the colonies show little or no increase in size. In the rough form the colonies are larger and flatter with a matte surface and a fimbriate edge which make them not unlike minute anthrax colonies. The formation of a lateral outgrowth in gelatin stab cultures gives rise to the characteristic lamp brush appearance which when present is a diagnostic feature although it is not a consistent finding. Gelatin is not liquefied. Most smooth strains of *erysipelo*thrix produce partial or alpha hemolysis around deep colonies in blood agar but a soluble hemolysin is not formed.

*Erysipelothrix* is considerably less active biochemically than *Listeria*. It usually forms acid from lactose, glucose, galactose and fructose while mannose and maltose give inconsistent results (Byrne *et al.* 1952). There is considerable variation in the fermentation pattern depending on the medium and the indicator used. White and Schuman (1961) have found Andrade's base serum medium most dependable. *Erysipelothrix* does not ferment rhamnose, mannitol, sucrose, dextrin or salicin. The reactions for indole, methyl red, Vogues-Proskauer and catalase are all negative. Fuzy (1963) found that *Listeria* strains are regularly very sensitive to neomycin while the *erysipelo*thrix strains tested were all highly resistant.

#### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

*Erysipelothrix* and *Listeria* are antigenically distinct. Watts (1940) recognized 2 distinct antigenic types of *erysipelo*thrix. He found that each group possesses a heat stable specific antigen and 2 heat labile antigens present in different proportions in the 2 groups and responsible for cross agglutination. Gledhill (1945) found both heat stable and heat

labile antigens the former allowing 4 antigenic types to be distinguished. Recent studies indicate that the heat stable fraction is a polypeptide (White and Kalf 1961). Both polypeptides and nucleoproteins were found by Truszczyński (1961) to be type specific antigens while species specific antigens were mainly nucleoproteins. Two bacteriophages isolated by Brill and Politynska (1961) are specific for strains of serotype A which are all sensitive. Ultraviolet irradiation revealed latent infection with Type A phages in the type B strains studied.

#### RESISTANCE

Exposure to moist heat for 15 minutes at 55° C will kill most strains of *erysipelo*thrix. The organism is resistant to salting, pickling and smoking, surviving in such treated meat for 1 to 3 months. It may also remain viable and virulent for months in putrifying infected carcasses although it is very susceptible to drying. The organism will survive for 4 or 5 days in drinking water and for 12 to 14 days in sewage.

#### DISTRIBUTION AND RANGE OF PATHOGENICITY

*E. rhusiopathiae* has a wide range of pathogenicity for animals under natural conditions and has a world wide distribution. Natural infections have been reported in man, swine, sheep, mice, cattle, horses and various species of domestic fowl. Mice and pigeons are highly susceptible to experimental infection but not guinea pigs although the latter are susceptible to *Listeria*.

#### PATHOGENESIS AND SYMPTOMATOLOGY

While *erysipelo*thrix can produce a generalized septicemia with focal necrosis of liver and spleen in susceptible animals it differs from *Listeria* in manifesting a predilection for the skin, the endocardium and joints.

Infection in swine is commonly seen in 3 different forms: a mild form known as red fever, diamond skin disease or swine erysipelas in which skin involvement predominates; an acute severe form of septicemia; and a chronic form characterized by arthritic symptoms. The skin appears to be the preferred site for primary invasion in swine (Spencer 1954). Experimentally

- Antibiotica Zbl Bakt (Orig) 160 543 558
- McBride M E and Girard K F 1960 A selective method for the isolation of *Listeria monocytogenes* from mixed bacterial populations J Lab Clin Med 55 153 157
- Moynihan I W and Stovell P L 1954 The sensitivity of *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* to antibiotics and its relation to chemotherapy Proc Am Vet Med Ass 327 333
- Murray E G D 1955 A characterization of listeriosis in man and other animals Canad Med Ass J 72 99 103
- Murray E G D Webb R A and Swann M H R 1926 A disease of rabbits characterised by a large mononuclear leucocytosis caused by a hitherto undescribed bacillus *Bacterium monocytogenes* (n sp) J Path Bact 29 407-439
- Neter E Anzai H and Gorzynski E A 1960 Identification of an antigen common to *Listeria monocytogenes* and other bacteria Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 105 131 134
- Osebold J W and Sawyer M T 1955 Listeriosis Factors in immunity and pathogenesis Proc Am. Vet Med Ass 189 205
- Palsson P A 1963 Relation of silage feeding to listeric infection in sheep in Gray M L (ed.) Second Symposium on Listeric Infection pp 73 84 Bozeman Montana State College
- Paterson J S 1940 The antigenic structure of organisms of the genus *Listerella* J Path Bact 51 427-436
- Patocka F Schindler J and Mara M 1959 Studies on the pathogenicity of *Listeria monocytogenes* I Protein substance isolated from cells of *Listeria monocytogenes* enhancing listeric infection Zbl Bakteriell (Orig) 174 573 585
- Pine J H H 1927 A new disease of wild rodents Tiger River disease Publ S Afr Inst Med Res 3 163 186
- 1940 *Listeria* Change of name for a genus of bacteria Nature 145 264
- Potel J 1951 Die Morphologie Kultur und Tierpathogenität des *Corynebacterium infantisepticum* Zbl Bakt (Orig) 156 490 493
- 1953 Aetiologie der Granulomatosis Infantisepticum Wiss Z Martin Luther Univ 2 341 349
- 1963 The possible role of *Listeria monocytogenes* in habitual abortion in Gray M L (ed.) Second Symposium on Listeric Infection pp 323 324 Bozeman Montana State College.
- Rappaport, F Rabinovitz, M Toaff R and Krochik N 1960 Genital listeriosis as a cause of repeated abortion Lancet 1 1273 1275
- Reiss H J 1953 Zur pathologischen Anatomie der kindlichen Listeriosis Kinderarztl Prax. 1953 2 12
- Reiss H J Potel J and Krebs A 1951 Granulomatosis infantiseptica eine durch einen spezifischen Erreger hervorgerufene fetale Sepsis Klin Wschr 29 29
- Rosenbach F J 1909 Experimentelle morphologische und klinische Studie über die krankheitserregenden Mikroorganismen des Schweinerotlaufs des Erysipeloids und der Mausepsies Ztschr Hyg Infektionskr 63 343 371
- Rowell H C 1955 Studies on the experimental production of swine erysipelas Proc Am Vet Med Ass 143 148
- 1958 A cultural and biochemical study of strains of *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* with special reference to the carrier pig Canad J Comp Med 22 82 86
- Seeliger H P R 1961 Listeriosis New York Hafner 308 pp
- 1963 The possible role of *Listeria monocytogenes* in habitual abortion in Gray M L (ed.) Second Symposium on Listeric Infection pp 315 322 Bozeman Montana State College
- Seeliger H and Linzenmeier G 1953 Die Listeriose und ihre Erreger (*List. monocytogenes*) Z Hyg Infektionskr 136 335 378
- Seeliger H P R and Sulzbacher F 1956 Antigenic relationships between *Listeria monocytogenes* and *Staphylococcus aureus* Canad J Microbiol 2 220 231
- Shimizu K Otsuka G and Oka M 1954 Guanofuracin media for isolation of *L. monocytogenes* and its practical application Jap J Vet Res 2 1 10
- Silverman S J Elwell L and Kautler D A 1961 A mortality enhancing extract isolated from *Listeria monocytogenes* J Immun 86 669 674
- Smith C W and Metzger J F 1962 Demonstration of a capsular structure on *Listeria monocytogenes* Path Microbiol 25 499 506
- Spencer G R 1954 The pathogenesis of experimental swine erysipelas Proc Am Vet Med Ass 132 138
- Stanley N F 1949 Studies on *Listeria monocytogenes* I Isolation of a monocytosis producing agent (MPA) Aust J Exp Biol Med Sci 27 123 131
- 1950 Studies on *Listeria monocytogenes* III Failure to isolate the organism

(1938) Outbreaks of the disease have been described in workers in a bone button factory and cases have occurred in veterinarians. However erysipeloid also has been observed as a nonoccupational disease in sporadic cases.

Although in man inoculation almost invariably takes place through broken skin in swine other portals of entry apparently are possible. In experimental swine erysipelas Rowsell found that various routes of infection produced tonsillar carriers in 92 per cent of the pigs. Tonsillar carrier rates of 11 to 31 per cent have been found in swine (Connell and Langford 1951; Rowsell 1958).

## REFERENCES

- Asahi O 1963a Present situation of *Listeria* vaccine for animal use in Gray M L (ed) Second Symposium on Listeric Infection pp 49-56 Bozeman Montana State College
- 1963b Pathogenesis of listeric encephalitis. Invasion of nerve fibers by *Listeria monocytogenes* in Gray M L (ed) Second Symposium on Listeric Infection pp 99-108 Bozeman Montana State College
- Bearns R E and Girard K F 1958 The effect of pasteurization on *Listeria monocytogenes* Canad J Microbiol 4 55-61
- Brill J and Politynska E 1961 Die Differenzierung von *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* Stämmen mit Bakteriophagen Zbl Bakt (Orig) 181 473-477
- Byrne J L Connell R Frank J F and Moynihan I W 1952 Studies of swine erysipelas II. Cultural characteristics and virulence of strains of *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* isolated in different regions in Canada Canad J Comp Med 16 129-148
- Cohen V 1963 Clinical and laboratory studies on *Listeria monocytogenes* MSc Thesis McGill University Montreal
- Connell R, and Langford E V 1953 Studies of swine erysipelas V. Presence of *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* in apparently healthy pigs Canad J Comp Med 17 448-453
- Fuzi M 1963 A neomycin sensitivity test for the rapid differentiation of *Listeria monocytogenes* and *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* J Path Bact 85 524-525
- Fuzi M and Pillis I 1962 Production of opacity in egg yolk medium by *Listeria monocytogenes* Nature 196 195
- Gilchrist T C 1904 Erysipeloid with a record of 329 cases of which 322 were caused by crab bites or lesions produced by crabs J Cutaneous Dis 22 507-519
- Girard K F and Murray E G D 1954 The influence of sustained monocytosis upon the antibody response in rabbits to various antigens Canad J Biochem 32 1-13
- Girard K F and Sbarra A J 1963 Some studies on the selective isolation of *Listeria monocytogenes* and their clinical applications with findings to date in Gray M L (ed) Second Symposium on Listeric Infection pp 159-164 Bozeman Montana State College
- Girard K F Sbarra A and Bardawil W A 1963 Serology of *Listeria monocytogenes* I. Characteristics of the soluble hemolysin J Bact 85 349-355
- Gledhill A W 1945 The antigenic structure of *Erysipelothrix* J Path Bact 57 179-189
- Gray M L 1962 *Listeria monocytogenes* and listeric infection in the diagnostic laboratory Ann NY Acad Sci 98 686-699
- 1963 Experiences with silage feeding and listeric infection in the United States in Gray M L (ed) Second Symposium for Listeric Infection pp 85-94 Bozeman Montana State College
- Gray M L Singh C and Thorp F Jr 1955a Abortion stillbirth early death of young in rabbits by *Listeria monocytogenes* I. Ocular instillation Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 89 163-169
- 1955b Abortion stillbirth early death of young in rabbits by *Listeria monocytogenes* II. Oral exposure Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 89 169-175
- Gray M L Stafseth H J Thorp F Jr Sholl L B and Riley W F Jr 1948 A new technique for isolating *Listeriae* from the bovine brain J Bact 55 471-476
- 1956 Abortion and pre or postnatal death of young due to *Listeria monocytogenes* III. Studies in ruminants Am J Vet Res 17 510-516
- Josephson J E 1963 Personal communication
- King P F 1946 Erysipeloid survey of 115 cases Lancet 2 196-198
- Klauder J V 1938 Erysipeloid as an occupational disease JAMA 111 1345-1348
- Linzenmeier G and Seeliger H 1954 Die in vitro-Empfindlichkeit von *Listeria monocytogenes* (Pine) gegen Sulfonamide und

## 32

## Streptobacillus Moniliformis

## DEFINITION

*Streptobacillus moniliformis* is an aerobic gram negative pleomorphic microorganism requiring blood serum or aseptic fluid for cultivation. In the animal body and in young cultures grown in completely satisfactory media the morphology is more uniformly bacillary (2 to 4 microns in length) whereas in older cultures and in cultures in slightly unsatisfactory media the morphologic forms consist of filaments up to 40 microns in length and chains of bacilli or cocci. Often these filaments show swellings 2 to 5 times their own width. The words *Streptobacillus* and *moniliformis* constitute the most succinct description of the morphology of this organism. A variant designated L<sub>1</sub> (L = Lister Institute) is produced. The organism is a normal inhabitant of the nasopharynx of wild and laboratory rats. It is highly pathogenic for mice, nonpathogenic for guinea pigs, rabbits and usually rats. In man it is the cause of one type of rat bite fever and of a disease known as Haverhill fever or erythema arthriticum epidemicum which is characterized by fever, rash and polyarthritis but is not necessarily acquired by the bite of a rat. (Synonyms: *Sireptothrix muris rattu*, *Actinomyces muris*, *Asterococcus muris*, *Haverhillia multiformis*, etc.)

## HISTORY

The fact that rat bite fever may be caused by two different microorganisms *Spirillum*

*muris* and *Streptobacillus moniliformis* and the extreme variation of the latter organism have led to a very confused literature. The first case of rat bite fever was described by Wilcox in 1840 but the role of *streptobacillus* under various names was not discovered until 1914 and the years immediately ensuing. The epidemics in Chester, Pa. (Place and Sutton, 1934) and in Haverhill, Mass. (Parker and Hudson, 1926) have demonstrated that the bite of a rat is not essential for man's acquiring the infection. For a good review of the disease and its causative organisms the reader is referred to the publication of Brown and Nunemaker (1942).

## CULTIVATION AND BIOLOGIC PROPERTIES

One of the characteristics of *S. moniliformis* is that it requires the presence of a natural body fluid for growth on artificial medium. Tryptose phosphate broth and media of the infusion type are satisfactory basal media. These require enriching with blood serum or aseptic fluid to a concentration of 10 to 30 per cent. The organisms grow better in media with a pH of about 7.6. Optimum growth takes place in an aerobic atmosphere at 37°C although some strains may grow better in an atmosphere of increased CO<sub>2</sub> tension (Smith and Sampson, 1960). Growth on solid medium is favored if the basal medium contains slightly less than the conventional 1.5 per cent agar and the atmosphere contains a high moisture

- from the human throat, Aust J Exp Biol Med Sci 28 117 119
- Sword C P and Pickett M J 1961 The isolation and characterization of bacteriophages from *Listeria monocytogenes* J Gen Microbiol 25 241 248
- Symposium on Listeric Infection Gray M L (ed) 1963 Bozeman Montana State College 398 pp
- Toaff M Krochik N and Rabinovitz M 1962 Genital listeriosis in the male Lancet 2 482 483
- Truszczyński M 1961 The antigenic structure of virulent and avirulent strains of *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* III The agar gel diffusion precipitation test Am J Vet Res 22 846 851
- Watts P S 1940 Studies on *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* J Path Bact 50 355 369
- Welshimer H J 1963 Vitamin requirements of *Listeria monocytogenes* J Bact 85 1156-1159
- Wenkebach G K 1953 Zuchtung von *Listeria monocytogenes* aus der Harnrohre des Mannes International Congress for Microbiology (6th) Rome 1953 Summaries of communications 2 406
- White T G and Kalf G F 1961 The antigenic components of *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* I Isolation and serological identification Arch Biochem Biophys 95 458 463
- White T G and Shuman M D 1961 Fermentation reactions of *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* J Bact 82 595 599
- Woodbine M 1950 *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* Bacteriology and chemotherapy Bact Rev 14 161 178

formed back to the streptobacillus organism (Heilman 1941a) Compared with *S. moniliformis*  $L_1$  is less virulent if virulent at all for the mouse and it is a poorer immunizing antigen (Freundt 1956b) *S. moniliformis* has been reported to produce acid without gas from glucose, maltose, levulose, salicin, starch and glycogen and to be inert toward lactose, sucrose, mannitol, xylose, inositol, inulin, dulcitol, arabinose, raffinose, sorbitol, trehalose, rhamnose and glycerol. It is variable toward galactose. The  $L_1$  variant has fermentative activities identical with those of *S. moniliformis* (Heilman 1941b). An interesting association of two microorganisms is the dependence of *Entamoeba histolytica* on its associated streptobacillus for metabolism of glucose (Loran *et al* 1956).

The view of Dienes (1939) is now generally accepted that the  $L_1$  organism is a variant of *S. moniliformis*. An effort is being

made (Bassermann *et al* 1957) to employ the term *L* with some consistency. It is recommended that this term be reserved for a type of growth arising spontaneously or by stimulation which is characterized by a colony of special appearance showing a dense center and lighter periphery on media not containing the original stimulating substances. Furthermore, microorganisms comprising this *L* form must not assume the morphology of the parent culture. Organisms in the  $L_1$  colonies grow into the agar medium so that they cannot be transferred by the usual bacteriologic techniques using an inoculating needle. The agar block transfer techniques of Klieneberger (1935) give the best results.

The organisms are extremely fragile and soft. Young colonies and the central mass of well developed colonies consist of small forms which often appear as tiny bipolar stained bacilli. These forms are transformed

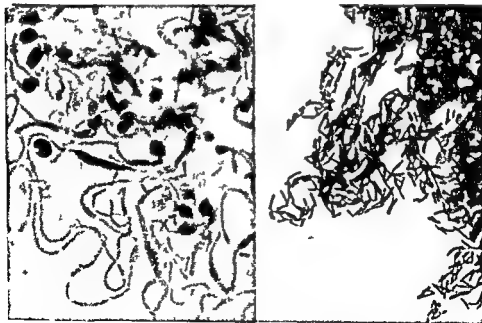


FIG 2 (Left) *Streptobacillus moniliformis* colony (24 hour agar culture in situ with methylene blue). Note the irregular wavy filaments containing deeply stained pear shaped swellings. Magnification  $\times 1855$ .

FIG 3 (Right) Broth culture of *Streptobacillus moniliformis* (Gram stain of 24-hour growth). Note the lack of pleomorphism. Magnification  $\times 1855$  (Dr. Louis Dienes).



content In a few instances it has been found possible to replace the serum component in the medium by starch (Heilman, 1941b) glycogen or dextrin (Dumoff and Duffy 1951)

In fluid cultures growth usually takes place in the form of fluff balls or bread crumbs on the bottom of the tube or on the surface of the sedimented red blood cells The supernatant fluid may remain clear and devoid of organisms A fluff ball should be removed with a pipette for transfer or microscopic examination Giemsa's and Wayson's stains are more satisfactory than Gram's technique for demonstrating the microorganisms Fluid cultures may require daily transfer in order to maintain the viability of the strain

Another characteristic of the organism is its extreme pleomorphism in microscopic preparations The cells vary from fairly uni-

form small slender rods to long slender filaments which are often irregularly fragmented and are said to resemble the dot-dash appearance of the Morse code In addition they show circular to spindle shaped swellings (Fig 1)

On solid medium growth takes place in 2 to 3 days more slowly than in liquid media and the organisms are viable for a longer period i e, up to 1 week Individual colonies are raised and granular and may become as large as 5 mm in diameter Beneath or adjacent to the colonies of streptobacillus the microscopic  $L_1$  colonies may develop Organisms in the  $L_1$  colonies are much more resistant to penicillin than are those in the streptobacillus colonies, consequently penicillin can be used to isolate the  $L_1$  component The  $L_1$  organism can be obtained and maintained in pure culture and can be trans-

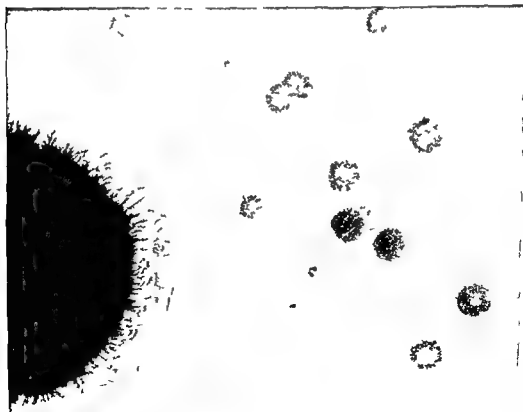


FIG 1 *Streptobacillus moniliformis* and pleuropneumoniae-like organism  $L_1$  (24-hour culture on ascitic fluid agar stained in situ with methylene blue Azure II) Magnification  $\times 112$  (Dr Cynthia H. Pierce)

formed back to the streptobacillus organism (Heilman 1941a) Compared with *S moniliformis* L<sub>1</sub> is less virulent if virulent at all for the mouse and it is a poorer immunizing antigen (Freundt 1956b) *S moniliformis* has been reported to produce acid without gas from glucose maltose levulose salicin starch and glycogen and to being inert to ward lactose sucrose mannitol xylose inositol inulin dulcitol arabinose raffinose sorbitol trehalose rhamnose and glycerol It is variable toward galactose The L<sub>1</sub> variant has fermentative activities identical with those of *S moniliformis* (Heilman 1941b) An interesting association of two microorganisms is the dependence of *Entamoeba histolytica* on its associated streptobacillus for metabolism of glucose (Loran *et al* 1956)

The view of Dienes (1939) is now generally accepted that the L<sub>1</sub> organism is a variant of *S moniliformis* An effort is being

made (Bassermann *et al* 1957) to employ the term L with some consistency It is recommended that this term be reserved for a type of growth arising spontaneously or by stimulation which is characterized by a colony of special appearance showing a dense center and lighter periphery on media not containing the original stimulating substances Furthermore microorganisms comprising this L form must not assume the morphology of the parent culture Organisms in the L<sub>1</sub> colonies grow into the agar medium so that they cannot be transferred by the usual bacteriologic techniques using an inoculating needle The agar block transfer techniques of Klieneberger (1935) gave the best results

The organisms are extremely fragile and soft Young colonies and the central mass of well-developed colonies consist of small forms which often appear as tiny bipolar stained bacilli These forms are transformed

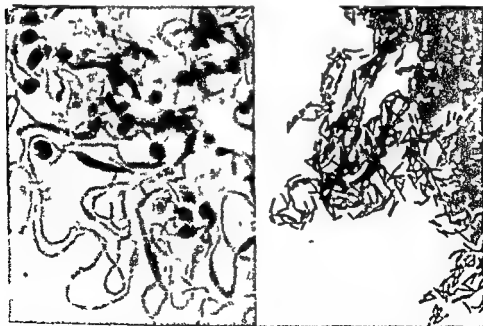


FIG 2 (Left) *Streptobacillus moniliformis* colony (24-hour agar culture in situ with methylene blue) Note the irregular wavy filaments containing deeply stained pear shaped swellings Magnification  $\times 1855$

FIG 3 (Right) Broth culture of *Streptobacillus moniliformis* (Gram stain of 24-hour growth) Note the lack of pleomorphism Magnification  $\times 1855$  (Dr Louis Dienes)

at the surface and at the periphery of the colonies by gradual swelling into large round forms. The morphology of the organisms in the  $L_1$  colonies is so similar to that of pleuropneumonia-like organisms that, without knowing the origin of a culture after it has lost its ability to return to the streptobacillus, it would be impossible to differentiate between the two on the basis of morphology (Dienes 1947).

The production of  $L$  colonies from bacteria and the reversion to the bacillary phase have been interpreted by Klieneberger-Nobel (1951) as a process of regeneration in bacteria initiated by a fusion of certain elements. In some cases when the multiplication rate of bacteria is disturbed during a state of vigorous growth the bacteria react by transforming into the  $L$  phase in which the organisms can better withstand the adverse conditions. Organisms in the  $L$  phase multiply by segmentation; they eventually break up into small granules which are capable of germination and in some cases are filterable. In addition the  $L$  forms show differences in food requirements and in metabolism such as resistance to penicillin and other chemicals (Edward 1953).

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Infections with *S. moniliformis* are usually acquired through the bite of a rodent (rat, squirrel, weasel). Frequently there is no known history of rodent bite or animal contact but there may be a history of trauma. In rare instances the infection may be acquired from contaminated food.

*S. moniliformis* is a normal inhabitant of the respiratory tract of laboratory and wild rats. Being present particularly in the upper portion of the respiratory tract, the nasopharynx, the organisms are transmitted readily during the act of biting by the animal. In rats there may be involvement of the lungs and the middle ears but generally rats are refractory to infection (Strangeways 1933). Investigators have failed to isolate the organisms from the mouths of normal healthy mice but occasionally an epizootic disease resulting from *S. moniliformis* occurs among laboratory (Freundt 1956a) and wild mice (Williams 1941). There is

no reported case of rat bite fever in man as a result of the bite of a mouse but man has acquired the infection by handling mice (Levaditi *et al.* 1925). Squirrels and weasels have been known to transmit the infection. An infection among turkeys which were housed in the vicinity of rats has been reported (Boyer *et al.* 1958).

Cases have been reported in which there is no history of a rodent bite or contact with animals such as that reported by Sprecher and Copeland (1947). In one instance the infection developed after a fall (Levey and Levey 1948) and in another instance it may have been associated with trauma (Hazard and Goodkin 1932).

Contaminated food may be the source of sporadic outbreaks or isolated cases. The epidemics in Chester, Pa. in 1925 and in Haverhill, Mass. in 1926 are suspected of having been milk borne (Place and Sutton 1934) and the case reported by Oeding and Pedersen (1950) is also ascribed to contamination of food or milk.

### PATHOGENESIS

From the clinical features the pathogenesis of rat bite fever becomes obvious. Following the inoculation of a susceptible individual with *S. moniliformis* through a bite wound there is a proliferation of the organisms at the site of the wound, extension to the neighboring lymphatics and lymph nodes and eventually an invasion of the bloodstream accompanied by severe toxic symptoms. Endocarditis, either acute or subacute, is a serious complication (Petersen *et al.* 1950; Hamburger and Knowles 1953). The duration of the disease may vary from a period of a few days to one of several weeks. In untreated cases the mortality rate is about 10 per cent.

In the case of a food-borne infection the portal of entry of the organisms is thought to be the intestines. Gastrointestinal symptoms are common. However, the rapid loss of viability of streptobacillus cultures in a slightly acid environment casts serious doubt on this view. The oral region or the throat might also be considered as a possible portal of entry. Throat soreness is a frequent symptom.

In a comprehensive study (Freundt 1956a) mice were readily infected by subcutaneous intraperitoneal intravenous and intranasal routes as well as by feeding and less readily by contact with rats. The mice were infected but not easily through the conjunctival sac in this particular study. In the feeding experiments it was definitely shown that invasion of the host by the microorganisms did not take place through the intestines but rather through the mouth or the throat. Mice with different genetic backgrounds show different degrees of susceptibility (Mackie *et al.* 1933).

In the acute stage the infection is likely to be of the septic type. In the chronic type where the host may show greater resistance there is a greater tendency toward abscess formation and joint involvement. In experimental infections in the developing chick embryo the organisms invaded the blood stream and localized almost exclusively in the synovial lining of the joints (Buddingh 1944). In the early stages of the development of the joint lesions *S. moniliformis* was found to behave as a facultative intracellular parasite within the cytoplasm of the synovial lining cells. While the rat is regarded generally as being fairly resistant to infection by *S. moniliformis* one strain has been found to be pathogenic for the laboratory rat (Lerner and Silverstein 1957). The animals showed an osteoarthritis which was often accompanied by an osteomyelitis, periostitis, arthritis and periartthritis.

*S. moniliformis* is unusual in that it has been demonstrated to produce *in vivo* the  $L_1$  variant which is endowed with properties of greater resistance and this variant is capable of reverting to streptobacillus.

### DIAGNOSIS

Rat bite fever resulting from *S. moniliformis* may vary in its symptomatology in individual cases but the clinical picture is sufficiently characteristic so as not to be overlooked readily (Blake 1916). A typical case presents usually but not always the history of rat bite as latent incubation period of variable length with subsequent nonpurpurative inflammatory reaction at the site of the wound, lymphangitis, enlarged lymph

nodes, severe chill at onset, high fever of the relapsing type, leukocytosis, intense muscular pains, nervous symptoms and bluish red exanthem. Endocarditis and arthritis may be complications and a false positive Wassermann reaction may occur.

It is important to attempt to confirm the tentative clinical diagnosis of rat bite fever by demonstrating the causative organism. This may be either *Spirillum minus* or *S. moniliformis*. *S. minus* is demonstrated by animal inoculation whereas *S. moniliformis* is demonstrated by cultural methods.

*S. moniliformis* may be isolated in routine blood cultures from patients if a good culture medium is employed such as infusion broth or tryptose phosphate broth and a sufficient amount of the patient's blood is added to each container of broth to give a concentration of nearly 20 per cent. When growth occurs it is found on the surface of the sedimented blood cells and on the inclined surface of culture tubes; this growth resembles bread crumbs, fluff balls or cotton balls in its gross appearance. The organism has also been isolated from the fluid aspirated from involved joints.

An agglutinin titer of 1:80 or greater with streptobacillus antigen is considered as indicative of infection with that organism. The specific streptobacillus agglutinins may appear as early as 10 days or as late as 2½ months after the bite; they may attain their maximum titer in 1 to 3 months after the bite and may disappear within 5 months or persist for over 2 years (Brown and Nunez 1942).

### TREATMENT

Penicillin inhibits the growth of *S. moniliformis* *in vitro*, protects mice against experimental infections (Heilman and Herrell 1944) and appears to be effective in the treatment of some cases of the natural infection in man (Altmeier *et al.* 1957; Wheeler 1945). Streptomycin was found to be effective in the treatment of a natural infection which did not respond to penicillin (Sprecher and Copeland 1947) and to be more effective than penicillin in the treatment of mice after joint involvement had developed (Levey and Levey 1948). The

at the surface and at the periphery of the colonies by gradual swelling into large round forms. The morphology of the organisms in the  $L_1$  colonies is so similar to that of pleuropneumonia-like organisms that, without knowing the origin of a culture after it has lost its ability to return to the streptobacillus it would be impossible to differentiate between the two on the basis of morphology (Dienes 1947).

The production of  $L$  colonies from bacteria and the reversion to the bacillary phase have been interpreted by Klieneberger-Nobel (1951) as a process of regeneration in bacteria initiated by a fusion of certain elements. In some cases when the multiplication rate of bacteria is disturbed during a state of vigorous growth the bacteria react by transforming into the  $L$  phase in which the organisms can better withstand the adverse conditions. Organisms in the  $L$  phase multiply by segmentation; they eventually break up into small granules which are capable of germination and in some cases are filterable. In addition the  $L$  forms show differences in food requirements and in metabolism such as resistance to penicillin and other chemicals (Edward 1953).

## EPIDEMIOLOGY

Infections with *S. moniliformis* are usually acquired through the bite of a rodent (rat, squirrel, weasel). Frequently there is no known history of rodent bite or animal contact but there may be a history of trauma. In rare instances the infection may be acquired from contaminated food.

*S. moniliformis* is a normal inhabitant of the respiratory tract of laboratory and wild rats. Being present particularly in the upper portion of the respiratory tract, the nasopharynx, the organisms are transmitted readily during the act of biting by the animal. In rats there may be involvement of the lungs and the middle ears but generally rats are refractory to infection (Strangeways 1933). Investigators have failed to isolate the organisms from the mouths of normal healthy mice but occasionally an epizootic disease resulting from *S. moniliformis* occurs among laboratory (Freundt 1956a) and wild mice (Williams 1941). There is

no reported case of rat bite fever in man as a result of the bite of a mouse but man has acquired the infection by handling mice (Levaditi *et al.* 1925). Squirrels and weasels have been known to transmit the infection. An infection among turkeys which were housed in the vicinity of rats has been reported (Boyer *et al.* 1958).

Cases have been reported in which there is no history of a rodent bite or contact with animals such as that reported by Sprecher and Copeland (1947). In one instance the infection developed after a fall (Levey and Levey 1948) and in another instance it may have been associated with trauma (Hazard and Goodkin 1932).

Contaminated food may be the source of sporadic outbreaks or isolated cases. The epidemics in Chester, Pa. in 1925 and in Haverhill, Mass. in 1926 are suspected of having been milk-borne (Place and Sutton 1934) and the case reported by Oeding and Pedersen (1950) is also ascribed to contamination of food or milk.

## PATHOGENESIS

From the clinical features the pathogenesis of rat bite fever becomes obvious. Following the inoculation of a susceptible individual with *S. moniliformis* through a bite wound there is a proliferation of the organisms at the site of the wound, extension to the neighboring lymphatics and lymph nodes and eventually an invasion of the bloodstream accompanied by severe toxic symptoms. Endocarditis, either acute or subacute, is a serious complication (Petersen *et al.* 1950; Hamburger and Knowles 1953). The duration of the disease may vary from a period of a few days to one of several weeks. In untreated cases the mortality rate is about 10 per cent.

In the case of a food-borne infection the portal of entry of the organisms is thought to be the intestines. Gastrointestinal symptoms are common. However, the rapid loss of viability of streptobacillus cultures in a slightly acid environment casts serious doubt on this view. The oral region or the throat might also be considered as a possible portal of entry; throat soreness is a frequent symptom.

- etiology of Haverhill fever (erythema arthriticum epidemicum) *Am J Path* 2 357 379
- Petersen E ■ McCullough N ■ Eisele C W and Goldinger J M 1950 Subacute bacterial endocarditis due to *Streptobacillus moniliformis* *JAMA* 144 621 622
- Place ■ H and Sutton L E 1934 Erythema arthriticum epidemicum (Haverhill fever) *Arch Int Med* 54 659 684
- Smith C D and Sampson C C 1960 Studies of *Streptobacillus moniliformis* from a case of human rat bite fever *Am J Med Tech* 26 47 50
- Sprecher M W and Copeland J R 1947 Haverhill fever due to *Streptobacillus moniliformis* treated with streptomycin *JAMA* 134 1014 1016
- Strangeways W I 1933 Rats as carriers of *Streptobacillus moniliformis* *J Path Bact* 37 45 51
- Wheeler W E 1945 Treatment of the rat bite fevers with penicillin *Am J Dis Child* 69 215 220
- Wilcox W 1840 Violent symptoms from the bite of a rat *Am J Med Sci* 26 245 246
- Williams ■ 1941 An outbreak of infection due to *Streptobacillus moniliformis* among wild mice *Med J Aust* 1 357 359

L<sub>1</sub> variant along with pleuropneumonia-like organisms, is resistant to penicillin, and although penicillin may free the body of the *S. moniliformis*, the L<sub>1</sub> organism may persist and a broad spectrum antibiotic such as chlortetracycline must be employed to bring about its elimination from the body (Dolman *et al* 1947)

## REFERENCES

- Altmeier W A Snyder H and Howe G 1957 Penicillin therapy in rat bite fever JAMA 127 270-273
- Bassermann J *et al* 1957 L forms of bacteria Nature (London) 179 461-462
- Blake F G 1916 The etiology of rat bite fever J Exp Med 23 39 60
- Boyer C I Jr Bruner D W and Brown J A 1958 A streptobacillus the cause of tending sheath infection in turkeys Avian Dis 2 418
- Brown T McP and Nunemaker J C 1942 Rat bite fever a review of the American cases with reevaluation of etiology report of cases Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 70 201 328
- Buddingh G J 1944 Experimental Streptobacillus moniliformis arthritis in the chick embryo J Exp Med 80 59 64
- Dienes L 1939 L organisms of Klieneberger and Streptobacillus moniliformis J Infect Dis 65 24-42
- 1947 The morphology of the L<sub>2</sub> of Klieneberger and its relationship to Streptobacillus moniliformis J Bact 54 231 237
- Dolman C E Kerr D E Chang H, and Shearer A R 1951 Two cases of rat bite fever due to Streptobacillus moniliformis Canad J Pub Health 42 228 241
- Dumoff M and Duffy C E 1951 The substitution of starch glycogen and dextrin for natural body fluids in the cultivation of Streptobacillus moniliformis J Bact 61 535 539
- Edward D G 1953 A difference in growth requirements between bacteria in the L phase and organisms of the pleuropneumonia group J Gen Microbiol 8 256 262
- Freundt E A 1956a Streptobacillus moniliformis infection in mice Acta path microbiol scand 38 231 245
- 1956b Experimental investigations into the pathogenicity of the L-phase variant of Streptobacillus moniliformis Acta path microbiol scand 38 246 258
- Hamburger M and Knowles H C Jr 1953 Streptobacillus moniliformis infection complicated by acute bacterial endocarditis report of a case in a physician following bite of laboratory rat Arch Int Med 92 216 220
- Hazard J H and Goodkind R 1932 Haverhill fever (erythema arthriticum epidemicum) a case report and bacteriologic study JAMA 99 534 538
- Heilman F R 1941a A study of Asterococcus muris (Streptobacillus moniliformis) I Morphologic aspects and nomenclature J Infect Dis 69 32-44
- 1941b A study of Asterococcus muris (Streptobacillus moniliformis) II Cultivation and biochemical activities J Infect Dis 69 45 51
- Heilman F R and Herrell W E 1944 Penicillin in the treatment of experimental infections with Spirillum minus and Streptobacillus moniliformis (rat bite fever) Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 19 257 264
- Klieneberger E 1935 The natural occurrence of pleuropneumonia like organisms in apparent symbiosis with Streptobacillus moniliformis and other bacteria J Path Bact 40 93 105
- Klieneberger Nobel E 1951 The L cycle a process of regeneration in bacteria J Gen Microbiol 5 525 530
- Lerner E M II and Silverstein E 1957 Experimental infection of rats with Streptobacillus moniliformis Science 126 208 209
- Ievaditi C Nicolau S and Poincloux P 1925 Sur le rôle étiologique de Streptobacillus moniliformis (nov spec) dans l'erytheme polymorphe aigu septémique Comp rend acad sci 180 1188 1190
- Levey J S and Levey S 1948 Chemotherapy of joint involvement in mice produced by Streptobacillus moniliformis Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 68 314 317
- Loran M R Kerner M W and Anderson H H 1956 Dependence of Endamoeba histolytica upon associated streptobacillus for metabolism of glucose Exp Cell Res 10 241 245
- Mackie T I Van Rooyen C E and Gilroy E 1933 An epizootic disease occurring in a breeding stock of mice bacteriological and experimental observations Brit J Exp Path 14 132 136
- Oeding P and Pedersen H 1950 Streptothrix muris rattu (Streptobacillus moniliformis) isolated from a brain abscess Acta path microbiol scand 27 436-442
- Parker F Jr and Hudson N P 1926 The

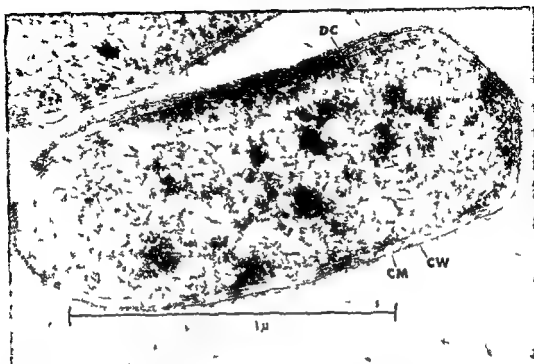


FIG 1 An electron micrograph of a strain of bacteroides showing the general cell morphology and cell wall (CW) cytoplasmic membrane (CM) and dense crust (DC) (Bladen H A and Waters J F J Bact 86 1340)

implicated bacteroides in diseases of man and animals and perhaps the most pathogenic. In lesions the organisms may not be very pleomorphic and may resemble *H. influenzae*. However, they may be very pleomorphic in cultures showing characteristic swellings—spheroid bodies up to 4 microns in diameter—in the middle or at the end of a rod or filament. In certain cases the entire cell may be a spheroid body. These structures were pictured in photographs by Dienes and Smith (1944) and in early electron micrographs by Smith *et al.* (1948). Dienes (1942) stated that all strains of *B. funduliformis* isolated from pathologic lesions produced numerous large bodies. Although these degenerated in most cultures without further development, Dienes reported that they were capable of germinating as small granular forms which developed into the L-type colonies rather than into bacteria of regular shape. The L-type colonies were isolated in pure culture from one strain and maintained

through 12 consecutive transfers (Dienes 1941). Another strain of *B. funduliformis* swelled into large round bodies but produced no L-type colonies. In another study Dienes and Smith (1942) stated that the large round bodies may (1) elongate to a bacillary form (2) take on an irregular angular shape and by division fractionate into 2 to 4 parts which develop into regular bacterial cells (3) occasionally show regular shaped bacteria developing within them which are freed when the large body disintegrates or (4) in the majority of cases increase in size and density, develop many prominences which develop bizarre shaped branching filaments producing regular bacilli by fractionation. The large bodies germinate only in spontaneously pleomorphic strains and not in cultures made pleomorphic by toxic influences (Dienes and Smith 1944).

*B. melaninogenicus* is a good example of the confusing background which may be associated with organisms of the bacteroides



## 33

## Bacteroides

The ill defined *Bacteroides* group is made up of organisms which usually are extremely numerous in the stools of adults and occasionally are associated with pathologic processes in man and animals.

*Bacteroides* are gram negative non spore forming strictly anaerobic rods usually pleomorphic with rounded or pointed ends they vary in size the smallest forms being filterable. They may be motile or non motile. Frequently body fluids are required for growth. They are found primarily in the intestinal tract and on the mucous membranes of warm blooded animals.

## HISTORY AND GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS

Recognition of bacteroides was delayed by the attention given to other anaerobes in particular the clostridia. Awareness of their role in infectious processes of man began in 1897 and 1898 with the findings of Veillon and Zuber who isolated these organisms from brain abscesses lung gangrene peritonitis etc. The report by Eggerth and Gagnon (1933) that bacteroides were the predominating organisms in 91 per cent of the stools of adults focused attention on them. Dack (1940) reported that nearly 4 per cent of 5180 specimens submitted for bacteriologic examination by a department of surgery contained non spore forming anaerobes over half of which appeared to be bacteroides. The history of the bacteroides

group is complicated by the multiplicity of names given to the same organism.

Electron micrographs of bacteroides cells show a rigid cell wall surrounding the cytoplasmic membrane (Bladen 1963, Bladen and Waters 1963) (Fig 1). The general morphologic and biologic properties are illustrated best by a description of representative strains which are encountered most frequently. Many of the strains in this group have been studied so little that only general conditions for cultivation are given in the section on diagnosis.

*Bacteroides fragilis* is commonly taken as the representative example of the large group of pleomorphic nonmotile non spore forming anaerobic rods. It receives its name from the tendency of the colonies to autolyze. It metabolizes a variety of carbohydrates with the production of acid but the reactions are variable. It frequently infects man but the infections are less acute and less severe than those produced by *B. funduliformis*.

*B. funduliformis* is the most extensively studied member of the bacteroides group. It is listed in the 7th edition of Bergey's Manual as *Sphaerophorus necrophorus*. It is typical of several highly pleomorphic strictly anaerobic gram negative rods described under a variety of names. The term *Bacteroides funduliformis* seems preferable because it has been used so extensively throughout the scientific literature and because *Sphaerophorus* is an illegitimate homonym.

*B. funduliformis* is the most frequently

nuclear cell response and the bacteroides may be intracellular and extracellular. They may be mistaken for *H. influenzae* in gram stained smears. The meningitis may be localized in the vicinity of the infected ear but more frequently it is extensive over the base of the brain. The facial nerve may be involved. Sinus thrombosis may be a complication giving rise to invasion of the blood stream and septic infarcts in the lungs.

### DIAGNOSIS

Two important aspects of the laboratory diagnosis of infections caused by bacteroides are that the culture medium usually needs to be enriched with blood, blood serum, ascitic fluid or tissue; furthermore the cultures require anaerobic conditions for growth. When the patient shows a septic condition or there are abscesses with foul smelling pus or there are foul smelling discharges, bacteroides should be considered. Frequently the symptoms do not reflect the seriousness of the infection. Some of the bacteroides produce gas; hence differentiation from gas gangrene must be made (Biegelman and Rantz 1949). Thioglycolate medium or other general purpose media such as glucose broth, heart infusion broth, etc., containing brain or muscle tissue are satisfactory for primary isolation from blood or other sources. If there is a tall column of liquid in the tubes and the dissolved air has been expelled by heating and rapid cooling prior to inoculation, a petrolatum seal is unnecessary. However, if it is desired to detect the production of gas, then a seal is advisable. Blood agar is a fairly satisfactory solid medium for isolating and studying the organisms.

It is advisable not to leave the cultures exposed unnecessarily to the ordinary atmosphere since oxygen is toxic to some strains. If the organisms stain poorly by Gram's method or with methylene blue, carbolic fuchsin should be tried. The morphology varies depending on the conditions of cultivation but together with growth requirements it may be sufficient for a broad differentiation within the group. Reactions to test carbohydrates and protein substrates may be used for finer classification but this usually is unnecessary in most cases. Little

work has been done on antigenic structure. Preliminary studies indicate that these organisms constitute a heterogeneous group.

### TREATMENT

From the few reports on the drug sensitivities it appears that bacteroides are usually susceptible to chloramphenicol, chlortetracycline and oxytetracycline. They are occasionally resistant to bacitracin and generally resistant to dihydrostreptomycin, streptomycin, polymyxin, erythromycin and penicillin (Foley, 1947; Garrod 1955; McVay and Sprunt 1952; Stevens and Harrison 1958). Two strains of *B. fragilis* among 23 tested were found by Garrod to produce penicillinase.

### REFERENCES

- Biegelman P. M. and Rantz L. A. 1949 Clinical significance of *Bacteroides*. Arch. Int. Med. 84: 605-631.
- Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology 1957 ed. 7. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins.
- Bladen, H. A. Jr. 1963 Demonstration of an unusual ultrastructure found in *Bacteroides*. A conjugatory bridge? J. Bact. 85: 250-253.
- Bladen, H. A. and Waters J. F. 1963 Electron microscopic study of some strains of *Bacteroides*. J. Bact. 86: 1339-1344.
- Brown A. E., Williams H. L. and Herrell W. E. 1941 *Bacteroides septecemia*. Report of a case with recovery. J. A. M. A. 116: 402-404.
- Dack G. M. 1940 Non sporeforming anaerobic bacteria of medical importance. Bact. Rev. 4: 227-259.
- Dienes L. 1941 Isolation of L type growth from a strain of *Bacteroides funduliformis*. Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med. 47: 385-387.
- 1942 The significance of the large bodies and the development of L type of colonies in bacterial cultures. J. Bact. 44: 37-73.
- Dienes L. and Smith W. E. 1942 Reproduction of bacteria from the large bodies of *B. funduliformis*. Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med. 51: 297-298.
- 1944 The significance of pleomorphism in *Bacteroides* strains. J. Bact. 48: 125-153.
- Eggerth A. H. and Gagnon B. H. 1933

group It was originally described by Oliver and Wherry (1921) who isolated it from the upper respiratory tract, the urinary tract and surgical wounds It was so named because of the black pigment produced on blood agar and thought to be melanin Schwabacher *et al* (1947) showed that the pigment was in reality hematin, not melanin united with a bacterial protein to form a parahematin, they suggested that the name be changed to *Fusiformis nigrescens* They also stated that since the organisms produce acid in basal media without carbohydrates fermentation tests were unsatisfactory According to Garrod (1955) the pigment cannot be produced until hemolysis has occurred and is not seen well in less than 5 days

It is often stated that this organism is not pathogenic for common laboratory animals but Weiss (1943) who isolated it from 45 surgical patients discovered that if it was injected subcutaneously within a few days after cultivation, edema and inflammation were produced Intradermal injection into rabbits produced local inflammation dermonecrosis and occasionally death Production of fibrinolysis was demonstrated by Weiss in 1937 All 22 strains studied by Garrod (1955) were very sensitive to penicillin

*Fusobacterium fusiforme* is typical of the spindle shaped organisms which have been given generic status although not all organisms which are spindle shaped are *Fusobacterium* The organisms are usually slender rods either straight or slightly curved with tapering ends At least one species is motile Filaments and branching forms may be produced and are shown in electron micrographs published by Mudd *et al* (1942) and by Hampp *et al* (1960) The organisms possess a rigid cell wall typical of bacterial cells In lesions they are frequently associated with spiralled organisms for example in Vincent's gingivitis

The organisms are commonly present in the mouth and the throat of normal persons They are frequently found in cases of stomatitis (trench mouth Vincent's angina) ulcerative processes of the throat, the colon and the genitalia and lung abscess Because the organisms are relatively sensitive to penicillin Vincent's angina is amenable to penicillin therapy

*Dialister* In a series of papers starting in 1921, Olitzky and Gates described very small anaerobic, gram negative rods which could be isolated from the Berkefeld filtrates of nasopharyngeal secretions They designated the organisms *Bacterium pneumosintes* but these are now placed in the genus *Dialister*

## PATHOGENESIS

There is no evidence that the bacteroides play a primary role in the production of disease However in injured or diseased tissues they may be responsible for serious and persistent infection Since bacteroides are commonly present on the mucous membranes, tissue infection probably originates as a result of their penetrating the mucous membranes of the nose the middle ear the pharynx the tonsils the urinary tract or the intestinal tract They may also penetrate through the skin in rare instances Local abscesses may be formed or a bacteremia produced followed by metastatic abscesses Of 11 patients from whom bacteroides were cultured from the blood only 1 survived and this patient received 347 Gm of sulfanilamide during 29 days of therapy (Brown *et al* 1941) Patients with bacteremia show acute toxic condition chills and fever, extreme weakness sweating and leukocytosis Infected embolic lesions occur in the lungs and in various other regions of the circulatory system The abscesses show a tendency to spread rather than to be walled off The pus is usually cream-colored and foul smelling The central portion of abscesses and infected thrombi frequently show liquefaction (Thompson and Beaver 1932) Icterus is frequently observed when the portal of entry is the gastrointestinal tract In the series of 35 patients studied by McVay and Sprunt (1952) 21 were critically ill and 11 died Bacteroides appeared to be the primary cause of death in 9 patients and secondary invaders in 2 cases

Peritonitis following salpingitis has been observed to resemble gonococcal peritonitis (Smith and Ropes 1945)

Meningitis and brain abscess may follow a chronic suppurative otitis media (Smith *et al* 1944) and is more prevalent in adults than in children There is a polymorpho

nuclear cell response and the bacteroides may be intracellular and extracellular. They may be mistaken for *H. influenzae* in gram stained smears. The meningitis may be localized in the vicinity of the infected ear but more frequently it is extensive over the base of the brain. The facial nerve may be involved. Sinus thrombosis may be a complication giving rise to invasion of the blood stream and septic infarcts in the lungs.

## DIAGNOSIS

Two important aspects of the laboratory diagnosis of infections caused by bacteroides are that the culture medium usually needs to be enriched with blood, blood serum, ascitic fluid or tissue; furthermore the cultures require anaerobic conditions for growth. When the patient shows a septic condition or there are abscesses with foul smelling pus or there are foul smelling discharges, bacteroides should be considered. Frequently the symptoms do not reflect the seriousness of the infection. Some of the bacteroides produce gas, hence differentiation from gas gangrene must be made (Biegelman and Rantz 1949). Thioglycolate medium or other general purpose media such as glucose broth, heart infusion broth, etc. containing brain or muscle tissue are satisfactory for primary isolation from blood or other sources. If there is a tall column of liquid in the tubes and the dissolved air has been expelled by heating and rapid cooling prior to inoculation, a petrolatum seal is unnecessary. However, if it is desired to detect the production of gas, then a seal is advisable. Blood agar is a fairly satisfactory solid medium for isolating and studying the organisms.

It is advisable not to leave the cultures exposed unnecessarily to the ordinary atmosphere since oxygen is toxic to some strains. If the organisms stain poorly by Gram's method or with methylene blue, carbol fuchsin should be tried. The morphology varies depending on the conditions of cultivation but together with growth requirements it may be sufficient for a broad differentiation within the group. Reactions to test carbohydrates and protein substrates may be used for finer classification but this usually is unnecessary in most cases. Little

work has been done on antigenic structure. Preliminary studies indicate that these organisms constitute a heterogeneous group.

## TREATMENT

From the few reports on the drug sensitivities it appears that bacteroides are usually susceptible to chloramphenicol, chlortetracycline and oxytetracycline. They are occasionally resistant to bacitracin and generally resistant to dihydrostreptomycin, streptomycin, polymyxin, erythromycin and penicillin (Foley 1947, Garrod 1955, McVay and Sprunt 1952, Stevens and Harrison 1958). Two strains of *B. fragilis* among 23 tested were found by Garrod to produce penicillinase.

## REFERENCES

- Biegelman P. M. and Rantz L. A. 1949 Clinical significance of Bacteroides. Arch. Int. Med. 84: 605-631.
- Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology 1957, ed. 7. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins.
- Bladen H. A. Jr. 1963 Demonstration of an unusual ultrastructure found in *Bacteroides*. A conjugatory bridge? J. Bact. 85: 250-253.
- Bladen H. A. and Waters J. F. 1963 Electron microscopic study of some strains of *Bacteroides*. J. Bact. 86: 1339-1344.
- Brown A. E., Williams M. L. and Herrell W. E. 1941 *Bacteroides septecurua*. Report of a case with recovery. J. A. M. A. 116: 402-404.
- Dack G. M. 1940 Non sporeforming anaerobic bacteria of medical importance. Bact. Rev. 4: 227-259.
- Dienes L. 1941 Isolation of L type growth from a strain of *Bacteroides funduliformis*. Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med. 47: 385-387.
- 1942 The significance of the large bodies and the development of L type of colonies in bacterial cultures. J. Bact. 44: 37-73.
- Dienes L. and Smith W. E. 1942 Reproduction of bacteria from the large bodies of *B. funduliformis*. Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med. 51: 297-298.
- 1944 The significance of pleomorphism in *Bacteroides* strains. J. Bact. 48: 125-153.
- Eggerth A. H. and Gagnon B. H. 1933

- The bacteroides of human feces *J Bact* 25 389-413
- Foley G E, 1947 *In vitro* resistance of the genus *Bacteroides* to streptomycin *Science* 106 423 424
- Garrod L P 1955 Sensitivity of four species of *Bacteroides* to antibiotics *Brit Med J* 2 1529 1531
- Hamp E G Scott D B and Wyckoff R W G 1960 Morphological characteristics of oral *Fusobacteria* as revealed by the electron microscope *J Bact* 79 716 728
- McVay L V Jr and Sprunt D H 1952 *Bacteroides* infections *Ann Int Med* 36 56 76
- Mudd S Polevitzky K Anderson T F and Kast C C 1942 Bacterial morphology as shown by the electron microscope III Cell wall and protoplasm in a strain of *Fusobacterium* *J Bact* 44 361 366
- Olitsky P K and Gates F L 1921 Experimental studies of the nasopharyngeal secretions from influenza patients I Transmission experiments with nasopharyngeal washings *J Exp Med* 33 125 145
- Oliver W W and Wherry W B 1921 Notes on some bacterial parasites of the human mucous membranes *J Infect Dis* 28 341 344
- Schwabacher H Lucas D R and Rumington C 1947 *Bacterium melaninogenicum*—a misnomer *J Gen Microbiol* 1 109 120
- Smith W E McCall R E and Blake T J 1944 *Bacteroides* infections of the central nervous system *Ann Int Med* 20 920 932
- Smith W E Mudd S and Hillier J 1948 L type variation and bacterial reproduction by large bodies as seen in electron microscopic studies of *Bacteroides funduliformis* *J Bact* 56 603 618
- Smith W E and Ropes M W 1945 *Bacteroides* infections An analysis based on a review of the literature and a study of twenty cases *New Eng J Med* 232 31 37
- Stevens W C and Harrison A P Jr 1958 *In vitro* antibiotic sensitivities of *Bacteroides* and similar forms *Antibiot Chemother* 8 192 194
- Thompson L and Beaver D C 1932 *Bacteremia* due to anaerobic gram negative organisms of the genus *Bacteroides* *Med Clin N Amer* 15 1611 1626
- Weiss C 1937 Observations on *Bacterium melaninogenicum* Demonstration of fibrinolysin pathogenicity and serological types *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 37 473 476
- 1943 The pathogenicity of *Bacteroides melaninogenicus* and its importance in surgical infections *Surgery* 13 683 691

## 34

## The Bartonella Group

*Bartonella bacilliformis* the cause of Carrion's disease in man and micro-organisms native to other animals of the genera *Haemobartonella* and *Eperythron* will be considered together here. They have been grouped because of common characteristics. All are insect transmitted, proved or presumptive, usually cause acute primary infectious febrile anemias in their vertebrate hosts, have a characteristic position on the erythrocytes and are carried as asymptomatic infections for long periods of time. Despite these similarities, electron microscopy indicates fundamental differences of structure between the two groups. *Bartonella bacilliformis* is an undoubted bacterium; the nature of the animal pathogens is still in doubt.

## BARTONELLA BACILLIFORMIS

## DEFINITION

*Bartonella bacilliformis* produces unique and striking clinical conditions which define the organism better than the characteristics thus far discovered in vitro. In addition to nonclinical asymptomatic infections of presumed epidemiologic importance, *B. bacilliformis* causes two very different and apparently unrelated conditions: (1) Oroya fever, a febrile anemia; and (2) Verruga peruana, a benign skin eruption. Each form has a distinctive pathologic substratum, and the two are linked immunologically. In Oroya fever, bartonella is found on the erythrocytes. In both diseases it occurs within fixed tissue cells, notably those of the reticuloendothelial

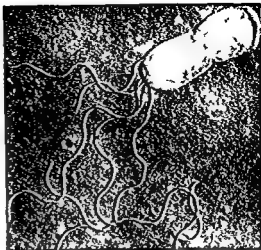
system. On the red cells it is unmistakable and no other human parasite resembles it even slightly (Figs 1 and 2). In the tissues it is intracellular and during Oroya fever multiplies within the cytoplasm of vascular endothelial cells grouped in rounded masses or as isolated elements (Fig 1, 3). A polymorphic bacillus, often flagellated in culture, *B. bacilliformis* can be maintained by unlimited serial transfer on media containing serum. Living cells are not required; however, when grown in tissue culture development is both intracytoplasmic and extracellular. The microorganism occurs in nature in phlebotomus and in man.

## HISTORY

This is in part a record of scientific documentation for one of the most improbable of New World marvels. The excellent monograph of Odriozola (1898) drew attention to a disease believed to occur only in western South America. There it was restricted to certain mountain valleys and contracted only at night. This unique disease was said to exist in two forms, clinically unrelated. One, an anemia frequently fatal, occurring at times in epidemics, was often so fulminant that blacks became whites in a few days. The other form, benign, was distinguished by a skin eruption like the like of which was unknown outside the Andean valleys. To the surprise of the scientific community, all of these items have proved to be substantially correct.

- The bacteroides of human feces *J Bact* 25 389-413
- Foley G E 1947, *In vitro* resistance of the genus *Bacteroides* to streptomycin *Science* 106 423-424
- Garrod L P 1955 Sensitivity of four species of *Bacteroides* to antibiotics *Brit Med J* 2 1529 1531
- Hampp E G Scott D B and Wyckoff R W G 1960 Morphological characteristics of oral *Fusobacteria* as revealed by the electron microscope *J Bact* 79 716 728
- McVay L V Jr and Sprunt D H 1952 *Bacteroides* infections *Ann Int Med* 36 56 76
- Mudd S Polevitzky K Anderson T F and Kast C C 1942 Bacterial morphology as shown by the electron microscope III Cell wall and protoplasm in a strain of *Fusobacterium* *J Bact* 44 361 366
- Olitsky P K and Gates F L 1921 Experimental studies of the nasopharyngeal secretions from influenza patients I Transmission experiments with nasopharyngeal washings *J Exp Med* 33 125 145
- Oliver W W and Wherry W B 1921 Notes on some bacterial parasites of the human mucous membranes *J Infect Dis* 28 341 344
- Schwabacher H Lucas D M and Rimington C 1947 *Bacterium melaninogenicum*—a misnomer *J Gen Microbiol* 1 109 120
- Smith W E McCall R E and Blake T J 1944 *Bacteroides* infections of the central nervous system *Ann Int Med* 20 920 932
- Smith W E Mudd S and Hillier J 1948 L type variation and bacterial reproduction by large bodies as seen in electron microscopic studies of *Bacteroides funduliformis* *J Bact* 56 603 618
- Smith W E and Ropes M W 1945 *Bacteroides* infections An analysis based on a review of the literature and a study of twenty cases *New Eng J Med* 232 31 37
- Stevens W C and Harrison A P, Jr 1958 *In vitro* antibiotic sensitivities of *Bacteroides* and similar forms *Antibiot Chemother* 8 192 194
- Thompson L and Beaver D C 1932 Bacteremia due to anaerobic gram negative organisms of the genus *Bacteroides* *Med Clin N Amer* 15 1611 1626
- Weiss C 1937 Observations on *Bacterium melaninogenicum* Demonstration of fibrinolysin pathogenicity and serological types *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 37 473 476
- 1943 The pathogenicity of *Bacteroides melaninogenicus* and its importance in surgical infections *Surgery* 13 683 691

FIG 2 *Bartonella bacilliformis* from an 8 day culture Hemolyzed palladium shadowed Note unipolar flagella cell membrane and commencement of binary division Magnification  $\times 19\,000$  (Peters II and Wigand R 1952 Neue Untersuchungen über *Bartonella bacilliformis* I Morphologie der Kulturform Z Tropenmed Parasit 3 313 326)



Verruga was in all probability recorded by the pre-Columbian Indians before the regional introduction of writing in the form of anthropomorphic jugs (huacos) in which characteristic lesions are represented (d'Harcourt 1939 Mazzini 1934)—evidence which agrees with early writings of the Spaniards derived from Indian sources. The anemic form did not attract much attention until 1870 when an epidemic caused an estimated 7 000 deaths. In 1885 Carrion wishing to define symptoms in the pre-eruptive stage of verruga was inoculated with verruga material and died of Oroya fever 39 days later strongly suggesting the etiologic unity of the two conditions (Medina *et al* 1925). The microorganism was reported by Barton in 1909.

Experimental work speeded in 1910 with the discovery of the susceptibility of *Macaca mulatta* to verruga (Jadassohn and Seiffert)

The relationship of Barton's organism to Oroya fever was confirmed in 1915 by Strong Tyzzer Brues Sellards and Gastia buru who named it described the pathology of Oroya fever and discovered the pathogenic lesion found therein. Noguchi and Battistini in 1926 cultivated the organism described the relation of *B bacilliformis* to verruga thus producing experimental evidence supporting the unitarian etiology and Noguchi subsequently gave detailed descriptions of the cultural and the biologic charac

FIG 1 All blood films were stained with Giemsa's fluid after fixation either by the May Grunwald mixture or by methyl alcohol (Weinman D 1944 Infectious anemias due to bartonella and related red cell parasites Tr Am Philosophical Soc 33 243 350)

(1 and 2) *Bartonella bacilliformis* in blood films of two fatal cases of Oroya fever. In (1) the infection is intense the bartonellae parasitize not only the erythrocytes but are also found within monocytes (Original)

(2) The straight and curved rods chains dots and rings illustrate the great morphologic range of *B bacilliformis* (Original magnification as in (1))

(3) Section of an Oroya fever lymph node. Development of *B bacilliformis* in distended endothelial cells lining the vein. The intracytoplasmic distribution in rounded clumps is distinct in the heavily infected cells (Redrawn from C Urbe)

(4) Section of a human verruga. Regaud fixation Giemsa stain. The blood capillaries are numerous and the proliferated endothelial cells conspicuous. *B bacilliformis* stains red is very evident and is often located distinctly within the cytoplasm of endothelial cells. Note that, in spite of the numbers of microorganisms in the tissues none appear on the erythrocytes (Original)

(5) *Haemobartonella microti* in blood films of splenectomized mouse. Variation in shape is extreme. Rods coccoids and rings occur both singly and in various combinations constituting bow forms filaments which contain rings or coccoids rows of rings and coccoids etc (Redrawn from E E Tyzzer)

(6) *Eperythron coccoides* in the blood of a splenectomized white mouse. An intense infection in which as is customary rings preponderate. The resemblance in certain forms of *B bacilliformis* is quite noticeable (Original)



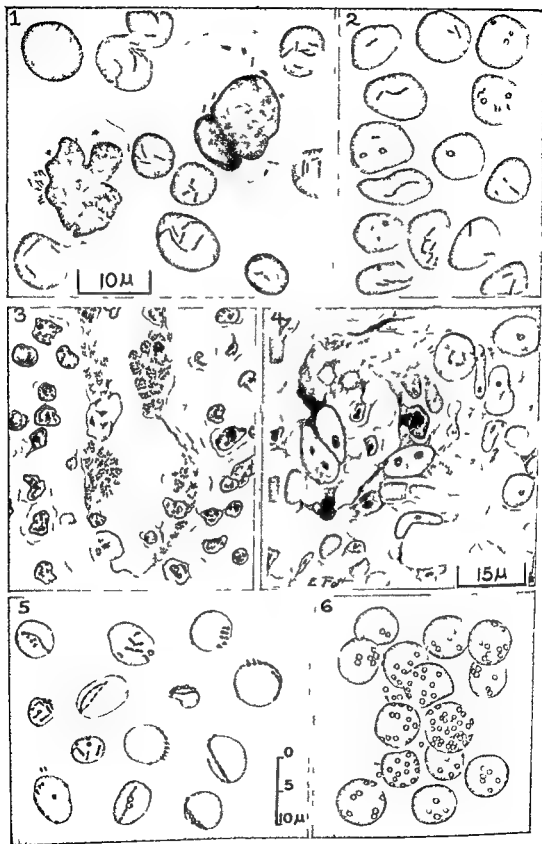


FIGURE 1 (Caption on facing page)

to 10 in number vary in length from 3 to 10 microns and have a diameter of about 20 millimicrons and undulation phases of 0.95 micron (Noguchi Peters and Wigand 1952) As noted above flagella have not been demonstrated with certainty on the epierythrocytic forms and aflagellar strains exist A definite cell membrane can be demonstrated by appropriate techniques applied to either blood or culture forms (Fig 2) In this respect bartonella resembles other gram negative bacteria but differs from apparently closely related members of the bartonella group (Peters and Wigand 1955) Bartonella does not traverse the usual bacteriologic filters (e.g. Berkefeld N)

The most favorable temperature for the semisolid cultures is 28°C The optimum pH is 7.8 with a range from 6.8 to 8.4 Bartonella is an obligate aerobe It produces neither acid nor gas with any of the numerous carbohydrates tested does not liquefy gelatin and has no action on lead acetate All attempts to isolate a hemolysin have failed it does not hemolyze red cells in culture or even localize on or about the erythrocytes when they are added to a semi solid medium Pathogenicity is retained in semisolid leptospira medium for several years at least whereas blood agar slants are generally less favorable in this respect Only media containing blood have been successful serum or plasma has appeared to be essential and hemoglobin is favorable because it supplies hemin Enrichment of media with glutathione and ascorbic acid may give heavier growth (Geiman 1941) Bartonella is sensitive in vivo to penicillin streptomycin chloramphenicol and tetracycline organic arsenicals are relatively inactive It is a facultative intracellular parasite when grown in tissue culture and then reproduces the appearance seen in necropsy or biopsy material Cultures may be stored at -70°C in semisolid medium These are viable for years a strain obtained in 1950 thawed and subcultured several times in the interval grew after transfer in 1961

#### RANGE OF PATHOGENICITY

Bartonella manifests full pathogenicity for man only In certain monkeys and apes notably *Macaca mulatta* (*M. rhesus*) verrugas

may be produced with great regularity and passed in series but Oroya fever cannot be reproduced in animals at will and splenectomy has not made it possible to produce predictable Oroya fever infections in monkeys (Noguchi Weinman and Pinkerton 1937a Wigand and Weyer 1953) Usual laboratory animals including the developing chick embryo are not satisfactory even for verruga production The route of inoculation and the nature of the inoculum are of prime importance in determining the character of the infection Satisfactory inocula such as cultures verrugas of either human or simian origin or tissue from Oroya fever patients injected into the skin or subcutaneous tissue of *M. mulatta* produce a local verruga which is sometimes multiple but very rarely generalized Oroya fever blood almost never produces verrugas in monkeys yet infected lymph nodes from an Oroya fever patient or cultures made from Oroya fever blood will produce verrugas in almost every instance when appropriately injected This is a puzzling feature and is not explicable by quantitative factors alone

#### PATHOLOGY AND PATHOGENESIS

In Oroya fever the body is pale and somewhat icteric the liver enlarged the spleen frequently so and often infarcted and the lymph nodes usually enlarged are often hemorrhagic

The microscopic appearance is distinctive and results from the development of masses of bartonella within the cytoplasm of cells lining the blood and the lymph capillaries The growth reaches an extreme degree causes the cytoplasm to expand to many times its normal width and to bulge into the lumen of the vessel The entire cytoplasm may be filled with microorganisms which tend to form rounded masses or clumps (Fig 13) Infected cells are particularly abundant in lymph nodes and also occur in the liver the spleen bone marrow the kidney the adrenals the pancreas more rarely in the skin the heart and the lung Gross lesions such as the splenic infarcts may follow vascular occlusion by the swollen endothelium

Verruga peruana differs as much in microscopic appearance from Oroya fever as do

teristics of the cultivated organism. These results not duplicated at first in other laboratories, were finally fully confirmed by the Harvard 1937 Expedition to Peru (Weinman and Pinkerton Pinkerton and Weinman). These authors noted the prevalence of non clinical or latent infections in man and suggested the importance of the human reservoir. Taken in conjunction with the prior discovery of phlebotomus as the vector by Shannon and by Noguchi this has given a much clearer picture of the conditions for perpetuation and extension of the disease. Hertig (1938) reidentified the species of phlebotomus concerned and with Fisher (1945), indicated that control might be achieved with DDT a result which has since been accomplished in a number of areas. Excellent morphologic detail in electron microscope preparations was obtained by Peters and Wigand (1952 1955) the bearing of this and cytochemical and serologic findings on classification within the bartonella group is discussed fully by Wigand (1958). The major therapeutic problem i.e., the treatment of Oroya fever appears to have been solved by the use of antibiotics. A monograph by Weinman (1944) treats of the human and the animal micro organisms in great detail.

#### GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS

Bartonellosis is a microbiologist's curiosity since it is unique not only in the duality of its clinical forms a duality expressed too in the pathology of each but it is also distinctive in the interrelation and the opposition between the two forms. These latter characteristics reflect in all probability successive immunologic states of the same individual. It is one of the most perfect examples of a geographically restricted bacteriologic infection being exclusively American exclusively tropical exclusively Andean and proved to exist only in mountainous regions of Peru Colombia and Ecuador.

Oroya fever is a febrile hemolytic macrocytic anemia of rapid evolution and if untreated of high mortality. *B. bacilliformis* is readily visible in blood films, becomes progressively more abundant in the blood with the aggravation of the anemia and may infect over 90 per cent of the erythrocytes.

The mortality rate of untreated Oroya fever is about 40 per cent, if the patient recovers he often develops the second form of the infection verruga peruana. This is marked by a generalized eruption of intensely colored red purple vascular papules interspersed with more deep seated nodular elements and is usually benign with a death rate below 5 per cent even when untreated. Verruga persists with successive crops for from a month to a year but, unlike Oroya fever, anemia if present is moderate in degree and during all of this period bartonella will not be seen in blood films although it can be cultivated from the blood.

#### MORPHOLOGY AND BIOLOGIC PROPERTIES OF BARTONELLA

*B. bacilliformis* is a gram negative organism which stains unsatisfactorily with the customary bacteriologic stains but a distinct red violet with Wright's or Giemsa's fluid. It is very polymorphous. Flagella numbering 1 to 10 and always unipolar have been demonstrated on culture material (Fig 2) but never satisfactorily on the blood forms otherwise the maximum morphologic range is seen in the blood of man where rings, commas, disks and rods long short and arranged in chains, may all be seen (Fig 1).

The culture medium most commonly used is Noguchi's leptospira medium a semi solid nutrient agar containing 10 per cent rabbit serum and a small amount of rabbit hemoglobin (0.50% or less). Growth becomes evident in this medium in from a week to 10 days at 28° C sometimes longer in a band about 1 cm wide and about 5 mm below the surface. Colonies if minute produce only a faint haze but they may grow to be visible white spherical bodies from 1 to 2 mm in diameter. The organisms occur singly and in large and small irregular dense collections with jagged edges 25 to 50 microns or more in diameter. Rod forms predominate in young (10 to 20 days) cultures and granules measuring as little as 0.2 × 0.3 micron in older ones. Flagella are demonstrable on motile strains by silver impregnation methods and are beautifully shown by the electron microscope after palladium shadowing (Fig 2). The flagella are unipolar arise from the cytoplasm are 1

### DIAGNOSIS

Oroya fever usually offers no diagnostic problem once the anemia is pronounced. Bartonella can then be found in stained blood films. Prior to the anemic period blood cultures can be positive; the incentive to make them comes from knowledge of prior residence in an endemic zone and suggestive symptoms of the preanemic period: unexplained fever and joint pains. A generalized well-developed verruga eruption has a very distinctive appearance. Individual elements may resemble those of other eruptive conditions, but the histology is usually very different. Cultures from the verrugas are usually unsatisfactory due to contamination, but cultures of Bartonella may be obtained from the blood throughout the course of the eruption. The diagnosis of latent infection also depends on blood cultures. In all cases cultures if negative should be repeated, for particularly during the verruga period it may be very difficult to cultivate Bartonella from the blood (Herrer 1953b).

The identification of *B. bacilliformis* is based on the following points: isolation from patients with a typical case of one of the two forms of the disease or from carriers with a history of residence in endemic areas or from infected sandflies; characteristic growth in a semisolid medium; pathogenicity for *Macaca mulatta* in which verrugas may be produced; the morphology and the cellular situation in vivo and the appearance staining and biochemical reactions in vitro. Some strains are nonpathogenic and for these instead of the monkey test tissue cultures can be substituted; growth will be both intracytoplasmic and extracellular and within cells the organism will show a tendency to grow in rounded masses.

### TREATMENT

Satisfactory clinical results can be obtained even though control of the infection is incomplete. If a patient recovers from Oroya fever he may continue to yield positive blood cultures and to develop verrugas but does not die even though still infected, presumably because he develops a partial immunity.

Oroya fever patients respond dramatically to penicillin (Merino 1945; Aldana and

Tisnado 1945). streptomycin (Aldana, Gastelumendi and Dieguez, 1948), chloramphenicol (Payne and Urteaga, 1951) or tetracycline (Araujo 1955). Fever disappears usually in 48 hours or less; the Bartonella change in morphology, the rod forms being replaced by coccusslike types, then (after several days if not before) they diminish in numbers whereas the blood count stabilizes and then increases. Presumably the antibiotics control the infection and allow the immunologic mechanisms to operate.

Choice of antibiotic is regulated by secondary considerations. As has been reported for some years, secondary salmonella infection of Oroya fever patients is not infrequent and is of poor prognosis. Therapeutic agents with activity against both Bartonella and the salmonella are often preferred; the favorable action of chloramphenicol in such combined infections has been reported (e.g., Urteaga and Payne 1955). For this reason chloramphenicol is favored over other antibiotics with anti-Bartonella activity (Cuadra 1956), even though there is some in vitro evidence that it is not the most potent (Wigand, 1952). Symptomatic relief of the anemia is accomplished by transfusions, which it may be advantageous to repeat to a total of 3 to 8 liters.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Bartonella is transmitted by one or probably several species of phlebotomus or sand fly indigenous to the endemic regions. There are records of a few cases of congenital infection, but bartonellosis is not transmitted by ordinary contact. The sources of the microorganisms are limited almost exclusively to the two hosts, man and phlebotomus, whence the importance of the asymptomatic infections. The 5 to 10 per cent of the apparently healthy population in endemic areas who have Bartonella circulating in the blood as well as postconvalescent carriers and patients serve as possible sources of infection to phlebotomus (Weinman 1944). The fact that repeated cultures were obtained only rarely from infected humans has been cited as evidence against the importance of the human reservoir (Herrer 1953b). This fact may be interpreted equally well as evidence of the inefficacy of the cultural

the clinical entities. It is a specific granuloma with three characteristic features. It is very vascular as a result of the formation within the element of numerous small caliber blood vessels. Proliferating endothelial cells are present in abundance, they frequently occur in masses or islands and lie in edematous connective tissue the whole being infiltrated with a variable number of lymphocytes, plasma cells and polymorphonuclears. Lastly, bartonella is present in the lesion usually within the cytoplasm of the tissue endothelial cells or in their neighborhood. Swollen vascular endothelial cells bulging into the lumen of the vessel which is such a feature of Oroya fever are almost totally lacking (Fig 1-4).

The anemia of Oroya fever is due primarily to blood destruction. Erythrocyte loss can be massive and rapid with red blood cell and hemoglobin values reaching 20 per cent of normal values in 96 hours. This destruction results from hemolysis (Hurtado *et al* 1938). Transfused tagged erythrocytes obtained either from normal donors or of autologous origin are destroyed at an accelerated rate in Oroya fever patients (Reynafarje and Ramos 1961).

Despite consistent and unequivocal evidence of lysis the intimate mechanism of the hemolysis has resisted analysis. No lysis has been obtained from *in vivo* sources. The Coombs test direct and indirect is negative in both phases of the disease (Reynafarje and Ramos 1961) and bartonella is not hemolytic *in vitro*. For verruga there is at present no information correlating the complex cellular and tissue reactions with the properties or constituents of bartonella.

The great variability in response to *B. bacilliformis* infection ranging from Oroya fever to verruga not preceded by Oroya and finally to nonclinical latent infection probably is due to variations in both the host and the microorganism. Controlled experiments in animals indicate a great range of host susceptibility and of pathogenicity of the organism. In Oroya fever both factors probably vary also but since the condition is not reproducible at will in animals the matter is not certain. No differences have been detected between bartonella isolated from Oroya fever cases and those obtained from

verruca patients. They are similar in pathogenicity give various cross immunity tests in animals have the same morphology and behave similarly *in vitro*. Both flagellate and aflagellate strains are pathogenic.

### IMMUNITY

The fundamental concept is that infection is long continuing and exhibits two successive clinical manifestations of which the second verruga seems to be an actual expression of immunity toward the first form Oroya fever. If a patient has undergone Oroya fever, than has had verruga from which he has recovered, usually he will not have a second attack even though exposed. But should the second attack occur it will almost invariably be verruga and not Oroya fever. This immunity to second attacks does not always signify that the infection has been eradicated. On the contrary, bartonella can be cultivated from the blood of recovered patients for long periods of time. This latent or asymptomatic infection is a characteristic feature of the bartonellosis animal as well as human. Latent infection is not limited to postconvalescence and persons with no history of the disease can be carriers. From 5 to 10 per cent of the population in bartonella infected areas are carriers and probably play an important part in maintaining endemicity (Weinman and Pinkerton 1937b). The asymptomatic state may last 15 months at least (Herrer Cornejo *et al* 1959/60).

Complement fixation has been reported with cultures as antigens. Strains of varying origins gave no significant titer differences in quantitative tests. Agglutinins are present during both phases of the disease and in carriers. It is doubtful that they play any important part in acquired immunity. Limited attempts at immunization with formalized cultures induced agglutinin formation but did not prevent infection. Perhaps one or more of the antibodies described above may inhibit the development of bartonella *in vitro*. For Herrer (1953b) found that cultures are more likely to be positive in the first months following infection than later even though infection continues throughout, as was demonstrated by the eventual outcrop of verrugas.

Because of the splenic immunity associated with them the group has attracted particular interest. *Haemobartonella muris* found in wild and many strains of laboratory white rats provokes a fulminating anaemia often with hemoglobinuria and frequently fatal. A high percentage of rats are infected with *H. muris* yet they show no signs of the disease and react mildly if at all to inoculations of the organism. But if the spleen is removed from these rats the microorganisms multiply and the anaemia evolves in its acute form. The infection is contracted at an early age and usually remains latent probably throughout life unless splenectomy is performed. Other procedures may have an effect similar to that of splenectomy i.e. certain associated infections x-ray irradiation  $\alpha$  particle irradiation from injected Polonium 210. Quite possibly all of these act to impair the efficiency of the spleen. Although haemobartonella infections occur in a great variety of animals none is known in man—the human postsplenectomy iron staining structures Pappenheimer bodies probably not being living organisms (Pappenheimer *et al* 1945). The effect of splenectomy on *B. bacilliformis* infections in man is not known but Oroya fever following splenectomy has been described once. Eperythrozoon has not been proved to occur in man but has been reported as a possible human infection. Splenic control is a prominent feature of eperythrozoon infections. The mouse organism *E. coccoides* (Fig 1.6) has again attracted attention because it is a striking example of a heterologous latent infection which converts an otherwise benign hepatitis virus infection into a fatal disease at the same time that it induces a many fold increase in virus titer (Niven *et al* 1952).

## REFERENCES

- Aldana L, Gastelumendi R and Dieguez N 1948 La estreptomycina en la enfermedad de Carrion Arch Peruanos Pat y Clin 2 323 339
- Aldana G L and Tisnado Munoz S 1945 Penicilina y enfermedad de Carrion Rev San Pol (Lima) 5 275 345
- Araujo N E 1955 Bartonellosis and tetracycline Antibiotic Med 1 201 209
- Barton A L 1909 Descripción de elementos endoglobulares hallados en los enfermos de fiebre verrucosa Crón med Lima 26 7
- Corradetti A 1949 Experimento di prevenzione della verruga peruviana e della malaria nella valle del Rio Santa Eulalia (Peru) Rendic Ist Super San 12 561 566
- Cuadra C M 1956 Salmonellosis complication in human bartonellosis Texas Reports Biol and Med 14 97 113
- Geunon Q M 1941 New media for the growth of *Bartonella bacilliformis* Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 47 329 332
- Harcourt R 1939 La medecine dans l'ancien Perou Paris
- Herrer A 1953a Carrion's disease I Studies on plants claimed to be reservoirs of *Bartonella bacilliformis* Am J Trop Med 2 637 643
- 1953b Carrion's disease II Presence of *Bartonella bacilliformis* in the peripheral blood of patients with the benign form Am J Trop Med 2 645 649
- Herrer A and Blancas F 1959 60 Estudios sobre la enfermedad de Carrion en el valle interandino del Mantaro I Observaciones entomologicas Rev med exp (Lima) 13 27 (Abstract in Trop Dis Bull 59 28 1962)
- Herrer A, Cornejo Ubillus J R *et al* 1959 60 Estudios sobre la enfermedad de Carrion en el valle interandino del Mantaro II Incidencia de la infección bartonellosica en la poblacion humana Rev med exp (Lima) 13 47 (Abstract in Trop Dis Bull 59 29 1962)
- Hertig M 1938 Notes on Peruvian sand flies Identification of females of *Phlebotomus verrucarum* and *P. noguchii* Am J Hyg 28 463 468
- Hertig M and Fisher R A 1945 Control of sandflies with DDT Bull U S Army Med Dept No 88 97 101
- Hurtado A, Pons J and Merino C 1938 La anemia de la enfermedad de Carrion (verruca peruana) Lima Gil
- Jadassohn and Seiffert G 1910 Ein Fall von Verruca peruviana gelungene Übertragung auf Affen Z Hyg Infektionskr 66 247 261
- Mazzini G 1934 Le ceramiche del Peru precolombiano Faenza
- Medina C, Mestanza E, Arce J, Alcedan M, Miranda R and Montero M 1925 La verruga peruana y Daniel A Carrion 1886 Republished in An Fac Med Lima numero extraordinario (October)
- Merino C 1945 Penicillin therapy in human

method particularly in the presence of anti bodies when compared with the efficiency of phlebotomus in favoring growth. Mean while no important source of bartonella other than man has been discovered (Herrer 1953a).

Once implanted in a region bartonellosis tends to remain almost indefinitely in a focus reported in 1630 the infection has persisted for over 300 years. Epidemics arise through infection of a previously nonexposed and therefore nonimmune population. Such a population may be introduced within an endemic area to produce an internal epidemic not correlated with geographic extension (e.g. the 1870 Peruvian outbreak) or there may be an actual invasion of new territory. This seems to have been the case in Colombia in 1938 where bartonellosis caused an estimated 4,000 deaths. Small outbreaks continue to occur e.g. in 1959 in the Mantaro valley of Peru where there were an estimated 200 deaths (Herrer and Blancas 1959 60).

Bartonellosis is contracted only in north western South America exclusively in mountainous areas solely in the neighborhood of river valleys where the elevation must be neither too high (below 8 000 feet) nor too low (above 2 500 feet) and usually only at night. The explanation lies in the biology of the vector. The pertinent facts are available for *P verrucarum* in Peru. This phlebotomus is restricted to certain areas by requirements of moisture and temperature. Above a certain altitude the night temperature is too low, below a certain limit the rainfall is insufficient and conditions are too arid. Transmission occurs at night because the phlebotomus feed then. Phlebotomus are the only natural vectors known and *P verrucarum* the only species for which transmission is proved. Very probably others are involved. In Colombia, where the Peruvian species have not yet been found, the epidemic apparently was not caused by the importation of infected sandflies but by infection of native phlebotomus possibly by human carriers; the presumptive vector is *P columbianus* (Rozeboom 1947). In the 1959 Mantaro outbreak *P verrucarum* was not recovered. *P pescei* is suspect because of distribution coincident with the disease (Herrer and

Blancas 1959 60). Experiments involving *Pediculus humanus* have not supported the view that lice may spread the disease (Wigand and Weyer 1953).

### CONTROL MEASURES

DDT appears to have furnished a simple, relatively inexpensive method for community sanitation. The application of residue sprays to the inside of residences and sleeping quarters to the outside of doors and windows and to likely breeding spots in the immediate vicinity was shown by Hertig and Fisher (1945) to exert effective phlebotomus control. In Peru in an endemic region Corradetti applied these techniques in 1949 and succeeded in protecting a group of about 900 men for several months, not only from bartonellosis but to a marked degree from malaria also, and this despite the frequent moving of the work camps as the construction project progressed. Thus far resistance to DDT by phlebotomus has posed no problem.

Individuals may protect themselves by nightly removal from the phlebotomus zone by the use of insect repellents and DDT as indicated and presumably by the prophylactic use of active antibiotics. There is no vaccine of demonstrated efficacy.

### HAEMOBARTONELLA AND EPERYTHROZOON

The haemobartonella resemble *B. bacilliformis* when stained and examined with the light microscope and cause an acute febrile anemia during which they appear in large numbers on the erythrocytes. But they do not provoke any condition akin to veruga; do not multiply massively if at all within vascular endothelial cells and are widely distributed geographically. Their very different response to chemotherapy indicates fundamental metabolic differences in any case they are unsuitable test organisms for anti bartonella activity. These differences suggested separation in a distinct genus (Tyzzer and Weinman 1939), a separation reinforced since by the discovery of fundamental structural differences with electron microscope techniques (Peters and Wigand 1955).

- Weinman D 1944 Infectious anemias due to Bartonella and related red cell parasites Trans Am Phil Soc 33 243-350
- Weinman D and Pinkerton H 1937a Carrion's Disease III Experimental production in animals Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 37 594-595
- 1937b Carrion's Disease IV Natural sources of bartonella in the endemic zone Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 37 596-598
- Wigand R 1952 Neue Untersuchungen über *Bartonella bacilliformis* II Verhalten gegenüber Sulfonamiden und Antibiotica *in vitro* Z Tropenmed Parasitol 3 453-460
- 1958 Morphologische, biologische und serologische Eigenschaften der Bartonellen Stuttgart Georg Thieme
- Wigand R and Weyer F 1953 Neue Untersuchungen über *Bartonella bacilliformis* III Übertragungsversuche auf Rhesusaffen und auf Kleiderläuse Z Tropenmed Parasitol 4 243-254



- bartonellosis J Lab Clin Med 30 1021 1026
- Niven J S F Dick G W A Gledhill A W and Andrews C H 1952 Further light on mouse hepatitis Lancet 2 1061
- Noguchi H and Battistini T E 1926 Etiology of Oroya fever I Cultivation of *Bartonella bacilliformis* J Exp Med 43 851 864
- Noguchi H 1926 Etiology of Oroya fever II Viability of *Bartonella bacilliformis* in cultures and in the preserved blood and an excised nodule of *Macacus rhesus* J Exp Med 44 533 538
- 1926 Etiology of Oroya fever III The behavior of *Bartonella bacilliformis* in *Macacus rhesus* J Exp Med 44 697 713
- 1926 Etiology of Oroya fever IV The effect of inoculation of anthropoid apes with *Bartonella bacilliformis* J Exp Med 44 715 728
- 1926 Etiology of Oroya fever V The experimental transmission of *Bartonella bacilliformis* by ticks (*Dermacentor andersoni*) J Exp Med 44 729 734
- 1927 Etiology of Oroya fever VI Pathological changes observed in animals experimentally infected with *Bartonella bacilliformis* The distribution of the parasite in the tissues J Exp Med 45 437 454
- 1927 Etiology of Oroya fever VII The response of the skin of *Macacus rhesus* and anthropoid apes to inoculation with *Bartonella bacilliformis* J Exp Med 45 455-463
- 1927 Etiology of Oroya fever VIII Experiments on cross immunity between Oroya fever and verruga peruana J Exp Med 45 781 786
- 1928 Etiology of Oroya fever IX *Bacterium peruvianum* n sp a secondary invader of the lesions of verruga peruana J Exp Med 47 165 170
- 1928 Etiology of Oroya fever X Comparative studies of different strains of *Bartonella bacilliformis* with special reference to the relationship between the clinical types of Carrion's disease and the virulence of the infecting organism J Exp Med 47 219 234
- 1928 Etiology of Oroya fever XI Comparison of *Bartonella bacilliformis* and *Bartonella muris* Cultivation of *Bacterium muris* n sp J Exp Med 47 235 243
- 1928 Etiology of Oroya fever XII Influence of malarial infection (*Plasmodium inu?*) splenectomy or both upon experimental Carrion's disease in monkeys J Exp Med 47 821 827
- 1928 Etiology of Oroya fever XIII Chemotherapy in experimental *Bartonella bacilliformis* infection J Exp Med 48 619 625
- Noguchi H Shannon R C Tilden E B and Tyler J B 1929 Etiology of Oroya fever XIV The insect vectors of Carrion's disease J Exp Med 49 993 1008
- Noguchi H 1927 The etiology of verruga peruana J Exp Med 45 175 189
- Odiozola E 1898 La maladie de Carrion ou la verruga peruvienne Paris Carre et Naud
- Pappenheimer A M Thompson W P Parker D R and Smith K E 1945 Anaemia associated with unidentified erythrocytic inclusions after splenectomy Quart J Med 38(NS 14) 75 100
- Payne E H and Urteaga O 1951 Carrion's disease treated with chloromycetin Antibiotics and Chemotherapy 1 92 99
- Peters D and Wigand R 1952 Neue Untersuchungen über *Bartonella bacilliformis* Z Tropenmed Parasitol 3 313 326
- 1955 Bartonellaceae Bact Rev 19 150 159
- Pinkerton H and Weinman D 1937a Carrion's Disease I Behaviour of the etiological agent within cells growing or surviving *in vitro* Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 37 587 590
- 1937b Carrion's Disease II Comparative morphology of the etiological agent in Oroya fever and verruga peruana Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 37 591 593
- Reynafarje C and Ramos J 1961 The hemolytic anemia of human bartonellosis Blood 17 562 578
- Rozeboom L E 1947 The identity of the phlebotomus associated with bartonellosis in Colombia Ann Entomol Soc America 40 705 714
- Strong R P Tyzzer E E Brues C T Sellards A W and Gastriaburu J C 1915 Report of First Expedition to South America Cambridge Harvard University Press
- Tyzzer E E and Weinman D 1939 *Haemobartonella* n g (*Bartonella olim pro parte*) *H. microti* n sp of the field vole *Microtus pennsylvanicus* Am J Hyg 30 141 157
- Urteaga O and Payne E H 1955 Treatment of the acute febrile phase of Carrion's disease with chloramphenicol Am J Trop Med 4 507 511

- Weinman D 1944 Infectious anemias due to *Bartonella* and related red cell parasites Trans Am Phil Soc 33 243 350
- Weinman D and Pinkerton H 1937a Carrion's Disease III Experimental production in animals Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 37 594 595
- 1937b Carrion's Disease IV Natural sources of *Bartonella* in the endemic zone Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 37 596 598
- Wigand R 1952 Neue Untersuchungen über *Bartonella bacilliformis* II Verhalten gegenüber Sulfonamiden und Antibiotica *in vitro* Z Tropenmed Parasitol 3 453 460
- 1958 Morphologische, biologische und serologische Eigenschaften der *Bartonella* Stutgart Georg Thieme
- Wigand R and Weyer F 1953 Neue Untersuchungen über *Bartonella bacilliformis* III Übertragungsversuche auf Rhesusaffen und auf Kleiderläuse Z Tropenmed Parasitol 4 243 254

## 35

## The Pleuropneumonia and Pleuropneumonialike Organisms

The microorganisms which are designated as pleuropneumonia or pleuropneumonialike organisms are characterized by the lack of a rigid cell wall, a very pleomorphic cell morphology, and a characteristic colony morphology. Except for a few saprophytic strains they require a culture medium enriched with fresh native body protein such as ascitic fluid or blood serum. In addition to growing on the surface of a solid medium, a portion of the colonies grows into it so that unlike bacterial colonies, these cannot be readily rubbed off the surface of the medium. The cells are smaller than the usual bacterial cells and stain poorly with the ordinary aniline dyes. The colonies are best recognized by staining *in situ* with a mixture of methylene blue and azure II according to the method of Dienes. The organisms are inhibited by the action of specific antibodies in the absence of complement. Various generic names which have been proposed in previous systems of classification are *Coccobacillus*, *Micromyces*, *Asteromyces*, *Borrelomyces*, *Bovimyces*, and *Asterococcus*. The genus name now proposed is *Mycoplasma* and the type species is *Mycoplasma mycoides*.

For many years the pleuropneumonia group of microorganisms was composed of the microorganisms which cause pleuropneumonia of cattle and contagious agalactia of sheep and goats. Within the last two decades many microorganisms which resemble the

organisms of pleuropneumonia in colony morphology and cultural requirements have been isolated under various conditions from man and other species. These more recently isolated organisms, for the sake of convenience, have been referred to as pleuropneumonialike organisms or, for greater convenience, simply by the abbreviation PPLO. Insufficient knowledge of the numerous strains of PPLO is available to permit a precise classification. The latest proposals for classification and nomenclature are those of Edward and Freundt (1956), and their recommended terminology is represented by the names which appear in italics in the text.

## HISTORY

The causative organism of bovine pleuropneumonia was discovered in 1898 by No card and co-workers. North America, Western Europe, and India are the only areas in the world in which bovine pleuropneumonia does not seem to exist. The disease was eradicated from the United States in the middle of the 19th century and introduction of the microorganisms into this country is prohibited by Federal law.

Since the small viable elements are capable of passing through bacteria proof filters, the organisms were regarded by earlier workers as filterable viruses. In cattle the disease involves primarily the respiratory tract—pneu-

monia with secondary involvement of the pleura—with an occasional involvement of the joints. Joint involvement is a clinical sign which appears with varying degrees of frequency in a majority of the animal species infected with these organisms.

In 1925 Bridre and Donatien isolated from sheep and goats the causative organism of contagious agalactia, a disease found predominantly in Europe and Algeria. The disease involves the joints and the eyes and in lactating sheep and goats the mammary glands. Shoetensack in Japan in 1934 isolated similar organisms from dogs with a respiratory type of infection.

Since the middle 1930s publications on these microorganisms have appeared more frequently in the scientific literature. The rabbit appears to be the only common laboratory animal from which PPLO have not been isolated.

The discovery by Klieneberger in 1935 of the dissociation of *Streptobacillus moniliformis* into a small colony variant resembling the pleuropneumonia organisms and designated the  $L_1$  variant initiated a great amount of investigation into the possibility of other bacteria producing similar variants and the possibility of finding the variants in various animals. As the first variant was designated  $L_1$ , a similar terminology was employed for subsequent isolations. This system of naming strains was discontinued after the  $L_1$  term but the  $L$  designations still appear occasionally in the scientific literature. The  $L$  terms had the following original connotations:

$L_1$ —the small colony variant produced by strains of *S. moniliformis* and described by Klieneberger in 1935. Edward stated in 1950 that while the  $L_1$  organisms have the general characteristics of PPLO they are quite distinctive in their cellular morphology and they frequently produce growth which resembles that of ordinary bacteria.

$L_2$ —the PPLO discovered by Klieneberger in 1935 to be associated with a small streptococcus or streptobacillus isolated from the nasopharynx of guinea pigs.

$L_3$ —the PPLO isolated by Klieneberger and Steadman in 1937 from the lungs of rats exhibiting chronic bronchopneumonia or bronchiectasis. A similar strain was isolated from the brain of an apparently healthy

mouse by Findlay *et al.* in 1939. The name *Mycoplasma pulmonis* has been proposed for this strain.

$L_4$ —a term employed for the only strains of PPLO believed to possess pyogenic properties. These organisms were isolated from rats by Klieneberger in 1939 and by Woglom and Warren in 1939. Arthritis is invariably produced when these organisms are injected into the foot pads of rats and mice. The organisms are similar serologically to the  $L_1$  organisms but they are more pathogenic for mice by intracerebral inoculation than the  $L_1$ . The name *Mycoplasma arthritis* has been proposed.

$L_5$ —a term employed for the only strains of PPLO which produce rolling disease in mice. The organisms were encountered by Findlay *et al.* in 1938 during the brain to brain passage in mice of neurotropic yellow fever virus and the virus of lymphocytic choriomeningitis. The intracerebral injection of pure cultures of the organisms did not produce rolling disease but the culture mixed with brain suspension containing any one of several viruses did produce the characteristic symptoms. Mice and the field vole *Microtus agrestis* are the only susceptible animals. The name *Mycoplasma neurolyticum* has been proposed.

$L_6$ —strain of PPLO isolated by Findlay *et al.* in 1939 from the brains of mice. The organisms are related to  $L_5$  organisms but they differ from these in growth and serologic characteristics. In morphologic and staining properties the organisms can be mistaken for *Eperythrozoon coccoides*.

$L_7$ —strains of PPLO isolated from arthritic joints of rats by Findlay *et al.* in 1939. It was shown in 1940 by Klieneberger that the organisms are identical with the  $L_4$  organisms.

It is current practice to designate as  $L$  forms those pleuropneumonia-like organisms which can revert to a bacterial form and as PPLO those for which no reversion has yet been demonstrated.

The first known encounter with PPLO in man is perhaps the work of Gey (personal communication) who succeeded about 1935 in isolating several dozen lines from human placental cord blood which was being employed in tissue culture work. However the

identity of these agents as PPLO was not possible until the special techniques for working with these organisms were developed by Dienes. Currently the PPLO are a problem in tissue culture work as many lines of cell cultures are contaminated with these organisms. Primary tissue cell cultures may be contaminated with PPLO; the rate of contamination may be in the range of 80 to 90 per cent in laboratories employing antibiotics in the tissue culture media (Barile *et al* 1962). Some of the strains of PPLO contaminating tissue cell cultures appear to be antigenically similar to serologic types 1 and 2 of *Mycoplasma hominis* which were originally isolated from the human genital urinary tract (Bailey *et al* 1961).

### CULTIVATION AND BIOLOGIC PROPERTIES

PPLO are the smallest microorganisms which have been cultivated on cell free media. Their nutritional requirements except for the saprophytic strains are different from those of all other microorganisms. It is essential to start with a rich basal medium and to supply the additional growth factors.

In most cases an infusion from beef heart muscle is employed as infusions from other tissues are less suitable. To the infusion are added 0.5 per cent NaCl and appropriate peptone to the concentration of 1 per cent. The brand of peptone is important as not all brands support growth of PPLO equally well. Bacto peptone was found to be the best of the available American peptones (Morton *et al* 1951). For solid medium 1.4 per cent agar may be added. The organisms are so sensitive that they may not grow in the presence of certain lots of bacteriologic agar (Lynn and Morton 1956). It is desirable to have the medium as soft as practicable since the colonies grow into the medium.

The organisms require an alkaline environment for optimum growth so the final reaction of the medium should be about pH 7.6 to 7.8. The basal medium requires enrichment with a native body protein such as human ascitic fluid or blood serum. Ascitic fluid in the final concentration of 20 to 30 per cent appears to be the best enrichment but often this is impractical. Blood serum in a final concentration of 10 to 20 per cent is

frequently used rabbit horse or beef serum is usually used but the serum from no one species is uniformly satisfactory.

Often the sera of some species or certain lots of serum from the same species either do not promote growth or inhibit the growth of some strains. This lack of a growth promoting property in certain sera may be due to the presence of specific antibodies. Although beef serum is unsatisfactory as an enrichment for growing many human strains of PPLO a way was found for separating the growth factor or factors from the toxic fraction (Smith and Morton 1951). The complete basal medium in the dehydrated form and a serum fraction containing the growth factor in a concentrated form are available commercially so that cultivation of PPLO has become as practicable as cultivating many species of bacteria.

The growth factor has been shown to be a lipoprotein containing only bound cholesterol and phospholipid (Smith, Lecce and Lynn 1954) and is not known to be required by any other microorganisms. It is very similar to alpha 1 lipoprotein and can be replaced with lipid free protein which does not appear to be specific and cholesterol laurate and lecithin of animal origin. The lipid requirement for growth was also demonstrated by Edward and Fitzgerald (1951). Only the amino acids alanine, arginine, glutamic acid, glycine, leucine, lysine, tryptophane and valine were found in the purified growth factor (Smith and Morton 1952). The purified form of the growth factor is nonantigenic in rabbits (Smith, Morton and Keller 1953). While the lipoprotein factor allows the growth of the majority of strains of PPLO there are strains which require other substances. For example Edward and Fitzgerald (1952) found deoxyribonucleic acid to be a growth factor for certain strains when first isolated from cattle. The growth of some strains is dependent on or is enhanced by the presence of yeast extract in the culture medium and some strains may even require serum from a particular species of animal. *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* requires yeast extract (freshly prepared) and fresh horse serum (Chanock, Hayflick and Barile 1962). Different lots of serum from the same species are not always equally satisfactory (Baernstein and Quilligan 1963).

The function of the serum appears to be to provide sterol in a utilizable form for those strains which are unable to synthesize it for incorporation into the nonsaponifiable lipids in the cell membranes. The non sterol requiring strains are able to synthesize the nonsaponifiable lipids *de novo* but they are capable also of adsorbing sterols.

The growth of PPLO can be measured quantitatively by some of the methods commonly employed for estimating numbers of viable bacteria—e.g. turbidimetric measurement of concentrated cell suspensions, cellular nitrogen and counts of surface colonies resulting from the deposition of measured amounts of cell suspension on the surface of appropriate solid medium (Smith 1956). Usually no noticeable turbidity is produced by the growth of PPLO in liquid media. The amount of cellular nitrogen in broth cultures of PPLO is about 0.01 that of bacterial cultures.

In general the organisms can be cultivated under aerobic conditions. Some oral strains and an occasional genital strain from man require anaerobic cultivation. The presence of 10 per cent CO<sub>2</sub> in the environment offers no advantages if the culture medium is satisfactory and it may be detrimental if the medium is slightly unsatisfactory. Growth of the parasitic strains takes place at 37°C. The organisms appear to reproduce by binary fission with a generation time calculated to be  $3.27 \pm 0.78$  hours. Most of the strains of human origin grow in the developing chick embryo without producing noticeable pathology or death of the embryo. Sulivan and Dienes in 1939 encountered one strain of PPLO which grew only in embryos that had been killed by chilling and Swift in 1941 observed that in general PPLO grew better on dead sterile chorio-allantoic membranes than on living membranes. Many of the strains from other species of animals are pathogenic for the embryos. The organisms grow readily in tissue cultures and currently are an important factor as contaminants in tissue cultures employed for propagating viruses. The PPLO cells may lead an intracellular existence since they are found within the tissue cells as well as extracellularly (Edwards and Fogh 1960).

Because of the frequent occurrence of PPLO along with bacteria in clinical ma-

terials the frequency with which cultures of PPLO become contaminated with bacteria, the small colonies produced by PPLO, their slow rate of growth and their requirement for a rich medium, it is often necessary to suppress the growth of bacteria while permitting PPLO to grow. The organisms differ from gram positive bacteria in not being inhibited by crystal violet and from gram negative bacteria in not being inhibited by potassium tellurite. Thallium acetate first employed by Edward in 1947 appears to possess advantages over a combination of selective bacteriostatic agents (Morton and Lecce 1953). Penicillin may be employed if the bacteria to be inhibited are penicillin sensitive but its use poses the possibility of converting bacteria into L forms.

Resting cells of PPLO are not very resistant to physical factors as compared with vegetative cells in general. A typical strain of PPLO had a half life of 15 min, 45 min, 35 min, 20 min and over 24 hours at 37°C when suspended respectively in distilled water, 0.85 per cent NaCl solution, M/15 phosphate buffer, pH 7.0, Ringer's solution and the culture supernate. Survival was found to be only slightly better at room temperature. At 4°C the half life periods were more than 6 days in each case (Smith and Sasaki 1958). At 50°C the half life was 2 min or less; no organisms survived 7 to 10 minutes exposure at this temperature. PPLO are much more susceptible than most bacteria to the deleterious action of agents which alter surface tension as evidenced by their susceptibility to the action of soaps and to the action of bile acids. In 3 bile acids tested—cholec, desoxycholic and lithocholic—a direct relationship was noted between the destruction of PPLO and the degree of surface tension depression due to the number of polar groups (Smith and Sasaki). Surprisingly PPLO were found to be relatively insensitive to osmotic shock. This may be because of their pliable limiting cell membrane in place of the rigid cell wall found in bacteria. In regard to their resistance to phenol, hydrogen peroxide and ultra violet light, members of this group resemble bacterial vegetative cells (Warren 1942).

Metabolically PPLO are a heterogeneous group. Many strains are inert toward carbohydrates as shown by the usual fermentation

identity of these agents as PPLO was not possible until the special techniques for working with these organisms were developed by Dienes. Currently the PPLO are a problem in tissue culture work as many lines of cell cultures are contaminated with these organisms. Primary tissue cell cultures may be contaminated with PPLO; the rate of contamination may be in the range of 80 to 90 per cent in laboratories employing antibiotics in the tissue culture media (Barile *et al* 1962). Some of the strains of PPLO contaminating tissue cell cultures appear to be antigenically similar to serologic types 1 and 2 of *Mycoplasma hominis* which were originally isolated from the human genital urinary tract (Bailey *et al*, 1961).

### CULTIVATION AND BIOLOGIC PROPERTIES

PPLO are the smallest microorganisms which have been cultivated on cell free media. Their nutritional requirements except for the saprophytic strains are different from those of all other microorganisms. It is essential to start with a rich basal medium and to supply the additional growth factors.

In most cases an infusion from beef heart muscle is employed as infusions from other tissues are less suitable. To the infusion are added 0.5 per cent NaCl and appropriate peptone to the concentration of 1 per cent. The brand of peptone is important as not all brands support growth of PPLO equally well. Bacto peptone was found to be the best of the available American peptones (Morton *et al*, 1951). For solid medium 1.4 per cent agar may be added. The organisms are so sensitive that they may not grow in the presence of certain lots of bacteriologic agar (Lynn and Morton 1956). It is desirable to have the medium as soft as practicable since the colonies grow into the medium.

The organisms require an alkaline environment for optimum growth so the final reaction of the medium should be about pH 7.6 to 7.8. The basal medium requires enrichment with a native body protein such as human ascitic fluid or blood serum. Ascitic fluid in the final concentration of 20 to 30 per cent appears to be the best enrichment but often this is impractical. Blood serum in a final concentration of 10 to 20 per cent is

frequently used. Rabbit horse or beef serum is usually used but the serum from no one species is uniformly satisfactory.

Often the sera of some species or certain lots of serum from the same species either do not promote growth or inhibit the growth of some strains. This lack of a growth promoting property in certain sera may be due to the presence of specific antibodies. Although beef serum is unsatisfactory as an enrichment for growing many human strains of PPLO a way was found for separating the growth factor or factors from the toxic fraction (Smith and Morton 1951). The complete basal medium in the dehydrated form and a serum fraction containing the growth factor in a concentrated form are available commercially so that cultivation of PPLO has become as practicable as cultivating many species of bacteria.

The growth factor has been shown to be a lipoprotein containing only bound cholesterol and phospholipid (Smith, Lecce and Lynn 1954) and is not known to be required by any other microorganisms. It is very similar to alpha 1 lipoprotein and can be replaced with lipid free protein which does not appear to be specific and cholesterol laurate and lecithin of animal origin. The lipid requirement for growth was also demonstrated by Edward and Fitzgerald (1951). Only the amino acids alanine, arginine, glutamic acid, glycine, leucine, lysine, tryptophane and valine were found in the purified growth factor (Smith and Morton 1952). The purified form of the growth factor is nonantigenic in rabbits (Smith, Morton and Keller 1953). While the lipoprotein factor allows the growth of the majority of strains of PPLO there are strains which require other substances. For example Edward and Fitzgerald (1952) found deoxyribonucleic acid to be a growth factor for certain strains when first isolated from cattle. The growth of some strains is dependent on or is enhanced by the presence of yeast extract in the culture medium, and some strains may even require serum from a particular species of animal. *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* requires yeast extract (freshly prepared) and fresh horse serum (Chanock, Hayflick and Barile 1962). Different lots of serum from the same species are not always equally satisfactory (Baernstein and Quiligan 1963).

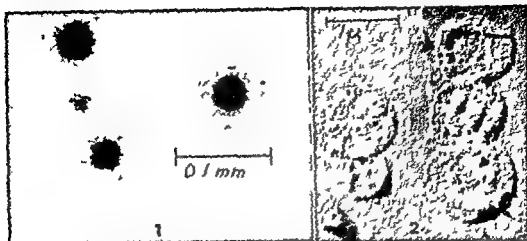


FIG 1 (Left) Photomicrographs of colonies of pleuropneumonia-like organisms stained by the method of Dienes. The colonies on the left are from strain No. 60 which was isolated from the human cervix. For the most part, the colonies showed the typical fried egg appearance, but an occasional small, dense colony, which measured about 25  $\mu$ , was present, such as the colony between the two large colonies. The colony on the right is from strain No. 48, which was isolated as a pure culture from the male urethra (Fig. 1, Leberman *et al.* J Urol. 6: 167).

FIG 2 (Right) Electronmicrographs of chromium shadowed cells of Campo strain of pleuropneumonia-like organisms from man (*Mycoplasma hominis* serologic type 2) from a 48 hour culture on solid medium. Note the holes in the cell membranes and the flatness of the cells, which give the appearance that the contents of the cells have escaped, possibly during the drying of the specimen for electronmicroscopy (Figs. 13 and 15, Morton *et al.* J Bact. 58: 697).

In some cases the organisms produce suspensions which are unsuitable for agglutination tests. The complement fixation reaction is a practical serologic method, but suspensions of PPLO are frequently auto-complementary. The PPLO cells can be absorbed to latex (0.81 micron diam.) and used as antigen in an agglutination test (Morton 1962). Significant titers have been reported for sera from patients with deeply localized infections with PPLO (Melen and Gotthardson 1955; Stokes 1955). As in the case of other infectious diseases, animals that have recovered from infections may be immune to subsequent infections frequently without exhibiting specific antibodies in their sera (Edward 1954).

An interesting property of organisms of this group is that their growth is inhibited by specific antibodies in the absence of complement. This characteristic is analogous to the neutralization test with viruses. The

growth of the L type variant of *Proteus vulgaris* was inhibited by its specific antibody, but not by antibodies to the bacillary forms of *P. vulgaris*. This indicates important differences between the L and the bacillary forms of the same organism.

The hemagglutination and hemagglutination inhibition tests are used extensively with the avian strains of PPLO, but the human strains do not exhibit these properties.

Interesting from the standpoint of the ecology of PPLO associated with man is the finding by Freundt (1954) that 2 strains were identical serologically with the organisms of bovine pleuropneumonia and the finding by Smith, Peoples and Morton (1957) that a poultry strain and a human strain cross reacted serologically. Strains of PPLO isolated from goats, swine and a cat have been observed to cross react serologically with one of the serologic types of PPLO originally isolated from the human genitourinary



tests Other strains from man and other species are capable of utilizing the test carbohydrates and do so with the accompanying production of acid and no gas (Edward 1954 Freundt 1954) Of 207 human strains of PPLO 189 were found to be biochemically inert in fermentation tests 2 strains had fermentation reactions identical with the organism of bovine pleuropneumonia and the balance of the strains had variable fermentation reactions (Freundt 1954) The organisms have a very active monohydric alcohol dehydrogenase less dehydrogenase activity with lactate fructose and ribose and no activity with glucose Dehydrogenase activity is also evident from the ability of the organisms to reduce methylene blue to a varying degree and to reduce tetrazolium compounds (Somerson and Morton 1953) In a synthetic medium the organisms appear to derive their entire energy sources from amino acids and  $\text{Sn}^{++}$  serves an essential role in some manner Attempts to demonstrate transaminases have not been successful Utilization of arginine glutamine glutamic acid aspartic acid tryptophane and tyrosine and under aerobic conditions only histidine leucine and threonine has been demonstrated Among the limited biochemical activities of these organisms deamidation appears to be a significant function That of glutamine appears to be brought about by two distinct reactions One reaction is a simple hydrolytic deamidation and the other is a reaction which requires  $\text{Mg}^{++}$  phosphate and adenosinediphosphate Glutamic acid is converted to a cyclic compound which is then reduced to proline through the mediation of reduced triphosphopyridine nucleotide (Smith 1957a) Arginine is converted to citrulline and this is converted to ornithine which is also utilized (Smith, 1957b) The breakdown of glutamine and citrulline gives rise to the formation of adenosinetriphosphate

PPLO and PPLO infected tissue cultures degrade arginine whereas PPLO free tissue cultures do not (Schumke and Baric 1963) Therefore arginine deaminase activity may be used as a means of detecting PPLO contamination of tissue cell cultures

None of the strains of PPLO isolated from man has been observed to produce indole H<sub>2</sub>S or oxidase or to reduce nitrates to ni-

trates *M. pneumoniae* produces hemolysis of the  $\beta$  type when tested with guinea pig erythrocytes but not with human horse or rabbit erythrocytes Other strains of PPLO from man either are inert toward erythrocytes or produce hemolysis of the  $\alpha$  type (Clyde 1963 Somerson *et al* 1963)

Colony morphology differs considerably from that of bacteria and varies less among strains within the group It is one of the properties which is detected most easily and is looked for early when attempting to detect these organisms The diameters of the colonies vary from approximately 10 microns to 1 mm but usually are about 250 to 750 microns Well isolated colonies are usually circular with an entire edge although Shepard (1956) reported tiny colonies (T forms) 10 to 12 microns in diameter which were irregular in outline Because of their small size the colonies are examined best with the low power of the microscope (100 $\times$ ) and transmitted light The colonies usually grow into the medium so they are not rubbed off when an inoculating loop is drawn over the surface of the culture Well isolated colonies developing under optimal conditions usually show the 'fried egg' appearance when viewed by transmitted light This appearance is caused by the fact that the central portion of the colony grows into the medium and the surrounding portion grows on the surface The appearance is shown in photographs published by Edward in 1950 and by Somerson and Morton (1953)

The surface of the colonies is raised and varies in texture from a slight pitting to a coarse lacy appearance as shown in photographs published in 1950 by Nelson and by Edward In addition there is sometimes a centrally located small peak (Sabín, 1941) or depression (Edward) The colonies may be further identified by staining in situ by the method of Dienes (Fig 1)

Individual organisms are not stained readily by the dyes usually employed to stain bacteria and are gram negative Giemsa's or Wayson's stain is usually employed

Serologically the numerous organisms in this large group comprise many antigenic types Kheneberger (1940) found distinct serologic types by the agglutination reaction

nary tract (Morton unpublished data) A serologic relationship between the human type 1 PPLO of urogenital origin and human oral strains also has been demonstrated (Taylor Robinson *et al* 1963)

The knowledge of the morphology of PPLO is not as precise as that pertaining to bacteria partly because of the small size of the cells the poor staining with ordinary dyes and the fact that the colonies of PPLO are quite distinct Phase-contrast microscopy and electron microscopy have been helpful Freundt gave a good description in 1952 of the growth of the bovine pleuropneumonia organisms Both granules and filaments were demonstrated The smallest elements which are capable of germination and are filterable are the so called elementary corpuscles The formation of branching mycelia is also part of the morphology of these organisms and is a characteristic which differentiates them from bacteria Growth has been observed to take place by the extrusion of thin filaments from the elementary corpuscles These filaments are without septa and may reach a length of 150 microns As the organisms become older these homogenous filaments become transformed into long chains of regularly spaced closely set highly refractive uniformly shaped small bodies Regularly spaced constrictions take place in the walls of the filaments between the small bodies until finally the small bodies (elementary corpuscles) are held together by a delicate filament which is devoid of protoplasm The elementary corpuscles are released when the constrictions completely sever the cell wall

In a study of 207 human strains of PPLO Freundt (1954) found two which were identical with the organisms of bovine pleuropneumonia in their biochemical reactions and in their cellular morphology as revealed by the electron microscope The majority of

the strains (189) were characterized by a difference in morphology and a lack of biochemical activity The initial mycelial forms of the organisms in this large group were rather stout short and stiff The fine delicate filaments so characteristic of the pleuropneumonia organisms were observed only rarely With these organisms the filaments tended to fragment into cocci and irregularly shaped rods at an early stage of growth The balance of the strains about 7 per cent were intermediate between these two groups in their morphology Somewhat similar morphologic forms appear in electron micrographs of organisms causing agalactia and pleuropneumonia in goats (Kieneberger Nobel and Cuckow 1955) Electron micrographs of human strains and of a poultry strain showed spherical bodies of less than 1 micron some of which were undergoing division (Morton *et al* 1954) (Fig 2) Flagella never have been observed on cells of PPLO

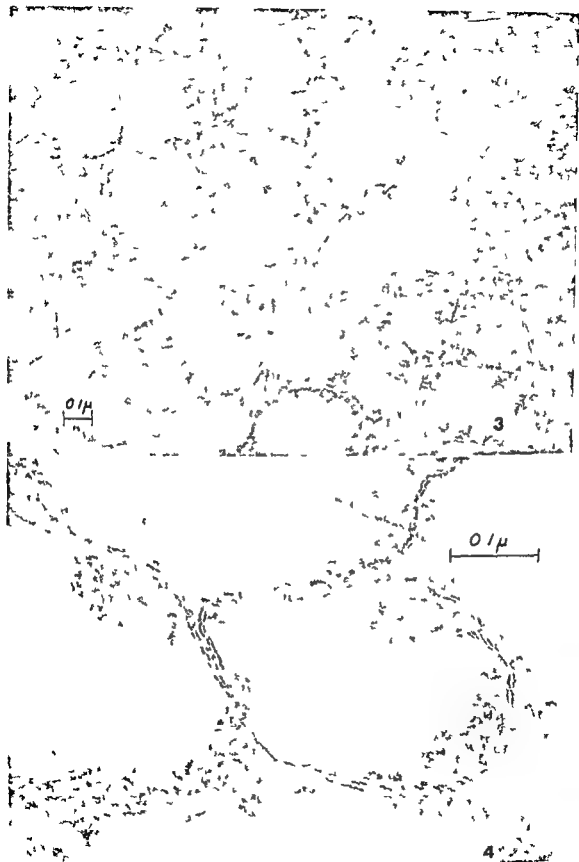
More recent studies with the electron microscope by Van Iterson and Ruys (1960) indicate that colonies produced by human strains of PPLO are made up for the most part of vesicles with simple structure such as shown in Figure 3 A much higher magnification of these basic structures shows the double dark layered limiting membrane of about 75 Å in width

#### RELATIONSHIP OF PLEUROPNEUMONIALIKE ORGANISMS TO BACTERIA

The pleuropneumonia and pleuropneumonia-like organisms appear to be between the viruses and the rickettsiae on the one hand and the bacteria on the other The pleuropneumonia organisms form a rather homogeneous group and they are distinct in their general properties from the viruses the

Fig 3 (Top) Electronmicrograph of an ultra thin section of a colony of pleuropneumonia-like organisms from man (*Mycoplasma fermentans* strain V58 serologic type 3) The tightly packed units show internal structures of dense areas and fine fibrils (Fig 10 Van Iterson and Ruys J Ultrastruct Res 3 382)

Fig 4 (Bottom) Electronmicrograph of an ultra thin section of a colony of pleuropneumonia-like organisms from man (*Mycoplasma fermentans* strain V26) at very high magnification (approx  $\times 213,500$ ) The limiting membrane about 75 Å thick consists of 2 dense outer layers about 20 Å thick and a lighter inner zone about 35 Å thick (Fig 7 Van Iterson and Ruys J Ultrastruct Res 3 282)



FIGURES 3 and 4 (Caption on facing page)

of certain microorganisms in disease may come about if it is established that some of the PPLO isolated from the body are related to bacteria especially to pathogenic bacteria. Since the  $L_1$  variant of *S. moniliformis* has been isolated from rats in the absence of *S. moniliformis* there may be comparable circumstances in the case of other bacteria and man. The Campo strain of PPLO which was isolated from the human urethra has been maintained on artificial medium for over 15 years. During certain periods liquid cultures of this strain as well as those of another strain from the human urethra have been observed repeatedly to contain corynebacteria (Smith *et al.* 1957). Statistically it appears very unlikely that the corynebacteria are contaminants and moreover the PPLO and the associated corynebacteria are related serologically and have similar fermentation reactions. Wittler *et al.* (1956) obtained corynebacteria from a urethral strain of PPLO by cultivating the latter in tissue cultures. These strains of corynebacteria were identical serologically and biochemically with a strain of corynebacterium originally isolated from the same urethral exudate at the time the PPLO were isolated and were related antigenically to that strain of PPLO. Wittler *et al.* suggested that with further study other human genital strains of PPLO may be found to be  $L$  forms of *Corynebacterium* spp. Amies and Jones (1957) present a similar view in regard to the relationship of certain PPLO from the genitourinary tract to *Haemophilus vaginalis*. In the field of veterinary medicine a comparable view had been expressed by McKay and Taylor (1954) when these workers recovered from PPLO associated with chronic respiratory disease of chickens and sinusitis of turkeys a gram negative rod which resembled *Haemophilus gallinarum*. They suggested that the agent of these infections was the  $L$  form of a true bacterium and not a PPLO.

#### DISTRIBUTION IN NATURE EPIDEMIOLOGY AND RANGE OF PATHOGENICITY

It is now apparent from studies during the past few years that PPLO are not only very prevalent in man during health and disease

but are prevalent in many species of animals with which man has contact. The finding that some of the strains of PPLO isolated from man react serologically with strains isolated from other species of animals indicates that more needs to be known about the ecology of these microorganisms in order to understand better their role in disease.

#### MAN

The first isolation of PPLO from a pathologic process in man was from the genitourinary tract by Dienes and Edsall in 1937 and the greatest amount of work in relation to the human strains of PPLO has pertained to the study of their prevalence, nature and possible relationship to pathology in that region. The organisms are more likely to be present in the genitourinary tract if some pathologic condition is present. This association was found by Melen and Odeblad (1951) to be statistically significant. In culturing the urethra, the vagina and the cervix of 58 gynecologically normal women ranging in age from 16 to 44 years these investigators in 1952 failed to find the organisms in 13 virgins (mean age 21 years) although Freundt found the organisms in cultures from the vulva of 3 of 50 girls under 3 years of age and in the vaginal cultures from 4 of 6 adult virgins. If a single area or combination of any of the three areas—the urethra, the cervix or the vagina—is positive for PPLO it invariably is in the vaginal culture in which the PPLO appear. Therefore cultures from the vagina will give a good indication if PPLO are present in the lower female genital tract. The fact that PPLO grow better in an alkaline environment may be an explanation for their scarcity in the healthy vagina. Freundt found a distinct relationship between the pH of the vagina, the vaginal flora and the presence of PPLO. The PPLO were usually absent in the vaginas with the lower range in pH (3.7 to 5.0) and the flora exclusively *Doderlein* bacillus. A similar relationship between the presence of PPLO and lactobacilli in the vagina was noted by Huysmans, Evers and Ruys (1956). Morton *et al.* (1952) failed to culture the organisms from the cervix of 12 healthy married women, while Melen and Odeblad in the same year found the organisms in 5 of 32

rickettsiae or the bacteria. The pleuropneumonia-like organisms form a heterogeneous group. Some strains resemble the pleuropneumonia organisms in their morphology and in their serologic and biochemical reactions while other strains have more of the properties of bacteria in their nutritional requirements and cellular morphology.

Kieneberger's discovery in the mid 1930's of the small colony variant (the L<sub>1</sub> variant) of *S. moniliformis* which resembles the colonies of the pleuropneumonia organisms stimulated efforts to determine whether this new type of bacteria existed free in nature and whether similar forms could be produced from other bacteria. Impetus was also added to the work by the discovery that the L<sub>1</sub> variant is extremely resistant to penicillin. Not only can penicillin be used to separate the penicillin resistant L forms from the more penicillin sensitive bacterial forms when both are present in mixed cultures but penicillin stimulates the production of L forms from bacteria. In their review Dienes and Weinberger (1951) listed 13 genera of bacteria from which L forms had been produced: *Bacillus*, *Bacteroides*, *Clostridium*, *Escherichia*, *Flavobacterium*, *Hemophilus*, *Neisseria*, *Pasteurella*, *Proteus*, *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, *Streptobacillus* and *Vibrio*. To this list can now be added *Azotobacter* (Eisenstark et al. 1950), *Brucella* (Nelson and Pickett 1951), *Corynebacterium* and *Staphylococcus* (Dienes and Sharp 1956), *Streptococcus*, *Diplococcus* (Madoff and Dienes 1958), *Listeria* (Suchanova and Patocka 1957), *Pseudomonas* and *Sarcina* (Ward and Martin 1962) and *Serratia* (Bandur and Dienes 1963).

For practical purposes the microorganisms resembling the pleuropneumonia organisms which are isolated from various sources without any apparent relationship to a known bacterium are designated PPLO. When similar forms are isolated from a bacterial culture and bear some relationship to the culture the forms are referred to as 'L forms' and their colonies as 'L-type colonies'. The demonstration of the characteristic colonies becomes the important criterion in determining whether one is dealing with L forms rather than with the pleomorphic large swollen forms of bacteria. The development of

L-type colonies is interpreted by Dienes and Sharp (1956) as evidence that viable granules in 'L forms' have germinated. A definite relationship has been demonstrated for the L<sub>1</sub> variant and its parent culture of *S. moniliformis* and between certain L forms and their parent *Proteus* cultures (Dienes, Weinberger and Madoff, 1950). In the case of one strain of *Streptococcus pyogenes* the L form continued to produce the type specific protein (type 19). In two strains studied the L forms failed to produce the group-specific polysaccharide (Sharp et al. 1957) and in 3 strains of group D streptococci the L forms were devoid of their group D antigen and cell wall polysaccharide. When one of the L strains reverted to the coccal form the two antigens were present again (Hijmans 1962).

The L forms isolated from various strains of bacteria differ considerably and the L forms isolated from the same strain of bacterium may differ. L forms frequently are more difficult to cultivate in liquid media than are PPLO (Dienes 1953) and this property is sometimes employed as a means of differentiating the two types of organisms. However, Medull and O'Kane (1954) grew the L forms of *Proteus* in a synthetic liquid medium and suggested that a reason for poor growth in natural media might be the presence of an inhibitor or inhibitors in some of the natural products. Serum or plasma might function as a detoxifying agent rather than as a supplier of necessary nutrients. Nevertheless, Edward pointed out in 1953 that there may be differences in the nutritional requirements of L forms and PPLO.

The L forms may arise spontaneously in bacterial cultures or they may be produced when actively metabolizing bacterial cells are subjected to some unfavorable condition. The substances which have proved to be useful in producing L forms are penicillin and a few other antibiotics, glycine and a few other amino acids (Dienes and Zamecnik 1952), antibodies in the presence of complement, bacteriophage and such unfavorable conditions for normal bacterial growth as are brought about by high concentrations of electrolytes (Dienes and Sharp 1956), refrigeration, bacterial antagonism and tap water.

A better understanding of the relationship

phimosis ulcerative balanitis with inflammatory phimosis and erosive balanitis by Ruiter and Wentholt (1952) cystitis (Berg *et al* 1957) prostatitis and epididymitis

The strains of PPLO isolated from the genitourinary tract of man are diverse in their antigenic structure. To one group of strains Edward and Freundt (1956) have given the name *Mycoplasma hominis* types 1 and 2. The majority of the strains which were isolated in England as well as some strains which had been isolated in France and the United States could be classified provisionally as type 1. Several strains all of which had been isolated in the United States differed from the type 1 strains and were classified provisionally as type 2. The strains of PPLO isolated by Ruiter and Wentholt from cases of balanitis and fusospirillary vulvovaginitis which differed culturally and serologically from the usual human genital strains and were designated

G strains were classified as human type 3 strains and called *Mycoplasma fermentans*. Genitourinary strains are encountered which cannot be classified into the above types (Huijsmans Evers and Ruys 1956).

Venereal transmission must be considered as a possibility when the organisms are present in either the male or the female genitourinary tract. Dienes and Smith in 1942 reported two instances where there was the possibility of transmission of PPLO between husband and wife during intercourse. In a third case a young girl developed an acute vaginitis 4 days after intercourse and an abundant growth of PPLO was obtained from the discharge. Two additional instances were reported by Morton *et al* in 1951 in which similar PPLO were isolated from both the husband and the wife. The same type of PPLO were isolated by Ruiter and Wentholt from a woman with severe leukorrhea and from the prostatic fluid from her husband and Melen and Linnros obtained a profuse growth of PPLO from urethral vaginal and cervical cultures from the wife of a man with nongonococcal urethritis. Schaffarick and Mankle (1953) have reported a condition where it appeared that the male harbored an infection with PPLO transmitted the infection to a female contact and later was reinfected by her. With vene-

real diseases in general both sexual partners must be taken into consideration and it now appears that in the case of suspected infections of the genitourinary tract due to PPLO both partners must be examined. If PPLO are present in both both should be treated. Transmission may be by contact other than venereal since a technician working with urethral and conjunctival specimens containing PPLO developed conjunctivitis and urethritis from which PPLO were isolated (Kuzell and Mankle 1960).

PPLO were first cultivated from the oral region in 1951 when Morton *et al* detected the organisms in the saliva of 46 of 100 individuals and Smith and Morton (1951) detected them in the throat cultures of 38 of 114 individuals. Freundt (1953) isolated them from throat washings of 43 per cent of 95 women. Although the association of the presence of PPLO in the oral region and the presence of the organisms in an infectious process may be coincidental two reports are of interest. Paine *et al* (1950) isolated an alpha streptococcus and a PPLO from a brain abscess in an individual who had the stem of a smoking pipe thrust into the brain during an altercation and Carlson *et al* (1951) cultured PPLO from the blood of a child who gave a history of a human bite. PPLO were isolated in pure culture post-operatively from a bronchopleural fistula after the removal of a drainage tube and later from fluid in the pleural cavity from a patient with bronchiectasis (Stokes 1955). The oral strains of PPLO differ from strains isolated from the genital tract in agglutination reactions colony morphology and nutritional requirements (Dienes and Madoff 1953 Nicol and Edward 1953 Shklar *et al* 1962). The name *Mycoplasma salivarium* has been proposed for the strains of PPLO which have been isolated from the oral region in man.

The name *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* has been proposed for the PPLO which causes some cases of primary atypical pneumonia (Chanock *et al* 1963). This agent was formerly known as the Eaton agent or the virus of primary atypical pneumonia and is discussed in the chapter on atypical pneumonia. *M. pneumoniae* differs from the oral and the genital strains of PPLO in produc-

nonpregnant married women and in 3 of 13 pregnant women Klieneberger-Nobel (1945) cultured the organisms only twice and then there was only sparse growth from 45 normal pregnant women in contrast with finding the organisms in 40 per cent of 45 women attending a venereal disease clinic.

The association of PPLO and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* in cervical cultures was found by Somerson *et al* (1955) to be statistically significant and no such relationship was found between the presence of PPLO and leukorrhea, gross genital pathology, phase of menstrual cycle, or previous penicillin therapy in the group of 86 women studied. The possible association of the presence of PPLO and previous penicillin therapy is of interest because of the ability of penicillin to produce the L forms of many bacteria and to reduce the number of penicillin-sensitive organisms in the normal flora. Schaub and Guilbeau (1949) isolated PPLO from the postpartum uterus of 3 per cent of the untreated patients and from 20 per cent of the patients who had received penicillin. In women who had received penicillin, 70 per cent of the cervical cultures yielded PPLO while 26 per cent of 300 consecutive gynecologic patients and 17 per cent of the women with noninflammatory diseases were positive for PPLO (Randall *et al* 1950).

Various other pathologic conditions in the female genitourinary tract from which PPLO have been isolated are chronic vulvitis (Homma and Kusano 1954), fusospirochetal vaginitis (Bercovici *et al* 1962), cervicitis cystitis (Dienes, Ropes, Smith, Madoff, and Bauer 1948), inflamed uterine tube and salpinx, and ovarian abscesses (Gotthardson and Melén 1953).

The finding in 1946 by Salaman *et al* of PPLO in urethral discharges from cases of nongonococcal urethritis stimulated investigations into the possible etiologic role of these organisms in this condition, the incidence of which now exceeds that of gonorrhea. The etiology of nongonococcal urethritis remains obscure but it appears that more than one agent may be responsible for it. The situation is further complicated by the fact that frequently PPLO are isolated from the normal, apparently healthy, male urethra. Morton *et al* (1952) failed to iso-

late PPLO from the semen of 28 healthy individuals who were being studied in a fertility research laboratory but Freundt (1956a) in Denmark isolated PPLO from the urethra of 15 (53.6%) of 28 healthy (trivial skin complaints but healthy as regards their genitals) individuals compared with an incidence of 30.3 per cent from cases of nongonococcal urethritis, 50.3 per cent from cases of subclinical nongonococcal urethritis, 34 per cent from cases of acute gonorrhea, and 47.8 per cent from cases of epididymitis without urethritis. The studies of Shepard introduce another facet to the already complex situation. He found PPLO in the urethral cultures of 33 per cent of 57 normal Negro male medical students and in only 2 per cent of 55 normal white male medical students and staff members in North Carolina. The student who yielded the positive culture was one of 24 married individuals in the group. Of the 38 Negro men with nongonococcal urethritis PPLO were recovered from 53 per cent, and the organisms were recovered from 56 per cent of the urethritis-free Negro men visiting a venereal disease clinic. Melen and Linnros (1952) found the incidence of PPLO in nongonococcal urethritis and healthy individuals to be only 18 per cent and 16 per cent respectively. Against these data one has to weigh the evidence that in many instances PPLO are the only organisms or the predominating organism cultivated from a pathologic process and when the organisms disappear during the course of therapy there is also a remission of symptoms. Three patients with urethritis were treated successfully with streptomycin and 7 patients were treated successfully with oxytetracycline, 2 of 3 patients responded to streptomycin therapy and 1 patient with urethritis of long duration was treated successfully with streptomycin (Melen and Linnros). Recovery following treatment with chlortetracycline was more frequent in those patients in whom PPLO could be demonstrated than in those in whom PPLO could not be demonstrated (Jensen 1954).

Other pathologic conditions of the male genitourinary tract from which PPLO have been isolated are fusospirochetal gangrene of the penis by Rutter and Wentholt (1950), phagedenic ulcer on a young man with para-

genicity of the strains of PPLO from man is fraught with difficulties. It is the usual finding that PPLO exhibit pathogenicity by experimental inoculation into only the species of animal from which the organisms were isolated or at the most, there is a limited range of susceptible hosts. Also many of the common laboratory animals are carriers of their own types of PPLO. However there are a few instances in which certain strains of PPLO from man have shown some pathogenicity for experimental animals. Two strains of PPLO were isolated by Ruter and Wenthold in 1952 from cases of balanitis. These differed from strains of PPLO isolated from cases of urethritis in colony morphology and cultural properties and were designated as G strains. Inoculation of these organisms into the plantae of the hind legs of young white mice produced pathologic changes in the tibiotarsal joints from which the organisms could be cultivated. In one case the knee joint and its surrounding musculature were involved. Virulence of the organism was enhanced by serial passage through the mice. No reaction could be elicited in the 2 patients when broth cultures of the 2 strains were injected intradermally. Likewise no reaction occurred when a washed suspension of the organisms was introduced into the preputial pouch of 2 healthy men. In a case of phagedenic ulcer associated with paraphimosis the intradermal injection of the necrotic material into the skin over the abdomen produced superficial ulcers. From these fusiform bacilli and spirochetes but no PPLO could be demonstrated. Another G strain of PPLO was isolated from a case of fusospirochetal vulvovaginitis and was similarly slightly pathogenic for young white mice. Two strains of PPLO isolated from men with urethritis failed to show pathogenicity when injected subcutaneously into the pads of the hind feet of young white mice. Additional evidence of the properties of communicability and pathogenicity of PPLO for man is the report by Kuzell and Mankle (1960) mentioned above and the infecting of human volunteers with *M. pneumoniae* by Chanock, Rifkind *et al* (1961).

#### OTHER ANIMALS

**Cattle.** The causative organism of bovine pleuropneumonia was cultivated by Nocard

and co workers in 1898 and studied by Bordet and by Borrel *et al* in 1910. This organism is the type species and the name *Mycoplasma mycoides* var. *mycoides* has been proposed. In 1950 Edward isolated 2 groups of pleuropneumonia-like organisms from the genital tract of cattle. One group of strains provisionally designated P strains for which the name *Mycoplasma bovigenitalium* has been proposed was thought to be capable of causing an inflammation of the bovine genital tract which predisposes to infertility. The strains were antigenically heterogeneous but they shared some antigens in common. They were antigenically distinct from the S strains and the organism of pleuropneumonia. Sera from infected animals did not show agglutinins for these strains. The other group of strains isolated from the genital tract of cattle provisionally designated S strains resembled the saprophytic PPLO in not requiring serum for growth and in growing at room temperature. They reacted serologically with the saprophytic strains from sewage; were antigenically heterogeneous and were not related antigenically to the P strains or to the organism of pleuropneumonia. It was thought that these strains were commensals or contaminants in the discharges. PPLO and various species of bacteria have been isolated from the lungs of calves with the bronchopneumonia associated with the disease commonly referred to as shipping fever (Carter 1954) but the etiologic role of these organisms remains to be proved.

Man may have more intimate contact with strains of PPLO from bovine sources than is generally realized. As Alstrom (1955) found these organisms present in the milk from diseased and supposedly healthy cows in herds in which there was clinical mastitis. Furthermore these organisms were reported to be resistant to pasteurization.

**Mice.** A communicable disease among white mice designated infectious catarrh was described by Nelson in 1937 as being caused by coccobacilli-form bodies. The similarity between the coccobacilli-form bodies and PPLO is so close that in 1950 Nelson stated that there is little reason for separating them. The organisms involved in the catarrhal condition tended to multiply throughout the respiratory tract particularly



ing beta hemolysis of guinea pig erythrocytes (Clyde 1963) in its nutritional requirements and antigenically (Taylor Robinson *et al* 1963) Like other respiratory pathogens the routes of transmission appear to be by aerosols and contact

PPLO have been cultivated from the lower end of the alimentary tract Harkness (1950) isolated PPLO 8 times from 45 individuals by means of anal swabs and swabs taken at sigmoidoscopy Morton *et al* (1952) isolated PPLO 3 times from feces from 27 individuals and Freundt (1953) isolated the organism from the rectal swabs of 7 of 25 women

No particular strain of PPLO from man has yet been demonstrated to have pyogenic properties as in the case of certain rat strains but PPLO have been associated with certain suppurative processes in man PPLO have been cultivated from abscessed Bartholin's glands in 6 cases a pelvic abscess associated with puerperal infection and a pelvic abscess associated with salpingitis (Dienes Ropes *et al*) a tubo ovarian abscess (Randall Stein and Ayres) and ovarian abscess in 2 patients and a periurethral abscess in a female patient (Melen 1952) in addition to 2 cases of brain abscess

Only 1 case of isolation of PPLO from an infection of the skin has been reported This infection a mixed infection with PPLO spirillae and fusiform bacilli was in and around the umbilicus of an obese woman in whom PPLO were also present in a leukorrheal exudate The skin and the genital strains of PPLO differed in several respects (Ruiter and Wentholt 1955)

Reports of involvement of the human central nervous system have not been numerous Mention has been made of the isolation of PPLO from brain abscesses in an individual injured with the stem of a smoking pipe and in a child PPLO were the only organisms cultured from spinal fluid from the case of meningitis that developed in an infant with a sacral meningocele which ruptured during birth (Davis and Arnstein 1953)

Cultivation of PPLO from the blood has been reported in a few cases and in these instances the bacteremia usually has been associated with a pathologic condition in some other part of the body Carlson *et al*

(1951) isolated the organisms from the blood cultures of 3 children Two of the children had purpura a splinter in the finger of one child developed into an indolent ulcer the second child experienced a human bite and also had an intussusception of the ileum The third child had a brain abscess and meningitis Slingerland and Morgan (1952) isolated PPLO from the bloodstream and cervical secretions during a febrile illness which had its onset 24 hours after childbirth The appearance of the organisms in the bloodstream at the onset of the acute illness their persistence in the blood for over 24 hours and their disappearance with recovery of the patient suggest that the organisms were the cause of the acute illness Stokes (1955) also reported a similar case of puerperal sepsis

Cultures of fluids from inflamed joints of individuals with PPLO in other regions of the body have yielded PPLO only occasionally as compared with the findings in animals Dienes Ropes *et al* cultured PPLO from the synovial fluids of 2 patients with Reiter's syndrome and Brown *et al* (1951) cultured the organisms only once from synovial fluids Kuzell and Mankle (1950) reported isolating PPLO from the joint fluid in 5 cases of Reiter's syndrome The organisms have also been isolated from knee joint fluid from 2 cases of polyarthritis in women (Butas 1957)

It is only natural that interest should be aroused in the possible presence of PPLO in the conjunctivae of cases of Reiter's syndrome the triad of symptoms of urethritis arthritis and conjunctivitis Frequently PPLO are isolated from the urethral discharges of patients with Reiter's syndrome and successful isolations of PPLO from fluids of arthritic joints are becoming more frequent PPLO were isolated by Kuzell and Mankle (1950) from the conjunctivae of 5 cases of Reiter's syndrome Two of 3 patients with Reiter's syndrome gave significant agglutinin titers with an antigen prepared from one strain of PPLO (Wallerstein *et al* 1946) With the currently improved methods of cultivation and of performing serologic tests the etiologic role of PPLO in Reiter's syndrome may now be investigated with better chances of success

The experimental determination of patho

noticeable effect the etiologic role of these strains for disease in sheep remains to be demonstrated. The situation may be similar to that in which Beveridge in 1941 isolated PPLO from cases of foot rot in sheep but showed that the organisms had no causal relationship with the disease (Greig 1955).

**Goats** There are at least 2 and possibly 3 diseases of goats which are thought to be caused by PPLO. Contagious agalactia was discovered by Bridre and Donatien in 1925 as being caused by pleuropneumonia organisms for which the name *Mycoplasma agalactiae* has been proposed (Edward and Freundt 1956). Later it was discovered (Longley in 1951 Durusan *et al.* 1952) that a contagious pleuropneumonia of goats was not caused by a filterable virus as originally thought but rather by PPLO for which the name *Mycoplasma mycoides* var. *capri* has been suggested. The pleuropneumonias of goats and cattle are similar in their pathology and the organisms of the 2 diseases have similar cultural properties. By means of the complement fixation test Edward in 1953 was able to demonstrate that the two species of organisms are serologically distinct but that the two may share common antigens. More recently a highly fatal disease characterized by septicemia and arthritis was detected for the first time among dairy goats on the North American continent. Goats, sheep and a pig were susceptible but mice, guinea pigs and a calf were resistant to experimental inoculation. However the organisms were highly virulent to chick embryos (Yamamoto *et al.* 1955).

**Swine** PPLO have been isolated from the turbinates of normal swine and swine suffering from infectious atrophic rhinitis (Switzer 1955). These organisms when inoculated intranasally into baby pigs frequently become established in the nasal cavity but do not produce gross atrophy of the nasal turbinates. Inoculated intraperitoneally into young pigs the organisms produce fibrinous peritonitis, pleuritis, pericarditis and arthritis. Carter in 1954 pointed out that these lesions resemble those of Glasser's disease and he too was able to reproduce them by the intraperitoneal injection of cultures of PPLO. Pigs over 6 weeks of age were observed by Switzer to show milder lesions. From 5 to 20 per cent

of the inoculated pigs developed arthritis. The organisms can be grown in embryonated chicken eggs with about one half the embryos developing lesions or dying. The swine PPLO were found to be avirulent for mice, guinea pigs, rabbits, chickens, turkeys, a calf and a lamb. The organisms do not produce acid from glucose, maltose, sucrose, lactose or mannite; they will withstand 56°C for 30 minutes but not for 1 hour. Swine PPLO probably play a secondary role to a virus in producing pig pneumonia (Carter and Schroder 1956). The name *Mycoplasma hyorhinus* was proposed for these organisms and their natural habitat appears to be the nasal cavities of swine.

**Dogs** Shoetensack in Japan in 1934 isolated from dogs with a respiratory type infection organisms which were similar to the organisms that cause pleuropneumonia in cattle. The name *Asterococcus canis* was suggested for these newly isolated organisms. In 1951 Edward and Fitzgerald in England isolated PPLO from the vaginal smears of 54 per cent of the dogs examined at a kennel and from the semen of a dog being investigated for sterility and epididymitis. There was evidence that the organisms could be transmitted venereally by the dogs. These authors also isolated PPLO from the throat specimens of 74 per cent of the dogs examined. On the basis of colony morphology practically all of the canine strains of PPLO could be classified into 3 types designated  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$ . This classification into 3 types was verified by serologic studies. The  $\alpha$  strains never were detected in throat specimens from the dogs but the 3 types were isolated from the vagina. The 3 types were isolated once from one vaginal specimen. Pathogenicity studies were not made. The PPLO isolated by Greig (1954) from dogs in Canada with kennel cough produced little if any effect in dogs on intranasal, subcutaneous and intravenous inoculation. The names *Mycoplasma spumans*, *M. canis* and *M. maculosum* have been proposed for the  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  strains isolated from dogs. An interesting observation is that of Dienes in 1939 in which he isolated a *Flavobacterium* and L-type colonies from the dog bite wound of a patient. How the organisms were introduced into the wound remains unknown.

in the middle ears and were referred to as the catarrhal strain. In the same year Nelson also described an outbreak of conjunctivitis unaccompanied by involvement of the respiratory tract in a colony of white mice. The organisms were referred to as the conjunctival strain as they exhibited marked differences from the catarrhal strain and also differed from the organisms described by Sabin. A high percentage of adult mice carried these organisms in their eyes but only a very small percentage of the carriers showed an inflammatory reaction. Transmission to the young was thought to be by parental contact after the eyes became opened and continued after weaning by direct contact with cage mates. The organisms were also isolated from the conjunctivae of 8 per cent of wild house mice. Organisms of the catarrhal type selectively localized in the genital tract after intraperitoneal injection of female weanling mice but organisms of the conjunctival type failed to survive in the abdominal cavity and produced no reaction in the mice (Nelson 1954). The growth of the catarrhal and the conjunctival strains of PPLO was greatly enhanced in the brains of Swiss mice but not in Princeton mice by the simultaneous intracerebral injection of mouse hepatitis virus obtained from Balb C mice. The growth and the pathogenicity of the catarrhal and the conjunctival strains of PPLO were greatly enhanced in the brains of Princeton mice but not in Swiss mice by the simultaneous intracerebral injection of mouse hepatitis virus obtained from Princeton mice (Nelson 1957).

During the brain to brain transfer of *Toxoplasma* in mice Sabin in 1938 in the United States encountered a new infectious agent with neurolytic properties. The intracerebral injection of the agent into mice produced a characteristic rolling of the mice on the long axis of the body. Later in the same year Sabin demonstrated the agent to be PPLO which elaborated an exotoxin. From the brain of one of 10 normal stock mice a strain of PPLO was isolated. During the following year this strain was found to produce arthritis in practically 100 per cent of the mice into which it was injected intravenously or intraperitoneally. Also in 1938 Findlay *et al* in England isolated from the brains of mice

during the intracerebral passage of the virus of lymphocytic choriomeningitis a strain of PPLO designated L<sub>3</sub> which produced the characteristic rolling symptoms observed years earlier. This strain and that of Sabin were identical serologically but differed in pathogenicity (Sabin, 1941).

PPLO have been isolated from the brain, the conjunctivae, the nasal mucosa and the lungs of normal mice. It is evident that mice frequently are carriers of PPLO and the organisms comprise a variety of immunologic and biologic types. This can introduce complications in experimental work with mice such as the finding by Edward in 1947 of PPLO in the seed culture of *Rickettsia orientalis* which had been obtained by the intranasal passage of material in mice.

Rats PPLO have been isolated from the lungs of rats exhibiting chronic bronchopneumonia or bronchiectasis (the L<sub>3</sub> organisms described by Klieneberger and Steadman in 1937 and 1940) but the investigators were unable to produce acute pulmonary disease with the cultures by injection. The organisms were isolated in 1939, from rats exhibiting polyarthritis by Findlay *et al* and in 1940 by Nelson from rats showing an infectious catarrhal condition. The pyogenic virus of the rat which was described by Woglom and Warren was identified as the L<sub>4</sub> strain of PPLO in 1939 by Klieneberger and Woglom and Warren. The L<sub>1</sub> variant of *S. moniliformis* has been found in rats independently of *S. moniliformis*.

Sheep The disease known as contagious agalactia was demonstrated by Bridre and Donatien in 1925 to be caused by microorganisms resembling those of pleuropneumonia of cattle. Although agalactia is a systemic disease the joints, the eyes and in lactating sheep and goats the mammary glands are affected. The name *Mycoplasma agalactiae* has been proposed for the causative organism. Recently strains of PPLO which are different from *M. agalactiae* have been isolated from the lungs of sheep in North America (Greig 1955, Adler *et al* 1956). These strains were infectious and lethal for chick embryos but were not infectious for mice, guinea pigs and rabbits. Since the parenteral inoculations of the strains into a limited number of sheep were without

isolated from the nasopharynx of healthy guinea pigs by Klieneberger in 1935 and from abscesses in guinea pigs (Klieneberger 1939 Findlay *et al.* in 1940)

**Horses** Theiss (1947) isolated the organisms from an aborted fetus vaginal secretions and uterine discharges and Ito (1961) reported isolating PPLO from horses

**Cats** Recently PPLO have been isolated from the conjunctivae of domestic cats (Yerasimedes and Smith unpublished observations)

**Hamsters and Monkeys** There is one report (Ito 1960) that PPLO have been isolated from hamsters Taylor Robinson *et al.* (1963) cite unpublished data that a strain of PPLO which cross reacted serologically with human type 1 strains had been isolated from the oropharynx of a *Cercopithecus* monkey

#### SAPROPHYTIC STRAINS

PPLO were isolated by Laird and Elford (1936) from all samples of raw sewage from 4 districts of London during the summer but not from London tap water or from fecal material of man rabbit rat or pig Optimum growth took place at temperatures of about 30° C in media with a reaction of about pH 8.0 and although a very nutritious medium was required enrichment of the medium with a native body protein was not essential for growth Similar organisms were isolated from soil manure and compost by Seufert in 1937 in Germany Saprophytic strains have been isolated also from the bovine genital tract The name *Mycoplasma lairdii* has been proposed for these strains

#### PATHOGENESIS

Little is known about the pathogenesis of infection with PPLO in man The organisms are communicable under natural and experimental conditions they may initiate or contribute to a pathologic process and specific antibodies may be demonstrated as a result of their activity They are capable of an intracellular existence so that one may expect a latent type of infection which could give rise to remission of symptoms or could be activated by trauma or stress

The L<sub>1</sub> variant of *S. moniliformis* is only

slightly if at all virulent for mice whereas the bacillary form of *S. moniliformis* is virulent (Freundt 1956b) This may indicate that in general PPLO may be expected to be less virulent than bacteria However some of the human strains of PPLO have been demonstrated to be slightly virulent for mice With organisms of slight virulence a lessened resistance on the part of the host will play an important part in determining whether or not an infection is established

When the organisms are introduced into the bloodstream as a result of trauma such as that accompanying childbirth sepsis occasionally develops Since growth of the organisms is inhibited by their reaction with antibodies it can be expected that they will remain in the bloodstream only until specific antibodies appear Contrariwise when the organisms are introduced into the central nervous system where the immune reaction of the tissue is poor infection may result In general it is to be expected that the organisms will be able to establish themselves on surfaces of the body or in foci where the environment is suitable for their multiplication This is evident from the reports of their isolation from abscesses and inflamed mucous membranes

Some strains such as those from the mouse show a predilection for certain tissues e.g. the respiratory tract the conjunctiva and the female genital tract It is not known whether any of the human strains show a similar specific tissue tropism

Mixed infections play an important role in enabling some strains of PPLO to proliferate in certain animal species and similar circumstances may be operating in man Mention has been made of the enhancement of the growth and the pathogenicity of PPLO in mice infected with mouse hepatitis virus Rolling disease is a new disease of mice was produced by Findlay *et al.* in 1938 at first only with a specific strain of PPLO (L<sub>1</sub>) together with some other nonspecific agent The nonspecific agent could be either the virus of lymphocytic choriomeningitis or of yellow fever (neurotropic strain) and climatic bubo or a suspension of serum agar culture medium Later by enhancing the virulence of the L<sub>1</sub> strain by rapid brain to brain transfer in mice rolling disease could be produced directly by injection of the cul-

**Avian Species** One of the areas of very active research in the relation of PPLO to infectious diseases is the general field of poultry science. A limited investigation demonstrated a serologic relationship between a strain of PPLO isolated from chickens and a strain isolated from man (Smith *et al* 1957) which indicates the advisability of studying the ecology of PPLO. Based on the study of only one species, the name *Mycoplasma gallinarum* has been proposed. However the relationship of this strain to those isolated from avian species particularly chickens and turkeys in the United States and Canada remains to be studied.

In extended studies of coryza in fowl started in the early 1930's Nelson cultivated coccobacilliform bodies which were later considered to be PPLO. The coryza of slow onset and long duration (coryza II) was shown to be caused by the coccobacilliform bodies whereas the coryza of rapid onset and short duration (coryza I) was caused by *H. gallinarum*. Coryza III had a rapid onset and a prolonged course and was found to be a mixed infection with *H. gallinarum* and coccobacilliform bodies. These interesting studies were confirmed by Adler and Yamamoto (1956b). Fahey and Crawley (1956) likewise presented evidence which they believed proved that infection of chicks with PPLO was mild in nature and was indistinguishable from coryza II. The organisms of chronic respiratory disease of chickens and of infectious sinusitis of turkeys are pathogenic for the developing chick embryo (Markham and Wong 1952).

It has been demonstrated that infected hens transmit their PPLO to the egg and thus infect the embryos. The PPLO and the host have established a state of reasonably peaceful coexistence so that only a small percentage of the embryos and young chicks are killed. The carrier chicks infect their pen mates during the growing period by means of aerosols or contact. The infection remains chronic in the adult birds and a small percentage of the adults pass the organisms through the egg to perpetuate the infection (Crawley and Fahey 1957).

If an infection with the virus of chronic respiratory disease or the virus of infectious bronchitis is superimposed on the mild infection with PPLO a much more serious

infection results. To bring under control the severe chronic respiratory disease of chickens it is necessary to break the cycle of transmission of PPLO from hen to egg. This is done preferably by the parenteral administration of antibiotics (Adler *et al* 1956). Thus in order to control the severe chronic respiratory disease in chickens it is necessary to bring under control one of the organisms involved in the mixed infection and the control of PPLO affords the most practical solution.

A hemagglutination inhibition (HI) test has been devised as a diagnostic test for infection with PPLO in chickens and in turkeys (Fahey 1954). The PPLO strains which are associated with chronic respiratory disease in chickens and infectious sinusitis in turkeys appear to be antigenically homogeneous with respect to this test and identical in morphology as shown by electron micrographs. The continuous administration of either chlortetracycline or oxytetracycline in the feed does not free chickens from their PPLO and the antibiotics either retard or completely suppress the production of HI antibodies (Fahey and Crawley 1955).

Pigeons with a mild respiratory disease have yielded PPLO in cultures of the nasal discharges (Mathey *et al* 1956). The organisms did not ferment any of several carbohydrates which were tested and they differed in antigenicity and pathogenicity for chickens and turkeys from strains of PPLO which have been encountered in these 2 species.

The isolation of PPLO from air sac exudate from a parakeet suffering from mild aerosacculitis introduces the possibility that isolating psittacosis virus from these birds may be more difficult (Adler 1957). The parakeet strain of PPLO was different antigenically from strains isolated from chickens and turkeys. The organisms multiplied in the developing chick embryo but produced no mortality.

PPLO and a virus were isolated by Fahey in Canada from ducks exhibiting a chronic respiratory disease. The duck strain of PPLO fermented glucose and maltose weakly but did not ferment sucrose, mannite and lactose. The role of these organisms in producing disease in ducks remains to be elucidated.

**Guinea Pigs** PPLO designated I<sub>2</sub> were

- Adler H E Yamamoto R and Cordy H R 1956 The effect of certain antibiotics and arsenicals in inhibiting growth of pleuropneumonia-like organisms isolated from goats and sheep *Cornell Vet* 46 206 216
- Adler H E Yamamoto R and Extrom S F 1956 Control of egg transmitted pleuropneumonia like organisms in two hatcheries through medication of the foundation stock *J Am Vet Med Ass* 128 313 315
- Alstrom I 1955 Filterbar pleomorf penicillin-och pasteuriserings-resistent mikroorganism pavisad i mjolk *Nord hyg tidskr* 36 230-232
- Amies C R and Jones H A 1957 A description of *Haemophilus vaginalis* and its L forms *Canad J Microbiol* 3 579 590
- Baernstein H D Jr and Quilligan J J Jr 1963 Cultivation of *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* (Eaton agent) *J Bact* 86 339
- Bailey J S Clark H W Felts W R Fowler R C and Brown T McP 1961 Antigenic properties of pleuropneumonia like organisms from tissue cell cultures and the human genital area *J Bact* 82 542 547
- Bandur B M and Dienes L 1963 L forms isolated from a strain of *Serratia* *J Bact* 86 829 836
- Barile M F Malizia W F and Riggs D B 1962 Incidence and detection of pleuropneumonia like organisms in cell cultures by fluorescent antibody and cultural procedures *J Bact* 84 130 136
- Bercovici B Persky B Rozansky R and Razin S 1962 *Mycoplasma* (pleuropneumonia like organisms) in vaginitis *Am J Obstet Gynec* 84 687 691
- Berg R L Weinberger H and Dienes L 1957 Acute hemorrhagic cystitis *Am J Med* 22 848
- Brown T McP Wichelhausen R H Merchant Wm R and Robinson L H 1951 A study of the antigen antibody mechanism in rheumatic diseases *Am J Med Sci* 221 618 625
- Brown T McP Wichelhausen R H Robinson L B and Merchant W R 1949 The in vivo action of aureomycin on pleuropneumonia like organisms associated with various rheumatic diseases *J Lab Clin Med* 34 1404 1410
- Butas C A 1957 The isolation of pleuropneumonia like organisms from two cases of polyarthritis *Canad J Microbiol* 3 419 426
- Carlson H J Spector B and Douglas H G 1951 Possible role of pleuropneumonia like organisms in etiology of disease in childhood *Am J Dis Child* 81 193 206
- Carter G R 1954 Pleuropneumonia like organisms isolated from bronchopneumonia of cattle *Science* 120 113
- Carter G R and Schroder J H 1956 Virus pneumonia of pigs in Canada with special reference to the role of pleuropneumonia like organisms *Cornell Vet* 46 344 354
- Chanock R M Dienes L Edward D G ff Freundt E A Hayflick L Hers J F ph Jensen K E Lu C Marmion H P Morton H E Mufson M A Smith P F Somerson N L and Taylor Robinson D 1963 *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* Proposed nomenclature for atypical pneumonia organism (Eaton agent) *Science* 140 662
- Chanock R M Hayflick L and Barile M F 1962 Growth on artificial medium of an agent associated with atypical pneumonia and its identification as a PPLO *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 48 41 49
- Chanock R M Rifkind D Kravetz H M Knight V and Johnson K M 1961 Respiratory disease in volunteers infected with Eaton agent a preliminary report *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 47 887
- Clark H W Fowler R C and Brown T McP 1961 Preparation of pleuropneumonia like organisms for microscopic study *J Bact* 81 500 502
- Clyde W A Jr 1963 Hemolysis in identifying Eaton's pleuropneumonia like organism *Science* 139 55
- Crawley J F and Fahey J E 1957 The use of the hemagglutination inhibition test for the control of PPLO infection in poultry *J Am Vet Med Ass* 130 187 190
- Davis J H and Arnstein L H 1953 Pleuropneumonia organism meningitis complicating ruptured meningocele Report of case with recovery *Pediatrics* 11 381 384
- Dienes L 1953 Some new observations on the L forms of bacteria *J Bact* 66 274 279
- Dienes L and Edsall G 1937 Observations on the L-organism of Kieneberger *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 36 740-744
- Dienes L and Madoff S 1953 Differences between oral and genital strains of human pleuropneumonia like organisms *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 82 36-38
- Dienes L Ropes M W Smith W E Madoff S and Bauer W 1948 The role of pleuropneumonia like organisms in genital

ture PPLO have been shown also to proliferate more readily in mice infected with ectromelia virus (Schauwecker, 1947) An infection with the virus of either chronic respiratory disease or infectious bronchitis superimposed on a mild infection with PPLO produced a more serious disease in chickens

### DIAGNOSIS

The presence of PPLO in the human body can be demonstrated only by cultivating the microorganisms in vitro as described in a previous section The characteristic appearances of the colonies on solid media and of the growth in liquid media are usually distinct enough to warrant the tentative placement of the microorganisms in the pleuropneumonia group In addition to their morphology colonies of suspected PPLO may be further verified by staining in situ in agar blocks by the method of Dienes or in petri dish cultures by means of diluted Dienes stain A technic whereby the colonies can be fixed to a microscopic slide and freed of the culture medium was described by Clark *et al* (1961) An agar block containing PPLO colonies is transferred to a microscope slide with the colonies in contact with the slide the slide is then placed in warm water and the temperature raised until the agar block melts or falls off the slide The slide with the colonies fixed to it is washed air dried and stained with Giemsa's or another appropriate stain Cultures stained by Giemsa's or Wayson's method may be examined to differentiate further the organisms from bacteria To study further the etiologic role of a strain of PPLO isolated from a patient, complement fixation tests may be performed with the patient's serum collected during the acute and the convalescent phases of the infection as was done by Stokes (1955)

Special serologic methods have been developed in studying avian strains A slide agglutination test employing a specially prepared antigen (Adler and Yamamoto 1956a) and a hemagglutination inhibition test have been employed for diagnostic work Human strains of PPLO do not agglutinate erythrocytes

### TREATMENT

The sulfonamides penicillin erythromycin polymyxin and bacitracin do not inhibit growth in vitro and are ineffective as therapeutic agents against the PPLO from man (Leberman *et al* 1950 Rubin *et al* 1954) Streptomycin shows greater and more uniform inhibitory action in vitro than does dihydrostreptomycin (Leberman *et al*) That PPLO can develop drug resistance was demonstrated when a streptomycin sensitive strain became streptomycin resistant during therapy (Paine *et al*) when 2 strains developed resistance in vitro (Melen 1952) and when a streptomycin resistant strain was discovered to be the cause of an outbreak of infectious sinusitis in turkeys (Fahey 1957) Chlorotetracycline and chloramphenicol inhibit the growth of some but by no means all strains in vitro Oxytetracycline and neomycin have an inhibitory action in vitro and oxytetracycline appears to be the drug of choice in the treatment of infections with PPLO (Leberman *et al* 1952 Robinson *et al* 1952) Oxytetracycline and tetracycline also appear to be the drugs of choice in the treatment of infections caused by the avian strains of PPLO (Yamamoto and Adler 1956)

Prior to the antibiotic era various gold compounds were found to be effective in preventing PPLO arthritis and encephalitis in mice and rats (Findlay *et al* 1940)

### REFERENCES

- References designated by an asterisk (\*) are review articles which contain more complete bibliographies of the literature on pleuropneumonia-like organisms
- Adler H E 1957 Isolation of a pleuropneumonia like organism from the air sac of a parakeet *J Am Vet Med Ass* 130 408 409
- Adler H E and Yamamoto R 1956a Preparation of a new pleuropneumonia like organism antigen for the diagnosis of chronic respiratory disease by the agglutination test *Am J Vet Res* 17 290 293
- 1956b Studies on chronic coryza (Nelson) in the domestic fowl *Cornell Vet* 46 337 343

- Jensen T 1954 Non gonococcal urethritis treated with aureomycin *Acta dermatovener* 34 82 88
- Klieneberger E 1939 Studies on pleuropneumonia like organisms Bacteriological features and serological relationships of strains from various sources *J Path Bact* 49 451 452
- 1940 The pleuropneumonia like organisms further comparative studies and a descriptive account of recently discovered types *J Hyg* 40 204 222
- Klieneberger Nobel E 1945 Pleuropneumonia like organisms in the human vagina *Lancet* 2 46 47
- 1962 Pleuropneumonia Like Organisms (PPLO) *Micoplasmataceae* New York Acad Press
- Klieneberger Nobel E and Cuckow F W 1955 A study of organisms of the pleuropneumonia group by electron microscopy *J Gen Microbiol* 12 95 99
- Kuzell W C and Mankle E A 1950 Cortisone acetate and terramycin in polyarthritis of rats *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 74 677 681
- 1960 Cultivation of pleuropneumonia like organisms in Reiter's disease including one instance of laboratory cross infection *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 79 Art 10 650 657
- Laidlaw P P and Elford W J 1936 A new group of filterable organisms *Proc Roy Soc [Biol]* 120 292 303
- Leberman P R, Smith P F and Morton H E 1950 The susceptibility of pleuropneumonia like organisms to the in vitro action of antibiotics aureomycin chloramphenicol dihydrostreptomycin streptomycin and sodium penicillin *G J Urol* 64 167 173
- 1952 Susceptibility of pleuropneumonia like organisms to action of antibiotics terramycin and neomycin *J Urol* 68 399 402
- Lynn H J and Morton H E 1956 The inhibitory action of agar on certain strains of pleuropneumonia like organisms *Applied Microbiol* 4 339 341
- McKay K A and Taylor J R E 1954 The reversion of L type cultures previously described as pleuropneumonia like and associated with chronic respiratory disease to an organism resembling *Hemophilus gallinarum* *Canad J Comp Med* 18 7 12
- Madoff S and Dienes L 1958 L forms from pneumococci *J Bact* 76 245 250
- Markham F S and Wong S C 1952 Pleuropneumonia like organisms in the etiology of turkey smutitis and chronic respiratory disease of chickens *Poultry Sci* 31 902
- Mathey W J Jr, Adler H E and Siddle P J 1956 Isolation of a pleuropneumonia like organism from pigeons *Am J Vet Res* 17 521 522
- Medill M A and Okane D J 1954 A synthetic medium for the L type colonies of *Proteus* *J Bact* 68 530 533
- Melen H 1952 The susceptibility of pleuropneumonia like organisms to the in vitro action of some antibiotics *Acta path microbiol scand* 30 98 103
- Melen H and Gotthardson A 1955 Complement fixation with human pleuropneumonia like organisms *Acta path microbiol scand* 37 196 200
- Melen B and Linnros H 1952 Pleuropneumonia like organisms in cases of non gonococcal urethritis in man *Acta dermatovener* 32 77 85
- Melen B and Odeblad E 1951 Pleuropneumonia like microorganisms in the female genito-urinary tract *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 3 47 51
- 1952 Pleuropneumonia like organisms in the genito-urinary tract of healthy women *Acta dermatovener* 32 74-76
- Morton H E 1962 Latex fixation and agglutination of pleuropneumonia like organisms (PPLO) *Bact Proc* M119 92
- Morton H E and Lecce J G 1953 Selective action of thallium acetate and crystal violet for pleuropneumonia like organisms of human origin *J Bact* 66 646 649
- Morton H E, Lecce J G, Oskay J J and Coy N H 1954 Electron microscope studies of pleuropneumonia like organisms isolated from man and chickens *J Bact* 68 697 717
- Morton H E, Smith P F and Keller H 1952 Prevalence of pleuropneumonia like organisms and the evaluation of media and methods for their isolation from clinical material *Am J Pub Health* 42 913 925
- Morton H E, Smith P F and Leberman P R 1951 The cultivation of pleuropneumonia like organisms from the human genitourinary tract with reference to their possible venereal transmission *Am J Syph* 35 14
- Morton H E, Smith P F, Williams N B and Eickenberg C F 1951 Isolation of pleuropneumonia like organisms from human saliva A newly detected member of the oral flora *J Dent Res* 30 415
- Nelson E L and Pickett M J 1951 The



- tourinary and joint diseases *New Eng J Med* 238 509 515 563 567
- Dienes L and Sharp J T 1956 The role of high electrolyte concentration in the production and growth of *L forms of bacteria* *J Bact* 71 208 213
- \*Dienes L and Weinberger H J 1951 The *L forms of bacteria* *Bact Rev* 15 245 288
- Dienes L, Weinberger H J and Madoff S 1950 Serological reactions of *L type cultures* isolated from *Proteus* *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 75 409-412
- Dienes L and Zamecnik P C 1952 Transformation of bacteria into *L forms* by amino acids *J Bact* 64 770 771
- Durusan R, Attila, C and Doğuer M 1952 Keçilerin salgın ciğeragrisi: I Stryolojisi uzerinde arastirmalar (Contagious pleuropneumonia of goats: I Research on its etiology) *Turk Vet Hekim Birliği Derg* 22 39
- Edward D G ff 1950 An investigation of pleuropneumonia like organisms isolated from the bovine genital tract *J Gen Microbiol* 4 415
- \*Edward D G ff 1954 The pleuropneumonia group of organisms: a review to gether with some new observations *J Gen Microbiol* 10 27 64
- Edward D G ff and Fitzgerald W A 1951 Cholesterol in the growth of organisms of the pleuropneumonia group *J Gen Microbiol* 5 576 586
- 1952 A growth factor needed to isolate organisms of the pleuropneumonia group from the genital tract of cattle *Vet Rec* 64 395
- Edward D G ff and Freundt E A 1956 The classification and nomenclature of organisms of the pleuropneumonia group *J Gen Microbiol* 14 197 207
- Edwards G A and Fogh J 1960 Fine structure of pleuropneumonia-like organisms in pure culture and in infected tissue culture cells *J Bact* 79 267 276
- Eisenstark A, Ward C H Jr and Kyle T S 1950 A study of large bodies in *Azotobacter agilis* *J Bact* 60 525 531
- Fahey J E 1954 A hemagglutination inhibition test for infectious sinusitis of turkeys *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 86 38-40
- 1957 Infectious sinusitis of turkeys caused by antibiotic resistant pleuropneumonia like organisms *Vet Med* 52 305 308
- Fahey J E and Crawley J F 1955 Studies on chronic respiratory disease of chickens
- VI The effects of antibiotics on the clinical and serological course of CRD *Canad J Comp Med* 19 281 286
- 1956 Studies on chronic respiratory disease of chickens VII The nature of infection with the pleuropneumonia like organisms *Canad J Comp Med* 20 7 19
- Findlay G M, Mackenzie R D and MacCallum F O 1940 Chemotherapeutic experiments on pleuropneumonia like organisms in rodents *Brit J Exp Path* 21 13 22
- Freundt E A 1953 The occurrence of micrococci (pleuropneumonia like organisms) in the female genital urinary tract *Acta path microbiol scand* 32 468-480
- Freundt E A 1954 Morphological and biochemical investigations of human pleuropneumonia like organisms (micrococci) *Acta path microbiol scand* 34 127 144
- 1956a Occurrence and ecology of *Mycoplasma* species (pleuropneumonia like organisms) in the male urethra *Brit J Ven Dis* 32 188 194
- 1956b Experimental investigations into the pathogenicity of the L-phase variant of *Streptobacillus moniliformis* *Acta path microbiol scand* 38 246 258
- Gotthardson A and Melen B 1953 Isolation of pleuropneumonia like organisms from ovarian abscesses *Acta path microbiol scand* 33 291 293
- Greig A S 1954 The significance of a pleuropneumonia like organism in kennel cough *Canad J Comp Med* 18 275 279
- 1955 The isolation of pleuropneumonia like organisms from the respiratory tracts of sheep *Canad J Comp Med* 19 265 271
- Harkness A H 1950 Non gonococcal Urethritis *Edinburgh Livingstone*
- Hijmans W 1962 Absence of the group specific and cell wall polysaccharide antigen in L phase variants of Group D streptococci *J Gen Microbiol* 28 177
- Homma Y J and Kusano N 1954 Studies on the pleuropneumonia like organism isolated from human chronic vulvitis *Jap J Bact* 9 1121 1124
- Huysmans Evers A G M and Ruys A C 1956 Microorganisms of the pleuropneumonia group (family of *Mycoplasmataceae*) in man I and II *Antonie van Leeuwenhoek* 22 371 376 377 384
- Ito S 1960 Studies on the distribution of pleuropneumonia like organisms (PPLO) among human and animals *Jap J Bact* 15 1193 (*Biol Abstr* 36 6090 1961)

- ascitic fluid which is required by certain pleuropneumonia-like organisms *J Bact* 61 395-405
- 1952 Further characterization of the protein factor required by certain pleuropneumonia-like organisms for growth *in vitro* *Arch Biochem Biophys* 38 23-28
- Smith P F, Morton H E and Keller R 1953 Nonantigenicity of the protein growth factor required by certain pleuropneumonia-like organisms *J Bact* 65 751-752
- Smith P F, Peoples D M and Morton H E 1957 Conversion of pleuropneumonia-like organisms to bacteria *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 96 550-553
- Smith P F and Sasaki S 1958 Stability of pleuropneumonia-like organisms to some physical factors *Appl Microbiol* 6 184-189
- Somerson N L and Morton H E 1953 Reduction of tetrazolium salts by pleuropneumonia-like organisms *J Bact* 65 245-251
- Somerson N L, Rubin A, Smith P F and Morton H E 1955 The presence of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* and pleuropneumonia-like organisms in the cervix uteri *Am J Obstet Gynec* 69 848-853
- Somerson N L, Taylor Robinson D and Chanock R M 1963 Hemolysin production as an aid in the identification and quantitation of Eaton agent (*Mycoplasma pneumoniae*) *Am J Hyg* 77 122-128
- Stokes E J 1955 Human infection with pleuropneumonia-like organisms *Lancet* 1 276-279
- Suchanova M and Patocka FR 1957 An attempt to attain L forms of *Listeria monocytogenes* *Cesk epidem* 6 133
- Switzer W P 1955 Studies on infectious atrophic rhinitis IV Characterization of a pleuropneumonia-like organism isolated from the nasal cavities of swine *Am J Vet Res* 16 540-544
- Taylor Robinson D, Somerson N L, Turner H C and Chanock R M 1963 Serological relationships among human mycoplasmas as shown by complement fixation and gel diffusion *J Bact* 85 1261
- Theiss O 1947 Mikromyzeten und L Kulturen *Zbl Bakt (Orig)* 152 209-214
- van Iterson W and Ruys A C 1960 The fine structure of the Mycoplasmataceae (microorganisms of the pleuropneumonia group = PPLO) I *Mycoplasma hominis* *M fermentans* and *M salivarium* *J Ultrastruct Res* 3 282-301
- Wallerstein, R, Vallee H and Turner L 1946 The possible relationship of the pleuropneumonia-like organisms to Reiter's disease, rheumatoid arthritis and ulcerative colitis *J Infect Dis* 79 134-140
- Ward J R and Martin C H 1962 Production of L phase variants of bacteria with cycloserine *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 111 156
- Warren J 1942 Observations on some biological characteristics of organisms of the pleuropneumonia group *J Bact* 43 211-228
- Wittler R G, Cary S G and Lindberg R B 1956 Reversion of a pleuropneumonia-like organism to a *corynebacterium* during tissue culture passage *J Gen Microbiol* 14 763-774
- Yamamoto R and Adler H E 1956 The effect of certain antibiotics and chemical agents on pleuropneumonia-like organisms of avian origin *Am J Vet Res* 17 538-542
- Yamamoto R, Adler H E and Cordy D 1955 The propagation of a virulent goat pleuropneumonia-like organism in the chick embryo *J Bact* 69 472-476

- recovery of *L* forms of *Brucella* and their relation to *Brucella* phage J Infect Dis 89 226 232
- Nelson J II 1933 Studies on an uncomplicated coryza of the domestic fowl II The relation of the bacillary coryza to that produced by exudate J Exp Med 58 297 304
- 1954 The selective localization of murine pleuropneumonia like organisms in the female genital tract on intraperitoneal injection in mice J Exp Med 100 311 320
- 1957 The enhancing effect of murine hepatitis virus on the cerebral activity of pleuropneumonia like organisms in mice, J Exp Med 106 179 190
- Nicol C S and Edward D G II 1953 Role of organisms of the pleuropneumonia group in human genital infections Brit J Ven Dis 29 141
- Paine T F Jr Murray R Perlmuter I and Finland M 1950 Brain abscess and meningitis associated with a pleuropneumonia like organism: Clinical and bacteriological observations in a case with recovery Ann Int Med 32 554 562
- Randall J H Stein II J and Ayres J 1950 Pleuropneumonia like organisms of the female genital tract study of 300 gynecological cases Am J Obstet Gynec 59 404-413
- Robinson L B Wichelhausen R H and Brown T McP 1952 Sensitivity studies on human pleuropneumonia like organisms J Lab Clin Med 39 290-302
- Rubin A Somerson N L Smith P F and Morton H E 1954 The effects of the administration of erythromycin upon *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* and pleuropneumonia like organisms in the uterine cervix Am J Syph 38 472-477
- Ruiter M and Wentholt H M M 1950 A pleuropneumonia like organism in primary fusospirochetal gangrene of the penis J Invest. Dermat 15 301 304
- The occurrence of a pleuropneumonia like organism in fuso spirillary infections of the human genital mucosa J Invest Dermat 18 313 325
- 1955 Isolation of a pleuropneumonia like organism from a skin lesion associated with a fusospirochetal flora J Invest Dermat 24 31 34
- \*Sabín A B 1941 The filtrable microorganisms of the pleuropneumonia group Bact Rev 5 1-67
- Schaffarzick W and Mankle E. A. 1953 Reiter's disease and pleuropneumonia like organisms Report of two cases Stanford Med Bull 11 262 265
- Schaub I G and Guilbeau J A 1949 The occurrence of pleuropneumonia like organisms in material from the postpartum uterus simplified methods for isolation and staining Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 84 1 10
- Schauwecker R 1947 Untersuchungen über einen dem Erreger der Pleuropneumonie ähnlichen Mikroorganismus in der weissen Maus Schweiz Ztschr allg Path 10 714 724
- Schumke R T and Barile M F 1963 Arginine metabolism in pleuropneumonia like organisms isolated from mammalian cell culture J Bact 86 195 206
- Sharp J T Hymans W and Dienes L 1957 Examination of the *L* forms of group A streptococci for the group-specific polysaccharide and M protein J Exp Med 105 153 159
- Shepard M C 1956 T form colonies of pleuropneumonia like organisms J Bact 71 362 369
- Shklatir I L Mazzarella M A Gutekunst R R and Higgins E M 1962 Isolation and incidence of pleuropneumonia like organisms from the human oral cavity J Bact 83 785 788
- Slingerland D W and Morgan H R 1952 Sustained bacteremia with pleuropneumonia like organisms in a postpartum patient JAMA 150 1309 1310
- Smith P F 1956 Quantitative measurement of the growth of pleuropneumonia like organisms Appl Microbiol 4 254 259
- 1957a Amino acid metabolism by pleuropneumonia like organisms III Glutamic acid J Bact 74 75 78
- 1957b Conversion of citrulline to ornithine by pleuropneumonia like organisms J Bact 74 801 806
- 1963 The role of sterols in the growth and physiology of pleuropneumonia like organisms P 518 Recent Progress in Microbiology VIII Int Congress for Microbiology Montreal Univ Toronto Press
- Smith P F Lecce J G and Lynn R J 1954 A lipoprotein as a growth factor for certain pleuropneumonia like organisms J Bact 68 627 633
- Smith P F and Morton H E 1951 Isolation of pleuropneumonia like organisms from the throats of humans Science 113 623 624
- 1951 The separation and characterization of the growth factor in serum and

could be transmitted to volunteers by means of filtered respiratory tract secretions

Studies in the last few years (Marmion and Goodburn 1961 Chanock *et al* 1961a b Clyde 1961 Clyde Denny and Dingle 1961 Rifkind *et al* 1962 Chanock Hay flick and Barile 1962) have demonstrated the etiologic relationship of *M. pneumoniae* to cases of primary atypical pneumonia having cold hemagglutinins

## CLINICAL PICTURE

The incubation period varies from 1 to 3 weeks with an average of 12 to 14 days. An exact clinical characterization of the disease and its various manifestations is impossible because of diagnostic difficulties which will be mentioned later. However a reasonably reliable concept can be obtained from cases observed during epidemics and cases resulting from the inoculation of volunteers (Reimann 1938 Dingle and Finland 1942 Curnen *et al* 1945 Commission on Acute Respiratory Diseases 1946 1947a b Jordan *et al* 1951 Doherty 1957 Chanock *et al* 1960 1961a b Mufson *et al* 1961 Kings ton *et al* 1961 Miller *et al* 1963).

The onset is usually gradual and insidious. The clinical features are those of a mild to moderately severe infection and the early complaints may be referable to either the upper or the lower respiratory passages or to both or may be principally constitutional in nature. Respiratory symptoms include throat irritation and cough the latter being the most frequent and characteristic feature. Constitutional symptoms include headache malaise feverishness chilliness fatigue and anorexia. Headache is frequently an outstanding complaint and is particularly distressing when the patient coughs. The cough is dry and frequently paroxysmal during the first 3 to 5 days of illness. Ultimately it is productive of sputum which is either mucoid or mucopurulent. Blood streaked sputum occurs in less than 10 per cent of cases. A variable percentage of patients experience chest pain which appears to be directly related to the severity of the cough is sub-sternal in location and is described as a burning sensation or aching discomfort. In contrast with bacterial pneumonia most pa-

tients do not appear to be very ill early in the disease a shaking chill is rare the pulse is slow in relation to the fever respiration is normal or slightly increased grossly bloody sputum and pleural pain are uncommon herpes labialis is seldom present.

Examination usually reveals few strikingly abnormal physical signs. Early in the course the patient appears to be mildly or moderately ill with little more than slight inflammation of the throat. Minimal dullness to percussion and diminution of breath sounds may be present but seldom reflect the extent of infiltration demonstrated by roentgenograms. Early in the disease the same is true of rales. Later the most characteristic physical finding is the presence of fine subcrepitant sticky rales in the absence of signs of true consolidation. As the disease progresses rhonchi or coarse rales may be heard. Myringitis has been described in volunteers (Rifkind *et al* 1962).

Roentgenographic examination often shows evidence of pneumonia before physical signs are apparent the disproportion between signs of infiltration and degree of pulmonary involvement demonstrated roentgenographically being an almost constant feature. The consolidation usually appears to be most dense at the hilum and is progressively less dense near the periphery. The borders of the pneumonic lesions are irregular and extension seems to occur in patchy fashion along the course of the bronchovascular trunks. The shadows may appear diffuse mottled feathery or in rare instances dense. The lower lobes are involved most frequently although any area in the lungs may be affected. In approximately 50 per cent of patients pneumonia is present in only one lobe. Spread of the infiltration with resolution of the early lesions as later ones appear is not uncommon. Thus the changes are consistent with the concept that the infiltrative process is one of peribronchial peribronchiolar and interstitial inflammation associated with focal atelectasis and edema. The roentgenographic signs may be transitory for a few days or may be progressive they generally undergo slow resolution over a period of 1 to 3 weeks. Residual nodular densities or prominent bronchovascular markings may persist for several weeks.

---

WILLIAM S JORDAN, JR., M D

*School of Medicine University of Virginia*

and

JOHN H DINGLE, M D

*School of Medicine Western Reserve University*

---

## 36

# Mycoplasma Pneumoniae Infections

### INTRODUCTION

Primary atypical pneumonia is an acute usually self limited respiratory disease characterized by constitutional symptoms, cough and pulmonary infiltration most readily demonstrated by roentgenogram. Obviously these characteristics are not specific, and similar clinical features may be manifested by several bacterial, viral and rickettsial diseases of established etiology such as tularemia, adenovirus infections, psittacosis and Q fever. One form of this syndrome featured by pneumonia and the development of cold hemagglutinins appeared to be an entity. Such has proved to be the case and a pleuropneumonia-like organism now termed *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* (Chanock *et al.* 1963a) has been established as the causative agent. However pneumonia illnesses occur in which this agent or other known agents cannot be found, and such cases are still referred to as primary atypical pneumonia.

### HISTORY

The differentiation of mycoplasmal pneumonia and other forms of primary atypical pneumonia from the bacterial pneumonias was accomplished in the late 1930's and early 1940's but it is probable that some of

the similar cases reported previously represented the same disease. Sections of lungs removed from soldiers during the Civil War showed features resembling those noted in fatal cases in more recent years. Perhaps some of the influenzal pneumonias of World War I also were instances of the mycoplasmal variety of primary atypical pneumonia. Between 1930 and 1937 Arrasmith, Gallagher, Bowen, Allen and Scadding reported cases in adolescents and young adults of pneumonia characterized by a benign course and a lack of correlation between roentgenographic changes and physical signs. In 1938 and 1939 Reimann, Smiley and others described similar cases and classified the disease as a new entity. Subsequently with differentiation aided by the effectiveness of the sulfonamide drugs and penicillin in the bacterial pneumonias and the occasional epidemic occurrence of this nonbacterial disease, the clinical and the epidemiologic features of primary atypical pneumonia were detailed by Kneeland and Smetana, Longcope, Dingle and Finland and many others. During World War II the disease occurred commonly especially among military personnel and the Commission on Acute Respiratory Diseases provided evidence regarding its etiology by demonstrating that pneumonia



FIG 2 (A) Bronchiole containing polymorphonuclear leukocytes in its lumen. The epithelium is increased in thickness but is still intact. The wall of the bronchiole is infiltrated with mononuclear cells. Phloxinemethylene blue stain ( $\times 100$ ). (B) Swollen alveolar walls and alveoli containing exudate of desquamated lining cells and mononuclear cells. Giemsa stain ( $\times 100$ ). (Parker F Jr, Jolliffe L S and Finland M. 1947. Primary atypical pneumonia: report of 8 cases with autopsies. *Arch Path* 44: 581)

SL 140

♀ 37 yrs

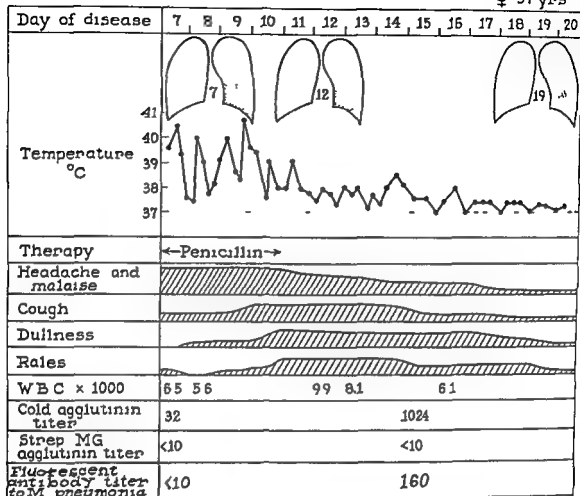


FIG 1 Chart of clinical findings in a case of mycoplasmal pneumonia

longer. It is emphasized that the x ray picture is not distinctive or diagnostic and is simulated by other forms of pulmonary disease.

Figure 1 illustrates the course of a case of average severity. In this patient constitutional symptoms, headache and cough were prominent, and at the time of hospitalization on the 7th day there were no signs of consolidation and few rales despite demonstrable infiltration. Eventually, as happens in most instances, this discrepancy tended to disappear and the extent of the physical signs became more comparable with the roentgenographic changes. As in the case illustrated, the majority of patients have normal total and differential leukocyte counts. The

count may become elevated as the illness progresses, most often in association with spread of the infiltration in the absence of superimposed bacterial complications. Erythrocyte counts and hemoglobin values are normal in uncomplicated cases. The sedimentation rate is elevated. The urine is normal. Culture of the sputum shows bacterial species normally found in the respiratory tract. *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* may be cultured from the throats and the sputa of these patients. As noted subsequently, a variety of immunologic reactions occur with sera of convalescent patients, the most useful of which are the development of antibodies to *M. pneumoniae* and of cold hemagglutinins. Occasionally, biologic false positive



FIG. 2 (A) Bronchiole containing polymorphonuclear leukocytes in its lumen. The epithelium is increased in thickness but is still intact. The wall of the bronchiole is infiltrated with mononuclear cells. Phloxin-methylene blue stain ( $\times 100$ ). (B) Swollen alveolar walls and alveoli containing exudate of desquamated lining cells and mononuclear cells. Giemsa's stain ( $\times 100$ ). (Parker F. Jr, Jolliffe L. S. and Finland M. 1947. Primary atypical pneumonia: report of 8 cases with autopsies. *Arch. Path.* 44: 581.)



Wassermann or Kahn reactions may be obtained

The course of illness is extremely variable the duration of fever and the degree to which the temperature is elevated range widely. Fever may be present from 1 day to 6 weeks it may be sustained but is most often remittent it usually terminates by lysis in from 7 to 14 days. During the illness headache, cough and sweating are commonly the most distressing symptoms. With extensive pulmonary infiltration, dyspnea, cyanosis and abdominal distention occur. In severely ill patients the infection may aggravate or precipitate cardiovascular dysfunction including auricular fibrillation, decompensation or circulatory collapse. However, such an event is rare; accordingly, the case fatality rate is low (0.1 to 0.2%) (Dingle *et al* 1944). Resolution begins with return of the temperature to normal and convalescence is usually uneventful except for asthenia.

Complications are uncommon but involvement of nearly all organ systems has been reported: myringitis, sinusitis, dermatitis, pericarditis, myocarditis, encephalitis, polyneuritis and thrombophlebitis. Ulcerative tracheobronchitis may persist but a residual of true bronchiectasis is apparently rare. Although follow-up studies have not been carried out extensively enough to permit a reliable appraisal of residual complications, acute hemolytic or embolic reactions may occur in certain patients with high titers of cold hemagglutinins, an event usually induced by chilling. Secondary bacterial infection is very uncommon.

### PATHOLOGIC PICTURE

No fatal cases have been reported since the nature of the causative organism was established. The original Mac strain of *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* was isolated from the lung of a fatal case in California (Eaton *et al* 1944). One (S1) of several strains grown in chick embryos in Boston in 1954 to 1955 (Liu 1957) and shown by immunofluorescence to be identical with the Mac strain was isolated from the frozen lung specimen of a patient who died in 1943. This patient was case 7 of a series of 8 fatal cases of cold hemagglutinin positive pneumonia with

autopsies (Parker *et al* 1947), a fact that provides presumptive evidence that the other cases with similar pathologic pictures also succumbed to mycoplasmal pneumonia. Because of the strong association of *M. pneumoniae* infections with the development of cold hemagglutinins, it is assumed that other fatal cases studied in the 1940s (Golden 1944) may be attributed to such infections. Despite reservations regarding the lack of etiologic confirmation in these cases, the changes described—in themselves not diagnostic—constitute the available information regarding the pathologic picture.

Grossly, the lungs are heavier than normal and areas of congestion and hemorrhage are apparent. The pleural surfaces are usually normal but may show patches of fibrinous exudate. Occasionally, small amounts of straw-colored pleural fluid are present. The pneumonic areas may be extensive and wide spread or discrete, circumscribed and multiple. Nodular focal lesions resembling miliary granulomata may be present. Various stages of consolidation as well as areas of atelectasis and emphysema are seen. There is bronchitis and bronchiolitis, and the areas of infiltration are particularly prominent surrounding bronchi and bronchioles. The lumina of these structures contain tenacious exudate. The bronchial mucosa is inflamed and ulcerated.

Microscopically, the picture is one of interstitial pneumonia and necrotizing bronchitis and bronchiolitis (Fig. 2). The walls of the bronchi and the bronchioles show infiltration with mononuclear and polymorphonuclear cells which may extend into the peribronchiolar tissue and alveolar walls. There is necrosis of epithelial cells with desquamation of the mucosa and ulceration. The lumina contain this debris mixed with a purulent or mucoid exudate of mononuclear cells, neutrophils and fibrin. The alveoli show thickening of their walls, dilation of the septal capillaries, edema in varying degrees and infiltration of the septa by lymphocytes, mononuclear cells and erythrocytes. The alveolar spaces may be air-containing, collapsed or partially filled with exudate and edema fluid. Bacteria usually are seen in the pneumonic areas.

Pathologic alterations in other organs have

FIG 3 A microcolony of *M. pneumoniae* in rhesus monkey kidney cell culture. The colony which measures  $15\ \mu$  in diameter lies at the cytoplasmic junction of 3 cells whose deeply stained nuclei occupy the periphery of the figure. The minute cocci composing the colony are just discernible at this magnification. Intensified Giemsa  $\times 1000$  (From Dr W. A. Clyde Jr.)



been observed particularly acute follicular splenitis, mesenteric lymphadenitis, focal hepatic necrosis, acute myocarditis and hemorrhagic encephalitis.

#### EXPERIMENTAL INFECTIONS HOST RANGE

The studies of the Commission on Acute Respiratory Diseases (1946) indicated that the disease could be transmitted and passed in volunteers under conditions suggesting a viral etiology. When sera preserved from those experiments were studied using immunofluorescent techniques (Clyde *et al.* 1961) it was demonstrated that Eaton's agent, now called *M. pneumoniae*, had been involved in these experiments. After the agent had been grown in tissue culture but before it was known to be a PPLO, infections were induced in volunteers with an inoculum grown in monkey kidney cells (Chanock *et al.* 1961b). In both the earlier and the later groups of volunteers, antibody responses were associated with cases of pneumonia and with a spectrum of respiratory disease ranging down to subclinical infection. The more severe illnesses tended to occur in men without preinoculation antibody. In both groups, increases in titer of cold hemagglutinins and of streptococcus MG agglutinins developed in

a significant percentage of volunteers mimicking serologic changes seen in natural infections. Incubation periods of 9 to 12 days were consistent with those of the natural disease (Jordan 1949). Volunteers given the tissue culture propagated strain developed bullous myringitis (Riskind *et al.* 1962), a finding now described in naturally occurring infections. Recently 2 strains of *M. pneumoniae* grown on special PPLO medium were administered to 42 antibody-free volunteers (Couch *et al.* 1963). Detectable illness occurred in 23; febrile illness occurred in 8, none developed pneumonia or bullous myringitis. The organism was recovered from 21 of 27 volunteers during 2 to 4 weeks after inoculation. Thirty-eight of the 42 volunteers developed antibody to *M. pneumoniae* as detected by immunofluorescence. 23 developed complement-fixing antibody. Surprisingly in view of the mildness of the infections, 31 developed a rise in cold hemagglutinins and a rise in agglutinins for streptococcus MG. It was suggested that propagation on a cell-free agar medium resulted in a decrease in virulence, a finding with implications for the development of attenuated strains to be used for immunization of man.

*M. pneumoniae* will replicate in a variety of tissue culture cells in chick embryos and in cotton rats, guinea pigs and hamsters.

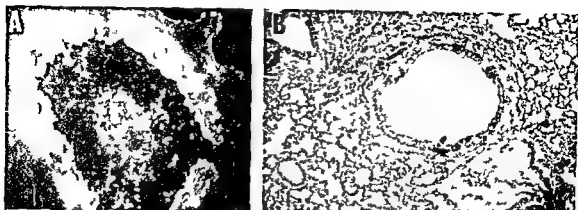


FIG 4 (A) Cross section of bronchus from a chick embryo infected with *M. pneumoniae*. The white area is a zone of intense fluorescence and represents the area in which antibody has been bound to antigen in the bronchial mucosa  $\times 160$  (Clyde W A Jr and Jordan W S Jr Diagnostic Procedures for Viral and Rickettsial Diseases ed 3 p 572 copy right by American Public Health Association New York 1964)

(B) Cross section of hamster bronchus 12 days following intranasal inoculation with broth culture of *M. pneumoniae*. Interstitial and peribronchial mononuclear cell infiltration extends through the muscularis of the bronchus  $\times 35$  (From Drs A S Dajani and W A Clyde Jr)

Growth without obvious cytopathology occurs in monkey kidney cells (Chanock *et al* 1960b Clyde 1961) and chick endothelial cells (Gordon *et al* 1960) growth accompanied by cytopathic effects has been noted in continuous human amnion and lung cell lines (Eaton *et al* 1962). Extracellular microcolonies of minute cocci (Fig 3) are identifiable after infected tissue cells are stained (Clyde 1961, Eaton *et al* 1962). These clumps of minute granules react specifically with fluorescein labeled antibody. Eaton (1962) has also noted intracytoplasmic microcolonies. *Coccobacilli* line the bronchi of infected chick embryos in areas corresponding to those which contain antigens localized by immunofluorescence (Fig 4 A) (Marmon and Goodburn 1961). It was Liu's use of the immunofluorescent technique to detect such antigens which facilitated studies in chick embryos and cotton rats.

Eaton *et al* (1942 1944) reported the production of pneumonic lesions in cotton rats and hamsters following primary intranasal inoculation of sputa and lung suspensions. On serial passage the lesions either disappeared or apparently were replaced by lesions due to contamination or latent viruses. The inoculation of chick embryos amniotically with filtered sputum failed to produce

any evidence of infection but lesions could be induced in cotton rats and hamsters inoculated intranasally with 20 per cent suspensions of these infected chick embryo tissues. The agent (Mac strain) was maintained on repeated passage in chick embryos. Liu (1957) demonstrated the transmission of infection in the chick embryo using this strain and sputa and lung (Sil strain) from cases as indicated in two ways by the fluorescent antibody technique and by the induction of pulmonary consolidation in cotton rats following intranasal inoculation with suspensions of chick embryo tissue. Paradoxically, no lesion was recognizable at the site of the antigen in the chick embryo (Donald and Liu 1959) and no antigen could be detected at the site of the pneumonic lesion in the cotton rat. Dajani and Clyde (1963) have undertaken to study the pathogenesis of infection in hamsters inoculated with broth grown *M. pneumoniae* using cultural methods now available to quantitate the growth of the organism in various tissues of the respiratory tract. Interstitial and peribronchial polymorphonuclear and mononuclear cell infiltration with mononuclear elements predominating (Fig 4 B) similar to that seen in man has been induced and additional studies of antigen localization should

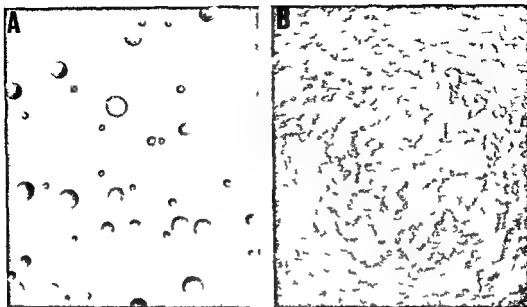


FIG 5 (A) *M. pneumoniae* colonies after 1 week of growth on transparent agar. The colonies appear as small spheres embedded in the agar matrix. Colony diameter varies from 10 to 100  $\mu$ . Unstained  $\times 400$ .

(B) Week-old culture of *M. pneumoniae* 24 hours after addition of sheep blood agar overlay. Zones of beta hemolysis surround individual colonies and coalesce to form larger areas where colonies are closely spaced  $\times 50$ . (From Clyde W A Jr and Denny F W Jr. *The Etiology and Therapy of Atypical Pneumonia*. Med Clin North Am 47: 1291)

clarify the nature of the experimental disease in this species

## ETIOLOGY

In 1957 Eaton and Liu noted that the antibiotic spectrum of the atypical pneumonia agent corresponds most closely to some strains of pleuropneumonia-like organisms or to rickettsiae and recalled that a search for PPLO had been made earlier by staining and culture methods in the regular passages of the agent. Although the results were negative, the suggestion that the agent might be a PPLO was revived when it was shown to be sensitive to gold salts and cocobacillary forms were seen in infected chick embryos (Marmon and Goodburn 1961) and in tissue cultures (Clyde 1961). That Eaton's agent was indeed a member of the *Mycoplasmataceae* was established when Chanock, Hayflick, and Barile (1962) successfully cultivated the organism in arti-

ficial media. *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* has been proposed as a specific name for the organism (Chanock *et al* 1963a).

*M. pneumoniae* shares the general properties of other mycoplasmas as regards size, shape, lack of a rigid cell wall, and ability to grow in a cell-free environment. Individual organisms are estimated by filtration to be 180 to 250 millimicrons in diameter (Eaton *et al* 1945a). Colony size is variable but seldom exceeds 0.5 mm. Since the colonies grow into the agar, they appear as spheres on the surface of a transparent agar medium (Fig 5A). A surrounding halo formed by surface growth on the agar is usually not seen as opposed to the fried egg morphology of *M. hominis* and *M. salivarium*.

Most mycoplasmas have fastidious nutritional requirements: cholesterol, serum, ascitic fluid, or egg yolk being necessary for growth. In addition, *M. pneumoniae* requires factors present in horse serum and fresh yeast

extract The organism ferments glucose, maltose, dextrin, xylose, mannose and starch (Chanock *et al* 1963b) Glucose supplementation enhances the growth of the organism in broth and the production of acid helps to distinguish it from other human mycoplasmas with the exception of *M fermentans* *M pneumoniae* grows more slowly on agar than other strains and colonies of naturally occurring strains may not be evident for 6 to 12 days Colonies develop more rapidly after 3 to 10 passages Growth in a broth medium also is slower than that of other human species maximum titers are reached by 9 to 16 days The organism will grow both aerobically and anaerobically A diphasic medium of equal parts of agar and broth incorporating a pH indicator, penicillin and thallium acetate is commonly used for primary isolation attempts (Kenny 1963) Free floating colonies (10 to 100 microns) which produce a finely granular turbidity can be visualized by examining the tube at 50 to 100 $\times$  magnification or by placing a drop of medium on a slide The broth is then subcultured on agar and the colonies tested for hemolytic capacity

The ability of *M pneumoniae* to lyse mammalian erythrocytes is a biologic property not shared by other human mycoplasma (Clyde 1963a Somerson *et al* 1963) Human horse guinea pig and sheep erythrocytes are lysed the cells of the last two species being the indicators of choice for preparation of an agar overlay to be poured onto culture plates bearing mature colonies The colonies produce  $\beta$  hemolysis after 24 to 48 hours (Fig 5 B) Each colony produces a hemolytic plaque and absence of the organism from the peripheral area of hemolysis suggests that the hemolysin is soluble No hemagglutinin has been detected Antigen may be adsorbed to tanned erythrocytes permitting use of an indirect hemagglutination test for measurement of specific antibody

Specific antisera and sera from patients convalescing from mycoplasmal pneumonia inhibit or neutralize the growth of *M pneumoniae* in cotton rats (Eaton *et al* 1945b) in tissue culture (Clyde 1963b) and in agar (Jensen *et al*, 1963) A complement fixing antigen may be prepared from broth cultures (Chanock *et al* 1962c) and the comple-

ment fixation test has now replaced immuno fluorescent antibody staining for routine diagnostic purposes *M pneumoniae* does not share a group antigen with other human mycoplasma Complement fixation and agar gel diffusion studies have shown minor antigenic relationship with other species (Taylor Robinson *et al*, 1963)

The type of nucleic acid in the organism is not known with certainty Clusters of granules in tissue culture stain pink with May Grunwald Giemsa but are resistant to deoxyribonuclease and are Feulgen negative (Eaton *et al*, 1962) Coccobacillary bodies in the chick embryo give with acridine orange the green fluorescence characteristic of DNA (Marmion and Hers 1963)

Like all mycoplasma *M pneumoniae* is completely resistant to penicillin Before the organism was cultured successfully animal experiments indicated that carbomycin erythromycin, tetracycline and chlortetracycline altered the course of infection Variable results were obtained with chloramphenicol and streptomycin (Eaton 1950, Eaton and Liu 1957) Clyde (1963b) has now provided quantitative sensitivity data from studies using infected tissue cultures At the range of antibiotic concentrations which are achieved in the sera of patients given recommended doses the drugs which were effective against 10 000 organisms/ml were tetracycline demethylchlortetracycline and oleandomycin Streptomycin chloramphenicol chlortetracycline and oxytetracycline produced equivocal inhibition Kanamycin is effective against other mycoplasma (Pollock *et al* 1960) and presumably will be shown to inhibit *M pneumoniae* The organism is resistant to bacitracin and polymyxin B

## DIAGNOSIS

Until *M pneumoniae* was established as the etiologic agent of an entity within the syndrome of primary atypical pneumonia associated with cold hemagglutinins the diagnosis was based on a process of exclusion Now confirmation is possible by means of practical and specific laboratory procedures (Clyde and Jordan 1964) The organism may be recovered from pharyngeal swabs or sputum using artificial media a specific sero

logic response may be demonstrated by the complement fixation test. The agent may also be grown in cotton rats, hamsters, chick embryos and tissue culture cells and the immunofluorescent technic is still the most sensitive method of detecting antigen and measuring antibody. For naturally occurring infections the complement fixation test has been estimated to be 80 per cent as sensitive as immunofluorescence with chick embryo lung sections (Chanock *et al* 1962c). In volunteers only 56 per cent of individuals with an antibody rise detectable by the fluorescent technic also developed a rise in complement fixing antibody (Couch *et al* 1963). However, culture on agar or in broth and the complement fixation test are procedures most readily adaptable to the routine diagnostic laboratory. Unfortunately growth of the mycoplasma and development of antibody require at least 1 and 3 weeks respectively. *M. pneumoniae* has been recovered from individuals with high levels of antibody when first seen, suggesting that the agent may persist in the throat for a long time (Chanock *et al* 1962b). Hope for a rapid method of diagnosis rests with the demonstration by Hers *et al* (1963) that large mononuclear cells, possibly representing desquamated alveolar or ciliated bronchial epithelium, which may be stained by fluorescein labeled antibody to *M. pneumoniae*, are sometimes found in sputum.

In addition to specific antibody response a variety of nonspecific immunologic reactions may be obtained with convalescent phase sera. The most frequent and most useful are increasing titers of cold hemagglutinins and of streptococcus MG agglutinins. Cold hemagglutinins for group O human erythrocytes appear in approximately 50 per cent of the patients with variations in different series of cases from about 30 per cent to almost 100 per cent. Maximum titers are usually reached in the 3rd or the 4th week after onset, following which a decline occurs during the succeeding 2 or 3 weeks. In one group of patients with pneumonia, cold hemagglutinins developed in 47 per cent of cases with antibody detectable by the fluorescent technic and in 7 per cent of cases without. Agglutinins for streptococcus MG have been reported in some 20 to 75 per cent of cases.

In the natural disease there is a positive correlation between the frequency with which both of these agglutinins develop and the severity of the disease, the extent of pulmonary involvement and the duration of illness. A similar correlation is found in the height of the titers reached. Apart from mycoplasma pneumoniae cold hemagglutinins may be found in patients with trypanosomiasis and occasionally in patients with malaria, blood dyscrasias or liver disease. Agglutinins for streptococcus MG are rarely found in other patients. Cold hemagglutinins and agglutinins for streptococcus MG appear to be different antibodies, since each can be removed separately by adsorption of a serum containing both of them without appreciably affecting the titer of the other. Both of them are distinct from the antibody for *M. pneumoniae*.

The differential diagnosis requires consideration of a number of infectious and non-infectious diseases that may present a similar or even an identical clinical picture. Among the bacterial diseases, tuberculosis, tularemia and typhoid should be considered. Of the fungal infections, coccidioidomycosis and histoplasmosis are most likely to cause difficulty, since these infections frequently occur without concomitant cutaneous involvement. A history of residence in an endemic area is helpful in these cases. Most of the rickettsial infections except Q fever can be recognized by the presence of an eschar or the development of a rash. However, Q fever may closely resemble mycoplasma pneumoniae, although in general the onset is more sudden, constitutional symptoms predominate throughout the illness, respiratory symptoms are minimal and the roentgenographic evidence of infiltration is usually more focal in character and more likely to appear in the lung parenchyma without hilar involvement. Although pulmonary infiltration may occur in such contagious diseases as measles and chickenpox, the commonest viral diseases that should be considered in differential diagnosis are those due to the psittacosis group of viruses, the influenza viruses, the parainfluenza and respiratory syncytial viruses, particularly in children, and the adenoviruses. A history of exposure to birds suggests the possibility of psittacosis. Cases due to one of the influ

enza viruses or to adenoviruses are most likely to occur during epidemics of these diseases. Rarely toxoplasmosis and ascariasis or other parasitic diseases must be considered in the differential diagnosis.

In general, the final diagnosis of the above infections can be established by isolation of the infecting agent, by the demonstration of a rise in serum antibodies during convalescence or by both procedures. Noninfectious processes resembling mycoplasmal pneumonia such as bronchiectasis, eosinophilic pneumonia or Loeffler's syndrome, sarcoidosis, carcinoma, atelectasis and infarction usually can be recognized and differentiated by clinical and laboratory procedures and the course of illness.

### TREATMENT

A number of clinical trials had suggested that certain antibiotics, particularly chlor-tetracycline, were effective in the treatment of patients with illnesses classified as primary atypical pneumonia, but lack of specific diagnostic tests coupled with the natural variability of the infection made evaluation of these trials difficult (Clyde and Denny,

1963). Measurement of antibody by immunofluorescence made diagnostic specificity possible and was the key to a field trial which resulted in findings compatible with the known inhibitory effects of tetracycline derivatives on mycoplasma (Kingston *et al* 1961). A double blind study compared the efficacy of demethylchlorotetracycline and placebo therapy in 109 patients with pneumonia due to *M. pneumoniae* and in 157 patients with pneumonia due to other causes. It was found that 0.9 Gm of demethylchlorotetracycline daily for 6 days significantly reduced the duration of fever (Fig. 6), fatigue, cough, rales and pulmonary infiltration. On the basis of sensitivity data (Clyde 1963b) tetracycline should be equally effective at the same concentration. Although oleandomycin was even more potent in tissue culture assays, potential toxicity precludes its use since other effective drugs are available.

Knowing that tetracycline therapy is beneficial in patients with proved *M. pneumoniae* infections has not made the physician's decision regarding institution of therapy any easier. Since the available diagnostic techniques take time, he must base his decision on the epidemiologic and the clinical features of a

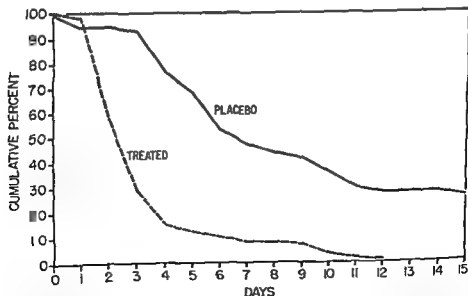


FIG. 6. Duration of fever (99 F+) in Marine recruits with mycoplasmal pneumonia confirmed by fluorescent antibody response, treated with demethylchlorotetracycline or placebo. (Adapted from Kingston *et al* 1961)

given case taking care to exclude bacterial and fungal diseases which might require different antibiotics. Mild illnesses certain of which might be due to viruses should receive symptomatic and supportive treatment. More severe cases should be given 0.5 Gm of tetracycline 4 times daily for 5 to 7 days. Demethylchlortetracycline may be given according to the schedule used in the field trial (0.3 Gm 3 times daily) keeping in mind the photosensitizing effect of the drug. Codeine or dihydrocodemone will help to relieve headache and control cough. Antipyretic drugs with a diaphoretic action such as acetylsalicylic acid should not be used if sweating is a prominent feature. Sponge baths with cool water or alcohol should be avoided in severely ill patients because a hemolytic crisis may be induced if the titer of cold hemagglutinins in the patient's serum is high.

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

The disease occurs throughout the world usually in endemic form. Its epidemic occurrence in both civilian groups (Gallagher 1934, Reimann 1938, Kneeland and Smetana 1940, Favour 1944, Jordan 1949, Johnson *et al* 1960) such as hospital personnel and families and in military populations (Campbell *et al* 1943, Dingle *et al* 1944, Kingston *et al* 1961, Miller *et al* 1963) has been described frequently and was one of the factors responsible for the recognition of this form of pneumonia. Yet few epidemics have occurred in recent years and the cases observed since 1948 have been small in number and mild in nature. Past behavior of the disease is crudely defined and the likelihood of future epidemics is totally unpredictable.

The true incidence is not known. Among armed forces personnel during World War II the attack rate averaged 10 per 1 000 per year about 10 times the incidence of bacterial pneumonia. Use of specific diagnostic methods during 16 months of a smouldering epidemic at a U.S. Marine recruit depot demonstrated that *M. pneumoniae* was associated with 56 per cent of atypical pneumonia and 28 per cent of febrile upper respiratory illness (Chanock *et al* 1961a). In contrast during an 18 month period at

a military training center in the Netherlands 9 per cent of patients with acute respiratory disease not associated with influenza or adenovirus infection or 4.7 per cent of all cases were associated with *M. pneumoniae* antibody increases. In some epidemics attack rates as high as 15 to 20 per cent have been reported and in one study of multiple cases in families a rate of 35 per cent was noted (Jordan 1949). Case-to-case spread has been apparent in such instances and the epidemiologic behavior has suggested a relationship between degree of contact and contagiousness. The mechanism of transmission appears to be through direct contact with infected persons. These inferences are supported by the results of studies in volunteers which indicated that the infection may be transmitted by respiratory secretions and that the portal of entry is the upper respiratory tract. The duration of the period of communicability is unknown.

An etiologic association between *M. pneumoniae* and certain minor respiratory illnesses has been suggested by the sequence of occurrence of cases in epidemics and by transmission studies in man. Such an association has been confirmed by specific serologic studies. During the epidemic in Marine recruits referred to above 44 per cent of the men converted from a seronegative to a seropositive status during a 12 week training period; there were 30 infections to every 1 clinical pneumonia (Chanock *et al* 1961a). Illustrative of variation with time and place is the observation that only 7 per cent of recruits in the Netherlands were infected with *M. pneumoniae* during a 6 week period (van der Veen and van Nunen 1963).

The incidence of the disease usually rises during the winter months. All age groups are attacked. The degree and the duration of immunity following infection are not known but second attacks have been observed.

### CONTROL MEASURES

No specific prophylactic measure is available although the possibility of a specific vaccine is under study. With the sporadic cases case-to-case spread is rarely apparent and isolation of the patients is seldom prac-



ticed Isolation precautions may be helpful in the event of a spreading outbreak.

## REFERENCES

- Campbell T A Strong P S Grier G S III and Lutz R J 1943 Primary atypical pneumonia A report of two hundred cases at Fort Eustis Virginia *JAMA* 122 723 729
- Chanock R M Cook M K Fox H H Parrott R H and Huebner R J 1960a Serologic evidence of infection with Eaton agent in lower respiratory illness in childhood *New Eng J Med* 262 648 654
- Chanock R M Fox H H James W D Bloom H H and Mufson M A 1960b Growth of laboratory and naturally occurring strains of Eaton agent in monkey kidney tissue culture *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 105 371 375
- Chanock R M Mufson M A Bloom H H James W D Fox H H and Kingston J R 1961a Eaton agent pneumonia *JAMA* 175 213 220
- Chanock R M Rifkind D Kravetz H M Knight V and Johnson K M 1961b Respiratory disease in volunteers infected with Eaton agent a preliminary report *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 47 887
- Chanock R M Hayflick L and Barile M F 1962a Growth on artificial medium of an agent associated with atypical pneumonia and its identification as a PPLO *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 48 41-49
- Chanock R M Mufson M A James W D Fox H H Bloom H H and Forsyth H 1962b Recovery of PPLO of atypical pneumonia on artificial agar medium *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 110 543 547
- Chanock R M James W D Fox H H Turner H C Mufson M A and Hayflick L 1962c Growth of Eaton PPLO in broth and preparation of complement fixing antigen *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 110 884 889
- Chanock R M *et al* 1963a *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* proposed nomenclature for atypical pneumonia organism (Eaton agent) *Science* 140 662
- Chanock R M Mufson M A Somerson N and Couch R B 1963b Role of mycoplasma (PPLO) in human respiratory disease *Am Rev Resp Dis* 88 218 231
- Clyde W A Jr 1961 Demonstration of Eaton's agent in tissue culture *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 107 716-718
- 1963a Hemolysis in identifying Eaton's pleuropneumonia like organism *Science* 139 55
- 1963b Studies on growth of Eaton's agent in tissue culture *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 112 905 909
- Clyde W A Jr and Denny F W Jr 1963 The etiology and therapy of atypical pneumonia *Med Clin N Amer* 47 1201 1218
- Clyde W A Jr Denny F W and Dingle J H 1961 Fluorescent stainable antibodies to the Eaton agent in human primary atypical pneumonia transmission studies *J Clin Invest* 40 1638 1647
- Clyde W A Jr and Jordan W E Jr 1964 Eaton PPLO Infections in Diagnostic Procedures for Virus and Rickettsial Diseases ed 3 New York Public Health Ass
- Commission on Acute Respiratory Diseases 1946 The transmission of primary atypical pneumonia to human volunteers I Experimental methods II Results of inoculation III Clinical features IV Laboratory studies *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 79 97 108
- 1947a Experimental transmission of minor respiratory illness to human volunteers by filter passing agents I Demonstration of two types of illness characterized by long and short periods and different clinical pictures *J Clin Invest* 26 957
- 1947b Experimental transmission of minor respiratory illness to human volunteers by filter passing agents II Immunity on reinoculation with agents from the two types of minor respiratory illness and from primary atypical pneumonia *J Clin Invest* 26 974
- Couch R B Cate T R and Chanock R M 1964 Infection of volunteers with artificially propagated Eaton agent (*Mycoplasma Pneumoniae*) Implications for development of attenuated vaccine for cold agglutinin positive pneumonia *JAMA* 187 442 447
- Curnen E C Mirick G S Ziegler J E Jr Thomas L and Horsfall F L Jr 1945 Studies on primary atypical pneumonia I Clinical features and results of laboratory investigations *J Clin Invest* 24 209 226
- Dajani A E and Clyde W A Jr 1963 Personal communication
- Dingle J H Abernethy T J Badger G F Buddingh G J Feller A E Langmuir A D Rueggeger J M and Wood W B Jr 1944 Primary atypical pneumonia etiology unknown (Parts 1 2 and 3) *Am J Hyg* 39 67 128 197 268 269 336
- Dingle J H and Finland M 1942 Virus pneumonias II Primary atypical pneu

- monias of unknown etiology *New Eng J Med* 227 378 385
- Doherty R L 1957 An epidemic of primary atypical pneumonia in North Queensland *Aust Ann Med* 6 189 195
- Donald H B and Liu C 1959 Cytological studies of chick embryo cells infected with the virus of primary atypical pneumonia *Virology* 9 20 29
- Eaton M D 1950 Action of aureomycin and chloromycetin on the virus of primary atypical pneumonia *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 73 24 29
- Eaton M D Meiklejohn G van Herick W and Talbot J C 1942 Infectious agent from cases of atypical pneumonia apparently transmissible to cotton rats *Science* 96 518 519
- Eaton M D Meiklejohn G and van Herick W 1944 Studies on the etiology of primary atypical pneumonia I A filterable agent transmissible to cotton rats hamsters and chick embryos *J Exp Med* 79 649-668
- Eaton M D Meiklejohn G van Herick W and Corey M 1945a Studies on the etiology of primary atypical pneumonia II Properties of the virus isolated and propagated in chick embryos *J Exp Med* 82 317 328
- Eaton M D van Herick W and Meiklejohn G 1945b Studies on the etiology of primary atypical pneumonia III Specific neutralization of the virus by human serum *J Exp Med* 82 329 342
- Eaton M D Farnham A E Levinthal J D and Scala A R 1962 Cytopathic effect of the atypical pneumonia organism in cultures of human tissue *J Bact* 84 1330 1337
- Eaton M D and Liu C 1957 Studies on sensitivity to streptomycin of the atypical pneumonia agent *J Bact* 74 784 787
- Favour C H 1944 Infections associated with an epidemic of primary interstitial pneumonia *New Eng J Med* 230 537 542
- Gallagher J R 1934 Bronchopneumonia in adolescents *Yale J Biol Med* 7 23 40
- Golden A 1944 Pathologic anatomy of atypical pneumonia etiology undetermined Acute interstitial pneumonitis *Arch Path* 38 187 202
- Gordon F B Quan A L Cook M K Chanock H M and Fox H 1960 Growth of Eaton agent of primary atypical pneumonia in chick endothelial tissue culture *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 105 375 377
- Hers J F van der Kuip L Masurel N and Mulder J 1963 Dedagosteik van primaire atypische pneumonie door middel van immunofluorescentie *Nederl T Geneesk* 107 74 78
- Jensen K E Neal E J and May P A 1963 Suppression of growth of Eaton mycoplasma by immune sera *Fed Proc* 22 325
- Johnson R T Cook M K Chanock H M and Buescher E L 1960 Family outbreak of primary atypical pneumonia associated with the Eaton agent *New Eng J Med* 262 817 819
- Jordan W S Jr 1949 The infectiousness and incubation period of primary atypical pneumonia *Am J Hyg* 50 315 330
- Jordan W S Jr Albright R W McCann F H and Dingle J H 1951 Clinical variations in primary atypical pneumonia *Am J Med* 10 3 20
- Kenny G E 1963 Personal communication
- Kingston J R Chanock R M Mufson M A Hellman L P James W D Fox H H Manko M A and Boyers J 1961 Eaton agent pneumonia *JAMA* 176 118 123
- Kneeland Y Jr and Smetana H F 1940 Current bronchopneumonia of unusual character and undetermined etiology *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 67 229 267
- Liu C 1957 Studies on primary atypical pneumonia I Localization isolation and cultivation of a virus in chick embryos *J Exp Med* 106 455-466
- Marmion B P and Goodburn G M 1961 Effect of an organic gold salt on Eaton's primary atypical pneumonia agent and other observations *Nature* 189 247 248
- Marmion B P and Hers J F Ph 1963 Observations on Eaton's primary atypical pneumonia agent and analogous problems in animals *Am Rev Resp Dis* 88 198 211
- Miller L F Rytel M Pierce W E and Rosenbaum M J 1963 Epidemiology of nonbacterial pneumonia among naval recruits *JAMA* 185 92 99
- Mufson M A Manko M A Kingston J R and Chanock R M 1961 Eaton agent pneumonia—Clinical features *JAMA* 178 369-374
- Parker F Jr Jolliffe L S and Finland M 1947 Primary atypical pneumonia Report of eight cases with autopsies *Arch Path* 44 581 608
- Pollock M E Kenny G E and Syverton J T 1960 Isolation and elimination of pleuropneumonia-like organisms from mammalian cell cultures *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 105 10 15

- Reimann H A 1938 An acute infection of the respiratory tract with atypical pneumonia A disease entity probably caused by a filterable virus *JAMA* *111* 2377-2384
- Rifkind D Chanock R Kravetz H Johnson K and Knight V 1962 Ear involvement (myringitis) and primary atypical pneumonia following inoculation of volunteers with Eaton agent *Am Rev Resp Dis* *85* 479-489
- Somerson N L Taylor Robinson D and Chanock R M 1963 Hemolysin production as an aid in the identification and quantitation of Eaton agent (*mycoplasma pneumoniae*) *Am J Hyg* *77* 122-128
- Taylor Robinson D Somerson N L Turner H C and Chanock R M 1963 Serological relationships among human *mycoplasma* as shown by complement fixation and gel diffusion studies *J Bact* *85* 1261-1273
- van der Veen J and van Nunen M C J 1963 Role of *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* in respiratory disease in a military population *Am J Hyg* *78* 293-301

## 37

## Medical Mycology

## GENERAL

The *Actinomycetales* show a relationship not only to the single-celled bacteria but also to the higher filamentous fungi or molds. They exhibit branching like the higher forms but their size is nearer that of the *Eubacteriales*. They are all slender organisms their vegetative structures being 1 micron or less in diameter. As found among the *Actinomycetaceae* they fragment readily into bacillary or coccoid elements or as found among the *Streptomycetaceae* they produce spores in the filaments as do the sporulating bacilli. Also *Actinomycetes* and *Nocardia* are sensitive to penicillin and sulfonamides respectively whereas the so called higher fungi are not affected by these agents. Because of these characteristics the genera *Actinomyces*, *Nocardia* and *Streptomyces* have been placed in the *Schizomycetes* in a position intermediate between the *Eubacteria* or true bacteria and the *Eumycetes* or true fungi.

A true fungus on the other hand is characterized as having a simple plant body the thallus which lacks chlorophyll and is not differentiated into roots, stems or leaves. The thallus is composed of branching intertwined filaments or hyphae which form a dense mat of growth the mycelium. Produced on or from the mycelium are various types of reproductive bodies or spores. Spores differ greatly in their form and in the manner in which they are produced. These two characteristics are used to classify the fungi.

The relationship of the various groups of fungi pathogenic for man and animals is shown in Table 1.

Organisms known to be pathogenic for man and animals are found in only a few of the groups shown in Table 1. In the *Schizomycetes* species of *Actinomyces* cause

TABLE 1

Kingdom	Plantae
Division	Mycota
Subdivision	Schizomycotina
Class	Schizomycetes (Bacteria)
Order	Actinomycetales
Family	Actinomycetaceae
Genus	Actinomyces
Species	<i>A. israeli</i>
	<i>A. bovis</i>
	<i>A. naeslundii</i>
Genus	Nocardia
Species	<i>N. asteroides</i>
	<i>N. brasiliensis</i>
	<i>N. caviae</i>
Family	Streptomycetaceae
Genus	Streptomyces
Species	<i>S. madurae</i>
	<i>S. pelletieri</i>
	<i>S. paraguayensis</i>
	<i>S. somaliensis</i>
Subdivision	Myxomycotina
Class	Myxomycetes (Slime molds)
Subdivision	Eumycotina (True fungi)
Class	Phycomycetes (Alga fungi)
Class	Ascomycetes (Sac fungi)
Class	Basidiomycetes (Mushrooms)
Class	Deuteromycetes (Imperfect fungi)

actinomycosis, *Nocardia asteroides* causes systemic nocardiosis and *N. brasiliensis* *N. caviae* and species of *Streptomyces* cause actinomycotic mycetoma. Few fungi of the class *Phycomycetes* are pathogenic, species of *Absidia*, *Rhizopus* and *Basidiobolus* cause phycomycosis, mucormycosis in man. Among the *Ascomycetes* only *Allescheria boydii* and *Leptosphaeria senegalensis* cause maduromycosis while *Piedraia hortai* forms hard black nodules on the hair of the scalp. No pathogens are found in the *Myxomycetes* or *Basidiomycetes*. The remaining fungi or 76 per cent are found in the class *Deuteromycetes* the *Fungi Imperfecti*.

### IDENTIFICATION

With few exceptions (*Actinomyces*, *Nocardia*, *Cryptococcus*, *Saccharomyces* and *Candida*) the fungi do not lend themselves to the use of bacteriologic technics for their identification. They are all gram positive. They do not ferment sugars, do not reduce nitrates, cannot be characterized by tests such as coagulation of serum or milk or the liquefaction of gelatin etc. Therefore they are identified by their morphology, macroscopically by the type of colony formation, and microscopically by the type of spores produced on or from the mycelium. Macroscopically there are 3 colony types: yeast-like and filamentous. The yeast colony is soft and bacterial-like and is composed of single-celled budding forms (*Cryptococcus* and *Saccharomyces*). The yeastlike colony is also soft and bacterial-like but is composed not only of single-celled budding forms on the surface of the medium but also of hyphae which penetrate the medium (*Candida* species). The filamentous colony presents the appearance of a typical mold and is composed of branching hyphae, some of which penetrate the medium, vegetative mycelium, and some of which project from the surface, aerial mycelium. The aerial mycelium is referred to as a reproductive mycelium when spores are produced by the hyphae. The type of spore produced and the method of its formation, together with the type of colony, provide the morphologic characteristics by which fungi are identified.

The several types of spores produced by

fungi may be divided into the two categories shown below.

### SPORE TYPES

- I Sexual Spores—produced as a result of nuclear fusion
  - 1 *Ascospores*—spores produced in a sac, the ascus, found in the *Ascomycetes*.
  - 2 *Basidiospores*—spores produced from a club-shaped structure, the basidium, found in the *Basidiomycetes*.
  - 3 *Zygospores*—spores produced by fusion of two identical cells found in the *Phycomycetes*.
  - 4 *Oospores*—spores produced by fusion of two unlike cells found in the *Phycomycetes*.
- II Asexual Spores—produced in or by the mycelium without nuclear fusion
  - 1 *Thallospores*—spores produced by changes in the mycelium or thallus.
    - A *Blastospores*—spores produced by budding, *Saccharomyces*, *Candida* and *Cryptococcus*.
    - B *Chlamydospores*—spores produced by cells in the hyphae changing into thick-walled resistant structures; may be found in all fungi.
    - C *Arthrospores*—spores produced by fragmentation of hyphae, *Geotrichum* and *Coccidioides*.
  - 2 *True Conidia*—spores supported by a definite structure, the conidiophore, found among the *Imperfecti*.
  - 3 *Sporangiospores*—spores produced inside a swollen structure, the sporangium, on the end of a sporangiophore, *Phycomycetes*.

### EXAMINATION OF FUNGI

Since the fungi can be identified only by the type and the arrangement of their spores, preparations must be made that will allow examination of these structures. The usual smear and staining methods used for the bacteria are not applicable to filamentous cultures as they break up the hyphae, disperse the spores and prevent proper examination. A preliminary examination of a tube culture is possible by placing the tube on the microscope stage and using the low

power objective on the top of the slant or along its edge

Slide cultures for continuous microscopic examination are made by various methods. For example, sterile slides and cover glasses under which inoculated warm agar is run support growth when placed in a damp chamber (sterile Petri dish with moist towel or filter paper). Development of the fungus from the edge of the agar may be followed microscopically. In such preparations growth is undisturbed and the arrangement of the spores can be studied carefully.

Routine examination of yeast or yeastlike cultures should be made by emulsifying some of the growth in a drop of water on a slide and covering the preparation with a cover glass. Filamentous fungi are examined by carefully teasing with needles some of the mycelium in a drop of mounting medium, i.e. lactophenol cotton blue or glycerine and eosin, and covering the preparation with a cover glass.

### AEROBIC ACTINOMYCETES (*NOCARDIA* *STREPTOMYCES*)

The aerobic actinomycetes of the genera *Nocardia* and *Streptomyces* are free living in nature and several of the species may be introduced directly into wounds to cause localized actinomycotic mycetoma. *Nocardia asteroides* may be inhaled to cause a primary pulmonary disease nocardiosis with eventual metastases to any area of the body particularly to the subcutaneous tissues and the central nervous system. The species which cause such diseases are classified among the bacteria because of their size, 1 micron or less in diameter, their staining reactions, gram positive and/or acid fast, and the tendency for the mycelium of some of them to fragment into bacillary or coccoid elements. Furthermore, they are so closely similar morphologically that it is necessary to compare physiologic and biochemical reactions not only for separation into genera *Nocardia* and *Streptomyces* but also for separation of species within the genera (Gordon and Smith 1955, Mackinnon and Arta gaveyua Allende 1956, Gordon and Mihm 1957, 1959, 1962a, b, Georg *et al.* 1961, Mariat 1962).

### HISTORY

The first pathogenic aerobic actinomycete was described from *farcin du boeuf* in cattle by Nocard in 1888 and later was named *Nocardia farcinica* by Trevisan in 1889. The first pathogenic aerobic actinomycete found in human infection, pseudotuberculosis with brain abscesses and meningitis, was described by Eppinger in 1880 as *Cladothrix asteroides* and later named *Nocardia asteroides* by Blanchard in 1896. Recently Gordon and Mihm (1962b) have reported that these two organisms, *N. farcinica* and *N. asteroides* are probably identical and the human species *N. asteroides* has been retained because of its importance in medicine.

Vincent in 1894 described *Streptothrix maduræ* as an etiologic agent of actinomycotic mycetoma (Madura foot). Since this early publication only a few species of *Nocardia* and *Streptomyces* have been shown to be the etiologic agents of approximately 480 cases of mycetoma reported from widely scattered areas of the world (Abbott 1956, Destombes *et al.* 1958, Brounst *et al.* 1962, Mariat 1963, Orto *et al.* 1963).

### MORPHOLOGY AND VARIATION

According to the classification of Waksman and Henrici (1943), *Nocardia* are aerobic, partially acid fast actinomycetes whose vegetative mycelium readily fragments into bacillary and coccoid elements. *Streptomyces* are those aerobic, non acid fast actinomycetes whose vegetative mycelium does not fragment; rather, multiplication is accomplished by conidia in chains from aerial hyphae. Therefore, the aerobic actinomycetes with the distinctions mentioned above are gram positive, partially acid fast or non acid fast, branching, filamentous organisms, 1 micron or less in diameter. However, such organisms isolated from disease in man or animals were placed in the genus *Nocardia* until it became evident that gross and microscopic variation was so great among isolates that some of the pathogens should be placed in the genus *Streptomyces*. Examination of several isolates by Gonzalez Ochoa and Sandoval (1955) showed conidial chain formation in *N. maduræ*, *N. somaliensis* and *N. pelletieri*. Furthermore, Gordon and Smith (1955) have shown that physiologic

characteristics could also be used to separate isolations and place them into either the genus *Nocardia* or the genus *Streptomyces*. On morphologic and physiologic criteria therefore the pathogenic aerobic actinomycetes now include *Nocardia asteroides*, *N. brasiliensis* and *N. caviae* as well as *Streptomyces somaliensis*, *S. pelletieri*, *S. madurae* and *S. paraguayensis*. The first named species *N. asteroides* is the recognized etiologic agent of systemic nocardiosis while the remainder are recognized etiologic agents of localized actinomycotic mycetoma.

In systemic nocardiosis, *N. asteroides* appears in sputum, empyemic fluid, spinal fluid and pus from subcutaneous abscesses as loose scattered, branching or bacillary gram positive and/or acid fast elements. Not infrequently the acid fast bacillary elements may be mistaken for tubercle bacilli in stained sputum smears. In localized actinomycotic mycetoma however the organisms appear in tissues and exudates from draining sinuses as yellowish white red or black granules with or without clubs at the periphery.

#### CULTIVATION

Aerobic actinomycetes grow readily at 37° C or room temperature on a variety of simple media such as beef infusion glucose agar, Sabouraud's glucose agar, Czapek's agar, etc. However, colonies are slow growing and it is necessary to wait for 3 to 4 weeks before a typical appearance is obtained in the so-called giant cultures. Such cultures show a marked variation in odor, gross appearance, pigment production and texture on different media and even on the same medium. On solid media the colonies are usually glabrous, wrinkled or granular and resemble those of some acid fast bacilli. Occasional strains produce an aerial mycelium which gives the colony a chalky or powdery appearance, but on transfer this character may be lost. Pigmentation is produced best and is more constant on Czapek's agar and varies depending on the species from cream to yellow, orange ochraceous and pink to coral or brick red. The texture may be soft moist and mucilaginous or hard, dry and granular. On liquid media the species develop wrinkled surface pellicles with the medium remaining clear (Figs 1 and 2).

In vitro studies of chemotherapeutic agents on species of *Nocardia* do not parallel in vivo studies so far as *N. asteroides* is concerned. Strauss *et al* (1951) found sodium sulfadiazine to be less effective than some of the antibiotics in vitro but to be more effective in vivo.

#### BIOCHEMICAL REACTIONS

A few of the biologic properties of the aerobic actinomycetes remain constant when several strains of the same species are tested. Gordon and Smith (1955) found that the genera *Streptomyces* and *Nocardia* could be separated by the following reactions: hydrolysis of casein, decomposition of tyrosine and acid production from lactose, maltose, xylose and mannose. These reactions were positive for *Streptomyces* but negative for *Nocardia*. Pathogenic species within these genera can be separated by additional tests (Mackinnon and Artavagetyan, Allende 1956, Bojalil *et al* 1959, Mariat, 1962).

#### PATHOGENICITY

*Nocardia asteroides* is pathogenic for the rabbit, the guinea pig and the mouse. However, isolates of this species vary greatly in their ability to produce infection (Waksman and Henrici 1943, Georg *et al*, 1961). Rabbits injected intravenously with a sufficiently large inoculum develop a generalized infection with the production of miliary abscesses throughout the entire body. Intramuscular and subcutaneous injections result in local abscesses only. Guinea pigs injected intraperitoneally usually show a diffuse peritonitis with abscess formation on the peritoneal surface. Death results from a toxic effect of the inoculated material rather than from extensive invasion by the fungus. Mice injected intraperitoneally with *N. asteroides* suspended in 5 per cent hog gastric mucin die with sufficient regularity to be used for in vivo testing of chemotherapeutic agents (Strauss *et al*, 1951). Intravenous inoculation of mice with small inocula followed by intraperitoneal injection with 0.5 ml of a 5 per cent suspension of gastric mucin is said to be a rapid method for testing the pathogenicity of isolates of *N. asteroides* and *N. brasiliensis* (Mohapatra and Pinc 1963). Occasional isolates of *N. brasiliensis* are also

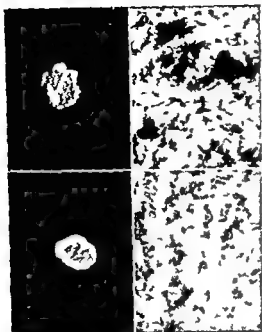


FIG 1 (Top left) *N. asteroides* Colony on Sabouraud's glucose agar 12 days old (Top right) *N. asteroides* from Sabouraud's agar Gram stain.  $\times 970$  (Bottom left) *N. brasiliensis* Colony on Sabouraud's glucose agar 12 days old (Bottom right) *N. brasiliensis* from Sabouraud's agar Gram stain  $\times 970$

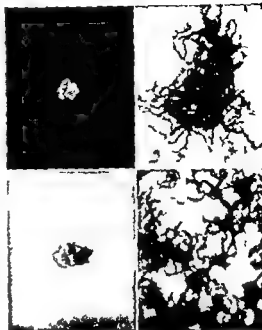


FIG 2 (Top left) *S. madurae* Colony on Sabouraud's glucose agar 12 days old (Top right) *S. madurae* from Sabouraud's agar Gram stain  $\times 970$  (Bottom left) *S. pelletieri* Colony on Sabouraud's glucose agar 12 days old (Bottom right) *S. pelletieri* from Sabouraud's agar Gram stain  $\times 970$

pathogenic for the guinea pig (Ajello *et al* 1961). These organisms appear in gram stained smears of the pus from lesions in the infected animals as segregated loose mycelial fragments. On occasion however it has been possible to produce granules in guinea pigs and mice with cultures of *N. asteroides* and *N. brasiliensis* when the inoculum was suspended in an adjuvant of paraffin oil or killed tubercle bacilli (Des tombes *et al* 1961).

#### DISTRIBUTION

*Nocardia asteroides* is free living in nature has been described as an air borne laboratory contaminant (Henrici and Gardner 1921) and has been isolated repeatedly from soil (Gordon and Hagan 1936 Ajello 1956). Also *N. brasiliensis* has recently been isolated from soil in Mexico (Gonzalez Ochoa and Sandoval 1960). Although other

species of pathogenic aerobic actinomycetes have not been isolated from soil it is assumed that they exist as saprophytes in nature. From this exogenous source the various species may be introduced into traumatized tissues to initiate localized chronic infections. Therefore mycetoma is more prevalent in subtropical and tropical areas due to exposure of the body to the infectious organisms in the soil (Abbott 1956, Orto *et al* 1963, Marat 1963). However systemic nocardiosis has a world wide distribution and is not a rare primary pulmonary infection due to inhalation of infectious *N. asteroides* (McQuown 1955).

#### PATHOGENESIS

Systemic nocardiosis is caused by *N. asteroides* and is chiefly pulmonary in origin (Murry *et al* 1961, Salzman *et al* 1962, Freese *et al* 1963).



characteristics could also be used to separate isolations and place them into either the genus *Nocardia* or the genus *Streptomyces*. On morphologic and physiologic criteria therefore the pathogenic aerobic actinomycetes now include *Nocardia asteroides*, *N. brasiliensis* and *N. caviae* as well as *Streptomyces somaliensis*, *S. pelletieri*, *S. madurae* and *S. paraguayensis*. The first named species *N. asteroides* is the recognized etiologic agent of systemic nocardiosis while the remainder are recognized etiologic agents of localized actinomycotic mycetoma.

In systemic nocardiosis *N. asteroides* appears in sputum, empyemic fluid, spinal fluid and pus from subcutaneous abscesses as loose scattered, branching or bacillary gram-positive and/or acid fast elements. Not infrequently the acid fast bacillary elements may be mistaken for tubercle bacilli in stained sputum smears. In localized actinomycotic mycetoma, however, the organisms appear in tissues and exudates from draining sinuses as yellowish white red or black granules with or without clubs at the periphery.

#### CULTIVATION

Aerobic actinomycetes grow readily at 37° C or room temperature on a variety of simple media such as beef infusion glucose agar, Sabouraud's glucose agar, Czapek's agar, etc. However, colonies are slow growing and it is necessary to wait for 3 to 4 weeks before a typical appearance is obtained in the so-called giant cultures. Such cultures show a marked variation in odor, gross appearance, pigment production and texture on different media and even on the same medium. On solid media the colonies are usually glabrous, wrinkled or granular and resemble those of some acid fast bacilli. Occasional strains produce an aerial mycelium which gives the colony a chalky or powdery appearance but on transfer, this character may be lost. Pigmentation is produced best and is more constant on Czapek's agar and varies depending on the species from cream to yellow, orange, ochraceous and pink to coral or brick red. The texture may be soft, moist and mucilaginous or hard, dry and granular. On liquid media the species develop wrinkled surface pellicles with the medium remaining clear (Figs 1 and 2).

In vitro studies of chemotherapeutic agents on species of *Nocardia* do not parallel in vivo studies so far as *N. asteroides* is concerned. Strauss *et al.* (1951) found sodium sulfadiazine to be less effective than some of the antibiotics in vitro but to be more effective in vivo.

#### BIOCHEMICAL REACTIONS

A few of the biologic properties of the aerobic actinomycetes remain constant when several strains of the same species are tested. Gordon and Smith (1955) found that the genera *Streptomyces* and *Nocardia* could be separated by the following reactions: hydrolysis of casein, decomposition of tyrosine and acid production from lactose, maltose, xylose and mannose. These reactions were positive for *Streptomyces* but negative for *Nocardia*. Pathogenic species within these genera can be separated by additional tests (Mackinnon and Artavagetyan, Allende 1956, Bojalil *et al.* 1959, Mariat 1962).

#### PATHOGENICITY

*Nocardia asteroides* is pathogenic for the rabbit, the guinea pig and the mouse. However, isolates of this species vary greatly in their ability to produce infection (Waksman and Henrici 1943, Georg *et al.* 1961). Rabbits injected intravenously with a sufficiently large inoculum develop a generalized infection with the production of multiple abscesses throughout the entire body. Intramuscular and subcutaneous injections result in local abscesses only. Guinea pigs injected intraperitoneally usually show a diffuse peritonitis with abscess formation on the peritoneal surface. Death results from a toxic effect of the inoculated material rather than from extensive invasion by the fungus. Mice injected intraperitoneally with *N. asteroides* suspended in 5 per cent hog gastric mucin die with sufficient regularity to be used for in vivo testing of chemotherapeutic agents (Strauss *et al.* 1951). Intravenous inoculation of mice with small inocula followed by intraperitoneal injection with 0.5 ml of a 5 per cent suspension of gastric mucin is said to be a rapid method for testing the pathogenicity of isolates of *N. asteroides* and *N. brasiliensis* (Mohapatra and Pine 1963). Occasional isolates of *N. brasiliensis* are also

laden macrophages enclosed by a fibrous capsule. However, diagnosis depends on the presence of granules surrounded by polymorphonuclear neutrophils centrally located in the abscesses (Fig. 4).

### DIAGNOSIS

Sputum and pus from subcutaneous abscesses should be smeared and stained to demonstrate gram positive or acid fast branching hyphae. Sputum without concentration and pus may be inoculated on blood agar plates and Sabouraud's glucose agar slants for culturing at 37 °C and room temperature respectively. Spinal fluid should be centrifuged and the sediment stained for gram positive or acid fast hyphae and cultured as for sputum and pus. Antibiotics should not be added to the media since the aerobic actinomycetes are sensitive and may fail to grow.

*N. asteroides* obtained from clinical materials can be tested for pathogenicity by intraperitoneal injection of guinea pigs with saline suspensions of the fungus or by intraperitoneal injection of mice with 5 per cent hog gastric mucin.

Lesions of the subcutaneous tissues producing the clinical picture of mycetoma should suggest infection by actinomycetes or infection by some of the higher fungi or molds (maduromycosis). Pus from the draining sinuses, scrapings from the sinus walls and biopsy sections should be examined for actinomycotic granules. Fresh preparations of the pus and scrapings should be prepared by placing a drop of the material on a slide and covering the preparation with a cover glass. Microscopically the granules appear as amorphous lobulated masses surrounded by pus cells. The mass is composed of delicate (1 micron in diameter) tangled hyphae which may or may not be terminated by sheaths (clubs) at the periphery. Such granules should be crushed and Gram stained. When examined the smear contains short branching forms, bacillary and coccoid elements which are gram positive. Cultures are obtained by inoculating blood agar plates to be incubated at 37 °C and Sabouraud's glucose agar slants to be incubated at room temperature with crushed granules.

A purified polysaccharide obtained from

*N. brasiliensis* has been shown to be specific in an agar double-diffusion precipitin test with sera from patients infected with this organism. No cross reactions occurred with sera from tuberculous patients from patients with mycetoma caused by *S. madurai* or with sera from rabbits infected with *N. asteroides* (Bojalil and Zamora 1963; Zamora *et al.* 1963). Also purified proteins obtained from *N. brasiliensis* elicited specific delayed skin tests in patients with mycetoma caused by this organism (Bojalil and Magnusson 1963).

### TREATMENT

Response to sulfonamide therapy is dramatic when systemic nocardiosis is diagnosed early. High blood levels (15 to 20 mg per cent) should be maintained for 4 to 6 weeks during hospitalization of the patient. Lower blood levels should be maintained for at least 6 months after the patient's discharge. Surgical drainage of cutaneous and other abscesses as well as empyemas may be necessary for effective drug therapy (Freese *et al.* 1963).

The extent of infection in actinomycotic mycetoma will determine the effectiveness of therapy. Surgical excision of the affected areas is necessary as an adjunct to chemotherapy. The commonly used sulfonamides should be used for a period of months. Also DDS and the prolonged action sulfonamides, sulfamethoxypridazine and sulfadimethoxine have been used successfully (Mariat and Satre 1961).

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Pathogenic aerobic acid fast and non acid fast actinomycetes are free living in nature and cause disease by air borne contamination or by introduction into tissues through trauma. This view is substantiated by the study of systemic cases in which pulmonary infection is the rule and of those cases demonstrating subcutaneous infection with no systemic reaction. The possible extent of subclinical nocardiosis is not known. However, skin testing programs of large population groups with the antigens mentioned above may reveal the occurrence of widespread self limited disease.

Many animals have spontaneous nocard

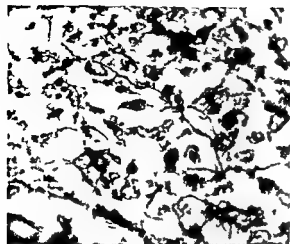


FIG 3 *Nocardia asteroides* Section of brain abscess Gram stain  $\times 1300$  (Conant N F Smith D T, Baker R D Callaway J L and Martin D S Manual of Clinical Mycology p 41 Philadelphia Saunders)

Occasionally headache nausea and vomiting may suggest either brain tumor or brain abscess or the symptoms may be those of an infectious meningitis (tuberculous) with minimal or no findings in the lungs Symptoms referable to a pulmonary infection include general malaise fever productive cough with sputum night sweats anorexia

and loss of weight Roentgenograms of the lungs usually show a progressive infiltrative process which may lead to multiple cavity formation Hematogenous spread results in metastatic lesions throughout the body Histologically, such lesions may be of a purulent nature, containing centers composed of polymorphonuclear neutrophils and a few mycelial fragments which can be demonstrated only when the sections are stained by Gram's method (Fig 3)

Actinomycotic mycetoma results in the clinical picture of Madura foot, although other subcutaneous tissues of the body also may become infected (Abbott 1956 Gonzalez Ochoa 1962 Orto *et al* 1963) The characteristic lesion with pain, swelling and sinus formation and eventual clubbing and marked deformity of the infected member is developed only after months or years Infection spreads by extension through adjacent tissues with bone destruction multiple abscesses which rupture and with no systemic reaction unless secondary bacterial invasion is established Histologically, sections of the sinus and abscess walls may show only a chronic inflammatory reaction Further development of the acute purulent abscess results in a surrounding layer of granulation tissue infiltrated with round cells and fat

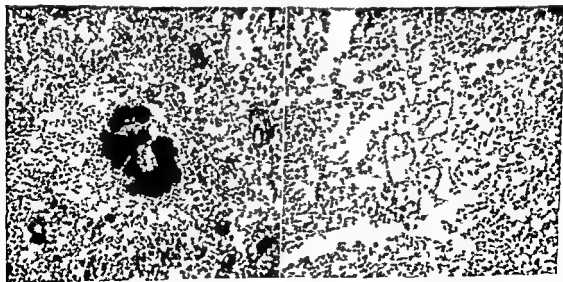


FIG 4 (Left) Granules of *S. pelletieri* in subcutaneous tissue  $\times 147$  (Right) Granule of *N. asteroides* in subcutaneous tissue  $\times 147$

glucose agar at room temperature the colony is glistening mucoid and tan to brown in color (Fig 5) Microscopically the cultures are best examined by emulsifying a portion of the growth in a drop of water or India ink under a cover glass Such preparations reveal thick walled ovoid to spherical budding cells 5 to 15 microns in diameter (Fig 6) surrounded by a wide gelatinous capsule no endospores are produced and no mycelium is developed

*Cryptococci* are nonfermenting yeasts which produce extracellular starch when grown on a defined medium containing dextrose and thiamine at a pH below 5 (Mager and Aschner 1946 Lodder and Kreger Van Rij 1952) Also all *Cryptococci* are urease positive (Seeliger 1956) Carbon and nitrogen assimilation tests are useful in distinguishing the single pathogenic species from other encapsulated closely related nonpathogenic species *C neoformans* does not assimilate nitrate ( $\text{KNO}_3$ ) or lactose but does digest glucose maltose sucrose and galactose (Benham 1955) Its ability to grow at 37 C also distinguishes this species from nonpathogenic *Cryptococci*

The chemical nature of the capsular material of *C neoformans* has been studied by several investigators (Evans 1960) The capsular polysaccharide is composed of xylose mannose uronic acid and glucuronic acid Although Drouhet and Segretain (1949) reported a hyaluronic acid content based on destruction of the capsule by hyaluronidase this finding could not be confirmed (Foley and Uzman 1952 Littman and Zimmerman 1956)

*C neoformans* is pathogenic for the mouse when injected intraperitoneally or intracerebrally all other species of *Cryptococci* are nonpathogenic

In summary *C neoformans* can be identified by the following criteria (1) positive urease test (2) growth at 37 C (3) assimilation tests with  $\text{KNO}_3$  lactose glucose maltose sucrose and galactose and (4) demonstrated pathogenicity for the mouse

In vitro studies have shown *C neoformans* to be resistant to most antibiotics and chemotherapeutic agents (Littman and Zimmerman 1956) However amphotericin B has been shown to be fungistatic in concen-

trations of 0.03 to 0.16 mg/ml (Louna *et al* 1957)

### DISTRIBUTION

Cryptococcosis was first called European blastomycosis but the world wide distribution of reported cases soon discredited ideas of geographic limitation *C neoformans* exists as a saprophyte in nature and produces disease in a variety of animals as well as man (Ajello 1958) The fungus has been isolated repeatedly from soil and is found in close association with pigeon nests (Emmons 1955 and 1960 Kao and Schwarz 1957 Yamamoto *et al* 1957 Littman and Schneerson 1959) There is no reported transmission from animal to man or man to man.

### PATHOGENESIS

Cryptococcosis is a subacute or chronic infection caused by *C neoformans* which may affect the skin the lungs or other tissues of the body with almost invariable meningeal involvement terminally Clinically cutaneous and systemic types of infection have been described The cutaneous may be primary or may appear as a manifestation of an already established systemic infection Cutaneous lesions may appear as acneiform pustules punched-out granulomatous ulcers subcutaneous tumors or deep-seated abscesses Many cutaneous cases progress to generalized infection with involvement of the lungs the visceral organs and the central nervous system Systemic cryptococcosis may involve the brain meninges lungs liver spleen pancreas thyroid and aorta In the majority of cases the central nervous system is the most frequently involved the lungs occasionally and other organs seldom Primary pulmonary infections resemble neoplasm or tuberculosis Brain infection may resemble an encephalitis acute or chronic meningitis of bacterial origin (especially tuberculous meningitis) brain tumor brain abscess central nervous system degeneration or central nervous system syphilis The spinal fluid pressure is increased, globulin and albumin increased cell count high chlorides and sugar content low

There is frequent association (10 to 30%) of cryptococcosis and the leukemia



FIG 5 *Cryptococcus neoformans* 12 days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature

osis rabbit dog cat, pig goat, horse and cattle (Ajello *et al* 1961) However, there have been no reports of animal to man or man to man transmission of disease

### CRYPTOCOCCUS NEOFORMANS

*Cryptococcus neoformans* is a yeastlike nonfermenting nonsporulating nonmycelial budding fungus characterized by the development of a wide capsule both in tissue and in culture. It has a marked predilection for the central nervous system and produces a subacute or chronic infection of the meninges or lesions simulating brain tumor or brain abscess but may also involve the skin the lungs and other organs

#### HISTORY

There are many early reports concerned with budding yeastlike fungi which although given a variety of names and isolated from a variety of sources both human and animal are considered to be the same fungus *Cryptococcus neoformans*

A yeast *Saccharomyces* sp. was described in Germany by Busse (1894 1896) and Buschke (1895) from a patient with localized subperiosteal infection of the tibia who later died with multiple lesions of the skin and viscera. In Italy, Sanfelice (1894 1895a b) isolated a yeast from fermenting peach juice demonstrated its pathogenicity for laboratory animals and named the organism *Saccharomyces neoformans* because of its so-called tumor forming characteristics in experimental infections. Also he reported (1895c) the isolation of a yeast *S. litho*

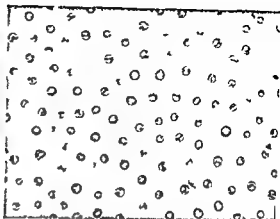


FIG 6 *Cryptococcus neoformans* round yeastlike cells with slight halo from Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature  $\times 490$

genes from the lymph node of an ox with primary carcinoma of the liver. Later (1898) he described *S. granulomatogenes* isolated from the lung of swine. Weis (1902) compared *S. plummeri* from cancer of the breast and *Torula sanfelice* from adenocarcinoma of a human ovary with *S. neoformans* of Sanfelice and a yeast isolated from milk by Klein (1901). He placed these 4 organisms in the genus *Torula*. Frothingham (1902) reported *Torula* sp. from a tumor in the lung of a horse. Later (1905) von Hansemann reported a yeast from the spinal fluid of a patient with suspected tuberculous meningitis. Versé (1914) reported leptomeningitis in a woman to be due to a yeastlike organism.

In the United States Stoddard and Cutler (1916) reported 2 cases in man presenting signs of cerebral tumor which were caused by a budding fungus. The fungus isolated from one of these cases was compared with that obtained by Frothingham in 1902 and was named *Torula histolytica*. All these fungi are now considered to be identical and the yeast was named *Cryptococcus neoformans* after most of the above isolates were compared and reclassified (Benham 1935 Lodder and Kreger Van Rij 1952).

#### CULTIVATION

*Cryptococcus neoformans* may be cultured at room temperature or at 37°C on all common laboratory media. On Sabouraud's



FIG 8 *Candida albicans* 20 days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature

of the material on a slide and gently pressing to a thin film under a cover glass. Also these materials should be mixed with a small amount of India ink and examined under a cover glass before the preparation dries. The fungus appears as a thick walled spherical budding yeastlike cell 5 to 15 microns in diameter surrounded by a wide capsule (Fig 7). Specimens should be cultured on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature and blood agar at 37 °C.

A positive urease test immediately distinguishes *Cryptococcus* sp from *Candida* sp and true yeasts. Ability to grow at 37 °C and pathogenicity for the mouse distinguishes *C. neoformans* from other similar but non pathogenic cryptococci.

#### TREATMENT

A wide variety of drugs have been used to treat acute and chronic cryptococcosis (Littman and Zimmerman 1956). The chronicity of the disease with known remissions extending over a period of 12 or more years makes it difficult to evaluate any therapeutic regimen. However successful treatment with amphotericin B has been well documented (Seabury and Dascomb 1958, Utz *et al* 1959, Newcomer *et al* 1960, Fitzpatrick and Poser 1960, Kress and Cantrell 1963, Barrash and Fort 1960, Smith *et al* 1960).

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Contaminated soil is the source of infection for both animals and man. Rarely primary cutaneous infection can be established by direct inoculation of the skin. The disease is established by inhalation of *C. neoformans* with dust and dirt with metastasis throughout the body by lymphatic or hematogenous

dissemination following a primary pulmonary disease. The isolation of *C. neoformans* from pigeon excreta in large cities would allow one to predict hundreds of subclinical infections within the population. However the extent of infection has not been determined by skin testing surveys.

#### CANDIDA ALBICANS

*Candida albicans* is an oval budding yeast like fungus producing both blastospores and pseudomycelium in tissue and exudates and in culture at room temperature and at 37 °C. Its exact etiologic significance in any disease process is difficult to establish since it may frequently be found in the normal mouth and the intestinal tract or as a secondary contaminant in other recognized diseases.

#### HISTORY

Langenbeck (1839) demonstrated in thrush the presence of a yeastlike budding fungus which Robin (1853) named *Oidium*



FIG 9 *Candida albicans* Pseudo hyphae and clusters of blastospores on Sabouraud's glucose agar  $\times 650$  (Conant N F, Smith D T, Baker R, D Callaway J L, and Martin D S. Manual of Clinical Mycology p 186 Philadelphia Saunders)

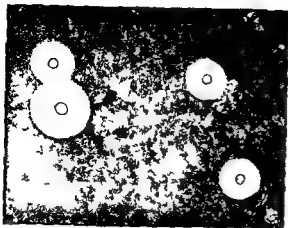


FIG 7 *Cryptococcus neoformans*  
India ink preparation of spinal fluid  
× 560

lymphoma group of diseases (Hutter and Collins 1962). Concurrent fungous infection may be due to the debilitated state of the patient who acquires exogenous infection or to activation of an existing latent infection. The latter hypothesis is borne out by the incidental finding at autopsy of small subpleural nodules containing *C. neoformans* in patients whose death was due to a variety of unrelated conditions (Haugen and Baker 1954). The use of steroid therapy, urethane, mustard gas and folic acid antagonists may activate such latent infections by *C. neoformans* and a variety of other fungi (Zimmerman and Rappaport, 1954; Zimmerman 1955; Keye and Magee 1956; Baker 1962; Goldstein and Rambo 1962).

The histology of the lesions in the brain varies greatly: some sections show only a minimal reaction with surprising lack of inflammatory cells; other sections may show pseudotubercles formed of giant cells, epithelioid cells and lymphocytes. The centers of such lesions may be necrotic or hyalinized. Lesions in other tissues, particularly the skin, are typical granulomata.

Many early attempts to demonstrate antibody response by the patient to *C. neoformans* have produced negative or conflicting results (Litman and Zimmerman 1956). However, studies of antibody response in animals immunized with different strains have demonstrated capsular specificity of 3 serologic types designated A, II and C (Evans 1949; Evans 1950; Evans and Kessel 1951). Also a capsular reaction has

been reported with immune rabbit serum and *Cryptococcus* cells (Neill *et al.* 1949). Such a reaction is not a quelling or swelling of the capsule since India ink preparations demonstrate the same size of capsule as does homologous serum (Evans *et al.* 1956). Sera which are said to be useful for serologic identification of *C. neoformans* have been obtained from rabbits (Tsuchiya *et al.* 1963).

Infection in mice can be modified by immunization with *C. neoformans* (Louria 1960; Louria *et al.* 1963). Also treatment with immune rabbit serum gave longer survival time in experimentally infected mice (Gadebusch 1958).

Anticryptococcal sera have been shown to give serologic cross reactions with antigens from other fungi, bacteria and gum tragacanth (Evans *et al.* 1953). The capsular material, acidic polysaccharide, apparently behaves as a polyvalent anion and as such reacts with a variety of cationic substances (Evans 1960 and 1962).

Soluble material in the spinal fluid, the blood and the urine of a patient with cryptococcosis was found to precipitate in rabbit anticryptococcus serum (Neill *et al.* 1951). Recently, antigen also has been detected in patients' serum and spinal fluid by a slide agglutination test using antibody-coated latex particles (Bloomfield *et al.* 1963). Yeast cells and polysaccharide can be detected in tissues by the immunofluorescent staining technique (Eveland *et al.* 1957). This technique also has been used to identify *C. neoformans* in culture (Kase and Marshall 1960).

Various serologic techniques have been used to detect antibody in the serum of patients with cryptococcosis—indirect fluorescent staining (Vogel *et al.* 1961), hemagglutination test (Pollock and Ward 1962) and a complement fixation test (Bennett *et al.* 1962).

A skin test antigen prepared from *C. neoformans* has shown specificity in sensitized guinea pigs (Salvin and Smith 1961). Such an antigen would be useful for epidemiologic studies to determine the extent of subclinical infections.

#### DIAGNOSIS

Sputum, pus, gelatinous exudates or sediment of centrifuged spinal fluid should be examined unstained by placing a small amount

TABLE 2 DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF SPECIES OF *Candida*\*

	PATHOGENIC		NONPATHOGENIC					
	<i>C. albicans</i>		<i>C. tropicalis</i>	<i>C. pseudotropicalis</i>	<i>C. lusitana</i>	<i>C. parapsilosis</i>	<i>C. stellatoidea</i>	<i>C. guilliermondii</i>
Sabouraud's agar	Creamy growth		Not characteristic	Not characteristic	Flat dry	Creamy	Creamy	Creamy growth
Sabouraud's broth	No surface growth		Narrow surface film with bubbles	No surface growth	Wide surface film	No surface growth	No surface growth	No surface growth
Blood agar	Medium sized dull gray colonies		Large gray colonies surrounded by mycelial film	Colonies small not characteristic	Colonies small irregularly shaped flat or heaped	Colonies small brilliant white	Colonies star shaped	Medium sized dull gray colonies
Corn meal agar	Branched treelike mycelium with chlamydo-spores		Mycelium well developed bearing numerous blastospores no chlamydo pores	Mycelium poorly developed no chlamydo-spores	Crossed sticks mycelium no chlamydo-spores	Mycelium well developed no chlamydo-spores	Mycelium with large ball like clusters of blastospores	Mycelium well developed no chlamydo-spores
Glucose	AG		AG	AG	AG	AG <sup>1</sup>	AG	2
Maltose	AG		AG				AG	
Sucrose	A		AG	AG				
Lactose				AG				

\* Martin D ■ Jones C P ■ ao A F and Lee L E Jr 1937 A practical classification of the moniliae J Bact 34 99 1 9

<sup>1</sup> Occasionally acid only

■ Langeron and Guerra report acid and gas produced in glucose and sucrose when cultured at 25 °C and held 48 days



*albicans* The rudimentary morphology of the yeastlike fungi and the frequency with which they have been isolated from infected and contaminated materials has made classification and identification difficult. However, the application of physiologic, biochemical, and serologic techniques to this group of organisms has allowed a classification to evolve that has proved to be useful. Berkhout (1923) established the genus *Candida* and now the several species can be identified by standard laboratory methods.

*Candida albicans* has been considered to be the only pathogenic member of the genus. However, other species are being isolated with increasing frequency from a variety of lesions in man.

#### CULTIVATION

*Candida albicans* may be cultured on all common laboratory media both at room temperature and at 37° C. On Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature the colonies are cream colored and soft and have

a distinct yeastlike odor (Fig. 8). The surface growth is composed of oval budding cells 2.5 × 4 to 6 microns while the submerged growth is composed of pseudomycelium. This pseudomycelium in slide culture preparations is seen to consist of elongate, undetached cells with clusters of blastospores distributed at the points of constriction (Fig. 9). On corn meal agar typical chlamydospores are produced (Fig. 10). There is no surface growth on Sabouraud's glucose broth; glucose and maltose are fermented with acid and gas, sucrose with acid only, and lactose is not affected. The common species of *Candida* can be differentiated by the techniques of Martin *et al.* (1937), Benham (1957), and Lodder and Kreger Van Rij (1952). The different species are presented in Table 2.

Since *C. albicans* is the species most frequently encountered in pathologic conditions and must be distinguished readily from saprophytic species found on or in the body, several reliable quick methods for identification have been proposed. It can be identified within 2 days by its colony morphology when grown on Levine eosin-methylene blue agar under CO<sub>2</sub> at 37° C (Weid, 1953). Media to stimulate pigment production by incorporation of various compounds also has allowed rapid identification (MacLaren and Armen, 1958). Other methods rely on a medium that stimulates chlamydospore production (Fig. 10) which is the distinguishing morphologic characteristic of *C. albicans* (Nickerson and Mankowski, 1953; Taschdjian, 1957; Taubert and Smith, 1960; Gordon and Little, 1963). Also rapid germ tube production from yeast cells suspended in serum distinguishes *C. albicans* from other species (Taschdjian *et al.*, 1960).

Prolonged cultivation of *Candida* species in the presence of amphotericin B produces a slightly increased tolerance for the antibiotic (Littman *et al.*, 1958; Lones and Peacock, 1959).

#### DISTRIBUTION

*Candida* species are inhabitants of the normal mouth, the intestinal tract, and the vagina and may be cultured from these locations in 35 to 40 per cent of normal individuals. Of this number, about 15 to 20 per

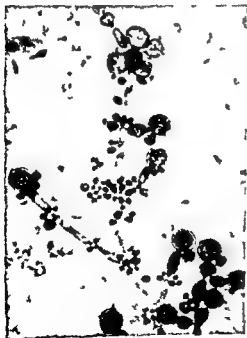


FIG. 10 *Candida albicans* Chlamydospores on corn meal agar × 750 (Conant, N. F., Smith, D. T., Baker, R. D., Callaway, J. L., and Martin, D. S. Manual of Clinical Mycology, p. 186. Philadelphia: Saunders).

TABLE 2 DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF SPECIES IN *Candida*\*

	PATHOGENIC		NONPATHOGENIC					
	<i>C. albicans</i>		<i>C. tropicalis</i>	<i>C. pseudotropicalis</i>	<i>C. krusei</i>	<i>C. parapsilosis</i>	<i>C. stellatoidea</i>	<i>C. guilliermondii</i>
Sabouraud's agar	Creamy growth		Not characteristic	Not characteristic	Flat, dry	Creamy	Creamy	Creamy growth
Sabouraud's broth	No surface growth		Narrow surface film with bubbles	No surface growth	Wide surface film	No surface growth	No surface growth	No surface growth
Blood agar	Medium sized dull gray colonies		Large gray colonies surrounded by mycelial fringe	Colonies small not characteristic	Colonies small irregularly shaped flat or beaped	Colonies small brilliant white	Colonies star shaped	Medium sized dull gray colonies
Corn meal agar	Branched treelike mycelium with chlamydo-spores		Mycelium well developed bearing numerous blastospores no chlamydo-spores	Mycelium poorly developed no chlamydo-spores	Crossed sticks mycelium no chlamydo-spores	Mycelium well developed no chlamydo-spores	Mycelium with large ball like clusters of blasto spores	Mycelium well developed no chlamydo-spores
Glucose	AG		AG	AG	AG	AG <sup>1</sup>	AG	
Maltose	AG		AG				AG	
Sucrose	A		AG	AG				
Lactose				AG				

\* Martin D ■ Jones C P Yao A F and Lee L E Jr 1937 A practical classification of the moniliae J Bact 34 99 129

<sup>1</sup> Occasionally acid only

Langeron and Guerra report acid and gas produced in glucose and sucrose when cultured at 25 °C and held 20 days

*albicans* The rudimentary morphology of the yeastlike fungi and the frequency with which they have been isolated from infected and contaminated materials has made classification and identification difficult. However, the application of physiologic, biochemical and serologic technics to this group of organisms has allowed a classification to evolve that has proved to be useful. Berkhout (1923) established the genus *Candida* and now the several species can be identified by standard laboratory methods.

*Candida albicans* has been considered to be the only pathogenic member of the genus. However, other species are being isolated with increasing frequency from a variety of lesions in man.

#### CULTIVATION

*Candida albicans* may be cultured on all common laboratory media both at room temperature and at 37° C. On Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature the colonies are cream colored and soft and have

a distinct yeastlike odor (Fig. 8). The surface growth is composed of oval budding cells 2.5 × 4 to 6 microns while the submerged growth is composed of pseudomycelium. This pseudomycelium in slide culture preparations is seen to consist of elongate, undetached cells with clusters of blastospores distributed at the points of constriction (Fig. 9). On corn meal agar typical chlamydospores are produced (Fig. 10). There is no surface growth on Sabouraud's glucose broth; glucose and maltose are fermented with acid and gas; sucrose with acid only, and lactose is not affected. The common species of *Candida* can be differentiated by the technics of Martin *et al.* (1937), Benham (1957) and Lodder and Kreger Van Rij (1952). The different species are presented in Table 2.

Since *C. albicans* is the species most frequently encountered in pathologic conditions and must be distinguished readily from saprophytic species found on or in the body, several reliable quick methods for identification have been proposed. It can be identified within 2 days by its colony morphology when grown on Levine eosin methylene blue agar under CO<sub>2</sub> at 37° C (Weld 1953). Media to stimulate pigment production by incorporation of various compounds also has allowed rapid identification (MacLaren and Armen 1958). Other methods rely on a medium that stimulates chlamydospore production (Fig. 10) which is the distinguishing morphologic characteristic of *C. albicans* (Nickerson and Mankowski 1953, Taschdjian 1957, Taubert and Smith 1960, Gordon and Little 1963). Also rapid germ tube production from yeast cells suspended in serum distinguishes *C. albicans* from other species (Taschdjian *et al.* 1960).

Prolonged cultivation of *Candida* species in the presence of amphotericin B produces a slightly increased tolerance for the antibiotic (Littman *et al.* 1958, Lones and Peacock 1959).

#### DISTRIBUTION

*Candida* species are inhabitants of the normal mouth, the intestinal tract and the vagina and may be cultured from these locations in 35 to 40 per cent of normal individuals. Of this number about 15 to 20 per



FIG. 10 *Candida albicans* Chlamydospores on corn meal agar × 750 (Conant, N. F., Smith, D. T., Baker, H. D., Callaway, J. L., and Martin, D. S. Manual of Clinical Mycology, p. 186. Philadelphia: Saunders.)

when stained by Gram's method such sections reveal the gram positive blastospores and the hyphal segments of *C. albicans* in the centers of the tuberclelike structures and in areas of necrosis

Candidiasis occasionally accompany localized infections. Such lesions are sterile and appear on the body as a result of sensitivity to the yeastlike fungi found in lesions elsewhere on the body

Although *C. albicans* is considered to be the pathogenic member of the genus other species also have been isolated from disseminated infections. Therefore definitive identification of a yeastlike fungus is necessary for a complete understanding of the pathogenesis of candidiasis

### IMMUNITY

The sera of patients with candidiasis will frequently show agglutination with saline suspensions of *C. albicans*. About 40 or 50 per cent of adults show a positive skin test to *C. albicans* vaccine or oidiomycin (Lewis *et al* 1958). Both these tests have doubtful diagnostic significance. The constant finding of *Candida* species on the skin in the mouth and in the intestinal tract of apparently normal individuals could account for both agglutinins and sensitivity to these fungi. It has been shown (Drake 1945) that by a slide agglutination technique 45 per cent of normal human sera agglutinate *C. albicans*. These findings indicate that agglutination tests have little value. However hypersensitivity should be considered and properly evaluated when treating a case of candidiasis.

Serologic antigenic and infectivity studies in animals have proved to be useful for understanding not only the possible modes of reaction against infection by *C. albicans* but also some of the pathogenic properties of this fungus. Sera from immunized rabbits have been obtained for antigenic analysis of *Candida* species (Tsuchiya *et al* 1961). The single species *C. albicans* has been shown to consist of 2 antigenic groups A and B (Hasenclever and Mitchell 1961). However several strains from each of these antigenic groups have the same degree of virulence for mice (Hasenclever and Mitchell 1961).

*C. albicans* is pathogenic for mice on in

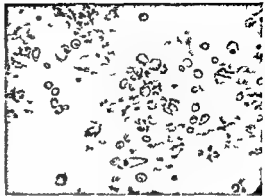


FIG 11 *Candida albicans* budding yeastlike cells in fresh preparation of sputum  $\times 620$

traperitoneal injection when suspended in an adjuvant (Salvin *et al* 1952; Salvin 1952). Virulence is also enhanced in cortisone-treated mice and in mice made Allaxon diabetic (Louria and Brown 1960; Andriole and Hasenclever 1962). However mice are uniformly susceptible to intravenous inoculation of *C. albicans* but not other species when a suitable inoculum is used (Hasenclever 1959). Also soluble substances obtained from sonically oscillated cells have been shown to be lethal for mice (Mourad and Friedman 1961).

The pathogenicity of *C. albicans* has been correlated with its ability to form mycelium quickly when inoculated into mice. It is thought that the inability of polymorphonuclear cells to phagocytize the pseudomycelium results in dissemination of the fungus (Hill and Gebhardt 1956; Young 1958; Gresham and Whittle 1961; Louria and Brayton 1964).

Attempts have been made to use fluorescent antibody techniques not only for identification and classification of yeastlike fungi but also as a tool for studying the pathogenesis of experimental infection in mice (Gordon 1962; Kemp and Solotorovsky 1962).

### DIAGNOSIS

Sputum and materials from lesions in the mouth and in the vagina should be examined as fresh cover glass preparations and as gram stained smears. Skin or nail scrapings should be placed in a drop of 10 per cent KOH under a cover glass and the preparation

cent of the isolates have been identified as *C. albicans*. Thus, they are frequently isolated from pathologic materials with which they have no etiologic significance (MacKenzie 1961). With rare exceptions however *C. albicans* has not been isolated from normal skin. *C. albicans* is found frequently in the sputum of patients with proved nonmycotic pulmonary disease (tuberculosis and carcinoma). It is also found in quantity in the stools of patients with diarrheal symptoms due to other causes (sprue and pernicious anemia). Many species of *Candida* including *C. albicans* have been isolated from a variety of animals (van Uden and Carmo Sousa 1957) and from exogenous sources in nature (Ajello 1956).

Of the several yeastlike fungi of the genus *Candida* only *C. albicans* is pathogenic for laboratory animals. Rabbits injected intravenously with 1 ml of a 1 per cent saline suspension die in 4 to 5 days with typical abscesses in the kidneys. Also mice are susceptible to an intravenous injection of 0.3 ml of a 1 per cent saline suspension.

#### PATHOGENESIS

*Candida albicans* may cause infections of the mucous membranes of the mouth (thrush) and the vagina (vaginosis or vulvovaginosis), infections of the skin particularly of the intertriginous areas (axillae, infra-mammary, inguinal, intergluteal, interdigital webs of the hands and the feet), infections of the nails (onychomycosis and paronychia), and systemic infections (bronchopulmonary or generalized infection of lungs, lymph nodes, liver, spleen, and meninges).

Infection of the mouth (thrush) is encountered more frequently in children than in adults. In children it usually occurs following infection at birth from a mother with a vaginal infection (Taschdjian and Kozinn 1957, Kozinn *et al.* 1960). In adults infection with *C. albicans* usually follows a debilitating illness. Such lesions appear as extensive or scattered whitish patches which contain the blastospores and the pseudomycelium of the fungus (Boggs *et al.* 1961). Chronic oral lesions may last several years. Occasionally the fungus spreads to the skin and the gastrointestinal tract to produce a generalized fatal candidiasis (Goldman and Schwarz 1962).

Vulvovaginosis, caused by infection of the vaginal mucosa and the vulva, is a thrushlike infection characterized by irritation, pruritus, and a thin discharge.

Infection of the skin usually occurs by autoinoculation of *C. albicans* from the mouth or the intestinal tract. Intertriginous lesions of the hand follow maceration of tissue by continued immersion in water. Such lesions occur frequently in housewives, waiters, chefs, bartenders, fruit canners, etc. Intertrigo of the axillae and the intergluteal folds may become established because of obesity or diabetes. Other intertriginous areas showing occasional infection are the inframammary folds, groin, and interdigital webs of the toes. Such lesions are characterized by erythematous, exudative areas with well-defined vesicopustular or papulosquamous borders.

Infection of the nails (onychomycosis and paronychia) is characterized by swelling at the nail bed which may be painful and resemble a pyogenic infection and by thickened transversely grooved nails.

Infection of the eye (mycotic keratitis) follows trauma producing corneal ulceration which is difficult to manage (Manchester and Georg 1959).

Infections of the lungs may cause a mild bronchopulmonary candidiasis with persistent cough and with sputum containing cellular debris and yeastlike cells. Roentgenograms reveal slight to moderate peribronchial thickening and scattered nodules may be heard at the base of the lungs. More extensive pulmonary candidiasis may resemble miliary tuberculosis with cough, fever, dyspnea, chest pain, hemoptysis, and night sweats accompanied by signs of pleural thickening and consolidation.

Systemic infection usually follows chronic debilitating disease, prolonged use of wide-spectrum antibiotics, and steroidal compounds. Frequently such infections may lead to involvement of many organs with terminal brain abscess, meningitis, and endocarditis (Louria *et al.* 1962).

Histologically sections of skin may show abscess formation or a chronic inflammatory reaction with giant-cell formation. Routine staining (H and E) may reveal tuberculoid granulomata with giant and epithelioid cells characteristic of tuberculosis. However

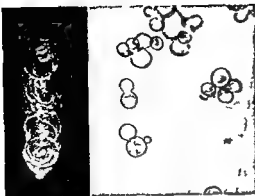


FIG 12 *Blastomyces dermatitidis* (Left) Yeastlike culture on blood agar 7 days at 37°C (Right) Yeastlike single budding cells from blood agar culture  $\times 587$



FIG 13 *Blastomyces dermatitidis* 21 days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature

suppress or eliminate bacterial contamination (chloramphenicol 0.05 mg/ml and cycloheximide 0.5 mg/ml of medium). However the yeast phase growth of *B. dermatitidis* may be suppressed in the presence of antibiotics when grown at 37°C (McDonough *et al* 1960). The duplicate culture at room temperature will overcome this difficulty and a positive culture will be obtained.

*Blastomyces dermatitidis* may be grown at room temperature or at 37°C on all common laboratory media. On blood agar or beef infusion glucose agar at 37°C the culture becomes wrinkled waxy and yeastlike in consistency (Fig 12). Microscopically it is composed of short broad 3 to 4-celled hyphal segments and budding yeastlike cells 8 to 20 microns in diameter similar to those seen in exudates or sections (Fig 12). On Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature the growth is at first smooth and yeastlike but quickly develops aerial projections and becomes prickly. At this time a few budding cells may be found in such cultures but the majority of the growth has become filamentous. A final overgrowth by white aerial mycelium which may turn brown with age establishes the completely filamentous stage of the fungus (Fig 13). Microscopically such a culture shows spherical to pyriform spores 5 to 8 microns in diameter attached directly to the hyphae or at the ends of short pedicles (Fig 14).

This filamentous form can be converted to the yeastlike tissue phase by subculturing to blood agar and incubating at 37°C. Temperature alone is responsible for the conversion of the mycelial to the yeast phase type of growth.

#### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

There is one antigenic type of *B. dermatitidis* as shown by the complement fixation



FIG 14 *Blastomyces dermatitidis* filamentous stage with conidia from Sabouraud's glucose agar culture at room temperature  $\times 490$

gently heated. In fresh preparations *C. albicans* appears as an oval budding yeast-like fungus  $2.5 \times 4$  to 6 microns, with occasional hyphal fragments  $2.5 \times 6$  to 12 microns (Fig. 11). *C. albicans* appears as gram positive oval budding, yeastlike cells and gram positive elongated hyphal cells.

All materials should be cultured on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature and at  $37^\circ\text{C}$ . Clinical specimens should be streaked on Levine eosin methylene blue agar plates which are incubated at  $37^\circ\text{C}$  in a candle jar for rapid identification of *C. albicans*.

Antibiotics should be added to the media to prevent bacterial contamination (chloramphenicol 0.05 mg/ml).

### TREATMENT

Oral and vaginal candidiasis may respond to alkaline mouth washes or alkaline douches, respectively. In both cases a 1 per cent gentian violet (in 10 to 20% alcohol) used twice daily as a paint for 4 or 5 days has proved to be effective. Sodium caprylate and the methyl and propyl esters of parahydroxybenzoic acid also have been recommended for oral and vaginal candidiasis. A propionate vaginal jelly (propion gel) has been reported as giving excellent results in vulvovaginitis. Carbowax sulfur ointment has been effective in the treatment of intertriginous areas. Vaginal candidiasis and paronychia. However, chronic oral or vaginal candidiasis may resist all therapy and eventually lead to dissemination. The antibiotic nystatin has proved to be useful in the therapy of the conditions mentioned above.

Also, nystatin, a nystatin tetracycline compound has been used to avoid the effects of treatment with a wide spectrum antibiotic.

Resistant and systemic candidiasis is treated best with amphotericin B (Louria 1958, Newcomer *et al.* 1959, Louria and Dineen 1960, Kroetz *et al.* 1962).

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Yeastlike fungi are found in the mouth in the intestinal tract in the vagina and on the skin of normal individuals. The presence of a high percentage (40 to 50%) of positive skin reactions to ordiomyacin or to an autog-

enous vaccine indicates that individuals may become hypersensitive to these organisms or their products. Autoinoculation from any of the sites mentioned can cause disease especially during intensive antibiotic therapy.

### CONTROL MEASURES

Patients with clinical candidiasis should be examined and treated for the presence of yeastlike fungi in the mouth or the intestinal tract to prevent autoinoculation.

### BLASTOMYCES DERMATITIDIS

*Blastomyces dermatitidis* is a spherical thick walled budding yeastlike fungus in tissue or exudates and in culture at  $37^\circ\text{C}$ . In culture at room temperature it develops slowly as a typical moldlike filamentous fungus. It produces a granulomatous infection of the skin and the internal organs very similar clinically and histologically to tuberculosis. This disease is usually referred to as North American blastomycosis or Gilchrist's disease.

### HISTORY

Gilchrist (1896) first described blastomycotic dermatitis, a disease resembling tuberculosis from biopsy specimens which showed refractive double-contoured budding cells in a section of skin. A second case was reported by Gilchrist and Stokes (1896) from which they obtained a culture of the fungus which was named *Blastomyces dermatitidis* by Gilchrist and Stokes in 1898. Since these initial reports several fungi have been reported from North American blastomycosis, namely *Glenospora gammeli*, *Blastomyces coides*, *tulaneensis*, *Monosporium tulaneense*, *Endomyces capsulatus*, *Endomyces dermatitidis* and *Glenospora brevis*. A comparative study has shown them to be identical with Gilchrist's fungus *Blastomyces dermatitidis* (Conant 1939).

### CULTIVATION

Clinical materials such as sputum pus from draining sinuses and biopsy specimens should be cultured on brain heart infusion glucose blood agar at  $37^\circ\text{C}$  and on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature. Antibiotics are used in the medium to

with coccidioidomycosis (Friedman and Conant 1953 Campbell and Brinkley 1953 Campbell 1960)

### DIAGNOSIS

Crusts from verrucous lesions should be placed in a drop of 10 per cent KOH under a covered glass and examined microscopically after the preparation has been heated gently. Sputum and pus from miliary abscesses at the border of cutaneous lesions or from subcutaneous lesions should be examined under a cover glass as untreated fresh preparations. Spinal fluid and urine should be centrifuged and the sediment examined. In all of these materials *B. dermatitidis* appears as a thick walled single budding yeast like fungus 8 to 20 microns in diameter (Fig 15)

Culture materials on blood agar at 37 °C and on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature. Heaped wrinkled isolated yeastlike colonies which appear on blood agar should be transferred to slants for further development and identification.

### TREATMENT

Patients with systemic blastomycosis should receive supportive treatment a high calorie high vitamin diet with continued bed rest.

The aromatic diamidines stilbamidine and dihydroystilbamidine have been used successfully for the treatment of cutaneous and systemic blastomycosis (Curtis and Harrell 1952 Harrell *et al* 1955). Also amphotericin B has been used successfully in cases of blastomycosis which have failed to respond to the above drugs or have had periods of remission after adequate treatment with them (Harrell and Curtis 1957 Newcomer *et al* 1959 Beard *et al* 1960).

Pulmonary resections and lobectomies have been performed with some success (Schwarz and Baum 1951 Buechner *et al* 1953 White and Owen 1954).

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Blastomycosis is a disease of the North American continent—the United States and Canada. The etiologic agent *B. dermatitidis* exists in nature but unlike *Histoplasma Coccidioides* etc it has been isolated from

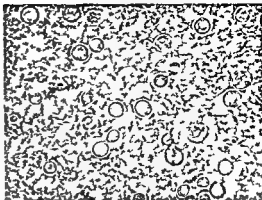


FIG 15 *Blastomyces dermatitidis* yeastlike single budding cells in pus X 475 (Conant N F Smith D T Baker R D Callaway J L and Martin D S Manual of Clinical Mycology p 54 Philadelphia Saunders)

nature only once. Essentially the dog is the only known animal to have spontaneous blastomycosis. However there has been no report of animal to man transmission of the disease.

Blastomycosis is a primary pulmonary infection. Few or many budding organisms can be demonstrated in the sputum and cultures are easily obtained. However there have been no reports of man to man transmission of the disease.

Until recently only sporadic cases of blastomycosis have been reported. In 1955 an epidemic of systemic blastomycosis involved 10 patients with the onset of the disease occurring within a 5 month period (Smith *et al* 1955 Harns *et al* 1957).

### BLASTOMYCES BRASILIENSIS

*Blastomyces brasiliensis* is a large thick walled single and multiple budding yeastlike fungus in exudates and tissues and in culture at 37 °C. In culture at room temperature the fungus develops slowly as a heaped cerebri form glabrous smooth colony or as a slow growing filamentous colony with a short white aerial mycelium. It produces a granulomatous infection of the mucous membranes of the mouth the lymph nodes and the internal organs. The disease is known as South American blastomycosis, paracoccidioid



test (Martin, 1935) Soluble antigens from untreated and sonic treated yeast cells have been used in the complement fixation test and polysaccharides sensitize sheep cells to be used in the hemagglutination test (Martin 1953) Also Dyson and Evans (1954 1955), Knight and Marcus (1958) Knight *et al* (1959) and Marcus *et al* (1960) have reported antigens obtained by physical and chemical means from yeast cells to be active and specific when injected into the skin of humans and animals Gordon (1958) and Kaplan and Kaufman (1961) have used the fluorescent antibody technic to demonstrate specificity of *Blastomyces* antigens However they found that cross reactions occurred with *Candida albicans* and *Histoplasma capsulatum* Further investigations by Kaplan and Kaufman (1963) showed reaction of labeled globulin with the yeast phase but not with the mycelial phase of *B dermatitidis* A possible antigenic structure for the yeast cell antigens of *B dermatitidis* has been worked out by fluorescent antibody technics (Kaufman and Kaplan 1963) Ball *et al* (1960) used the agar gel diffusion precipitin test to demonstrate antibody in human serum

#### DISTRIBUTION

So far as is known, *B dermatitidis* is confined to the United States and Canada A case reported from Europe in an American soldier could have been acquired before leaving this country (Brody 1947) The greatest incidence of blastomycosis in the United States is found in the eastern half of the country (Chick *et al* 1960) Many cases of spontaneous infection in dogs have been reported (Menges 1960) and also one in the horse (Benbrook *et al* 1948) and one in the sea lion (Weaver *et al* 1959) *B dermatitidis* has been isolated once from soil (Denton *et al* 1961)

#### PATHOGENESIS

Blastomycosis is a chronic granulomatous infection of the skin and the internal organs Primary cutaneous infection is rare and is characterized by an inflammation of the regional lymphatics which results in lymphadenopathy in association with the granulomatous or verrucous lesion (Schwarz and Baum 1951 Wilson *et al* 1955) Infection usu-

ally starts as a papulopustule which spreads peripherally showing a granulating base covered with a dirty pink exudate and a raised papilliform or verrucous border with milium abscesses Spontaneous healing of the center produces scars of tissue paper thinness surrounded by the characteristic raised border (Abernathy 1959)

Primary pulmonary infection may be minimal or extensive and simulate tuberculosis or a malignancy With hematogenous dissemination the subcutaneous tissues skin and bones are most commonly affected Skin lesions appear anywhere on the body as multiple subcutaneous gummatous lesions which rupture spontaneously freeing bloody pus The vertebrae and the ribs are the bones most frequently involved

Lesions are also found in the central nervous system the liver the spleen and the kidneys where they are minimal and in the prostate The intestines are not affected (Kunkel *et al*, 1954 Weed, 1955, Cherniss and Waisbren 1956)

Two reports by Kunkel *et al* (1954) and Smith *et al* (1955) have shown that blastomycosis can occur as a primary pulmonary self limited disease similar to coccidioidomycosis histoplasmosis and tuberculosis

Histologically the lesions consist of numerous milium abscesses containing polymorphous nuclear cells cellular debris and giant cells Also tuberclelike lesions may be found which are indistinguishable from those seen in tuberculosis unless the fungus can be demonstrated

#### IMMUNITY

Complement fixing antibodies can be demonstrated in the serum of patients with extensive or progressive infection These antibodies denote extent of infection and signify a poor prognosis They cannot be demonstrated in patients with localized cutaneous lesions (Smith 1949) Hypersensitivity to *Blastomyces* vaccine carbohydrate and protein fractions of the yeast phase and to blastomycin can be demonstrated in most cases a delayed tuberculinlike reaction becomes positive in 24 to 48 hours The antigens used also react in low titer with serum from patients with histoplasmosis South American blastomycosis and infrequently

many noncharacteristic hyphal swellings are seen in the mycelium. On the aerial mycelium some strains develop round to pyriform sessile conidia 3 to 5 microns in diameter.

#### DISTRIBUTION

*B. brasiliensis* is confined to the South American continent where hundreds of cases have been reported from Brazil and sporadic cases from other South American countries. Three cases have been reported from Costa Rica in Central America (Trejos and Romero 1953) and one from Mexico (Gonzalez Ochoa and Esquivel 1950). One case has been described in a patient from the state of Oregon who had had previous residence in Venezuela (Perry *et al* 1954). There have been no reports of spontaneous infections in animals in the endemic areas nor has the fungus been isolated from soil.

#### PATHOGENESIS

*B. brasiliensis* causes a chronic granulomatous infection of the mucous membranes of the mouth and the adjacent skin of the face, the lymph nodes and the viscera. The mouth seems to be the portal of entry where ulcerating vegetative papillomatous lesions on the buccal mucosa spread to the adjacent skin of the lips and the nose. These lesions resemble those of yaws or mucocutaneous leishmaniasis. The infection may spread to the regional lymphatics and hence to the axillary, inguinal and other nodes. Occasionally direct infection of the lymph glands of the neck without demonstrable buccal lesions produces massive glandular enlargement similar to that seen in Hodgkin's disease. A chronic type of cutaneous blastomycosis resulting in cheloid lesions has been described from the region of the Amazon. This clinical variation is referred to as Lobo's disease. In the visceral type of infection the intestines serve as the portal of entry. Infection of the lymphoid tissue of the intestine with lymphatic drainage to the mesenteric nodes, the spleen and the liver serves to establish massive visceral infection which simulates tuberculous peritonitis, Hodgkin's disease or carcinoma of the abdominal cavity. While the intestinal tract in South American blastomycosis shows gross infection, it should

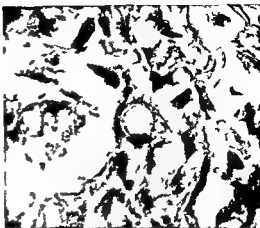


FIG 18 *Blastomyces brasiliensis* section of liver showing large thick walled cells with minute coccushike buds  $\times 1075$

be noted that the intestinal tract is never involved in North American blastomycosis.

Pulmonary infection usually follows lymphatic or hematogenous dissemination of the fungus from lesions elsewhere in the body but may occur as a primary pulmonary infection caused by inhalation of infectious materials. The lesions cannot be distinguished from tuberculosis, Boeck's sarcoid, carcinoma, etc. (Machado and Miranda 1960, de Paula 1962).

Histologically many areas show abscess formation with predominant polymorphonuclear infiltration; other areas show focal lesions with necrotic and caseous centers surrounded by macrophages, lymphocytes, giant cells and fibroblasts. The organisms appear in the tissue or giant cells as large round (10 to 60 microns in diameter) cells with small (1 to 5 microns) or large (10 to 30 microns) peripheral buds (Fig 18). This multiple budding is characteristic for *B. brasiliensis*. Frequent single budding forms 10 to 20 microns in diameter may be mistaken for *H. dermatitidis*.

#### IMMUNITY

Positive complement fixation tests and positive intradermal skin tests have been reported in cases of South American blastomycosis. As in North American blastomycosis, a positive complement fixation test is

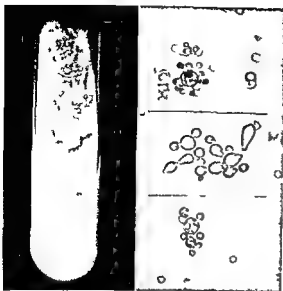


FIG 16 *Blastomyces brasiliensis* (Left) Yeastlike culture 12 days on beef infusion glucose agar at 37°C (Right) Multiple budding cells and moniliform cells from yeastlike culture at 37°C  $\times 450$

granuloma or Lutz Splendore Almeida's disease

#### HISTORY

Lutz (1908) first reported pseudococcidioid granuloma a localized disease of the mouth and regional lymphatics occurring in Brazil in which he described an organism thought to be closely related to *Coccidioides immitis*. Carini (1908) reported a second case of localized buccal infection and called the disease blastomycosis. The first generalized infection was described as blastomycosis by Splendore (1909) who later named the organism *Zymonema brasiliense*. Habersfeld (1919) renamed this fungus *Zymonema histosporocellularis* while Arantes (1922) and Fonseca (1928-1929) described it as *Coccidioides immitis*. However Almeida in 1930 compared cultures of *C. immitis* with cultures from South American blastomycosis and found them to be different. He named the South American fungus *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* and Moore in 1935-1938 added 2 new species *P. cerebriformis* and *P. tenuis*. Conant and Howell in 1942 reduced these species to synonymy with *P. brasiliensis* and placed the South American fungus in the



FIG 17 *Blastomyces brasiliensis* filamentous colony 28 days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature

genus *Blastomyces* as *B. brasiliensis*. A cheloidal type of blastomycosis reported from the Amazon region by Lobo in 1931 and said by Fonseca and Leao in 1940 to be caused by *Glenospora lobo* has been regarded as a different clinical entity occurring among natives in the Amazon but now known to occur in Central America.

#### CULTIVATION

Clinical materials such as sputum, pus, biopsy specimens, etc. should be cultured on brain heart infusion blood glucose agar at 37°C and Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature. Antibiotics may be added to these media to prevent overgrowth by contaminating bacteria (chloramphenicol 0.05 mg/ml and cycloheximide 0.5 mg/ml). On blood agar or beef infusion glucose agar at 37°C the culture becomes smooth, waxy, and yeastlike (Fig 16). It is composed of numerous round, multiple budding yeastlike cells 6 to 30 microns in diameter with buds 1.5 to 5 microns in diameter scattered over the surface of the parent cell (Fig 16). Frequently single budding cells 8 to 14 microns in diameter are also seen. These cells are identical with the yeastlike single budding forms seen in *B. dermatitidis*. There can also be seen short 2 to 4-celled moniliform chains from the cells of which multiple buds are produced (Fig 16). On Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature *B. brasiliensis* grows slowly (1.5 to 2 cm in diameter in 3 weeks) forming a compact culture which may be smooth at first but later develops short aerial mycelium, white to light brown in color (Fig 17). These cultures are composed of hyphae with short, broad, thick-walled cells 2 to 3  $\times$  4 microns in size which easily dissociate. Numerous intercalary and terminal chlamydospores and

many noncharacteristic hyphal swellings are seen in the mycelium. On the aerial mycelium some strains develop round to pyriform sessile conidia 3 to 5 microns in diameter.

#### DISTRIBUTION

*B. brasiliensis* is confined to the South American continent where hundreds of cases have been reported from Brazil and sporadic cases from other South American countries. Three cases have been reported from Costa Rica in Central America (Trejos and Romero 1953) and one from Mexico (Gonzalez Ochoa and Esquivel 1950). One case has been described in a patient from the state of Oregon who had had previous residence in Venezuela (Perry et al 1954). There have been no reports of spontaneous infections in animals in the endemic areas nor has the fungus been isolated from soil.

#### PATHOGENESIS

*B. brasiliensis* causes a chronic granulomatous infection of the mucous membranes of the mouth and the adjacent skin of the face, the lymph nodes and the viscera. The mouth seems to be the portal of entry where ulcerating vegetative papillomatous lesions on the buccal mucosa spread to the adjacent skin of the lips and the nose. These lesions resemble those of yaws or mucocutaneous leishmaniasis. The infection may spread to the regional lymphatics and hence to the axillary, inguinal and other nodes. Occasionally direct infection of the lymph glands of the neck without demonstrable buccal lesions produces massive glandular enlargement similar to that seen in Hodgkin's disease. A chronic type of cutaneous blastomycosis resulting in cheloid lesions has been described from the region of the Amazon. This clinical variation is referred to as Lobo's disease. In the visceral type of infection the intestines serve as the portal of entry. Infection of the lymphoid tissue of the intestine with lymphatic drainage to the mesenteric nodes, the spleen and the liver serves to establish massive visceral infection which simulates tuberculous peritonitis, Hodgkin's disease or carcinoma of the abdominal cavity. While the intestinal tract in South American blastomycosis shows gross infection, it should

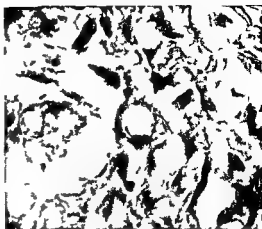


FIG 18 *Blastomyces brasiliensis* section of liver showing large thick walled cells with minute coccushlike buds  $\times 1075$

be noted that the intestinal tract is never involved in North American blastomycosis.

Pulmonary infection usually follows lymphatic or hematogenous dissemination of the fungus from lesions elsewhere in the body but may occur as a primary pulmonary infection caused by inhalation of infectious materials. The lesions cannot be distinguished from tuberculosis, Boeck's sarcoid, carcinoma, etc. (Machado and Miranda 1960, de Paula 1962).

Histologically many areas show abscess formation with predominant polymorphonuclear infiltration; other areas show focal lesions with necrotic and caseous centers surrounded by macrophages, lymphocytes, giant cells and fibroblasts. The organisms appear in the tissue or giant cells as large round (10 to 60 microns in diameter) cells with small (1 to 5 microns) or large (10 to 30 microns) peripheral buds (Fig 18). This multiple budding is characteristic for *B. brasiliensis*. Frequent single budding forms 10 to 20 microns in diameter may be mistaken for *B. dermatitidis*.

#### IMMUNITY

Positive complement fixation tests and positive intradermal skin tests have been reported in cases of South American blastomycosis. As in North American blastomycosis, a positive complement fixation test is

indicative of a spreading infection. It becomes negative after treatment with sulfonamides and is negative in minimal infections. Skin tests with the filtrate of Sabouraud's broth in which several strains have been grown (paracoccidioidin) as well as with heat killed saline suspensions of the yeastlike phase of the fungus become positive in 24 to 48 hours. Patients with South American blastomycosis frequently give a positive skin test and a positive serologic test with antigens from *B. dermatitidis* (Lacaz 1956). Fava Netto (1953) extracted a polysaccharide from the yeast cells of *B. brasiliensis* which gave a specific reaction in the complement fixation test. Later, in 1961, he compared various antigens in the complement fixation and the precipitin tests. In experimental infection in guinea pigs it was found that the delayed tuberculin type skin test became positive in 15 days while precipitin and complement fixation tests became positive in 15 to 30 days (Fava Netto *et al* 1961).

#### DIAGNOSIS

Pus and scrapings from the buccal mucosa and the skin lesions, pus from fluctuant nodes and smears of biopsied nodes should be examined as fresh preparations under a cover glass. Sputum in suspected pulmonary infections should also be examined. In such materials *B. brasiliensis* appears as large (10 to 60 microns in diameter) round multiple budding cells. The buds may be large and few in number from the surface of the parent cell and measure 10 to 30 microns in diameter or they may be small and numerous and measure 1 to 5 microns in diameter.

Materials should be cultured on blood agar at 37° C and on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature. Guinea pigs may be inoculated intratesticularly with the infected materials and cultures obtained after the development of lesions.

#### TREATMENT

South American blastomycosis responds dramatically to the sulfonamides but they must be given over long periods of time (Gonçalves 1962, Passos and Nahas 1959). Amphotericin B has been reported to be effective and can be used in those patients

who show sensitivity to the sulfonamides (Lacaz and Sampaio 1958, Miranda and Machado 1959).

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY

South American blastomycosis is a disease of rural communities, workers in close association with farming and soil, showing a high incidence of infection. Males are infected more frequently than females (10 to 1) except among the Japanese, among whom the ratio is not so great. It is thought that the Japanese women, who work in the fields with the men, have an equal opportunity for infection. Although it is felt that the fungus must have a saprophytic existence in nature, it has not been found in the soil or on natural substrata, nor have infections of animals been reported.

#### HISTOPLASMA CAPSULATUM

*Histoplasma capsulatum* is a small yeastlike oval intracellular fungus in tissues and is yeastlike on blood agar slants at 37° C. In culture at room temperature it is a typical moldlike filamentous fungus. It is highly infectious; it produces an acute benign self-limited primary pulmonary infection and a chronic malignant progressive disseminated infection.

#### HISTORY

Darling in 1906 first described an intracellular organism in the tissues from natives in the Canal Zone who had died of the disease similar to visceral leishmaniasis. The organism was thought to be a protozoan closely related to *Leishmania donovani* and was named *Histoplasma capsulatum*. Da Rocha Lima 1913 reported budding in these forms and called the organism *Cryptococcus*. Hansmann and Schenken (1934) and Da Monbreun (1934) were able to culture *H. capsulatum* from their cases and proved it to be a filamentous fungus.

Christie and Peterson (1945) and Palmer (1945) reported the existence of inapparent or subclinical infections based on skin sensitivity to histoplasmin. Until these reports histoplasmosis was considered to be a highly fatal fungous infection.

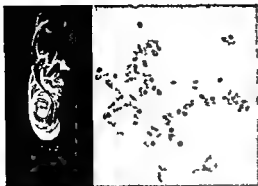


FIG 19 *Histoplasma capsulatum* (Left) Yeastlike growth on blood agar at 37° C for 5 days (Right) Small budding yeastlike cells from blood agar culture at 37° C × 520

#### CULTIVATION

Clinical materials such as sputum scrapings from lesions in the mouth and biopsy specimens should be cultured on brain heart infusion glucose blood agar at 37° C and on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature. Antibiotics are used in the medium to suppress bacterial contamination (chloramphenicol 0.05 mg/ml and cycloheximide 0.5 mg/ml).

Peripheral blood and bone marrow should be cultured as for bacteria in brain heart infusion glucose broth. Slow growth is to be expected and these cultures should be held for 4 weeks before discarding.

*H. capsulatum* can be cultured on all common laboratory media. On blood agar slants at 37° C the growth is yeastlike, smooth, white to cream colored and resembles *Staphylococcus albus* (Fig 19). It is composed of small (2 to 4 microns) oval single budding cells (Fig 19). On Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature it is cottony and white at first but becomes buff to brown with age (Fig 20). Young cultures show branching septate hyphae bearing small (2.5 to 5 microns) smooth round to pyriform spores on short pedicles. Older cultures contain large (8 to 20 microns) round to pyriform, thick-walled spores covered with finger-like projections (Fig 21). These tuberculate spores are characteristic and diagnostic for *H. capsulatum*. The filamentous culture may



FIG 20 *Histoplasma capsulatum* 12 days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature

be converted to yeastlike tissue phase by subculturing to blood agar slants which are incubated at 37° C. Such yeastlike cultures may be maintained by subculturing to fresh blood agar slants every 4 to 5 days.

#### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

There is one antigenic type of *H. capsulatum*. Histoplasmin is a filtrate of a liquid culture medium in which the filamentous phase has been grown for varying periods of time. It is probably carbohydrate in nature and elicits a delayed reaction in previously



FIG 21 *Histoplasma capsulatum* typical tuberculate chlamydospores developed in the Sabouraud's glucose agar culture at room temperature × 556 (Smith D. T. Am J Med 2:599)

infected animals or humans in intradermal injection. This material also acts as a precipitating antigen in agar gel diffusion tests. Heimer (1958) reported 6 bands representing 6 different antigens and their corresponding antibodies on testing various sera. These bands were found to be nonspecific, n-specific, h and cross reactive c. This last band represents a product of *B. dermatitidis* and *C. immitis* as well as *H. capsulatum*. An m band represented a reaction that could be elicited by histoplasmin skin tests in normal sensitized adults. The specific h band was isolated from histoplasmin by continuous flow electrophoresis. Greene *et al.* (1960) purified histoplasmin giving h and m bands by means of DEAE chromatography and were able to separate these 2 bands. Schubert *et al.* (1961) also reported only 2 bands, h and m, elicited by their histoplasmin. Used in tests with 5211 specimens of sera, they reported the test to be presumptive of infection by *H. capsulatum*. A polysaccharide extracted from yeast cells of *H. capsulatum* gave skin test reactions comparable to histoplasmin when tested in 3808 individuals (Edwards *et al.* 1961; Knight and Marcus 1958; Knight *et al.* 1959).

Salvin and Ribi (1955) reported the yeast cell wall antigen of *H. capsulatum* to be associated with serologic tests, protection and toxicity. It could also be used as an antigen for intradermal tests. Cozad and Larsh (1960) used stained broken yeast cells in a capillary tube agglutination test while previously Cozad (1958) had used the whole yeast cell as an antigen in the agglutination test. Collodion and latex particles sensitized with histoplasmin also have been used in an agglutination test (Saslaw and Campbell 1949; Saslaw and Carlisle 1958). Fluorescent antibody techniques have been used for the detection of the yeast and mycelial phases of *H. capsulatum* (Gordon 1959; Kaufman and Kaplan 1961; Kaufman and Brandt 1964).

#### DISTRIBUTION

Histoplasmosis occurs throughout the world with areas of high endemicity as determined by histoplasmin skin testing programs (Edwards and Klaier 1956; Manos

*et al.*, 1956). Areas of endemicity in the United States include the northeast, the central and the south central states (Edwards and Palmer 1963). It is estimated that from 25 to 30 million people in the United States have had some form of the disease (Loosli 1957). *H. capsulatum* has been isolated from the soil and spontaneous infection in a variety of animals has been reported (Emmons 1949; Emmons *et al.* 1955).

#### PATHOGENESIS

Histoplasmosis is a primary pulmonary infection caused by inhalation of the highly infectious *H. capsulatum*. The respiratory infection may be subclinical, mild or severe and simulate infection caused by any bacterial or viral agent. In the vast majority of cases the infection is benign, self limited and inapparent and revealed only by a positive skin test to histoplasmin.

Acute pulmonary histoplasmosis is accompanied by fever, cough, malaise, sweating and loss of weight. In the lungs, scattered milary, multiple nodular or parenchymal lesions may simulate tuberculosis. Such lesions may undergo complete resolution but characteristically heal by calcification in 4 to 5 years (Bronson and Schwarz 1957). A few of the pulmonary infections become chronic and progressive, resulting in fibrocavitary lesions with cavity formation in the upper lobes (Furcolow and Brasher 1956; Loewen *et al.* 1960). The residual lesion remaining after infection of the lungs, coin shaped histoplasmosis, is probably the most frequent of such lesions and must be considered in a differential diagnosis of carcinoma, tuberculosis, etc. (Editorial 1960).

During the primary pulmonary infection the fungus may disseminate throughout the body by lymphatic or hematogenous spread to parasitize the reticuloendothelial system. Symptomatic progressive disease apparently is dependent on the resistance of the infected individual. Dissemination in the resistant individual has been demonstrated by a high rate of splenic calcification in known endemic areas of histoplasmosis (Schwarz *et al.* 1955; Serviansky and Schwarz 1956). The nonresistant individual shows the typical symptoms of acute progressive histoplasmosis: fever, malaise, sweats, splenomegaly, hepato-

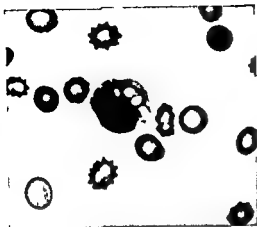


FIG 22 *Histoplasma capsulatum* peripheral blood smear showing *Histoplasma* in mononuclear cell  $\times 1155$

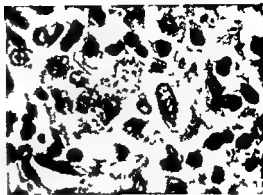


FIG 23 *Histoplasma capsulatum* section of gum showing intracellular bodies  $\times 1012$

megaly leukopenia secondary anemia and emaciation "Mucocutaneous lesions (skin tongue pharynx larynx) are manifestations of systemic infection with metastasis to the involved areas and occur frequently in chronic progressive infections (Baum *et al* 1957)

Histologically the lesions show a central necrosis with loss of tissue and cellular structures surrounded by granulomatous tissue. The small 2 to 5 microns oval cells of the fungus appear in various phagocytic cells large mononuclear or polymorphonuclear cells of the blood and bone marrow endothelial wandering cells of tissues and fixed reticuloendothelial cells of the liver and the spleen

#### IMMUNITY

Van Pernis Benson and Holmger (1941) were the first to show that a patient and experimentally infected mice gave a positive skin test to filtrates of a broth in which *H. capsulatum* had been grown. A delayed tuberculinlike reaction became positive in 24 to 48 hours. Thousands of skin tests have been done with histoplasmin on people living in areas where there is known to be a high rate of nontuberculous pulmonary calcification as determined by negative tuberculin tests indicating a high resistance to the fungus.

Serologic response to infection appears

during the 3rd or the 4th week. Precipitins and complement fixing antibodies have been demonstrated (Salvin and Furcolow 1954 Loosli 1957)

Reinfection in the sensitive but immunologically deficient patient may result in cavitation due to acute necrotizing pneumonitis. Such lesions could occur by either exogenous or endogenous reinfection (Schwarz and Baum 1963)

Increased resistance of mice to experimental infection has been accomplished by immunization with dead yeast cells cell wall material obtained from yeast cells and polysaccharides (Salvin 1953 Salvin and Ribi 1955 Grayston and Salvin 1956 Knight *et al* 1959)

#### DIAGNOSIS

In disseminated histoplasmosis peripheral blood smears and sternal bone marrow smears should be stained and examined for intracellular small (2 to 5 microns) oval bodies in the polymorphonuclear and/or mononuclear cells (Fig 22). Lymph nodes skin and mucosal lesions should be biopsied and sections studied for the intracellular parasite (Fig 23)

Blood and sternal marrow are cultured in a liquid medium brain heart infusion glucose broth. Sputum and biopsy specimens should be cultured on brain heart infusion glucose blood agar at 37° C. and on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature. Antibiotics are added to the media to prevent bacterial contamination. The intradermal test





FIG 24 *Coccidioides immitis* 12 days on Sabouraud glucose agar at room temperature

and various serologic tests referred to above may help in establishing a diagnosis. The fluorescent antibody technic has been used to screen sputums for *H. capsulatum* (Lynch and Plexico 1962).

#### TREATMENT

A variety of drugs and antibiotics have been used without success (Loosli 1957). However, there have been many favorable reports concerning the effectiveness of amphotericin B in the treatment of histoplasmosis. This antibiotic must be considered the drug of choice for the treatment of this disease (Newcomer *et al.* 1959; Wilson 1961; Nelson *et al.* 1961).

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY

*H. capsulatum* exists as a saprophyte in the soil, and both man and animals become infected by breathing in the highly infectious spores. The disease is not transmitted from man to man or from animal to man. Many epidemics have been reported involving a few or many individuals who had simultaneous exposure to the fungus in a storm cellar, a cave, a silo, a chicken house, etc. (Lehan and Furcolow 1957; Wolpowitz and van Eeden 1963).



FIG 25 *Coccidioides immitis* hyphae developing characteristic arthrospore formation from Sabouraud glucose agar at room temperature  $\times 490$

### COCCIDIOIDES IMMITIS

*Coccidioides immitis* is a spherical, thick-walled endospore-filled organism in tissue or exudates and a fluffy white cottony fungus in culture at room temperature. It produces a highly infectious disease (known as coccidioidomycosis) with an acute benign primary self-limited respiratory infection, and a chronic, malignant secondary progressive disseminated infection. The secondary progressive disease is usually referred to as coccidioidal granuloma.

#### HISTORY

Posadas (1892) and Wernicke (1892) first described from Argentina what is known now to be *Coccidioides* in the tissue of a patient with lesions similar to mycosis fungoides. Rixford (1894) first described from California a protozoanlike organism in the tissue of a patient with lesions resembling tuberculosis cutis. This case and a second occurring in California were reported by Rixford and Gilchrist in 1896. Both patients were described as having primary skin lesions with subsequent lymphatic dissemination resulting in death. At this time the organism was named *Coccidioides immitis*, and the disease became known as coccidioidal granuloma. However, Ophuls and Moffitt (1900) cultured the organism, proving it to be a filamentous fungus. Only coccidioidal gran-

uloma was known until the benign primary type of infection was described by Gifford in 1936 (San Joaquin Fever)

### CULTIVATION

Clinical materials are cultured on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature. Antibiotics should be added to the medium to prevent bacterial contamination (chloramphenicol 0.05 mg/ml and cycloheximide 0.5 mg/ml).

*C. immitis* can be grown at room temperature on all common laboratory media. On Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature the colony develops quickly with abundant aerial mycelium which is cottony and white at first but may become powdery and buff to brown with age (Fig. 24). It shows numerous arthrospores which appear as deeply staining rectangular structures  $2 \times 4$  to 5 microns separated by clear spaces along the course of the hyphae (Fig. 25). In old cultures the hyphae fragment freeing the arthrospores and the culture becomes friable and powdery. Cultures should not be grown in Petri dishes because the powdery aerial growth consisting of numerous arthrospores is highly infectious. The tissue phase (spherule formation) is produced *in vitro* only by special methods of culture (Converse and Besemer 1959). Brestan and Kubota (1964) reported temperature and CO<sub>2</sub> to be requirements for spherule formation in culture. Brooks and Northey (1963) reported amino acids containing a ring structure (phenylalanine, tyrosine and tryptophan and certain of their derivatives together with biotin) allowed conversion of mycelium to spherules *in vitro*. Also conversion and maturation of the spherules resulted when melanin precursors and pyrocatecholamines were used.

### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

Coccidioidin is produced in a liquid culture medium and has been used extensively as a specific skin testing antigen to detect past or present infection with *C. immitis* (Smith *et al.* 1948). The immunologically active material in coccidioidin is polysaccharide in nature (mannose and galactose)

with small amounts of fixed nitrogen (Papagianis *et al.* 1961).

Coccidioidin also has been used as an antigen in a precipitin test and a complement fixation test to detect antibody in serum and in spinal fluid (Smith *et al.* 1948, Ajello *et al.* 1959, Huppert *et al.* 1962). The precipitin test is positive only in recent infection and the complement fixation test is positive in chronic and disseminating disease.

Immunodiffusion techniques have been used to detect antibody in human serum and to analyze antigenic components of various preparations (Huppert and Bailey 1963, Rowe *et al.* 1963, Rowe *et al.* 1963). The spherule wall has been shown to contain immunogenic properties in experimental studies in animals (Kong *et al.* 1963).

### DISTRIBUTION

The arid and southwestern United States includes the known highly endemic areas of coccidioidomycosis. The infection rate is high in the southern San Joaquin Valley in California and extends across southern Nevada, southwestern Utah, central and southern Arizona, southern New Mexico through western Texas along the Mexican border. A high rate of infection and clinical disease occurs in the northern states of Mexico in Honduras and Venezuela. The Chaco region of Bolivia, Paraguay and Argentina also is an area of high endemicity.

Case reports from areas other than those mentioned above usually have a history of previous residence or travel through an endemic area. Sporadic cases also may have become infected from contact with contaminated materials (cotton wool etc.) exported from an endemic area (Izenstark 1963, Albert and Sellers 1963).

### PATHOGENESIS

*C. immitis* causes an acute benign respiratory disease which is usually self limited in the white skinned race but has a tendency to develop into a progressive malignant disseminated highly fatal disease in the dark skinned races. Primary infection usually takes place in the respiratory tract (rarely skin abrasions) by breathing in dust containing infectious material (Wilson *et al.* 1953).

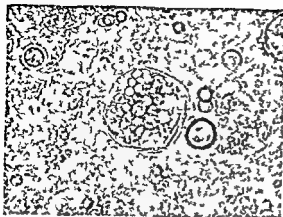


FIG 26 *Coccidioides immitis* large thick walled endospore filled spherule and smaller immature spherules in pus  $\times 490$



FIG 27 *Coccidioides immitis* section of lung showing mature and immature spherules  $\times 490$

Trimble and Doucette 1956) The infection may be subclinical or after an incubation period of 8 to 14 days the symptoms may be those of bronchial pneumonia or flu chills fever malaise anorexia cough pleurisy headache backache and night sweats. About 2 to 5 per cent of such cases develop hypersensitivity which becomes evident after 5 to 14 days as typical erythema nodosum or erythema multiforme with skin lesions lasting for 1 to 4 weeks. This form of the infection is not fatal and is known as San Joaquin fever Valley fever and desert rheumatism when associated with allergic manifestations.

Dissemination at the time of the primary infection gives symptoms similar to those of tuberculosis. Lesions may appear anywhere in the body: lungs larynx lymph nodes bones joints central nervous system etc. This form of the infection is highly fatal and is known as coccidioidal granuloma.

Histologically the lesions are granulomata with tuberclelike formation in which the typical endosporulating spherule must be seen to distinguish them from tuberculous lesions. Recently Puckett (1954) and Marshall *et al* (1955) have described the unusual occurrence of fungus hyphae accompanying the spherule stage of *C. immitis* in tissues.

#### IMMUNITY

Complement fixing antibodies and precipitins can be demonstrated in the serum of patients infected with *C. immitis* (Smith *et al*

1956). The complement fixing antibodies in high titer have the same significance as in blastomycosis i.e. they indicate spreading infection and poor prognosis. Hypersensitivity to the fungus can be demonstrated by the coccidioidin skin test. A positive test usually develops in from 3 to 21 days following infection and gives a delayed tuberculinlike action in from 24 to 48 hours. Transfer of delayed hypersensitivity to coccidioidin has been accomplished in man (Rappaport *et al* 1960). After a positive skin test to coccidioidin has been acquired the individual is immune to exogenous reinfection (Smith 1942). This fact has led to numerous investigations in which mycelial fragments arthrospores whole and disrupted spherules and endospores have been used in experimental immunization of animals (Friedman and Smith 1956 Vogel *et al* 1954 Levine *et al* 1960 1961 1962 Converse *et al* 1962 Kong *et al* 1963).

#### DIAGNOSIS

Pus and sputum should be examined as untreated fresh preparations under a cover glass. Pleural fluid and gastric contents should be centrifuged and the sediment examined similarly. Sputum and gastric contents also may be treated with antibiotics (penicillin 10 units/ml and streptomycin 40 units/ml) for an hour or two at 37 °C before culturing on Sabouraud's glucose agar plus antibiotics (chloramphenicol 0.05 mg/ml and cyclo

hexumide 0.5 mg/ml) In all materials *C. immitis* appears as a thick walled spherule 10 to 80 microns in diameter filled with endospores (Fig 26) The resulting growth in culture is identified morphologically or after intraperitoneal injection in mice and identification of spherules typical for *C. immitis* (Fig 27)

### TREATMENT

In primary coccidioidomycosis the prognosis is excellent Treatment should be symptomatic with enforced bed rest until the temperature the sedimentation rate and the white count are normal

The secondary progressive coccidioidal granuloma has been treated successfully with amphotericin B (Klapper *et al* 1958 Littman *et al* 1958 Newcomer *et al* 1959 Perry and Kirby 1960 Wilson 1961)

Localized residual pulmonary coccidioidal lesions (coccidioidomata and cavities) require surgical management either lobectomy or segmental resection (Winn 1957)

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Coccidioidomycosis is a dust borne disease of the arid regions of the western and the southwestern parts of the United States In habitants in these areas show a high incidence of infection as demonstrated by a positive coccidioidin skin test The infection rate of susceptibles (newcomers) follows closely a seasonal variation most cases arising in the dry summer and autumn months when rainfall is lowest and dust more prevalent *C. immitis* has been cultured numerous times from the soil and animals as well as man become infected There is no man to man or animal to man transmission of the disease

### CONTROL MEASURES

Studies carried out in conjunction with the Army Air Forces in 4 air fields in the San Joaquin Valley Calif during the period from 1941 to 1946 showed that dust control of such areas reduced infection rates from one half to two thirds in nonimmune susceptibles Paving roads and runways planting lawns and using refined oil on athletic areas proved to be effective control measures (Smith *et al* 1946)



FIG 28 *Sporotrichum schenckii* 8 days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature

### SPOROTRICHUM SCHENCKII

*Sporotrichum schenckii* is a single-celled fusiform or round budding yeastlike fungus in the exudates or tissues of animals (rarely seen in exudates or tissues of man) and in culture on cystine-containing medium III 37 C Cultures at room temperature and on non-cystine-containing media at 37° C are leathery filamentous and usually brownish to black in color *S. schenckii* frequently causes a localized lymphangitic infection and rarely a systemic infection in man

### HISTORY

Schenck (1898) first cultured and described this fungus from a patient in the United States showing refractory subcutaneous abscesses Hektoen and Perkins (1900) in describing the second case named the fungus *Sporothrix schenckii* The disease was described by de Beurmann and Ramond (1903) in France and the fungus was named *S. beurmannii* by Matruchot and Ramond in 1905 This species and several others described from time to time are now thought to be variants of Schenck's fungus and are usually considered as synonyms of *S. schenckii*

### CULTIVATION

Clinical materials such as scrapings from a primary chancreoid lesion pus from subcutaneous nodules and sputum are cultured on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature If these materials are contaminated antibiotics are added to the medium (chloramphenicol 0.05 mg/ml and cyclohexi-

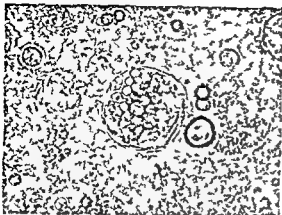


FIG 26 *Coccidioides immitis* large thick walled endospore filled spherule and smaller immature spherules in pus  $\times 490$



FIG 27 *Coccidioides immitis* section of lung showing mature and immature spherules  $\times 490$

Trimble and Doucette 1956) The infection may be subclinical or after an incubation period of 8 to 14 days the symptoms may be those of bronchial pneumonia or flu chills fever malaise anorexia cough pleurisy headache backache and night sweats. About 2 to 5 per cent of such cases develop hypersensitivity which becomes evident after 5 to 14 days as typical erythema nodosum or erythema multiforme with skin lesions lasting for 1 to 4 weeks. This form of the infection is not fatal and is known as San Joaquin fever Valley fever and desert rheumatism when associated with allergic manifestations.

Dissemination at the time of the primary infection gives symptoms similar to those of tuberculosis. Lesions may appear anywhere in the body lungs larynx lymph nodes bones joints central nervous system etc. This form of the infection is highly fatal and is known as coccidioidal granuloma.

Histologically the lesions are granulomata with tuberclelike formation in which the typical endosporeulating spherule must be seen to distinguish them from tuberculous lesions. Recently Puckett (1954) and Marshall *et al* (1955) have described the unusual occurrence of fungus hyphae accompanying the spherule stage of *C. immitis* in tissues.

#### IMMUNITY

Complement fixing antibodies and precipitins can be demonstrated in the serum of patients infected with *C. immitis* (Smith *et al*

1956). The complement fixing antibodies in high titer have the same significance as in blastomycosis i.e. they indicate spreading infection and poor prognosis. Hypersensitivity to the fungus can be demonstrated by the coccidioidin skin test. A positive test usually develops in from 3 to 21 days following infection and gives a delayed tuberculinlike reaction in from 24 to 48 hours. Transfer of delayed hypersensitivity to coccidioidin has been accomplished in man (Rappaport *et al* 1960). After a positive skin test to coccidioidin has been acquired the individual is immune to exogenous reinfection (Smith 1942). This fact has led to numerous investigations in which mycelial fragments arthrospores whole and disrupted spherules and endospores have been used in experimental immunization of animals (Friedman and Smith 1956 Vogel *et al* 1954 Levine *et al* 1960 1961 1962 Converse *et al* 1962 Kong *et al* 1963).

#### DIAGNOSIS

Pus and sputum should be examined as untreated fresh preparations under a cover glass. Pleural fluid and gastric contents should be centrifuged and the sediment examined similarly. Sputum and gastric contents also may be treated with antibiotics (penicillin 10 units/ml and streptomycin 40 units/ml) for an hour or two at 37 °C before culturing on Sabouraud's glucose agar plus antibiotics (chloramphenicol 0.05 mg/ml and cyclo

### PATHOGENESIS

Sporotrichosis is a subacute or chronic granulomatous infection which follows introduction of the fungus by trauma. The initial lesion usually appears on exposed areas particularly the extremities and develops as a single lesion (pustule, ulcer, abscess or chancre) which fails to heal under ordinary treatment. With invasion of the regional lymphatics the characteristic picture of localized lymphangitic sporotrichosis develops: ascending chronic lymphangitis with cordlike thickening of the lymph vessels and multiple subcutaneous abscesses along the course of the infected lymphatics. These abscesses are gumlike and may or may not rupture spontaneously. The epitrochlear and the axillary nodes are usually not enlarged and systemic reactions are rare. The ulcerating nonhealing primary chancrelike lesion with lymphatic involvement suggests tularemia or syphilis. This localized lymphangitic type of infection is most prevalent in the United States. Single lesions about the eyes, on the face, the neck and on the body may not be accompanied by regional lymphangitis and create a difficult therapeutic problem unless sporotrichosis is considered (Cipollaro and Singer 1952, McGrath and Singer 1952, Singer and Muncie 1952). Other clinical manifestations have been described by Beurmann and Gougerot (1912) varying from a localized lymphangitis to a widely disseminated subcutaneous or systemic gummatous sporotrichosis. An occasional disseminated case of sporotrichosis is seen in the United States (Collins 1947). Of particular concern is undiagnosed primary pulmonary sporotrichosis which may disseminate to infect various organs of the body. Lesions of muscle, bone and viscera (Lurie 1963) and synovitis of unknown etiology (Lynch *et al.* 1963) may present problems in diagnosis. Ridgeway *et al.* (1962) reported 2 cases of pulmonary infection. Whether or not sporotrichosis can be considered a primary pulmonary disease of any consequence must await skin testing surveys of large population groups to determine the extent of possible infection by *S. schenckii*.

Histologically the lesions may show only a nonspecific chronic inflammatory process or may become granulomatous with lymphocytic

infiltration, plasma cells, giant cells and fibrosis. The fusiform bodies are rarely seen in such sections or in the pus from the lesions unless the PAS stain is used (Fetter 1961) or fluorescent antisorotrichum globulin is available (Kaplan and Ivens 1960).

### IMMUNITY

Agglutinins, precipitins and complement fixing antibodies can be demonstrated in the serum of patients infected with *S. schenckii* (Norden 1951). A high degree of sensitivity beginning after about 5 days can be demonstrated by using heat-killed saline suspensions of the fungus or a carbohydrate fraction (Gonzalez Ochoa *et al.* 1947) as the skin test material. A delayed tuberculin-like reaction manifests itself in 24 to 48 hours.

Hasenclever and Mitchell (1959) reported slight protection in mice following immunization with formalin-killed yeast cells. Rabbit and mouse serum containing antibodies did not demonstrate passive immunization.

### DIAGNOSIS

Positive cultures are the best means of diagnosis. The fusiform bodies that are found in experimentally infected animals are discovered only rarely in materials from human lesions (Fetter 1961). Pus from unruptured nodules, swabs, scrapings and biopsies of ulcerated lesions should be obtained and cultured both at room and incubator temperatures. The characteristic colony with its typical spore formation allows identification of *S. schenckii*.

### TREATMENT

Sporotrichosis responds readily to iodides administered orally over long periods. Recurrences can be avoided by extending the treatment 1 or 2 months after apparent cure. An occasional resistant case may respond to stilbamidine (Harrell *et al.* 1954). Galiana and Conti Diaz (1963) treated 10 patients with extensive but localized sporotrichosis with thermotherapy. The affected areas were heated with wet compresses and Trafiurl. The sustained hyperemic effect of this rubefacient was said to provide the temperature necessary for cure.



FIG 29 *Sporotrichum schenckii* delicate hyphae and conidiophores with terminal clusters of pyriform conidia from Sabouraud's glucose agar  $\times 490$

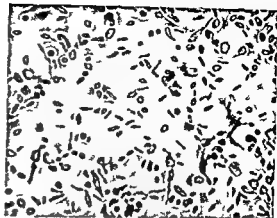


FIG 30 *Sporotrichum schenckii* fusiform cells from cystine agar culture at  $37^{\circ}\text{C} \times 580$  (Smith D T Am J Med 2 602)

vide 0.5 mg/ml) Direct examination of clinical materials will not reveal the fungus bodies unless special stains are used (PAS stain)

*S. schenckii* can be grown at room temperature or at  $37^{\circ}\text{C}$  on all common laboratory media On Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature the colonies appear as small white growths lacking aerial mycelium (Fig 28) As growth increases the surface of the colony becomes folded and leathery the color may vary from white to tan or brown to black depending on the medium and the individual strain Microscopically the colony is composed of delicate branching septate hyphae 1.5 to 2 microns in diameter Pyriform conidia 2 to 4 by 2 to 6 microns in size are born at the ends of lateral branches (conidiophores) in characteristic clusters (Fig 29) In some strains these conidia are also borne directly from the hyphae On cystine agar at  $37^{\circ}\text{C}$  the growth remains soft and yeastlike and is composed of fusiform bodies (tissue phase) and short mycelial fragments (Fig 30) (Campbell 1947)

#### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

The yeast cell may be used as an antigen in the agglutination test and in the complement fixation test Heat killed saline suspensions of the yeast cells (1,000 packed cell volume) elicit a delayed reaction when in-

jected intradermally Also a carbohydrate fraction from the mycelial mat or the liquid medium in which it has grown elicits a positive skin test This material will precipitate in antispotrichum serum (Gonzalez Ochoa and Soto Figueras 1947 Norden 1951) Using agglutination and agglutinin absorption tests Lurie (1948) was able to show a common antigen for several differently named isolates of *Sporotrichum* Kaden (1956) extracted a polysaccharide from *S. schenckii* and showed it to be active in a precipitation test and by the immunodiffusion test Kunz (1959) reported successful application of the fluorescent antibody technique for culture frozen sections and smears from infected animals Also Kaplan and Ivens (1960) were able to stain *S. schenckii* cells in culture and clinical materials with labeled antispotrichum globulin

#### DISTRIBUTION

Sporotrichosis is world wide in distribution In the United States it is thought that endemic areas include Nebraska Wisconsin Kansas the Dakotas and Missouri Although the larger number of cases have been reported from the Mississippi Valley it is probable that numerous cases also have been recognized elsewhere but have not been reported

The fungus is widely distributed in nature and may be recovered from plants animals and a variety of contaminated objects

develops quickly as a white cottony aerial growth which becomes grayish to buff in color (Fig 31). A black pigment is usually produced in the agar on the reverse side of the colony.

Microscopically single ovoid to clavate conidia 5 to  $7 \times 8$  to 10 microns in size with truncate bases are seen on the ends of conidiophores of various lengths (Fig 32). Coremia (bundles of hyphae) may also be seen with conidia terminating the individual hyphae coming from the bundle. In some strains conidia are produced laterally from the hyphae and occasionally in small clusters. However the usual method of spore production is the development of single conidia from the ends of conidiophores. The ascogenous phase of *M. apiospermum* is *Allescheria boydii* isolated by Boyd and Crutchfield (1921). In this culture the cleistothecia (closed perithecia) 50 to 200 microns in diameter are thin walled brownish structures containing subglobose asci in each of which are seen 8 elliptical faintly brown walled ascospores  $4$  to  $4.5 \times 7$  to  $7.5$  microns in size.

#### ANTIGENIC STRUCTURE

Seeliger (1956) used conidial suspensions for antigen in an agglutination test with rabbit and human serum. Both culture filtrates and carbohydrate extracts were used in precipitin complement fixation and agar gel diffusion tests. All of these tests were specific for the antigens used and allowed a serologic grouping of *M. apiospermum* and *Madurella grisea*.

#### DISTRIBUTION

Maduromycosis is endemic in India and the majority of the cases reported elsewhere in the world have been found in the tropics. Summaries of the distribution of this infection and lists of the multiplicity of fungi which have been isolated are contained in reports by Mackinnon (1954), Lacaz and Fava Netto (1954) and Abbott (1956).

In the United States *Allescheria boydii* (*M. apiospermum*) has been reported from cases of maduromycosis in Texas, Massachusetts, Georgia, Maryland, North Carolina and Pennsylvania. Outside the United States *A. boydii* has been reported from cases of



FIG 32 *Monosporium apiospermum* conidiophores terminated by a single conidium  $\times 230$  (Conant N F, Smith D T, Baker R D, Callaway J L and Martin D S. Manual of Clinical Mycology, p 248. Philadelphia: Saunders).

maduromycosis in Canada, the Virgin Islands, Paraguay, Argentina, Brazil, Algeria, and Italy. Isolations of *M. apiospermum* (*A. boydii*) from soil have given final proof of its saprophytic existence in nature (Ajello 1952).

Maduromycosis has also been reported in animals (Seibold 1955, Bridges 1957).

#### PATHOGENESIS

Maduromycosis is a chronic, slowly progressive, unilateral infection of the subcutaneous tissues caused by the introduction of one of several different filamentous fungi by trauma. The majority of cases have occurred on the foot, but occasional infections of the leg and the hand have been described. Infection usually follows an injury which heals and after varying periods of time becomes noticeable by the formation of papules, deep-seated nodules or abscesses which rupture to form multiple draining sinuses. In some instances the infection begins with swelling and pain and the subsequent development of indurated areas which become open fistulae from which drains serosanguineous fluid containing the characteristic granules. With extension of the infection to the fascia, muscles and bone and the development of dense fibrous tissue, the foot becomes swollen, club-shaped and markedly deformed. Osteomyelitis of the bones of the foot may cause



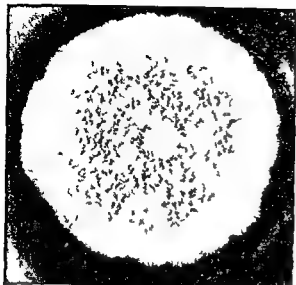


FIG 31 *Monosporium apiospermum*  
15 days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at  
room temperature

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY

*S. schenckii* has been isolated frequently from the soil. Although some strains proved not to be pathogenic for laboratory animals (Howard and Orr 1963) there has been no doubt about the virulence of many soil isolates. Foerster (1926) recognized sporotrichosis to be an occupational disease of horticulturists for many infections could be traced to injuries by plant thorns. That the infection could assume a major role as an industrial disease was pointed out by du Toit (1942) in his report of 650 cases among miners and native workers in the gold mines of the Witwatersrand in South Africa. This epidemic in the mines finally totaled 2 825 cases. The fungus was isolated from the mine timbers and from the dust and infection usually followed injury by machines or rock and scratches by wire. Occasional small epidemics have been reported in this country (Crevasse and Ellner 1960). Individuals in contact with infected rats, dogs, horses and mules may become infected.

#### ALLESCHERIA BOYDII

*Allescheria boydii* is a fungus which appears as a large macroscopic grain or granule, white to light yellow in color, made

up of wide septate hyphae in tissue or exudates from draining sinuses. In culture it is a gray to light buff filamentous fungus which reproduces characteristically by single spores from the ends of conidiophores and by ascospores which are produced within cleistothecia. A strain which fails to develop the cleistothecia and reproduces solely by conidia is recognized as *Monosporium apiospermum*, the imperfect form of *A. boydii*. This fungus and many others (several genera and species) produce the disease known as maduromycosis or Madura foot.

#### HISTORY

The discovery of maduromycosis or mycetoma in India and the early history of this type of fungous infection has been summarized by Gammel (1927). The confusion relative to etiologic agents was clarified by Chalmers and Archibald (1916) when they proposed that the disease mycetoma should be classified into two categories according to the type of fungus causing the infection: (1) actinomycotic mycetoma caused by species of *Nocardia* and *Streptomyces* and (2) maduromycosis caused by the higher filamentous fungi. This classification has been adopted by most investigators.

*M. apiospermum* has been isolated from numerous cases of maduromycosis in the United States and *Allescheria boydii* isolated by Boyd and Crutchfield in 1921 has been shown by Emmons (1944) to be the perfect ascomycetous stage of *M. apiospermum*. Other fungi reported as etiologic agents of maduromycosis in the United States include *Madurella grisea* (Neuhauser 1955), *Cephalosporium granulomatis* (Weidman and Kligman 1945) and *Phialophora jeanselmei* (Symmers and Sporer 1944, Emmons 1945, Levan 1954).

#### CULTIVATION

The granules obtained from draining sinuses are washed carefully in several changes of broth or sterile saline, crushed between two sterile slides and the fragments cultured on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature. To prevent bacterial contamination, chloramphenicol (0.05 mg/ml) is added to the medium. On Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature the colony



FIG 34 *Hormodendrum pedrosoi* (Left) Twenty one days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature (Center) *Hormodendrum* type of conidiophore  $\times 440$  (Right) *Acrotheca* type of conidiophore  $\times 440$  (Conant N F Martin D ■ Smith D T Baker R D and Callaway J L Manual of Clinical Mycology p 100 Philadelphia Saunders)



FIG 35 *Hormodendrum compactum* (Left) Thirty eight days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature (Right) Conidiophore with compact spore head  $\times 470$

history of injury to bare feet it would seem that wearing shoes would be a practical control measure

### HORMODENDRUM PEDROSOI

*Hormodendrum pedrosoi* is a small round thick walled dark brown body found in crusts exudates and tissue where it reproduces by splitting. In culture it is a dark green to brown filamentous fungus which reproduces by a variety of spore forms. This fungus with several others (*H. compactum*, *H. dermatidis*, *H. carrionii* and *Phialophora verrucosa*) cause the disease known as chromoblastomycosis.

### HISTORY

Pedroso (1911) in Brazil observed dark bodies in the tissue from a patient with verrucous skin lesions but failed to identify the fungus which he isolated. Later Pedroso and Gomes (1920) reported 4 Brazilian cases including Pedroso's original patient and named the etiologic agent *Phialophora verrucosa*. This identification was based on an earlier report by Lane (1915) and Medlar (1915) in which they described *P. verrucosa* a fungus isolated from nodular lesions on the buttocks of an Italian in Boston in whose tissue they also had observed dark brown splitting bodies. Brumpt (1922) restudied the South American fungus and named it *H.*

*pedrosoi*. Terra *et al* (1922) called the disease chromoblastomycosis. Carrion (1935) described *H. compactum* from Puerto Rico. Kano (1937) described *H. (Hormiscium) dermatidis* from a case in Japan. Trejos (1954) described *H. carrionii* from several isolates from patients in South Africa, Venezuela and Australia.

While *P. verrucosa* and *H. compactum* have remained constant in their morphology, *H. pedrosoi* has varied considerably and has presented a real problem in classification. Since *H. pedrosoi* has been isolated from the majority of the cases of chromoblastomycosis, this has led to numerous attempts to reclassify the fungus (Conant *et al* 1954).

### CULTIVATION

*H. pedrosoi* can be cultured on all common laboratory media. On Sabouraud's glucose agar the colonies are dark green to



FIG 36 *Phialophora verrucosa* (Left) Twenty eight days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature (Right) Typical conidiophore  $\times 410$



FIG 33 *Monosporium apiospermum* section from subcutaneous tissue showing granule (Smith D T Am J Med 2 602)

extensive fusion of these structures resulting in stiffness and loss of motion. There is usually no systemic reaction to the infection and little if any pain.

Histologically the lesions are similar to those of actinomycosis. Abscess formation is prominent. Granules situated in the pus may be white-yellow or black and are surrounded by a granulation tissue composed of polymorphonuclear cells, plasma cells, lymphocytes, eosinophils and macrophages. Giant cells may or may not be present. The granules are rounded to lobulated structures composed of wide-septate hyphae with chlamydospores around the periphery.

#### IMMUNITY

Agglutinins have been demonstrated in the sera of several patients with maduromycosis due to *M. apiospermum*. In a case of chronic infection, precipitins, complement fixing antibodies and skin sensitivity could be demonstrated (Seeliger 1956).

#### DIAGNOSIS

Materials from fistulae and draining sinuses and biopsy specimens should be examined for granules. These are oval lobulated 0.5 to 2 mm in diameter, white to light yellow

granules when *M. apiospermum* is the infecting fungus. Other fungi, *Madurella* sp. produce black granules. Microscopically the maduromycotic type of granule is composed of wide branching septate hyphae 2 to 4 microns in diameter with numerous chlamydospores (Fig 33). The actinomycotic type of granule on the other hand is composed of fine, delicate nonseptate hyphae 1 micron or less in diameter. These two types of granules should be distinguished in microscopic preparations for a correct diagnosis.

Granules should be washed in sterile saline or broth, crushed and streaked on Sabouraud's glucose agar or beef infusion glucose agar to which antibiotics have been added to avoid bacterial contamination.

#### TREATMENT

There is no specific therapy for maduromycosis unless amphotericin B proves to be curative. Neuhauser (1955) reported promising therapeutic results with diammodiphenylsulfone in a patient infected with *Madurella grisea*. However, maduromycosis is treated more effectively by surgical management supplemented by sulfonamide or antibiotic therapy to control secondary bacterial infection. Early diagnosis and excision of the affected localized area should be curative.

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Maduromycosis is a disease of the tropics and the subtropics with occasional cases reported in the temperate zone. It is a disease of the exposed parts of the body, particularly of the feet. Most of the fungi belong to genera known to contain saprophytic species which may be cultured from the soil. Injuries to persons going without shoes predisposes to infection. Men are infected more commonly than women; all races are susceptible.

A boydii (*M. apiospermum*) has been isolated from the spinal fluid in a case of meningitis (Benham and Georg 1948) and from the sputum in a case of chronic pulmonary infection (Creitz and Harris 1955; Tong et al 1958; Schary et al 1960; Travis et al 1961).

#### CONTROL MEASURES

From the nature of the infection, the type of fungi involved and the almost inevitable



FIG 34 *Hormodendrum pedrosoi* (Left) Twenty one days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature (Center) *Hormodendrum* type of conidiophore  $\times 440$  (Right) *Acrotheca* type of conidiophore  $\times 440$  (Conant N F Martin D S Smith D T Baker R D and Callaway J L Manual of Clinical Mycology p 100 Philadelphia Saunders)



FIG 35 *Hormodendrum compactum* (Left) Thirty eight days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature (Right) Conidiophore with compact spore head  $\times 470$

history of injury to bare feet it would seem that wearing shoes would be a practical control measure

## HORMODENDRUM PEDROSOI

*Hormodendrum pedrosoi* is a small round thick walled dark brown body found in crusts exudates and tissue where it reproduces by splitting. In culture it is a dark green to brown filamentous fungus which reproduces by a variety of spore forms. This fungus with several others (*H. compactum*, *H. dermatitidis*, *H. carrionii* and *Phialophora verrucosa*) cause the disease known as chromoblastomycosis.

### HISTORY

Pedroso (1911) in Brazil observed dark bodies in the tissue from a patient with verrucous skin lesions but failed to identify the fungus which he isolated. Later Pedroso and Gomes (1920) reported 4 Brazilian cases including Pedroso's original patient and named the etiologic agent *Phialophora verrucosa*. This identification was based on an earlier report by Lane (1915) and Medlar (1915) in which they described *P. verrucosa* a fungus isolated from nodular lesions on the buttocks of an Italian in Boston in whose tissue they also had observed dark brown splitting bodies. Brumpt (1922) restudied the South American fungus and named it *H.*

*pedrosoi*. Terra et al (1922) called the disease chromoblastomycosis. Carrion (1935) described *H. compactum* from Puerto Rico. Kano (1937) described *H. (Hormiscium) dermatitidis* from a case in Japan. Trejos (1954) described *H. carrionii* from several isolates from patients in South Africa, Venezuela and Australia.

While *P. verrucosa* and *H. compactum* have remained constant in their morphology *H. pedrosoi* has varied considerably and has presented a real problem in classification. Since *H. pedrosoi* has been isolated from the majority of the cases of chromoblastomycosis this has led to numerous attempts to reclassify the fungus (Conant et al 1954).

### CULTIVATION

*H. pedrosoi* can be cultured on all common laboratory media. On Sabouraud's glucose agar the colonies are dark green to



FIG 36 *Phialophora verrucosa* (Left) Twenty eight days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature (Right) Typical conidiophore  $\times 410$



FIG 33 *Monosporium apiospermum* section from subcutaneous tissue showing granule (Smith D T Am J Med 2 602)

extensive fusion of these structures resulting in stiffness and loss of motion. There is usually no systemic reaction to the infection and little if any pain.

Histologically the lesions are similar to those of actinomycosis. Abscess formation is prominent. Granules situated in the pus may be white, yellow or black and are surrounded by a granulation tissue composed of polymorphonuclear cells, plasma cells, lymphocytes, eosinophils and macrophages. Giant cells may or may not be present. The granules are rounded to lobulated structures composed of wide septate hyphae with chlamydospores around the periphery.

#### IMMUNITY

Agglutinins have been demonstrated in the sera of several patients with maduromycosis due to *M. apiospermum*. In a case of chronic infection, precipitins, complement fixing antibodies and skin sensitivity could be demonstrated (Seeliger 1956).

#### DIAGNOSIS

Materials from fistulae and draining sinuses and biopsy specimens should be examined for granules. These are oval, lobulated, 0.5 to 2 mm in diameter, white to light yellow

granules when *M. apiospermum* is the infecting fungus. Other fungi, *Madurella* sp., produce black granules. Microscopically the maduromycotic type of granule is composed of wide branching septate hyphae 2 to 4 microns in diameter with numerous chlamydospores (Fig 33). The actinomycotic type of granule on the other hand is composed of fine delicate nonseptate hyphae 1 micron or less in diameter. These two types of granules should be distinguished in microscopic preparations for a correct diagnosis.

Granules should be washed in sterile saline or broth, crushed and streaked on Sabouraud's glucose agar or beef infusion glucose agar to which antibiotics have been added to avoid bacterial contamination.

#### TREATMENT

There is no specific therapy for maduromycosis unless amphotericin B proves to be curative. Neuhauser (1955) reported promising therapeutic results with diaminodiphenylsulfone in a patient infected with *Madurella grisea*. However, maduromycosis is treated more effectively by surgical management supplemented by sulfonamide or antibiotic therapy to control secondary bacterial infection. Early diagnosis and excision of the affected localized area should be curative.

#### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Maduromycosis is a disease of the tropics and the subtropics with occasional cases reported in the temperate zone. It is a disease of the exposed parts of the body, particularly of the feet. Most of the fungi belong to genera known to contain saprophytic species which may be cultured from the soil. Injuries to persons going without shoes predisposes to infection. Men are infected more commonly than women; all races are susceptible.

A boydii (*M. apiospermum*) has been isolated from the spinal fluid in a case of meningitis (Benham and Georg 1948) and from the sputum in a case of chronic pulmonary infection (Creitz and Harris 1955; Tong et al 1958; Schary et al 1960; Travis et al 1961).

#### CONTROL MEASURES

From the nature of the infection, the type of fungi involved and the almost inevitable



FIG 38 (Left) *Trichophyton (gypseum) mentagrophytes* 14 days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature (Right) *Trichophyton (interdigitale) mentagrophytes* 14 days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature



FIG 39 Microscopic morphology of *Trichophyton mentagrophytes* (Left) Conidiophores producing clusters of microconidia (en grappe)  $\times 368$  (Center) Microconidia borne laterally on hyphae (en thyrses)  $\times 368$  (Right) Macroconidium (fuseau)  $\times 368$

son and Gentles (1959) using this hair soil culture technique reported *A. ajelloi* to produce its perfect phase and placed this in the Gymnoascaceae as *Arthroderma uncinatum*. Later (1961) they described the perfect phase of *Microsporium nanum* (Nannaja obliosa) and *Trichophyton terrestre* (*Arthroderma quadrifidum*). Thus the discussions found in the early literature (Matrucho and Dassonville 1899) concerning the possible relationship of the dermatophytes to the Gymnoascaceae have now been substantiated.

#### CULTIVATION

The dermatophytes may be grown on a variety of simple media but they are usually cultivated on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature because the somewhat typical appearance of the colonies and the microscopic morphology developed on this medium have been used for generic and specific identification. Recent studies of the exact nutritional requirements for some of the dermatophytes have resulted in a more stable taxonomy of these fungi by allowing better colony formation, more consistent spore production and less variable microscopic appearances. Also cultures on hair soil medium described above have developed the ascomycetous perfect phase of some of the dermatophytes.

**Genus *Trichophyton*** On Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature the colonies are granular to powdery, cottony to velvety, heaped, wrinkled and folded with a

velvety surface or heaped wrinkled and folded with a smooth and waxy surface. Pigmentation of the colonies varies from delicate pink to red, purple, violet, brown, yellow and light buff.

Some of the species in this genus (*T. verrucosum*, *T. schoenleinii*, *T. tonsurans*, *T. megnini*, *T. equinum*) can be distinguished from each other and from all other dermatophytes by their cultural requirements. Physiologic tests to determine these requirements correlated with gross colony formation on Sabouraud's glucose agar have allowed easier and more nearly accurate identification of these so-called difficult to identify dermatophytes (Ajello 1957, Georg 1957).

Microscopically, microconidia are the prominent spore forms. These are subspherical, pyriform or clavate ( $1.5$  to  $2 \times 2$  to  $5$  microns) distributed on the sides of the hyphae (en thyrses) or produced on conidiophores in clusters (en grappe). Macroconidia are characteristic but rare and appear as long, thin-walled, multiseptate, clavate spores ( $4$  to  $8$  microns in width  $\times 10$  to  $50$  microns in length). Raquette, mycelium, nodular bodies, coiled hyphae and chlamydo spores are also found in some species.

**TRICHOPHYTON (GYPSEUM) MENTAGROPHYTES** (Robin) Blanchard 1896 Primary cultures may be granular to powdery, cottony to light buff to tan in color. Occasional strains which produce a pink to red pigment in Sabouraud's glucose agar can be different

Feo and Harber 1959 Baquero *et al*, 1961)

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

Chromoblastomycosis is a disease of the skin of the exposed parts of the body. It is most frequent in the tropics among barefooted agricultural laborers and others with close contact with the soil. The fungi are saprophytes in nature and enter the skin by trauma. The disease is not transmitted from man to man, is more prevalent during adult life (30 to 50 years of age), is rarely reported in females and shows no racial immunity.

Of particular interest is the possibility of subclinical primary pulmonary infection with the fungi of chromoblastomycosis. Since they occur in the soil and can be breathed into the lungs, it would be of value to know more about their possible role in systemic disease. A culture of *H. pedrosoi* has been isolated by bronchoscopic lavage from the bronchus of a patient with chromoblastomycosis (Baquero *et al* 1961). This culture was proved to be pathogenic by experimental inoculation into the skin of 6 humans. Experimental infection of laboratory animals has shown *H. pedrosoi*, *H. compactum* and *Cladosporium trichoides* to produce brain abscess on intracerebral, intravenous and intraperitoneal inoculation (Binford *et al* 1952, Duque 1961, 1963). *Cladosporium trichoides* was first isolated by Binford and others (1952) from a brain abscess. Since this publication many reports have been published and Shimazono and others (1963) have been able to analyze 23 cases of cerebral infection.

### DERMATOPHYTES

The dermatophytes are a closely related group of imperfect keratinophilic fungi which cause specific infections of man and animals by invading only the superficial keratinized areas of the body such as the skin, the hair and the nails. They do not cause systemic infections and rarely invade the subcutaneous tissues. In their parasitic habitat they show a very reduced rudimentary morphology appearing only as mycelial fragments in skin and nails or as mycelial fragments and arthro-

spores arranged inside or outside the hair. However, in culture on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature they develop filamentous colonies which reproduce by a variety of asexual spores characteristic of the group. Four genera are now recognized: *Microsporum*, *Trichophyton*, *Epidermophyton* and *Keratomyces*.

### HISTORY

Schoenlein (1839) reported the first etiologic agent of disease in man when he described a fungus as the cause of favus. Remak (1845) named this fungus *Achorion schoenleinii*. Within a few years other fungi were reported as the etiologic agents of disease in man. Gruby (1843) described *Microsporum audouinii* and Malmsten (1845) described *Trichophyton tonsurans* as etiologic agents of ringworm of the scalp. Later Sabouraud (1907) described *Epidermophyton inguinale* from eczema marginatum while Castellani (1910) reported *Endodermophyton concentricum* from tinea imbricata or Tokelau ringworm. Complete descriptions of all types of ringworm infection of the hair, the skin and the nails as well as the fungi which caused such lesions were published by Sabouraud (1910) who listed 45 species of dermatophytes. More than 100 species of *Trichophyton* alone are now listed in the literature. These species were separated not only on the basis of differences in the appearance of lesions from which they were isolated but also on differences observed in the gross appearance of colonies on Sabouraud's standard medium. However, critical studies of these dermatophytes have reduced 2 genera and several species to synonymy with previously described forms. Thus the genera *Achorion* and *Endodermophyton* have been discarded and their species have been placed in the genus *Trichophyton*. This genus now contains only 14 species while *Microsporum* contains only 7 species and *Epidermophyton* a single species.

Vanbreuseghem (1952) used the keratinophilic property of the dermatophytes for their isolation from the soil. By using hair bait pieces of hair on moistened soil samples he was able to isolate a new dermatophyte species, *Keratomyces ajelloi* Daw.



FIG 38 (Left) *Trichophyton (gypseum) mentagraphytes* 14 days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature (Right) *Trichophyton (interdigitale) mentagraphytes* 14 days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature



FIG 39 Microscopic morphology of *Trichophyton mentagraphytes* (Left) Conidiophores producing clusters of microconidia (en grappe)  $\times 368$  (Center) Microconidia borne laterally on hyphae (en thyrses)  $\times 368$  (Right) Macroconidium (fuseau)  $\times 368$

son and Gentles (1959) using this hair soil culture technic reported *A. ajelloi* to produce its perfect phase and placed this in the Gymnoascaceae as *Arthroderma uncinatum*. Later (1961) they described the perfect phase of *Microsporum nanum* (*Nannizza obtusa*) and *Trichophyton terrestre* (*Arthroderma quadrifidum*). Thus the discussions found in the early literature (Matsuochot and Dassonville 1899) concerning the possible relationship of the dermatophytes to the Gymnoascaceae have now been substantiated.

#### CULTIVATION

The dermatophytes may be grown on a variety of simple media but they are usually cultivated on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature because the somewhat typical appearance of the colonies and the microscopic morphology developed on this medium have been used for generic and specific identification. Recent studies of the exact nutritional requirements for some of the dermatophytes have resulted in a more stable taxonomy of these fungi by allowing better colony formation, more consistent spore production and less variable microscopic appearances. Also cultures on hair soil medium described above have developed the ascomycetous perfect phase of some of the dermatophytes.

**Genus *Trichophyton*** On Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature the colonies are granular to powdery, cottony to velvety, heaped, wrinkled and folded with a

velvety surface or heaped wrinkled and folded with a smooth and waxy surface. Pigmentation of the colonies varies from delicate pink to red, purple, violet, brown, yellow and light buff.

Some of the species in this genus (*T. versucosum*, *T. schoenleinii*, *T. tonsurans*, *T. megninii*, *T. equinum*) can be distinguished from each other and from all other dermatophytes by their cultural requirements. Physiologic tests to determine these requirements correlated with gross colony formation on Sabouraud's glucose agar have allowed easier and more nearly accurate identification of these so-called difficult to identify dermatophytes (Ajello 1957, Georg 1957).

Microscopically, microconidia are the prominent spore forms. These are subspherical, pyriform or clavate (1.5 to 2  $\times$  2 to 5 microns) distributed on the sides of the hyphae (en thyrses) or produced on conidiophores in clusters (en grappe). Macroconidia are characteristic but rare and appear as long, thin-walled, multiseptate, clavate spores (4 to 6 microns in width  $\times$  10 to 50 microns in length). Raquette mycelium, nodular bodies, coiled hyphae and chlamydo spores are also found in some species.

**TRICHOPHYTON (GYPSEUM) MENTAGRAPHYTES** (Robm.) Blanchard 1896. Primary cultures may be granular to powdery and light buff to tan in color. Occasional strains which produce a pink to red pigment in Sabouraud's glucose agar can be differenti-



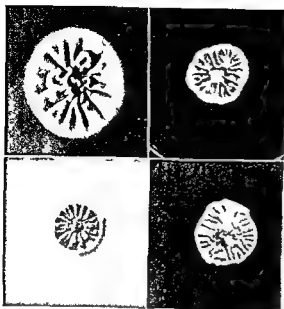


FIG 40 (Top left) *Trichophyton tonsurans* 35 days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature (Top right) *Trichophyton rubrum* 12 days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature (Bottom left) *Trichophyton violaceum* 19 days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature (Bottom right) *Trichophyton concentricum* 12 days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature

ated from *T. rubrum* by cultivation on corn meal glucose agar in which red pigment is not produced (Bocobo and Benham 1949). Overgrowth of fluffy cottony pure white mycelium on transfer produces the interdigitate type of colony (Fig 38). Sporulation on Wort agar as well as on Sabouraud's glucose agar aids in the identification of this species. Microscopically numerous subspherical microconidia, tightly coiled hyphae, chlamydospores, raquette hyphae and nodular bodies but few macroconidia are seen (Fig 39).

This species produces an *ectothrix* infection of the hair and the interdigitate type is the common agent of athlete's foot. *T. mentagrophytes* is a *zoophilic* species in that it infects animals. Laboratory infections in man have been caused by epizootics in mice, rats and guinea pigs (Dolan *et al* 1958; Menges and Georg 1956).

*T. EQUINUM* Geddoelst 1902. The colony



FIG 41 (Left) *Trichophyton schoenleinii* 21 days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature (Right) Favic chandeliers produced in cultures of *T. schoenleinii*  $\times 183$

and microscopic characteristics are similar to those of *T. mentagrophytes* and many investigators believed this species to be a synonym. However, Georg and others (1957) found that *T. equinum* has a strict requirement for nicotinic acid and feel that it can be differentiated from *T. mentagrophytes* by this nutritional requirement.

This species causes epizootic ringworm on horses and rarely affects man. It produces an *ectothrix* type invasion of the hair.

*T. (PURPUREUM) RUBRUM* (Castellani) Sabouraud 1911. Primary cultures are cottony and pure white but later develop a velvety surface with a rose purple or reddish pigment on the back of the colony (Fig 40). Pigmentation may spread into the agar and into the surface mycelium. This pigmentation is more constant when cultures are grown on corn meal glucose agar and macroconidia are more abundant when cultures are grown on blood agar base (Difco). Microscopically numerous clavate microconidia borne on the sides of the hyphae, chlamydospores and raquette hyphae but few macroconidia are seen.

This species infects the skin and the nails. On the skin, the slowly spreading infection persists for years and is the most difficult to treat of all the ringworm infections. It is

rarely isolated from animals and probably should be considered to be anthropophilic

*T. (CRATERIFORME) TONSURANS* Malmsten 1845 The colony is slow growing with compact whitish-cream velvety surface that becomes folded with deep crateriform depressions of yellowish color (Fig 40) Stimulation of this species by the addition of thiamine to the medium distinguishes it from *T. mentagrophytes* and *T. rubrum* above Macroconidia are more abundant in cultures on Wort agar Microscopically numerous clavate microconidia borne on the sides of the hyphae numerous chlamydospores hyphal swellings and raquette hyphae but rare macroconidia are seen

This species causes black-dot ringworm of the scalp in adults It produces an endothrix type invasion of the hair and is considered to be anthropophilic in that it affects man and not animals

*T. (ACHORION) VIOLACEUM* Sabouraud 1902 The colony is slow growing heaped compact smooth waxy with irregular folds and a deep violet pigmentation (Fig 40) Better growth occurs when thiamine is added to Sabouraud's glucose agar or when this species is grown on blood agar base medium plus thiamine Microscopically only chlamydospores and hyphal swellings with no characteristic spore forms are seen

This species also causes black dot ringworm of the scalp in adults It produces an endothrix type invasion of the hair and is considered to be anthropophilic in that it affects man and not animals

*T. (ACHORION) SCHOENLEINII* (Lebert) Langeron and Milochévitch 1930 The colony is slow growing heaped compact waxy and smooth with many irregular folds yellowish white to light brown in color (Fig 41) This species is autotrophic for vitamins and is distinguished from *T. verrucosum* (below) on this basis On transfer the smooth waxy appearance changes to a velvety white Microscopically only chlamydospores hyphal swellings and the so-called favic chandeliers are seen (Fig 41)

This species is the cause of favus a severe infection of the scalp and the skin in children and adults The disease remains within family groups and in restricted localities in this country as a result of familial transfer

(Loveman and Kotcher 1962) In the hair an endothrix type of invasion is seen This is an anthropophilic species

*T. VERRUCOSUM* Georg 1950 The colony is slow growing convex disklike moist glabrous and dull yellow in color This species requires thiamine or thiamine and inositol for good growth Microscopically only chlamydospores and hyphal swellings are seen

This species affects the scalp and the skin of children but is particularly an agent of ringworm of the bearded area of the face in man It causes a severe malignant infection of the skin producing kerion a baggy indurated and inflammatory lesion It produces an ectothrix invasion of the hair and is a zoophilic species most often isolated from cattle Man becomes infected by contact with these animals

*T. (MICROSPORIUM) FERRUGINEUM* (Ota) Langeron and Milochévitch 1930 The colony is slow growing glabrous smooth and orange in color This species is autotrophic for the vitamins Microscopically only chlamydospores and hyphal swellings are seen

This species produces a microsporum invasion of the hair a sheath of spores surrounds the hair shaft The infected hairs fluoresce under Wood's light It is seldom seen in this country but causes widespread epidemics in northern Africa the Middle East and Asia It is an anthropophilic species not found on animals

*T. (ENDODERMOPHYTON) CONCENTRICUM* Blanchard (1896) The colony is slow growing heaped deeply furrowed smooth and brownish in the center (Fig 40) On transfer the surface becomes velvety Fifty per cent of the strains studied are found to be autotrophic for the vitamins while 50 per cent required thiamine for good growth Microscopically only chlamydospores hyphal swellings and the so-called favic chandeliers are seen

This species affects only the skin producing bizarre concentric patterns of invasion It is found in Central and South America and southwestern Pacific islands It is an anthropophilic species not found on animals

The remaining species of *Trichophyton* (*T. megnini* *T. gallinae* *T. soudanense* *T.*

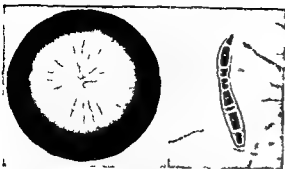


FIG 42 *Microsporium audouinii* (Left) Twenty one days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature (Right) Macroconidium (fuscau) elongate imperfectly formed macroconidia are found in this species  $\times 351$



FIG 43 *Microsporium canis* (Left) Fourteen days on Sabouraud's glucose agar (Right) Well developed and numerous macroconidia are found in this species  $\times 350$

*gourvili* and *T. yaoundei*) occur in Europe or Africa and although the last 3 species have caused widespread epidemics in native populations in Africa they are not known to occur outside these localities. *Trichophyton terrestre* Durie and Frey (1957) was isolated from soil in Australia and is not known to cause disease in man and animals. Dawson and Gentles (1961) were able to culture and describe its ascomycetous stage *Athrodendrum quadrifidum*.

**Genus *Microsporium*** On Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature the colonies are slow growing matted and furrowed or fast growing cottony or powdery and tan to cinnamon brown in color. The pigmentation in the agar may be reddish brown to orange. Microscopically the macroconidia are numerous and characteristic. They are large (8 to 15 microns in width  $\times$  40 to 150 microns in length) spindle shaped multicelled rough thick walled spores. The microconidia (2.5 to 4  $\times$  3 to 6 microns) scarce in primary cultures are borne singly along the hyphae or from short stalks from the hyphae.

**M. AUDOUINII** Gruby 1843 The colony is slow growing matted and velvety tan to brownish in color with yellowish or orange pigmentation in the agar (Fig 42). Yeast extracts glucose and asparagine added to medium provoke vegetative growth. This species does not produce spores readily which would allow easy identification. Lack of growth on polished (unfortified) rice distinguishes it from other species of dermatophytes.

Microscopically, the macroconidia are rare and when found in occasional isolates are bizarre in shape. The microconidia are clavate (2.5 to 4  $\times$  3 to 6 microns) borne on the hyphae or from short stalks on the hyphae. Pectinate hyphae, raquette mycelium, chlamydospores and nodular bodies are also seen.

This species is the cause of epidemic ringworm of the scalp in children. The hairs are surrounded by a sheath of spores and fluoresce under Wood's light. It is anthropophilic, not found on animals.

**M. CANIS** Bodin 1902 The colony is fast growing with abundant cottony aerial buff tan mycelium and yellowish to orange pigmentation in the agar (Fig 43). Microscopically numerous characteristic macroconidia are produced. They are large (8 to 15  $\times$  40 to 150 microns) multicelled spindle shaped thick walled spores (Fig 43). Raquette mycelium, chlamydospores and nodular bodies are also seen.

This species is the cause of sporadic ringworm of the scalp in children who become infected by contact with dogs or cats. The infected hairs fluoresce under the Wood's light. It is a zoophilic species.

**M. GYPSUM** (Bodin) Guirart and Grigorakis 1928 The colony is fast growing with white cottony aerial mycelium which becomes matted and powdery and cinnamon brown in color (Fig 44). Microscopically numerous macroconidia are produced. They are elongate and ellipsoid (8 to 12  $\times$  30 to 50 microns) multicelled rounded to tapering

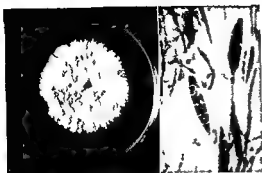


FIG 44 *Microsporum gypseum* (Left) Seven days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature (Right) Macroconidia  $\times 330$

at the ends with rough thin walls (Fig 44)

This species has been isolated from soil throughout the world. It infects children and adults in contact with contaminated soil or in contact with animals that have been infected from soil. The hairs do not fluoresce under Wood's light. Stockdale (1961) was able to culture and describe its ascomycetous stage *Nannizziia incurvata*.

**M. NANUM** Fuentes 1956 The colony is fast growing with a white floccose aerial mycelium which becomes granular in appearance and cream colored. The reverse of the colony may be tannish-orange to rose-colored. Microscopically numerous macroconidia are produced. They are elliptical thin walled echinulate spores ( $8$  to  $12 \times 14$  to  $24$  microns) with one septum or no septation. A few microconidia are also found. This species has been isolated from ringworm of the scalp in Cuba and Louisiana and from the skin of a patient in Alberta, Canada (Brock 1961; Fuentes *et al.* 1954; Carmichael and Reid 1962). It has also been isolated from infected swine (Bubash *et al.* 1964). This is a zoophilic species. The infected hairs do not fluoresce under Wood's light. Dawson and Gentles (1961) have described the ascomycetous stage *Nannizziia abiusa*.

**M. DISTORTUM** Di Menna and Marples 1954 The colony is fast growing, the surface developing radial grooves and becoming velvety and tan-colored. Microscopically numerous macroconidia are produced. They are thick walled rough multicelled distorted in

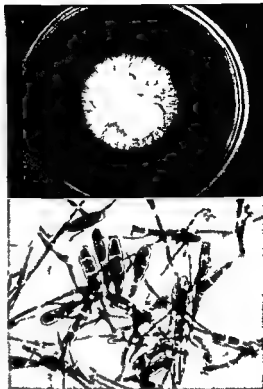


FIG 45 *Epidermophyton floccosum* (Top) Twelve days on Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature (Bottom) Typically clustered macroconidia  $\times 330$

shape ( $4$  to  $14 \times 3$  to  $40$  microns) and distinctive for the species. Microconidia are pear shaped borne from the sides of the hyphae.

This species was isolated from ringworm of the scalp and the skin of patients in New Zealand. It has been isolated from pet monkeys and dogs in the United States (Kaplan *et al.* 1957). The hairs fluoresce under Wood's light. This is a zoophilic species.

**M. COCKEII** Ajello 1959 The colony is fast growing with powdery yellow tan center and downy white periphery. The reverse of the colony is deep purplish red in color. Microscopically numerous macroconidia are produced. They are elongate elliptical thick walled echinulate multiseptate ( $12$  to  $15 \times 45$  to  $75$  microns) spores. Microconidia are produced.

This species is a keratinophilic saprophyte that has been isolated from the soil and from

the fur of many animals that were not infected Ajello (1961) described its ascomycetous stage *Nannizzia cajetana*

M VANBREUSEGHEM Georg *et al* 1962 The colony is fast growing with a flat powdery to fluffy pink to deep rose colored surface The reverse of the colony is light yellow Microscopically numerous macroconidia are produced They are cylindrofusiform ( $10 \times 58$  to  $72$  microns) multicelled spores with thick rough walls Microconidia are produced

This species was isolated from a Malabar squirrel dog and human infections (Georg *et al* 1959 1962 Henington *et al* 1962) Georg and others (1962) described the ascomycetous stage *Nannizzia grubyia*

Genus *Keratomyces* On Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature the colony is powdery to fluffy and cream to orange tan in color Microscopically large smooth walled cylindrofusiform multiseptate macroconidia are produced Microconidia are produced in some strains This genus contains one species

K AJELLO Vanbreuseghem 1952 The colony is fast growing flat with powdery to fluffy cream to orange tan surface The reverse of the colony may become deep purple in color Microscopically numerous macroconidia are produced They are cylindrofusiform ( $8$  to  $10 \times 42$  to  $54$  microns) multiseptate spores with thick smooth walls Microconidia are produced

This species has been isolated from soil throughout the world Many isolates have been obtained from the fur of animals but the fungus does not cause infection Dawson and Gentles (1961) described the ascomycetous stage *Arthroderma quadrifidum*

Genus *Epidermophyton* On Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature the colonies are velvety to powdery and greenish yellow in color Microscopically only oval to broadly clavate macroconidia are produced This genus contains one species

E FLOCCOSUM (Harz) Langeron and Milchevitch 1930 The colony develops with a central cottony white aerial mycelium which becomes powdery and greenish yellow in color (Fig. 45) Microscopically the oval broadly clavate 2- to 6-celled smooth thin walled macroconidia ( $7$  to  $12 \times 20$  to  $40$

microns) are characteristic for this fungus They are produced directly from the hyphae or in typical clusters (Fig. 45) No microconidia are to be found Older cultures produce many chlamydospores and raquette cells

#### DISTRIBUTION

The dermatophytes have a worldwide distribution However some species are found constantly in certain geographic areas and rarely in others

*T. schoenleini* is found in the countries bordering the Mediterranean in the Balkans and scattered throughout Europe and the Far East Cases of infection in this country usually are found in families of recent immigration *T. violaceum* also is found in the Balkans Russia and southern European countries with scattered cases reported throughout Europe In the United States cases of infection by this fungus are sporadic and usually found in foreign families *T. ferrugineum* is common in Manchuria and Japan and rarely found elsewhere *T. concentricum* seems to have a tropical distribution it has been reported from the Pacific South America and occasionally from Central America As yet no cases have been reported from the temperate zone *T. rubrum* is said to be more prevalent in subtropical areas (Mexico Central America West Indies parts of South America) In the United States more cases are reported from the southern part of the country

*M. audouinii* is endemic in Europe (France Spain Italy Germany Austria and the Balkans) Until World War I the occurrence of this fungus was sporadic in England and the United States During World War II however epidemics caused by *M. audouinii* in the United States and Canada have caused great concern

*T. tonsurans* has been introduced into the United States from Mexico This fungus causes epidemic ringworm of the scalp in adults and has compounded the problem of that seen in children caused by *M. audouinii*

Whether the area is rural or urban the types of infections seen and the fungi responsible for them differ greatly In rural areas man acquires his infection from contact with wild and domesticated animals The fungi

responsible for these infections cause a marked reaction on the part of the host. On the other hand in urban areas man to man transmission of infection takes place and the fungi concerned with such infections cause little reaction by the host (Georg *et al* 1956 Kaplan *et al* 1958 Georg 1960).

#### PATHOGENESIS

The dermatophytes cause superficial infections (dermatomycoses) of the keratinized areas of the body i.e. skin hair and nails. They do not invade the deeper tissues or internal organs of man and do not cause systemic infections in experimentally inoculated animals.

The most prevalent infection is that referred to as *tinea pedis* (athlete's foot, dermatophytosis, etc.) in which the toe webs are invaded by species of *Trichophyton* or *E. floccosum* resulting in acute subacute or chronic infections. In most instances the infection becomes noticeable as a pruritic vesiculated area between the toes with occasional spread to the rest of the foot. Rupture of the vesicles and discharge of a thin serous fluid causes maceration and peeling of the tissue. This may be accompanied by the appearance of fissures or cracks. Unless secondary bacterial infection takes place the lesion usually persists for long periods of time as a macerated area between the toes. However, superimposed bacterial invasion may result in an acute inflammatory reaction with lymphangitis or lymphadenitis. Occasionally certain species of *Trichophyton* cause marked inflammatory reactions and the fungus or its products sensitize the skin. In such cases vesicular lesions indistinguishable from primary infections may appear elsewhere on the body particularly on the palms of the hands. These lesions are considered to be allergic manifestations or dermatophytids if fungi are not found in them; a primary focus of infection is found elsewhere on the body and the trichophyton test is positive.

Infection of the nails (*tinea unguium*) may accompany lesions between the toes or on the feet. Usually only 2 or 3 nails are affected and these become discolored brittle opaque lusterless thickened and friable. Paronychia is not common.

Infection of the glabrous skin of the body

(*tinea glabrosa*) occurs more commonly in children as a result of contact with infected animals or by autoinoculation with hairs from an infected scalp. Adults may become infected by handling animals or infected children or from lesions on the nails and the feet. Although a variety of lesions on the glabrous skin may be caused by dermatophytes the typical annular ringworm lesion is one with a healing scaly center and active erythematous vesiculopustular border.

Ringworm of the scalp (*tinea capitis*) occurs in childhood and in most instances if not cured during this period heals spontaneously at puberty. However a few of the dermatophytes cause lesions which tend to hold over into adult life (*T. schoenleinii*, *T. violaceum*, *T. tonsurans*). Infection by *M. audouinii* is acquired by contact with other infected children and usually occurs in epidemics. However infection by *M. canis* is acquired by contact with infected animals (cats and dogs) and is usually sporadic. The appearance of the lesions depends on the infecting fungus whether a *Microsporum* or a *Trichophyton*.

In microsporiasis the hair is broken off a short distance from the surface of the scalp leaving grayish areas composed of hair stubs surrounded by a sheath of spores. Infection by *M. canis* or *M. gypseum* may also cause an inflammatory reaction resulting in a boggy tumorlike mass or kerion which resembles a pyoderma. In trichophytosis species of *Trichophyton* which invade the hair shaft (endothrix) cause small scattered scaly lesions with a thinning of the hair where they are broken off at the surface of the scalp leaving follicles with a black center (blackdot ringworm). Another endothrix species *T. schoenleinii* causes an infection of the scalp (favus) characterized by cuplike structures (scutula) formed by the infected hair follicles. Ectothrix species *T. mentagrophytes* may produce acute inflammatory reactions resulting in kerion formation.

Infection of the bearded region of man (*tinea barbae*) may be caused by *T. verrucosum*, *T. mentagrophytes* or *M. gypseum* and resembles closely infections due to pyogenic organisms.

Since the dermatophytes invade the horny layer of the epidermis and can live and multi-

the fur of many animals that were not infected Ajello (1961) described its ascomyctous stage, *Nannisia cajetana*

M VANBREUSEGHEM Georg *et al* 1962 The colony is fast growing with a flat powdery to fluffy pink to deep rose colored surface The reverse of the colony is light yellow Microscopically numerous macroconidia are produced They are cylindrofusiform ( $10 \times 58$  to  $72$  microns) multicelled spores with thick rough walls Microconidia are produced

This species was isolated from a Malabar squirrel dog and human infections (Georg *et al* 1959 1962 Henington *et al* 1962) Georg and others (1962) described the ascomyctous stage *Nannisia grubyia*

Genus *Keratomyces* On Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature the colony is powdery to fluffy and cream to orange tan in color Microscopically large smooth walled cylindrofusiform multiseptate macroconidia are produced Microconidia are produced in some strains This genus contains one species

K AJELLO Vanbreuseghem 1952 The colony is fast growing flat with powdery to fluffy cream to orange tan surface The reverse of the colony may become deep purple in color Microscopically numerous macroconidia are produced They are cylindrofusiform ( $8$  to  $10 \times 42$  to  $54$  microns) multiseptate spores with thick smooth walls Microconidia are produced

This species has been isolated from soil throughout the world Many isolates have been obtained from the fur of animals but the fungus does not cause infection Dawson and Gentile (1961) described the ascomyctous stage *Arthroderma quadrifidum*

Genus *Epidermophyton* On Sabouraud's glucose agar at room temperature the colonies are velvety to powdery and greenish yellow in color Microscopically only oval to broadly clavate macroconidia are produced This genus contains one species

E FLOCCOSUM (Harz) Langeron and Miloshevitch 1930 The colony develops with a central cottony white aerial mycelium which becomes powdery and greenish yellow in color (Fig 45) Microscopically the oval broadly clavate 2 to 6-celled smooth thin walled macroconidia ( $7$  to  $12 \times 20$  to  $40$

microns) are characteristic for this fungus They are produced directly from the hyphae or in typical clusters (Fig 45) No microconidia are to be found Older cultures produce many chlamydospores and raquette cells

## DISTRIBUTION

The dermatophytes have a worldwide distribution However some species are found constantly in certain geographic areas and rarely in others

*T. schoenleinii* is found in the countries bordering the Mediterranean in the Balkans and scattered throughout Europe and the Far East Cases of infection in this country usually are found in families of recent immigration *T. violaceum* also is found in the Balkans Russia and southern European countries with scattered cases reported throughout Europe In the United States cases of infection by this fungus are sporadic and usually found in foreign families *T. ferrugineum* is common in Manchuria and Japan and rarely found elsewhere *T. concentricum* seems to have a tropical distribution it has been reported from the Pacific South America and occasionally from Central America As yet no cases have been reported from the temperate zone *T. rubrum* is said to be more prevalent in subtropical areas (Mexico Central America West Indies parts of South America) In the United States more cases are reported from the southern part of the country

*M. audouinii* is endemic in Europe (France Spain Italy Germany Austria and the Balkans) Until World War I the occurrence of this fungus was sporadic in England and the United States During World War II however epidemics caused by *M. audouinii* in the United States and Canada have caused great concern

*T. tonsurans* has been introduced into the United States from Mexico This fungus causes epidemic ringworm of the scalp in adults and has compounded the problem of that seen in children caused by *M. audouinii*

Whether the area is rural or urban the types of infections seen and the fungi responsible for them differ greatly In rural areas man acquires his infection from contact with wild and domesticated animals The fungi

ence with those species of dermatophytes that cause an acute inflammatory response (Hupert 1962)

### DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is made best by demonstrating the fungus in the hair the skin or the nails and by culture. The Woods light is an invaluable aid in locating and determining the extent of infection on the scalp. Hairs infected with *M. audouinii* and *M. canis* fluoresce when this light is held close to the scalp in a semidark room. Hair epilated from lesions on the scalp skin scraped from the erythematous border of lesions on the skin or obtained from the roofs of vesicles and scrapings obtained from the discolored friable areas of infected nails are examined in 10 per cent KOH. Dermatophytes in the skin or the nails appear as branching fragments of hyphae (Fig. 46); the genus and the species of the invading fungus can be determined only by culture. In the hair the appearance of these fungi in KOH preparations allows to some extent a generic determination. Species of *Microsporum* form dense spore sheaths around the hair stub with the spores crowded into a mosaic pattern (Fig. 46). Species of *Trichophyton* form parallel rows of small or large spores outside the hair shaft (ectothrix microides, ectothrix megasporae) or inside the hair shaft (endothrix) (Fig. 46). Although the appearance of the infected hair may allow identification of the genus of dermatophyte, the species can be identified only by culture.

Cultures are made by inoculating Sabouraud's glucose agar slants with 2 or 3 fragments of infected material. The addition of chloramphenicol (0.05 mg/ml) and cycloheximide (0.5 mg/ml) to the medium will increase greatly the percentage of positive cultures by eliminating bacterial and faster growing fungus contaminants. All cultures must be maintained for at least 3 weeks at room temperature before being discarded as negative.

### TREATMENT

The report by Gentles (1958) that an antibiotic griseofulvin was effective in the treatment of ringworm in experimentally in-

fected guinea pigs gave the first promise of effective systemic treatment for the dermatomycoses. Continued use of this antibiotic has proved its value and it is considered the drug of choice for these infections (Gentles 1959, Russell *et al.* 1960, Newcomer and Landau 1963).

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

The dermatophytes include species which primarily infect animals and only incidentally infect humans (animal or zoophilic species) and species which infect humans only (human or anthropophilic species). The animal species e.g. *M. canis* from dogs and cats or *T. verrucosum* from cattle cause sporadic cases of ringworm of the scalp or glabrous skin of children or the glabrous skin of adults. Usually such infections can be traced to infected animals. The human species *M. audouinii* causes epidemics of ringworm of the scalp of children by man to man spread of hairs infected with this fungus. Such hairs are easily dislodged from the scalp and may be picked up from the backs of theater seats from the clippers in barbershops or by direct contact at play. *T. tonsurans* causes epidemics of ringworm of the scalp in adults.

Tinea pedis (athlete's foot, ringworm of the foot, etc.) is thought to be spread from man to man by the common use of shower baths, etc. in schools, colleges and athletic clubs. The high incidence of infection among the troops during World War II indicated again that communal life and common use of bathing facilities are important factors of spread. Under such conditions the scuffed or rubbed-off infected macerated or peeling skin from the feet or between the toes serves as the source of infection. *T. mentagrophytes*, *E. floccosum* and *M. gypsum* have been isolated from soil from contaminated shoes and/or the floor of shower stalls. Man becomes infected by contact with these areas.

The dermatophytes, unlike all other fungi, can be transmitted from man to man and from animal to man.

### CONTROL MEASURES

Epidemics of tinea capitis in children can be controlled by notifying public health authorities of the individual case or cases. Such



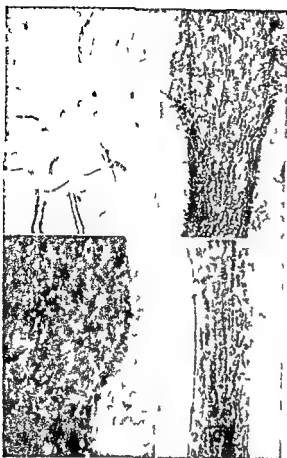


FIG 46 Potassium hydroxide preparation of skin and hair (Top left) *Trichophyton mentagrophytes* in skin  $\times 415$  (Top right) *Trichophyton* (endothrix) hair  $\times 170$  (Bottom left) *Microsporum* hair  $\times 170$  (Bottom right) *Trichophyton* hair  $\times 170$

ply only in this dead skin there are few histopathologic changes that are not those of a response to any inflammatory reaction. These fungi cause erythema and edema with inflammation resulting in scaling of the stratum corneum and vesiculation. Microscopically there is a marked hyperkeratosis, parakeratosis, acanthosis, and dilatation of the vessels of the papillary layer with plasma and cellular infiltration resulting in interstitial edema.

#### IMMUNITY

Children are susceptible to infection of the scalp and the body by dermatophytes of hu-

man or animal origin but are resistant to infection of the feet. Adults, on the other hand, are susceptible to infection of the feet, the nails, and glabrous skin but are relatively resistant to infection of the scalp (Kligman and Ginsberg, 1950).

Greenbaum (1924) failed to demonstrate circulating antibodies by means of the complement fixation test. Marcussen (1937) by the Prausnitz-Kustner technique demonstrated circulating antibodies of the urticarial type in individuals with allergic manifestations who gave an immediate wheal to intracutaneous injections of trichophytin.

This immediate allergic type reaction has been found to occur not only in the atopic individual but also in individuals infected by *T. rubrum* or with a history of recurrent lymphangitis (Jillson and Huppert, 1949). However, immunity in humans is usually demonstrated by the cutaneous sensitivity which is established during infection and can be demonstrated by an intracutaneous injection of trichophytin. The reaction is of the delayed type (24 to 48 hours) and frequently lasts 7 days. A positive trichophytin test depends to some extent on the type of invading fungus and whether or not an inflammatory reaction is induced. The trichophytin used to elicit the skin test in sensitive individuals contains both group-specific and species-specific antigens. The trichophytin test may indicate either present or past infection by any one of the dermatophytes.

Immunity in infected animals can be demonstrated not only by a cutaneous reaction to trichophytin but also by an accelerated type of lesion produced on reinoculation. For varying periods of time after recovery from experimental infection, the guinea pig is immune to reinfection in the previously infected site.

Of particular interest is the extraction of a polysaccharide from the mycelium of *T. mentagrophytes* (McNall *et al.* 1961). This material was said to be antigenic for chinchillas that produced appreciable amounts of antibody. The purified cell wall polysaccharide contained glucose and glucosamine.

The problem of immunity in the human, however, resolves itself into degrees of resistance which depend on previous experi-

ence with those species of dermatophytes that cause an acute inflammatory response (Hupert 1962)

### DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is made best by demonstrating the fungus in the hair, the skin or the nails and by culture. The Wood's light is an invaluable aid in locating and determining the extent of infection on the scalp. Hairs infected with *M. audouinii* and *M. canis* fluoresce when this light is held close to the scalp in a semidark room. Hair epilated from lesions on the scalp, skin scraped from the erythematous border of lesions on the skin or obtained from the roofs of vesicles and scrapings obtained from the discolored friable areas of infected nails are examined in 10 per cent KOH. Dermatophytes in the skin or the nails appear as branching fragments of hyphae (Fig. 46); the genus and the species of the invading fungus can be determined only by culture. In the hair the appearance of these fungi in KOH preparations allows to some extent a generic determination. Species of *Microsporum* form dense spore sheaths around the hair stub with the spores crowded into a mosaic pattern (Fig. 46). Species of *Trichophyton* form parallel rows of small or large spores outside the hair shaft (ectothrix microides, ectothrix megaspores) or inside the hair shaft (endothrix) (Fig. 46). Although the appearance of the infected hair may allow identification of the genus of dermatophyte, the species can be identified only by culture.

Cultures are made by inoculating Sabouraud's glucose agar slants with 2 or 3 fragments of infected material. The addition of chloramphenicol (0.05 mg/ml) and cycloheximide (0.5 mg/ml) to the medium will increase greatly the percentage of positive cultures by eliminating bacterial and faster growing fungus contaminants. All cultures must be maintained for at least 3 weeks at room temperature before being discarded as negative.

### TREATMENT

The report by Gentles (1958) that an antibiotic griseofulvin was effective in the treatment of ringworm in experimentally in-

fected guinea pigs gave the first promise of effective systemic treatment for the dermatomycoses. Continued use of this antibiotic has proved its value and it is considered the drug of choice for these infections (Gentles 1959, Russell et al. 1960, Newcomer and Landau 1963).

### EPIDEMIOLOGY

The dermatophytes include species which primarily infect animals and only incidentally infect humans (animal or zoophilic species) and species which infect humans only (human or anthropophilic species). The animal species e.g. *M. canis* from dogs and cats or *T. verrucosum* from cattle cause sporadic cases of ringworm of the scalp or glabrous skin of children or the glabrous skin of adults. Usually such infections can be traced to infected animals. The human species *M. audouinii* causes epidemics of ringworm of the scalp of children by man to man spread of hairs infected with this fungus. Such hairs are easily dislodged from the scalp and may be picked up from the backs of theater seats from the clippers in barbershops or by direct contact at play. *T. tonsurans* causes epidemics of ringworm of the scalp in adults.

Tinea pedis (athlete's foot, ringworm of the foot, etc.) is thought to be spread from man to man by the common use of shower baths, etc. in schools, colleges and athletic clubs. The high incidence of infection among the troops during World War II indicated again that communal life and common use of bathing facilities are important factors of spread. Under such conditions the scuffed or rubbed-off infected macerated or peeling skin from the feet or between the toes serves as the source of infection. *T. mentagrophytes*, *E. floccosum* and *M. gypseum* have been isolated from soil from contaminated shoes and/or the floor of shower stalls. Man becomes infected by contact with these areas.

The dermatophytes, unlike all other fungi, can be transmitted from man to man and from animal to man.

### CONTROL MEASURES

Epidemics of tinea capitis in children can be controlled by notifying public health authorities of the individual case or cases. Such



FIG 46 Potassium hydroxide preparation of skin and hair (Top left) *Trichophyton mentagrophytes* in skin  $\times 415$  (Top right) *Trichophyton* (endothrix) hair  $\times 170$  (Bottom left) *Microsporum* hair  $\times 170$  (Bottom right) *Trichophyton* hair  $\times 170$

ply only in this dead skin there are few histopathologic changes that are not those of a response to any inflammatory reaction. These fungi cause erythema and edema with inflammation resulting in scaling of the stratum corneum and vesiculation. Microscopically there is a marked hyperkeratosis, parakeratosis, acanthosis, and dilatation of the vessels of the papillary layer with plasma and cellular infiltration resulting in interstitial edema.

#### IMMUNITY

Children are susceptible to infection of the scalp and the body by dermatophytes of hu-

man or animal origin but are resistant to infection of the feet. Adults, on the other hand, are susceptible to infection of the feet, the nails, and glabrous skin but are relatively resistant to infection of the scalp (Kligman and Ginsberg, 1950).

Greenbaum (1924) failed to demonstrate circulating antibodies by means of the complement fixation test. Marcussen (1937) by the Prausnitz-Kustner technique demonstrated circulating antibodies of the urticarial type in individuals with allergic manifestations who gave an immediate wheal to intracutaneous injections of trichophytin.

This immediate allergic type reaction has been found to occur not only in the atopic individual but also in individuals infected by *T. rubrum* or with a history of recurrent lymphangitis (Jillson and Huppert, 1949). However, immunity in humans is usually demonstrated by the cutaneous sensitivity which is established during infection and can be demonstrated by an intracutaneous injection of trichophytin. The reaction is of the delayed type (24 to 48 hours) and frequently lasts 7 days. A positive trichophytin test depends to some extent on the type of invading fungus and whether or not an inflammatory reaction is induced. The trichophytin used to elicit the skin test in sensitive individuals contains both group-specific and species-specific antigens. The trichophytin test may indicate either present or past infection by any one of the dermatophytes.

Immunity in infected animals can be demonstrated not only by a cutaneous reaction to trichophytin but also by an acute accelerated type of lesion produced on reinoculation. For varying periods of time after recovery from experimental infection, the guinea pig is immune to reinfection in the previously infected site.

Of particular interest is the extraction of a polysaccharide from the mycelium of *T. mentagrophytes* (McNall et al., 1961). This material was said to be antigenic for chinchillas that produced appreciable amounts of antibody. The purified cell wall polysaccharide contained glucose and glucosamine.

The problem of immunity in the human, however, resolves itself into degrees of resistance which depend on previous experi-



officials may then plan to screen all school children by a Wood's light and determine the extent of infection in the locality. Preschool children should also be examined when an older member of the family has an infection. Then examination and treatment centers may be established by the public health authorities at the schools or other convenient places.

Effective control of large epidemics has been accomplished by intensive case finding and systematic follow up programs. Griseofulvin allows treatment on an ambulatory basis and follow up can be assured if pills for a short time only are given at each visit to the clinic (Kirk and Ajello 1959).

Tinea pedis cannot be controlled by the use of foot baths as formerly believed. Such baths (hypochlorite or hyposulfite) are not sufficiently fungistatic or fungicidal. Penetration of infected skin is not obtained and the time of immersion is too brief to be of value. Control of infection of the feet should be directed toward individual prophylaxis: adequate treatment and prevention of reinfection. Foot powders (10% boric acid in talc, undecylenic acid and zinc undecylenate in talc, etc.) tend to keep the feet dry and are of value in preventing infection. Sulzberger and Kanof (1947) have reported excellent results with such powders in extensive tests. Powders or ointments containing the undecylenic acid and zinc undecylenate were also found to be of value. When infection is caused by a fungus known to infect animals, every effort should be made to find the source and treat the animal. *Griseofulvin* has proved to be effective for animals as well as man (Kaplan and Ajello 1959).

## REFERENCES

### NOCARDIA STREPTOMYCES

- Abbott P. 1956 Mycetoma in the Sudan. Trans Roy Soc Trop Med Hyg 50: 11.
- Ajello L. 1956 Soil as a natural reservoir for human pathogenic fungi. Science 123: 876.
- Ajello L., Walker W. W., Dungworth D. L. and Brumfield G. L. 1961 Isolation of *Nocardia brasiliensis* from a cat. J Am Vet M A 138: 370.
- Bojalil L. F. and Magnusson M. 1963 Specificity of skin reactions of humans to *Nocardia sensu lato*. Am Rev Resp Dis 88: 409.
- Bojalil L. F., Trujillo A. and Cerbon J. 1959 Diferenciación bioquímica de algunas especies de actinomicetes patógenos. Mycopath Mycol Appl 11: 287.
- Bojalil L. F. and Zamora A. 1963 Precipitin and skin tests in the diagnosis of mycetoma due to *Nocardia brasiliensis*. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 113: 40.
- Brounst G., Nakib A. and Mariat F. 1962 Sur le premier cas de mycetome a *Nocardia asteroides* observe en Liban. Bull Soc path exot 55: 964.
- Destombes P., Andre M., Segretain G., Mariat F., Camain R. and Nazimoff O. 1958 Contribution a l'etude des mycetomes en Afrique française. Bull Soc path exot 51: 815.
- Destombes P., Mariat F., Nazimoff O. and Satre J. 1961 A propos des mycetomes a *Nocardia Sabouraudia*. J 161.
- Freese J. W., Young W. G. Jr., Sealy W. C. and Conant N. F. 1963 Pulmonary infection by *Nocardia asteroides*. J Thor Cardio vasc Surg 46: 537.
- Georg L. K., Ajello L., McDermont C. and Hosty T. S. 1961 The identification of *Nocardia asteroides* and *N. brasiliensis*. Am Rev Resp Dis 84: 337.
- González Ochoa A. 1962 Mycetomas caused by *Nocardia brasiliensis*. Lab Invest 11: 1118.
- Gonzalez Ochoa A. and Sandoval M. A. 1955 Características de los Actinomicetes patógenos mas comunes. Rev Inst Salubr Enferm Trop 15: 159.
- . 1960 Aislamiento de *Nocardia brasiliensis* y *asteroides* a partir de suelos. Rev Inst Salubr Enferm Trop 20: 147.
- Gordon R. and Hagan W. A. 1936 A study of some acid fast actinomycetes from soil with special reference to pathogenicity for animals. J Infect Dis 59: 200.
- Gordon R. E. and Mihm J. M. 1957 A comparative study of some strains received as *Nocardiae*. J Bact 73: 15.
- . 1959 A comparison of *N. asteroides* and *N. brasiliensis*. J Gen Microbiol 20: 129.
- . 1962a Identification of *Nocardia caviae* (Erikson) nov. comb. Ann New York Acad Sci 98: 628.
- . 1962b The type species of the genus *Nocardia*. J Gen Microbiol 27: 1.
- Gordon R. E. and Smith M. M. 1955 Proposed group of characters for the separation of *Streptomyces* and *Nocardia*. J Bact 69: 147.
- Henrici A. T. and Gardner E. L. 1921 The

- acidfast actinomycetes with a report of a case from which a new species was isolated *J Infect Dis* 28 232
- Mackinnon J E and Artagaveytia Allende R C 1956 The main species of pathogenic actinomycetes causing mycetoma *Trans Roy Soc Trop Med Hyg* 50 31
- McQuown A L 1955 Actinomycosis and nocardiosis *Am J Clin Path* 25 2
- Mariat F 1962 Critères de détermination des principales espèces d'Actinomycètes aérobies pathogènes *Ann Soc belge med trop* 4 651
- 1963 Sur la distribution géographique et la répartition des agents de mycetomes *Bull Soc path exot* 56 35
- Mariat F and Satre J 1961 Action de la sulfaméthoxyypyridazine sur quelques actinomycètes aérobies pathogènes *Bull Soc path exot* 54 63
- Mohapatra L N and Pine L 1963 Studies on the pathogenicity of aerobic actinomycetes inoculated into mice intravenously *Sabouraudia* 2 176
- Murry J F Finegold S M Froman S and Will D W 1961 The changing spectrum of nocardiosis *Am Rev Resp Dis* 83 315
- Orio J Destombes P Mariat F and Segretain G 1963 Les mycetomes en cote française des Somalis *Revue de 50 cas observés entre 1954 et 1962 Bull Soc path exot* 56 161
- Saltzman H A Chick E W and Conant N F 1962 Nocardiosis as a complication of other diseases *Lab Invest* 11 1110
- Strauss R E Kligman A M and Pillsbury D M 1951 The chemotherapy of actinomycosis and nocardiosis *Am Rev Tuberc* 63 441
- Waksman M A and Henrici A T 1943 The nomenclature and classification of the actinomycetes *J Bact* 46 337
- Zamora A Bojalil L F and Bastarrachea F 1963 Immunologically active polysaccharides from *Nocardia asteroides* and *Nocardia brasiliensis* *J Bact* 85 549
- CRYPTOCOCCUS NEOFORMANS**
- Ajello L 1958 Occurrence of *Cryptococcus neoformans* in soils *Am J Hyg* 67 72
- Baker R D 1962 Leukemia and therapy in leukemia as factors predisposing to fatal mycoses *Am J Clin Path* 37 358
- Barrash M J and Fort M 1960 Amphoterin B therapy in *Torula meningitis* *Arch Int Med* 106 271
- Benham R W 1935 *Cryptococcus*—their identification by morphology and by serology *J Infect Dis* 57 255
- 1955 The genus *Cryptococcus* The present status and criteria for the identification of species *Trans New York Acad Sci* 17 418
- Bennett J E Tynes B E and Hasenclever H F 1962 A complement fixing antigen test for cryptococcal meningitis *Clin Res* 10 213
- Bloomfield N Gordon M A and Elmen dorf D Jr 1963 Detection of *Cryptococcus neoformans* antigen in body fluids by latex particle agglutination *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 114 64
- Buschke A 1895 Über eine durch Coccidien hervorgerufene Krankheit des Menschen *Deutsche med Wschr* 21 14
- Busse O 1894 Über parasitäre Zelleinschlüsse und ihre Zuchtung *Centralbl Bakt* 16 175
- 1895 Über Saccharomycosis Hominis *Virchow's Arch path Anat* 140 23
- 1896 Experimentelle Untersuchungen über Saccharomycosis *Virchow's Arch path Anat* 144 360
- Drouhet E and Segretain G 1949 Action de l'hyaluronidase sur la capsule de *Torula histolytica* *C R Acad Sci* 228 424
- Emmons C W 1955 Saprophytic sources of *Cryptococcus neoformans* associated with the pigeon (*Columba livia*) *Am J Hyg* 62 227
- 1960 Prevalence of *Cryptococcus neoformans* in pigeon habitats *Pub Health Rep* 75 362
- Evans E E 1949 An immunologic comparison of twelve strains of *Cryptococcus neoformans* (*Torula histolytica*) *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 71 644
- 1950 The antigenic composition of *Cryptococcus neoformans* I A serologic classification by means of the capsular and agglutination reaction *J Immunol* 64 423
- 1960 Capsular reactions of *Cryptococcus neoformans* *Ann New York Acad Sci* 89 184
- 1962 Reactivity of the cryptococcal capsule in *Handbook of Fungi* (ed.) Fungi and Fungal Diseases Springfield Ill Thomas p 187
- Evans E E and Kessel J F 1951 The antigenic composition of *Cryptococcus neoformans* II Serologic studies with the capsular polysaccharides *J Immunol* 67 109
- Evans E E Seeliger H P R Kornfield L and Garcia C 1956 Failure to demonstrate capsular swelling in *Cryptococcus*

- neoformans* Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 93 257
- Evans E E Sorensen L J and Walls K W 1953 The antigenic composition of *Cryptococcus neoformans* V A survey of cross reactions among strains of *Cryptococcus* and other antigens J Bact 66 287
- Eveland W C Marshall J D Silverstein A M Johnson F H Iverson L and Winslow D J 1957 Specific immunochemical staining of *Cryptococcus neoformans* and its polysaccharide in tissue Am J Path 33 616
- Fitzpatrick M J and Poser C M 1960 The management of cryptococcal meningitis Arch Int Med 106 261
- Foley G E and Uzman L L 1952 Studies on the biology of *Cryptococcus* IV Isolation of a highly polymerized polysaccharide from encapsulated strains J Infect Dis 90 38
- Frothingham L 1902 A tumor like lesion in the lung of a horse caused by a *Blastomyces* (*Torula*) J Med Res (New Series) 8 31
- Gadebusch H H 1958 Passive immunization against *Cryptococcus neoformans* Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 98 611
- Goldstein E and Rambo O N 1962 Cryptococcal infection following steroid therapy Ann Intern Med 56 114
- von Hansemann D 1905 Ueber eine bisher nicht Beobachtete Gehirnerkrankung durch Hefen Verhandl Deutsch path Gesellsch 9 21
- Haugen R K and Baker R D 1954 The pulmonary lesions in cryptococcosis with special reference to subpleural nodules Am J Clin Path 24 1381
- Hutter V P and Collins S C 1962 The occurrence of opportunistic fungus infections in a cancer hospital Lab Invest 17 1035
- Kao C J and Schwarz J 1957 The isolation of *Cryptococcus neoformans* from pigeon nests Am J Clin Path 27 652
- Kase A and Marshall J D Jr 1960 A study of *Cryptococcus neoformans* by means of the fluorescent antibody technic Am J Clin Path 34 52
- Keye J D and Magee W E 1956 Fungal diseases in a general hospital Am J Clin Path 26 1235
- Klein E 1901 Pathogenic microbes in milk J Hyg 1 28
- Kress M B and Cantrell J R 1963 Pulmonary and meningeal cryptococcosis Successful treatment of the meningitis with lateral cerebral intraventricular injections of Amphotericin B Arch Int Med 117 386
- Littman M L and Schneiersen S E 1959 *Cryptococcus neoformans* in pigeon excreta in New York City Am J Hyg 69 49
- Littman M L and Zimmerman L E 1956 Cryptococcosis, New York Grune & Stratton
- Lodder J and Kreger Van Rij N J W 1952 The Yeasts A Taxonomic Study New York Interscience
- Louria D H 1960 Specific and non specific immunity in experimental cryptococcosis in mice, J Exp Med 111 643
- Louria D H Feder N and Emmons C W 1957 Amphotericin B in experimental histoplasmosis and cryptococcosis Antibiotics Annual 1956 57 p 870
- Louria D B Kaminski T and Finkel G 1963 Further studies on immunity in experimental cryptococcosis J Exp Med 117 509
- Mager J and Aschner M 1946 Starch reaction as an aid in identification of causative agent of European blastomycosis Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 62 71
- Neill J M Castillo C G Smith R H and Kapros E 1949 Capsular reactions and soluble antigens of *Torula histolytica* and of *Sporotrichum schenckii* J Exp Med 89 93
- Neill J M Sugg J V and McCauley D W 1951 Serologically reactive material in spinal fluid blood and urine from a human case of cryptococcosis (torulosis) Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 77 775
- Newcomer V D Sternberg T H Wright E T Reisner R M McNall E G and Sorensen L J 1960 The treatment of systemic fungus infections with Amphotericin B Ann New York Acad Sci 89 221
- Pollock A Q and Ward L M 1962 A hemagglutination test for cryptococcosis Am J Med 32 6
- Salvin S B and Smith R F 1961 An antigen for detection of hypersensitivity to *Cryptococcus neoformans* Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 108 498
- Sanfelice F 1894 Contributo alla morfologia e biologia dei blastomiceti che si sviluppano nei succhi di alcuni frutti Ann Iggiene Sperimentale 4 463
- 1895a Sull'azione patogena dei blastomiceti Ann Iggiene Sperimentale 5 239
- 1895b Sull'azione patogena dei blastomiceti come contributo alla etiologia dei tumori maligni Nota preliminare II Policlino Sez Chirurg 2 204
- 1895c Ueber einen neuen pathogenen

- Blastomyceten welcher innerhalb der Gewebe unter Bildung kalkartig aussehender Massen degeneriert *Centralbl Bakt* 18 521
- 1898 Ein weiterer Beitrag zur Aetiologie der bosartigen Geschwulste *Centralbl Bakt* I 24 155
- Seabury J H and Dascomb H E 1958 Experience with Amphotericin B for the treatment of systemic mycoses *Arch Int Med* 102 960
- Seeliger H P R 1956 Use of a urease test for the screening and identification of *Cryptococci* *J Bact* 72 127
- Smith G W Kemp J A Farrar W E Kemble J W and Philpot D F 1960 Cryptococcosis of the central nervous system. Four cases treated with Amphotericin B *Southern M J* 53 305
- Stoddard J L and Cutler E C 1916 *Torula Infection in Man* Monographs of the Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research No 6 January 31 pp 198
- Tsuchiya T Kawakita S and Udaawa M 1963 Rapid identification of *Cryptococcus neoformans* by serology *Sabouraudia* 2 209
- Utz J P Treger A McCullough N B and Emmons C W 1959 Amphotericin B Intravenous use in 21 patients with systemic fungal diseases *Antibiotic Ann* p 628
- Verse M 1914 Über einen Fall von generalisierter Blastomykose beim Menschen *Verhandl Deutsch path Gesellsch* 17 275
- Vogel R A Sellers T F and Woodward P 1961 Fluorescent antibody techniques applied to the study of human cryptococcosis *JAMA* 178 921
- Weis J H 1902 Four pathogenic torulae (blastomycetes) *J Med Res (New Series)* 2 280
- Yamamoto S Ishida K and Sato A 1957 Isolation of *Cryptococcus neoformans* from pulmonary granuloma of a cat and from pigeon droppings *Jap J Vet Sci* 19 179
- Zimmerman L E 1955 Fatal fungus infections complicating other diseases *Am J Clin Path* 25 46
- Zimmerman L E and Rappaport H 1954 Occurrence of cryptococcosis in patients with malignant disease of the reticuloendothelial system *Am J Clin Path* 24 1050
- CANDIDA ALBICANS
- Ajello L 1956 Soil as a natural reservoir for human pathogenic fungi *Science* 123 876
- Andriole V T and Hasenclever H F 1962 Factors influencing experimental candidiasis in mice I Allaxon diabetes *Yale J Biol Med* 35 96
- Benham R W 1957 Species of *Candida* most frequently isolated from man Methods and criteria for their identification *J Chron Dis* 5 460
- Berkhout C M 1923 *De Schimmelgeslachten Monilia Oidium Oospora en Torula* Dissertation Utrecht
- Boggs D R Anderson F W and Howell A 1961 Thrush in malignant neoplastic disease *Arch Int Med* 107 354
- Drake C H 1945 Natural antibodies against yeastlike fungi as measured by slide agglutination *J Immunol* 50 185
- Goldman L and Schwarz J 1962 Chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis of children *Acta Dermat Venereol* 42 314
- Gordon M A 1962 Differentiation and classification of yeasts by the Coons fluorescent antibody technique in *Dalldorf Gilbert (ed) Fungi and Fungous Diseases* Springfield Ill Thomas pp 207 219
- Gordon M A and Little G N 1963 Effected dehydrated media with surfactants for identification of *Candida albicans* *Sabouraudia* 2 171
- Gresham G A and Whittle C H 1961 Studies of the invasive mycelial form of *Candida albicans* *Sabouraudia* 1 30
- Hasenclever H F 1959 Comparative pathogenicity of *Candida albicans* for mice and rabbits *J Bact* 78 105
- Hasenclever H F and Mitchell W O 1961 Antigenic studies of *Candida* I Observation of two antigenic groups in *Candida albicans* *J Bact* 82 570
- 1961 Antigenic studies of *Candida* III Comparative pathogenicity of *Candida albicans* Group A Group II and *Candida stellatoidea* *J Bact* 82 578
- Hill D W and Gebhardt L P 1956 Morphological transformation of *Candida albicans* in tissues of mice *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 92 640
- Kemp G and Solotorovsky M 1962 Fluorescent antibody studies of pathogenesis in experimental *Candida albicans* infection in mice *J Immunol* 86 777
- Kozinn P J Taschdjian C L Burchall J J and Weiner H 1960 Transmission of P<sub>3</sub> labeled *Candida albicans* to newborn mice at birth *Am J Dis Child* 99 31
- Kroetz F W Leonard J J and Everett C R 1962 *Candida albicans* endocarditis successfully treated with Amphotericin B *New Engl J Med* 266 592
- Jones C P Carter H Thomas W L Ross



- R A and Creadick R N 1947 Mycotic vulvovaginitis and the vaginal fungi *Am J Obst Gynec* 54 738
- Langenbeck B 1839 Auffindung von Pilze auf der Schleimhaut der Speiseröhre einer Typhus Leiche Neue Notizen aus dem Gebiete der Natur und Heilkunde 12 145
- Lewis G M Hopper M E Wilson J W and Plunkett O A 1958 An Introduction to Medical Mycology ed 4 Chicago Year Book Pub
- Littman M L Pisano M A and Lancaster R M 1958 Induced resistance of *Candida* species to nystatin and amphotericin B *Antibiotics Annual* 1957 1958 p 981
- Lodder J and Krieger Van Rijn N J W 1952 The Yeasts A Taxonomic Study New York Interscience
- Lones G W and Peacock C L 1959 Alterations in *Candida albicans* during growth in the presence of Amphotericin B *Antibiot Chemother (NY)* 9 535
- Louria D B 1958 Some aspects of the absorption distribution and excretion of Amphotericin B in man *Antibiotic Med Clin Therapy* 5 295
- Louria D B and Dineen P 1960 Amphotericin B in treatment of disseminated moniliasis *JAMA* 174 273
- Louria D B and Brayton R G 1964 Behavior of *Candida* cells within leukocytes *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 115 93
- Louria D B and Browne H G 1960 The effects of cortisone on experimental fungus infections *Ann New York Acad Sci* 89 39
- Louria D B Stiff D P and Bennett B B 1962 Disseminated moniliasis in the adult *Medicine* 41 307
- Mackenzie D W R 1961 Yeasts from human sources *Sabouraudia* 1 8
- MacLaren J A and Armen D 1958 Pigmentation of *Candida albicans* by molybdenum *Am J Clin Path* 30 411
- Manchester P T and Georg L K 1959 Corneal ulcer due to *Candida parapsilosis* (*C parakrusei*) *JAMA* 171 1339
- Martin D S Jones C P Yao K F and Lee L E 1937 A practical classification of the monilias *J Bact* 34 99
- Mourad S and Friedman L 1961 Pathogenicity of *Candida* *J Bact* 81 550
- Newcomer V D Sternberg T H Wright E T and Reisner R M 1959 Current status of Amphotericin B in the treatment of the systemic fungus infections *J Chron Dis* 9 353
- Nickerson W J and Mankowski Z 1953 A polysaccharide medium of known composition favoring chlamydospore formation in *Candida albicans* *J Infect Dis* 92 20
- Robin C 1853 Histoire naturelle de végétaux parasites qui croissent sur l'homme et sur les animaux vivants Paris Bailliere p 488
- Salvin E B 1952 Endotoxin in pathogenic fungi *J Immunol* 69 89
- Salvin E B Cory J C and Berg M K 1952 The enhancement of the virulence of *Candida albicans* in mice *J Infect Dis* 90 177
- Taschdjian C L 1957 Routine identification of *Candida albicans* Current methods and a new medium *Mycologia* 49 332
- Taschdjian C L and Kozinn P J 1957 Laboratory and clinical studies on candidiasis in the newborn infant *J Pediatr* 50 426
- Taschdjian C L Kozinn P J and Burchall J J 1960 Rapid identification of *Candida albicans* by filamentation of serum and serum substitutes *J Dis Child* 99 212
- Taubert H D and Smith A G 1960 The clinical use of Taschdjian's medium in the diagnosis of vulvovaginal candidiasis *J Lab Clin Med* 55 820
- Tsuchiya T Fukazawa Y and Kawakita S 1961 Serological classification of the genus *Candida* Studies on candidiasis in Japan Research Committee of Candidiasis Publication Feb pp 34 36
- van Uden N and Carmo Sousa L D 1957 Yeasts from bovine cecum *J Gen Microbiol* 16 385
- Weld J T 1953 *Candida albicans* Rapid identification in cultures made directly from human materials *Arch Dermat Syph* 67 473
- Young G 1958 The process of invasion and the persistence of *Candida albicans* injected intraperitoneally into mice *J Infect Dis* 102 114

#### NORTH AMERICAN BLASTOMYCOSIS

- Abernathy R S 1959 Clinical manifestations of pulmonary blastomycosis *Ann Int Med* 51 707
- Ball O G Lummus F L Siegrist M L Busey J F and Allison F Jr 1960 An immunologic survey for systemic fungus infections in general hospital patients of central Mississippi *Am J Hyg* 72 231
- Beard H W Richert J H and Taylor H R 1960 The treatment of deep mycotic infections with Amphotericin B with particular emphasis on drug toxicity *Am Rev Resp Dis* 81 43
- Benbrook E A Bryant J B and Saunders

- L Z 1948 A case of blastomycosis in the horse J Am Vet M A 112 475
- Brody M 1947 Blastomycosis North American type A proved case from the European continent Arch Dermat Syph 56 529
- Buechner H A Anderson A E Strug L H Seabury J H and Peabody J W Jr 1953 Pulmonary resection in the treatment of blastomycosis J Thoracic Surg 25 468
- Campbell C C 1960 The accuracy of serologic methods in diagnosis Ann N Y Acad Sci 89 163
- Campbell C C and Brinkley G E 1953 Serologic diagnosis with respect to histoplasmosis coccidioidomycosis and blastomycosis and the problem of cross reactions J Lab Clin Med 42 896
- Cherniss E I and Waisbren H A 1956 North American blastomycosis. A clinical study of 40 cases Ann Int Med 44 105
- Chick E W Peters H J Denton J F and Boring W D 1960 Die Nordamerikanische Blastomykose Ergeb allgem Path Anat 40 34
- Conant N F 1939 Laboratory study of *Blastomyces dermatitidis* Gilchrist and Stokes 1898 Proc Sixth Pacific Sci Congr 5 853
- Curtis A C and Harrell E R 1952 Use of two stilbene derivatives (diethylstilbestrol and stilbamidine) in the treatment of blastomycosis Arch Dermat Syph 66 676
- Denton J F McDonough E ■ Ajello L and Ausherman R J 1961 Isolation of *Blastomyces dermatitidis* from soil Science 133 1126
- Dyson J E Jr and Evans E E 1954 Skin test antigens from yeast phase cultures of *Blastomyces dermatitidis* and *Histoplasma capsulatum* Univ Michigan M Bull 20 53
- 1955 Delayed hypersensitivity in experimental fungus infections the skin reactivity of antigens from the yeast phase of *Blastomyces dermatitidis* J Invest Derm 24 447
- Friedman L and Conant N F 1953 Immunologic studies on the etiologic agents of North and South American blastomycosis Mycopath Mycol Appl 6 310
- Gilchrist T C 1896 A case of blastomycotic dermatitis in man Johns Hopkins Hosp Rep 1 269
- Gilchrist T C and Stokes W R 1896 The presence of an *Odium* in the tissues of a case of pseudo lupus vulgaris Preliminary report Johns Hopkins Hosp Bull 7 129
- 1898 A case of pseudo-lupus vulgaris caused by a blastomyces J Exp Med 3 53
- Gordon M A 1958 Differentiation of yeasts by means of fluorescent antibody Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 97 694
- Harrell E R Bocobo F C and Curtis A C 1955 A study of North American blastomycosis and its treatment with stilbamidine and 2 hydroxystilbamidine Ann Int Med 43 1076
- Harrell E R and Curtis A C 1957 The treatment of North American blastomycosis with Amphotericin B Arch Dermat 76 561
- Harris J S Smith J G Humbert W C Conant N F and Smith D T 1957 North American blastomycosis in an endemic area Public Health Rep 72 95
- Kaplan W and Kaufman L 1961 The application of fluorescent antibody techniques to medical mycology (a review) Sabouraudia 1 137
- 1963 Specific fluorescent antiglobulins for the detection and identification of *Blastomyces dermatitidis* yeast cells Mycopathol Mycol Appl 19 173
- Kaufman L and Kaplan W 1963 Serological characterization of pathogenic fungi by means of fluorescent antibodies J Bact 85 986
- Knight R A Coray ■ and Marcus S 1959 *Histoplasma capsulatum* and *Blastomyces dermatitidis* polysaccharide skin tests Am Rev Resp Dis 80 264
- Knight H A and Marcus ■ 1958 Polysaccharide skin test antigens derived from *Histoplasma capsulatum* and *Blastomyces dermatitidis* Am Rev Tuberc 77 983
- Kunkel W M Jr Weed L A McDonald J R and Clagett O T 1954 North American blastomycosis—Gilchrist's disease A clinico-pathologic study of ninety cases Internat Abstr Surg 99 1
- McDonough E S Ajello L Georg L K and Brinkman S 1960 In vitro effects of antibiotics on yeast phase of *Blastomyces dermatitidis* and other fungi J Lab Clin Med 55 116
- Marcus S Hill G A and Knight R A 1960 Antigens of *Blastomyces* Ann New York Acad Sci 89 193
- Martin D S 1935 Complement fixation in blastomycosis J Infect Dis 57 291
- 1953 Serologic studies on North American blastomycosis J Immunol 71 192
- Menges R W 1960 Blastomycosis in an

- R A and Creadick R N 1947 Mycotic vulvovaginitis and the vaginal fungi *Am J Obst Gynec* 54 738
- Langenbeck B 1839 Auffindung von Pilze auf der Schleimhaut der Speiseröhre einer Typhus Leiche Neue Notizen aus dem Gebiete der Natur und Heilkunde 12 145
- Lewis G M Hopper M E Wilson J W and Plunkett O A 1958 An Introduction to Medical Mycology ed 4 Chicago Year Book Pub
- Littman M L Pisano M A and Lancaster R M 1958 Induced resistance of *Candida* species to nystatin and amphotericin B *Antibiotics Annual* 1957 1958 p 981
- Lodder J and Kreger Van Rij N J W 1952 The Yeasts A Taxonomic Study New York Interscience
- Lones G W and Peacock C L 1959 Alterations in *Candida albicans* during growth in the presence of Amphotericin B *Antibiot Chemother (NY)* 9 535
- Louria D H 1958 Some aspects of the absorption, distribution and excretion of Amphotericin B in man *Antibiotic Med Clin Therapy* 5 295
- Louria D B and Dineen P 1960 Amphotericin B in treatment of disseminated moniliasis *JAMA* 174 273
- Louria D B and Brayton R G 1964 Behavior of *Candida* cells within leukocytes *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 115 93
- Louria D B and Browne H G 1960 The effects of cortisone on experimental fungus infections *Ann New York Acad Sci* 89 39
- Louria D H Stiff D P and Bennett B H 1962 Disseminated moniliasis in the adult *Medicine* 41 307
- Mackenzie D W R 1961 Yeasts from human sources *Sabouraudia* 1 8
- MacLaren J A and Armen D 1958 Pigmentation of *Candida albicans* by molybdenum *Am J Clin Path* 30 411
- Manchester P T and Georg L K 1959 Corneal ulcer due to *Candida parapsilosis* (C parakrusel) *JAMA* 171 1339
- Martin D S Jones C P Yao K F and Lee L E 1937 A practical classification of the monilias *J Bact* 34 99
- Mourad M and Friedman L 1961 Pathogenicity of *Candida* *J Bact* 81 550
- Newcomer V D Sternberg T H Wright E T and Reisner R M 1959 Current status of Amphotericin B in the treatment of the systemic fungus infections *J Chron Dis* 9 353
- Nickerson W J and Mankowski Z 1953 A polysaccharide medium of known composition favoring chlamydsore formation in *Candida albicans* *J Infect Dis* 92 20
- Robin C 1853 Historie naturelle de vegetaux parasites qui croissent sur l'homme et sur les animaux vivants Paris Bailliere p 488
- Salvin S B 1952 Endotoxin in pathogenic fungi *J Immunol* 69 89
- Salvin S B Cory J C and Berg M K 1952 The enhancement of the virulence of *Candida albicans* in mice *J Infect Dis* 90 177
- Taschdjian C L 1957 Routine identification of *Candida albicans* Current methods and a new medium *Mycologia* 49 332
- Taschdjian C L and Kozinn P J 1957 Laboratory and clinical studies on candidiasis in the newborn infant *J Pediatr* 50 426
- Taschdjian C L Kozinn P J and Burchall J J 1960 Rapid identification of *Candida albicans* by filamentation of serum and serum substitutes *J Dis Child* 99 212
- Taubert H D and Smith A G 1960 The clinical use of Taschdjian's medium in the diagnosis of vulvovaginal candidiasis *J Lab Clin Med* 55 820
- Tsuchiya T Fukazawa Y and Kawakita S 1961 Serological classification of the genus *Candida* Studies on candidiasis in Japan Research Committee of Candidiasis Publication Feb pp 34 36
- van Uden N and Carmo Sousa L D 1957 Yeasts from bovine cecum *J Gen Microbiol* 16 385
- Weld J T 1953 *Candida albicans* Rapid identification in cultures made directly from human materials *Arch Dermat Syph* 67 473
- Young G 1958 The process of invasion and the persistence of *Candida albicans* injected intraperitoneally into mice *J Infect Dis* 102 114

#### NORTH AMERICAN BLASTOMYCOSIS

- Abernathy R E 1959 Clinical manifestations of pulmonary blastomycosis *Ann Int Med* 51 707
- Ball O G Lummus F L Siegrist M L Bussey J F and Allison F Jr 1960 An immunologic survey for systemic fungus infections in general hospital patients of central Mississippi *Am J Hyg* 72 231
- Beard H W Richert J H and Taylor R R 1960 The treatment of deep mycotic infections with Amphotericin B with particular emphasis on drug toxicity *Am Rev Resp Dis* 81 43
- Benbrook E A Bryant J H and Saunders

- americana da localização pulmonar pela 6-sulfanilamido-2,4-dimetil pirimidina. *Hospital* 55 237
- Paula A de 1962 O pulmão na blastomicose brasileira, *Bol Acad Nac Med* 134 40
- Perry II O Weed L A and Kierland II R 1954 South American blastomycosis *Arch Dermat Syph* 70 477
- Splendore A 1909 Sobre um novo caso de blastomicose generalizada *Rev Soc Sci Sao Paulo* 4 52
- Trejos A and Romero A 1953 Contribucion al estudio de la blastomycosis en Costa Rica *Rev Biol Trop* 1 63
- ### HISTOPLASMA CAPSULATUM
- Baum G L, Schwarz J, Bruins W J and Straub M 1957 Mucocutaneous histoplasmosis *Arch Dermat Syph* 76 4
- Bronson M and Schwarz J 1957 Roentgenographic patterns in histoplasmosis *Am Rev Tuberc* 76 173
- Christie A and Peterson J C 1945 Pulmonary calcifications in negative reactors to tuberculin *Am J Pub Health* 35 1131
- Cozad G C 1958 A study of the whole yeast cell agglutination test in rabbits experimentally infected with *Histoplasma capsulatum* *J Immunol* 81 368
- Cozad G C and Larsh H W 1960 A capillary tube agglutination test for histoplasmosis *J Immunol* 85 387
- Darling S T 1906 A protozoan general infection producing pseudotubercles in lungs and focal necrosis in the liver spleen and lymph nodes *JAMA* 46 1283
- Da Rocha Lima H 1913 Histoplasmosis and epizootic lymphangitis *Arch Schiffs Tropenhyg* 16 79
- De Monbreun W A 1934 The cultivation and cultural characteristics of Darling's *Histoplasma capsulatum* *Am J Trop Med* 14 93
- Editorial 1960 Histoplasmosis *JAMA* 173 134
- Edwards P Q and Kjaer J H 1956 World wide geographic distribution of blastomycosis and histoplasmosis sensitivity *Am J Trop Med* 5 235
- Edwards P Q, Knight R A and Marcus S 1961 Skin sensitivity of human beings to *Histoplasma capsulatum* and *Blastomyces dermatitidis* polysaccharide antigens *Am Rev Resp Dis* 83 528
- Edwards P Q and Palmer C E 1963 Nationwide histoplasmin sensitivity and histoplasma infection *Pub Health Rep* 78 241
- Emmons C W 1949 Isolation of *Histoplasma capsulatum* from soil *Pub Health Rep* 64 892
- Emmons C W, Rowley D A, Olson B J, Mattern C F T, Bell J A, Powell E and Marcey E A 1955 Histoplasmosis. Proved occurrence of inapparent infection in dogs, cats and other animals *Am J Hyg* 61 40
- Furcolow M L and Brasher C A 1956 Chronic progressive (cavitary) histoplasmosis as a problem in tuberculous sanatoriums *Am Rev Tuberc* 73 609
- Gordon M A 1959 Fluorescent staining of *Histoplasma capsulatum* *J Bact* 77 678
- Grayston J T and Salvin S M 1956 Experimental histoplasmosis in immunized and non immunized mice *Arch Path* 61 422
- Greene C H, DeLalla L S and Tompkins V N 1960 Separation of specific antigens of *Histoplasma capsulatum* by ion-exchange chromatography *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 105 140
- Hansmann G H and Schenken J R 1934 A unique infection in man caused by a new yeast like organism a pathogenic member of the genus *Sepedonium* *Am J Path* 10 731
- Heimer D C 1958 Diagnosis of histoplasmosis using precipitation reactions in agar gel *Pediatrics* 72 616
- Kaufman L and Brandt M 1964 Fluorescent antibody studies of the mycelium form of *Histoplasma capsulatum* and morphologically similar fungi 87 120
- Kaufman L and Kaplan W 1961 Preparation of a fluorescent antibody specific for the yeast phase of *Histoplasma capsulatum* *J Bact* 82 729
- Knight R A, Coray S and Marcus S 1959 *Histoplasma capsulatum* and *Blastomyces dermatitidis* polysaccharide skin tests on humans *Am Rev Resp Dis* 80 264
- Knight R A, Hill G and Marcus S 1959 Immunization of mice with polysaccharides of *Histoplasma capsulatum* *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 100 356
- Knight R A and Marcus S 1958 Polysaccharide skin test antigens derived from *Histoplasma capsulatum* and *Blastomyces dermatitidis* *Am Rev Tuberc* 77 983
- Lehan P H and Furcolow M L 1957 Epidemic histoplasmosis *J Chron Dis* 5 489
- Loewen P F, Procknow J J and Loosli C G 1960 Chronic active pulmonary histoplasmosis with cavitation. A clinical and

- mals A review of an analysis of 116 canine cases *Vet Med* 55 45
- Newcomer V D Sternberg T H Wright F T and Reisner R M 1959 Current status of Amphotericin B in the treatment of systemic fungus infections *J Chron Dis* 9 353
- Schwarz J and Baum G L 1951 Blastomycosis *Am J Clin Path* 21 999
- Smith D T 1949 Immunologic types of blastomycosis A report on 40 cases *Ann Int Med* 31 463
- Smith J G Harris J S Conant N F and Smith D T 1955 An epidemic of North American blastomycosis *JAMA* 158 641
- Weaver M Lombard L S and Getty R F 1959 North American blastomycosis in a Northern Sea Lion *J Am Vet M A* 135 513
- Weed L A 1955 North American blastomycosis *Am J Path* 25 37
- White M L Jr and Owen E T 1954 The surgical treatment of pulmonary blastomycosis *Am Surg* 20 981
- Wilson J W Cawley E P Weidman F D and Gilmer W S 1955 Primary cutaneous North American blastomycosis *Arch Derm Syph* 71 37
- ### SOUTH AMERICAN BLASTOMYCOSIS
- Almeida F de 1930 Estudos comparativos do granuloma coccidioidico nos Estados Unidos e no Brasil Novo genero para o parasito brasileiro *Ann Fac Med Sao Paulo* 5 125
- Arantes A 1922 Lymphogranuloma maligno de origem Coccidioides Thesis Sao Paulo
- Carini A 1908 Um caso de blastomycose com localizacao primitiva na mucosa da boca *Rev Soc Sci Sao Paulo* 3 120
- Conant N F and Howell A Jr 1942 The similarity of the fungi causing South American blastomycosis (Paracoccidioidal granuloma) and North American blastomycosis (Gilchrist's disease) *J Invest Dermat* 5 353
- Fava Netto C 1955 Estudos quantitativos sobre a fixacao do complemento na Blastomycose Sul Americana com antígeno poli-sacaridico *Arg cir clin exp* 18 197
- 1961 Contribuicao para o estudo imunológico da blastomycose de Lutz (Blastomycose sul americano) *Rev Inst Adolfo Lutz* 27 99
- Fava Netto C Brito T de and Lacaz C da S 1961 Experimental South American blastomycosis of the guinea pig An immunologic and pathologic study *Path Microbiol* 24 192
- Fonseca Filho O 1928 Ensayo de revision de las blastomycosis sudamericanas *Bol Inst clin quir* 4 469
- 1929 Estudo clinico e pathologico do granuloma coccidioidico *Rev Med cir Brasil* 37 121
- Fonseca Filho O and Area Leão A E 1940 Contribuicao para o conhecimento das granulomatose blastomicoides O agente etiologico da doenca de Jorge Lobo *Rev Med cir Brasil* 48 147
- Gonçalves A M 1962 Tratamento da micose de Lutz (Blastomycose sul americana) *Bol Acad Nac Med* 134 81
- Gonzalez Ochoa A and Esquivel E 1950 Primer caso de granuloma paracoccidioides (Blastomycosis sudamericana) en Mexico *Rev med Hosp gen* 13 159
- Haberfeld W 1919 Granuloma ganglionar maligno de origem Blastomycetica (*Zy monema histosporocellularis*) Thesis Sao Paulo
- Lacaz C da S 1956 South American blastomycosis *An Fac med Univ Sao Paulo* 29 1
- Lacaz C da S and Sampaio S A M 1958 Tratamento da blastomycose sul americana com anfotericina B Resultados preliminares *Rev Paulista Med* 52 443
- Lobo J 1931 Um caso de blastomycose produzido por una especie nova en contrada em Recife *Rev Med Pernambuco* 1 763
- Lutz A 1908 Uma mycose pseudococcidioid localisada na bocca e observada no Brasil Contribuicao ao conhecimento das hypho blastomycoses americanas Brasil Medico 22 121
- Machado Filho J and Miranda J L 1960 Considerações relativas a blastomycose sul americana Localizações sintomas iniciais vias de penetracao e disseminacao em 314 casos consecutivos *Hospital* 58 99
- Miranda J L and Machado Filho J 1959 Considerações em torno da blastomycose sul americana Sobre a ação do Amphotericin B *Hospital* 56 93
- Moore M 1935 A new species of *Paracoccidioides* Almeida (1930) *P cerebrifor mis* Moore (1935) *Rivista Biol Hig* 6 148
- 1938 Blastomycosis coccidioidal granuloma and paracoccidioidal granuloma *Arch Derm Syph* 38 163
- Passos Filho M C da R and Nahas L 1959 Tratamento da blastomycose sul

- spore and mycelial vaccines Trans N Y Acad Sci 22 436
- 1961 Immunogenicity of spherule endospore vaccines of *Coccidioides immitis* for mice J Immunol 87 218
- Levine H H Miller R L and Smith C H 1962 Influence of vaccination on respiratory coccidioid disease in Cynomolgous monkeys J Immunol 89 242
- Littman M L Horowitz P L and Swadey J G 1958 Coccidioidomycosis and its treatment with Amphotericin B Am J Med 24 568
- Marshall J F Chen S and Sorensen H H 1955 Mycelial forms of *Coccidioides immitis* in sputum and tissues of the human host Ann Int Med 43 255
- Newcomer V D Sternberg T H Wright E T and Reisner R M 1959 Current status of Amphotericin B in the treatment of the systemic fungus infections J Chron Dis 8 353
- Ophuls W and Moffitt H C 1900 A new pathogenic mold (formerly described as a protozoan *Coccidioides immitis pyogenes*) Phil M J 5 1471
- Pappagianis D Putnam H W and Kobayoshi G S 1961 Polysaccharide of *Coccidioides immitis* J Bact 82 714
- Perry D M and Kirby W M M 1960 Acute disseminated coccidioidomycosis. Two cases treated with Amphotericin B Arch Int Med 110 929
- Posadas A 1892 Un nuevo caso de micosis fungoidea con Psorospermias Ann Circ Med Argentina 15 585
- Puckett T F 1954 Hyphae of *Coccidioides immitis* in tissues of the human host Am Rev Tuberc 70 320
- Rappaport F T Laurence H B Millar J W Pappagianis D and Smith C E 1960 Transfer of delayed hypersensitivity to coccidioidin in man J Immunol 84 358
- Rixford H 1894 Case for diagnosis presented before the San Francisco Medico Chirurgical Society Occidental Med Times 8 326
- Rixford E and Gilchrist T C 1896 Two cases of protozoan (coccidioid) infection of the skin and other organs Johns Hopkins Hosp Rep 1 209
- Rowe J R Newcomer V D and Landau J W 1963 Effects of cultural conditions on the development of antigens by *Coccidioides immitis* I Immunodiffusion studies J Invest Dermat 41 343
- Rowe J R Newcomer V D and Wright E D 1963 Studies of the soluble antigens of *Coccidioides immitis* by immunodiffusion J Invest Dermat 41 225
- San Joaquin Fever Kern County Health Dept Ann Rept 1935 36 pp 22 23
- Smith C E 1942 Parallelism of coccidioid and tuberculous infections Radiology 38 643
- Smith C E Beard H R Rosenberger H G and Whiting E G 1946 Effect of season and dust control on coccidioidomycosis JAMA 137 833
- Smith C E Saito M T and Simons S A 1956 Pattern of 39 500 serologic tests in coccidioidomycosis JAMA 160 546
- Smith C E Whiting E G Baker E E Rosenberger H G Beard R R and Saito M T 1948 The use of coccidioidin Am Rev Tuberc 57 330
- Trimble J R and Doucette J 1956 Primary cutaneous coccidioidomycosis Arch Dermat Syph 74 405
- Vogel R A Fetter B F Conant N F and Lowe E P 1954 Preliminary studies on artificial active immunization of guinea pigs against respiratory challenge with *Coccidioides immitis* Am Rev Tuberc 70 498
- Wernicke H 1892 Ueber einen Protozoen befund bei Mycosis Fungoides Centralbl Bakt 12 859
- Wilson J W 1961 Therapy of systemic fungus infections in 1961 Arch Int Med 110 292
- Wilson J W Smith C E and Plunkett O A 1953 Primary cutaneous coccidioidomycosis Calif Med 79 233
- Winn W A 1957 Coccidioidomycosis J Chron Dis 5 430

## SPOROTRICHOSIS

- Campbell C C 1947 Use of Francis glucose cystine blood agar in the isolation and cultivation of *Sporotrichum schenckii* J Bact 50 233
- Cipollaro A C and Singer J I 1952 Sporotrichosis involving the face Arch Dermat Syph 65 506
- Collins W T 1947 Disseminated ulcerating sporotrichosis with widespread visceral involvement Arch Dermat Syph 56 523
- Crevasse L and Ellner P D 1960 An outbreak of sporotrichosis in Florida JAMA 173 29
- de Beurmann L and Gougerot E 1912 Les sporotrichoses Felix Alcan Paris
- de Beurmann L and Ramond L 1903 Abces sous-cutanes multiples d'origine mycosique Ann Derm Syph 4 678

- laboratory study of thirteen cases *Am J Med* 28 252
- Loosli C G 1957 *Histoplasmosis J Chronic Dis* 5 473
- Lynch H J and Plexico K L 1962 A rapid method for screening sputums for *H capsulatum* employing the fluorescent antibody technique *N Engl J Med* 266 811
- Manos N E Ferebee S H and Kerschbaum W F 1956 Geographic variation in the prevalence of histoplasmin sensitivity *Dis Chest* 29 1
- Nelson J D Bates R and Pitchford A 1961 *Histoplasma meningitis* Recovery following Amphotericin B therapy *Am J Dis Child* 102 218
- Newcomer V D Sternberg T H Wright E T and Reisner R M 1959 Current status of Amphotericin B in the treatment of systemic fungus infections *J Chron Dis* 9 353
- Palmer C E 1945 Nontuberculous pulmonary calcification and sensitivity to histoplasmin *Pub Health Rep* 60 513
- Salvin S II 1953 Immunization of mice against *Histoplasma capsulatum* *J Immunol* 70 267
- Salvin S B and Furcolow M L 1954 Precipitins in human histoplasmosis *J Lab Clin Med* 43 259
- Salvin S II and Ribi E 1955 Antigens from yeast phase of *Histoplasma capsulatum* II Immunologic properties of protoplasm vs cell walls *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 90 287
- Saslaw S and Campbell C C 1949 A colloidal agglutination test for histoplasmosis *Pub Health Rep* 64 424
- Saslaw S and Carlisle H N 1958 Histoplasmin latex agglutination test II Results with human sera *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 97 700
- Schubert J H Lynch H J Jr and Ajello L 1961 Evaluation of the agar plate precipitin test for histoplasmosis *Am Rev Resp Dis* 84 845
- Schwarz J and Baum G L 1963 Reinfection histoplasmosis *Arch Path* 75 475
- Schwarz J Silverman F N Adriano S M Straub M and Levine S 1955 The relation of splenic calcification to histoplasmosis *N Engl J Med* 252 887
- Serviansky II and Schwarz J 1956 The incidence of splenic calcification in positive reactors to histoplasmin and tuberculin *Am J Roentgenol* 76 53
- Van Pernis P A Benson M E and Holinger P H 1941 Specific cutaneous reactions with histoplasmosis Preliminary report of another case *JAMA* 117 436
- Wilson J W 1961 Therapy of systemic fungous infections in 1961 *Arch Int Med* 108 292
- Wolpowitz A and van Eeden J 1963 Histoplasmosis Cave disease *S African M J* 37 1002

### COCCIDIOIDOMYCOSIS

- Ajello L Walls K Moore J C and Falcone R 1959 Rapid production of complement fixation antigens for systemic mycotic diseases *J Bact* 77 753
- Albert II L and Sellers T F 1963 Coccidioidomycosis from fomites *Arch Int Med* 112 253
- Breslau A M and Kubota M Y 1964 Continuous in vitro cultivation of spherules of *Coccidioides immitis* *J Bact* 87 468
- Brooks L D and Northey W T 1963 Studies on *Coccidioides immitis* II Physiological studies on in vitro spherulation *J Bact* 85 12
- Converse J L and Besemer A II 1959 Nutrition of the parasitic phase of *Coccidioides immitis* in a chemically defined liquid medium *J Bact* 78 231
- Converse J L Castleberry M W Besemer A R and Snyder E M 1962 Immunization of mice against coccidioidomycosis *J Bact* 84 46
- Friedman L and Smith C E 1956 Vaccination of mice against *Coccidioides immitis* *Am Rev Tuberc* 74 245
- Huppert M and Bailey J W 1963 Immunodiffusion as a screening test for coccidioidomycosis serology *Sabouraudia* 2 284
- Huppert M Walker L J and Bailey J W 1962 Complement fixation for coccidioidomycosis on spinal fluids filtered through molecular membranes *J Bact* 83 692
- Izenstark J L 1963 Modern travel and coccidioidomycosis *Southern M J* 56 745
- Klauper M S Smith D T and Conant N F 1958 Disseminated coccidioidomycosis apparently cured with Amphotericin B *JAMA* 167 463
- Kong Y M Levine H B and Smith C E 1963 Immunogenic properties of nondisrupted and disrupted spherules of *Coccidioides immitis* in mice *Sabouraudia* 2 131
- Levine H B Cobb J M and Smith C E 1960 Immunity to coccidioidomycosis induced in mice by purified spherule arthro

- spore and mycelial vaccines Trans N Y Acad Sci 22 436
- 1961 Immunogenicity of spherule endospore vaccines of *Coccidioides immitis* for mice J Immunol 87 218
- Levine H H, Miller R L and Smith C E 1962 Influence of vaccination on respiratory coccidioid disease in Cynomolgous monkeys J Immunol 89 242
- Littman M L, Horowitz P L and Swadey J G 1958 Coccidioidomycosis and its treatment with Amphotericin B Am J Med 24 568
- Marshall J F, Chen H and Sorensen R H 1955 Mycelial forms of *Coccidioides immitis* in sputum and tissues of the human host Ann Int Med 43 255
- Newcomer V D, Sternberg T H, Wright E T and Reisner R M 1959 Current status of Amphotericin B in the treatment of the systemic fungus infections J Chron Dis 8 353
- Ophuls W and Moffitt H C 1900 A new pathogenic mold (formerly described as a protozoan *Coccidioides immitis pyogenes*) Phil M J 5 1471
- Pappagianis D, Putnam H W and Kobayoshi G S 1961 Polysaccharide of *Coccidioides immitis* J Bact 82 714
- Perry D M and Kirby W M M 1960 Acute disseminated coccidioidomycosis. Two cases treated with Amphotericin B Arch Int Med 105 929
- Posadas A 1892 Un nuevo caso de micosis fungoidea con Porospermias Ann Circ Med Argentina 15 585
- Puckett T F 1954 Hyphae of *Coccidioides immitis* in tissues of the human host Am Rev Tuberc 70 320
- Rappaport F T, Laurence H H, Millar J W, Pappagianis D and Smith C E 1960 Transfer of delayed hypersensitivity to coccidioidin in man J Immunol 84 358
- Rixford E 1894 Case for diagnosis presented before the San Francisco Medico Chirurgical Society Occidental Med Times 8 326
- Rixford E and Gilchrist T C 1896 Two cases of protozoan (coccidioid) infection of the skin and other organs Johns Hopkins Hosp Rep 1 209
- Rowe J R, Newcomer V D and Landau J W 1963 Effects of cultural conditions on the development of antigens by *Coccidioides immitis* I. Immunodiffusion studies J Invest Dermat 41 343
- Rowe J R, Newcomer V D and Wright E D 1963 Studies of the soluble antigens of *Coccidioides immitis* by immunodiffusion J Invest Dermat 41 225
- San Joaquin Fever Kern County Health Dept Ann Rept 1935 36 pp 22 23
- Smith C E 1942 Parallelism of coccidioid and tuberculous infections Radiology 38 643
- Smith C E, Beard R R, Rosenberger H G and Whiting E G 1946 Effect of season and dust control on coccidioidomycosis JAMA 137 833
- Smith C E, Saito M T and Simons N A 1956 Pattern of 39 500 serologic tests in coccidioidomycosis JAMA 160 546
- Smith C E, Whiting E G, Baker H E, Rosenberger H G, Beard R R and Saito M T 1948 The use of coccidioidin Am Rev Tuberc 57 330
- Trimble J R and Doucette J 1956 Primary cutaneous coccidioidomycosis Arch Dermat Syph 74 405
- Vogel R A, Fetter B F, Conant N F and Lowe E P 1954 Preliminary studies on artificial active immunization of guinea pigs against respiratory challenge with *Coccidioides immitis* Am Rev Tuberc 70 498
- Wernicke R 1892 Ueber einen Protozoen befund bei Mycosis Fungoides Centralbl Bakt 12 859
- Wilson J W 1961 Therapy of systemic fungus infections in 1961 Arch Int Med 108 292
- Wilson J W, Smith C E and Plunkett O A 1953 Primary cutaneous coccidioidomycosis Calif Med 79 233
- Winn W A 1957 Coccidioidomycosis J Chron Dis 5 430

## SPOROTRICHOSIS

- Campbell C C 1947 Use of Francis glucose cystine blood agar in the isolation and cultivation of *Sporotrichum schenckii* J Bact 50 233
- Cipollaro A C and Singer J I 1952 Sporotrichosis involving the face Arch Dermat Syph 65 506
- Collins W T 1947 Disseminated ulcerating sporotrichosis with widespread visceral involvement Arch Dermat Syph 56 523
- Crevasse L and Ellner P D 1960 An outbreak of sporotrichosis in Florida JAMA 173 29
- de Beurmann L and Gougerot E 1912 Les sporotrichoses Felix Alcan Paris
- de Beurmann L and Ramond L 1903 Abces sous-cutanes multiples d'origine mycosique Ann Derm Syph 4 678



- du Toit C J 1942 Sporotrichosis on the Witwatersrand Proc Transvaal Mine Officers Assoc 22 111
- Fetter B F 1961 Human cutaneous sporotrichosis Arch Path 71 416
- Foerster H H 1926 Sporotrichosis an occupational dermatosis JAMA 87 1605
- Galiana J and Conti Diaz I A 1963 Healing effects of heat and a rubefacient on nine cases of sporotrichosis Sabouraudia 3 64
- Gonzalez Ochoa A and Soto Figuero E 1947 Polisacáridos de *Sporotrichum schenckii* Rev Inst Sal Enferm Trop 8 143
- Harrell E R Bocobo F C and Curtis A C 1954 Sporotrichosis successfully treated with stilbamidine Arch Int Med 93 162
- Hasenclever H F and Mitchell W 1959 Attempts to immunize mice against sporotrichosis J Invest Dermat 33 145
- Hektoen L and Perkins C F 1900 Refractory subcutaneous abscesses caused by *Sporothrix schenckii* a new pathogenic fungus J Exp Med 5 77
- Howard D H and Orr G F 1963 Comparison of strains of *Sporotrichum schenckii* isolated from nature J Bact 85 816
- Kaden R 1956 Präzipitation von Sporotrichum antiserum in Agar medium Z Haut Geschlechtskr 21 87
- Kaplan W and Ivens M S 1960 Fluorescent antibody staining of *Sporotrichum schenckii* in cultures and clinical materials J Invest Dermat 35 151
- Kunz C 1959 Fluoreszenz serologische untersuchungen an einem pathogenen pilzstamm (*Sporotrichum schenckii*) Arch Klin exp Derm 209 200
- Lurie H J 1948 A common antigenic factor in different species of *Sporotrichum* Mycologia 40 108
- 1963 Five unusual cases of sporotrichosis from South Africa showing lesions in muscle bones and viscera Brit J Surg 50 585
- Lynch A C Geraci J E Young H H Weed L A and Bahn R C 1963 Systemic sporotrichosis with bilateral synovitis in the knees Report of a case Proc Mayo Clin 38 358
- McGrath H and Singer J I 1952 Ocular sporotrichosis Am J Ophth 35 103
- Matruchot L and Ramond L 1905 Un type nouveau de champignon pathogene chez l'homme C R Soc Biol 57 379
- Norden A 1951 Sporotrichosis clinical and laboratory features and serologic study in experimental animals and humans Acta path microbiol scand Suppl 89 pp 3 119
- Ridgeway N A Whitcomb F C Erikson E E and Law S W 1962 Primary pulmonary sporotrichosis Report of two cases Am J Med 32 153
- Schenck B R 1898 On refractory subcutaneous abscesses caused by a fungus possibly related to the *Sporotricha* Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 9 286
- Singer J I and Muncie J E 1952 Sporotrichosis Etiologic considerations and report of additional cases from New York New York J Med 52 2147
- ### ALLESCHERIA BOYDII
- Abbott P 1956 Mycetoma in the Sudan Trans Roy Soc Trop Med Hyg 50 11
- Ajello L 1952 The isolation of *Allescheria boydii* Shear an etiologic agent of mycetomas from soil Am J Trop Med 1 227
- Benham R W and Georg L K 1948 *Allescheria boydii* causative agent in a case of meningitis J Invest Dermat 10 99
- Boyd M F and Crutchfield E D 1921 A contribution to the study of mycetoma in North America Am J Trop Med 1 215
- Bridges C H 1957 Maduromycotic mycetomas in animal Am J Path 33 411
- Chalmers A J and Archibald R G 1916 A Sudanese maduromycosis Ann Trop Med 10 169
- Creutz J and Harris H W 1955 Isolation of *Allescheria boydii* from sputum Am Rev Tuberc 71 126
- Emmons C W 1944 *Allescheria boydii* and *Monosporium apiospermum* Mycologia 36 188
- 1945 *Phialophora jeanselmei* comb n from mycetoma of the hand Arch Path 39 364
- Gammel J A 1927 The etiology of maduromycosis Arch Dermat Syph 15 241
- Lacaz C da S and Fava Netto C 1954 Contribuição para o estudo dos agentes etiológicos da maduromicose Folia clin biol 21 331 and 413 22 303
- Levan N E 1954 Chromoblastomycosis Calif Med 80 468
- Mackinnon J E 1954 A contribution to the study of the causal organisms of maduromycosis Trans Roy Soc Trop Med Hyg 48 470
- Neuhauser I 1955 Black grain maduromycosis caused by *Madurella grisea* Arch Dermat 72 550
- Schary M Levene N and Gordon H 1960 Primary pulmonary infection with

- Monosporium apiospermum* Report of a case with clinical pathologic and mycologic data J Infect Dis 106 141
- Seeliger H 1956 A serologic study of Hyphomycetes causing mycetoma in man J Invest Dermat 26 81
- Seibold H R 1955 Mycetoma in the dog J Am Vet M A 127 444
- Symmers D and Sporer A 1944 Madura mycosis of the hand Arch Path 37 309
- Tong J L Valentine E H Durrance J R Wilson G M and Fischer D A 1958 Pulmonary infection with *Allescheria boydii* Report of a fatal case Am Rev Tuberc 78 604
- Travis R E Ulrich E W and Phillips S 1961 Pulmonary alloscherosis Ann Int Med 54 141
- Weidman F H and Kligman A M 1945 A new species of *Cephalosporium* in Madura foot (*Cephalosporium granulomatus*) J Bact 50 491
- ### HORMODENDRUM PEDROSI
- Al Doory Y and Gordon M A 1963 Application of fluorescent antibody procedures to the study of pathogenic dermataceous fungi. I Differentiation of *Cladosporium carrionii* and *Cladosporium banetianum* J Bact 86 332
- Baquero G F 1959 La intradermo reaccion con antigeno de *Hormodendrum pedrosoi* Bol Soc Cubana Dermat Sifil 16 90
- Baquero G F Lopez P B and Lescay B R 1961 Cromoblastomycosis Tratamiento de un caso con ioduro de potasio y calciferol Bol Soc Cubana Dermat Sifil 18 41
- 1961 Cromoblastomycosis experimental Bol Soc Cubana Dermat Sifil 18 19
- Binford C H Thompson R K and Gorham M E 1952 Mycotic brain abscess due to *Cladosporium trichoides* a new species Am J Clin Path 22 535
- Bonilla E 1954 Treatment of chromoblastomycosis with calciferol Report of three cases Arch Dermat Syph 70 665
- Bopp C 1957 Tratamento da cromoblastomycose pelo calciferol Livraria do Globo Porto Alegre Brasil p 184
- Brumpt E 1922 Precis de Parasitologie ed 3 Paris Masson p 1105
- Carrion A L 1935 Chromoblastomycosis Preliminary report on a new clinical type of the disease caused by *Hormodendrum compactum* nov sp Puerto R J Pub Health Trop Med 10 543
- Conant N F and Martin D S 1937 The morphologic and serologic relationships of the various fungi causing dermatitis verrucosa (chromoblastomycosis) Am J Trop Med 17 553
- Conant N F Smith D T Baker E D Callaway J L and Martin D S 1954 Manual of Clinical Mycology ed 2 Philadelphia Saunders
- Costello M J de Feo C P and Littman M L 1959 Chromoblastomycosis treated with local infiltration of Amphotericin B solution Arch Dermat 79 184
- Duque O 1961 Meningo encephalitis and brain abscess caused by *Cladosporium* and *Fonsecaea* J Clin Path 36 505
- 1963 Cladosporiosis cerebral experimental Rev Latino americana Anat Patolog 7 101
- de Feo C P and Harber L C 1959 Chromoblastomycosis treated with local infiltration of Amphotericin B solution JAMA 171 1961
- Fuentes C A and Bosch Z H 1960 Biochemical differentiation of the etiologic agents of chromoblastomycosis from non pathogenic *Cladosporium* species J Invest Dermat 34 419
- Fukushiro R Kagawa S Nishiyama S and Takahashi H 1957 Un cas de chromoblastomycose cutanee avec metastase cerebrale mortelle Presse med 65 2142
- Inaki N 1962 Morphologic and serologic studies of the pathogenic dermataceous fungi Jap J Dermat 72 197
- Iwata K and Wada T 1957 Mycological studies on the strains isolated from a case of chromoblastomycosis with a metastasis in central nervous system Jap J Microbiol 1 355
- Kano K 1937 Ueber die Chromoblastomycose durch einen noch nicht als pathogen beschriebenen Pilz, *Hormiscium dermatidis* n sp Arch Dermat u Syph 176 282
- Lane C G 1915 A cutaneous disease caused by a new fungus (*Phialophora verrucosa*) J Cutan Dis 33 840
- Lucas C Chardome J Magis P and Vanbreuseghem R 1954 Mycose cerebrale par *Cladosporium trichoides* chez un indigene du Congo Belge Ann Soc belge med trop 34 475
- Medlar M M 1915 A new fungus *Phialophora verrucosa* pathogenic for man Mycologia 7 200
- Pedroso A 1911 Quoted in Pedroso A and Gomes J M 1920
- Pedroso A and Gomes J M 1920 Sobre

- quatro casos de dermatite verrucosa produzida pela *Phialophora verrucosa* Ann Paulistas Med Cirurgia 9 53
- Rodriguez O 1959 Chromoblastomycosis Su tratamiento con calciferol Mem III Cong Latino Americano de Derm Mexico
- Seeliger H P R 1957 Die Serologie schwarzer und roter Hefen Zbl Bakt Parasit Infekt Hyg 167 396
- Shimazono Y Isaki K Torii H and Otsuka E 1963 Brain abscess due to *Hormodendrum dermatitidis* (Kano) Constant 1953 Report of a case and review of the literature Folia Psych Neurol Jap 17 80
- Terra F Torres M Da Fonseca O and Area Leão A E de 1922 Novotipo de dermatite verrucosa mycose por *Acrotheca* com associacao de leishmaniose Brasil Medico 2 363
- Trejos A 1954 *Cladosporium carrionii* n sp and the problem of *Cladosporia* isolated from chromoblastomycosis Rev Biol Trop 2 75
- ### DERMATOPHYTES
- Ajello L 1957 Cultural methods for human pathogenic fungi J Chron Dis 5 545
- 1959 A new *Microsporum* and its occurrence in soil and on animals Mycologia 51 69
- 1961 The ascigerous state of *Microsporum cookei* Sabouraudia 1 173
- Bocobo F C and Benham R W 1949 Pigment production in the differentiation of *Trichophyton mentagrophytes* and *Trichophyton rubrum* Mycologia 41 291
- Brock J M 1961 *Microsporum nanum* A cause of tinea capitis Arch Dermat 84 504
- Bubash G R Gunther O J and Ajello L 1964 *Microsporum nanum* First recorded isolation from animals in the United States Science 143 366
- Carmichael J W and Reid J F 1962 *Microsporum nanum* infection in Alberta Mycopath Mycol Appl 17 325
- Castellani A 1910 The growth of the fungus of Tinea imbricata (*Endodermophyton concentricum*) on artificial media J Trop Med Hyg 13 370
- Dawson C O and Gentles J C 1959 Perfect stage of *Keratomyces ajelloi* Nature 183 1345
- 1961 The perfect stages of *Keratomyces ajelloi* Vanbreuseghem *Trichophyton terrestre* Durie & Frey and *Microsporum nanum* Fuentes Sabouraudia 1 49
- DiMenna M and Marples M J 1954 *Microsporum distortum* sp nov from New Zealand Trans Brit Mycol Soc 37 372
- Dolan M M Khigman A M Kobylinski P G and Moutsavage M A 1958 Ring worm epizootics in laboratory mice and rats experimental and accidental transmission of infection J Invest Dermat 30 23
- Durie E ■ and Frey D 1957 A new species of *Trichophyton* from New South Wales Mycologia 49 401
- Fuentes C A 1956 A new species of *Microsporum* Mycologia 48 613
- Fuentes C A Aboulafia R and Vidal R J 1954 A dwarf form of *Microsporum gypseum* J Invest Dermat 23 51
- Gentles J C 1958 Experimental ringworm in guinea pigs oral treatment with Griseofulvin Nature 182 476
- 1959 The treatment of ringworm with Griseofulvin Brit J Dermat 71 427
- Georg L K 1957 Dermatophytes New methods in classification Publication of C D C U S Dept Health Educ and Welfare Atlanta Ga U S A
- 1960 Epidemiology of the dermatophytes sources of infection modes of transmission and epidemicity Ann New York Acad Sci 89 69
- Georg L K Ajello L Friedman L and Brinkman S A 1962 A new species of *Microsporum* pathogenic to man and animals Sabouraudia 1 189
- Georg L K Hand E A and Menges R A 1956 Observations on rural and urban ringworm J Invest Dermat 27 335
- Georg L K Kaplan W Ajello L Williamson W M and Tilden E ■ 1959 The parasitic nature of the soil fungus *Keratomyces ajelloi* J Invest Dermat 32 539
- Georg L K Kaplan W and Camp L ■ 1957 *Trichophyton equinum*—A reevaluation of its taxonomic status J Invest Dermat 29 27
- Greenbaum S S 1924 Immunity in ring worm infections I Active acquired immunity with a note on complement fixation tests in superficial ringworm infections Arch Dermat Syph 10 279
- Gruby D 1843 Recherches sur la nature le siege et le developpement du Porrigo decalvans ou phytalopecie C R Acad Sci 17 301
- Henington V M Friedman L Perret W J and Kennedy ■ 1962 Human infection due to a new *Microsporum* species Arch Dermat Syph 86 298
- Huppert M 1962 Immunization against superficial fungous infection in Daldorf

- Gilbert (ed) *Fungi and Fungous Diseases* Springfield Ill Thomas p 239
- Jillson O F and Huppert M 1949 The immediate wheal and 24-48 hour tuberculin type edematous reactions to trichophyton *J Invest Dermat* 12 179
- Kaplan W and Ajello L 1959 Oral treatment of spontaneous ringworm in cats with Griseofulvin *J Am Vet M A* 135 253
- Kaplan W Georg L K Hendricks S L and Leeper R A 1957 Isolation of *Microsporum distortum* from animals in the United States *J Invest Dermat* 28 449
- Kirk J and Ajello L 1959 Use of Griseofulvin in the therapy of tinea capitis in children *Arch Dermat* 80 259
- Kligman A M and Ginsberg D 1950 Immunity of the adult scalp to infection with *Microsporum audouinii* *J Invest Dermat* 14 345
- Loveman A H and Kotcher E 1962 Favus in Kentucky Diagnosis treatment and epidemiology *J Kentucky M A* 60 643
- McNall E G Sternberg T H Newcomer V D and Sorensen L J 1961 Chemical and immunological studies on dermatophyte cell wall polysaccharides *J Invest Dermat* 36 155
- Malmsten P H 1848 *Trichophyton tonsurans* *Arch Anat Physiol Wissensch Med* p 1
- Marcussen P V 1937 Relationship of the urticarial to the inflammatory reaction to trichophyton *Arch Dermat Syph* 36 494
- Matrucho L and Dassonville C 1899 Sur le champignon de l'herpes (*Trichophyton*) et les formes voisines et sur la classification des ascomycetes *Bull Soc mycol franc* 15 240
- 1899 Sur le *Ctenomyces serratus* Eidam compare aux champignons des teignes *Bull Soc mycol franc* 15 305
- Menges R W and Georg L K 1956 An epizootic of ringworm among guinea pigs caused by *Trichophyton mentagrophytes* *J Am Vet M A* 178 395
- Newcomer V D and Landau J W 1963 Current status of Griseofulvin in the management of cutaneous fungous infections *J Ind Med Prof* 10 4650
- Remak R 1845 Diagnostische und Pathogenische Untersuchungen VII Muscardine und Favus (*Porriga lupinosa*) Berlin p 193
- Russell B Fraim Bell W Riddell R W Stevenson J C Djavahiszwili H and Morrison S L 1960 Chronic ringworm infection of the skin and nails treated with Griseofulvin *Lancet* 1 1141
- Sabouraud R 1907 Sur l'Eczema marginatum de Hebra *Trichophyton inguinale* et son parasite (*Epidermophyton inguinale* Sabouraud) *Arch med exp anat path* 19 737
- 1910 *Maladies du cuir chevelu III Les maladies cryptogamiques Les Teignes* Paris Masson p 855
- Schoenlein Prof 1839 Zur Pathogenie der Impetigines *Arch Anat Physiol Wissensch Med Berlin* p 82
- Stockdale P 1961 *Nannizzia incurvata* gen nov a perfect state of *Microsporum gypsum* Sabouraudia 1 41
- Sulzberger M B and Kanof A 1947 Undecylenic and propionic acids in the prevention and treatment of dermatophytosis *Arch Dermat Syph* 55 391
- Vanbreuseghem R 1952 Interet theorique et pratique d'un nouveau dermatophyte isole du sol *Keratomyces ajelloi* gen nov sp nov *Bull Acad belge clin sci* 38 1068

## 38

## The Principles of Epidemiology As Applied to Infectious Diseases

Epidemiology is the study of the occurrence of disease. It aims to examine the varied factors that determine the development and the existence of disease or in the case of the infectious diseases the development and the existence of infection whether or not manifested by the recognizable signs and symptoms that we label disease. More elaborate and complicated definitions have been developed definitions that attempt to portray some of the factors or the relationships that are involved but the foregoing seems to be the simplest and at the same time the most comprehensive.

The word epidemiology is derived from the Greek words *epi* (upon) *demos* (people) and *logos* (study of). Thus from its derivation epidemiology implies the study of what falls upon the people. The word epidemic evolved as a result of the early and primitive concept of disease as being caused by a mysterious force that descends on man. Plagues and pestilences were originally considered to be the punishment meted out to sinful man by an offended deity. Later as trologic concepts were introduced and even later climatologic ones (*mal aria*=bad air). Immediately prior to the advent of the bacteriologic era in the latter half of the 19th century disease was attributed to the harmful effects of poisonous miasmata and vapors that arose from decaying filth and permeated

the atmosphere that man must breathe—vapors that settled on man.

The term epidemiology in its original meaning thus implied the study of epidemics. Through its study an attempt was made to determine the reasons for the abnormal incidence of certain infections and to explain fluctuations in the occurrence of disease. It implied a special relationship to those conditions that do occur in epidemic form viz the infectious conditions even though such conditions were known to spread from person to person or from animals to persons rather than mysteriously descending on man from some hidden source on high.

The purist may cling to this original concept of epidemiology but usage has broadened the term to refer to noninfectious as well as infectious conditions. No one will deny the importance to be attached to the understanding of the factors underlying the occurrence of a noncommunicable disease whether of metabolic origin or due to external influences of a physical or a chemical nature. One may study the epidemiology of diabetes or atherosclerosis of industrial poisonings or the effects of excessive radiation. For each condition there is a multiplicity of factors that must be considered and evaluated if we are to understand why it exists.

Similarly we must recognize that epidemi

ology can no longer be confined to a study of abnormal incidence or prevalence of disease. Before we can understand abnormal occurrence we must understand the factors governing the normal amount. An outbreak of infectious disease frequently has its origin from a single case which in turn is part of the usual number of cases that can be expected to occur. Without a knowledge of why this first case occurred there can be no adequate understanding of the forces that lead to the more dramatic outbreak. Knowledge of endemic factors is essential to a clear understanding of the epidemic result.

Thus like many other words in a language the term epidemiology has changed in its meaning from the narrow concept of the study of epidemics of infectious diseases to a broader concept of the occurrence of disease, a study of the many diverse factors that lead in one way or another to the development of disease, whether in an individual or a multitude. It is in this sense that the word is used here, even though the subject of this volume is diseases of bacterial origin.

As the study of the occurrence of disease, the study of epidemiology must be directed to a vast array of forces that act on the animal host to produce illness. Some of these forces may be biologic, as for example the invasion of parasitic organisms and the reactions of the body in attempting to resist this invasion and its consequences. Other forces may be physical, such as climate, geologic formations, or radiation. Still other forces may be sociologic, political, or even religious, for the customs of man have a profound influence on his habits and thus on his exposure to conditions that may bring about disease. The occurrence of many of the infectious diseases cannot be understood without considering the history of both the disease and the community, for in the study of this history may be found not only some clues to why disease has occurred in the past but also some understanding of the probability of its occurrence in the future. In short, the science of epidemiology includes consideration of a complex array of forces that may contribute either directly or indirectly to the occurrence of disease in man.

There are many possible ways in which

the principles of epidemiology may be portrayed. As this is a volume devoted to the bacterial and mycotic infections, it seems preferable to set forth certain principles in the pattern of the development of the infectious process, thus giving to the reader a more orderly approach to this subject than could be obtained from a more abstract consideration. To this end one may consider the development of an infection to be conditioned by 6 related yet independent components: (1) the etiologic agent, (2) the reservoir of infection, (3) escape from the reservoir, (4) transfer to a new host, (5) entry into the new host, and (6) the susceptibility of this new host.

## ETIOLOGIC AGENT

Very few of the recognized bacteria are pathogenic. Yet the very use of the descriptive adjective pathogenic implies certain reservations from the epidemiologic point of view, for we must immediately specify for what form of life and under what conditions an organism is pathogenic.

## SPECIFICITY

Some organisms, especially the viruses, are extremely selective as to the host in which they will multiply, being highly pathogenic for some species of animal and non-pathogenic for others. Among the bacteria the gonococcus and the spirochete of syphilis are notable for their pathogenicity for man, yet they are so harmless to other forms of animal life that no one has discovered a suitable laboratory animal in which they may be studied. By way of contrast, many organisms will parasitize and be pathogenic for a wide variety of hosts. Notable in this regard are the salmonella, many of which are found normally in other animals and attack man as an abnormal host.

In many instances both the clinical picture and the epidemiologic pattern may be very different in different hosts. For example, *Brucella abortus* infection is highly communicable in cattle, attacking the genital tract with resultant abortion and escape of the organism through the discharged fetus and the lochia. In humans the infection does not attack the genital tract, plays no role in

miscarriages or abortions and is essentially noncommunicable from one person to another

### LOCATION

The mere fact that an organism can be pathogenic for the host in which it is found does not imply invariable production of disease, for it may be harmless in one anatomic situation and highly pathogenic in another. The colon bacilli which normally abound in the large intestine are nonpathogenic so long as they remain in this location but their escape into the peritoneal cavity as the result of perforation of a typhoid ulcer, an intestinal wound or a ruptured appendix is followed by a severe and often fatal peritonitis. Only the thickness of the intestinal wall separates man from disaster from within himself. Similarly tetanus or gas gangrene spores are harmless when swallowed for they exhibit no pathogenicity so long as they are within the lumen of the intestinal tract yet if introduced into the tissues they may produce severe and often fatal illness.

### TYPE SPECIFICITY

While it is convenient to group various microorganisms on the basis of certain morphologic, biologic or even pathogenic characteristics, the student of epidemiology or microbiology must remember constantly that closely related organisms or even organisms that in most respects may be identical may differ markedly in their pathogenic or epidemiologic capabilities. Pneumococci are indistinguishable one from the other on the basis of morphology or cultural characteristics but on biologic and immunologic bases they may be separated into more than 30 types, each of which has its distinctive epidemiologic characteristics. For example, the age distribution of Type III pneumococcal pneumonia is different from that of Type I, showing a far greater attack rate in older persons. Similarly, there are differences in the carrier rate of the two types. Whereas the carrier rate of Type I is much higher in contacts than in the general population, contacts of Type III infections do not harbor the organisms any more frequently than do persons having no such known contact. If

one attempts to type the pneumococci isolated from pneumonia cases during a winter season, one frequently finds that one type dominates at one month, a different type at other months. Thus the so-called epidemic wave of pneumonia may actually be the composite of two or more separate waves, each of infections of a different type of pneumococci.

During the past 25 years much has been added to our knowledge of bacterial types, particularly the types of typhoid bacilli and of staphylococci. Not only has this provided the means for better understanding of the epidemiology of the infection but it has also provided highly valuable tools for epidemiologic investigation. In the investigation of typhoid outbreaks there has long been a problem of determining which cases are part of the outbreak in question and which are the endemic cases which would have occurred in the absence of the outbreak. The fact that organisms of the same phage type are isolated from several patients does not prove the interrelationship of these cases but the isolation of different types can indicate cases that are derived from different sources. If a type A carrier serves a banquet, we can expect that those who ate of this meal will also shed type A organisms, whereas the simultaneous occurrence of typhoid in a person who did not go to the banquet presents no mystery if he is shedding type B. Prior to the discovery of these type differences and the development of typing techniques, such cases caused much perplexity and endless confusion as attempts were made to find connections which we now know did not exist. British epidemiologists have reported further use of bacteriophage typing in their search for unrecognized typhoid carriers. By taking samples of sewage at various points in the collection system, they have been able to identify the presence of bacteriophage for a given type, trace this back to a given house connection and thus identify the carrier who was discharging both bacilli and phage into the sewage.

Similarly, the typing of staphylococci, especially in hospital-acquired infections, has produced a valuable tool for epidemiologic investigation, permitting the identification of cases in which there is or is not a possible

relationship and often helping to clarify the source or the mode of transmission

## RESERVOIR OF INFECTION

With the discard of the old concept of spontaneous generation came acceptance of the idea that life comes from pre-existing life of identical character. While this latter concept has been modified slightly to recognize bacterial or viral mutation, the basic fact remains that a person develops a given infection only through invasion of organisms that came from some other source—usually another person or animal harboring the organism in question. A few pathogens such as certain fungi and the gas gangrene bacilli are apparently free-living organisms which have the soil as their reservoir. The sum total of all such possible sources is referred to as the reservoir of infection. By this term is meant the natural habitat of the organism, the host (or place) in which the organism normally lives and multiplies. It must be distinguished carefully from the vehicle of spread which bridges the gap from source to victim. Thus man is the reservoir of typhoid, whereas water, milk, food or flies may be the vehicle of transfer. Jungle monkeys constitute the reservoir of yellow fever, whereas mosquitoes serve as the vehicle to bring the virus from monkey to man. Epidemiology is vitally concerned with the reservoir, especially its character and size, since the reservoir represents the ultimate source of all infections.

### CHARACTER OF RESERVOIR

The epidemiologic significance of a reservoir depends in large part on its character or nature. Most of the bacterial infections of man have man as the reservoir and thus depend on direct or indirect transfer of organisms from one person to another. The significance of a human reservoir is conditioned by the various factors that bring persons in association with one another. Many other infections have as their reservoir other forms of animal life, ranging from mammals through lower vertebrates to the invertebrates such as ticks and mites. The significance of such reservoirs depends in part on the degree of association between man and these animals. Thus little significance may be attached to a

wild animal in the jungle, even if it is infected with an organism pathogenic for man, whereas a reservoir of infected domestic animals may constitute a serious and ever-present threat. Yet the wild animal reservoir may have ultimate significance as a source from which disease may escape into civilization, as witnessed by the periodic escape of yellow fever virus from its natural habitat in jungle monkeys and its movement into urban areas through the woodcutters who pick up infection in the jungle. Special significance may be attached to bird reservoirs inasmuch as migration may result in rapid movement of infection over vast distances and along certain paths.

Travel of man has also brought about movement of disease from one area to another, frequently resulting in the establishment of new foci of disease in areas previously uninfected. In 1870 malaria was introduced into the island of Reunion by migrants from either Madagascar or the African mainland and became firmly established. Norwegian immigrants brought leprosy to northern Minnesota, where a focus of infection lasted well into the 20th century. Scandinavian immigrants likewise brought the fish tapeworm *Diphyllobothrium latum*, which became established in the fish of many of the northern lakes. Recently Neghme described a focus in the southern half of Chile where the infection was unknown until introduced (apparently) by migrants from northern Europe.

Migration of the reservoir may introduce the etiologic agent of an acute infectious disease, starting an explosive and at times devastating outbreak in an area previously free of the disease. In the 19th century travellers introduced measles into the Faroe Islands and the Fiji Islands, with tragic consequences to populations long free of the infection. In recent years a similar outbreak occurred among the Eskimos of Greenland. Cholera has repeatedly spread along the lanes of international travel, while influenza has moved from continent to continent, as in the epidemics of 1889 and 1918 and the wave of Asian influenza in 1957 to 1958. The importance of movement of reservoirs finds expression in the international quarantine regulations, some of which may be very strict.



miscarriages or abortions, and is essentially noncommunicable from one person to another

### LOCATION

The mere fact that an organism can be pathogenic for the host in which it is found does not imply invariable production of disease, for it may be harmless in one anatomic situation and highly pathogenic in another. The colon bacilli which normally abound in the large intestine are non-pathogenic so long as they remain in this location, but their escape into the peritoneal cavity as the result of perforation of a typhoid ulcer, an intestinal wound or a ruptured appendix is followed by a severe and often fatal peritonitis. Only the thickness of the intestinal wall separates man from disaster from within himself. Similarly tetanus or gas gangrene spores are harmless when swallowed for they exhibit no pathogenicity so long as they are within the lumen of the intestinal tract yet if introduced into the tissues they may produce severe and often fatal illness.

### TYPE SPECIFICITY

While it is convenient to group various microorganisms on the basis of certain morphologic, biologic or even pathogenic characteristics, the student of epidemiology or microbiology must remember constantly that closely related organisms or even organisms that in most respects may be identical may differ markedly in their pathogenic or epidemiologic capabilities. Pneumococci are indistinguishable one from the other on the basis of morphology or cultural characteristics, but on biologic and immunologic bases they may be separated into more than 30 types, each of which has its distinctive epidemiologic characteristics. For example, the age distribution of Type III pneumococcal pneumonia is different from that of Type I, showing a far greater attack rate in older persons. Similarly, there are differences in the carrier rate of the two types. Whereas the carrier rate of Type I is much higher in contacts than in the general population, contacts of Type III infections do not harbor the organisms any more frequently than do persons having no such known contact. If

one attempts to type the pneumococci isolated from pneumonia cases during a winter season, one frequently finds that one type dominates at one month, a different type at other months. Thus the so-called epidemic wave of pneumonia may actually be the composite of two or more separate waves, each of infections of a different type of pneumococci.

During the past 25 years much has been added to our knowledge of bacterial types, particularly the types of typhoid bacilli and of staphylococci. Not only has this provided the means for better understanding of the epidemiology of the infection but it has also provided highly valuable tools for epidemiologic investigation. In the investigation of typhoid outbreaks there has long been a problem of determining which cases are part of the outbreak in question and which are the endemic cases which would have occurred in the absence of the outbreak. The fact that organisms of the same phage type are isolated from several patients does not prove the interrelationship of these cases, but the isolation of different types can indicate cases that are derived from different sources. If a type A carrier serves a banquet we can expect that those who ate of this meal will also shed type A organisms, whereas the simultaneous occurrence of typhoid in a person who did not go to the banquet presents no mystery if he is shedding type B. Prior to the discovery of these type differences and the development of typing techniques such cases caused much perplexity and endless confusion as attempts were made to find connections which we now know did not exist. British epidemiologists have reported further use of bacteriophage typing in their search for unrecognized typhoid carriers. By taking samples of sewage at various points in the collection system they have been able to identify the presence of bacteriophage for a given type, trace this back to a given house connection and thus identify the carrier who was discharging both bacilli and phage into the sewage.

Similarly the typing of staphylococci, especially in hospital acquired infections, has produced a valuable tool for epidemiologic investigation, permitting the identification of cases in which there is or is not a possible

theria has its peak about November at the same time that pertussis is near its minimum scarlet fever reaches its peak in March whereas varicella is at its maximum in December and January and measles peaks in April or even May. There is less difference between the November peak of diphtheria and the September peak of poliomyelitis the spread of which has often been attributed to gastrointestinal factors due to its late summer prevalence than there is between the peaks of diphtheria and scarlet fever or those of varicella and measles.

The variations in seasonal pattern often have been attributed to changes in virulence of infecting organism changes in susceptibility pattern of spread and climatic variables. While it is true that such diseases as typhoid fever and poliomyelitis tend to begin and to peak earlier in the southern United States than in the North it is only in the insect borne infections that climatic factors seem to play a determining role. A freeze or a killing frost can put an abrupt end to the spread of a mosquito borne infection such as dengue yellow fever or equine encephalomyelitis whereas climatologic conditions which favor the breeding of the vectors will increase the spread and therefore the size of the reservoir. By contrast the winter crowding of impoverished persons will favor the transfer of lice and thus the spread of typhus if the infection is present or is introduced. On the other hand the spread of malaria and therefore the size of the reservoir of

TABLE 1 SEASONAL INCIDENCE OF CERTAIN INFECTIONS

	MAXIMUM	MINIMUM
Diphtheria	November	August
Measles	April	September
Mumps	March	September
Pertussis	March	October
Poliomyelitis	September	March
Scarlet fever	March	August
Varicella	December to January	July to August

active cases is definitely reduced in the cooler climates owing to the fact that the length of the period of extrinsic incubation (see p. 902) varies with the temperature. Thus in the cooler latitudes the number of mosquitoes that live long enough to become infectious is so small that few if any cases will develop even if new sources of infection are introduced into the community and are fed on by suitable vectors.

*Epidemiologic Year.* The fact that each disease has its own characteristic seasonal distribution means that in measuring the incidence of a disease one should not use the calendar year as a base of reference for the calendar year is a purely artificial unit of time. To obtain a true measurement not only of incidence but of the magnitude of successive waves of a disease one should use the epidemiologic year. This can be defined as the interval between the usual periods of minimal prevalence. For example diphtheria

TABLE 2 REPORTED CASES OF MEASLES—MASSACHUSETTS 1923-1927

	1922	1923	1924	1925	1926	1927
January	1 275	3 623	2 335	1 321	6 573	719
February	2 061	3 873	3 553	2 204	6 441	855
March	2 643	3 609	4 055	2 747	5 490	1 297
April	3 603	3 863	4 197	3 846	3 776	1 406
May	4 159	4 360	3 355	3 756	3 187	1 761
June	3 198	2 985	2 392	3 094	2 724	1 734
July	1 274	1 037	939	1 037	917	1 023
August	338	271	153	338	203	253
September	268	157	143	269	70	151
October	686	660	250	1 300	120	526
November	1 167	1 096	379	3 321	161	1 221
December	2 619	1 320	674	5 583	358	2 552
Totals	23 291	26 854	22 425	28 816	30 020	13 498

in a situation in which introduction of disease holds the possibility of national disaster. The stringent precautions against yellow fever that are followed by India and Pakistan are expressions of this fear of disaster as neither country has ever been invaded by yellow fever but both possess ideal conditions for its establishment and spread.

#### SEVERITY OF INFECTION

The severity of reaction to an infection varies greatly ranging from a severe or even fatal infection through moderate to mild cases even cases that are so mild that the individual is completely unaware of the existence of the infection. To a high degree these variations are probably due to differences in the number of invading organisms and in individual resistance but in certain infections the portal of entry is also a factor.

From the standpoint of the individual patient, the severe infection is the most important, since it carries with it the risk of complications and of death. By contrast the mild and inapparent infections are of major importance as factors in the spread of the infection. Part of this is obviously due to the mobility of the infected individual for the seriously ill patient automatically goes out of circulation whether or not isolation precautions are established whereas the mild case not recognizing the true nature of the illness continues to circulate in the community, thus passing infection to other persons. The fatal case is permanently removed and poses no threat. Therefore from the epidemiologic point of view the mild cases are of greater importance than the severe ones.

One might infer that the healthy transient carrier of diphtheria bacilli streptococci or pneumococci would be even more infectious than the mild case in that the former would be completely unaware of the infection whereas the latter noting at least mild signs or symptoms would be somewhat less likely to associate with and thus infect other persons. However practical experience has shown that this may not be true and that the individual who manifests some degree of reaction to the infection is more likely to convey organisms to associates than is the person who is devoid of recognizable manifestations in spite of infection. Thus Gordon

found that the scarlet fever patient discharged from the hospital still harboring streptococci but without demonstrable signs or symptoms was less likely to infect family associates than was the patient with slight residual sinusitis or cervical gland enlargement as a result of asymptomatic pharyngeal infection. Similarly Hamburger has pointed out differences in carriers of streptococci emphasizing those whom he labels as dangerous carriers. Part of this distinction is in the number of organisms given off and part in the ease of escape from the patient some degree of inflammation producing a more watery and therefore more easily discharged respiratory tract secretion. Whatever may be the factors involved it appears definite that all mild cases are not alike in their capacity to transmit infection (infection potential) and that for the diseases spread by way of the respiratory tract the mild case may be more important than the truly healthy carrier.

#### SIZE OF RESERVOIR

The size of the reservoir is obviously of vital importance in understanding the occurrence of a disease for the larger the reservoir the greater the number of foci from which it may spread and therefore the greater the number of persons potentially endangered. The factors governing the size of reservoirs of short lived acute infections and of long term chronic infection are quite different.

**Acute Infections** The reservoir in this case is made up of the current cases the convalescent carriers and the healthy carriers if any. In general therefore the size of the reservoir fluctuates according to the prevalence of the disease. Three types of fluctuations are readily recognizable.

**SEASONAL VARIATION** Each infectious disease has its characteristic seasonal pattern of incidence. The reasons for these seasonal variations are not clear even though some degree of regularity is apparent. In general one may recognize that infections spread by way of the respiratory tract are more common in the winter than in the summer but there are such wide variations in incidence that explanations based on temperature or crowding seem quite inadequate. As noted in Table 1 based on statistics for the northern half of the temperate zone diph-

resulting split wave. In such cases seen frequently in measles a moderately high incidence occurs in each of two successive epidemiologic years instead of a much higher incidence confined to a single year. In such cases the second part of the split wave commonly will occur much earlier in the epidemiologic year than is usual because of the relatively large number of cases that continue to occur during the season of minimal prevalence and therefore the unusually large number of foci from which new infections will develop.

Diseases such as diphtheria, scarlet fever or meningococcal meningitis which are less highly communicable manifest similar though less dramatic year to year variations. The first two show peaks every 3 to 5 years whereas meningococcal infections recur at irregular intervals. In some measure these variations can be explained on the same basis as measles (changes in the number of susceptibles) but for the irregular and unpredictable waves of meningococcal infection there is as yet no more satisfactory explanation than for those of poliomyelitis or influenza. Many hypotheses have been advanced but none seems entirely satisfactory.

**LONG TERM VARIATION.** Aside from the seasonal variation and the short term periodicity of diseases one may recognize various long term cycles for which no satisfactory explanation has been advanced. Thus diphtheria which had not been a major problem in the first half of the 19th century rose to a peak about the 1870's, alarming in both its severity and the number of cases. For example the deaths and death rates in Massachusetts showed a peak in 1875 to 1879 followed by a progressive decline during the rest of the 19th and the first part of the 20th century. It is hard to attribute this to human factors of control for the rate had declined sharply before the discovery of antitoxin showed no sharper decline after its introduction and was at a comparatively low level before active immunization was introduced in the early 1920's. Similarly scarlet fever for which no effective therapeutic or prophylactic agents were developed prior to the sulfonamides showed striking declines in both severity and mortality. It is impossible to attribute these changes to any man made

influences especially when so far as can be determined from old records both diseases had showed alternating periods of high and low incidence and severe and mild infections during previous centuries.

**Chronic Infections.** The reservoir of long term infectious diseases including those in which there is a chronic or permanent carrier condition is largely dependent on the past history of the disease and consists of two parts: the active and the convalescent cases and the recovered but still infected persons. The number of the former varies with the current incidence which may be high or low depending on prevailing circumstances. However the number of recovered but still infected individuals is dependent on the past history of the disease. For example a state which has had a high typhoid incidence during the previous 25 to 50 years obviously will have a larger number of chronic carriers than a state in which the typhoid incidence has been low. Similarly the reservoir of carriers will decline automatically and ultimately will disappear as the disease is kept under control. A simple example will suffice to illustrate this phenomenon.

Let us assume that in 1913 state X had 5 000 persons who recovered from typhoid fever and that 2 per cent of these became permanent carriers. This means that 100 carriers were produced in that year. On the assumption that the average age of typhoid cases was 20 years and that at that age a person had a life expectancy of 50 more years we could think of these 100 carriers as dying in 1963 not from typhoid fever but from heart disease, cancer and other conditions that are important causes of deaths at age 70. If the typhoid rate in state X had been reduced progressively to the level of only 50 persons who recovered from typhoid in 1963, 2 per cent of whom became carriers, there would have been only 1 carrier produced in that year to take the place of the 100 who had died. Thus the size of the reservoir was reduced by 99 not because of any changes in community sanitation that were put into effect in that year but simply because the reservoir was dying out faster than it was being replaced. Thus year after year as the incidence of typhoid is kept at its present low rate the reservoir becomes smaller because

TABLE 3 REPORTED CASES OF MEASLES IN MASSACHUSETTS BY CALENDAR AND EPIDEMIOLOGIC YEARS

CALENDAR YEAR	CASES	CHANGE FROM PREVIOUS YEAR	EPIDEMIOLOGIC YEAR*	CASES	CHANGE FROM PREVIOUS YEAR
1923	26 854		1922 23	28 361	
1924	22 425	-16%	1923 24	24 212	-15%
1925	28 816	+28%	1924 25	19 789	-18%
1926	30 020	+4%	1925 26	39 784	+101%
1927	13 498	-55%	1926 27	9 757	-75%

September 1 through August 31

is usually at its minimum in July or August. Hence the diphtheria wave should be studied from August 1 of one year to August 1 of the succeeding year. By contrast poliomyelitis is at its minimum in March or April so that the epidemiologic year may be considered to run from April 1 to the same date in the next calendar year.

When studied on the basis of the epidemiologic rather than the calendar year the true variations in the incidence of a disease become much more apparent. Table 2 shows the reported cases of measles in Massachusetts for the years 1922 to 1927. In Table 3 these data are totaled on the basis of calendar years and on epidemiologic years running from September 1 through August 31, September being the usual month of minimum incidence. On the basis of calendar year totals the incidence increased 28 per cent from 1924 to 1925 and another 4 per cent from 1925 to 1926. Yet when the totals from the epidemiologic years are compared it is noted that there was actually an 18 per cent decrease from 1923-24 to 1924-25 and an increase of 101 per cent from 1924-25 to 1925-26. Similarly the decline in the subsequent years was 55 per cent on the basis of the calendar year but 75 per cent on the basis of the epidemiologic year. It is apparent that the epidemiologic year totals give a much more accurate picture of the relative magnitude of successive seasonal waves of the disease. Calendar years are useful for non-scientific purposes but for serious study of the occurrence of infectious disease they are often highly misleading and should be replaced by the epidemiologic year.

**SHORT TERM CYCLES.** It is common knowledge that the incidence of many infec-

tious diseases varies greatly from year to year. Infections such as measles, poliomyelitis or influenza show striking variations, being almost absent in certain years and breaking out in explosive waves in other years. There is a certain degree of regularity with respect to the recurrent waves of measles which occur every 2 to 4 years in urban areas and at longer and more variable intervals in less crowded communities. No comparable regularity in the spacing of waves of influenza or poliomyelitis is apparent. In all of these conditions however a severe wave of infection with a large number of cases is followed the next year by a very low incidence even a virtual absence. Similarly the longer the interval between peak incidence the more severe the ensuing wave. These variations are commonly and probably correctly explained in large part on the basis of numbers of susceptibles. The incidence of measles declines when the number of susceptibles in the community declines to the point at which few of the persons being currently exposed are susceptible to the infection. In other words the epidemic wave ends when the number of susceptibles is too small to keep the disease spreading. Consequently the year following a year of abnormally high incidence will have very few cases because of the small number of susceptibles. The longer the interval between epidemic waves the greater the number of susceptibles who will have been added to the community with the result that when the infection is introduced again a larger number of cases will develop. Because of the late beginning of a wave sometimes the number of susceptibles is not sufficiently reduced before the seasonal decline and the disease may carry over into the next season with a

sels but finding no portal of escape. The likelihood of spread of an infection is thus conditioned in large part by the portal of escape and as a consequence by the anatomic physiologic and the cultural factors relevant to a particular portal.

**Respiratory Escape** Unquestionably the respiratory tract provides the most important portal of escape and the one that is most difficult to control. The respiratory tract secretions are driven from the body by the propulsive force of chest muscles and diaphragm varying from the quiet exhalation of a person at rest to the forceful ejection that accompanies a cough or a sneeze. As the respiratory passages are normally moist and bathed in a secretion, slight departures from normal as a result of inapparent infection pass unnoticed. Furthermore, the nose and the mouth serve as portals of both escape and entry. Normal association of persons brings the portals of escape of one person only a few feet or inches from the portals of entry of another. These characteristics not only facilitate the spread of infection from the respiratory portal but to all intents and purposes preclude control measures such as have been so effective in dealing with diseases caused by organisms which escape by other portals.

**Intestinal Escape** By contrast escape through the gastrointestinal portal lends itself more readily to control. Whereas the respiratory tract is a dead end, the gastrointestinal tract is a tube through the body. The normal discharge is through defecation, an intermittent physiologic function usually performed once or twice a day but often less frequently. In most societies cultural patterns attach an element of modesty and therefore privacy to defecation. Therefore gastrointestinal escape can be limited to certain locations where the material can be collected and treated to destroy pathogens. Thus while the absolute numbers of microorganisms that escape may possibly be greater than those that escape from the respiratory passages, the associated anatomic physiologic and cultural characteristics are such that gastrointestinal escape constitutes a less dangerous and more readily controllable mechanism, as shown by man's success in controlling such diseases as typhoid or

cholera as contrasted with failure to control the common cold or in the absence of immunization diphtheria or smallpox.

**Genitourinary Escape** Somewhat similar considerations determine the epidemiologic significance of escape by the genitourinary portals except in those situations in which spread may occur through direct physical contact as in the spread of venereal diseases. On the other hand it is essential to remember that urination occurs more frequently than does defecation; that in a rural population it is commonly performed wherever the person is working and thus may result in contamination of the working environment. A striking example of this is seen in the spread of bilharzia: the schistosome eggs escaping with the urine and contaminating the irrigation ditches or rice paddies where the workers' hands, arms and feet come in contact with water containing cercariae after snail passage.

**Abnormal Portals** In certain cases organisms may escape through artificial portals which because of their character may be less important than the normal portals. The scarlet fever patient who develops a draining otitis media is discharging streptococci with the ear drainage but is far less likely to spread infection than the patient with a residual sinusitis or pharyngeal involvement. The ear discharge is propelled only by the force of gravity or pressure within the middle ear; the discharge is an obvious abnormality and can be caught on an ear plug of cotton and thus destroyed. Thus even though the number of organisms in the discharge from an abscess may be greater than in a similar quantity of respiratory secretion, the physiologic factors are so entirely different that the epidemiologic significance is far less.

**Percutaneous escape** is similarly effected in the absence of an anatomic portal. However this necessitates the intervention of an outside force which brings about a break in the skin to release the organism. In diseases such as malaria, yellow fever, typhus or bubonic plague, the blood-sucking insect effects the escape from the reservoir and later brings about both the transfer of the organism and its entry into the new host. Man plays the same role in the case of hepatitis, malaria or syphilis spread through blood

of the impact of the degenerative diseases which are killing the carriers produced in former years. In other words if we made no further improvements in our community sanitation measures, which have been so effective in the control of typhoid we would nevertheless see a steady decline in the typhoid rate as the number of sources (the reservoir) declined as a result of the death of carriers from conditions entirely unrelated to their carrier state. Thus so long as we so much as hold the line in sanitation, typhoid will become less and less serious and will ultimately disappear simply because of the disappearance of the reservoir of chronic carriers. In the United States we have already reached the point at which the principal factor in the year to year decline in the typhoid rate is not the current improvements in sanitation but deaths of carriers who were produced in former years when the disease was far more prevalent.

The epidemiologic influence of a declining reservoir is seen also in tuberculosis. The tuberculosis death rate has been falling steadily from a rate of over 350/100 000 population in 1875 in a typical state (Massachusetts) to a rate of only 6.4 in 1960. This has meant that there have been fewer active cases to spread infection to others. The drop in the percentage of the population at a given age who are tuberculin positive (infected) gives striking evidence of the reduction in the spread of infection. Concurrent with the decline in mortality and infection rates has been a shift into the older age groups due not to an increase in cases in the elderly but rather to a greater drop in the rates in the young adults than in those over 50. In 1960 in the United States 81 per cent of the total tuberculosis deaths were in persons 45 or older as contrasted with 27 per cent in 1915. 41 per cent were in persons 65 or older. These older persons are those who lived through an era when there was more tuberculosis than at present; they represent the survivors of the cohorts who were infected in earlier years. In essence this means that the principal reservoir of tuberculosis is in older persons. Many of these are dying of tuberculosis. Doubtless an even larger number of persons with clinically inactive infections are dying of other conditions before they break down with the

active and communicable form of the disease. The result is a rapid disappearance of the reservoir of tuberculosis as infected and therefore potentially infectious persons are dying faster than they are being replaced. It is popular (and clinically flattering) to attribute the current sharp decline in tuberculosis mortality to the use of current chemotherapeutic agents notably streptomycin, isoniazid and para-aminosalicylic acid. Unquestionably these drugs have prolonged many lives and have rendered many patients non-infectious but the disappearance of the reservoir is probably a more significant factor than is any form of therapy. As in the case of typhoid fever we are currently reaping the benefit of programs instituted by earlier generations in that the reservoirs are predominantly older persons who lived through an era when the disease was more common and infection more prevalent and are now reaching the age when mortality rates are high and therefore are dying off more rapidly than they are being replaced.

### ESCAPE FROM RESERVOIR

The mere existence of a reservoir of infection of a certain size does not mean that there is an equivalent number of potential sources of infection. To spread to other persons the microorganism must find a portal of escape from the reservoir. Lacking such there can be no spread. Actually there are numerous situations in which there is a large reservoir but little or no transfer. The classic example of this is in the case of trichinosis, an infection in which the trichinal larvae are encysted within the muscle fibers. Although human infection rates in the United States have been estimated to be as high as 15 per cent, none of these persons is a source of potential spread unless man turns to cannibalism. The only significant part of the total reservoir is that in swine, since eating infected pork permits release of the trichinal larvae which mature in the intestinal tract of the eater where they mate and produce a new generation of larvae which migrate to the muscles. Most of the reservoir of syphilis is likewise of no significance as a source of infection inasmuch as the spirochetes in late syphilis are deeply seated, damaging the walls of the blood vessels.

sels but finding no portal of escape. The likelihood of spread of an infection is thus conditioned in large part by the portal of escape and as a consequence by the anatomic, the physiologic and the cultural factors relevant to a particular portal.

**Respiratory Escape.** Unquestionably the respiratory tract provides the most important portal of escape and the one that is most difficult to control. The respiratory tract secretions are driven from the body by the propulsive force of chest muscles and diaphragm varying from the quiet exhalation of a person at rest to the forceful ejection that accompanies a cough or a sneeze. As the respiratory passages are normally moist and bathed in a secretion, slight departures from normal as a result of inapparent infection pass unnoticed. Furthermore, the nose and the mouth serve as portals of both escape and entry. Normal association of persons brings the portals of escape of one person only a few feet or inches from the portals of entry of another. These characteristics not only facilitate the spread of infection from the respiratory portal but to all intents and purposes preclude control measures such as have been so effective in dealing with diseases caused by organisms which escape by other portals.

**Intestinal Escape.** By contrast escape through the gastrointestinal portal lends itself more readily to control. Whereas the respiratory tract is a dead end, the gastrointestinal tract is a tube through the body. The normal discharge is through defecation, an intermittent physiologic function usually performed once or twice a day but often less frequently. In most societies cultural patterns attach an element of modesty and therefore privacy to defecation. Therefore gastrointestinal escape can be limited to certain locations where the material can be collected and treated to destroy pathogens. Thus while the absolute numbers of microorganisms that escape may possibly be greater than those that escape from the respiratory passages, the associated anatomic, physiologic and cultural characteristics are such that gastrointestinal escape constitutes a less dangerous and more readily controllable mechanism as shown by man's success in controlling such diseases as typhoid or

cholera as contrasted with failure to control the common cold or in the absence of immunization diphtheria or smallpox.

**Genitourinary Escape.** Somewhat similar considerations determine the epidemiologic significance of escape by the genitourinary portals except in those situations in which spread may occur through direct physical contact as in the spread of venereal diseases. On the other hand it is essential to remember that urination occurs more frequently than does defecation; that in a rural population it is commonly performed wherever the person is working and thus may result in contamination of the working environment. A striking example of this is seen in the spread of bilharzia, the schistosome eggs escaping with the urine and contaminating the irrigation ditches or rice paddies where the workers' hands, arms and feet come in contact with water containing cercariae after snail passage.

**Abnormal Portals.** In certain cases organisms may escape through artificial portals which because of their character may be less important than the normal portals. The scarlet fever patient who develops a draining otitis media is discharging streptococci with the ear drainage but is far less likely to spread infection than the patient with a residual sinusitis or pharyngeal involvement. The ear discharge is propelled only by the force of gravity or pressure within the middle ear; the discharge is an obvious abnormality and can be caught on an ear plug of cotton and thus destroyed. Thus even though the number of organisms in the discharge from an abscess may be greater than in a similar quantity of respiratory secretion, the physiologic factors are so entirely different that the epidemiologic significance is far less.

**Percutaneous escape** is similarly effected in the absence of an anatomic portal. However, this necessitates the intervention of an outside force which brings about a break in the skin to release the organism. In diseases such as malaria, yellow fever, typhus or bubonic plague, the blood-sucking insect effects the escape from the reservoir and later brings about both the transfer of the organism and its entry into the new host. Man plays the same role in the case of hepatitis, malaria or syphilis spread through blood



of the impact of the degenerative diseases which are killing the carriers produced in former years. In other words, if we made no further improvements in our community sanitation measures, which have been so effective in the control of typhoid, we would nevertheless see a steady decline in the typhoid rate as the number of sources (the reservoir) declined as a result of the death of carriers from conditions entirely unrelated to their carrier state. Thus so long as we so much as hold the line in sanitation typhoid will become less and less serious and will ultimately disappear simply because of the disappearance of the reservoir of chronic carriers. In the United States we have already reached the point at which the principal factor in the year to year decline in the typhoid rate is not the current improvements in sanitation but deaths of carriers who were produced in former years when the disease was far more prevalent.

The epidemiologic influence of a declining reservoir is seen also in tuberculosis. The tuberculosis death rate has been falling steadily from a rate of over 350/100 000 population in 1875 in a typical state (Massachusetts) to a rate of only 6.4 in 1960. This has meant that there have been fewer active cases to spread infection to others. The drop in the percentage of the population at a given age who are tuberculin positive (infected) gives striking evidence of the reduction in the spread of infection. Concurrent with the decline in mortality and infection rates has been a shift into the older age groups due not to an increase in cases in the elderly but rather to a greater drop in the rates in the young adults than in those over 50. In 1960 in the United States 81 per cent of the total tuberculosis deaths were in persons 45 or older as contrasted with 27 per cent in 1915. 41 per cent were in persons 65 or older. These older persons are those who lived through an era when there was more tuberculosis than at present; they represent the survivors of the cohorts who were infected in earlier years. In essence this means that the principal reservoir of tuberculosis is in older persons. Many of these are dying of tuberculosis. Doubtless an even larger number of persons with clinically inactive infections are dying of other conditions before they break down with the

active and communicable form of the disease. The result is a rapid disappearance of the reservoir of tuberculosis as infected and therefore potentially infectious persons are dying faster than they are being replaced. It is popular (and clinically flattering) to attribute the current sharp decline in tuberculosis mortality to the use of current chemotherapeutic agents notably streptomycin, isoniazid and para-aminosalicylic acid. Undoubtedly these drugs have prolonged many lives and have rendered many patients non-infectious but the disappearance of the reservoir is probably a more significant factor than is any form of therapy. As in the case of typhoid fever we are currently reaping the benefit of programs instituted by earlier generations in that the reservoirs are predominantly older persons who lived through an era when the disease was more common and infection more prevalent and are now reaching the age when mortality rates are high and therefore are dying off more rapidly than they are being replaced.

### ESCAPE FROM RESERVOIR

The mere existence of a reservoir of infection of a certain size does not mean that there is an equivalent number of potential sources of infection. To spread to other persons the microorganism must find a portal of escape from the reservoir. Lacking such there can be no spread. Actually there are numerous situations in which there is a large reservoir but little or no transfer. The classic example of this is in the case of trichinosis, an infection in which the trichinal larvae are encysted within the muscle fibers. Although human infection rates in the United States have been estimated to be as high as 15 per cent none of these persons is a source of potential spread unless man turns to cannibalism. The only significant part of the total reservoir is that in swine since eating infected pork permits release of the trichinal larvae which mature in the intestinal tract of the eater where they mate and produce a new generation of larvae which migrate to the muscles. Most of the reservoir of syphilis is likewise of no significance as a source of infection inasmuch as the spirochetes in late syphilis are deeply seated, damaging the walls of the blood ves-

the secondary levels has changed with the development of consolidated schools which bring together in an urban environment children who otherwise would have been relatively isolated in small or even one room rural schools. The school bus which has brought the children to the consolidated school has contributed further to direct respiratory association just as within an urban area crowded buses and subway trains bring the individual into all but actual facial contact with innumerable persons any one or several of whom may be sources of infection.

Aside from these community factors that condition the degree of direct respiratory spread we must recognize factors within the home. During the past half century there have been striking shifts in the age distribution of certain infections such as scarlet fever that cannot be explained on the basis of immunization or improvement in community sanitation. This phenomenon was also seen in diphtheria before the advent of active immunization. To a certain degree this shift of disease into the older age groups may be correlated with better housing but the change in family size is probably of greater significance. In earlier days when families were large the younger preschool children who had relatively few extra familial contacts were exposed to the infections brought into the home by older siblings. With the decline in family size and the increase in the number of one or two child families (the children in the latter case being closer in age) the preschool group has been less exposed with a resultant shift of infections into the school age group. In other words the social pattern of family size has resulted in a somewhat increased isolation of the highly susceptible infant and preschool child with a resultant delay in direct respiratory transfer of infection.

In quite a different way cultural factors affect the degree of direct physical contact that results in the spread of venereal infections. The ultimate factor here is biologic only in the sense of response to a fundamental biologic urge. However cultural patterns which regulate reactions to this instinct have developed. The pattern of sexual behavior is a creation of the human

mind and therefore has developed somewhat differently in different societies. Trial marriages and mistresses have become a part of certain cultures and are defended on the grounds of deterrents to divorce which may be looked on as a greater social evil. Some cultures have tolerated and even licensed prostitution. Even in a culture such as has developed in the United States the attitude toward promiscuity varies greatly among different social groups as manifested by the extent of extramarital relations and community attitudes toward prostitution. Thus while in our culture we may think of sexual contacts (direct physical spread) from the standpoint of morality we cannot ignore the existence of social and anthropologic factors both in our culture and that of other nations that have influenced the extent of such contacts and thus the incidence of venereal disease.

#### INDIRECT TRANSFER

The probability of indirect spread depends on two factors: the ability of the microorganism to survive for a suitable period of time outside its host and the existence of a suitable vehicle by means of which it can be transferred to a new host.

**Resistance of Organisms.** Microorganisms differ greatly in their sensitivity to the effect of potentially damaging external forces of the environment such as acidity, drying, heat, radiation and the action of various chemicals. Typhoid bacilli can survive in a more acid medium than can dysentery bacilli and both are more resistant to acid than is the cholera vibrio. As a consequence of these differences, milk plays a definite role in the spread of typhoid, a more minor one in the spread of dysentery and none at all in the spread of cholera. The vegetative form of the *Entamoeba histolytica* is so delicate that it dies quickly outside the human body and even if it should be swallowed would be destroyed by the normal acidity of the stomach. By contrast the amebic cysts are sufficiently resistant to acidity, drying and temperature that they spread readily through water or food and if swallowed are not destroyed in the stomach. Organisms which develop protective spores or cyst walls are obviously more resistant than those which

transfusion The lack of a normal portal of escape and the nature of the force that effects escape through artificial portals definitely facilitates control of these diseases

**Duration of Escape** Diseases differ greatly in the period of time over which the organisms escape from the reservoir In some infections the period is very short as in the case of influenza or measles which are infectious for only a few days Other diseases such as diphtheria or scarlet fever remain communicable for several weeks whereas still others such as leprosy may continue to be infectious throughout life In general the period of communicability of the viral infections is shorter than that of bacterial or mycotic infections

The infection potential (degree of communicability) of a disease varies inversely with the length of the period of communicability A disease with as short a period of communicability as measles or influenza (only a few days) must spread readily to other persons if the infection is to survive in nature Were its communicability as slight as that of leprosy it would never have appeared as a disease or to put it another way would have died out long ago Conversely leprosy has such a low infection potential that its period of organism escape must be long Were its period of communicability as short as that of measles or diphtheria it also would have died out centuries ago or would never have got started The inverse relationship between infection potential and duration of escape of the organism is a biologic necessity

## TRANSFER OF INFECTION

In order to establish a new infection pathogenic organisms that have escaped from the reservoir must be transferred to a new host This transfer may be either direct or indirect

### DIRECT TRANSFER

Direct transfer implies such close association between source and new host that there has been a virtually instantaneous passage In some diseases this may be through actual physical contact as in the spread of venereal disease Direct respiratory spread does not

necessarily imply actual contact as in kissing but it does require such close physical approximation that the organisms breathed out by the source are immediately inhaled by the victim The fact that the respiratory portals serve for both escape and entry obviously facilitates direct transfer as normal human relations frequently bring the nose and the mouth of one person only a few feet (or even inches) from the nose and the mouth of another

While anatomic and physiologic considerations are important factors in direct spread sociologic economic and cultural factors are of equal if not greater ultimate significance as it is these that bring people into close physical contact or association The degree of direct respiratory spread is a function of crowding i.e. the frequency with which persons come close enough to each other to permit one person to inhale the organisms that the other has just exhaled In the crowded low economic section of a large city the individual obviously will have close respiratory association with more people (more potential sources of infection) than will the person who lives in the less congested high income area This association finds expression in the different age distribution of respiratory infections in the two groups In the former situation a higher proportion of the children of a given age will have had measles or (in the days prior to active immunization) be Schick negative than in the latter situation The crowding that is seen in institutions of various types or in military barracks similarly favors direct respiratory spread

Until recent years similar differences were observed in comparisons of rural and urban groups the former showing much less evidence of direct respiratory spread owing to relative isolation Today this difference is less noticeable and often even absent due to changes brought about by developments in transportation Improved highways and economic factors which have made automobiles available to families previously served only by a horse or possessing no independent transportation have markedly reduced the isolation of the rural dwellers bringing them frequently into more crowded urban areas As a result of better transportation the system of education at the elementary and

the secondary levels has changed with the development of consolidated schools which bring together in an urban environment children who otherwise would have been relatively isolated in small or even one-room rural schools. The school bus which has brought the children to the consolidated school has contributed further to direct respiratory association just within an urban area crowded buses and subway trains bring the individual into all but actual facial contact with innumerable persons any one or several of whom may be sources of infection.

Aside from these community factors that condition the degree of direct respiratory spread we must recognize factors within the home. During the past half century there have been striking shifts in the age distribution of certain infections such as scarlet fever that cannot be explained on the basis of immunization or improvement in community sanitation. This phenomenon was also seen in diphtheria before the advent of active immunization. To a certain degree this shift of disease into the older age groups may be correlated with better housing but the change in family size is probably of greater significance. In earlier days when families were large the younger preschool children who had relatively few extra familial contacts were exposed to the infections brought into the home by older siblings. With the decline in family size and the increase in the number of one or two child families (the children in the latter case being closer in age) the preschool group has been less exposed with a resultant shift of infections into the school age group. In other words the social pattern of family size has resulted in a somewhat increased isolation of the highly susceptible infant and preschool child with a resultant delay in direct respiratory transfer of infection.

In quite a different way cultural factors affect the degree of direct physical contact that results in the spread of venereal infections. The ultimate factor here is biologic only in the sense of response to a fundamental biologic urge. However cultural patterns which regulate reactions to this instinct have developed. The pattern of sexual behavior is a creation of the human

mind and therefore has developed somewhat differently in different societies. Trial marriages and mistresses have become a part of certain cultures and are defended on the grounds of deterrents to divorce which may be looked on as a greater social evil. Some cultures have tolerated and even licensed prostitution. Even in a culture such as has developed in the United States the attitude toward promiscuity varies greatly among different social groups as manifested by the extent of extramarital relations and community attitudes toward prostitution. Thus while in our culture we may think of sexual contacts (direct physical spread) from the standpoint of morality we cannot ignore the existence of social and anthropologic factors both in our culture and that of other nations that have influenced the extent of such contacts and thus the incidence of venereal disease.

#### INDIRECT TRANSFER

The probability of indirect spread depends on two factors: the ability of the microorganism to survive for a suitable period of time outside its host and the existence of a suitable vehicle by means of which it can be transferred to a new host.

**Resistance of Organisms.** Microorganisms differ greatly in their sensitivity to the effect of potentially damaging external forces of the environment such as acidity, drying, heat, radiation and the action of various chemicals. Typhoid bacilli can survive in a more acid medium than can dysentery bacilli and both are more resistant to acid than is the cholera vibrio. As a consequence of these differences, milk plays a definite role in the spread of typhoid, a more minor one in the spread of dysentery and none at all in the spread of cholera. The vegetative form of the *Entamoeba histolytica* is so delicate that it dies quickly outside the human body and, even if it should be swallowed, would be destroyed by the normal acidity of the stomach. By contrast the amebic cysts are sufficiently resistant to acidity, drying and temperature that they spread readily through water or food and if swallowed are not destroyed in the stomach. Organisms which develop protective spores or cyst walls are obviously more resistant than those which

transfusion. The lack of a normal portal of escape and the nature of the force that effects escape through artificial portals definitely facilitates control of these diseases.

**Duration of Escape.** Diseases differ greatly in the period of time over which the organisms escape from the reservoir. In some infections the period is very short as in the case of influenza or measles which are infectious for only a few days. Other diseases such as diphtheria or scarlet fever remain communicable for several weeks; whereas still others such as leprosy may continue to be infectious throughout life. In general the period of communicability of the viral infections is shorter than that of bacterial or mycotic infections.

The infection potential (degree of communicability) of a disease varies inversely with the length of the period of communicability. A disease with as short a period of communicability as measles or influenza (only a few days) must spread readily to other persons if the infection is to survive in nature. Were its communicability as slight as that of leprosy it would never have appeared as a disease or to put it another way would have died out long ago. Conversely leprosy has such a low infection potential that its period of organism escape must be long. Were its period of communicability as short as that of measles or diphtheria it also would have died out centuries ago or would never have got started. The inverse relationship between infection potential and duration of escape of the organism is a biologic necessity.

## TRANSFER OF INFECTION

In order to establish a new infection pathogenic organisms that have escaped from the reservoir must be transferred to a new host. This transfer may be either direct or indirect.

### DIRECT TRANSFER

Direct transfer implies such close association between source and new host that there has been a virtually instantaneous passage. In some diseases this may be through actual physical contact as in the spread of venereal disease. Direct respiratory spread does not

necessarily imply actual contact as in kissing but it does require such close physical approximation that the organisms breathed out by the source are immediately inhaled by the victim. The fact that the respiratory portals serve for both escape and entry obviously facilitates direct transfer as normal human relations frequently bring the nose and the mouth of one person only a few feet (or even inches) from the nose and the mouth of another.

While anatomic and physiologic considerations are important factors in direct spread sociologic, economic and cultural factors are of equal if not greater ultimate significance as it is these that bring people into close physical contact or association. The degree of direct respiratory spread is a function of crowding i.e. the frequency with which persons come close enough to each other to permit one person to inhale the organisms that the other has just exhaled. In the crowded low economic section of a large city the individual obviously will have close respiratory association with more people (more potential sources of infection) than will the person who lives in the less congested high income area. This association finds expression in the different age distribution of respiratory infections in the two groups. In the former situation a higher proportion of the children of a given age will have had measles or (in the days prior to active immunization) be Schick negative than in the latter situation. The crowding that is seen in institutions of various types or in military barracks similarly favors direct respiratory spread.

Until recent years similar differences were observed in comparisons of rural and urban groups the former showing much less evidence of direct respiratory spread owing to relative isolation. Today this difference is less noticeable and often even absent due to changes brought about by developments in transportation. Improved highways and economic factors which have made automobiles available to families previously served only by a horse or possessing no independent transportation have markedly reduced the isolation of the rural dwellers bringing them frequently into more crowded urban areas. As a result of better transportation the system of education at the elementary and

planation for the well recognized fact that a carrier may handle food for long periods without producing recognizable disease. Similar considerations enter into the chance of spread of other diseases through food.

**AIR** The advent of the bacteriologic era gave support to the concept of the spread of disease by air but this idea was discarded as a result of the studies of Flügge who postulated that bacteria are not suspended in the air but fall to earth in discrete droplets unless inhaled through direct transfer. Thus air was considered to play no role in the spread of infection until some years later when the studies of Wells showed that various microorganisms can remain suspended in air in the form of droplet nuclei. These may be as small as single organisms covered with a thin film of moisture held on the surface by capillary attraction greater than the pressure of vaporization. On this basis it became clear that air may serve as a potential vehicle for spread of infection as shown by the occurrence of certain infections explicable only on the basis of air transfer.

The fact that under certain conditions air can serve as a vehicle for transfer of infection does not mean that it does so to an important degree. There is a vast difference between a bacteriologic possibility and an epidemiologic probability. Experience has shown that air may serve as a vehicle under special circumstances as in operating rooms, nurseries and possibly other hospital situations in which a patient is essentially immobilized under conditions which eliminate or minimize the chances of direct respiratory transfer. Under such conditions the few organisms that are in the air and fall into a wound or are inhaled may be of significance because of the high level of susceptibility. However, under conditions of normal community life the number of organisms in the inhaled air is so small as contrasted with those acquired through direct respiratory association that they have no significance in persons who through these daily contacts have of necessity a fairly high level of resistance. It is thus only in certain diseases (such as Q fever) or under special circumstances that air transfer is of appreciable epidemiologic significance.

**FOMITES** At one time various inanimate

objects such as bedding, books, clothing, doorknobs, money or toilet seats were looked on as important vehicles for the spread of infection. In the absence of known exposure to a recognized source of infection it was easy to speculate as to contact with some object with which a person had had direct or indirect contact which resulted in contamination. The later development of knowledge of carriers and subclinical infections resulted in a de-emphasis of the role of fomites with resultant reduced attention to the elaborate rituals of disinfection that characterized public health practice at the turn of the century. While doubtless there are situations in which certain fomites may convey infection, their role is usually very minor and far smaller than that commonly attributed to them by the general public which characteristically clings quite tenaciously to basic ideas acquired in childhood.

**SOIL** For certain infections the earth may serve as a vehicle or rather as a harborage for organisms deposited on it. Anthrax and tetanus bacilli may persist in the ground for many years, protected against adverse environmental factors by their heavy and resistant spore walls. The character of the soil and its cover of vegetation are major factors in the epidemiology of hookworm disease in that they affect the survival of the larvae between hatching of the egg and effective contact with human skin. If the soil is dry, sandy and not protected by vegetation, the larvae will die quickly through exposure to the sun, whereas larvae on moist soil protected by adequate vegetation may remain alive for long periods of time and hence have a better chance of reaching a new victim. The probability that the soil will be contaminated and that bare skin will come in contact with it depends of course on the culture and the economy of the people, viz. their habits of defecation and the extent to which shoes are worn or agricultural patterns that bring the hands in contact with the soil.

**INSECT SPREAD** Whereas ticks and mites (which are arthropods and not insects) may serve as reservoirs of infection, insects can serve only as animate vehicles of spread. As such they serve as vectors, a term once used to refer to all types of vehicles, both animate and inanimate, but now by common usage

ing preparation are also those that are not cooked subsequently or are not cooked to the point of adequate heating of the interior of the food mass

The likelihood that food will cause infectious disease on a given occasion depends on a series of independent variables

1 The probability that the food handler is infected

2 The number of viable organisms discharged This is extremely variable ranging from very few on certain days to enormous numbers on other days This variation is dependent to a high degree on the speed of passage through the intestine If a typhoid carrier is constipated the bacilli discharged from the gall bladder may be largely overgrown by the colon bacilli before they are discharged with the feces whereas the number of viable bacilli may be large if the carrier is suffering from a diarrhea or even has a fairly rapid passage of intestinal content

3 Contamination of the hands at the time of defecation This again is highly variable ranging from gross fecal soiling to minimal bacterial contamination

4 Thoroughness of hand cleansing after contamination likewise a varying quantity depending on the habits of the individual Even at best and using thorough scrubbing far beyond normal usage there can be no assurance of complete removal of all contaminating pathogens

5 Duration of time and type of activities between defecation and handling of food Intestinal pathogens on the skin tend to die fairly quickly even in the absence of further cleansing procedures In addition the habits of the individual may lead to repeated hand washing during the interval between defecation and handling of food Thus a housewife who is a typhoid carrier and normally defecates after breakfast usually will not handle food until several hours later during which interval some of the organisms on the hands will have died and others been removed by the numerous handwashings incidental to her housework Thus she will have few organisms left to transfer to food in contrast with the larger number that would have been present had she set aside her housework in favor of preparation of food for a noon time social gathering

6 Type of food handled whether to be cooked or eaten without further heating adequate to destroy the pathogens

7 Quantity eaten

8 Susceptibility of those eating the food

Very obviously, there is a vast difference between an occasion when a carrier discharges many organisms, heavily contaminates the hands, washes carelessly promptly handles food which will not be cooked and will be eaten in large quantity by susceptible persons as contrasted with an occasion when the carrier gives off few viable organisms barely soils the hands washes thoroughly delays several hours before handling food which will be cooked or if not cooked will be eaten in small quantity or by people who are resistant In the former case an outbreak of food borne disease will result in the latter the number of organisms even if ingested by a susceptible person may not be enough to produce illness but will evoke an antibody response which adds to the person's resistance Thus it is a common observation that typhoid carriers may handle food over long periods of time without causing recognizable disease and yet on a given day will cause a serious outbreak On such occasions the victims are not members of the carrier's immediate family but rather are persons who do not regularly eat food prepared by the carrier Over the years the carrier has latently immunized (see p 903) her immediate family through repeated small doses of organisms which were adequate to stimulate antibody production but never adequate to cause disease To cause infections new susceptibles must be brought within her sphere of influence

From the foregoing it is apparent that the transmission of disease depends on a series of related yet independent variables or probabilities to each of which we might in theory attach a mathematical value The probability of simultaneous occurrence of two or more independent variables is the product rather than the sum of the individual probabilities In this case there are at least 8 variables the individual probabilities of which must be multiplied by each other to determine the likelihood of disease from this person on a given occasion From the magnitude of this product is to be found the ex

infectious. By contrast if the period is long the majority of the mosquitoes that acquire the infection will not live long enough to become infectious. Thus in the first situation the disease spreads readily and becomes established among the people once it has been introduced. In the latter situation it fails to become established and will even die out in spite of repeated reintroduction simply because too few mosquitoes live long enough to become infectious. A few cases of indigenous malaria may develop as a few mosquitoes succeed in living through a long period of extrinsic incubation but the number that survive is so small that over a period of time the infection dies out even in the absence of effective mosquito control or eradication procedures. Thus the incidence and the resulting prevalence of malaria infection in a given area are dependent in part on geographic factors which govern the availability of a suitable vector in part on climatic factors governing the duration of extrinsic incubation and in part on social or economic factors that determine the extent of contact between man and mosquitoes.

### ENTRY OF INFECTION

To a high degree the entry of an organism is the converse of its escape depending on the portal of entry and the numerous anatomic physiologic and sociologic factors associated with that portal. As in the case of the portal of escape there is a general relationship between the portal of entry and the subsequent clinical manifestations: those organisms entering through the respiratory portals producing respiratory tract involvement, whereas those which are ingested affect the gastrointestinal tract. However this generalization while useful in the epidemiologic investigation of a disease of undetermined character cannot be carried too far for organisms that are ingested may attack the throat (milk borne scarlet fever or diphtheria) while certain viruses that apparently are spread by way of the respiratory tract appear to be responsible for cases or outbreaks of nausea vomiting and diarrhea.

It is important to remember also that several and at times abnormal portals of entry can exist and that the character and the severity of a disease may be altered by the portal

of entry. Plague bacilli entering through flea bite produce lymph node involvement (bubonic plague) whereas those which are inhaled produce pneumonia (pneumonic plague). Similarly inhalation of relatively small numbers of the rickettsiae of Q fever results in illness whereas the drinking of milk containing large numbers of rickettsiae from infected cattle appears to produce an asymptomatic infection detectable only by antibody formation. Careless use of rectal thermometers or tubes within a nursery has resulted in spread of gonococcal infection which has manifested itself through an asymptomatic proctitis complicated by gonococcal arthritis. The classic example of modification through abnormal portal was the old but now discarded practice of smallpox inoculation which through introduction of the virus into the skin, produced a milder form of the disease than resulted from respiratory entry. In the pre Jennerian days this had been the basis of smallpox control.

### SUSCEPTIBILITY

Just as the likelihood that an individual attacked by a specific microorganism will be come infected depends on his degree of resistance so also the incidence of a particular disease within a community is dependent on the extent to which the people in general are resistant. The individual may acquire resistance from an attack of the disease from a series of repeated small doses of organisms (latent immunization) or through artificial immunization. The resistance of the community depends on the number of persons who through one or another of these mechanisms have developed an adequate level of personal resistance.

For certain diseases the baby possesses a high level of resistance at birth because of the presence of antibodies that have passed through the placenta from the mother to the fetus. This passive resistance is dependent on the resistance of the mother and is lacking if the mother has not herself acquired an active resistance. It persists longer than does the passive resistance from injection of antibodies falling off at about 3 to 4 months and in most cases disappearing by the end of six months. For certain infections however the maternal antibody even if present in sig



limited to refer only to insects. The female insect even though infected does not transmit her infection to the next generation through the egg. This means that the insect to pass infectious disease to man must make two contacts first to acquire the organism from a reservoir and then to transmit it to a new host. This in turn requires that the insect after acquiring the infection must live long enough to become infectious, a factor that varies in importance according to the mode of transfer.

The simplest type of transfer and one that does not necessitate direct personal contact is that of mechanical surface contamination as illustrated by the fly that soils its feet while walking over feces containing typhoid or dysentery bacilli and then rubs these organisms onto food by walking over it. In other instances there may be internal contamination as the fly feeding on the excreta ingests pathogens which pass inertly through its gut and are deposited on food through defecation. In either situation the importance of flies in the spread of the infection will depend in part on the number of flies available in part on the number of persons discharging the pathogens in their feces and in part on the practices with respect to disposal of excreta and food protection. Under certain circumstances flies can be and have been factors of major importance under other circumstances they have been of no importance.

The biting insect by contrast must have actual physical contact with the reservoir as well as with the new victim. This depends to a high degree on man's habits and customs such as type of housing (including use of screens), type of clothing and his presence in places where and at times when the insect is biting. Transfer in this case may be by simple contamination of the mouth parts as in the case of African sleeping sickness (trypanosomiasis) or through systemic infection of the insect as in the case of the rat flea in bubonic plague or the louse in epidemic typhus. In these latter two the insect is also suffering from and usually dies from its infection. Thus as Zimser has stated the insect (if it could have a point of view) might look on man as a vector of disease.

Whereas transmission by flies, fleas and lice involves a relatively simple mechanism

that by mosquitoes is more complicated in that it introduces a new variable namely the period of extrinsic incubation. By this is meant the length of time between the intake of pathogens and the ability of the mosquito to transmit them to a new host, or in other words the time for the organisms to migrate from the mosquito stomach through the coelomic cavity to the salivary glands, whence they are injected into the wound whenever the mosquito bites. During this period of migration there may be changes in the pathogen as in the case of malaria but a change of this sort does not occur in yellow fever. A comparable phenomenon is seen in rabies. Before a dog that has been bitten by a rabid animal can transmit the infection the virus must travel from the wound to the salivary glands a migration that may require several weeks or even months. The virus does not appear in the saliva until a few days prior to the onset of symptoms. Thus even though the dog is incubating rabies one can assume that it was not in an infectious condition if it is still alive and well at the end of 10 to 14 days the usual period of observation after biting.

The length of the period of extrinsic incubation depends on several environmental or biologic variables. As the mosquito is a cold blooded animal the speed of its metabolic processes varies with the external temperature. Thus the period of extrinsic incubation is short in regions of high temperature and longer in colder climates. It varies also with humidity, species of anophelids and strain of plasmodium, i.e. there is a short period with *Plasmodium falciparum* in the *Anopheles gambiae* of equatorial Africa, a longer period with *Plasmodium vivax* in *Anopheles quadrimaculatus* in a temperate zone such as the United States and an even longer period for *Plasmodium malariae* wherever it occurs.

The duration of the period of extrinsic incubation is in many respects the most important factor in determining the prevalence and the incidence of a disease like malaria in an area where a suitable vector exists. If the period is short a high proportion of mosquitoes that pick up the sexual forms of the plasmodium by feeding on infected humans will survive long enough to have the organisms reach the salivary gland and thus become

sons) is introduced into a completely susceptible community. It will produce 2 cases each of whom in turn will produce 2 more or 4. Each of these will produce 2 more with the resultant development of 8 cases. Therefore the spread of the infection within the community will be by geometric progression as follows: 1—2—4—8—16—32—64—128— Under such circumstances the infection would increase rapidly ultimately declining only when most of the persons exposed are those who have already been infected and recovered (resistant).

If by contrast this same infection were introduced into a community in which half the people were resistant (either thru artificial or latent immunization or prior attack) the one case exposing 2 others, one of whom was already resistant, would produce only 1 new infection. This person in turn exposing 2 others, only 1 of whom was susceptible, would also produce only 1 new infection. The result would be a series of sporadic infections: 1—1—1—1—1—1—1—1— rather than the explosive outbreak. Thus the incidence of the disease has been reduced not simply to half but out of all proportion to the fraction of the population that is resistant. If the infection potential had been 3, this same result would have been achieved if two thirds of the population were resistant; if it had been 4, only if three fourths were protected. Thus the greater the infection potential (communicability) the greater must be the fraction of the population which is resistant if the disease is to be reduced to mere sporadic proportions.

Fortunately experience with artificial active immunization bears out the foregoing theoretical reasoning. In such diseases as smallpox or diphtheria, control of which is based on active immunization, the incidence of the disease has been reduced out of all proportion to the fractions of the population that have been actively protected. Those who are not protected and are therefore susceptible have a vicarious protection through the immunization of a large enough fraction of the total population so that mere chance reduces the likelihood that an infected person will come in effective contact with a susceptible.

Obviously in the foregoing it has been assumed that the person who is resistant does

not develop either the carrier state or a mild inapparent infection as a result of a resistance high enough to protect against overt disease but not adequate to prevent a low grade but communicable infection. If we are dealing with a viral disease in which the carrier state either does not exist or is uncommon, this theoretical objection would not apply. However, even in the bacterial infections there is no evidence that to any significant degree the inapparent infections in immunized or partially resistant persons occur with sufficient frequency to upset the generalization of reduction of disease out of all proportion to the fraction of the population immunized or resistant. In the early days of diphtheria immunization many persons worried lest by immunizing a fraction of the population the number of unrecognizable cases and carriers would be so increased as to jeopardize the nonimmunized segment. Fortunately studies have shown a striking decline in the carrier rate coincident with an increase in immunization.

#### THE EPIDEMIC CURVE

The foregoing principle of the effect of immunizing a fraction of the population is a significant factor in the rise and fall of the epidemic curve for certain diseases. It has been pointed out already that measles occurs in cyclic waves usually spaced 2 or 3 years apart in sizable communities having frequent contact with other communities but more widely and irregularly spaced in smaller communities, especially if somewhat removed from the flow of people. In the former a few cases of measles are occurring constantly or isolated cases are frequently introduced but in neither situation does the disease increase to epidemic proportions until the number of susceptibles is large enough so that there is a high probability that the infecting cases will come in contact with susceptibles. As the epidemic curve rises the number attacked and therefore converted to non-susceptibles increases until ultimately the proportion of immunes is so large that it offsets the number of susceptibles. At this point the peak of the epidemic is reached and the curve declines with resultant fading out of the disease as the ratio of immunes to susceptibles becomes greater and greater. The disease disappears not because there are no

nificant quantity, fails to pass the placental barrier, with the result that the newborn infant is highly susceptible. Notable in this respect is pertussis which may develop within the first month of life due to lack of transmitted antibody, whereas measles is rarely seen before 6 months of age simply because most women by the age of childbirth have had measles and their resultant antibody can pass to the fetus in utero.

After the disappearance of this passive resistance the baby starts to develop his own active resistance depending on exposure to infection. For most bacterial infections this is by a process of latent immunization as a result of repeated exposure to small doses of organisms. The dose may never be large enough to produce symptoms or the resultant infection may be so mild as to escape recognition but in either case the body is stimulated to produce antibodies. Over a period of time as a result of these repeated low grade and usually unrecognized infections the body develops a level of resistance adequate to protect against a dose which earlier might have produced serious or even fatal infection. It has thus been latently immunized a process of active immunization.

The rate at which this process of latent immunization progresses depends on the likelihood of exposure to the infection in question. If the infection is highly prevalent as was diphtheria in former days resistance may be acquired fairly early in life a high proportion of 5 to 10 year old children being resistant even in the absence of known infection. By contrast there is so little diphtheria in most communities today that in the absence of artificial immunization almost all children and a high proportion of adults are susceptible. The rate of latent immunization likewise depends on the degree of contact between persons. It is higher in urban than in rural areas although as pointed out earlier the changes in transportation and the development of consolidated schools have resulted in a less pronounced difference between urban and rural susceptibility than existed formerly.

Although the pattern of development of resistance in the individual is very different in the bacterial and the viral infections the community patterns are quite similar, in that the proportion of persons of a given age

group who are resistant increases with age. In the bacterial infections this has been produced by a combination of active cases and latent immunization in the viral infections by active cases. In either case the older age group will show a higher proportion of resistant persons. Unfortunately however the resistance to the bacterial infections is less likely to persist than is that to viruses, and is thus highly dependent on continuing exposure to the forces of latent immunization. Thus in former days when diphtheria and typhoid fever were prevalent the individual who had been latently protected through repeated small doses retained his resistance as a result of continuing exposures. Today, with the very low prevalence of these diseases the likelihood of exposure (latent immunizing force) is so low that the individual usually loses whatever resistance he had acquired through latent or artificial immunization. The result has been a noticeable shift in the age distribution of these diseases a significantly higher proportion of the cases occurring at a much older age than in former years. By contrast the person who has had such viral infections as measles, smallpox, chickenpox or yellow fever tends to retain this resistance even in the absence of continuing exposure possibly due to the intracellular character of viral infections. The classic studies of Panum in the Faroe Islands from which measles had been absent for 65 years until it was reintroduced in 1846 showed clearly that, even in the absence of continuing exposure the resistance to measles may persist for 65 years or longer whereas persons who had never had or been exposed to measles are susceptible regardless of age.

#### EFFECT OF PARTIAL COMMUNITY PROTECTION

Although the incidence of a given disease depends on the proportion of a population that is susceptible the mathematical relationship is not one of simple proportion. Both in theory and in experience it is found that the incidence of a disease is decreased out of all proportion to the fraction of the population that is resistant.

Let us assume that a single case of a disease with an infection potential of 2 (each case on the average infects 2 or more per

tions in which shorter periods warrant study and, accordingly rates may be expressed on the basis of months or even weeks. Here again there is the necessity of stating clearly the unit of time on the basis of which the rate is calculated. Many serious errors have crept into the literature because of failure to include a precise statement in the expression of rates.

Rates may be calculated either by use of a formula or even better by establishing a proportion and solving for the unknown. In this latter case one asks himself how many events might be expected to occur in a standard unit of population if a certain number of these events occurred in a certain population. Thus if 5 000 deaths occurred in a population of 500 000 persons in a year then one could expect that 10 deaths would have occurred for every 1 000 population for the same year. The formulas that are frequently used are calculated from such proportions and are useful shortcuts only if used correctly. Too often the user transposes numerator and denominator or unit population and actual population errors that cannot be made if the rates are calculated on the basis of proportions.

The rates most commonly used in epidemiology are as follows:

#### CRUDE MORTALITY RATE

This is the number of deaths per 1 000 population per year. It can be calculated on the basis of the formula

$$MR = \frac{\text{Number of deaths}}{\text{Actual population}} \times 1\,000$$

In the example cited above this would be

$$\begin{aligned} MR &= \frac{5\,000}{500\,000} \times 1\,000 \\ &= \frac{5\,000}{500} = \frac{50}{5} \end{aligned}$$

$$= 10 \text{ or } 10 \text{ deaths/1 000 population/year}$$

If determined through establishing a proportion and solving for the unknown, this would read

$$\frac{5\,000}{500\,000} = \frac{y}{1\,000}$$

which is mathematical shorthand for the

question: If 5 000 deaths occurred in a population of 500 000 persons then how many would be expected in a population of 1 000 persons for the same year? Solving this proportion,

$$\begin{aligned} 500\,000 y &= 5\,000 \times 1\,000 \\ y &= \frac{5\,000}{500\,000} \times 1\,000 \\ y &= \frac{5\,000}{500} = 10 \end{aligned}$$

It will be noted that the right hand side of the second equation is the same as the formula.

The crude mortality rate is probably the most accurate of all the commonly used rates. There is official recording of deaths except in frontier or primitive society. The only important inaccuracy in this rate is the population which is the mid year estimate for the year in question. For censal years this figure is relatively exact but for inter censal years the population must be estimated. This is usually on the basis of changes between censal years (10 years apart) on the assumption that trends during this interval will be continued unabated in the years following the latest census. This is not always a correct assumption, with the result that the denominator of the crude death rate may be in error and is certainly less accurate than the numerator.

#### SPECIFIC DEATH RATES

Whereas the crude death rate includes all deaths, specific death rates include only a specific group of deaths having in common one or more specific characteristics. Thus one may specify a great variety of attributes that separate certain deaths from all other deaths. Among the attributes that are commonly specified are sex, age, color and cause. Thus one may calculate the death rates of males or of females, death rates at various ages or for various causes of death. At other times one may combine attributes such as deaths of white women age 40 to 44 due to cancer of the stomach; in this case a color-sex-age-cause specific rate. In calculating specific rates care should be taken to use as a population only those persons whose deaths could have been included in the numerator. Thus in the foregoing situation the

longer any susceptibles, but because the number of these has been reduced to the point that the infecting cases will come in contact with immunes rather than susceptibles. Stocks has suggested that in measles at least some of the noninfected may have developed a transient resistance which must disappear before the next wave of the disease can develop but evidence to substantiate this hypothesis is lacking. Nor is such a hypothesis necessary to explain the decline of the outbreak for the mere probability of contact with an immune or a susceptible adequately explains the shape of the epidemic curve. It is not necessary to assume that everyone in a community will have developed some measure of resistance before an infection ceases to spread or is reduced to mere sporadic cases.

The longer the interval between epidemics the greater the number of susceptibles who will have been added to the community and therefore the greater the magnitude of the epidemic wave. Conversely a severe outbreak of measles or poliomyelitis will be followed by a period of unusually low incidence because of the extremely small number of susceptibles to whom the disease may be spread.

In some infections such as poliomyelitis the number of inapparent infections is so large as compared with those that are recognizable that the reduction in the number of susceptibles is out of proportion to the apparent incidence of recent infections. There is strong evidence to suggest that fairly wide spread poliomyelitis infection may occur in the absence of any large number of recognizable cases especially during the so called off season. If in reality this does occur a community may be left with too few susceptibles to permit the development of an outbreak whereas a neighboring community that has not been invaded recently by the virus has so many susceptibles that it experiences a sizable outbreak. Observations of waves of poliomyelitis have shown repeatedly the existence of islandlike areas which are spared the effects of an outbreak of considerable magnitude in neighboring communities. The hypothesis of community resistance through the recent occurrence of large numbers of unrecognized infections provides an attractive explanation for which there is considerable

supporting evidence. Here also, the fundamental phenomenon is the probability of effective contact between a source and a susceptible person.

## RATES COMMONLY USED IN EPIDEMIOLOGY

Since epidemiology concerns itself with the mass phenomena of disease occurrence there is an obvious need for units of measurement by which to describe the amount of disease (or infection) that occurs. The mere enumeration of events might suffice in certain circumscribed situations but would be grossly inadequate in comparing the impact of disease on populations differing in size or character. To make valid comparisons one must resort to rates which basically are ratios between the number of events that occur and the population at risk. Since in theory the event in question might happen to every member of the population in question a rate expresses a ratio between the number of events that occur and the number that theoretically might occur.

To permit comparison rates are calculated as the number of events per unit of population. By convention the unit to which events are calculated varies somewhat according to the rate in question though rates calculated to unconventional units are not mathematically wrong. However enough variation exists that it becomes absolutely necessary in all cases to state the size and the character of the population with respect to which events are calculated. For example a death rate for cancer of the prostate obviously should be expressed as the number of deaths from cancer of the prostate per unit number of males. Of course lacking exact data on the proportion of males in the population one might express this as the number of prostate cancer deaths per total population. To make the rate clear to other persons it would be essential to state whether the base of reference is the total population or only the male population. Similarly it would be essential to define the span of time, for obviously the rate for a year would be very different than the rate for a month. When a span of time is involved the convention is to use the year as a unit but there are many situa-

subject to gross error is almost always too low and must be taken with a high degree of reservation. Special caution must be used in comparing rates of different communities for while in theory the quality of medical care may be equal vast differences are known to exist in the extent to which illness is brought to medical attention and in the completeness of reporting of diagnosed cases.

### ATTACK RATE

The term, attack rate is frequently used to portray a morbidity or case rate within a circumscribed population having a known exposure to infection. It thus differs from the usual morbidity rate which is based on total population of a community only a fraction of whom would be actually exposed. Attack rates usually expressed in percent ages are often used to describe the frequency of an infection within a family or an institutional group in which a primary case has occurred. It thus describes the frequency of secondary infections among the known contacts. The term secondary attack rate is commonly used in such situations.

### INCIDENCE VS PREVALENCE

Just as the terms mortality rate and fatality rate are frequently confused and misused owing to superficial similarity of ideas so also unfortunate errors are commonly encountered through misunderstanding of the difference between the incidence and the prevalence of a disease. The word incidence derived from the Latin word *incidere* meaning to fall upon or to strike refers to the number of new cases that develop in other words how frequently a particular infection strikes the people of a community. Thus the incidence rate is the same as the morbidity or case rate and the terms may be used interchangeably. It is usually expressed as so many newly reported cases per hundred thousand population per year though different units of population or spans of time may be used if clearly indicated.

By contrast the prevalence rate of a disease expresses the amount of a particular disease that exists or prevails within a given population at a particular moment of time. It includes all cases that exist at a certain

time regardless of how long these cases have existed. Thus while an incidence rate for syphilis would be based on the number of persons who acquired this infection during a year the prevalence rate would express the proportion of the population who have syphilis regardless of how long the disease has existed. Some of these will be new cases but obviously most will be old cases of varying duration.

The difference between incidence and prevalence is an important distinction in epidemiologic thought. Unfortunately too many persons have used the terms as though they were synonymous with resulting confusion and even mistaken conclusions. To say that the prevalence rate of syphilis in a certain population is 5 per cent means that 5 per cent of these people are infected with syphilis some of them recently infected but others infected many years previously. It does not mean that in a given year 5 per cent of the people can be expected to acquire syphilis yet exactly such conclusions have been drawn and published by persons unfamiliar with the correct meanings of the terms incidence and prevalence.

Whereas incidence rates are commonly expressed in number of cases per hundred thousand population per year prevalence rates are most commonly expressed in percentages. They are used extensively in the study of chronic diseases noninfectious as well as infectious whereas incidence rates are more commonly used in the study of acute short term infections. In the latter the incidence is higher than the prevalence since it includes all cases developing over a span of time. In chronic infections the prevalence is greater since it includes old cases regardless of their duration while the incidence rate includes only those acquired or recognized during a given span of time.

### SUMMARY

As the science concerned with the occurrence of disease (or infection) epidemiology must consider a multiplicity of factors that in one way or another bring about contact and interaction between pathogenic micro organisms and the host on which these organisms act. In the strict sense of the word it

rate would be calculated as so many deaths per unit number of white females age 40 to 44 in the population in which the deaths occurred. Most commonly, cause specific rates are calculated to a base of 100 000 population of the same attributes as the deaths in question. There is less uniformity as to rates specific only as to sex, color or age hence the importance of stating clearly the units involved in the rate.

In general specific rates are less accurate than are crude rates owing to inaccuracies with respect to the specific attributes. The exact age of the deceased is often an approximation while errors or inaccuracies as to the cause are well known. Undoubtedly as diagnostic procedures improve cause specific rates become more nearly accurate yet diagnosis is still far from perfect. Furthermore statistically according to the International Classification of Causes of Death one may die from only one cause. Thus the factor underlying a death may be overlooked in preference to the condition that brought about the ultimate demise. A patient who in the delirium of typhoid fever leaps from a tenth story hospital window will be classified as a suicide rather than a typhoid death thus obscuring the full impact of typhoid on the community in question.

#### FATALITY RATE (CASE FATALITY RATE OR RATIO)

This rate usually expressed in percent ages measures the proportion of persons ill with a particular disease who die from that disease. It must be distinguished from the mortality rate which measures the number of deaths from a given disease per unit of population. The difference is illustrated best in the following tabulation of 3 hypothetical communities of equal size.

	A	B	C
Population	100 000	100 000	100 000
Cases of typhoid	10	100	1 000
Deaths from typhoid	1	10	100
TF mortality rate	1/100 000	10/100 000	100/100 000
TF fatality rate	10%	10%	10%

In the foregoing the fatality rate is the same in all 3 communities viz 10 per cent for 1 of every 10 cases died. However the mortality rate ranges from 1 per 100 000 popu-

lation in community A to 100 per 100 000 population in community C. Thus the fatality rate describes the disease whereas the mortality rate describes the community. In serious diseases the fatality rate is high even though the disease may be so rare that the mortality rate is low e.g. the fatality rate of human rabies a rare infection is 100 per cent while the mortality rate of measles an almost universal disease is much higher than that of rabies even though the fatality rate is low (less than 1%).

The fatality rate expressed by the formula

$$FR = \frac{\text{Deaths}}{\text{Cases}} \times 100$$

obviously is a ratio between deaths and cases. The official data as to deaths from a certain cause are relatively accurate whereas the data as to number of cases are highly inexact as they depend on the extent to which the cases are recorded. Cases may go unrecorded because the family fails to seek medical care a correct diagnosis is not made or the physician fails to report the case. A high proportion of measles cases are never brought to medical attention while in an infection such as poliomyelitis the mild subclinical infections are so lacking in distinctive pathognomonic signs or symptoms that an accurate diagnosis is often impossible without time-consuming and frequently expensive laboratory studies. Thus the fatality rate based on the ratio between deaths and reported cases of the disease frequently gives a false and exaggerated impression of the true severity of the illness.

#### MORBIDITY RATE (CASE RATE)

This rate usually expressed as the number of reported cases per 100 000 population per year measures the extent to which new

cases occur or are recognized within a community. Since as pointed out above many cases are never brought to official attention and therefore are not recorded this rate is

subject to gross error is almost always too low and must be taken with a high degree of reservation. Special caution must be used in comparing rates of different communities for while in theory the quality of medical care may be equal vast differences are known to exist in the extent to which illness is brought to medical attention and in the completeness of reporting of diagnosed cases.

### ATTACK RATE

The term attack rate is frequently used to portray a morbidity or case rate within a circumscribed population having a known exposure to infection. It thus differs from the usual morbidity rate which is based on total population of a community only a fraction of whom would be actually exposed. Attack rates usually expressed in percent ages are often used to describe the frequency of an infection within a family or an institutional group in which a primary case has occurred. It thus describes the frequency of secondary infections among the known contacts. The term secondary attack rate is commonly used in such situations.

### INCIDENCE VS PREVALENCE

Just as the terms mortality rate and fatality rate are frequently confused and misused owing to superficial similarity of ideas so also unfortunate errors are commonly encountered through misunderstanding of the difference between the incidence and the prevalence of a disease. The word incidence derived from the Latin word *incidere* meaning to fall upon or to strike refers to the number of new cases that develop in other words how frequently a particular infection strikes the people of a community. Thus the incidence rate is the same as the morbidity or case rate and the terms may be used interchangeably. It is usually expressed as so many newly reported cases per hundred thousand population per year though different units of population or spans of time may be used if clearly indicated.

By contrast the prevalence rate of a disease expresses the amount of a particular disease that exists or prevails within a given population at a particular moment of time. It includes all cases that exist at a certain

time regardless of how long these cases have existed. Thus while an incidence rate for syphilis would be based on the number of persons who acquired this infection during a year the prevalence rate would express the proportion of the population who have syphilis regardless of how long the disease has existed. Some of these will be new cases but obviously most will be old cases of varying duration.

The difference between incidence and prevalence is an important distinction in epidemiologic thought. Unfortunately too many persons have used the terms as though they were synonymous with resulting confusion and even mistaken conclusions. To say that the prevalence rate of syphilis in a certain population is 5 per cent means that 5 per cent of these people are infected with syphilis some of them recently infected but others infected many years previously. It does not mean that in a given year 5 per cent of the people can be expected to acquire syphilis yet exactly such conclusions have been drawn and published by persons unfamiliar with the correct meanings of the terms incidence and prevalence.

Whereas incidence rates are commonly expressed in number of cases per hundred thousand population per year prevalence rates are most commonly expressed in percentages. They are used extensively in the study of chronic diseases noninfectious as well as infectious whereas incidence rates are more commonly used in the study of acute short term infections. In the latter the incidence is higher than the prevalence since it includes all cases developing over a span of time. In chronic infections the prevalence is greater since it includes old cases regardless of their duration while the incidence rate includes only those acquired or recognized during a given span of time.

### SUMMARY

As the science concerned with the occurrence of disease (or infection) epidemiology must consider a multiplicity of factors that in one way or another bring about contact and interaction between pathogenic microorganisms and the host on which these organisms act. In the strict sense of the word it



refers to man and has been so treated in this chapter, but from the scientific standpoint one might equally consider comparable factors governing the occurrence of disease in animals (epizootology).

Since epidemiology deals with man it must take into consideration various factors of his biologic processes, his social behavior and the environment in which he lives. The relative importance of these varies with different diseases but there is probably none in which a single factor is operative. On the contrary disease or infection may be thought of as the result of interaction of a complex array of variables—an interaction system far more complex than that which any chemist ever concocted within his test tubes or flasks. Some of these forces are physical and can be measured with a fair degree of precision; others are biologic and therefore less easily quantitated; whereas some of the most important lie in the realm of the behavioral sciences and are even less subject to exact measurement. Within the laboratory of the physical scientist interaction systems may be devised which measure the force of a single variable by keeping all other factors constant. In the biologic laboratory this is less possible because of the complexity of various biologic forces and the difficulty or the impossibility of keeping any of these constant. Even less exact must be the measurements with respect to man who enjoys a free living existence in a physical and social environment of enormous complexity and variability.

The epidemiologist attempts to unravel this complex skein of interacting forces to measure as best he can the magnitude of these forces and their relative importance. The problem is complicated by the fact that many of these forces are constantly changing in magnitude as for example the size of the reservoir of infection. Therefore the epidemiologist must recognize that he is dealing with a dynamic rather than a static problem and that as a consequence the epidemiologic characteristics of a given disease may change from one period of time to another and from one place to another. No greater mistake can be made by the student of epidemiology than to adopt a static rather than a dynamic point of view.

In this context it should be emphasized

that the epidemiologist deals with probabilities especially when he considers infectious disease. Infection is the resultant of a chain or series of independent yet related events or circumstances which must take place in proper sequence to produce a new infection. Just as a chain is no stronger than its weakest link, so is the chain of infection dependent on the strength of its separate components. In this case strength is measured in probabilities and the final effect is the product of these separate probabilities. He who seeks to control the development of a given infection or disease examines this chain to determine the strength of its various links and concentrates his attention on the weakest. Thus epidemiology not only serves to further the understanding of disease but is also the foundation on which control measures are based.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Anderson E S and Williams R E O 1956 Bacteriophage typing of enteric pathogens and staphylococci and its use in epidemiology *J Clin Path* 9 94-127
- Anderson G W Hamblen A D and Smith H M 1936 Typhoid carriers: a study of their disease producing potentialities over a series of years as indicated by a study of cases *Am J Pub Health* 26 396-405
- Armijo Rojas R 1959 *Cursode Epidemiologia* Santiago
- Aycock W L and Foley G E 1946 Serologic types of bacteria as an epidemiologic principle *Am J Med Sci* 211 350-373
- Aycock W L Foley G E and Hendrie K H 1946 The epidemiologic significance of amplitudes of seasonal fluctuation in infectious diseases *Am J Med Sci* 211 709-717
- Aycock W L and Lutman G E 1944 Vitamin deficiency as an epidemiologic principle *Am J Med Sci* 208 389-406
- Aycock W L Lutman G E and Foley G E 1945 Seasonal prevalence as a principle in epidemiology *Am J Med Sci* 209 395-411
- Aycock W L and Meadors G F 1948 The principles of variolation as exemplified by subclinical immunization in poliomyelitis in cooler and warmer climates *Am J Med Sci* 215 296-310
- Aycock W L and Russell F F 1943 The

- functions of hypotheses in epidemiology  
Am J Med Sci 206 399-408
- Bailey N T J 1957 *The Mathematical Theory of Epidemics* New York Hafner
- Budd William Typhoid Fever Its Nature Mode of Spreading and Prevention Originally published in London 1874 republished Delta Omega Series Public Health Classics Am Pub Health Assoc 1931
- Burnet F M 1946 *Epidemiology today* M J Aust 2 825 830
- 1962 *Natural History of Infectious Disease* ed 3 Cambridge Cambridge Univ Press
- Chapin C V 1912 *The Sources and Modes of Infection* ed 2 New York Wiley
- 1928 *The science of epidemic diseases* Scient Monthly 26 481-493 Reprinted as *The Principles of Epidemiology in Papers of Charles V Chapin* pp 172 205 New York Commonwealth Fund 1934
- Crookshank F G 1931 *Epidemiological Essays* New York Macmillan
- Cruickshank J C 1950 *Newer methods in the investigation of outbreaks of enteric fever* J Roy San Inst 70 34 38
- Doell J A and Lara, H 1925 *The epidemiological importance of diphtheria carriers* Am J Hyg 5 508 529
- Dudley S F 1935 36 *On the biological approach to the study of epidemiology* Proc Roy Soc Med. 29 1 14
- 1936 *The ecological outlook on epidemiology* Proc Roy Soc Med 30 57 70
- Findlay G M 1936 *Discussion on the routes of infection and paths of transmission of viruses* Proc Roy Soc Med 29 563 570
- Frost W H 1941 *Papers of Wade Hampton Frost MD A Contribution to Epidemiological Method* Maxcy K F (ed) New York Commonwealth Fund
- Galdston Iago (ed) 1953 *The Epidemiology of Health* New York Health Education Council
- Garrison F H 1923 *The newer epidemiology* Mil Surgeon 53 1 14
- Gill C A 1928 *The Genesis of Epidemics and the Natural History of Disease* New York Wood
- Gordon J E 1932 *Epidemiology of scarlet fever a clinical approach* JAMA 98 519 524
- Gordon J E and Ingalls T H 1957 *Contact and air borne transmission of infectious agents* Am J Med Sci 233 334 357
- Greenwood Major 1932 *Epidemiology—Historical and Experimental* Baltimore Johns Hopkins Press
- 1935 *Epidemic and Crowd Diseases An Introduction to the Study of Epidemiology* London Williams and Northgate
- Hamburger M Jr Green M J and Hamburger V G 1945 *The problem of the dangerous carrier of hemolytic streptococci I Number of hemolytic streptococci expelled by carriers with positive and negative nose cultures* J Infect Dis 77 68 81
- 1945 *The problem of the dangerous carrier of hemolytic streptococci II Spread of infection by individuals with strongly positive nose cultures who expelled large numbers of hemolytic streptococci* J Infect Dis 77 96-108
- Hill A B 1945 *Principles of Medical Statistics* ed 3 London Lancet
- Hornus G 1935 *La periodicite saisonniere des maladies epidemiques et en particulier de la poliomyelite* Paris Masson
- Ipsen Johannes Jr 1950 *Attack rates among immigrants to infected human populations* Am J Pub Health 40 136-142
- Jurgens Georg 1936 *Grundlagen der Epidemiologie* Leipzig Barth
- Kraus A S 1960 *Comparison of a group with a disease and a control group from the same families in the search for possible etiological factors* Am J Pub Health 50 303 311
- MacMahon Brian Pugh T F and Ipsen Johannes 1960 *Epidemiologic Methods* Boston Little
- Martini Erich 1943 *Wege der Seuchen* Stuttgart Enke
- 1959 *Seuchen im Menschen* Stuttgart Enke
- May J M 1958 *The Ecology of Human Disease* New York MD Pub
- McKendrick A G 1940 *The dynamics of crowd infection* Edinburgh M J 47 117 136
- Meyer K F 1936 *Latent infections* J Bact 31 109 135
- 1948 *The animal kingdom a reservoir of human disease* Ann Int Med 29 326 346
- Morris J N 1957 *Uses of Epidemiology* London Livingstone
- Muench Hugo 1959 *Catalytic Models in Epidemiology* Cambridge Harvard Univ Press
- Murray E G D 1955 *Destiny and determinism in infectious disease* Canad Med Ass J 72 639 647

- Panum P L 1940 *Observations Made During the Epidemic of Measles on the Faroe Islands in the Year 1846* a translation from the Danish Delta Omega Society (Another translation appears in *M Classics* 3 803 886 1939)
- Paul J R 1958 *Clinical Epidemiology* Chicago Univ Chicago Press
- The story to be learned from blood samples its value to the epidemiologist *J A M A* 175 601 605
- Pickles W N 1939 *Epidemiology in Country Practice* Baltimore Williams and Wilkins
- Robertson O H 1947 The dispersal of respiratory pathogens in relation to the occurrence and control of air borne infections *Am Rev Tuberc* 55 109 123
- Sartwell P E 1950 The distribution of incubation periods of infectious disease *Am J Hyg* 51 310 318
- Schneider H A 1951 Nutrition and resistance—susceptibility to infection *Am J Trop Med* 31 174 182
- Simmons J S Whayne T F Anderson G W and Horack H H 1954 *Global Epidemiology A Geography of Disease and Sanitation* Philadelphia Lippincott Vol I 1944 Vol II 1951 Vol III 1954
- Smith Geddes 1941 *Plague on Us* New York The Commonwealth Fund
- Smith Theobald 1934 *Parasitism and Disease* Princeton Princeton Univ Press
- Snow John 1855 *On the Mode of Communication of Cholera* London John Churchill Reprinted in Snow on Cholera New York Commonwealth Fund 1936
- Soper H E 1929 The interpretation of periodicity in disease prevalence *J Roy Stat Soc* 92 34 61
- Stallybrass C O 1931 *The Principles of Epidemiology and the Process of Infection* New York Macmillan
- Stocks P 1933 Latent Immunisation in Measles Evidence of its existence *Lancet* 1 1086 1089
- Sutton Harvey 1937 An epidemiological study *Med J Aust* 2 197 210
- Taylor Ian and Knowelden John 1957 *Principles of Epidemiology* Boston Little
- Top F H (ed) 1952 *The History of American Epidemiology* St Louis Mosby
- Topley W W C 1942 The Biology of Epidemics *Proc Roy Soc [Biol]* 130 337 359
- Webster L T 1946 Experimental epidemiology *Medicine* 25 77 109
- Wilson E B and Burke M H 1942 The epidemic curve *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 28 361 367
- 1943 The epidemic curve II *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 29 43 48
- Winslow C E A 1943 *The Conquest of Epidemic Disease A Chapter in the History of Ideas* Princeton Princeton Univ Press
- Zinsser Hans 1935 *Rats Lice and History* Boston Little

---

GEOFFREY EDSALL M D

*Massachusetts Institute of Laboratories and  
Harvard University School of Public Health*

HERBERT L LEY JR M D M P H

*Harvard University School of Public Health*

---

## 39

# The Prevention of Infections

Many of the most significant preventive measures for the control of microbial infections arose from empiric observations made centuries before precise knowledge of the etiology and the means of transmission of any such infection was established. Thus the inoculation of smallpox crusts into the nostrils of infants to produce a mild form of smallpox which led to immunity against the severe natural disease apparently dates back to the pre-Christian era in India and China. Similarly isolation of persons suffering from dreaded diseases such as leprosy goes back into early history and reflects an awareness of the concept of contagion. The development of quarantine in Venice in the 14th century is another example of the fact that people had long ago become aware of the dissemination from man to man of what we now call infectious diseases. Food as a source of such illness also appears to have been recognized in ancient times. A widely accepted example is the series of restrictions in ancient Hebrew law against eating shellfish or pork—sanitary regulations so to speak that had a logical basis in the light of our present knowledge of the risk of consuming such foods without adequate control of their procurement and handling.

### PRINCIPLES OF CONTROL

A knowledge of the sources of the infectious agents that cause disease in man as well as of the patterns of their transmission provides a logical basis for outlining the possible means of control. Smith (1941) vividly describes a number of the basic defences against infection and introduces a number of concepts which are important to understanding mechanisms of control. The etiologic agents of human infectious disease must in all cases establish residence in some reservoir which may be man himself (e.g., diphtheria), another animal (e.g., brucellosis) or the environment (e.g., histoplasmosis). If the organism is to survive in a living reservoir host it must be capable of establishing a parasitic relationship without producing severe illness or death in the reservoir host. From this reservoir the agent must be transmitted to a susceptible human host by a mechanism which is characteristic for each agent. When disease patterns are viewed in this framework, three general areas of control become apparent: neutralization of the disease reservoir; interruption of the chain of transmission from reservoir to man (or man to man).

- Panum P L 1940 *Observations Made During the Epidemic of Measles on the Faroe Islands in the Year 1846* a translation from the Danish Delta Omega Society (Another translation appears in *M Classics* 3 803 886 1939)
- Paul J R 1958 *Clinical Epidemiology* Chicago Univ Chicago Press
- The story to be learned from blood samples: its value to the epidemiologist *JAMA* 175 601 605
- Pickles W N, 1939 *Epidemiology in Country Practice* Baltimore Williams and Wilkins
- Robertson O H 1947 The dispersal of respiratory pathogens in relation to the occurrence and control of air borne infections *Am Rev Tuberc* 55 109 123
- Sartwell P E 1950 The distribution of incubation periods of infectious disease *Am J Hyg* 51 310 318
- Schneider H A 1951 Nutrition and resistance—susceptibility to infection *Am J Trop Med* 31 174 182
- Simmons J S Whayne T F Anderson G W and Horack H II 1954 *Global Epidemiology A Geography of Disease and Sanitation* Philadelphia Lippincott Vol I 1944 Vol II 1951 Vol III 1954
- Smith Geddes 1941 *Plague on Us* New York The Commonwealth Fund
- Smith Theobald 1934 *Parasitism and Disease* Princeton Princeton Univ Press
- Snow John 1855 *On the Mode of Communication of Cholera* London John Churchill Reprinted in Snow on Cholera New York Commonwealth Fund 1936
- Soper H E 1929 The interpretation of periodicity in disease prevalence *J Roy Stat Soc* 92 34 61
- Stallybrass C O 1931 *The Principles of Epidemiology and the Process of Infection* New York Macmillan
- Stocks P 1933 Latent Immunisation in Measles Evidence of its existence *Lancet* 1 1086 1089
- Sutton Harvey 1937, An epidemiological study *Med J Aust* 2 197 210
- Taylor Ian and Knowelden John 1957 *Principles of Epidemiology* Boston Little
- Top F H (ed) 1952 *The History of American Epidemiology* St Louis Mosby
- Topley W W C 1942 *The Biology of Epidemics* *Proc Roy Soc [Biol]* 130 337 359
- Webster L T 1946 Experimental epidemiology *Medicine* 25 77 109
- Wilson H B and Burke M H 1942 The epidemic curve *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 28 361 367
- 1943 The epidemic curve II *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 29 43-48
- Winslow C E A 1943 *The Conquest of Epidemic Disease A Chapter in the History of Ideas* Princeton Princeton Univ Press
- Zinsser Hans 1935 *Rats Lice and History* Boston Little

of the organism by deleterious factors (dry ing sunlight heat etc ) before it contacts a susceptible host Dilution may also shift the ratio of clinical to subclinical infections because there appears to be a direct relation ship in many infections between the infecting dose and the proportion of those infected who develop clinically apparent disease A specialized instance of this approach is the inspection of animals in slaughterhouses where the removal of obviously infected ani mals from processing greatly reduces the incidence or intensity of contamination in the output of the plant

**FILTRATION** The mechanical process of filtration is widely used to remove micro organisms from water air and pharmaceu tical preparations and when properly con trolled is highly effective The use of ground filtration galleries provided a significant reduction in the incidence of waterborne disease in the period before water chlorina tion was generally adopted (see Fig 1) On

the other hand the common surgical face mask is a relatively ineffective filter unless great care is taken in its design

**Physical and Chemical Methods** Heat and sunlight are perhaps the oldest forms of disinfection or sterilization known The cooking of foods or their preservation by drying in sunlight are kinds of disinfection which have been utilized for millenia These methods have been supplemented by high temperature heating ultraviolet light and a variety of other forms of radiation including gamma rays and high energy electrons Chemical inactivation falls into two general categories agents with rather nonspecific toxicity such as  $Hg^{++}$  formaldehyde or the phenols and agents with highly selective interference of biochemical processes essen tial for growth such as the sulfonamides and the newer antibiotic agents Quite commonly the second group is considered bacteriostatic and the first bactericidal but this distinction is artificial since most of the nonspecific ger

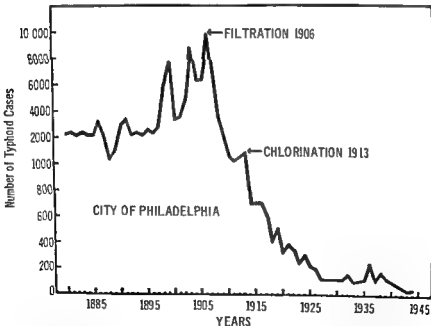


FIG 1 Reduction of typhoid fever in Philadelphia following treatment of the water supply (data supplied by Dr Angelo M Perri) From Smillie W G and Kilbourne E D 1963 Preventive Medicine and Public Health ed 3 p 134 New York Macmillan

and reinforcement of man's resistance to the agent

### NEUTRALIZATION OF RESERVOIR

**Destruction of Reservoir** It is quite possible in some cases to eradicate an infectious disease by destruction of all infected animal hosts. This method has been widely applied in the control of animal diseases such as tuberculosis of cattle and foot and mouth disease of cloven hoofed animals. Plague may be eliminated at least in urban areas by a virtually complete eradication of the rat reservoir host. Similarly rabies has been controlled in certain relatively isolated areas by the destruction of all identifiably rabid animals and the imposition of an effective quarantine system. Total destruction of all infected animals may not be necessary. A number of observations have suggested that when the proportion of infected animals in a population is reduced below a critical level the efficiency of transmission falls so low that the agent will not persist in the reservoir.

**Therapeutic Cure of Reservoir** With the advent of chemotherapy and antibiotic therapy in the past 25 years the eradication of many diseases in which man himself is the reservoir has become both possible and feasible. Thus yaws apparently has been eliminated from many previously highly endemic areas of the world by massive therapy with penicillin. The limitations of this general approach for many diseases are great because frequently the individuals who are reservoirs for the agent are clinically healthy and are identifiable only through detailed and expensive laboratory tests. The only alternative to selective identification of the reservoir individuals is treatment of the entire population and this is frequently neither feasible nor acceptable.

Occasionally certain selected procedures (e.g. cholecystectomy in a typhoid carrier or tonsillectomy in a diphtheria carrier) may be of value in elimination of the reservoir (carrier) state in man. Where such treatments are of value their beneficial effects are based on selective localization of the infecting agent in specific organs or tissues. Usually they are employed only after other methods have failed to neutralize the reservoir.

**Isolation of Reservoir** The isolation and

the removal of obviously infected lepers from society may well be the oldest effective disease control program. Quarantine has been employed for centuries in many logical situations and also in other circumstances which in light of present knowledge were totally illogical. The need for such measures has been greatly reduced for many diseases which are susceptible to medications which render the individual noninfectious. Further as with treatment programs aimed at curing the reservoir isolation and quarantine require the identification of the infected individual without symptoms as well as the individual with clinical disease. Because such identification is difficult if not impossible in the face of an epidemic (e.g. of cholera), quarantine measures frequently require blanket application to a large number of uninfected individuals to control the relatively small number who are infected. In spite of these limitations quarantine is still employed as an adjunct to other methods of control; for example a person may be held in quarantine in areas endemic for smallpox, cholera, plague or yellow fever until immunization against the disease has been completed successfully. Usually such drastic measures are limited to the major quarantunable diseases but they may be applied occasionally in less justifiable circumstances.

### INTERRUPTING THE CHAIN OF TRANSMISSION

**Mechanical Methods** Under this heading fall a number of methods which provide limited benefits but are nevertheless useful in controlling the incidence of disease.

**DILUTION** Simple dilution of the vehicle of transmission may so reduce the number of organisms transmitted from the reservoir to the individual that the probability of infection becomes very slight. In essence this is what is accomplished by increasing the distance between beds in military barracks, basins in nurseries or seats in classrooms. Similarly natural dilution of infected feces in bodies of water contributes in a major degree to reduction of the spread of waterborne agents. Depending on the circumstances and the agents involved dilution may exert its effect by decreasing the average infective dose or by increasing the probability of kill.

## STERILIZATION AND DISINFECTION

### INTRODUCTION

Factors deleterious to microorganisms range diversely from heat and cold to a variety of chemicals and radiations. It is most unlikely that all of these factors operate through one common mechanism and yet there is a rather surprising uniformity in the effects which are produced.

Two general levels of reactivity on the part of the microorganism can be identified. The first is a response of suspended animation referred to as bacteriostasis in which most if not all of the metabolic activities of the cell come to a halt. The organism respire minimally, it does not grow, it cannot reproduce and for all intents and purposes it is incapable of initiating or continuing a disease process. However, if the agent causing the bacteriostasis is removed or neutralized by the appropriate antagonist, the organism rapidly regains all normal activity including pathogenicity. In brief, bacteriostasis is a reversible process within limits apparently caused by a selective chemical lesion which renders the cell incapable of normal activity. There is usually little or no latent period between contact of the cell with the bacteriostatic agent and the response. However, if the condition of bacteriostasis is prolonged unduly, it shades imperceptibly into the second microbial response to harmful factors.

This second response is irreversible and results in the death of the cell. In distinction to bacteriostasis, the cell's response is not instantaneous. With a majority of lethal agents it is dependent on both time and dose in a predictable manner. Under suitable experimental conditions, this response takes the form of a linear relationship between time and the logarithm of the number of cells surviving as follows:

$$-\log_n n = kt \quad (1)$$

$n$  = number of cells surviving at time  $t$  and  $k$  = constant

The derivative of (1) yields the following expressions with transposition:

$$-dn/n = kdt \quad (2)$$

$$-dn/dt = kn \quad (3)$$

That the cells rate of dying is always proportional to the number of cells present.

In the case of multicellular organisms the relationship demonstrated for microorganisms does not hold true. Instead, the results obtained for example with mosquito larvae and a toxic substance such as heptylic acid yield an obviously concave curve when plotted in the same fashion that yields a straight line for microorganisms.

The reasons for the difference between the responses of unicellular and multicellular organisms have been the subject of extended scientific examination and discussion well summarized in the review by Rahn (1945). The evidence suggests that the difference exists because of the simplicity of the unicellular system in which the whole organism reflects the inactivation probably by a single hit of one of the genes responsible for the processes involved in continued multiplication of the organism. With multicellular organisms, particularly the vertebrates, the life of the individual is not dependent on the viability of the genetic system responsible for propagation but rather on the viability of an interlocking complex of many cells responsible in toto for continuation of the metabolic processes of the organism as a whole.

The results obtained in the process of disinfection are also influenced by temperature. In common with other chemical reactions the  $Q_{10}$  values for most disinfectants approach 2, i.e. the rate of the reaction is doubled for a  $10^\circ\text{C}$  increase in temperature. In practice, this principle may be applied to make feasible the use of lower concentrations of disinfectant at elevated temperatures for disinfection in a fixed time interval or reduction of the time required for action at the same concentration (Rahn, 1945).

This information is of more than merely theoretic interest because it defines the results which may be expected when we attempt to kill microorganisms. These results apply equally well to dressings and intravenous fluids sterilized in an autoclave to catgut sutures sterilized by radiation or to diphtheria bacilli killed by phenol. For these reasons, an understanding of the death/time relationship is important to all who practice medicine.



micides can be bacteriostatic in sufficiently high dilutions. Chemical methods for interrupting the transmission of disease agents have many applications. Chlorination of water supplies, the addition of mercurial or quaternary ammonium preservatives to biologic products and the application of organic iodine complexes to cuts and abrasions of the skin are a few examples.

**Biologic Methods** Interruption of transmission by environmental measures aimed at living vectors of disease is a highly specialized topic which can be touched on only briefly here. Control of malaria and yellow fever are probably the most dramatic examples of this type of control measure. Vector control may be aimed at reducing the breeding potential of the mosquito or other arthropod involved in the transmission of disease or it may be aimed at interrupting the movement of the adult vector as it moves from an infected host to a susceptible person. Using malaria as an example, the first approach may include water drainage, manipulation of water level or application of insecticides to the water surface. The second—and more effective measure in the case of malaria at least—is exemplified by the use of residual long acting insecticides in human dwellings.

#### PROTECTION OF THE SUSCEPTIBLE PERSON

A number of the procedures mentioned above may be used to protect the susceptible individual or group as well as to prevent the spread of infection from the infected person or group. A cardiac patient may be denied visitors during an influenza epidemic or may wear a mask instead of requesting the visitors to do so. However far more effective measures for protecting the susceptible individual are those which directly alter his relative capacity to deal with a specific infection if he is exposed to it. There are several such protective measures.

**Chemoprophylaxis** It is probable that chemicals of one sort or another have been ingested or applied locally since early times in an effort to prevent the acquisition of infection. Probably the best established chemoprophylactic agent is quinine from cinchona bark used by South American Indians for the prevention of malarial fever long before the

nature of such fevers was understood. However, the major advance of chemoprophylactic measures began with the introduction of the sulfonamide drugs followed by penicillin and the broad spectrum antibiotics. Their application to the control of various infections will be discussed in greater detail below.

**Immunization** Since time immemorial man has recognized that with a number of diseases second attacks occurred rarely if ever and has concluded rationally that recovery from the disease produced what we now refer to as specific immunity. Efforts to simulate this immunity by artificial techniques which are designed to produce resistance with less risk than the actual disease date back to the use of smallpox crusts for immunization of infants (mentioned above). The list of the diseases of man for which artificial immunizing agents are now available is impressively long and is growing steadily. It is possible that more lives have been saved by immunization against smallpox, for example, than by any other single measure for the control of infectious disease. Although some generalizations are applicable with regard to immunization, many others are extremely hazardous or inaccurate. The guiding principles and the variations in the patterns observed are discussed in detail below.

**Enhancement of "Natural Resistance"** The known factors pertaining to natural resistance to infectious diseases have been discussed in several of the early chapters in this volume. Although many artificial ways of impairing these mechanisms have been employed (e.g. by depressing the number and the activity of phagocytes) relatively few mechanisms for enhancing them have been discovered. A great variety of nonspecific stimulating substances have been employed without any outstanding success and with little understanding of the underlying principles.

**Microbial Interference** As noted in the discussion of antibiotics in Chapter 40, the presence of certain microbial organisms may interfere with the establishment of others. The application of this principle to the prevention of infections is still in its infancy but merits brief notice.

more effective in sterilization than dry heat this observation parallels the observed fact that native proteins are denatured (coagulated) at higher temperatures as their water content decreases

In practice the autoclave is basically a sturdy metal container which can be sealed tightly and filled with steam at elevated pressure. The common pressure cooker is the simplest autoclave and is capable of providing sterile materials in emergency situations. The common autoclave found in medical installations is a horizontally mounted cylinder with a door at one or both ends and may vary in size from one just big enough to sterilize a small tray of instruments to one big enough to handle bed mattresses. Regardless of size each installation should include the following features: (1) a source of saturated steam under pressure either integral to the unit or in the form of a steam line; (2) a pressure gauge at the steam inlet at the top of the chamber; (3) a safety valve to prevent explosion due to overpressure; (4) an air vent and a cutoff valve connected at the lowest part of the chamber; and (5) most important, a reliable thermometer connected in the exit line. Desirable but not essential features would include (1) a jacket external to the chamber to provide additional heat and (2) a means of connecting the chamber to a slight vacuum including adequate microbial filters for readmitting sterile air to the chamber.

The cardinal fact in effective use of the autoclave is that live saturated steam *must* come into intimate contact with every part of the contents of the autoclave. Thus items to be sterilized must be wrapped in coverings that are freely permeable to steam and yet of fine enough weave to prevent subsequent contamination of the sterilized article by dust or vermin. Double thickness muslin has been the covering of choice for many years but is being replaced by high strength porous paper in many locations. Regardless of the manner of covering the items placed in an autoclave must be packed loosely with sufficient space between them to allow free penetration by steam.

Because steam is lighter than air, careful attention must be paid to the positioning of any container, flask, tin or drum in which

air may collect and prevent contact of the steam with the full surface of the container and its contents. Such containers *must* be placed in such a position that all air may drain *downward* from their mouths or they must have sufficient (about 5 ml./L. volume) water within them to expel residual air by vaporization during the heating cycle. Air is expelled from an autoclave by downward displacement if air is retained within the autoclave, sterility of the load cannot be assured. Flasks and tubes containing media or solutions in appreciable volume require no additional precautions other than providing sufficient time to permit heating the contents to the required temperature for the required time.

As steam fills the autoclave the material in it is heated by condensation of water vapor with the release of 540 cal./Gm. of moisture condensed. The temperature of the load if properly packed rises to 100°C in a relatively short time. As soon as the exit line thermometer reads 100°C all air will have been displaced from the chamber and the exit valve may be closed. (This function is frequently performed automatically by a thermostatic valve. Since this valve may fail under use, a routine check on the temperature at the exit line at the time of closure is advisable.)

Practically all autoclaves are equipped with a steam ejection pump to provide a slight vacuum to assist in drying the load. The negative pressure achieved is minimal—on the order of 20 inches of H<sub>2</sub>O or 40 mm Hg below atmospheric. Nevertheless, even this slight vacuum is sufficient to increase greatly the vaporization of moisture from the hot load. This common provision for drying materials after autoclaving should not be confused with the high vacuum assisted autoclave referred to later.

Although the length of time required to sterilize a load at a particular temperature and pressure will depend on both the volume and the nature of the load, it is possible to specify the following equivalents as the minimal time/temperature relationships to be maintained throughout a load to assure sterility (Medical Research Council 1959).

A number of indicator systems are available which will indicate that a given temper-

The most important and to many the most unexpected implication of the death/time relationship is revealed by equation (2) above. In plain words, that equation states that the *proportion* of organisms dying in equivalent time periods is a constant. If a number  $\mathbf{N}$  successively reduced by half in a series of operations, simple mathematics tells us that it is impossible, however long the operations are continued, to reach zero, although for all practical purposes that is the limit which  $\mathbf{N}$  *approached*. The situation  $\mathbf{N}$  precisely analogous in sterilization and the implication of this fact for medical and biologic problems has never been better stated than by Powell. In regard to the probability function implied in the logarithmic death/time relationship of sterilization, he wrote:

This  $\mathbf{N}$  characteristic of all methods of sterilisation—heat, ethylene oxide, chemical disinfection. Thus it will be seen that as the length of treatment increases, the probability of finding any viable microorganism decreases without theoretically reaching zero, i.e. absolute sterility. This is not generally realised unfortunately, particularly in medicine and pharmacy, but it is well recognised in the food industry. This does not mean that we are questioning whether an item is sterile or not, but rather how many items can be sterilised under a particular set of conditions before one of them will be found to be non-sterile.\*

With this introduction, the next sections will be devoted to detailed consideration of the processes of sterilization and disinfection used in medical and biologic work. The comments in regard to the death/time relationship apply throughout, except for the mechanical methods of which filtration is the best example.

### STERILIZATION

*Sterilization* is the elimination of all viable microorganisms by heat, radiation, chemical compounds or mechanical methods. It is an absolute term, unqualified by whether the organisms are pathogens or commensals.

The term sterilization (in the microbio-

\* Powell D. B. Application of radiation sterilisation to surgical materials. In: Recent developments in the sterilisation of surgical materials. Report of a symposium, pp. 9-10. London: The Pharmaceutical Press, 1961.

logic sense) came into being with the demonstration of the role of microorganisms as the causative agent of putrefaction—a result of the studies of Jablot, Spallanzani, Pasteur and others in the spirited controversy in regard to spontaneous generation. Only with demonstration and acceptance of the dictum that life comes from life was it possible to define the processes of sterilization and disinfection. This event was followed by the rapid growth of the field of pathogenic microbiology, leading by the last part of the 19th century, to techniques, media and taxonomic classifications suitable for critical studies of the process of sterilization. Since that time, knowledge of the process has evolved until today the term sterilization includes the destruction of all forms of microorganisms, whether they be vegetative cells, spores or virus particles.

Sterilization is defined as successful if appropriate tests cannot demonstrate *multiplication* of the organisms originally present. Thus the criterion of viability of a microorganism, the ability to multiply, is much simpler than the corresponding criterion for the human organism, for example. Its simplicity is deceptive. Koch's original studies on the inactivation of anthrax spores are a case in point. His estimates of the killing power of  $\text{HgCl}_2$  for this organism were subsequently found to be too high, because spores which had been sterilized could multiply if the organisms were first treated with  $\text{H}_2\text{S}$  to remove the toxic  $\text{Hg}^{++}$  ions in the form of the relatively insoluble  $\text{HgS}$ . Another example of an overestimation of the sterilizing power of a chemical agent may be found in the recent experience with killed poliomyelitis vaccine (Nathanson and Langmuir, 1963; Wilson, 1963). The reader is referred to the cited references for a discussion of the factors involved.

### Methods of Sterilization

**Moist Heat, High Pressure Steam Sterilization.** The use of high pressure steam in an autoclave is the most satisfactory method of sterilization in common use today. Death due to moist heat is attributed to heat denaturation of protein constituents of the microbial cell, but nothing is known of the precise injury responsible for death. It is generally recognized that moist heat is far

more appropriately as chemical disinfectants. Second the mechanical equipment required to utilize the chemical sterilants is similar to that found in the vacuum assisted autoclave. Indeed many commercial installations of sterilizing equipment are combination gas steam sterilizers.

**Ethylene Oxide** The simplest cyclic ether ethylene oxide ( $C_2H_4O$ ) is a colorless gas with a pleasant ethereal odor. It liquefies at  $10.8^\circ C$  and solidifies at  $-113.3^\circ C$ . It has a flammability similar to that of diethyl ether and a similar disturbing property of forming highly explosive mixtures with air over a wide range of dilutions. Within the past decade several firms have made available chamber sterilizers designed for use with ethylene oxide which have practically eliminated the explosion hazard associated with this form of sterilization. The safety of the equipment depends in part on mechanical design and in part on the use of non-flammable mixtures. Two diluents have been used in proportions of 9 parts of an inert gas to 1 part of  $C_2H_4O$ . Carbovide® is the trade name of the mixture with carbon dioxide. Cryoxide® is that of the mixture with freons. At present ethylene oxide sterilization is attracting strong interest in the medical field particularly for the class of materials that cannot withstand the heat of autoclaving (Mayr 1961, Perkins and Lloyd 1961, Phillips 1961). As greater experience is gained with this method it will undoubtedly find greater application in medicine although it is never likely to become as widely used as the autoclave.

The sterilizing action of ethylene oxide is attributed to its high chemical reactivity in alkylating sulphhydryl, amino, carboxyl and hydroxyl groups in the protein molecule (Phillips 1961). Recent studies have demonstrated that rapid sterilization with this agent requires a relative humidity of 30 per cent or greater suggesting that the water content of the microorganism is important in the action of the sterilant. Recommended exposure times at 50 per cent relative humidity and  $54^\circ C$  are 5 hours at 450 mg/L or 3 hours at 900 mg/L (Perkins and Lloyd 1961).

In practice ethylene oxide sterilization is similar to the use of the vacuum assisted

autoclave. After loading and sealing the chamber a vacuum is drawn and carefully measured volumes of water and diluted ethylene oxide are admitted to achieve the desired concentrations of both. The chamber remains at a slight negative pressure for the duration of the sterilization cycle and heat is applied to bring the load to a temperature of  $54^\circ C$ . Penetration of the gas is rapid even through sealed plastic containers and packages. At the end of the sterilization cycle the chamber is again evacuated to remove residual gas. Because ethylene oxide dissolves to an appreciable extent in rubber and plastics (as a gas in solid solution) a further waiting period is required before use of such items in order to permit diffusion of gas from the material (Perkins and Lloyd 1961). In all a full cycle from loading to release for use of such items as rubber gloves requires about 24 hours so that it is not a particularly rapid process. On the other hand for items made of plastic, rubber or other thermolabile materials ethylene oxide sterilization is very attractive because it results in minimal deterioration. The process leaves little to be desired in terms of efficiency provided that the requirement for 50 per cent relative humidity is met. Indeed many medical items on the market today have been sterilized by this means.

It is of some interest that the use of ethylene oxide as a disinfectant and sterilant is not new except in the medical field. It has been employed in the tobacco and the spice industries for at least 30 years (Mayr 1961). The gas is not without untoward effects on certain chemicals as might be expected from its chemical reactivity. It has been found that animal feeds that are sterilized with ethylene oxide suffer marked destruction of both vitamins and amino acids (Windmueller *et al* 1956, Windmueller *et al* 1959). On the basis of these results caution should be exercised in the use of ethylene oxide in sterilization of bacteriologic media, even though this application has been described (Wilson and Bruno 1950, Judge and Pelczar 1955).

**Formaldehyde** The simplest aldehyde formaldehyde ( $CH_2O$ ) is a pungent chemical that is familiar to most individuals in medicine because of its wide use in preservation of anatomic materials. It has had a long

TABLE 1 TIME/TEMPERATURE RELATIONSHIPS FOR STERILIZATION WITH SATURATED STEAM

TIME MIN	TEMPERATURE C	PRESSURE LB / IN <sup>2</sup>
15	121	15
10	126	20
3	134	30

ature has been reached during sterilization (Perkins 1957). One in very common use is a recording thermometer in the exit line but unfortunately this device provides no data on the temperature of the load. At least two systems will show that the load has been exposed to a minimum temperature for a minimum time period. However all of these methods of measurement are subject to criticism. Perhaps the most satisfactory control system for sterilization is the use of a test strip inoculated with a spore-forming organism with known thermal resistance characteristics. Even this technic has the disadvantage that it provides no immediate answer to the question of whether the load has been subjected to adequate heat for an adequate time to sterilize the test organism. Nevertheless it does provide valuable information that is not available from the other methods and it is frequently employed (in addition to simpler less definitive methods) as a weekly or monthly check on the conditions of sterilization at many institutions.

There has been considerable interest in shortening the time required to complete the sterilization cycle. Greatest attention has been directed to the initial air displacement phase since frequently as much time may be spent in removing air from the chamber as in the high temperature phase of the cycle. This has led to the development of the vacuum assisted autoclave in which the chamber is exhausted to an absolute pressure of 20 mm Hg or less before steam is admitted (Medical Research Council 1960; Bowie 1961; Shotton 1961). Such techniques pose several problems of mechanical design of chamber and door to withstand both positive and negative pressures and also of adequate microbial filtration of the air which re-establishes atmospheric pressure within the

chamber. Several units are now commercially available and are of value in such applications as emergency sterilization of surgical instruments.

With any installation extreme care must be exercised in making pressure changes when fluids are being autoclaved. Unless these changes are sufficiently gradual plugs and stoppers may be blown from containers or glass bottles may be violently shattered by explosive boiling of superheated liquids. Despite these minor problems—which need only to be understood by the operator—sterilization by steam under pressure remains the most frequently used method of sterilization in medical practice today.

**INSPISSATION AND TYNDALLIZATION** Both of these techniques have been used for the preparation of certain bacteriologic media and find limited use even today. Inspissation is the coagulation of serum or proteinaceous media by short exposure to temperatures of from 85 to 100°C is still utilized in many laboratories for the preparation of Loeffler's blood serum agar for cultivation of diphtheria organisms. It is usually followed by autoclaving or tyndallization. Tyndallization also called fractional sterilization may be used as an emergency substitute for more efficient methods or with those few media which cannot withstand the temperature of autoclaving. As originally described it consisted of heating at 80°C for 30 minutes on each of 3 successive days. The technique now has a number of variations in both temperature and time e.g. 100°C in flowing steam for 60 minutes on 3 days. Regardless of the method employed the rationale is the same. An exposure at 80°C for 30 minutes is adequate to kill all vegetative forms present. Any spores surviving the initial heating should germinate by the second day and be killed in the second heating. The third heating provides a safety factor for a slightly marginal process.

**GASEOUS STERILIZATION** Although this method logically might be included under the heading of chemical agents it is considered at this point for two reasons. First there are only three chemicals—ethylene oxide, formaldehyde and  $\beta$ -propiolactone—worthy of consideration as chemical sterilants. The remainder of the chemical agents are classed

ature required for sterilization (as in the procedure recommended for the autoclave) Provided that such a control test is included it is possible to define the time/temperature relationship for any object to be sterilized by dry heat The usual limits recommended for glass and metal items are 2 hours at 160° C or 3 hours at 140° C The time of exposure starts with the time the most central part of the load reaches the indicated temperature so that these limits do not include the time required to bring the load to sterilizing temperature

**INFRARED** A second type of dry heat sterilization which has achieved acceptance in the large scale processing of syringes in Britain is the use of infrared heating lamps in an enclosed conveyer belt process (Hopkins 1961)

**FLAMING AND COMBUSTION** The flaming of the microbiologist's loop to incinerate viable organisms is familiar to everyone who has worked in the laboratory and represents an extreme example of heat sterilization by combustion Incineration is also sometimes employed in the air exhaust systems used with enclosed hoods for handling highly infectious agents in the laboratory On the other hand the routine flaming of the mouths of culture tubes and flasks by the microbiologist would appear to be of very little value in sterilizing these surfaces because of the short period of exposure It is possible that the practice has some benefit but, if so it is more likely to be that of burning off cotton fibers or dust that otherwise might fall onto the surface of the culture medium

**RADIATION GENERAL** Three types of radiation have assumed importance in the sterilization of biologic materials ultraviolet light (UV) gamma ( $\gamma$ ) and x ray radiation and high energy electrons ( $\beta$  particles) Although these differ from each other in both nature and energy the processes by which they damage the microbial cell are similar The UV the  $\gamma$  and the x ray radiations are electromagnetic in nature and all follow the laws of quantum mechanics When they are absorbed by biologic material energy is released in packets or quanta the energy content of which is inversely proportional to the wavelength of the radiation The same quantal release of energy occurs with the

absorption of visible light although the energy package in this case is not sufficiently large to cause damage it may be used in plants (for example) for photosynthesis In the transition between violet visible light and the UV a threshold is crossed and the energy of the quantum absorbed becomes large enough to induce ionization within the cell The changes that result from such ionization depend on the energy released as well as the morphologic site of its release With marginally effective quanta of absorbed UV chemical bonds may be ruptured and new bonds formed or the energy may be dissipated totally as heat without chemical changes As the wavelength of the incident radiation decreases to that of  $\gamma$  or x ray radiation the energy released per quantum becomes hundreds to thousands of times greater than that per quantum of UV Accordingly there are very few such high energy quanta which are inactive in the sense that they produce only thermal effects Chemical changes become more drastic and far reaching The energy of the quantum is dissipated among many molecules along its path and may produce drastic chemical changes in more than one cell Such changes may take the form of genetic changes and if the change is lethal may result in the death of the cell

High energy electrons ( $\beta$  rays or particles) are particles in nature and differ in this respect from UV and  $\gamma$  radiations Nevertheless such particles when accelerated to nearly the speed of light produce much the same effects in cells as do UV and  $\gamma$  radiations The electrons gradually release their energy through multiple collisions in the atomic matrix of the cell and produce chemical changes similar to those produced by  $\gamma$  radiation (Trump 1961)

**GAMMA RADIATION** Cobalt 60 sources have been the most commonly used gamma emitters in sterilization installations to date This technic requires radiation sources of 30 to 100 kilocuries\* which are far larger than most cobalt 60 sources used for therapy and therefore require elaborate shielding and

\* A curie is the unit of radioactivity defined as that quantity of radioactive material producing  $3.7 \times 10^{10}$  disintegrations/second 1 kilocurie =  $10^3$  curies.

and colorful history as a preservative and a disinfectant, but as a gaseous sterilant it runs a poor second to ethylene oxide

The sterilizing action of formaldehyde is attributed to its reactivity for the amino groups in protein molecules. Precise data on exposure times required for sterilization are difficult to obtain and a few remarks on the chemistry of the material may provide an explanation. Formaldehyde as a chemical is characterized by a propensity for polymerization and a high affinity for water. Indeed concentrations of the free gas in air usually do not exceed 1.75 to 2.0 mg/L. Once this concentration is exceeded the gas condenses as a poorly defined polymer paraformaldehyde. Under certain conditions the gas may also form a ring condensation product, trioxane. Both paraformaldehyde and other condensation products break down on heating to formaldehyde. Formaldehyde is also available commercially as formalin, a solution of 37 per cent formaldehyde and 5 to 10 per cent methanol in water. The gas in solution exists to a considerable extent as a chemical hydrate which may be broken down by heating. With this background it is understandable that both temperature and relative humidity have been found to be major influences on the sterilizing action of formaldehyde. It is also understandable that formaldehyde slowly vaporizing from condensed paraformaldehyde may be released for appreciable periods of time by articles exposed to the gas.

Because of the characteristics mentioned above formaldehyde has found little popularity as a sterilizing agent. It has been utilized in the disinfection (and perhaps sterilization) of both sick rooms and laboratory areas. Under such use it has been recommended that 1 ml of formalin be vaporized (either by heating or by spraying from a fine nozzle) for each cubic foot of space involved. An exposure time of 10 hours has been recommended at a temperature of 70° F and 50 per cent relative humidity. An airing period of several days usually is required to rid the room of the odor of the gas (Phillips 1957). Formaldehyde also has been used in the sterilization of certain types of medical and surgical equipment that would be harmed by heat.

**Beta propiolactone** ( $C_3H_4O$ ), a condensation product of ketene and formaldehyde has been employed in aqueous solution to sterilize biologic materials and in vapor phase to decontaminate items of medical equipment (Hoffman and Warshowsky 1958, Allen and Murphy, 1960).

**Dry Heat HOT AIR OVEN** Second to the autoclave the hot air oven is one of the important sterilization devices in use today. It has had a long history dating back to the last century when it was first used in microbiology. However even at that time Koch recognized that dry heat was much less effective than moist heat in sterilization. His observations were paralleled by the observations of the biochemists that enzymes were far more resistant to heat in the dry state than they were in solution. The exact mechanism by which dry heat inactivates microorganisms is unknown but it has been suggested that it is mediated through an oxidation process (Perkins 1957).

For these reasons a temperature of 160° C for a period of 1 to 2 hours is necessary in a hot air oven to achieve the same conditions of sterility that may be obtained at 121° C in 15 to 30 minutes in the autoclave. Not only is a longer time required to achieve the same result but since all heating is by convection and radiation unassisted by the heat of condensation of water vapor it will usually require a longer time for a load of equipment to reach sterilizing temperature in the oven than in the autoclave. In spite of these limitations and the further problem that both cotton plugs and cloth are somewhat weakened by exposure to 160° C the dry air oven is the preferable method of sterilization of many metal or glass items, heat stable powders and other materials which would either react or be damaged by exposure to water vapor or condensate.

The method of loading a hot air oven is fully as critical as that for the autoclave. Because of the less efficient heat transfer by air even when under forced convection by fan adequate space for air circulation must be provided between packages on a single shelf and between shelves in the oven. If it is necessary to sterilize large porous items by dry heat a spore control should be included in the initial tests to determine the time and the temper-

fluids is an old technic to which new materials have been applied within the past decade. The first filters were made of porcelain by Pasteur and Chamberland in the form of a cylindrical candle. Subsequently German manufacturers introduced a similar filter made of diatomaceous earth. Both types were fragile and difficult to clean following use but nevertheless permitted the separation of microorganisms from their suspending fluid. They played an important role in the early work with bacteriophage and until the early part of the 20th century were the only filters available. Then the asbestos pad (Seitz) filter, the sintered glass filter and the colloidion and nitrocellulose graded porosity ultrafilters (Gradacol and Millipore®) were introduced. Each of these types of filters can give excellent results and each has its own advantages and drawbacks.

The physical process of filtration cannot be likened simply to the use of a sieve in separating various sizes of sands and gravels. It was early demonstrated that most bacterial filters carry a negative charge and since bacteria themselves carry a negative charge at physiologic pHs forces of electrical repulsion are present. All filters also adsorb solutes, particularly proteins from the material that is filtered and thus tends to decrease the effective pore size. All in all at least three factors—mechanical sieving, electrical repulsion and solute absorption—are at work with most filters so that the dimensions of the organism retained by the filter are smaller than the pores of the filters. Filters must be sterilized before each use and once filtration is initiated it must be completed within a reasonable time. Otherwise organisms retained by the filter will multiply and in time grow through the filter from the contaminated to the sterile face. Simple tests are available using either a test microorganism or physical means for checking the integrity of a bacterial filter. For details the reader is referred to the summary by Sykes (1958).

**ULTRASONIC TREATMENT** This method of treatment is mentioned in passing not because it has practical value in sterilization but because it is both a research tool and a practical method of cleansing items of surgical and laboratory equipment. Frequencies of 10

kilocycles to several megacycles have been employed. In every case ultrasonic energy has been applied to a fluid medium in the form of longitudinal mechanical vibrations. At high energy levels such vibrations both heat the fluid and produce cavitations—minute cavities in the fluid which expand and collapse in response to the pressure changes of the ultrasonic wave propagated through the fluid. These cavitations are exceedingly effective in cleaning the surfaces of objects immersed in the fluid. Furthermore bacteria, particularly the rod shaped organisms, are susceptible to rupture by the stresses produced by the cavitations. The spherical bacteria are relatively resistant to rupture so the technic has not found application in sterilization. However for certain organisms it is a convenient and practical method of releasing bacterial contents, obtaining cell walls and rendering the majority of organisms non viable (Sykes 1958).

**FREEZE THAWING** This technic like ultrasonic exposure has little general application in sterilization but is of interest because it may be valuable for destruction of certain fragile organisms e.g. amoebae. Disruption is caused by mechanical stresses resulting from the formation of ice crystals in the suspending medium. Crystalline ice is subject to migratory recrystallization i.e. increase in size of large crystals at the expense of small ones at temperatures not far below 0°C. This crystalline rearrangement also can produce mechanical damage to microorganisms. It is for this reason that cultures of microorganisms are usually better preserved at temperatures of -70°C than at -20°C. The topic of freezing, drying and preservation of biologic materials has been summarized in a recent monograph (New York Academy of Sciences 1960) to which the reader is referred for greater detail.

## DISINFECTION AND ANTISEPSIS

**Disinfection** is the destruction of microorganisms on inanimate objects most commonly by chemical means. Antisepsis is closely related but carries the connotation that the destruction is accomplished on a body surface. Thus it is possible to consider a given agent as either a disinfectant or an antiseptic depending on the method of usage.



safety precautions. With radiation sterilization as with most other forms of sterilization, microbial spores and viruses require higher dosage levels than do vegetative cells. Experience has accumulated to indicate that a dosage level of 2.0 to 2.5 megarads\* is sufficient to reduce the surviving organisms by a factor of  $10^7$  which has usually been accepted as sufficient for medical applications. Larger doses may be required with certain microorganisms or with certain materials.

Side reactions at the 2.5 megarad dosage levels are minimal. It is not possible to induce radioactivity with the 1.17 and 1.33 MeV† radiations emitted by cobalt 60 but slight deterioration has been noted in products made of rubber, wool or plastic. In practice gamma sterilization has been applied to dressings, syringes, catheters and other medical items. It is also attracting attention as a means of preserving foods.

**HIGH ENERGY ELECTRONS.** Linear particle accelerators such as the Van de Graaff generator have been utilized in the commercial preparation of surgical sutures and other materials for a number of years. Peak energies obtainable by the direct particle accelerators are limited to about 5 MeV in production installations but greater energies are obtainable through use of the indirect accelerators such as the microwave linear accelerator. Peak energies above 10 MeV are likely to induce some radioactivity in the product sterilized and for this reason most work has been done with generators in the 1 to 5 MeV range. In general a dosage level of 2.0 to 2.5 megarads is required with high energy electron radiation to achieve a  $10^7$  fold reduction in microorganisms and in this respect  $\gamma$  radiation and  $\beta$  particle sterilization are comparable. They are also comparable in respect to side-effects in production of minor deterioration of rubber, wool and plastic (Trump 1961).

**ULTRAVIOLET RADIATION.** UV light has been studied for a number of years since the development of the carbon arc and the mercury vapor arc lamp. It is far less energetic

than either  $\gamma$  radiation or high energy electrons. The UV wavelength of the mercury line at 2537 Angstrom units‡ corresponds to a quantum (or photon) energy of only 5 eV. Accordingly, UV radiation has a very low capacity for ionization or excitation of molecules.

Nevertheless, even the UV radiation in sunlight has appreciable killing power readily demonstrated by exposure of an inoculated plate to direct sunlight. For this reason the past two decades have produced much interest in the use of UV light to sterilize air in laboratories, surgical operating rooms and classrooms. Unfortunately, effective use of UV light as a sterilizing agent is limited by the dermal burns it produces in man and by its extremely limited penetrating power even into most substances which transmit visible light. Although it is quite possible to kill many organisms by exposures to 5 to 10 milliwatts/cm<sup>2</sup> in time periods of 1 minute or less, the maximum allowable level for human exposure has been set at 0.5 and 0.1 microwatts/cm<sup>2</sup> for 8- and 24 hour exposure periods (Shechmeister 1957). Whenever UV intensity levels have been brought within these limits in application to classrooms and hospital wards, little practical value has been recognized in terms of reduction of illnesses or major reductions in bacterial counts. In situations in which high intensity UV radiation can be employed—e.g. disinfection of a laboratory work area following use—much more satisfactory results have been obtained. Similarly good results have been reported in the use of high intensity UV 'barrier' radiation in hospital situations where patients are restricted to the areas so protected (Wells 1955). UV like light travels in straight lines and for this reason cannot penetrate into cracks and hidden corners. The current opinion is that its usefulness is limited and an excellent annotated summary has been prepared by Sykes (1958).

**RADIO FREQUENCY AND INFRARED.** These forms of radiation have no intrinsic capability of sterilizing biologic materials other than through thermal effects which both produce (Sykes 1958).

**Mechanical Methods.** **FILTRATION.** The use of mechanical filtration for sterilizing

\* A megarad is  $10^6$  rads. A rad is defined as a unit of radiation equivalent to the deposition of 100 ergs of energy/Gm of absorbing material.

† MeV =  $10^6$  eV. 1 eV = work done in acceleration of one electron by a 1 volt field.

‡ Angstrom unit =  $1/10,000$  micron.

ity of the milk. To meet this objection a high temperature short time pasteurization by heating to  $71.7^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $161^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) for 15 seconds had previously been developed and this flash pasteurization treatment will destroy the agent of Q fever. Any of these methods will also inactivate a phosphatase present in untreated milk so that the assay for this enzyme is frequently employed as a confirmatory test for pasteurization.

**Chemicals PHENOLS SOAPS ALCOHOLS AND RELATED COMPOUNDS** Phenol is one of the oldest disinfectants intentionally used in medical practice having first been used by Lister in surgery in 1865. In comparison with other agents available today it is relatively ineffective as well as moderately toxic to living tissue. Because of its position in the field of disinfectants it has been adopted as the standard against which other agents are tested. The activity of phenolic compounds is increased by halogenation or the addition of alkyl side chains. The alkyl side chains produce surface active agents in which the alkyl chain becomes oriented to the lipid phase and the hydroxy group to the aqueous phase of an interface. In general this class of compounds is effective against vegetative forms of bacteria including the tubercle bacillus and the fungi. Activity against spores and viruses is minimal. The mode of action of the phenolic detergents is mediated either through the ability of the agents to denature proteins or through their ability to increase the permeability of cell walls (Gale and Taylor 1947).

In practice the phenols are frequently used as mixtures of a phenol (such as tricresol) in soap. Such mixtures are both excellent cleansing agents and moderately good disinfectants and this has undoubtedly contributed to their popularity. However too much soap can actually eliminate the germicidal action of the phenol by selective adsorption of the disinfectant on the soap micelle. One of the substituted phenols hexachlorophene or G 11 retains its full activity in soaps and is widely used in proprietary surgical soaps. This compound is active against the majority of the gram positive skin contaminants but it is relatively inactive against gram negative organisms and for this reason should be limited in usage to skin

cleansing and disinfection (Sykes 1958).

Soaps themselves have only moderate activity as bactericidal and bacteriostatic agents against microorganisms in addition to their purely physical action in cleansing. In general their activity varies with the fatty acid component (Sykes 1958).

**Anionic detergents** such as sodium lauryl sulfate have minimal antimicrobial action except in high concentrations and this is primarily against gram positive organisms.

**Alcohols** have had a long history in disinfection but relatively few have achieved an important place. The two most common alcohols in everyday use are ethyl alcohol and isopropyl alcohol. Both are effective against vegetative cells, slowly effective against viruses and almost totally ineffective against spores. Ethyl alcohol is most effective as a general disinfectant in concentrations of 50 to 70 per cent. It is being replaced by isopropyl alcohol in many applications since the latter compound is not subject to legal restrictions. The alcohols apparently act through protein denaturation.

**Ethylene and propylene glycols** have received considerable attention as air disinfectants. They are appreciably active as thermally generated aerosols against many viruses and bacteria under experimental conditions when the relative humidity is held between 40 and 65 per cent. Ethylene glycol is effective in about 1 part per million (p.p.m.) in air. Viruses tested and shown to be susceptible to its action have included influenza, meningopneumonitis, psittacosis, mumps, and Newcastle disease (Sykes 1958).

**Dyes** Two major classes of dyes exert bacteriostatic effects particularly against the gram positive organisms. Some of the members of the triphenylmethane series have such selectivity in their activity that they have been incorporated into selective media for growth of the gram negative organisms i.e. brilliant green and crystal violet. This group of dyes produces bacteriostasis by interfering with the oxidation mechanisms of the cell but the exact nature of the inhibition is still speculative (Fischer and Munoz, 1947).

The other major group of bacteriostatic dyes is the acridines. Like the triphenylmethane series the acridines interfere with the

In discussion of the disinfectants and antiseptics two suffixes are commonly employed. The suffix *-cidal* indicates a lethal effect e.g., bactericidal, virucidal or fungicidal whereas *-static* indicates inhibition of multiplication without lethality e.g., bacteriostatic, virustatic or fungistatic.

**Disinfection of articles of commerce** and particularly articles of mail dates back about 500 years. The interested reader is referred to the monograph of Meyer (1962) for a detailed review of postal disinfection. The intentional medical use of antiseptics is more recent in origin. Semmelweis advocated chloride of lime for preventing the spread of puerperal sepsis and Lister chose phenol for his early efforts in antiseptic surgery.

### *Dynamics of Disinfection*

The time-action relationship discussed in the introduction applies to disinfection and antiseptics as well as to sterilization. Where chemical disinfection is concerned, the nature of the suspending medium is critical in appraising the activity of the agent. This should be expected because most disinfectants react with proteins in general and other nitrogenous materials in the test medium compete with the microorganisms for the disinfectant. Testing the activity of disinfectants is a complex procedure and for this reason no attempt will be made to discuss it in detail. In principle, a new disinfectant is compared with a standard (usually phenol) to determine antimicrobial activity in a given time interval. The ratio of the dilution of the new disinfectant to the dilution of the phenol giving comparable activity is termed the *phenol coefficient*. Since many disinfectants are bactericidal in low dilutions and bacteriostatic in high dilutions, erroneous conclusions may be reached unless the bacteriostatic effect is eliminated either by extreme dilution or by a specific antagonist (such as  $H_2S$  for  $HgCl_2$ ). The topic of disinfectant testing is thoroughly dealt with in two excellent texts (Reddish 1957, Sykes 1958).

### *Methods of Disinfection*

**Moist Heat BOILING** Moist heat in its simplest form, i.e., boiling, has been widely used for disinfection. It destroys vegetative forms of most microorganisms in a brief ex-

posure, and even spores of most human pathogens are destroyed within a few minutes at  $100^\circ C$ . Until the past decade this method of disinfection has been widely used in physicians' offices for syringes, needles and small instruments. With the demonstration of the transmission of the virus of infectious hepatitis in serum-contaminated needles, this practice has been largely discarded for more efficient methods, e.g., autoclaving. However, there may be emergency situations where boiling is the only method available to disinfect equipment and, if so, it should be borne in mind that less than 30 minutes at  $100^\circ C$  may be insufficient to inactivate the infectious hepatitis virus (Eichenwald and Mosley 1959). Boiling does not sterilize in the correct sense of the word since many nonpathogenic organisms in spore form may survive exposure to  $100^\circ C$  for 30 minutes. Because these organisms are incapable of producing disease in man, they are of no concern if the material so treated is to be used for injections or minor surgery. From the microbiologist's viewpoint, such organisms are capable of growth in culture media and a single boiling is inadequate for his purposes without the added refinement of tyndalization (described under Sterilization).

**PASTEURIZATION** This procedure employed primarily for treating milk and other fluids is another example of selective elimination of human pathogens without destroying a large number of microorganisms whose presence may be accepted as noninjurious. As originally developed by Pasteur, pasteurization was designed to eliminate undesirable bacteria which oxidized to acid the alcohol produced in yeast fermentation of beers and wines. That application of the technique was not generally accepted at first, allegedly on the grounds that it spoiled the true flavor of the beverage. The process subsequently was applied widely in the milk industry to eliminate the agents of tuberculosis and brucellosis from contaminated milk. Recent studies have indicated that conventional pasteurization at  $61.7^\circ C$  ( $143^\circ F$ ) for 30 minutes will not kill the organisms of Q fever if they are present, whereas a temperature of  $62.8^\circ C$  ( $145^\circ F$ ) will do so (Enright 1957). Unfortunately, the higher temperature has an adverse effect on creaming abil-

for disinfection. The conventional chemical test for determining chlorine levels in water supplies and swimming pools, the orthotolidine test, gives results in terms of total residual chlorine, which, if the water contains appreciable ammonia, may erroneously indicate a safe level of chlorination when, in fact, the water is unsafe. There is as yet no simple test for free chlorine, but the need for further research in this area is widely recognized.

The exact means by which  $\text{HOCl}$  exerts its bactericidal action is unknown, but it is apparently by oxidation of the cell membrane. There is no doubt that the material is bactericidal rather than bacteriostatic. The disinfecting action of chlorine-containing compounds is highly dependent on pH of the water and temperature. Further, such variation of activity with pH and temperature parallels quite closely the dissociation curves for  $\text{HOCl}$ , so that all available evidence points to  $\text{HOCl}$  being the active agent in the disinfecting process. In general, levels of 0.5 to 1.0 p.p.m. total residual chlorine are considered adequate for disinfection of water of good quality. Where the water contains appreciable levels of organic materials, the initial dose of chlorine must be increased to maintain the residual at the level indicated.

**HEAVY METALS.** Heavy metal disinfectants and antiseptics fall into three general categories: mercury, silver, and a miscellaneous group having only feeble activity, notably copper, lead, and zinc. The last named are widely used as astringents due to their ability to precipitate protein, and they appear to exert a favorable effect in promotion of wound healing. Actual measurement of their bactericidal activity indicates that levels of 1 to 10 Gm/100 ml are required to kill many pathogens (Salle 1957).

**Mercuric compounds.** Both inorganic and organic find wide use in industry, agriculture, and medicine. Mercuric chloride is widely used as a fungicide in both industry and agriculture, but its use in medicine is quite limited due to its high acute toxicity. The organic mercurial compounds have a much lower acute toxicity and have replaced the inorganic salts for most applications in medicine. Examples of these compounds are Mercurochrome, Merthiolate, and the phenylmercuric salts. The first two are widely used

for antiseptics; the second and the third are used for preservatives in biologic materials intended for injection. Appropriate concentrations of the latter two are 1:10,000 to 1:30,000.

The mode of action of mercuric salts is probably the best known of any disinfectant. The  $\text{Hg}^{++}$  ion has been shown to interfere with the metabolism of sulfhydryl compounds, an effect which can be counteracted by supplying an excess of these compounds, preferably in the form of glutathione, although cysteine, thioglycolic acid, and inorganic sulfides also function as antagonists. The combination of the  $\text{Hg}^{++}$  ion with the bacterial cell is apparently a rather loose one, since it is easily displaced by competitors or removed either by precipitation as  $\text{HgS}$  or by adsorption onto activated charcoal. Both vegetative cells and spores of fungi are susceptible to the action of  $\text{Hg}^{++}$ , but bacterial spores are relatively insensitive. While there is little doubt that mercuric salts are bactericidal in high concentrations, there is no question that they are only bacteriostatic in low concentrations because of the ease with which their inhibition can be neutralized. Because this system has been an important model for analysis of other disinfectants, the reviews by Fildes (1940) and Rahn (1945) are of interest.

**Silver salts and silver metal.** Silver have bactericidal properties even more marked than those of mercuric salts. Although it appears that only  $\text{Ag}^+$  is active as a disinfectant and that silver metal is active only through ionization, little is known of the specific chemical nature of the lethal injury to the microbial cell. Silver has been proposed for use in disinfection of water supplies and swimming pools, but has found little use in this area. Probably the most common use of silver salts has been the use of  $\text{AgNO}_3$  in the prophylaxis of gonococcal conjunctivitis. Silver proteinates also achieved a period of popularity in the treatment of conjunctivitis and gonorrhea, but have been almost totally replaced by antibiotics.

**OZONE.** This pleasant smelling but irritating gas can be demonstrated to be a highly effective disinfectant under conditions of low humidity in laboratory investigations. Unfortunately, its activity is limited almost to

reproductive mechanisms of the cell, probably by interfering with a chemical oxidation basic to its growth. Only the ionized form of the acridine is effective in bacteriostasis so that to be effective the molecule must be ionized as a cation to at least 50 per cent at pH 7.3 and 37° C (Sykes 1958). The subject of the acridine dyes has been thoroughly reviewed by Albert (1960).

Both categories of dyes have found limited use in medicine as bacteriostatic agents in burns and wounds. They are well tolerated by the tissues although troublesome in regard to staining of linens. In present practice they have been largely superseded by the sulfonamides and the antibiotics.

**CATIONIC QUATERNARY AMMONIUM COMPOUNDS** This class of disinfectants and antiseptics is comprised of substituted amines of the general formula  $R_1R_2R_3R_4N^+-X^-$  where  $R_1$  through  $R_4$  represent alkyl or heterocyclic groups and  $X^-$  an ionizable negatively charged group such as chloride or sulfate. They are characterized by polar orientation at aqueous interfaces and apparently function as disinfectants by increasing the permeability of cell walls (Stedman *et al* 1957). Obviously the variety of aliphatic radicals permits a large number of variations on the basic structure which have been thoroughly exploited by commercial firms. In distinction to the anionic detergents and the soaps the quaternary ammonium compounds are almost as effective against most gram negative as against gram positive organisms and for this reason have found increasing application in the past several decades. They are effective against most vegetative forms of bacteria, moderately effective against fungi and of limited activity against viruses and spores. Their antimicrobial action is in many situations enhanced by the surface cleaning action resulting from their detergent properties.

One distinctive characteristic of the cationic disinfectants is that they are almost completely inactivated by anionic detergents and soaps. As a result particular care must be taken to remove all soap from the skin surface if one of the quaternaries is chosen for use as a skin antiseptic. The same comment is applicable to surgical scrubs which are usually started with soap. An intermedi-

ate rinse and scrub with 50 per cent ethyl alcohol is indicated if final washing and donning of gloves involves the cationic quaternary ammonium compounds.

If this limitation is recognized, these compounds are excellent skin antiseptics and have found wide use in medical practice. Another application of this group of compounds is in restaurant sanitation. The choice of an appropriate detergent for use in sequence with a quaternary compound is crucial as indicated above; soap is undesirable.

**HALOGENS** Of the halogens only two, chlorine and iodine, have importance as disinfectants. The familiar tincture of iodine long used in medical practice has now been largely discarded in favor of less irritating or painful antiseptics. The disinfecting action of iodine is apparently due to direct action of the molecular iodine on the surface of the microbial cell. One class of iodine disinfectant has come into prominence within the past decade: the iodophors, or combination of iodine and a solubilizing agent or carrier. These materials are characterized by a slow and prolonged release of iodine allegedly with far less irritation than is observed with the common tincture of iodine (Gershenfeld 1957).

Chlorine has had a comparatively long and colorful history in the disinfection of public water supplies, and has probably contributed more than any other factor to the safety of water supplies. Chlorine in gaseous form reacts with water to form hypochlorous acid, HOCl, through which chlorine exerts its antimicrobial action. Chlorine is released from NaOCl available in grocery outlets the country over in the form of Clorox. Other sources of chlorine include the inorganic chloramines in which chlorine substitutes for one or more of the hydrogen atoms in ammonia and the organic chloramines in which chlorine is substituted for one or more hydrogen atoms in an organic amine, e.g. Chloramine T and Halazone. All of the chloramines react slowly with water to release HOCl. There is an important distinction in this regard between free chlorine (as HOCl) and total residual chlorine (which includes both HOCl and the chloramines). The two measurements differ because not all of the chloramine chlorine is immediately available

to the control of the dissemination of specific infectious diseases are excellently illustrated in the handbook *Control of Communicable Diseases of Man* (American Public Health Association 1965)

## IMMUNIZATION

The term *immunization* is applied to two quite different procedures—active immunization and passive immunization. *Active immunization* is the procedure whereby immunity is induced by the introduction of an antigen—ordinarily from an infectious agent—into the host to be immunized. This process when successful induces a specific protective reaction in the host which resembles to a varying extent, the reaction induced by the disease itself. After this response has been initiated the host retains the specific imprint of this stimulus for a relatively long time and can generally react vigorously and rapidly to the same stimulus should it recur in the future.

*Passive immunization* on the other hand consists of the transfer of serum from an immunized or naturally immune animal (or man) to a susceptible individual. Its usefulness results primarily from its relatively rapid action. However its success depends on the presence of an effective titer of protective antibodies in the serum of the donor and is limited to those infectious diseases for which it can be shown that serum antibodies have a significant protective action. Since many diseases (e.g. measles) are followed by a more or less lifelong antibody response the use of normal adult human serum for passive immunization against certain of the common childhood diseases is feasible.

Passive immunization gives only a transient protection and the level of this protection falls as rapidly as the transferred immune serum is metabolized and (in the case of a heterospecific serum) eliminated immunologically as a foreign substance.

## ACTIVE IMMUNIZATION

From the strictly immunologic point of view the introduction of any antigenic substance (e.g. albumin, diphtheria toxoid, bovine gamma globulin, tobacco mosaic virus) by an effective route will lead in any normal animal to a state of immunization

against the substance introduced. In the case of inert antigens such as those just cited the response can be detected by demonstrating that the serum of the immunized animal can take part in such specific immunologic reactions as precipitation, complement fixation, antigen elimination or various other familiar immunologic reactions. In many cases the animal not only exhibits a specific serologic response but will also acquire specific delayed type hypersensitivity to the antigen. Many other manifestations of the specific immune response could be cited. However when an infectious agent or a derivative of such an agent is used as the antigen, an additional series of phenomena in the immunized host may appear reflecting a specifically induced capability of killing or inactivating the infectious microbe involved. The classic example is *Vibrio cholerae* infection. Pfeiffer and Issaef (1894) showed that when cholera vibrios were mixed with a specific anticholera immune serum and the mixture was injected intraperitoneally into a guinea pig the vibrios rapidly lost their motility, became swollen and soon underwent lysis. If a different vibrio species was used or if a normal serum was employed the vibrios remained actively motile and retained their normal morphology. In a more direct type of experiment, it has been shown that fatal bacteremia—induced readily in normal rabbits by the intravenous injection of virulent pneumococci—is totally suppressed in animals previously inoculated with killed cultures of the same organism (Wright 1927). Such observations provide more direct evidence than does a physical reaction such as precipitation or agglutination to support the assumption that a given immunization procedure actually has a protective effect.

Immunization of man has been undertaken by the preparation of one of four types of immunizing agents.

1. *Live Attenuated Vaccines*. Pasteur's development of an attenuated chicken cholera vaccine through aging of the culture (Pasteur 1880), an anthrax vaccine by cultivation of the organism at high temperatures and a swine erysipelas vaccine by passage of the organism through rabbits served as illustrations of the variety of approaches that may lead to the successful development of a living attenuated strain which is safe and yet

tally to surface disinfection, and even a thin film of mucus is sufficient to protect a micro-organism from its action. For this reason it has found little application in air disinfection. Claims have been made for its efficacy in food preservation but even this application is of limited value (Ingram and Barnes 1954).

**HYDROGEN PEROXIDE**  $H_2O_2$  in a 3 per cent solution has been a common item of household use for decades. It is a fair disinfectant acting by oxidation but is readily and rapidly broken down by the enzyme catalase and by hemoglobin. As commonly used in cuts and abrasions it is of very little value because of the rapidity of its decomposition.

**PERMANGANATES** Permanganates are highly effective oxidizing disinfectants and have been commonly used in the disinfection of water that contains little or no organic material. Where organic compounds are present their use is not advisable. Reaction with microbial contaminants or with organic compounds produces the inert brown  $MnO_2$  which is inactive.

## QUARANTINE AND ISOLATION

The procedures designed to achieve sterilization or disinfection described above are—except for skin disinfection—applied to inanimate objects rather than people. Numerous measures for the prevention of infection are applied directly to people either as individuals or in groups. The oldest of these in all probability are isolation and quarantine. These two measures though different in concept and application are so closely related that they are best considered together.

Isolation is a measure employed to remove a sick person from contact with the community on the assumption that this will prevent him from spreading his disease to susceptible persons. It probably began in principle (as noted earlier) with the rejection of lepers from organized communities many centuries ago. It reached its apex during the early part of the microbial era. However with growing knowledge of the prevalence of the carrier state in many diseases and of the infectiousness of many diseases during the late incubation period the limitations in its value to the community have become ap-

parent. It will continue to be employed—as a matter of good public health practice as well as wise public policy—for diseases such as smallpox, which are regarded as major threats to the community, but its use even in smallpox cases may in the future be limited to the time it takes to render a patient non-infectious by appropriate chemotherapy. For less serious diseases such as scarlet fever and diphtheria it may retain a useful place insofar as it can reduce the risk to highly susceptible individuals, such as younger siblings in a family situation.

On the other hand isolation often has very real value for the patient, especially in those diseases such as measles which are prone to have serious respiratory complications. However, it is important to emphasize that isolation in the interest of the patient may be applied with equal justification to individuals with certain noninfectious diseases—e.g. congestive failure or a leukemic relapse—who not only require protection from the prevailing epidemic respiratory disease agents but probably are endangered even by contact with the ordinarily nonpathogenic flora in the nasopharynxes of their friends and relations. The difference between these two situations is one of detail, not principle.

Quarantine, a more recent measure of control, is the segregation under isolated conditions of individuals suspected of harboring a communicable disease. Its history is described vividly by Meyer (1962). Quarantine arose in an attempt to stem the spread of plague in Europe in the 14th century and has been applied extensively since then to almost every known communicable disease. Its effectiveness is clearly dependent on the infectious period of the disease, the ability to identify correctly the persons who may be infected and the promptness and accuracy with which quarantine actions are taken. Like isolation its routine use has become progressively more and more limited. However there are situations in which it can be employed in conjunction with reliable laboratory procedures or chemoprophylaxis with considerable efficiency as a means of minimizing the spread of a dangerous communicable disease. As a practical example such a combined approach can be applied logically to cholera.

The applications of these two approaches

group. Some such as the capsular substances of pneumococcus types II, III and VIII have been identified as relatively pure polysaccharides; others such as that of pneumococcus type I have been shown to be polysaccharides containing a small proportion of amino groups. Still others such as the so-called O antigens of the salmonella have been found to be complex macromolecules consisting of polysaccharides, lipoids and proteins loosely united to form the basic structure of the bacterial cell wall especially of gram negative bacteria. Lipopolysaccharides are difficult to characterize because they disaggregate on chemical and physical treatment and their antigenicity may be lost on purification.

#### *Pattern of the Immune Response*

The response to the injection or the administration of an antigen will vary depending on a great many qualifying factors many of which have been discussed in a recent excellent review (Cluff and Allen 1962). With sufficiently sensitive systems antibodies may be detected in the serum of the inoculated animal as early as 24 hours

after intravenous injection of the antigen (Uhr, Finkelstein and Baumann 1962) in the course of a rapid increase in antibody level which is essentially logarithmic in character. The peak of this response may be reached in about a week or 10 days. Following this the level of antibodies at first falls almost as rapidly as it rose with a progressively slower rate of fall leading to an asymptotic level which decreases very slowly over many many weeks and occasionally persists at a measurable level for years. If the injection is made subcutaneously the initial appearance of antibody will be delayed the peak may be reached somewhat later and the rate of fall may be more gradual. A typical response in man is shown in Figure 2.

In a number of instances it has been shown that the inoculation of polysaccharide antigens results in a different type of response the antibody rise comes on early and rapidly reaches a high level but the level is maintained without the rapid drop and the asymptotic leveling that generally has been found with most protein antigens. Examples of such patterns are given by Burnet and Fenner (Fig. 3) and in the detailed and quantitative

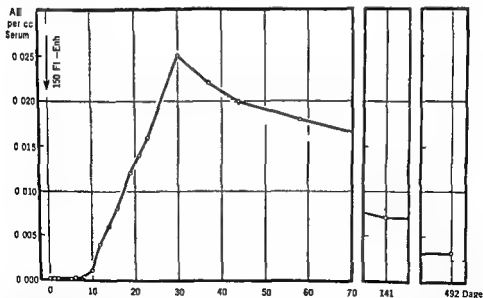


FIG. 2. Effect of a single injection of 150 flocculating units of concentrated and purified anatoxin in a 4 year old child without antitoxin prior to the injection. (From Jensen C. 1933 Acta path. microbiol. scand. 10: 137)



effective as a vaccine. Although more sophisticated methods for discovery, selection or creation of strains meeting the essential criteria for live vaccines now are available, the development of an attenuated vaccine still depends as much on good fortune as it does on good experimental design.

**2 Inactivated Vaccines** Killed suspensions of plague bacilli, typhoid bacilli and cholera vibrios developed in the last decade of the 19th century were the first of many such preparations used in the immunization of man.

**3 Antigen-Antibody Mixtures** Besides numerous such preparations for veterinary use, there has been one notable example—diphtheria toxin-antitoxin mixture developed by various investigators and culminating in the studies of von Behring (1913)—which has been successfully employed in the past for the immunization of man. However, it requires skillful balancing of the proportions of toxin and antitoxin to produce a mixture which is antigenic yet not clinically toxic.

**4 Colloidal or Fluid Derivatives of Bacterial Cultures** Filtrates or supernatants of bacterial cultures have been most effective as immunizing antigens when they contained exotoxins (e.g., diphtheria and tetanus toxins) which, when rendered safe by detoxification, could be used to produce immunity against the toxin. The work of several earlier investigators pointed the way to Ramon's definitive observations (1924) on the use of formalin for detoxification of exotoxin-containing culture filtrates. The resulting products (called *anatoxins* by Ramon and *toxoids* in the English and the German-speaking countries) have been used effectively on a world-wide scale.

By grinding bacteria in a ball mill, disrupting them with ultrasonic vibration, freezing and thawing them, or ejecting a bacterial suspension through a small orifice under high pressure, extraction and purification of bacterial antigens can be facilitated. Many experimental antigens (but few vaccines for human use) have been prepared this way. Such procedures are in most cases limited by difficulties in defining and chemically purifying the many antigens that are contained in any given microbial species. Even where adequate techniques for such purification

and separation exist, there is often no reliable information as to which particular antigen or antigens in the microbe are significant for protective immunization. There are a few exceptions, such as the anthrax bacillus from which a number of antigens have been characterized or demonstrated over a period of years and the actual protective antigen recently identified. The best defined antigens are diphtheria and tetanus toxoids, which have been highly purified by Pillemer and his associates (1946, 1947) and various highly purified pneumococcus polysaccharides (see Chap. 16). All of these have been well characterized physically and chemically and have been shown to be immunogenic against their respective diseases. On the other hand, none of the characterized antigens of the typhoid bacillus (see Chap. 25) has been unequivocally shown to be associated with immunity to typhoid fever in man (Edsall *et al.* 1959).

### Antigens

The term *antigen* has been used loosely up to this point to refer to any substance or complex of substances capable of inducing an immune response. However, purified well-characterized antigens can be divided into several chemical categories, and the antigenic behavior of each of these categories appears to depend in considerable part on its chemical nature. The majority of the well-studied antigens are proteins or protein complexes. Many fairly well characterized and purified proteins—e.g., egg albumin, bovine serum albumin, hemocyanin—have been used for experimental studies on the immune response. From the point of view of infectious disease control, only a few protein antigens known to induce protection against disease have been prepared and purified—chiefly the formalin-inactivated toxoids derived from diphtheria and tetanus toxins and certain other bacterial exotoxins. These are proteins with a molecular weight in the neighborhood of 70,000, which have the fortunate property of retaining their ability to stimulate resistance and produce antibodies after they have been detoxified, e.g., with small amounts of formalin.

Another very large class of effective and significant antigens is the polysaccharide

in the inoculation of typhoid bacilli in rabbits was similar to the Freundlich adsorption isotherm equation. In the modified expression of this equation  $Kc^{1/n} = Ab K$  and  $n$  are constants  $c$  is the concentration of antigen and  $Ab$  is the maximum concentration of antibody obtained. Graphically the dose response relationship is expressed in terms of a straight line with a slope of  $1/n$ . For some antigens  $n$  is a relatively small quantity and therefore the slope is relatively steep

whereas for others  $n$  is a much larger quantity and the slope is relatively flat. The range of  $n$  values interpolated from the literature by Stevens runs from 0.6 for diphtheria toxoid as a primary stimulus in the guinea pig to 3.6 for Vi antigen in the mouse. No very clear-cut generalization appears to be available for these data; their major significance is that the dose response relationship appears to vary considerably depending on the antigen and probably also on the host,

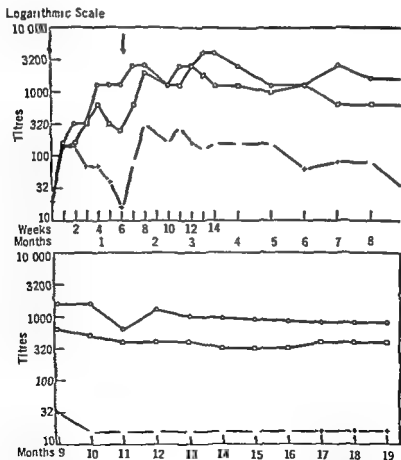


FIG. 4. Agglutinin titers (mean) in rabbits after subcutaneous injections of formalin killed typhoid bacilli. A +—+ suspended in salt solution B □—□ combined with Aquaphor and liquid petrolatum. C ○—○ combined with Aquaphor and liquid petrolatum containing killed tubercle bacilli. ↓ injection (From Freund J and Bonauto M V 1944 J Immun 48 325 334)

studies of Heidelberger *et al* (1946) on the serologic response of man to the inoculation of pneumococcus polysaccharides. In the latter studies the antibody levels remained relatively constant for 5 to 8 months and tapered off only gradually during a period of 2 years or so. One explanation offered for this pattern of response is that polysaccharide antigens are frequently more resistant to the natural digestive enzymes of the mammalian host than are most of the protein antigens; hence they persist for a longer time and maintain their antigenic stimulus accordingly.

The physical state of the antigen which is administered appears to make a significant difference in the response. Antigens may in essence be either soluble (e.g. fluid diphtheria or tetanus toxoid) or particulate (e.g. aluminum hydroxide absorbed toxoids, whole bacterial antigens, virus suspensions, etc.). In a systematic comparative study with diphtheria toxoid, Freund and Bonanto (1941) showed that the aluminum combined antigen was more effective when given intravenously than when given subcutaneously and that the reverse was the case for the fluid antigen. Thus, no single characteristic of the antigen or its administration can be considered by itself, but interactions appear to prevail between particle state, route of administration, etc.

**Route.** The mechanisms underlying the influence of the route of administration of an antigen have not been adequately studied, partly because of the many variables involved. The intravenous route is used widely in animal studies because it appears to induce the most rapid, massive and reproducible response. However, subcutaneous or intramuscular inoculation is usually employed in human immunization, not only because of its simplicity but also because it reduces the absorption rate and hence the risk of acute reactions.

It is widely believed that inoculating an antigen intracutaneously will enhance its effectiveness. However, studies on the use of tetanus toxoid by this route versus the subcutaneous route (Barr, Sayers and Stamm, 1959) suggest that the influence of route in this instance is minimal. In general, the effect of delayed absorption of antigen appears to be beneficial in regard to duration of the antibody response and suppressive in regard to the height of the immediate response.

**Dose.** The relation of antigen dose to the antibody response has frequently been validated, although there is no simple generalization on this point. Stevens (1956) has revived and extended an ingenious observation of Smith and St. John Brooks (1912) who showed that the dose-response relationship

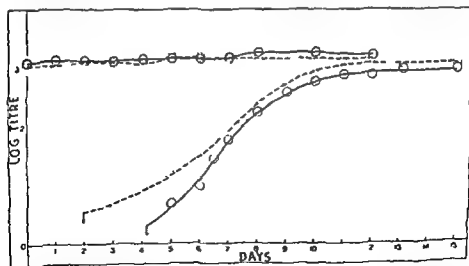


FIG. 3. Primary and secondary response of two rabbits given rickettsial emulsion intravenously. Note absence of secondary response. (From Burnet, F. M. and Fenner, F. 1949, *The Production of Antibodies*, p. 17, Melbourne: Macmillan.)

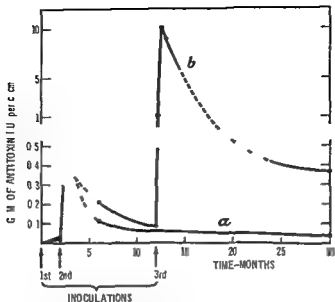


FIG 5 Tetanus antitoxin titers in the blood of persons receiving (a) two doses and (b) a third dose of fluid tetanus toxoid (From Evans D G 1941 Lancet 2 316 317)

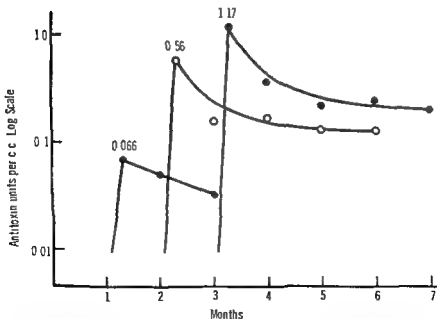


FIG 11 Geometric mean serum antitoxin levels in 3 groups of 15 guinea pigs given 2 doses of 0.25 Lf each of alum precipitated toxoid at intervals of 1, 2 or 3 months respectively (from Barr M and Glennie A T 1945 Some practical applications of immunological principles J Hyg 44 135 142)

the route of administration and other factors

**Adjuvants** Many substances have been shown to enhance the response produced by a given amount of antigen. Major emphasis has been focused upon two types of adjuvant procedures. The oldest is adsorption of the antigen onto aluminum salts (e.g. alum, aluminum hydroxide, aluminum phosphate). More recently water-in-oil emulsions of antigens prepared with purified mineral oils and using a variety of emulsifying agents to produce an effective stable mixture have been widely employed. Various aluminum salts have been shown to provide a marked degree of enhancement of the antibody response, especially for bacterial toxoids and bacterial vaccines. Their value for polysaccharide antigens has not been so clearly defined. A number of technical factors, such as an aluminum salt concentration, pH, etc., bear on their effectiveness (Levine, Stone and Wyman, 1955) and the degree of this enhancing effect varies with different animal species (Ipsen, 1954b). The water-in-oil emulsion type of adjuvant first described in detail by Freund and Bonauto (1944) has been employed very extensively in a great many studies of the immune response in animals and on a more limited scale in studies in man. It produces extraordinary enhancement in the peak antibody level obtained and it leads to a remarkably sustained antibody response which may last with little diminution for several years (Fig. 4). The exact nature of the mechanism of its enhancing effect is not known. It has been clearly shown (Freund and Lipton, 1955) that it is not due to retention of the antigen at the site of inoculation, since early excision of the antigen site does not interfere with the effect. It is generally believed that it leads to relatively prompt and rather widespread deposition of antigen in antibody-forming tissues and ready uptake by the appropriate cell system for antibody production. Interestingly, it is relatively ineffective in the enhancement of the response to polysaccharide antigens.

It has long been known (Maclean and Holt, 1940) that the mixing of a bacterial vaccine with a toxoid could result in an enhanced antigenic response to the toxoid. More recently, it has been shown (Johnson,

Gaines and Landy, 1956) that bacterial cell wall lipopolysaccharides or endotoxins have an enhancing effect on protein antigens. The mechanism of action of endotoxins is different from that of adsorbing or emulsifying adjuvants in that the endotoxin effect can be obtained without the necessity of mixing the endotoxin with the antigen.

A number of other adjuvant substances have been reported to be effective and some new ones are under study; their general application range of effectiveness and mechanism of action have not yet been determined.

*The persistence of measurable antibody* after a primary stimulus of antigen varies enormously, and it is evident that this variation is due only in part to the variation in sensitivity of methods for detecting antibody. The sustained high levels of antibody following the inoculation of various polysaccharides have been noted above. The administration of live attenuated vaccines may lead to a massive release of antigen. This can produce a marked primary peak response following the subclinical infection, that they produce with a subsequent fall leading to an asymptote at a low level, not unlike that described for simple protein antigens above. The antibody response to live measles vaccine is an excellent example (Krugman, 1962). On the other hand, the pattern of the primary immune response to most nonviable antigens may be difficult to determine, because antibody levels frequently fall below measurable amounts within a relatively short period of time.

### *The Secondary Response*

In the case of almost all antigenic stimuli except those which produce a high and sustained initial antibody level, the reintroduction of the same antigen after a period of time (the optimal interval varies with the antigen, the animal species and other factors) will result in a more rapid and, in many cases, much higher rise in antibody level than was seen following the primary stimulus. The rapidity of the secondary antibody rise is generally thought to be greater than that of the primary stimulus. However, in careful quantitative studies of one particular antigen-antibody system, Uhr *et al.* (1962) found the rate of increase in serum antibody titer

mune response. Marked differences have been observed in the immune response in different animal strains (Ipsen 1954a). Ipsen has also demonstrated differences in response related to the environmental temperature at which the animals were held (Ipsen 1952). Several reports of a suppressive effect of antibiotics on development of resistance have appeared, but only a few have distinguished between the immunizing effect of infection and the effect of inoculating an inert antigen (e.g. Stevens 1953). Various investigators have reported that salicylates may interfere with one or more immunologic systems. Wilkens and Tasman (1959) found a markedly reduced response to tetanus toxoid in tuberculous patients, by contrast the response in patients with chronic hepatic disease which might well be expected to be impaired has been found actually to be enhanced (Havens Shaffer and Hopke 1951).

Innumerable studies have been reported on the effect of nutrition on the immune response. It has been reported that the antibody response in man is essentially unaltered even in the presence of severe nutritional deficiencies (Balch 1950). On the other hand there are massive data to indicate that there is an intimate relationship between the nutritional status and susceptibility to a variety of infections (e.g. Dubos and Schaedler 1959, Scrimshaw, Taylor and Gordon 1959). These findings serve to emphasize the fact that antibody responses are by no means the only factor of significance in determining resistance to infection.

#### *Limitations of Immunization*

In spite of the variety of ways in which immune responses may be measured little is known in many cases concerning the interrelation between the antibody response produced by a particular antigen and the protection obtained against the disease in question. A classic example is typhoid fever. The most readily isolated antigen from the typhoid bacillus is the Vi antigen which can be prepared in a relatively purified state. It produces striking antibody responses in rabbits and is a potent protective antigen for mice exposed to subsequent challenge with typhoid bacilli (Landy and Webster 1952). Yet the field studies on the protection of man with typhoid vaccines (Yugoslav Ty-

phoid Commission 1962) failed to provide any significant evidence that the Vi antigen is important in man.

The degree of protection achieved by different immunizing procedures varies enormously. Tetanus toxoid effectively used leads to nearly 100 per cent protection as does yellow fever vaccine. Typhoid vaccine may give approximately 75 per cent protection (Yugoslav Typhoid Commission 1962) or better. On the other hand immunization against such diseases as brucellosis even with live vaccines has yielded relatively inconclusive results.

The reasons for the great differences observed in the effectiveness of immunizing procedures are various and frequently not known. It is believed that in such diseases as brucellosis the intracellular persistence of infection in receptive tissues renders it almost impossible to eradicate infection, hence subsequent relapses may occur in such cases. It appears that antibodies in the circulation are (for unexplained reasons) ineffective in suppressing such relapses. Furthermore it has been clearly shown that relapses may occur in typhoid fever even in the presence of high circulating antibody levels.

Indeed in a number of instances the relation of immunity to antibody levels is unclear. Perhaps the most striking is tuberculosis in which only limited evidence exists to date indicating any relationship between the two. Yet immunization with the live attenuated tuberculosis vaccine (BCG vaccine) has been thoroughly demonstrated in well controlled studies to produce a marked diminution in the incidence of tuberculosis in the vaccinated (e.g. Medical Research Council 1963). In the case of tuberculosis and certain other infections it has been suggested that immunity may be related more closely to the development of a delayed allergic response than to the development of serologic resistance. Such findings are further enhanced by the observation that a number of illnesses, particularly the viral exanthems, can produce lasting immunity in patients with agammaglobulinemia even though no measurable antibodies can be demonstrated in such patients even in convalescence.

#### *Neonatal Immunization*

A number of studies have shown that im-

to be very similar in both primary and secondary responses. The peak level may be achieved in about 8 to 10 days following the secondary stimulus and an almost equally rapid initial fall in the antibody level may ensue. However in general the asymptotic level reached after a secondary stimulus is higher than was the case after the primary stimulus. Thus repeated inoculations properly spaced frequently may be employed to achieve successively higher and higher residual persisting antibody levels.

A typical illustration of the general pattern that is observed most frequently in successive primary and secondary responses is shown in Figure 5. Here it is seen that the initial inoculation of a fluid tetanus toxoid produced an extremely small response which was still increasing at the time of the second dose 2 months later. A vigorous response to the second dose occurred, followed by a sharp fall to a low asymptote with a residual level which was still easily detected after 1 year. At this time one half the subjects were given a third dose. As shown in the figure their subsequent titer leveled off at a point much higher than that achieved by those who had only two doses. On the other hand where the primary response is sustained at a high level the response to a second dose may be minimal or undetectable (see Fig. 3). This is seen most commonly with polysaccharide antigens.

**Interval Between Antigenic Stimuli:** The capacity to induce a clear-cut recall or booster response appears to depend on an adequate interval between the first inoculation and the next one. Together with clinical impressions and a few isolated studies in man an enhancing effect of increase in interval has been demonstrated in a few animal studies (Fig. 6). Coons and Fecsik (1960) using tetanus toxoid in mice have shown that the enhancement of the response to the second dose of toxoid increased progressively up to an interval of about 21 days, leveled off for the next 140 days and showed no sign of diminishing. Clearly some sort of latent period is required after the primary antigenic stimulus for the development of the capacity to respond to a recall dose.

Whatever may be the mechanism the secondary response is probably the result of a stimulus which apparently leads to a very

rapid multiplication of the specifically oriented antibody forming cells. This multiplication of cells was found to proceed at a rate of about one replication every 7 hours through 8 cycles after which it came to a halt (LeBlond and Ste Marie 1960). Thus over a period of about 3 to 4 days the capacity to form a particular antibody may be increased on the order of 100 fold. Subsequent increases in the antibody concentration may be considered as due primarily to the steady accumulation of antibody put out by the increased number of antibody forming cells which for a while overbalances the steady catabolic decrease of homologous protein in the host. It is also possible that a certain amount of preformed antibody is liberated from the specific antibody forming cell at the time of the secondary stimulus.

Several observations suggest that the *dose response relationship following the secondary stimulus* may be quite different from the dose response relationship after the primary stimulus. In a study by Ipsen (1953) in man the dose response slope was much flatter after a second dose of tetanus toxoid than it was for the first injection. It is yet not known whether this is a general phenomenon.

*The duration of the antibody response* after successive inoculations has in some cases been shown to be remarkably long lasting as is also the capacity to respond to a very long delayed booster inoculation. Both diphtheria and tetanus antitoxin levels have been shown to persist for years after basic immunization and one reinforcing dose. Various recent studies have demonstrated that measurable tetanus antitoxin levels may persist from 7 to 22 years after the last preceding inoculation and that rapid rises in titer will occur in such individuals following a booster inoculation. In one such study Gottlieb *et al.* (1964) derived a mathematical formula for expressing the level of residual antitoxin and of postbooster peak antitoxin levels. Their equation predicts a postbooster rise not unlike that forecast by the cellular observations of LeBlond and Ste Marie (1960). It also indicates that at least traces of antitoxin (although not necessarily at a measurable level) probably persist for a lifetime after adequate tetanus immunization.

**Host Factors** Many host factors also influence the nature and the degree of the im-

catabolic process continues indefinitely at a logarithmically uniform pace characteristic of the host species involved and perhaps also of the protein injected. Third, if the protein injected is antigenically heterologous, it will act as an antigen and stimulate the formation of antibodies against itself. As these antibodies enter the circulation, they will combine with the injected protein and thus accelerate its disappearance from the circulation. These three phases of the declining level of intravenously administered antibodies are illustrated in Figure 7, which shows the level of both homologous (rabbit) gamma globulin and heterologous (bovine) gamma globulin injected into a rabbit. It is seen that in this example both follow essentially the same pattern of elimination through the fourth day. Thereafter, the level of the heterologous (bovine) gamma globulin falls more rapidly due to the immune reaction which its injection has engendered.

Numerous studies on the half life of injected homologous or heterologous gamma globulins have yielded varied and sometimes apparently conflicting data due to the many physiologic and immunologic variables involved. However, certain generalizations can be made in regard to the sequence of events following the introduction of antibodies into man. Human gamma globulin exhibits a half life of about 30 days in the infant and perhaps less in the older child or the adult. Heterologous antibodies (e.g., equine tetanus antitoxin) appear to be metabolized more rapidly, especially if they have been modified by enzymatic digestion (McComb and Dwyer, 1963). As in the case of bovine gamma globulin shown in Figure 7, heterologous sera will be more rapidly eliminated as soon as specific antibodies appear in the host in response to their injection. In persons who have been injected previously with a heterologous serum, another injection of serum of the same animal species will serve as a booster injection which usually leads to more rapid elimination. Thus, in some individuals, the half life of a foreign serum to which they are already sensitized may be as short as 1 or 2 days.

If the serum is injected intramuscularly or subcutaneously, its distribution into the circulation (and hence into the extravascular

space) is markedly delayed; the peak titer of antibodies thus injected into man will not be reached for 48 to 72 hours.

**Applications.** In practice, passive immunization has been most widely and most successfully used in the control of those diseases which injure the host primarily by the liberation of a toxic substance. Thus, the administration of 1,000 to 1,500 units of the appropriate equine antitoxin apparently has been quite effective in the prevention of clinical diphtheria or tetanus, respectively, in exposed human beings. Although few antibacterial serums have been found useful in prophylaxis, an exception is antipertussis serum, which has been found to be highly effective in the prophylaxis of this disease in exposed susceptible infants. On the other hand, many serums, both antitoxic and antibacterial, have been widely accepted at first only to be shown later to have little if any value. The ineffectiveness of passive immunization in many cases may be due to a number of factors. The antibodies administered are often given too late or the titer of the preparation used may be too low, or serum antibodies may simply play a minor role in prevention or cure of the disease in question.

Various forms of human serum or its derivatives have been used in prophylaxis of several human viral diseases. The classic example is measles, for which pooled normal adult human serum, convalescent serum, pools of the gamma globulin fraction from human placentas (which are rich in adult serum) or the gamma globulin fraction of pooled adult plasma have all proved to be highly effective in the prevention or the modification of measles. This is because the vast majority of adults in most communities have had measles, because measles antibodies persist for a long time after recovery from the infection, and because a small amount of measles antibody appears to be effective in prophylaxis. Human gamma globulin is also effective in the prophylaxis of infectious hepatitis, but there are few other diseases for which gamma globulin has been shown clearly to have prophylactic value.

The preparation of a gamma globulin concentrate from pooled human serum has two advantages over the use of unconcentrated



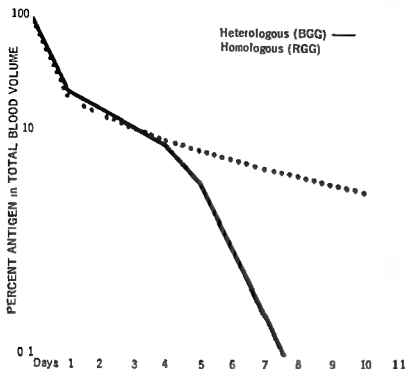


FIG 7 Blood levels of rabbit gamma globulin and bovine gamma globulin injected intravenously into rabbits (From Dixon F J *et al* Fate of  $^{131}\text{I}$  labelled bovine gamma globulin in rabbits in Pappenheimer A M Jr (ed) 1953 *Nature and Significance of the Antibody Response* p 172 New York Columbia University Press)

munization of very young infants frequently relatively ineffective compared with the results obtained in older infants or young children. In many cases this is explained simply by the fact that such infants possess antibodies transferred from the maternal to the fetal circulation and such antibodies will repress the response to newly introduced antigens. Cooke (1948) demonstrated this effect clearly by the response to combined diphtheria and tetanus toxoids in young infants. None of the infants possessed maternally derived tetanus antitoxin and all responded well to the tetanus toxoid component. A number of the infants had relatively high levels of maternally transmitted diphtheria antitoxin; these responded poorly to the diphtheria toxoid component, whereas those infants that did not have a significant level of diphtheria antitoxin responded well. Many other studies indicate that in general the young infant will respond well to immunizing antigens but its response may be blanketed or suppressed by the presence of maternal antibodies.

#### PASSIVE IMMUNIZATION

Passive immunization may be carried out with serum derived from the same species as

the recipient or with serum from another species. It may be based on the injection of serum containing naturally acquired antibodies, serum from convalescent persons or serum from persons or animals hyperimmunized against the disease in question. Crude serums are rarely used nowadays; most preparations being chemically processed (fractionated) to yield a relatively purified concentrate of the antibody-containing gamma globulins. However, for convenience and brevity the term serum will be used in this section in discussion of characteristics common to all preparations processed or unprocessed.

**Pattern of Response** The intravenous injection of a dose of antibody-containing serum leads promptly to a maximal circulating titer of the antibody or antibodies present. This level starts to fall immediately for at least two—and in certain cases three—reasons. First, the serum proteins introduced into the circulation will inevitably be redistributed in the extravascular fluid spaces of the recipient, and second, the recipient commences at once to metabolize the introduced protein, whether it is antigenically homologous or not. The redistribution process is completed in a day or two, but the

from 30 per cent to zero within 2 weeks by administering 6 to 8 Gm of sulfadiazine to every person in the group. Following use of the higher dose of drug the carrier rate subsequently rose to only 5 per cent 12 weeks later. Smaller doses of the drug led to a smaller decrease in the carrier rate and to a more rapid rise toward the preceding rate. Mass use of sulfadiazine in the face of major epidemics of meningococcus meningitis probably has been employed more extensively in the Sudan, Nigeria and neighboring countries in subtropical Africa than anywhere else for it is during the dry, cold, harsh winters of the semiarid areas of this region that the worst epidemics of this disease on record have occurred (LaPeysonnie 1963). Of course the effectiveness of such a chemoprophylactic procedure depends on the continued dominance of relatively drug susceptible strains of the organism in the community when relatively resistant strains appear. Chemoprophylaxis may be unsuccessful (Miller *et al.* 1963).

Prophylaxis of tuberculosis with isoniazid has become a well established procedure adaptable to individual or community use. In a large study in the United States 12,500 household contacts of active cases of tuberculosis were given isoniazid and a comparable group received a placebo in a double blind study. Medication was maintained for 1 year in most cases. Ninety-four cases of tuberculosis developed in the control group during the year of the study as compared with 23 in the group taking isoniazid (Ferebee and Mount 1962).

In practice chemoprophylaxis directed against tuberculous infection may be applied either (as in the study cited) to all persons suspected of having been infected or only to individuals with a recently acquired positive tuberculin test. In the latter case the procedure involved is literally speaking chemotherapy of subclinical infection.

Sometimes chemoprophylaxis of one disease is accomplished by the chemotherapy of another. The best example is rheumatic fever which occurs as a late complication in a small percentage of  $\beta$  hemolytic streptococcal infections. Early and effective chemotherapy of such infections with sulfadiazine

or penicillin greatly reduces the incidence of rheumatic fever. However, unless the infecting streptococcus is eliminated from the patient, the attack rate of rheumatic fever is not significantly reduced (Catanzaro, Rammelkamp and Chamovitz, 1958).

Since individuals who have had one attack of rheumatic fever are prone to have repeated attacks, genuine chemoprophylaxis, i.e., prevention of the occurrence of streptococcal infections, is widely used in such individuals who may receive the drug regularly for as long as 5 years. The long duration of such a prophylactic program designed to avert repeated infections with a rapidly multiplying organism is different in concept from the long term prophylactic regimen for suspected or incipient tuberculous infection which is aimed at a single infection caused by an organism having a long generation time.

Chemoprophylaxis is employed effectively for several other categories of microbial infections—e.g., to prevent the development of endocarditis in patients with congenital or acquired cardiac defects; to prevent the development of meningitis from nasopharyngeal bacteria as a complication of skull fracture or to prevent congenital syphilis in an infant carried by a pregnant syphilitic. Chemoprophylaxis has been used in the control or the prevention of recurring or chronic pyelonephritis. However, its value in the latter situation is limited because drug resistant organisms tend to replace the initial infecting organism for which the chemoprophylactic agent was selected. Indeed, the frequency of such superinfections (see Chap. 40) is the primary reason that prolonged sulfonamide or antibiotic prophylaxis with only a few exceptions has failed to control secondary or complicating infections in the respiratory tract, recurring infections of the genitourinary tract, infections following surgical operations, severe burns, etc. In most such situations there are numerous microorganisms present which can multiply in the presence of the antibiotic used, and which will do so with vigor when other competing organisms have been suppressed.

Successful chemoprophylaxis is by no means limited to bacterial infections. Aside

serum Fractionation concentrates the anti bodies in the serum roughly 15 to 30 times and also it appears (for reasons not fully understood) to eliminate the hazard of serum hepatitis which is a significant risk with unfractionated human serums

For the reasons outlined above the effectiveness of passive immunization is transient and the individual injected will after a short period generally be as susceptible to the disease in question as he was before the inoculation An exception arises in the case of what is called *passive-active immunization* This may occur in some instances when the individual is infected with the disease agent in question during the time that he has a small amount of the corresponding passively acquired antibody in his circulation For example injection of a relatively small dose of gamma globulin into a child exposed to measles will usually lead to what is called *modified measles*—a mild form of the disease which generally results in lasting immunity Likewise individuals exposed to infectious hepatitis and given a small dose of gamma globulin may develop subclinical hepatitis followed by demonstrable immunity However, proved examples of such passive active immunization are relatively few and the difficulties of establishing evidence for the occurrence of such a process are apparent

Newborn infants of many mammalian species acquire passive immunity from the mother through antibodies transferred via either the placenta or the colostrum This passive immunity like any other homologous passive immunity wanes with time according to a definite and determinable half life It serves to protect many infants from a variety of diseases to which they would otherwise be extremely susceptible but it leaves them highly susceptible during the period between the disappearance of maternally transferred antibodies and the development of active immunity from natural or artificial means However in some instances it doubtless provides a basis for passive active immunization an example of which is the occasional development of immunity to vaccinia virus without demonstrable vaccinia lesions (Kempe and Benenson 1953)

The application of maternally transmitted passive immunity in the prevention of infectious diseases of infants has been approached by immunizing mothers prior to delivery of their infants Clear-cut evidence for the effectiveness of such a procedure has been obtained by Schofield *et al* (1961) in the case of neonatal tetanus a disease of major importance in many parts of the world The principle has also been employed—with less evidence for its efficacy—for protection of infants against neonatal diphtheria and pertussis

## CHEMOPROPHYLAXIS

Although the specific prophylactic properties of cinchona bark against malarious fevers have been known for several centuries and the merits of mercury or silver salts in the prevention of venereal disease likewise have long been recognized specific chemoprophylaxis was essentially empiric and limited in scope until recently However, the sulfonamides the various antibiotics and certain other recently developed drugs have provided a basis for the effective development and application of chemoprophylaxis against a number of infectious diseases

Individual chemoprophylaxis may be directed at preventing the initiation of infection at suppression of an infection during the incubation period or at aborting an established infection before it progresses to a more serious phase or to complications In addition chemoprophylaxis applied to groups of people may be useful in reducing the prevalence of the organism concerned—thus reducing the frequency of its spread from person to person and hence preventing or aborting an epidemic situation

An outstanding example of the last mentioned application of chemoprophylaxis is the administration of sulfonamides—notably sulfadiazine—to suppress outbreaks of meningococcus meningitis Such outbreaks occur characteristically in large, crowded military recruit populations among whom the carrier rates for a given type of *Neisseria meningitidis* may at times exceed 30 per cent (Aycock and Mueller 1946) These investigators showed that the carrier rate could be reduced

from 30 per cent to zero within 2 weeks by administering 6 to 8 Gm of sulfadiazine to every person in the group. Following use of the higher dose of drug the carrier rate subsequently rose to only 5 per cent 12 weeks later. Smaller doses of the drug led to a smaller decrease in the carrier rate and to a more rapid rise toward the preceding rate. Mass use of sulfadiazine in the face of major epidemics of meningococcus meningitis probably has been employed more extensively in the Sudan, Nigeria and neighboring countries in subtropical Africa than anywhere else for it is during the dry, cold, harsh winters of the semiarid areas of this region that the worst epidemics of this disease on record have occurred (LaPeysonnie 1963). Of course the effectiveness of such a chemoprophylactic procedure depends on the continued dominance of relatively drug susceptible strains of the organism in the community when relatively resistant strains appear. Chemoprophylaxis may be unsuccessful (Miller *et al.* 1963).

Prophylaxis of tuberculosis with isoniazid has become a well established procedure adaptable to individual or community use. In a large study in the United States 12,500 household contacts of active cases of tuberculosis were given isoniazid and a comparable group received a placebo in a double blind study. Medication was maintained for 1 year in most cases. Ninety four cases of tuberculosis developed in the control group during the year of the study as compared with 23 in the group taking isoniazid (Ferebee and Mount 1962).

In practice chemoprophylaxis directed against tuberculous infection may be applied either (as in the study cited) to all persons suspected of having been infected or only to individuals with a recently acquired positive tuberculin test. In the latter case the procedure involved is literally speaking chemotherapy of subclinical infection.

Sometimes chemoprophylaxis of one disease is accomplished by the chemotherapy of another. The best example is rheumatic fever which occurs as a late complication in a small percentage of  $\beta$  hemolytic streptococcal infections. Early and effective chemotherapy of such infections with sulfadiazine

or penicillin greatly reduces the incidence of rheumatic fever. However, unless the infecting streptococcus is eliminated from the patient the attack rate of rheumatic fever is not significantly reduced (Catanzaro, Rammelkamp and Chamovitz 1958).

Since individuals who have had one attack of rheumatic fever are prone to have repeated attacks, genuine chemoprophylaxis, i.e., prevention of the occurrence of streptococcal infections, is widely used in such individuals who may receive the drug regularly for as long as 5 years. The long duration of such a prophylactic program designed to avert repeated infections with a rapidly multiplying organism is different in concept from the long term prophylactic regimen for suspected or incipient tuberculous infection which is aimed at a single infection caused by an organism having a long generation time.

Chemoprophylaxis is employed effectively for several other categories of microbial infections—e.g., to prevent the development of endocarditis in patients with congenital or acquired cardiac defects; to prevent the development of meningitis from nasopharyngeal bacteria as a complication of skull fracture or to prevent congenital syphilis in an infant carried by a pregnant syphilitic. Chemoprophylaxis has been used in the control or the prevention of recurring or chronic pyelonephritis. However, its value in the latter situation is limited because drug resistant organisms tend to replace the initial infecting organism for which the chemoprophylactic agent was selected. Indeed, the frequency of such superinfections (see Chap. 40) is the primary reason that prolonged sulfonamide or antibiotic prophylaxis with only a few exceptions has failed to control secondary or complicating infections in the respiratory tract, recurring infections of the genitourinary tract, infections following surgical operations, severe burns, etc. In most such situations there are numerous microorganisms present which can multiply in the presence of the antibiotic used and which will do so with vigor when other competing organisms have been suppressed.

Successful chemoprophylaxis is by no means limited to bacterial infections. Aside

from examples such as malaria noted above (for which far better prophylactics than quinine are now available) and Gambian trypanosomiasis (for which injection of a pentamidine salt will provide protection for up to 6 months) there are several other well defined applications. In persons heavily exposed to scrub typhus a rickettsial disease early sustained administration of chloramphenicol during and for 2 weeks after exposure only postponed but did not prevent the onset of the disease. On the other hand intermittent doses of the drug given at intervals of 4 to 7 days for 4 to 6 weeks provided almost complete protection (Bailey and Ley 1952). The failure of early sustained chemoprophylaxis was attributed to the rickettsiostatic effect of the drug which suppressed the antigenic stimulus of full blown infection but did not entirely eradicate the infecting organism. On the other hand intermittent prophylaxis permitted the latent infecting organism to replicate and liberate antigen but generally kept its replication below the level which induced clinical disease. These findings illustrate another of the problems of chemoprophylaxis for the partial suppression of the normal immune response following early antibiotic therapy has been recognized as a problem in a number of infectious states.

The pattern of chemoprophylaxis of Q fever with oxytetracycline has been described in detail by Tigertt and Benenson (1956) and it is to be expected that other rickettsial infections as well as infections with psittacosis and related viruses could be prevented similarly by the carefully planned use of antibiotics. An unexpected new finding is the remarkable effectiveness of a derivative of thiosemicarbazone in preventing smallpox in exposed contacts (Bauer *et al* 1963).

Chemoprophylaxis has been employed widely on an empiric basis for a variety of conditions e.g. chronic or recurrent respiratory infections. Generally such procedures are unsupported by evidence of their success and in some instances the ineffectiveness of such nonspecific shotgun chemoprophylaxis has been clearly documented (e.g. Petersdorf and Merchant 1959).

## MICROBIAL INTERFERENCE

The possibility that the multiplication—or even the survival—of a pathogenic organism could be controlled by the growth of a harmless competitive microbe was first recognized by Pasteur in the 1870s. It has been given vivid specific meaning in the discovery of numerous antibiotics which are produced by one microorganism and are capable of inhibiting others. The general concept of antibiosis as an ecologic phenomenon is discussed by Waksman (1947). However besides the identified antibiotic substances there are many instances in which the phenomenon of microbial interference has been recorded without a specific antibiotic substance being implicated. For example certain strains of *Lactobacillus* when ingested in large quantities will markedly alter the existing intestinal flora and in particular will reduce the numbers of coliform bacteria present. Extensive studies on this phenomenon have been carried out by Rettger *et al* (1935).

On the other hand the numerous instances of superinfection (see Chap. 40) which have resulted from the alteration of the pattern of the microbial flora of the respiratory, the intestinal or other systems by vigorous or sustained antibiotic therapy provide evidence that, first there is a nicely maintained balance between the microorganisms normally present in and on the human body and second the eradication of only a few components of this complex system may permit other members of the system which normally are present only in small numbers to multiply vigorously and sometimes to become dominant in the local host-parasite ecosystem.

In spite of the attractiveness of the concept and the variety of observations which lend it plausibility there are surprisingly few instances in which it has been applied successfully. A number of small scale observations on the implantation of *Lactobacillus* (e.g. Hawley, Shepherd and Wheeler 1959) and the application of this technique for the control of various infections (e.g. Beck and Necheles 1961) have appeared in print in

recent years. However sufficient verification of the reproducibility of such phenomena is generally lacking. One problem is that in the absence of an identifiable and measurable specific mechanism of action the production of microbial interference is an empirical phenomenon without a clear basis for either prediction, measurement or precise experimental verification. Furthermore ecosystems tend to revert to their normal pattern when outside influences are removed so that the effects produced by microbial interference are generally transient and difficult to sustain.

Nevertheless a few striking instances of the application of this principle exist. The most recently documented example is the implantation in newborn infants in hospital nurseries of a strain of *Staphylococcus aureus* selected for its high susceptibility to penicillin and apparent lack of invasiveness in an attempt to prevent colonization with more pathogenic staphylococci (Shinefield *et al* 1963, Boris *et al* 1963, Cohen *et al* 1963).

*Interferon*, a host tissue substance which has received wide attention in recent years represents a wholly different phenomenon wherein virus infected host cells produce a substance that conveys resistance to viral infections in other cells. This effect which has not been recognized in bacterial infections has been well summarized by Grossberg (1963).

## REFERENCES

- Albert A 1960 *Selective Toxicity* ed 2. New York: Wiley.
- Allen H F and Murphy J T 1960 Sterilization of instruments and materials with beta propiolactone. *JAMA* 172 1759-1763.
- American Public Health Association 1965 *Control of Communicable Diseases in man* ed 10. New York: Am. Pub. Hlth Ass.
- Aycock W L and Mueller J H 1950 Meningococcus carrier rates and meningitis incidence. *Bact. Rev.* 14 115-160.
- Bailey C A and Ley H L Jr 1952 The treatment and prophylaxis of scrub typhus with antibiotics. *Ann. New York Acad. Sci.* 55 983-991.
- Balch H H 1950 Relation of nutritional deficiency in man to antibody production. *J. Immun.* 64 397-410.
- Barr M, Sayers M H P and Stamm W P 1959 Intradermal T A H T vaccine for immunisation against enteric. *Lancet* 1 816-817.
- Bauer D J, St Vincent L, Kempe C H and Downie A W 1963 Prophylactic treatment of smallpox contacts with N-methylisatin  $\beta$ -thiosemicarbazone (Compound 33T57, Marboran). *Lancet* 2 494-496.
- Beck C and Necheles H 1961 Beneficial effects of administration of *Lactobacillus acidophilus* in diarrheal and other intestinal disorders. *Am. J. Gastroent.* 35 522-530.
- Behring E A von 1913 Ueber ein neues Diphtherieschutzmittel. *Deutsch. med. Wschr.* 39 873-876.
- Boris M, Shinefield H R, Ribble I C, Eichenwald H F, Hauser G H and Caraway C T 1963 Bacterial interference: its effect on nursery acquired infection with *Staphylococcus aureus*. IV. The Louisiana epidemic. *Am. Dis. Child.* 105 674-682.
- Bowie J H 1961 The control of heat sterilisers in Recent Developments in the Sterilisation of Surgical Materials. Report of a Symposium pp 109-142. London: The Pharmaceutical Press.
- Catanzaro F J, Rammelkamp C H Jr and Chamovitz H 1958 Prevention of rheumatic fever by treatment of streptococcal infections. II. Factors responsible for failures. *New Eng. J. Med.* 259 51-57.
- Cluff L E and Allen J C 1962 Principles of active immunization for prevention of infection. *J. Chron. Dis.* 15 575-587.
- Cohen J O, Smith P H, Shotts E H, Boris M and Updyke E L 1963 Bacterial interference: its effect on nursery acquired infection with *Staphylococcus aureus*. VI. Detection of implanted *Staphylococcus aureus* strain. *Am. Dis. Child.* 105 689-691.
- Cooke J V 1948 Antibody formation in early infancy against diphtheria and tetanus toxoids. *J. Pediat.* 33 141-146.
- Coons A H and Fecsik A 1959 Effect of the interval between two stimuli on the height of the secondary antibody response (abstract). *Science* 130 1427.
- Dubos R J and Schaedler R W 1959 Nutrition and infection. *J. Pediat.* 55 1-14.
- Edsall G, Carlson M C, Formal S B and Benenson A S 1959 Laboratory tests of

- typhoid vaccines used in a controlled field study Bull WHO 20 1017 1032
- Eichenwald H F and Mosley J W 1959 Viral Hepatitis Clinical and Public Health Aspects (Public Health Service Publication No 435) Washington U S Govt Printing Office
- Enright J H Sadler W W and Thomas R C 1957 Thermal inactivation of *Coxiella burnetii* and its relation to pasteurization of milk Public Health Monogr No 47
- Ferebee S H and Mount F W 1962 Tuberculosis morbidity in a controlled trial of the prophylactic use of isoniazid among household contacts Am Rev Resp Dis 85 490 510
- Fildes P 1940 The mechanism of the anti bacterial action of mercury Brit J Exp Path 21 67 73
- Fischer E and Munoz R 1947 Comparative bacteriostatic assays with rosaniline and its phenolic analog (rosolic acid) J Bact 53 381 388
- Freund J and Bonanto M V 1941 Anti toxin formation after intravenous or subcutaneous injection of plain or alum diphtheric toxoid J Immun 40 437-447
- 1944 The effect of paraffin oil lanolin like substances and killed tubercle bacilli on immunization with diphtheric toxoid and *Bact typhosum* J Immun 48 325 334
- Freund J and Lipton M M 1955 Experimental allergic encephalomyelitis after the excision of the injection site of antigen adjuvant emulsion J Immun 75 454-459
- Gale E F and Taylor E H 1947 The assimilation of amino acids by bacteria 2 The action of tyrocidin and some detergent substances in releasing amino-acids from the internal environment of *Streptococcus faecalis* J Gen Microbiol 1 77 84
- Gershenfeld L 1957 Iodine in Reddish G F (ed) Antiseptics Disinfectants Fungicides and Chemical and Physical Sterilization ed 2 pp 223 277 Philadelphia Lea & Febiger
- Gottlieb S McLaughlin F K Levine L Latham W C and Edsall G 1964 Long term immunity to tetanus—a statistical evaluation and its clinical implications Am J Pub Health 54 961 971
- Grossberg S 1963 Interferon as a metabolic agent of host resistance in Conceptual Advances in Immunology and Oncology pp 116 136 New York Hoeber
- Havens W P Jr Shaffer J M and Hopke C J Jr 1951 The production of antibody by patients with chronic hepatic disease J Immun 67 347 356
- Hawley H H Shepherd P A and Wheeler D M 1959 Factors affecting the implantation of lactobacilli in the intestine J Appl Microbiol 22 360 367
- Heidelberger M MacLeod C M Kaiser S J and Robinson H 1946 Antibody formation in volunteers following injection of pneumococci or their type specific polysaccharides J Exp Med 83 303 320
- Hoffman R K and Warshowsky H 1958 Beta propiolactone vapor as a disinfectant Appl Microbiol 6 358 362
- Hopkins S J 1961 Central sterile supply in Cambridge hospitals in Recent Developments in the Sterilisation of Surgical Materials Report of a Symposium pp 153 160 London The Pharmaceutical Press
- Ingram M and Barnes E M 1954 Sterilization by means of ozone J Appl Bact 17 246 271
- Ipsen J Jr 1952 The effect of environmental temperature on the immune response of mice to tetanus toxoid J Immun 69 273 283
- 1953 Factors of dosage and host determining antibody response to secondary antigen stimulus Human Biol 25 279 294
- 1954a Inherent immunizability to tetanus toxoid based on studies in pure inbred mice J Immun 72 243 247
- 1954b Immunization of adults against diphtheria and tetanus New Eng J Med 251 459-466
- Johnson A G Gaines S and Landy M 1956 Studies on the O antigen of *Salmonella typhosa* V Enhancement of antibody response to protein antigens by the purified lipopolysaccharide J Exp Med 103 225 246
- Judge L F Jr and Pelczar M J Jr 1955 The sterilization of carbohydrates with liquid ethylene oxide for microbiological fermentation tests Appl Microbiol 3 292 295
- Kempe C H and Benenson A S 1953 Vaccinia Passive immunity in newborn infants I Placental transmission of antibodies II Response to vaccinations J Pediat 43 525 531
- Krugman S Giles J P Jacobs A M and Friedman H 1962 Studies with live attenuated measles virus vaccine comparative clinical antigenic and prophylactic effects following inoculation with and without gamma globulin Am J Pub Health 52 (Feb suppl) 16 28
- Landy M and Webster M H 1952 Studies on V<sub>1</sub> antigen III Immunological properties of purified V<sub>1</sub> antigen derived from *Esch*

- erichia coli* 5396/38 J Immun 69 143 154
- LaPeysonnie L 1963 La Meningite cerebro-spinale en Afrique Bull WHO 28 (Suppl.) 3 114
- LeBlond C P and Sainte Marie G 1960 Models for lymphocyte and plasmocyte formation in Wolstenholme G E W and O'Connor M (eds) Ciba Foundation Symposium on Haemopoiesis Cell Production and its Regulation pp 152 184 Boston Little Brown & Co
- Levine L Stone J L and Wyman L 1955 Factors affecting the efficiency of the aluminum adjuvant in diphtheria and tetanus toxoids J Immun 75 301 307
- Maclean I H and Holt L B 1940 Combined immunisation with tetanus toxoid and TAB Lancet 2 581 583
- Mayr G 1961 Equipment for ethylene oxide sterilisation in Recent Developments in the Sterilisation of Surgical Materials Report of a Symposium pp 90 97 London The Pharmaceutical Press
- McComb J A and Dwyer R C 1963 Passive active immunization with tetanus immune globulin (human) New Eng J Med 268 857 862
- Medical Research Council Working Party on Pressure Steam Sterilisers 1959 Sterilisation by steam under increased pressure Lancet 1 425 435
- 1960 Sterilisation by steam under increased pressure Lancet 2 1243 1244
- Medical Research Council 1963 BCG and vole bacillus vaccines in the prevention of tuberculosis in adolescence and early adult life Third report Brit Med J 1 973 978
- Meyer K F 1962 Disinfected Mail Holton Kansas The Gossip Printery Inc
- Miller J W Siess E E Feldman H A Silverman C and Frank P 1963 In vivo and in vitro resistance to sulfadiazine in strains of *Neisseria meningitidis* JAMA 186 139 141
- Nathanson N and Langmuir A D 1963 The Cutter incident Poliomyelitis following formaldehyde inactivated polio virus vaccination in the United States during the spring of 1955 Am J Hyg 78 16 81
- New York Academy of Sciences 1960 Freezing and drying of biological materials Ann New York Acad Sci 85 501 734
- Pasteur L 1880 Sur les maladies virulentes et en particulier sur la maladie appelee vulgairement cholera des poules C R Acad Sci (Paris) 90 239 248
- Perkins J J 1957 Bacteriological and surgical sterilization by heat in Reddish G F (ed) Antiseptics Disinfectants Fungicides and Chemical and Physical Sterilization ed 2 pp 766 830 Philadelphia Lea & Febiger
- Perkins J J and Lloyd R 1961 Applications and equipment for ethylene oxide sterilisation in Recent Developments in the Sterilisation of Surgical Materials Report of a Symposium pp 76 90 London The Pharmaceutical Press
- Petersdorf R G and Merchant R K 1959 A study of antibiotic prophylaxis in patients with acute heart failure New Eng J Med 260 565 575
- Pfeiffer R and Issaef 1894 Ueber die spezifische Bedeutung der Choleraimmunitat Ztschr Hyg Infektskr 17 355 400
- Phillips C R 1957 Gaseous sterilization in Reddish G F (ed) Antiseptics Disinfectants Fungicides and Chemical and Physical Sterilization ed 2 pp 746-765 Philadelphia Lea & Febiger
- 1961 The sterilising properties of ethylene oxide in Recent Developments in the Sterilisation of Surgical Materials Report of a Symposium pp 59 75 London The Pharmaceutical Press
- Pillemer L Grossberg D B and Wittler R G 1946 The immunochemistry of toxins and toxoids II The preparation and immunologic evaluation of purified tetanal toxoid J Immun 54 213 224
- Pillemer L Toll D and Badger S J 1947 The immunochemistry of toxins and toxoids III The isolation and characterization of diphtherial toxoid J Biol Chem 170 571 585
- Powell D B 1961 Application of radiation sterilisation to surgical materials in Recent Developments in the Sterilisation of Surgical Materials Report of a Symposium pp 9 16 London The Pharmaceutical Press
- Rahn O 1945 Injury and Death of Bacteria by Chemical Agents Normandy Missouri Biodynamica
- Ramon G 1924 Sur la toxine et sur l'anatoxine diphteriques pouvoir flocculant et proprietes immunisantes Ann Inst Pasteur 38 1 10
- Reddish G F (ed) 1957 Antiseptics Disinfectants Fungicides and Chemical and Physical Sterilization Philadelphia Lea & Febiger
- Rettger L F Levy M N Weinstein L and Weiss J E 1935 *Lactobacillus acidophilus* and its therapeutic application New Haven Yale Univ Press
- Salle A J 1957 Heavy metals other than



- mercury and silver in Reddish G F (ed) *Antiseptics Disinfectants Fungicides and Chemical and Physical Sterilization* ed 2 pp 308 318 Philadelphia Lea & Febiger
- Schofield F B Tucker V M and Westbrook G R 1961 Neonatal tetanus in New Guinea effect of active immunization in pregnancy *Brit Med J* 2 785 789
- Scrimshaw N S Taylor C E and Gordon J E 1959 Interactions of nutrition and infection *Am J Med Sc* 237 367 403
- Shechmeister I L 1957 Ultraviolet radiation as a germicidal agent in Reddish G F (ed) *Antiseptics Disinfectants Fungicides and Chemical and Physical Sterilization* ed 2 pp 928 952 Philadelphia Lea & Febiger
- Shinefield II R *et al* 1963 Bacterial interference its effect on nursery acquired infection with *Staphylococcus aureus* I Preliminary observations on artificial colonization of newborns II The Ohio epidemic III The Georgia epidemic V An analysis and interpretation *Am J Dis Child* 105 646 654 655 662 663 673 683 688
- Shotton E 1961 Problems of sterilising surgical materials with particular reference to thermal methods in *Recent Developments in the Sterilisation of Surgical Materials Report of a Symposium* pp 16 London The Pharmaceutical Press
- Smith G 1941 *Plague on Us* New York Commonwealth Fund
- Smith J H and St John Brooks R 1912 The effects of dosage in typhoid vaccination of rabbits *J Hyg* 12 77 107
- Stedman R L Kravitz E and King J D 1957 Studies on cell surface germicide and enzyme germicide reactions and their contribution to the lethal effect *J Bact* 73 655 660
- Stevens K M 1953 The effect of antibiotics upon the immune response *J Immun* 71 119 124
- 1956 Some considerations of the antigen dose antibody response relationship *J Immun* 76 187 191
- Sykes G 1958 *Disinfection and Sterilization* Princeton N J Van Nostrand
- Tigertt W D and Benenson A S 1956 Studies on Q fever in man *Trans Ass Am Physicians* 69 98 104
- Trump J G 1961 High energy electrons for the sterilisation of surgical materials in *Recent Developments in the Sterilisation of Surgical Materials Report of a Symposium* pp 16 28 London The Pharmaceutical Press
- Uhr J W Finkelstein M S and Baumann J B 1962 Antibody formation III The primary and secondary antibody response to bacteriophage  $\phi$ X 174 in guinea pigs *J Exp Med* 115 655 670
- Waksman S A 1947 *Microbial Antagonisms and Antibiotic Substances* ed 2 New York Commonwealth Fund
- Wells W F 1955 *Airborne Contagion and Air Hygiene* pp 224 229 Cambridge Harvard Univ Press
- Wilkins G L and Tasman A 1959 On the immunological reactivity of tuberculous patients Preliminary report *Brit Med J* 2 1305 1307
- Wilson A T and Bruno P 1950 The sterilization of bacteriological media and other fluids with ethylene oxide *J Exp Med* 91 449 458
- Wilson J R 1963 *Margin of Safety* Garden City New York Doubleday
- Windmueller H G Ackerman C J and Engel R W 1956 Alterations in the nutritive value of casein by exposure to ethylene oxide *J Nutr* 60 527 537
- 1959 Reaction of ethylene oxide with histidine methionine and cysteine *J Biol Chem* 234 895 899
- Wright H D 1927 Experimental pneumococcal septicaemia and anti pneumococcal immunity *J Path Bact* 30 185 252
- Yugoslav Typhoid Commission 1962 A controlled field trial of the effectiveness of phenol and alcohol typhoid vaccines final report *Bull WHO* 26 357 369

## 40

# Treatment of Infectious Diseases

### INTRODUCTION

Spectacular discoveries and developments of the past three decades have provided clinicians with several effective forms of treatment for many common and important kinds of infectious disease. The present chapter offers a general survey of these different methods of therapy. Antimicrobial drugs receive the major emphasis because of their vast relative importance in clinical medicine today; nevertheless it is emphasized that other means of therapy, especially surgical procedures, can also be highly effective. Little attention has been given here to diseases caused by viruses, protozoa, or helminths because they are not within the scope of the volume. Also the subject of prophylaxis of infectious disease in man is covered in another chapter.

### ANTIMICROBIAL DRUGS

#### TERMS EMPLOYED IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OF ANTIMICROBIAL DRUGS

*Antimicrobial* literally against microbes is an excellent word and is usually to be preferred to other synonyms. The word *antibiotic* literally against life was originally coined to indicate a product of a living cell antagonistic to other living cells. Many of these substances have since been chemically defined and some are now prepared partially or wholly by chemical means. The word *chemotherapy* is often used as synony-

mous with antimicrobial therapy and has an advantage over the expression antibiotic therapy because it also encompasses use of such non microbially derived substances as the sulfonamides and isoniazid. Ordinary usage avoids the expression chemotherapy in connection with most uses of chemical agents, with one exception, cancer chemotherapy. *Antiseptic* means against infection or against putrefaction. This term is usually employed in connection with compounds too poisonous to be given systemically but capable of destroying germs when applied to the surface of the human body.

### HISTORICAL REVIEW

The modern era of antimicrobial therapy began about 1935 with the finding that sulfonamide compounds were capable of suppressing infections caused by beta hemolytic streptococcus, meningococcus, gonococcus, and some gram negative bacilli. During the next few years modifications of the sulfonamide structure provided additional agents which were effective against the pneumococcus and the staphylococcus. Penicillin was discovered by Fleming in 1928. However it was not until the 1940's that a major effort was made to prepare it on a large scale for clinical use for the treatment of wound infections incurred in the course of war. By 1943 its clinical effectiveness, particularly in human staphylococcal infections, had been established. The problems of mass production were solved rapidly so that by 1946

supplies were abundant and the cost quite acceptable. Penicillin proved to be generally superior to sulfonamides in the treatment of meningococcal, gonococcal, pneumococcal, staphylococcal and streptococcal infections (including bacterial endocarditis). In addition it was found to be far superior to arsenicals in the treatment of syphilis. Success with penicillin prompted a world wide search for other antimicrobials. The first major find was streptomycin, antagonistic to many gram negative bacteria, and also—of particular importance—to the tubercle bacillus; it was followed shortly after by the broad spectrum antibiotics, the tetracyclines and chloramphenicol. In the late 1940's para amino salicylic acid was found to be useful in the treatment of tuberculosis. About the same time another chemical agent, isoniazid, was introduced; this drug has proved to be most effective and useful in the treatment of tuberculosis. During the 1950's many other new antimicrobial agents were given clinical trial and several proved to have definite value: erythromycin, bacitracin, polymyxin, vancomycin and neomycin. Late in that decade came the first really effective agent for the treatment of systemic fungal infections in man, amphotericin B. In the first years of the 1960's the major advance has been production of semisynthetic penicillins, some of which have been of great value in treating infections caused by penicillinase producing staphylococci; some also have limited value against gram negative bacillary infections. Lastly, in the present decade there has been introduced the first effective agent for human disease caused by a small virus, i.e., iododeoxyuridine for keratitis due to herpes simplex virus.

#### THE IMPACT OF ANTIMICROBIAL DRUGS ON CLINICAL MEDICINE

The widespread use of the various compounds mentioned in the foregoing paragraph has altered the importance of many human diseases and changed patterns of medical care. Bacterial endocarditis,iliary tuberculosis and cryptococcal meningitis formerly regarded as practically always fatal are now curable. Many other diseases which at one time were associated with substantial fatality rates, such as lobar pneumonia, acute osteomyelitis, tularemia, typhus fever, me-

ningococcal meningitis, puerperal sepsis and streptococcal septicemia, now usually respond promptly to treatment. Some formerly commonplace surgical operations are now rarely necessary; examples are mastoidectomy or drainage of pleural empyema. The therapy of syphilis has been so simplified and improved that the specialty of syphilology has disappeared and late manifestations of that disease, such as gumma, aneurysm and tabes dorsalis are rarely encountered. Sanatoria for the care of tuberculosis have diminished in number and few physicians now devote themselves exclusively to the treatment of tuberculosis.

It would be improper to conclude this brief summary of triumphs without acknowledging that there has been some cost. Serious untoward effects of antimicrobial treatment have occurred and will continue. Some of these will be indicated later in this chapter.

#### THE EFFECT OF ANTIMICROBIAL DRUGS ON THE COURSE OF AN ESTABLISHED INFECTION

How do we envisage the course of events as we watch fever and the local manifestations of an acute infection subside under the influence of an appropriate chemotherapeutic agent? There is no reason to believe that antimicrobial drugs act by enhancing host defense mechanisms; they certainly exert their effects on the parasite. Our knowledge of the specific biochemical events involved in the effect of the drug on the parasite is discussed in another chapter in this book. For our purposes it suffices to say that the usual effect of the antimicrobial drugs is to *retard multiplication of the parasites*. This usually serves to tip the balance in the host vs. parasite engagement in favor of the host. Final destruction and disposal of the parasites is accomplished by means of phagocytosis, assisted sometimes by humoral antimicrobial substances. Under some circumstances an antimicrobial drug may exert a bactericidal effect just as it can in vitro, but this is probably much less common than bacteriostasis.

#### EFFECTIVENESS OF DRUGS IN RELATION TO THE CHARACTER OF THE INFECTIOUS LESION

Extensive clinical experience supported by experiments in animals has taught us

that antimicrobial therapy is more effective in certain kinds of lesions than in others. A good example may be seen in pneumococcal infections of various parts of the body. Pneumococcal pneumonia is easy to control with comparatively small doses of penicillin as little as 50,000 units of penicillin per day for 4 to 5 days has been shown to be sufficient for arrest of this process in most patients. (Such small doses however are not employed in present-day clinical practice.) Higher daily dosage and considerably longer treatment are needed to eradicate pneumococcal empyema or pericarditis. Pneumococcal endocarditis or meningitis is now usually treated with doses in the range of 12 to 30 million units per day for 3 to 6 weeks. Thus the same organism with exactly the same *in vitro* sensitivity to the drug may require far higher daily doses and for longer periods depending on the character of the pathologic lesion. As a general rule we may say that abscesses containing sizeable quantities of purulent material are difficult to sterilize with drugs alone. Experimental investigation indicates that the ineffectiveness of drug therapy directed against abscesses is related to inadequate supply of fresh viable leukocytes and to the physiologic state of organisms as they exist in the exudate. An additional factor which seems to be of secondary importance may be delayed diffusion of the drug through the wall of the cavity and into the exudate. The basis for difficulty in treating meningitis stems partly from impaired diffusion of drugs across the blood-brain and the blood-spinal fluid barriers but in addition conditions for effective phagocytosis are probably less favorable in spinal fluid than in most tissues. The problem in the treatment of bacterial endocarditis appears to be the protected location of bacteria inside a fine meshwork of fibrin and platelets where they are almost inaccessible to leukocytes.

#### GENERAL HOST FACTORS AND EFFECTIVENESS OF ANTIMICROBIAL DRUG THERAPY

It is well known that some disease states are associated with increased susceptibility to certain kinds of infection and that antimicrobial therapy may be less effective in eradicating infections in these patients. Severe granulocytopenia may be cited as an

example. Here there can be little doubt that the reduced number of effective phagocytes available for delivery at the site of an infectious process makes drug therapy less effective. States in which there is defective antibody production such as agammaglobulinemia, multiple myeloma and chronic lymphocytic leukemia are associated with increased incidence of pyogenic infection and sometimes with poor response to treatment. Various systemic diseases such as uremia, diabetes mellitus and acute leukemia are notoriously liable to infection with impaired ability to respond to therapy. Localized increases in tissue pressure may favor the development and the persistence of infection. This is a common consequence of obstruction of excretory ducts as in the urinary or the biliary tracts. Other treatments as with steroid hormones, antineoplastic drugs or irradiation render patients less able to benefit from antimicrobial drug therapy than persons otherwise in good health.

#### THE PHENOMENA OF RELAPSE AND MICROBIAL PERSISTENCE

Relapse may occur after apparent clinical improvement with all kinds of antimicrobial drug treatment. The assumption is that clinical relapses are due to persistence of some infecting microbes in a state insusceptible to drug action or to their residence in a protected location for example in an intracellular site. When therapy ceases the surviving microbes then begin to multiply again and to bring about manifestations of infection. As a result of much clinical experience certain rules of practice have been established more or less empirically to govern the length of time therapy should be continued with a view to reduction of the relapse rate to a tolerable figure. In some infections such as pneumococcal pneumonia or gonococcal urethritis relapse after clinical improvement is comparatively uncommon whereas in typhoid fever relapse is very likely unless treatment is continued for at least 2 weeks.

Microbial persistence has been defined by McDermott as the capacity of microbes to survive drug exposure in the tissues despite susceptibility to the drug *in vitro*. It constitutes a serious clinical problem in at least 3 infections: syphilis, tuberculosis and staphylococcosis. Here microbial persistence may

express itself by an exacerbation of infection months or even years after apparent eradication. The same organism apparently still susceptible to the drug which was used in therapy is again demonstrable in the patient's tissues. Study of this phenomenon seems to yield evidence that the organisms are capable of assuming different forms perhaps some which we cannot even recognize during therapy and for some weeks thereafter but later have the capacity to revert to their original morphologic and physiologic states setting up the infectious process anew.

Various practical maneuvers have been designed to cope with the problems of relapse and microbial persistence. With the exception of gonococcal infections it is standard practice to continue treatment of almost all infections for 3 to 6 days after clinical improvement begins. Typhoid fever, staphylococcal infections and bacterial endocarditis are nearly always treated for 2 to 8 weeks regardless of how quickly the clinical signs may disappear after the beginning of treatment. The longest courses of therapy are employed in tuberculosis and fungal diseases in which treatment is usually maintained for months after clinical remission. It is the usual practice in such cases to arrange for follow up observations long after cessation of treatment.

#### ACQUISITION OF DRUG RESISTANCE DURING THERAPY

Some pathogenic microorganisms have the capacity to develop resistance to an antimicrobial agent during the course of therapy. Present evidence supports the concept that this is due to spontaneous occurrence of drug resistant mutant strains which are able to reproduce even in the presence of the drug whereas drug susceptible strains are suppressed and destroyed. The phenomenon of emergence of drug resistant forms is observed relatively commonly with all antimicrobial drugs except penicillin and chloramphenicol. Combined drug therapy, i.e. the administration of two or more antimicrobial agents is employed widely to prevent or retard the emergence of resistant variants.

#### VARIABLE PREVALENCE OF DRUG RESISTANT STRAINS

Throughout the world it has been ob-

served repeatedly that therapy with certain antimicrobial drugs leads to an increased incidence of infections by pathogenic organisms resistant to those drugs. For example when penicillin was first introduced in the mid 1940s only about 10 per cent of staphylococcal infections were caused by penicillinase producing i.e. resistant strains. With wide availability and use of the drug the proportion of penicillinase producers has increased so that in the general population of the United States the incidence is now something like 30 to 40 per cent and in hospital acquired infections the incidence of resistant strains may be as high as 70 or 80 per cent. Similar trends have been observed frequently in connection with gram negative bacillary infections of the urinary tract. These are frequently hospital acquired and a correlation often exists between the incidence of drug resistant coliform organisms and most popular antimicrobial agents. With curtailment of the use of an antibiotic in an institution or a community a progressive return of drug sensitive strains can be observed during succeeding months.

#### SUPERINFECTION

The term superinfection is employed to designate a well known and not uncommon complication of antimicrobial therapy, the development of a secondary infection due to another organism which is insusceptible to the agent being administered. An example would be the occurrence of klebsiella pneumonia while penicillin is being administered to a patient with a pneumococcal infection. The phenomenon of superinfection is important in clinical practice; the physician must be alert to recognize the development of new infectious processes during therapy. There can be little question that the existence of the normal flora in the mouth, the upper respiratory tract and the intestinal tract of man tends to prevent or retard the growth of various other organisms which may be introduced into these areas. However when an antimicrobial drug is given and the growth of normal flora is interfered with, some drug resistant organism which previously had been held in check by the equilibrium of normal coexistence now has an opportunity for unrestricted growth. Then the newly dominant strain may be capable

of invading tissues and causing clinical disease. Such infections are called endogenous. They may be extremely serious as for example the gram negative sepsis likely to occur after 2 or 3 weeks in severely burned patients receiving penicillin or the deep infections of the mouth or the perianal area in patients with leukemia who are under treatment with broad spectrum antibiotics. This complication caused by upsetting the normal equilibrium of the patient's flora is one of the strong arguments against the indiscriminate use of prophylactic chemotherapy. The patient who has suffered a cerebrovascular accident may be better off with the risk of pneumonia caused by a pneumococcus normally present in his nasopharynx than with the risk posed by prophylactic chemotherapy which renders him susceptible to pneumonia caused by for example a resistant strain of staphylococcus. The fungal infections such as moniliasis following prolonged courses of antimicrobial therapy seem to be additional instances of superinfection whereby fungi of wide prevalence but generally low virulence are able to invade and cause disease when normal microbial interrelationships are disturbed by chemotherapy.

#### BACTERICIDAL VS BACTERIOSTATIC DRUGS

As judged by *in vitro* experiments some antimicrobial drugs in concentrations which can be achieved with safety in clinical practice are capable of outright killing of susceptible bacteria whereas others only retard the rate of growth but do not kill. The first class i.e. bactericidal includes penicillin streptomycin vancomycin and bacitracin whereas the so-called broad-spectrum drugs such as sulfonamides tetracyclines chloramphenicol and erythromycin generally appear to be only bacteriostatic in therapeutic levels. However drug action *in vivo* may differ from that observed in the test tube. For example meningococcus or shigella organisms are rapidly destroyed in the body during sulfonamide therapy whereas this drug *in vitro* usually exerts only a bacteriostatic action.

In clinical usage the tendency is to employ bactericidal agents preferentially in infections where host defense mechanisms do not function well. Thus in bacterial endo-

carditis clinical experience has shown that bacteriostatic agents such as the tetracyclines and chloramphenicol although apparently effective as judged by *in vitro* testing are almost never curative. Penicillin on the other hand seems to be capable of bringing about the destruction of all bacteria in the vegetation over a period of time. To some extent this principle also guides the choice of drugs in the treatment of meningitis or urinary tract infection.

#### FACTORS AFFECTING DOSAGE AND FREQUENCY OF DRUG ADMINISTRATION

The pharmacologic properties of various antimicrobial agents are easily studied in animals and man and the peculiarities of the various agents are well known. Absorption from the gastrointestinal tract inactivation by stomach acid local irritating effect in muscle or subcutaneous tissue binding to tissue proteins conjugation or degradation rate of excretion etc. all have a bearing on practice regarding methods of administration and dosage. For example penicillin is rapidly excreted by the kidney thus it must be administered in large quantities and in a manner which provides for steady entry of new supplies into the circulation. In sulfonamide therapy the usual practice is to give an initial loading dose in order to achieve a desired tissue level then a smaller quantity every 4 to 8 hours to maintain that level. Since most antibiotics are eliminated from the circulation fairly rapidly loading doses are not given. In therapy of infections caused by microorganisms that grow comparatively slowly such as the tubercle bacillus or some fungi administration of an antimicrobial agent can be spaced at wide intervals that is once a day or even once in 2 or 3 days whereas it is generally felt that for organisms which multiply rapidly such as meningococcus or pneumococcus frequent drug administration and continuous suppressive levels may be needed. A matter of current debate is whether one should aim for the maintenance of high continuous levels of the drug in the management of some acute infections or whether it is preferable to create fluctuating drug levels in order to permit organisms to enter from time to time growth phases in which they are more drug susceptible. Clinical evidence does not prove

express itself by an exacerbation of infection months or even years after apparent eradication. The same organism apparently still susceptible to the drug which was used in therapy is again demonstrable in the patient's tissues. Study of this phenomenon seems to yield evidence that the organisms are capable of assuming different forms perhaps some which we cannot even recognize during therapy and for some weeks thereafter but later have the capacity to revert to their original morphologic and physiologic states setting up the infectious process anew.

Various practical maneuvers have been designed to cope with the problems of relapse and microbial persistence. With the exception of gonococcal infections it is standard practice to continue treatment of almost all infections for 3 to 6 days after clinical improvement begins. Typhoid fever, staphylococcal infections and bacterial endocarditis are nearly always treated for 2 to 8 weeks regardless of how quickly the clinical signs may disappear after the beginning of treatment. The longest courses of therapy are employed in tuberculosis and fungal diseases in which treatment is usually maintained for months after clinical remission. It is the usual practice in such cases to arrange for follow up observations long after cessation of treatment.

#### ACQUISITION OF DRUG RESISTANCE DURING THERAPY

Some pathogenic microorganisms have the capacity to develop resistance to an antimicrobial agent during the course of therapy. Present evidence supports the concept that this is due to spontaneous occurrence of drug resistant mutant strains which are able to reproduce even in the presence of the drug whereas drug susceptible strains are suppressed and destroyed. The phenomenon of emergence of drug resistant forms is observed relatively commonly with all antimicrobial drugs except penicillin and chloramphenicol. Combined drug therapy, i.e. the administration of two or more antimicrobial agents is employed widely to prevent or retard the emergence of resistant variants.

#### VARIABLE PREVALENCE OF DRUG RESISTANT STRAINS

Throughout the world it has been ob-

served repeatedly that therapy with certain antimicrobial drugs leads to an increased incidence of infections by pathogenic organisms resistant to those drugs. For example when penicillin was first introduced in the mid 1940s only about 10 per cent of staphylococcal infections were caused by penicillinase producing i.e. resistant strains. With wide availability and use of the drug the proportion of penicillinase producers has increased so that in the general population of the United States the incidence is now something like 30 to 40 per cent and in hospital acquired infections the incidence of resistant strains may be as high as 70 or 80 per cent. Similar trends have been observed frequently in connection with gram negative bacillary infections of the urinary tract. These are frequently hospital acquired and a correlation often exists between the incidence of drug resistant coliform organisms and most popular antimicrobial agents. With curtailment of the use of an antibiotic in an institution or a community a progressive return of drug sensitive strains can be observed during succeeding months.

#### SUPERINFECTION

The term superinfection is employed to designate a well known and not uncommon complication of antimicrobial therapy, the development of a secondary infection due to another organism which is insusceptible to the agent being administered. An example would be the occurrence of Klebsiella pneumoniae while penicillin is being administered to a patient with a pneumococcal infection. The phenomenon of superinfection is important in clinical practice; the physician must be alert to recognize the development of new infectious processes during therapy. There can be little question that the existence of the normal flora in the mouth, the upper respiratory tract and the intestinal tract of man tends to prevent or retard the growth of various other organisms which may be introduced into these areas. However when an antimicrobial drug is given and the growth of normal flora is interfered with, some drug resistant organism which previously had been held in check by the equilibrium of normal coexistence now has an opportunity for unrestricted growth. Then the newly dominant strain may be capable

recurrent streptococcal infection in rheumatic fever subjects prevention of venereal disease in individuals about to be or very recently exposed and termination of epidemics of meningococcal meningitis or shigella dysentery in closed populations such as military groups or school children

Chemoprophylaxis is also often practiced in dealing with patients who have chronic bronchitis or fibrocystic disease in the hope of minimizing flare ups of respiratory infections In such patients recurrences of infections due to pneumococcus or *Hemophilus influenzae* may be diminished but there also is some danger of inducing a superinfection caused by a resistant microorganism

Chemoprophylaxis has been employed extensively in many kinds of surgery Unquestionably surgery of the lung has been made substantially safer because development of mediastinitis or empyema can be largely prevented by chemotherapy at the time of operation Some surgeons believe that the same holds true of intestinal surgery However there is room for question about the advisability of prophylactic antimicrobial drug therapy in clean surgery such as hernia repair or an orthopedic procedure In these situations where the likelihood of postoperative infection is slight the risk of superinfection and all the other hazards of chemotherapy may be greater than the potential benefit

The main abuse of prophylactic chemotherapy—and it is a massive one—is in giving antimicrobial agents to persons with common respiratory disease or other viral infections such as measles or poliomyelitis The explanation offered to justify such therapy is that secondary bacterial infection can be prevented by the use of antimicrobial agents The fact is that in every carefully controlled test the anticipated benefit from antimicrobial therapy has not been achieved Patients who receive prophylactic chemotherapy develop bacterial infections with the same or greater frequency and in addition the infecting organisms tend to be species insusceptible to the drug being used A similar situation exists in connection with prophylactic chemotherapy for patients who must have an indwelling catheter in the urinary bladder Because of the open communica-

tion provided by the sheath of exudate which surrounds an indwelling catheter these patients are almost certain to develop some kind of bacterial invasion of the bladder urine Prophylactic chemotherapy in this setting serves only to encourage the development of infection by resistant organisms

The following opinions regarding prophylactic chemotherapy are offered This form of treatment is often successful in preventing invasion by specific microorganisms such as the gonococcus or the hemolytic streptococcus It may also prevent the development of infection in areas which have been contaminated on a single occasion as in the course of a surgical procedure Prophylactic chemotherapy cannot be expected to maintain a microbial vacuum in areas such as the respiratory tract or the urinary bladder containing an indwelling catheter In these latter examples the patient's best interest is served by permitting bacteria normally dwelling on his body surfaces to maintain their dominance in preference to fostering the emergence of microbial species against which the host may have less effective defenses and for which antimicrobial chemotherapy may be less helpful

#### UNTOWARD EFFECTS OF ANTIMICROBIAL AGENTS

The induction of superinfections and endogenous infections during drug therapy has already been described as a serious consequence of antimicrobial therapy In addition the various drugs cause a wide variety of untoward effects involving literally every organ system in the body These vary in gravity from merely troublesome to life threatening Some appear to be direct toxic effects while the majority appear to be various kinds of allergic reactions Only a few examples will be listed here but it must be emphasized that the sum of all the complications of antibiotic therapy constitutes a substantial medical problem in the United States today Among the toxic effects may be mentioned 8th nerve damage by streptomycin rare but potentially serious bone marrow suppression by chloramphenicol injury of the liver by the tetracyclines and chloramphenicol (in newborn infants) and injury of the kidney by neomycin, bacitracin or am



one method to be clearly preferable to the other and animal experiments have yielded differing results. The trend in clinical practice seems to be in the direction of maintaining high constant levels in preference to widely fluctuating drug concentrations.

### USE OF DRUG COMBINATIONS

In spite of the attractiveness of treating each infection with one magic bullet there is a tendency in clinical practice to use 2 or more antimicrobial agents in the management of many infectious diseases. Sometimes this is necessitated by uncertainty regarding the microbial etiology of the given infection as is likely in the case of infections which result from perforation of the intestine, where the etiology is almost certainly complex. Another basis for administering more than one agent is the possibility of achieving an additive or synergistic action against an organism. Such effects have been demonstrated repeatedly in the laboratory and at times also in clinical practice. The best example is the use of a combination of penicillin and streptomycin in enterococcal bacterial endocarditis. The enterococcus *in vitro* is almost totally resistant to streptomycin and is comparatively resistant to penicillin nevertheless by administering both drugs in enterococcal endocarditis eradication of the bacterial population may be achieved. Another indication for the administration of a second antibiotic has been mentioned previously namely to delay the emergence of resistant mutants.

In many clinical situations however treatment with a single antimicrobial drug is entirely satisfactory e.g. penicillin for pneumococcal pneumonia. In these instances combinations of drugs should be avoided so as to minimize the risk of direct toxicity or indirect complications caused by the therapeutic agents.

### THE USE OF IN VITRO SENSITIVITY TESTS

The physician must often depend on laboratory tests of drug sensitivity in selecting the best agent for a particular problem. In some situations laboratory assistance is essential to proper choice of therapy, e.g. in infections of the urinary tract, staphylococcal infections and bacterial endocarditis. Clinical

use of sulfonamides is handicapped because of technical difficulty in carrying out such tests. Pneumococci and group A beta hemolytic streptococci are so uniform in sensitivity to penicillin that laboratory confirmation is not required. Sensitivity testing is not practical or necessary in the treatment of syphilis and is too slow to be of assistance in beginning treatment for tuberculosis.

Serious limitations of sensitivity tests in addition to those already indicated should be noted. The method most commonly employed in clinical laboratories is to observe the zone of growth inhibition on an agar medium around a disk impregnated with the drug in question. The width of this zone varies not only according to the drug's activity but also in relation to its diffusibility in agar. Such a test fails to provide information regarding bactericidal action. Furthermore it must be interpreted in relation to the permissible dose range, a factor of considerable importance when we take note of the strict dosage limitations possible with drugs such as the tetracyclines. In contrast with the almost unlimited quantity of penicillin a patient can tolerate. Determination of the actual drug concentration needed for bacteriostatic or bactericidal action can be carried out by incubation of the organism in a series of test tubes containing different quantities of drug. This method is tedious, but it has some clinical usefulness as a guide to necessary dosage. It can also be helpful in indicating possible synergism or antagonism of 2 or more agents though there are practical limitations to the number of combinations in varying concentrations that can be tested this way. It should also be kept in mind that results of drug sensitivity tests done *in vitro* may not reflect quantitatively or qualitatively the interaction between the antimicrobial agent and the parasite in the host tissues.

### PROPHYLACTIC USE OF ANTIMICROBIAL DRUGS

Prevention of infection by use of antimicrobial drugs is discussed in another chapter nevertheless it is a subject deserving at least brief consideration here. Chemoprophylaxis has been remarkably successful in situations in which infection by a specific microorganism is feared. Examples are prevention of

### IMMOBILIZATION

The dispersion of pathogenic microorganisms in tissue can be greatly retarded if the infected area is put at complete rest. Sometimes this can be achieved when the contaminated area can be immobilized by application of a plaster cast. Under such circumstances in spite of the presence of pathogenic microorganisms in the area of injury as usually accompanies bullet wounds there may be little or no spread of bacteria into adjacent tissues. This treatment is often of considerable value in the management of localized infections of the extremities.

### RELIEF OF OBSTRUCTION

There is abundant evidence that pyogenic infections tend to develop whenever the excretory duct of an organ is occluded. Such lesions may respond little or not at all to antimicrobial drug therapy. This difficulty is encountered in many situations: urinary tract obstruction, biliary tract obstruction, bronchial obstruction or paranasal sinus obstruction. In most instances all that is needed in these patients is to relieve the obstruction; natural defense mechanisms then seem to be capable of dealing with the infectious agent. The mechanism by which obstruction enhances the progress of an infection seems to be not merely by causing a stagnant collection of fluid in which organisms can proliferate luxuriantly. There is much basis for the belief that increased pressure resulting from the obstruction interferes with host defense mechanisms. Experiments in animals with ureteral or biliary tract obstructions appear to show that the initial bacterial growth takes place in the compressed tissues rather than in the stagnant fluid.

Of course relief of increased tissue pressure may be at least partly responsible for the beneficial effect of incision and drainage on localized collections of pus. Indubitably remarkable increases in tissue pressure may accompany acute inflammation. Clinical evidences of this are seen in the spurting of pus following incision, the bulging of an inflamed joint, the stripping of periosteum off the surface of a bone, etc. These local increases in pressure which accompany acute inflammation may serve to impede local defense mechanisms; the precise nature of the al-

terations in local defense agencies is not known.

### SERUM THERAPY

At present serum treatment of infectious disease is restricted largely to infections in which serious or fatal injury is due to exotoxins produced by the bacteria responsible for diphtheria, tetanus and botulism. The capacity of specific antibody to neutralize these toxins is thoroughly demonstrated and the clinical efficacy of antiserum in these situations seems to be beyond question.

Serum therapy has also been shown to be highly effective in certain acute infectious processes notably pneumococcal pneumonia and *H. influenzae* meningitis. It is probably significant that these infections are caused by bacteria possessing a polysaccharide capsular substance. Very probably the mechanism of beneficial effect is coating of capsular material by antibody facilitating phagocytosis of the bacteria. These forms of serum therapy have largely gone out of style because drugs are as effective and far simpler to use.

Although antibodies are of great practical importance in the prevention of viral disease they have been notably unsuccessful in the treatment of most viral infections. Certain qualifications of the foregoing statement will be found in the succeeding section on the use of gamma globulin.

### HUMAN GAMMA GLOBULIN

The main use of human gamma globulin at present is in prophylaxis against certain infections caused or presumed to be caused by viruses, especially infectious hepatitis or serum hepatitis. There is evidence that it may be of some value in the treatment of certain serious forms of vaccinia and that it may reduce the incidence of orchitis in adult males who have mumps parotitis. Gamma globulin has also been used widely to produce an attenuated disease in susceptible children exposed to measles. Finally to be mentioned is the value of gamma globulin administration in alleviating at least temporarily the susceptibility to certain infectious diseases of persons afflicted with agammaglobulinemia.

photocin II Examples of drug allergy are fever skin eruptions and serum type sickness Various kinds of hematopoietic disorders associated with antimicrobial drug therapy such as hemolytic anemia thrombocytopenia and granulopenia may be other forms of hypersensitivity reaction or they may be expressions of a genetic abnormality analogous to the hemolytic anemia which appears during antimalarial therapy in persons with glucose 6 phosphate-dehydrogenase deficiency Penicillin is unique among pharmacologic agents in that it can be tolerated in quantities exceeding those of almost any other known chemical without evidence of direct injurious effect nevertheless penicillin can induce exceedingly serious allergic reactions anaphylaxis bullous or exfoliative skin eruptions and generalized vasculitis Such reactions have been the cause of hundreds of deaths

Sometimes new expressions of drug toxicity are recognized only after prolonged experience for example the finding after more than a decade of use that the tetracyclines seem to produce a general catabolic effect with an increase in the level of blood urea nitrogen in patients with diminished renal reserve also the tendency of the tetracyclines to produce discoloration of the teeth in children

#### SOME MISUSES OF ANTIMICROBIAL AGENTS

In view of the dangers as well as the cost of antimicrobial drugs it is important to emphasize here the improper uses made of them In the United States antimicrobials constitute a substantial proportion of all drugs prescribed and of the nation's total expenditure for therapy Unfortunately a sizeable proportion of this is for insufficient reason or is wrong! At the top of the list is the widespread practice of employing antimicrobials in the treatment of common respiratory disease which has already been condemned Second is the tendency to prescribe an antimicrobial drug for any patient with a fever Too often the symptom is caused by some process not susceptible to this therapy e.g. a viral disease or a non-infectious febrile disorder In some instances the patient may be suffering from an infec-

tion for which appropriate therapy is available but the wrong drug may be chosen Certain faults may be mentioned in the manner of conducting therapeutic trials The practice itself i.e. the giving of a drug for a diagnosis suspected but not proved is defensible The faults lie either in undue prolongation of the trial or in changing from one drug to another too quickly Another error in chemotherapy less frequent but nevertheless serious is failure to recognize the development of a drug fever this may lead to the erroneous conclusion that the original infection persists A final point to be mentioned here is failure to employ other measures to treat infection In particular this applies to surgical measures which may be essential

### SURGICAL MEASURES

#### EVACUATION OF PUS

A collection of pus which can be approached surgically with reasonable safety should always be drained In view of the relative ineffectiveness of antimicrobial drugs in combatting germs contained in a large collection of pus the mechanical removal of exudate often determines success or failure It is desirable that the drainage be done while the patient is receiving appropriate antimicrobial therapy indeed it may be advisable to wait until the drug has had an opportunity to keep the infectious process contained for a few days before the surgical procedure is carried out

#### REMOVAL OF DEAD TISSUE OR FOREIGN BODY

In certain infections particularly staphylococcal osteomyelitis large chunks of dead bone may lie within the area of infection These provide excellent harbors for bacterial persistence in areas to which leukocytes can not gain access The complete cure of chronic osteomyelitis can seldom be accomplished with drugs alone but is frequently possible after the dead infected bone has been removed Other foreign bodies such as metal plates and screws silk sutures and wood splinters may have to be eliminated surgically in order to bring about eradication of an infection

### IMMOBILIZATION

The dispersion of pathogenic microorganisms in tissue can be greatly retarded if the infected area is put at complete rest. Sometimes this can be achieved when the contaminated area can be immobilized by application of a plaster cast. Under such circumstances in spite of the presence of pathogenic microorganisms in the area of injury as usually accompanies bullet wounds there may be little or no spread of bacteria into adjacent tissues. This treatment is often of considerable value in the management of localized infections of the extremities.

### RELIEF OF OBSTRUCTION

There is abundant evidence that pyogenic infections tend to develop whenever the excretory duct of an organ is occluded. Such lesions may respond little or not at all to antimicrobial drug therapy. This difficulty is encountered in many situations: urinary tract obstruction, biliary tract obstruction, bronchial obstruction or paranasal sinus obstruction. In most instances all that is needed in these patients is to relieve the obstruction; natural defense mechanisms then seem to be capable of dealing with the infectious agent. The mechanism by which obstruction enhances the progress of an infection seems to be not merely by causing a stagnant collection of fluid in which organisms can proliferate luxuriantly. There is much basis for the belief that increased pressure resulting from the obstruction interferes with host defense mechanisms. Experiments in animals with ureteral or biliary tract obstructions appear to show that the initial bacterial growth takes place in the compressed tissues rather than in the stagnant fluid.

Of course relief of increased tissue pressure may be at least partly responsible for the beneficial effect of incision and drainage on localized collections of pus. Indubitably remarkable increases in tissue pressure may accompany acute inflammation. Clinical evidences of this are seen in the spurring of pus following incision, the bulging of an inflamed joint, the stripping of periosteum off the surface of a bone, etc. These local increases in pressure which accompany acute inflammation may serve to impede local defense mechanisms; the precise nature of the al-

terations in local defense agencies is not known.

### SERUM THERAPY

At present serum treatment of infectious disease is restricted largely to infections in which serious or fatal injury is due to exotoxins produced by the bacteria responsible for diphtheria, tetanus and botulism. The capacity of specific antibody to neutralize these toxins is thoroughly demonstrated and the clinical efficacy of antiserum in these situations seems to be beyond question.

Serum therapy has also been shown to be highly effective in certain acute infectious processes, notably pneumococcal pneumonia and *H. influenzae* meningitis. It is probably significant that these infections are caused by bacteria possessing a polysaccharide capsular substance. Very probably the mechanism of beneficial effect is coating of capsular material by antibody, facilitating phagocytosis of the bacteria. These forms of serum therapy have largely gone out of style because drugs are as effective and far simpler to use.

Although antibodies are of great practical importance in the prevention of viral disease, they have been notably unsuccessful in the treatment of most viral infections. Certain qualifications of the foregoing statement will be found in the succeeding section on the use of gamma globulin.

### HUMAN GAMMA GLOBULIN

The main use of human gamma globulin at present is in prophylaxis against certain infections caused or presumed to be caused by viruses, especially infectious hepatitis or serum hepatitis. There is evidence that it may be of some value in the treatment of certain serious forms of vaccinia and that it may reduce the incidence of orchitis in adult males who have mumps parotitis. Gamma globulin has also been used widely to produce an attenuated disease in susceptible children exposed to measles. Finally to be mentioned is the value of gamma globulin administration in alleviating, at least temporarily, the susceptibility to certain infectious diseases of persons afflicted with agammaglobulinemia.

## FEVER THERAPY

A question frequently asked is whether fever constitutes an important defense mechanism against infectious disease. As a general rule elevation of body temperature does not seem to play a significant role in the control of microbial infections. Nevertheless it is worth noting that some strains of type III pneumococcus and of cryptococcus are unable to cause severe infections in animals capable of a normal febrile response whereas they are able to proliferate rapidly in animals whose temperatures are held down by antipyretic drugs.

In clinical experience one infectious disease is known to respond favorably to fever therapy namely the form of neurosyphilis known as general paresis. Fever treatment is resorted to only occasionally now because good results are obtained from the simpler and safer treatment by penicillin. Nevertheless it is important to point out that in the years before penicillin was available fever therapy was highly successful in treating an otherwise progressive and often fatal form of syphilitic infection. Methods of fever therapy which were employed in neurosyphilis included induction of malaria intravenous injection of bacterial endotoxin and elevation of the body temperature by treatment in a radiant heat cabinet. The mechanism by which fever therapy was so effective in this disease has never been established with certainty. Possibilities include deleterious effect on the parasite due to the higher temperature or enhancement of host defense mechanisms through stimulation of the reticuloendothelial system.

## STEROIDS AND ACTH

Controversy exists regarding the advisability of using adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) or adrenal steroid compounds in the treatment of certain kinds of infection. The unquestionable anti-inflammatory action of many of these may appear to reduce the manifestations of inflammation lowering the body temperature diminishing local pain and lessening malaise. On the other side of the debate must be considered the possible danger of ACTH and steroid therapy. Ample

experimental and clinical evidence shows that treatment with these compounds may actually accelerate the progress of infection leading to widespread dissemination of the infectious agent and a higher death rate.

At times the improvement in symptoms and signs due to diminution of the acute inflammation is indeed clinically impressive. Some experienced clinicians believe that this form of therapy may be life saving when used in conjunction with appropriate antimicrobial drugs particularly in the management of overwhelming infections. The reasoning is that by diminishing the toxic manifestations of the rampant infection survival may be prolonged sufficiently to permit an antimicrobial drug to gain control of the infectious process. The use of steroids in conjunction with chloramphenicol in the treatment of typhoid fever or severe brucellosis is advocated for the purpose of hastening defervescence of fever and preventing a Herxheimerlike effect resulting from too rapid destruction of the parasite by the antimicrobial drug. Steroids are sometimes employed in the management of severe inflammatory processes due to viruses or presumed viruses as for example in the management of overwhelming varicella pneumonia or severe infectious mononucleosis.

Those who oppose the use of ACTH and steroids cite the extensive experimental evidence showing enhanced spread of infection in animals receiving these hormones as well as the demonstrated diminution of immune responses that they produce. They cite too the experimental evidence that steroids may enhance the injurious effects of bacterial endotoxin such as renal cortical necrosis.

The truth is difficult to discern in the controversy regarding clinical evaluation of ACTH or steroid therapy. In one cooperative clinical study involving a double blind test of cortisone therapy in patients with severe bacterial infections the results showed little difference either of benefit or harm from the hormone. Despite frequent temporary improvement in clinical appearance following ACTH or steroid therapy there is no convincing proof that it is ever life saving and there is a lessening tendency among clinicians to employ this kind of treatment.

## GENERAL SUPPORTIVE CARE

Unquestionably one of the oldest methods of treating infectious disease—bed rest—is generally beneficial. Why this should be cannot be stated very accurately but it is usually assumed that lessening the work of the heart, the lungs and the kidneys, augmenting blood flow to the liver and reducing caloric requirements are all in the best interest of the acutely ill patient. Good supportive care in addition to bed rest, i.e. administration of adequate fluids, salt and vitamins by parenteral routes if need be, has certainly been of value in the management of prolonged febrile illness.

Although again the mechanism is not clear, clinical experience seems to provide undeniable evidence that measures to correct acidosis and azotemia are helpful in assisting patients to control infectious processes.

The use of antipyretic agents to lower the temperature level is much debated clinically. Probably this is not of vital importance in most instances. Some patients experience great malaise in the presence of fever, others are scarcely aware of temperature elevation. In the present era of antimicrobial drug therapy, the response of the body temperature is one of the most useful guides in judging success or failure of therapy, and because of that the use of antipyretics may be undesirable. Often malaise can be controlled with a drug such as codeine which does not also have an antipyretic effect.

Interest is developing in the question of whether benefit may be achieved in certain cases by lowering body temperature to subnormal levels, as can be accomplished by mechanical cooling devices. This is being recommended especially in the treatment of bacteremia due to gram-negative bacilli. Cases have been reported in which the circulatory shock of such severe infections has subsided only after the patient's body temperature had been lowered to the range of 80 to 85 F. This therapy is still in the stage of trial, undoubtedly involves some danger and requires most careful evaluation by qualified observers, nevertheless, eventu-

ally it may prove to have therapeutic value in selected instances.

In the foregoing survey, an attempt has been made to present very generally the current situation in clinical management of infectious diseases. Spectacular progress has been achieved, though not without some cost, e.g. drug toxicity, superinfections. We still lack a specific treatment for nearly all viral diseases. But we can expect many exciting break-throughs. The certain prospect for the future is progress—and new problems.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Baker R D (ed) 1962 Symposium on Opportunistic Fungal Infections. Lab Invest 11 1017-1239.
- Barber M and Garrod L P 1963 Antibiotic and Chemotherapy. Edinburgh Livingstone.
- Cooperative Study Group 1962 A double blind study of the effectiveness of cortisol in the management of severe infections. Trans Ass Am Physicians 75 198-207.
- Finland M, Jones W F Jr and Barnes M W 1959 Occurrence of serious bacterial infections since introduction of antibacterial agents. JAMA 170 2188-2197.
- McDermott W 1958 Microbial persistence. Yale J Biol Med 30 257-291.
- Martin W J 1963 Some current concepts in infectious diseases. I. Tripartite interrelationships of drug, microbe and host. II. Bacterial resistance, the microbial flora and superinfection. Med Ann DC 32 211-217, 218-222.
- 1964 Newer antimicrobial agents having current or potential clinical application. Med Clin N Am 48 255.
- Petersdorf R G and Plorde J G 1963 The usefulness of in vitro sensitivity tests in antibiotic therapy. Ann Rev Med 14 41-56.
- Waisbren B A 1957 The treatment of bacterial infections with the combination of antibiotics and gamma globulin. Antibiot Chemother 7 322-333.
- Weinstein L 1962 Chemotherapy of infection. In Harrison T R (ed) Principles of Internal Medicine, ed 4, p 868. New York: McGraw-Hill.



# Bibliographic Index

- Abashidze T 699 721  
 Abbott P 827 829 830 857 872 887  
 Abdul Wahed A K, M 658  
 Abel J J 56  
 Abell R G 252  
 Abernathy R, M 716 842 876  
 Abernathy T J 872  
 Aboulafia, M 884  
 Abraham E P 123 141  
 Abrams A 54 67 160 166 566 567  
 Abramson E 351  
 Abramson S 527  
 Ackerman C J 948  
 Ackroyd J F 272  
 Adams M H 393 394 399 409 410 555 568  
 Adams M O 744 750  
 Adams R D 283 3 0 323  
 Adelberg E A 53 84  
 Adelberg E H 119  
 Adler E L 465  
 Adler F L 232 234 289 298  
 Adler H E 800 802 804 805 807 809  
 Adriano S M 880  
 Agius E 529  
 Aikawa S 582 609  
 Ajello L 336 349 83 833 838 851 857 863 867 868 872 873 877 880 882 884 885  
 Ajl S J 666 667 690 693  
 Akiba 82  
 Aladjem F 763 296  
 Al Askari S 798 300  
 Albers D D 718  
 Albert A 928 945  
 Albert H L 851 880  
 von Albertini A 708 722  
 Alberty R A 709  
 Albrecht 680  
 Albrecht J T 348 354  
 Albrecht R W 823  
 Albrink W H 535 541 542  
 Alcedan M 783  
 Aldana L 781 783  
 Al Doory Y 860 883  
 Aleandri M 718  
 Aleksandrov N I 538 541 690  
 Alexander A H 599 607 603 605  
 Alexander H H 84 442 450 724 728 730 733 734 736-741 750  
 Alexander M M 420 437 683  
 Alfonso Armenteros J 589 608  
 Algre G H 788  
 Allen 810  
 Allen C F 5 4  
 Allen D W 134 141  
 Allen H F 922 945  
 Allen J C 933 945  
 Allen P M 136 143  
 Allen R C 716  
 Allen H M 751  
 Allen W P 278 296 687 694  
 Allower M 498 524  
 Allison F Jr 223 228 233 235 340 452 876  
 Allison V D 420 437 473 483 488  
 Allott E N 663  
 Alston J M 344 349 597 599 601 603  
 Alstrom J 799 805  
 Altemeyer W A 344 349 558 561 568 767 768  
 Altenbern R A 697 703 716 717  
 Alter R L 350  
 Altieri P L 568  
 Alland P D 341 349 351  
 Alton G G 715 716 719  
 Amano T 229 233 339 351  
 Amarasinghe A 721  
 Ambache N 166 562 568  
 Ambe K S 203 208  
 Ambler R P 41 67  
 Ambrose C T 131 141  
 Amerault T H 718  
 American Public Health Association 673 690 931 945  
 Ames H G 747 750  
 Amies C H 795 805  
 Amisraeli K 192 708  
 Amos B 302 303  
 Amos D H 289 296 297  
 Amoss H L 688  
 Ampofo O 596 603  
 Anacker R L 306 54  
 Anand N 132 141  
 Anders M 85  
 Andersen E K 743 745 749 751  
 Andersen S R 497 518 524  
 Anderson A E 877  
 Anderson A W 691  
 Anderson B B 464 465  
 Anderson E S 593 603 617 672 645 910  
 Anderson F W 875  
 Anderson G W 886 910 912  
 Anderson H H 593 604 768  
 Anderson J S 125 141 143 471 487  
 Anderson K 645  
 Anderson R E 696  
 Anderson, E J 574  
 Anderson T F 84 575 607 774  
 Andre M 872  
 Andreas G A 259 271 296 302  
 Andrews C H 784  
 Androle V T 839 875  
 Annau E 661  
 Anonymous 564 568  
 Anslow R O 567 570  
 Antonio A 248  
 Antopol W 248  
 Anzai H 761  
 Appel S H 283 296  
 Arantes A 844 878  
 Araujo N Z 781 783  
 Araujo P 376 386  
 Arbesman C E 261 265 302 303  
 Arbouys S 290 303  
 Arbutnot J P 436  
 Arce J 783  
 Archer G T 222 227 229 237 233 323  
 Archer R K 233  
 Archibald R G 856 882  
 Ardalon A 719  
 Arden John 452  
 Aretaeus 451  
 Arimura G 272  
 Arkwright J A 639 645  
 Armen D 836 876  
 Armentrout E 145  
 Arrijo Rojas R 910  
 Armstrong J C 597 603  
 Arnason B G 290 303  
 Arndt W F 293 296  
 Arnold F A 349  
 Arnold R C 585 607  
 Arnow P 143  
 Arnstein L H 798 805  
 Aronson A I 60 70 129 130 141  
 Aronson J H 276 505 509 5 5 4  
 Aronson M 690  
 Arrasmith 810  
 Arrhenius Svante 13 182  
 Arronson T 212  
 Artagaveytia Allende R C 877 828 873  
 Arthus M 13 747 754  
 Asahi O 754 760  
 Aschner M 833 874  
 Aschoff L 215 219 233  
 Ashbel R 593 603  
 Ashenbrucker H 233



- Ashworth C T 284 299  
 Asselineau J 275 276 497 499  
 524 528  
 Atchison M M 543  
 Athens J W 217 233 316 323  
 Atkins E 233 294 309 323  
 324  
 Atkinson C W A 752  
 Attila C 801 806  
 Atwood H P 323  
 Aubert E 491 524  
 Auerbach T 154 167  
 August J F 85  
 Augustin R 265 267 296  
 Ausherman R J 877  
 Aust J B 298  
 Austen K F 245 246 248 262  
 296 299  
 Austrian R 391 400 409  
 Avery O T 10 74 84 182  
 357 386 492 396 398 399  
 403 406 409 411 725 731  
 741  
 Avi Dor J 684  
 Avruch J 143  
 Axelrod A E 286  
 Axnucl N W 455 467  
 Aycock W L 449 450 910  
 942 945  
 Ayoub E M 371 786  
 Ayres J C 689 796 798 808  
 Aznar Reig A 711 716  
 Azurin J C 658  
  
 Babudieri B 593 603  
 Bach F 299  
 Bacon A 668 669 691  
 Bacon W L 276  
 Badalov M E 696  
 Baddley J 49 65 67 386 390  
 416 417 432 435 437  
 Badger G F 822  
 Badger S J 947  
 Badger T L 518 524  
 Baehr G 616  
 Baer H S 437 709 721  
 Baer H 157 167  
 Baer P N 347 350  
 Baer R L 270 285  
 Baernstein H D Jr 788 805  
 Baeurle H 722  
 Bahmanyar M 693  
 Bahrn R C 882  
 Bail O 148 166 276 537  
 Bailey C A 944 945  
 Bailey J S 788 805  
 Bailey J W 831 880  
 Bailey N T J 911  
 Bain R V S 660 661 662 689  
 Baird Parker A C 330 350  
 Bakaeva O A 700 717  
 Bakay H 70  
 Baker A R 245 296  
 Baker E E 693 881  
 Baker R D 830 834-836 843  
 857 859 873 874 883 959  
 Balch H H 939 945  
 Baldridge C W 226 233 260  
 Baldwin J M 416 420 437  
 438  
 Ball K P 340 354  
 Ball O G 876  
 Baltazard M 673 690  
 Baltzer B 703 719  
 Bandur H M 794 805  
 Banerjee A 744 750  
 Banfer J R J 432  
 Bang J 459 465 698 716 726  
 739  
 Banvard J 632 646  
 Baquero G F 861 862 883  
 Baram P 302  
 Barbaro J F 196 208 248  
 252  
 Barber M 301 669 959  
 Bardawil W 760  
 Barile M F 783 790 805 808  
 822  
 Barker H A 107 118  
 Barksdale L 84  
 Barksdale W L 474 487 641  
 645  
 Barkulis S S 50 70  
 Barlow A J H 336 350  
 Barnes H M 930 946  
 Barnes J M 535 541  
 Barnes L A 411 647  
 Barnes M W 646 659  
 Baron B 264  
 Baron L S 84 212  
 Baron S 286 298  
 Barr M 561 568 935 937 945  
 Barrash M J 835 873  
 Barrow P 200 210  
 Bartholomew J W 64 65  
 Bartley E O 663 689  
 Barton A L 777 783  
 Basilio C 144  
 Baske W J Jr 249  
 Ba s K 647  
 Batserman J 765 768  
 Bassi Agostino 6  
 Bastarrchea F 873  
 Bastin 567 570  
 Batchelor F R 420 430 432  
 Bateman J B 566 571  
 Bates R 880  
 Batten J C 436  
 Battistini T S 777 784  
 Battisto J R 245 295 297  
 Battle J D Jr 680  
 Baity I 552 553 557 558 561  
 566 568 571  
 Baudens J G 430 433  
 Bauer D J 944 945  
 Bauer H 176 179 231 236  
 336 354  
 Bauer J A Jr 276  
 Baum G L 842 843 849 879  
 880  
 Bauman A 297  
 Baumann J B 933 948  
 Baylis J H 161 166  
 Bayon H 590 603  
 Beadshaw B E 717  
 Beahrs O H 720  
 Beall F A 154 166 537 541  
 Beams H W 56 69  
 Beard H W 843 876  
 Beard H R 881  
 Bearns R E 753 760  
 Beaver D C 772 774  
 Be k C 944 945  
 Beck E S 532 541  
 Beck M D 646  
 Becker E L 192 193 195 209  
 213 214 247  
 Becker R J 287  
 Beckman H 50 71  
 Beckwith T D 611 647  
 Beechen I I 341 350  
 Beesley E D 692  
 Beeson P B 173 178 231 233  
 305 306 309 323 325 398  
 400 409 597 600 603 629  
 645 949  
 von Behring E A 11 171 187  
 469 487 932 945  
 Beigelman P M 773  
 Beighton E 43 67  
 Beisel W H 657  
 Belierkunst A 722  
 Bekker J H 583 601  
 Bell Benjamin 452  
 Bell J 283 301  
 Bell J A 879  
 Bell J F 683 684 688 695  
 696  
 Belter L F 709 721  
 Belton F C 154 168 537 541  
 542 543  
 Benacerraf B 206 209 211  
 213 231 233 234 244 255  
 286 287 291 297 298 300  
 301  
 Benbrook E A 842 876  
 Bender I B 341 350  
 Bendisen H 707 716  
 Benedict A A 712 716  
 Benditt E P 242 252  
 Ben Efram S 678 690  
 Benenson A S 645 646 942  
 944 946 948  
 Ben Gunon R 668 690  
 Benham R W 837 838 836  
 858 864 873 875 882 884  
 Benigno P 136 141  
 Bennett H H 876  
 Bennett I L Jr 107 309 311  
 313 323 325 437 439  
 Bennett J E 834 873  
 Benpki M 439

- Benschel A 579 605  
 Benson M E 880  
 Benson W L 282 849  
 Bent D F 667 690  
 Benyajati C 657  
 Benzer S 77  
 Beraldo W T 248  
 Bercovici B 805  
 Berendt M F 690  
 Berg, M. K. 876  
 Berg M L 797 805  
 Bergdoll M D 420 433  
 Bergdoll M S 420 433 435  
 438 439  
 Berger U 328 346 350  
 Bergey D H 681 773  
 Berggård I 185 186 209  
 Bergman G 348 350  
 Bergmann D H 705 716  
 Berkhout C M 836 875  
 Berle E 276  
 Berlin R D 310 343 666  
 Berman D T 703 705 715  
 717 721  
 Berman S 558 568  
 Bernhard W G 164 167 408  
 410  
 Bernheim B C 646  
 Bernheim M 142  
 Bernheimer A W 146 152  
 156 159 166 168 34 360  
 369 371 386 388 390 393  
 409 418 433 568  
 Bernkopf H 602 603  
 Berrah G 138 141  
 Berry G P 607 747 746 750  
 Berry J F 609  
 Berry L J 177 179  
 Berson F 267 297  
 Berthrong M 507 574  
 Bertrand Gabriel 101  
 Bertrand L 709 719  
 Besemer A R 851 880  
 Besredka A 253  
 Bessemans A 579 580 599  
 603  
 Beutel H 705 717  
 Bevans M 256 299  
 Beveridge W I H 801  
 Bezak V 663 689  
 Bezer A E 282  
 Bhagavan N V 678 793  
 Biberstein E L 700 715 717  
 Biebler R H 568  
 Bichowsky Slomnicki L 668  
 690  
 Bidwell M 556 568 571  
 Biegeleisen J Z Jr 533 542  
 688 695 710 717  
 Bielschowsky M 272  
 Bier O G 245 301  
 Billett F M 351  
 Billingham R E 288 490 297  
 Billroth T 356 386 41 433  
 Binaghi R 245 297  
 Binford C H 862 883  
 Binkley F 646  
 Binney F G 235  
 Biozzi G 206 209 234  
 Birch Andersen A 58 64 67  
 70  
 Bircher R 387  
 Birge C 145  
 Birkhaug K 276  
 Burkhauser H 172 178  
 Buro 193 196 212  
 Bisset K A 55 64 65 67  
 Bittner J J 718  
 Bizzini B 159  
 Black S H 61 67  
 Black W C 590 603  
 Black Shaffer B 294  
 Bladen H A Jr 50 67 770  
 771 773  
 Blagobetschenskaya O H  
 711 717  
 Blair J E 416 425 426 433  
 435  
 Blake F G 404 409 734 739  
 767 768  
 Blake T J 774  
 Blaker R G 179  
 Blancas F 787 783  
 Blanchard K 863 865  
 Bloch 252  
 Bloch B 284  
 Bloch H 498 499 524 528  
 Bloch K J 244 245 252 255  
 296 297 301  
 Blondeau H 350  
 Blood B 722  
 Bloom B R 274 278 291 297  
 Bloom H H 822  
 Bloom W L 478 489 536 542  
 Bloomfield N 834 873  
 Blum H L 466  
 Blundell G P 544  
 Boak R A 345  
 Bochall R 7 H  
 Bocking D 277  
 Bocobo F C 864 877 887  
 884  
 Bodin 866  
 Boerema I 568  
 Bogen E 526  
 Boggs D M 838 875  
 Bohls S W 594 603  
 Boissard J M 360 386  
 Bonsvort P L 387 389 740  
 Bosvin A 625 645  
 Bojalil L F 8 8 831 872  
 Boldt M H 244  
 Bollet A J 209  
 Bolton F G 272 797  
 Bonanto M V 946  
 Bondi A Jr 414 433 750 751  
 Bonilla E 861 883  
 Booher C E 747  
 Booher Z K 488  
 Bopp C 861 883  
 Borchers J 658  
 Bordet Jules 12 13 182 581  
 604 742 743 750 799  
 Boretus L O 248  
 Borg K 680 693  
 Borg Petersen C 601 604  
 Borin, W D 877  
 Boris M 438 945  
 Borison H L 325  
 Bornstein D L 311 324  
 Bornstein M H 283 796  
 Bornstein S 624  
 Borodina O A 666 693  
 Borodko M L 716 717  
 Boroff D A 566 568  
 Borrel 799  
 Borsos T 193 201 202 209  
 213  
 Bortnick L 354  
 Borts I H 719  
 Borzenkov 666  
 Bosch Z E 860 883  
 Bosworth T J 704 717  
 Bothwell P W 710 714 717  
 Bouillat M 692  
 Bounset L 329 350  
 Bourn J M 324  
 Bousson H L 433  
 Bouvier G 717  
 Bowdoin C D 597 604  
 Bowen T J 56 67 810  
 Bowie J H 920 945  
 Bowmer E J 565 568  
 Boyce 288  
 Boyd J S K 637 639 641  
 643 645  
 Boyd M F 856 857 882  
 Boyd W C 278  
 Boyden S V 208 09 222  
 232 233 236 275 277 29  
 297 520 524  
 Boyer C I Jr 766 768  
 Boyers J 873  
 Boyes B W 717  
 Bracco R M 397 409  
 Brachet J 66 235  
 Brachman P S 535 538 540  
 543  
 Bradbury F C S 496 524  
 Bradfield J M G 575 604  
 Bradford W L 742 745 746  
 748 751  
 Bradykinin 243  
 Brandis H 598 599 608  
 Brandt H 848 879  
 Branham M E 441 442 445  
 447 450 638 645  
 Brasher C A 848 879  
 Braude A I 173 178 225 231  
 233 708 717  
 Braun W 84 201 212 305  
 306 703 704 717 721

- Braunsteiner H 233 285  
 Bray J 612 645  
 Brayton R G 839 876  
 Brecher G 217 230 233  
 Breed H S 327 350 412 413  
 433 695  
 Breitwieser E R 524  
 Brem J 260  
 Brent L 288 290 297  
 Breslau A M 851 880  
 Breton 13  
 Bretonneau Pierre 469  
 Breuillaud J 350  
 Bridges C H 857 882  
 Bridges H A 355  
 Bridges R A 290  
 Bridre 787 800 801  
 Brierley E M 55 58 65 68  
 Brill J 758 760  
 Brinkley G E 843 877  
 Brinkley M 300  
 Brinkman S A 877 84  
 Brinton C 43 67  
 Briquel P 689  
 British Plague Research Commis-  
 sion 664  
 Brock J M 867 884  
 Brock T D 124 143 141  
 Brocklehurst W E 243 246  
 249 252 270 296 297  
 Brodie A F 138 141  
 Brody M 842 877  
 Bronson S M 848 879  
 Brooke M M 646  
 Brooks L D 851 880  
 Brooks M E 555 558 568  
 Brooks V B 562 565 567 568  
 Brooksbank H W L 432  
 Broom J C 601 603 604  
 Broome J 233  
 Brown 749  
 Brown A D 54 67  
 Brown A E 772 773  
 Brown B C 458 465  
 Brown D W 333 350  
 Brown E A 267 299 302  
 Brown E R 533 542  
 Brown G M 139 141  
 Brown J A 768  
 Brown J B 288 290 297  
 Brown J H 357 369 386 387  
 Brown J W 67  
 Brown L 457 465  
 Brown M H 288  
 Brown R C 302  
 Brown T McP 763 767 768  
 798 805 808  
 Brown W J 459 463 465  
 Browne H G 839 876  
 Brownlow W J 666 690  
 Brubaker R R 668 690  
 Bruce D 698 717  
 Bruck Albert 12  
 Bruck C 581 609  
 Bruckner I E 749  
 Brues C T 777 784  
 Brugnattelli 660  
 Bruins W J 879  
 Brumfield G L 872  
 Brummelkamp W H 560 568  
 Brumpt E 859 883  
 Brun R 285 303  
 Bruner D W 768  
 Brunius E 351  
 Brunner M 264  
 Bruno P 236 921 948  
 Brunt R V 350  
 Bruton O C 208 209  
 Bruusgaard E 578 604  
 Bryant B J 217 219 233  
 Bryant J B 876  
 Bubash G R 867 884  
 Buc H 276  
 Bucca M A 454 465 466  
 Buchanan J G 67  
 Buchanan J M 142  
 Buchner Hans 12 534  
 Buck C A 533 542 699  
 Buckland F E 691  
 Buckle G 527  
 Buckler C H 286 298  
 Buckley C E 190 209  
 Budd William 16 620 911  
 Buddingh G J 682 669 685  
 767 768 822  
 Buddle M B 700 717  
 Buechler Czaczkes E 593 605  
 Buechner H A 843 877  
 Buehler H J 159  
 Buescher E L 823  
 Buehner Janusch V J 159  
 Buhler V H 496 524  
 Buhr A J 662 690  
 Boker E O 695  
 Bullen J J 566 569  
 Bulloch W 2 18  
 Bullock W H 287  
 Bullowa J G M 406 409  
 Bumford F H 543  
 Bumm 452  
 Burchall J J 875 876  
 Burdin J C 689  
 Burdon K L 56 67 253 532  
 534 542  
 Burgdorfer W 695  
 Burge H E 43 67 68  
 Burgen A S V 161 167  
 Burgisser H 717  
 Burloon J S 299  
 Burianek J 680 693  
 Burke J 179  
 Burke M H 912  
 Burki F 712 717  
 Burnet F M 22 23 35 272  
 282 292 299 413 433 468  
 487 639 645 745 911 933  
 934  
 Burns S N 84  
 Burrell J I 570  
 Burroughs A L 684 685  
 Burrous J W 85  
 Burrous W E 54 67  
 Burrows T W 153 167 668  
 670 691 693  
 Burrows W 210 654 657  
 Burston J 416 429 432  
 Buschke A 832 873  
 Busey J F 876  
 Bushby S R 523 524  
 Bussard M A 294 297  
 Busse O 832 873  
 Butas C A 798 805  
 Butler A 398  
 Buttaur R 327 350  
 Byers E H 748 750  
 Byrne J J 663  
 Byrne J L 758 760  
 Cabelli V J 695  
 Cadness Graves H 428 431  
 Cahan A 300  
 Cairns J 59 60 67  
 Calcott M A 212  
 Calhoun E L 682 689  
 Callahan O H 265  
 Callaway J L 830 835 836  
 843 857 859 883  
 Callender G R 630  
 Calmette A L C 274  
 Camain R 872  
 Cameron H S 699 700 707  
 715 717 720  
 Cameron J 252  
 Cameron M P 432 437  
 Cameron Wood J 432  
 Camen M N 159 167  
 Camp L B 884  
 Campbell C C 843 848 854  
 877 880 881  
 Campbell D H 253 256 296  
 Campbell J C 43 70  
 Campbell J J W 54 67  
 Campbell R E 575 604  
 Campbell T A 821 822  
 Canetti G 174 178 500 502  
 524  
 Cann J R 204 209 214  
 Cannefax G R 583 604  
 Canter A 324  
 Cantoni G L 371 386  
 Cantrell J R 835 874  
 Caraway C T 945  
 Cardella M A 572  
 Carey W F 84 212  
 Carini A 844 878  
 Carhart S 696 697  
 Carlin C E 665 691  
 Carlisle H N 695 697 848  
 880  
 Carlson A E 371 386 387  
 Carlson H J 797 798 805

- Carson M C 945  
 Carmichael J W 867 884  
 Carmo Sousa L D 838 876  
 Carne H R 487  
 Caro L G 58 59 67  
 Caro W A 266  
 Carozza F A Jr 324 646  
 Carpenter C M 325  
 Carpenter R R 277 281 286 297  
 Carr E A Jr 762 784 297 685 695  
 Carr M 416 433  
 Carrere L 715 719  
 Carrion A L 777 859 883  
 Carter B 344 350 875  
 Carter E E 466  
 Carter G R 660 661 689 799 801 805  
 Cartwright G H 31  
 Cary S G 809  
 Casman E P 470 433  
 Cason J 497 574  
 Castaneda N R 645 707 711 717  
 Castelloni Aldo 587 862 864 884  
 Castillo C G 874  
 Castle W B 3 4  
 Castleberry M W 880  
 Catanzaro F J 943 945  
 Cate R 2  
 Cater D B 575 604  
 Catlen B W 433  
 Cato E P 3 9 353  
 Caulfield A H W 263 786  
 Caulfield E 469 487  
 Cavalli L L 79 84  
 Cavalli Sforza L 143  
 Cavanaugh D C 671 691 691  
 Cavella P A 272  
 Cawley E P 878  
 Cawson R A 663 689  
 Cecil R L 404 409 734 739  
 Cedergren H 57 68  
 Celsus 451  
 Centre International de l'Enfance 509 524  
 Cerbon J 87  
 Chabaud A 597 604  
 Chabbert Y A 410 433  
 Chain E B 15 170 437  
 Chakravarty N 248  
 Chalmers A J 856 882  
 Chamberland 925  
 Chambers J W 576 608  
 Chamowitz R 943 945  
 Chance B 138 141  
 Chance H L 55 67  
 Chandler C A 740  
 Chang H 768  
 Chang R S M 599 604  
 Chang S L 604  
 Changeaux J P 119  
 Chanock R M 788 799 805 809 811 815 819 821 824  
 Chapeau M L 296  
 Chapin C V 911  
 Chapin C W 681  
 Chapman G H 42 55 67 127 141  
 Chapman O H 444 450 733 739  
 Chapman S S 695  
 Chapman Andresen C 22 233  
 Chardome J 883  
 Chargaff E 741  
 Charles N D 687 695 696  
 Charlton W 369 489  
 Charrin Albert 12  
 Chase M W 85 218 240 245 276 285 287 294 295 297 300 302 507 524  
 Chattaway F W 350  
 Chateau 538  
 Chealle E L 429 433  
 Cheever F S 440 450 648  
 Chen H L 488  
 Chen C C 332 350  
 Chen K 592 604  
 Chen S 881  
 Chen T H 667 668 691 693  
 Chen Y P 593 604  
 Cherchenko M R 702 711 717  
 Chermew I 173 178 225 231 233  
 Cherniss E I 842 877  
 Cherry J K T 594 604  
 Cherry W B 433 533 542 693  
 Chesney A M 579 580 604  
 Chevalier A 678  
 Cheyne I M 433  
 Chuck E W 842 873 877  
 Chickering H T 306 309  
 Chievitz I 742  
 Chin D 718  
 Chun P H 693  
 Chung R H 648  
 Chitre G D 671  
 Choucroun N 775 780 300 498 499  
 Christensen L R 155 167 37 386 390  
 Christensen M 716  
 Christie A 846 879  
 Christie R 415 433  
 Chrysanthou C 248  
 Church A H 175 179 206 211 230 234 366 387  
 Ciak J 121 175 141 14 145  
 Cima L 141  
 Cipollaro A C 855 881  
 Claett O T 877  
 Clark A R 353 354  
 Clark E G 578 604  
 Clark E W 204 209  
 Clark H W 804 805  
 Clark J H 55 67  
 Clark J W 607  
 Clark S L Jr 324  
 Clark W G 4 0 433  
 Clarke F H 49 50 67 570  
 Claus K H 557 571  
 Cleverdon R C 332 350  
 Cluff L H 321 374 433 435 637 645 711 717 933 945  
 Clyde W A Jr 790 798 805 811 815 818 820 82  
 Cobb J M 880  
 Coburn A F 177 179  
 Coca A F 252 260 274  
 Cocchi C 499 525  
 Cochran C G 208 214 232 233 254 256 297  
 Cochran R G 523 525  
 Cockburn T A 573 604  
 Cocking E C 691 692  
 Code C F 247  
 Coe A W 435  
 Coe J A 295  
 Coffey J M 369 386  
 Coggeshall L T 411  
 Coghill N F 593 604  
 Cohen H 434  
 Cohen G N 118  
 Cohen J O 418 479 433 945  
 Cohen L S 433  
 Cohen S 471 487  
 Cohen S M 743 750  
 Cohen S S 132 134 141 144  
 Cohen V 755 760  
 Cohn A 456 465  
 Cohn Ferdinand 2 8 18  
 Cohn M L 491 49 512 519 525 527 529  
 Cohn Z A 215 22 225 230 233 234 424 433  
 Coth R 568  
 Cole L R 292 570 525  
 Cole R M 306 309 327 353 401 409  
 Coleman C M 527  
 Coleman I W 566 568  
 Collier H O J 244 247 297  
 Collier R J 478 488  
 Collings C K 354  
 Collins A D 294  
 Collins J F 125 141  
 Collins R D 310 324 325  
 Collins S C 834 874  
 Collins W T 855 881  
 Colobert L 49 65 327 350  
 Colville J M 340 353  
 Commission on Acute Respiratory Diseases 810 811 815 82  
 Committee for the Investigation of Dental Disease 349 350  
 Comolli R 85  
 Comstock G W 696  
 Conant N F 825 830 835

- Braunsteiner H 233 285  
 Bray J 612 645  
 Brayton R G 839 876  
 Brecher G 217 230 233  
 Breed R S 327 350 412 413  
 433 695  
 Breitwieser E II 524  
 Brem J 260  
 Brent L 288 290 297  
 Breslau A M 851 880  
 Breton 13  
 Bretonneau Pierre 469  
 Breuillaud J 350  
 Bridges C H 857 882  
 Bridges II A 355  
 Bridges II A 290  
 Bridre 787 800 801  
 Brieger E M 55 58 65 68  
 Brill J 758 760  
 Brinkley G E 843 877  
 Brinkley M 300  
 Brinkman S A 877 84  
 Brinton C 43 67  
 Briquel P 689  
 British Plague Research Commis-  
 sion 664  
 Brock J M 867 884  
 Brock T D 124 133 141  
 Brocklehurst W E 243 246  
 249 252 270 296 297  
 Brodie A F 138 141  
 Brody M 842 877  
 Bronson S M 848 879  
 Brooke M M 646  
 Brooks L D 851 880  
 Brooks M E 555 558 568  
 Brooks V B 562 565 567 568  
 Brooksbank B W L 432  
 Broom J C 601 603 604  
 Broome J 233  
 Brown 749  
 Brown A D 54 67  
 Brown A E 772 773  
 Brown B C 458 465  
 Brown D W 333 350  
 Brown E A 267 299 302  
 Brown E R 533 542  
 Brown G M 139 141  
 Brown J A 768  
 Brown J B 288 290 297  
 Brown J H 357 369 386 387  
 Brown J W 67  
 Brown L 457 465  
 Brown M H 288  
 Brown III C 302  
 Brown T McP 763 767 768  
 798 805 808  
 Brown W J 459 463 465  
 Browne H G 839 876  
 Brownlow W J 666 690  
 Brubaker R R 668 690  
 Bruce D 698 717  
 Bruck Albert 12  
 Bruck C 581 609  
 Bruckner I E 749  
 Brues C T 777 784  
 Brugnattelli 660  
 Bruins W J 879  
 Brumfield G L 872  
 Brummelkamp W H 560 568  
 Brumpt E 859 883  
 Brun R 285 303  
 Bruner D W 768  
 Brunus E 351  
 Brunner M 264  
 Bruno P 236 921 948  
 Brunt II V 350  
 Bruton O C 208 209  
 Bruusgaard E 578 604  
 Bryant B J 217 219 233  
 Bryant J B 876  
 Bubash G R 867 884  
 Buc II 276  
 Bucca M A 454 465 466  
 Buchanan J G 67  
 Buchanan J M 142  
 Buchner Hans 12 534  
 Buck C A 533 542 699  
 Buckland F E 691  
 Buckle G 527  
 Buckler C E 286 298  
 Buckley C E 190 209  
 Budd William 16 620 911  
 Buddingh G J 682 669 685  
 767 768 822  
 Buddle M B 700 717  
 Buechler Czaczkes E 593 605  
 Buechner H A 843 877  
 Buehler H J 159  
 Buescher E L 823  
 Buettnier Janusch V J 159  
 Buhler V H 496 524  
 Buhr A J 662 690  
 Buker E O 695  
 Bullen J J 566 569  
 Bulloch W 2 18  
 Bullock W E 287  
 Bullowa J G M 406 409  
 Bumford F II 543  
 Bumm 452  
 Burchall J J 875 876  
 Burdin J C 689  
 Burdon K L 56 67 253 532  
 534 542  
 Burgdorfer W 695  
 Burge R E 43 67 68  
 Burgen A S V 161 167  
 Burgisser H 717  
 Burgoon J S 299  
 Burianek J 680 693  
 Burke J 179  
 Burke M H 912  
 Burki F 712 717  
 Burnet F M 22 23 35 272  
 282 292 299 413 433 468  
 487 639 645 745 911 933  
 934  
 Burns S N 84  
 Burrell J I 570  
 Burroughs A L 684 685  
 Burrous J W III  
 Burrous S E 54 67  
 Burrows T W 153 167 668  
 670 691 693  
 Burrows W 210 654 657  
 Burston J 416 429 432  
 Buschke A 832 873  
 Buscy J F 876  
 Bushby S R 523 524  
 Bussard M A 294 297  
 Busse O 832 873  
 Butas C A 798 805  
 Butler K 398  
 Buttriaux R 327 350  
 Byers R K 748 750  
 Byrne J J 663  
 Byrne J L 758 760  
 Cabelli V J 695  
 Cadness Graves B 428 433  
 Cahan A 300  
 Cairns J 59 60 67  
 Calcott M A 212  
 Calhoun E L 682 689  
 Callaghan O H 265  
 Callaway J L 830 835 836  
 843 857 859 883  
 Callender G R 630  
 Calmette A L C 274  
 Camain R 872  
 Cameron H S 699 700 707  
 715 717 720  
 Cameron J 252  
 Cameron M P 432 437  
 Cameron Wood J 432  
 Camien M N 159 167  
 Camp L II 884  
 Campbell C C 843 848 854  
 877 880 881  
 Campbell D H 253 256 296  
 Campbell J C 43 70  
 Campbell J J R 54 67  
 Campbell E E 575 604  
 Campbell T A 821 872  
 Canetto G 174 178 500 507  
 524  
 Cann J R 204 209 214  
 Cannefax G R 583 604  
 Canter A 324  
 Cantoni G L 371 386  
 Cantrell J II 835 874  
 Caraway C T 945  
 Cardella M A 572  
 Carey W F 84 212  
 Carui A 844 878  
 Carkart S 696 697  
 Carlin C II 665 691  
 Carlisle H N 695 697 848  
 880  
 Carlson A S 371 386 387  
 Carlson H J 797 798 805

- Delpy L P 540 542  
 Delwiche M A 691  
 de Mello L 607  
 Demerec M 84  
 De Monbreun W A 645 846 879  
 deMoore A 579 603  
 Demopoulos R 288 289  
 Dennard D A 645  
 Dennis E G 299  
 Dennis E W 627  
 Deany F W Jr 811 817 870 822  
 Denny Brown D 320 323  
 de Noëble 670  
 Denton J F 847 877  
 Denys Joseph 11  
 de Paula A 845 879  
 de Reuck A V S 437  
 Derom R 603  
 de St Groth S F 204 209  
 de St Pjalle M 433  
 De Shazo T 603  
 Destombes P 827 829 872 873  
 De Torregrosa M V 734 740  
 Deutsch H F 183 185 189 709  
 Devignat R 666 690  
 Devlin H B 434 543  
 deWeck A 269 285 303  
 d'Harcourt R 777 783  
 d'Herelle F 9 639  
 Di Caprio J M 389  
 Dick M F 386  
 Dick G H 386  
 Dick G W A 784  
 Dickens F 161 167  
 Didakow N C 283  
 Diebel R H 435  
 Diegues N 781 783  
 Dienes L 275 287 383 505 525 765 766 768 771 773 786 788 791 795 797 798 801 806 808  
 Diesendruck J A 607  
 Difs H 509 513  
 DiMenna M 867 884  
 Dineen M A P 436 840 876  
 Dingle J H 437 445 732 740 810 811 814 871 873  
 Dische Z 398  
 Dittich H 222 234  
 Dixon F J 233 256 258 259 270 272 297 299 940  
 Dixon S 243  
 Djavahiszvili H 885  
 Djordjevic B 131 141  
 Doell C 1 18  
 Dochez A R 357 386 391 394 406 409  
 Doebbler T K 302  
 Doery H M 418 433 436  
 Doguer M 806  
 Doherty R L 811 823  
 Dolan M M 864 884  
 Dole V P 361 374 386 388  
 Dolin M I 118  
 Doll J P 718  
 Dollé W 681  
 Dolman C E 567 568 768  
 Domagk G 14 120 142  
 Domaradsky I V 666 691  
 Domm H M 600 605  
 Donald H H 816 823  
 Donaldson F 747 750  
 Donatien 787 800 801  
 Donovan J E 669 691  
 Dopfer C 441  
 Dorfman A 368 388  
 Dorney E H 355  
 Dornfest H S 234  
 Doty P 85  
 Doucette J 852 881  
 Doudoroff M 53 57 58 68 119  
 Douglas H C 327  
 Douglas H G 805  
 Douglas J R 670  
 Douglas S R 205 214  
 Doull J A 911  
 Dourmashkin R H 201 202 209  
 Dowdle E 324  
 Downie A W 945  
 Downs C M 687 684 686 695 696  
 Dragsdelt C A 247  
 Drake C H 839 875  
 Drew R M 475 488  
 Drouhet E 833 873  
 Druett H A 534 535 542 671 691  
 Drummond D G 54 67  
 Drummond M C 419 433  
 Dublin D T 132 142  
 Dublin L I 409  
 Du Bois E F 324  
 Dubos J 18 21 23 30 35 513 525  
 Dubos R J 1 2 4 15 18 20 21 23 29 30 34 35 120 142 172 174 177 179 229 234 305 306 337 393 399 403 409 424 425 438 492 493 495 499 507 509 513 520 575 529 638 645 733 734 740 939 945  
 Dubovsky B J 564 570  
 Dubrovskaya I I 704 706 717  
 Du Buy H G 647  
 Dudley S F 911  
 Duff J T 566 568  
 Duffy C E 764 768  
 Duguid J H 43-45 68 122 142  
 Dumoff M 764 768  
 Dungworth D L 872  
 Dunkelberg W E 331 350  
 Dunn M S 159 160 167 608  
 Dunst M 350  
 Dunsworth W P 458 466  
 Dupouy G 37 68  
 Duque O 862 883  
 Durham H E 620  
 Durie E B 866 884  
 Durrance J R 883  
 Durrieu L 37 68  
 Duthie E S 419 434 435  
 du Toit C J 856 882  
 Dutta M K 655 657  
 Dvorak H F 292  
 Dworkin M 40 53 71  
 Dworski M 529  
 Dwyer R C 941 947  
 Dye W E 526  
 Dyson J E Jr 281 842 877  
 Eagle Harry 351 577 579 606 608  
 Easton J M 200 209  
 Eaton M D 488 814 816 818 823  
 Ebel J P 470 488  
 Ebeling K 466  
 Ebert R H 219 272 234  
 Ebert R V 324  
 Eberth K J 620  
 Eccles J C 568  
 Eddie B 709 720  
 Edelman G M 186 187 189 209 210  
 Editorial 848 879  
 Edsall G 627 645 646 795 805 913 932 945 946  
 Edward D G 473 483 488 766 768 786 791 794 797 799 801 805 806 808  
 Edwards G A 53 68 600 605 789 806  
 Edwards L 281  
 Edwards L B 280 517 518 525  
 Edwards M Q 281 517 525 848 879  
 Edwards P R 614 615 637 645 648  
 Egdahl R H 324  
 Egerton J R 567 568  
 Eggerth A H 770 773  
 Egner W 325 418 439  
 Ehrenberg C G 2 III  
 von Ehrenstein G 131 143 145  
 Ehrenworth L 157 167  
 Ehrlich W E 745 750  
 Ehrlich Paul 11 13 14 18 88 120 142 160 167 181 182 210 215 486 488  
 Eichenberger E 67  
 Eichenwald H F 438 926 945 946  
 Eickenberg C F 807

- 836 840 843 844 857 859  
861 872 873 877 878 880  
881 883  
Condie R M 283 290 294  
299  
Conen P E 425 426 434  
Conklin D A 568  
Conn H J 64 65  
Connell J T 261 265 266 299  
Connell R 760  
Connolly J M 291 297  
Conover M J 70  
Conti C H 434  
Conti S F 53 67  
Conti Diaz I A 855 882  
Converse J L 851 852 880  
Converse J M 289 300  
Convit J 40 69  
Cook Capt James 24  
Cook M A 822 823  
Cook R 680 694  
Cooke J V 940 945  
Cooke R A 264 266  
Cooke R E 729 740  
Coombs A M 209  
Coombs R R A 207 209 287  
Coons A H 131 141 271 291  
297 583 604 938 945  
Cooper G N 745 750  
Cooper K E 618  
Cooperative Study Group 959  
Copoloff M H 461  
Coray S 842 877 879  
Cordier P 558 570  
Cordy D R 801 809  
Corey M 823  
Cornell L L 695  
Cornejo Ubulius J R 780 783  
Corpe R F 497 525  
Corradetti A 783  
Corrigan F V 648  
Cory J C 876  
Costello M J 861 883  
Costerton J W F 55 67  
Cota Robles E H 46 68  
Couch R H 815 819 822  
Council on Drugs 131 141  
Courcon J 351  
Courdunier J 692  
Courtier R D 424 433  
Cowan D M 289 298  
Cowan K M 200 204 209  
Cowan S T 413 415 425 427  
431 640 645  
Cox C H 597 599 604  
Cox E C 131 141 142  
Coy N H 807  
Cozad G C 848 879  
Crabb W E 424 438  
Craig H R 739  
Craige J 622 645  
Crane F L 203 208  
Crawley J F 802 805 806  
Creach O 49 65  
Creadick R N 350 876  
Creaser E H 134 141  
Creitz J 858 882  
Crevasse L 856 881  
Crick F H C 59 71 75 86  
Crocker T T 665  
Cromartie W J 389 535 542  
Cronkhite E E 233  
Crookshank F G 911  
Crouch W L 605  
Crowley N 373 375 386  
Cruckshank J C 569 699  
717 744 750 911  
Cruckshank R 64 66  
Crumpton M J 691  
Crutchfield E D 856 857 882  
Csonka G 583 604  
Cuadra C M 781 783  
Cuckow F W 793 807  
Culbertson J T 255  
Culbertson W 568  
Cumberland M C 578 579  
604  
Cummings M M 276 291  
Cummings V 340 350  
Cummins C S 361 386  
Cummins S C 487  
Cunningham J 593 604  
Cunningham L 420 433  
Curnen E C 811 822  
Curtis A C 462 465 843 877  
882  
Curtis D R 568  
Curtis G H 274  
Cutler E C 832 875  
Cutler J C 465 466 607  
Cvijetanic B B 630 645  
Czekalowski J W 597 604  
Dabney G E 276  
Dabrowski T 608  
Dack G M 344 350 420 433  
438 564 568 770 773  
Daems W T 233 234  
Da Fonseca O 884  
Dagley S 67  
Dahle E 387  
Dahlstrom G 509 525  
Dajani A S 816 822  
da Lacaz C 878  
Dale A C 354  
Dale H H 241 245 246 248  
249  
D'Alessandro G 577 583 604  
Dalldorf Gilbert 873  
Dalmasso A P 200 209  
Dalyrymple Champneys W 710  
717  
Dam H 351  
Dammin G J 180  
Danauskas J X 646  
Danbolt N 578 604  
Daniel T M 145  
Daniels J J 680 681 693  
Daniels W B 597 604  
Danielson 440  
D'Antona D 562 568  
Dardano L 577 583 604  
Darling H T 846 879  
Darlow H M 538 542  
Da Rocha Lima H 846 879  
Dascomb H H 835 875  
Dassonville C 863 885  
Datta N 161 167 556 569  
Dausset J 272  
Davaine C J 6 530  
David J K 277 286 298  
Davidson D 264  
Davidson F M 419 433  
Davidson L S P 603 604  
Davies D A L 667 678 691  
693  
Davies J H 133 134 141  
Davis B D 119 132 141 142  
183 209 492 525  
Davis D E 599 606  
Davis D H S 675 690  
Davis D J 725 740 741  
Davis G E 593 594 605  
Davis G H G 330 350 353  
Davis J H 564 568  
Davis J H 798 805  
Davis J S 203 209  
Dawson C O 862 863 866  
868 884  
Dawson M H 396 409  
Dav E 742 746 749 751  
De S N 657  
DeAcetis W 524  
Deacon W E 457 465 466  
582 583 605  
de Almerida F 844 878  
Dean H R 13 247  
de Area Leao A E 878 884  
DeArmon I A Jr 695  
DeBaillau G 742  
de Besche A 261  
de Beurmann L 853 855 881  
DeBre R 512 525  
de Brito T 878  
DeBruyn J H 583 605  
DeCapito T 646  
de Duve C 272 234  
DeEds F 264 300  
Defaye J 524  
Defayolle M 327 350  
de Feo C P 862 883  
de Gier J 556 568  
de Haas G H 568  
Deibel H H 327 350  
de la Haba G L 134 145  
Delahant A B 529  
DeLalla L S 879  
DeLamater E D 59 64 68  
576 577 605  
DeLaunay A 303  
de Laverne E 689  
Delbruck M 73

- Delpy L P 540 542  
 Delwiche E A 691  
 de Mello L 607  
 Demerec M 84  
 De Monbreun W A 645 846  
 879  
 deMoore A 579 603  
 Demopoulos R 288 289  
 Dennard D A 645  
 Dennis E G 299  
 Dennis E W 627  
 Denny F W Jr 811 817 870  
 872  
 Denny Brown D 370 323  
 de Noeble 620  
 Denton I F 84 877  
 Denys Joseph 11  
 de Paula A 845 879  
 de Reuck A V 437  
 Derom R 603  
 de St Groth S F 204 209  
 de St Palle M 433  
 De Shazo T 603  
 Destombes P 827 829 872  
 873  
 De Torregrosa M V 734 740  
 Deutsch H F 183 185 189  
 209  
 Devignat R 666 690  
 Devlin II B 434 543  
 deWeck A 269 285 303  
 d'Harcourt R 777 783  
 d'Herelle F 9 639  
 Di Caprio J M 389  
 Dick G F 386  
 Dick G H 386  
 Dick G W A 784  
 Dickens F 161 167  
 Didakow N C 283  
 Diebel R H 435  
 Dieguez N 781 783  
 Dienes L 275 287 389 505  
 525 765 766 768 771 773  
 786 788 791 795 797 798  
 801 806 808  
 Dievendruck J A 607  
 Difs H 509 525  
 DiMenna M 867 884  
 Dineen P A P 436 840 876  
 Dingle J H 437 445 732 740  
 810 811 814 821 823  
 Dische Z 398  
 Dittrich II 222 734  
 Dixon F J 233 256 258 270  
 270-272 297 799 940  
 Dixon II 243  
 Djavahiszvili H 885  
 Djondjevic B 131 141  
 Dobell C J 18  
 Dochez A R 347 386 391  
 394 406 409  
 Doebbler T K 302  
 Doery H M 418 433 436  
 Doguer M 806  
 Doherty R L 811 823  
 Dolan M M 864 884  
 Dole V P 361 374 386 388  
 Dolin M I 118  
 Doll J P 718  
 Dolle W 681  
 Dolman C II 567 568 768  
 Domagk G 14 120 142  
 Domaradsky I V 666 691  
 Domm B M 600 605  
 Donald H II 816 823  
 Donaldson P 747 750  
 Donatien 787 800 801  
 Donovan J E 669 691  
 Dopier C 441  
 Dorfman A 368 388  
 Dorney E R 355  
 Dornfest II S 234  
 Doty P 85  
 Doucette J 852 881  
 Doudoroff M 53 57 58 68  
 119  
 Douglas H C 327  
 Douglas H G 805  
 Douglas J R 670  
 Douglas S R 205 214  
 Doull J A 911  
 Dourmashkin H R 201 202  
 209  
 Dowdle H 324  
 Downie A W 945  
 Downs C M 682 684 686 695  
 696  
 Dragstedt C A 247  
 Drake C II 839 875  
 Drew R M 475 488  
 Drouhet E 833 873  
 Druett H A 534 535 547  
 671 691  
 Drummond D G 54 67  
 Drummond M C 419 433  
 Dublin D T 13 142  
 Dublin L I 409  
 Du Bois E F 324  
 Dubos J II 27 23 30 35  
 513 525  
 Dubos E J I 2 4 15 18 20  
 22 23 29 30 34 35 120 147  
 172 174-177 179 2 9 234  
 305 306 337 393 399 403  
 409 424 425 438 492 493  
 495 499 507 509 513 520  
 525 529 638 645 733 734  
 740 939 945  
 Dubovsky B J 564 570  
 Dubrovskaya I I 704 706 717  
 Du Buy H C 647  
 Dudley S F 911  
 Duff J T 566 568  
 Duffy C E 764 768  
 Dugard I F 43 45 68 122  
 142  
 Dumoff M 764 768  
 Dungworth II L 872  
 Dunkelberg W E 331 350  
 Dunn M S 159 160 167 608  
 Dunst M 350  
 Dunsworth W P 458 466  
 Dupouy G 37 68  
 Duque O 862 883  
 Durham H E 620  
 Dune E B 866 884  
 Durrance J H 883  
 Durrieu L 37 68  
 Duthie E S 419 434 435  
 du Toit C J 856 882  
 Dutta N K 655 657  
 Dvorak H F 292  
 Dworkin M 40 53 71  
 Dworski M 529  
 Dwyer R C 941 947  
 Dye W E 526  
 Dyson J E Jr 281 842 877  
 Eagle Harry 351 577 579  
 606 608  
 Easton J M 200 209  
 Eaton M D 488 814 816 818  
 823  
 Ebel J P 470 488  
 Ebeling K 466  
 Ebert R H 219 227 234  
 Ebert R V 324  
 Eberth K J 620  
 Eccles J C 568  
 Eddie B 709 720  
 Edelman G M 186 187 189  
 209 210  
 Editorial 848 879  
 Edsall G 627 645 646 795  
 805 913 932 945 946  
 Edward D G 473 483 488  
 766 768 786 791 794 797  
 799 801 805 806 808  
 Edwards G A 53 68 600 605  
 789 806  
 Edwards L 281  
 Edwards L B 280 517 518  
 525  
 Edwards II Q 281 517 525  
 848 879  
 Edwards II R 614 615 637  
 645 648  
 Egdahl R H 324  
 Egerton J R 567 568  
 Eggerth A H 770 773  
 Egner W 325 418 439  
 Ehrenberg C G II  
 von Ehrenstein G 131 143 145  
 Ehrenworth L 157 167  
 Ehrlich W L 745 750  
 Ehrlich Paul 11 13 14 18 28  
 120 142 160 167 181 182  
 210 215 486 488  
 Eichenberger E 67  
 Eichenwald H F 438 926 945  
 946  
 Eickenberg C F 807



- Eschhoff T C 422 430 436  
 Engelsbach H T 683 686 695  
 696  
 Eisele C W 769  
 Eisen H N 264 269 285 287  
 292 298 299 301  
 Eisenstark A 542 794 806  
 Eiserling F A 47  
 Fisler M 234  
 Eklund H W 167 569  
 Ekstedt R D 428 434  
 Ekwurzel G M 408 409  
 Elberg N 278 298 498 508  
 525 526 698 702 703 705  
 708 713 721  
 Eldering G 744 748 751  
 Elek S D 416 418 425 426  
 441 444 438 473 488  
 Elford W J 803 807  
 Elliot D F 248  
 Elliott D 156 167 362 374  
 386 387 389 390  
 Elliott W H 138 142  
 Ellis C 739  
 Ellis E C 389  
 Ellner P D 856 881  
 Ellwood D C 435  
 Elmendorf D Jr 873  
 Elo J 45 53 68  
 El Sayed M A 450  
 Elsbach P 227 234  
 Elwell L 761  
 Emelyanova O S 689 696  
 Emmons C W 833 848 856  
 873 875 879 882  
 Emson H E 662 689  
 Enders J F 282 399 403 410  
 411 489 497 525  
 Endo H 138 142  
 Engel R W 948  
 Engel S G 353 354  
 Engfeldt V 348 350  
 Engly F B Jr 638 645  
 Enright J B 926 946  
 Enterobacteriaceae Sub Commit-  
 tee of the Nomenclature Com-  
 mittee of the Society of the  
 International Association of  
 Bacteriologists 639 640 645  
 Entessar F 719  
 Eppinger H 827  
 Epps H 558 568  
 Epstein W L 270 285  
 Erdman R L 692  
 Erdos E G 249 298  
 Ericson C 663 690  
 Erikson E E 882  
 Erlander S R 43 68  
 Erlanson A L 434  
 Errebo Knudsen E O 604  
 Escherich Theodore 339 611  
 614  
 Eskey C R 665 667  
 Esquivel E 845 878  
 Eurch F W 535 542  
 Evans A C 683 699 705 718  
 Evans D G 559 569 744 749  
 750 937  
 Evans E E 281 813 834 842  
 873 874 877  
 Evans J B 435 439  
 Evans L B 599 605  
 Evans R S 272  
 Eveland W C 744 750 834  
 874  
 Everett C R 875  
 Everg S 719  
 Ewing W H 615 637 645  
 Ettrom S F 805  
 Ezekiel D H 60 68  
 Faber Knud 11  
 Fahey J L 185 188 210 802  
 804 806  
 Fairchild J P 435  
 Falaschi A 138 142  
 Falcone R 880  
 Falkow S 740  
 Farah F S 264 298  
 Farber S 249  
 Farmer A D Jr 466  
 Farnham A H 235 823  
 Farr R S 324  
 Farrar R H 618 647  
 Farrar W H 875  
 Farrell L 638 645  
 Farrell V R 520 525  
 Faunce W K 715 716 718  
 719  
 Fauve R 27 35  
 Fava Netto C 846 857 878  
 882  
 Favorite G O 625 629 646  
 Favour C B 277 292 296  
 821 823  
 Fecsik A 938 945  
 Feder N 874  
 Fedorov V N 669 691  
 Feeley J C 657  
 Feemster R F 689  
 Fehleisen F 356 387  
 Feigen G A 245 298  
 Feinberg J G 245  
 Feinberg H J 687 697  
 Feinberg S M 287 295  
 Feingold D S 141  
 Felcety F H Jr 163 179 231  
 236 433 540 542  
 Feldman H A 450 947  
 Feldman J D 199 212 258  
 259 271 285 289 298 301  
 569  
 Feldman W H 495 496 525  
 Felix A 622 645 646  
 Feller A E 822  
 Fellman J H 695  
 Fellner H 276 285 298  
 Felton H 751  
 Felton L D 399 408-410 630  
 Felts W R 805  
 Fenn W O 224 234  
 Fennner F 30 35 509 525  
 933 934  
 Fenzyuk B K 665 676 691  
 Ferebee S H 512 525 880  
 943 946  
 Ferguson H 638 645  
 Ferguson J H 444 450  
 Ferguson K A 288  
 Ferguson R G 24 30 35 508  
 513 525  
 Ferguson W W 614 646  
 Fernandes M V 290 300  
 Fernando N V P 301  
 Fernbach H 740  
 Fernelius A L 695  
 Ferns A A 641 646  
 Ferns H W 578 605  
 Ferry 749  
 Fetter B F 855 882  
 Feusier M L 699 718  
 Few A V 53 68  
 Field F W 455 467  
 Fiese M J 281  
 Fife M A 645  
 Figley K D 264  
 Fildes P 414 434 561 562  
 569 725 731 740 929 946  
 Fincham R W 709 718  
 Findlay G M 588 596 603  
 605 787 800 803 804 806  
 911  
 Findlay H T 720  
 Fine J 324  
 Finegold S M 873  
 Finger 452  
 Finkel G 874  
 Finkelstein M S 933 948  
 Finkelstein R A 657  
 Finland M 213 429 412 434  
 435 459 465 466 611 646  
 808 810 811 813 822 823  
 959  
 Finstad J 722  
 Fireman P 184 210 267 298  
 Firschein I L 299  
 Fischel E E 255  
 Fischer A E 750  
 Fischer D A 883  
 Fischer Emul 182 927 946  
 Fischer H 202 210  
 Fischer P 242  
 Fiset M L 287  
 Fisher A M 341 350 426  
 434  
 Fischer J P 261 266 275  
 Fisher M W 431 434  
 Fisher A 778 782 783  
 Fisher S 424 425 427 428  
 434  
 Fishman M 232 234 289 298  
 Fisk R T 416 434

- Fitzgeorge R B 179 706 722  
 Fitzgerald D M 142  
 Fitzgerald E M 580 606  
 Fitzgerald P H 277  
 Fitzgerald P L 741  
 Fitzgerald E J 132 147 348  
 350 352  
 Fitzgerald W A 788 801 806  
 Fitz James M C 60 62 68 70  
 71  
 Fitzpatrick M J 835 874  
 Flahuff M W 508 525 578  
 Flaks J G 132 133 141 142  
 Fleischer R A 210  
 Fleischer S 203 210  
 Fleischman J B 187 189 190  
 210  
 Fleischman R 577 579 605  
 607  
 Fleming Alexander 15 120  
 147 198 229 234 413 434  
 949  
 Fleming D O 236  
 Fleming W L 576 592 609  
 Flewter S 441 443 447 450  
 635  
 Flick J A 290 301 722  
 Florey H W 15 120 142 173  
 179 219 272 223 234 235  
 Florio L 276  
 Florsdorf M W 743 744 748  
 751  
 Floyd T M 646  
 Flyger V 605  
 Flynn R J 331 350  
 Flynt J W 717  
 Fodor J 11  
 Foerster H R 233 856 882  
 Foerster O 14  
 Fogh J 53 68 789 806  
 Foldes J 533 538 542  
 Foley G E 774 833 874 910  
 Folkes J P 179 136 142  
 Follis R H Jr 274  
 Fong J 278 498 508 525  
 526 714 718  
 Fonken G J 54  
 Fonseca Filho O 844 878  
 Ford C E 89 298  
 Forman N B 180 638 646 657  
 945  
 Forsyth M 872  
 Forsyth W G C 57 68  
 Fort M 835 873  
 Fortune C 641 646  
 Forziati A F 348 351  
 Foshay L 281 687 685 687  
 688 695  
 Foster A Z 450  
 Foster J F 43 68  
 Foster J W 706 716 718  
 Foster L 693  
 Foster W M 45 476 434  
 Fothergill L D 489  
 Fothergill L S 737 734 740  
 741  
 Foubert E L 327  
 Fousek M D 736 740  
 Fowler R C 805  
 Fox E N 691  
 Fox H H 822 823  
 Fox M S 84  
 Fox A 711 718  
 Fracastoro Girolamo 6  
 Frain Bell W 885  
 Francis E 682 683 685 689  
 696  
 Francis J 76 35 491 526  
 Francis Thomas Jr 279 406  
 408 410 734 740  
 Franek F 711 718  
 Frank A 450  
 Frank E D 324  
 Frank H 49 51 69 71  
 Frank J F 760  
 Frank P F 179 947  
 Frankel 391  
 Franklin E C 185 187 197  
 210 212 214 297 300  
 Franklin R 410  
 Frantz I D Jr 441  
 Fraser A G L 593 604  
 Fraser D T 486 488 645  
 Fraus H 544  
 Frazier C R 579 605  
 Fredericq P 82 84  
 Freedman H H 301 306  
 Freedman L M 323  
 Freedman S O 301 529  
 Freeman B A 201 210  
 Freeman E M 386 387  
 Freeman E M 465 533 542  
 587 583 605  
 Freeman G G 744 750  
 Freeman G L 300  
 Freeman V J M 158 167  
 470 474 488  
 Freer J H 353  
 Freese J W 829 831 872  
 Frei W 274 720  
 Freimer E M 50 54 68 367  
 368 387  
 French J E 439  
 Freter M 338 351 657 658  
 Freund J 252 255 272 282  
 283 793 298 505 526 58  
 934 936 946  
 Freundt M A 765 768 786  
 790 791 793 795 798 801  
 803 805  
 Frey D 866 884  
 Frey J R 287  
 Friedberger E 213 253 730  
 Friedemann T E 395 410  
 Friedemann U 567 569 571  
 Friedewald W F 688 695  
 Friedlander Max 616  
 Friedman H 946  
 Friedman L 839 843 852  
 876 877 880 884  
 Friedman H M 286 298  
 Frewer F 647  
 Frisch 617  
 Frobisher M Jr 65 369 387  
 471 483 488  
 Froman M 496 526 59 873  
 Fromer S 460 465  
 Fromme I 693  
 Frommeyer W M Jr 344 345  
 354  
 Frost W H 911  
 Frothingham L 832 874  
 Fruton J S 389  
 Fry 360  
 Frye W W 646  
 Fudenberg H H 185 210 300  
 Fuentes C A 860 867 883  
 884  
 Fuhrman F A 654 657  
 Fuhrman G J 654 657  
 Fujikawa J 233  
 Fukazawa Y 876  
 Fukui G M 669 691 69  
 694  
 Fukushi K 306  
 Fukushima D K 374  
 Fukushima R 861 883  
 Fuller A T 363 387  
 Fuller R 179  
 Fuller Thomas 6  
 Fuller W 142  
 Furcolow M L 518 526 848  
 850 879 880  
 Furman S 350  
 Furth J J 85 119 498 56  
 Fust B 712 718  
 Fuzi M 753 758 760  
 Fyfe A 684 695  
 Gablitz J 477 488  
 Gabrielsen A E 210  
 Gadebusch H H 834 874  
 Gaebler O H 138 141  
 Gaertner August 670 625  
 Gaffky G T A 670  
 Gagnon M H 773  
 Gaines S 645 646 936 946  
 Galdston Iago 911  
 Gale D 347 351  
 Gale E M 118 122 136 139  
 141 142 927 946  
 Galen 451  
 Galiana J 855 887  
 Gallagher J M 810 814 823  
 Gallagher T F 324  
 Gallop R C 544  
 Gallut J 683 695  
 Gally J A 186 209  
 Gallon M M 424 433 605  
 Gambles M M 593 604  
 Gammel J A 856 882  
 Gangadharam P R J 498 56

- Gangarosa E J 657  
 Gapochko K G 541 690  
 Garbarno V E 350  
 Garcia C 873  
 Gardner A D 651 742 743 745  
 Gardner E L 829 872  
 Gardner G M 496 526  
 Garen A 81 85  
 Gargani G 704 716 718  
 Garin N S 541 690  
 Garner M L 154 168 372 390  
 Garre C 413 434  
 Garriga N 711 718  
 Garrison F H 16 911  
 Garrod L P 345 351 772 774 959  
 Garrow F G 260  
 Garson W 451 455 460 465 467 586 608  
 Gartner A 17  
 Gary N D 597 606 696  
 Gaspar A J 682 695  
 Gastelumendi R 781 783  
 Gastaburu J C 777 784  
 Gates F L 772 774  
 Gatewood W II 260  
 Gaud M 594 605  
 Gaud R L 597 600 603 605  
 Gault E S 575  
 Gay F P 260 628  
 Gebhardt L P 839 875  
 Gefen N E 541 690  
 Geiger J W 638 645  
 Geiman Q M 779 783  
 Geister R S 342 351  
 Geleuck H 287  
 Gell P G H 244 275 286 287 290 296 298 305 306  
 Geller D M 119  
 Gellhorn A 213  
 Gelman A C 684 688 695  
 Gelman N S 54 65 68  
 Gelperin A 577 605  
 Gengou Octave IZ 581 604 742 743 750  
 Gentles J C 863 866 868 871 884  
 George R L 555 569 827 828 838 858 863 865 868 869 872 875 877 882 884 885  
 Geraci J E 882  
 Gerard R W 226 233  
 Gerhardt P 61 67 702 718  
 Gerlach W 254 255  
 Gerlings Petersen II T 206 210  
 Germuth F G Jr 175 179 230 234 244 254 257 258 261 296 298 299  
 Gershenfeld L 928 946  
 Gessard 619  
 Gest H 127 144  
 Gettner M E 55 67  
 Getty R E 878  
 Gezon II M 647  
 Ghoda A 641 645  
 Ghon Anton 452 504 526  
 Ghose M L 657  
 Ghuysen J M 198 213  
 Gibbons R J 346 351 354  
 Gieddon A 208 210  
 Giesbrecht P 54 59 68  
 Gifford 851  
 Gilbert R P 315 324  
 Gilbert W 135 141 142  
 Gilby A II 53 68  
 Gilchrist T C 759 760 840 850 877 881  
 Gilder H 740  
 Giles C 612 614 646  
 Giles J P 946  
 Gill C A 911  
 Gillespie L J 391 409  
 Gillissen G 533 542  
 Gillman S M 311 324  
 Gillman W 386 409  
 Gilman H L 721  
 Gilmer W S 878  
 Gino R M 647  
 Ginsberg D 870 885  
 Ginsberg H S 204 210  
 Ginsburg I 203 210 169 387  
 Ginther O J 884  
 Girard G 665 666 668 672 678 680 683 690 691 694 695  
 Girard K F 751 754 756 760 761  
 Girling J A 439  
 Gulin III 208 210 213  
 Gittelsohn A M 646  
 Gjestland T 578 605  
 Gladstone G II 154 167 414 418 419 426 434 531 532 537 538 542  
 Glaser R J 175 179  
 Glassman H N 540 542 566 569 571 702 718  
 Glauert A M 40 43 47 48 54 55 57 64 65 68 69  
 Glavind J 351  
 Gledhill A W 758 760 784  
 Gleeson White M H 567 569  
 Gleiser C A 603 605  
 Glenchor II 705 706 711 718 723  
 Glencross E J G 426 434  
 Glenny A T 160 167 418 434 568 937  
 Gluckman I 348 351  
 Gluckman E B 325  
 Glong A 261  
 Gluck L 421 434  
 Glukena A 704 717  
 Glynn J H 636  
 Gochenour R B 568  
 Gochenour W S Jr 597 605  
 Godlee R J 7 18  
 Godson G N 56 68  
 Goebel W F 339 351 352 392 397-400 409 411 637 639 646 648 732  
 Goeters W 441 450  
 Gohar M A 690  
 Gold Harry 531 539 542  
 Gold R S 348 355  
 Goldberg B 200 209 210  
 Goldberg H III 597 603  
 Goldberg, I H 136 142  
 Golden A 823  
 Goldenberg M I 693  
 Goldfarb K A 265  
 Goldinger J M 769  
 Goldman L 838 875  
 Goldstein E 834 874  
 Goldstein H 466  
 Goley A F 693  
 Gomes J M 859 881  
 Gonçalves A P 846 878  
 Gonococcus—Procedures for Isolation and Identification U S Dept of Health Education and Welfare 458 465  
 Gonzaga A J 436  
 González Herrejón S 590 605  
 Gonzalez Ochoa A 827 829 830 845 854 855 872 878 882  
 Good G E 605  
 Good P G 736 740  
 Good R A 208 210 232 236 281 285 290 291 294 298 299  
 Goodburn G M 811 816 817 823  
 Goode E R Jr 715 718  
 Goeder H 367 387  
 Goodgal S H 737 738 740  
 Goodkind R 766 768  
 Goodman H C 210 267 298  
 Goodner Kenneth 410 649 657 658 692  
 Goodpasture E W 645  
 Goodwin T W 66  
 Gordon A S 219 234  
 Gordon C N 140 144  
 Gordon F II 816 823  
 Gordon H A 338 351 354 882  
 Gordon J E 35 179 266 547 569 570 890 911 939 948  
 Gordon M 687 695  
 Gordon M A 836 839 842 848 860 873 875 877 879 883  
 Gordon M H 442 450  
 Gordon R E 490 496 526 827 829 872  
 Gorelick A N 717 721  
 Gorelick M A 541

- Gorer P A 288 289  
 Gorham M E 883  
 Gorn L 134 141 14  
 Gorman G W 599 605  
 Gorrie J 272 299  
 Gorzynski E A 417 434 647  
 761  
 Goshu K 425 434 435  
 Gosting L J 209  
 Gottschlich E C 399 410  
 Gottfried C 568  
 Gotthardson A 791 796 806  
 807  
 Gottlieb S 938 946  
 Gouchenour W S Jr 605  
 Gougerot E 855 881  
 Gover M 448  
 Gowans J L 286 289 290  
 298  
 Gowland G 290 297  
 Goyon M 680  
 Grabar P 183 185 209 210  
 212 214 244 338 351 390  
 Graber C D 429 435  
 Grace J B 46 71  
 Grainger R M 352  
 Gram Hans 452  
 Granados H 349 351  
 Granger O A 288 299  
 Grasset E 477 488  
 Grau Triana J 589 608  
 Graves L M 458 465  
 Gray C T 138 141 524 546  
 Gray E D 390  
 Gray J 145  
 Gray M L 753 755 757 760  
 762  
 Gray S 436  
 Grayston J T 849 879  
 Green D E 700 203 210  
 Green H 200 709 210  
 Green M J 911  
 Green T W 169 544 686 695  
 Green W 722  
 Greenawalt J W 54 71  
 Greenbaum L M 249  
 Greenbaum S S 870 884  
 Greene C H 848 879  
 Greene L F 709 718  
 Greene M III 608  
 Greenman V 693  
 Greenwood Major III 911  
 Gregoire C 249  
 Gregory J E 458  
 Greisman S E 305 306 310  
 374 627 629 646  
 Grennan H A 597 604  
 Gresham H A 839 875  
 Gresland E 280 300  
 Gretler A C 414 435  
 Greg A II 800 801 806  
 Grier G S III 821  
 Griffin A M 614  
 Griffith F 74 84 357 387  
 396 410 740  
 Griffiths J D 439  
 Grigorakis 866  
 Grimes R D 605  
 Grunel F II 630  
 Grisham J W 223 236  
 Groman N B 474 488  
 Gros F 130 142  
 Grossberg D B 168 570  
 Grossberg S 945 947  
 Grossman M F 441 435 740  
 Grossmann, H 609  
 Grossowicz, M 569  
 Groto L 722  
 Grow M H 265  
 Grubb R 186 210  
 Gruber M 12  
 Gruby D 86 866 884  
 Gruhl H L 262  
 Gudoshnik A N 707 718  
 Guerra 837  
 Guggenheim K 593 605  
 Guha D K 657  
 Guha Roy U K 657  
 Gwart 866  
 Guilbeau, J A 796 808  
 Guillaume M 558 569  
 Gwinto R S 281 302  
 Gulasekharan J 433 436  
 Gulielmus de Saliceto 451  
 Gunnison J B 680  
 Gunsalus I C 61 65 67 104  
 107 115 118 119 124 144  
 Gupta O P 347 351  
 Guss M L 683 695 697  
 Gustafson G 338 348 349 351  
 Gustafsson B E 183 210 351  
 Gutekunst R R 808  
 Guthe T 455 465 589 605  
 Gutverg M 341 351  
 Guzman C 348 351  
 Gyenes L 267  
 Gyorgy P 329 351  
 Haab O P 233  
 Haanes M 68 577 605  
 Haas V H 665 667  
 Haass J 69  
 Habbu M K 655 657  
 Habel K 638 645  
 Haberfeld W 844 878  
 Haberman S 341 351 355  
 Hackett C J 589 605  
 Hackney J F 467  
 Haefel M 337 351  
 Haffkine 665 671  
 Hagan W A 829 874  
 Hagedorn A 69  
 Hahn E 736 739 740  
 Hahn, F E 175 141 142 145  
 Hahn R D 586 605  
 Haight T H 535 542  
 Haines A L 195 210  
 Halberg F 712 718  
 Halbert S P 154 167 371  
 387 646  
 Hale C M 67  
 Hale J H 154 168 426 435  
 Halevy S 593 605  
 Hall C E 55 68  
 Hall C H Jr 324  
 Hall H E 276  
 Hall I C 558 569  
 Hall J W III 722  
 Hall W H 718 723  
 Hall W T K 700 722  
 Hallick F E 716  
 Halley C R L 579 604  
 Halliwell G 566 569  
 Halpern B N 224 234 247  
 245 273 297 302  
 Halvorson H 65  
 Ham D 691  
 Hamano S 639 646  
 Hamblen A D 910  
 Hamburger M 340 341 351  
 355 766 768  
 Hamburger M Jr 890 911  
 Hamburger V G 911  
 Hamilton L D 136 137 142  
 283 297  
 Hamilton M A 524  
 Hammarstrom E 639 646  
 Hammer K 256 299  
 Hammond C W 351  
 Hamppe E G 333 336 351  
 353 576 577 605 772 774  
 Hancock R L 142 142  
 Hand E A 884  
 Handel 391  
 Handler E S 234  
 Handler P 119  
 Hanesian S 417 435  
 Hanger F M Jr 278 279  
 Hankey III D 597 600 603  
 Hanks J H 524 526  
 von Hanseman D 834 874  
 Hansen G A 490  
 Hansmann G H 846 879  
 Hanson R P 540 542  
 Hapgood F C 487  
 Harber L C 862 883  
 Harber L E 270 285  
 Harboe M 186 210  
 Hardy A V 641 64 646 71  
 718  
 Hardy G C 719  
 Hardy P H Jr 333 351 575  
 577 580 582 583 606 607  
 Hare H 328 351 387 388 422  
 435  
 Haring C M 714 719  
 Harkness A H 455 465 798  
 806  
 Harley III 279  
 Haro A S 455 465  
 Harold D R 717

- Harper G J 418 433 439 535  
542
- Harrell E R 843 855 877  
882
- Harrington W J 272
- Harris A 209 461 465 585  
607
- Harris A H 410
- Harris II 222 234 361 386  
487
- Harris H W 858 882
- Harris J I 56 71
- Harris J P 300
- Harris J S 843 877 878
- Harris S 286 389
- Harris T N 286 387 389
- Harrison A P Jr 773 774
- Harrison P E 632 646
- Harrison R R 647
- Harris Smith P W 167 179  
543 544
- Harris Smith II 692
- Hartley P 245
- Hartman 577
- Hartman P E 84
- Hartman S C 140 142
- Harvey J C 341 350
- Harwin S M 283
- Hašek M 290 299
- Hasenclever H F 839 855  
873 875 882
- Hash J H 136 142
- Hashem N 299
- Haskell T H 417 434
- Haskins W T 66 168 306  
647
- Hassig A 680
- Hasson M W 256 299
- Hata S 120 142
- Haugen R K 834 874
- Haughton G 419 434 435
- Haukenes G 416 418 435 437
- Haupt I 182 202 210
- Hauser G H 945
- Havemeister G 687 695
- Havens W P Jr 939 946
- Hawking F 177 179
- Hawkins W W 571
- Hawley H B 944 946
- Hawn C V Z 261 299
- Hawnsiak, M M 301
- Hawthorne V M 521 526
- Haxthausen H 274 285 299
- Hayashi J A 50 70
- Hayes F M 698 719
- Hayes R L 349 351
- Hayes W 58 59 65 79 85  
86
- Hayflick L 788 805 811 817
- Hayward A C 57 68
- Hayward B J 265 296
- Hazard J B 766 768
- Hazen E L 342, 351
- Heckly H J 566 569 667 691  
705 719
- Hedges C K 436
- Hedrich A W 448 450
- Hedvall J 41 43 71
- Heffron R 400 405 408 410
- Hefner J II 350
- Heiberg II 651
- Heidelberger Michael 13 45  
65 164 167 183 211 212  
392 395 397 398 408 410  
497 526 734 739 740 934  
946
- Heilman D H 276
- Heilman F II 764 765 767  
768
- Heiner D C 848 879
- Hektoen L 853 882
- Hellman E 714 719
- Heilman L P 823
- Hellmann W 69
- Helmcke J G 348 351
- Helyer B J 272 299
- Hemerly T 435
- Hemmings W A 711 719
- Hemphill III C 593 608 646
- Hendee E D 476 478 480  
489 555 568
- Henderson 591
- Henderson D W 534 537 540  
542 625 646 691 712 719
- Henderson H J 57 69
- Hendricks S L 885
- Hendrie K II 910
- Henington V M 868 884
- Henle G 282 299
- Henle Jakob 6
- Henle W 299
- Henocq II 264
- Henrici A T 827 829 872 873
- Henry II S 719
- Henthorne J C 344 351
- Heppel L A 432
- Heppleston A G 527
- Heptinstall R II 261 299
- Herbert D 666
- Heremans J 267
- Heremans J F 184 185 187  
209 211 212
- Heremans M Th 209
- Herman N II 265
- Hermann G J 473 488
- Herodotus 634
- Heronimus E S 593 606
- Herrell W E 767 768 773
- Herr A 780 783
- Herrnott R M 737 738 740
- Herrmann W 325
- Hers J F 805 818 819 823
- Hershey A II 85
- Hertig M 778 782 783
- Hertman I 668 690
- Herxheimer II 270
- Herzberg M 715 719
- Hess E L 69 376 387
- Hess E V 284 299
- Hesselbrock W 682
- Hesseltine H C 352
- Heumann W 43 69
- Hewell II 526
- Hewitt L F 547 569
- Hewlett R T 535 542
- Heyman A 324
- Heymann W 256
- Hezebacks M M 437
- Hiatt C W 603
- Hiatt H H 119
- Hibnick H E 420 435
- Higgins A R 641 644 646
- Highman II 340 349 351
- Higuchi K 662 665 691 693
- Hijmans W 389 794 806 809
- Hildebrand G J 569
- Hildreth E A 324
- Hill 452
- Hill A B 911
- Hill B M 301
- Hill D W 839 875
- Hill E E 571
- Hill G A 877
- Hill J H 455 465
- Hill W 711 719
- Hillier J 774
- Hillman C C 688
- Hills G M 531 542 666
- Hilmore R J 719
- Hinchliffe V 687 695
- Hinde I T 254 275 290 296  
298 305 306
- Hinton J 441
- Hinz C F Jr 211
- Hippocrates 451 635
- Hirota Y 82 85
- Hirsch A 440 448 450
- Hirsch H A 434
- Hirsch J G 156 167 170 172  
174 175 179 198 199 205  
206 211 212 222 225 227  
230 232 235 237 323 366  
387 427 435 493 526
- Hirschberg E 213
- Hirschhorn K 277 291 299
- Hurst G K 154 167
- Hurst L F 664 675 691
- Hisatsune K 49 70
- Hite K E 344 352
- Hitzig W II 210
- Holland C L 398 731 740
- Hobbs B C 435 567 569
- Hobbs G 551 572
- Hobby G L 398 731 740
- Hochstein R D 434
- Hodges R G 164 167 408  
410
- Hoessly G F 669 691
- Hoffman A 145
- Hoffman L G 202 211
- Hoffman II K 922 946

- Hoffmann 333  
 Hoffmann E 574 608  
 Hoffmeyer H 35  
 Hoffstadt ■ ■ 415 435  
 Hogg L A 54 67  
 Hoku R 606  
 Holcomb D N 213  
 Holdenried R 676  
 Holgate J A 797  
 Holinger P H 849 880  
 Holtand J J 232 235 708 719  
 Hollander A 569 571  
 Hollander D ■ 574 576 579 580 583 587 588 591 606 609  
 Holley S W 274  
 Hollingsworth J W 274  
 Hollinsworth ■ R 70  
 Hollister A C Jr 643 646  
 Holman H R 271 273  
 Holman R A 547 569  
 Holme T 57 58 68  
 Holmes B ■ ■ 299  
 Holmes J W E 595 606  
 Holmes M C 272 299  
 Holmes O W 6  
 Holt L B 936 947  
 Holter ■ 223 235  
 Holwill M E J 43 ■ ■  
 Holzer A R 416 435  
 Homma Y J 796 806  
 Honke E M 618  
 Hood A M 68 695  
 Hood M 658  
 Hoogendyk L 568  
 Hook E W 323  
 Hooker ■ V 282  
 Hookings C E 458 464 465  
 Hopke C J Jr 939 946  
 Hopkins ■ E 160 167  
 Hopkins S J 261 9 3 946  
 Hopper M E 876  
 Hopps H E 145 632 646 647  
 Hopson J A 571  
 Horack H H 912  
 Horecker ■ L 87 119  
 Hornbrook M 299  
 Horne R W 43 69  
 Hornick R ■ 306 310 324 325 646  
 Hornus G 911  
 Horowitz P L 881  
 Horowitz R E 180  
 Horsfall F L Jr 8 408 410 822  
 Horton ■ W 242 248  
 Hosty T S 872  
 Hotchkiss R ■ 74 84 85 127 138 142 397 410  
 Hottle G A 166 386 409 567  
 Houwink A L 39 41 46 56 68  
 Howard D ■ 856 887  
 Howard M ■ 537 543  
 Howarth S 85  
 Howe G 768  
 Howell A Jr 844 875 878  
 Howie ■ J 272 299  
 Howland J L 475 489  
 Hoyer L W 283 294 299  
 Hoyt A 513 5 6  
 Hraba T 299  
 Hsu K C 271 296 302  
 Hu C K 580 606  
 Huang W C 323  
 Huddleson I F 281 703 705 715 719 721  
 Hudson B W 670 671 692  
 Hudson N P 763 769  
 Huebner ■ J 29 35 822  
 Huet M 558 571  
 Hughes D ■ 54 66  
 Hughes H ■ 511 526  
 Hugues J 249  
 Huysmans-Evers A G M 795 797 806  
 Hurlinghorst ■ L 605  
 Humbert W C 877  
 Humphrey J ■ 201 202 709 232 235 242 248 249 298 299  
 Hunt G A 688 695  
 Hunter C J W 439  
 Hunter ■ ■ 690  
 Hunter E F 582 583 605  
 Hunter G ■ 56 ■ ■  
 Hunter John 6 452  
 Hunter K 663 689  
 Huntley B 696  
 Huppert M 851 870 871 880 885  
 Hurley ■ 336 352  
 Hurst V 421 435  
 Hurt J O 209  
 Hurtado A 780 783  
 Hurwitz C 132 147  
 Hurwitz J 85 432  
 Hurwitz M 119  
 Husseni H 498 5 6  
 Hutchinson M ■ 643 646  
 Hutner S H 597 609  
 Hutter V ■ 834 874  
 Hutton J J 339 352  
 Hutton R S 705 719  
 Hufyra F 539 542  
 Huxley H E 55 69  
 Hyde B 616  
 Hyde L 616  
 Hyge T V 509 576  
 Ido Y 606  
 Idsoe O 583 607  
 Iida H 567 568  
 Iio M 355  
 Imaeda T 40 55 69  
 Imboden J B 322 324  
 Inada R 606  
 Inai S 233  
 Inaki N 860 883  
 Inderbitzen M D 290  
 Ingall D 354  
 Ingalls T H 911  
 Ingraham ■ ■ 609  
 Ingraham N R 542  
 Ingram D G 209  
 Ingram G L Y 522 529  
 Ingram M 930 946  
 Inoue Y 49 70  
 Ipsen Johannes Jr 481 488 911 936 938 939 946  
 Irons J V 603  
 Irwin M R 715 717  
 Isaki K 884  
 Isaki S 639 646  
 Ishida K 875  
 Ishizaka I 256  
 Ishizaka K 242 256 264 267 273 299  
 Ishizaka T 299  
 Ishizawa, M 144  
 Ishikawa S 54 69  
 Islam D M F 235  
 Israel 342  
 Issaef 931 947  
 Ito ■ 144  
 Ito ■ 606  
 Ito S 803 806  
 Ivanov M M 666 715 719  
 Ivanovics G 533 537 538 542  
 Ivens M S 854 855 882  
 Iverson L 874  
 Iwie J M 685  
 Iwata K 861 881  
 Iyer G Y N 138 142 279 235  
 Izenstark J L 851 880  
 Jablot 918  
 Jablonski L 700 719  
 Jack J A 300  
 Jackson A W 418 435  
 Jackson C 247  
 Jackson E ■ 605 646  
 Jackson G G 448  
 Jackson J F 340 354  
 Jackson S 670  
 Jacob F 76 80 87 84-86 117 119  
 Jacobs A M 946  
 Jacobs J 285 300  
 Jacob ■ F 198 211 375 387 509 526  
 Jadassohn W 273 284 299 777 783  
 Jaeger R F 697  
 Jaffee I 740 741  
 Jago R 198 211  
 Jahnke F 588 606  
 Jailer J W 295 299  
 James L P 267 299

- James R D 425 435  
 James W D 822 823  
 Jameson J E 338 352 720  
 Janbon M 709 719  
 Janet P M F 452  
 Janeway C A 210 261 299  
 Janković B II 290 292  
 Janoff A 324  
 Janssen W A 669 692  
 Jaques I B 247  
 Jaques R 242 248 299  
 Jared D 701 720  
 Jardetzky O 130 143  
 Jarrett W F H 526  
 Jasmin 660  
 Jauregui Adell J 211  
 Jawetz E 669  
 Jeljaszewicz J 123 144  
 Jelliffe B B 346 352  
 Jellison W L 684 685 688  
 695 696  
 Jenkins C R 206 211 229 235  
 655 657  
 Jenkins G C 244 303  
 Jenner Edward 10  
 Jenner L 281  
 Jennings W H 351  
 Jensen C 933  
 Jensen E 302  
 Jensen H L 64 70  
 Jensen K 291 417 435  
 Jensen K A 499 526  
 Jensen K E 805 818 823  
 Jensen T 796 807  
 Jeramec C 569  
 Jerne N K 486 488  
 Jersild M 230 235  
 Jeter W S 285  
 Jevons M P 375 386 430 435  
 437 439  
 Jillson O F 870 885  
 Jochmann 441 447  
 Johannsen A 564 569  
 Johanson J 299 426 428  
 435  
 John of Arderne 452  
 Johnson 736  
 Johnson A C 344 352  
 Johnson A G 936 946  
 Johnson C W 287  
 Johnson D 143  
 Johnson E E 390 684 696  
 Johnson F II 874  
 Johnson J E 424 428 434  
 435  
 Johnson K M 805 822 824  
 Johnson R C 597 606  
 Johnson R T 821 823  
 Johnson S A M 579 609  
 Johnson S J 157 168 475 489  
 Johnston H H 532 542  
 Johnston H M Jr 609  
 Johnston R W 569  
 Joint Statement Association of  
 State and Territorial Health  
 Officers American Venereal  
 Disease Association American  
 Social Health Association 586  
 606  
 Jolles J 198 211  
 Jollès P 211 276  
 Jolliffe L S 813 823  
 Joli R J 430 438  
 Jones C P 350 837 875 876  
 Jones D 431 435  
 Jones J K N 398  
 Jones L M 700 703 704 715  
 719 720  
 Jones R E 711 719  
 Jones S A 795 805  
 Jones W F Jr 646 959  
 Jordan C F 719  
 Jordan D C 124 143  
 Jordan E O 724 725 734 740  
 Jordan R M M 660  
 Jordan W S Jr 810 811 815  
 816 821 823  
 Josephson A S 269  
 Josephson J H 755 760  
 Josten J J 136 143  
 Jouya V 718  
 Joynt R J 718  
 Judge L F Jr 921 946  
 Juhlin I 663 690  
 Jukes 113  
 Julian G R 130 143  
 Julianelle L A 279 416 435  
 439 616 617 646  
 June R C 646  
 Jurgens Georg 911  
 Jusatz H J 682 684 695  
 Kabat E A 183 209 211 214  
 244 255 263 282 283 299  
 398 442 443 450  
 Kaden R 854 882  
 Kader M A 646  
 Kadull P J 685 686 695 696  
 Kagan G Y 50 66  
 Kagawa S 883  
 Kahler R L 658  
 Kaiser H K 310 324 450  
 Kaiser S J 946  
 Kalicheva N F 697  
 Kalf G F 758 762  
 Kallmann F J 512 526  
 Kallós P 269 296 299 302  
 303  
 Kallós Deffner L 269  
 Kalra S L 694  
 Kaminski T 874  
 Kaminsky A L 605  
 Kamiya T 142  
 Kandler G 50 66  
 Kandler O 50 66  
 Kaneko R 606  
 Kano K 859 883  
 Kanode R G Jr 169 544  
 Kanof A 872 885  
 Kantor F S 287  
 Kao C J 833 874  
 Kaplan A II 477 488  
 Kaplan B I 607  
 Kaplan M H 272 279 583 604  
 Kaplan S 351  
 Kaplan W 842 848 854 855  
 867 869 872 877 879 887  
 884 885  
 Kappas A 310 324 325  
 Kapral F A 425 476 436  
 Kapros E 874  
 Kapsimalis B 351  
 Karelitz S 261  
 Karler A 667 693  
 Karnovsky M L 219 222 224  
 227 235 236  
 Karshan M 349 354  
 Kartman L 665 674 675 684  
 690 692 693 695  
 Karush F 190 211 213 292  
 299  
 Kase A 834 874  
 Kashiba S 233  
 Kass E H 154 167 175 179  
 323 324  
 Kass G H 324  
 Kast C C 774  
 Kataya E 134 142  
 Kathe J 602 606  
 Katsampes C P 745  
 Katz G 252  
 Katz S 341 352 353  
 Kauffman H E 140 143  
 Kauffmann F 304 306 617  
 614 616 621 623 649 646  
 678 694  
 Kaufman L 551 569 842 848  
 877 879  
 Kautler D A 761  
 Kawakita S 875 876  
 Kawata T 41 54 69  
 Kaweh M 540 542  
 Kay C F 253  
 Kay C E 422 435  
 Kay D 37 66  
 Kay K 285  
 Kaye D 340 341 352  
 Kearney 575 609  
 Keefer C S 632  
 Keene W R 311 323 437  
 Kegeles G 166 567  
 Keiser H 390  
 Kellaway C H 248  
 Kellenberger E 45 48 58 59  
 64 66 85  
 Keller R 788 807  
 Kellner A 371 375 386 387  
 Kellogg D S Jr 453 455 457  
 461 465 467  
 Kelly E H 293 721  
 Kelly L II 217 219 233

- Kelly P J 709 719  
 Kelly W ■ 210 290 291 298  
 Kelsh J M 717  
 Kemble J W 875  
 Kemp G 839 875  
 Kemp J A 875  
 Kemp J E 580 606  
 Kempe C H 942 945 946  
 Kendall F ■ 398  
 Kendrick P L 744 745 747 751  
 Kennedy B 884  
 Kenny G E 818 823  
 Keogh E V 415 433 744 750  
 Keppie J 154 167 168 179  
 180 535 537 543 559 561  
 569 571 667 691 692 722  
 Kerby G P 168  
 Kern M 264 269 287 298 301  
 Kermer M W 768  
 Kerpsock R W 696  
 Kerr D E 768  
 Kerridge D 43 ■  
 Kerschbaum W F 880  
 Kessel J F 834 873  
 Keuper C S 579 605  
 Keye J D 834 874  
 Keyes P H 348 350 352  
 Khan A S 588 590 606  
 Kieler J 35  
 Kieley W W 556 569  
 Kierland R R 879  
 Kiggins E M 808  
 Kilbourne E D 177 179 915  
 Kind L S 253  
 Kindler ■ H 565 569  
 King, E. O 332 352 658  
 King J D 948  
 King M A 309 324  
 King P F 759 760  
 King R L 56 69  
 King S 329 352  
 King T P 265 299  
 Kingston J R 811 808 83  
 Kinsell L W 253  
 Kinsky S C 127 128 143  
 Kirby W M M 40 435 493  
 526 853 881  
 Kircher A ■  
 Kirchheimer W F 776 299  
 Kirillov 714 715 719  
 Kirk J 872 885  
 Kirm A 50 71  
 Kitasato Shibusaburo II 469  
 Kite J H Jr 302  
 Kjellander J O 437 435 459  
 465  
 Kjems E 373 387  
 Klaer J H 848 879  
 Klapper M S 853 880  
 Klauber A 695  
 Klauder J V 759 760  
 Klebs E 469 488  
 Kleiger ■ 4 6 435  
 Klemschmidt A 59 69  
 Klein E 832 874  
 Klein F 695  
 Klein J O 435  
 Klein P G 194 214  
 Kleitman ■ 324  
 Klerer J 568  
 Klieneberger ■ 765 768 787  
 790 794 796 800 803 807  
 Klieneberger Nobel ■ 40 50  
 53 64 66 766 768 793 807  
 Klugman A M 285 856 870  
 873 883 885  
 Klinge F 256  
 Kluth F C 609  
 Knapp W 677 681 694  
 Knays G A 53 55 66  
 Kneeland H Jr 414 437  
 Kneeland Y Jr 810 821 823  
 Knazeff A 709 719  
 Knight B C J G 414 434  
 435 531 540 543 556 568  
 570  
 Knight R A 281 842 848 849  
 877 879  
 Knight V 416 422 435 632  
 805 872 824  
 Knoetzk W A 138 141  
 Knoll M L 352  
 Knothe ■ 687 695  
 Knowelden John 912  
 Knowles H C Jr 766 768  
 Knowles ■ G 526  
 Knox G A 389  
 Knox J M 466  
 Knox S J 324  
 Kobayasha T 41 69  
 Kobayashi G S 881  
 Kobylinski ■ G 884  
 Kocan R S 601 607 606  
 Koch Robert 58 12 18 274  
 339 356 387 412 435 490  
 495 506 530 543 649 654  
 729 757 918 921  
 Koeng M G 340 341 352  
 424 4 5 478 436  
 Koeng V L 56 69  
 Koffler H 41 43 68 69  
 Kohls G M 685 695 696  
 Kohn J L 260 567 569 750  
 Koinchadi E K 696  
 Kojima Y 157 168  
 Kops F G 760  
 Kolb J J 70  
 Kolb L C 283  
 Kolb R W 541 543  
 Kolle W 544 579 606  
 Kolodny R L 299  
 Kong Y M 851 852 880  
 Koomen J Jr 632 647  
 Kopeloff L M 255 259  
 Kopeloff N 253 255 259  
 Koprowski H 290 797 300  
 30 303  
 Korn N A 341 352  
 Kornberg A 85 119 138 142  
 Kornblum J 433  
 Kornfield L 873  
 Korngold L 188 211 256  
 Korobkova E I 672 692  
 Kos Lak A 608  
 Koslov ■ P 672 692  
 Kosmachevsky V V 686 695  
 Kostka J 718  
 Kotcher E 865 885  
 Kotowski H 722  
 Kourilsky F M 297  
 Kourilsky R 280 300  
 Kovacs A 233 235  
 Kozinn P J 838 875 876  
 Kraft M 717  
 Krampitz, L O 119  
 Krane R L 288  
 Kraus A S 911  
 Kraus Rudolph 12  
 Krause R M 50 68 363 364  
 376 386 387  
 Krauss M R 157 168 397  
 402 409 410  
 Kravetz H M 805 827 824  
 Kravitz E 948  
 Krebs A 761  
 Kregger Van Rijn N J W 832  
 833 836 874 876  
 Kreguer A 569  
 Kress M ■ 835 874  
 Krishna Murti C R 693  
 Kristensen K H 749 751  
 Kristensen M 724 731 740  
 Krutchevski B 346 352  
 Krutman J 185 211  
 Krochuk N 761 762  
 Kroeger A V 354  
 Kroetz F W 840 875  
 Kroetz ■ 840  
 Krueger A P 671 693  
 Kruger A P 437  
 Krugman S 936 946  
 Krumwiede E 375 387  
 Kruse H 253  
 Kubica G P 520 526  
 Kubota M Y 851 880  
 Kuestner ■ 763  
 Kuhns W J 244 264 485 488  
 Kulka A M 245  
 Kumarich D 354  
 Kumm H W 589 606  
 Kundel ■ W 180 657  
 Kunev N 657  
 Kunkel H G 183 185 188  
 196 709 213 267 271 273  
 300 302  
 Kunkel W M Jr 842 877  
 Kunz, C 854 882  
 Kunz L J 690  
 Kuper ■ W A 479 432  
 Kupferberg L L 666 691 692  
 Kurdina D 719



- Kurland C G 56 69 129 130 143  
 Kurokawa M 157 168  
 Kusano N 796 806  
 Kushner D S 496 526  
 Kushner I 279  
 Kustner H 301  
 Kuttner A G 365 387  
 Kuwahara S 439  
 Kuwamura, T 325  
 Kuwano M 142  
 Kuzdas C D 702 719  
 Kuzell W C 797 799 807  
 Kyle T S 806
- La Belle J W 416 436  
 LaBrec E H 657  
 Labzoffsky N A 695  
 Lacaz C da S 846 857 878 882  
 Lachmann P J 207 211  
 Lack C H 419 420 126 431 436  
 Lackman D B 696 700 722  
 Laennec R T H 490  
 Lafenetre H 715 719  
 Lahelle O 343 344 352  
 Lahiri S C 244 247 248  
 Laidlaw P P 803 807  
 Laird S M 459 465  
 Lam G T 657  
 Lamanna C 65 66 159 160 167  
 Lamanna C 566 569 571 583 606  
 Lamb 682  
 Lampen J O 143  
 Lancaster M C 712 719  
 Lancaster R M 876  
 Lancefield R C 357 360 361 363 366 375 386 388  
 Landau J W 871 881 885  
 Landow H L 244  
 Landsteiner Karl 12 13 18 253 274 284 286 300  
 Landy M 66 168 305 306  
 Landy M 338 342 645 647 936 939 946  
 Lane C O 859 883  
 Lang D 69  
 Lange J 588 606  
 Langenbeck H 835 876  
 Langeron 837 865 868  
 Langford E V 760  
 Langham R F 599 608  
 Langmuir A D 822 918 947  
 Lankford C E 453 466 702 721  
 LaPeysonnie L 943 947  
 Lapin 742  
 Laplane R 740  
 Laporte R 275  
 Lara H 911  
 Lardy H 138 143  
 Lark K. G 122 143
- Larsen P 23 35  
 Larsh H W 848 879  
 Larson A M 597 604 671 692 693  
 Larson C L 522 526 683 684 686 688 695 696  
 Laston D J 350  
 Latham W C 946  
 Latta R 435  
 Lauder J 526  
 Laurel A H 186 210  
 Laurel C H 183 210  
 Laurence H S 881  
 Laurence W H 719  
 Lautrop H 748 749 751  
 Lavotter Antoine Laurent 102  
 Law J H 57 70  
 Law L W 199 211  
 Law S W 882  
 Lawrence H S 199 211 239 240 277 279 288 291 292 298 300 301  
 Lawson M E Jr 351  
 Lawton W M 668 671 678 692 694  
 Layton L L 264 300  
 Lazareva M S 541 690  
 Lazarides P 156 167  
 Lazarides P D 371 386 388  
 Lazarus A S 678  
 Lazuga, K 608  
 Lea D J 301  
 Leake E S 198 204 212  
 Leberman P R 791 804 807  
 Lebert 865  
 LeBlond C P 938 947  
 Lebovitz J L 426 437  
 Lece J G 788 789 807 808  
 Lechlester R H 692  
 Leclerc J 11  
 Lecomte J 242 249  
 Leddy J P 263 300  
 Lederberg E M 73 79 84 85 143  
 Lederberg J 73 79 84 86 122 134 143 622 648 704  
 Lederer E 275 276 524 528  
 Ledingham J C G 434  
 Leduc E H 297  
 Lee A M 344 354  
 Lee L 294  
 Lee L E 305 306 837 876  
 Lee M L H 662 690  
 Lee M 264 300  
 Lee Y C 351 577 605  
 Leeper R A 885  
 Lefevre 567 570  
 Legroux R 567 569  
 Lehan P H 850 879  
 Lehniger A L 54 69  
 Leidy G 84 729 732 734 736 741  
 Leifson E 40 41 43 66 69  
 Leikhum E J 192 208  
 Lem J N 141 352
- Leistikow 452  
 LeMaistre C A 499 527  
 Lemekhova A E 692  
 Lemierre A 727 740  
 Le Minor L 678 794  
 Lenert T F 365 387 730 731 740  
 Lengerova A 299  
 Lengyel M 144  
 Lenhart N A 417 434 436 439  
 Lennart J 270  
 Lennox E S 477 488  
 Lennox W G 325  
 Leon Y Blanco F 590 606  
 Leonard C G 537 543  
 Leonard J J 875  
 Lepow I H 191 193 195 196 210 213 734 740  
 Lepper E 547 569  
 Lerner A M 213  
 Lerner M M 283 767 768  
 Lescaz B R 883  
 Leshkovich L I 692  
 Leskowitz S 286 300  
 Leslie P H 742 743 745  
 Lester W 525  
 Leutgeb W 49 71  
 Lev M 338 352  
 Levadite J C 569  
 Levaditu C 167 371 388 766 768  
 Levan N H 882  
 Levenberg M 142  
 Levene N 882  
 Levenson S M 690  
 Levey R H 199 211  
 Levey J S 766 768  
 Levey S 766-768  
 Levin M A 682 694  
 Levine H H 269 286 300  
 Levine H B 852 880 881  
 Levine L 195 211 484 488 936 946 947  
 Levine S 880  
 Levinson S O 647  
 Levinthal J D 823  
 Levinthal W 731 740  
 Levitan S 465  
 Levy E 418 431 434  
 Levy J 248  
 Levy M N 947  
 Levy R S 179  
 Lewis C W Jr 55 70  
 Lewis G M 839 876  
 Lewis G P 248  
 Lewis M R 248 276 302  
 Lewis P A 512 527  
 Lewis Thomas 264  
 Lewis W H 222 235  
 Ley A B 269 300  
 Ley H L Jr 453 466 913 944 945  
 Li H Y 599 606  
 Li I W 425 476 476

- Li K 487  
 Liacopoulos P 297 300  
 Liacopoulos Briot M 242 297 302  
 Lichtenstein L M 265 300  
 Lieberherr W 718 722  
 Lieberman M 437  
 Lieberman K 53 64 69  
 Liles M 300  
 Lillehe R C 325  
 Lillie R D 685 696  
 Lilly M D 49 50 67  
 Linberg R H 809  
 Lincoln R E 695  
 Lindberg O 66  
 Lindberg R B 690  
 Lindsay D R 644 648  
 Linell F 521 528  
 Lin good F V 475 488  
 Link V B 674  
 Linnos B 796 797 807  
 Linscott W D 192 194 202 203 212  
 Linzenmeier G 753 756 760 761  
 Lipari R 188 211  
 Lipman L N 213  
 Lipmann F 130 131 143 145  
 Lippard V W 263  
 Lipsitz P J 436  
 Lipton M M 25 298 936 946  
 Lisbonne M 704 719  
 Lister Joseph F 8 14 926 927  
 Lister S 408 410  
 Listgarten M A 333 354 575 606  
 Litt M 224 232 235  
 Little G N 351 836 875  
 Littleton N W 349 351  
 Littman M L 833 836 853 874 876 881 883  
 Litvinov V M 705 721  
 Liu C 805 814 816 818 821 823  
 Liu P V 473 488  
 Liu T Y 399 410  
 Live I 720  
 Livingood C S 274  
 Ljung O 687 696  
 Lobo J 844 878  
 LoBue J 234  
 Locke M 352  
 Lockwood W R 778 235  
 Lodder J 832 833 836 874 876  
 Lodenkamper H 345 352  
 Loeb L 413 436  
 Loeb T 85  
 Loebel J 722  
 Loeffler F A J 11 17 452 469 476 488  
 Loeffler H 343  
 Loesche W J 352 575 606  
 Loew E R 795  
 Loewen P F 848 879  
 Loewenberg 617  
 Loffler H 718  
 Loffler W 740  
 Lofkvist T 417 436  
 Logan G F Jr 537 543  
 Logan M A 568  
 Lo Grippo G A 236 240 304  
 Lombard L S 878  
 Lominski I 418 476 436  
 Lones G W 836 876  
 Long E R 497 527  
 Longcope W T 244 253 256 260-262 810  
 Longley 801  
 Look E 229 235  
 Loomis D 512 527  
 Loosli C G 850 879 880  
 Lopez A 711 716  
 Lopez P B 883  
 Loran M R 765 768  
 Lord F T 406 410  
 Losee F L 351  
 Lorna D B 834 838 840 874 876  
 Love B D Jr 454 466  
 Loveless M H 266 267  
 Loveman A H 865 885  
 Low H 54 71  
 Lowe E P 881  
 Lowe J 523 527  
 Lowell F C 267  
 Lowenthal J F 568 638 646  
 Lucas D R 774  
 Lucas W P 260  
 Lucasse C 861 883  
 Lucero E M 466  
 Lucke H 235  
 Ludentz O 49 50 67 168 304 306 625 647 648 694  
 Ludlam G H 662 690  
 Luppold G F 630  
 Lukyanova M A 54 65  
 Lukens F D W 256  
 Luk yanchenko A 688 696  
 Lummus F L 876  
 Lundin B M 40 53 71  
 Luria M E 73 85  
 Lurie H I 854 855 882  
 Lurie M 30 35 175 179 232 235 500 507 512 513 527  
 Lutman G E 910  
 Lutz A 844 878  
 Lutz R J 871  
 Luz A 300  
 Lwoff A 85 119  
 Lycette R R 277  
 Lynch A C 855 887  
 Lynch H J Jr 850 880  
 Lynch J L 125 144  
 Lynn R J 788 807 808  
 Lyons C 414 436  
 Maalge O 130 143 486 488  
 McAdams A J 450  
 McBride M E 753 761  
 McCabe E J 260  
 McCabe W R 310 325  
 Maccacaro G A 85  
 McCann F H 823  
 McCall R E 774  
 MacCallum F O 806  
 MacCallum P 521 527  
 McCamish J 708 720  
 McCann W J Jr 647  
 McCarthy H J 129 143  
 McCarthy J 211  
 McCarty M 50 68 74 84 356 361 363 364 367 372 373 376 381 387 388 396 404 409 410 416 417 436 538 543  
 McCasland G E 253  
 McCauley D W 874  
 Macchavello A 450  
 MacCleary R 410  
 McCloy E W 540 543  
 McClung L S 567 570  
 McClure L E 608  
 McCluskey J W 300  
 McCluskey R T 285 300  
 McComb D E 599 604  
 McComb J A 941 947  
 McCormick N G 328 352 355  
 McCoy G W 681 682  
 McCrear F D 565 571  
 McCrumb F R Jr 674 686 692 696  
 McCullough N B 769 875  
 McCune R M Jr 425 436 510 527  
 McCutcheon M 232 235  
 McDermott K 782  
 McDermott W 27 8 35 325 510 527 632 951 959  
 McDermid A 711 715 720  
 MacDonald H J 742  
 MacDonald H 742  
 Macdonald J H 345 347 351 352 354  
 McDonald J R 344 351 877  
 McDonough E S 841 877  
 McDowell J W 688 696  
 McDuff C R 704 719  
 McDurmont C 872  
 McElroy O H 167 569  
 McEwen C 715  
 McFadden M L 159  
 Macfarlane M G 161 167 556 560 569 570  
 McGann V G 537 543 648  
 McGavran M H 686 696  
 McGowan H Jr 717 749  
 McGrath H 855 882  
 MacGregor A B 354  
 McGregor D D 289 298  
 McGuinness A C 744 747 750 751  
 Machado Filho J 845 846 878  
 McHenry M C 344 345 352

- MacIntosh J 166  
 Mackaness G H 229 232 235  
 278 300 427 436 507 510  
 527  
 McKay D G 294  
 MacKay I R 185 212  
 McKay K A 795 807  
 McKeever J D 327 354  
 McKeever E 605  
 McKendrick A G 911  
 Mackenzie D J M 658  
 MacKenzie D W R 836 876  
 Mackenzie G M 253 278  
 Mackenzie R H 806  
 McKie M 639 645  
 Mackie T J 767 768  
 McKinnon G F 244 252 298  
 Mackinnon J E 827 828 857  
 873 882  
 MacKintosh M E 353  
 McKissie E M Jr 439  
 MacLaren J A 836 876  
 MacLaren W R 296  
 McLaughlin F X 946  
 McLaughlin J Jr 599 608  
 Maclean I H 936 947  
 MacLean L D 325  
 MacLennan A P 750 751  
 MacLennan J D 558 560 570  
 MacLeod C M 74 84 146  
 155 157 164 167 168 391  
 396 398 402 404 407 410  
 425 435 442 527 946  
 McLeod C F 582 590 607  
 609  
 McLeod J W 418 436 471  
 487 488 547 569 570  
 MacMahon Brian 911  
 McMaster P R B 253 283  
 McMullen E 526  
 McMurray W C 143  
 McNall E G 870 874 885  
 McNamara P 54 67  
 McPhedran F M 515 527 528  
 McPherson A Z 750  
 MacPherson C F C 732 733  
 739 740  
 McQuillen K 50 53 54 66  
 McQuown A L 829 873  
 Macturk H M 526  
 McVay L V Jr 343 352  
 772 774  
 Maderious W E 719  
 Madinaveitia J 526  
 Madlener E M 352  
 Madoff S 794 797 805 807  
 Madsen S 637 647  
 Madsen T 13  
 Magee W E 834 874  
 Mager J 569 833 874  
 Magis P 883  
 Magnuson B J 421 433 436  
 Magnuson H J 466 467 579  
 580 582 583 606 608  
 Magnusson M 831 872 873  
 Mahady S C 515 527  
 Mahoney J F 455 458 461  
 463 466 467 585 607  
 Maier P 303  
 Maine R J 543  
 Matland H B 744 750  
 Malassez L C 677  
 Maluza W F 805  
 Málkova J 693  
 Mallet E 722  
 Mallette M F 65 66  
 Malik K C H 658  
 Mallory T B 275  
 Malmsten P H 862 865 885  
 Malnati P 603  
 Maloney U D 143  
 Manchester P T 838 876  
 Mandel A D 645 646  
 Mandel I B 348 352  
 Mandel M 740  
 Mandel W 511 527  
 Mandelstam J 122 143 205  
 212  
 Mandelstam M H 121 143  
 Mandle R J 657  
 Mandy W J 213  
 Mankie E A 797 799 807 808  
 Manko M A 823  
 Mankowski Z 836 876  
 Mann 440  
 Mannik M 188 211 212  
 Manning M C 543  
 Manning R 542  
 Manos N E 848 880  
 Manthei C A 718  
 Mantioux Charles 274  
 Manwaring W H 247  
 Mara M 761  
 Marcey E A 879  
 Marchesi V T 221 223 235  
 439  
 Marchette N J 683 696  
 Marcus B H 717  
 Marcus L 543  
 Marcus E 281 842 848 877  
 879  
 Marcussen P V 870 885  
 Mardiney M H 212  
 Marek J 542  
 Mariat F 827 829 831 872  
 873  
 Marini F 127 143  
 Marino A F 466  
 Markenson J 706 716 720  
 Markham F S 802 807  
 Markovitz A 368 388  
 Markowitz, H 398 410  
 Marlow J 750  
 Marmion B F 805 811 816  
 818 823  
 Marmur J E 737 740  
 Maroney M 389  
 Marples M J 867 884  
 Marquardt M 18  
 Marr A G 54 56 66 70 702  
 720  
 Marshak L C 583 607  
 Marshall J D 567 570 874  
 Marshall J D Jr 572 834  
 874  
 Marshall J F 852 881  
 Marshall M S 703 720  
 Marsland E A 354  
 Marston J 415 436 698 720  
 Martin C H 794 809  
 Martin C J 547 569  
 Martin D E 607 830 835 837  
 842 843 857 859 861 876  
 877 883  
 Martin G A 646  
 Martin H H 49 51 53 66 69  
 Martin H N 11  
 Martin J E Jr 453 467  
 Martin R O 67  
 Martin S P 168 498 527  
 Martin W B 526  
 Martin W J 352 354 710  
 719 720 959  
 Martin, Erich 911  
 Marx R 43 69  
 Mascarenhas P 718  
 Mason D J 40 58 69  
 Mason J H 565 570  
 Mason R P 646  
 Masry F L G 744 750  
 Massaro E 341 352 353  
 Masshoff W 679 681 694  
 Masurej N 823  
 Mathews M M 54 69  
 Mathey W J Jr 802 807  
 Matruchot L 853 863 882  
 885  
 Mattern C F T 879  
 Matthews A C 488  
 Mattick A T R 360 389  
 Mattman L H 415 436 568  
 Mauer A M 233  
 Maumenee A E 298  
 Mauron A 15 18  
 Mauzy W L 716  
 Maximow A 217 219 235  
 Maxted W R 363 365 367  
 376 387 388  
 May C H 448 450  
 May J M 911  
 May K J 276 300  
 May P A 823  
 Mayer M M 191 193 195  
 207 209 212 255 263 299  
 398 382 607  
 Mayer O E 685 688  
 Mayer R L 250 284 291 300  
 Mayr G 921 947  
 Mazzarella M A 808  
 Mazzini G 777 783  
 Mead D D 717

- Meade ■ M 509 526  
 Meadors G F 910  
 Meadow P M 125 141 143  
 Mechalis ■ J 716  
 Medawar ■ B 288 290 297 300  
 Medical Research Council 509 527 919 920 939 947  
 Medical Research Council Working Party on Pressure Steam Sterilisers 947  
 Medill M A 794 807  
 Medina C 777 783  
 Medlar E M 859 883  
 Meeklejohn G 823  
 Meisel H 553 570  
 Meuster A 119  
 Melby J C 325  
 Melen ■ 791 795 796 798 804 807  
 Meleney F L 344 352  
 Meleney H E 593 607  
 Mellanby 349  
 Mellors R C 211 271  
 Melly M A 427 436 438  
 Meltzer M 210  
 Mendel L B 325  
 Menges R A 884  
 Menges R W 605 842 863 877 885  
 Menkin V 249 309 325  
 Menzel A E O 497 526  
 Merchant R K 944 947  
 Merchant W R 805  
 Mercier S 692  
 Mergenhausen S E 378 333 336 351 353  
 Merino C 781 783  
 Merler E 213  
 Merrick J V 513 528  
 Merriott J 683 696  
 Meselson M 85  
 Mesrobian I 645  
 Mesrobian L 645  
 Mestanza E 783  
 Metaxas M N 276 300  
 Metaxas Buhler M 276 281 300  
 Metchnikoff Elie 11 19 160 168 171 181 205 212 215 229 235 579 607  
 Metchnikoff O 19  
 Metzger H 189 212  
 Metzger J F 752 761  
 Metzger M 575 607  
 Meyer A ■ 747  
 Meyer E 329 342 351 354 693  
 Meyer ■ 562 570  
 Meyer K F 564 570 659 667 671 674 676 690 692 693 709 715 718 720 911 926 930 947  
 Meyer M 512 528 699 707 720  
 Meyerhof O 556 569  
 Meynell E W 533 543  
 Michael J G 201 212 354  
 Michaels L 581 607  
 Michel G 350  
 Mickelsen O 337 338 353  
 Mickle F L 639 648  
 Middaugh P R 695  
 Middeldkamp J N 658  
 Middlebrook Gardner 490 492 493 495 498 509 511 512 519 520 525 529  
 Middleton E 265 303  
 Midgley J E ■ 129 143  
 Miescher P A 206 209 210 212 214 231 233 273 284  
 Mihm J M 877 872  
 Mikolajczyk R J 466  
 Miles A A 147 168 175 179 730 235 249 433 468 489 556 570 705 706 770  
 Miles E M 179 556 570  
 Millar J W 291 301 448 450 881 943 947  
 Miller 748  
 Miller C P 176 179 443 450 734 740  
 Miller ■ ■ 639 647  
 Miller J F A P 199 213  
 Miller J M 277  
 Miller L F 811 821 823  
 Miller N G 600 607  
 Miller P A 14 162 168 471 475 476 488 489 561 570  
 Miller R L 881  
 Miller W D 348 353  
 Millican R C 353  
 Mills E C 695 696  
 Milne A D 591 608  
 Milner K C 66 168 306 647  
 Miloshevitch 865 868  
 Milofsky E 235  
 Milstone H 372 389  
 Milzbrand 544  
 Mimica M 663 689  
 Minchew H ■ 437  
 Minck R 50 71  
 Minnett F C 533 540 543  
 Minnich V 272  
 Mino P 602 607  
 Miraglia G J 177 179 697  
 Miranda ■ 783  
 Mirack G S 400 410 827  
 Miroshnichenko V A 722  
 Mirsky A ■ 66 235  
 Mishchenko V V 541 690  
 Mita S 253  
 Mitchell P 53 56 66 69  
 Mitchell W O 839 855 875 884  
 Mitchellson D A 285 512 528  
 Mitsuda K 280 522  
 Mitsuhashi ■ 157 168  
 Mittler T 64 65  
 Mizuhara M 683 696  
 Moen J K 276 279 301  
 Moffitt H C 850 881  
 Mohapatra L N 828 873  
 Mohr C F 582 607  
 Molbert E 575 607  
 Moll F C 748 750  
 Mollaret H H 678 694  
 Møller V 565 570  
 Mollison P L 207 212  
 Molnar D M 544  
 Mongar J L 245 246 448 301  
 Monod J 76 85 117 119  
 Monro R E 135 143 144  
 Monsur K A 658  
 Montero M 783  
 Moody M D 363 389 547 673 683 684 688 692 693 695 696 717  
 Moon H D 288 291 302  
 Moore B 429 436  
 Moore C V 272  
 Moore D E 568  
 Moore D H 209 562 570  
 Moore F J 526  
 Moore G J 695  
 Moore J A 527  
 Moore J C 880  
 Moore J ■ 582 607  
 Moore J W 574 608  
 Moore M 844 878  
 Moore M B Jr 451 466  
 Moore M D Jr 459 467  
 Moore M S 488  
 Moore W E C 329 333 350 353  
 Morales Otero P 714 720  
 Morgan Brinley 700  
 Morgan H R 325 610 611 618 625 679 630 632 646 647 688 798 808  
 Morgan I M 282  
 Morgan M T 594 605  
 Morgan R S 166 568  
 Morgan W J ■ 720  
 Morgan W T J 637 646 647  
 Moroni D 720  
 Morris A 134 143  
 Morris E J 533 543 662 666 673 677 680 694  
 Morris J N 911  
 Morrison L R 283  
 Morrison S L 885  
 Morrison T H 50 53 69  
 Morrow G 597 607  
 Morse E V 702 719  
 Morse J H 187 212  
 Morse M L 85 416 474 436  
 Morse S I 153 168 225 226 728 30 234 412 414 416 417 431 433 436

- Mortimer E A Jr 421 436 726  
 Mortlock R P 691  
 Morton H E 763 770 786 788 791 793 795 798 805 807 809  
 Morton J D 535 542  
 Morton J I 185 187 209  
 Moses 16  
 Mosimann W 718  
 Mosko M M 302  
 Mosley J W 926 946  
 Moss E S 680  
 Mossel D A A 327 350  
 Moti I 245 252 301  
 Motsavage M A 884  
 Moulder J W 125 143  
 Mount F W 512 525 943 946  
 Mouquin 567 570  
 Mourad S 839 876  
 Moursund W H 591 607  
 Moussa R S 543 558 570  
 Movat H Z 254 301  
 Moya V 722  
 Mojad H S 140 143  
 Moyle J 53 54 56 66 69  
 Moyntan J W 759 761  
 Mucciolo P 434  
 Much H 413 436  
 Mudd S 54 57 58 69 70 224 225 235 417 427 434 436 439 575 607 741 744 750 772 774  
 Mueller J H 157 168 441 449 450 453 466 468 471 475 487 488 561 570 942 945  
 Muech H 148 168 424 911  
 Mulson M A 805 811 822 823  
 Muhlen 577  
 Muir D 436  
 Muir R 232 235  
 Mukerjee S 654 657  
 Mulder J 823  
 Muller 452  
 Muller Eberhard H J 181 185 192 194 196 197 200 209 211 213 300  
 Muncie J E 854 882  
 Munoz J 744 750  
 Munoz H 927 946  
 Murata M 660 690  
 Murphy G E 256 301  
 Murphy J 488  
 Murphy J T 922 945  
 Murphy R 344 353  
 Murray E G D 19 350 413 441-443 450 695 752 764 760 761 911  
 Murray R 808  
 Murray R G E 37 47 50 53 57 66 67 70 71  
 Murrell T G G 567 570  
 Murrell W G 61 63 69 71  
 Murry J F 829 873  
 Muschel L H 201 204 205 212  
 Muschenheim C 527  
 Musselman A D 577 605  
 Musteikis G M 210  
 Muto Y 325  
 Mycek M J 374 389  
 Myrns L S 287  
 Myrvik Q N 198 204 212 229 235 275  
 Naff G H 193 211 212  
 Nagle S C Jr 682 696  
 Nagy L K 714 720  
 Nahas L 846 878  
 Nahmias A J 422 430 436  
 Nairn R C 37 66  
 Najarian J S 199 212 285 289 301  
 Nakib A 827 872  
 Namoka S 660 690  
 Nargaretten W 448 450  
 Nathans D 130 134 136 143  
 Nathanson N 918 947  
 Nathenson S G 49 50 70 122 123 144 417 437  
 Naumov 710  
 Nazimoff O 872  
 Neal E J 823  
 Nelheles H 944 945  
 Needham G M 354 662 663 690  
 Needham J T 2  
 Neelsen F K A 491  
 Neely W H 398 544  
 Neeman L 715 720  
 Neghm 889  
 Negre L 507 528  
 Neidle A 135 143  
 Neil E E 577 606  
 Neil J M 244 834 874  
 Neilson H A 583  
 Nerzer A L S 12 452 581 609  
 Neusser M. 418 437  
 Nell E E 351 575 576 579 580 582 583 606 607  
 Nelson A J 464 466  
 Nelson E L 699 700 704 720 721 790 794 807  
 Nelson G S 596 607  
 Nelson J B 794 799 800 808  
 Nelson J D 810 880  
 Nelson R A Jr 194 206 207 213 226 235 576 580 582 588 606 609  
 Nelson W E 526  
 Nen R O 234  
 Nermut M V 54 69  
 Nesburn A D 143  
 Netter E 67 614 618 632 641 644 647 753 761  
 Neufeld F 391 405 410  
 Neuhaus F C 125 144  
 Neuhauser I 856 858 882  
 Neva F A 325 629 647  
 Neveu T 242 302  
 New York Academy of Sciences 925 947  
 Newcomer V D 835 840 843 850 853 871 874 876 878 880 881 885  
 Newerly K 297  
 Newman F S 542  
 Newton H A 38 126 127 138 144  
 Newton G G F 123 141  
 Newton J W 702 740  
 Newton W L 347 350 357 431  
 Nexmand P 285  
 Ngu V A 596 607  
 Nhonoti A M 540 543  
 Nicastri A 313 323  
 Nicholes P S 683 696  
 Nichols H R 770  
 Nickerson W J 836 876  
 Nicol C S 797 808  
 Nicolau S 768  
 Nicolle C 35  
 Nielsen C B 298  
 Nielson H A 583 607  
 Nightingale Florence 16  
 Nigre L 719  
 Nilsson U 194 197 212 213  
 Nilzen A 285  
 Nimelman A 466  
 Nishimura S 233  
 Nishimura T 144  
 Nishiyama S 883  
 Niskioke K 192 194 202 203 212  
 Nisonoff A 185 188 213  
 Niven C F Jr 435 439  
 Niven J S F 232 235  
 Niven J S F 783 784  
 Noble W C 421 437  
 Nocard E 786 799 827  
 Noeggerath 452  
 Noguchi H 574 608 777 779 784  
 Nolan J 179  
 Noll H 498 524 528  
 Nomura M 143  
 Norden A 521 578 854 855 882  
 Norgaard O 458 466  
 Norman P H 241 265 299 535 543  
 Norovd D 692  
 Norris R F 351  
 North E. A 744 750  
 North R J 54 67  
 Northey W T 851 880  
 Noval J J 721  
 Nowick A 119

- Novikoff A II 222 235  
 Novosel D L 143  
 Nozawa M M 678  
 Nunemaker J C 763 767 768  
 Nunen M C J 821 824  
 Nungester W J 533 543  
 Nuttall G H F 12 181 182
- Oag R K 597 608  
 Oakley C L 555 560 567 569 571  
 Oatway W H Jr 493 528  
 Obermeier 591  
 Ochoa II 130 136 144  
 Ochterlony 473  
 O Connell D C 354  
 O Connor C M 141  
 O Connor M 67 236 947  
 Odeblad E 795 807  
 Odnozola E 775 784  
 Oeding P 415 416 418 435 437 766 768  
 Officer J E 143  
 Ogarkov V I 704 720  
 Ogata N 664  
 Ogburn C A 374 389  
 Ogg J E 691  
 Ogiuti K 582 609  
 Oglesby G 702 721  
 Ogonowski K 720  
 O Grady F 518 528  
 Ogston A 356 389 412 437  
 Ogura M 55 69  
 Ohye D F 61 63 69 71  
 Oka M 761  
 Okamoto H 369 389  
 Okane D J 794 807  
 Olansky S 586 607 608  
 Olarte J 590 609  
 Old L J 288  
 Olitsky P K 774 774  
 Olitzki A L 706 720  
 Olitzki L 603  
 Oliver W W 772 774  
 Olsen A M 662 663 690  
 Olson II J 879  
 Olsson R C 647  
 Olushev N G 688 689 696  
 Omar W 450  
 Oort J 233 234  
 Oparin A I 54 68  
 Opdyke II L J 348 353  
 Ophuls W 850 881  
 Opie E L 756 504 508 512 577 528  
 Oppenheim 452  
 Ordal E J 352  
 Ordman D 264 408 410  
 Oren R 227 275 235  
 Orto J 827 829 830 873  
 Ortiz P 85  
 Orland F J 348 353  
 Orlando M II 695
- Orlov II S 720  
 Ormsbee R A 683 696  
 Orpen L J J 699 720  
 Orr G F 856 882  
 Orr J H 555 571  
 Orskov P 85  
 Orskov I 85  
 Orta B 437  
 Ortega L G 271  
 Ortiz J 213 390  
 Orup H I 350  
 Osborne W 733 739  
 Osebold J W 754 761  
 Osgood C K 296  
 Osgood E II 217 236  
 Oskay J J 807  
 Osler A G 249 252 265 300 301  
 Osoba D 199 213  
 Osterland C II 210  
 Osterman E 616 647  
 Ostrovskaya N II 704 717 720  
 Ota 865  
 Oteiza A 590 606  
 Otsuka G 761  
 Otsuka R 884  
 Otten, L 665  
 Ottens H 327 353  
 Ottinger II 296 399 410  
 Ottolenghi E 85 397 410  
 Ottosen II E 712 721  
 Ovary Z 187 209 213 244 245 252 269 297 300 301  
 Overholt E L 687 688 696  
 Overman J E 142 353  
 Owen C R 681 683 695 696  
 Owen E T 843 878  
 Ozeki H 82 85
- Packchamian A 600 608  
 Packman L 542 691 719  
 Padawar J 301  
 Pagano J S 542 543  
 Paine T F Jr 797 804 808  
 Palczuk W C 721  
 Palmer C E 281 508 518 525 526 528 846 848 879 880  
 Palmer J L 186 188 213  
 Palmer R H 325  
 Palmstierna H 58 68  
 Palsson P A 757 761  
 Pan S F 635 647  
 Pangborn M C 580 608  
 Pankey G A 340 353  
 Panos C 50 70  
 Pantan P N 418 437  
 Panum P L 904 912  
 Papavassiliou J 327 353  
 Pappagianis D 291 301 851 881  
 Pappenheimer A M Jr 157
- 158 161 168 244 264 280  
 791 292 303 386 409 468  
 474 478 483 485 487-489  
 783 784 940  
 Paracelsus 452  
 Pardee A II 56 70 119 130 144  
 Parfentjev I A 253 745  
 Pariser II 460 466  
 Parish H J 568  
 Park J T 122 142 144  
 Park R G 286  
 Park W H 469 474 489  
 Parker C W 264 269 287 301  
 Parker II D 682 684 688 696  
 Parker D R 784  
 Parker F Jr 763 769 813 814 823  
 Parker M T 421 435 437 690  
 Parker R B 338 353  
 Parker R R 696  
 Parlett R C 520 548  
 Parnas J 601 608 699 700 701  
 Parrot 503  
 Parrott R H 872  
 Parsons E I 488  
 Pasnick L J 303  
 Passet J 413 437  
 Passos Filho M C da R 846 878  
 Pasteur Louis 75 7 8 10 15 19 101 120 165 168 356 389 391 412 437 530 538 659 918 925 926 931 944 947  
 Patel T B 671  
 Paterson J S 680 694 753 761  
 Paterson P Y 283 301  
 Patiala R 455 465  
 Patnode R A 291  
 Pato M L 140 144  
 Patočka F 753 761  
 Patocka E 794 809  
 Patow W II 350  
 Patsula T M 466  
 Pattee P A 416 437  
 Patterson R 247 263 301 303  
 Paul J R 912  
 Pavillard E R 229 236  
 Payne E II 781 784  
 Payne F E 670 692  
 Payne J I 69  
 Payne J M 707 708 721  
 Paz II A 274 236  
 Peabody J W Jr 343 353 877  
 Peacock C L 836 876  
 Peacock II 542 691 719  
 Peacock W L Jr 457 465 466  
 Pearce J H 163 179 727  
 Pearce T W 533 543  
 Pearman G 277 291  
 Pearson C M 320 323  
 Pearson II E 456 466

- Pedersen H 766 768  
 Pedersen K O 183 211  
 Pedroso A 859 883  
 Peeler R 717  
 Peery T M 709 721  
 Peeters G 233 236  
 Pekzar M J Jr 921 946  
 Pennell R B 705 721  
 Pensky J 193 211 212  
 Peoples D M 791 809  
 Perelmutter L 266 301  
 Perkins C F 853 882  
 Perkins H H 49 50 66 417 437  
 Perkins J J 920 922 947  
 Perlman H 646  
 Perlmann G E 364 366 388  
 Perlmutter I 808  
 Permutt M 143  
 Pernis H 500 529  
 Perramant M F 300  
 Perret W J 884  
 Perrin A M 915  
 Pernier F 37 68  
 Pernier M 417  
 Perry 165  
 Perry D M 853 881  
 Perry H O 845 879  
 Perry M B 398  
 Perry M I 467  
 Persky S 805  
 Perutz M F 56 66  
 Peterman M L 485 489  
 Peters B 777 779 782 784  
 Peters H J 877  
 Petersdorf R G 311 323 325 429 437 944 947 959  
 Petersen E S 766 769  
 Peterson J C 846 879  
 von Pettenkofer Max 16  
 Pettersson A 198 213  
 Petukhova O S 700 721  
 Petz, A J 236  
 Pfeiffer Richard 11 12 171 182 213 724 740 931 947  
 Phair J J 449  
 Phaease R N 720  
 Philbrook F R 644 647  
 Philip C B 681 696  
 Philip R N 688 696  
 Phillips H P 338 353  
 Phillips C R 921 922 947  
 Phillips R A 658  
 Phillips S 883  
 Philpot H F 875  
 Pickett M J 232 235 699 700 708 719 720 721 731 740 753 762 794 807  
 Pickles W N 912  
 Piechaud M 680  
 Pierce C 513 525 527 528  
 Pierce C C 35  
 Pierce C H 764  
 Pierce J V 249  
 Pierce W E 823  
 Pierson L E 618  
 Pigman W W 351  
 Piper A 43 66 70  
 Pike E B 327 328 353  
 Pike R M 599 608  
 Pilcher J D 325  
 Pillemer L 159 167 168 211 556 562 570 571 744 750 932 947  
 Pilet J 415 437  
 Pallas I 753 760  
 Pillot J 333 575 608  
 Pillsbury D M 68 577 605 873  
 Pinchot G H 478 489  
 Pincus W H 290 301  
 Pine L 342 353 828 873  
 Pinfield S 488  
 Pinign A F 700 721  
 Pinkerton H 778 780 784 785  
 Pine N W 705 706 720 752 761  
 Pirkle C I 465  
 von Pirquet C 13 238 260 274 282 301  
 Pirt S J 692  
 Pisano M A 876  
 Pitchford A 880  
 Pitt R M 622 646  
 Pittman M 253 726 731 733 735 740 741  
 Priyaratn P 657  
 Pizette M 340 341 354  
 Place E H 763 766 769  
 Platt A E 733 734 741  
 Plescher C 69  
 Plescia O J 211 212 706 721  
 Plesuco K L 850 880  
 Plorde J G 959  
 Plotkin S A 535 539 542 543  
 Plum N 712 721  
 Plunkett O A 876 881  
 Polevitzky K 575 607 774  
 Politynska E 758 760  
 Pollack A D 257 298 714 721  
 Pollak A 496 524  
 Pollard E 38 54 70  
 Pollitzer R 657 664 669 674 676 690 692 696  
 Pollock, A Q 834 874  
 Pollock M E 818 823  
 Pollock M R 420 437 741 750  
 Polson, A 572  
 Polter L 354  
 Pomaes Lebrón A 232 236 708 721 722  
 Pondman K W 206 210  
 Pons J 783  
 Poole A K 725 741  
 Pope C G 475 476 485 488 489  
 Pophadze M 699 721  
 Porro A 141  
 Porter A M 43 67  
 Porter H M 290  
 Porter R R 186 189 210 213  
 Portier 12  
 Portnoy B 643 645  
 Portnoy J 482 583 608  
 Posadas A 850 881  
 Poser C M 835 874  
 Potel J 755 757 761  
 Poulik M D 187 209 210  
 Powell B W 612 648  
 Powell D B 40 69 918 947  
 Powell E O 533 543 879  
 Powers G F 382 389  
 Pratt P C 529  
 Prausnitz C 263 301  
 Press J W 38 54 70  
 Preisz H 532 543  
 Prendergast R A 288 289  
 Press H M 210  
 Pressman D 213 256 303  
 Prestidge L S 130 144  
 Preston J M 458 466  
 Prevot A R 332 545 558 568 570  
 Price E V 457 463-467  
 Price K M 414 437  
 Price R D 684  
 Price S A 418 438  
 Price Z 529  
 Priest R J 236  
 Prigmore J H 536 542  
 Prince F M 690 692 693  
 Pringle John 14  
 Prior J A 696  
 Pritchett I W 725 741  
 Privat de Garilhe M 433  
 Procknow J J 879  
 Proffitt J E 324  
 Probaska J V 439  
 Proom H 531 540 543 544  
 Proske H O 346 353  
 Pruzansky J J 247 269 303  
 Pryles C V 354  
 Public Health Service Publication No 859 466  
 Puckett T F 852 881  
 Puffer R R 30 35 512 528  
 Pugh T F 911  
 Pullen R L 687 696  
 Pullinger E J 714 721  
 Puntigam F 696  
 Putkonen T 458 466  
 Putnam E W 881  
 Putnam F W 571  
 Putnam, P 528  
 Puziss M 537 538 543 544  
 Quab S F 667 691 693 695  
 Quan A L 823  
 Quan S F 690  
 Quastel J H 235

- Que P G 419 431 437  
 Quilligan J J Jr 788 805  
 Quinn E I 340 353
- Raab S D 233  
 Rabinovitz M 761 762  
 Rackemann F M 244 261 264  
 264  
 Radzinski G 213  
 Raffel S 275 505 506 528  
 Rafter G W 310 325  
 Rahman K A 450  
 Rahn O J 17 929 947  
 Rajbhandary U L 67 417 437  
 Rake G 442  
 Rall D P 294  
 Ralston D I 421 437 708  
 709 721  
 Rambo O N 834 874  
 Rammelkamp C H Jr 165  
 168 381 385 389 419 436  
 437 943 945  
 Ramon G 160 168 469 489  
 932 947  
 Ramond L 853 881 882  
 Ramos J 780 784  
 Ramsdell S G 244 245 261  
 Ramsey C H 645  
 Randall H 363 389  
 Randall H G 301  
 Randall J H 796 798 808  
 Randall R 599 608 670 671  
 691 693  
 Ransmeier J C 688  
 Ransom J P 617 71 693  
 Ranson F 562 570  
 Rantz L A 363 365 382 389  
 390 773  
 Rapp H J 192 207 209 213  
 Rappaport F T 788 291 300  
 301 755 761 852 881  
 Rappaport H 834 875  
 Rassfeld Sternberg I 567 572  
 Ratcliffe H L 513 528  
 Ratner B 253 260 262  
 Ratnoff H H 195 211 213  
 Rauch H 292  
 Ravenel J 17  
 Ravin H A 324  
 Ravitch M M 576 608  
 Ray J G Jr 543  
 Rayer 530  
 Raynaud M 159 764 562 568  
 571  
 Razin S 805  
 Reade G 569  
 Rebello J L 671  
 Rebeck J W 230 236  
 von Recklinghausen F D 215  
 Record B R 398  
 Reddin L Jr., 263  
 Reddish G F 976 947 948  
 Redfeam M S 705 771  
 Redman W 442, 450
- Redmond W B 496 528  
 Reed G B 555 571  
 Reed L J 148 168  
 Reed R W 752  
 Rees M W 41 67  
 Reeves R E 398  
 Reich E 136 138 147 144  
 Reichlin S 175 179  
 Reid J F 867 884  
 Reilly J 663 690  
 Reimann H A 810 811 821  
 824  
 Reising G 455 466  
 Reisman H E 302 303  
 Reissner D 512 518 526 528  
 Reissner R M 874 876 878  
 880 881  
 Reiss H J 755 761  
 Relyveld E 264  
 Remak H 862 885  
 Rementsova M M 707 721  
 Remington J S 186 213  
 Renaux E 532 543  
 Rendi R 130 136 144  
 Rene R M 696  
 Renout G 700 706 714 715  
 721  
 Repaske R 205 213 236  
 Report of The Royal Commis-  
 sion 413 437  
 Resnick H 351  
 Rettger L F 616 647 944  
 947  
 Reuck A V S 432  
 Reusse U 703 721  
 Reynafarje C 780 784  
 Reyniers J A 354  
 Reynolds F W 582 608  
 Reynold P E 124 144  
 Rheims M S 438  
 Rhoden D L 467  
 Rhodes C K 213  
 Ribble J C 438 945  
 Ribl F 50 66 168 304 306  
 625 647 706 716 718 848  
 880  
 Rice F A H 576 608  
 Rich A R 257 258 274 276  
 301 30 507 528  
 Richardson G M 414 434 437  
 Richardson L V 744  
 Richardson M A 703 719  
 Richardson R I 330 354  
 Richert J H 876  
 Richet C 12 241  
 Richmond M H 125 141 470  
 437  
 Richter C P 410  
 Richter M 765 302  
 Ricard Philippe 457 461  
 Riddell R W 885  
 Riddle J M 236  
 Ridgeway N A 855 882  
 Riecke W O 285
- Rifkind D 327 353 797 799  
 805 811 815 872 824  
 Riggs D B 805  
 Riley R L 516 578  
 Riley W F Jr 760  
 Rimington C 774  
 Rinker J N 41 69  
 Rippon J E 432  
 Risebrough R W 56 70  
 Rittenberg S C 64 71 531  
 543  
 Ritter H S 695  
 Ritz, H L 470 437  
 Rivers T M Jr 272 725 747  
 741  
 Rixford E 850 881  
 Robbins B 794  
 Robbins K C 265 273 307  
 744 750  
 Robbins P W 85 62 647  
 Rolerson B S 389  
 Roberts G B S 526  
 Roberts J H 57 68  
 Roberts J L 719  
 Roberts R S 661 690  
 Rolerts S J 714 721  
 Robertson D M 83  
 Robertson J D 50 54 55  
 Robertson K 346 353  
 Robertson M 559 561 569  
 571  
 Robertson O H 404 411 912  
 Robertson T 375 387  
 Robie J 692  
 Robin Charles 6 835 876  
 Robinow C F 39 45 46 53  
 55 59 61 63 66 67 70 85  
 Robinson A 512 528  
 Robinson B 946  
 Robinson D A 696  
 Robinson E A 717  
 Robinson E M 565 570  
 Robinson E S 411  
 Robinson H J 175 179  
 Robinson J 433  
 Robinson L H 805 808  
 Robish H A 54 70  
 Robson J E 425 434  
 Rocha H 163 179 731 736  
 Rocha e Silva M 247 248  
 Roche Aubert 676  
 Rockenmacher M 666 691  
 Rockey J H 184 211 213  
 267 302  
 Rode L J 70 721  
 Rodriguez O 851 884  
 Roe A E 397  
 Roe A S 393 394 398 409  
 410  
 Roessle W G 240  
 Roger C A 12  
 Roger M 85  
 Rogers H E 26 35 476 477  
 436-438



- Rogers H B 143  
 Rogers H J 50 66 122 123  
 143 144 373 389 420 438  
 Rogosa M 328 353  
 Roholt O A 189 213  
 Rolinson G N 432  
 Roman G 719  
 Romero A 845 879  
 Romig W R 47  
 Roodyn L 421 438  
 Rooney J R 544  
 Ropes M W 772 774 798 805  
 Rorsman H 242 265 266 302  
 Rosahn P D 575 604  
 Rosche J 349  
 Rose 729  
 Rose A H 437  
 Rose B 214 266 272 296  
 Rose C H 351  
 Rose F L 522 528  
 Rose M C 437  
 Rose N E 266 296 302  
 Rose N R 261 272 288 302  
 Rosebury Theodor 326 330  
 336 338 343 345 346 348  
 349 353 354  
 Rosen F S 211  
 Rosen H 690  
 Rosennau B J 580 607  
 Rosenau W 288 290 302  
 Rosenbach F J 413 438 757  
 761  
 Rosenbaum M J 823  
 Rosenberg E 732 741  
 Rosenberger H G 881  
 Rosenthal E 354  
 Rosenthal S R 509 518 528  
 Rosenwald A J 695  
 Ross J M 534 543  
 Ross P H 591 608  
 Ross R A 875 876  
 Ross W G 695  
 Rossmore H W 436  
 Roth F B 556 571  
 Roth I L 55 70  
 Roth L 567 570  
 Roth N G 531 543  
 Rothbard S 365 366 385 389  
 Rothenberg M S 296  
 Rother K 208 213  
 Rother U 208 213  
 Rothman S 583 607  
 Rothschild M A 297  
 Rothstein N 599 608  
 Rotstein J 290 291 298  
 Rountree P M 416 438  
 Roux E 11 17 469 489 579  
 607  
 Rowe J R 851 881  
 Rowles S L 348 354  
 Rowley D A 173 178 206  
 211 224 225 228 231 233  
 235 236 242 655 657 879  
 Rowsell H C 759 761  
 Roy J C 658  
 Royer R Q 354  
 Rozansky R 805  
 Rozeboom L E 782 784  
 Rubin A 804 808 809  
 Rubin H L 605  
 Rubin I L 350  
 Rudnev G P 688 689 696  
 Rudnev M M 722  
 Ruegger J M 822  
 Ruter M 796-799 808  
 Ruiz Sanchez F 632  
 Runyon E H 494 496 525  
 528 529  
 Russel Patrick 671  
 Russell B 871 885  
 Russell F F 910  
 Russell W F Jr 512 519 525  
 527 528  
 Russell W T 480 481 489  
 Rust J H Jr 667 690 693  
 Rustigian R 648  
 Rutenberg S H 324  
 Rutzky J 750  
 Ruys A C 52 53 69 602 609  
 793 795 797 806 809  
 Ryaguzov V S 705 721  
 Ryff J F 344 354  
 Rymkiewicz J 553 570  
 Rytel M 213 390 823  
 Ryter A 45 48 69 575 608  
 Rytomaa T 219 236  
 Sabesin S M 232 236  
 Sabin A B 790 800 808  
 Sabin B 414 438  
 Sabin F R 497 528  
 Sabouraud R 862 864 865  
 885  
 Sachdeva L D 679 694  
 Sachs H 635  
 Sacquet E 721  
 Sadler W W 712 721 946  
 Saenz B 589 608  
 Safford J W 571  
 Sage D N 751  
 Saigh A S 627  
 St John Brooks H 934 948  
 St Vincent L 945  
 Sainte Marie G 938 947  
 Saito K 235  
 Saito M T 881  
 Sakai W 420 438  
 Sako W 746  
 Saks A L 718  
 Salaman M H 796  
 Sall T 57 58 69 70  
 Salle A J 929 947  
 Salton M R J 44 47 49 50  
 54 65 66 70 121 144 198  
 204 213 363 389  
 Saltzman H A 829 873  
 Salvin S B 281 286 287 290  
 295 302 303 834 839 848  
 849 874 876 879 880  
 Salzman T E 696  
 Sampaio S A F 846 878  
 Samsonovich L G 716 717  
 Sanders E 419 438  
 Sanderson A R 49 50 70  
 Sandor 668  
 Sandoval H 717  
 Sandoval M A 827 829 830  
 872  
 Sanfelice F 832 874  
 Sangster G 612 614 646  
 Santer M 666  
 Saphra I 628 631 647  
 Sargeant K 536 537 543 544  
 Sartiwell P H 912  
 Sasaki H 789 809  
 Sashikata K 144  
 Saslaw H 696 695 697 848  
 880  
 Sato A 875  
 Saire J 872  
 Satre K 831 873  
 Sauer L W 743 750  
 Saunders G M 609  
 Saunders L Z 876 877  
 Sawyer M T 754 761  
 Sawyers S J 332 351 352 354  
 Sayers M H P 934 945  
 Sayers R R 346 353  
 Sbarra A J 225 226 236 756  
 760  
 Scadding 810  
 Scala A R 823  
 Schachman H K 56 70  
 Schacter M 297  
 Schaedler R W 34 35 176  
 177 179 305 306 508 513  
 525 528 939 945  
 Schaefer W B 491 495 496  
 525 527 529  
 Schaeffer F 737 741  
 Schaffarzick R W 797 808  
 Schaffer E M 341 352  
 Schantz E J 159  
 Schar M 694  
 Schary M 858 882  
 Schaub I G 410 796 808  
 Schaudinn F 333 574 608  
 Schauwecker R 804 808  
 Schayer R W 255 302  
 Scheibel I 565 570  
 Scheidegger J J 210  
 Schenck H R 853 882  
 Schenk H R 252  
 Schenken J R 846 879  
 Scherago M 276  
 Scherp H W 378 353 398  
 441 442 450 745 748 750  
 751  
 Scherrer R 64 66 70  
 Schack Bela 13 260 282 301  
 469 482 483 489

- Schuler L 608  
 Schild H O 245 246 748 301  
 Schildkraut C L 85  
 Schinke R T 790 808  
 Schindler J 761  
 Schinkel F G 288  
 Schipper G 410  
 Schirger A 341 354 719  
 Schlagenhauer 452  
 Schlessinger H 70  
 Schlingman A S 535 538 543  
 Schloss O M 261  
 Schlossberger H 579 598 599  
 606 608  
 Schlote F W 59 70  
 Schmutz B 688  
 Schmutz J M 330 354  
 Schmutz W C 363 389  
 Schmidt, W M 263  
 Schmitt J 689  
 Schmitz 637  
 Schneider H A 176 179 180  
 293 296 675 912  
 Schneider M D 599 608  
 Schneider P A 575 526 714  
 717 718 722  
 Schneiderman A 597 608  
 Schneerson S S 833 874  
 Schneiter R 541 543  
 Schoch M A 718  
 Schoenbach E B 449  
 Schoenheit, H W 505 525  
 Schoenlein 867 885  
 Schofield F D 942 948  
 Scholz, H G 533 542  
 Schon A H 214  
 Schonder A A 143  
 Schonlein Johann 6  
 Schottmuller H 343 357 389  
 Schroder J H 801 805  
 Schroeter A L 456 466  
 Schubert J H 458 465 466  
 848 880  
 Schuchardt L F 751  
 Schuhardt V T 593 608 702  
 721  
 Schulman J L 177 179  
 Schultz E A 246  
 Schultz W 369 389  
 Schultze H E 184 213  
 Schulze M L 599 608  
 Schur P H 192 213  
 Schutze H 667 678 679  
 Schwab J H 364 389  
 Schwabacher H 772 774  
 Schwartz L L 152 156 167  
 418 433  
 Schwartz M 264  
 Schwartz R H 269  
 Schwartz S 294 307  
 Schwarz J 833 838 842 843  
 848 849 874 875 878 880  
 Sweet R 134 143  
 Schweinburg F B 3 4  
 Schweitzer Albert 24  
 Schwentker F F 272  
 Scott A C 436  
 Scott D B 348 354 774  
 Scott H G 696  
 Scott H S 144  
 Scott W M 724 725 734  
 741  
 Scrimshaw N S 34 35 176  
 177 179 939 948  
 Scroggie A E 247  
 Seabury J H 343 353 835  
 875 877  
 Seal S C 667 693  
 Seal U S 711 718  
 Sealy W C 872  
 Seastone C V 154 167  
 Second Symposium on Listeria  
 Infection 757 762  
 Seeborn W 270 285  
 Seegal H C 256 271 296  
 299 302  
 Seeliger H P R 752 753 755  
 756 760 761 833 857 858  
 860 873 875 883 884  
 Segretan G 833 872 873  
 Seign P 346 352  
 Sehon A H 265 767 301 302  
 529  
 Seibert H B 308 324 375  
 497 529  
 Seibold H R 857 883  
 Seiffert G 777 783 803  
 Seki Y 233  
 Selbie F H 424 438  
 Seligman E 628  
 Seligmann E 624  
 Sellards A W 731 741 777  
 784  
 Sellers M I 496 529  
 Sellers T F 851 875 880  
 Sells C J 265 303  
 Seltzer S 350  
 Semambo Y H 596 607  
 Semmelweis I P 6 926  
 Sen A 657  
 Senderi M 526  
 Senterfit J H 298  
 Sergeant E 593 608  
 Sergeyev V M 541 690  
 Sergeunov R 719  
 Seronde J 35  
 Serviansky B 848 880  
 Sewer J L 507 508 529  
 Shaffer H T 421 438  
 Shaffer J H 240 91 292 307  
 Shaffer J M 939 946  
 Shaffer M F 399 403 410  
 411  
 Shah H B 421 438  
 Shank R E 740  
 Shannon J A 778  
 Shannon R C 784  
 Shapiro J 769 301  
 Sharf M 657  
 Sharland T R 488  
 Sharp D G 571  
 Sharp J T 367 389 794 806  
 Shattock F M F 360 389  
 Shaugnessy H J 641 647  
 Shaw C 433 580 606  
 Shaw J H 347 351  
 Shaw L W 508 528  
 Shearer A R 768  
 Sheckmeister I L 924 948  
 Sheinin E 54 70  
 Sheldon H 658  
 Sheldon W H 176 179 231  
 236 336 354  
 Shelley W H 24 266 270  
 302  
 Shepard C C 281 302 527  
 523 529 682  
 Shepard M C 790 796 808  
 Shepherd C J 142  
 Shepherd P A 944 946  
 Sherman J D 331 354  
 Sherman, R 568  
 Sherman W B 263 270  
 Sherry S 390  
 Sherwood N P 247  
 Sheth U K 325  
 Shevtsova Z V 721  
 Shibley G S 742  
 Shiga K 635 637 642 647  
 Shigeura H T 140 144  
 Shilo M 230 236  
 Shimanuka H 541  
 Shimazono Y 862 884  
 Shimizu K 761  
 Shunfield H 29 36 430 438  
 945 948  
 Shirer 341  
 Shklar I L 797 808  
 Shlyakhov E N 541 690  
 Shoater E A 435  
 Shockman G D 54 70  
 Shoemaker A 696  
 Shoetensack 787 801  
 Sholl L H 760  
 Shooter R A 430 437 439  
 Shope R E 725 776 730  
 741  
 Shortley P G 297  
 Stottin E 970 948  
 Shotts E H 945  
 Showacre J L 637 647  
 Shrivastava H L 693  
 Shulman J A 310 325  
 Shulman N R 272  
 Shuman, R D 758 762  
 Shunway C N 614 647  
 Schwartzman G 293 305 306  
 Sibal L H 354  
 Sidaway D A 354  
 Siddiqui P 658  
 Siddle P J 807  
 Siegel A C 390

- Siegel B R 269 302  
 Siegel C D 234  
 Siegrist M L 876  
 Siess E E 450 947  
 Silich V A 721  
 Siliker J H 327 350  
 Silverman C 450 947  
 Silverman F N 880  
 Silverman M S 666 693  
 Silverman S J 705 721 751 761  
 Silvers W K 288 290 297  
 Silverstein A M 286 288 874  
 Silverstein E 767 768  
 Simmons G C 700 722  
 Simmons J S 409 912  
 Simon E M 721  
 Simon H J 36 420 425 438  
 Simon R D 424 438  
 Simond P L 664  
 Simons S A 688 881  
 Simonsen M 289 302  
 Simpson C F 597 608  
 Simpson W G 465 467  
 Simpson W M 664  
 Sims M R 213  
 Singer J I 855 881 882  
 Singer S J 212  
 Singh C 755 760  
 Siqueira M 301  
 Siskind G 288  
 Sisson A 527  
 Sistrom W R 54 56 69 70  
 Sjoquist J 417 436  
 Skaar P D 81 85  
 Skaggs P K 466  
 Skailly P 542  
 Skarnes R C 172 179 229 236  
 Skelly H J 338 354  
 Slade H D 44 69 70 157 360 361 376 387 389  
 Slamp W C 357 361 389 390  
 Slater R J 183 184 213  
 Slavin H 748 751  
 Slayman C L 127 144  
 Slayman C W 127 144  
 Slayter H S 55 68  
 Sleight S H 599 608  
 Slein M W 537 543  
 Slepecky R A 57 70  
 Slingerland D W 798 808  
 Smadel J 28 36 145 602 605 608 646 647 692  
 Smetana H F 810 821 823  
 Smiley 810  
 Smillie W G 915  
 Smirnov S M 716 722  
 Smith A B 648  
 Smith A C 571  
 Smith A G 836 876  
 Smith C A 229 236 464  
 Smith C D 763 769  
 Smith C E 291 301 851 853 880 881  
 Smith C H 415 438  
 Smith C W 752 761  
 Smith D A 668 693  
 Smith D D 436  
 Smith D T 346 354 830 835 836 842 843 847 854 857 859 877 878 880 883  
 Smith E L 119 159  
 Smith Geddes 912 913 948  
 Smith G W 835 875  
 Smith H 154 167 168 173 179 180 535 538 543 544 691 692 706 716 722  
 Smith H H 528  
 Smith H L Jr 657 658  
 Smith H M 910  
 Smith H W 424 438  
 Smith J 603 604 612 646  
 Smith J E 659 663 690  
 Smith J G 842 843 877 878  
 Smith J H 934 948  
 Smith J L 666 691  
 Smith J M 175 179 424 425 439  
 Smith K E 784  
 Smith L 119  
 Smith L D 553 555 557 558 561 564 565 671  
 Smith L S 575  
 Smith M E 569  
 Smith M H D 524  
 Smith M L 418 425 438  
 Smith M M 154 168 827 828 872  
 Smith M R 230 233 236  
 Smith N R 350 433 529 695  
 Smith O H 603  
 Smith P B 945  
 Smith P F 788 791 795 797 802 803 805 807 809  
 Smith R C 526  
 Smith R F 281 286 290 302 834 874  
 Smith H H 874  
 Smith Theobald 16 17 19 31 36 241 469 489 495 912  
 Smith W 154 168 426 435  
 Smith W E 771 773 774 796 797 805  
 Smith W W 233  
 Smolens J 743 744  
 Smyth H F 534 544  
 Smythe P M 564 571  
 Sneath P H A 663 690  
 Snell E E 466  
 Snell E S 309 310 323 325  
 Snow G A 526  
 Snow John 16 912  
 Snyder E M 880  
 Snyder G A C 680 694  
 Snyder H 768  
 Snyder M J 306 324 646  
 Snyder M L 338 353  
 Soberheim G 535 544  
 Soberon y Parra G 590 606  
 Socransky H S 333 346 351 352 354 575 606  
 Soganaes R F 348 354  
 Sokhey H S 665 671  
 Sokoloff H 466  
 Solotorovsky M 253 477 488 839 875  
 Somerson N L 790 796 805 808 809 818 827 824  
 Sonne Carl 635  
 Sonnenwirth A C 332 354  
 Soper H E 912  
 Sophianopoulos A J 198 213  
 Sordelli A 558 571  
 Sorensen L J 874 885  
 Sorensen R H 881  
 Sorkin E 232 236 275 297  
 Soto Figuero E 854 882  
 Sowinski R 69  
 Soybel W 324  
 Spain W C 264  
 Spallanzani Lazaro 2 3 918  
 Sparks D W 263 301  
 Spaulding E H 332 355  
 Spector S 805  
 Spector W O 223 224 233 235 236  
 Speers R S 232 236  
 Spence J B 436  
 Spencer G R 682 758 761  
 Spertzel R O 697  
 Speyer J F 132 144  
 Spiegelberg H L 207 212 213  
 Spiegelman S 60 70 129 130 141  
 Spilman W M 84  
 Spink W W 305 306 325 414 415 438 439 658 709 710 712 714 716 718 722  
 Spitznagel J K 229 237 410 499 529  
 Spivack M L 667 671 693  
 Spizzen J 85  
 Splendore A 844 879  
 Sporer A 856 883  
 Spotts C K 132 133 144  
 Sprecher M W 766 767 769  
 Sprince H 390  
 Sprunz H 178 180 645 657  
 Sprunt D H 343 352 683 772 774  
 Spurr H D 666  
 Squire R A 721  
 Srikantan T N 693  
 Stableforth A W 711 722  
 Stacey M 397 398 497 529  
 Stalfeth H J 760  
 Stahelm H 53 70 222 236  
 Stahl F W 85  
 Stahly G L 414 438  
 Stallybrass C O 912

- Stamatin N 532 544  
 Stamler F W 294  
 Stamm W P 934 945  
 Stamp L 425 428 438  
 Stander R W 341 352  
 Standfast A F B 744 745 750  
 Stanier R Y 53 56 58 61 65  
 68 70 104 107 115 118  
 119 124 132 133 144  
 Stanley J L 154 168 543 544  
 Stanley N F 753 754 757  
 761  
 Stansberry M H 687 697  
 Stanworth D M 187 210  
 Stanziale W G 686 697  
 Stark H E 692  
 Starkey D H 636  
 Stavins P 273 289 302  
 Staub A M 168 693 694  
 Stavitsky A M 276 600 602  
 608  
 Steabben 787 800  
 Stead E A Jr 324 325  
 Stearman R L 543  
 Stedman R L 978 948  
 Steel K J 454 466  
 Steele J H 605 713  
 Steenken W Jr 493 528  
 Steer A 465  
 Stefanye D 684 697  
 Stein C M 531 534 540 541  
 544  
 Stein G J 593 608  
 Stein H J 796 798 808  
 Steiner P E 718  
 Steiner Wourisch A 284  
 Steinhäus E A 696  
 Steinhorn S R 344 354  
 Steiniger 676  
 Steinman H G 577 608  
 Stelling E 351  
 Stenbridge V A 289 302  
 Stempfen H 658  
 Stephens M 696  
 Stern H 416 438  
 Stern J L 132 144  
 Sternberg Karl 391  
 Sternberg T H 874 876 878  
 880 881 885  
 Sterne M 530 532 535 538  
 539 541 544 545 555 560  
 565 567 568 571 572 702  
 722  
 Stetson C A 232 236 254  
 288 289 293 294 302  
 Stetten DeW Jr 119  
 Steuer W 681  
 Stevens A H 264  
 Stevens F A 286  
 Stevens K M 934 935 939  
 948  
 Stevens M F 418 434 475  
 476 489  
 Stevens W C 773 774  
 Stevenson G T 188 213  
 Stevenson J C 885  
 Stewart F S 327 354  
 Stewart G T 430 438  
 Stewart M A 731 740  
 Stewart S M 558 571  
 Steyn H S 705 722  
 Stenon G 345 352  
 Sterlin H 306  
 Stoff D P 876  
 Stiffel C 206 209  
 Stiles W W 607  
 Stullman E G 725 741  
 Stinebring W R 232 236 286  
 708 709 712 721 722  
 Stock A H 361 369 375 390  
 571  
 Stockard J L 609  
 Stockdale P 867 885  
 Stockell A 159  
 Stocker H A D 43 67 70  
 82 85  
 Stocks P 912  
 Stoddard J L 832 875  
 Stoeckenius W 203 213  
 Stoenner H G 700 722  
 Stojanovich C J 696  
 Stokes E J 791 797 798 804  
 809  
 Stokes J Jr 299  
 Stokes W R 840 877  
 Stollerman G H 206 213 365  
 366 390  
 Stone E R 407 410  
 Stone J L 936 947  
 Stone S H 242 252 255 276  
 283 286 298 300 302 303  
 Stoner M G 540 544  
 Stovell P L 759 761  
 Strange R E 154 168 537  
 541 544  
 Strangeways W I 766 769  
 Strasdine G A 54 67  
 Straub M 879 880  
 Strauss B 199 205 211 215  
 235  
 Strauss N 478 480 489  
 Strauss R E 828 873  
 Stresmann E 270  
 Stricker G 664  
 Strickland A 568  
 Strominger J L 49 50 66 70  
 115 119 122 125 143 145  
 417 437  
 Strong P S 871  
 Strong R E 588 609 777 784  
 Strug L H 877  
 Stryker L M 396 411  
 Stuart B M 687 696  
 Stuart C A 614 615 648  
 Stuart R D 458 466  
 Stuczynski L 603  
 Sturm E 731 741  
 Sub Committee on the Family  
 Neisseriaceae 450  
 Suchanova M 794 809  
 Sugahara T 299  
 Suganuma A 414 438  
 Sugg J V 874  
 Suug J Y 244  
 Sugiyama H 420 433 438 439  
 Sulitzeanu D 706 714 720  
 722  
 Sullivan M 569 789  
 Sulzbacher F 753 761  
 Sulzberger M M 280 284 285  
 287 303 872 885  
 Sulzberger M H 284  
 Surgalla M J 433 668 678  
 690 694  
 Suter E 224 232 236 278 493  
 498 508 509 529  
 Suter W E 277 278 297  
 Sutherland F H 715 720  
 Sutherland J W 743 750  
 Sutton Harvey 912  
 Sutton L E 763 766 769  
 Sutton R M 352  
 Suzue G 414 439  
 Svihus R H 457 466  
 Swadey J G 881  
 Swann R H A 333 354 575  
 592 609  
 Swann M B R 752 761  
 Swartz M N 690  
 Sweeney F J Jr 657 658  
 Swellingrebel N H 17 19 31  
 36 670 674 693  
 Swift H F 256 276  
 Swift M F 301  
 Switzer W P 801 809  
 Sword C P 753 762  
 Sykes G 9 4228 948  
 Sykes J 67  
 Sylvester J C 433  
 Sylvester R F 438  
 Symmers H 856 883  
 Symposium 609  
 Syverson J T 607 630 634  
 648 823  
 Szabalski W 131 138 141 147  
 Szkyfcs B 713 722  
 Tager M 419 433  
 Takagi A 57 58 69 70  
 Takahashi H 883  
 Takeya K 49 57 69 70  
 Tal C 638 648  
 Talbot J C 823  
 Talbot J M 663 689 690  
 Taliaferro W H 298 299  
 Talmade D W 192 204 214  
 Tamm I H  
 Tanaka N 133 138 144  
 Tanaka S 414 439  
 Tanami J 354

- Siegel B R 269 302  
 Siegel C D 234  
 Siegrist M L 876  
 Siess E E 410 947  
 Silich V A 721  
 Siliker J H 327 350  
 Silverman C 450 947  
 Silverman F N 880  
 Silverman M S 666 693  
 Silverman S J 705 721 753 761  
 Silvers W K 288 290 297  
 Silverstein A M 286 288 874  
 Silverstein E 767 768  
 Simmons G C 700 722  
 Simmons J S 409 912  
 Simon E M 721  
 Simon H J 36 420 425 438  
 Simon H D 424 438  
 Simond P L 664  
 Simons E A 688 881  
 Simonsen M 289 302  
 Simpson C F 597 608  
 Simpson W G 465 467  
 Simpson W M 664  
 Sims M R 213  
 Singer J I 855 881 882  
 Singer S J 212  
 Singh C 755 760  
 Siqueira M 301  
 Siskind G 288  
 Sissons H A 527  
 Sistrom W R 54 56 69 70  
 Sjoquist J 417 436  
 Skaar P D 81 85  
 Skaggs P K 466  
 Skailly P 542  
 Skarnes R C 172 179 229 236  
 Skelly B J 338 354  
 Slade H D 44 69 70 357 360 361 376 387 389  
 Stamp W C 357 361 389 390  
 Slater R J 183 184 213  
 Slavin B 748 751  
 Slayman, C L 127 144  
 Slayman C W 127 144  
 Slayter H S 55 68  
 Sleight M D 599 608  
 Slein M W 537 543  
 Slepceky R A 57 70  
 Slinnerland D W 798 808  
 Smadel J 28 36 145 602 605 608 646 647 692  
 Smetana H F 810 821 823  
 Smuley 810  
 Smullic W G 915  
 Smurnov S M 716 722  
 Smith A B 648  
 Smith A C 571  
 Smith A G 836 876  
 Smith C A 229 236 464  
 Smith C D 763 769  
 Smith C H 291 301 851 853 880 881  
 Smith C H 415 438  
 Smith C W 752 761  
 Smith D A 668 693  
 Smith D D 436  
 Smith D T 346 354 830 835 836 842 843 847 854 857 859 877 878 880 883  
 Smith E L 119 159  
 Smith Geddes 912 913 948  
 Smith G W 835 875  
 Smith H 154 167 168 173 179 180 535 538 543 544 691 692 706 716 722  
 Smith H H 528  
 Smith H L Jr 657 658  
 Smith H M 910  
 Smith H W 424 438  
 Smith J 603 604 612 646  
 Smith J E 659 663 690  
 Smith J G 842 843 877 878  
 Smith J H 934 948  
 Smith J L 666 691  
 Smith J M 175 179 424 425 439  
 Smith K E 784  
 Smith L 119  
 Smith L D 553 555 557 558 561 564 565 671  
 Smith L S 575  
 Smith M B 569  
 Smith M H D 524  
 Smith M L 418 425 438  
 Smith M M 154 168 827 828 872  
 Smith M R 230 233 236  
 Smith N R 350 413 529 695  
 Smith O H 603  
 Smith P H 945  
 Smith P F 788 791 795 797 802 803 805 807 809  
 Smith R C 526  
 Smith R F 281 286 290 302 834 874  
 Smith R H 874  
 Smith Theobald 16 17 19 31 36 241 469 489 495 912  
 Smith W 154 168 426 435  
 Smith W E 771 773 774 796 797 805  
 Smith W W 233  
 Smolens J 743 744  
 Smyth H F 534 544  
 Smythe P M 564 571  
 Sneath P H A 663 690  
 Snell E E 466  
 Snell E S 309 310 321 325  
 Snow G A 526  
 Snow John 16 912  
 Snyder E M 880  
 Snyder G A C 680 694  
 Snyder H 768  
 Snyder M J 306 324 646  
 Snyder M L 338 353  
 Soberheim G 535 544  
 Soberon y Parra G. 590 606  
 Socransky S B 333 346 351 352 354 575 606  
 Soggnacs R F 348 354  
 Sokhey S S 665 671  
 Sokoloff H 466  
 Solotorovsky M 253 477 488 839 875  
 Somerson N L 790 796 805 808 809 818 822 824  
 Sonne Carl 635  
 Sonnenwirth A C 337 354  
 Soper H E 912  
 Sophianopoulos A J 198 213  
 Sordelli A 558 571  
 Sorensen L J 874 885  
 Sorensen R H 881  
 Sorkin E 232 236 275 297  
 Soto Figuero E 854 882  
 Sowinski R 69  
 Soybel W 324  
 Spain W C 264  
 Spallanzani, Lazaro 2 3 918  
 Sparks D B 263 301  
 Spaulding E H 332 355  
 Spector S 805  
 Spector W G 223 224 233 235 236  
 Speers R S 232 236  
 Spence J B 436  
 Spencer G R 682 758 761  
 Spertzel R O 697  
 Speyer J F 132 144  
 Spiegelberg H L 207 212 213  
 Spiegelman S. 60 70 129 130 141  
 Spilman W M 84  
 Spink W W 305 306 325 414 415 438 439 658 709 710 712 714 716 718 722  
 Spitznagel J K 229 237 410 499 529  
 Spivack M L 667 671 693  
 Spizizen J B  
 Splendore A 844 879  
 Sporer A 856 883  
 Spotts C R 132 133 144  
 Sprecher M W 766 767 769  
 Sprince H 390  
 Sprinz H 178 180 645 657  
 Sprunt D H 343 352 688 772 774  
 Spurr E D 666  
 Squire R A 721  
 Srikanthan T N 693  
 Stableforth A W 711 722  
 Stacey M 397 398 497 529  
 Stafseth H J 760  
 Stahelm H 53 70 22. 236  
 Stahl F W 85  
 Stahly G L 414 438  
 Stallybrass C O 912

- Stamatin N 532 544  
 Stamler F W 294  
 Stamm W P 934 945  
 Stamp L 425 428 438  
 Stander R W 341 352  
 Standfast A F B 744 745 750  
 Stanier R Y 53 56 58 61 65  
 68 70 104 107 115 118  
 119 124 137 133 144  
 Stanley J L 154 168 543 544  
 Stanley N F 753 754 757  
 761  
 Stansberry M H 687 697  
 Stanworth D R 187 210  
 Stanziale W G 686 697  
 Stark H E 692  
 Starkey D H 636  
 Stastny P 273 289 302  
 Staub A M 168 693 694  
 Stavitsky A B 276 600 602  
 608  
 Steabben 787 800  
 Stead E A Jr 324 325  
 Stearman R L 543  
 Stedman R L 928 948  
 Steel K J 454 466  
 Steele J H 605 713  
 Steenken, W Jr 493 528  
 Steer A 465  
 Stefanye H 684 697  
 Stein C D 531 534 540 541  
 544  
 Stein G J 593 608  
 Stein R J 796 798 808  
 Steiner P E 718  
 Steiner Wourlich A 284  
 Steinhilber E A 696  
 Steinhorn S R 344 354  
 Steiniger 676  
 Steinman H G 577 608  
 Stelling E, 351  
 Stenbridge V A 289 302  
 Stenpen H 658  
 Stephens M 696  
 Stern H 416 438  
 Stern J L 132 144  
 Sternberg Karl 391  
 Sternberg T H 874 876 878  
 880 881 885  
 Sterne M 530 53 535 538  
 539 541 544 545 555 560  
 565 567 568 571 572 702  
 Stetson C A 232 236 254  
 288 289 293 294 302  
 Stetten DeW Jr 119  
 Steuer W 681  
 Stevens A H 264  
 Stevens F A, 286  
 Stevens K M 934 935 939  
 948  
 Stevens M F 418 434 475  
 476 489  
 Stevens W C 773 774  
 Stevenson G T 188 213  
 Stevenson J C 885  
 Stewart F S 327 354  
 Stewart G T 430 438  
 Stewart M A 731 740  
 Stewart S E 558 571  
 Steyn H S 705 722  
 Stenen G 345 352  
 Sterlin H 306  
 Stuff D P 876  
 Stufel C 206 209  
 Stiles W W 607  
 Sullman E G 725 741  
 Sunebing W R 232 236 286  
 708 709 712 721 722  
 Stock A H 361 369 375 390  
 571  
 Stockard J L 609  
 Stockdale P 867 885  
 Stockell A 159  
 Stocker H A D 43 67 70  
 82 85  
 Stocks P 912  
 Stoddard J L 83 875  
 Stoeckenius W 203 213  
 Stoenner H G 700 722  
 Stojanovich C J 696  
 Stokes E J 791 797 798 804  
 809  
 Stokes J Jr 299  
 Stokes W R 840 877  
 Stollerman G H 206 213 365  
 366 390  
 Stone E R 407 410  
 Stone J L 936 947  
 Stone S H 242 252 255 276  
 283 286 298 300 302 303  
 Stoner M G 540 544  
 Stovell P L 759 761  
 Strange R E 154 168 537  
 541 544  
 Straneways W I 766 769  
 Strasidine G A 54 67  
 Straub M 879 880  
 Strauss H 199 205 211 225  
 235  
 Strauss N 478 480 489  
 Strauss R E 878 873  
 Stresemann E 270  
 Stricker G 664  
 Strickland A 568  
 Stromminger J L, 49 50 66 70  
 115 119 122 125 143 145  
 417 437  
 Strong P S 821  
 Strong R P 588 609 777 784  
 Strug L H 877  
 Stryker L M 396 411  
 Stuart B M, 687 696  
 Stuart C A 614 615 648  
 Stuart, R D 458 466  
 Stuczynski L 603  
 Sturm E 731 741  
 Sub Committee on the Family  
 Neisseriaceae 450  
 Suchanova M 794 809  
 Sugahara T 299  
 Suganuma A 414 438  
 Sugg J V 874  
 Sugg J Y 244  
 Sugiyama H 470 433 438 439  
 Sulitzeanu D 706 714 720  
 722  
 Sullivan R 569 789  
 Sulzbacher F 753 761  
 Sulzberger M H 280 784 285  
 287 303 872 885  
 Sulzberger M H 284  
 Surgalla M J 433 668 678  
 690 694  
 Suter E 224 232 236 278 493  
 498 508 509 529  
 Suter W E 277 278 297  
 Sutherland F H 715 720  
 Sutherland I W 743 750  
 Sutton Harvey 912  
 Sutton L E 763 766 769  
 Sutton R M 352  
 Suzise G 414 439  
 Svihs R H 457 466  
 Swadey J G 881  
 Swain R H A 333 354 574  
 592 609  
 Swann M B R 752 761  
 Swartz M N 690  
 Sweeney F J Jr 657 658  
 Swellengrebel N H 17 19 31  
 36 670 674 693  
 Swift H F 256 276  
 Swift M F 301  
 Switzer W P 801 809  
 Sword C P 753 762  
 Sykes G H 4928 948  
 Sykes J 67  
 Sylvester J C 433  
 Sylvester H F 438  
 Symmers D 856 883  
 Symposium 609  
 Syvertson J T 607 630 634  
 648 823  
 Szabalski W 131 138 141 147  
 Szyfres H 713 722  
 Tager M 419 433  
 Takagi A 57 58 69 70  
 Takahashi H 883  
 Takeya K 49 57 69 70  
 Tal C 638 648  
 Talbot J C 823  
 Talbot J M 663 689 690  
 Tahaferro W H 298 299  
 Talmade D W 192 704 214  
 Tamn I 8  
 Tanaka, N 133 138 144  
 Tanaka, S., 414 439  
 Tanami I 354

- Taneja B L 694  
 Tanford C 190 209  
 Tam T 580 582 609  
 Tanner F W 564 565 671  
 Tanner K II 645  
 Tanner L P 564 571  
 Taran I F 707 722  
 Taranta A 192 214  
 Tardieu G 325  
 Tarlov I M 569  
 Taschdjian C L 836 838 875 876  
 Tasman A 939 948  
 Tataki II 558 571  
 Tatum E L 78 85 127 144  
 Tatum H W 332 352  
 Taubeneck U 46 70  
 Tauber H 455 466  
 Taubert H D 836 876  
 Taylor A R 338 354  
 Taylor C E 35 179 939 948  
 Taylor E S 927 946  
 Taylor G 465  
 Taylor G W 439  
 Taylor Ian 912  
 Taylor J R E 612 648 795 807  
 Taylor M J 154 166 534 541 544  
 Taylor R R 876  
 Taylor Robinson II 793 798 803 805 809 818 824  
 Tchan Y T 64 70  
 Tempest D W 544  
 Tennenbaum J I 247 263 303  
 Tenney R I 716  
 Terayama T 439  
 Tergis F 353 354  
 Terplan K 283 505 529  
 Terra F 859 884  
 Terrell E E 404 411  
 Terres G 298  
 Thackeray E J 692  
 Thal A P 418 439  
 Thal E 678 680 693 694  
 Thal G 325  
 Thayer J D 451 453 455 458 459 461 465 467  
 Thaysen E 35  
 Theiss O 803 809  
 Theodore J H 593 604  
 Therapeutic Trials Committee of the Swedish National Association Against Tuberculosis 510 529  
 Thiele E H 751  
 Thiels J A 269 301  
 Thjotta T 725 731 741  
 Thomas E W 607  
 Thomas L 288 293 298 300 304 306 325 445 822  
 Thomas R C 946  
 Thomas W L 350 875  
 Thompson F A Jr 580 607  
 Thompson G E 298  
 Thompson L 772 774  
 Thompson R E 144  
 Thompson R K 883  
 Thompson W P 784  
 Thomson A 716 722  
 Thomson II 36  
 Thomson I G 596 609  
 Thomson J G 487  
 Thomson P D 719  
 Thorbecke G 338 354  
 Thorne C B 154 166  
 Thorne C II 531 532 536 537 541 543  
 Thorp F Jr 755 760  
 Thorsson K G 50 70  
 Threnn R II 124 144 145  
 Thygesen P 35  
 Tickner C 527  
 Tiedemann J H 459 465 467  
 Tigert W II 645 682 686 696 697 944 948  
 Tilden E II 784 884  
 Tillett W S 154 168 279 289 300 372 390 399 408 410 411  
 Timakov V D 50 66  
 Timmons C 745  
 Timpe A 494 496 529  
 Tinelli II 694  
 Tinker M 745 750 751  
 Tion F 693  
 Tiselius A 183 214  
 Tisnado Munoz S 781 783  
 Tissieres A 55 56 70  
 Toaff II 757 761 762  
 Tobe A D 303  
 Todd E W 156 168 211 369 371 390 401 411  
 Todd J M 658  
 Todd II H 300  
 Toennies G 70  
 Toh C C S 340 354  
 Tokuda S 250 252 303  
 Tokuyasu K 529  
 Tolhurst J C 527  
 Toll D 947  
 Tomast T B 211 300  
 Tomcsik J 44 45 61 66 71  
 Tompkins V N 879  
 Tompsett R 340 341 354 426 438 510 527  
 Tong J L 858 883  
 Toogood J H 261  
 Toomey J A 745 751  
 Top F H 912  
 Topley W W C 634 751 912  
 Torii H 884  
 Torres M 884  
 Toshach S R 466  
 Tournier V 663 690  
 Toussaint A J 204 212  
 Towers A G 431 436  
 Townsley J II 350  
 Townsley H C 291  
 Trainin N 199 211  
 Trakatelis A C 286  
 Trapani R J 645 646  
 Traub F B 562 571  
 Traum J 698 719  
 Traut II R 135 144  
 Travis II E 858 883  
 Treadwell II II 691  
 Treffers H P 205 212  
 Trefouel 14  
 Treger A 875  
 Trejos A 845 859 879 884  
 Tremaine M M 285  
 Tresselt H B 695  
 Trethewie E II 248  
 Trever R W 324 717  
 Trevisan V 659 827  
 Trexler P C 354  
 Trimble J II 852 881  
 Trukillo A 872  
 Trump J G 923 948  
 Trupin J S 695  
 Truszczyński M 758 762  
 Tsareva S A 697  
 Tscheuschner I 43 71  
 Tsuchiya T 834 839 875 876  
 Tuberculosis Chemotherapy Trials Committee Medical Research Council 511 529  
 Tucker V M 948  
 Tuft L 244 261  
 Tulasne R 50 71  
 Tulis J J 683 697  
 Tullock W J 561 571  
 Tumpey J H 260  
 Tunstall L H 436  
 Turcotte R 520 529  
 Turk D C 741  
 Turk J L 286 303  
 Turner G C 329 331 355 414 436 439  
 Turner II C 809 824  
 Turner L 809  
 Turner T B 573 576 578 580 582 587 592 600 604 606 607 609  
 Turpin A 159  
 Tuttle A L 127 144  
 Twort D N 9 351  
 Twort F W 522 529  
 Tyler J II 784  
 Tynes B S 344 345 354 873  
 Tytell A 568  
 Tytler W H 275  
 Tyzzer E E 777 782 784  
 Uchida T 85 622 647  
 Udagawa M 875  
 Uetake II 85  
 Uhlenhuth P 544 580 609  
 Uhr J W 287 303 933 936 948  
 Ulrich E W 883

- Umbarger E. 119  
 Umezawa H 144  
 Updyke E L 389 433 488 945  
 Urbaschek H 708 722  
 Urbe C 777  
 Urel J 390  
 Urnhara T 301  
 Urteaga, H O 781 784  
 Urteaga, O 781 784  
 USPHS 514 579  
 Ustvedt H J 509 529  
 U S Veterans Administration—  
   Armed Forces 511 579  
 Utell M 543  
 Utz, J P 344 354 835 875  
 Uzman L L 833 874  
  
 Vaerman J P 211  
 Vakizadeh J 280 303  
 Valentine E H 883  
 Valentine F C O 418 437 725 741  
 Vallee B 809  
 Vallery Radot P 4 19  
 VanArsdel P P 265 269 303  
 Vanbreuseghem R 862 868 883 885  
 van Deenen L L M 568  
 Vanderhooft G F 433  
 van der Kuip L 823  
 Vanderlinde R J 549  
 Vanderstoep E M 466  
 van der Veen J 821 824  
 Vander Veer A 264  
 Vandviere H M 303  
 Vandviere M R 303  
 Van Dorssen C A 679  
 van Drummelen G C 700 703 705 715 722  
 van Eeden J 850 880  
 Van Heerden K M 700 715 722  
 van Herick, W 873  
 van Heyningen W E 162 168 418 434 545 556 562 563 568 570 571 638 648  
 Van Holde K E 213  
 van Isteron W 41 42 52 53 69 793 809  
 van Leeuwenhoek Antony 1 2 39  
 Van Liew R 299  
 Vanner W E 210 767 798  
 Van Ness G H 534 540 544  
 Van Pernis P A 849 880  
 Van Rensburg S W 700 715 72  
 Van Rooyen C E 768  
 van Slyke C J 458 461 466 467  
 van Tubergen R P 58 59 67  
 van Uden N 838 876  
 Varah E 353  
 Varco R L 290 291 298  
 Varela G 590 609  
 Vargas B 341 354  
 Vasquez D 130 136 145  
 Vasquez J I 259 772 298  
 Vaughan J H 263 269 302  
 Veillon A 343 355 770  
 Venkatramen K V 651  
 Vercauteren R 233 236  
 Verennova N K 688 697  
 Verges P 342 353  
 Verse M 832 875  
 Vershulova P A 716 722  
 Vertue H StH 451 467  
 Verwey W F 417 439 743 751  
 Veszpremi D 345 355  
 Veterans Administration 519 529  
 Victor J 721  
 Vidal R J 884  
 Vieuzeux 440  
 Vighani E C 500 529  
 Vignal G 677  
 Villemain J A 6 490  
 Vincent M H 827  
 Visscher M B 325  
 Voeltz H 40 53 71  
 Vogel E H Jr 435  
 Vogel H 597 609  
 Vogel N J 680 694  
 Voel R A 834 852 875 881  
 Vogler W R 340 355  
 Voisin G 272 283 303  
 Vorwald A J 509 59  
 Voss E A 61  
 Vostu K L 365 390 697  
  
 Waaler E 639 648  
 Waalkes T P 248 254  
 Wada, T 861 883  
 Wager O A 286  
 Wagle P 690  
 Wagman J 566 571  
 Wagner H N Jr 310 325  
 Wagner M 354  
 Wailing D G 420 426 436  
 Waisbren B A 847 877 959  
 Wakeman F B 630  
 Waksman H H 276 277 283 290 296 799 302 303  
 Waksman S A 15 877 878 879 944 948  
 Walch Sorgdrager B 599 603 609  
 Waldenstrom J 185 714  
 Waldron C A 342 351  
 Walther J H C 720  
 Walker L J 880  
 Walker P H 55 553 557 558 561 567 571  
 Walker W F 341 351 355  
 Walker W W 872  
 Wallace C A 658  
 Wallace I H 276  
 Wallach H F H 235  
 Wallas C 123 145  
 Waller J P 56 71  
 Wallerstein R 798 809  
 Wallmark, G 434  
 Walls K W 874 880  
 Walsh T E 2 9 236  
 Walzer M 264  
 Wanderwinkel E 54 55 71  
 Wani H 601 609  
 Wannamaker L W 165 371 372 386 390 419 431 437  
 Warburton M F 744 750  
 Ward C B Jr 806  
 Ward H K 734 741  
 Ward J R 794 809  
 Ward L M 834 874  
 Ward M K 605 695 697  
 Ward P A 208 214  
 Ward H K 740  
 Ward T G 600 609  
 Wardlaw A C 705 214  
 Waring W S 703 722  
 Warner A R Jr 599 608  
 Warner J 703 719  
 Warrack G H 555 558 567 571  
 Warren F J 243  
 Warren G H 127 145  
 Warren J 787 789 800 809  
 Warren, S 243  
 Warren S H 423 439  
 Warren, S L 325  
 Warschowsky B 922 946  
 Warth A D 61 71  
 Wassermann A 581 609  
 Wassermann M 12  
 Watanabe T 85  
 Waterhouse Benjamin 742  
 Waters E T 263  
 Waters J F 770 771 773  
 Watson D W 172 179 229 236 542  
 Watson J D 56 59 70 71 75 86 143  
 Watson, H F 385 389  
 Watson K G 443 450  
 Watt J 643 644 646 648  
 Watterson 726  
 Watts P H 758 762  
 Weaver J M 288  
 Weaver M 847 878  
 Weaver R H 551 569  
 Weaver R S 381 389  
 Webb R A 13 247 75 761  
 Webb R B 55 67  
 Webb T 185 214  
 Weber G 287  
 Weber M M 609  
 Webster L T 30 36 912  
 Webster M E 249 568 939 946  
 Wechsberg E 418 437



- Weed L A 718 719 842 877  
879 882
- Weeks J E 729 741
- Weibull Claes 37 38 40-43 50  
53 54 64 67 69 71 122 145
- Weichselbaum 391
- Weidanz W P 305 306
- Weidel W 49 71
- Weidman F D 856 878 883
- Weigle W O 233 256 297
- Weil E 148 166
- Weil M H 305 306 325
- Weinberger H J 794 805 806
- Weinburg H B 696
- Weiner H 875
- Weinman David 775 777 782  
784 785
- Weinrach R H 192 214
- Weinstein I 697
- Weinstein L 947 959
- Weiss J D 832 875
- Weisberger A H 131 145
- Weiser R S 242 252 275 276  
288 299 300 303 496 526
- Weiser W J 301
- Weiss C 772 774
- Weiss D W 507 529
- Weiss J H 947
- Weissmann G 156 167 168  
234 370 390
- Weld J T 838 876
- Wellensiek H J 194 214
- Wellman W E 352
- Wells A Q 496 509 529
- Wells E B 747
- Wells W F 924 948
- Welshmer H J 753 762
- Wende R D 466 534 542
- Wenholt H M H 796 799  
808
- Wenkebach G K 757 762
- Wennersten G 290
- Went S 249
- Wentworth B B 416 439
- Wentzel L M 565 566 571  
572
- Werle E 249
- Werne J 260
- Wernicke E 11
- Wernicke R 880 881
- Werrin M 542
- Wesslen T 276 303
- Wessman G E 666 690 691
- West M G 615 648
- Westbrook G H 948
- Westphal O 49 50 67 168  
304 306 398 625 647 648  
678 694
- Wetmore P W 599 608
- Wetzler T F 551 566 572
- Weyer F 782 785
- Whayne T F 912
- Wheater D M 944 946
- Wheeler C M 670
- Wheeler K M 639 648
- Wheeler M W 743
- Wheeler W E 658 749 769
- Wherry W B 682 772 774
- Whitaker J A 747 750
- Whitby J L 352
- Whitcomb F C 882
- White A 119 435
- White B 411
- White C L 6 347 349 351
- White F H 597 608
- White J D 696
- White J R 141 142
- White L A 454 457 467
- White M L Jr 843 878
- White P H 621 623
- White P G 703 722
- White R G 244 291 303
- White T G 758 762
- Whiteley H H 328 352 355
- Whiting E G 881
- Whitney P L 190 209
- Whittle C H 839 875
- Wichelhausen R H 805 808
- Wicht W C 522 526 693
- Wicken A J 362 390
- Widal F 12
- Wiedermann G 192 214
- Wiegand C W 416 435 439
- Wiener E 222 227 229 234
- Wiener J 354
- Wiener S L 745 751
- Wigand R 777 779 781 782  
784 785
- Wiggall R H 68 577 605
- Wilcox R R 588 605
- Wilcox W 763 769
- Wild D G 67
- Wilder P 351
- Wile U J 575 579 609
- Wiley H B 417 439
- Wiley G G 236
- Wiley M 568
- Wilhelm D L 242 249 303
- Wilhelm R E 290 295 303
- Wilkens G L 939 948
- Wilkinson M 593 608
- Wilkins M H F 56 60 71
- Wilkinson J F 43 44 57 58  
67 71 743 750
- Wilkinson P C 244 303
- Will D W 526 873
- Willcox H R 459 467
- Williams A E 163 179 180  
708 722
- Williams C A Jr 183 185  
210 214
- Williams C M 474 477 478  
489
- Williams D R 716
- Williams E 663 690
- Williams H L 773
- Williams M A 42 64 71
- Williams N B 807
- Williams R 433
- Williams R C Jr 211 271
- Williams R E O 327 355 416  
418 421 430 432 433 435  
437 439 910
- Williams H P 55 70
- Williams S 766 769
- Williamson J R 223 236
- Williamson W M 884
- Willis A T 414 439 551 553  
572
- Willoughby D A 173 179 223  
233 236
- Willys K 290 297
- Wilska A 37 71
- Wilson A T 156 167 168 228  
236 358 360 364 371 386  
390
- Wilson H D R 432
- Wilson D B 288 290 297
- Wilson E H 912
- Wilson G M 883
- Wilson G S 468 489 702 727  
751
- Wilson H E 696 697
- Wilson J H 421 438 702 704  
719 720 722
- Wilson J R 918 948
- Wilson J W 842 850 851  
853 876 878 880 881
- Wilson T A 921 948
- Windmueller H G 921 948
- Winkenwerder W L 260 262
- Winkler A 43 57 67 71
- Winkler G F 283 303
- Winkler C C 327 353
- Winn W A 853 881
- Winner H I 336 352
- Winogradsky Serge 8
- Winslow C E A 912
- Winslow D J 874
- Wisor C P 609
- Winsten S 253
- Winter C C 673 692 693
- Winter J W 628 631 647
- Winter L B 243
- Wintrobe M M 233 237  
319 325
- Wirtz G H 195 214 247
- Wise R I 415 439
- Wishnick M 142
- Wishnow R 124 145
- Wiseman C L Jr 129 145
- Wissler F C 213
- Witchsky E 302
- Witelsky E 272 283
- Witt K 691 692 722
- Wittich F W 263
- Wittler R G 168 570 793  
809 947
- Wixom H 751
- Woebke J 690
- Woernley D L 213

- Wofsy L 212  
 Wojom 787 800  
 Wolcott R II 466  
 Wold M 749 751  
 Wolf A 282  
 Wolf H A 658  
 Wolfe A II 129 136 141 142  
 Wolfe P A 338 353  
 Wolfe E 131 145  
 Wolfe V L 543  
 Wolff J W 342 599 601 607 609  
 Wolfrom M 398  
 Wolinsky E 436  
 Wolman E L 80-82 84 III  
 Wollstein M 734 741  
 Wolman B 592 594 609  
 Wolman M 592 594 609  
 Wolpowitz A 850 880  
 Wolstenholme G E W 67 141 236 947  
 Womack F C Jr 669 682 685  
 Wong S C 807 807  
 Wong T-C 294  
 Wonnacott J C 417 439  
 Wood II F 421 434  
 Wood J S 475 439  
 Wood W A 54 67 104 119  
 Wood W B Jr 157 168 225 229 233 236 237 309 311 323 325 403 411 822  
 Woodbine M 757 759 762  
 Woodin A M 730 237 419 439  
 Woodman R J 167 168  
 Woods D D 14 139 145  
 Woods M W 354  
 Woodward J M 355 687 697  
 Woodward P 875  
 Woodward T E 306 374 609 646 692  
 Woolfolk C A 328 355  
 Woolley D W 361 390  
 Worfel M T 646  
 Work E 50 52 67  
 Wormald P J 360 386  
 Westman B II 351 354  
 Wright A C 205 214  
 Wright E II 881  
 Wright E T 874 876 878 880 881  
 Wright G G 154 169 530 533 537 538 543 544 568 687 697  
 Wright, G P 148 161 166 169 261 567 565 566 568 572  
 Wright H II 931 948  
 Wright J 612 648 734 741  
 Wu C J 399 403 410 411  
 Wu H 302  
 Wulff M 35  
 Wunderlich C A 325  
 Wundt W 699 700 702 712 723  
 Wyckoff R W G 774  
 Wyman F J 350  
 Wyman L 488 936 947  
 Yager R II 605 687 697  
 Yagi Y 268 303  
 Yalow R 297  
 Yamaguchi II 144  
 Yamamoto R 801 804 804 805 809  
 Yamamoto S 833 875  
 Yamanaka M 683 696  
 Yaniv H 684  
 Yanowitz M 285  
 Yao K F 837 876  
 Yardley J H 439  
 Yarnsky A 568  
 Yarmolinsky M B 134 145  
 Yasmineh W G 373 390  
 Yee R 647  
 Yegian D 491 511 528 529  
 Yelton S E 514  
 Yen C H 622 645  
 Yerasimides 803  
 Yermish M 350  
 Yersin A II 17 469 489 664 665  
 Yersin A J E 672  
 Yobs A R 456 466  
 Yoder H 603  
 Yokoi Y 375  
 Yoneda M 476 489  
 Yoshida, A 417 418 436 439  
 Youmans G II 280 307 415 435 497 507 528 529  
 Young G 839 876  
 Young G A Jr 535 544  
 Young H II 882  
 Young I I 61 71  
 Young, J A 496 524  
 Young J C 693  
 Young W G Jr 872  
 Yu,oslav Typhoid Commission 939 948  
 Yurcheno J A 145  
 Yuskovets M K 711 723  
 Zabnskie J II 271 302 369 390  
 Zahn R K 69  
 Zak S J 208 210 298  
 Zamecnik II C 134 141 794 806  
 Zamenhof S 732 741  
 Zammit T 698 723  
 Zamora A 831 872 873  
 Zaplatina S I 666 693  
 Zappasodi P 179 527  
 Zarafonitis C J II 593 609  
 Zatman L J 161 167  
 Zebowitz E 419 439  
 Zeissler J 567 572  
 Zelle M R 535 544  
 Zenker J O  
 Zen Yoji H 419 439  
 Zeya, H I 229 237  
 Zhukova I G 54 68  
 Zia, S H 593 604  
 Ziegler J E Jr 822  
 Ziehl Franz, 491  
 Ziff M 284 289 III 304  
 Zimmerman A 648  
 Zimmerman L E 833 835 874 875  
 Zinder N D 72 75 85 86 627 648  
 Zinneman H H 711 718 723 729  
 Zinneman K 349 331 355  
 Zinsser Hans 17 274 480 489 902 912  
 Zipkin I 348 353 355  
 Zobel C E 705 723  
 Zobel M H 705 723  
 Zontendyk A 477 488  
 Zubay G 55 56 60 III 71  
 Zuber A 343 355 770  
 Zubrzycki L 332 355  
 Zucker Franklin II 228 237  
 Zuelzer W W 749  
 Zwartouw II T 544  
 Zweifach B W 325  
 Zwieman B 300



# Subject Index

- Abortion in animals due to listeria 754
- Abscess(es) after bites on human beings by cats and other animals examination for *Pasteurella multocida* 662
- brain from otitis media suppurative chronic 772
- with pasteurellosis 663
- cutaneous from *Staphylococcus aureus* 472
- kidney from *Staphylococcus aureus* 423
- Abidia* 117
- Acetate conversion to succinate by glyoxylate bypass 98 99
- Acetone *Pasteurella pestis* killed by 666
- Acetylcholine role in anaphylaxis and allergic reactions 41 249
- Acetylglucosamine 122
- Acetylmuramic acid 122
- N-acetylmuramic acid 122
- Achorion schoenleinii* See *Trichophyton schoenleinii*
- violaceum* See *Trichophyton violaceum*
- Achromobacter* 330 331
- Acid See individual names
- ACTH activation of endogenous microbial disease 33
- modifications in allergic state by 295 296
- therapy infectious diseases 958
- Actinobacter* 330
- Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans* 332
- mailei* recognition in tests for glanders 281
- Actinomyces* 329 330 875
- bifidus* 379 334
- bovis* 341 743 825
- israeli* 329 332 334 825
- maris* 763
- naeslundii* 875
- pennsylvanicus* 379
- Actinomycetaceae* 825
- Actinomycetales* 875
- morphology 40
- Actinomyces aerobius* 827 832
- biochemical reactions 878
- cultivation 878
- diagnosis 831
- distribution, 89
- epidemiology 831 832
- history 877
- morphology and variation 877 88
- Actinomyces aerobius*—(Cont)
- pathogenesis 879 831
- treatment 831
- Actinomycin binding* to deoxyguanosine of DNA model 137
- C<sub>1</sub>* as inhibitor of nucleic acid synthesis 136-137
- effect on RNA polymerase
- DNA polymerase and melting curve of pneumococcal DNA 138
- inhibition of growth of *Bacillus subtilis* 118
- interference with synthesis of messenger RNA and inhibition of protein synthesis 114
- Actinomyces* 341 343
- abdominal 342
- cervicofacial lesions 341
- epidemiology 342
- etiology *Actinomyces israeli* 329 332 334 341 343
- microscopic appearance of lesions 342
- sulfur granules 347 343
- thoracic 341 342
- See also *Actinomyces* and *Actinomyces*
- Actinospectacin* therapy gonorrhea 459
- Adenine as purine base of DNA 75
- Adenosine end group of aminoacyl-sRNA structures 135
- triphosphate (ATP) production by fermentation mechanisms 101
- Aerobacter aerogenes* 610 611
- 613 616
- cells with capsules 44
- fermentation of citrate by 110
- cloacae* 613-615
- fimbriae in 43
- organisms 610 614 615
- Aerobes* 93
- electron transport 93 94
- oxidative assimilation 95 97
- respiration 93 94
- Agalactia* contagious in goats 801
- in sheep 800 801
- Agammaglobulinemia* congenital in man 208
- Age as factor in incidence tuberculosis 513
- Agglutinin(s)* anti-O salmonella 621 672
- Agglutinin(s)*—(Cont)
- H test for in salmonella infections 631 632
- O test for in salmonella infections 631 632
- production 12
- Aggressins 148
- Air role in spread of infection 901
- D-alanine 122 124
- L-alanine 127
- Alcaligenes* 331
- faecalis* 331 335 613 619
- Alcohol(s)* disinfection by 9-7
- Pasteurella pestis* killed by 666
- Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* killed by 678
- Alkalescens-dispar* organisms 644-645
- Allergy 238 96
- anaphylaxis See Anaphylaxis
- asthma, 269 270
- auto antibodies 271 273
- autosensitization 240
- definition 238
- inflammation delayed responses 273 293
- adjuvant effect of tubercle bacilli "auto-allergic diseases 28 284
- contact dermatitis 284 287
- homograft rejection 287 290
- in microbial diseases other than tuberculosis 278 279
- pneumococcal 279
- streptococcal 278 279
- to proteins 287
- skin tests 279 782
- brucellosis 281
- glanders 281
- leprosy 280-781
- parasitic infestations 282
- paratuberculosis of cattle (John's disease) 281
- reactions to fungal materials 281
- to viral materials 781 782
- tuberculosis 280
- tularemia, 281
- theoretical considerations 790-293
- tuberculin hypersensitivity 274 778

## Allergy—(Cont)

- immediate type of man 259 273
- Arthus reactions 260
- a thma 269 270
- auto antibodies 271 273
- coryza allergic (hay fever) See Coryza allergic (hay fever)
- physical 270
- serum disease 260-262
- tissue injury 270 271
- as immune process in tuberculous host 505 507
- viewpoints on role 506 507
- modifications 294-296
- ACTH 295 296
- antihistamines 295
- cortisones 295 296
- in neuritis 283
- physical 270
- reaction(s) energy 240
- antigen antibody See Antigen antibody reactions
- Arthus See Arthus reaction
- delayed type 238 240
- microbial hypersensitivities 239
- nonliving agents 239
- specificity 240
- hyperergy 240
- hypoergy 240
- immediate-type 239 241
- Arthus-type 239
- wheal and erythema 239
- normergy 240
- pharmacologically active substances 241 242 248 241
- pioneer work in 12
- Shwartzman phenomenon 293 294
- tissue damage localized 246 259
- experimental glomerulonephritis 256 257 259
- Allercheria boydii* 826 856 859
- antigenic structure 857
- cultivation 856 857
- history 856
- See also Maduromycosis
- Aluminum stearate (2%) with procaine penicillin G in oil (PAM) therapy gonorrhea 459
- Alveolitis polymorphonuclear tubercle bacilli 501
- Amebiasis carriers 26
- Amino acids in C polysaccharide of pneumococcus 399
- in cell wall of bacteria 122
- incorporation governed by messenger RNA triplet code letters 113

## Amino acids—(Cont)

- origin from citric acid intermediates 97
- pathway in protein synthesis 112 113
- Amino nitrogen formation by coenzyme TPNH 100
- Amino sugars in C polysaccharide of pneumococcus 399
- in cell wall of bacteria 122
- p Aminobenzoic acid (PAB) = metabolite analogue 139
- p Aminosalicyclic acid (PAS) as metabolite analogue 139 140
- Ammonium compounds cationic quaternary disinfection by 928
- Amphotericin B therapy blastomycosis 843
- South American 846
- candidiasis 840
- chromoblastomycosis 861
- coccidioidomycosis 853
- cryptococcosis 855
- histoplasmosis 850
- introduction 950
- maduromycosis 858
- Ampicillin therapy meningitis 738
- influenza 738
- Amylase of streptococci hemolytic Group A 375
- Anaerobes facultative 93
- obligate 93
- terminal respiration systems 94 94
- Anaphylatoxin role in anaphylaxis and allergic reactions 241 242 249 250
- species differences to action of 250
- Anaphylaxis 241 254
- in birds 253
- in calf 253
- characteristics in certain species 251
- death from 262
- definition and origin of term 241
- desensitization 253
- discovery 12
- in dog 247 251
- in guinea pig 242 247 251
- passive cutaneous 245 246
- passive transfer 244 245
- in horse 253
- inhibition and shock by haptenes 253
- in man 262
- in monkey 253
- pharmacologically active substances in 241 242 248 251
- in rabbit 247 251 252
- reactions anaphylactoid 242
- reversed 253 254 262
- in rodents 251 253

## Anaphylaxis—(Cont)

- species differences to action of pharmacologic mediators 247 250
- Anatomy chemical of bacteria See Morphology and chemical anatomy of bacteria
- Anemia hemolytic auto-immune antibodies 272 273
- in host responses to infection 318 319
- Angina Vincent's 596 772
- Anthrax bacilli serum for bactericidal action of 11
- causal relationship of disease and microbes proved by Koch and Pasteur 7
- control measures 541
- cutaneous lesion 531
- in man pathogenicity 534
- death mechanism 536
- definition 530
- diagnosis 538 539
- epidemiology 540
- etiology *Bacillus anthracis* as agent 67
- experimental observations by Davaine concerning bacterial cause of disease 6
- history 530
- immunization pioneer work of Pasteur 10
- infection and resistance factors 535 537
- inhalation of man (wool sorters' disease) 535
- pathogenicity 534 535
- resistance and immunization acquired 538
- therapy 539 540
- untreated in man mortality 534
- See also *Bacillus anthracis*
- Antibiotic definition 949
- effects on indigenous species of microorganisms 338 339
- interference with protein synthesis 114
- polypeptide effect on integrity or function of cell membrane 126 127
- prophylaxis plague bubonic or pneumonic 676
- therapy brucellosis 712
- pseudotuberculosis 680
- vibrio infections 657
- See also individual agents
- Antibody(ies) anti H salmonella 621
- avidity variations 240 241
- auto-immunity 271 273
- combining site 189 190
- cytophilic 292
- definition 183

## Antibody(ies)—(Cont)

- effect on cell membranes 199  
200  
formation in biota indigenous  
338  
Fraction I plague 671  
iso to brain substance 283  
localization of activity in  $\gamma$   
globulin 183 184  
as mechanism of host resist-  
ance to infectious disease  
171  
neutralization 182 183  
non-complement binding as  
host defense in vivo studies  
207  
nonreaginic desensitization in  
allergic choryza (hay fever)  
266 267  
protein See  $\gamma$  Globulin  
Rh human 241  
role in allergic responses 240  
241  
in host resistance to infec-  
tions 183 190  
history 181 183  
localization of activity in  
 $\gamma$  globulins 183 184  
in serum disease 261  
serum in syphilis 581  
7S comparison of human anti-  
bodies encountered in aller-  
gic choryza and asthma 263  
7Sy<sub>1</sub> 245  
7Sy 245  
to somatic O antigen of ty-  
phoid bacillus 183  
specificity as key idea in hu-  
moral immunology 182  
treponemal 582 583  
univalent, 241  
VW plague 671  
Wassermann 183  
in syphilis 581 582  
See also Antigen antibody re-  
actions Agglutinin Allergy
- Antigen(s) A brucellae 705  
cholera Asiatic 653  
*Escherichia coli* 612  
in *Staphylococcus aureus*  
417  
in agglutination test salmonella  
infections 631  
*Allerscheria boydii* 857  
Arthus reaction See Arthus re-  
action  
B (Ogawa) cholera Asiatic  
653  
*Escherichia coli* 612  
*Blastomyces dermatitidis* 841  
842  
brucellae 705 706  
C (Inaba) cholera Asiatic  
653

## Antigen(s)—(Cont)

- capsular in *Staphylococcus*  
*aureus* 417  
*Coccidioides immitis* 851  
definition 932  
derivative 240  
distribution among different  
types of *Clostridium per-*  
*fringens* 554  
envelope or capsular (Fraction  
I) 150 153 667 669  
Forssman 273  
fractions of treponemes 583  
H (flagellar) Arizona group  
paracolon bacilli 615  
*Escherichia coli* 612  
Salmonella 621 623  
vibriosis 651  
*Histoplasma capsulatum* 847  
848  
*Hormodendrum pedrosoi* 860  
immunization See Immuniza-  
tion active antigens  
K *Escherichia coli* 612  
*Alebsiella pneumoniae* 616  
shigella 637  
L *Escherichia coli* 612  
M brucellae 705  
O (somatic) *Aerobacter aero-*  
*genes* 616  
Arizona group paracolon  
bacilli 615  
*Escherichia coli* 612  
influence on pathogenicity of  
some bacterial species  
150 154  
*Klebsiella pneumoniae* 616  
as microcapsular substances  
44  
as polysaccharide of endo-  
toxin 304  
Salmonella 621 623  
of typhoid bacillus anti-  
body to 183  
vibriosis 651  
*Pasteurella pestis* 667 668  
*pseudotuberculosis* 678  
pH 6 *Pasteurella pestis* 668  
phase variation Salmonella  
6.1  
polysaccharides 932 933  
protective of *Bacillus anthracis*  
(Factor II of anthrax toxin)  
537  
proteins or protein complexes  
932  
R of streptococci hemolytic  
Group A 366  
Salmonella Kauffmann White  
classification 622 623  
shigella 637 638  
*Shigella dysenteriae* 637 639  
642 643  
*flexneri* 637 639 642 643

Antigen(s) *Shigella*—(Cont)

- sonnei* 637 639 642 644  
*Sporotrichum schenckii* 854  
streptococcal extracellular in-  
fluence on pathogenicity of  
some bacterial species 155  
surface of streptococci hemo-  
lytic Group A  
363 367  
antigens R 366  
T 365  
carbohydrate group-  
specific 363 364  
glycerol teichoic  
acids 366 367  
hyaluronic acid cap-  
sule 366  
properties 362 363  
protein(s) M 364-  
365  
T 365 366  
T of streptococci hemolytic  
Group A 365  
V *Pasteurella pestis* 668 669  
VI forms V VW and W in  
Salmonella 622  
influence on pathogenicity of  
some bacterial species 150  
*Pasteurella pestis* 668  
Salmonella, 622 623  
*Salmonella typhosa* 615  
typhoid bacillus 939  
in vaccine for prophylactic  
vaccination for typhoid  
fever 630  
VW complex influence on  
pathogenicity of some bac-  
terial species 150 153  
W *Pasteurella pestis* 668 669  
See also Agglutinin(s) An-  
tibody antigen reactions
- Antigen antibody complexes ac-  
cumulation of eosinophils  
about 232  
Antigen antibody mixtures for  
immunization 932  
Antigen antibody reactions "side  
chain theory of Ehrlich 13  
See also Antibodies Antigens
- Antihistamine(s) - modifications  
in allergic state by 295  
promethazine (Phenergan)  
therapy photo-allergic reac-  
tions 270
- Antimicrobial agents - mecha-  
nisms of action 120 141  
agents that affect integrity or  
function of cell mem-  
brane 125 128  
polyene antifungal anti-  
biotics 127 128  
polypeptide antibiotics  
126 127  
historical considerations 120

- Antimicrobial agents mechanism of action—(Cont)  
 inhibitors of oxidative phosphorylation 138 139  
 inhibitors of synthesis cell wall 121 125  
 penicillin 122 123  
 nucleic acid 136 138  
 actinomycin C<sub>1</sub> 136 137  
 ethidium bromide 138  
 mitomycin 138  
 phenethyl alcohol 138  
 phleomycin 138  
 of protein 128 136  
 chloramphenicol 129 132  
 erythromycin 136  
 lincomycin 136  
 puromycin 134 136  
 streptogramin 136  
 streptomycin 132 134  
 tetracyclines 136  
 metabolite analogues azaserine 140  
 diazo-oxo norleucine (DON) 140  
 hadacidin 140  
 psicofuranyne 140  
 sulfonamides and p-aminosalicylic acid 139 140  
 selective toxicity 120  
 Antimycin A as inhibitor of oxidative phosphorylation 138  
 Antisepsis pioneer work of Lister 14  
 sterilization by See Sterilization methods disinfection and antisepsis  
 Antiseptic definition 949  
 introduction of work into scientific literature 14  
 Antiserum(a) anthrax 539  
 rabbit type specific therapy meningitis influenza 738  
 Antitoxin(s) diphtheria 480 481 485  
 assay 486  
 production by Behring 11  
 discovery 11  
 standardization methods development by Ehrlich 11 13  
 tetanus production by Behring and Kitasato 11  
*Arctomys bobac* (tarabagans) plague in 664  
 Arginine and pyrimidine synthesis feed back inhibition mechanisms for control of 116 117  
 Arizona group of paracolon bacilli 613 615  
 Arsenicals trivalent therapy relapsing fever 593  
 yaws 589  
 Arsphenamine discovery by Ehrlich 120  
 therapy allergy 262  
 syphilis 14 585  
*Arthroderma quadrifidum* 863 866 868  
*uncinatum* 863  
 Arthus reaction 239 240 254 256  
 acute phase 254  
 discovery 13  
 early stages 254  
 intensity 255  
 in man 260  
 passive transfer 255  
 reversed 255  
 tissue reactions from preformed histamine and induced synthesis of new histamine 255  
*Asterococcus* 786  
*cantis* 801  
*murus* 763  
*Asteromyces* 786 825  
 Asthma antibodies encountered in comparison with allergic coryza 263  
 Athlete's foot See Tinea pedis  
 Autoclave sterilization by 918 920  
 Autovertin as inhibitor of oxidative phosphorylation 138  
 Autopsy plague 673  
 Azaserine as glutamine analogue 140  
*Acobacter* cysts 64  
*L* variants from 794  
*vinlandii* ribosomes nucleases 56  
*Bacillus*(s) 38 39  
 aerobic gram negative 330-332 335  
*Alcaligenes* 331  
*enterobacteria* 330  
*Hemophilus* 331 332  
*Mima* 330 331  
*Moraxella* 330 331  
*Pseudomonas* 331  
*Vibrio* 331  
 anaerobic gram negative and spore-forming 332 333 335  
*Bacteroides* 332  
*Fusobacterium* 332  
 and *Vibrios* 332 333  
 coliform 610-615  
 Friedlander's See *Klebsiella pneumoniae*  
 gram positive 328 330 334  
*Actinomyces* 329  
*Clostridium* 330  
*Corynebacterium* 329  
*Lactobacillus* 328 329 334  
*Bacillus*(s) gram positive—(Cont)  
*Ieptotrichia* 329  
*Mycobacterium* 330 334  
 Hansen's (*Mycobacterium leprae*) 490 494 522 524  
 Koch Wells 331  
 Morax Axenfeld 330 335  
 of Morgan See *Proteus morganii*  
 paracolon 613 615  
 paratyphoid A 624  
 II 624  
 sporulation early stages diagrammatic representation 62  
 tubercle See *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*  
 typhoid 624  
*Bacillus anthracis* antigenic structure 537 538  
 avirulence of nonencapsulated strains 45  
 chemical composition of bacterial capsules 46  
 as etiologic agent, anthrax 67  
 isolation and identification 533 534  
 morphology and cultural characteristics 530 532  
 colonies 531 532  
 pathogenicity factors influencing 149  
 variation 532 533  
 See also Anthrax  
*bipolaris septicus* 660  
*cereus* 538 536  
 differentiation from *B. anthracis* 533  
 nuclear equivalents 58  
*coagulans* spore electron micrograph 62 63  
*ducreyi* 578  
*fragilis* 344 346  
*funduliformis* 344  
*fusiformis* 596  
 genetic transformation 75  
*L* variants from 794  
*megaterium* cells capsulated 45  
 walls structure 47  
 chemical composition studies 54  
 engulfment by human neutrophil 226  
 microscopic examination 38  
 polysaccharides and polypeptides in capsules 44 45  
 protoplasts and ghosts 53  
 spores ellipsoidal 61  
*pusillus capsulatus* See *Klebsiella pneumoniae*  
*nigrescens* 344 346

**Bacillus—(Cont)**

- parainfluenzae* See *Hemophilus parainfluenzae*
- parapertussis* See *Bordetella parapertussis*
- parapestis* See *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis*
- paratyphosus* A 624 B 674
- pyocyaneus* 331 619
  - agglutination 12
  - subtilis* 344 537
    - glucose fermentation with products of 105
    - growth interference by actinomycin 118
    - labeled with H<sup>3</sup> thymidine nuclear equivalents 59
    - walls polysaccharides 49
    - structure electron micrograph 47
- transduction caused by phages 77
- typhoid 624
- typhosa 624

- Bacitracin** incorporation of completed uridine nucleotide derivative into bacterial cell wall blocked by 115
- introduction in therapy 950
- ointment, prophylaxis ophthalmia neonatorum 456
- resistance in *Bacteroides* 773
- Listeria monocytogenes* 756
- Mycoplasma pneumoniae* 818
- therapy *Staphylococcus aureus* infections 430

- Bacteremia** staphylococcal 423

- Bacteria** binary fission 39

- cell wall constituents 121 172

- permeases 121

- communicability 162 166

- chance as factor 164

- site of lesions in infected

- host 163

- size of inoculum 163 164

- survival capacity and ability

- to multiply in intermediate host or vector 166

- in immune subjects 164

- 165

- outside the animal body

- 165 166

- enteric 610-645

- biochemical reactions 613

- groups *Alkaliscens Dispar*

- 644 645

- coliform 610-615

- Donovania granulomatis*

- 611 617

- Friedlander 615 617

- paracolon bacilli 613 615

- Proteus* 611 617 618

**Bacteria enteric groups—(Cont)**

- Pseudomonas* 611 618

- 619

- salmonella See *Salmonella*

- shigella See *Shigella*

- filamentous 39 40

- gram positive exotoxins class

- 159 160

- indigenous to man 376 349

- bacilli aerobic gram negative

- See *Bacilli* aerobic gram negative

- anaerobic gram negative

- and spirilla See *Bacilli* anaerobic gram negative

- and spirilla

- gram positive See *Bacilli* gram positive

- cocci 327 328

- micrococci anaerobic 327

- 334

- staphylococci 327

- streptococci 327 3 8

- enterococci 327

- neisseria 328

- peptostreptococcus 327 328

- spirochetes 333 336

- streptococci viridans 327

- veillonella 328

- involution forms 39 40

- main morphologic types and

- fermentation by van Leeuwenhoek 1

- morphology See *Morphology*

- and chemical anatomy of

- bacteria

- pathogenic properties 146 166

- microbial factors 148 157

- aggressins and aggressive

- factors 148

- pathogenic and virulence

- factors 148

- virulence enhancement of

- 158 159

- variations associated with

- production of different

- amounts of a pathogenic

- factor 157 158

- relationship of pleuropneumonia

- and pleuropneumonia-like

- organisms to 793 795

- stalked 39 41

- toxins chemistry and pharmacology 159 162

- Bacteriology** pioneer work of

- van Leeuwenhoek 1

- 100 years after discoveries of

- Leeuwenhoek 12

- Bacterionema matruchoti* 329

- 330 334

- Bacteriophage(s)** classes 75

- genetic material 76

**Bacteriophage(s)—(Cont)**

- lysis discovery by d'Herelle

- and Twort 9

- mutation 9

- shigella 639

- streptococcal 363

- as viruses with highly complex

- organizations 9

- Bacterium aerogenes** See *Aerobacter aerogenes*

- aertrycke* 624

- amritatum* 331

- coli* See *Escherichia coli*

- enteritidis* 624

- friedlanderii* See *Klebsiella pneumoniae*

- fusiformis* 344

- glucidolytica* 331

- paratyphosum* A 674

- B 624

- pneumosintes* 772

- pseudotuberculosis* rodentium

- See *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis*

- supestifer* 624

- tularensis* 681 682

- typhosum* 624

- Bacteroides** 332 770 773

- fragilis* 337 335 770 773

- funduliformis* 332 770-771

- history and general characteristics 770-772

- infections diagnosis 773

- pathogenesis 772 773

- treatment 773

- L variants from 794

- melaninogenicus* 332 771 772

- necrophorus* 332

- negrescens* 332 333

- pneumosintes* 332

- serpens* 332

- and streptococci anaerobic

- mixed or synergistic anaerobic

- infective diseases 343

- 345

- Bang's disease 698

- Bartonella bacilliformis** 775 783

- definition 775

- history 775 778

- morphology and properties

- 778 779

- See also *Bartonellosis* and

- Oroya fever

- Bartonellosis** characteristics 778

- control measures 782

- epidemiology 781 782

- See also *Bartonella bacilliformis*

- Basidiobolus* 8 6

- Basidiomycetes* 825 876

- Benzyl penicillanic acid 268

- Benzylpenicillin 268

- Bethesda-Ballerup group of para-

- colon bacilli 613 615 622



- Antimicrobial agents mechanism of action—(Cont)  
 inhibitors of oxidative phosphorylation 138 139  
 inhibitors of synthesis cell wall 121 125  
 penicillin 122 123  
 nucleic acid 136 138  
 actinomycin C<sub>1</sub> 136 137  
 ethidium bromide 138  
 mitomycin 138  
 phenethyl alcohol 138  
 phleomycin 138  
 of protein 128 136  
 chloramphenicol 129 132  
 erythromycin 136  
 lincomycin 136  
 puromycin 134 136  
 streptogramin 136  
 streptomycin 132 134  
 tetracyclines 136  
 metabolite analogues, *aza*  
 serine 140  
 diazo oxo norleucine (DON) 140  
 hadacidin 140  
 psicofuranine 140  
 sulfonamides and *p*-aminosalicylic acid 139 140  
 selective toxicity 120  
 Antimycin A as inhibitor of oxidative phosphorylation 138  
 Antisepsis pioneer work of Lister 14  
 sterilization by See Sterilization methods disinfection and antiseptics  
 Antiseptic definition 949  
 introduction of work into scientific literature 14  
 Antiserum(a) anthrax 539  
 rabbit type specific therapy meningitis influenza 738  
 Antitoxin(s) diphtheria 480-481 485  
 assay 486  
 production by Behring 11  
 discovery 11  
 standardization methods development by Ehrlich 11 13  
 tetanus production by Behring and Kitasato 11  
*Arctomys bobac* (tarabagans) plague in 664  
 Arginine and pyrimidine synthesis feed back inhibition mechanisms for control of 116 117  
 Arizona group of paracolon bacilli 613 615  
 Arsenicals trivalent therapy relapsing fever 593  
 yaws 589  
 Arsphenamine discovery by Ehrlich 120  
 therapy allergy 262  
 syphilis 14 585  
*Irthoderma quadrifidum* 863 866 868  
*uncinatum* 863  
 Arthus reaction 239 240 254 256  
 acute phase 254  
 discovery 13  
 early stages 254  
 intensity 255  
 in man 260  
 passive transfer 255  
 reversed 255  
 tissue reactions from preformed histamine and induced synthesis of new histamine 255  
*Asterococcus* 786  
*canis* 801  
*muris* 763  
*Asteromyces* 786 825  
 Asthma antibodies encountered in comparison with allergic corvza 263  
 Athlete's foot See Tinea pedis  
 Autoclave sterilization by 918 920  
 Aureoverin as inhibitor of oxidative phosphorylation 138  
 Autopsy plague 673  
 Azaserine as glutamine analogue 140  
*A. obacter* cysts 64  
 1 variants from 794  
*vinelandii* ribosomes nucleases 56  
 Bacillus(1) 38 39  
 aerobic gram negative 330 332 335  
*Alcaligenes* 331  
*enterobacteria* 330  
*Hemophilus* 331 332  
*Mima* 330 331  
*Moraxella* 330 331  
*Pseudomonas* 331  
*Vibrio* 331  
 anaerobic gram negative and spirilla 332 333 335  
*Bacteroides* 332  
*Fusobacterium* 332  
 and *Vibrios* 332 333  
 coliform 610-615  
 Friedlander's See *Klebsiella pneumoniae*  
 gram positive 328 330 334  
*Actinomyces* 329  
*Clostridium* 330  
*Corynebacterium* 329  
*Lactobacillus* 328 329 334  
 Bacillus(1) gram positive—(Cont)  
*Leptotrichia* 329  
*Mycobacterium* 330 334  
 Hansen's (*Mycobacterium leprae*) 490 494 522 524  
 Koch Wells 331  
 Morax Axenfeld 330 335  
 of Morgan See *Proteus morgani*  
 paracolon 613 615  
 paratyphoid A 624  
 II 624  
 sporulation early stages diagrammatic representation 67  
 tubercle See *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*  
 typhoid 624  
*Bacillus anthracis* antigenic structure 537 538  
 avirulence of nonencapsulated strains 45  
 chemical composition of bacterial capsules 46  
 as etiologic agent anthrax 67  
 isolation and identification 533 534  
 morphology and cultural characteristics 530 532  
 colonies 531 532  
 pathogenicity factors influencing 149  
 variation 532 533  
 See also Anthrax  
*bipolaris septicus* 660  
*cereus* 538 556  
 differentiation from *B. anthracis* 533  
 nuclear equivalents 58  
*coagulans* spore electron micrograph 62 63  
*ducreyi* 578  
*fragilis* 344 346  
*funduliformis* 344  
*fusiformis* 596  
 genetic transformation 75  
 L variants from 794  
*megaterium* cells capsulated 45  
 walls structure 47  
 chemical composition studies 54  
 engulfment by human neutrophil 226  
 microscopic examination 38  
 polysaccharides and polypeptides in capsules 44 45  
 protoplasts and ghosts 53  
 spores ellipsoidal 61  
*mucosus capsulatus* See *Klebsiella pneumoniae*  
*nugrescens* 344 346

- Carbohydrate group-specific of hemolytic streptococci 362 364  
metabolism *See* Metabolism carbohydrate
- Carbonyl cyan therapy pasteurellosis 662
- Carrion's disease in man from *Bartonella bacilliformis* 775
- Caryophanon size 40
- Casoni reaction, in allergy in parasitic infestations 28
- Cat(s) bites inflicted by pasteurellosis from 663  
infection by pleuropneumonia like organisms 803  
tularemia, 684
- Catarrh infectious in white mice 799
- Cathomycin therapy pasteurellosis 662
- Cations divalent influence on phagocytosis 225
- Cattle abortion, due to listeria 754  
anthrax epidemiology 540  
fatal infection 535  
brucellosis 706 707  
*Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* in infection 758  
listiosis 754  
pleuropneumonia, 799  
tuberculosis 521
- Caulobacter* sp. attached to *Bacillus megaterium* electron micrograph, 41
- Cell(s) bacterial shape 39-40  
size 39-40  
spatial arrangement, 39-40  
heterogeneous 77 78  
immune mechanisms humoral factors 199  
Kupffer *See* Kupffer cell  
lysogenic carrying lambda, 77 78  
wall mucopeptide biosynthesis cycle leading in 114-115
- Cellulitis anaerobic from *Clostridium perfringens* 555
- Cephalosporium granulomatus* 856
- Chamois brucellosis 706
- Chemoprophylaxis prevention of infection 942 944  
protection of person susceptible to infection 916
- Chemotaxis phagocytes 222
- Chemotherapy birth of 13 15  
definition 949  
gonorrhea 458  
modern chemical theory experimental studies of Ehrlich 18
- Chemotherapy—(Cont)  
periodontal disease 347  
plague 673  
*See also* individual agents  
Chuck embryos for experiments  
*Mycoplasma pneumoniae* in infections 815 816  
Chickens tuberculosis, 521  
tularemia 684 685  
Chills shaking with fever 312
- Chimpanzees for experiments syphilis 579  
typhoid fever 624 630
- Chinchilla for experiments  
*Staphylococcus aureus* infection, 425
- Chipmunks tularemia, 684
- Chloramine T disinfection by 928
- Chloramphenicol, as inhibitor of protein synthesis 129 132  
interference with protein synthesis, 114  
introduction in therapy 950  
molecular models 130  
prophylaxis typhus scrub 944  
resistance to by *Pasteurella pestis* 666  
*pseudotuberculosis* 678  
therapy *Bacteroides* infections 773  
*Bordetella parapertussis* in infection 749  
diarrhea, infantile 614  
dysentery bacillary 642  
*Escherichia coli* infections 614  
gastroenteritis 614  
*Klebsiella pneumoniae* infections 617  
listiosis 756  
meningitis influenza 738 739  
Oroya fever 781  
pasteurellosis 662  
pertussis 747  
plague 665 673 674  
pleuropneumonia like organisms infection, 804  
pneumococcus infection, 407  
*Proteus vulgaris* infections 618  
*Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in infections 619  
salmonella infections 632  
tularemia 688  
typhoid fever 632  
ulcerative lesions of oropharynx genitalia and extremities 596
- Chlorine disinfection by 928 929
- Chlorothiazide (Diuril) therapy photo-allergic reactions 270
- Chlortetracycline resistance in by *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* 678  
therapy *Bacteroides* infections 773  
diarrhea, infantile 614  
fever rat bite 768  
gastroenteritis 614  
*Klebsiella pneumoniae* infections 617  
pertussis 747  
plague 665 673  
pleuropneumonia like organisms infection 804  
*Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in infections 619  
relapsing fever 594
- Cholecystitis suppurative *Escherichia coli* in, 612
- Cholera, 649 657  
Asiatic 652-654  
clinical course 652  
control measures 656-657  
immunization, 656  
public information 656-657  
quarantine 656  
sanitary 656  
diagnosis laboratory 654  
etiology 653  
history 652  
immunologic features 655  
pathogenicity 654 655  
chicken immunization, studies of Pasteur 10  
epidemic London (1854) transmitted by water 16  
epidemiology 655 656  
resistance to 32  
vibro isolation and cultivation by Koch 8
- Chromoblastomycosis 859 862  
diagnosis 861  
distribution 860  
epidemiology 862  
immunity 861  
pathogenesis 860-861  
treatment 861 862  
*See also* *Hormodendrum pedrosoi*
- Circling disease *See* Listriosis
- Circulation central failure in host responses to infection, 314  
peripheral failure in host responses to infection 314-316  
defervescence 315  
endotoxin, role in shock 315 316  
hyperthermia 315  
hypotension 315

- Biota endogenous infective diseases general principles 339 340  
   indigenous activities nonpathogenic 337 339  
   germ free animal studies 337  
   interactions host biota other than disease 338  
     interactions microorganisms 338 339  
   latent infection antibody formation 338  
   nutrition of host 337 338  
   pathogenic effects 339 340  
   significance of 337  
 Birds anaphylaxis in 253  
   game tularemia 684  
 Bismuth therapy syphilis 585 586  
   jaws 589  
 Bison brucellosis 706  
*Blastomyces brasiliensis* 843 846  
   cultivation 844-845  
   distribution 845  
   history 844  
   dermatitis 281 840 846 848  
   antigenic structure 841 842  
   cultivation 840 841  
   distribution 842  
   history 840  
 Blastomycin use in tests for fungal diseases 281  
*Blastomyces tulanensis* 840  
 Blastomycosis diagnosis 843  
   epidemiology 843  
   immunity 842 843  
   North American See *Blastomycosis dermatitidis*  
   pathogenesis 842  
   South American 843 846  
     diagnosis 846  
     epidemiology 846  
     immunity 845 846  
     pathogenesis 845  
     treatment 846  
   See also *Blastomyces brasiliensis*  
   treatment 843  
 Blisters fever from herpes simplex virus 312 313  
 Blood changes in host responses to infection See Host responses to infection hematologic changes  
   groups classification technique of Landsteiner 12  
   platelets changes in host responses to infection 319  
   poisoning prophylaxis writings of White Holmes and Semmelweis 6  
 Boils Aleppo (cutaneous leishmaniasis) prophylaxis inoculation 10  
*Bordetella* 742 750  
   *bronchiseptica* 742 744 747 749 750  
   *parapertussis* 742 744 746 750  
   pertussis antigenic relationship 743 744  
     cultivation and biochemical reaction 743  
     host range and pathogenesis 744 745  
     morphology 742 743  
   See also Pertussis  
 Boric acid in talk therapy urea pedis 872  
*Borrelia* 333 573 591 597  
   *buccale* 333  
   *recurrentis* 591 596  
     cultivation and biologic properties 592  
     morphology 591 592  
   See also Relapsing fever  
   *refringens* 333 315 336  
   *vincentii* 333 596  
*Borrelomycetes* 786  
 Botulinus toxin pharmacologic action 161 162  
 Botulism 546 567  
   distribution of antigens and heat resistance 554  
   pathogenesis 566  
   prophylaxis and treatment 566 567  
   See also *Clostridium botulinum*  
*Bovimycetes* 786  
 Bradycardia relative with fever 313  
 Bradykinin action blocked by eosinophil granules 233  
   role in anaphylaxis and allergic reactions 242 248  
   species differences to action of 250  
 Brain abscess from otitis media suppurative chronic 772  
 Brill Zinsser disease carriers 27  
 Bronchiectasis with pasteurellosis 663  
 Bronchitis with pasteurellosis 663  
*Bruella* 698 716  
   antigenic composition 705 706  
   characteristics and biotypes 701  
   classification of species 699 701  
   definition 698  
   infection spectrum 706 707  
   L variants from 794  
   morphology and physiology 700-702  
   mutation 703 704  
   sterilization 704  
*Brucella abortus* 683 687 698 708 711 713 716 747 887  
   survival of phagocytosis 279  
   *melitensis* 683 698 708 713 715  
   *neotomae* 700  
   *ovis* 700 701 707  
   *suis* 698 707 710 712 714  
 Brucellaceae 659 681 700  
 Brucellergen use in tests for brucellosis 281  
 Brucellosis 698 716  
   in animals, 706 707  
   clinical picture 709 710  
   control 713  
   diagnosis laboratory 710 712  
     skin tests 281  
   epidemiology 712 713  
   history 698 699  
   in man 706 707  
   pathogenesis 707 709  
   resistance to 713 716  
   treatment 712  
 Buffaloes water brucellosis 706  
 Burns therapy antibiotics *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* on injured skin 619  
*Butyrivibrio fibrosolvens* 333  
 Calciferol therapy blastomycosis 861  
 Calf (calves) anaphylaxis in 253  
   tularemia, 684  
 Camels brucellosis 706  
 Canavanine interference with utilization of aspartic acid 118  
*Candida* 826  
   *albicans* 331 335 336 835 840  
     cultivation 836  
     distribution 836 838  
     history 835 836  
     infectious pathogenesis 838 839  
   See also Candidiasis  
   *guilliermondii* 336 837  
   *krusei* 336 837  
   *parapsilosis* 336 837  
   *pseudotropicalis* 336 837  
   species differential diagnosis 837  
   *stellatoidea* 336 837  
   *tropicalis* 336 837  
 Candidiasis control measures 840  
   diagnosis 839 840  
   epidemiology 840  
   immunity 839  
   pathogenesis 838 839  
   treatment 840  
   See also *Candida albicans*  
 Capreomycin therapy tuberculosis 510  
 Carate See Pinta

- Carbohydrate group-specific of hemolytic streptococci 362 364  
metabolism *See* Metabolism carbohydrate
- Carbomycin therapy . pasteurellosis 662
- Carrion's disease in man from *Bartonella bacilliformis* 775
- Caryophanon* size 40
- Casoni reaction in allergy in parasitic infestations 282
- Cat(s) bites inflicted by pasteurellosis from 663  
infection by pleuropneumonia like organisms 803  
tularemia, 684
- Catarrh infectious in white mice 799
- Cathomycin therapy pasteurellosis 662
- Cations divalent influence on phagocytosis 225
- Cattle abortion, due to listeria 754  
anthrax epidemiology 540  
fatal infection 535  
brucellosis 706 707  
*Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* infection 758  
listerosis 754  
pleuropneumonia 799  
tuberculosis 5-1
- Caulobacter* sp attached to *Bacillus megaterium* electron micrograph 41
- Cell(s) bacterial shape 39-40  
size 39-40  
spatial arrangement 39-40  
heterogenetic 77 78  
immune mechanisms humoral factors 199  
Kupffer *See* Kupffer cell  
lysogenic carrying, lambda, 77 78  
wall mucopolysaccharide biosynthesis cycle leading to 114-115
- Cellulitis anaerobic from *Clostridium perfringens* 555
- Cephalosporium granulomans* 856
- Chamois brucellosis 706
- Chemoprophylaxis prevention of infection 942 944  
protection of person susceptible to infection 916
- Chemotaxis phagocytes 222
- Chemotherapy birth of 13 15  
definition 949  
gonorrhea 458  
modern chemical theory experimental studies of Ehrlich 14
- Chemotherapy—(Cont)  
periodontal disease 347  
plague 673  
*See also individual agents*
- Chick embryos for experiments  
*Mycoplasma pneumoniae* infections 815 816
- Chickens tuberculosis 521  
tularemia 684 685
- Chills shaking with fever 312
- Chimpanzees for experiments  
syphilis 579  
typhoid fever 624 630
- Chinchilla for experiments  
*Staphylococcus aureus* infection, 425
- Chipmunks tularemia, 684
- Chloramine T disinfection by 929
- Chloramphenicol as inhibitor of protein synthesis 129 132  
interference with protein synthesis, 114  
introduction in therapy 950  
molecular models 130  
prophylaxis typhus scrub 944  
resistance to by *Pasteurella pestis* 666  
pseudotuberculosis 678  
therapy *Bacteroides* infections 773  
*Bordetella parapertussis* infection 749  
diarrhea, infantile 614  
dysentery bacillary 642  
*Escherichia coli* infections 614  
gastroenteritis 614  
*Klebsiella pneumoniae* infections 617  
listerosis 756  
meningitis influenzal 738 739  
Oroya fever 781  
pasteurellosis 662  
pertussis 747  
plague 665 673 674  
pleuropneumonia like organisms infection, 804  
pneumococcus infection, 407  
*P. otus vulgaris* infections 618  
*Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infections 619  
salmonella infections 632  
tularemia 688  
typhoid fever 632  
ulcerative lesions of oropharynx genitalia and extremities 596
- Chlorine disinfection by 928 929
- Chlorotriazine (Diuril) therapy  
photo allergic reactions 270
- Chlortetracycline resistance to by *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* 678  
therapy *Bacteroides* infections 773  
diarrhea infantile 614  
fever rat bite 768  
gastroenteritis 614  
*Klebsiella pneumoniae* infections 617  
pertussis 747  
plague 665 673  
pleuropneumonia like organisms infection 804  
*Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infections 619  
relapsing fever 594
- Cholecystitis suppurative *Escherichia coli* in, 612
- Cholera, 649 657  
Asiatic 652 654  
clinical course 652  
control measures 656-657  
immunization 656  
public information 656 657  
quarantine 656  
sanitary 656  
diagnosis laboratory 654  
etiology 653  
history 652  
immunologic features 655  
pathogenicity 654 655
- Chicken immunization, studies of Pasteur 10
- Epidemic London (1854)  
transmitted by water 16
- Epidemiology 655-656  
resistance to 32  
vibrio isolation and cultivation by Koch 8
- Chromoblastomycosis 859 862  
diagnosis 861  
distribution 860  
epidemiology 862  
immunity 861  
pathogenesis 860-861  
treatment 861 862  
*See also Hormodendrum pedrosoi*
- Circling disease *See* Listerosis
- Circulation central failure in host responses to infection 314  
peripheral failure in host responses to infection 314 316  
defervescence 315  
endotoxin role in shock, 315 316  
hyperthermia 315  
hypotension 315

- Citellus beecheyi* (ground squirrel) plague in 664  
 Citric acid cycle 97 98  
 distribution 100 101  
*Cladosporium* 860  
   *trichoides* 862  
   *werneckii* 860  
*Cladothrix asteroides* 827  
 Clasmatocyte morphology 217  
 Clorox disinfection by 928  
*Clostridium*(a) 545 567  
   biochemical reactions 550  
   cultivation 547 549  
   diseases caused by 553 555  
     botulism See Botulism  
     enterotoxemia 553 554  
     gas gangrene See Gas gangrene  
     tetanus See Tetanus  
   flora of gas gangrene 553  
   isolation and identification 550 553  
   L variants from 794  
   morphology 545 546  
   spores spherical 61  
*Clostridium* 330  
   *acetobutylicum* 545  
   *bifermentans* 546 548 550  
     552 553 555 556 558  
     559  
   *botulinum* 545 548 551 552  
     564 566  
     pathogenicity 150 401  
     toxins 565 566  
     Types A F 545 564 566  
     See also Botulism  
   *butyricum* 546 550 553  
   *capitovale* 546 550 553  
   *carnis* 546 550  
   *chauvoei* 545 546 549 550  
     552 560  
   *coclearium* 546 550 553  
   *cylindrosporum* fermentation  
     of purines in 108 109  
   *difficile* 546 550  
   *fallax* 546 550 553  
   *hastiforme* 553  
   *histolyticum* 546 547 549  
     550 553 555 556 558  
   *multifermentans* 553  
   *novyi* toxins and enzymes 557  
     Types A D 545 547 549  
     553 555 556 559 561  
   *parabotulinum* 564  
   *perfringens* Types A F 330  
     334 547 549 551 553  
     555 557 559 561 567  
     distribution of antigens  
       and heat resistance 554  
     morphology 545 546  
     toxins and enzymes 555 557  
     See also Gas gangrene  
   *putrificum* 553  
   *regulare* 553  
*Clostridium*—(Cont)  
   *septicum* 545 546 549 553  
     555 557 561  
   *torcellii* 546 548 550 555  
     558  
   *sphenoides* 546 550 553  
   *sporogenes* 107 546 548 550  
     553 555 558 559  
   *tertium* 546 547 549 550  
     553  
   *tetani* 151 330 334 545 547  
     548 550 553 555 556  
     561 563  
     See also Tetanus  
   *tetanomorphum* 106 107 546  
     550 553  
   *welchii* pathogenicity factors  
     influencing 150 151  
 Coagulase free and bound in  
   *Staphylococcus aureus* 419  
   426  
   of *Staphylococcus pyogenes*  
     154  
*Coccidioides* 826  
   *immitis* 844 848 850 853  
     antigenic structure 851  
     cultivation 851  
     history 850-851  
     See also Coccidioidomycosis  
   *Coccidioidin* 851  
   Coccidioidomycosis control meas-  
     ures 853  
     diagnosis 852 853  
     distribution 851  
     epidemiology 853  
     immunity 852  
     pathogenesis 851 852  
     treatment 853  
     See also Coccidioides *immitis*  
   *Coccobacillus*(i) 39 786 799  
   *Coccus* (i) 38 39  
     gram negative 334  
     gram positive 334  
   Cold allergy to 270  
*Colicins* 82  
*Colistin* therapy *Pseudomonas*  
   *aeruginosa* infections 619  
 Collagenase influence on pathoge-  
   nicity of some bacterial species  
   150 156  
 Colonies of bacteria mucoid  
   (M) 45  
   smooth or rough surface (S  
   and R) 45  
 Complement chemical aspects  
   195 197  
   *C1* esterase 195  
    *$\beta$*   $\alpha$ -globulin 196 197  
    *$\beta$*  globulin 196  
    *$\beta$*  globulin 197  
   11S component 195 196  
   components 190 192  
   separation of activities 191  
     192  
 Complement—(Cont)  
   deficiency congenital in rab-  
     bits 208  
   definition 190  
   effect on cell membranes 200  
     203  
   nature of lesion caused by  
     200-202  
   formation of spheroplasts  
     from gram negative mi-  
     croorganisms 201  
   morphology of lysis of  
     mammalian cells 200  
     201  
   one hit theory 201 202  
   permeability defect 201  
   mode of action 202 203  
   hypotheses indirect action  
     through a cytolytic  
     agent 202  
   lysolecithin 202  
   mechanical stress 202 203  
   reaction 190-195  
     steps 192 195  
   role in host resistance to in-  
     fections 190 197  
   substrate 203  
 Complement fixation test (reac-  
   tion) introduction by Bordet  
   and Gengou 12  
 syphilis 12  
 Conidiophores type *Acrotheca*  
   859 860  
   *Hormodendrum* 859 860  
   *Phialophora* 859 860  
 Convulsion with fever 313  
 Coombs test for blocking type  
   antibody brucellosis 713  
 Corticotropin therapy with anti-  
   biotics brucellosis 712  
 Cortisone(s) activation of en-  
   dogenous microbial disease  
   33  
   modifications in allergic state  
     by 295 296  
   therapy increase in number of  
     neutrophils from 230  
*Corynebacteriaceae* 752  
*Corynebacterium* 329 330  
   *acnes* 329 334  
   aerobic 334  
   *diphtheriae* 329 469-487  
     cultivation 471 472  
     definition 468  
     lysogenization 78  
     microscopic examination 38  
     morphology 470-471  
       classification 471  
       colonies rough and  
       smooth 471 472  
       types 471  
     pathogenicity for animals  
       476-479  
     factors influencing, 150

- Corynebacterium diptheriae*—  
(Cont)  
  toxinogeny and lysogeny 474 476  
  conversion and transduction 474  
  prophages and phages 474  
  virulence test 473  
  See also Diphtheria  
  *haemolyticum* 329  
  *hofmanni* 329 344 473 487  
  L variants from 794 795  
  *pseudodiphtheriticum* 329  
  *vaginale* 331  
  *xerosis* 329 473 487
- Coryza* allergic 262 269  
  antibodies in comparison with asthma 263  
  nonreaginic desensitization 266 269  
  histamine release from white blood cells 265  
  reagin(s) development 264  
  nature of 267 269  
  to penicillin 269  
  as responsible antibody 263  
  synthesis 263  
  test basophile degranulation 265 266  
  flare and wheal 264  
  Prausnitz Kuestner 264 265
- Coyote tularemia 684
- Crateriforme tonsurans* See *Trichophyton tonsurans*
- Crispispira* 573
- Cryptococcosis diagnosis 834 835  
  distribution 833  
  pathogenesis 833 834  
  treatment 835  
  See also *Cryptococcus neoformans*  
*Cryptococcus* 8 6 846  
  *neoformans* 832 835  
  cultivation 832 833  
  history 832  
  See also Cryptococcosis
- D-cycloserine structures and molecular models 124  
  therapy tuberculosis 510
- Cystitis Escherichia coli* in 612
- Cytosine as pyrimidine base of DNA 75
- Cytochromes role in electron transport and characteristic absorption maximum 93 94  
  types 93 94
- DDT as control measure bartonellosis 782  
  as prophylaxis plague 676
- Death in anthrax mechanism 536  
  from tetanus 564
- Declomycin (demethylchlortetracycline) therapy phototoxicity 270
- Decomplementation as host defense in vivo studies 206 207
- Deer brucellosis 706
- tularemia 684
- Delirium with fever 313
- Demethylchlortetracycline (Declomycin) therapy atypical primary 820 821  
  phototoxicity 270
- Dental caries 348 349  
  etiology 348  
  experimentally induced in hamsters and rats 348 349  
  prophylaxis fluoridation of public water supplies 349  
  treatment 349
- Deoxyribonuclease of streptococci hemolytic Group A 372 373
- Deoxyribonucleic acid See DNA
- Deoxyribose in DNA 75
- Dermatitis blastomycotic See Blastomycosis and Blastomycetes dermatitis  
  contact 284 287  
  drugs reactions to 287  
  experimental investigation 284 286
- Dermatomycoses pathogenesis 869
- Dermatophytes 335 862 872  
  control measures 871 872  
  cultivation 863 868  
    *Epidermophyton* 868  
    *Keratomyces* 868  
    *Microsporum* 866 868 871  
    *Trichophyton* 863 866 869 871  
  diagnosis 871  
  distribution 868 869  
  epidemiology 871  
  history 862  
  immunity 870 871  
  pathogenesis 869  
  treatment 871
- Desoxyhexoses in polysaccharides of endotoxins 304
- Detergents anionic disinfection by 927
- Deuteromycetes* 875 876
- Diabetes mellitus unusual susceptibility to certain bacterial diseases 231
- Dialiste 772  
  pneumoniales 332
- Diamanus montanus* as vector plague 676
- Diaminopimelic acid in bacterial cells 122
- Diamond skin disease in swine See Swine *Erysipelothrix rhusopathiae* infection
- Diarrhea in cholera Asiatic 652 654  
  infantile from *Escherichia coli* 612  
  treatment 614  
  mortality 23
- Diazo-oxo norleucine as glutamine analogue 140
- Dideoxyhexoses in polysaccharides of endotoxins 304
- Dihydroxystilbamidine therapy blastomycosis 843
- Dihydrostreptomycin resistance to *Bacteroides* 773  
  therapy pleuropneumoniae organisms infection 804
- Dinitrophenol (DNP) as uncoupling agent for assimilation of aerobes by oxidation 95 96
- Diphosphopyridine nucleotidase (DPNase) of streptococci hemolytic Group A 371
- Diphtheria antitoxin 485  
  assay 486  
  production by Behring 11  
  carrier 481-482  
  diagnosis bacteriologic 472 473  
    Schick test 483 484  
  epidemiology 487 483  
  history 469 470  
  immunity 482 483  
  immunization artificial 484 485  
  incidence seasonal 891  
  in man 479 480  
  pathogenesis 473 479  
  persistence of pathogens in patients after recovery 17  
  Ramon flocculation reaction 486  
  toxin assay 486  
  discovery by Loeffler 11  
  mammalian cell lines as experimental tool 478  
  mode of action in animals 476 479  
  pharmacologic action 160 161  
  production and properties 474-476  
  toxin 484-485  
  assay 486  
  treatment 480 481  
  See also *Corynebacterium diptheriae*  
*D. phylobothrum latum* 889  
*Diplobacilli* 39

- Citellus beecheyi* (ground squirrel) plague in 664  
 Citric acid cycle 97 98  
 distribution 100 101  
*Cladosporium* 860  
   *trichoides* 862  
   *verneckii* 860  
*Cladothrix asteroides* 827  
 Clasmatocyte morphology 217  
 Clorex disinfection by 928  
*Clostridium*(a) 545 567  
   biochemical reactions 550  
   cultivation 547 549  
   diseases caused by 553 555  
     botulism See Botulism  
     enterotoxemia 553 554  
     gas gangrene See Gas gangrene  
     tetanus See Tetanus  
   flora of gas gangrene 553  
   isolation and identification 550 553  
   L variants from 794  
   morphology 545 546  
   spores spherical 61  
*Clostridium* 330  
   *acetobutylicum* 545  
   *bifermentans* 546 548 550  
     552 553 555 556 558  
     559  
   *botulinum* 545 548 551 552  
     564 566  
     pathogenicity 150 401  
     toxins 565 566  
     Types A F 545 564 566  
     See also Botulism  
   *butyricum* 546 550 553  
   *capitovale* 546 550 553  
   *carnis* 546 550  
   *chauvoei* 545 546 549 550  
     552 560  
   *coclearium* 546 550 553  
   *cylindrosporium* fermentation  
     of purines in 108 109  
   *difficile* 546 550  
   *fallax* 546 550 553  
   *hastiforme* 553  
   *histolyticum* 546 547 549  
     550 553 555 556 558  
   *multifermentans* 553  
   *novyi* toxins and enzymes 557  
     Types A D 545 547 549  
     553 555 556 559 561  
   *parabotulinum* 564  
   *perfringens* Types A F 330  
     334 547 549 551 553  
     555 557 559 561 567  
     distribution of antigens  
       and heat resistance 554  
     morphology 545 546  
     toxins and enzymes 555 557  
     See also Gas gangrene  
   *putrificum* 553  
   *regulare* 553  
*Clostridium*—(Cont)  
   *septicum* 545 546 549 553  
     555 557 561  
   *ordellii* 546 548 550 555  
     558  
   *sphenoides* 546 550 553  
   *sporogenes* 107 546 548 550  
     553 555 558 559  
   *tertius* 546 547 549 550  
     553  
   *tetani* 151 330 334 545 547  
     548 550 553 555 556  
     561 563  
     See also Tetanus  
   *tetanomorphum* 106 107 546  
     550 553  
   *welchii* pathogenicity factors  
     influencing 150 151  
 Coagulase free and bound in  
   *Staphylococcus aureus* 419  
   426  
   of *Staphylococcus pyogenes*  
     154  
*Coccidioides* 826  
   *immitis* 844 848 850 853  
     antigenic structure 851  
     cultivation 851  
     history 850-851  
     See also Coccidioidomycosis  
   Coccidioidin 851  
   Coccidioidomycosis control meas-  
     ures 853  
     diagnosis 852 853  
     distribution 851  
     epidemiology 853  
     immunity 852  
     pathogenesis 851 852  
     treatment 853  
     See also Coccidioides immitis  
   Coccobacillus(i) 39 786 799  
   Coccus (i) 38 39  
     gram negative 334  
     gram positive 334  
   Cold allergy to 270  
 Colicins 82  
 Colistin therapy *Pseudomonas*  
   aeruginosa infections 619  
 Collagenase influence on pathoge-  
   nicity of some bacterial species  
   150 156  
 Colonies of bacteria mucoid  
   (M) 45  
   smooth or rough surface (S  
     and R) 45  
 Complement chemical aspects  
   195 197  
   C1 esterase 195  
    $\beta$ -globulin 196 197  
    $\beta$  globulin 196  
    $\beta$  globulin 197  
   11S component 195 196  
   components 190-192  
   separation of activities 191  
     192  
 Complement—(Cont)  
   deficiency congenital in rab-  
     bits 208  
   definition 190  
   effect on cell membranes 200  
     203  
   nature of lesion caused by  
     200 202  
   formation of spheroplasts  
     from gram negative mi-  
     croorganisms 201  
   morphology of lysis of  
     mammalian cells 200  
     201  
   one hit theory 201 202  
   permeability defect 201  
   mode of action 202 203  
   hypotheses indirect action  
     through a cytolytic  
     agent 202  
   lysolecithin 202  
   mechanical stress 202 203  
   reaction 190-195  
     steps 192 195  
   role in host resistance to in-  
     fections 190 197  
   substrate 203  
 Complement fixation test (reac-  
   tion) introduction by Bordet  
   and Genow 12  
 syphilis 12  
 Conidiophores type: *Acrotheca*  
   859 860  
   *Hormodendrum* 859 860  
   *Phialophora* 859 860  
 Convulsion with fever 313  
 Coombs test for blocking type  
   antibody brucellosis 713  
 Corticotropin therapy with anti-  
   biotics brucellosis 712  
 Cortisone(s) activation of en-  
   dogenous microbial disease  
   33  
   modifications in allergic state  
     by 295 296  
   therapy increase in number of  
     neutrophils from 230  
*Corynebacteriaceae* 752  
*Corynebacterium* 329 330  
   *acnes* 329 334  
   aerobic 334  
   *diphtheriae* 329 469-487  
     cultivation 471-472  
     definition 468  
     lysogenization 78  
     microscopic examination 38  
     morphology 470-471  
       classification 471  
       colonies rough and  
       smooth 471 472  
       types 471  
     pathogenicity for animals  
       476 479  
     factors influencing, 150

## Epidemiology—(Cont)

- pasteurellosis 663
- persistence in healthy persons of pathogens 17
- pleuropneumonia and pleuro pneumoniae like organisms 795 799
- pneumonia atypical primary 821
- pneumococcal 407-408
- principles as applied to infectious diseases 886 910
- pseudotuberculosis 680
- rates commonly used 906 909
  - attack 909
  - incidence vs prevalence 909
  - morbidity (case rate) 908 909
  - case fatality rate 908
  - crude 907
  - specific 907 908
- reservoir of infection 889 896
  - character of 889 890
  - escape from 894 896
  - abnormal portals 895 896
  - duration of 896
  - genitourinary 895
  - intestinal 895
  - respiratory 895
- size of 890 894
  - acute infections 890 893
  - types of fluctuation
    - long term variation 893
    - seasonal variation 890-892
    - short term cycles 891 893
- chronic infections 893 894
- salmonella infections 632 633
- severity of reaction to infection 890
- sporotrichosis 856
- Staphylococcus aureus* diseases 421
- susceptibility to infection 903 906
  - effect of partial community protection, 904 905
  - epidemic curve 905 906
- transfer of infection 896 903
  - direct 896 897
  - indirect 897 903
  - resistance of organisms 897 898
  - vehicles 898 903
    - air 901
    - fomites 901
    - food 899 901
    - insect spread 901 903
    - milk 898 899
    - soil 901
    - water 898

## Epidemiology—(Cont)

- tuberculosis See Tuberculosis epidemiology
- tularemia 688 689
- typhoid fever 632 633
- See also Epidemics and individual diseases
- Epidermophyton* 862 868
- floccosum* 336 867 869
- inguinale* 862
- Epiglottitis from *Hemophilus influenzae* infection in upper respiratory tract 727
- Epinephrine therapy interference with phagocytosis 230
- Episomes 82
- Epizootiology pasteurellosis 663
- pseudotuberculosis 680
- Ergosterol effects of polyene antibiotics due to interaction with 127 128
- Erysipelas 379 380
  - swine immunization pioneer work of Pasteur 10
- Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* 757 753 757 760
  - antigenic structure 758
  - distribution and range of pathogenicity 758
  - epidemiology 759 760
  - history 757
  - infection diagnosis 759
  - in man 759
  - pathogenesis and symptomatology 758 759
  - treatment 759
  - morphology and cultivation 757 758
  - resistance 758
- Erythema nodosum as delayed sequela of streptococcal infection 381
- Erythrocin resistance of organism to *Pasteurella pestis* 666
- Erythrocytes changes in host responses to infection 318 319
  - anemia 318 319
  - in vitro studies 206
- Erythromycin as inhibitor of protein synthesis 136
- introduction in therapy 950
- prophylaxis ophthalmia neonatorum 456
- resistance to *Bacteroides* 773
- Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* 678
- therapy listeriosis 756
- meningitis influenzal 738
- pasteurellosis 662
- tularemia 688
- Escherichia* 610
  - coli* 335 610-614 616 618
  - antigenic pattern 612

*Escherichia coli*—(Cont)

- banded fibrils in capsules 45
- cell division chromosome labeled with  $H^3$  thymidine autoradiograph 60
- wall layers 50 51
- chromosomes DNA in amount ■■
- concept of sexual differentiation ■■
- division of cells and nuclear equivalents 58
- effects of chloramphenicol on protein RNA and DNA synthesis in 129
- of penicillin on incorporation of isotopes into cell wall or protein and nucleic acid 122 123
- of streptomycin concentration in medium on cellular composition 132
- genes located on a single chromosome 39 60
- glycogen granules electron micrograph 57
- mating types ■■
- morphology 611 612
- mutation analysis 73
- production of indole from tryptophan 110
- protoplasts penicillin induced formation 121
- reactions biochemical 613
- differential 614
- ribosomes components 56
- electron micrograph 55
- transduction caused by phages 77
- restricted 77 78
- walls and cytoplasmic membrane electron micrograph 48
- fimbriae in 43
- L variants from 794
- Esterase of streptococci hemolytic Group A 375
- Ethidium bromide as inhibitor of nucleic acid synthesis 138
- Ethionamide therapy tuberculosis 510
- Ethylene oxide sterilization by 921
- Eubacteria* 825
- Eubacteriales* 825
  - flagellated 41
  - morphology 40
- Eumycetes* 825
- Eumycotina* 825
- Exotoxins classic of gram positive bacteria, 159 160



- Diplococcus*(s) 39  
 L variants from 794  
*Diplococcus intracellularis meningitidis* See *Neisseria meningitidis* and *Meningococcus pneumoniae* 327 334 556 623  
 avirulence of nonencapsulated strains 45  
 types II III XIV chemical composition of bacterial capsules 46  
 Disinfection modern chemical theory experimental studies of Ehrlich 14  
 sterilization by See Sterilization methods disinfection  
 Diuril (chlorothiazide) therapy photo-allergic reactions 270  
 DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) bases 75  
 chemical analysis 75  
 drug resistance transferred from resistant mutants to sensitive cells 397  
 induction of new traits in *Hemophilus influenzae* 736 737  
 molecules structure 75  
 in phagocytes 222  
 role in bacterial genetics 82 83  
 in protein biosynthesis 128  
 synthesis as result of action of enzyme DNA polymerase 110 112  
 toxigeny and lysogeny of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* 474 476  
 transformation of types of pneumococci 396 397  
 of unencapsulated to encapsulated forms of genes caused by 74  
 DNA RNA polymerase catalytic agent in synthesis of messenger RNA 111 112  
 Dog(s) anaphylaxis in 247 251  
 characteristics 251  
 brucellosis 706  
 infection by pleuropneumonia like organisms 801  
 species differences to action of pharmacologic mediators 250  
 tularemia 684 685  
*Donovania granulomatis* 611 617  
 DPNase (diphosphopyridine nucleotidase) of streptococci hemolytic Group A 371  
 Drug(s) allergy 262  
 antimicrobial See Treatment infectious diseases antimicrobial drugs  
 Drug(s)—(Cont)  
 therapy phototoxicity 270  
 Ducts of Morgagni gonococcal infection 455-456  
 Dyes disinfection by 927 928  
 Dysentery bacillary 634 644  
 clinical picture 640-641  
 control measures 644  
 diagnosis laboratory 641 642  
 epidemiology 643 644  
 history 634 635  
 immunity 641  
 pathogenesis 640  
 treatment 642 643  
 See also *Shigella*  
 epidemics 21  
 lamb 554  
*Eberthella typhosa* 624  
 Electrons high-energy sterilization by 923 924  
 Elk brucellosis 706  
 Embden Meyerhof (glycolytic) pathway of carbohydrate metabolism 96 98 221 666  
 Empyema with pasteurellosis 663  
 in pneumonia staphylococcal 423  
 Encephalitis fatal etiology herpes simplex infection 32  
 Encephalitis 283  
 Encephalomyelitis experimental allergic 283  
 Encephalopathy after injection of pertussis vaccine 748  
 Endocarditis bacterial acute from *Staphylococcus aureus* 423  
 subacute 340 341  
 Endodermophyton concentricum See also *Trichophyton concentricum*  
*Endomyces capsulatus* 840  
 dermatitis 840  
 Endotoxin(s) 304 306  
 fever 308 309  
 interference with phagocytosis 230  
 polysaccharides 304  
 role in fever 310 311  
 in shock 315 316  
 Schwartzmann phenomenon 305  
 tolerance production by in injection of sublethal amounts 305  
*Entamoeba histolytica* 635 642 897  
 Enteritis choleraform 654  
 El Tor 654  
 mortality 21  
 Enteritis—(Cont)  
 necrotic in man distribution of antigens and heat resistance 554  
 Enterobacteria 330  
 Enterobacteriaceae 610 634  
 659 677 678  
 Enterococcus(s) 327 334  
 Enterocolitis pseudomembranous staphylococcal 423  
 Enterotoxemia 553 554  
 Enterotoxin in *Staphylococcus aureus* 420  
 Entner Doudoroff pathway 100  
 Enzymes *Clostridium novyi* 557  
*perfringens* 555 557  
 extracellular influence on pathogenicity of some bacterial species 149  
 flavin 94  
 hydrolytic in phagocytes 222  
 proteolytic extracellular influence on pathogenicity of some bacterial species 156  
 repression for control of biosynthesis 117  
 synthesis of DNA or RNA from nucleotide units 75  
 Eosinophil(s) accumulation about antigen antibody complexes 232  
 amoeboid movement 222  
 electron micrograph 217 219  
 morphology 216  
 phase contrast appearance 216  
 Eosinophilia in recovery from infection 317  
*Eperythron* 775 782 783  
*coccoides* 777 783 787  
 Epidemiology actinomycetes aerobic infections 831 832  
 actinomycosis 342  
 blastomycosis 843  
 South American 846  
 brucellosis 712 713  
 cholera Asiatic 655 656  
 chromoblastomycosis 862  
 coccidioidomycosis 853  
 crowd diseases 17 18  
 definition 886 887  
 dermatophytes 871  
 diphtheria, 482-483  
 dysentery bacillary 643 644  
 entry of infection 903  
 etiologic agent 887 889  
 location 888  
 specificity 887 888  
 type 888 889  
 evolution of thought 15 18  
 experimental 342  
 histoplasmosis 850  
 infections streptococci hemolytic 385 386  
 maduromycosis 858

- Fungus(1)—(Cont)**  
 spore types sexual and asexual 876
- Furuncles (boils) from *Staphylococcus aureus*** 422 423
- Fusiformis nigrescens*** 772
- Fusobacterium*** 329 332
- fusiforme* 332 335 345 772
- gigas* 332 335
- Fusospirochetal diseases** 345 346
- G fraction of plasma (permeability factor) role in anaphylaxis and allergic reactions** 241 247 249
- Gaffky tetragena*** 327 432
- Galactosamine in polysaccharides of endotoxins** 304
- Gantrisin (sulfisoxazole) therapy meningococci infection** 448
- Gas gangrene** 555 561
- distribution of antigens and heat resistance 554
- flora clostridial 553
- pathogenesis 558 560
- prophylaxis and treatment 560-561
- See also *Clostridium perfringens* *C. novyi* *C. septicum*
- Gas sterilization by** 920-922
- Gastroenteritis from *Escherichia coli*** 612
- from *Salmonella* infection 627 628
- treatment 614
- Gazelles brucellosis** 706
- Genetics bacterial** 74 84
- conjugation 78 82
- colicins 82
- episomes 82
- F-duction III III
- frequency of mating and gene transfer 80
- mating type definition 80
- segregation of unselected markers 80
- DNA** 82 83
- historical considerations 72 73
- spatial organization of material 76
- taxonomy and evolution III 84
- transduction 75 78
- abortive 77
- frequency 77
- restricted 77
- stable 77
- transformation 74 75
- variation 73 74
- Genitalia, ulcerative lesions** 596
- Genitourinary tract, microorganisms commonly found on healthy surfaces** 334-335
- Geotrichum*** 826
- Gerbils as hosts plague** 675
- Germ theory of disease** 4 5
- chemical approach to study of microbial life 4 5
- contribution of Lister 7
- formulation by Bassi 6
- pioneer work of Pasteur 4 5
- Gilchrist disease of *See Blastomyces dermatitidis* and *Blas***
- tomycosis***
- fungus of *See Blastomyces dermatitidis*
- Gingivitis marginal** 346
- ulcerative 347
- Vincent's 346
- Glands Bartholin's gonococcal infection** 456
- Littre's gonococcal infection 456
- Skene's gonococcal infection 456
- Glenospora brevis*** 840
- gammeli* 840
- loboi* 844
- Globulin rabbit amino acid composition** 159
- permeability factor in anaphylaxis 242
- a globulin (permeability factor) 241 242
- G a globulin (permeability factor) species differences to action of** 250
- $\beta$  Globulin 183 185
- $\beta_1$  Globulin chemical aspects 196 197
- $\beta_2$  Globulin chemical aspects 196
- $\beta_{1+2}$  Globulin chemical aspects 197
- $\gamma$  Globulin chains II 188 189
- L 186 188 189
- definition 183
- fragmentation by enzymatic hydrolysis 186 187
- F fragment and S-fragment 187
- into polypeptide chains 187 189
- human genetic types 186
- prophylaxis infectious diseases 957
- structure 188 190
- types and their properties 184 186
- $\gamma$  Globulin 183 186
- properties 184
- 75 $\gamma$  Globulin 183 185
- properties 184
- 19S $\gamma$  Globulin 183 185
- properties 184
- Glomerulonephritis chronic and subacute portion of glomerulus** 271
- experimental in allergy studies 256 257
- hemorrhagic acute as delayed sequela of streptococcal infection 380-381
- Glucocorticoids therapy with antibiotics brucellosis** 712
- D glucosamine in polysaccharides of endotoxins** 304
- Glucose metabolism by Embden Meyerhof (glycolytic) pathway** 96 97
- by Entner Duodoroff pathway 100
- in polysaccharides of endotoxins 304
- synthesis involving pyridine nucleotides and ATP 101
- Glucose 6 phosphate conversion to ribose 5 phosphate** 99 100
- Beta glucuronidase in phagocytes** 222
- Glutamate fermentation in *Clostridium tetramorphum*** 106 107
- D glutamic acid** 122
- Glycerol teichoic acids of streptococci hemolytic Group A** 366 367
- Glycogen inclusions cytoplasmic** 56 57
- Glycols ethylene and propylene disinfection by** 927
- Glyoxylate bypass III** 99
- Goats abortion due to listeria** 754
- agalactia contagious 801
- anthrax epidemiology 540
- brucellosis 706
- infection by pleuropneumonia like organisms 801
- listeriosis 754
- pleuropneumonia contagious 801
- Gonococcus(1)** 451 465
- cultivation and characteristics 453-455
- infection clinical course 455 456
- limited to man 455
- morphology 453
- toxicity 455
- Gonorrhea** 451
- control measures 462 465
- US Public Health Service requirements 464-465
- cure tests 460
- diagnosis 456 458
- differential from *Mima* and *Herella* microorganisms 457
- epidemiology 460-462

- Exotoxins—(Cont)  
influence on pathogenicity of some bacterial species 149
- Eyes infection in tularemia 686
- Fatigability in infectious diseases 321 322
- Favus 862 865 869  
etiology *Trichophyton schoenleinii* as agent 6
- Fermentation alcoholic 103 104  
amino acids pairs 107 108  
experiments of Pasteur 5  
heterocyclic compounds 108 109  
heterolactic 104 105  
lactobacillus type 105 106  
homolactic 104 105  
mechanisms 101 110  
in bacterial metabolism See Metabolism bacterial fermentation mechanisms  
enrichment culture 109 110  
evolutionary relation of fermentation and respiration pathways 102 103  
pathways examples 103 106  
problem of energy production ATP and reduced pyridine nucleotide 101 102  
mixed acids origins and final products 104 105  
nitrogen containing compounds 106 107  
patterns use in classification of microorganisms 110 111  
xanthine hydrolytic reactions 108 109
- Fernandez reaction in skin tests for leprosy 280
- Fever(s) bradycardia relative 313  
continuous or sustained 311  
convulsion with 313  
delirium with 313  
endotoxin 308 309  
enteric mortality trend in 20th century 22  
Fort Bragg 597  
headache with 313  
hectic 312  
as host response to infection 307 313  
endogenous in man 310  
endotoxin fever 308 309  
fever blisters from herpes simplex virus 312 313  
as protective mechanism 313  
pyrogenic agents 308 310  
bacterial 308  
endogenous 309 310  
rigors (shaking chills) 312  
role of endotoxin 310-311
- Fever(s) as host response to infection—(Cont)  
significance of 311 313  
height of fever 311  
type of temperature curve 311 312  
steroid fever 310  
intermittent 311 312  
Malta See Brucellosis  
marsh or field 596  
Mediterranean gastric remittent See Brucellosis  
Oroya See Oroya fever  
pretibial 597  
Q prophylaxis oxytetracycline 944  
quotidian 311 312  
rat bite diagnosis 767  
history 763  
pathogenesis 766 767  
treatment 767 768  
See also *Streptobacillus moniliformis* and *Spirillum minus*  
recurrent or relapsing 312  
red in swine See Swine *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* infection  
relapsing See Relapsing fever  
*Borrelia recurrentis*  
remittent 312  
Rio Grande See Brucellosis  
septic 312  
seven day of Japan 596  
shipping in cattle 799  
spes phisusica" with 313  
spirochetal history 596 597  
steroid 310  
Texas See Brucellosis  
therapy infectious diseases 958  
transit (shipping) in farm animals 26  
typhoid See Typhoid fever  
typhus See Typhus fever  
undulant See Brucellosis
- Fibrinolysin in *Staphylococcus aureus* 419
- Filipin shrinkage and lysis of protoplasts of *Neurospora crassa* induced by 127
- Filtration sterilization by 924-925
- Fimbriae 41 43
- Fish, tularemia 685
- Flagella 40-43  
function 43  
H antigens 43  
morphology and arrangement 40-42  
microscopy darkfield 40 43  
electron 41 42  
phase contrast 40  
pencil 41 42
- Flagella morphology and arrangement—(Cont)  
polar 41 42  
proteins 41  
structure and chemical composition 41 43
- Flagellins 41
- Flavobacterium* 801  
L variants from 794
- Flea(s) rat *Xenopsylla cheopis* as reservoir plague 664  
as vectors plague 676
- Flora normal as altering factor in host resistance to infectious disease 177 178
- Fluoridation of public water supplies 349
- Fly deer as reservoir *Francisella tularensis* 684
- Fomites role in spread of infection 901
- Food poisoning from *Staphylococcus aureus* preformed enterotoxin 424  
role in spread of infection 899 901
- Foreign body surgical removal 956
- Formaldehyde brucellae killed by 705  
sterilization by 921
- Formalin *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* killed by 678
- Formiminoglutamic acid, con version of histidine to 109
- Fowl domestic *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* infection 758
- Fox tularemia 684
- Frambesia See Yaws
- Francisella* 659 681 689  
*tularensis* 659 681 689  
antigenic structure and variation 683 684  
cultivation and biochemical activities 682 683  
morphology 682  
resistance of organism 684
- Freezing thawing sterilization by 925
- Friedlander group of enteric bacteria, 615 617
- Fructose 6 phosphate conversion to ribose 5 phosphate 99 100
- Fungi imperfecti 825 826
- Fungus(i) 335 336  
allergic reactions 281  
classification 825  
examination 826-827  
of Gilchrist See *Blastomyces dermatitidis*  
identification 826 827  
indigenous to man 335 336  
parasitic role advocated by Robin 6

- Fungus(i)---(Cont)**  
 spore types sexual and asexual 8 6
- Furuncles (boils) from *Staphylococcus aureus*** 422 423
- Fusiformis nigrescens*** 772
- Fusobacterium*** 329 332
- fusiforme*** 332 335 345 772
- grans*** 332 335
- Fusospirochetal* diseases** 345 346
- G fraction of plasma (permeability factor) role in anaphylaxis and allergic reactions** 241 242 249
- Gaffky tetragen*** 327 432
- Galactosamine in polysaccharides of endotoxins** 304
- Gantrisin (sulfisoxazole) therapy meningococci infection** 448
- Gas gangrene** 555 561
- distribution of antigens and heat resistance 554
- flora clostridial 553
- pathogenesis 558 560
- prophylaxis and treatment 560-561
- See also *Clostridium perfringens C novyi C septicum*
- Gas sterilization by** 920-922
- Gastroenteritis from *Escherichia coli*** 612
- from *Salmonella* infection 627 628
- treatment 614
- Gazelles brucellosis** 706
- Genetics bacterial** 72 84
- conjugation 78 82
- colicins 82
- episomes 82
- F-duction 81 82
- frequency of mating and gene transfer 80
- mating type definition 80
- segregation of unselected markers 80
- DNA 82 83
- historical considerations 72 73
- spatial organization of maternal 76
- taxonomy and evolution 83 84
- transduction 75 78
- abortive 77
- frequency 77
- restricted 77
- stable 77
- transformation 74 75
- variation 73 74
- Genitalia, ulcerative lesions** 596
- Genitourinary tract microorganisms commonly found on healthy surfaces** 334-335
- Geotrichum*** 826
- Gerbils as hosts plague** 675
- Germ theory of disease** 4 5
- chemical approach to study of microbial life 4-5
- contribution of Lister 7
- formulation by Bassi 6
- pioneer work of Pasteur 4 5
- Gilchrist disease of *See Blastomyces dermatitidis* and *Blastomycosis***
- fungus of *See Blastomyces dermatitidis*
- Gingivitis marginal** 346
- ulcerative 347
- Vincent's 346
- Glands Bartholin's gonococcal infection** 456
- Littre's gonococcal infection 456
- Skene's gonococcal infection 456
- Glenospora brevis*** 840
- gammeli* 840
- loboi* 844
- Globulin rabbit amino acid composition** 159
- permeability factor in anaphylaxis 242
- $\alpha$  globulin (permeability factor) 241 242
- G<sub>2</sub> = globulin (permeability factor) species differences to action of** 250
- $\beta$  Globulin 183 185
- $\beta_{1c}$ -Globulin, chemical aspects 196 197
- $\beta_1$  Globulin, chemical aspects 196
- $\beta_{1r}$ -Globulin chemical aspects 197
- $\gamma$  Globulin chains II 188 189
- I. 186 188 189
- definition 183
- fragmentation by enzymatic hydrolysis 186 187
- F fragment and H-fragment 187
- into polypeptide chains 187 189
- human genetic types 186
- prophylaxis infectious diseases 957
- structure 188 190
- types and their properties 184 186
- $\gamma$  Globulin 183 186
- properties 184
- 7S $\gamma$  Globulin** 183 185
- properties 184
- 19S $\gamma$  Globulin** 183 185
- properties 184
- Glomerulonephritis chronic and subacute portion of glomerulus** 271
- experimental in allergy studies 256 257
- hemorrhagic acute as delayed sequela of streptococcal infection 380-381
- Glucocorticoids therapy with antibiotics brucellosis** 712
- D-glucosamine in polysaccharides of endotoxins** 304
- Glucose metabolism by Embden Meyerhof (glycolytic) pathway** 96 97
- by Entner Duodoroff pathway 100
- in polysaccharides of endotoxins 304
- synthesis involving pyridine nucleotides and ATP 101
- Glucose 6-phosphate conversion to ribose 5-phosphate** 99 100
- Beta glucuronidase in phagocytes** 222
- Glutamate fermentation in *Clostridium tetramorphum*** 106 107
- D-glutamic acid** 122
- Glycerol teichoic acids of streptococci hemolytic Group A** 366 367
- Glycogen inclusions cytoplasmic** 56 57
- Glycols ethylene and propylene disinfection by** 927
- Glyoxylate bypass** 98 99
- Goats abortion due to listeria** 754
- $\alpha$ -galactia contagious 801
- anthrax epidemiology 540
- brucellosis 706
- infection by pleuropneumonia like organisms 801
- listeriosis 754
- pleuropneumonia contagious 801
- Gonococcus(i)** 451-465
- cultivation and characteristics 453-455
- infection clinical course 455 456
- limited to man 455
- morphology 453
- toxicity 455
- Gonorrhea** 451
- control measures 462 465
- US Public Health Service requirements 464-465
- cure tests 460
- diagnosis 456-458
- differential from *Mima* and *Herella* microorganisms 457
- epidemiology 460-462

## Gonorrhea—(Cont)

- history 451 452
- prophylaxis 460 462
- with syphilis 460
- See also *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*

## Gramicidin discovery by Dubos

- 120
- as inhibitor of oxidative phosphorylation 138
- therapy infected wounds 15

## Granulocytes morphology 216

- Granuloma coccidioidal 850
- progressive treatment 853
- inguinale 617

paracoccidioidal See *Blastomyces*

## Granulomatosis infantiseptica

- 752 755

## Granulose inclusions cytoplasmic 57

## Griseofulvin therapy dermatophytes 871 872

## Guanine as purine base of DNA 75

## Guinea pig(s) anaphylaxis 242 247 251

- characteristics 247 252
- organ 246 247
- passive cutaneous 245 246
- passive transfer 244-245

## Arthus reactions reversed passive 255

## diagnostic inoculation tuberculosis 520

## differentiation between anaphylactic and Arthus type sensitivities 255

## as experimental animals anthrax 534 536

## contact dermatitis 284 286

## diphtheria toxin 476 477

## leptospirosis 602

## listeriosis 754

*Mycoplasma pneumoniae* infections 815

## plague 667 669 671 672

## pleuropneumonia-like organisms infection by 802 803

*Staphylococcus aureus* infection 425

## tularemia, 683 685

## species differences to action of pharmacologic mediators 247 250

## Gynnoascaceae 863

*Gypseum mentagrophytes* See *Trichophyton mentagrophytes*

## Hadacidin as metabolite analog 140

*Haemobartonella* 775 782 783*microti* 777*muris* 783*Haemophilus* See *Hemophilus*

## Hair ectothrix infection 864

## microsporiosis 865 869

## See also Scalp

## Halazone disinfection by 928

*Halobacterium halobium* cell wall subunits electron micrograph 46

## Halogens disinfection by 928 929

## Hamsters as experimental animals brucellosis 707

## dental caries 348 349

## listeriosis 754

## pinta 590

## pleuropneumonia-like organisms infection by 803

## tularemia 684 685

Hansen's bacillus (*Mycobacterium leprae*) 490 494 522 524

## Haptens inhibition and shock by in anaphylaxis 253

## Hares brucellosis 707

## tularemia 684

*Haverhillia multififormis* 763Hay fever See *Coryza* allergic

## Headache with fever 313

## Heat gun test for tuberculosis 518

## Heat dry flaming and combustion sterilization by 923

## hot air oven sterilization by 922 923

## infrared heating lamps sterilization by 923

## moist boiling for disinfection 926 927

## inspiration and tyndallization as method of sterilization 920

## pasteurization disinfection by 926 927

## steam high pressure sterilization by 918 920

 $\alpha$  Hemolysin *Staphylococcus aureus* 418 $\beta$  Hemolysin *Staphylococcus aureus* 418 426 $\delta$  Hemolysin *Staphylococcus aureus* 418

## Hemolysis immune discovery by Bordet 182

*Hemophilus* 331 332*aegyptius* 331 335 725 729 737*aphrophilus* 331 332

## classification of influenza bacillus group according to X and V factor requirements 730

## examination of X and V factor requirements of unknown organisms 730-731

*gallinarum* 795 802*Hemophilus*—(Cont)

## genetic transformation 75

*hemoglobinophilus* 725 730*hemolyticus* 331 725 730

## identification of species 728 731

*influenzae* 331 335 724-739 747 771 773

## antigenic structure cross reactions between polysaccharides of pneumococci and type specific antigens of influenza bacilli 733

types  $\alpha$  to  $f$  732 734

## characteristics 724 725

## chemical composition of bacterial capsules 46

## cultivation and biochemical characteristics 731 732

## infection ecology 735 736

## pathogenesis and immunity 734 735

## treatment 738 739

## morphology 732

## nutritional requirements for growth 91

## pathogenicity factors influencing 149

## role in influenza pandemic 724 726

## pyogenic 724 726 729

## upper respiratory tract direct spread 726

## infection clinical patterns 726

## toxins and host range 734

## transformation of traits 736 738

## exposure to DNA derived from cells possessing character to be introduced 736

## virulence 735

See also *Influenza*

## L variants from 794

*parahemolyticus* 331 725 730*parainfluenzae* 331 335 725 729 731 737*parasus* 725*suus* 725 730*vaginalis* 331 335 795

## Heparin role in anaphylaxis and allergic reactions 241 247 249

## Heptose in polysaccharides of endotoxins 304

## Heredity as factor in incidence tuberculosis 512

*Herellea* 330infection diagnosis differential from *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* 457

- Hermodendrum caribaeum* 859  
*dermatidis* 859  
 Herpes simplex virus fever blisters from 312 313  
   infection as etiologic agent encephalitis fatal 32  
 Herpes tonsurans etiology *Trichophyton tonsurans* as agent 6  
 Heterotrophs (organotrophs) 91  
 Hexose monophosphate shunt pathway 666  
 Hexosemonophosphate shunt 99 100  
 Histamine(s) action blocked by eosinophil granules 233  
   discovery 241  
   physiologic acutance to in animals and man 250  
   release from white blood cells in allergic coryza (hay fever) 265  
   role in anaphylaxis and allergic reactions 241 248  
   in Arthus reaction 255  
   species differences to action of pharmacologic mediators 250  
   sensitivity to in animals and man 250  
 Histidine breakdown role of tetrahydrofolic acid 109  
   decarboxylase in Arthus reaction 255  
 Histocyte morphology 217  
*Histoplasma capsulatum* 281 842 846 850  
   antigenic structure 847 848  
   cultivation 847  
   history 846  
   See also Histoplasmosis  
 Histoplasmin use in tests for fungal diseases 281  
 Histoplasmosis diagnosis 849 850  
   distribution 848  
   epidemiology 850  
   immunity 849  
   pathogenesis 848 849  
   treatment 850  
   See also *Histoplasma capsulatum*  
 Homograft rejection skin and organ 287 290  
*Hormiscum dermatidis* 859  
*Hermodendrum* 860  
   *compactum* 859 860 862  
   *pedrosoi* 859 862  
   antigenic structure 860  
   cultivation 859 860  
   history 859  
   See also Chromoblastomycosis  
 Hormones host resistance in infectious disease altered by 175  
   Hormones—(Cont)  
     steroid intramuscular injection fever from 310  
 Horse(s) anaphylaxis in 253  
   anthrax epidemiology 540  
   brucellosis 706  
   *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* in infection 758  
   infection by pleuropneumonia like organisms 803  
   tin worm epizootic 864  
 Host defense humoral mechanisms 203 208  
   destruction of microorganisms 204 205  
   neutralization of viruses and bacterial toxins 203 204  
   promotion of phagocytosis 205 207  
   attraction of leukocytes by serum factors 207 208  
   immune adherence 207  
   immunoglobulin 207  
   in vitro studies erythrocytes 206  
   microorganisms 205 206  
   in vivo studies 206 207  
   decomplementation 206 207  
   depletion of opsonin 206  
   non complement binding antibody 207  
   immunization factors 938 939  
   resistance to infectious disease 170 178  
     altering factors 174 178  
     flora normal 177 178  
     hormones 175  
     influence of various diseases 175 176  
     nutrition 176 177  
     weather 177  
   antibody See Antibody  
   basic mechanisms 170 173  
   anatomic barriers 170 171  
   antibody and phagocytes 171  
   chemical microenvironment 171 173  
   impairment due to hereditary defects 208  
   inflammatory reaction 173 174  
   responses to infection, 307 314  
     circulation central failure 314  
     chanes 313 316  
     peripheral failure 314 316  
 Host responses to infection circulation peripheral failure—(Cont)  
   defervescence 315  
   endotoxin in shock role of 315 316  
   hyperthermia, 315  
   hypotension 315  
   fever See Fever as host response to infection  
   hematologic changes 316 319  
   in erythrocytes 318 319  
   anemia, 318 319  
   in leukocytes 316 318  
   eosinophilia 317  
   lymphocytes of circulating blood 317 318  
   monocytosis 318  
   in platelets 319  
   lassitude fatigability and problems in convalescence 321 322  
   malaise 321 323  
   miscellaneous changes 322 323  
   weakness 319 321  
   muscular 320 321  
   asthenia 320  
   atrophy 320 321  
   focal myositis 321  
   paresis local or general 320  
   Zenker's hyaline or waxy degeneration 320  
 Humidity as factor in incidence plague 675  
 Hyaluronic acid capsule influence on pathogenicity of some bacterial species 149 154  
   of streptococci hemolytic Group A 366  
 Hyaluronidase influence on pathogenicity of some bacterial species 150 156  
   in *Staphylococcus aureus* 419 420  
   of streptococci hemolytic Group A 373 374  
 Hydrocortisone modifications in allergic state by 296  
 Hydrogen peroxide disinfection by 930  
 Hypersensitivity relation to disease processes 162  
   See also Allergy  
 Hypochlorites *brucellae* killed by 705  
 Hypochlorous acid (HOCl) disinfection by 928 929  
 Immunity theories historical items 12 14  
 Immunization 931 942

## Immunization—(Cont)

- active 931 940
  - antigen antibody mixtures 932
  - antigens 932 939
    - pattern of immune response 933 936
    - adjuvants 936
    - dose 934 936
    - physical state of antigen 934
    - route 934
  - secondary response 936 939
    - host factors 938 939
    - interval between antigenic stimuli 938
  - derivatives of bacterial cultures colloidal or fluid 932
  - limitations 939
  - neonatal 939 940
  - vaccines inactivated 932
    - live attenuated 931 932
  - passive 931 940 942
    - applications 941 942
    - pattern of response 940 941
  - protection of person susceptible to infection 916
- Immunoglobulin as host defense 207
- Immunology humoral antibody specificity as key idea 182
- Impetigo contagiosa from *Staphylococcus aureus* 423
- Infection(s) development into systemic disease 307
  - host responses to See Host responses to infection
  - mechanisms of bodily defense against cellular theory 11
  - humoral theory 11
- pioneer work of Fracastoro 6
- prevention 913 945
  - chemoprophylaxis 942 944
  - control principles 913 916
  - interruption of chain of transmission 914 916
  - biologic methods 916
  - mechanical methods 914 915
    - dilution 914 915
    - filtration 915
  - physical and chemical methods 915 916
- protection of susceptible person 916
- reservoir destruction 914
  - neutralization 914
  - therapeutic cure 914
- immunization See Immunization
- isolation 930

## Infection(s) prevention—(Cont)

- microbial interference 944 945
  - quarantine 930-931
  - sterilization See Sterilization
- response of body to 10 13
- Influenza 724 739
  - epidemics 24
  - See also *Hemophilus influenzae*
- Infrared heating lamps sterilization by 923
- INH (isoniazid isonicotinic acid hydrazide) prophylaxis tuberculosis 943
  - therapy tuberculosis 510 512 516 517 950
- Insecticides as prophylaxis plague 676
- Insects role in spread of infection 17 901 903
- Inspissation sterilization by 920
- Intestine lower microorganisms commonly found on healthy surfaces 334 335
- Inulin fermentation as differential test to distinguish pneumococci from streptococci 395
- Iododeoxyuridine therapy keratitis due to herpes simplex virus 950
- Isolation for prevention of infection 930
- Isomers in cell walls of bacteria 49
- Isoniazid prophylaxis tuberculosis 943
  - therapy tuberculosis 510 512 516 517 950
- Jaundice spirochetal 596
- Johns bacilli of (*Mycobacterium paratuberculosis*) 490 494 522
  - disease of (paratuberculosis of cattle) 281 522
- Johns use in tests for paratuberculosis of cattle (Johns disease) 281
- Jones Mote phenomenon 287
- Kallidin role in anaphylaxis and allergic reactions 241 249
- Kanamycin as inhibitor of protein synthesis 133 134
  - resistance of organism to *Pasteurella pestis* 666
- therapy *Escherichia coli* infections 614
- Staphylococcus aureus* infections 430
- tuberculosis 510
- Kaufmann White classification scheme for pathogenic strains of bacteria 114

- Keratitis from herpes simplex virus therapy iododeoxyuridine 950
- Keratoconjunctivitis from listeria 754 755
- Keratomycetes* 862 868
- Ajellos* 862 863 868
- $\alpha$  ketoglutarate derivatives 97 VII
- Alebsiella* 614
  - aerogenes* 335
    - chemical composition of bacterial capsules 46
    - fimbriae in 43
    - $\eta$  enae 617
  - pneumoniae* 611 613 615 617
    - avirulence of nonencapsulated strains 45
    - biologic characteristics 616
    - infection pathogenicity 616-617
    - morphology 616
  - rhinocleromatis* 617
- Koch phenomenon 274
  - in host responsiveness in tuberculosis 505 506 508
  - postulates 6
- Koch Wells bacillus 331
- Kupffer cell morphology 217
- Lactobacillus* 328 329 334
  - acidophilus* 48 328
  - bifidus* 328 329 334 344
  - brevis* 329
  - bulgaricus* nutritional requirements for growth 91
  - casei* 328
  - heterofermentative 328 329
  - homofermentative 328
  - plantarum* 106 328
- Lacunae of Morgagni gonococcal infection 455 456
- Latitude in infectious diseases 321 322
- Lecithinase influence on pathogenicity of some bacterial species 150 156
- Leishmania donovani* 846
- Leishmaniasis cutaneous (Aleppo boils) prophylaxis inoculation 10
- Lemmings tularemia 684
- Lepromin use in skin tests for leprosy 280 281
- Leprosy 522 524
  - diagnosis skin tests 280 281
  - etiology *Mycobacterium leprae* 30-31
- Leptospira* 573 596 603
  - australis* 598
  - autumnalis* 597 598 601
  - batavia* 598
  - biflexa* 596 599
  - canicola* 597 598 600-602

- Leptospira**—(Cont)  
 classification serologic 598  
*grippityphosa* 596 598  
*hebdomadis* 596 598  
*icterohaemorrhagiae* 596 602  
*mitis* 598  
 morphology and cultivation 597  
*pomona* 596 598 600 601  
 species 597 603  
**Leptospirosis** 596-603  
 diagnosis 601  
 epidemiology and preventive measures 602 603  
 host range and pathogenesis 599 600  
 immunity 601  
 in man 600-601  
 treatment 601 602  
**Leptotrichia** 329  
*buccalis* 3 9 330 332 334  
*dentum* 329 330 334  
*Leuconostoc mesenteroides* chemical composition of bacterial capsules 46  
 hexose fermentation origins and final products 105 106  
**Leukocidin P V (human)** 418 419 426  
*Staphylococcus aureus* 418 419 426  
**Leukocytes** attraction by serum factors in host defense 207 208  
 changes in host responses to infection 316 318  
*eosinophilia* 317  
*lymphocytes* of circulating blood 317 318  
*monocytosis* 318  
*chemotaxis* 222  
*eosinophil morphology* 216  
*polymorphonuclear* of chicken granule lysis 227  
*electron micrograph* 221  
*of rabbit* after ingestion of zymosan particles electron micrograph 228  
**Leukolysin** *Staphylococcus aureus* 418  
**Leukotaxine** role in anaphylaxis and allergic reactions 241 249  
**Leukotoxin** formation 156  
**Levans** interference with phagocytosis 230  
**Light allergy** to 270  
**Lincomycin** as inhibitor of protein synthesis 136  
**Lipase(s)** in phagocytes 222  
*in Staphylococcus aureus* 4-1  
**Lipid(s)** inclusions cytoplasmic 56 57  
 in mycobacteria 497-498  
 synthesis in bacteria 114  
**Lipid(s)**—(Cont)  
 in walls of bacteria 49  
**Listeria** L variants from 794  
*monocytogenes* 714 752 757  
 antigenic structure 753 754  
 history 752  
 morphology and cultivation 752 753  
 resistance 753  
 survival of phagocytosis 229  
 See also *Listeriosis*  
**Listeriosis** diagnosis 756-757  
 distribution and range of pathogenicity 754  
 epidemiology 756 757  
 human 754  
 pathogenesis and symptomatology 754-755  
 treatment 756  
 See also *Listeria monocytogenes*  
**Lithotrophs** photosynthetic and chemosynthetic 90  
**Louse body (Pediculus humanus)** as vector relapsing fever 594  
**Lung(s)** infection in tularemia 685  
*syphilis* congenital 575  
**Lutz Splendore Almeida's disease** See *Blastomycosis* South American and *Blastomyces brasiliensis*  
**Lymphocytes** of circulating blood changes in host responses to infection 317 318  
**Lymphocytosis** in infectious mononucleosis 318  
*β* lysin role in host resistance to infection 198  
**L-lysine** 122  
**Lysosome** 222  
**Lysozyme** discovery by Fleming 229  
 extraction from neutrophils 229  
 in phagocytes 222  
 role in host resistance to infection 197 198  
**Macaca mulatta** susceptibility to verruga 777 779 781  
**Macroglobulins** Waldenström type 185  
**Macrophage(s)** alveolar morphology 217  
 of rabbit electron micrograph 217 220 221  
 morphology 217  
**Macrophage** alveolar of rabbit phase contrast appearance 216 217  
**Madura foot** 830  
**Madurella** 858  
*grisea* 856 857  
**Maduromycosis** 826  
 control measures 858 859  
 diagnosis 858  
 distribution 857  
 epidemiology 858  
 history 856  
 immunity 858  
 pathogenesis 857 858  
 treatment 858  
 See also *Allescheria boydii*  
**Mal de pinto** See *Pinta*  
**Malaise** in infection 321 323  
**Malaria** chemoprophylaxis 943 944  
 epidemics 21  
 resistance to in Bush Negroes 31  
**Mallein** use in tests for glanders 281  
*Malleomyces pseudotuberculosis rodentium* See *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis*  
**Malnutrition** as factor in incidence 513  
**Mannose** in polysaccharides of endotoxins 304  
**Mantoux (intradermal)** skin test for tuberculosis 517 518  
**Mastitis** bovine 15 424  
**Measles** epidemics 24  
 incidence reported cases in Massachusetts (1923-37) 891 892  
 seasonal 891  
 mortality 22 24  
**Menigitis** canis 26  
*Hemophilus influenzae* 727 957  
 influenza mortality 738  
 with listeriosis 752  
 mortality rate 754  
 meningococcal 440 942  
 neonatal from *Staphylococcus aureus* 423  
 from otitis media suppurative chronic 772  
 with pasteurellosis 663  
**Meningococemia** 440  
**Meningococcus(1)** 440 450  
 antigenic structure 442-443  
 definition 440  
 diagnosis laboratory 445 447  
 grouping and terminology 442  
 history 440 441  
 immunity 444-445  
 infection epidemiology 448 449  
 prevention 449-450  
 treatment 447-448  
 morphologic and biochemical characteristics 441-442  
 natural habitat and range of pathogenicity 443  
 pathogenesis 443 444



- Meningococcus(1)—(Cont)**  
*See also* *Neisseria meningitidis*  
 Meningoencephalitis of brain stem in animals from *Listeria monocytogenes* infection 754  
 6 Mercaptopurine onset of experimental allergic encephalomyelitis postponed by 283  
 Mercury bichloride *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* killed by 678  
 compounds disinfection by 929  
 therapy yaws 589
- Metabolism bacterial** 87 118  
 carbohydrate *See* Metabolism carbohydrate  
 control 115 118  
 enzyme repression 117  
 nucleic acid biosynthesis 117 118  
 protein synthesis 115 117  
 through transport or "permeation" 118  
 energy *See* Metabolism energy  
 fermentation mechanism *See* Fermentation mechanisms  
 growth 87 92  
 methods of measurement 87 118  
 nutritional requirements 90 91  
 origin of 91 92  
 rate changes with changes in cell composition 92  
 factors affecting 89 90  
 synchronous 90  
 synthesis macromolecules 111 115  
 cell wall mucopeptide and teichoic acids 114 115  
 lipid 114  
 nucleic acids 111 113  
 polysaccharides structural 114  
 protein 113 114  
 carbohydrate 97 101  
 citric acid cycle distribution 100 101  
 partial oxidations 101  
 pathways alternate 99 100  
 citric acid cycle 97 98  
 Embden Meyerhof (glycolytic) 96 98  
 Entner Doudoroff 100  
 glyoxylate bypass 98 99  
 hexosemonophosphate shunt (pentose phosphate pathway) 99 100  
 pentose phosphate (hexosemonophosphate shunt) 99 100
- Metabolism—(Cont)**  
 energy 92 97  
 aerobes 93  
 electron transport 93 94  
 respiration 93 94  
 anaerobes facultative 93  
 obligate 93  
 terminal respiration systems 94 95  
 cytochromes 93 94  
 flavin enzymes 94  
 oxidative assimilation 95 97  
 Metals heavy disinfection by 929  
 Methicillin therapy *Staphylococcus aureus* infections 430  
 Mice (mouse) anaphylaxis characteristics 251 253  
 as experimental animals plague 667 669 671  
 relapsing fever 592 593  
*Staphylococcus aureus* infection 424 425  
 tularemia 683  
 field brucellosis 706 707  
 tularemia 684 685  
 as host plague 669  
 infection *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* 758  
 by pleuropneumonia-like organisms 799 800  
 multimanumate as hosts plague 675  
 reactivity to endotoxins 305  
 species differences to action of pharmacologic mediators 250 252  
 striped South African (*Rhodomys pumilio*) plague in 664  
 Microbes chemical approach to study of life of 45  
 development of drug resistance 15  
 Microbial diseases conquest so-called 20-21  
 determinants 34 35  
 genetic 29 32  
 endogenous activation 32 34  
 evolution 20 35  
 exogenous vs endogenous 25 26  
 immunity to infection phenomenon of 28 29  
 incidence and severity historical changes in 21 25  
 mortality 22 25  
 persists 26 28  
 premunition 28 29  
 resistance social factors 22  
 Microbiology medical chemotherapy birth of 13 15  
 discovery of microbial life 1 2
- Microbiology medical—(Cont)**  
 distant origins and scientific beginnings 5 8  
 epidemiologic thought evolution of 15 111  
 evolution of 1 18  
 experimental birth of 2-4  
 technical basis provided by Spallanzani 3  
 germ theory 4 5  
 Golden Era 8  
 response of body to infection 10 13  
 retrospective and prospective 18  
 structure and properties of microorganisms 8 10  
 Microbiota indigenous distribution 336 337  
*Microcavia guymys* host plague 675  
*Micrococcus(1)*, anaerobic 327 334  
*lactyliticus* 328  
*lysodeikticus* cell walls model of mucopeptide unit 49  
 chemical composition 54  
*melitensis* *See* *Brucella melitensis*  
*niger* 327  
*pyogenes* var *aureus* *See* *Staphylococcus aureus*  
*tetragena* 432  
 Microenvironment chemical as mechanism of host resistance to infectious disease 171 173  
*Micromyces* 786  
 Microorganisms destruction as host defense 204 205  
 interrelationships with other living things 9  
 phagocytosis as host defense in vitro studies 205 206  
 structure and properties 8 10  
 biology required for understanding microbial life 9  
 cytologic studies 9  
 trends in development of knowledge 9  
 Microscope direct studies of diseased tissue pioneered by Kärcher 6  
 single lens used by van Leeuwenhoek 1  
 Microscopy anoptical 37 38  
 darkfield illumination 37 38  
 electron 37 38  
 fluorescence 37 38  
 ordinary instrument limitations 37 38  
 phase contrast 37 38  
*Microsporium* 862 866 868 871  
*audouinii* 862 866 868 869 871

- Microsporium*—(Cont)  
*canis* 866 869 871  
*cookei* 867 868  
*distortum* 863 867  
*ferrugineum* See *Trichophyton ferrugineum*  
*gypseum* 866 867 869 871  
*nanum* 863 867  
*vanbreuseghem* 868  
*Microtus agrestis* 787  
 as host, plague 675  
 Milk, role in spread of infection 898 899  
*Mima* 330-331  
 infection, diagnosis differential from *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* 457  
*polymorpha* 330 331 335  
 var *ovidans* cultivation 453-454  
*vaginicola* 330 335  
 Minimum lethal dose (MLD) of microorganisms concept of 147 148  
 Mitomycin as inhibitor of nucleic acid synthesis 138  
 Mitsuda reaction in skin tests for leprosy 280  
 Monkey(s) anaphylaxis in 253  
 Arthus type reactivity 255  
 for experiments *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* infections 815 816  
 relapsing fever 592 593  
 syphilis 577 579  
 infection by pleuropneumonia like organisms 803  
 tularemia, 685  
 Monocyte(s) human blood electron micrograph 217 220-221  
 morphology 217  
 Monocytosis in convalescence from acute bacterial infections 318  
*Monosporium apiospermum* 846-858  
*tulanense* 840  
 Moose brucellosis 706  
 Morax Axenfeld bacillus 330 335  
*Moraxella* 330-331  
*duplex* 330  
*lacunata* 330-335  
*twoffi* 330  
 Morbidity rate in epidemiology 908 909  
 Morgan bacillus of See *Proteus morganii*  
 Morphology and chemical anatomy of bacteria 37-65  
 cell division 55  
 surface layers 43 55  
 Morphology and chemical anatomy of bacteria, cell division, surface layers—(Cont)  
 capsule (slime layer) 43 45  
 lost through mutations 45  
 polysaccharides and polypeptides 45  
 size 44 45  
 staining, 45  
 cytoplasmic membrane 44 53 55  
 wall 44 53  
 biosynthesis and functions 50 52  
 methods of study 45-47  
 normal absence 50 52 53  
 plasma membrane 54-55  
 "ghosts" 54  
 structure and chemical composition 46-50  
 thickness gram positive and gram negative organisms 47-49  
 cytoplasm 55 58  
 granules glycogen 56 57  
 lipid 56 57  
 metachromasy 56 57  
 granules 57  
 ground 55 56  
 inclusions 56 58  
 nuclear equivalent 58 60  
 existence and methods of study 58  
 flagella 40-43  
 fimbriae 43  
 methods of investigation 37 18  
 microscopy darkfield illuminant 37 38  
 electron 37 38  
 fluorescence 37 38  
 ordinary limitations 37 38  
 phase contrast and anap-  
 tral 37 38  
 radioautography high resolution 38 59  
 resting forms 60 64  
 cysts and conidia 64  
 endospores 60-63  
 intracellular granules and filterable forms 64  
 shape spatial arrangement and size of cells 39-40  
 stains 64 65  
 acid fast 65  
 Gram 64-65  
 simple 64  
 Mortality anthrax in man 534  
 diarrhea 23  
 encephalitis 32  
 enteric fevers 22  
 Mortality—(Cont)  
 enteritis 23  
 measles 22 24  
 meningitis influenza 738  
 microbial diseases 22 25  
 myxomatosis 30  
 pertussis 22 747  
 plague 24 25  
 plasmodium 31  
 rate cholera, Asiatic untreated 652  
 in epidemiology case fatality rate or ratio 908  
 crude rate 907  
 specific rate 907 908  
 tuberculosis United States by race and sex (1956) 513  
 world 514 515  
 smallpox 23  
 sweating sickness 24  
 trypanosomiasis African 24 25  
 tuberculosis 22 25  
 typhoid fever 679  
 Mosquito as reservoir *Francisella tularensis* 684  
 as vector of myxomatosis 30  
 Mouse See Mice  
 Mouth microorganisms commonly found on healthy surfaces 334-335  
 Mucopeptides cell walls of bacteria, 49  
*Mucormyces* 826  
 Mumps incidence seasonal 891  
 Muscle(s) weakness in infectious diseases 320-321  
 asthenia, 370  
 atrophy 320 321  
 myositis focal 321  
 paresis local or general 320  
 Zenkers hyaline or waxy degeneration 320  
 Myasthenia in infectious diseases 320  
 Mycetoma, actinomycotic 826 827 830 856  
 Mycobacteria 490 574  
 causing disease in man characteristics 494-496  
 pathogenic properties 496-497  
 classification 490  
 constituents chemical 497-498  
 leprosy 522 524  
*Mycobacterium* 330 334  
*avium* 490 491 494 495  
*banei* 490 494-496 521 522  
*bovis* 490 494 496  
*butyricum* 490  
*fortuitum* 490 494-496  
*kansasii* 490 494 496 517

- Mycobacterium*—(Cont)  
*leprae* 490 494 522 524  
 as etiologic agent leprosy 30-31  
*murum* 525  
 recognition in tests for leprosy 281  
*marinum* 522  
*microti* 496  
*paratuberculosis* (Johnes bacilli) 281 490 491 494 522  
*phlei* 490 522  
*smegmatis* 330 490  
*Mycobacterium tuberculosis* 490 498 714 745  
 adjuvant effect in allergy 282 284  
 antibodies 275  
 cultivation 491 492  
 delayed type of hypersensitivity against injected protein 282  
 history 490 491  
 inhibition by p-aminosalicylic acid (PAS) 140  
 isolation and cultivation by Koch 8  
 resistance to physical and chemical agents 492-493  
 spread in host 502 503  
 hematogenous 503  
 lymphatic 502 503  
 tubular 503  
 survival of phagocytosis 229  
 variation and virulence 493 495  
 See also *Mycobacteria* and *Tuberculosis*  
*ulcerans* 490 494 496 521  
 Mycology medical 825 872  
 classification of fungi 825  
 See also *Fungi*  
*Mycoplasma* 786  
*agalactiae* 800 801  
*arthritis* 787  
*bovigenitalium* 799  
*canis* 801  
*fermentans* 52 792 793 797 818  
*gallinarum* 802  
*hominis* 788 791 797 817  
*hyorhinis* 801  
*laidlawii* 803  
*maculosum* 801  
 morphology 40  
*mycoides* 786  
   *var capri* 801  
   *var mycoides* 799  
*neurolyticum* 787  
*pneumoniae* 788 797 799 810-822  
 experimental infections and host range 815 817  
*Mycoplasma pneumoniae*—(Cont)  
 See also *Pneumonia atypical primary*  
*pulmonis* 787  
*salivarum* 817  
*spumans* 801  
*Mycoplasmatales* cell wall structure absence of normal rigidity 50 53  
 morphology 40  
 size 40  
 Mycotechn therapy candidiasis 840  
*Myxobacterales* cell wall structure 53  
 morphology 40  
 Myxomatosis mortality 30  
 in rabbits as ecologic equilibrium measure 29 30  
*Myxomyces* 825 826  
*Myxomycotina* 825  
 NADase (nicotinamide adenine dinucleotidase) of streptococci hemolytic Group A 371  
 Nails tinea ungium 869  
*Nannizzi acetyana* 868  
*grubya* 868  
*incurata* 867  
*obtusata* 863 867  
 Neapolitan disease See *Brucella*  
*Neisseria* 328  
*catarrhalis* 328 334  
   cultivation 453 454  
   differential characteristics 447  
   flava cultivation 453  
   flavescens differential characteristics 447  
   genetic transformation 75  
   gonorrhoeae 796  
   cultivation 453  
   definition 451  
   differential characteristics 447  
   infection diagnosis 456 458  
   treatment 458 460  
   antibiotics 458-460  
   chemotherapy 458  
   ophthalmia neonatorum due to 456  
   resistance to penicillin 459  
   See also *Gonorrhea intracellularis* 440  
   L variants from 794  
   meningitidis 328 334 942  
   cultivation 453  
   differential characteristics 447  
   history 440-441  
   See also *Meningococci mucosa* 328  
   pharyngis 328  
*Neisseria*—(Cont)  
*sicca* cultivation 453 454  
   differential characteristics 447  
*Neomycin(s)* B and C as inhibitors of protein synthesis 133 134  
 introduction in therapy 950  
 resistance of organism to *Pasteurella pestis* 666  
*pseudotuberculosis* 678  
 therapy diarrhea infantile 614  
 gastroenteritis 614  
 pasteurellosis 662  
 pleuropneumonia-like organisms 804  
 Nephrosis auto-immune in rats 284  
 Neuritis allergic 283  
*Neurospora crassa* shrinkage and lysis of protoplasts induced by nystatin and filipin 127  
*Neutrophil(s)* 'ameboid' movement 222  
 electron micrograph 217 219  
 human engulfment of *Bacillus megaterium* 226  
 morphology 216  
 phase contrast appearance 216 217  
 Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotidase (NADase) of streptococci hemolytic Group A 371  
 Nitrofurans therapy pasteurellosis 662  
*Nocardia* 330 825 827 828 856  
*asteroides* 330 825 831  
*brasiliensis* 825 826 828 829 831  
*calcarata* structure electron micrograph 47  
*caviae* 825 826 828  
*farinosa* 827  
*somaliensis* 827  
*Nocardiosis* systemic 829 830  
   from *Nocardia asteroides* 826  
   treatment 831  
 Novobiocin incorporation of completed undine nucleotide derivative into bacterial cell wall blocked by 115  
 resistance of organism to *Pasteurella pestis* 666  
 therapy pasteurellosis 662  
 Nucleases in *Staphylococcus aureus* 420  
 Nucleic acid(s) biosynthesis control of 117 118  
 synthesis 111 113  
 inhibitors actinomycin C<sub>1</sub> 136 137  
   ethidium bromide 138  
   mitomycin 138  
   phenethyl alcohol 138

- Nucleic acid(s) synthesis inhibitors—(Cont)  
 pleomycin 138
- Nutrition as altering factor in host resistance to infectious disease 176 177
- deficiencies role in activating infectious processes 34
- Nystatin shrinkage and lysis of protoplasts of *Neurospora crassa* induced by 177
- therapy candidiasis 840
- Occupation as factor in incidence 513
- plague 674
- Odium albicans* 835 836
- Oleandomycin therapy pasteurellosis 662
- pneumonia atypical primary ■ ■
- Oligomycin as inhibitor of oxidative phosphorylation 138
- Onychia from *Candida albicans* 638
- Ophthalmia neonatorum *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* infection 456
- prophylaxis 456
- Opussum tularemia 684
- Opsonin depletion as host defense in vivo studies 206
- role in host resistance to infection 198 199
- Optochin inhibition of growth of pneumococci 395
- Organotrophs (heterotrophs) 91
- Ornithodoros moubata* (tick) as vector leptospirosis 602
- species as vectors of relapsing fever 594 595
- Oropharynx ulcerative lesions 596
- Oroya fever from *Bartonella bacilliformis* 775 782
- characteristics 778
- diagnosis 781
- immunity 780
- pathology and pathogenesis 779
- range of pathogenicity 779
- treatment 781
- Osteomyelitis hematogenous acute from *Staphylococcus aureus* 473
- from *Hemophilus influenzae* in infection 729
- with pasteurellosis 663
- OT (Old Tuberculin) use in skin testing in diagnosis of tuberculosis 517 518
- Otitis media from *Hemophilus influenzae* as infection in upper respiratory tract, 726 727
- Ouchterlony diffusion tests for tularemia 683
- Oxalacetate derivatives 97 98
- Oxytetracycline prophylaxis ophthalmia neonatorum 456
- Q fever 944
- resistance to by *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* 678
- therapy *Bacteroides* infections 773
- Klebsiella pneumoniae* in infections 617
- pertussis 747
- pleuropneumonia-like organisms 804
- relapsing fever 594
- ulcerative lesions of oropharynx genitalia and extremities 596
- yaws 589
- Ozema 617
- Ozone disinfection by 929 930
- Pack rats as hosts plague 675
- PAM (procaine penicillin G in oil with 2 per cent aluminum monostearate) therapy gonorrhea 459
- yaws 589
- Pantotheine and its components structure 92
- Paraaminosalicylic acid (PAS) therapy tuberculosis 510 512 950
- Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* 844
- cerebriformis* 844
- tennis* 844
- Paracolon bacilli 613 615
- groups Arizona 613 615
- Bethesda Ballerup 613 615 622
- Providence 613 615
- Parasites infestation allergic reactions to 282
- Paratuberculosis of cattle (Johnes disease) diagnosis skin tests 281
- Paresis in infectious diseases 320
- Paronychia (hangnails) from *Candida albicans* 838
- from *Staphylococcus aureus* 422
- Parvobacteriaceae* 677
- PAS (paraaminosalicylic acid) therapy tuberculosis 510 512 950
- Pasteurella* 659 689
- antigenic structure 706
- aviseptica* See *Pasteurella multocida* (septica)
- boviseptica* See *Pasteurella multocida* (septica)
- hemolytica* 659 661
- Pasteurella*—(Cont)
- leptiseptica* See *Pasteurella multocida* (septica)
- multocida* (septica) 659 663
- antigenic structure 661
- cultivation and biochemical activities 660 661
- distribution and range of pathogenicity 661 662
- morphology 660
- variants colonial 660-661
- See also Pasteurellosis
- pestis* 659 663 680 683
- antigenic structure 667 668
- Fraction I (FI) 667 669
- pesticins 668
- pH 6 668
- polysaccharides 668
- toxin 667 668
- V and W 668
- Vi 668
- var *antiqua* 666
- biochemical activities 666
- as etiologic agent plague 31 32
- var *mediaevalis* 666
- morphology 663
- nutrition and cultivation 665-666
- var *orientalis* 666
- pathogenicity factors in fluencing 150
- resistance of organism 666 667
- See also Plague
- pseudotuberculosis* 659 677 681 683
- antigenic structure 678
- cultivation and biochemical activities 677 678
- history 677
- morphology 677
- resistance 678
- See also Pseudotuberculosis
- tularensis survival of phagocytosis 229
- tularensis recognition in tests for tularemia 281
- See *Francisella tularensis*
- Pasteurellosis 659 663
- chemotherapy 662 663
- control measures 663
- diagnosis 662
- epizootiology and epidemiology pasteurellosis 663
- history 659 660
- immunity 662
- pathogenesis 662
- in man 663
- See also *Pasteurella multocida* (septica)
- Pasteurization brucellae killed by 705
- disinfection by 926 927

- Pebrine parasitic nature demonstrated by Pasteur 7
- Pediculus humanus* as vector relapsing fever 594
- Penicillamine 268
- Penicillin development 949 950  
discovery by Fleming 15 120 949  
evolution of bizarre or spherical forms in bacteria induced by 122
- G aqueous crystalline therapy gonorrhea 459
- benzathine therapy gonorrhea 459
- yaws 589
- procaine aqueous therapy gonorrhea 459  
in oil with 2 per cent aluminum monostearate (PAM) therapy gonorrhea 459  
reaction products 268  
incorporation of completed uridine nucleotide derivative into bacterial cell wall blocked by 115  
inhibition of cell wall synthesis 122 123  
isolation by Florey and Chain 120  
preparation in stable form by Florey and Chain 15  
procaine in oil with 2 per cent aluminum monostearate (PAM) therapy yaws 589
- prophylaxis ophthalmia neonatorum 456
- rheumatic fever 943
- reagents to 269
- resistance to *Bacteroides* 773  
*Mycoplasma pneumoniae* 818  
by *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* 678
- therapy allergy 262  
anthrax in animals 540  
*Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* infection 759  
fever ratbite 767  
gonorrhea 452 458-460  
histeriosis 756  
meningococci infection 448  
*Neisseria gonorrhoeae* infections 458 460  
Oroya fever 781  
pasteurellosis 662 663  
pertussis 747  
pneumococcus infection 407  
relapsing fever 593 594  
salmonella infections 632  
*Staphylococcus aureus* infections 429
- Penicillin therapy—(Cont)  
streptococcal hemolytic infections 384 385  
syphilis 585 586  
typhoid fever 632  
Vincent's angina 772  
yaws 589
- Penicillinase in *Staphylococcus aureus* 420
- Pentamidine salt prophylaxis Gambian trypanosomiasis 944
- Pentose(s) phosphate pathway 99 100  
in polysaccharides of endotoxins 304  
production by coenzyme TPNH 100
- Peptostreptococcus* 327 328  
evolutus 328  
micros 328  
putridus 328
- Periodontal disease 346 348  
etiology 347  
treatment 347 348
- Permanganates disinfection by 930
- Peromyscus* as host plague 675
- Peroxidase in phagocytes 222
- Pertussis control measures 748  
diagnosis 746 747  
epidemics 24  
epidemiology 747  
history 742  
immunity 745 746  
incidence seasonal 891  
mortality 747  
trend in 20th century 22  
treatment 747  
See also *Bordetella pertussis*
- pH influence on phagocytosis 225
- Phage temperate 75 76  
virulent 75
- Phagocytes 215 233  
acquired cellular immunity 231 232  
biochemistry 219 221 223  
chemotaxis 222  
clearance of bacteria from blood or lymph circulation 231  
degranulation phenomenon 227  
distribution 217 219  
fate of 217 219  
functions 230-233  
unrelated to interaction with microbes 232 233  
historical aspects 215  
hydrolytic enzymes in 222  
inflammatory response 223 224  
as mechanism of host resistance to infectious disease 171
- Phagocytes—(Cont)  
mononuclear fixed of reticulo-endothelial system clearance of microbes from blood or lymphatic circulations 224  
types 216 217  
morphology of various types 215 221  
origin 217 219  
physiology 219 221 223  
pioneer work of Metchnikoff 11  
polymorphonuclear types 216  
role in combating microbial invaders in tissues 230-231  
in general host responses to sepsis 233
- Phagocytin extraction from neutrophils 229
- Phagocytosis and ensuing intracellular events 224 230  
intercellular 225  
as mechanism of bodily defense against disease 11  
promotion in host defense See Host defense humoral mechanisms promotion of phagocytosis  
role of chemical composition 225  
of opsonins 225  
of physical nature of environment 225  
rate of engulfment of microbes determinants 224-226  
survival of certain bacteria 229  
susceptibility of bacteria to variation in 225
- Phenergan (antihistamine promethazine) therapy photoallergic reactions 270
- Phenethyl alcohol as inhibitor of nucleic acid synthesis 138
- Phenol(s) brucellae killed by 705  
disinfection by 927  
*Pasteurella pestis* killed by 666  
*pseudotuberculosis* killed by 678
- Phialophora jeanselmei* 856  
*verrucosa* 859 860
- Phlebotomus columbianus* as vector bartonellosis 782  
*pesci* as vector bartonellosis 782  
*verrucum* as vector bartonellosis 782
- Phleomycin as inhibitor of nucleic acid synthesis 138
- Phosphatase alkaline and acid in phagocytes 222

- Phosphatase—(Cont)  
in *Staphylococcus aureus* 421
- Phosphate in DNA 75
- Phospholipase in *Staphylococcus aureus* 421
- Phosphorylation, oxidative in  
inhibitors 138-139
- Photoheterotrophs (photo-orga-  
notrophs) 91
- Photo-organotrophs (photohetero-  
trophs) 91
- Photosynthesis in bacteria 90 91  
energy requirements 102
- Phycomyces* 825 826
- Phycomycosis* 826
- Pian See Yaws
- Piedra hortai* 826
- Pigeon anaphylaxis in 253
- Pinocytosis in phagocytes 2.2  
223
- Pinta 589 590
- von Pirquet scratch test for tu-  
berculosis 518
- Pityrosporum* 335 336  
*orbiculare* 335 336  
*ovale* 335 336
- Plague 663 677  
bubonic 665  
ecology 674  
in man distribution 668  
669  
pathogenesis 670-671  
virulence 669 670  
diagnosis 672 673  
epidemics 24  
treatment 676  
epidemiology and ecology 674-  
676  
etiology *Pasteurella pestis* 31  
32  
history 664 665  
immunity 671 672  
incidence 676-677  
parasitism domestic 674  
wild 674  
pneumonic 665 674  
prevention and control 676  
677  
rural 674  
transmission from rats to man  
and among rats 664  
treatment 665 673-684  
urban 674  
See also *Pasteurella pestis*
- Plasma kinins formed in con-  
sequence of antigen antibody  
reaction 241 248  
role in anaphylaxis and allergic  
reactions 241 248
- Plasmodium falciparum* ■ etio-  
logic agent plasmodium 31  
mortality 31
- Pleurisy with pasteurellosis 663
- Pleuropneumonia bovine 786  
799  
contagious in goats 801  
and pleuropneumoniae or  
ganisms 786 804
- Pleuropneumoniae organisms  
(PPL.O) 335 336 786 804
- cultivation and biologic prop-  
erties 788 793  
diagnosis 804  
distribution in nature epidemi-  
ology and range of  
pathogenicity 795  
avian species 802  
cats 803  
cattle 799  
dogs 801  
goats, 801  
guinea pigs 802 803  
hamsters 803  
horses 803  
man 795 799  
mice 799 800  
monkeys 803  
rats 800  
saprophytic strains 803  
sheep 800-801  
swine 801  
history 786 788  
pathogenesis 803 804  
and related forms 336  
relationship to bacteria 793  
795  
treatment 804
- Pneumatocoeles in pneumonia,  
staphylococcal 423
- Pneumobacillus* See *Klebsiella*  
*pneumoniae*
- Pneumococcus*(i) 391-409  
allergy 279  
classification into types 391  
392  
composition and method of  
preparation of partially de-  
fined medium for 394  
cross reactions between poly-  
saccharides of pneumococci  
and type specific antigens of  
influenza bacilli 733  
definition 391  
distribution 400  
DNA as genetic material 74  
history 391 392  
identification 395  
infection clinical and patho-  
logic picture 404-405  
diagnosis laboratory 405  
406  
pathogenesis 404  
pneumonia, epidemiology  
407-408  
prevention 408-409  
treatment, chloramphenicol  
407
- Pneumococcus*(i) infection  
treatment—(Cont)  
penicillin 407  
specific serum 406-407  
sulfonamides 407  
tetracycline compounds  
407
- morphology 392  
nutrition 392 394  
pathogenicity and host range  
400-404  
factors influencing 149 401  
404  
absence of hemolysis 401  
of toxin 401  
capsule antipathagocytic  
property 403  
nontoxic surface 402  
liberation of pneumolysin  
on autolysis 401  
purpura producing prin-  
ciple 401
- physiology 393 394
- pioneer studies of Avery 10
- structure antigenic 397 399  
amino acids and amino  
sugars 399  
identification of compo-  
nents of C polysaccha-  
ride 399  
properties of specific cap-  
sular polysaccharides of  
6 types 397 398  
somatic portion, C or cel-  
lular carbohydrate 399
- variation 395 397  
colonies R (rough) 396  
S (smooth or mucoid)  
396  
transformation by DNA  
396 397  
by H variant 396  
virulence for mice on inocula-  
tion, 395
- Pneumonia atypical primary  
810-822  
clinical picture 811 812  
814  
control measures 821 822  
diagnosis 818 8.0  
epidemiology 821  
etiology 817 818  
history 810-811  
pathologic picture 813  
815  
treatment 820-821  
See also *Mycoplasma*  
*pneumoniae*
- from *Hemophilus influenzae* in  
fection in upper respiratory  
tract 727
- with pasteurellosis 663
- pneumococcal therapy serum  
957

## Pneumonia—(Cont)

- from *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in debilitated patients receiving prophylactic penicillin 619
- staphylococcal 423
- viral in swine 662
- Poisoning food from *Staphylococcus aureus* preformed enterotoxin 424
- Poliomyelitis incidence seasonal 891
- Polyethylene glycol as sensitizer in immune hemolysis 200
- D polyglutamic acid capsule in influence on pathogenicity of some bacterial species 149
- Polyglycerophosphate in *Bacillus anthracis* 538
- in *Staphylococcus aureus* 417
- Polymers as products of substrate "assimilation" 96 97
- Polymyxin B resistance to *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* 818
- therapy pasteuriosis 662
- Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infections 619
- effects on *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* 126
- introduction in therapy 950
- resistance to *Bacteroides* 773
- Listeria monocytogenes* 756
- therapy meningitis influenzal 738
- pertussis 747
- Polypeptide(s) of bacterial capsules 45 46
- of glutamic acid in capsule of *Bacillus anthracis* 537
- Polysaccharide(s) A in *Staphylococcus aureus* 416 417
- of antigens 932 933
- of bacterial capsules 45 46
- C of pneumococcus identification of components 399
- capsular influence on pathogenicity of some bacterial species 149 153
- of pneumococcal types properties 397 398
- cell walls of bacteria 49
- of endotoxins 304
- Pasteurella pestis* 668
- in *Salmonella* rough (R) forms 49
- smooth (S) forms 49
- somatic of *Bacillus anthracis* 537
- structural synthesis 114
- Polyuridylic acid effect of streptomycin on 133
- Potassium tellurite resistance of organism to *Pasteurella pestis* 666
- Poultry infection by pleuropneumonia-like organisms 802
- PPD (purified protein derivative) use in skin testing in diagnosis of tuberculosis 517 518
- Prairie dogs as hosts plague 675
- Prausnitz-Kuestner (P.K.) reaction in allergy 264
- Precipitins pioneer work of Kraus 12
- Proctitis with gonorrhea female urogenital 456
- Prontosil discovery by Domagk 120
- Propionibacterium* 329
- acnes* 329 334
- Prophylaxis gonorrhea 460 462
- ophthalmia neonatorum 456
- $\beta$  Propiolactone sterilization by 922
- Proteases in *Staphylococcus aureus* 420
- Protein(s) antibody See  $\gamma$  Globulin
- exotoxic influence on pathogenicity of some bacterial species 150 151 154
- fibrous keratin myosin-epidermin fibrinogen type 43
- hydrolysis to component amino acids 101
- M at cell surface influence on pathogenicity of some bacterial species 149 153
- streptococcal as capsular substances 44
- hemolytic Group A 364 365
- PPD (purified protein derivative) use in skin testing in diagnosis of tuberculosis 517 518
- in ribosomes *Escherichia coli* 56
- sensitivity to delayed 287
- synthesis 113 114
- activation of amino acid 101
- control 115 117
- inhibitors of 128 136
- chloramphenicol 129 132
- erythromycin 136
- lincomycin 136
- puromycin 134-136
- streptogramin 136
- streptomycin 132 134
- tetracyclines 136
- interference by antibiotics 113 114
- pathway of amino acids in 112 113
- T of streptococci hemolytic Group A 365 366
- in walls of bacteria 49
- Proteinase(s) in phagocytes 222
- streptococcal 374 375
- Proteus group of enteric bacteria 611 617 618
- Proteus fimbriae* in 43
- L variants from 794
- mirabilis* 335
- morganii* 613 617 618
- transduction caused by phages 77
- vulgaris* 613 617 618 791
- electron micrograph 41 42
- Protosil therapy bacterial infections 14
- Protoplasts of streptococci hemolytic Group A 367 368
- Providence group of paracolon bacilli 613 615
- Pseudomonas* flagellated 41
- Pseudomonas* 331
- aeruginosa* 331 335 344 611 613 618 619
- effects of polymyxin on 126
- infections treatment 619
- fimbriae* in 43
- fluorescens* 619
- L variants from 794
- lindneri* ethanol fermentation 103 104
- procyanea* 619
- transduction caused by phages 77
- Pseudotuberculosis with brain abscesses and meningitis 827
- diagnosis 679 681
- distribution and range of pathogenicity 678 679
- epidemiology epizootology and control 680
- immunity 679
- in man 680 681
- diagnosis 680 681
- pathogenesis 679
- treatment 680
- See also *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis*
- Psicofuranine as metabolite analogue 140
- Pullularia pullulans* 860
- Purine(s) bases of DNA 75
- in *Clostridium cylindrosporium* fermentation 108 109
- Puromycin as inhibitor of protein synthesis 134 136
- proposed reaction with ribosomal bound polypeptidyl-sRNA 136
- structures 135
- Purpureum rubrum* See *Trichophyton rubrum*
- Pus evacuation surgical 956
- Pustules from *Staphylococcus aureus* 422

- Pyarthrosis from *Hemophilus influenzae* infection 729  
 Pylitis *Escherichia coli* in 612  
 Pylonephritis *Escherichia coli* in 612  
 Pyopneumothorax in pneumonia staphylococcal 423  
 Pyorrhea 346  
 Pyosalpinx gonococcal infection 456  
 Pyrazinamide therapy tuberculosis 510  
 Pyridine nucleotide reduced production by fermentation mechanisms 101  
 Pyridine nucleotides oxidation and production of energy 103  
 Pyrimidine(s) and arginine synthesis feed back inhibition mechanisms for control of 116 117  
   bases of DNA 75  
   origin from citric acid intermediates 97  
 Pyrogens bacterial 308  
   endogenous 309 310  
   in man 310  
   release from neutrophils 233  
 Pyruvate metabolism by Entner-Doudoroff pathway 100  
 Pyruvic acid as end product of metabolism of glucose by Embden-Meyerhof pathway 96 97  
   oxidation by citric acid cycle 97  
 Quarantine development in Venice 913  
   for prevention of infection 930 931  
 Rabbit(s) abortion due to listeria 734  
   anaphylaxis 247 251 253  
   Arthus reaction 254 256  
   brucellosis 706 707  
   for experiments *Bacteroides melaninogenicus* infection 772  
   cholera Asiatic 655  
   listerculosis 734 755  
   pinta 590  
   plague 668 669  
   *Staphylococcus aureus* infection 424 425  
   syphilis 577 579 580  
   tularemia 683  
   glomerulus injection with bovine serum albumin 258  
   as hosts plague 675  
   induced hypersensitivity of serum sickness type 257  
 Rabbit(s)—(Cont)  
   species differences to action of pharmacologic mediators 250 252  
   stomach allergy studies necrosis of arteries 257  
   tularemia in 684 685  
*Rabdomys pumilio* (South African striped mouse) plague in 664  
 Rabies immunization pioneer work of Pasteur 10 11  
 Race as factor in incidence plague 674  
   tuberculosis 512 513  
 Radiation gamma sterilization by 923 924  
   high energy electrons sterilization by 923 924  
   radio frequency and infrared sterilization by 924  
   ultraviolet sterilization by 923 924  
 Radioautography 38 59  
 Ramon flocculation reaction diphtheria 496  
 Rat(s) anaphylaxis characteristics 251  
   brucellosis 706 707  
   cotton for experiments *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* infections 815 816  
   for experiments dental caries 348 349  
   plague 667 669 671 672  
   relapsing fever 592 593  
   infection by pleuropneumonia-like organisms 800  
   species differences to action of pharmacologic mediators 250 252  
   tularemia 685  
   as vectors plague 664  
   water tularemia 684  
*Rattus grieseiventer* as vector plague 675  
   *hawaiiensis* as vector plague 675  
   *norvegicus* as host plague 669 675  
   *rattus alexandrinus* as host plague 675  
   as host plague 669 675  
 Reagin(s) comparison of human antibodies encountered in allergic coryza and asthma 263  
   development of in allergic coryza (hay fever) 264  
   nature of in coryza allergic (hay fever) 267 269  
   to penicillin 269  
   synthesis in allergic coryza (hay fever) 264  
   in urticaria solaris 270  
 Reduced triphosphopyridine nucleotide (TPNH) production by pentose phosphate pathway 100  
 Reindeer brucellosis 706 707  
 Relapsing fever 591 596  
   diagnosis 593  
   epidemiology and prevention 594 595  
   mass delousing with DDT 595  
   geographic distribution of various species of *Borrelia* and their vectors 595  
   immunity 593  
   pathogenesis 592 593  
   ticks as vectors 594 595  
   treatment 593 594  
   See also *Borrelia recurrentis*  
 Repiles tularemia 685  
 Research biologic pioneer work of Avery 10  
 Respiratory tract infections with pasteuriosis 663  
   streptococcal hemolytic 377 378  
   upper microorganisms commonly found on healthy surfaces 334 335  
 Rheumatic fever as delayed sequelae of streptococcal infection 380  
   immunity 382 383  
   prophylaxis penicillin 943  
   sulfadiazine 943  
 Rhinitis atrophic infectious in swine 801  
 Rhinoscleroma 617  
*Rh. obia* genetic transformation 75  
*Rh. opus* 847  
 Ribonucleic acid See RNA  
 Ribosomes *A. otobacter vinelii* de components 56  
   definition 128  
   *Escherichia coli* components 56  
   as site of streptomycin resistance 133  
*Rickettsia orientalis* 800  
   *prova ecki* 618  
 Ringworm 864-865  
   epizootic on horses 864  
   scalp black-dot 865  
 Tokelau, 862  
 RNA (ribonucleic acid) messenger 112  
   catalyzed by enzyme DNA RNA polymerase 111 112  
   role in protein biosynthesis 128  
   streptomycin interference with function 133



- RNA (ribonucleic acid) messenger—(Cont)  
 synthesis interference by actinomycin 114  
 triplet code letters for amino acid incorporation governed by 113  
 in phagocytes 222  
 polymerase role in protein biosynthesis 128  
 production controlled by genes 75  
 ribosomal 112  
*Escherichia coli* 56  
 soluble (transport) 112  
 transport (soluble) 112
- Roccal brucellae killed by 705
- Rodenticides as prophylaxis plague 676
- Rodents anaphylaxis in 251 253  
 as hosts plague 669 675  
 plague incidence 664  
 as vectors of disease 17
- RTF (resistance transferring factor) in bacterial genetics 82
- Saccharomyces* 826 832  
*granulomatogenes* 832  
*lithogenes* 832  
*neoformans* 832  
*plummeri* 832
- Salmonella* 610 611 619 634  
 antigenic structure 621 623 706  
 dissociation 622 623  
 H (flagellar) 621 623  
 Kauffmann White classification 622 623  
 O (somatic) 621 623  
 phase variation 621  
 Vi 622 623  
 forms V VW and W 622  
 carriers 628  
 cultivation and biochemical reactions 620  
 distribution and range of pathogenicity 623 625  
 effects of physical and chemical agents 620-621  
 history 620  
 infections control measures 633 634  
 diagnosis 630 632  
 serologic 631 632  
 epidemiology 632 633  
 gastroenteritis 627 628  
 pathogenesis 626  
 septicemias 628  
 treatment 632  
 L variants from 794  
 morphology 620  
 survival of phagocytosis 229  
 toxins 625 626
- Salmonella aertrycke* 624  
*anatum* 623 625 628  
*ballerup* 613 615 622  
*choleraesuis* 623 624 628  
 use in agglutination tests 631  
*derby* 625  
*enteritis* 613 620 623 624 628 633  
 as etiologic agent, food poisoning 17  
 var *gartner danyz* or *essen* 625  
 fimbriae in 43  
*galinarum* 611 625  
*galinarum pullorum* 613 620 623 624  
*hirschfeldii* 613 622  
 enteric fever due to 627  
 lysogenization 78  
 T A B C vaccine 630  
*montevideo* 623 624 628 633  
*newport* 623 624 628  
*oramenburg* 623 624 628 633  
*panama* 624 628  
*paratyphi* 613 620 624 628 633  
 A 624  
 B 624  
 C 624  
 enteric fever due to 627  
 in typhoid vaccine for immunization 630  
*pullorum* 625 633  
 rough (R) forms polysaccharides 49  
*schoettmuelleri* 613 620 622 624 628 633  
 enteric fever due to 627  
 typhoid vaccine for immunization 630  
 use in agglutination tests 631  
 smooth (S) forms polysaccharides 49  
*typhi* 624  
*typhimurium* 76 613 620 623 624 628 633  
*typhosa* 611 613 620 634  
 antigens Vi somatic 615  
 infection diagnosis differential from *Alcaligenes faecalis* 619  
 pathogenicity factors influencing 151  
 use in agglutination tests 631  
 See also Typhoid fever
- Salpingitis gonococcal* infection 456
- Salt concentration influence on phagocytosis 225
- Salvarsan (asphenamine) therapy syphilis 14
- Saprospira* 573
- Sarcina lutea* 327 432
- Scalp favus 862 869  
 ringworm 862 866 867
- Scarlet fever 378 379  
 incidence seasonal 891  
 skin rash produced by scarlatinal toxin 155
- Schizomyces* 40 825
- Schistosoma* 825
- Scrub typhus epidemics 21
- Season as factor in incidence plague 675
- Selenomonas sputigena* 333
- Sepsis puerperal prophylaxis writings of White Holmes and Semmelweis 6
- Septicemia(s) 379  
 hemorrhagic See Pasteurellosis from *Salmonella*, 628
- Serology rise of science of 12
- Serotherapy dysentery bacillary 642 643
- Serotonin (5 hydroxy tryptamine) action blocked by eosinophil granules 233  
 role in anaphylaxis and allergic reactions 241 242 248  
 species differences to action of 250
- Serratia* L variants from 794
- Serum antiproteases inhibition of plasmin by 241  
 bactericidal power discovery by Nutall 181 182  
 disease (sickness) 260-262  
 antibodies 261  
 clinical manifestations 262  
 incidence 261  
 factors contribution to host defense 181  
 horse antitoxic for tetanus immunization 563  
 hyperimmune prophylactic for tetanus 563  
 proteins major fractions 183  
 rabbit antipertussis therapy pertussis 747  
 therapy 957  
 meningitis *Hemophilus influenzae* 957  
 meningococci infection 447  
 pneumonia pneumococcal 957
- Sex as factor in incidence plague 674
- tuberculosis 512 513
- Sheep abortion due to listeria 754
- agalactia contagious 800-801
- anthrax 530 535 540
- brucellosis 706 707
- Erysipelothrix rhusopathiae* infection 758
- infection by pleuropneumonia like organisms 800-801

- Sheep—(Cont)  
   listeriosis 754  
   tularemia 684  
 Shigella 610 611 634 644  
   antigenic structure 637 638  
   variation 639  
   bacteriophage 639  
   classification 639 640  
   morphologic and biochemical characteristics 635 637  
   natural habitat and range of pathogenicity 639  
   toxins 638  
   See also Dysentery bacillary  
 Shigella alkalescens 640  
   boydii 613 635 637  
   dispar 640  
   dysenteriae types 1 7 613 635 639 642 643  
   fimbriae in 43 44  
   flexneri 637 639 642 643  
   L variants from 794  
   sonnei 613 634-637 639 642 644  
 Shigellosis 643  
 Shwartzman phenomenon 293 294 305  
 Silver nitrate *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* killed by 678  
   prophylaxis ophthalmia neonatorum 456  
   salts and metal disinfection by 929  
 Sinusitis facial with pasteurillosis 663  
   from *Hemophilus influenzae* in infection in upper respiratory tract 727  
 Skin microorganisms commonly found on healthy surfaces 334 335  
 Skunk tularemia 684  
 Smallpox mortality 23  
   prophylaxis previous to Jenner's work 10  
   vaccination introduction by Jenner 10  
 Snake bites development of resistance to venom 10  
   bull tularemia 684  
 Soaps disinfection by 927  
 Soil role in spread of infection 901  
*Sphaerophorus necrophorus* 332 770  
 Spirilla 38 39  
   anaerobic 332 333  
*Spirillum lunatum* electron micrograph 42  
   minus 763 767  
   spitigenum 332 333 335 345  
   volutans cytoplasmic inclusions 56  
*Spirillum volutans*—(Cont)  
   metachromatic granules (volutin) in 56 57  
*Spirochaeta* 573  
   pallida 573  
   recurrentis 574  
*Spirochaetaceae* genera 573  
*Spirochaetales* families and genera 573  
   Spirochetes 39 333 336 573 603  
   Spirochetosis pulmonary 596  
   *Spironema recurrentis* 574  
   Splenomegaly incidence in Bush Negroes 31  
   Spontaneous generation theory of disproved by Pasteur's experiments 2 4  
   pioneer work of Spallanzani 2 3  
   present day discussions on origin of life 3 4  
   Sporotrichosis diagnosis 855  
   distribution 854  
   epidemiology 856  
   immunity 855  
   pathogenesis 855  
   treatment 855  
   See also *Sporotrichum schenckii*  
*Sporotrichum* 854  
   beurmannii 853  
   gougeroti 860  
   schenckii 853 856 860  
   antigenic structure 854  
   cultivation 853 854  
   history 853  
   See also Sporotrichosis  
 Squirrels for experiments relapsing fever 593  
   ground brucellosis 706  
   plague in 664  
   tularemia 681  
   plague in 664 675  
   tularemia 684  
 SRS A ( Slow Reacting Substance of Anaphylaxis ) formed in consequence of antigen antibody reaction 241 242 247 248  
   species differences to action of 250  
 Staining of bacteria in microscopical copy 38 55  
*Staphylococcus*(s) 40 327  
   coagulase negative 334  
   coagulase positive 334  
   L variants from 794  
*Staphylococcus albus* 413 847  
   See also *Staphylococcus pyogenes* var *albus*  
   anaerobius 327  
   aureus 412-432  
   antigenic structure 416-418  
   antigen A 417  
*Staphylococcus aureus* antigenic structure—(Cont)  
   capsular antigen 417  
   polysaccharide A (cell wall teichoic acid) 416-417  
   biochemical reactions 415  
   cell wall biosynthesis 50 52  
   macromolecular network 121 122  
   classification types 415-416  
   control 430 431  
   cultivation 414-415  
   diagnosis 478 429  
   diseases of animals 424  
     bovine mastitis 424  
     of man 422 424  
   abscess cutaneous 422  
   endocarditis bacterial acute 423  
   enterocolitis pseudo-membranous 423  
   food poisoning 424  
   furuncles ( boils ) 422 423  
   impetigo contagiosa 423  
   meningitis neonatal 423  
   osteomyelitis hematogenous acute 423  
   paronychia (hangnails) 422  
   pneumonia, 423  
   pustules 422  
   recurrence after apparent cure persists 423 424  
   thrombosis cavernous sinus 423  
   ecology 421-422  
   effects of penicillin on incorporation of isotopes into cell wall or protein and nucleic acid 122 123  
   epidemiology 421-422  
   experimental infection 424 425  
   history 412 413  
   immunity in man 431  
   morphology 413-414  
   pathogenicity and virulence 425-428  
   polyglycerophosphate ( in intracellular glycerol teichoic acid ) 417  
   reaction cycle leading to synthesis of part of cell wall 123 125  
   teichoic acid structure 50  
   toxins and enzymes 418-421  
   coagulase bound 419 4 6  
   free 419 426  
   enterotoxin 420  
   fibrinolysin 419  
   hemolysin, 418 426

- Staphylococcus aureus* toxins and enzymes—(Cont)  
 $\beta$  hemolysin 418  
 $\delta$  hemolysin 418  
 hyaluronidase 419 420  
 leukocidins 418 419 426  
 penicillinase 420  
 staphylokinase 419  
 $\alpha$  toxin 418 426  
 treatment 429 430  
 variation 415  
 See also *Staphylococcus pyo*  
*genes* var *aureus*  
*citreus* 413  
*epidermidis* 412 431 432  
*progenes* 753  
 var *albus* 327 344  
 See also *Staphylococcus albus*  
 var *aureus* 327  
 See *Staphylococcus aureus*  
*tetragenus* (*Gaffkya tetragena*) 327  
 transduction caused by phages 77  
 Staphylokinase in *Staphylococcus aureus* 419  
 Starch inclusions cytoplasmic 56 57  
 Steam high pressure sterilization by 918 920  
 saturated time/temperature relationships for sterilization 920  
 Sterilization 917 925  
 definition 918  
 methods 918 925  
 disinfection and antiseptics 917 925 930  
 chemicals 927 930  
 alcohols 927  
 ammonium compounds cationic quaternary 928  
 detergents anionic 927  
 dyes 927 928  
 ethylene and propylene glycols 927  
 halogens 928 929  
 chlorine 928 929  
 heavy metals 929  
 hydrogen peroxide 930  
 ozone 929 930  
 permanganates 930  
 phenols 927  
 soaps 927  
 definition 925 926  
 moist heat boiling 926 927  
 pasteurization 926 927  
 dry heat flaming and combustion 923  
 hot air oven 922 923  
 infrared heating lamps 923  
 Sterilization methods—(Cont)  
 mechanical 924 925  
 filtration 924 925  
 freeze thawing 925  
 ultrasonic treatment 925  
 moist heat 918 922  
 autoclave 918 920  
 gaseous 920-922  
 beta propiolactone 922  
 ethylene oxide 921  
 formaldehyde 921 922  
 inspissation 920  
 steam high pressure 918 920  
 saturated time/temperature relationship 920  
 tyndallization 920  
 radiation 923 924  
 gamma 923 924  
 high energy electrons 923 924  
 radio frequency and infra red 924  
 ultraviolet 924  
 Steroids therapy infectious diseases 938  
 suppression of antibody formation from 230  
 Stickland reaction 107 108  
 Sulbamide therapy blastomycosis 843  
 Stomatitis from *Fusobacterium fusiforme* 772  
 ulcerative 596  
 Stools "rice water" in cholera Asiatic 652 654  
 Streptobacillus(i) 40  
 L variants from 794  
*moniliformis* 763 768 787 794  
 cultivation and biologic properties 763 766  
 definition 763  
 infections epidemiology 766  
 variants L<sub>1</sub> to L<sub>7</sub> 787 794  
 795 800 803 804  
 See also Fever rat bite  
*pseudotuberculosis rodentium*  
 See *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis*  
 Streptococcus(i) 39-40 327 328  
 allergy 278 279  
 anaerobic 334  
 genetic transformation 75  
 groups A and C chemical composition of bacterial capsules 46  
 group D 334  
 hemolytic 356-386  
 colony forms 358 360  
 Group A colony forms 358 359  
 composition antigenic and biochemical 363 376  
 Streptococcus(i) hemolytic Group A composition antigenic and biochemical—(Cont)  
 carbohydrate group specific 362 364  
 extracellular products 367 375  
 amylase 375  
 deoxyribonuclease 372 373  
 DPNase (diphosphopyridine nucleotidase) 371  
 erythrogenic toxin 368 369  
 esterase 375  
 hyaluronidase 373 374  
 NADase (nicotina nucleadenine dinucleotidase) 371  
 proteinase streptococcal 374 375  
 streptokinase 371 372  
 streptolysin O 369 371  
 S 369 370  
 glycerol teichoic acids 366 367  
 hyaluronic acid capsule 366  
 intracellular components 375 376  
 L forms and proto-plasts 367 368  
 surface protein antigens 362 367  
 M 364 365  
 properties 362 363  
 R 366  
 T 365  
 relation to other groups 376  
 group differentiation 360 363  
 nonserologic 363  
 procedures in obtaining solutions of carbohydrates 362 363  
 serologic 360 361 363  
 Groups A to G relationship 376  
 growth requirements 360 361  
 history 356 357  
 infections delayed sequelae 380 381  
 erythema nodosum 381  
 glomerulonephritis hemorrhagic acute 380 381  
 rheumatic fever 380

- Streptococcus* (1) hemolytic in  
 fections—(Cont.)  
 diagnosis 383 384  
 epidemiology 385 386  
 immunity 381 383  
 progressive decline in  
 severity 382  
 in man 376 381  
 erysipelas 379 380  
 respiratory tract 377  
 378  
 scarlet fever See Scarlet  
 fever  
 septicemia 379  
 treatment 381 385  
 penicillin 384 385  
 sulfonamides 384  
 morphology 357 359  
 infections treatment Protocols  
 14  
 L variants from 794  
 leukotoxicity 156
- Streptococcus evolutus* 344  
*faecalis* chemical composition  
 54 327 340 753  
*faecium* 327  
*hominis* 334  
*liquefaciens* 327 344  
 MG 327  
*mutis* 327 334 340 344 345  
 multiplication of *Pasteurella*  
*pestis* inhibited by 666  
*pneumoniae* See *Pneumococ-*  
*cus*  
*putridus* 344  
*pyogenes* 327 334 556  
 pathogenicity factors influ-  
 encing 149  
*salivaris* (*hominis*) 327 334  
*sanguis* (*s b e*) 327  
 multiplication of *Pasteurella*  
*pestis* inhibited by 666  
*sputigenum* 345  
*viridans* 327 395  
*ymogenes* 327
- Streptogramin* as inhibitor of  
 protein synthesis 136  
*Streptokinase* produced by hemo-  
 lytic streptococci 155 371 372  
*Streptolysin O* produced by  
 hemolytic streptococci  
 155 156  
 Group A 369 371  
 S produced by hemolytic strep-  
 tococci 155 156  
 Group A 369 370
- Streptomyces* 875 827 856  
*madurae* 825 827 829 831  
*pa agayensis* 825 ■ 8  
*pelletieri* 825 877 829 830  
*soliensis* 825 828  
*Streptomycetaceae* 825  
 conidia or conidiospores for  
 matation 64
- Streptomycin* chemical composi-  
 tion 131 132  
 discovery by Waksman 15 132  
 effect on polyuridylic acid 133  
 interference with function of  
 mRNA 133  
 with protein synthesis 114  
 132 134  
 introduction in therapy 950  
 resistance of organism to *Bac-*  
*teroides* 773  
*Pasteurella pestis* 666  
*pseudotuberculosis* 678  
 therapy brucellosis 712  
*Escherichia coli* infections  
 614  
*Klebsiella pneumoniae* infec-  
 tions 617  
 listeriosis 756  
 meningitis influenzal 738  
 739  
 Oroya fever 781  
 pasteurellosis 662  
 pertussis 747  
 plague 665 673 674  
 pleuropneumonia-like organ-  
 isms infection, 804  
*Proteus vulgaris* infection  
 618  
*Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in-  
 fections 619  
 relapsing fever 594  
 salmonella infections 632  
 tuberculosis 510 512  
 tularemia 688  
 typhoid fever 632
- Streptothrix madurae* 827  
*muris rotii* 763  
 Substrate assimilation by bac-  
 teria 96 97  
 Succinate conversion of acetate  
 to by glyoxylate bypass 98 99  
 Sulfadiazine prophylaxis menin-  
 gitis meningococcus 942  
 943  
 rheumatic fever 943  
 resistance to *Listeria monoc-*  
*ytogenes* 756  
 therapy dysentery bacillary  
 642  
*Klebsiella pneumoniae* infec-  
 tions 617  
 meningococci infection 448  
 Sulfadimethoxine therapy myce-  
 toma 831  
 Sulfaguanidine therapy dysen-  
 tery bacillary 642  
 Sulfamethoxypridazine therapy  
 nocardiosis systemic 831  
 Sulfanilamide therapy photo-al-  
 lergic reactions 270  
 Sulfathiazole prophylaxis oph-  
 thalmitis neonatorum 456
- Sulfisoxazole (Gantrisin) therapy  
 meningitis influenzal 739  
 meningococci infection 448  
 Sulfonamides as metabolite ana-  
 logues 139 140  
 prophylaxis meningitis menin-  
 gococcus 942 943  
 plague bubonic or pneu-  
 monic 676  
 resistance to by *Pasteurella*  
*pseudotuberculosis* 678  
 therapy allergy 262  
 bacterial infections 14 15  
 blastomycosis South Ameri-  
 can 846  
*Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae*  
 759  
*Escherichia coli* infections  
 614  
 meningitis influenzal 739  
 nocardiosis systemic 831  
 pasteurellosis 662  
 phototoxicity 270  
 plague 665 673 676  
*Proteus vulgaris* infections  
 618  
 pseudotuberculosis 680  
 streptococcal hemolytic in-  
 fections 384  
 salmonella infections 632  
 typhoid fever 632  
 Sunlight brucellae killed by 704  
 Sweating sickness epidemics 24  
 Swine abortion due to listeria  
 754  
 anthrax 535  
 brucellosis 706  
*Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* in-  
 fection 758  
 infection by pleuropneumonia-  
 like organisms 801  
 pneumonia viral 662  
 rhinitis atrophic infectious  
 801  
 tuberculosis 521  
 Swineherd's disease 596  
 Syphilis 574 590  
 chancroid ( soft chancre ) 578  
 congenital of lung 575  
 diagnosis 584 585  
 complement fixation test 12  
 epidemiology and control 586  
 587  
 experimental work of Hunter 6  
 with gonorrhea 460  
 history 574 575  
 host range and pathogenesis  
 577 580  
 immunity phenomena 580-584  
 antibody(ies) serum 581  
 treponemal 582 583  
 Wassermann 581 582  
 antigenic fractions of trepo-  
 nemes 583

- Staphylococcus aureus* toxins and enzymes—(Cont)  
 $\beta$  hemolysin 418  
 $\delta$  hemolysin 418  
 hyaluronidase 419 420  
 leukocidins 418 419 426  
 penicillinase 420  
 staphylokinase 419  
 = toxin 418 426  
 treatment 429 430  
 variation 415  
 See also *Staphylococcus pyogenes* var *aureus*  
*citreus* 413  
*epidermidis* 412 431 432  
*progenes* 753  
 var *albus* 327 344  
 See also *Staphylococcus albus*  
 var *aureus* 327  
 See *Staphylococcus aureus*  
*tetragenus* (*Gaffky tetragena*) 327  
 transduction caused by phages 77  
*Staphylokinase* in *Staphylococcus aureus* 419  
 Starch inclusions cytoplasmic 56 57  
 Steam high pressure sterilization by 918 920  
 saturated time/temperature relationships for sterilization 920  
 Sterilization 917 925  
 definition 918  
 methods 918 925  
 disinfection and antiseptics 917 925 930  
 chemicals 927 930  
 alcohols 927  
 ammonium compounds cationic quaternary 928  
 detergents anionic 927  
 dyes 927 928  
 ethylene and propylene glycols 927  
 halogens 928 929  
 chlorine 928 929  
 heavy metals 929  
 hydrogen peroxide 930  
 ozone 929 930  
 permanganates 930  
 phenols 927  
 soaps 927  
 definition 925 926  
 moist heat boiling 926 927  
 pasteurization 926 927  
 dry heat flaming and combustion 923  
 hot air oven 922 923  
 infrared heating lamps 923
- Sterilization methods—(Cont)  
 mechanical 924 925  
 filtration 924 925  
 freeze thawing 925  
 ultrasonic treatment 925  
 moist heat 918 922  
 autoclave 918 920  
 gaseous 920-922  
 beta propiolactone 922  
 ethylene oxide 921  
 formaldehyde 921 922  
 inspissation 920  
 steam high pressure 918 920  
 saturated time/temperature relationship 920  
 tyndallization 920  
 radiation 923 924  
 gamma 923 924  
 high-energy electrons 923 924  
 radio frequency and infra red 924  
 ultraviolet 924  
 Steroids therapy infectious diseases 958  
 suppression of antibody formation 230  
 Stuckland reaction 107 108  
 Stilbamidine therapy blastomycosis 843  
 Stomatitis from *Fusobacterium fusiforme* 772  
 ulcerative 596  
 Stools "rice water" in cholera Asiatic 652 654  
 Streptobacillus(i) 40  
 L variants from 794  
*moniliformis* 763 768 787 794  
 cultivation and biologic properties 763 766  
 definition 763  
 infections epidemiology 766  
 variants L<sub>1</sub> to L<sub>7</sub> 787 794  
 795 800 803 804  
 See also Fever rat bite  
*pseudotuberculosis* rodentium  
 See *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis*  
*Streptococcus*(i) 39-40 327 328  
 allergy 278 279  
 anaerobic 334  
 genetic transformation 75  
 groups A and C chemical composition of bacterial capsules 46  
 group D 334  
 hemolytic 356-386  
 colony forms 358 360  
 Group A colony forms 358 359  
 composition antigenic and biochemical 363 376
- Streptococcus*(i) hemolytic Group A composition antigenic and biochemical—(Cont)  
 carbohydrate group specific 362 364  
 extracellular products 367 375  
 amylase 375  
 deoxyribonuclease 372 373  
 DPNase (diphosphopyridine nucleotidase) 371  
 erythrogenic toxin 368 369  
 esterase 375  
 hyaluronidase 373 374  
 NADase (nicotinicamide adenine dinucleotidase) 371  
 proteinase streptococcal 374 375  
 streptokinase 371 372  
 streptolysin  $\alpha$  369 371  
 S 369 370  
 glycerol teichoic acids 366 367  
 hyaluronic acid capsule 366  
 intracellular components 375 376  
 L forms and proto-plasts 367 368  
 surface protein antigens 362 367  
 M 364 365  
 properties 362 363  
 R 366  
 T 365  
 relation to other groups 376  
 group differentiation 360-363  
 nonserologic 363  
 procedures in obtaining solutions of carbohydrates 362 363  
 serologic 360 361 363  
 Groups A to G relationship 376  
 growth requirements 360 361  
 history 356 357  
 infections delayed sequelae 380 381  
 erythema nodosum 381  
 glomerulonephritis hemorrhagic acute 380 381  
 rheumatic fever 380

- Torulopsis glabrata* 335 336
- Toxin(s) bacterial chemistry and pharmacology 159 162  
neutralization as mechanism in host defense 203 204
- botulinus type A amino acid composition 159  
pharmacologic action 161 162
- Clostridium botulinum* 565 566  
*novyi* 557  
*perfringens* 555 557  
*tetani* 561 562
- diphtheria assay 486  
discovery by Loeffler 11  
mode of action 476-479  
pharmacologic action 160-161  
discovery 11
- erythrogenic of streptococci hemolytic Group A 368 369
- extracellular influence on pathogenicity of some bacterial species 149
- protein extracellular influence on pathogenicity of some bacterial species 150
- Salmonella* 625-626
- scarlatinal skin rash in scarlet fever produced by 155
- shigella* 638
- standardization methods developed by Ehrlich 11 13
- tetanus amino acid composition, 159  
discovery by Faber 11  
pharmacologic action 161
- $\alpha$  Toxin, *Staphylococcus aureus* 418 426
- Toxoid formation 160
- diphtheria 484 485  
assay 486
- Toxoplasmosis carriers 26
- TPI (treponemal immobilization) test syphilis 587 584-585
- TPN See Reduced triphosphopyridine nucleotide
- Treatment infectious diseases 949 959  
ACTH 958  
antimicrobial drugs 949 956  
acquisition of drug resistance during therapy 952  
bacterial vs bacteriostatic 953  
combinations 954  
effect on course of established infection 950  
effectiveness general host factors 951
- Treatment infectious diseases antimicrobial drugs effectiveness—(Cont)  
in relation to character of infectious lesion 950 951  
factors affecting dosage and frequency of administration 953 954  
historical review 949 950  
impact on clinical medicine 950  
misuses 969  
phenomena of relapse and microbial persistence 951 952  
prophylactic use 954 955  
sensitivity tests in vitro 954  
superinfection 944 952 953  
terminology 949  
untoward effects 955 956  
variable prevalence of drug resistant strains 952  
fever therapy 958  
gamma globulin human 957  
serum therapy 957  
steroids adrenal 958  
supportive care general 959  
surgical 956-957  
evacuation of pus 956  
immobilization 957  
relief of obstruction 957  
removal of dead tissue or foreign body 956  
See also under individual diseases
- Trench mouth from *Fusobacterium fusiforme* 772
- Treponema(s) 573 591  
biologic relationships 591  
characteristics 575 577  
and treponematoses 574 591
- Treponema* 333  
*americanum* 590  
*carateum* 574 589 590  
*cuniculi* 574 590  
*dentium* 333 335 336 345  
*herreyseni* 590  
*microdentium* 333 346  
*pallidum* 333 573 590 592  
cultivation 576  
morphology 575 576  
resistance to physical and chemical agents 576 577  
See also Syphilis  
*pertenue* 574 587 590  
biologic properties 587  
See also Yaws  
*pictor* 590  
*pinta* 590  
*recurrentis* 574
- Treponemataceae* genera 573
- Treponemes cultivable 577
- Trichinosis carriers 26
- Trichophyton* 862 866 869 871  
*concentricum* 862 864-866 868  
*equinum* 863 864  
*gallinae* 865  
*gourvilli* 865 866  
*megnini* 863 865  
*mentagrophytes* 863 865 869 871  
*monetagrophytes* 336  
*rubrum* 336 864 865 868 870  
*schoenleini* 6 862 865 868 869  
*soudanense* 865  
*terrestre* 863 866  
*tonsurans* 6 862 865 868 869 871  
*verrucosum* 863 865 869 871  
*violaceum* 864 865 868 869  
*yaoundei* 866
- Triose phosphate metabolism by Entner Duodoroff pathway 100
- Trypanosomiasis African epidemic 24  
mortality 24 25  
Gambian prophylaxis penitandine salt 944
- Tryptophan biosynthesis control by genes 76
- Tuberculin discovery by Koch 12  
hypersensitivity 274 278  
cellular 276  
desensitization 276  
lympholysis 277  
types of response 274 275  
Old (OT) use in skin test in diagnosis of tuberculosis 517 518  
test (reaction) cutaneous discovery 274  
tuberculosis 12
- Tuberculosis 498 521  
in animals 521  
bovine transmission to human beings through milk 17  
control measures 515 517  
continued training of physicians nurses technicians 517  
detection of infection 516  
treatment of active disease 516  
for prophylaxis of infection to prevent its becoming overt disease 516-517  
diagnosis laboratory methods bacteriologic 519 5 II  
serologic 520

- Syphilis immunity phenomena—  
(Cont)  
  host reaction 580 581  
  prophylaxis 586 587  
  rabbit 590  
  satellite bubo 578  
  treatment 14 585 586  
  See also *Treponema pallidum*
- Tarabagans (*Arctomys bobac*)  
  plague in 664
- Teichoic acid cell wall in *Staphylococcus aureus* 416 417  
  intracellular glycerol in *Staphylococcus aureus* 417  
  synthesis by polymerization of ribitol phosphate or glycerol phosphate 115
- Temperature curve in fever 311 312  
  as factor in incidence plague 675  
  influence on phagocytosis 225
- Tenovaginitis necrotizing with pasteurellosis 663
- Tetanus 561 564  
  antitoxin production by Behring and Kitasato 11  
  incidence World Wars I and II British Army 563  
  pathogenesis 562 563  
  prophylaxis and treatment 563 564  
  toxin discovery by Faber 11  
  pharmacologic action 161  
  See also *Clostridium tetani*
- Tetracocci 40
- Tetrads 40
- Tetrahydrofolic acid role in breakdown of histidine 109
- Test(s) (reaction) application to diagnosis 12  
  brucellosis 710 711  
  plague 673  
  salmonella infections 631 632  
  tularemia 687 688  
  typhoid fever 12
- agglutination absorption: tularemia 683
- Arthus reaction See Arthus reaction
- basophile degranulation for coryza allergic (hay fever) 265 266
- Casoni reaction allergy in parasitic infestations 282
- classification of species of *Brucella* 700
- complement fixation blastomycosis South American 845  
  brucellosis 711 713
- Coombs for blocking type antibody brucellosis 713
- Test(s) Coombs—(Cont)  
  detection of Rh human antibodies 241  
  cure gonorrhea 460  
  diffusion Ouchterlony for tularemia 683  
  Fernandez reaction for leprosy 280  
  flare and wheal in allergic coryza (hay fever) 264  
  drug reactions 287  
  Frei allergic reactions to viral materials 282  
  hemagglutination inhibition (HI) infection with pleuropneumonia-like organisms in chickens and turkeys 802  
  tularemia 687  
  Herxheimerlike reaction relapsing fever 594  
  I M Vi C (indol methyl red and Voges Proskauer) 614 615  
  inulin fermentation to distinguish pneumococci from streptococci 395  
  Mitsuda reaction for leprosy 280  
  PCA (passive cutaneous anaphylaxis) 245  
  Prausnitz Kuestner for coryza allergic (hay fever) 264 265  
  precipitin identification of *Helicophilus* species 729  
  Ramon flocculation assay of diphtheria toxin toxoid and antitoxin 486  
  Schick diphtheria 483 484  
  Schultz Dale detection of anaphylactic sensitivity 246  
  skin in allergy 279 282  
  reactions to fungal materials 281  
  to parasitic infestations 282  
  to viral materials 281 282  
  brucellosis 281 711 712  
  glanders 281  
  Johns disease 281  
  leprosy 280-281  
  paratuberculosis of cattle 281  
  for tuberculosis See Tuberculosis diagnosis tuberculosis in skin tests  
  tularemia 281 687  
  "slide" for bound coagulase in *Staphylococcus aureus* infection 428-429  
  spinal fluid syphilis 585  
  TPI (treponemal immobilization) syphilis 582 584-585
- Test(s)—(Cont)  
  virulence for toxigenicity of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* 473  
  Wassermann syphilis 581 584  
  Weil Felix typhus fever epidemic 618  
  Widal salmonella infections 632
- Tetracycline(s) HCl resistance to by *Pasteurella pseudotuberculosis* 678  
  as inhibitors of protein synthesis 136  
  introduction in therapy 950  
  phosphate potentiated therapy gonorrhea 459  
  resistance of organism to *Pasteurella pestis* 666  
  therapy *Bordetella parapertussis* infection 749  
  brucellosis 712  
  dysentery bacillary 642  
  *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* 759  
  *Escherichia coli* infections 614  
  histiosis 756  
  meningitis influenzal 738  
  Oroya fever 781  
  pasteurellosis 662  
  pneumococcus infection 407  
  pneumonia atypical primary 820  
  syphilis 586  
  tularemia 688  
  yaws 589
- Thrombocytopenic purpura, from ingestion of Sedormid 272
- Thrombosis cavernous sinus from *Staphylococcus aureus* 423
- Thrush from *Candida albicans* 835 838
- Thymine as pyrimidine base of DNA 75
- Ticks as reservoirs *Francisella tularensis* 684  
  tularemia 682  
  as vector brucellosis 707  
  leptospirosis 602  
  relapsing fever 594 595  
  tularemia 682
- Tine technic skin testing for tuberculosis 518
- Tinea barbae* 865 869  
  capitis 862 866 867  
  glabrata 869  
  imbricata 862  
  pedis 864 869 872  
  unguium 869
- Torula bergeri* 860  
  histolytica 832  
  sanfelice 832

- Virus(es)—(Cont)  
 neutralization as mechanism in  
 host defense 203 204
- Vitamin(s) ascorbic deficiency  
 periodontal disease from 347  
 bacterial requirement for  
 growth 91
- Voges Proskauer reaction forma-  
 tion of acetoin as basis of 110
- Voles tularemia 684
- Vollmer patch test for tubercu-  
 losis 518
- Vulvovaginitis from *Candida*  
*albicans* 838  
 gonococcal 456
- Wassermann antibody 183  
 in syphilis 581 582  
 test syphilis 581 584
- Wassermann Tabaki phenomenon  
 567
- Water role in spread of infec-  
 tion 898
- Weather as altering factor in  
 host resistance to infectious dis-  
 ease 177
- Weil Felix test typhus fever epi-  
 demic 618
- Weil's disease 596
- Whooping cough *See* Pertussis  
*and Bordetella pertussis*
- Widal test salmonella infections  
 632
- Woodchuck tularemia 684
- Woolsorter's disease 535
- Wounds infection *Escherichia*  
*coli* in 612  
 treatment gramicidin 15
- Xanthine fermentation hydro-  
 lytic reactions 108 109
- Yenoprylla cheopis* (flea) as res-  
 ervoir plague 664  
 as vector plague 676
- Yaws 587 589  
 diagnosis 588  
 epidemiology 588 589  
 history 587  
 immunity 588  
 in man 587 588  
 treatment and control 589  
*See also Treponema pertenue*
- Yellow fever mortality 25
- Zenker's hyaline or waxy degener-  
 ation in infectious diseases 320
- Zephuran brucellae killed by 705
- Zinc undecylenic in talc therapy  
 tinea pedis 872
- Zymonema brasiliense* 844  
*histosporocellularis* 844



Tuberculosis diagnosis—(Cont)  
 tuberculin skin tests 12 280  
 Heaf gun 518  
 Mantoux (intradermal) 517 518  
 OT (Old Tuberculin) 517 518  
 von Pirquet scratch 518  
 positive and false positive reactions 518  
 PPD (purified protein derivative) 517 518  
 tine technic 518  
 Vollmer patch 518  
 epidemiology 21 22 512 515  
 factors age 513  
 genetic 512  
 malnutrition 513  
 occupation 513  
 race 512 513  
 important aspects of infection 514 515  
 transmission by airborne droplet nuclei of sputum 514  
 immunity 503 508  
 allergy 505 507  
 viewpoints on role 506 507  
 antibody formation 505  
 Koch phenomenon 505 506 508  
 immunization 508 509  
 BCG vaccination 508 509 939  
 lesions caused by tubercle bacilli 500 502  
 mortality Indians of North America 23 24  
 trend in 20th century 22  
 United States by race and sex (1956) 513  
 world 514 515  
 pathogenesis 498 500  
 prophylaxis isoniazid 943  
 transmission experimental pioneer work of Villémun 67  
 treatment chemotherapy 509 512  
 combination of drugs 511 512  
 INH (isoniazid isonicotinic acid hydrazide) 510 512 516 517 950  
 catalase positive and catalase negative INH resistant mutants 411  
 PAS (para amino salicylic acid) 510 512 950  
 streptomycin 510 512  
 types primary (first infection) and postprimary (reinfection) 503 505  
 wars effect on 22

Tuberculosis—(Cont)  
 See also *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*  
 Tularemia 681 689  
 control 689  
 diagnosis 687 688  
 skin tests 281  
 epidemiology 688 689  
 history 681 682  
 immunity 686 687  
 pathogenicity and pathogenesis 684 686  
 pulmonary involvement 685  
 range of parasitism 684  
 treatment 688  
 Tyndallization sterilization by 920  
 Typhoid fever 619 626 627  
 carriers 27  
 control measures 633 634  
 diagnosis agglutination test 12  
 epidemiology 21 632 633  
 immunity 628 629  
 immunization limits of 939  
 vaccination 929 930  
 mortality 620  
 reduction after treatment of water supply Philadelphia 915  
 transmission by excreta 16  
 treatment 632  
 See also *Salmonella typhosa*  
 Typhoid Mary 17  
 Typhus carriers 27  
 fever epidemic diagnosis Weil  
 Felix test 618  
 scrub prophylaxis chloramphenicol 944  
 Tyrocydin discovery by Dubos 120  
 Tyrothricin discovery by Dubos 15  
 Ulcer(s) from *Fusobacterium fusiforme* 772  
 tropical 596  
 Ultrasonic treatment sterilization by 925  
 Undecylenic acid in talc therapy tinea pedis 872  
 Uridylic acid molecular models 130  
 Urticaria solaris 270  
 Vaccination as prophylaxis  
 cholera 656  
 pasteurellosis 662  
 smallpox introduction by Jenner 10  
 tuberculosis 508 509 939  
 tularemia 686 689  
 typhoid fever 629 630

Vaccines inactivated for immunization 932  
 live attenuated for immunization 931 932  
 See also Vaccination  
 Vaginitis from *Candida albicans* 838  
 Vancomycin therapy introduction 950  
*Staphylococcus aureus* infections 430  
 Varicella incidence seasonal 891  
 Variolation practiced previous to Jenner's work 10  
 Vasoactive substances counteraction by eosinophils 233  
*Veillonella* 328 451  
*alcalescens* 328 334  
*gogenes* 328  
 Venereal diseases epidemics 24  
 Verruga peruana from *Bartonella bacilliformis* 775 782  
 characteristics 778  
 diagnosis 781  
 immunity 780  
 pathology and pathogenesis 779 780  
 range of pathogenicity 779  
 Vibrio(s) 649 657  
 aerobic 657  
 anaerobic 332 333  
 antigenic structure 651 652 706  
 biochemical activities 650 651  
 definition 649  
 El Tor 654  
 growth requirements and cultivation 650  
 infections associated with 652  
 treatment antibiotics 657  
 L variants from 794  
 morphology 649 650  
 noncholera (NCV) 651  
 resistance 651  
 vibriophages 651  
 Vibrio 331  
*alcaligenes* 331 335  
*cholerae* 649 654  
*coli* 657  
*fetus* 657  
*jejun* 657  
*niger* 657  
*percolans* 331 335  
*sputorum* 333 335 345  
 Vibriophages 651  
 Vibrioses enteric 652 654  
 Vincent angina of from *Fusobacterium fusiforme* 772  
 gingivitis of 346  
 Viomycin therapy tuberculosis 510  
 Virus(es) allergic reactions to 281 282

- Virus(es)—(Cont)  
 neutralization as mechanism in  
 host defense 203 204
- Vitamin(s) ascorbic deficiency  
 periodontal disease from 347  
 bacterial requirement for  
 growth 91
- Voges Proskauer reaction forma-  
 tion of acetoin as basis of 110
- Voles tularemia* 684
- Vollmer patch test for tubercu-  
 losis 518
- Vulvovaginitis from *Candida*  
*albicans* 838  
 gonococcal 456
- Wassermann antibody 183  
 in syphilis 581 582  
 test syphilis 581 584
- Wassermann Tabaki phenomenon  
 562
- Water role in spread of infec-  
 tion 898
- Weather as altering factor in  
 host resistance to infectious dis-  
 ease 177
- Weil Felix test typhus fever epi-  
 demic 618
- Weil's disease 596
- Whooping cough *See* Pertussis  
*and Bordetella pertussis*
- Widal test salmonella infections  
 632
- Woodchuck tularemia 684
- Woolsorter's disease 535
- Wounds infection *Escherichia*  
*coli* in 612  
 treatment gramicidin 15
- Xanthine fermentation hydro-  
 lytic reactions 108 109
- Xenopsylla cheopis* (flea) as res-  
 ervoir plague 664  
 as vector plague 676
- Yaws 587 589  
 diagnosis 588  
 epidemiology 588 589  
 history 587  
 immunity 588  
 in man 587 588  
 treatment and control 589  
*See also Treponema perilluae*
- Yellow fever mortality 25
- Zenker's hyaline or waxy degener-  
 ation in infectious diseases 320
- Zephiran brucellae killed by 705
- Zinc undecylenate in talc therapy  
*linea pedis* 872
- Zymonema brasiliense* 844  
*kustosporocellularis* 844